# Table of contents

Table of contents

1 快速入门 .......................... 3
  1.1 概述 .................................. 3
  1.2 准备工作 .......................... 3
  1.3 开发板简介 .......................... 4
     1.3.1 ESP32-DevKitC V4 入门指南 .......... 4
     1.3.2 ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1 入门指南 .......... 10
     1.3.3 ESP32-PICO-KIT V4/V4.1 入门指南 .......... 35
     1.3.4 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 入门指南 .......... 45
     1.3.5 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) .......................... 71
     1.3.6 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 .......................... 77
     1.3.7 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 .......................... 82
     1.3.8 ESP32-DevKitM-1 .......................... 87
  1.4 详细安装步骤 .......................... 91
     1.4.1 设置开发环境 .......................... 92
     1.4.2 创建您的第一个工程 .......................... 92
  1.5 第一步：安装准备 .......................... 92
     1.5.1 Windows 平台工具链的标准设置 .......... 92
     1.5.2 Linux 平台工具链的标准设置 .......... 96
     1.5.3 macOS 平台工具链的标准设置 .......... 97
  1.6 第二步：获取 ESP-IDF .......................... 99
     1.6.1 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统 .......................... 99
     1.6.2 Windows 操作系统 .......................... 99
  1.7 第三步：设置工具 .......................... 99
     1.7.1 Windows 操作系统 .......................... 99
     1.7.2 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统 .......................... 99
     1.7.3 下载工具安装包 .......................... 100
     1.7.4 自定义工具安装路径 .......................... 100
  1.8 第四步：设置环境变量 .......................... 100
     1.8.1 Windows 操作系统 .......................... 100
     1.8.2 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统 .......................... 101
  1.9 第五步：开始创建工程 .......................... 101
     1.9.1 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统 .......................... 101
     1.9.2 Windows 操作系统 .......................... 101
  1.10 第六步：连接设备 .......................... 102
  1.11 第七步：配置 .......................... 102
     1.11.1 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统 .......................... 102
     1.11.2 Windows 操作系统 .......................... 102
  1.12 第八步：编译工程 .......................... 102
  1.13 第九步：烧录到设备 .......................... 103
     1.13.1 烧录过程中可能遇到的问题 .......................... 104
     1.13.2 常规操作 .......................... 104
  1.14 第十步：监视器 .......................... 105
  1.15 更新 ESP-IDF .......................... 106
  1.16 相关文档 .......................... 106

---

i
2 API 参考

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2.1 蓝牙 API</th>
<th>2.2 连网 API</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1.1 Controller &amp; VHCI</td>
<td>2.2.1 Wi-Fi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.2 BT COMMON</td>
<td>2.2.2 以太网</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.3 BT LE</td>
<td>2.2.3 Thread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.4 CLASSIC BT</td>
<td>2.2.4 IP 网络层协议</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.5 NimBLE-based host APIs</td>
<td>2.2.5 应用层协议</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.6 ESP-BLE-MESH</td>
<td>2.3 外设 API</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2.3.1 Analog to Digital Converter (ADC)</th>
<th>2.3.2 Analog to Digital Converter (DAC)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.3.3 通用定时器</td>
<td>2.3.4 GPIO &amp; RTC GPIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.5 I2C 驱动程序</td>
<td>2.3.6 Inter-IC Sound (I2S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.7 LCD</td>
<td>2.3.8 LED PWM 控制器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.9 Motor Control Pulse Width Modulator (MCPWM)</td>
<td>2.3.10 Pulse Counter (PCNT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.11 Remote Control (RMT)</td>
<td>2.3.12 SD Pull-up Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.13 SDMMC Host Driver</td>
<td>2.3.14 SD SPI Host Driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.15 SDIO Card Slave Driver</td>
<td>2.3.16 Sigma-delta Modulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.17 SPI Master Driver</td>
<td>2.3.18 SPI Slave Driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.19 ESP32-WROOM-32SE (Secure Element)</td>
<td>2.3.20 ESP32-WROOM-32SE (Secure Element)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.21 Two-Wire Automotive Interface (TWAI)</td>
<td>2.3.22 Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2.4 应用层协议</th>
<th>2.4.1 mDNS 服务</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2 ESP-TLS</td>
<td>2.4.3 OpenSSL-APIs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.4 ESP HTTP Client</td>
<td>2.4.5 ESP WebSocket Client</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.6 HTTP 服务器</td>
<td>2.4.7 HTTPS server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.8 ICMP Echo</td>
<td>2.4.9 ASIO port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.10 ESP-MQTT</td>
<td>2.4.11 ESP-Modbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.12 ESP Local Control</td>
<td>2.4.13 ESP Serial Slave Link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.14 ESP x509 Certificate Bundle</td>
<td>2.4.15 ESP x509 Certificate Bundle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.16.1 与 ESP32 创建串口连接 ................................. 106
1.16.2 Eclipse IDE 创建和烧录指南 ............................ 112
1.16.3 VS Code IDE 快速入门 ................................. 112
1.16.4 IDE 监视器 ........................................ 113
1.16.5 工具链的自定义设置 .................................. 117

2.1.5 NimBLE-based host APIs .............................. 303
2.1.6 ESP-BLE-MESH ........................................ 305
2.3.19 ESP32-WROOM-32SE (Secure Element) ................. 847
2.3.20 ESP32-WROOM-32SE (Secure Element) ................. 847
2.3.21 Two-Wire Automotive Interface (TWAI) ................ 861
2.3.22 Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) 876
2.4.1 mDNS 服务 ........................................ 899
2.4.2 ESP-TLS ........................................ 912
2.4.3 OpenSSL-APIs ...................................... 923
2.4.4 ESP HTTP Client .................................... 950
2.4.5 ESP WebSocket Client ................................ 964
2.4.6 HTTP 服务器 ..................................... 971
2.4.7 HTTPS server ...................................... 993
2.4.8 ICMP Echo ......................................... 995
2.4.9 ASIO port ......................................... 1000
2.4.10 ESP-MQTT ......................................... 1000
2.4.11 ESP-Modbus ....................................... 1011
2.4.12 ESP Local Control .................................. 1033
2.4.13 ESP Serial Slave Link ............................... 1041
2.4.14 ESP x509 Certificate Bundle .......................... 1056
3 ESP32 H/W 硬件参考 1703
3.1 芯片系列对比 .......................................................... 1703
3.1.1 相关文档 .......................................................... 1706

4 API 指南 1707
4.1 应用层跟踪库 .......................................................... 1707
4.1.1 概述 ............................................................... 1707
4.1.2 运行模式 .......................................................... 1707
4.1.3 配置选项与依赖项 ................................................. 1707
4.1.4 如何使用这个库 .................................................. 1708
4.2 应用程序的启动流程 .................................................. 1716
4.2.1 一级引导程序 .................................................... 1717
4.2.2 二级引导程序 .................................................... 1717
4.2.3 应用程序启动阶段 ................................................ 1717
4.3 BluFi ................................................................. 1719
4.3.1 概览 ............................................................... 1719
4.3.2 BluFi 流程 ........................................................ 1720
4.3.3 BluFi 流程图 ...................................................... 1720
4.3.4 BluFi 中定义的帧格式 .......................................... 1720
4.3.5 ESP32 嵌的安全实现 ............................................. 1724
4.3.6 GATT 相关说明 ................................................... 1725
4.4 引导加载程序 (Bootloader) ........................................... 1725
4.4.1 引导加载程序兼容性 .............................................. 1725
4.4.2 日志级别 ........................................................ 1726
4.4.3 恢复出厂设置 .................................................... 1726
4.4.4 从测试固件启动 .................................................. 1727
4.4.5 回滚 .............................................................. 1727
4.4.6 看门狗 ........................................................... 1727
4.4.7 引导加载程序大小 ............................................... 1728
4.4.8 从深度睡眠中快速启动 ....................................... 1728
4.4.9 自定义引导加载程序 ........................................... 1728
4.5 构建系统（CMake 版） ............................................... 1728
4.5.1 概述 ............................................................... 1728
4.5.2 使用构建系统 ..................................................... 1729
4.5.3 示例项目 ........................................................ 1732
4.5.4 项目 CMakeLists 文件 ......................................... 1733
4.5.5 组件 CMakeLists 文件 ......................................... 1734
4.5.6 组件配置 ........................................................ 1736
4.5.7 预处理器定义 .................................................... 1737
4.5.8 组件依赖 ........................................................ 1737
4.5.9 组件 CMakeLists 示例 ......................................... 1742
4.5.10 自定义 sdkconfig 的默认值 ................................... 1745
4.5.11 Flash 参数 ........................................................ 1746
4.5.12 构建 Bootloader ................................................ 1746
4.5.13 选择目标芯片 ................................................... 1746
4.5.14 编写纯 CMake 组件 ............................................. 1747
4.5.15 组件中使用第三方 CMake 项目 ............................... 1747
4.5.16 组件中使用预建库 .............................................. 1748
4.5.17 在自定义 CMake 项目中使用 ESP-IDF ....................... 1748
4.5.18 ESP-IDF CMake 构建系统 API ............................... 1749
4.5.19 文件配置 & 增量构建 .......................................... 1752
4.5.20 构建系统的元数据 .............................................. 1753
4.5.21 构建系统内部 ................................................... 1753
4.5.22 从 ESP-IDF GNU Make 构建系统迁移到 CMake 构建系统 1755

4.6 Deep Sleep Wake Stubs ................................................. 1756
4.6.1 Rules for Wake Stubs .............................................. 1756
4.6.2 Implementing A Stub ............................................. 1756
4.6.3 Loading Code Into RTC Memory .................................. 1757
4.6.4 Loading Data Into RTC Memory .............................................. 1757
4.7 错误处理 ................................................................. 1758
  4.7.1 概述 ................................................................. 1758
  4.7.2 错误码 ................................................................. 1758
  4.7.3 错误码到错误消息 .................................................. 1758
  4.7.4 ESP_ERROR_CHECK 宏 ................................................. 1759
  4.7.5 ESP_ERROR_CHECK WITHOUT_ABORT 宏 .................. 1759
  4.7.6 ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR 宏 ........................................... 1759
  4.7.7 ESP_GOTO_ON_ERROR 宏 ............................................. 1759
  4.7.8 ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE 宏 .......................................... 1759
  4.7.9 ESP_GOTO_ON_FALSE 宏 ............................................. 1760
  4.7.10 CHECK 宏使用示例 ................................................. 1760
  4.7.11 错误处理模式 ..................................................... 1760
  4.7.12 C++ 异常 ........................................................... 1761
4.8 ESP-BLE-MESH ............................................................ 1761
  4.8.1 概述 ................................................................. 1761
  4.8.2 ESP-BLE-MESH 快速入门 ........................................... 1762
  4.8.3 ESP-BLE-MESH 示例 .................................................. 1769
  4.8.4 ESP-BLE-MESH 演示视频 .......................................... 1769
  4.8.5 ESP-BLE-MESH 常见问题手册 .................................... 1769
  4.8.6 相关文档 ........................................................... 1769
4.9 ESP-WIFI-MESH .......................................................... 1795
  4.9.1 概述 ................................................................. 1795
  4.9.2 简介 ................................................................. 1796
  4.9.3 ESP-WIFI-MESH 概念 ............................................... 1797
  4.9.4 建立网络 ........................................................... 1801
  4.9.5 管理网络 ........................................................... 1806
  4.9.6 数据传输 ........................................................... 1808
  4.9.7 信道切换 ........................................................... 1811
  4.9.8 性能 ................................................................. 1813
  4.9.9 更多注意事项 .................................................... 1814
4.10 Core Dump .............................................................. 1814
  4.10.1 Overview .......................................................... 1814
  4.10.2 Configurations ...................................................... 1814
  4.10.3 Save core dump to flash .......................................... 1815
  4.10.4 Print core dump to UART ......................................... 1815
  4.10.5 ROM Functions in Backtraces .................................... 1815
  4.10.6 Dumping variables on demand .................................... 1816
  4.10.7 Running espcoredump.py ......................................... 1816
4.11 Event Handling .......................................................... 1817
  4.11.1 Wi-Fi, Ethernet, and IP Events .................................. 1817
  4.11.2 Mesh Events ........................................................ 1818
  4.11.3 Bluetooth Events .................................................. 1819
4.12 片外 RAM ............................................................... 1819
  4.12.1 简介 ................................................................. 1819
  4.12.2 硬件 ................................................................. 1819
  4.12.3 配置片外 RAM .................................................... 1819
  4.12.4 片外 RAM 使用限制 ............................................. 1821
  4.12.5 初始化失败 ........................................................ 1821
  4.12.6 Chip revisions ...................................................... 1821
4.13 严重错误 .............................................................. 1822
  4.13.1 概述 ................................................................. 1822
  4.13.2 紧急处理程序 ...................................................... 1822
  4.13.3 寄存器转储与回溯 ............................................... 1823
  4.13.4 GDB Stub ............................................................ 1825
  4.13.5 Guru Meditation 错误 ............................................. 1826
  4.13.6 其他严重错误 ..................................................... 1827
4.14 Flash 加密 .............................................................. 1829
4.14.1 概述 ................................................................. 1829
4.14.2 相关 eFuses ..................................................... 1830
4.14.3 Flash 加加密过程 ............................................... 1830
4.14.4 Flash 加加密设置 ............................................. 1831
4.14.5 可能出现的错误 ............................................... 1836
4.14.6 ESP32 flash 加密状态 .......................................... 1838
4.14.7 在加密的 flash 中读写数据 .................................. 1838
4.14.8 更新加密的 flash ............................................... 1839
4.14.9 关闭 flash 加密 ............................................... 1839
4.14.10 Flash 加密的要点 ............................................ 1840
4.14.11 Flash 加密的局限性 ......................................... 1840
4.14.12 Flash 加密与安全启动 ....................................... 1840
4.14.13 Flash 加密的高级功能 ....................................... 1840
4.14.14 技术细节 ..................................................... 1842
4.15 ESP-IDF FreeRTOS SMP Changes .................................. 1843
4.15.1 Overview ....................................................... 1843
4.15.2 Tasks and Task Creation ........................................ 1844
4.15.3 Scheduling ...................................................... 1844
4.15.4 Critical Sections & Disabling Interrupts ...................... 1846
4.15.5 Floating Point Arithmetic ..................................... 1847
4.15.6 Task Deletion .................................................. 1847
4.15.7 Thread Local Storage Pointers & Deletion Callbacks ........ 1847
4.15.8 Configuring ESP-IDF FreeRTOS .................................. 1848
4.16 Hardware Abstraction .............................................. 1848
4.16.1 Architecture .................................................. 1849
4.16.2 LL (Low Level) Layer .......................................... 1850
4.16.3 HAL (Hardware Abstraction Layer) .......................... 1851
4.17 High-Level Interrupts .............................................. 1852
4.17.1 Interrupt Levels ............................................... 1852
4.17.2 Notes ........................................................... 1853
4.18 JTAG 调试 .......................................................... 1853
4.18.1 引言 ........................................................... 1853
4.18.2 工作原理 ...................................................... 1854
4.18.3 选择 JTAG 适配器 ............................................ 1854
4.18.4 安装 OpenOCD ............................................... 1855
4.18.5 配置 ESP32 目标板 .......................................... 1855
4.18.6 启动调试器 .................................................. 1860
4.18.7 调试范例 ...................................................... 1861
4.18.8 从源码构建 OpenOCD ....................................... 1861
4.18.9 注意事项和补充内容 ......................................... 1864
4.18.10 相关文档 .................................................... 1869
4.19 链接器脚本生成机制 .............................................. 1894
4.19.1 概述 ........................................................... 1894
4.19.2 快速上手 ...................................................... 1894
4.19.3 链接器脚本生成机制内核 ..................................... 1897
4.20 lwIP ................................................................. 1902
4.20.1 Supported APIs ............................................... 1903
4.20.2 BSD Sockets API .............................................. 1903
4.20.3 Netconn API .................................................... 1907
4.20.4 lwIP FreeRTOS Task .......................................... 1907
4.20.5 IPv6 Support ................................................... 1907
4.20.6 esp-lwip custom modifications ............................... 1908
4.20.7 Performance Optimization ..................................... 1909
4.21 OpenThread .......................................................... 1910
4.21.1 Mode of the OpenThread stack ............................... 1910
4.21.2 How To Write an OpenThread Application ..................... 1911
4.21.3 The OpenThread border router ................................. 1912
4.22 应用程序的内存布局 ................................................ 1912
4.29 Thread Local Storage ................................................................. 1950
  4.29.1 Overview ........................................................................ 1950
  4.29.2 FreeRTOS Native API ....................................................... 1950

4.28 Secure Boot V2 ................................................................. 1944
  4.28.1 Background ................................................................... 1945
  4.28.2 Advantages .................................................................... 1945
  4.28.3 Secure Boot V2 Process .................................................. 1945
  4.28.4 Signature Block Format .................................................. 1946
  4.28.5 Verifying a Signature Block ............................................. 1946
  4.28.6 Verifying an Image ......................................................... 1946
  4.28.7 Bootloader Size ............................................................. 1947
  4.28.8 eFuse usage ................................................................. 1947
  4.28.9 How To Enable Secure Boot V2 ....................................... 1947
  4.28.10 Restrictions after Secure Boot is enabled ......................... 1948
  4.28.11 Generating Secure Boot Signing Key ............................... 1948
  4.28.12 Remote Signing of Images ............................................ 1948
  4.28.13 Secure Boot Best Practices .......................................... 1949
  4.28.14 Technical Details ......................................................... 1949
  4.28.15 Secure Boot & Flash Encryption .................................... 1949
  4.28.16 Signed App Verification Without Hardware Secure Boot .... 1949
  4.28.17 Advanced Features ...................................................... 1950

4.27 Secure Boot ................................................................. 1938
  4.27.1 Background ................................................................... 1939
  4.27.2 Secure Boot Process Overview ....................................... 1939
  4.27.3 Keys ............................................................................. 1939
  4.27.4 Bootloader Size ............................................................. 1940
  4.27.5 How To Enable Secure Boot .......................................... 1940
  4.27.6 Re-Flashable Software Bootloader ................................... 1941
  4.27.7 Generating Secure Boot Signing Key ............................... 1941
  4.27.8 Remote Signing of Images ............................................. 1942
  4.27.9 Secure Boot Best Practices .......................................... 1942
  4.27.10 Technical Details ......................................................... 1942
  4.27.11 Secure Boot & Flash Encryption .................................... 1944
  4.27.12 Signed App Verification Without Hardware Secure Boot .... 1944
  4.27.13 Advanced Features ...................................................... 1944

4.26 RF calibration ................................................................. 1937
  4.26.1 Partial calibration .......................................................... 1937
  4.26.2 Full calibration ............................................................. 1937
  4.26.3 No calibration ............................................................... 1938
  4.26.4 PHY initialization data ................................................... 1938

4.25 Performance ................................................................. 1920
  4.25.1 How to Optimize Performance ........................................ 1920
  4.25.2 Guides ......................................................................... 1920

4.24 分区表 .............................................................................. 1915
  4.24.1 概述 ........................................................................... 1915
  4.24.2 内置分区表 ............................................................... 1915
  4.24.3 创建自定义分区表 ..................................................... 1916
  4.24.4 生成二进制分区表 ................................................... 1918
  4.24.5 分区大小检查 ........................................................... 1918
  4.24.6 烧写分区表 ............................................................... 1918
  4.24.7 分区工具 (parttool.py) ............................................... 1919

4.23 DMA 能力要求 ............................................................. 1914

4.22.6 RTC 快速内存 .......................................................... 1914

4.22.5 DROM (数据存储在 Flash 中) ....................................... 1913

4.22.4 DRAM (数据 RAM) ...................................................... 1913

4.22.3 RTC 快速内存 .......................................................... 1913

4.22.2 IROM（代码从 Flash 中运行） ..................................... 1913

4.22.1 IRAM（指令 RAM） .................................................... 1912
| 4.29.3 | Pthread API | 1951 |
| 4.29.4 | C11 Standard | 1951 |
| 4.30 | 工具 | 1951 |
| 4.30.1 | Downloadable Tools | 1951 |
| 4.30.2 | IDF Docker Image | 1959 |
| 4.30.3 | IDF Windows Installer | 1961 |
| 4.30.4 | IDF Component Manager | 1962 |
| 4.30.5 | IDF Clang Tidy | 1963 |
| 4.31 | ULP 协处理器编程 | 1964 |
| 4.31.1 | ESP32 ULP coprocessor instruction set | 1964 |
| 4.31.2 | Programming ULP coprocessor using C macros (legacy) | 1977 |
| 4.31.3 | 安装工具链 | 1982 |
| 4.31.4 | 编译 ULP 代码 | 1982 |
| 4.31.5 | 访问 ULP 程序变量 | 1982 |
| 4.31.6 | 启动 ULP 程序 | 1983 |
| 4.31.7 | ESP32 ULP 程序流 | 1984 |
| 4.32 | ESP32 中的单元测试 | 1985 |
| 4.32.1 | 添加常规测试用例 | 1985 |
| 4.32.2 | 添加多设备测试用例 | 1986 |
| 4.32.3 | 添加多阶段测试用例 | 1987 |
| 4.32.4 | 应用于不同芯片的单元测试 | 1987 |
| 4.32.5 | 编译单元测试程序 | 1988 |
| 4.32.6 | 运行单元测试 | 1989 |
| 4.32.7 | 带缓存补偿定时器的定时代码 | 1990 |
| 4.32.8 | Mocks | 1990 |
| 4.33 | Unit Testing on Linux | 1991 |
| 4.33.1 | Embedded Software Tests | 1991 |
| 4.33.2 | IDF Unit Tests on Linux Host | 1992 |
| 4.34 | Wi-Fi 驱动程序 | 1992 |
| 4.34.1 | ESP32 Wi-Fi 功能列表 | 1992 |
| 4.34.2 | 如何编写 Wi-Fi 应用程序 | 1993 |
| 4.34.3 | ESP32 Wi-Fi API 错误代码 | 1993 |
| 4.34.4 | 初始化 ESP32 Wi-Fi API 参数 | 1994 |
| 4.34.5 | ESP32 Wi-Fi 编程模型 | 1994 |
| 4.34.6 | ESP32 Wi-Fi 事件描述 | 1995 |
| 4.34.7 | ESP32 Wi-Fi station 一般情况 | 1997 |
| 4.34.8 | ESP32 Wi-Fi AP 一般情况 | 2000 |
| 4.34.9 | ESP32 Wi-Fi 扫描 | 2000 |
| 4.34.10 | ESP32 Wi-Fi station 连接场景 | 2007 |
| 4.34.11 | 找到多个 AP 时的 ESP32 Wi-Fi station 连接 | 2011 |
| 4.34.12 | Wi-Fi 重新连接 | 2011 |
| 4.34.13 | Wi-Fi beacon 超时 | 2011 |
| 4.34.14 | ESP32 Wi-Fi 配置 | 2011 |
| 4.34.15 | Wi-Fi Easy Connect™ (DPP) | 2015 |
| 4.34.16 | 无线网络管理 | 2016 |
| 4.34.17 | 无线资源管理 | 2016 |
| 4.34.18 | ESP32 Wi-Fi 节能模式 | 2016 |
| 4.34.19 | ESP32 Wi-Fi 吞吐量 | 2017 |
| 4.34.20 | Wi-Fi 80211 数据包发送 | 2017 |
| 4.34.21 | Wi-Fi Sniffer 模式 | 2018 |
| 4.34.22 | Wi-Fi 多根天线 | 2019 |
| 4.34.23 | Wi-Fi 信道状态信息 | 2020 |
| 4.34.24 | Wi-Fi 信道状态信息配置 | 2021 |
| 4.34.25 | Wi-Fi HT20/40 | 2021 |
| 4.34.26 | Wi-Fi QoS | 2022 |
| 4.34.27 | Wi-Fi AMSDU | 2022 |
| 4.34.28 | Wi-Fi 分片 | 2022 |
| 4.34.29 | WPS 注册 | 2022 |
| 4.34.30 | Wi-Fi 缓冲区使用情况 | 2022 |
| 4.34.31 | 如何提高 Wi-Fi 性能 | 2023 |
| 4.34.32 | Wi-Fi Menuconfig | 2026 |
| 4.34.33 | 故障排除 | 2029 |
| 4.35 | Wi-Fi Security | 2034 |
| 4.35.1 | ESP32 Wi-Fi Security Features | 2034 |
| 4.35.2 | Protected Management Frames (PMF) | 2034 |
| 4.35.3 | WPA3-Personal | 2035 |

5 ESP-IDF 5.0 迁移指南

| 5.1 | Migrate Windows Environment to ESP-IDF 5.0 | 2037 |
| 5.2 | Migrate Peripherals to ESP-IDF 5.0 | 2037 |
| 5.2.1 | Peripheral Clock Gating | 2037 |
| 5.3 | Migrate Build System to ESP-IDF 5.0 | 2037 |
| 5.4 | Migrate System to ESP-IDF 5.0 | 2037 |
| 5.4.1 | Inter-Processor Call | 2037 |
| 5.5 | Migrate Ethernet Drivers to ESP-IDF 5.0 | 2037 |
| 5.5.1 | esp_eth_ioctl() API | 2038 |

6 Libraries and Frameworks

| 6.1 | Cloud Frameworks | 2039 |
| 6.1.1 | ESP RainMaker | 2039 |
| 6.1.2 | AWS IoT | 2039 |
| 6.1.3 | Azure IoT | 2039 |
| 6.1.4 | Google IoT Core | 2039 |
| 6.1.5 | Aliyun IoT | 2039 |
| 6.1.6 | Joylink IoT | 2039 |
| 6.1.7 | Tencent IoT | 2040 |
| 6.1.8 | Tencentyun IoT | 2040 |
| 6.1.9 | Baidu IoT | 2040 |
| 6.2 | Espressif’s Frameworks | 2040 |
| 6.2.1 | Espressif Audio Development Framework | 2040 |
| 6.2.2 | ESP-CSI | 2040 |
| 6.2.3 | Espressif DSP Library | 2040 |
| 6.2.4 | ESP-WIFI-MESH Development Framework | 2041 |
| 6.2.5 | ESP-WHO | 2041 |
| 6.2.6 | ESP RainMaker | 2041 |
| 6.2.7 | ESP-IoT-Solution | 2041 |

7 Contributions Guide

| 7.1 | How to Contribute | 2043 |
| 7.2 | Before Contributing | 2043 |
| 7.3 | Pull Request Process | 2043 |
| 7.4 | Legal Part | 2044 |
| 7.5 | Related Documents | 2044 |
| 7.5.1 | Espressif IoT Development Framework Style Guide | 2044 |
| 7.5.2 | Install pre-commit Hook for ESP-IDF Project | 2051 |
| 7.5.3 | Documenting Code | 2052 |
| 7.5.4 | 创建示例项目 | 2057 |
| 7.5.5 | API Documentation Template | 2058 |
| 7.5.6 | Contributor Agreement | 2060 |
| 7.5.7 | Copyright Header Guide | 2062 |

8 ESP-IDF 版本简介

| 8.1 | 发布版本 | 2065 |
| 8.2 | 我该如何选择版本? | 2065 |
| 8.3 | 版本管理 | 2065 |
| 8.4 | 支持期限 | 2066 |
| 8.5 | 查看当前版本 | 2067 |
这里是乐鑫 IoT 开发框架 (esp-idf) 的文档中心。ESP-IDF 是 ESP32、ESP32-S 和 ESP32-C 系列芯片的官方开发框架。

本文档仅包含针对 ESP32 芯片的 ESP-IDF 使用。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>快速入门</th>
<th>API 参考</th>
<th>H/W 参考</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>API 指南</td>
<td>贡献代码</td>
<td>相关资源</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1

快速入门

本文档旨在指导用户搭建 ESP32 硬件开发的软件环境。通过一个简单的示例展示如何使用 ESP-IDF (Espressif IoT Development Framework) 配置菜单，并编译、下载固件至 ESP32 开发板等步骤。

注解：这是 ESP-IDF master 分支（最新版本）的文档，该版本在持续开发中。还有 Stable version 的文档，以及其他版本的文档 ESP-IDF 版本简介 供参考。

1.1 概述

ESP32 SoC 芯片支持以下功能：

- 2.4 GHz Wi-Fi
- 蓝牙
- 高性能 Xtensa® 32 位 LX6 双核处理器
- 超低功耗协处理器
- 多种外设

ESP32 采用 40 nm 工艺制成，具有最佳的功耗性能、射频性能、稳定性和通用性和可靠性，适用于各种应用场景和不同功耗需求。

乐鑫为用户提供完整的软、硬件资源，进行 ESP32 硬件设备的开发。其中，乐鑫的软件开发环境 ESP-IDF 旨在协助用户快速开发物联网 (IoT) 应用，可满足用户对 Wi-Fi、蓝牙、低功耗等方面的要求。

1.2 准备工作

硬件:

- 一款 ESP32 开发板
- USB 数据线 (A 转 Micro-B)
- 电脑（Windows、Linux 或 Mac OS）

软件:

您可以选择下载并手动安装以下软件:

- 设置 工具链，用于编译 ESP32 代码；
- 编译构建工具——CMake 和 Ninja 编译构建工具，用于编译 ESP32 应用程序；
- 获取 ESP-IDF 软件开发框架。该框架已经基本包含 ESP32 使用的 API（软件库和源代码）和运行工具链的脚本；

或者，您也可以通过以下集成开发环境 (IDE) 中的官方插件完成安装流程：

- Eclipse 插件 (安装)
Chapter 1. 快速入门

- VS Code 插件 (安装)

图 1: ESP32 应用程序开发

1.3 开发板简介

请点击下方链接，了解有关开发板的详细信息。

1.3.1 ESP32-DevKitC V4 入门指南

本指南介绍了如何开始使用 ESP32-DevKitC V4 开发板。

准备工作

- ESP32-DevKitC V4 开发板
- USB A / micro USB B 数据线
- PC (Windows、Linux 或 Mac OS)

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往应用程序开发 章节。

概述

ESP32-DevKitC V4 是 乐鑫 一款基于 ESP32 的小型开发板。板上模组的绝大部分管脚均已引出，开发人员可根据实际需求，轻松通过跳线连接多种外围器件，或将开发板插在面包板上使用。

为了更好地满足不同用户需求，ESP32-DevKitC V4 还支持以下不同配置:
• 可选多款 ESP32 模组
  – ESP32-WROOM-32E
  – ESP32-WROOM-32UE
  – ESP32-WROOM-32D
  – ESP32-WROOM-32U
  – ESP32-SOLO-1
  – ESP32-WROVER-E
  – ESP32-WROVER-IE
  – ESP32-WROOM-DA
• 可选排针或排母
详情请见乐鑫产品选型工具。

功能说明

ESP32-DevKitC V4 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-WROOM-32</td>
<td>基于 ESP32 的模组，更多详情，请见《ESP32-WROOM-32 技术规格书》。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot</td>
<td>下载按键。按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按下 EN 键（此时不要松开 Boot 键）进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB-to-UART 桥接器</td>
<td>单芯片 USB-UART 桥接器，可提供高达 3 Mbps 的传输速率。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro USB 接口</td>
<td>USB 接口，可用作电路板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和 ESP32-WROOM-32 模组的通信接口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Power On LED</td>
<td>开发板通电后（USB 或外部 5 V），该指示灯将亮起。更多信息，请见相关文档中的原理图。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>板上模组的绝大部分管脚均已引出至开发板的排针。用户可以对 ESP32 进行编程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI 等多种功能。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

图 2: ESP32-DevKitC V4（板载 ESP32-WROOM-32）

注解：管脚 D0, D1, D2, D3, CMD 和 CLK 用于 ESP32 芯片与 SPI flash 间的内部通信，集中分布在开发
板两侧靠近 USB 端口的位置。通常而言，这些管脚最好不连，否则可能影响 SPI flash / SPI RAM 的工作。

**注解：**管脚 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 仅适用于板载 ESP32-WROOM 系列和 ESP32-SOLO-1 的开发板，保留内部使用。

**电源选项**

开发板可从以下三种供电方式中任选其一:

- Micro USB 供电（默认）
- 5V / GND 管脚供电
- 3V3 / GND 管脚供电

**警告：**上述供电模式 不可同时连接，否则可能会损坏开发板和/或电源。

**排针**

下列表出了开发板两侧排针（J1 和 J3）的名称和功能，排针名称如图 ESP32-DevKitC V4（板载 ESP32-WROOM-32）中所示，排针编号与 ESP32-DevKitC V4 原理图 (PDF) 一致。

### J1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3V3</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3.3 V 电源</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>EN</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>CHIP PU, Reset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>IO36</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO36, ADC1_CH0, S_VP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IO39</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO39, ADC1_CH3, S_VN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IO34</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO34, ADC1_CH6, VDET_1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IO35</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO35, ADC1_CH7, VDET_2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO32, ADC1_CH4, TOUCH_CH9, XTAL_32K_P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO33, ADC1_CH5, TOUCH_CH8, XTAL_32K_N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO25, ADC1_CH8, DAC_1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO26, ADC2_CH9, DAC_2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO27, ADC2_CH7, TOUCH_CH7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO14, ADC2_CH6, TOUCH_CH6, MTMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO12, ADC2_CH5, TOUCH_CH5, MTDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO13, ADC2_CH4, TOUCH_CH4, MTCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>IO9</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO9, D2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>IO10</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO10, D3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>IO11</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO11, CMD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>5V0</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>5 V 电源</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
J3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>IO23</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>IO22</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IO1</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO1, U0TXD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IO3</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO3, U0RXD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IO21</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IO18</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>IO17</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>IO16</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO4, ADC2_CH0, TOUCH_CH0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO0, ADC2_CH1, TOUCH_CH1, Boot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO2, ADC2_CH2, TOUCH_CH2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO19, ADC2_CH3, TOUCH_CH3, MTDO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>IO18</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO18, D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>IO7</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO7, D0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>IO6</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO6, SCK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P: 电源; I: 输入; O: 输出。

图3: ESP32-DevKitC 管脚布局（点击放大）
有关 C15 的提示

较早版本 ESP32-DevKitC 开发板上的 C15 可能存在以下问题：

- 开发板上电后可能进入下载模式；
- 如果用户通过 GPIO 输出时钟，C15 可能会影响信号。

用户如果认为 C15 可能影响开发板的使用，则可以将 C15 完全移除。C15 在开发板上的具体位置见下图黄色部分。

![图 4: C15（黄色）在 ESP32-DevKitC V4 开发板上的位置](image)

应用程序开发

ESP32-DevKitC V4 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

现在，请前往快速入门 中的详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

开发板尺寸

![图 5: ESP32-DevKitC 开发板尺寸（板载 ESP32-WROOM-32 模组）-仰视图](image)

相关文档

- ESP32-DevKitC V4 原理图 (PDF)
- 《ESP32 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROOM-32 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROOM-32D & ESP32-WROOM-32U 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROVER 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROVER-B 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROOM-DA 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 乐鑫产品选型工具
ESP32-DevKitC V2 入门指南 本指南介绍了如何开始使用 ESP32-DevKitC V2 开发板。

准备工作

- ESP32-DevKitC V2 开发板
- USB A / micro USB B 数据线
- PC (Windows, Linux 或 Mac OS)

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往应用程序开发 章节。

概述  ESP32-DevKitC V2 是 乐鑫 一款基于 ESP32 的小型开发板，板上模组的绝大部分管脚均已引出，开发人员可根据实际需求，轻松通过跳线连接多种外围器件，或将其开发板插入面包板上使用。

功能说明  ESP32-DevKitC V2 开发板的主要组件，接口及控制方式见下。

ESP32-DevKitC V2 开发板

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-WROOM-32</td>
<td>基于 ESP32 的模组，更多详情，请见 《ESP32-WROOM-32 技术规格书》。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot</td>
<td>下载按键，按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按下 EN 键（此时不要松开 Boot 键）进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口号下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro USB 端口</td>
<td>USB 接口。可用作电路板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和 ESP32-WROOM-32 模组的通信接口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>板上模组的绝大部分管脚均已引出至开发板的排针。用户可以对 ESP32 进行编程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI 等多种功能。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

电源选项  开发板可从以下三种供电方式中任选其一：

- Micro USB 供电（默认）
- 5V / GND 管脚供电
- 3.3V / GND 管脚供电
1.3.2 ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1 入门指南

本指南介绍了如何开始使用 ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1 开发板及其功能和相关配置。

准备工作

- ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1 开发板
- USB 2.0 数据线（A 转 Micro-B）
- PC（Windows、Linux 或 Mac OS）

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往应用程序开发 章节。

概述

ESP-WROVER-KIT 是乐鑫一款基于 ESP32 的开发板。

ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板已集成了如下组件：

- ESP32-WROOM-32 模组
- LCD 屏
- MicroSD 卡槽

此外, ESP-WROVER-KIT 的独特之处在于集成了一个先进多协议 USB 桥接器 (FTDI FT2232HL)，允许开发人员直接通过 USB 接口，使用 JTAG 对 ESP32 进行调试，无需额外的 JTAG 调试器。ESP-WROVER-KIT 可为开发人员提供简单、便捷且极具成本效益的开发体验。

为了便于使用，板上模组的绝大部分管脚均已引出至开发板的引脚。

注释: ESP32 的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚用作 PSRAM 的片选和时钟信号。默认情况下，为了给用户提供可靠的性能，这两个 GPIO 管脚不引出至开发板引脚。

功能概述

ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板的主要组件和连接方式如下图所示。
图 6: ESP-WROVER-KIT 功能框图

图 7: ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板布局—俯视图
图 8: ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板布局—仰视图

功能说明

ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下。

下表将从图片右上角开始，以顺时针顺序介绍图 1 中的主要组件，然后按同样顺序介绍图 2 中的主要组件。
## 主要组件

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>组件</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FT2232</td>
<td>多协议 USB 转串口桥接器。开发人员可通过 USB 接口对 FT2232 芯片进行控制和编程。与 ESP32 建立连接。FT2232 芯片可在通道 A 提供 USB-to-JTAG 接口功能，并在通道 B 提供 USB-to-Serial 接口功能。便利开发人员的应用开发与调试，详见 ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1 原理图。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.768 kHz</td>
<td>32.768 kHz 晶振，可提供 Deep-sleep 下使用的低功耗时钟。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 欧电阻</td>
<td>ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板设计了一个 0 欧电阻，可在测量 ESP32 系列模组在不同功耗模式下的电流量时，直接移除或替换为分流器。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-WROVER-E 模组</td>
<td>这款 ESP32 模组内置 64-Mbit PSRAM，可提供灵活的额外存储空间和数据处理能力。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>诊断 LED 信号灯</td>
<td>本开发板 FT2232 芯片的 GPIO 管脚连接了 4 个红色 LED 信号灯，以便启动。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UART</td>
<td>串口。FT2232 和 ESP32 的串行 TX/RX 信号已引出至 JP2 的两端。默认情况下，这两路信号由跳线帽连接。如果仅需使用 ESP32 模组串口，则可移除相关跳线帽，将模组连接至其他外部串口设备。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI</td>
<td>默认情况下 ESP32 使用 SPI 接口访问内嵌 flash 和 PSRAM。使用这些引脚连接 ESP32 和其他 SPI 设备。这种情况下，需增加额外的片选 (CS) 信号。注 本接口的工作电压为 3.3 V。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTS/RTS</td>
<td>串口流量控制信号。管脚默认不连接至电路。为了使能该功能，必须用跳线帽断掉 JP14 的相应管脚。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG</td>
<td>JTAG 插口。FT2232 和 ESP32 的 JTAG 信号已引出至 JP2 的两端。默认情况下，这两路信号不连接。如需使能 JTAG，请按照设置选项的介绍，连接跳线帽。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB 端口</td>
<td>USB 接口。可作开发板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和开发板的通信接口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOT 按键</td>
<td>下拉按键。按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按一下 EN 键（此时不要松开 Boot 键）进入“固件下载”模式。通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电源开关</td>
<td>电源开关。拔下 Boot 按键一侧，开发板上电；拨离 Boot 按键一侧，开发板掉电。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电源选择开关</td>
<td>ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板可通过 USB 端口或 5V 输入接口供电。用户可能使用跳线帽在两种供电模式中进行选择。请见章节设置选项中有关 JP7 连接器的描述。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Input</td>
<td>5V 电源接口。为标准同轴电源接口，5.5 x 2.1 mm，中心正极。建议仅在开发板自动运行（未连接 PC）时使用。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Power On LED</td>
<td>当开发板通电后 (USB 或外部 5V 供电)，该红色指示灯将亮起。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDO</td>
<td>5V-to-3.3V 低压差线性稳压器 NCP1117(1A)，NCP1117 最大电流输出为 1 A。板上 LDO 为固定输出电压，但用户也可以选使用具有可变输出电压的 LDO。更多信息，请见 ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1 原理图。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头连接器</td>
<td>摄像头接口。支持标准 OV7670 摄像头模块。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB LED</td>
<td>红绿蓝发光二极管，可由 PWM 控制。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O 连接器</td>
<td>板上模组的所有管脚均已引出至开发板的排针。用户可以对 ESP32 进行编程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI、MIPI 等多种功能。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro SD 卡槽</td>
<td>适用于需要扩充数据存储空间或进行备份的应用开发场景。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD 显示器</td>
<td>支持贴装一款 3.2&quot; 的 SPI（标准四线串行外设接口）LCD 显示器。请见 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板布局图。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 设置选项

用户可通过 3 组排针，设置开发板功能，其中常见功能见下表：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>设置项</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Espressif Systems**  
**13**  
**Release v5.0-dev-489-ge98a36**  
**Submit Document Feedback**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>排针</th>
<th>连线设置</th>
<th>功能描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JP7</td>
<td></td>
<td>使用外部电源为 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板供电</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP7</td>
<td></td>
<td>使用 USB 端口为 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板供电</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP2</td>
<td></td>
<td>使能 JTAG 功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP2</td>
<td></td>
<td>使能 UART 通信</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ESP32 管脚分配

ESP32 模组的部分管脚/端口已被板上组件占用或用于外部硬件设备。如果某管脚对应的特定硬件未连接，则该管脚可用作他用。比如，摄像头/JP4 排针未连接相应硬件，则这些 GPIO 可用于其他用途。

部分管脚具备多个功能，可供板上组件或外部硬件设备同时使用。比如 GPIO0 和 GPIO2。由于管脚限制，一些外设设备不可同时使用。比如，由于 JTAG 和 SD 卡槽需共用部分管脚，因此一些使用 SD 卡功能的应用无法同时进行 JTAG 调试。

其他情况下，不同外设可同时使用。比如，LCD 屏幕和 SD 卡仅共用一个 GPIO21 管脚，可以同时使用。该管脚可为 LCD 屏幕提供 D/C（数据/控制）信号，并用于读取来自 SD 卡槽的卡检测信号。如无需使用卡检测功能，开发人员还可以通过移除 R167 来禁用该功能。此时，LCD 和 SD 卡槽可同时使用。

更多外设共享管脚的介绍，请见下一章节中的表格。

### 主要 I/O 连接器 / JP1

JP1 连接器包括 14 x 2 个排针，具体功能可见下表中间 “I/O” 列的介绍。两侧的“共用” 列则介绍了这些管脚在板上的其他用途。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>共用</th>
<th>I/O</th>
<th>I/O</th>
<th>共用</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>3.3V</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC/XTAL</td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td>NC/XTAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG, MicroSD</td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>JTAG, MicroSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG, MicroSD</td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>摄像头</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头</td>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>摄像头，LCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头</td>
<td>IO35</td>
<td>IO34</td>
<td>摄像头</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头</td>
<td>IO39</td>
<td>IO36</td>
<td>摄像头</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG</td>
<td>EN</td>
<td>IO23</td>
<td>摄像头，LCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头，LCD</td>
<td>IO22</td>
<td>IO21</td>
<td>摄像头，LCD，MicroSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头，LCD</td>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>IO18</td>
<td>摄像头，LCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头，LCD</td>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>IO17</td>
<td>PSRAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSRAM</td>
<td>IO16</td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td>LED，摄像头，MicroSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头，LED，Boot</td>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td>LED，MicroSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG，MicroSD</td>
<td>IO15</td>
<td>5V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

说明:

- NC/XTAL - 32.768 kHz 晶振
- JTAG - JTAG / JP2
- Boot - Boot 按键 / SW2
- 摄像头 - 摄像头 / JP4
- LED - RGB LED
- MicroSD - MicroSD Card / J4
- LCD - LCD / U5
- PSRAM - ESP32-WROVER-E 的 PSRAM

#### 32.768 kHz 晶振

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>GPIO32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>GPIO33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 注解：默认情况下，管脚 GPIO32 和 GPIO33 已连接至晶振。因此，为了保证信号的完整性，这两个管脚并未连接至 JP1 I/O 连接器。用户可通过将 R11/R23 处的 0 欧电阻移至 R12/R24 处，以将 GPIO32 和
GPIO33 的连接从晶振移至 JP1。

### SPI Flash / JP2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>CLK / GPIO6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>SD0 / GPIO7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>SD1 / GPIO8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>SD2 / GPIO9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>SD3 / GPIO10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>CMD / GPIO11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**重要：** 模组的 flash 总线已通过 0 欧电阻 R140 ~ R145 连接至排针 JP2。如果需要将 flash 的工作频率控制在 80 MHz，以达到保证总线信号完整性等目的，建议移除 R140 ~ R145 电阻，将模组的 flash 总线与排针 JP2 断开。

### JTAG / JP2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>JTAG 信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>EN</td>
<td>TRST_N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>MTMS / GPIO14</td>
<td>TMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>MTDO / GPIO15</td>
<td>TDO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>MTDI / GPIO12</td>
<td>TDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>MTCK / GPIO13</td>
<td>TCK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 摄像头 / JP4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>摄像头信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>3.3V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>GPIO27</td>
<td>SIO_C / SCCB 时钟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>GPIO26</td>
<td>SIO_D / SCCB 数据</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>GPIO25</td>
<td>VSYNC / 垂直同步</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>GPIO23</td>
<td>HREF / 水平参考</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
<td>PCLK / 像素时钟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>XCLK / 系统时钟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>GPIO35</td>
<td>D7 / 像素数据 Bit 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>GPIO34</td>
<td>D6 / 像素数据 Bit 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>GPIO39</td>
<td>D5 / 像素数据 Bit 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>GPIO36</td>
<td>D4 / 像素数据 Bit 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
<td>D3 / 像素数据 Bit 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td>D2 / 像素数据 Bit 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td>D1 / 像素数据 Bit 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>D0 / 像素数据 Bit 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>GPIO0</td>
<td>RESET / 摄像头复位</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>PWDN / 摄像头断电</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• D0 到 D7 为摄像头的数据总线

**RGB LED**
### ESP32 管脚

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>RGB LED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>GPIO0</td>
<td>红色</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>绿色</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>蓝色</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MicroSD 卡

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>MicroSD 信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>MTDI / GPIO12</td>
<td>DATA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>MTCK / GPIO13</td>
<td>CD / DATA3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>MTDO / GPIO15</td>
<td>CMD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>MTMS / GPIO14</td>
<td>CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>DATA0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>DATA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>Card Detect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LCD / U5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>LCD 信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td>复位</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
<td>SCL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>D/C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
<td>CS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>GPIO23</td>
<td>SDA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>GPIO25</td>
<td>SDO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td>背光</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 应用程序开发

ESP-WROVER-KIT 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

### 初始设置
请严格按照下图所示连接跳线帽，注意不要额外连接其他跳线帽。

- 使用 JP7 连接器，选择 USB 为开发板供电。
- 使用 JP2 连接器，使能 UART 通信。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USB 供电</th>
<th>使能 UART 通信</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

注意不要连接其他跳线帽。

打开电源开关，5V Power On LED 应点亮。

### 正式开始开发
现在，请前往快速入门 中的详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

### 相关文档

- ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1 原理图 (PDF)
- ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1 布局 (DXF)
- 《ESP32 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROVER-E 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- JTAG 调试
- ESP32 H/W 硬件参考

### ESP-WROVER-KIT V3 入门指南
本指南介绍了如何开始使用 ESP-WROVER-KIT V3 开发板及其功能和相关配置。有关 ESP-WROVER-KIT 其他版本的介绍，请见：ESP32 H/W 硬件参考。

### 准备工作

- ESP-WROVER-KIT V3 开发板
- USB 数据线（A 转 Micro-B）
- PC（Windows，Linux 或 macOS）

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往应用程序开发 章节。
概述  ESP-WROVER-KIT 是一款基于 ESP32 的开发板，集成了 LCD 屏幕和 MicroSD 卡槽。

ESP-WROVER-KIT 可选配以下 ESP32 模组:
- ESP32-WROOM-32
- ESP32-WROVER 系列模组

此外，ESP-WROVER-KIT 的独特之处在于集成了一款先进多协议 USB 桥接器 (FTDI FT2232HL)，允许开发人员直接通过 USB 接口，使用 JTAG 对 ESP32 进行调试，无需额外的 JTAG 调试器。ESP-WROVER-KIT 可为开发人员提供简单、便捷且极具成本效益的开发体验。

为了便于使用，板上模组的绝大部分管脚均已引出至开发板的引脚。

注解：该版本 ESP32-WROVER 模组的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚用作 PSRAM 的片选和时钟信号。默认情况下，为了给用户提供可靠的性能，这两个 GPIO 管脚不引出至开发板引脚。

功能概述  ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板的主要组件和连接方式如下图所示。

![ESP-WROVER-KIT 功能框图](image)

图 9: ESP-WROVER-KIT 功能框图

功能说明  ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下。

下表从图片右上角开始，以顺时针顺序介绍了图 1 中的主要组件，然后以同样的顺序介绍图 2 中的主要组件。
图 10: ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板布局-俯视图
图 11: ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板布局-仰视图
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32.768 kHz</td>
<td>外接 32.768 kHz 晶振，可提供 Deep-sleep 下使用的低功耗时钟。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0欧电阻</td>
<td>ESP-WROOM-32 开发板设计了一个 0 欧电阻，可在测量 ESP32 系列模组在不同功耗模式下的电流时，直接移除或替换为分流器。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32 模组</td>
<td>可选贴 ESP32-WROOM-32 或 ESP32-WROOM32，ESP32-WROOM32 模组完整集成了 ESP32-WROOM32 的所有功能，且内置 32-Mbit PSRAM，可提供灵活的额外存储空间和数据处理能力。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FT2232</td>
<td>FT2232 多协议 USB 转串口桥接器。开发人员可通过 USB 接口对 FT2232 芯片进行控制和编程，与 ESP32 建立连接。FT2232 芯片可在通道 A 提供 USB-to-JTAG 接口功能，并在通道 B 提供 USB-to-Serial 接口功能，便利开发人员的应用开发与调试。见 ESP-WROOM-KIT V3 相关资料。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UART</td>
<td>串口。FT2232HL 和 ESP32 的串行 TX/RX 信号已引出至 JP11 的两端。默认情况下，这两路信号由跳线帽连接。如果要跳过 FT2232 使用 ESP32 模组串口，则可移除相关跳线帽，将模组连接至其他外部串口设备。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI</td>
<td>默认情况下，ESP32 使用 SPI 接口访问内嵌 flash 和 PSRAM，使用这些引脚连接 ESP32 和其他 SPI 设备。这种情况下，需添加额外的片选 (CS) 信号。注意，选贴 ESP32-WROOM32 模组时，该接口的工作电压为 1.8 V；选贴 ESP32-WROOM322 时，该接口的工作电压为 3.3 V。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTS/RTS</td>
<td>串口流控信号，管脚默认不连接至电路。为了使能该功能，必须用跳线帽短路掉 JP14 的相应管脚。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG</td>
<td>JTAG 接口。FT2232HL 和 ESP32 的 JTAG 信号已引出至 JP8 的两端。默认情况下，这两路信号不连接。如需使能 JTAG，请按照设置选项 的介绍，连接跳线帽。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot</td>
<td>下载按键，按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按一下 EN 键 (此时不要松开 Boot 键) 进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB</td>
<td>USB 接口。可用作开发板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和开发板的通信接口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电源开关</td>
<td>按向 USB 按键一侧，开发板上电；按离 USB 键按一侧，开发板掉电。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电源选择开关</td>
<td>ESP-WROOM-KIT 开发板可选择 USB 端口或 5V 输入接口供电。用户可使用跳线帽在两种供电模式中进行选择。更多详细信息，请见章节设置选项 中有关 JP7 连接器的描述。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Input</td>
<td>5V 电源接口建议仅在开发板主动运行（未连接 PC）时使用。仅用于全负荷工作下的后备电源。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDO</td>
<td>5V to 3.3V 低压差线性稳压器 NCP1117(1A)。NCP1117 最大电流输出为 1 A，板上 LDO 为固定输出电压，但用户也可以选用具有可变输出电压的 LDO。更多信息，请见 ESP-WROOM-KIT V3 相关资料。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头</td>
<td>摄像头接口、支持标准 OV7670 摄像头模块。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB LED</td>
<td>红绿蓝发光二极管，可由 PWM（脉冲宽度调制）控制。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>板上模组的所有管脚均已引出至开发板的排针。用户可以对 ESP32 进行编程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI 等多种功能。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MicroSD 卡槽</td>
<td>适用于需要扩充数据存储空间或进行备份的应用开发场景。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD 显示屏</td>
<td>支持预装一款 3.2” SPI（标准四线串行外设接口）LCD 显示器，请见 ESP-WROOM-KIT 开发板布局-俯视图。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**设置选项** 用户可通过 5 组排针，设置开发板功能，其中常见功能见下表：

---

Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-ge98a36
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>排针</th>
<th>端线设置</th>
<th>功能描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JP7</td>
<td></td>
<td>使用外部电源为 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板供电</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP7</td>
<td></td>
<td>使用 USB 端口为 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板供电</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP8</td>
<td></td>
<td>使能 JTAG 功能</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ESP32管脚分配**

ESP32模块的部分管脚/端口已被板上组件占用或用于外部硬件设备。如果某管脚对应的特定硬件未连接，则该管脚可能用于其他用途。比如，摄像头/JP4 排针未连接对应硬件，则这些 GPIO 可用于其他用途。

部分管脚具备多个功能，可供板上组件或外部硬件设备同时使用，比如 GPIO0 和 GPIO2。由于管脚限制，一些外围设备不可同时使用。比如，由于 JTAG 和 SD 卡槽需共用部分管脚，因此一些使用 SD 卡功能的应用无法同时进行 JTAG 调试。

其他情况下，不同外设可同时使用。比如，LCD 屏幕和 SD 卡仅共用一个 GPIO21 管脚，可以同时使用。该管脚可为 LCD 屏幕提供 D/C（数据/控制）信号，并用于读取来自 SD 卡槽的 CD 信号（卡检测信号）。如无需使用卡检测功能，开发人员还可以通过跳线 R167 来禁用该功能。此时，LCD 和 SD 卡槽可同时使用。

更多外设共享管脚的介绍，请见下一章节中的表格。

### 主要 I/O 连接器 / JP1

JP1 连接器包括 14 x 2 个排针，具体功能可见下表中间 “I/O” 列的介绍。两侧的 “共用” 列则介绍了这些管脚在板上的其他用途。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>共用</th>
<th>I/O</th>
<th>I/O</th>
<th>共用</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>3.3V</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC/XTAL</td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td>NC/XTAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG, MicroSD</td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>JTAG, MicroSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG, MicroSD</td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>摄像头</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头</td>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>摄像头, LCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头</td>
<td>IO35</td>
<td>IO34</td>
<td>摄像头</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头</td>
<td>IO39</td>
<td>IO36</td>
<td>摄像头</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG</td>
<td>EN</td>
<td>IO23</td>
<td>摄像头, LCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头, LCD</td>
<td>IO22</td>
<td>IO21</td>
<td>摄像头, LCD, MicroSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头, LCD</td>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>IO18</td>
<td>摄像头, LCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头, LCD</td>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>IO17</td>
<td>PSRAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSRAM</td>
<td>IO16</td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td>LED, 摄像头, MicroSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>摄像头, LED, Boot</td>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td>LED, MicroSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG, MicroSD</td>
<td>IO15</td>
<td>5V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

说明:

- NC/XTAL - 32.768 kHz Oscillator
- JTAG - JTAG / JP8
- Boot - Boot 按键 / SW2
- 摄像头 - 摄像头 / JP4
- LED - RGB LED
- MicroSD - MicroSD Card / J4
- LCD - LCD / U5
- PSRAM - 仅适用于选购 ESP32-WROVER 的情况。

#### 32.768 kHz 晶振

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>GPIO32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>GPIO33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注释**：默认情况下，管脚 GPIO32 和 GPIO33 已连接至晶振。因此，为了保证信号的完整性，这两个管脚并未连接至 JP1 I/O 连接器。用户可通过将 R11/R23 处的 0 欧电阻移至 R12/R24 处，以将 GPIO32 和
Chapter 1. 快速入门

GPIO33 的连接从晶振移至 JP1。

### SPI Flash / JP13

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>CLK / GPIO6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>SD0 / GPIO7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>SD1 / GPIO8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>SD2 / GPIO9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>SD3 / GPIO10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>CMD / GPIO11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注意：** 模组的 flash 总线已通过 0 欧电阻 R140 ~ R145 连接至排针 JP13。如果需要将 flash 的工作频率控制在 80 MHz，为了达到保证总线信号完整性等目的，建议移除 R140 ~ R145 电阻。将模组的 flash 总线与排针 JP2 断开。

### JTAG / JP8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>JTAG 信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>EN</td>
<td>TRST_N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>MTMS / GPIO14</td>
<td>TMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>MTDO / GPIO15</td>
<td>TDO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>MTDI / GPIO12</td>
<td>TDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>MTCK / GPIO13</td>
<td>TCK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 摄像头 / JP4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>ESP32 Pin</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>3.3V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO27</td>
<td>SIO_C / SCCB 时钟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO26</td>
<td>SIO_D / SCCB 数据</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO25</td>
<td>VSYNC / 垂直同步</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>GPIO23</td>
<td>HREF / 水平参考</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
<td>PCLK / 像素时钟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>XCLK / 系统时钟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>GPIO35</td>
<td>D7 / 像素数据 Bit 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>GPIO34</td>
<td>D6 / 像素数据 Bit 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>GPIO39</td>
<td>D5 / 像素数据 Bit 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>GPIO36</td>
<td>D4 / 像素数据 Bit 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
<td>D3 / 像素数据 Bit 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td>D2 / 像素数据 Bit 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td>D1 / 像素数据 Bit 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>D0 / 像素数据 Bit 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>GPIO0</td>
<td>RESET / 摄像头复位</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>PWDN / 摄像头断电</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- D0 到 D7 为摄像头的数据总线

**RGB LED**
## Chapter 1. 快速入门

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>RGB LED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>GPIO0</td>
<td>红色</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>绿色</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>蓝色</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MicroSD 卡

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>MicroSD 信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>MTDI / GPIO12</td>
<td>DATA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>MTCK / GPIO13</td>
<td>CD / DATA3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>MTDO / GPIO15</td>
<td>CMD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>MTMS / GPIO14</td>
<td>CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>DATA0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>DATA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>CD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LCD / U5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>LCD 信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td>复位</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
<td>SCL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>D/C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
<td>CS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>GPIO23</td>
<td>SDA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>GPIO25</td>
<td>SDO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td>背光</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

应用程序开发 ESP-WROVER-KIT 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。
Chapter 1. 快速入门

初始设置 请严格按照下图所示连接跳线帽。注意不要额外连接其他跳线帽。

- 使用 JP7 连接器，选择 USB 为开发板供电。
- 使用 JP11 连接器，使能 UART 通信。

注意不要连接其他跳线帽。

打开 电源开关，5V Power On LED 应点亮。

正式开始开发 现在，请前往 快速入门 中的 详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

相关文档

- ESP-WROVER-KIT V3 原理图 (PDF)
- 《ESP32 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROVER 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROOM-32 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- JTAG 调试
- ESP32 H/W 硬件参考

ESP-WROVER-KIT V2 入门指南 本指南介绍了如何开始使用 ESP-WROVER-KIT V2 开发板及其功能和相关配置。有关 ESP-WROVER-KIT 其他版本的介绍，请见：ESP32 H/W 硬件参考。

准备工作

- ESP-WROVER-KIT V2 开发板
- USB 数据线（A 转 Micro-B）
- PC（Windows、Linux 或 macOS）

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往 应用程序开发 章节。

概述 ESP-WROVER-KIT 是 乐鑫 一款基于 ESP32 的开发板，集成了 LCD 屏幕和 MicroSD 卡槽。

ESP-WROVER-KIT 可选配以下 ESP32 模组：

- ESP32-WROOM-32
- ESP32-WROVER 系列模组
此外，ESP-WROVER-KIT 的独特之处在于集成了一款先进多协议 USB 桥接器 (FTDI FT2232HL)，允许开发人员直接通过 USB 接口，使用 JTAG 对 ESP32 进行调试，无需额外的 JTAG 调试器。ESP-WROVER-KIT 可为开发人员提供简单、便捷且极具成本效益的开发体验。

为了便于使用，板上模组的绝大部分管脚均已引出至开发板的引脚。

注解：ESP-WROVER-KIT V2 板载 ESP32-WROVER 模组的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚用作 PSRAM 的片选和时钟信号。默认情况下，为了给用户提供可靠的性能，这两个 GPIO 管脚不引出至开发板引脚。

功能概述  ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板的主要组件和连接方式如下图所示。

图 12: ESP-WROVER-KIT 功能框图

功能说明  ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下。

下表从图片右上角开始，以顺时针顺序介绍了图 1 中的主要组件，然后以同样的顺序介绍了图 2 中的主要组件。
图 13: ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板布局-俯视图
图 14: ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板布局-仰视图
Chapter 1. 快速入门

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32.768 kHz</td>
<td>外接 32.768 kHz 晶振，可提供 Deep-sleep 下使用的低功耗时钟。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ESP32 模组| 可选贴 ESP32-WROOM-32 或 ESP32-WROVER，ESP32-WROVER 模组完整
|            | 集成了 ESP32-WROOM-32 的所有功能，内置 32-Mbit PSRAM，可提供灵活
|            | 的额外存储空间和数据处理能力。                                         |
| CTS/RTS   | 串口流控信号。管理默认不连接至电路。为了使能该功能，必须用跳线帽短
|            | 路掉 JP14 的相应管脚。                                                 |
| UART      | 串口。FT2232HL 和 ESP32 的串行 TX/RX 信号已引出至 JP11 的两端。默认
|            | 情况下，这两路信号由跳线帽连接。如果要跳过 FT2232 使用 ESP32 模组串
|            | 口，则可移除相关跳线帽，将模组连接至其他外部串口设备。             |
| SPI       | 默认情况下，ESP32 使用 SPI 接口访问内置 flash 和 PSRAM，使用这些引
|            | 脚连接 ESP32 和其他 SPI 设备。这种情况下，需增加额外的片选 (CS) 信
|            | 号。注意，选贴 ESP32-WROVER 模组时，该接口的工作电压为 1.8 V；选
|            | 贴 ESP32-WROOM-32 时，该接口的工作电压为 3.3V。                      |
| JTAG      | JTAG 接口，FT2232HL 和 ESP32 的 JTAG 信号已引出至 JP8 的两端。默认
|            | 情况下，这两路信号不连接。如需使能 JTAG，请按照设置选项的介绍，连
|            | 接跳线帽。                                                             |
| FT2232    | FT2232 多协议 USB 转串口桥接器。开发者可通过 USB 接口对 FT2232
|            | 芯片进行控制和编程，与 ESP32 建立连接。FT2232 具有 USB-to-UART 和
|            | USB-to-JTAG 功能。                                                     |
| EN        | 复位按键。                                                             |
| Boot      | 下载按键。按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按一下 EN 键（此时不要松开 Boot 键）
|            | 进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口下载固件。                              |
| USB       | USB 接口。可用作开发板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和开发板的通信接口。    |
| 电源选择开关 | ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板可通过 USB 端口或 5V 输入接口供电。用户可使用
|            | 跳线帽在两种供电模式中进行选择。更多详细信息，请见章节设置选项
|            | 中有关 JP7 连接器的描述。                                             |
| 电源开关  | 拨向 USB 按键一侧，开发板上电；拨向 USB 按键一侧，开发板掉电。       |
| 5V Input  | 5V 电源接口建议仅在开发板自动运行 (未连接 PC) 时使用。仅用于全负荷
|            | 工作下的后备电源。                                                   |
| LDO       | 5V-to-3.3V 低压差线性稳压器 NCP1117(1A)。NCP1117 最大电流输出为 1
|            | A。板上 LDO 为固定输出电压，但用户也可以选用具有可变输出电压的
|            | LDO。更多信息请见 ESP-WROVER-KIT V2 原理图。                        |
| 摄像头    | 摄像头接口，支持标准 OV7670 摄像头模块。                              |
| RGB LED   | 红绿蓝发光二极管，可由 PWM（脉冲宽度调制）控制。                     |
| I/O       | 板上模组的所有管脚均已引出至开发板的排针。用户可以对 ESP32 进行编
|            | 程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI 等多种功能。                  |
| MicroSD 卡槽 | MicroSD 卡槽，可扩展存储空间：当 ESP32 进入下载模式时，GPIO2 不可
|            | 处于高电平。然而，为了使能 MicroSD 卡功能，需为 GPIO2 增加一个上拉
|            | 电阻。默认情况下，GPIO2 和上拉电阻 R153 处于断开状态。为了使能 MicroSD
|            | 卡，请按照设置选项章节的要求，连接 JP1 连接器。                    |
| LCD 显示屏 | 支持接驳一款 3.2" 的 SPI（标准四线串行外设接口）LCD 显示器，请见 ESP-
|            | WROVER-KIT 开发板布局—俯视图。                                      |

设置选项 用户可通过 5 组排针，设置开发板功能，其中常见功能见下表：
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>针号</th>
<th>跳线设置</th>
<th>功能描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JP1</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="JP1图" /></td>
<td>使能 MicroSD Card 功能的上拉电阻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="JP1图" /></td>
<td>确保开发板处于下载模式时，GPIO2 时钟处于低位（将 JP1 连接至 GPIO0）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP7</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="JP7图" /></td>
<td>使用外部电源为 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板供电</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="JP7图" /></td>
<td>使用 USB 端口为 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板供电</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP8</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="JP8图" /></td>
<td>使能 JTAG 功能</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
应用程序开发

ESP-WROVER-KIT 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

初始设置

请严格按照下图所示连接跳线帽，注意不要额外连接其他跳线帽。

- 使用 JP7 连接器，选择 USB 为开发板供电。
- 使用 JP11 连接器，使能 UART 通信。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USB 供电</th>
<th>使能 UART 通信</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

注意不要连接其他跳线帽。

打开 电源开关、5V Power On LED 应点亮。

正式开始开发

现在，请前往 快速入门 中的 详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

相关文档

- ESP-WROVER-KIT V2 原理图 (PDF)
- 《ESP32 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROVER 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROOM-32 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- JTAG 调试
- ESP32 H/W 硬件参考

1.3.3 ESP32-PICO-KIT V4/V4.1 入门指南

本指南介绍了如何开始使用 ESP32-PICO-KIT V4 / V4.1 迷你开发板。有关 ESP32-PICO-KIT 其他版本的介绍，请见：ESP32 H/W 硬件参考。

本指南仅适用于 ESP32-PICO-KIT V4 和 V4.1。ESP32-PICO-KIT V4.1 与 V4 的最大差别在于桥接器，其中 V4 搭载的 CP2102 USB-to-UART 桥接器最高速率为 1 Mbps，V4.1 搭载的 CP2102N 桥接器最高传输速率为 3 Mbps。

准备工作

- ESP32-PICO-KIT 迷你开发板
- USB 2.0 线（A 型转 Micro-B 型）
- PC（Windows，Linux 或 Mac OS）

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往 应用程序开发 章节。
概述

ESP32-PICO-KIT 是一款来自乐鑫的迷你开发板，其核心是具有完整 Wi-Fi 和蓝牙功能的 ESP32 系列 SiP 模组 ESP32-PICO-D4。与其他 ESP32 系列模组相比，ESP32-PICO-D4 模组已集成以下外围器件:

- 40 MHz 晶体振荡器
- 4 MB flash
- 滤波电容
- 射频匹配网络等

这大大降低了用户额外采购和安装这些元器件的费用和成本，及额外组装测试的复杂度，并增加了可用性。

ESP32-PICO-KIT 集成了 USB 转 UART 桥接电路，允许开发人员直接通过 PC 的 USB 端口进行下载和调试。

为了便于连接，ESP32-PICO-D4 上的所有 IO 信号和系统电源管脚均通过开发板两侧焊盘（每侧 20 个 x 0.1 英寸间隔）引出。为了方便地交换使用，ESP32-PICO-KIT 开发板每侧的 20 个焊盘中，有 17 个引出至排针。另外 3 个靠近天线的焊盘未引出，可供用户日后焊接使用。

注解:

1. 每排未引出至排针的 3 个管脚已连接至 ESP32-PICO-D4 SiP 模组的内置 flash 模块。更多信息，请见相关文档 中的模组技术规格书。
2. ESP32-PICO-D4 开发板默认采用排针。

功能概述

ESP32-PICO-KIT 开发板的主要组件和连接方式见下。
功能说明

ESP32-PICO-KIT 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下。

图 16: ESP32-PICO-KIT 开发板布局

ESP32-PICO-KIT 开发板的主要组件描述见下表（从左上角起顺时针顺序）。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-PICO-D4</td>
<td>ESP32-PICO-KIT 开发板上焊接的标准 ESP32-PICO-D4 模块，集成了 ESP32 芯片的完整系统，只需连接天线、LC 极配电路、退耦电容和一个 EN 信号上拉电阻即可正常工作。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDO</td>
<td>5V-to-3.3V 低压差稳压器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB-to-UART 桥接器</td>
<td>单芯片 USB-to-UART 桥接器。V4 版本搭载的 CP2102 可提供高达 1 Mbps 的传输速率，V4.1 版本搭载的 CP2102N 可提供高达 3 Mbps 的传输速率。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro USB 端口</td>
<td>USB 接口。可用作开发板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和开发板的通信接口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Power On LED</td>
<td>开发板通电后，该红色指示灯将亮起。更多信息，请见相关文档中的原理图。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ESP32-PICO-D4 的所有引脚均已引出至开发板的排针。用户可以对 ESP32 进行编程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI 等多种功能。更多详情，请见章节管脚说明。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOT</td>
<td>下载按键。按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按一下 EN 键（此时不要松开 Boot 键）进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

电源选项

开发板可任一选用以下三种供电方式：

- Micro USB 供电（默认）
- 5V / GND 管脚供电
- 3V3 / GND 管脚供电
警告：上述供电模式不可同时连接，否则可能会损坏开发板和/或电源。

管脚说明

下表介绍了开发板 I/O 管脚的名称和功能，具体布局请见相关文档中的原理图。请参考ESP32-PICO-KIT开发板布局。
### Header J2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>FLASH_SD1 (FSD1)</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO8, SD_DATA1, SPID, HS1_DATA1 (见说明 1), U2CTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>FLASH_SD3 (FSD3)</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO7, SD_DATA0, SPIQ, HS1_DATA0 (见说明 1), U2RTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>FLASH_CLK (FCLK)</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO6, SD_CLK, SPICLK, HS1_CLK (见说明 1), U1CTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IO21</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO21, VSPIHD, EMAC_TX_EN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IO22</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO22, VSPIWP, U0RTS, EMAC_TXD1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO19, VSPIQ, U0CTS, EMAC_TXD0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IO23</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO23, VSPID, HS1_STROBE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IO18</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO18, VSPICLK, HS1_DATA7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO5, VSPICS0, HS1_DATA6, EMAC_RX_CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>IO10</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO10, SD_DATA3, SPIWP, HS1_DATA3, U1TXD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>IO9</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO9, SD_DATA2, SPIHDR, HS1_DATA2, U1RXD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>RXD0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO3, U0RXD (见说明 3), CLK_OUT2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>TXD0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1. 快速入门
### Header J3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>FLASH_CS (FCS)</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO16, HS1_DATA4 (见说明 1), U2RXD, EMAC_CLK_OUT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>FLASH_SD0 (FSD0)</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO17, HS1_DATA5 (见说明 1), U2TXD, EMAC_CLK_OUT_180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>FLASH_SD2 (FSD2)</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO11, SD_CMD, SPICS0, HS1_CMD (见说明 1), U1RTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SENSOR_VP (FSVP)</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO36, ADC1_CH0, RTC_GPIO0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>SENSOR_VN (FSVN)</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO39, ADC1_CH3, RTC_GPIO3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO25, DAC_1, ADC2_CH8, RTC_GPIO6, EMAC_RXD0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO26, DAC_2, ADC2_CH9, RTC_GPIO7, EMAC_RXD1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>32K_XP (见说明 2a), ADC1_CH4, TOUCH9, RTC_GPIO9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>32K_XN (见说明 2b), ADC1_CH5, TOUCH8, RTC_GPIO8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO27, ADC2_CH7, TOUCH7, RTC_GPIO17, EMAC_RX_DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CH6, TOUCH6, RTC_GPIO16, EMAC_RX_DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CH5, TOUCH8, RTC_GPIO8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CH4, TOUCH9, RTC_GPIO9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>IO15</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CH3, TOUCH8, RTC_GPIO9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CH2, TOUCH7, RTC_GPIO9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CH0, TOUCH1, RTC_GPIO10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC1_CH1, TOUCH0, RTC_GPIO1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>VDD33 (3V3)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3.3V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>Ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>EXT_5V (5V)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>5V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Espressif Systems*

*Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36*
有关上表的说明:
1. 该管脚已连接至 ESP32-PICO-D4 的内置 flash 管脚。
2. 32.768 kHz 晶振：(a) 输入；(b) 输出。
3. 该管脚已连接至开发板的 USB 桥接器芯片。
4. ESP32-PICO-KIT 内置 SPI flash 的工作电压为 3.3V。因此，strapping 管脚 MTDI 在模组上电复位过程中应保持低电平。如连接该管脚，请确保该管脚在复位时不要保持高电平。

**应用程序开发**

ESP32-PICO-KIT 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

现在，请前往快速入门 中的详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

**开发板尺寸**

ESP32-PICO-KIT 的尺寸为 52 x 20.3 x 10 mm (2.1” x 0.8” x 0.4”）。
ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 入门指南 本指南介绍了如何开始使用 ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 迷你开发板。有关 ESP32-PICO-KIT 其他版本的介绍，请见：ESP32 H/W 硬件参考。

准备工具
- ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 迷你开发板
- USB 2.0 线 (A 型转 Micro-B 型)
- PC (Windows，Linux 或 Mac OS)

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往应用程序开发 章节。

概述 ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 是一款来自 乐鑫 的迷你开发板，其核心是具有完整 Wi-Fi 和蓝牙功能的 ESP32 系列 SiP 模组 ESP32-PICO-D4。

ESP32-PICO-KIT 集成了 USB 转 UART 桥接电路，允许开发人员直接通过 PC 的 USB 端口进行下载和调试。

为了便于连接，ESP32-PICO-D4 上的所有 IO 信号和系统电源管脚均通过开发板两侧焊盘（每侧 20 个 x 0.1 英寸间隔）引出。

功能说明 ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下。

ESP32-PICO-KIT 开发板的主要组件描述见下表。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-PICO-D4</td>
<td>ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 开发板上焊接的标准 ESP32-PICO-D4 模组。集成了 ESP32 芯片的完整系统，仅需连接天线、LC 匹配电路、退耦电容和一个 EN 信号上拉电阻即可正常工作。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDO</td>
<td>5V-to-3.3V 低压差稳压器。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB-to-UART 桥接器</td>
<td>单片机 USB-to-UART 桥接器，可提供高达 1 Mbps 的传输速率。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro USB 端口</td>
<td>USB 端口。可用作开发板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和开发板的通信接口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power On LED</td>
<td>开发板通电后，该红色指示灯将亮起。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ESP32-PICO-D4 的所有管脚均已引出至开发板的排针。用户可以对 ESP32 进行编程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI 等多种功能。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOT</td>
<td>下载按键。按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按一下 EN 键（此时不要松开 Boot 键）进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

应用程序开发 ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

现在，请前往快速入门 中的详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

相关文档
- ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 原理图 (PDF)
- ESP32-PICO-D4 技术规格书 (PDF)
- ESP32 H/W 硬件参考
图 19: ESP32-PICO-KIT V3 开发板布局
1.3.4 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 入门指南

本指南将介绍 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的配置以及相关功能的使用。

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 是一款以太网转 Wi-Fi 开发板，可为以太网设备赋予 Wi-Fi 连接功能。为了提供更灵活的电源选项，ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 同时也支持以太网供电 (PoE)。

图 20: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 概图（点击放大）

准备工作

- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 开发板
- USB 数据线（A 转 Micro-B）
- PC（Windows, Linux 或 Mac OS）

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往应用程序开发 章节。

概述

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 是一款来自 乐鑫 的开发板。

它由以太网母板（A 板）和 PoE 子板（B 板）两部分组成。其中以太网母板（A 板）集成蓝牙/Wi-Fi 双模 ESP32-WROVER-E 模组和串口 10/100 Mbps 快速以太网收发器 (PHY) IP101GRI。PoE 子板（B 板）提供以太网供电功能。ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 的 A 板可在不连接 B 板的情况下独立工作。

为了实现程序下载和监控，A 板还集成了一款先进多协议 USB 桥接器（FT2232H 芯片）。FT2232H 芯片使得开发人员无需额外的 JTAG 适配器，通过 USB 桥接器使用 JTAG 接口便可对 ESP32 直接进行调试。
图 21: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2（点击放大）
功能概述

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的主要组件和连接方式如下。

图 22: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 功能框图（点击放大）

功能说明

有关 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式，请见下方的图片和表格。

以太网母板（A 板） 下表将从图片右上角开始，以顺时针顺序介绍图中的主要组件。
图 23: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit - 以太网母板（A 板）布局（点击放大）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-WROVER-E 模组</td>
<td>这款 ESP32 模组内置 64-Mbit PSRAM，可提供灵活的额外存储空间和数据处理能力。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO Header 2</td>
<td>由 5 个未引出通孔组成，可连接至 ESP32 的部分 GPIO。具体介绍，请见 GPIO Header 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>功能选择开关</td>
<td>一个 4 位拨码开关，可配置 ESP32 部分 GPIO 的功能。具体介绍，请见功能选择开关。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tx/Rx LEDs</td>
<td>2 个 LED，可显示 UART 传输的状态。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| FT2232H           | FT2232H 是多协议 USB 转串口接器。开发人员可通过对 FT2232H 芯片进行控制和编程，与 ESP32 连接并使用。
                   | FT2232H 芯片可通过通信 A 为 USB-to-JTAG 接口提供，并在通信 B 为 USB-to-Serial 接口提供，便利开发人员的应用开发与调试。
| USB 端口          | USB 端口。可用于开发板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和开发板的通信接口。 |
| 电源开关         | 电源开关。按向 5V0 按键侧，开发板上电；按向 GND 按键一侧，开发板掉电。 |
| 5V Input          | 5V 电源接口建议仅在开发板自动运行（未连接 PC）时使用。 |
| 5V Power On LED   | 当开发板通电后（USB 或外部 5V 供电），该红色指示灯将亮起。 |
| DC/DC 转换器      | 直流 5V 转 3.3 V，输出电流最高可达 2 A。                                                                 |
| Board B 连接器    | 1 对排针和排母，用于连接 PoE 子板（B 板）。 |
| IP101GRI (PHY)    | 物理层 (PHY) 单端口 10/100 快速以太网收发器 IP101GRI 芯片，允许开发人员实现与以太网络的物理层连接。
                   | PHY 与 ESP32 通过简化媒体独立接口 (RMII) 实现连接。RMII 是媒体独立接口 (MII) 的简化版本，PHY 可在 10/100 Mbps
                   | 速率下支持 IEEE 802.3 / 802.3u 标准。 |
| RJ45 端口        | 以太网数据传输端口。                                                                 |
| 网络变压器       | 网络变压器属于以太网物理层的一部分，可保护电路，使其免受故障或电压瞬变影响，包括防止收发器芯片和线缆之间产生共模信号。同时它也可以在收发器与以太网设备之间提供电流隔绝。 |
| Link/Activity LED | 2 个 LED（绿色和红色），可分别显示 PHY 处于 “Link” 状态或 “Activity” 状态。 |
| BOOT Button       | 下载按键。按下 BOOT 键并保持，同时按一下 EN 键（此时不要松开 BOOT 键）进入 “固件下载” 模式。通过串口下载固件。 |
| EN 按键           | 复位按键。 |
| GPIO Header 1     | 由 6 个未引出通孔组成，可连接至 ESP32 的备用 GPIO。具体介绍，请见 GPIO Header 1。 |
| Espressif Systems | E || Header 1。 |

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
注解：如果采用了固件自动下载模式，则无需对 BOOT 或 EN 按键进行任何操作。

PoE 子板（B 板） PoE 子板转换以太网电缆传输的电能 (PoE)，为以太网母板（A 板）提供电源。PoE 子板（B 板）的主要组件见功能概述 中的功能框图。

PoE 子板（B 板）具有以下特性：
- 支持 IEEE 802.3at 标准
- 电源输出：5 V，1.4 A

如需使用 PoE 功能，请用以太网线缆将以太网母板（A 板）上的 RJ45 Port 连接至 PoE 的交换机。以太网母板（A 板）检测到来自 PoE 子板（B 板）的 5 V 供电后，将从 USB 供电自动切换至 PoE 供电。

图 24: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit - PoE 子板（B 板）布局（点击放大）

表 2: 表格 2 PoE 子板（B 板）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A 板连接器</td>
<td>4 个排针（左侧）和排母（右侧），用于将 PoE 子板（B 板）连接至 Ethernet board (A)。左侧的管脚接受来自 PoE 交换机的电源。右侧的管脚为以太网母板（A 板）提供 5 V 电源。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>外部电源终端</td>
<td>PoE 子板（B 板）可选电源（26.6～54 V）。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

设置选项

本节介绍用于 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的硬件配置选项。

功能选择开关 拨码开关打开时，拨码开关将列出的 GPIO 路由到 FT2232H 以提供 JTAG 功能。拨码开关关闭时，GPIO 可以用于其他目的。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>拨码开关</th>
<th>GPIO 管脚</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RMII 时钟源选择 RMII 工作模式下的以太网 MAC 和 PHY 需要一个公共的 50MHz 同步时钟（即 RMII 时钟），它既可以由外部提供，也可以由内部的 ESP32 APPLL 产生（不推荐）。

注解：有关 RMII 时钟源选择的更多信息，请参见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 以太网母板（A 板）原理图，第 2 页的位置 D2。
**PHY 侧提供 RMII 时钟**

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 默认配置为 IP101GRI 的 50M_CLKO 信号线提供 RMII 时钟，该时钟信号由 PHY 外侧连接的 25 MHz 无源晶振经过倍频产生。详情请参见下图。

请注意，系统上电时 RESET_N 旁的下拉电阻会将 PHY 置于复位状态。ESP32 需要通过 GPIO5 将 RESET_N 拉高才能启动 PHY。只有这样才能保证系统的正常上电，否则 ESP32 会存在一定几率进入下载模式（当 REF_CLK_50M 时钟信号在 GPIO0 上电采样阶段刚好处于高电平）。

**ESP32 APLL 内部提供的 RMII 时钟**　另一种选择是从 ESP32 APLL 内部获取 RMII 时钟，请参见下图。来自 GPIO0 的时钟信号首先被反相，以解决传输线延迟的问题，然后提供给 PHY。

要实现此选项，用户需要在板子上移除或添加一些阻容元件。有关详细信息，请参见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 以太网母板 (A 板) 原理图，第 2 页，位置 D2。请注意，如果 APLL 已经用于其他用途（如 I2S 外设），那么只能使用外部 RMII 时钟。

**GPIO 分配**

本节介绍了 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板特定接口或功能的 GPIO 分配情况。

**IP101GRI (PHY) 接口**　下表显示了 ESP32 (MAC) 与 IP101GRI (PHY) 的管脚对应关系。ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 的实现默认设置为简化媒体独立接口。
图 26: ESP32 APLL 内部提供的 RMII 时钟
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>ESP32 管脚 (MAC)</th>
<th>PHY101GRI (PHY)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>TX_EN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
<td>TXD[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
<td>TXD[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO25</td>
<td>RXD[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO26</td>
<td>RXD[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>GPIO27</td>
<td>CRS_DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>GPIO00</td>
<td>REF_CLK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

串行管理接口

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>具体功能使用</th>
<th>说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>GPIO23</td>
<td>MDC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td>MDIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td>Reset_N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解：ESP32 的 RMII 接口下的所有管脚分配都是固定的，不能通过 IOMUX 或 GPIO 矩阵进行更改。
REF_CLK 可选择 GPIO00, GPIO16 或 GPIO17, 且不可通过 GPIO 矩阵进行更改。

GPIO Header 1 本连接器包括 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板上部分不用做他用的 GPIO。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>GPIO39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GPIO Header 2 根据“说明”描述的不同情形，本连接器包含可用做他用的 GPIO。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO17</td>
<td>见下方说明1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO16</td>
<td>见下方说明1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>空</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>空</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO13</td>
<td>见下方说明2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>GPIO12</td>
<td>见下方说明2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>GPIO15</td>
<td>见下方说明2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>GPIO14</td>
<td>见下方说明2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>Ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>3V3</td>
<td>3.3 V 电源</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解：
1. ESP32 芯片的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚没有引出至 ESP32-WROVER-E 模组的管脚，因此无法使用。
如需使用 ESP32 的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚，请更换其他不含 PSRAM 的模组，比如 ESP32-WROOM-32D 或 ESP32-SOLO-1。
2. 具体功能取决于功能选择开关的设置。
Chapter 1. 快速入门

### GPIO 管脚分配

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESP32-WROVER-E</th>
<th>I2C1GPI</th>
<th>UART</th>
<th>JTAG</th>
<th>GPIO</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S_VP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S_VN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>RXD[0]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>RXD[1]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>CRS_DV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO14</td>
<td></td>
<td>TMS</td>
<td></td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO12</td>
<td></td>
<td>TDI</td>
<td></td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO13</td>
<td></td>
<td>TCK</td>
<td></td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO15</td>
<td></td>
<td>TDO</td>
<td></td>
<td>IO15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO0</td>
<td></td>
<td>REF_CLK</td>
<td></td>
<td>See note 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO16 (NC)</td>
<td>See note 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO17 (NC)</td>
<td>See note 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reset_N</td>
<td></td>
<td>See note 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO18</td>
<td></td>
<td>MDIO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO19</td>
<td></td>
<td>TXD[0]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO21</td>
<td></td>
<td>TX_EN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RXD0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RXD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TXD0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TXD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO22</td>
<td></td>
<td>TXD[1]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO23</td>
<td></td>
<td>MDC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注解：**

1. 为防止 ESP32 侧 GPIO 的上电状态受 PHY 侧时钟输出的影响，PHY 侧 RESET_N 默认为低，以关闭 PHY 侧时钟输出。上电后，您可以通过 GPIO5 控制 RESET_N 以打开该时钟输出。参见 PHY 侧提供 RMI 时钟。对于无法通过 RESET_N 关闭时钟输出的 PHY，PHY 侧建议使用可在外部禁用/使能的有源晶振。与使用 RESET_N 类似，默认情况下晶振模块应禁用，并在上电后由 ESP32 启动有关参考设计，请参见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 以太网母板（A 板）原理图。
2. ESP32 芯片的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚没有引出至 ESP32-WROVER-E 模组的管脚，因此无法使用。如需使用 ESP32 的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚，建议更换其他不含 PSRAM 的模组，如 ESP32-WROOM-32D 或 ESP32-SOLO-1。

### 应用程序开发

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

### 初始设置

1. 首先，请将以太网母板（A 板）上的所有开关均拨至 ON 状态，使 **功能选择开关** 处于默认状态。
2. 为了方便应用程序的下载和测试，不要为开发板输入任何信号。
3. 此时可以连接 PoE 子板（B 板），但不要向 B 板连接任何外部电源。
4. 使用 USB 数据线将以太网母板（A 板）连接至 PC。
5. 将电源开关从 GND 拨至 5V0 一侧。此时，5V Power On LED 应点亮。

### 正式开发

现在，您可以在 **快速入门** 中的 **详细安装步骤** 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。
请务必在进入下一步前，确保您已完成上述所有步骤。

**配置与加载以太网示例** 在完成开发环境设置和开发板测试后，您可以配置并烧录 `ethernet/basic` 示例。本示例专门用于测试以太网功能，支持不同 PHY，包括 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2（点击放大）开发板使用的 IP101GRI。

针对 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 的主要修改：

- 更改拨码开关紧围 GPIO 编号丝印。
- C1、C2、C42 和 C43 更新为 20 pF。详细信息见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 以太网母板（A 板）原理图。
- 模组 ESP32-WROVER-B 替换为 ESP32-WROVER-E。

**ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 的其他版本**

- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 入门指南
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 入门指南

**相关文档**

- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 以太网母板（A 板）原理图 (PDF)
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit PoE 子板（B 板）原理图 (PDF)
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.2 以太网母板（A 板）PCB 布局图 (PDF)
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit PoE 子板（B 板）PCB 布局图 (PDF)
- ESP32 技术规格书 (PDF)
- ESP32-WROVER-E 技术规格书 (PDF)
- JTAG 调试
- ESP32 H/W 硬件参考

有关本开发板的更多设计文档，请联系我们的商务部门 sales@espressif.com。

**ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 入门指南** 本指南介绍了如何使用 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板以及配置相关功能。

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 是一款以太网 Wi-Fi 开发板，可为以太网设备赋予 Wi-Fi 连接功能。为了提供更灵活的电源选项，ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 也同时支持以太网供电 (PoE)。

**准备工作**

- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 开发板
- USB 数据线（A 转 Micro-B）
- PC（Windows、Linux 或 Mac OS）

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往应用程序开发 章节。

**概述** ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 是一款来自 乐鑫 的开发板，由以太网母板（A 板）和 PoE 子板（B 板）两部分组成。其中以太网母板（A 板）贴蓝牙 Wi-Fi 双模 ESP32-WROVER-B 模组和单端口 10/100 快速以太网收发器 (PHY) IP101GRI，PoE 子板（B 板）提供以太网供电功能。ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 的 A 板可在不连接 B 板的情况下独立工作。

为了实现程序下载和监控，A 板还集成了一款先进多协议 USB 桥接器（FTDI FT2232H 芯片），进而允许开发人员直接通过 USB 接口，使用 JTAG 对 ESP32 进行调试，无需额外的 JTAG 适配器。

**功能概述** ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的主要组件和连接方式见下。
图 27: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0

图 28: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 功能框图（点击放大）
功能说明  ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下。

图 29: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit - 以太网母板（A 板）布局（点击放大）

以太网母板（A 板） 下表将从图片右上角开始，以顺时针顺序介绍图中的主要组件。
### 主要组件

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-WROOM-32B</td>
<td>这款 ESP32 模组内置 64-Mbit PSRAM，可提供灵活的额外存储空间和数据处理能力。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO Header 2</td>
<td>由 5 个未引出通孔组成，可连接 ESP32 的部分 GPIO。具体介绍，请见 GPIO Header 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>流控</td>
<td>跳线帽，可接入开发板信号。具体介绍，请见流控。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>功能选择开关</td>
<td>DIP 开关，可配置 ESP32 部分 GPIO 的功能。具体介绍，请见功能选择开关。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tx/Rx LED</td>
<td>2 个 LED，可显示 UART 传输的状态。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO Header 3</td>
<td>可连接至 ESP32 的部分 GPIO。根据功能选择开关的位置有不同功能。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FT2232H</td>
<td>FT2232H 多协议 USB 转串口桥接器。开发人员可通过 USB 接口对 FT2232H 芯片进行控制和编程，与 ESP32 建立连接。FT2232H 芯片可在通道 A 提供 USB-to-JTAG 接口功能，并在通道 B 提供 USB-to-Serial 接口功能，便利开发人员的应用开发与调试。见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 以太网母板（A 板）原理图。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB 端口</td>
<td>USB 接口。可用作开发板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和开发板的通信接口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电源开关</td>
<td>电源开关。拨向 Boot 按键一侧，开发板上电；拨离 Boot 按键一侧，开发板掉电。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Input</td>
<td>5V 电源接口建议仅在开发板自动运行（未连接 PC）时使用。仅用于全负荷工作下的后备电源。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Power On LED</td>
<td>当开发板通电后（USB 或外部 5V 供电），该红色指示灯将亮起。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DC 转换器</td>
<td>直流 5 V 转 3.3 V，输出电流高达 2 A。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B 板更换器</td>
<td>1 对 2 针排针，用于连接 PoE 子板（B 板）。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP101GRI (PHY)</td>
<td>物理层（PHY）单端口 10/100 快速以太网收发器 IP101GRI，允许开发人员实现与以太网线缆的物理层连接。PHY 与 ESP32 通过简化媒体独立接口（RMII）实现连接。RMII 是媒体独立接口（MII）的简化版本。PHY 可在 10/100 Mbps 速率下支持 IEEE 802.3 / 802.3u 标准。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RJ45 端口</td>
<td>以太网数据传输端口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>网络变压器</td>
<td>用于抑制由以太网络层的一部份，可保护电路免受故障并使电压瞬变影响；包括防止发放器芯片和线路之间产生共模信号。同时它也可以在收发器与以太网设备之间提供电流隔绝。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link/Activity LED</td>
<td>4 个 LED（绿色和红色），可分别显示 PHY 处于“Link”状态或“Activity”状态。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOT 按键</td>
<td>下载按键。按下 BOOT 键开保持，同时按一下 EN 键（此时不要松开 BOOT 键）进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH1/PU 按键</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO Header 1</td>
<td>由 6 个未引出通孔组成，可连接至 ESP32 的备用 GPIO。具体介绍，请见 GPIO Header 1。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PoE 子板（B 板）**  PoE 子板通过以太网电缆传输电能 (PoE)，为以太网母板（A 板）提供电源。PoE 子板（B 板）的主要组件见功能概述 中的功能框图。
PoE 子板（B 板）具有以下特性:

- 支持 IEEE 802.3at
- 电源输出: 5 V, 1.4 A

如需使用 PoE 功能，请用以太网线缆将以太网母板（A 板）上的 RJ45 端口连接至 PoE 的交换机。太网母板（A 板）检测到来自 PoE 子板（B 板）的 5 V 供电后，将从 USB 供电自动切换至 PoE 供电。

图 30: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit - PoE 子板（B 板）布局（点击放大）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A 板连接器</td>
<td>1 个 4 针排母，用于将 B 板连接至以太网母板（A 板）。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>外部电源端子</td>
<td>PoE 子板（B 板）备用电源。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

设置选项 本节介绍用于 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的硬件配置选项。

功能选择开关 用户可使用功能选择开关配置特定 GPIO 管脚的功能。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIP SW</th>
<th>GPIO 管脚</th>
<th>管脚功能（DIP SW 开启状态）</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>GPIO14</td>
<td>连接至 FT2232H，提供 JTAG 功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>GPIO12</td>
<td>连接至 FT2232H，提供 JTAG 功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>GPIO13</td>
<td>连接至 FT2232H，提供 JTAG 功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>GPIO15</td>
<td>连接至 FT2232H，提供 JTAG 功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>连接至 FT2232H，提供 JTAG 功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>连接至板上 25 MHz 晶振</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td>连接至 IP101GRI 的 RESET_N 输入</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

用户还可以关闭 DIP SW，将部分 GPIO 用于其他用途。

流控 2 x 2 跳线连接器，可用于 UART 流控功能。
### GPIO 配置

本节介绍了 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板特定接口或功能的 GPIO 分配情况。

#### IP101GRI (PHY) 接口

ESP32 (MAC) 与 IP101GRI (PHY) 的管脚对应关系见下：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>信号</th>
<th>ESP32 管脚 (MAC)</th>
<th>IP101GRI (PHY)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MTDO</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>TX_EN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTCK</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
<td>TXD[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTS</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
<td>TXD[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTS</td>
<td>GPIO25</td>
<td>RXD[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPIO26</td>
<td>RXD[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPIO27</td>
<td>CRS_DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPIO0</td>
<td>REF_CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPIO23</td>
<td>MDC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td>MDIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPIO0</td>
<td>Reset_N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 节点管理接口

#### PHY 复位

| 信号 | GPIO5 | Reset_N |

### 注解

除了 REF_CLK 之外，RMII 接口下的所有管脚分配都是固定的，不能通过 IOMUX 或 GPIO 矩阵进行更改。

#### GPIO Header 1

本连接器包括 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板上部分不用做他用的 GPIO。
## Chapter 1. 快速入门

### GPIO Header 2

下表列出了具有特定 MII 功能的 GPIO（GPIO2 除外）。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>序号</th>
<th>ESP32 管脚</th>
<th>MII 功能</th>
<th>说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO17</td>
<td>EMAC_CLK_180</td>
<td>见说明 1。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO16</td>
<td>EMAC_CLK_OUT</td>
<td>见说明 1。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>EMAC_TX_ER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>见说明 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td>EMAC_RX_CLK</td>
<td>见说明 2。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 注解:

1. ESP32 芯片的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚没有引出至 ESP32-WROOM-B 模组的管脚，因此无法使用。如需使用 ESP32 的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚，建议更换其他不含 SPI RAM 的模组，比如 ESP32-WROOM-32D 或 ESP32-SOLO-1。
2. 具体功能取决于功能选择开关 的设置。

### GPIO Header 3

本连接器中 GPIO 的功能取决于 功能选择开关 的设置。
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 管脚分配</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>GPIO15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>GPIO13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>GPIO12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>GPIO14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>GND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>3V3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GPIO 管脚分配

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESP32-WROVER-B</th>
<th>IP101GRI</th>
<th>UART</th>
<th>JTAG</th>
<th>GPIO</th>
<th>说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S_VP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S_VN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>RXD[0]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>RXD[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>RXD[1]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>CRS_Dv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>TMS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO15</td>
<td>TDO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>TDI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>RTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>TCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>CRS_Dv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO2</td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>见下方说明 1 和说明 3。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>REF_CLK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>见下方说明 2 和说明 3。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO16</td>
<td>nTRST</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO16</td>
<td>IO16 (NC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO17</td>
<td>IO17 (NC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>Reset_N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IO5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO18</td>
<td>MDIO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>TXD[0]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO21</td>
<td>TX_EN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RXD0</td>
<td>RXD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TXD0</td>
<td>TXD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO22</td>
<td>TXD[1]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO23</td>
<td>MDC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 注解:

1. GPIO2 用于使能 PHY 的外部振荡器。
2. GPIO0 用于为 PHY 提供 50 MHz 基准时钟源。为了防止传输线路延迟对时钟相位带来的影响，该时钟信号将首先被反相，而后提供给 PHY。
3. 为防止 PHY 端 GPIO0 的上电状态受到时钟输出的影响，PHY 的外部晶振将在 ESP32 上电后通过 GPIO2 使能。

应用程序开发 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

初始设置
1. 首先，请将以太网母板（A 板）上的所有开关均拨至 ON 状态，即使功能选择开关处于默认状态。
2. 为了方便应用程序的下载和测试，此时请不要在开发板安装任何跳线帽，也不要为开发板接入任何信号。
3. 此时可以连接 PoE 子板（B 板），但不要向 B 板连接任何外部电源。
4. 使用 USB 数据线将以太网母板（A 板）连接至 PC。
5. 将电源开关从 GND 拨至 5V0 一侧，此时，5V Power On LED 应点亮。

正式开发 现在，请前往快速入门 中的详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

如使用较早 GNU Make 编译系统，则请参考详细安装步骤 章节。

请务必在进入下一步前，确保您已完成上述所有步骤。

配置与加载以太网示例 在完成开发环境设置和开发板测试后，您可以配置并烧录 ethernet/basic 示例。本示例专门用于测试以太网功能，支持不同 PHY，包括 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 开发板 使用的 IP101GRI。

相关文档
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 以太网母板（A 板）原理图 (PDF)
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 PoE 子板（B 板）原理图 (PDF)
- 《ESP32 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- 《ESP32-WROVER-B 技术规格书》 (PDF)
- JTAG 调试
- ESP32 H/W 硬件参考

有关本开发板的更多设计文档，请联系我们的商务部 sales@espressif.com。

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 入门指南 本指南将介绍 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的配置以及相关功能的使用。

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 是一款以太网转 Wi-Fi 开发板，可为以太网设备赋予 Wi-Fi 连接功能。为了提供更灵活的电源选项，ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 同时也支持以太网供电 (PoE)。

准备工作
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 开发板
- USB 数据线（A 转 Micro-B）
- PC（Windows、Linux 或 Mac OS）

您可以跳过介绍部分，直接前往应用程序开发 章节。

概述 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 是一款来自 乐鑫 的开发板。

它由以太网母板（A 板）和 PoE 子板（B 板）两部分组成。其中以太网母板（A 板）集成蓝牙 / Wi-Fi 双模 ESP32-WROVER-B 模组和单端口 10/100 Mbps 快速以太网收发器 (PHY) IP101GRI。PoE 子板（B 板）提供以太网供电功能。ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 的 A 板可在不连接 B 板的情况下独立工作。
图 31: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1
为了实现程序下载和监控，A 板还集成了一款先进多协议 USB 桥接器（FTDI FT2232H 芯片）。FTDI FT2232H 芯片使得开发人员无需额外的 JTAG 适配器，通过 USB 桥接器使用 JTAG 接口便可对 ESP32 进行调试。

**功能概述**

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的主要组件和连接方式如下。

![ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 功能框图](image)

图 32: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 功能框图（点击放大）

**功能说明**

有关 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式，请见下方的图片和表格。

**以太网母板（A 板）**

下表将从图片右上角开始，以顺时针顺序介绍图中的主要组件。
图 33: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit - 以太网母板（A 板）布局（点击放大）（请更新图片）

表 3: 表格 1 组件介绍

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-WROVER-B板组</td>
<td>这款 ESP32 模组内置 64-Mbit PSRAM，可提供灵活的额外存储空间和数据处理能力。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO Header 2</td>
<td>通过 5 个未引出通孔组成，可连接至 ESP32 的部分 GPIO。具体介绍，请见 GPIO Header 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>功能选择开关</td>
<td>一个 4 位拨码开关，可配置 ESP32 部分 GPIO 的功能。请注意，拨码开关旁边开发板的丝印面上的 GPIO 管脚标记的位置是不正确的。有关详细信息和正确的管脚分配，请见功能选择开关。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tx/Rx LEDs</td>
<td>2 个 LED，可显示 UART 传输的状态。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FT2232H</td>
<td>FT2232H 多协议 USB 转串口转换器。开发人员可通过 USB 接口对 FT2232H 芯片进行控制和编程。与 ESP32 建立连接。FT2232H 芯片可提供 USB-to-JTAG 接口功能。并在通过 B 提供 USB-to-Serial 接口功能。便利于开发人员的应用开发与调试，见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 以太网母板（A 板）原理图。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB 面板</td>
<td>USB 接口，可用于开发板的供电电源，或连接 PC 和开发板的通信接口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电源开关</td>
<td>电源开关，拨向 <strong>5V0</strong> 按键侧，开发板上电；拨向 <strong>GND</strong> 按键一侧，开发板掉电。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Input</td>
<td>5V 电源接口建议仅在开发板自动运行（未连接 PC）时使用。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Power On LED</td>
<td>当开发板通电后（USB 或外部 5V 供电），该红色指示灯将亮起。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DC 转换器</td>
<td>直流 5 V 转 3.3 V，输出电流最高可达 2 A。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board B 连接器</td>
<td>1 对排针和排母，用于连接 PoE 子板（B 板）。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP101GRI (PHY)</td>
<td>物理层 (PHY) 单端口 10/100 快速以太网收发器 IP101GRI 芯片，允许开发人员实现与以太网线缆的物理层连接。PHY 与 ESP32 通过简化媒体独立接口 (RMII) 实现连接。RMII 是媒体独立接口 (MII) 的标准简化版本，PHY 可在 10/100 Mbps 速率下支持 IEEE 802.3/802.3u 标准。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RJ45 端口</td>
<td>以太网数据传输端口。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>网络变压器</td>
<td>网络变压器属于以太网物理层的一部分，可保护电路，使短时强故障和电压瞬变影响，包括防止收发器芯片和线缆间产生共模信号。同时它也可以在收发器与以太网设备之间提供电流隔绝。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link/Activity LED</td>
<td>2 个 LED (绿色和红色)，可分别显示 PHY 处于 “Link” 状态或 “Activity” 状态。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOT Button</td>
<td>下载按键。按下 BOOT 键并保持，同时按一下 EN 键 (此时不要松开 BOOT 键) 进入 “固件下载” 模式，通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN 按键</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO Header 1</td>
<td>由 6 个未引出通孔组成，可连接至 ESP32 的部分 GPIO。具体介绍，请见 GPIO Header 1。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Submit Document Feedback
### PoE 子板（B 板）
PoE 子板转换以太网电缆传输的电能 (PoE)，为以太网母板（A 板）提供电源。PoE 子板（B 板）的主要组件见功能概述 中的功能框图。

PoE 子板（B 板）具有以下特性：
- 支持 IEEE 802.3at 标准
- 电源输出：5 V，1.4 A

如需使用 PoE 功能，请用以太网线缆将以太网母板（A 板）上的 RJ45 Port 连接至 PoE 的交换机。以太网母板（A 板）检测到来自 PoE 子板（B 板）的 5 V 供电后，将从 USB 供电自动切换至 PoE 供电。

![PoE 子板布局图](image)

图 34: ESP32-Ethernet-Kit - PoE 子板（B 板）布局（点击放大）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>基本介绍</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A 板连接器</td>
<td>4 个排线（左侧）和排母（右侧），用于将 PoE 子板（B 板）连接至 Ethernet board (A)。左侧的管脚接受来自 PoE 交换机的电源。右侧的管脚为以太网母板（A 板）提供 5 V 电源。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>外部电源终端</td>
<td>PoE 子板（B 板）可选电源 (26.6 ~ 54 V)。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 设置选项
本节介绍用于 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板的硬件配置选项。

### 功能选择开关
拨码开关打开时，拨码开关将列出的 GPIO 路由到 FT2232H 以提供 JTAG 功能。拨码开关关闭时，GPIO 可用于其他目的。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>拨码开关</th>
<th>GPIO 管脚</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注解：** 拨码开关旁边开发板的丝印层上的 GPIO 管脚标记的位置是不正确的。请以表格中的顺序为准。

### RMII 时钟源选择
RMII 工作模式下的以太网 MAC 和 PHY 需要一个公共的 50MHz 同步时钟（即 RMII 时钟），它既可以由外部提供，也可以由内部的 ESP32 APLL 产生。

**注解：** 有关 RMII 时钟源选择的更多信息，请参见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 以太网母板（A 板）原理图，第 2 页的位置 D2。

### PHY 侧提供 RMII 时钟
ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 默认配置为 IP101GRI 的 50M_CLKO 信号线提供 RMII 时钟。该时钟信号由 PHY 外侧连接的 25MHz 无源晶振经过倍频产生。详情请参见下图。
图 35: PHY 侧提供 RMII 时钟
请注意，系统上电时 RESET_N 旁边的下拉电阻会将 PHY 置于复位状态。ESP32 需要通过 GPIO5 将 RESET_N 拉高才能启动 PHY，只有这样才能保证系统的正常上电。否则 ESP32 会存在一定几率进入下载模式（当 REF_CLK_50M 时钟信号在 GPIO0 上电采样阶段刚好处于高电平）。

**ESP32 APLL 内部提供的 RMII 时钟** 另一种选择是从 ESP32 APLL 内部获取 RMII 时钟，请参见下图。来自 GPIO0 的时钟信号首先被反相，以解决传输线延迟的问题，然后提供给 PHY。

![ESP32 APLL 内部提供的 RMII 时钟](image)

图 36: ESP32 APLL 内部提供的 RMII 时钟

要实现此选项，用户需要在板子上移除或添加一些阻容元器件。有关详细信息，请参见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 以太网母板（A 板）原理图，第 2 页，位置 D2。请注意，如果 APLL 已经用于其他用途（如 I2S 外设），那么只能使用外部 RMII 时钟。

**GPIO 分配** 本节介绍了 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板特定接口或功能的 GPIO 分配情况。

**IP101GRI (PHY) 接口** 下表显示了 ESP32 (MAC) 与 IP101GRI (PHY) 的管脚对应关系。ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 的实现默认设置为简化媒体独立接口。
Chapter 1.

### RMII 接口

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 芯片 (MAC)</th>
<th>IP101GRI (PHY)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td>TX_EN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
<td>TXD[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
<td>TXD[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO25</td>
<td>RXD[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO26</td>
<td>RXD[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>GPIO27</td>
<td>CRS_DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>GPIO0</td>
<td>REF_CLK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 串行管理接口

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GPIO23</th>
<th>MDC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td>MDIO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PHY 复位

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GPIO5</th>
<th>Reset_N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注解：** 除了 REF_CLK 之外，ESP32 的 RMII 接口下的所有管脚分配都是固定的，不能通过 IOMUX 或 GPIO 阵列进行更改。

---

**GPIO Header 1** 本连接器包括 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 开发板上部分不用做他用的 GPIO。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 芯片</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>GPIO39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GPIO Header 2** 根据“说明”描述的的不同情形，本连接器包含可用做他用的 GPIO。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ESP32 芯片</th>
<th>说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GPIO17</td>
<td>见下方说明 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO16</td>
<td>见下方说明 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>见下方说明 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>见下方说明 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO13</td>
<td>见下方说明 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>GPIO12</td>
<td>见下方说明 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>GPIO15</td>
<td>见下方说明 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>GPIO14</td>
<td>见下方说明 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>Ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>3V3</td>
<td>3.3 V 电源</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注解：**

1. ESP32 芯片的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚没有引出至 ESP32-WROVER-B 模组的管脚，因此无法使用。如需使用 ESP32 的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚，建议更换其他不含 PSRAM 的模组，比如 ESP32-WROOM-32D 或 ESP32-SOLO-1。
2. 具体功能取决于功能选择开关 的设置。
## GPIO 管脚分配总结

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESP32-WROVER-B</th>
<th>IP101GRI</th>
<th>UART</th>
<th>JTAG</th>
<th>GPIO</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S_VP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I036</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S_VN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I039</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I034</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I035</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I032</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I033</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>RXD[0]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>RXD[1]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>CRs_DV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO14</td>
<td></td>
<td>TMS</td>
<td>I014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO12</td>
<td></td>
<td>TDI</td>
<td>I012</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>RTS</td>
<td>TCK</td>
<td>I013</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO15</td>
<td>CTS</td>
<td>TDO</td>
<td>I015</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I02</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>REF_CLK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See note 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I04</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I016 (NC)</td>
<td>See note 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I017 (NC)</td>
<td>See note 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>Reset_N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See note 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO18</td>
<td></td>
<td>MDIO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO19</td>
<td></td>
<td>TXD[0]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO21</td>
<td></td>
<td>TX_EN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RXD0</td>
<td></td>
<td>RXD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TXD0</td>
<td></td>
<td>TXD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO22</td>
<td></td>
<td>TXD[1]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO23</td>
<td></td>
<td>MDC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 注解：

1. 为防止 ESP32 的 GPIO 的上电状态受 PHY 侧时钟输出的影响，PHY 侧 reset_n 默认为低，以关闭 PHY 侧时钟输出。上电后，您可通过 GPIO5 控制 reset_n 以打开该时钟输出。参见 PHY 侧提供 RMII 时钟。对于无法通过 reset_n 关闭时钟输出的 PHY，PHY 侧建议使用可在外部禁用/使能的有源晶振。使用 reset_n 类似，默认情况下晶振模块需要禁用，并在上电后由 ESP32 开启。有关参考设计，请参见 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 以太网母板（A 板）原理图。
2. ESP32 芯片的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚没有引出至 ESP32-WROVER-B 模组的管脚，因此无法使用。如需使用 ESP32 的 GPIO16 和 GPIO17 管脚，建议更换其他不含 SRAM 的模组，比如 ESP32-WROOM-32D 与 ESP32-SOLO-1。

### 应用程序开发

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

### 初始设置

1. 首先，请将以太网母板（A 板）上的所有开关均拨至 ON 状态，使功能选择开关处于默认状态。
2. 为了方便应用程序的下载和测试，不要为开发板输入任何信号。
3. 此时可以连接 PoE 子板（B 板），但不要向 B 板连接任何外部电源。
4. 使用 USB 数据线将以太网母板（A 板）连接至 PC。
5. 将电源开关从 GND 拨至 5V0 一侧。此时，5V Power On LED 应点亮。

### 正式开始开发

现在，请前往快速入门 中的详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

请务必在进入下一步前，确保您已完成上述所有步骤。
配置与加载以太网示例 在完成开发环境设置和开发板测试后，您可以配置并烧录 ethernet/basic 示例。本示例专门用于测试以太网功能，支持不同 PHY，包括 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 开发板使用的 IP101GRI。

针对 ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 的主要修改:
- 原 GPIO10 反相后时钟提供给 PHY 方案改为由 PHY 偏外接无源晶振，提供时钟给 GPIO0。原用于控制有源晶振的 OSC_EN 的 IO2 释放，可用作其他用途。
- 为防止 ESP32 侧 GPIO0 上的电状态收到 PHY 侧时钟输出的影响，PHY 侧 reset_n 默认为低，关闭 PHY 侧时钟输出。而将可经过 GPIO5 经制 reset_n 打开该时钟输出。
- 移除 FT2232H 芯片的外部 SPI Flash U6。
- 移除流控的测试固定 J4。
- 移除 nTRST JTAG 信号，相应的 GPIO4 可用作其他用途。
- GPIO15 线的上拉电阻 R68 移至 JTAG 的 MTDO 侧。
- 为了加强 A 板和 B 板连接间的防呆设计（减少反向插入 B 板的机会），将原先 A 板上的 2 排 4 针排针改为 1 排 4 针排母和 1 排 4 针排针。相应的 4 针排针排和排母排则安装在 B 板上。

ESP32-Ethernet-Kit 的其他版本
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 入门指南

相关文档
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.1 以太网电路图 (PDF)
- ESP32-Ethernet-Kit V1.0 PoE 子板 (B 板) 原理图 (PDF)
- ESP32 技术规格书 (PDF)
- ESP32-WROVER-B 技术规格书 (PDF)
- JTAG 调试
- ESP32 H/W 硬件参考

有关本开发板的更多设计文档，请联系我们的商务部门 sales@espressif.com。  

1.3.5 ESP32-DevKitS(-R)

本指南介绍了乐鑫专为 ESP32 设计的烧录底板 ESP32-DevKitS(-R)。

ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 包括两款开发板，分别是 ESP32-DevKitS 和 ESP32-DevKitS-R，S 代表弹簧（spring），R 代表 WROVER 模组。

本指南包括如下内容:
- 入门指南: 简要介绍了 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 和硬件、软件设置指南。  
- 硬件参考: 详细介绍了 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 的硬件。
- 相关文档: 列出了相关文档的链接。
入门指南

本节介绍了如何快速上手 ESP32-DevKitS(-R)，开头部分介绍了 ESP32-DevKitS(-R)，如何烧录开发板 小节介绍了怎样在 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 上安装模组，配置及烧录固件。

概述 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 是乐鑫专为 ESP32 设计的烧录底板，无需将 ESP32 模组与电源和信号线焊接便可进行烧录。ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 搭载模组后，可作为类似 ESP32-DevKitC 的小型开发板使用。

ESP32-DevKitS 和 ESP32-DevKitS-R 仅在弹簧布局上有所不同，用于适配不同的 ESP32 模组。

- **ESP32-DevKitS:**
  - ESP32-WROOM-32
  - ESP32-WROOM-32D
  - ESP32-WROOM-32U
  - ESP32-SOLO-1
  - ESP32-WROOM-32E
  - ESP32-WROOM-32UE

- **ESP32-DevKitS-R:**
  - ESP32-WROVER (PCB & IPEX)
  - ESP32-WROVER-B (PCB & IPEX)
  - ESP32-WROVER-E
  - ESP32-WROVER-IE

有关上述模组的详细信息，请参考 ESP32 系列模组。

![ESP32-DevKitS - 正面](image)

图 37: ESP32-DevKitS - 正面

组件介绍
主要组件 | 介绍
--- | ---
引脚弹簧 | 适配模块上的邮票孔，用于连接和固定模块。
2.54 mm 排母 | 连接板上搭载模块的引脚。关于排母的描述，请见针座 小节。
USB-to-UART 模块 | 单片 USB 转 UART 模块，可提供高达 3 Mbps 的传输速率。
LDO | 5V-to-3.3V 低压差线型稳压器 (LDO)。
Micro-USB 连接器/Micro USB 端口 | USB 接口。可用作开发板的供电电源或连接电板和开发板的通信接口。
EN 键 | 复位按键。
Boot 键 | 下载按键。按住 Boot 键的同时按一下 EN 键进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口下载固件。
电源指示 LED | 开发板通电后（USB 或供电电源），该指示灯亮起。

如何烧录开发板 | 通电前，请确保 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 完好无损。

必备硬件
- 任选一款 ESP32 模组
- USB 2.0 数据线（标准 A 型转 Micro-B 型）
- 电脑（Windows、Linux 或 macOS）

硬件设置 | 请按照下列步骤将模块安装到 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 烧录底板上：
- 将模块轻放到 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 烧录底板上。确保模块上方的邮票孔与底板上的引脚弹簧对齐。
- 将模块向下压，听到“咔哒”一声即说明模块已经压入底板。
- 检查所有引脚弹簧是否均已卡进邮票孔中。如发现错位，可使用镊子将引脚弹簧拨入邮票孔中。
软件设置

首选方式 使用 ESP-IDF 开发框架是将二进制文件 (.bin) 烧录到 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 的首选方式。请前往快速入门，详细安装步骤一节查看如何快速设置开发环境，将应用程序烧录至 ESP32-DevKitS(-R)。

备选方式 Windows 用户也可以使用 Flash 下载工具 将二进制文件。请下载该工具，解压并参照 doc 文件夹内的使用指南。

注解:
1. 烧录二进制文件时需将 ESP32 芯片设置成固件下载模式。这一步骤可由烧录工具自动执行，也可按住 Boot 按键并点按 EN 按键手动执行。
2. 烧录完成后，烧录工具默认情况下会重启模组，运行已烧录的程序。

底板尺寸

内含组件和包装

零售订单 如购买样品，每个 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 底板将以防静电袋或零售商选择的其他方式包装。零售订单请前往 https://www.espressif.com/zh-hans/company/contact/buy-a-sample。

批量订单 如批量购买，ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 烧录底板将以大纸板箱包装。批量订单请前往 https://www.espressif.com/zh-hans/contact-us/sales-questions。

硬件参考

功能框图 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 的主要组件和连接方式如下图所示。

图 39: ESP32-DevKitS 尺寸 - 背面
图 40: ESP32-DevKitS-R 尺寸 - 背面

图 41: ESP32-DevKitS(-R)（点击放大）
电源选项 您可从以下三种供电方式中任选其一给 ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 供电：

- Micro USB 端口供电（默认）
- 5V 和 GND 管脚供电
- 3V3 和 GND 管脚供电

建议选择第一种供电方式：Micro USB 端口供电。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>标号</th>
<th>标签</th>
<th>信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L1</td>
<td>3V3</td>
<td>VDD 3V3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2</td>
<td>EN</td>
<td>CHIP_PU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L3</td>
<td>VP</td>
<td>SENSOR_VP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L4</td>
<td>VN</td>
<td>SENSOR_VN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L5</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>GPIO34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L6</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>GPIO35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L7</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>GPIO32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L8</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>GPIO33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L9</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>GPIO25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L10</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>GPIO26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L11</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>GPIO27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>GPIO14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L13</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>GPIO12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L14</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>GND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L15</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>GPIO13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L16</td>
<td>D2</td>
<td>SD_DATA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L17</td>
<td>D3</td>
<td>SD_DATA3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L18</td>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>SD_CMD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L19</td>
<td>5V</td>
<td>External 5V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>GND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>GPIO23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>GPIO22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>TX</td>
<td>U0TXD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>RX</td>
<td>U0RXD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>GPIO21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>GND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>GPIO19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R9</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>GPIO17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R12</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>GPIO16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R13</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GPIO0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R15</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>GPIO15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R17</td>
<td>D1</td>
<td>SD_DATA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R18</td>
<td>D0</td>
<td>SD_DATA0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R19</td>
<td>CLK</td>
<td>SD_CLK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

针座 针座图片请参照组件介绍。

相关文档

- ESP32-DevKitS(-R) 原理图 (PDF)
- ESP32 技术规格书 (PDF)
- ESP32-WROOM-32 技术规格书 (PDF)
1.3.6 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1

概述

ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 是一款基于 ESP32 的乐鑫开发板，板上搭载 ESP32-PICO-V3（SiP，系统级封装）模组。ESP32-PICO-V3 具备完整的 Wi-Fi 和蓝牙功能，与其它 ESP32 系列模组相比，此模组已集成下述外围组件，无需额外安装：

- 40 MHz 晶振
- 4 MB flash
- 滤波电容
- 射频匹配网络等

将上述组件封装至 ESP32-PICO-V3，用户无需额外购买，大大降低了安装和测试的成本，同时也增加了产品的可用性。

ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板还集成了 USB-to-UART 桥接电路，方便开发人员直接通过 PC 的 USB 端口直接进行固件烧录和调试。

为方便硬件连接，ESP32-PICO-V3 上的所有 IO 信号和系统电源管脚均引出至开发板两侧焊盘（18 x 0.1”）。上述 18 个焊盘也均引出至排针，可使用杜邦线连接。

注解：ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板默认采用排针。

ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 为用户提供了基于 ESP32 芯片应用开发的硬件，更加方便用户探索 ESP32 芯片的功能。

本指南包括以下几个章节：

- 快速入门：简要介绍 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板，以及上手这款开发板所需的软件配置；
- 内含组件和包装方式：介绍零售订单和批量订单所提供的组件及包装方式；
- 硬件参考：提供 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板硬件详细信息；
- 硬件版本：介绍硬件历史版本（如有），已知问题（如有），并提供链接至历史版本开发板的入门指南（如有）；
- 相关文档：提供相关文档的链接。

快速入门

本节介绍了如何快速上手 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1。首先对 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板进行了简要介绍，然后在应用开发小节介绍如何将固件烧录至开发板。

组件描述  ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下图。

从左上角开始，按顺时针顺序，开发板主要组件的描述见下表。
图 42: ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 外观图（点击放大）
图 43: ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板布局 - 正面（点击放大）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-PICO-V3</td>
<td>ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板的板载模组 (SiP)，搭载 ESP32 SoC 芯片，仅需连接天线、LC 匹配电路、去耦电容和一个 EN 信号上拉电阻即可正常工作。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDO</td>
<td>5V 转 3.3V 低压差稳压器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB-to-UART</td>
<td>CP2102N：单芯片 USB-to-UART 桥接器，数据传输速率可达 3 Mbps。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro-B USB</td>
<td>USB 接口。可为开发板供电，或连接 PC 进行 USB 通信。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Power On LED</td>
<td>开发板上电后，红色指示灯亮起。更多信息，见相关文档 中提供的原理图。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O Connector</td>
<td>ESP32-PICO-V3 上的引脚均已引出至开发板排针。用户可对 ESP32 进行编程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI 等功能。更多信息，见章节节等脚描述。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOT 按键</td>
<td>下载按键。按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按下 EN 键将进入固件下载模式，通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN 按键</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

应用开发 上电前，请确保 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 完好无损。

所需硬件
- 1 x ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板
- 1 x USB 2.0 A 转 Micro B 数据线
- 1 x PC，运行 Windows、Linux 或 macOS 系统

软件配置 请前往快速入门，在详细安装步骤一节查看如何快速配置开发环境，将应用程序烧录至 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板。

内含组件和包装方式

零售订单 如购买样品，每个 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 将单独包装。

零售订单，敬请前往 https://www.espressif.com/en/company/contact/buy-a-sample。
批量订单 如批量购买，ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 开发板将以纸板箱包装。
批量订单请前往 https://www.espressif.com/zh-hans/contact-us/sales-questions。

硬件参考

功能框图 ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 的主要组件和连接方式如下图所示。

图 44: ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 功能框图（点击放大）

供电选项 开发板提供以下三种供电方式，可任意选择一种：
- Micro USB 供电（默认）
- 5V/GND 管脚供电
- 3V3/GND 管脚供电

警告：上述供电方式只能选择一种方式，不能同时选择，否则可能会损坏开发板和/或电源。

管脚描述 组件描述 中所示的开发板两侧 I/O 管脚，其具体名称和功能见下表。管脚名称和编号与相关文档 中原理图保持一致。

Header J2
### Chapter 1. 快速入门

#### 表格1. GPIO端口功能表

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IO20</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>IO21</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO21, VSPIHD, EMAC_TX_EN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>IO22</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO22, VSPITCP, U0RTS, EMAC_TXD1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO19, VSPIQ, U0CTS, EMAC_TXD0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IO8</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO8, SD_DATA1, HSI1_DATA1, U2CTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IO7</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO7, SD_DATA0, HSI1_DATA0, U2RTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO5, VSPICS0, HSI1_DATA6, EMAC_RX_CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IO10</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO10, SD_DATA3, SPIWP, HSI1_DATA3, U1TXD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IO9</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO9, SD_DATA2, SPIHD, HSI1_DATA2, U1RXD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>RXD0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO3, U0RXD（注释1）, CLK_OUT2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>TXD0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO1, U0TXD（注释1）, CLK_OUT3, EMAC_RXD2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>IO35</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>ADC1_CH7, RTC_GPIO5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>IO34</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>ADC1_CH6, RTC_GPIO4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>IO38</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO38, ADC1_CH2, RTC_GPIO2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IO37</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO37, ADC1_CH1, RTC_GPIO1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>EN</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>CHIP PU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>VDD33 (3V3)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3.3V 供电</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 头部J3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SENSOR_VP (FSVP)</td>
<td>▽WP</td>
<td>GPIO36, ADC1_CH0, RTC_GPIO0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SENSOR_VN (FSVN)</td>
<td>▽WN</td>
<td>GPIO39, ADC1_CH3, RTC_GPIO3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO25, DAC_1, ADC2_CHAN8, RTC_GPIO6, EMAC_RXD0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO26, DAC_2, ADC2_CHAN9, RTC_GPIO7, EMAC_RXD1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>32K_XP (注释2a), ADC1_CHAN4, TOUCH9, RTC_GPIO9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>32K_XN (注释2b), ADC1_CHAN5, TOUCH8, RTC_GPIO8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO27, ADC2_CHAN7, TOUCH7, RTC_GPIO17, EMAC_RX_DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CHAN6, TOUCH6, RTC_GPIO16, MTMS, HSPICLK, HS2_CLK, SD_CLK, EMAC_TXD2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CHAN5, TOUCH5, RTC_GPIO15, MTDI（注释3），HSPIQ, HS2_DATA2, SD_DATA2, EMAC_TXD3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CHAN4, TOUCH4, RTC_GPIO14, MTCK, HSPID, HS2_DATA3, SD_DATA3, EMAC_RX_ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>IO15</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CHAN3, TOUCH3, RTC_GPIO13, MTDQ, HSPICS0, HS2_CMD, SD_CMD, EMAC_RXD3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CHAN2, TOUCH2, RTC_GPIO12, HSPIWP, HS2_DATA0, SD_DATA0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CHAN1, TOUCH0, RTC_GPIO10, HSPICH, HS2_DATA1, SD_DATA1, EMAC_TX_ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2_CHAN1, TOUCH1, RTC_GPIO11, CLK_OUT1, EMAC_TX_CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>VDD33 (3V3)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3.3V 供电</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>EXT_5V (5V)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>5V 供电</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注释:

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.

Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
1. 该管脚已连接至板上 USB 桥接器芯片；
2. **32.768 kHz** 晶振输入输出管脚；
   - (a) 输入管脚；
   - (b) 输出管脚；
3. ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 内置 SPI flash 的工作电压为 3.3 V。因此，Strapping 管脚 MTDI 在上电复位过程中应拉低。如果连接了该管脚，请确保该管脚在复位中不要拉高。

![ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 管脚布局](image)

**图 45: ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 管脚布局 (点击放大)**

### 管脚布局

### 硬件版本

该开发板为最新硬件，尚未有历史版本。

### 相关文档

- ESP32-PICO-V3 技术规格书 (PDF)
- 乐鑫产品选型工具
- ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 原理图 (PDF)
- ESP32-PICO-KIT-1 PCB 布局图 (PDF)

有关本开发板的更多设计文档，请联系我们的商务部 sales@espressif.com。

### 1.3.7 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2

#### 概述

ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 是一款基于 ESP32 的乐鑫开发板，板上搭载 ESP32-PICO-MINI-02(02U) 模组。ESP32-PICO-MINI-02(02U) 模组具备完整的 Wi-Fi 和蓝牙功能。

ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板同时集成了 USB-to-UART 桥接电路，方便开发人员直接通过 PC 的 USB 端口直接进行固件烧录和调试。
为方便硬件连接，ESP32-PICO-MINI-02U 上的所有 IO 信号和系统电源管脚均引出至开发板两侧焊盘（18 x 0.1”）。上述 18 个焊盘也均引出至排针，可使用杜邦线连接。

**注释：** ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板默认采用排针。

ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 为用户提供了基于 ESP32 芯片应用开发的硬件，更加方便用户探索 ESP32 芯片的功能。

图 46: ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 外观图（点击放大）

本指南包括以下几个章节：

- 快速入门：简要介绍 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板，以及上手这款开发板所需的软件配置；
- 内容组件和包装方式：介绍零售订单和批量订单所提供的组件及包装方式；
- 硬件参考：提供 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板硬件详细信息；
- 硬件版本：介绍硬件历史版本（如有），已知问题（如有），并提供链接至历史版本开发板的入门指南（如有）；
- 相关文档：提供相关文档的链接。

**快速入门**

本节介绍了如何快速上手 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2。首先对 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板进行了简要介绍，然后在应用开发 小节介绍如何将固件烧录至开发板。

**组件描述**

ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下图。下文以板载 ESP32-PICO-MINI-02 的开发板为例进行说明。

从左上角开始，按顺时针顺序，开发板主要组件的描述见下表。
图 47: ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板组件布局 - 正面（点击放大）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主要组件</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-PICO-MINI-02</td>
<td>ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板的板载模组，搭载 ESP32 SoC 芯片。用户也可选择板载 ESP32-PICO-MINI-02U 的开发板。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDO</td>
<td>5V 转 3.3V 低压差稳压器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB-to-UART</td>
<td>CP2102N：单芯片 USB-to-UART 桥接器，数据传输速率可达 3 Mbps。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro-B USB 接口</td>
<td>USB 接口，可为开发板供电，或连接 PC 进行 USB 通信。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5V Power On LED</td>
<td>开发板上电后，红色指示灯亮起。更多信息，见相关文档中提供的原理图。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O Connector</td>
<td>ESP32-PICO-MINI-02 上的管脚均已引出至开发板排针。用户可对 ESP32 进行编程，实现 PWM、ADC、DAC、I2C、I2S、SPI 等功能。更多信息，见章节管脚描述。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOT 按键</td>
<td>下载按键。按下 Boot 键并保持，同时按下 EN 键将进入固件下载模式，通过串口下载固件。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN 按键</td>
<td>复位按键。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

应用开发 上电前，请确保 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 完好无损。

所需硬件

- 1 x ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板
- 1 x USB 2.0 A 转 Micro B 数据线
- 1 x PC，运行 Windows、Linux 或 macOS 系统

软件配置 请前往快速入门，在详细安装步骤一节查看如何快速配置开发环境，将应用程序烧录至 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板。

内含组件和包装方式

零售订单 如购买样品，每个 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 将单独包装。

零售订单，请前往 https://www.espressif.com/en/company/contact/buy-a-sample。
批量订单 如批量购买，ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 开发板将以大纸板箱包装。
批量订单请前往 https://www.espressif.com/zh-hans/contact-us/sales-questions。

硬件参考

功能框图 ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 的主要组件和连接方式如下图所示。

图 48: ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 功能框图（点击放大）

供电方式 开发板提供以下三种供电方式，可任意选择一种:
  • Micro USB 供电（默认）
  • 5V/GND 管脚供电
  • 3V3/GND 管脚供电

警告: 上述供电方式只能选择一种方式，不能同时选择，否则可能会损坏开发板和/或电源。

管脚描述 组件描述 中所示的开发板两侧 I/O 管脚，其具体名称和功能见下表。管脚名称和编号与相关文档 中原理图保持一致。

Header J2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IO20</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>IO21</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO21, VSPIHD, EMAC_TX_EN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>IO22</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO22, VSPIWP, U0RTS, EMAC_TXD1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO19, VSPIQ, U0CTS, EMAC_TXD0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IO8</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO8, SD_DATA1, HS1_DATA1, U2CTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IO7</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO7, SD_DATA0, HS1_DATA0, U2RTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO5, VSPICS0, HS1_DATA6, EMAC_RX_CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>NC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>NC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>NC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>NC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>RXD0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO3, U0RXD (见注解) , CLK_OUT2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>TXD0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO1, U0TXD (见注解) , CLK_OUT3, EMAC_RXD2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>IO35</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>ADC1.CH7, RTC_GPIO5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>IO34</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>ADC1.CH6, RTC_GPIO4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>IO38</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO38, ADC1.CH2, RTC_GPIO2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IO37</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO37, ADC1.CH1, RTC_GPIO1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>EN</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>CHIP_PU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>VDD33 (3V3)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3.3 V 供电</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Header J3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SENSOR_VP (FSVP)</td>
<td>WP</td>
<td>GPIO36, ADC1.CH0, RTC_GPIO0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SENSOR_VN (FSVN)</td>
<td>WN</td>
<td>GPIO39, ADC1.CH3, RTC_GPIO3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO25, DAC1.CH8, RTC_GPIO6, EMAC_RXD0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO26, DAC1.CH9, RTC_GPIO7, EMAC_RXD1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>32K_XP (见注解 2a) , ADC1.CH4, TOUCH9, RTC_GPIO9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>32K_XN (见注解 2b) , ADC1.CH5, TOUCH8, RTC_GPIO8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO27, ADC2.CH7, TOUCH7, RTC_GPIO17, EMAC_RX_DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2.CH6, TOUCH6, RTC_GPIO16, MTMS, HSPICLK, HS2_CLK, SD_CLK, EMAC_TXD2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2.CH5, TOUCH5, RTC_GPIO15, MTDI (见注解 3) , HSPIQ, HS2_DATA2, SD_DATA2, EMAC_TXD3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2.CH4, TOUCH4, RTC_GPIO14, MTCK, HSPIID, HS2_DATA3, SD_DATA3, EMAC_RX_ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>IO15</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2.CH3, TOUCH3, RTC_GPIO13, MTD0, HSPICS0, HS2_CMD, SD_CMD, EMAC_RXD3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2.CH2, TOUCH2, RTC_GPIO12, HSPIWP, HS2_DATA0, SD_DATA0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2.CH0, TOUCH0, RTC_GPIO10, HSPIHD, HS2_DATA1, SD_DATA1, EMAC_TX_ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>ADC2.CH1, TOUCH1, RTC_GPIO11, CLK_OUT1, EMAC_TX_CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>VDD33 (3V3)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3.3V 供电</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>EXT_5V (5V)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>5V 供电</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解:
1. 该管脚已连接至板上 USB 桥接器芯片；
2. 32.768 kHz 晶振输入输出管脚：
   (a) 输入管脚；
   (b) 输出管脚；
3. ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 内置 SPI flash 的工作电压为 3.3 V。因此，Strapping 管脚 MTDI 在上电复位过程中应拉低。如果连接了该管脚，请确保该管脚在复位中不要拉高。

图 49: ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 管脚布局（点击放大）

管脚布局

硬件版本

该开发板为最新硬件，尚未有历史版本。

相关文档

- ESP32-PICO-MINI-02 & ESP32-PICO-MINI-02U 技术规格书 (PDF)
- 乐鑫产品选型工具
- ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 原理图 (PDF)
- ESP32-PICO-DevKitM-2 PCB 布局图 (PDF)

有关本开发板的更多设计文档，请联系我们的商务部 sales@espressif.com。

1.3.8 ESP32-DevKitM-1

本指南将介绍如何使用 ESP32-DevKitM-1，并提供更多关于此开发板的信息。

ESP32-DevKitM-1 是乐鑫推出的一款基于 ESP32-MINI-1(1U) 模组的人门级开发板。板上模组大部分管脚均已引出至两侧排针，用户可根据实际需求，通过跳线轻松连接多种外围设备，同时也可将开发板插在面包板上使用。
**Chapter 1. 快速入门**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESP32-DevKitM-1-正面</th>
<th>ESP32-DevKitM-1-侧面</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

本指南包括：

- **快速入门**：提供 ESP32-DevKitM-1 的简要概述及必要的硬件和软件信息。
- **硬件参考**：提供 ESP32-DevKitM-1 的详细硬件信息。
- **相关文档**：提供相关文档的链接。

### 快速入门

本节介绍如何开始使用 ESP32-DevKitM-1，主要包括三大部分：首先，介绍一些关于 ESP32-DevKitM-1 的基本信息，然后在 应用程序开发 章节介绍如何进行硬件初始化，最后介绍如何为 ESP32-DevKitM-1 录制固件。

### 概述

ESP32-DevKitM-1 开发板是一款小巧实用的开发板，具备以下特色功能：

- 集成了 ESP32-MINI-1 或 ESP32-MINI-1U 模组
- USB 转串口编程接口同时可为开发板供电
- 没有排针
- 设有重置按钮和固件下载模式激活按钮
- 以及其他组件

### 内含组件和包装

- **零售订单** 如购买样品，每个 ESP32-DevKitM-1 开发板将防静电袋或零售商选择的其他方式包装。
  零售订单请前往 [https://www.espressif.com/zh-hans/company/contact/buy-a-sample](https://www.espressif.com/zh-hans/company/contact/buy-a-sample)。

- **批量订单** 如批量购买，ESP32-DevKitM-1 开发板将以大纸板箱包装。
  批量订单请前往 [https://www.espressif.com/zh-hans/contact-us/sales-questions](https://www.espressif.com/zh-hans/contact-us/sales-questions)。

### 组件介绍

ESP32-DevKitM-1 开发板的主要组件、接口及控制方式见下图。下文以板载 ESP32-MINI-1 的开发板为例进行说明。
主要组件 | 基本介绍
--- | ---
板载模组 | ESP32-MINI-1 模组或 ESP32-MINI-1U 模组。ESP32-MINI-1 带有板载 PCB 天线；ESP32-MINI-1U 带有外部天线连接器。两款模组内置的芯片均封装 4 MB flash，更多详情，请见《ESP32-MINI-1 & ESP32-MINI-1U 技术规格书》
5 V 转 3.3 V LDO | 电源转换器，输入 5 V，输出 3.3 V
Boot 键 | 下载按键。按下 Boot 键的同时按一下 Reset 键进入“固件下载”模式，通过串口下载固件
Reset 键 | 复位按键
Micro-USB 接口 | USB 接口，可用作开发板的供电电源或 PC 和 ESP32 芯片的通信接口
USB 至 UART 桥接器 | 单芯片 USB 至 UART 桥接器，可提供高达 3 Mbps 的传输速率
3.3 V 电源指示灯 | 开发板连接 USB 电源后，该指示灯亮起。更多信息，请见相关文档中的原理图
I/O 连接器 | 所有可用 GPIO 管脚（除 Flash 的 SPI 总线）均已引出至开发板的排针。用户可对 ESP32 芯片编程。开发多种功能

应用程序开发
ESP32-DevKitM-1 上电前，请首先确认开发板完好无损。

硬件准备
- ESP32-DevKitM-1 开发板
- USB A / micro USB B 数据线
- PC（Windows, Linux 或 Mac OS）

软件设置
现在，请前往快速入门 中的详细安装步骤 章节，查看如何设置开发环境，并尝试将示例项目烧录至您的开发板。

注意：ESP32-DevKitM-1 搭载的模组为单核 MCU 模组，烧录应用程序前，需要在 menuconfig 中使能单核模式 (CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE)。
硬件参考

功能框图  ESP32-DevKitM-1 的主要组件和连接方式如下图所示。

图 51: ESP32-DevKitM-1

电源选项 开发板可从以下三种供电方式中任选其一:
- Micro USB 供电（默认）
- 5V / GND 管脚供电
- 3V3 / GND 管脚供电

警告:
- 上述供电模式 不可同时连接，否则可能会损坏开发板和/或电源。
- 建议选择第一种供电方式: Micro USB 端口供电。

管脚描述 开发板两侧 I/O 管脚，其具体名称和功能见下表。外设管脚分配请参考《ESP32 技术规格书》。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>接地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3V3</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>3.3 V 电源</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I36</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO36, ADC1_CH0, RTC_GPIO0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I37</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO37, ADC1_CH1, RTC_GPIO1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I38</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO38, ADC1_CH2, RTC_GPIO2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>I39</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO39, ADC1_CH3, RTC_GPIO3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>RST</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>复位；高电平：使能；低电平：关闭</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>I34</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO34, ADC1_CH6, RTC_GPIO4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>I35</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>GPIO35, ADC1_CH7, RTC_GPIO5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

下页继续
### 表 6 - 续上页

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>编号</th>
<th>名称</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>IO32</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO32, XTAL_32K_P (32.768 kHz crystal oscillator input), ADC1 CH4, TOUCH9, RTC_GPIO9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>IO33</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO33, XTAL_32K_N (32.768 kHz crystal oscillator output), ADC1 CH5, TOUCH8, RTC_GPIO8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>IO25</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO25, DAC_1, ADC2 CH8, RTC_GPIO6, EMAC_RXD0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>IO26</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO26, DAC_2, ADC2 CH9, RTC_GPIO7, EMAC_RXD1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>IO27</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO27, ADC2 CH7, TOUCH7, RTC_GPIO17, EMAC_RX DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>IO14</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO14, ADC2 CH6, TOUCH6, RTC_GPIO16, MTMS, HSPICLK, HS2 CLK, SD_CLK, EMAC_TXD2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>5V</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>5 V 电源</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>IO12</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO12, ADC2 CH5, TOUCH5, RTC_GPIO15, MTDI, HSPIQ, HS2 DATA2, SD_DATA2, EMAC_TXD3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>IO13</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO13, ADC2 CH4, TOUCH4, RTC_GPIO14, MTCK, HSPID, HS2 DATA3, SD_DATA3, EMAC_RX ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>IO15</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO15, ADC2 CH3, TOUCH3, RTC_GPIO13, MTDO, HSPICS0, HS2_CMD, SD_CMD, EMAC_RXD3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>IO2</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO2, ADC2 CH2, TOUCH2, RTC_GPIO12, HSPIW, HS2 DATA0, SD_DATA0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>IO0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO0, ADC2 CH1, TOUCH1, RTC_GPIO11, CLK OUT1, EMAC TX_CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>IO4</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO4, ADC2 CH0, TOUCH0, RTC_GPIO10, HSPI HD, HS2 DATA1, SD_DATA1, EMAC TX ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>IO9</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO9, HS1 DATA2, U1RXD, SD_DATA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>IO10</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO10, HS1 DATA3, U1TXD, SD_DATA3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>IO5</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO5, HS1 DATA6, VSPICS0, EMAC RX_CLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>IO18</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO18, HS1 DATA7, VSPICLK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>IO23</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO23, HS1 STROBE, VSPID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>IO19</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO19, VSPIQ, U0CTS, EMAC_TXD0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>IO22</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO22, VSPIFP, U0RTS, EMAC_TXD1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>IO21</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO21, VSPIHD, EMAC_TX EN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>TXD0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO1, U0TXD, CLK OUT3, EMAC RXD2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>RXD0</td>
<td>I/O</td>
<td>GPIO3, U0RXD, CLK OUT2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 硬件修订历史

尚无版本升级历史。

### 相关文档

- [《ESP32-MINI-1 & ESP32-MINI-1U 技术规格书》](PDF)
- [ESP32-DevKitM-1 原理图](PDF)
- [ESP32-DevKitM-1 PCB 布局图](PDF)
- [ESP32-DevKitM-1 布局图 (DXF) - 可使用 Autodesk Viewer 查看](PDF)
- 乐鑫产品选型工具
- [《ESP32 技术规格书》](PDF)

有关本开发板的更多设计文档，请联系我们的商务部 `sales@espressif.com`。

### 1.4 详细安装步骤

请根据下方详细步骤，完成安装过程。
1.4.1 设置开发环境

- 第一步：安装准备（Windows、Linux 和 macOS）
- 第二步：获取 ESP-IDF
- 第三步：设置工具
- 第四步：设置环境变量

1.4.2 创建您的第一个工程

- 第五步：开始创建工程
- 第六步：连接设备
- 第七步：配置
- 第八步：编译工程
- 第九步：烧录到设备
- 第十步：监视器

1.5 第一步：安装准备

在正式开始创建工程前，请先完成工具的安装，具体步骤见下：

1.5.1 Windows 平台工具链的标准设置

概述

ESP-IDF 需要安装一些必备工具，才能围绕 ESP32 构建固件，包括 Python、Git、交叉编译器、CMake 和 Ninja 编译工具等。

在本入门指南中，我们通过命令提示符进行有关操作。不过，您在安装 ESP-IDF 后还可以使用 Eclipse 或其他支持 CMake 的图形化工具 IDE。

注解：限定条件：- 请注意 ESP-IDF 和 ESP-IDF 工具的安装路径不能超过 90 个字符，安装路径过长可能会导致出现失败。- Python 或 ESP-IDF 的安装路径中一定不能包含空格或括号。- 除非操作系统配置为支持 Unicode UTF-8，否则 Python 或 ESP-IDF 的安装路径中也不能包含特殊字符（非 ASCII 码字符）

系统管理员可以通过如下方式将操作系统配置为支持 Unicode UTF-8：控制面板-更改日期、时间或数字格式-管理选项卡-更改系统地城-勾选选项“Beta：使用 Unicode UTF-8 支持全球语言”-点击确定-重启电脑。

ESP-IDF 工具安装器

安装 ESP-IDF 必备工具最简易的方式是从 https://dl.espressif.com/dl/esp-idf/?idf=4.4 中下载 ESP-IDF 工具安装器。

在线安装与离线安装的区别  在线安装程序非常小，可以安装 ESP-IDF 的所有版本。在安装过程中，安装程序只下载必要的依赖文件，包括 Git For Windows 安装器。在线安装程序会将下载的文件存储在缓存目录 %userprofile%\espressif 中。

离线安装程序不需要任何网络连接。安装程序中包含了所有需要的依赖文件，包括 Git For Windows 安装器。
安装内容 安装程序会安装以下组件：

- 内置的 Python
- 交叉编译器
- OpenOCD
- CMake 和 Ninja 编译工具
- ESP-IDF

安装程序允许将程序下载到现有的 ESP-IDF 目录。推荐将 ESP-IDF 下载到 %userprofile%\Desktop\esp-idf 目录下，其中%userprofile% 代表家目录。

启动 ESP-IDF 环境 安装结束时，如果勾选了 Run ESP-IDF PowerShell Environment 或 Run ESP-IDF Command Prompt (cmd.exe)，安装程序会在选定的提示符窗口启动 ESP-IDF。

Run ESP-IDF PowerShell Environment:

![ESP-IDF PowerShell Environment](image)

图 52: 完成 ESP-IDF 工具安装向导时运行 Run ESP-IDF PowerShell Environment

Run ESP-IDF Command Prompt (cmd.exe):

使用命令提示符

在后续步骤中，我们将使用 Windows 的命令提示符进行操作。

ESP-IDF 工具安装器可在“开始”菜单中，创建一个打开 ESP-IDF 命令提示符窗口的快捷方式。本快捷方式可以打开 Windows 命令提示符（即 cmd.exe），并运行 export.bat 脚本以设置各环境变量（比如 PATH, IDF_PATH 等）。此外，您可还以通过 Windows 命令提示符使用各种已经安装的工具。

注意，本快捷方式仅适用 ESP-IDF 工具安装器中指定的 ESP-IDF 路径。如果您的电脑上存在多个 ESP-IDF 路径（比如您需要不同版本的 ESP-IDF），您有以下两种解决方法：

Espressif Systems 93 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 1. 快速入门

图 53: ESP-IDF PowerShell

图 54: 完成 ESP-IDF 工具安装向导时运行 Run ESP-IDF Command Prompt (cmd.exe)
Chapter 1.

![Image of ESP-IDF Command Prompt](image)

Using Python in C:\Users\test\AppData\Local\Programs\Python\Python37\Python 3.7.8
Using Git in C:\Users\test\Git\cmd\git version 2.30.0.windows.1
Setting IDF_PATH: C:\Users\test\esp\esp-idf

Adding ESP-IDF tools to PATH...
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\xtensa-esp32-elf\esp-2620r3-8.4.0\xtensa-esp32-elf\bin
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\xtensa-esp32s2-elf\esp-2620r3-8.4.0\xtensa-esp32s2-elf\bin
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\xtensa-esp32c3-elf\esp-2620r3-8.4.0\xtensa-esp32c3-elf\bin
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\riscv32-esp-elf\1.24.0.123_g64eb9FF-8.4.0\riscv32-esp-elf\bin
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\esp32ulp-elf\2.28.51-esp-20191205\esp32ulp-elf\bin
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\esp32s2ulp-elf\2.28.51-esp-20191205\esp32s2ulp-elf\bin
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\crosstool-make-3.16.4\bin
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\openocd-esp32\v0.10.0-esp-20200709\openocd-esp32\bin
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\ninja\1.10.0
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\idf-exe\1.0.1
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\ccache\3.7
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\dfu-util\0.9\dfu-util-0.9-win64
- C:\Users\test\espressif\tools\python_env\idf4.3_py3.7_env\Scripts
- C:\Users\test\esp\esp-idf\tools

Checking if Python packages are up to date...
Python requirements from C:\Users\test\esp\esp-idf\requirements.txt are satisfied.

Done! You can now compile ESP-IDF projects.
Go to the project directory and run:

```
idf.py build
```

C:\Users\test\esp\esp-idf

**图 55: ESP-IDF 命令提示符窗口**
1. 为 ESP-IDF 工具安装器创建的快捷方式创建一个副本，并将新快捷方式的 ESP-IDF 工作路径指定为您希望使用的 ESP-IDF 路径。
2. 或者，您可以运行 cmd.exe，并切换至您希望使用的 ESP-IDF 目录，然后运行 export.bat。注意，这种方法要求 PATH 中存在 Python 和 Git。如果您在使用时遇到有关“找不到 Python 或 Git”的错误信息，请使用第一种方法。

后续步骤

当 ESP-IDF 工具安装器安装成功后，开发环境设置也到此结束。后续开发步骤，请前往第五步：开始创建工程 查看。

相关文档

想要自定义安装流程的高阶用户可参照:

在 Windows 环境下更新 ESP-IDF 工具

使用脚本安装 ESP-IDF 工具 请从 Windows “命令提示符”窗口，切换至 ESP-IDF 的安装目录。然后运行:

```bash
install.bat
```

对于 Powershell，请切换至 ESP-IDF 的安装目录。然后运行:

```bash
install.ps1
```

该命令可下载并安装 ESP-IDF 所需的工具。如您已经安装了某个版本的工具，则该命令将无效。该工具的下载安装位置由 ESP-IDF 工具安装器的设置决定，默认情况下为: C:\Users\username\espressif。

使用“导出脚本”将 ESP-IDF 工具添加至 PATH 环境变量  ESP-IDF 工具安装器将在“开始菜单”为“ESP-IDF 命令提示符”创建快捷方式。点击该快捷方式可打开 Windows 命令提示符窗口，您可在该窗口使用已安装的工具。

有些情况下，您正在使用的命令提示符窗口并不是通过快捷方式打开的，此时如果想要在该窗口使用 ESP-IDF，您可以根据下方步骤将 ESP-IDF 工具添加至 PATH 环境变量。

首先，请打开需要使用 ESP-IDF 的命令提示符窗口，切换至安装 ESP-IDF 的目录，然后执行 export.bat，具体命令如下:

```bash
cd %userprofile%\esp\esp-idf
export.bat
```

对于 Powershell 用户，请同样切换至安装 ESP-IDF 的目录，然后执行 export.ps1，具体命令如下:

```bash
cd ~/esp/esp-idf
export.ps1
```

运行完成后，您就可以通过命令提示符使用 ESP-IDF 工具了。

1.5.2  Linux 平台工具链的标准设置

安装准备

编译 ESP-IDF 需要以下软件包。请根据使用的系统，选择合适的安装命令，如下所示:

- Ubuntu 和 Debian:
### Chapter 1. 快速入门

```bash
sudo apt-get install git wget flex bison gperf python3 python3-pip python3-setuptools cmake ninja-build ccache libffi-dev libssl-dev dfu-util libusb
```

- CentOS7 & 8:

```bash
sudo yum -y update && sudo yum install git wget flex bison gperf python3 python3-pip python3-setuptools cmake ninja-build ccache dfu-util libusb
```

目前仍然支持 CentOS 7，但为了更好的用户体验，建议使用 CentOS 8。

- Arch:

```bash
sudo pacman -S --needed gcc git make flex bison gperf python-pip cmake ninja --ccache dfu-util libusb
```

**注解：**

- 使用 ESP-IDF 需要 CMake 3.5 或以上版本。较早的 Linux 发行版可能需要升级自身的软件源仓库，或开启 backports 套件库，或安装 “cmake3” 软件包（不是安装 “cmake”）。
- 如果上述列表中，并没有您使用的系统，请参考您所用系统的相关文档，查看安装软件包所用的命令。

**其他提示**

**权限问题 /dev/ttyUSB0**  使用某些 Linux 版本向 ESP32 烧录固件时，可能会出现 Failed to open port /dev/ttyUSB0 错误消息。此时可以将用户添加至 Linux Dialout 组。

**兼容的 Python 版本**

ESP-IDF 支持 Python 3.6 及以上版本，建议升级操作系统到最新版本从而更新 Python。也可选择从 sources 安装最新版 Python，或使用 Python 管理系统如 pyenv 对版本进行升级管理。

**后续步骤**

继续设置开发环境，请前往第二步：获取 ESP-IDF 章节。

#### 1.5.3 macOS 平台工具链的标准设置

**安装准备**

ESP-IDF 将使用 macOS 上默认安装的 Python 版本。

- 安装 pip:

  ```bash
  sudo easy_install pip
  ```

- 安装 CMake 和 Ninja 编译工具:
  - 若有 HomeBrew，您可以运行:
    ```bash
    brew install cmake ninja dfu-util
    ```
  - 若有 MacPorts，您可以运行:
    ```bash
    sudo port install cmake ninja dfu-util
    ```
  - 若以上均不适用，请访问 CMake 和 Ninja 主页，查询有关 macOS 平台的下载安装问题。
Chapter 1. 快速入门

- 强烈建议同时安装 ccache 以获得更快的编译速度。如有 HomeBrew，可通过 MacPorts 上的 brew install ccache 或 sudo port install ccache 完成安装。

**注解：** 如您在上述任何步骤中遇到以下错误:
```
xcrun: error: invalid active developer path (/Library/Developer/
  ~CommandLineTools), missing xcrun at:/Library/Developer/CommandLineTools/usr/bin/
  ~xcrun```

则必须安装 XCode 命令行工具，具体可运行 xcode-select --install。

**安装 Python 3 Catalina 10.15 发布说明** 中表示不推荐使用 Python 2.7 版本，在未来的 macOS 版本中也不会默认包含 Python 2.7。执行以下命令来检查您当前使用的 Python 版本:
```
python --version
```

如果输出结果是 Python 2.7.17，则代表您的默认解析器是 Python 2.7，这时需要您运行以下命令检查电脑上是否已经安装过 Python 3:
```
python3 --version
```

如果运行上述命令出现错误，则代表电脑上没有安装 Python 3。

请根据以下步骤安装 Python 3:
- 使用 HomeBrew 进行安装的方法如下:
```
brew install python3
```
- 使用 MacPorts 进行安装的方法如下:
```
sudo port install python38
```

**后续步骤**

请前往第二步：获取 ESP-IDF 章节继续设置开发环境。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Windows</th>
<th>Linux</th>
<th>macOS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**注解：** 在本文档中，Linux 和 macOS 操作系统中 ESP-IDF 的默认安装路径为 ~/esp；Windows 操作系统中的默认安装路径为 %userprofile%\esp。您也可以将 ESP-IDF 安装在任何其他路径下，但请注意在使用命令行时进行相应替换。注意，ESP-IDF 不支持带有空格的路径。
1.6 第二步：获取 ESP-IDF

在围绕 ESP32 构建应用程序之前，请先获取乐鑫提供的软件库文件 ESP-IDF 仓库。
获取 ESP-IDF 的本地副本：打开终端，切换到您要保存 ESP-IDF 的工作目录，使用 git clone 命令克隆远程仓库。针对不同操作系统的详细步骤，请见下文。

1.6.1 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统

打开终端，后运行以下命令:

```bash
mkdir -p ~/esp
cd ~/esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/esp-idf.git
```

ESP-IDF 将下载至 ~/esp/esp-idf。
请前往 ESP-IDF 版本简介，查看 ESP-IDF 不同版本的具体适用场景。

1.6.2 Windows 操作系统

除了安装必要工具外，第一步中介绍的 ESP-IDF 工具安装器 也能同时下载 ESP-IDF 本地副本。
除了使用 ESP-IDF 工具安装器，您也可以参考 指南 手动下载 ESP-IDF。

1.7 第三步：设置工具

除了 ESP-IDF 本身，您还需要安装 ESP-IDF 使用的各种工具，比如编译器、调试器、Python 包等。

1.7.1 Windows 操作系统

请根据第一步中对 Windows (ESP-IDF 工具安装器) 的介绍，安装所有必需工具。
除了使用 ESP-IDF 工具安装器，您也可以通过 命令提示符 窗口手动安装这些工具。具体步骤见下:

```bash
cd %userprofile%\esp\esp-idf
install.bat esp32
```

或使用 Windows PowerShell

```bash
cd ~/esp/esp-idf
./install.ps1 esp32
```

1.7.2 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统

```bash
cd ~/esp/esp-idf
./install.sh esp32
```

或使用 Fish shell

```bash
cd ~/esp/esp-idf
./install.fish esp32
```
1.7.3 下载工具配备方案

ESP-IDF 工具安装器会下载 Github 发布版本中附带的一些工具。如果访问 Github 较为缓慢，则可以设置一个环境变量，实现优先选择 Espressif 的下载服务器进行 Github 资源下载。

注解：该设置只影响从 Github 发布版本中下载的单个工具，它并不会改变访问任何 Git 仓库的 URL。

Windows 操作系统

如果希望在运行 ESP-IDF 工具安装器时优先选择 Espressif 下载服务器，请在 Select Components 窗口中的 Optimization 部分勾选 Use Espressif download mirror instead of Github 选项。

Linux 和 macOS 操作系统

要在安装工具时优先选择 Espressif 下载服务器，请在运行 install.sh 时使用以下命令：

```
export IDF_GITHUB_ASSETS="dl.espressif.com/github_assets"
./install.sh
```

1.7.4 自定义工具安装路径

本步骤中介绍的脚本将 ESP-IDF 所需的编译工具默认安装在用户的根目录中，即 Linux 和 macOS 系统中的 $HOME/.espressif 和 Windows 系统的 %USERPROFILE%\espressif。此外，您可以将工具安装到其他目录中，但请在运行安装脚本前，重新设置环境变量 IDFTOOLS_PATH。注意，请确保您的用户已经具备了读写该路径的权限。

如果修改了 IDFTOOLS_PATH 变量，请确保该变量在每次执行安装脚本 (install.bat、install.ps1 或 install.sh) 和导出脚本 (export.bat、export.ps1 或 export.sh) 均保持一致。

1.8 第四步：设置环境变量

此时，您刚刚安装的工具尚未添加至 PATH 环境变量，无法通过“命令窗口”使用这些工具。因此，必须设置一些环境变量，这可以通过 ESP-IDF 提供的另一个脚本完成。

1.8.1 Windows 操作系统

Windows 安装器（ESP-IDF 工具安装器）可在“开始”菜单创建一个“ESP-IDF Command Prompt”快捷方式。该快捷方式可以打开命令提示符窗口，并设置所有环境变量。您可以点击该快捷方式，然后继续下一步。

此外，如果您希望在命令提示符窗口使用 ESP-IDF，请使用下方代码：

```
%userprofile%\esp\esp-idf\export.bat
```

或使用 Windows PowerShell

Espressif Systems 100 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Chapter 1. 快速入门

1.8.2 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统

请在需要运行 ESP-IDF 的终端窗口运行以下命令：

```
$HOME/esp/esp-idf/export.ps1
```

对于 fish shell（仅支持 fish 3.0.0 及以上版本），请运行以下命令：

```
$HOME/esp/esp-idf/export.fish
```

注意，命令开始的“.”与路径之间应有一个空格！

如果您需要经常运行 ESP-IDF，您可以为执行 export.sh 创建一个别名，具体步骤如下：

1. 复制并粘贴以下命令到 shell 配置文件中（.profile，.bashrc，.zprofile 等）

```
alias get_idf='$. $HOME/esp/esp-idf/export.sh'
```

2. 通过重启终端窗口或运行 source [path to profile]，如 source ~/.bashrc 来刷新配置文件。

现在您可以在任何终端窗口中运行 get_idf 来设置或刷新 esp-idf 环境。

这里不建议您直接将 export.sh 添加到 shell 的配置文件。因为这会导致在每个终端会话中都激活 IDF 虚拟环境（包括无需使用 IDF 的情况），从而破坏使用虚拟环境的目的，并可能影响其他软件的使用。

1.9 第五步：开始创建工程

现在，您可以开始准备开发 ESP32 应用程序了。您可以从 ESP-IDF 中 examples 目录下的 get-started/hello_world 工程开始。

将 get-started/hello_world 工程复制至您本地的 ~/esp 目录下：

```
cd ~/esp
cp -r $IDF_PATH/examples/get-started/hello_world .
```

1.9.2 Windows 操作系统

```
cd %userprofile%\esp
xcopy /e /i %IDF_PATH%\examples\get-started\hello_world hello_world
```

ESP-IDF 的 examples 目录下有一系列示例工程，都可以按照上面的方法进行创建。您可以按照上述方法复制并运行其中的任何示例，也可以直接编译示例，无需进行复制。

重要：ESP-IDF 编译系统不支持带有空格的路径。
Chapter 1. 快速入门

1.10 第六步：连接设备

现在，请将您的 ESP32 开发板连接到 PC，并查看开发板使用的串口。
通常，串口在不同操作系统下显示的名称有所不同：
- Windows 操作系统： COM1 等
- Linux 操作系统： 以 /dev/tty 开始
- macOS 操作系统： 以 /dev/cu. 开始

有关如何查看串口名称的详细信息，请见与 ESP32 创建串口连接。

注解：请记住串口名，您会在下面的步骤中用到。

1.11 第七步：配置

请进入第五步：开始创建工程 中提到的 hello_world 目录，并运行工程配置工具 menuconfig。

1.11.1 Linux 和 macOS 操作系统

```bash
cd ~/esp/hello_world
idf.py set-target esp32
idf.py menuconfig
```

1.11.2 Windows 操作系统

```bash
cd %userprofile%\esp\hello_world
idf.py set-target esp32
idf.py menuconfig
```

打开一个新项目后，应首先设置“目标”芯片 idf.py set-target esp32。注意，此操作将清除并初始化项目之前的编译和配置（如有）。您也可以直接将“目标”配置为环境变量（此时可跳过该步骤）。更多信息，请见选择目标芯片。

如果之前的步骤都正确，则会显示下面的菜单：

您可以通过此菜单设置项目的具体变量，包括 Wi-Fi 网络名称、密码和处理器速度等。hello_world 示例项目会以默认配置运行，因此可以跳过使用 menuconfig 进行项目配置这一步骤。

注意：如果您使用的是 ESP32-DevKitC（板载 ESP32-SOLO-1 模组）或 ESP32-DevKitM-1（板载 ESP32-MINI-1(IU) 模组），请在烧写示例程序前，前往 menuconfig 中使能单核模式 (CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE)。

注解：您终端窗口中显示出的菜单颜色可能会与上图不同。您可以通过选项 --style 来改变外观。更多信息，请运行 idf.py menuconfig --help 命令。

1.12 第八步：编译工程

请使用以下命令，编译烧录工程：
idf.py build

运行以上命令可以编译应用程序和所有 ESP-IDF 组件，接着生成 bootloader、分区表和应用程序二进制文件。

```
$ idf.py build
Running cmake in directory /path/to/hello_world/build
Executing "cmake -G Ninja --warn-uninitialized /path/to/hello_world"...
Warn about uninitialized values.
-- Found Git:/usr/bin/git (found version "2.17.0")
-- Building empty aws_iot component due to configuration
-- Component names: ...
-- Component paths: ...
... (more lines of build system output)
[527/527] Generating hello_world.bin
esptool.py v2.3.1
Project build complete. To flash, run this command:
.../.../components/esptool_py/esptool/esptool.py -p (PORT) -b 921600 write_flash -
--flash_mode dio --flash_size detect --flash_freq 40m 0x10000 build/hello_world.
--bin build 0x1000 build/bootloader/buildloader.bin 0x8000 build/partition_table/
--partition-table.bin
or run 'idf.py -p PORT flash'
```

如果一切正常，编译完成后将生成.bin 文件。

## 1.13 第九步：烧录到设备

请使用以下命令，将刚刚生成的二进制文件 (bootloader.bin, partition-table.bin 和 hello_world.bin) 烧录至您的 ESP32 开发板：

```
idf.py -p PORT [-b BAUD] flash
```

请将 PORT 替换为 ESP32 开发板的串口名称，具体可见第六步：连接设备。
您还可以将 BAUD 替换为您希望的烧录波特率。默认波特率为 460800。
更多有关 idf.py 参数的详情，请见 idf.py。

注释：勾选 flash 选项将自动编译并烧录工程，因此无需再运行 idf.py build。

1.13.1 烧录过程中可能遇到的问题

如果在运行给定命令时出现如“连接失败”这样的错误，原因之一则可能是运行 esptool.py 出现错误。esptool.py 是构建系统调用的程序，用于重置芯片、与 ROM 引导加载器交互以及烧录固件的工具。解决该问题的一个简单的方法就是按照以下步骤进行手动复位。如果问题仍未解决，请参考 Troubleshooting 获取更多信息。

esptool.py 通过使 USB 转串口转接器芯片（如 FTDI 或 CP210x）的 DTR 和 RTS 控制线生效来自动复位 ESP32（请参考与 ESP32 创建串口连接 获取更多详细信息）。DTR 和 RTS 控制线又连接到 ESP32 的 GPIO0 和 CHIP_PU (EN) 管脚上，因此 DTR 和 RTS 的电压电平变化会使 ESP32 进入固件下载模式。相关示例可查看 ESP32 DevKitC 开发板的 原理图。

一般来说，使用官方的 esp-idf 开发板不会出现问题。但是，esptool.py 在以下情况下不能自动重置硬件。

- 您的硬件没有连接到 GPIO0 和 CHIP_PU 的 DTR 和 RTS 控制线。
- DTR 和 RTS 控制线的配置方式不同
- 根本没有这样的串行控制电路

根据您硬件的种类，也可以将您 ESP32 开发板手动设置成固件下载模式（复位）。

- 对于 Espressif 的开发板，您可以参考对应开发板的入门指南或用户指南。例如，可以通过按住 Boot 按钮 (GPIO0) 再按住 EN 按钮 (CHIP_PU) 来手动复位 esp-idf 开发板。
- 对于其他类型的硬件，可以尝试将 GPIO0 拉低。

1.13.2 常规操作

在烧录过程中，您会看到类似如下的输出日志：

```
... esptool.py --chip esp32 -p /dev/ttyUSB0 -b 460800 --before=default_reset --
    --after=hard_reset write_flash --flash_mode dio --flash_freq 40m --flash_size 2MB_
    --0x8000 partition_table/partition-table.bin 0x1000 bootloader/bootloader.bin_
    --0x10000 hello_world.bin
esptool.py v3.0-dev
Serial port /dev/ttyUSB0
Connecting........_
Chip is ESP32D0WDQ6 (revision 0)
Features: WiFi, BT, Dual Core, Coding Scheme None
Crystal is 40MHz
MAC: 24:0a:c4:05:b9:14
Uploading stub...
Running stub...
Stub running...
Changing baud rate to 460800
Changed.
Configuring flash size...
Compressed 3072 bytes to 103...
Writing at 0x000008000... (100 %)
Wrote 3072 bytes (103 compressed) at 0x000008000 in 0.0 seconds (effective 5962.8_
    --kbit/s)...
Hash of data verified.
Compressed 26096 bytes to 15408...
```

(下页继续)
如果一切顺利，烧录完成后，开发板将会复位，应用程序“hello_world”开始运行。
如果您希望使用Eclipse或是VS Code IDE，而非idf.py，请参考Eclipse指南，以及VS Code指南。

1.14 第十步：监视器

您可以使用idf.py -p PORT monitor命令，监视“hello_world”工程的运行情况。注意，不要忘记将PORT替换为您的串口名称。

运行该命令后，IDF监视器应用程序将启动：

```
$ idf.py -p /dev/ttyUSB0 monitor
Running idf_monitor in directory [...]/esp/hello_world/build
Executing "python [...]/esp-idf/tools/idf_monitor.py -b 115200 [...]/esp/hello_world/build/hello_world.elf"
--- idf_monitor on /dev/ttyUSB0 115200 ---
--- Quit: Ctrl+] | Menu: Ctrl+T | Help: Ctrl+T followed by Ctrl+H ---
```

此时，您就可以在启动日志和诊断日志之后，看到打印的“Hello world!”了。

```
Hello world!
Restarting in 10 seconds...
This is esp32 chip with 2 CPU core(s), WiFi/BT/BLE, silicon revision 1, 2MB external flash
Minimum free heap size: 298968 bytes
Restarting in 9 seconds...
Restarting in 8 seconds...
Restarting in 7 seconds...
```

您可使用快捷键 Ctrl+]，退出IDF监视器。

如果IDF监视器在烧录后很快发生错误，或打印信息全是乱码（如下），很有可能是因为您的开发板采用了26 MHz晶振，而ESP-IDF默认支持大多数开发板使用的40 MHz晶振。

此时，您可以：

1. 退出监视器。
2. 打开 menuconfig。
3. 进入 Component config -> ESP32-specific -> Main XTAL frequency 进行配置，将 CONFIG_ESP32_XTAL_FREQ_SEL 设置为 26 MHz。
4. 然后，请重新编译和烧录应用程序。

注解：您也可以运行以下命令，一次性执行构建、烧录和监视过程：

```
idf.py -p PORT flash monitor
```

此外，

- 请前往 IDF 监视器，了解更多信息使用 IDF 监视器的快捷键和其他详情。
- 请前往 idf.py，查看更多 idf.py 命令和选项。

恭喜，您已成功完成 ESP32 的入门学习！

现在，您可以尝试一些其他 examples，或者直接开发自己的应用程序。

重要：一些示例程序不支持 ESP32，因为 ESP32 中不包含所需的硬件。

在编译示例程序前请查看 README 文件中 Supported Targets 表格。如果表格中包含 ESP32，或者不存在这个表格，那么即表示 ESP32 支持这个示例程序。

### 1.15 更新 ESP-IDF

乐鑫会时不时推出更新版本的 ESP-IDF。修复 bug 或提供新的功能。因此，您在使用时，也应注意更新您本地的版本。最简单的方法是：直接删除您本地的 esp-idf 文件夹，并然后按照第二步：获取 ESP-IDF 中的指示，重新完成克隆。

此外，您可以仅更新变更部分。具体方式，请前往 更新 章节查看。

注意，更新完成后，请再次运行安装脚本，以防新版 ESP-IDF 所需的工具也有所更新。具体请参考第三步：设置工具。

一旦重新安装好工具，请使用导出脚本更新环境。具体请参考第四步：设置环境变量。

### 1.16 相关文档

#### 1.16.1 与 ESP32 创建串口连接

本章节主要介绍如何创建 ESP32 和 PC 之间的串口连接。

连接 ESP32 和 PC

用 USB 线将 ESP32 开发板连接到 PC。如果设备驱动程序没有自动安装，请先确认 ESP32 开发板上的 USB 转串口芯片（或外部转串口适配器）型号，然后在网上搜索驱动程序，并进行手动安装。

以下是乐鑫 ESP32 开发板驱动程序的链接：

- CP210x: CP210x USB 至 UART 桥 VCP 驱动程序
- FTDI: FTDI 虚拟 COM 端口驱动程序
以上驱动仅供参考，请参考开发板用户指南，查看开发板具体使用的 USB 转串口芯片。一般情况下，当 ESP32 开发板与 PC 连接时，对应驱动程序应该已经被打包在操作系统中，并已经自动安装。

在 Windows 上查看端口

检查 Windows 设备管理器中的 COM 端口列表。断开 ESP32 与 PC 的连接，然后重新连接，查看哪个端口从列表中消失后又再次出现。

以下为 ESP32 DevKitC 和 ESP32 WROVER KIT 串口:

![Device Manager](image)

图 57: 设备管理器中 ESP32-DevKitC 的 USB 至 UART 桥

在 Linux 和 macOS 上查看端口

查看 ESP32 开发板（或外部转串口适配器）的串口设备名称，请将以下命令运行两次。首先，断开开发板或适配器，首次运行以下命令；然后，连接开发板或适配器，再次运行以下命令。其中，第二次运行命令后出现的端口即是 ESP32 对应的串口:

**Linux:**

```bash
ls /dev/tty*
```

**macOS:**

```bash
ls /dev/cu.*
```

注解：对于 macOS 用户：若你没有看到串口，请检查你是否已按照《入门指南》安装了适用于你特定开发板的 USB/串口驱动程序。对于 macOS High Sierra (10.13) 的用户，你可能还需要手动允许驱动程序的
图 58: Windows 设备管理器中 ESP-WROVER-KIT 的两个 USB 串行端口
在 Linux 中添加用户到 dialout

当前登录用户应当可以通过 USB 对串口进行读写操作。在多数 Linux 版本中，您都可以通过以下命令，将用户添加到 dialout 组，从而获得读写权限:

`sudo usermod -a -G dialout $USER`

在 Arch Linux 中，需要通过以下命令将用户添加到 uucp 组中:

`sudo usermod -a -G uucp $USER`

请重新登录，确保串口读写权限生效。

确认串口连接

现在，请使用串口终端程序，查看重置 ESP32 后终端上是否有输出，从而验证串口连接是否可用。

Windows 和 Linux 操作系统  在本示例中，我们将使用 PuTTY SSH Client，PuTTY SSH Client 既可用于 Windows 也可用于 Linux。你也可以使用其他串口程序并设置如下的通信参数。

运行终端，配置在上述步骤中确认的串口：波特率 = 115200，数据位 = 8，停止位 = 1，奇偶校验 = N。以下列屏分别展示了如何在 Windows 和 Linux 中配置串口和上述通信参数（如 115200-8-1-N）。注意，这里一定要选择在上述步骤中确认的串口进行配置。

然后，请检查 ESP32 是否有打印日志。如有，请在终端打开串口进行查看。这里的日志内容取决于加载到 ESP32 的应用程序，请参考给出示例。

注解：请在验证完串口通信正常后，关闭串口终端。如果您让终端一直保持打开的状态，之后上传固件时将无法访问串口。

macOS 操作系统  macOS 提供了 屏幕 命令，因此您不用安装串口终端程序。

- 参考在 Linux 和 macOS 上查看端口，运行以下命令:

 ls /dev/cu.*

- 您会看到类似如下输出:

/dev/cu.Bluetooth-Incoming-Port /dev/cu.SLAB_USBtoUART /dev/cu.SLAB_USBtoUART7

- 根据您连接到电脑上的开发板类型和数量，输出结果会有所不同。请选择开发板的设备名称，并运行以下命令:

`screen /dev/cu.device_name 115200`

将 device_name 替换为运行 ls /dev/cu.* 后出现的设备串口号。

- 您需要的正是 屏幕 显示的日志。日志内容取决于加载到 ESP32 的应用程序，请参考给出示例。请使用 Ctrl-A + \ 键退出 屏幕 会话。

注解：请在验证完串口通信正常后，关闭 屏幕 会话。如果直接关闭终端窗口而没有关闭 屏幕，之后上传固件时将无法访问串口。
图 59: 在 Windows 操作系统中使用 PuTTY 设置串口通信参数
图 60: 在 Linux 操作系统中使用 PuTTY 设置串口通信参数
输出示例 以下是 ESP32 的一个日志示例。如果没看到任何输出，请尝试重置开发板。

```plaintext
ets Jun 8 2016 00:22:57
rst:0x5 (DEEPSLEEP_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
ets Jun 8 2016 00:22:57
rst:0x7 (TG0WDT_SYS_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
configisp: 0, SPIWP:0x00
clicrv:0x00,q_drv:0x00,d_drv:0x00,cs0_drv:0x00,hd_drv:0x00,wp_drv:0x00
mode:DIO, clock div:2
load:0x3fff0008,len:8
load:0x3fff0010,len:3464
load:0x40078000,len:7828
load:0x40080000,len:252
entry 0x40080034
I (44) boot: ESP-IDF v2.0-rc1-401-gf9fba35 2nd stage bootloader
I (45) boot: compile time 18:48:10
...
```

如果打印出的日志是可读的（而不是乱码），则表示串口连接正常。此时，您可以继续进行安装，并最终将应用程序上载到 ESP32。

注解：在某些串口接线方式下，在 ESP32 启动并开始打印串口日志前，需要在终端程序中禁用串口 RTS & DTR 管脚。该问题仅存在于将 RTS & DTR 管脚直接连接到 EN & GPIO0 管脚上的情况，绝大多数开发板（包括乐鑫所有的开发板）都没有这个问题。更多信息，请参考 esptool 文档。

如您在安装 ESP32 硬件开发的软件环境时，请从第六步：连接设备 跳转到了这里，请从第七步：配置 继续阅读。

1.16.2 Eclipse IDE 创建和烧录指南

ESP-IDF V4.0 默认采用基于 CMake 的构建系统。

针对 CMake 构建系统，ESP-IDF 有一款新的 Eclipse 插件。具体操作指南，请见 ESP-IDF Eclipse 插件。

注解：ESP-IDF Eclipse 插件 中使用的是 macOS 截图，但安装指南对 Windows、Linux 和 macOS 均适用。

1.16.3 VS Code IDE 快速入门

我们支持 VS code，并且致力于为所有与 ESP-IDF 相关的操作提供完善的端到端支持，包括构建、烧录、监控、调试、追踪、core-dump、以及系统追踪查看器等操作。

快速安装指南

推荐您从 VS Code 插件市场 中下载 ESP-IDF VS Code 插件，或根据 快速安装指南 安装 ESP-IDF VS Code 插件。


支持如下功能

- 安装程序：帮助您迅速安装 ESP-IDF 及其相关工具链。
### 基本功能

- **构建**：通过一键构建和多目标构建，轻松构建并部署您的应用程序。
- **烧录**：UART 和 JTAG 均可完成烧录。
- **监控**：内置终端带有监控功能，您可以在 VS Code 中启用 IDF 监控命令，操作方法和传统终端一样。
- **调试**：提供可用的硬件调试功能，同时支持事后剖析调试如 core-dump 功能，分析 bug 更加方便。
- **GUI 菜单配置**：提供简化的用户界面，用于配置您的芯片。
- **应用程序追踪 & 堆追踪**：支持从应用程序中收集跟踪，并提供简化的用户界面分析跟踪。
- **系统视图查看器**：读取并显示 .svdat 文件到用户追踪界面，同时支持多个内核追踪视图。
- **IDF 二进制大小分析**：为分析二进制文件大小提供用户界面。
- **Rainmaker Cloud**：我们在云端的 Rainmaker Cloud 支持，您可以轻松编辑/读取连接的物联网设备的状态。
- **代码覆盖**：我们在云端的代码覆盖支持，将用颜色突出显示已经覆盖的行。我们也会在 IDE 内部直接渲染现有的 HTML 报告。

### Bugs 问题 & 功能请求

如果您在使用 VS Code 或其某些功能上遇到问题，建议您在 论坛 或是 github 上提出您的问题，我们会及时对问题进行解答。

我们也欢迎您提出新的功能需求，正是由于用户要求新功能或是建议对现有功能进行改善，才成就我们今天所具备的大多数功能。欢迎您在 github 上提出功能请求。

### 1.16.4 IDF 监视器

IDF 监视器是一个串行终端程序，用于收发目标设备串口的串行数据，IDF 监视器同时还兼具 IDF 的其他特性。

在 IDF 中调用 idf.py monitor 可以启用此监视器

### 操作快捷键

为了方便与 IDF 监视器进行交互，请使用表中给出的快捷键。

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>命令</th>
<th>功能</th>
<th>热键</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IDF</td>
<td>串行终端</td>
<td>Ctrl+Alt+D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>监视器</td>
<td>双向数据传送</td>
<td>Ctrl+Alt+M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>快捷键</th>
<th>操作</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+J</td>
<td>退出监视器程序</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+T</td>
<td>菜单退出键</td>
<td>按下如下给出的任意键之一，并按指示操作。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ctrl+T</td>
<td>将菜单字符发送至远程</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ctrl+]</td>
<td>将 exit 字符发送至远程</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ctrl+P</td>
<td>重置目标设备，进入 Bootloader，通过 RTS 线暂停应用程序</td>
<td>重置目标设备，通过 RTS 线（如已连接）进入 Bootloader，此时开发板不运行任何程序，等待其他设备启动时可以使用此操作。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ctrl+R</td>
<td>通过 RTS 线重置目标设备</td>
<td>重置设备，并通过 RTS 线（如已连接）重新启动应用程序。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ctrl+F</td>
<td>编译并烧录此项目</td>
<td>暂停 idf_monitor，运行 flash 目标，然后恢复 idf_monitor。任何改动的源文件都会被重新编译，然后重新烧录。如果 idf_monitor 是以参数 -E 启动的，则会运行目标 encrypted-flash。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ctrl+A (或 者 A)</td>
<td>仅编译及烧录应用程序</td>
<td>暂停 idf_monitor，运行 app-flash 目标，然后恢复 idf_monitor。这与 flash 类似，但只有主应用程序被编译并被重新烧录。如果 idf_monitor 是以参数 -E 启动的，则会运行目标 encrypted-flash。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Y</td>
<td>停止/恢复在屏幕上打印日志输出</td>
<td>激活时，会丢弃所有传入的串行数据。允许在不退出监视器的情况下快速暂停和检查日志输出。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+L</td>
<td>停止/恢复向文件写入日志输出</td>
<td>在工程目录下创建一个文件，用于写入日志输出。可使用快捷键停止/恢复该功能（退出 IDF 监视器也会终止该功能）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+I (或者 I)</td>
<td>停止/恢复打印时间标记</td>
<td>IDF 监视器可以在每一行的开头打印一个时间标记。时间标记的格式可以通过 --timestamp-format 命令行参数来改变。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+H (或者 H)</td>
<td>显示所有快捷键</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+X (或者 X)</td>
<td>退出监视器程序</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+C</td>
<td>中断正在运行的应用程序</td>
<td>暂停 IDF 监视器并运行 GDB 项目调试器，从而在运行时调试应用程序。这需要启动 ref:CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_GDBSTUB_RUNTIME 选项。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

除了 Ctrl-] 和 Ctrl-T，其他快捷键信号会通过串口发送到目标设备。

### 兼具 IDF 特性

**自动解码地址** ESP-IDF 输出形式为 0x4_______ 的十六进制代码地址后，IDF 监视器将使用 addr2line 查找该地址在源代码中的位置和对应的函数名。

ESP-IDF 应用程序发生 crash 和 panic 事件时，将产生如下的寄存器转储和回溯:
Guru Meditation Error of type StoreProhibited occurred on core 0. Exception was unhandled.

Register dump:

PC : 0x400f360d PS : 0x00060330 A0 : 0x800dbf56 A1 :
0x03ffb7e00
A2 : 0x3ffeb136c A3 : 0x00000005 A4 : 0x00000000 A5 :
0x00000000
A6 : 0x00000000 A7 : 0x00000080 A8 : 0x00000000 A9 :
0x03ffb7d0
A10 : 0x00000003 A11 : 0x00060f23 A12 : 0x00060f20 A13 :
0x03ffeb6d0
A14 : 0x00000047 A15 : 0x0000000f SAR : 0x00000019 EXCCAUSE:
0x0000001d
EXCVADDR: 0x00000000 LBEG : 0x4000c46c LEND : 0x4000c477 LCOUNT :
0x00000000

Backtrace: 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e00 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e20 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e40
0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e60 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e90

IDF 监视器为寄存器转储如下信息：

Guru Meditation Error of type StoreProhibited occurred on core 0. Exception was unhandled.

Register dump:

PC : 0x400f360d PS : 0x00060330 A0 : 0x800dbf56 A1 :
0x03ffb7e00
0x400f360d: do_something_to_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/
hello_world/main/.hello_world_main.c:57
(inlined by) inner_dont_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_
world/main/.hello_world_main.c:52
A2 : 0x3ffeb136c A3 : 0x00000005 A4 : 0x00000000 A5 :
0x00000000
A6 : 0x00000000 A7 : 0x00000080 A8 : 0x00000000 A9 :
0x03ffb7d0
A10 : 0x00000003 A11 : 0x00060f23 A12 : 0x00060f20 A13 :
0x03ffeb6d0
A14 : 0x00000047 A15 : 0x0000000f SAR : 0x00000019 EXCCAUSE:
0x0000001d
EXCVADDR: 0x00000000 LBEG : 0x4000c46c LEND : 0x4000c477 LCOUNT :
0x00000000

Backtrace: 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e00 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e20 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e40
0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e60 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e90
0x400f360d: do_something_to_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/
hello_world/main/.hello_world_main.c:57
(inlined by) inner_dont_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_
world/main/.hello_world_main.c:52
0x400f360d: still_dont_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_
world/main/.hello_world_main.c:52
0x400f360d: dont_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_world/
main/.hello_world_main.c:47
0x400f360d: app_main at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_world/main/
hello_world_main.c:42
0x400f360d: main_task at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/components/esp32/.cpu_start.c:254

IDF 监视器在后台运行以下命令，解码各地址:

xtensa-esp32-elf-addr2line -pfiaC -e build/PROJECT.elf ADDRESS

注解：将环境变量 ESP_MONITOR_DECODE 设置为 0 或者调用 idf_monitor.py 的特定命令行选项:
配置 GDBStub 以启用 GDB

默认情况下，如果 ESP-IDF 应用程序发生 crash 事件，panic 处理器将在串口上打印相关寄存器和堆栈转储（类似上述情况），然后重置开发板。

此外，可以配置应用程序在后台运行 GDBStub 并处理运行中的应用程序突然中断事件 (Ctrl+C)。

或者选择配置 panic 处理器以运行 GDBStub，GDBStub 工具可以与 GDB 项目调试器进行通信，允许读取内存、检查调用堆栈帧和变量等。GDBStub 虽然没有 JTAG 通用，但不需要使用特殊硬件。

如需在发生 panic 事件时启用 GDBStub，请运行 idf.py menuconfig 打开项目配置菜单，并将 CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC 选项设置为 GDBStub on panic，或者将 CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC 设置为 GDBStub on runtime。

在这种情况下，如果 panic 处理器被触发或应用程序突然中断 (Ctrl+C)，只要 IDF 监视器监控到 GDBStub 已经加载，panic 处理器就会自动暂停串行监控并使用必要的参数运行 GDB。GDB 退出后，通过 RTS 串口线复位开发板。如果未连接 RTS 串口线，请按复位键、手动复位开发板。

IDF 监控器在后台运行如下命令：

```
xtena-esp32-elf-gdb -ex "set serial baud BAUD" -ex "target remote PORT" -ex...
--interrupt build/PROJECT.elf :idf_target:'Hello NAME chip'
```

输出筛选

可以调用 idf.py monitor --print-filter="xyz" 启动 IDF 监视器，其中，--print-filter 是输出筛选的参数。参数默认值为空字符串，可打印任何内容。

若需对打印内容设置限制，可指定 <tag>:<log_level> 等选项。其中 <tag> 是标签字符串，<log_level> 是 (N, E, W, I, D, V, *) 集合中的一个字母，指的是日志级别。

例如，PRINT_FILTER="tag1:W" 只匹配并打印 ESP_LOGW("tag1", ...) 所写的输出，或者写在较低日志详细级别的输出，即 ESP_LOGE("tag1", ...)。请勿指定 <log_level> 或使用详细级别默认值 *。

注解：编译时，可以使用主日志在日志库中禁用不需要的输出。也可以使用 IDF 监视器筛选输出来调整筛选设置，且无需重新编译应用程序。

应用程序标签不能包含空格、星号 *、冒号 :，以便兼容输出筛选功能。

如果应用程序输出的最后—行后面没有回车，可能会影响输出筛选功能，即，监视器开始打印该行，但后来发现该行不应该被写入。这是一个已知问题，可以通过添加回车来避免此问题（特别是在没有输出紧跟其后的情况下）。

筛选规则示例

- * 可用于匹配任何类型的标签。但 PRINT_FILTER="*:I tag1:E" 打印关于 tag1 的输出时会报错，这是因为 tag1 规则比 * 规则的优先级高。
- 默认规则（空）等价于 *:V，因为在详细级别或更低级别匹配任意标签即意味匹配所有内容。
- "*:N" 不仅抑制了日志功能的输出，也抑制了 printf 的打印输出。为了避免这一问题，请使用 *:E 或更高的优先级。
- 规则 "tag1:V"、"tag1:v"、"tag1:"、"tag1:*" 和 "tag1" 等同。
- 规则 "tag1:W tag1:E" 等同于 "tag1:E"，这是因为后续出现的具有相同名称的标签会覆盖掉前一个标签。
- 规则 "tag1:I tag2:W" 仅在 Info 详细级别或更低级别打印 tag1，在 Warning 详细级别或更低级别打印 tag2。
- 规则 "tag1:I tag2:W tag3:N" 在本质上等同于上一规则，这是因为 tag3:N 指定 tag3 不打印。
• tag3:N 在规则 "tag1:I tag2:N tag3:N *:V" 中更有意义，这是因为如果没有 tag3:N，
tag3 信息就可能打印出来了；tag1 和 tag2 错误信息会打印在指定的详细度级别（或更低级别），
并默认打印所有内容。

高级筛选规则示例 如下日志是在没有设置任何筛选选项的情况下获得的:

```
load:0x40078000,len:13564
entry 0x40078d4c
E (31) esp_image: image at 0x30000 has invalid magic byte
W (31) esp_image: image at 0x30000 has invalid SPI mode 255
E (39) boot: Factory app partition is not bootable
I (568) cpu_start: Pro cpu up.
I (569) heap_init: Initializing. RAM available for dynamic allocation:
I (603) cpu_start: Pro cpu start user code
D (309) light_driver: [light_init, 74]:status: 1, mode: 2
D (318) vfs: esp_vfs_register_fd_range is successful for range <54; 64) and VFS ID_1
I (328) wifi: wifi driver task: 3ffdbf84, prio:23, stack:4096, core=0
```

PRINT_FILTER="wifi esp_image:E light_driver:I" 筛选选项捕获的输出如下所示:

```
E (31) esp_image: image at 0x30000 has invalid magic byte
I (328) wifi: wifi driver task: 3ffdbf84, prio:23, stack:4096, core=0
```

PRINT_FILTER="light_driver:D esp_image:N boot:N cpu_start:N vfs:N wifi:N *:V" 选项的输出如下:

```
load:0x40078000,len:13564
entry 0x40078d4c
I (569) heap_init: Initializing. RAM available for dynamic allocation:
D (309) light_driver: [light_init, 74]:status: 1, mode: 2
```

IDF 监视器已知问题

Windows 环境下已知问题

• 由于 Windows 控制台限制，有些箭头键及其他一些特殊键无法在 GDB 中使用。
• 偶然情况下，idf.py 退出时，可能会在 IDF 监视器恢复之前暂停 30 秒。
• GDB 运行时，可能会暂停一段时间，然后才开始与 GDBStub 进行通信。

1.16.5 工具链的自定义设置

除了从乐鑫官网（请见第三步：设置工具）下载二进制工具链外，您还可以自行编译工具链。
如无特殊需求，建议直接使用我们提供的预编译二进制工具链。不过，您可以在以下情况考虑自行编译
工具链:

• 需要定制工具链编译配置
• 需要使用其他 GCC 版本（如 4.8.5）
• 需要破解 gcc、newlib 或 libstdc++
• 有相关兴趣或时间充裕
• 不信任从网站下载的 bin 文件

如需自行编译工具链，请查看以下文档:

从零开始设置 Windows 环境下的工具链

除了使用 ESP-IDF 工具安装器，用户也可以手动设置 Windows 环境下的工具链，这正是本文的主要内容。
手动安装工具可以更好地控制安装流程，同时也方便高阶用户进行自定义安装。
使用 ESP-IDF 工具安装器对工具链及其他工具进行快速标准设置，请参照 Windows 平台工具链的标准设置。

获取 ESP-IDF

注解：较早版本 ESP-IDF 使用了 MSYS2 bash 终端命令行。目前，基于 CMake 的编译系统可使用常见的 Windows 命令行，即本指南中使用的终端。

请注意，如果您使用基于 bash 的终端或 PowerShell 终端，一些命令语法将与下面描述有所不同。

打开命令提示符，运行以下命令：

```
mkdir %userprofile%\esp
cd %userprofile%\esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/esp-idf.git
```

ESP-IDF 将下载至 %userprofile%\esp\esp-idf。

请前往 ESP-IDF 历史版本，查看 ESP-IDF 不同版本的具体适用场景。

注解：此命令将克隆 master 分支，该分支保存着 ESP-IDF 的最新版本，它功能齐全，每周都会更新一些新功能并修正一些错误。

注解：GitHub 中“下载 zip 文档”的功能不适用于 ESP-IDF，所以需要使用 git clone 命令。作为备份，可以在没有安装 Git 的环境中下载 Stable version 的 zip 归档文件。

注解：在克隆远程仓库时，请加上可选参数 --recursive。如果你已经克隆了 ESP-IDF 但没有加上此参数，请运行以下命令获取所有子模块

```
cd esp-idf
git submodule update --init
```

工具

CMake 工具

下载最新发布的 Windows 平台稳定版 CMake，并运行安装器。

当安装器询问“安装选项”时，选择“Add CMake to the system PATH for all users”（为所有用户的系统路径添加 CMake）或“Add CMake to the system PATH for the current user”（为当前用户的系统路径添加 CMake）。

Python 编译工具

注解：目前，Ninja 仅支持提供 64 位 Windows 版本的 bin 文件。

请从 下载页面 下载最新发布的 Windows 平台稳定版 Ninja。

适用于 Windows 平台的 Ninja 下载文件是一个.zip 文件，包含一个 ninja.exe 文件。您需要将该文件解压到目录，并 添加到 Path 环境变量（或者选择解压到 Path 变量中已有的目录）。

Python 下载并运行适用于 Windows 安装器的最新版 Python。

Python 安装器的“自定义”菜单可为您提供一系列选项，最后一项为“Add python.exe to Path”（添加 python.exe 到 Path 环境变量中），请将该选项更改为“Will be installed”（将会安装）。

Python 安装完成后，从 Windows 开始菜单中打开“命令提示符”窗口，并运行以下命令：
pip install --user pyserial

工具链设置 下载预编译的 Windows 工具链:
将压缩包文件解压到 C:\Program Files`\( 其他位置）。压缩包文件包含一个 `\xtensa-esp32-elf` 目录。
然后，请将该目录下的 bin 子目录添加到 Path 环境变量。例如，将目录 C:\Program Files\xtensa-esp32-elf\bin 添加到 Path 环境变量。

添加目录到 Path 环境变量 在 Windows 环境下，向 Path 环境变量增加任何新目录，请:
打开系统“控制面板”，找到环境变量对话框（ Windows 10 用户请前往 “高级系统设置”）。
双击 Path 变量（选择 “用户路径” 或 “系统路径” ，具体取决于您是否希望其他用户的 Path 中也存在该目录）。最后在值的末尾增加 `;<new value>`。

后续步骤 请前往第三步：设置工具 章节继续设置开发环境。

从零开始设置 Linux 环境下的工具链
除了从乐鑫官网直接下载已编译好的二进制工具链外，您还可以按照本文介绍，从头开始设置自己的工具链。如需快速使用已编译好的二进制工具链，可回到 Linux 平台工具链的标准设置 章节。

注解：设置自己的工具链可以解决 Y2K38 问题（time_t 从 32 位扩展到 64 位）。

安装准备 编译 ESP-IDF 需要以下软件包:
- CentOS 7:
  ```
sudo yum -y update && sudo yum install git wget ncurses-devel flex bison gperf
  --python3 python3-pip cmake ninja-build ccache dfu-util libusbx
  ```
目前仍然支持 CentOS 7，但为了更好的用户体验，建议使用 CentOS 8。
- Ubuntu 和 Debian:
  ```
sudo apt-get install git wget libncurses-dev flex bison gperf python3 python3-
  --pip python3-setuptools python3-serial python3-cryptography python3-future
  --python3-pyparsing python3-pyelftools cmake ninja-build ccache libffi-dev
  --libssl-dev dfu-util libusb-1.0-0
  ```
- Arch:
  ```
sudo pacman -Sy --needed gcc git make ncurses flex bison gperf python-pyserial
  --python-cryptography python-future python-pyparsing python-pyelftools cmake
  --ninja ccache dfu-util libusb
  ```
注解：使用 ESP-IDF 需要 CMake 3.5 或以上版本。较早的 Linux 发行版可能需要升级自身的软件源仓库，或开启 backports 套件库，或安装“cmake3”软件包（不是安装 “cmake”）。
从源代码编译工具链 安装依赖项:

- CentOS 7:
  ```bash
  sudo yum install gawk gperf grep gettext ncurses-devel python3 python3-devel
  `automake bison flex texinfo help2man libtool make
  ```

- Ubuntu pre-16.04:
  ```bash
  sudo apt-get install gawk gperf grep gettext libncurses-dev python python-dev
  `automake bison flex texinfo help2man libtool make
  ```

- Ubuntu 16.04 或以上:
  ```bash
  sudo apt-get install gawk gperf grep gettext python python-dev
  `automake bison flex texinfo help2man libtool libtool-bin make
  ```

- Debian 9:
  ```bash
  sudo apt-get install gawk gperf grep gettext python python-dev
  `automake bison flex texinfo help2man libtool libtool-bin make
  ```

- Arch:
  ```bash
  sudo pacman -Sy --needed python-pip
  ```

创建工作目录，并进入该目录:

```bash
mkdir -p ~/esp
cd ~/esp
dir
```

下载并编译 crosstool-NG:

```bash
git clone https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG.git
cd crosstool-NG
git checkout esp-2021r2
git submodule update --init
```

```bash
./bootstrap && ./configure --enable-local && make
```

注解：在设置支持 64 位 time_t 的工具链时，您需要将 crosstool-NG/samples/xtensa-esp32-elf/crosstool.config 文件中第 33 和 43 行的可选参数 --enable-newlib-long-time_t 删除。

编译工具链:

```bash
./ct-ng xtensa-esp32-elf
./ct-ng build
chmod -R u+w builds/xtensa-esp32-elf
```

编译得到的工具链会被保存至 ~/esp/crosstool-NG/builds/xtensa-esp32-elf。

添加工具链到 PATH 环境变量 需要将自定义工具链复制到一个二进制目录中，并将其添加到 PATH 中。例如，您可以将编译好的工具链复制到 ~/esp/xtensa-esp32-elf/目录中。

为了正常使用工具链，您需要更新 ~/profile 文件中 PATH 环境变量。此外，您还可以在 ~/profile 文件中增加以下代码。这样，所有终端窗口均可以使用 xtensa-esp32-elf:

```bash
export PATH=~/esp/xtensa-esp32-elf/bin:$PATH
```

注解：如果您已将 /bin/bash 设置为登录 shell，且同时存在 .bash_profile 和 .profile 两个文件，则请更新 .bash_profile，在 CentOS 环境下，alias 需要添加到 .bashrc 文件中。
退出并重新登录以使 .profile 的更改生效。运行以下命令来检查 PATH 设置是否正确:

```
printenv PATH
```

此时您需要检查输出结果的开头中是否包含类似如下的工具链路径:

```
$ printenv PATH
/home/user-name/esp/xtensa-esp32-elf/bin:/home/user-name/bin:/home/user-name/.local/bin:/usr/local/sbin:/usr/local/bin:/usr/sbin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/bin:/usr/games:/usr/local/games:/snap/bin
```

注意这里的 /home/user-name 应该替换成您安装的主路径。

后续步骤 请前往第二步：获取 ESP-IDF 章节继续设置开发环境。

### 从零开始设置 macOS 环境下的工具链

#### 软件包管理器
从零开始设置工具链，您需要安装 MacPorts 或 Homebrew 软件包管理器。或者，您也可以直接下载预编译的工具链。

MacPorts 需要完整的 XCode 软件，而 Homebrew 只需要安装 XCode 命令行工具即可。

请参考工具链自定义设置 章节，查看可能需要从头开始设置工具链的情况。

#### 安装准备

- 安装 pip:

  ```
sudo easy_install pip
  ```

- 安装 pyserial:

  ```
pip install --user pyserial
  ```

- 安装 CMake 和 Ninja 编译工具:
  - 若有 Homebrew，您可以运行:

    ```
brew install cmake ninja dfu-util
    ```
  - 若有 MacPorts，您可以运行:

    ```
sudo port install cmake ninja dfu-util
    ```

#### 从源代码编译工具链

安装依赖项:

- 对于 MacPorts:

  ```
sudo port install gsed gawk binutils gperf grep gettext wget libtool autoconf... --automake make
  ```

- 对于 Homebrew:

  ```
brew install gnu-sed gawk binutils gperftools gettext wget help2man libtool... --autoconf automake make
  ```

创建一个文件系统镜像（区分大小写）:

```
hdutil create ~/esp/crosschain.dmg -volname "ctng" -size 10g -fs "Case-sensitive..." -HFS+
```

挂载:
Chapter 1. 快速入门

```bash
hdiutil mount ~/esp/crosstool.dmg
```

创建指向您工作目录的符号链接:

```bash
mkdir -p ~/esp
ln -s /Volumes/ctng ~/esp/ctng-volume
```

前往新创建的目录:

```bash
cd ~/esp/ctng-volume
```

下载并编译 crosstool-NG:

```bash
git clone https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG.git
cd crosstool-NG
git checkout esp-2021r2
git submodule update --init
./bootstrap ./configure --enable-local --make
```

编译工具链:

```bash
./ct-ng xtensa-esp32-elf
./ct-ng build
chmod -R u+w builds/xtensa-esp32-elf
```


后续步骤 请前往第二步：获取 ESP-IDF 章节继续设置开发环境。
Chapter 2

API 参考

2.1 蓝牙 API

2.1.1 Controller & VHCI

Overview

Instructions

Application Example

Check bluetooth/hci folder in ESP-IDF examples, which contains the following application:

• This is a BLE advertising demo with virtual HCI interface. Send Re-set/ADV_PARAM/ADV_DATA/ADV_ENABLE HCI command for BLE advertising - bluetooth/hci/controller_vhci_ble_adv.

API Reference

Header File

• components/bt/include/esp32/include/esp_bt.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_ble_tx_power_set (esp_ble_power_type_t power_type, esp_power_level_t power_level)

Set BLE TX power Connection Tx power should only be set after connection created.

Return  ESP_OK - success, other - failed

Parameters

• power_type: Type of which tx power, could set Advertising/Connection/Default and etc
• power_level: Power level(index) corresponding to absolute value(dbm)

esp_power_level_t esp_ble_tx_power_get (esp_ble_power_type_t power_type)

Get BLE TX power Connection Tx power should only be get after connection created.

Return  >= 0 - Power level, < 0 - Invalid

Parameters

• power_type: Type of which tx power, could set Advertising/Connection/Default and etc

esp_err_t esp_bredr_tx_power_set (esp_power_level_t min_power_level, esp_power_level_t max_power_level)

Set BR/EDR TX power BR/EDR power control will use the power in range of minimum value and maximum value. The power level will effect the global BR/EDR TX power, such inquire, page, connection and so on.
Please call the function after esp_bt_controller_enable and before any function which cause RF do TX. So you can call the function before doing discovery, profile init and so on. For example, if you want BR/EDR use the new TX power to do inquire, you should call this function before inquire. Another word, If call this function when BR/EDR is in inquire(ING), please do inquire again after call this function. Default minimum power level is ESP_PWR_LVL_N0, and maximum power level is ESP_PWR_LVL_P3.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- `min_power_level`: The minimum power level
- `max_power_level`: The maximum power level

```c
esp_err_t esp_bredr_tx_power_get(esp_power_level_t *min_power_level, esp_power_level_t *max_power_level)
```

Get BR/EDR TX power If the argument is not NULL, then store the corresponding value.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- `min_power_level`: The minimum power level
- `max_power_level`: The maximum power level

```c
esp_err_t esp_bredr_sco_datapath_set(esp_sco_data_path_t data_path)
```

Set default SCO data path Should be called after controller is enabled, and before (e)SCO link is established.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- `data_path`: SCO data path

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_controller_init(esp_bt_controller_config_t *cfg)
```

Initialize BT controller to allocate task and other resource. This function should be called only once, before any other BT functions are called.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- `cfg`: Initial configuration of BT controller. Different from previous version, there’s a mode and some connection configuration in “cfg” to configure controller work mode and allocate the resource which is needed.

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_controller_deinit(void)
```

De-initialize BT controller to free resource and delete task.

This function should be called only once, after any other BT functions are called.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_controller_enable(esp_bt_mode_t mode)
```

Enable BT controller. Due to a known issue, you cannot call esp_bt_controller_enable() a second time to change the controller mode dynamically. To change controller mode, call esp_bt_controller_disable() and then call esp_bt_controller_enable() with the new mode.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- `mode`: the mode(BLE/BT/BTDM) to enable. For compatible of API, retain this argument. This mode must be equal as the mode in “cfg” of esp_bt_controller_init().

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_controller_disable(void)
```

Disable BT controller.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_controller_get_status(void)
```

Get BT controller is initialised/de-initialised/enabled/disabled.

**Return** status value

```c
bool esp_vhci_host_check_send_available(void)
```

esp_vhci_host_check_send_available used for check actively if the host can send packet to controller or not.
Return  true for ready to send, false means cannot send packet

void esp_vhci_host_send_packet (uint8_t *data, uint16_t len)
esp_vhci_host_send_packet host send packet to controller

Should not call this function from within a critical section or when the scheduler is suspended.

Parameters
• data: the packet point
• len: the packet length

esp_err_t esp_vhci_host_register_callback (const esp_vhci_host_callback_t *callback)
esp_vhci_host_register_callback register the vhci reference callback struct defined by vhci_host_callback
structure.

Return  ESP_OK - success, ESP_FAIL - failed

Parameters
• callback: esp_vhci_host_callback type variable

esp_err_t esp_bt_controller_mem_release (esp_bt_mode_t mode)
esp_bt_controller_mem_release release the controller memory as per the mode

This function releases the BSS, data and other sections of the controller to heap. The total size is about 70k
bytes.

esp_bt_controller_mem_release(mode) should be called only before esp_bt_controller_init() or after
esp_bt_controller_deinit().

Note that once BT controller memory is released, the process cannot be reversed. It means you cannot use the
blue tooth mode which you have released by this function.

If your firmware will later upgrade the Bluetooth controller mode (BLE -> BT Classic or disabled -> enabled)
then do not call this function.

If the app calls esp_bt_controller_enable(ESP_BT_MODE_BLE) to use BLE only then it is safe to call
esp_bt_controller_mem_release(ESP_BT_MODE_CLASSIC_BT) at initialization time to free unused BT
Classic memory.

If the mode is ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM, then it may be useful to call API
esp_bt_mem_release(ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM) instead, which internally calls
esp_bt_controller_mem_release(ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM) and additionally releases the BSS and data
consumed by the BT/BLE host stack to heap. For more details about usage please refer to the documentation
of esp_bt_mem_release() function

Return  ESP_OK - success, other - failed

Parameters
• mode: the mode want to release memory

esp_err_t esp_bt_mem_release (esp_bt_mode_t mode)
esp_bt_mem_release release controller memory and BSS and data section of the BT/BLE host stack as per the
mode

This function first releases controller memory by internally calling esp_bt_controller_mem_release(). Addi-
tionally, if the mode is set to ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM, it also releases the BSS and data consumed by the
BT/BLE host stack to heap.

Note that once BT memory is released, the process cannot be reversed. It means you cannot use the bluetooth
mode which you have released by this function.

If your firmware will later upgrade the Bluetooth controller mode (BLE -> BT Classic or disabled -> enabled)
then do not call this function.

If you never intend to use bluetooth in a current boot-up cycle, you can call
esp_bt_mem_release(ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM) before esp_bt_controller_init or after
esp_bt_controller_deinit.
For example, if a user only uses Bluetooth for setting the WiFi configuration, and does not use Bluetooth in the rest of the product operation. In such cases, after receiving the WiFi configuration, you can disable/deinit Bluetooth and release its memory. Below is the sequence of APIs to be called for such scenarios:

```c
esp_bluedroid_disable();
esp_bluedroid_deinit();
esp_bt_controller_disable();
esp_bt_controller_deinit();
esp_bt_mem_release(ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM);
```

**Note** In case of NimBLE host, to release BSS and data memory to heap, the mode needs to be set to ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM as controller is dual mode.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- `mode`: the mode whose memory is to be released

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_sleep_enable(void)
```

enable Bluetooth to enter modem sleep

Note that this function shall not be invoked before esp_bt_controller_enable()

There are currently two options for Bluetooth modem sleep, one is ORIG mode, and another is EVED Mode. EVED Mode is intended for BLE only.

For ORIG mode: Bluetooth modem sleep is enabled in controller start up by default if CONFIG_CTRL_BTDM_MODEM_SLEEP is set and “ORIG mode” is selected. In ORIG modem sleep mode, Bluetooth controller will switch off some components and pause to work every now and then, if there is no event to process; and wakeup according to the scheduled interval and resume the work. It can also wakeup earlier upon external request using function “esp_bt_controller_wakeup_request”.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_sleep_disable(void)
```

disable Bluetooth modem sleep

Note that this function shall not be invoked before esp bt controller_enable()

If esp bt sleep disable() is called, Bluetooth controller will not be allowed to enter modem sleep;

If ORIG modem sleep mode is in use, if this function is called, Bluetooth controller may not immediately wake up if it is dormant then. In this case, esp bt controller wakeup_request() can be used to shorten the time for wakeup.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_scan_duplicatelist_flush(void)
```

Manually clear scan duplicate list.

Note that scan duplicate list will be automatically cleared when the maximum amount of device in the filter is reached the amount of device in the filter can be configured in menuconfig.

**Note** This function name is incorrectly spelled, it will be fixed in release 5.x version.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

```c
void esp_wifi_bt_power_domain_on(void)
```

bt Wi-Fi power domain power on

```c
void esp_wifi_bt_power_domain_off(void)
```

bt Wi-Fi power domain power off
Chapter 2. API Reference

**Structures**

```c
struct esp_bt_controller_config_t
```

Controller config options, depend on config mask. Config mask indicate which functions enabled, this means some options or parameters of some functions enabled by config mask.

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t controller_task_stack_size`
  - Bluetooth controller task stack size
- `uint8_t controller_task_prio`
  - Bluetooth controller task priority
- `uint8_t hci_uart_no`
  - If use UART1/2 as HCI IO interface, indicate UART number
- `uint32_t hci_uart_baudrate`
  - If use UART1/2 as HCI IO interface, indicate UART baudrate
- `uint8_t scan_duplicate_mode`
  - scan duplicate mode
- `uint8_t scan_duplicate_type`
  - scan duplicate type
- `uint16_t normal_adv_size`
  - Normal adv size for scan duplicate
- `uint16_t mesh_adv_size`
  - Mesh adv size for scan duplicate
- `uint16_t send_adv_reserved_size`
  - Controller minimum memory value
- `uint32_t controller_debug_flag`
  - Controller debug log flag
- `uint8_t mode`
  - Controller mode: BR/EDR, BLE or Dual Mode
- `uint8_t ble_max_conn`
  - BLE maximum connection numbers
- `uint8_t bt_max_acl_conn`
  - BR/EDR maximum ACL connection numbers
- `uint8_t bt_scodatapath`
  - SCO data path, i.e. HCI or PCM module
- `bool auto_latency`
  - BLE auto latency, used to enhance classic BT performance
- `bool bt_legacy_auth_vs_evt`
  - BR/EDR Legacy auth complete event required to protect from BIAS attack
- `uint8_t bt_max_sync_conn`
  - BR/EDR maximum ACL connection numbers. Effective in menuconfig
- `uint8_t ble_sca`
  - BLE low power crystal accuracy index
- `uint8_t pcm_role`
  - PCM role (master & slave)
- `uint8_t pcm_polar`
  - PCM polar trig (falling clk edge & rising clk edge)
Chapter 2. API

bool hli
Using high level interrupt or not

uint32_t magic
Magic number

struct esp_vhci_host_callback

`esp_vhci_host_callback` used for vhci call host function to notify what host need to do

Public Members

void (*`notify_host_send_available`) (void)
callback used to notify that the host can send packet to controller

int (*`notify_host_recv`) (uint8_t *data, uint16_t len)
callback used to notify that the controller has a packet to send to the host

Macros

ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_CONFIG_MAGIC_VAL
BT_CONTROLLER_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_vhci_host_callback esp_vhci_host_callback_t

`esp_vhci_host_callback` used for vhci call host function to notify what host need to do

Enumerations

enum esp_bt_mode_t
Bluetooth mode for controller enable/disable.

Values:

ESP_BT_MODE_IDLE = 0x00
Bluetooth is not running

ESP_BT_MODE_BLE = 0x01
Run BLE mode

ESP_BT_MODE_CLASSIC_BT = 0x02
Run Classic BT mode

ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM = 0x03
Run dual mode

enum [anonymous]
BLE sleep clock accuracy(SCA), values for ble_sca field in esp_bt_controller_config_t, currently only
ESP_BLE_SCA_500PPM and ESP_BLE_SCA_250PPM are supported.

Values:

ESP_BLE_SCA_500PPM = 0
BLE SCA at 500ppm

ESP_BLE_SCA_250PPM
BLE SCA at 250ppm

ESP_BLE_SCA_150PPM
BLE SCA at 150ppm

ESP_BLE_SCA_100PPM
BLE SCA at 100ppm

ESP_BLE_SCA_75PPM
BLE SCA at 75ppm
ESP_BLE_SCA_50PPM
BLE SCA at 50ppm

ESP_BLE_SCA_30PPM
BLE SCA at 30ppm

ESP_BLE_SCA_20PPM
BLE SCA at 20ppm

def esp_bt_controller_status_t
paralleled controller enable/disable/initialised/de-initialised status.

Values:

ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_STATUS_IDLE = 0
ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_STATUS_INITED
ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_STATUS_ENABLED
ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_STATUS_NUM

def esp_ble_power_type_t
BLE tx power type ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL0-8: for each connection, and only be
set after connection completed. When connect, the correspond TX power is not effected.
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_DEFAULT: if each connection’s TX power is not set, it will use this default value.
If neither in scan mode nor in adv mode, it will use this default value. If none of power type is set, system will
use ESP_PWR_LVL_P3 as default for ADV/SCAN/CONN0-9.

Values:

ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL0 = 0
For connection handle 0
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL1 = 1
For connection handle 1
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL2 = 2
For connection handle 2
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL3 = 3
For connection handle 3
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL4 = 4
For connection handle 4
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL5 = 5
For connection handle 5
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL6 = 6
For connection handle 6
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL7 = 7
For connection handle 7
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL8 = 8
For connection handle 8
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_ADV = 9
For advertising
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_SCAN = 10
For scan
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_DEFAULT = 11
For default, if not set other, it will use default value
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_NUM = 12
TYPE numbers
enum esp_power_level_t

Bluetooth TX power level(index), it’s just a index corresponding to power(dbm).

Values:

ESP_PWR_LVL_N12 = 0
    Corresponding to -12dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N9 = 1
    Corresponding to -9dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N6 = 2
    Corresponding to -6dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N3 = 3
    Corresponding to -3dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N0 = 4
    Corresponding to 0dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_P3 = 5
    Corresponding to +3dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_P6 = 6
    Corresponding to +6dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_P9 = 7
    Corresponding to +9dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N14 = ESP_PWR_LVL_N12
    Backward compatibility! Setting to -14dbm will actually result to -12dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N11 = ESP_PWR_LVL_N9
    Backward compatibility! Setting to -11dbm will actually result to -9dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N8 = ESP_PWR_LVL_N6
    Backward compatibility! Setting to -8dbm will actually result to -6dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N5 = ESP_PWR_LVL_N3
    Backward compatibility! Setting to -5dbm will actually result to -3dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_N2 = ESP_PWR_LVL_N0
    Backward compatibility! Setting to -2dbm will actually result to 0dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_P1 = ESP_PWR_LVL_P3
    Backward compatibility! Setting to +1dbm will actually result to +3dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_P4 = ESP_PWR_LVL_P6
    Backward compatibility! Setting to +4dbm will actually result to +6dbm
ESP_PWR_LVL_P7 = ESP_PWR_LVL_P9
    Backward compatibility! Setting to +7dbm will actually result to +9dbm

enum esp_sco_data_path_t

Bluetooth audio data transport path.

Values:

ESP_SCO_DATA_PATH_HCI = 0
    data over HCI transport
ESP_SCO_DATA_PATH_PCM = 1
    data over PCM interface

2.1.2 BT COMMON

BT GENERIC DEFINES
Overview  Instructions

Application Example  Instructions

API Reference

Header File

- components/bluetooth/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_bt_defs.h

Structures

```c
struct esp_bt_uuid_t

  UUID type.
```

Public Members

- `uint16_t len` (UUID length, 16bit, 32bit or 128bit)
- `uint16_t uuid16` (16bit UUID)
- `uint32_t uuid32` (32bit UUID)
- `uint8_t uuid128[ESP_UUID_LEN_128]` (128bit UUID)

```
union esp_bt_uuid_t::[anonymous] uuid

  UUID
```

Macros

- `ESP_BLUEDROID_STATUS_CHECK(status)`
- `ESP_BT_OCTET16_LEN`
- `ESP_BT_OCTET8_LEN`
- `ESP_DEFAULT_GATT_IF` (Default GATT interface id.)
- `ESP_BLE_CONN_INT_MIN` (relate to BTM_BLE_CONN_INT_MIN in stack/btm_ble_api.h)
- `ESP_BLE_CONN_INT_MAX` (relate to BTM_BLE_CONN_INT_MAX in stack/btm_ble_api.h)
- `ESP_BLE_CONN_LATENCY_MAX` (relate to ESP_BLE_CONN_LATENCY_MAX in stack/btm_ble_api.h)
- `ESP_BLE_CONN_SUP_TOUT_MIN` (relate to BTM_BLE_CONN_SUP_TOUT_MIN in stack/btm_ble_api.h)
- `ESP_BLE_CONN_SUP_TOUT_MAX` (relate to ESP_BLE_CONN_SUP_TOUT_MAX in stack/btm_ble_api.h)
- `ESP_BLE_CONN_PARAM_UNDEF`
- `ESP_BLE_SCAN_PARAM_UNDEF`
- `ESP_BLE_IS_VALID_PARAM(x, min, max)` (Check the param is valid or not.)
Chapter 2. API

ESP_UUID_LEN_16
ESP_UUID_LEN_32
ESP_UUID_LEN_128
ESP_BD_ADDR_LEN
Bluetooth address length.

ESP_BLE_ENC_KEY_MASK
Used to exchange the encryption key in the init key & response key.

ESP_BLE_ID_KEY_MASK
Used to exchange the IRK key in the init key & response key.

ESP_BLE_CSR_KEY_MASK
Used to exchange the CSRK key in the init key & response key.

ESP_BLE_LINK_KEY_MASK
Used to exchange the link key(this key just used in the BLE & BR/EDR coexist mode) in the init key & response key.

ESP_APP_ID_MIN
Minimum of the application id.

ESP_APP_ID_MAX
Maximum of the application id.

ESP_BD_ADDR_STR
ESP_BD_ADDR_HEX (addr)

Type Definitions

typedef uint8_t esp_bt_octet16_t[ESP_BT_OCTET16_LEN]
typedef uint8_t esp_bt_octet8_t[ESP_BT_OCTET8_LEN]
typedef uint8_t esp_link_key[ESP_BT_OCTET16_LEN]
typedef uint8_t esp_bd_addr_t[ESP_BT_OCTET16_LEN]
Bluetooth device address.
typedef uint8_t esp_ble_key_mask_t

Enumerations

enum esp_bt_status_t
    Status Return Value.

Values:

ESP_BT_STATUS_SUCCESS = 0
ESP_BT_STATUS_FAIL
ESP_BT_STATUS_NOT_READY
ESP_BT_STATUS_NOMEM
ESP_BT_STATUS_BUSY
ESP_BT_STATUS_DONE = 5
ESP_BT_STATUS_UNSUPPORTED
ESP_BT_STATUS_PARM_INVALID
ESP_BT_STATUS_UNHANDLED
ESP_BT_STATUS_AUTH_FAILURE
ESP_BT_STATUS_RMT_DEV_DOWN = 10
ESP_BT_STATUS_AUTH_REJECTED
ESP_BT_STATUS_INVALID_STATIC_RAND_ADDR
ESP_BT_STATUS_PENDING
ESP_BT_STATUS_UNACCEPT_CONN_INTERVAL
ESP_BT_STATUS_PARAM_OUT_OF_RANGE
ESP_BT_STATUS_TIMEOUT
ESP_BT_STATUS_PEER_LE_DATA_LEN_UNSUPPORTED
ESP_BT_STATUS_CONTROL_LE_DATA_LEN_UNSUPPORTED
ESP_BT_STATUS_ERR_ILLEGAL_PARAMETER_FMT
ESP_BT_STATUS_MEMORY_FULL = 20
ESP_BT_STATUS_EIR_TOO_LARGE

enum esp_bt_dev_type_t

- Bluetooth device type.

Values:

ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_BREDR = 0x01
ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_BLE = 0x02
ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_DUMO = 0x03

enum esp_ble_addr_type_t

- BLE device address type.

Values:

BLE_ADDR_TYPE_PUBLIC = 0x00
BLE_ADDR_TYPE_RANDOM = 0x01
BLE_ADDR_TYPE_RPA_PUBLIC = 0x02
BLE_ADDR_TYPE_RPA_RANDOM = 0x03

enum esp_ble_wl_addr_type_t

- White list address type.

Values:

BLE_WL_ADDR_TYPE_PUBLIC = 0x00
BLE_WL_ADDR_TYPE_RANDOM = 0x01

BT MAIN API

Overview Instructions

Application Example Instructions

API Reference

Header File

- components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_bt_main.h
Functions

```c
esp_bluedroid_status_t esp_bluedroid_get_status(void)
```
Get bluetooth stack status.

**Return** Bluetooth stack status

```c
esp_err_t esp_bluedroid_enable(void)
```
Enable bluetooth, must after esp_bluedroid_init().

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Succeed
- Other : Failed

```c
esp_err_t esp_bluedroid_disable(void)
```
Disable bluetooth, must prior to esp_bluedroid_deinit().

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Succeed
- Other : Failed

```c
esp_err_t esp_bluedroid_init(void)
```
Init and alloc the resource for bluetooth, must be prior to every bluetooth stuff.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Succeed
- Other : Failed

```c
esp_err_t esp_bluedroid_deinit(void)
```
Deinit and free the resource for bluetooth, must be after every bluetooth stuff.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Succeed
- Other : Failed

Enumerations

```c
define esp_bluedroid_status_t
```
Bluetooth stack status type, to indicate whether the bluetooth stack is ready.

**Values:**

```c
ESP_BLUEDROID_STATUS_UNINITIALIZED = 0
```
Bluetooth not initialized

```c
ESP_BLUEDROID_STATUS_INITIALIZED
```
Bluetooth initialized but not enabled

```c
ESP_BLUEDROID_STATUS_ENABLED
```
Bluetooth initialized and enabled

BT DEVICE APIs

**Overview** Bluetooth device reference APIs.

**Instructions**

**Application Example** Instructions

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_bt_device.h
Functions

const uint8_t* esp_bt_dev_get_address (void)
Get bluetooth device address. Must use after "esp_bluedroid_enable".

Return bluetooth device address (six bytes), or NULL if bluetooth stack is not enabled

esp_err_t esp_bt_dev_set_device_name (const char *name)
Set bluetooth device name. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

A BR/EDR/LE device type shall have a single Bluetooth device name which shall be identical irrespective of the physical channel used to perform the name discovery procedure.

Return

• ESP_OK : Succeed
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : if name is NULL pointer or empty, or string length out of limit
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
• ESP_FAIL : others

Parameters

• [in] name: device name to be set

2.1.3 BT LE

GAP API

Overview

Instructions

Application Example  Check bluetooth/bluedroid/ble folder in ESP-IDF examples, which contains the following demos and their tutorials:

• This is a SMP security client demo and its tutorial. This demo initiates its security parameters and acts as a GATT client, which can send a security request to the peer device and then complete the encryption procedure.
  – bluetooth/bluedroid/ble/gatt_security_client
  – GATT Security Client Example Walkthrough
• This is a SMP security server demo and its tutorial. This demo initiates its security parameters and acts as a GATT server, which can send a pair request to the peer device and then complete the encryption procedure.
  – bluetooth/bluedroid/ble/gatt_security_server
  – GATT Security Server Example Walkthrough

API Reference

Header File

• components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_gap_ble_api.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_register_callback (esp_gap_ble_cb_t callback)
This function is called to occur gap event, such as scan result.

Return

• ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters

• [in] callback: callback function

esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_config_adv_data (esp_ble_adv_data_t *adv_data)
This function is called to override the BTA default ADV parameters.

Return

• ESP_OK : success
• other : failed
Parameters
  • [in] adv_data: Pointer to User defined ADV data structure. This memory space can not be freed until callback of config_adv_data is received.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_scan_params(esp_ble_scan_params_t *scan_params)`
This function is called to set scan parameters.

Return
  • ESP_OK : success
  • other : failed

Parameters
  • [in] scan_params: Pointer to User defined scan_params data structure. This memory space can not be freed until callback of set_scan_params

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_start_scanning(uint32_t duration)`
This procedure keep the device scanning the peer device which advertising on the air.

Return
  • ESP_OK : success
  • other : failed

Parameters
  • [in] duration: Keeping the scanning time, the unit is second.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_stop_scanning(void)`
This function call to stop the device scanning the peer device which advertising on the air.

Return
  • ESP_OK : success
  • other : failed

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_start_advertising(esp_ble_adv_params_t *adv_params)`
This function is called to start advertising.

Return
  • ESP_OK : success
  • other : failed

Parameters
  • [in] adv_params: pointer to User defined adv_params data structure.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_stop_advertising(void)`
This function is called to stop advertising.

Return
  • ESP_OK : success
  • other : failed

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_update_conn_params(esp_ble_conn_update_params_t *params)`
Update connection parameters, can only be used when connection is up.

Return
  • ESP_OK : success
  • other : failed

Parameters
  • [in] params: - connection update parameters

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_pkt_data_len(esp_bd_addr_t remote_device, uint16_t tx_data_length)`
This function is to set maximum LE data packet size.

Return
  • ESP_OK : success
  • other : failed

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_rand_addr(esp_bd_addr_t rand_addr)`
This function sets the static Random Address and Non-Resolvable Private Address for the application.
# Chapter 2. API 参考

## Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

## Parameters
- [in] rand_addr: the random address which should be setting

### esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_clear_rand_addr (void)
This function clears the random address for the application.

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

### esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_config_local_privacy (bool privacy_enable)
Enable/disable privacy on the local device.

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

## Parameters
- [in] privacy_enable: enable/disable privacy on remote device.

### esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_config_local_icon (uint16_t icon)
set local gap appearance icon

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

## Parameters

### esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_update_whitelist (bool add_remove, esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, esp_ble_wl_addr_type_t wl_addr_type)
Add or remove device from white list.

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

## Parameters
- [in] add_remove: the value is true if added the ble device to the white list, and false remove to the white list.
- [in] remote_bda: the remote device address add/remove from the white list.
- [in] wl_addr_type: whitelist address type

### esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_clear_whitelist (void)
Clear all white list.

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

### esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_get_whitelist_size (uint16_t *length)
Get the whitelist size in the controller.

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

## Parameters
- [out] length: the white list length.


**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_prefer_conn_params:**
```
esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_prefer_conn_params(esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr, uint16_t min_conn_int, uint16_t max_conn_int, uint16_t slave_latency, uint16_t supervision_tout)
```

This function is called to set the preferred connection parameters when default connection parameter is not desired before connecting. This API can only be used in the master role.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] bd_addr: BD address of the peripheral
- [in] min_conn_int: minimum preferred connection interval
- [in] max_conn_int: maximum preferred connection interval
- [in] slave_latency: preferred slave latency
- [in] supervision_tout: preferred supervision timeout

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_device_name:**
```
const char* name)
```

Set device name to the local device.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] name: - device name.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_get_local_used_addr:**
```
esp_bd_addr_t local_used_addr, uint8_t* addr_type)
```

This function is called to get local used address and address type. `uint8_t* esp_bt_dev_get_address(void)` get the public address.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] local_used_addr: - current local used ble address (six bytes)
- [in] addr_type: - ble address type

```
uint8_t* esp_ble_resolve_adv_data(uint8_t* adv_data, uint8_t type, uint8_t* length)
```

This function is called to get ADV data for a specific type.

**Return**
- pointer of ADV data

**Parameters**
- [in] adv_data: - pointer of ADV data which to be resolved
- [in] type: - finding ADV data type
- [out] length: - return the length of ADV data not including type

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_config_adv_data_raw:**
```
uint8_t* raw_data, uint32_t raw_data_len)
```

This function is called to set raw advertising data. User need to fill ADV data by self.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] raw_data: raw advertising data
- [in] raw_data_len: raw advertising data length, less than 31 bytes

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_config_scan_rsp_data_raw:**
```
uint8_t* raw_data, uint32_t raw_data_len)
```

This function is called to set raw scan response data. User need to fill scan response data by self.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
Chapter 2. API

- [in] raw_data:: raw scan response data
- [in] raw_data_len:: raw scan response data length, less than 31 bytes

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_read_rssi(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr)
```

This function is called to read the RSSI of remote device. The address of link policy results are returned in the gap callback function with ESP_GAP_BLE_READ_RSSI_COMPLETE_EVT event.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] remote_addr:: The remote connection device address.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_add_duplicate_scan_exceptional_device(esp_ble_duplicate_exceptional_info_type_t type,
             esp_duplicate_info_t device_info)
```

This function is called to add a device info into the duplicate scan exceptional list.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] type:  device info type, it is defined in esp_ble_duplicate_exceptional_info_type_t when type is MESH_BEACON_TYPE, MESH_PROV_SRV_ADV or MESH_PROXY_SRV_ADV , device_info is invalid.
- [in] device_info:: the device information.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_remove_duplicate_scan_exceptional_device(esp_ble_duplicate_exceptional_info_type_t type,
             esp_duplicate_info_t device_info)
```

This function is called to remove a device info from the duplicate scan exceptional list.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] type:  device info type, it is defined in esp_ble_duplicate_exceptional_info_type_t when type is MESH_BEACON_TYPE, MESH_PROV_SRV_ADV or MESH_PROXY_SRV_ADV , device_info is invalid.
- [in] device_info:: the device information.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_clean_duplicate_scan_exceptional_list(esp_duplicate_scan_exceptional_list_type_t list_type)
```

This function is called to clean the duplicate scan exceptional list. This API will delete all device information in the duplicate scan exceptional list.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] list_type: duplicate scan exceptional list type, the value can be one or more of esp_duplicate_scan_exceptional_list_type_t.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_security_param(esp_ble_sm_param_t param_type, void *value,
                    uint8_t len)
```

Set a GAP security parameter value. Overrides the default value.

Secure connection is highly recommended to avoid some major vulnerabilities like ‘Impersonation in the Pin Pairing Protocol’ (CVE-2020-26555) and ‘Authentication of the LE Legacy Pairing Protocol’.

To accept only secure connection mode, it is necessary do as following:
1. Set bit ESP_LE_AUTH_REQ_SC_ONLY (param_type is ESP_BLE_SM_AUTHEN_REQ_MODE), bit ESP_LE_AUTH_BOND and bit ESP_LE_AUTH_REQ_MITM is optional as required.
2. Set to ESP_BLE_ONLY_ACCEPT_SPECIFIED_AUTH_ENABLE (param_type is ESP_BLE_SM_ONLY_ACCEPT_SPECIFIED_SEC_AUTH).

Return - ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters
• [in] param_type: : the type of the param which to be set
• [in] value: : the param value
• [in] len: : the length of the param value

esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_security_rsp (esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr, bool accept)
Grant security request access.

Return - ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters
• [in] bd_addr: : BD address of the peer
• [in] accept: : accept the security request or not

esp_err_t esp_ble_set_encryption (esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr, esp_ble_sec_act_t sec_act)
Set a gap parameter value. Use this function to change the default GAP parameter values.

Return - ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters
• [in] bd_addr: : the address of the peer device need to encryption
• [in] sec_act: : This is the security action to indicate what kind of BLE security level is required for the BLE link if the BLE is supported

esp_err_t esp_ble_passkey_reply (esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr, bool accept, uint32_t passkey)
Reply the key value to the peer device in the legacy connection stage.

Return - ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters
• [in] bd_addr: : BD address of the peer
• [in] accept: : passkey entry successful or declined.
• [in] passkey: : passkey value, must be a 6 digit number, can be lead by 0.

esp_err_t esp_ble_confirm_reply (esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr, bool accept)
Reply the confirm value to the peer device in the secure connection stage.

Return - ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters
• [in] bd_addr: : BD address of the peer device
• [in] accept: : numbers to compare are the same or different.

esp_err_t esp_ble_remove_bond_device (esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr)
Removes a device from the security database list of peer device. It manages unpairing event while connected.

Return - ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters
• [in] bd_addr: : BD address of the peer device

int esp_ble_get_bond_device_num (void)
Get the device number from the security database list of peer device. It will return the device bonded number immediately.

Return - >= 0 : bonded devices number.
• ESP_FAIL : failed
`esp_err_t esp_ble_get_bond_device_list(int *dev_num, esp_ble_bond_dev_t *dev_list)`

Get the device from the security database list of peer device. It will return the device bonded information immediately.

Return - ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters
• [inout] dev_num: Indicate the dev_list array(buffer) size as input. If dev_num is large enough, it means the actual number as output. Suggest that dev_num value equal to esp_ble_get_bond_device_num().
• [out] dev_list: an array(buffer) of `esp_ble_bond_dev_t` type. Use for storing the bonded devices address. The dev_list should be allocated by who call this API.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_oob_req_reply(esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr, uint8_t* TK, uint8_t len)`

This function is called to provide the OOB data for SMP in response to ESP_GAP_BLE_OOB_REQ_EVT.

Return - ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] bd_addr: BD address of the peer device.
• [in] TK: TK value, the TK value shall be a 128-bit random number
• [in] len: length of tk, should always be 128-bit

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_disconnect(esp_bd_addr_t remote_device)`

This function is to disconnect the physical connection of the peer device gattc may have multiple virtual GATT server connections when multiple app_id registered. esp_ble_gattc_close (esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id) only close one virtual GATT server connection. if there exist other virtual GATT server connections, it does not disconnect the physical connection. esp_ble_gap_disconnect(esp_bd_addr_t remote_device) disconnect the physical connection directly.

Return - ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] remote_device: BD address of the peer device

`esp_err_t esp_ble_get_current_conn_params(esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr, esp_gap_conn_params_t *conn_params)`

This function is called to read the connection parameters information of the device.

Return - ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] bd_addr: BD address of the peer device.
• [out] conn_params: the connection parameters information

`esp_err_t esp_gap_ble_set_channels(esp_gap_ble_channels channels)`

BLE set channels.

Return - ESP_OK: success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] channels: The n th such field (in the range 0 to 36) contains the value for the link layer channel index n. 0 means channel n is bad. 1 means channel n is unknown. The most significant bits are reserved and shall be set to 0. At least one channel shall be marked as unknown.

`esp_err_t esp_gap_ble_set_authorization(esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr, bool authorize)`

This function is called to authorized a link after Authentication(MITM protection)

Return - ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] bd_addr: BD address of the peer device.
• [out] authorize: Authorized the link or not.
Chapter 2. API 参考

```
esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_read_phy(esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr)
This function is used to read the current transmitter PHY and receiver PHY on the connection identified by remote address.

Return  - ESP_OK : success
          • other : failed

Parameters
          • [in] bd_addr : BD address of the peer device

esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_preferred_default_phy(esp_ble_gap_phy_mask_t tx_phy_mask,
                                              esp_ble_gap_phy_mask_t rx_phy_mask)
This function is used to allows the Host to specify its preferred values for the transmitter PHY and receiver PHY to be used for all subsequent connections over the LE transport.

Return  - ESP_OK : success
          • other : failed

Parameters
          • [in] tx_phy_mask : indicates the transmitter PHYs that the Host prefers the Controller to use
          • [in] rx_phy_mask : indicates the receiver PHYs that the Host prefers the Controller to use

esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_preferred_phy(esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr,
                                       esp_ble_gap_all_phys_t all_phys_mask,
                                       esp_ble_gap_phy_mask_t tx_phy_mask,
                                       esp_ble_gap_phy_mask_t rx_phy_mask,
                                       esp_ble_gap_prefer_phy_options_t phy_options)
This function is used to set the PHY preferences for the connection identified by the remote address. The Controller might not be able to make the change (e.g. because the peer does not support the requested PHY) or may decide that the current PHY is preferable.

Return  - ESP_OK : success
          • other : failed

Parameters
          • [in] bd_addr : remote address
          • [in] all_phys_mask : a bitfield that allows the Host to specify
          • [in] tx_phy_mask : a bitfield that indicates the transmitter PHYs that the Host prefers the Controller to use
          • [in] rx_phy_mask : a bitfield that indicates the receiver PHYs that the Host prefers the Controller to use
          • [in] phy_options : a bitfield that allows the Host to specify options for PHYs

esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_set_rand_addr(uint8_t instance, esp_bd_addr_t rand_addr)
This function is used by the Host to set the random device address specified by the Random_Address parameter.

Return  - ESP_OK : success
          • other : failed

Parameters
          • [in] instance : Used to identify an advertising set
          • [in] rand_addr : Random Device Address

esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_set_params(uint8_t instance,
                                         const esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_params_t *params)
This function is used by the Host to set the advertising parameters.

Return  - ESP_OK : success
          • other : failed

Parameters
          • [in] instance : identifies the advertising set whose parameters are being configured.
          • [in] params : advertising parameters

esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_config_ext_adv_data_raw(uint8_t instance, uint16_t length, const uint8_t *data)
This function is used to set the data used in advertising PDUs that have a data field.

Return  - ESP_OK : success
```
Chapter 2. API

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_config_ext_scan_rsp_data_raw**

This function is used to provide scan response data used in scanning response PDUs.

- **Return**: ESP_OK: success
  - other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] instance: identifies the advertising set whose data are being configured
- [in] length: data length
- [in] data: data information

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_start**

This function is used to request the Controller to enable one or more advertising sets using the advertising sets identified by the instance parameter.

- **Return**: ESP_OK: success
  - other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] num_adv: Number of advertising sets to enable or disable
- [in] ext_adv: adv parameters

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_stop**

This function is used to request the Controller to disable one or more advertising sets using the advertising sets identified by the instance parameter.

- **Return**: ESP_OK: success
  - other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] num_adv: Number of advertising sets to enable or disable
- [in] ext_adv_inst: ext adv instance

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_set_remove**

This function is used to remove an advertising set from the Controller.

- **Return**: ESP_OK: success
  - other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] instance: Used to identify an advertising set

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_set_clear**

This function is used to remove all existing advertising sets from the Controller.

- **Return**: ESP_OK: success
  - other: failed

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_set_params**

This function is used by the Host to set the parameters for periodic advertising.

- **Return**: ESP_OK: success
  - other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] instance: identifies the advertising set whose periodic advertising parameters are being configured.
- [in] params: periodic adv parameters
**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_config_periodic_adv_data_raw** (uint8_t instance, uint16_t length, const uint8_t *data)

This function is used to set the data used in periodic advertising PDUs.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] instance: identifies the advertising set whose periodic advertising parameters are being configured.
- [in] length: the length of periodic data
- [in] data: periodic data information

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_start** (uint8_t instance)

This function is used to request the Controller to enable the periodic advertising for the advertising set specified.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] instance: Used to identify an advertising set

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_stop** (uint8_t instance)

This function is used to request the Controller to disable the periodic advertising for the advertising set specified.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] instance: Used to identify an advertising set

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_set_ext_scan_params** (const esp_ble_ext_scan_params_t *params)

This function is used to set the extended scan parameters to be used on the advertising channels.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] params: scan parameters

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_start_ext_scan** (uint32_t duration, uint16_t period)

This function is used to enable scanning.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] duration: Scan duration
- [in] period: Time interval from when the Controller started its last Scan Duration until it begins the subsequent Scan Duration.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_stop_ext_scan** (void)

This function is used to disable scanning.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_create_sync** (const esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_params_t *params)

This function is used to synchronize with periodic advertising from an advertiser and begin receiving periodic advertising packets.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] params: sync parameters

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_cancel** (void)

This function is used to cancel the LE_Periodic_Advertising_Create_Sync command while it is pending.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_terminate** (uint16_t sync_handle)

This function is used to stop reception of the periodic advertising identified by the Sync Handle parameter.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] sync_handle: : identify the periodic advertiser

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_add_dev_to_list** (esp_ble_addr_type_t addr_type, esp_bd_addr_t addr, uint8_t sid)

This function is used to add a single device to the Periodic Advertiser list stored in the Controller.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] addr_type: : addresstype
- [in] addr: : Device Address
- [in] sid: : Advertising SID subfield in the ADI field used to identify the Periodic Advertising

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_remove_dev_from_list** (esp_ble_addr_type_t addr_type, esp_bd_addr_t addr, uint8_t sid)

This function is used to remove one device from the list of Periodic Advertisers stored in the Controller. Removals from the Periodic Advertisers List take effect immediately.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] addr_type: : addresstype
- [in] addr: : Device Address
- [in] sid: : Advertising SID subfield in the ADI field used to identify the Periodic Advertising

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_clear_dev** (void)

This function is used to remove all devices from the list of Periodic Advertisers in the Controller.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] addr: : device address
- [in] phy_mask: : indicates the PHY(s) on which the advertising packets should be received on the primary advertising channel and the PHYs for which connection parameters have been specified.
- [in] phy_1m_conn_params: : Scan connectable advertisements on the LE 1M PHY. Connection parameters for the LE 1M PHY are provided.
- [in] phy_2m_conn_params: : Connection parameters for the LE 2M PHY are provided.
- [in] phy_coded_conn_params: : Scan connectable advertisements on the LE Coded PHY. Connection parameters for the LE Coded PHY are provided.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_gap_prefer_ext_connect_params_set** (esp_bd_addr_t addr, esp_ble_gap_phy_mask_t phy_mask, const esp_ble_gap_conn_params_t* phy_1m_conn_params, const esp_ble_gap_conn_params_t* phy_2m_conn_params, const esp_ble_gap_conn_params_t* phy_coded_conn_params)

This function is used to set aux connection parameters.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : success
- other : failed

**Parameters**
- [in] addr: : device address
- [in] phy_mask: : indicates the PHY(s) on which the advertising packets should be received on the primary advertising channel and the PHYs for which connection parameters have been specified.
- [in] phy_1m_conn_params: : Scan connectable advertisements on the LE 1M PHY. Connection parameters for the LE 1M PHY are provided.
- [in] phy_2m_conn_params: : Connection parameters for the LE 2M PHY are provided.
- [in] phy_coded_conn_params: : Scan connectable advertisements on the LE Coded PHY. Connection parameters for the LE Coded PHY are provided.
Chapter 2. API

Unions

union esp_ble_key_value_t
    #include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> union type of the security key value
    
    Public Members

        esp_ble_penc_keys_t penc_key
        received peer encryption key
        
        esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t pcsrk_key
        received peer device SRK
        
        esp_ble_pid_keys_t pid_key
        peer device ID key
        
        esp_ble_lenc_keys_t lenc_key
        local encryption reproduction keys LTK = d1(ER,DIV,0)
        
        esp_ble_lcsrk_keys lcsrk_key
        local device CSRK = d1(ER,DIV,1)

union esp_ble_sec_t
    #include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> union associated with ble security
    
    Public Members

        esp_ble_sec_key_notif_t key_notif
        passkey notification
        
        esp_ble_sec_req_t ble_req
        BLE SMP related request
        
        esp_ble_key_t ble_key
        BLE SMP keys used when pairing
        
        esp_ble_local_id_keys_t ble_id_keys
        BLE IR event
        
        esp_ble_auth_cmpl_t auth_cmpl
        Authentication complete indication.

union esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t
    #include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> Gap callback parameters union.
    
    Public Members

        struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_adv_data_cmpl_evt_param adv_data_cmpl
        Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
        
        struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_scan_rsp_data_cmpl_evt_param scan_rsp_data_cmpl
        Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RSP_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
        
        struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_scan_param_cmpl_evt_param scan_param_cmpl
        Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_PARAM_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
        
        struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_scan_result_evt_param scan_rst
        Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RESULT_EVT
        
        struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_adv_data_raw_cmpl_evt_param adv_data_raw_cmpl
        Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_DATA_RAW_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
        
        struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_scan_rsp_data_raw_cmpl_evt_param scan_rsp_data_raw_cmpl
        Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RSP_DATA_RAW_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_adv_start_cmplEvtParam adv_start_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_START_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_scan_start_cmplEvtParam scan_start_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_START_COMPLETE_EVT

esp_ble_sec_t ble_security
ble gap security union type

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_scan_stop_cmplEvtParam scan_stop_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_adv_stop_cmplEvtParam adv_stop_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rand_cmplEvtParam set_rand_addr_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_STATIC_RAND_ADDR_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_conn_paramsEvtParam update_conn_params
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_CONN_PARAMS_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_pkt_data_length_cmplEvtParam pkt_data_length_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PKT_LENGTH_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_local_privacy_cmplEvtParam local_privacy_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_LOCAL_PRIVACY_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_remove_bond_dev_cmplEvtParam remove_bond_dev_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_REMOVE_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_clear_bond_dev_cmplEvtParam clear_bond_dev_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_CLEAR_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_get_bond_dev_cmplEvtParam get_bond_dev_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_GET_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_read_rssi_cmplEvtParam read_rssi_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_READ_RSSI_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_whitelist_cmplEvtParam update_whitelist_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_WHITELIST_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_duplicate_exceptional_list_cmplEvtParam update_duplicate_exceptional_list_cmpl
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_DUPLICATE_EXCEPTIONAL_LIST_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_channelsEvtParam ble_set_channels
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_CHANNELS_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_read_phy_cmplEvtParam read_phy
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_READ_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perf_def_phy_cmplEvtParam set_perf_def_phy
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PREFERRED_DEFAULT_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perf_phy_cmplEvtParam set_perf_phy
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PREFERRED_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_set_rand_addr_cmplEvtParam ext_adv_set_rand_addr
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_RAND_ADDR_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_set_params_cmplEvtParam ext_adv_set_params
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_data_set_cmplEvtParam ext_adv_data_set
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_scan_rsp_set_cmplEvtParam scan_rsp_set
Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_RSP_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_start_cmpl_evt_param ext_adv_start
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_START_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_stop_cmpl_evt_param ext_adv_stop
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_set_remove_cmpl_evt_param ext_adv_remove
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_REMOVE_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_set_clear_cmpl_evt_param ext_adv_clear
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_CLEAR_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_set_params_cmpl_param peroid_adv_set_params
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SET_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_data_set_cmpl_param period_adv_data_set
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_start_cmpl_param period_adv_start
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_START_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_stop_cmpl_param period_adv_stop
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_create_sync_cmpl_param period_adv_create_sync
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_CREATE_SYNC_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_sync_cancel_cmpl_param period_adv_sync_cancel
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_CANCEL_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_sync_terminate_cmpl_param period_adv_sync_term
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_TERMINATE_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_add_dev_cmpl_param period_adv_add_dev
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_ADD_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_remove_dev_cmpl_param period_adv_remove_dev
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_REMOVE_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_clear_dev_cmpl_param period_adv_clear_dev
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_CLEAR_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_ext_scan_params_cmpl_param set_ext_scan_params
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_EXT_SCAN_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_scan_start_cmpl_param ext_scan_start
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_START_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_scan_stop_cmpl_param ext_scan_stop
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_conn_params_set_cmpl_param ext_conn_params_set
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PREFER_EXT_CONN_PARAMS_SET_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_adv_terinate_param adv.terminate
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_TERMINATED_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_scan_req_received_param scan_req_received
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_REQ_RECEIVED_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_channel_sel_alg_param channel_sel_alg
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_CHANNEL_SELECT_ALGORITHM_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_sync_lost_param periodic_adv_sync_lost
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_LOST_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_sync_estab_param periodic_adv_sync_estab
   Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_ESTAB_EVT
struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_phy_update_cmpl_param phy_update
    Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PHY_UPDATE_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_ext_adv_report_param ext_adv_report
    Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_REPORT_EVT

struct esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_periodic_adv_report_param period_adv_report
    Event parameter of ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_REPORT_EVT

struct ble_adv_data_cmpl_evt_param
    #include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
    Indicate the set advertising data operation success status

struct ble_adv_data_raw_cmpl_evt_param
    #include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_DATA_RAW_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
    Indicate the set raw advertising data operation success status

struct ble_adv_start_cmpl_evt_param
    #include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_START_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
    Indicate advertising start operation success status

struct ble_adv_stop_cmpl_evt_param
    #include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
    Indicate adv stop operation success status

struct ble_adv_terminate_param
    #include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_TERMINATED_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t status
    Indicate adv terminate status

uint8_t adv_instance
    extend advertising handle

uint16_t conn_idx
    connection index

uint8_t completed_event
    the number of completed extend advertising events
struct ble_channel_sel_alg_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_CHANNEL_SELETE_ALGORITHM_EVT.

Public Members

uint16_t conn_handle
connection handle

uint8_t channel_sel_alg
channel selection algorithm

struct ble_clear_bond_dev_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_CLEAR_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate the clear bond device operation success status

struct ble_ext_adv_data_set_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate extend advertising data set status

struct ble_ext_adv_report_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_REPORT_EVT.

Public Members

esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_repnot_t params
extend advertising report parameters

struct ble_ext_adv_scan_rsp_set_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_RSP_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate extend advertising scan response data set status

struct ble_ext_adv_set_clear_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_CLEAR_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate advertising stop operation success status

struct ble_ext_adv_set_params_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT.
Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate extend advertising parameters set status

```c
struct ble_ext_adv_set_rand_addr_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_RAND_ADDR_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate extend advertising random address set status

```c
struct ble_ext_adv_set_remove_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_REMOVE_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate advertising stop operation success status

```c
struct ble_ext_adv_start_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_START_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate advertising start operation success status

```c
struct ble_ext_adv_stop_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate advertising stop operation success status

```c
struct ble_ext_conn_params_set_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PREFER_EXT_CONN_PARAMS_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate extend connection parameters set status

```c
struct ble_ext_scan_start_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_START_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate extend advertising start status

```c
struct ble_ext_scan_stop_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT.
```
Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate extend advertising stop status

```c
struct ble_get_bond_dev_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_GET_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate the get bond device operation success status

```c
uint8_t dev_num
```
Indicate the get number device in the bond list

```c
esp_ble_bond_dev_t *bond_dev
```
the pointer to the bond device Structure

```c
struct ble_local_privacy_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_LOCAL_PRIVACY_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate the set local privacy operation success status

```c
struct ble_period_adv_add_dev_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_ADD_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate periodic advertising device list add status

```c
struct ble_period_adv_clear_dev_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_CLEAR_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate periodic advertising device list clean status

```c
struct ble_period_adv_create_sync_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_CREATE_SYNC_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
```
Indicate periodic advertising create sync status

```c
struct ble_period_adv_remove_dev_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_REMOVE_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT.
```
Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate periodic advertising device list remove status

`struct ble_period_adv_sync_cancel_cmpl_param`
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_CANCEL_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate periodic advertising sync cancel status

`struct ble_period_adv_sync_terminate_cmpl_param`
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_TERMINATE_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate periodic advertising sync terminate status

`struct ble_periodic_adv_data_set_cmpl_param`
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate periodic advertising data set status

`struct ble_periodic_adv_report_param`
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_REPORT_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t params`
periodic advertising report parameters

`struct ble_periodic_adv_set_params_cmpl_param`
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SET_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate periodic advertising parameters set status

`struct ble_periodic_adv_start_cmpl_param`
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_START_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate periodic advertising start status

`struct ble_periodic_adv_stop_cmpl_param`
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT.
Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
  Indicate periodic advertising stop status
```

```c
struct ble_periodic_adv_sync_estab_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_ESTAB_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
uint8_t status
  periodic advertising sync status
```

```c
uint16_t sync_handle
  periodic advertising sync handle
```

```c
uint8_t sid
  periodic advertising sid
```

```c
esp_ble_addr_type_t adv_addr_type
  periodic advertising address type
```

```c
esp_bd_addr_t adv_addr
  periodic advertising address
```

```c
esp_ble_gap_phy_t adv_phy
  periodic advertising phy type
```

```c
uint16_t period_adv_interval
  periodic advertising interval
```

```c
uint8_t adv_clk_accuracy
  periodic advertising clock accuracy
```

```c
struct ble_periodic_adv_sync_lost_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_LOST_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
uint16_t sync_handle
  sync handle
```

```c
struct ble_phy_update_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_PHY_UPDATE_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t status
  phy update status
```

```c
esp_bd_addr_t bda
  address
```

```c
esp_ble_gap_phy_t tx_phy
  tx phy type
```

```c
esp_ble_gap_phy_t rx_phy
  rx phy type
```

```c
struct ble_pkt_data_length_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PKT_LENGTH_COMPLETE_EVT.
```
Public Members

```c
esp.bt_status_t status
```
Indicate the set pkt data length operation success status

```c
esp.ble_pkt_data_length_params_t params
```
pkt data length value

```c
struct ble_read_phy_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_READ_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp.bt_status_t status
```
read phy complete status

```c
esp.bd_addr_t bda
```
read phy address

```c
esp.ble_gap_phy_t tx_phy
```
tx phy type

```c
esp.ble_gap_phy_t rx_phy
```
rx phy type

```c
struct ble_read_rssi_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_READ_RSSI_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp.bt_status_t status
```
Indicate the read adv tx power operation success status

```c
int8_t rssi
```
The ble remote device rssi value, the range is from -127 to 20, the unit is dbm, if the RSSI cannot be read, the RSSI metric shall be set to 127.

```c
esp.bd_addr_t remote_addr
```
The remote device address

```c
struct ble_remove_bond_dev_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_REMOVE_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp.bt_status_t status
```
Indicate the remove bond device operation success status

```c
esp.bd_addr_t bd_addr
```
The device address which has been remove from the bond list

```c
struct ble_scan_param_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_PARAM_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp.bt_status_t status
```
Indicate the set scan param operation success status
struct ble_scan_req_received_param
#include "esp_gap_ble_api.h" ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_REQ_RECEIVED_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t adv_instance
    extend advertising handle

esp_ble_addr_type_t scan_addr_type
    scanner address type

esp_bd_addr_t scan_addr
    scanner address

struct ble_scan_result_evt_param
#include "esp_gap_ble_api.h" ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RESULT_EVT.

Public Members

esp_gap_search_evt_t search_evt
    Search event type

esp_bd_addr_t bda
    Bluetooth device address which has been searched

esp_bt_dev_type_t dev_type
    Device type

esp_ble_addr_type_t ble_addr_type
    Ble device address type

esp_ble_evt_type_t ble_evt_type
    Ble scan result event type

int rssi
    Searched device’s RSSI

uint8_t ble_adv[ESP_BLE_ADV_DATA_LEN_MAX + ESP_BLE_SCAN_RSP_DATA_LEN_MAX]
    Received EIR

int flag
    Advertising data flag bit

int num_resps
    Scan result number

uint8_t adv_data_len
    Adv data length

uint8_t scan_rsp_len
    Scan response length

uint32_t num_dis
    The number of discard packets

struct ble_scan_rsp_data_cmpl_evt_param
#include "esp_gap_ble_api.h" ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RSP_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
    Indicate the set scan response data operation success status
struct ble_scan_rsp_data_raw_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> 
ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RSP_DATA_RAW_SET_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate the set raw advertising data operation success status

struct ble_scan_start_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> 
ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_START_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate scan start operation success status

struct ble_scan_stop_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> 
ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate scan stop operation success status

struct ble_set_channels_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> 
ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_CHANNELS_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t stats
BLE set channel status

struct ble_set_ext_scan_params_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> 
ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_EXT_SCAN_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate extend advertising parameters set status

struct ble_set_perf_def_phy_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> 
ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PREFERED_DEFAULT_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bt_status_t status
Indicate perf default phy set status

struct ble_set_perf_phy_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h> 
ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PREFERED_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT.
Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate perf phy set status

```c
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h>
ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_STATIC_RAND_ADDR_EVT.
```

**struct ble_set_rand_cmpl_evt_param**

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate set static rand address operation success status

```c
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h>
ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_CONN_PARAMS_EVT.
```

**struct ble_update_conn_params_evt_param**

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate update connection parameters success status

```c
dsp_bd_addr_t bda
    Bluetooth device address
uint16_t min_int
    Min connection interval
uint16_t max_int
    Max connection interval
uint16_t latency
    Slave latency for the connection in number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3
uint16_t conn_int
    Current connection interval
uint16_t timeout
    Supervision timeout for the LE Link. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80. Mandatory Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80 Time = N * 10 msec
```

**struct ble_update_duplicate_exceptional_list_cmpl_evt_param**

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate update duplicates can exceptionallist operations success status

```c
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h>
ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_DUPLICATE_EXCEPTIONAL_LIST_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

**struct ble_update_whitelist_cmpl_evt_param**

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate update duplicate scan exceptional list operation success status

```c
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h>
ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_WHITELIST_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

**struct ble_update_duplicate_exceptional_list_cmpl_evt_param**

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate update duplicates can exceptionallist operations success status

```c
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h>
ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_DUPLICATE_EXCEPTIONAL_LIST_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

**struct ble_update_whitelist_cmpl_evt_param**

Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate update duplicate scan exceptional list operation success status

```c
#include <esp_gap_ble_api.h>
ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_WHITELIST_COMPLETE_EVT.
```
Public Members

`esp_bt_status_t status`
Indicate the add or remove whitelist operation success status

`esp_ble_wl_operation_t wl_operation`
The value is ESP_BLE_WHITELIST_ADD if add address to whitelist operation success, ESP_BLE_WHITELIST_REMOVE if remove address from the whitelist operation success

Structures

`struct esp_ble_adv_params_t`
Advertising parameters.

Public Members

uint16_t `adv_int_min`
Minimum advertising interval for undirected and low duty cycle directed advertising. Range: 0x0020 to 0x4000 Default: N = 0x0800 (1.28 second) Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 20 ms to 10.24 sec

uint16_t `adv_int_max`
Maximum advertising interval for undirected and low duty cycle directed advertising. Range: 0x0020 to 0x4000 Default: N = 0x0800 (1.28 second) Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 20 ms to 10.24 sec

`esp_ble_adv_type_t adv_type`
Advertising type

`esp_ble_addr_type_t own_addr_type`
Owner bluetooth device address type

`esp_bd_addr_t peer_addr`
Peer device bluetooth device address

`esp_ble_addr_type_t peer_addr_type`
Peer device bluetooth device address type, only support public address type and random address type

`esp_ble_adv_channel_t channel_map`
Advertising channel map

`esp_ble_adv_filter_t adv_filter_policy`
Advertising filter policy

`struct esp_ble_adv_data_t`
Advertising data content, according to “Supplement to the Bluetooth Core Specification”.

Public Members

bool `set_scan_rsp`
Set this advertising data as scan response or not

bool `include_name`
Advertising data include device name or not

bool `include_txpower`
Advertising data include TX power

int `min_interval`
Advertising data show slave preferred connection min interval. The connection interval in the following manner: connIntervalMin = Conn_Interval_Min * 1.25 ms Conn_Interval_Min range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Value of 0xFFFF indicates no specific minimum. Values not defined above are reserved for future use.
int max_interval
Advertising data show slave preferred connection max interval. The connection interval in the following manner: connIntervalmax = Conn_Interval_Max * 1.25 ms Conn_Interval_Max range: 0x0006 to 0x0C80 Conn_Interval_Max shall be equal to or greater than the Conn_Interval_Min. Value of 0xFFFF indicates no specific maximum. Values not defined above are reserved for future use.

int appearance
External appearance of device

uint16_t manufacturer_len
Manufacturer data length

uint8_t *p_manufacturer_data
Manufacturer data point

uint16_t service_data_len
Service data length

uint8_t *p_service_data
Service data point

uint16_t service_uuid_len
Service uuid length

uint8_t *p_service_uuid
Service uuid array point

uint8_t flag
Advertising flag of discovery mode, see BLE_ADV_DATA_FLAG detail

struct esp_ble_scan_params_t
Ble scan parameters.

Public Members

esp_ble_scan_type_t scan_type
Scan type

esp_ble_addr_type_t own_addr_type
Owner address type

esp_ble_scan_filter_t scan_filter_policy
Scan filter policy

uint16_t scan_interval
Scan interval. This is defined as the time interval from when the Controller started its last LE scan until it begins the subsequent LE scan. Range: 0x0004 to 0x4000 Default: 0x0010 (10 ms) Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 2.5 msec to 10.24 seconds

uint16_t scan_window
Scan window. The duration of the LE scan. LE_Scan_Window shall be less than or equal to LE_Scan_Interval Range: 0x0004 to 0x4000 Default: 0x0010 (10 ms) Time = N * 0.625 msec Time Range: 2.5 msec to 10240 msec

esp_ble_scan_duplicate_t scan_duplicate
The Scan_Duplicates parameter controls whether the Link Layer should filter out duplicate advertising reports (BLE_SCAN_DUPLICATE_ENABLE) to the Host, or if the Link Layer should generate advertising reports for each packet received

struct esp_gap_conn_params_t
connection parameters information
Public Members

uint16_t interval
  connection interval

uint16_t latency
  Slave latency for the connection in number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3

uint16_t timeout
  Supervision timeout for the LE Link. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80. Mandatory Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80
  Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 100 msec to 32 seconds

struct esp_ble_conn_update_params_t
  Connection update parameters.

Public Members

esp_bd_addr_t bda
  Bluetooth device address

uint16_t min_int
  Min connection interval

uint16_t max_int
  Max connection interval

uint16_t latency
  Slave latency for the connection in number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3

uint16_t timeout
  Supervision timeout for the LE Link. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80. Mandatory Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80
  Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 100 msec to 32 seconds

struct esp_ble_pkt_data_length_params_t
  BLE pkt data length keys.

Public Members

uint16_t rx_len
  pkt rx data length value

uint16_t tx_len
  pkt tx data length value

struct esp_ble_penc_keys_t
  BLE encryption keys.

Public Members

esp_bt_octet16_t ltk
  The long term key

esp_bt_octet8_t rand
  The random number

uint16_t ediv
  The ediv value

uint8_t sec_level
  The security level of the security link

uint8_t key_size
  The key size (7~16) of the security link
struct esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t
    BLE CSRK keys.

    Public Members

    uint32_t counter
        The counter
    esp_bt_octet16_t csrk
        The csrk key
    uint8_t sec_level
        The security level

struct esp_ble_pid_keys_t
    BLE pid keys.

    Public Members

    esp_bt_octet16_t irk
        The irk value
    esp_ble_addr_type_t addr_type
        The address type
    esp_bd_addr_t static_addr
        The static address

struct esp_ble_lenc_keys_t
    BLE Encryption reproduction keys.

    Public Members

    esp_bt_octet16_t ltk
        The long term key
    uint16_t div
        The div value
    uint8_t key_size
        The key size of the security link
    uint8_t sec_level
        The security level of the security link

struct esp_ble_lcsrk_keys
    BLE SRK keys.

    Public Members

    uint32_t counter
        The counter value
    uint16_t div
        The div value
    uint8_t sec_level
        The security level of the security link
    esp_bt_octet16_t csrk
        The csrk key value
**struct esp_ble_sec_key_notif_t**
Structure associated with ESP_KEY_NOTIF_EVT.

**Public Members**

`esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr`
peer address

`uint32_t passkey`
the numeric value for comparison. If just_works, do not show this number to UI

**struct esp_ble_sec_req_t**
Structure of the security request.

**Public Members**

`esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr`
peer address

**struct esp_ble_bond_key_info_t**
struct type of the bond key information value

**Public Members**

`esp_ble_key_mask_t key_mask`
the key mask to indicate which key is present

`esp_ble_penc_keys_t penc_key`
received peer encryption key

`esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t pcsrk_key`
received peer device SRK

`esp_ble_pid_keys_t pid_key`
peer device ID key

**struct esp_ble_bond_dev_t**
struct type of the bond device value

**Public Members**

`esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr`
peer address

`esp_ble_bond_key_info_t bond_key`
the bond key information

**struct esp_ble_key_t**
union type of the security key value

**Public Members**

`esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr`
peer address

`esp_ble_key_type_t key_type`
key type of the security link

`esp_ble_key_value_t p_key_value`
the pointer to the key value
struct esp_ble_local_id_keys_t
  structure type of the ble local id keys value

Public Members

esp_bt_octet16_t ir
  the 16 bits of the ir value

esp_bt_octet16_t irk
  the 16 bits of the ir key value

esp_bt_octet16_t dhk
  the 16 bits of the dh key value

struct esp_ble_auth_cmpl_t
  Structure associated with ESP_AUTH_CMPL_EVT.

Public Members

esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr
  BD address peer device.

bool key_present
  Valid link key value in key element

esp_link_key key
  Link key associated with peer device.

uint8_t key_type
  The type of Link Key

bool success
  TRUE of authentication succeeded, FALSE if failed.

uint8_t fail_reason
  The HCI reason/error code for when success=FALSE

esp_ble_addr_type_t addr_type
  Peer device address type

esp_bt_dev_type_t dev_type
  Device type

esp_ble_auth_req_t auth_mode
  authentication mode

struct esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_params_t
  ext adv parameters

Public Members

esp_ble_ext_adv_type_mask_t type
  ext adv type

uint32_t interval_min
  ext adv minimum interval

uint32_t interval_max
  ext adv maximum interval

esp_ble_adv_channel_t channel_map
  ext adv channel map
```c
esp_ble_addr_type_t own_addr_type
    ext adv own address type

esp_ble_addr_type_t peer_addr_type
    ext adv peer address type

esp_bd_addr_t peer_addr
    ext adv peer address

esp_ble_adv_filter_t filter_policy
    ext adv filter policy

int8_t tx_power
    ext adv tx power

esp_ble_gap_pri_phy_t primary_phy
    ext adv primary phy

uint8_t max_skip
    ext adv maximum skip

esp_ble_gap_phy_t secondary_phy
    ext adv secondary phy

uint8_t sid
    ext adv sid

bool scan_req_notif
    ext adv scan request event notify

struct esp_ble_ext_scan_cfg_t
    ext scan config

Public Members

esp_ble_scan_type_t scan_type
    ext scan type

uint16_t scan_interval
    ext scan interval

uint16_t scan_window
    ext scan window

struct esp_ble_ext_scan_params_t
    ext scan parameters

Public Members

esp_ble_addr_type_t own_addr_type
    ext scan own address type

esp_ble_scan_filter_t filter_policy
    ext scan filter policy

esp_ble_scan_duplicate_t scan_duplicate
    ext scan duplicate scan

esp_ble_ext_scan_cfg_mask_t cfg_mask
    ext scan config mask

esp_ble_ext_scan_cfg_t uncoded_cfg
    ext scan uncoded config parameters

dsp_ble_ext_scan_cfg_t coded_cfg
    ext scan coded config parameters
```
**struct esp_ble_gap_conn_params_t**
create extend connection parameters

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t scan_interval`
  - init scan interval
- `uint16_t scan_window`
  - init scan window
- `uint16_t interval_min`
  - minimum interval
- `uint16_t interval_max`
  - maximum interval
- `uint16_t latency`
  - ext scan type
- `uint16_t supervision_timeout`
  - connection supervision timeout
- `uint16_t min_ce_len`
  - minimum ce length
- `uint16_t max_ce_len`
  - maximum ce length

**struct esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_t**
extend adv enable parameters

**Public Members**

- `uint8_t instance`
  - advertising handle
- `int duration`
  - advertising duration
- `int max_events`
  - maximum number of extended advertising events

**struct esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t**
periodic adv parameters

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t interval_min`
  - periodic advertising minimum interval
- `uint16_t interval_max`
  - periodic advertising maximum interval
- `uint8_t properties`
  - periodic advertising properties

**struct esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_params_t**
periodic adv sync parameters

---

Espressif Systems

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback
Public Members

`esp_ble_gap_sync_t filter_policy`
periodic advertising sync filter policy

`uint8_t sid`
periodic advertising sid

`esp_ble_addr_type_t addr_type`
periodic advertising address type

`esp_bd_addr_t addr`
periodic advertising address

`uint16_t skip`
the maximum number of periodic advertising events that can be skipped

`uint16_t sync_timeout`
synchronization timeout

`struct esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_report_t`
extend adv report parameters

Public Members

`esp_ble_gap_adv_type_t event_type`
extend advertising type

`uint8_t addr_type`
extend advertising address type

`esp_bd_addr_t addr`
extend advertising address

`esp_ble_gap_pri_phy_t primary_phy`
extend advertising primary phy

`esp_ble_gap_phy_t secondary_phy`
extend advertising secondary phy

`uint8_t sid`
extend advertising sid

`uint8_t tx_power`
extend advertising tx power

`int8_t rssi`
extend advertising rssi

`uint16_t per_adv_interval`
periodic advertising interval

`uint8_t dir_addr_type`
direct address type

`esp_bd_addr_t dir_addr`
direct address

`esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_data_status_t data_status`
data type

`uint8_t adv_data_len`
extend advertising data length

`uint8_t adv_data[251]`
extend advertising data
struct esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t
   periodic adv report parameters

Public Members

uint16_t sync_handle
   periodic advertising train handle
uint8_t tx_power
   periodic advertising tx power
int8_t rssi
   periodic advertising rssi

esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_data_status_t data_status
   periodic advertising data type

uint8_t data_length
   periodic advertising data length

uint8_t data[251]
   periodic advertising data

struct esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t
   periodic adv sync establish parameters

Public Members

uint8_t status
   periodic advertising sync status

uint16_t sync_handle
   periodic advertising train handle
uint8_t sid
   periodic advertising sid

esp_ble_addr_type_t addr_type
   periodic advertising address type

esp_bd_addr_t adv_addr
   periodic advertising address

esp_ble_gap_phy_t adv_phy
   periodic advertising adv phy type

uint16_t period_adv_interval
   periodic advertising interval

uint8_t adv_clk_accuracy
   periodic advertising clock accuracy

Macros

ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_LIMIT_DISC
   BLE_ADV_DATA_FLAG data flag bit definition used for advertising data flag
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_GEN_DISC
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_BREDR_NOT_SPT
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_DMT_CONTROLLER_SPT
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_DMT_HOST_SPT
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_NON_LIMIT_DISC
ESP_LE_KEY_NONE
ESP_LE_KEY_PENC
ESP_LE_KEY_PID
ESP_LE_KEY_PCSRK
ESP_LE_KEY_PLK
ESP_LE_KEY_LLK
ESP_LE_KEY_LENC
ESP_LE_KEY_LID
ESP_LE_KEY_LCSRK
ESP_LE_AUTH_NO_BOND
ESP_LE_AUTH_BOND
ESP_LE_AUTH_REQ_MITM
ESP_LE_AUTH_REQ_BOND_MITM
0101
ESP_LE_AUTH_REQ_SC_ONLY
ESP_LE_AUTH_REQ_SC_BOND
ESP_LE_AUTH_REQ_SC_MITM
ESP_LE_AUTH_REQ_SC_MITM_BOND
ESP_BLE_ONLY_ACCEPT_SPECIFIED_AUTH_DISABLE
ESP_BLE_ONLY_ACCEPT_SPECIFIED_AUTH_ENABLE
ESP_BLE_OOB_DISABLE
ESP_BLE_OOB_ENABLE
ESP_IO_CAP_OUT
ESP_IO_CAP_IO
ESP_IO_CAP_IN
ESP_IO_CAP_NONE
ESP_IO_CAP_KBDISP
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_UNKNOWN
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_PHONE
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_COMPUTER
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_WATCH
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_SPORTS_WATCH
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_CLOCK
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_DISPLAY
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_REMOTE
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_EYEGlasses
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_TAG
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_KEYRING
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_MEDIA_PLAYER
Chapter 2. API Reference

- ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_INSULIN_PEN
- ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_MEDICATION_DELIVERY
- ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_OUTDOOR_SPORTS
- ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_OUTDOOR_SPORTS_LOCATION
- ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_OUTDOOR_SPORTS_LOCATION_AND_NAV
- ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_OUTDOOR_SPORTS_LOCATION_POD
- ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_OUTDOOR_SPORTS_LOCATION_POD_AND_NAV
- ESP_GAP_BLE_CHANNELS_LEN
- ESP_GAP_BLE_ADD_WHITELIST_COMPLETE_EVT
  
  This is the old name, just for backwards compatibility.
- ESP_BLE_ADV_DATA_LEN_MAX
  
  Advertising data maximum length.
- ESP_BLE_SCAN_RSP_DATA_LEN_MAX
  
  Scan response data maximum length.

**BLE_BIT (n)**

- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_NONCONN_NONSCANNABLE_UNDIRECTED
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_CONNECTABLE
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_SCANNABLE
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_DIRECTED
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_HD_DIRECTED
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_LEGACY
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_ANON_ADV
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_INCLUDE_TX_PWR
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_MASK
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_LEGACY_IND
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_LEGACY_LD_DIR
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_LEGACY_HD_DIR
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_LEGACY_SCAN
- ESP_BLE_GAP_SET_EXT_ADV_PROP_LEGACY_NONCONN
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_1M
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_2M
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_CODED
- ESP_BLE_GAP_NO_PREFER_TRANSMIT_PHY
- ESP_BLE_GAP_NO_PREFER_RECEIVE_PHY
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PRI_PHY_1M
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PRI_PHY_CODED
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_1M_PREF_MASK
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_2M_PREF_MASK
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_CODED_PREF_MASK
- ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_OPTIONS_NO_PREF
Chapter 2. API

ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_OPTIONS_PREF_S2_CODING
ESP_BLE_GAP_PHY_OPTIONS_PREF_S8_CODING
ESP_BLE_GAP_EXT.Scan_CFG_UNICODE_MASK
ESP_BLE_GAP_EXT.Scan_CFG_CODE_MASK
ESP_BLE_GAP_EXT_ADV_DATA_COMPLETE
ESP_BLE_GAP_EXT_ADV_DATA_INCOMPLETE
ESP_BLE_GAP_EXT_ADV_DATA_TRUNCATED
ESP_BLE_GAP_SYNC_POLICY_BY_ADV_INFO
ESP_BLE_GAP_SYNC_POLICY_BY_PERIODIC_LIST
ESP_BLE_ADV_REPORT_EXT_ADV_IND
ESP_BLE_ADV_REPORT_EXT_SCAN_IND
ESP_BLE_ADV_REPORT_EXT_DIRECT_ADV
ESP_BLE_ADV_REPORT_EXT_SCAN_RSP
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_IND
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_DIRECT_IND
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE.Scan_IND
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_NONCON_IND
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_SCAN_RSP_TO_ADV_IND
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_SCAN_RSP_TO_ADV_SCAN_IND

Type Definitions

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_key_type_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_auth_req_t

combination of the above bit pattern

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_io_cap_t

combination of the io capability

typedef uint8_t esp_gap_ble_channels[ESP_GAP_BLE_CHANNELS_LEN]

typedef uint8_t esp_duplicate_info_t[ESP_BD_ADDR_LEN]

typedef uint16_t esp_ble_ext_adv_type_mask_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_gap_phy_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_gap_all_phys_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_gap_pri_phy_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_gap_phy_mask_t

typedef uint16_t esp_ble_gap_prefer_phy_options_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_ext_scan_cfg_mask_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_data_status_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_gap_sync_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_gap_adv_type_t

typedef void (*esp_gap_ble_cb_t)(esp_gap_ble_cb_event_t event, esp_gap_ble_cb_param_t *param)

GAP callback function type.
Parameters

- event: Event type
- param: Point to callback parameter, currently is union type

Enumerations

```c
enum esp_gap_ble_cb_event_t
{
    ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT = 0,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RSP_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_PARAM_SET_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RESULT_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_DATA_RAW_SET_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RSP_DATA_RAW_SET_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_START_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_START_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_AUTH_CMPL_EVT = 8,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_KEY_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SEC_REQ_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_PASSKEY_NOTIF_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_PASSKEY_REQ_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_OOB_REQ_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_LOCAL_IR_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_LOCAL_ER_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_NC_REQ_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_STATIC_RAND_ADDR_EVT = 19,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_CONN_PARAMS_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PKT_LENGTH_COMPLETE_EVT,
    ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_LOCAL_PRIVACY_COMPLETE_EVT
};
```
ESP_GAP_BLE_REMOVE_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT
   When remove the bond device complete, the event comes

ESP_GAP_BLE_CLEAR_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT
   When clear the bond device clear complete, the event comes

ESP_GAP_BLE_GET_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT
   When get the bond device list complete, the event comes

ESP_GAP_BLE_READ_RSSI_COMPLETE_EVT
   When read the rssi complete, the event comes

ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_WHITELIST_COMPLETE_EVT
   When add or remove whitelist complete, the event comes

ESP_GAP_BLE_UPDATE_DUPLICATE_EXCEPTIONAL_LIST_COMPLETE_EVT
   When update duplicate exceptional list complete, the event comes

ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_CHANNELS_EVT = 29
   When setting BLE channels complete, the event comes

ESP_GAP_BLE_READ_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PREFERENCES_DEFAULT_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_PREFERENCES_PHY_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_RANDOM_ADDR_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_RSP_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_START_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_REMOVE_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_CLEAR_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_DATA_SET_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_START_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_CREATE_SYNC_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_CANCEL_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_TERMINATE_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_ADD_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_REMOVE_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_CLEAR_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_SET_EXT_SCAN_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_START_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_SCAN_STOP_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_SET_EXT_CONN_PARAMS_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PHY_UPDATE_COMPLETE_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EXT_ADV_REPORT_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_TIMEOUT_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_ADV_TERMINATED_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_REQ_RECEIVED_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_CHANNEL_SELECT_ALGORITHM_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_REPORT_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_LOST_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_PERIODIC_ADV_SYNC_ESTAB_EVT
ESP_GAP_BLE_EVT_MAX

enum esp_ble_adv_data_type
The type of advertising data (not adv_type)

Values:
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_FLAG = 0x01
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_16SRV_PART = 0x02
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_16SRV_CMPL = 0x03
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_32SRV_PART = 0x04
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_32SRV_CMPL = 0x05
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_128SRV_PART = 0x06
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_128SRV_CMPL = 0x07
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_NAME_SHORT = 0x08
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_NAME_CMPL = 0x09
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_TX_PWR = 0x0A
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_DEV_CLASS = 0x0D
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_SM_TK = 0x10
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_SM_OOB_FLAG = 0x11
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_INT_RANGE = 0x12
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_SOL_SRV_UUID = 0x14
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_128SOL_SRV_UUID = 0x15
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_SERVICE_DATA = 0x16
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_PUBLIC_TARGET = 0x17
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_RANDOM_TARGET = 0x18
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_APPEARANCE = 0x19
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_ADV_INT = 0x1A
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_LE_DEV_ADDR = 0x1B
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_LE_ROLE = 0x1C
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_SPAIR_C256 = 0x1D
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_SPAIR_R256 = 0x1E
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_32SOL_SRV_UUID = 0x1F
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_32SERVICE_DATA = 0x20
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_128SERVICE_DATA = 0x21
ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_LE_SECURE_CONFIRM = 0x22
### ESP_BLE_ADV_TYPE
- **ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_LE_SECURE_RANDOM** = 0x23
- **ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_URI** = 0x24
- **ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_INDOOR_POSITION** = 0x25
- **ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_TRANS_DISC_DATA** = 0x26
- **ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_LE_SUPPORT_FEATURE** = 0x27
- **ESP_BLE_AD_TYPE_CHAN_MAP_UPDATE** = 0x28
- **ESP_BLE_AD_MANUFACTURER_SPECIFIC_TYPE** = 0xFF

```c
enum esp_ble_adv_type_t

Advertising mode.

Values:

ADV_TYPE_IND = 0x00
ADV_TYPE_DIRECT_IND_HIGH = 0x01
ADV_TYPE_SCAN_IND = 0x02
ADV_TYPE_NONCONN_IND = 0x03
ADV_TYPE_DIRECT_IND_LOW = 0x04
```

### ESP_BLE_ADV_CHANNEL
- **ADV_CHNL_37** = 0x01
- **ADV_CHNL_38** = 0x02
- **ADV_CHNL_39** = 0x04
- **ADV_CHNL_ALL** = 0x07

```c
enum esp_ble_adv_channel_t

Advertising channel mask.

Values:

ADV_CHNL_37 = 0x01
ADV_CHNL_38 = 0x02
ADV_CHNL_39 = 0x04
ADV_CHNL_ALL = 0x07
```

### ESP_BLE_ADV_FILTER
- **ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_ANY_CON_ANY** = 0x00
- **ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_WLST_CON_ANY**
  - Allow both scan requests from anyone.
- **ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_ANY_CON_WLST**
  - Allow both scan requests from anyone and connection request from anyone.
- **ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_WLST_CON_WLST**
  - Allow scan and connection requests from White List devices only.

```c
enum esp_ble_adv_filter_t

Values:

ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_ANY_CON_ANY = 0x00
ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_WLST_CON_ANY
ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_ANY_CON_WLST
ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_WLST_CON_WLST
```

### ESP_BLE_SEC_ACT
- **ESP_BLE_SEC_ENCRYPT** = 1
- **ESP_BLE_SEC_ENCRYPT_NO_MITM**
- **ESP_BLE_SEC_ENCRYPT_MITM**

```c
enum esp_ble_sec_act_t

Values:

ESP_BLE_SEC_ENCRYPT = 1
ESP_BLE_SEC_ENCRYPT_NO_MITM
ESP_BLE_SEC_ENCRYPT_MITM
```

### ESP_BLE_SM_PARAM
- **ESP_BLE_SM_PASSKEY** = 0
- **ESP_BLE_SM_AUTHEN_REQ_MODE**
- **ESP_BLE_SM_IOCAP_MODE**

```c
enum esp_ble_sm_param_t

Values:

ESP_BLE_SM_PASSKEY = 0
ESP_BLE_SM_AUTHEN_REQ_MODE
ESP_BLE_SM_IOCAP_MODE
```
ESP_BLE_SM_SET_INIT_KEY
ESP_BLE_SM_SET_RSP_KEY
ESP_BLE_SM_MAX_KEY_SIZE
ESP_BLE_SM_MIN_KEY_SIZE
ESP_BLE_SM_SET_STATIC_PASSKEY
ESP_BLE_SM_CLEAR_STATIC_PASSKEY
ESP_BLE_SM_ONLY_ACCEPT_SPECIFIED_SEC_AUTH
ESP_BLE_SM_OOB_SUPPORT
ESP_BLE_APP_ENC_KEY_SIZE
ESP_BLE_SM_MAX_PARAM

enum esp_ble_scan_type_t
Ble scan type.
Values:
BLE_SCAN_TYPE_PASSIVE = 0x0
Passive scan
BLE_SCAN_TYPE_ACTIVE = 0x1
Active scan

enum esp_ble_scan_filter_t
Ble scan filter type.
Values:
BLE_SCAN_FILTER_ALLOW_ALL = 0x0
Accept all:
1. advertisement packets except directed advertising packets not addressed to this device (default).

BLE_SCAN_FILTER_ALLOW_ONLY_WLST = 0x1
Accept only:
1. advertisement packets from devices where the advertiser’s address is in the White list.
2. Directed advertising packets which are not addressed for this device shall be ignored.

BLE_SCAN_FILTER_ALLOW_UND_RPA_DIR = 0x2
Accept all:
1. undirected advertisement packets, and
2. directed advertising packets where the initiator address is a resolvable private address, and
3. directed advertising packets addressed to this device.

BLE_SCAN_FILTER_ALLOW_WLIST_RPA_DIR = 0x3
Accept all:
1. advertisement packets from devices where the advertiser’s address is in the White list, and
2. directed advertising packets where the initiator address is a resolvable private address, and
3. directed advertising packets addressed to this device.

enum esp_ble_scan_duplicate_t
Ble scan duplicate type.
Values:
BLE_SCAN_DUPLICATE_DISABLE = 0x0
the Link Layer should generate advertising reports to the host for each packet received
BLE_SCAN_DUPLICATE_ENABLE = 0x1
the Link Layer should filter out duplicate advertising reports to the Host
BLE_SCAN_DUPLICATE_MAX = 0x2
0x02~0xFF, Reserved for future use

enum esp_gap_search_evt_t
    Sub Event of ESP_GAP_BLE_SCAN_RESULT_EVT.
    Values:
    
    ESP_GAP_SEARCH_INQ_RES_EVT = 0
    Inquiry result for a peer device.
    ESP_GAP_SEARCH_INQ_CMPL_EVT = 1
    Inquiry complete.
    ESP_GAP_SEARCH_DISC_RES_EVT = 2
    Discovery result for a peer device.
    ESP_GAP_SEARCH_DISC_BLE_RES_EVT = 3
    Discovery result for BLE GATT based service on a peer device.
    ESP_GAP_SEARCH_DISC_CMPL_EVT = 4
    Discovery complete.
    ESP_GAP_SEARCH_DISC_BLE_CMPL_EVT = 5
    Discovery complete.
    ESP_GAP_SEARCH_SEARCH_CANCEL_CMPL_EVT = 6
    Search cancelled.
    ESP_GAP_SEARCH_INQ_DISCARD_NUM_EVT = 7
    The number of pkt discarded by flow control.

enum esp_ble_evt_type_t
    Ble scan result event type, to indicate the result is scan response or advertising data or other.
    Values:
    
    ESP_BLE_EVT_CONN_ADV = 0x00
    Connectable undirected advertising (ADV_IND).
    ESP_BLE_EVT_CONN_DIR_ADV = 0x01
    Connectable directed advertising (ADV_DIRECT_IND).
    ESP_BLE_EVT_DISC_ADV = 0x02
    Scannable undirected advertising (ADV_SCAN_IND).
    ESP_BLE_EVT_NON_CONN_ADV = 0x03
    Non connectable undirected advertising (ADV_NONCONN_IND).
    ESP_BLE_EVT_SCAN_RSP = 0x04
    Scan Response (SCAN_RSP).

enum esp_ble_wl_operation_t
    Values:
    
    ESP_BLE_WHITELIST_REMOVE = 0X00
    remove mac from whitelist.
    ESP_BLE_WHITELIST_ADD = 0X01
    add address to whitelist.

enum esp_bt_duplicate_exceptional_subcode_type_t
    Values:
    
    ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_EXCEPTIONAL_LIST_ADD = 0
    Add device info into duplicate scan exceptional list.
    ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_EXCEPTIONAL_LIST_REMOVE
    Remove device info from duplicate scan exceptional list.
**ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_EXCEPTIONAL_LIST_CLEAN**
Clean duplicate scan exceptional list

**enum esp_ble_duplicate_exceptional_info_type_t**

*Values:*

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_INFO_ADV_ADDR** = 0
  BLE advertising address, device info will be added into ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_ADDR_LIST

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_INFO_MESH_LINK_ID**
  BLE mesh link ID, it is for BLE mesh, device info will be added into ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_MESH_LINK_ID_LIST

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_INFO_MESH_BEACON_TYPE**
  BLE mesh beacon AD type, the format is | Len | 0x2B | Beacon Type | Beacon Data |

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_INFO_MESH_PROV_SRV_ADV**
  BLE mesh provisioning service uuid, the format is | 0x02 | 0x01 | flags | 0x03 | 0x03 | 0x1827 | ...

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_INFO_MESH_PROXY_SRV_ADV**
  BLE mesh adv with proxy service uuid, the format is | 0x02 | 0x01 | flags | 0x03 | 0x03 | 0x1828 | ...

**enum esp_duplicate_scan_exceptional_list_type_t**

*Values:*

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_ADDR_LIST** = BLE_BIT(0)
  duplicate scan exceptional addr list

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_MESH_LINK_ID_LIST** = BLE_BIT(1)
  duplicate scan exceptional mesh link ID list

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_MESH_BEACON_TYPE_LIST** = BLE_BIT(2)
  duplicate scan exceptional mesh beacon type list

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_MESH_PROV_SRV_ADV_LIST** = BLE_BIT(3)
  duplicate scan exceptional mesh adv with provisioning service uuid

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_MESH_PROXY_SRV_ADV_LIST** = BLE_BIT(4)
  duplicate scan exceptional mesh adv with provisioning service uuid

- **ESP_BLE_DUPLICATE_SCAN_EXCEPTIONAL_ALL_LIST** = 0xFFFF
  duplicate scan exceptional all list

**GATT DEFINES**

**Overview**  Instructions

**Application Example**  Instructions

**API Reference**

**Header File**
- components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_gatt_defs.h

**Unions**

union esp_gatt_rsp_t

`#include <esp_gatt_defs.h>` GATT remote read request response type.
Chapter 2. API 参考

Public Members

`esp_gatt_value_t attr_value`
Gatt attribute structure

`uint16_t handle`
Gatt attribute handle

Structures

`struct esp_gatt_id_t`
Gatt id, include uuid and instance id.

Public Members

`esp_bt_uuid_t uuid`
UUID

`uint8_t inst_id`
Instance id

`struct esp_gatt_srvc_id_t`
Gatt service id, include id (uuid and instance id) and primary flag.

Public Members

`esp_gatt_id_t id`
Gatt id, include uuid and instance

`bool is_primary`
This service is primary or not

`struct esp_attr_desc_t`
Attribute description (used to create database)

Public Members

`uint16_t uuid_length`
UUID length

`uint8_t* uuid_p`
UUID value

`uint16_t perm`
Attribute permission

`uint16_t max_length`
Maximum length of the element

`uint16_t length`
Current length of the element

`uint8_t* value`
Element value array

`struct esp_attr_control_t`
attribute auto response flag
Public Members

uint8_t auto_rsp
if auto_rsp set to ESP_GATT_RSP_BY_APP, means the response of Write/Read operation will by
replied by application. if auto_rsp set to ESP_GATT_AUTO_RSP, means the response of Write/Read
operation will be replied by GATT stack automatically.

struct esp_gatts_attr_db_t
attribute type added to the gatt server database

Public Members

     esp_attr_control_t attr_control
     The attribute control type
     esp_attr_desc_t att_desc
     The attribute type

struct esp_attr_value_t
set the attribute value type

Public Members

uint16_t attr_max_len
attribute max value length
uint16_t attr_len
attribute current value length
uint8_t *attr_value
the pointer to attribute value

struct esp_gatts_incl_svc_desc_t
Gatt includeservice entry element.

Public Members

uint16_t start_hdl
Gatt start handle value of included service
uint16_t end_hdl
Gatt end handle value of included service
uint16_t uuid
Gatt attribute value UUID of included service

struct esp_gatts_incl128_svc_desc_t
Gatt include128 bitservice entry element.

Public Members

uint16_t start_hdl
Gatt start handle value of included 128 bit service
uint16_t end_hdl
Gatt end handle value of included 128 bit service

struct esp_gatt_value_t
Gatt attribute value.
**Public Members**

```
uint8_t value[ESP_GATT_MAX_ATTR_LEN]
   Gatt attribute value
```

```
uint16_t handle
   Gatt attribute handle
```

```
uint16_t offset
   Gatt attribute value offset
```

```
uint16_t len
   Gatt attribute value length
```

```
uint8_t auth_req
   Gatt authentication request
```

**struct esp_gatt_conn_params_t**

Connection parameters information.

**Public Members**

```
uint16_t interval
   connection interval
```

```
uint16_t latency
   Slave latency for the connection in number of connection events. Range: 0x0000 to 0x01F3
```

```
uint16_t timeout
   Supervision timeout for the LE Link. Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80. Mandatory Range: 0x000A to 0x0C80
   Time = N * 10 msec Time Range: 100 msec to 32 seconds
```

**struct esp_gattc_multi_t**

read multiple attribute

**Public Members**

```
uint8_t num_attr
   The number of the attribute
```

```
uint16_t handles[ESP_GATT_MAX_READ_MULTI_HANDLES]
   The handles list
```

**struct esp_gattc_db_elem_t**

data base attribute element

**Public Members**

```
esp_gatt_db_attr_type_t type
   The attribute type
```

```
uint16_t attribute_handle
   The attribute handle, it’s valid for all of the type
```

```
uint16_t start_handle
   The service start handle, it’s valid only when the type = ESP_GATT_DB_PRIMARY_SERVICE or ESP_GATT_DB_SECONDARY_SERVICE
```

```
uint16_t end_handle
   The service end handle, it’s valid only when the type = ESP_GATT_DB_PRIMARY_SERVICE or ESP_GATT_DB_SECONDARY_SERVICE
```
esp_gatt_char_prop_t properties
    The characteristic properties, it’s valid only when the type = ESP_GATT_DB_CHARACTERISTIC

esp_bt_uuid_t uuid
    The attribute uuid, it’s valid for all of the type

struct esp_gattc_service_elem_t
    service element

Public Members

    bool is_primary
        The service flag, true if the service is primary service, else is secondary service

    uint16_t start_handle
        The start handle of the service

    uint16_t end_handle
        The end handle of the service

    esp_bt_uuid_t uuid
        The uuid of the service

struct esp_gattc_char_elem_t
    characteristic element

Public Members

    uint16_t char_handle
        The characteristic handle

    esp_gatt_char_prop_t properties
        The characteristic properties

    esp_bt_uuid_t uuid
        The characteristic uuid

struct esp_gattc_descr_elem_t
    descriptor element

Public Members

    uint16_t handle
        The characteristic descriptor handle

    esp_bt_uuid_t uuid
        The characteristic descriptor uuid

struct esp_gattc_incl_svc_elem_t
    include service element

Public Members

    uint16_t handle
        The include service current attribute handle

    uint16_t incl_svc_s_handle
        The start handle of the service which has been included

    uint16_t incl_svc_e_handle
        The end handle of the service which has been included
Chapter 2. API 参考

```c
esp_bt_uuid_t uuid
```

The include service uuid

**Macros**

- `ESP_GATT_UUID_IMMEDIATE_ALERT_SVC`
- All “ESP_GATT_UUID.xxx” is attribute types
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_LINK_LOSS_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_TX_POWER_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CURRENT_TIME_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_REF_TIME_UPDATE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_NEXT_DST_CHANGE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_GLUCOSE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_HEALTH_THERMOM_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_DEVICE_INFO_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_HEART_RATE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_PHONE_ALERT_STATUS_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_BATTERY_SERVICE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_BLOOD_PRESSURE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_ALERT_NTF_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_SCAN_PARAMETERS_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_RUNNING_SPEED_CADENCE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_Automation_IO_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CYCLING_SPEED_CADENCE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CYCLING_POWER_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_LOCATION_AND_NAVIGATION_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_ENVIRONMENTAL_SENSING_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_BODY_COMPOSITION`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_USER_DATA_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_WEIGHT_SCALE_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_BOND_MANAGEMENT_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CONT_GLUCOSE_MONITOR_SVC`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_PRI_SERVICE`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_SEC_SERVICE`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_INCLUDE_SERVICE`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_DECLARE`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_EXT_PROP`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_DESCRIPTION`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_CLIENT_CONFIG`
- `ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_SRVR_CONFIG`
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_PRESENT_FORMAT
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_AGG_FORMAT
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_VALID_RANGE
ESP_GATT_UUID_EXT_RPT_REF_DESCR
ESP_GATT_UUID_RPT_REF_DESCR
ESP_GATT_UUID_NUM_DIGITALS_DESCR
ESP_GATT_UUID_VALUE_TRIGGER_DESCR
ESP_GATT_UUID_ENV_SENSING_CONFIG_DESCR
ESP_GATT_UUID_ENV_SENSING_MEASUREMENT_DESCR
ESP_GATT_UUID_ENV_SENSING_TRIGGER_DESCR
ESP_GATT_UUID_TIME_TRIGGER_DESCR
ESP_GATT_UUID_GAP_DEVICE_NAME
ESP_GATT_UUID_GAP_ICON
ESP_GATT_UUID_GAP_PREF_CONN_PARAM
ESP_GATT_UUID_GAP_CENTRAL_ADDR_RESOL
ESP_GATT_UUID_GATT_SRV_CHGD
ESP_GATT_UUID_ALERT_LEVEL
ESP_GATT_UUID_TX_POWER_LEVEL
ESP_GATT_UUID_CURRENT_TIME
ESP_GATT_UUID_LOCAL_TIME_INFO
ESP_GATT_UUID_REF_TIME_INFO
ESP_GATT_UUID_NW_STATUS
ESP_GATT_UUID_NW_TRIGGER
ESP_GATT_UUID_ALERT_STATUS
ESP_GATT_UUID_RINGER_CP
ESP_GATT_UUID_RINGER_SETTING
ESP_GATT_UUID_GM_MEASUREMENT
ESP_GATT_UUID_GM_CONTEXT
ESP_GATT_UUID_GM_CONTROL_POINT
ESP_GATT_UUID_GM_FEATURE
ESP_GATT_UUID_SYSTEM_ID
ESP_GATT_UUID_MODEL_NUMBER_STR
ESP_GATT_UUID_SERIAL_NUMBER_STR
ESP_GATT_UUID_FW_VERSION_STR
ESP_GATT_UUID_HW_VERSION_STR
ESP_GATT_UUID_SW_VERSION_STR
ESP_GATT_UUID_MANU_NAME
ESP_GATT_UUID_IEEE_DATA
ESP_GATT_UUID_PNP_ID
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_INFORMATION
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_REPORT_MAP
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_CONTROL_POINT
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_REPORT
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_PROTO_MODE
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_BT_kb_INPUT
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_BT_kb_OUTPUT
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_BT_MOUSE_INPUT
ESP_GATT_HEART_RATE_MEAS
Heart Rate Measurement.
ESP_GATT_BODY_SENSOR_LOCATION
Body Sensor Location.
ESP_GATT_HEART_RATE_CNTL_POINT
Heart Rate Control Point.
ESP_GATT_UUID_BATTERY_LEVEL
ESP_GATT_UUID_SC_CONTROL_POINT
ESP_GATT_UUID_SENSOR_LOCATION
ESP_GATT_UUID_RSC_MEASUREMENT
ESP_GATT_UUID_RSC_FEATURE
ESP_GATT_UUID_CSC_MEASUREMENT
ESP_GATT_UUID_CSC_FEATURE
ESP_GATT_UUID_SCAN_INT_WINDOW
ESP_GATT_UUID_SCAN_REFRESH
ESP_GATT_ILLEGAL_UUID
GATT INVALID UUID.
ESP_GATT_ILLEGAL_HANDLE
GATT INVALID HANDLE.
ESP_GATT_ATTR_HANDLE_MAX
GATT attribute max handle.
ESP_GATT_MAX_READ_MULTI_HANDLES
ESP_GATT_PERM_READ
Attribute permissions.
ESP_GATT_PERM_READ_ENCRYPTED
ESP_GATT_PERM_READ_ENC_MITM
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_ENCRYPTED
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_ENC_MITM
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_SIGNED
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_SIGNED_MITM
ESP_GATT_PERM_READ_AUTHORIZATION
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_AUTHORIZATION
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_BROADCAST
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_READ
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_WRITE_NR
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_WRITE
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_NOTIFY
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_INDICATE
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_AUTH
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_EXT_PROP
ESP_GATT_MAX_ATTR_LEN
   GATT maximum attribute length.
ESP_GATT_RSP_BY_APP
ESP_GATT_AUTO_RSP
ESP_GATT_IF_NONE
   If callback report gatc_if/gatts_if as this macro, means this event is not correspond to any app

Type Definitions
typedef uint16_t esp_gatt_perm_t
typedef uint8_t esp_gatt_char_prop_t
typedef uint8_t esp_gatt_if_t
   Gatt interface type, different application on GATT client use different gatt_if

Enumerations
enum esp_gatt_prep_write_type
   Attribute write data type from the client.
   
   Values:
   
   ESP_GATT_PREP_WRITE_CANCEL = 0x00
      Prepare write cancel
   ESP_GATT_PREP_WRITE_EXEC = 0x01
      Prepare write execute

enum esp_gatt_status_t
   GATT success code and error codes.
   
   Values:
   
   ESP_GATT_OK = 0x0
   ESP_GATT_INVALID_HANDLE = 0x01
   ESP_GATT_READ_NOT_PERMIT = 0x02
   ESP_GATT_WRITE_NOT_PERMIT = 0x03
   ESP_GATT_INVALID_PDU = 0x04
   ESP_GATT_INSUF_AUTHENTICATION = 0x05
   ESP_GATT_REQ_NOT_SUPPORTED = 0x06
   ESP_GATT_INVALID_OFFSET = 0x07
   ESP_GATT_INSUF_AUTHORIZATION = 0x08
   ESP_GATT_PREPARE_Q_FULL = 0x09
   ESP_GATT_NOT_FOUND = 0x0a
ESP_GATT_NOT_LONG = 0x0b
ESP_GATT_INSUF_KEY_SIZE = 0x0c
ESP_GATT_INVALID_ATTR_LEN = 0x0d
ESP_GATT_ERR_UNLIKELY = 0x0e
ESP_GATT_INSUF_ENCRYPTION = 0x0f
ESP_GATT_UNSUPPORT_GRP_TYPE = 0x10
ESP_GATT_INSUF_RESOURCE = 0x11
ESP_GATT_NO_RESOURCES = 0x80
ESP_GATT_INTERNAL_ERROR = 0x81
ESP_GATT_WRONG_STATE = 0x82
ESP_GATT_DB_FULL = 0x83
ESP_GATT_BUSY = 0x84
ESP_GATT_ERROR = 0x85
ESP_GATT_CMD_STARTED = 0x86
ESP_GATT_ILLEGAL_PARAMETER = 0x87
ESP_GATT_PENDING = 0x88
ESP_GATT_AUTH_FAIL = 0x89
ESP_GATT_MORE = 0x8a
ESP_GATT_INVALID_CFG = 0x8b
ESP_GATT_SERVICE_STARTED = 0x8c
ESP_GATT_ENCRYPED_MITM = ESP_GATT_OK
ESP_GATT_ENCRYPED_NO_MITM = 0x8d
ESP_GATT_NOT_ENCRYPTED = 0x8e
ESP_GATT_CONGESTED = 0x8f
ESP_GATT_DUP_REG = 0x90
ESP_GATT_ALREADY_OPEN = 0x91
ESP_GATT_CANCEL = 0x92
ESP_GATT_STACK_RSP = 0xe0
ESP_GATT_APP_RSP = 0xe1
ESP_GATT_UNKNOWN_ERROR = 0xef
ESP_GATT_CCC_CFG_ERR = 0xfd
ESP_GATT_PRC_IN_PROGRESS = 0xfe
ESP_GATT_OUT_OF_RANGE = 0xff

enum esp_gatt_conn_reason_t
    Gatt Connection reason enum.

Values:

ESP_GATT_CONN_UNKNOWN = 0
    Gatt connection unknown
ESP_GATT_CONN_L2C_FAILURE = 1
    General L2cap failure
Chapter 2. API 参考

```
ESP_GATT_CONN_TIMEOUT = 0x08
Connection timeout

ESP_GATT_CONN_TERMINATE_PEER_USER = 0x13
Connection terminate by peer user

ESP_GATT_CONN_TERMINATE_LOCAL_HOST = 0x16
Connection terminated by local host

ESP_GATT_CONN_FAIL_ESTABLISH = 0x3e
Connection fail to establish

ESP_GATT_CONN_LMP_TIMEOUT = 0x22
Connection fail for LMP response tout

ESP_GATT_CONN_CONN_CANCEL = 0x0100
L2CAP connection cancelled

ESP_GATT_CONN_NONE = 0x0101
No connection to cancel

enum esp_gatt_auth_req_t
    Gatt authentication request type.

    Values:

    ESP_GATT_AUTH_REQ_NONE = 0
    ESP_GATT_AUTH_REQ_NO_MITM = 1
    ESP_GATT_AUTH_REQ_MITM = 2
    ESP_GATT_AUTH_REQ_SIGNED_NO_MITM = 3
    ESP_GATT_AUTH_REQ_SIGNED_MITM = 4

enum esp_service_source_t
    Values:

    ESP_GATT_SERVICE_FROMREMOTE_DEVICE = 0
    ESP_GATT_SERVICE_FROM_NVSF = 1
    ESP_GATT_SERVICE_FROMUNKNOWN = 2

enum esp_gatt_write_type_t
    Gatt write type.

    Values:

    ESP_GATT_WRITE_TYPE_NO_RSP = 1
    Gatt write attribute need no response

    ESP_GATT_WRITE_TYPE_RSP
    Gatt write attribute need remote response

enum esp_gatt_db_attr_type_t
    the type of attribute element

    Values:

    ESP_GATT_DB_PRIMARY_SERVICE
    Gatt primary service attribute type in the cache

    ESP_GATT_DB_SECONDARY_SERVICE
    Gatt secondary service attribute type in the cache

    ESP_GATT_DB_CHARACTERISTIC
    Gatt characteristic attribute type in the cache

    ESP_GATT_DB_DESCRIPTOR
    Gatt characteristic descriptor attribute type in the cache
```
Chapter 2. API

ESP_GATT_DB_INCLUDED_SERVICE
Gatte include service attribute type in the cache

ESP_GATT_DB_ALL
Gatte all the attribute (primary service & secondary service & include service & char & descriptor) type in the cache

GATT SERVER API

Overview

Instructions

Application Example
Check bluetooth/bluedroid/ble folder in ESP-IDF examples, which contains the following demos and their tutorials:

• This is a GATT sever demo and its tutorial. This demo creates a GATT service with an attribute table, which releases the user from adding attributes one by one. This is the recommended method of adding attributes.
  – bluetooth/bluedroid/ble/gatt_server_service_table
  – GATT Server Service Table Example Walkthrough
• This is a GATT server demo and its tutorial. This demo creates a GATT service by adding attributes one by one as defined by Bluedroid. The recommended method of adding attributes is presented in example above.
  – bluetooth/bluedroid/ble/gatt_server
  – GATT Server Example Walkthrough
• This is a BLE SPP-Like demo. This demo, which acts as a GATT server, can receive data from UART and then send the data to the peer device automatically.
  – bluetooth/bluedroid/ble/ble_spp_server

API Reference

Header File

• components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_gatts_api.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_register_callback (esp_gatts_cb_t callback)
This function is called to register application callbacks with BTA GATTS module.

Return
• ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_app_register (uint16_t app_id)
This function is called to register application identifier.

Return
• ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_app_unregister (esp_if_t gatts_if)
unregister with GATT Server.

Return
• ESP_OK : success
• other : failed

Parameters
• [in] gatts_if: GATT server access interface

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_create_service (esp_if_t gatts_if, esp_gatt_srvc_id_t *service_id, uint16_t num_handle)
Create a service. When service creation is done, a callback event ESP_GATTS_CREATE_EVT is called to...
report status and service ID to the profile. The service ID obtained in the callback function needs to be used
when adding included service and characteristics/descriptors into the service.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

Parameters

- [in] gatts_if: GATT server access interface
- [in] service_id: service ID.
- [in] num_handle: number of handle requested for this service.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_create_attr_tab(const esp_gatts_attr_db_t *gatts_attr_db, esp_gatt_if_t gatts_if, uint8_t max_nb_attr, uint8_t srvc_inst_id)`

Create a service attribute tab.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

Parameters

- [in] gatts_attr_db: the pointer to the service attr tab
- [in] gatts_if: GATT server access interface
- [in] max_nb_attr: the number of attribute to be added to the service database.
- [in] srvc_inst_id: the instance id of the service

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_add_included_service(uint16_t service_handle, uint16_t included_service_handle)`

This function is called to add an included service. This function have to be called between
‘esp_ble_gatts_create_service’ and ‘esp_ble_gatts_add_char’. After included service is included, a callback
event ESP_GATTS_ADD_INCL_SRVC_EVT is reported the included service ID.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

Parameters

- [in] service_handle: service handle to which this included service is to be added.
- [in] included_service_handle: the service ID to be included.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_add_char(uint16_t service_handle, esp_bt_uuid_t *char_uuid, esp_gatt_perm_t perm, esp_gatt_char_prop_t property, esp_attr_value_t *char_val, esp_attr_control_t *control)`

This function is called to add a characteristic into a service.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

Parameters

- [in] service_handle: service handle to which this included service is to be added.
- [in] char_uuid: : Characteristic UUID.
- [in] perm: : Characteristic value declaration attribute permission.
- [in] property: : Characteristic Properties
- [in] char_val: : Characteristic value
- [in] control: : attribute response control byte

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_add_char_descr(uint16_t service_handle, esp_bt_uuid_t *descr_uuid, esp_gatt_perm_t perm, esp_gatt_char_prop_t property, esp_attr_value_t *char_descr_val, esp_attr_control_t *control)`

This function is called to add characteristic descriptor. When it's done, a callback event
ESP_GATTS_ADD_DESCR_EVT is called to report the status and an ID number for this descriptor.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed
Chapter 2. API

Parameters
- [in] service_handle: service handle to which this characteristic descriptor is to be added.
- [in] perm: descriptor access permission.
- [in] descr_uuid: descriptor UUID.
- [in] char_descr_val: Characteristic descriptor value
- [in] control:: attribute response control byte

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_delete_service (uint16_t service_handle)
This function is called to delete a service. When this is done, a callback event ESP_GATTS_DELETE_EVT is report with the status.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other : failed

Parameters
- [in] service_handle: service_handle to be deleted.

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_start_service (uint16_t service_handle)
This function is called to start a service.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other : failed

Parameters
- [in] service_handle: the service handle to be started.

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_stop_service (uint16_t service_handle)
This function is called to stop a service.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other : failed

Parameters
- [in] service_handle: service to be stopped.

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_send_indicate (esp_gatt_if_t gatts_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t attr_handle, uint16_t value_len, uint8_t *value, bool need_confirm)
Send indicate or notify to GATT client. Set param need_confirm as false will send notification, otherwise indication.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other : failed

Parameters
- [in] gatts_if: GATT server access interface
- [in] conn_id: - connection id to indicate.
- [in] attr_handle: - attribute handle to indicate.
- [in] value_len: - indicate value length.
- [in] value: value to indicate.
- [in] need_confirm: - Whether a confirmation is required. false sends a GATT notification, true sends a GATT indication.

esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_send_response (esp_gatt_if_t gatts_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint32_t trans_id, esp_gatt_status_t status, esp_gatt_rsp_t *rsp)
This function is called to send a response to a request.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other : failed

Parameters
- [in] gatts_if: GATT server access interface
Chapter 2. API

- [in] trans_id: transfer id
- [in] status: response status

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_set_attr_value(uint16_t attr_handle, uint16_t length, const uint8_t *value)`

This function is called to set the attribute value by the application.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] attr_handle: the attribute handle which to be set
- [in] length: the value length
- [in] value: the pointer to the attribute value

`esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gatts_get_attr_value(uint16_t attr_handle, uint16_t *length, const uint8_t **value)`

Retrieve attribute value.

**Return**
- ESP_GATT_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] attr_handle: Attribute handle.
- [out] length: pointer to the attribute value length
- [out] value: Pointer to attribute value payload, the value cannot be modified by user

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_open(esp_gatt_if_t gatts_if, esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, bool is_direct)`

Open a direct open connection or add a background auto connection.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gatts_if: GATT server access interface
- [in] remote_bda: remote device bluetooth device address.
- [in] is_direct: direct connection or background auto connection

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_close(esp_gatt_if_t gatts_if, uint16_t conn_id)`

Close a connection a remote device.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gatts_if: GATT server access interface
- [in] conn_id: connection ID to be closed.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_gatts_send_service_change_indication(esp_gatt_if_t gatts_if, esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`

Send service change indication.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gatts_if: GATT server access interface
- [in] remote_bda: remote device bluetooth device address. If remote_bda is NULL, then it will send service change indication to all the connected devices and if not then to a specific device
union esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t
  #include <esp_gatts_api.h> Gatt server callback parameters union.

**Public Members**

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_reg_evt_param reg**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_REG_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_read_evt_param read**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_READ_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_write_evt_param write**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_WRITE_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_exec_write_evt_param exec_write**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_EXEC_WRITE_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_mtu_evt_param mtu**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_MBU_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_conf_evt_param conf**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_CONF_EVT (confirm)

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_create_evt_param create**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_CREATE_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_incl_srvc_evt_param add_incl_srvc**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_ADD_INCL SRVC_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_char_evt_param add_char**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_ADD_CHAR_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_char_descr_evt_param add_char_descr**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_ADD_CHAR_DESCR_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_delete_evt_param del**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_DELETE_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_start_evt_param start**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_START_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_stop_evt_param stop**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_STOP_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_connect_evt_param connect**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_CONNECT_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_disconnect_evt_param disconnect**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_DISCONNECT_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_open_evt_param open**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_OPEN_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_cancel_open_evt_param cancel_open**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_CANCEL_OPEN_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_close_evt_param close**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_CLOSE_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_congest_evt_param congest**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_CONGEST_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_rsp_evt_param rsp**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_RESPONSE_EVT

**struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_attr_tab_evt_param add_attr_tab**
  Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_CREAT_ATTR_TAB_EVT


```c
struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_set_attr_val_evt_param set_attr_val
Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_SET_ATTR_VAL_EVT
```

```c
struct esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_send_service_change_evt_param service_change
Gatt server callback param of ESP_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_EVT
```

```c
struct gatts_add_attr_tab_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_CREAT_ATTR_TAB_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
esp_bt_uuid_t svc_uuid
Service uuid type
```

```c
uint8_t svc_inst_id
Service id
```

```c
uint16_t num_handle
The number of the attribute handle to be added to the gatts database
```

```c
uint16_t *handles
The number to the handles
```

```c
struct gatts_add_char_descr_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_ADD_CHAR_DESCR_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t attr_handle
Descriptor attribute handle
```

```c
uint16_t service_handle
Service attribute handle
```

```c
esp_bt_uuid_t descr_uuid
Characteristic descriptor uuid
```

```c
struct gatts_add_char_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_ADD_CHAR_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t attr_handle
Characteristic attribute handle
```

```c
uint16_t service_handle
Service attribute handle
```

```c
esp_bt_uuid_t char_uuid
Characteristic uuid
```

```c
struct gatts_add_incl_srvc_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_ADD_INCL_SRVC_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t attr_handle
Characteristic attribute handle
```

```c
uint16_t service_handle
Service attribute handle
```

```c
esp_bt_uuid_t char_uuid
Characteristic uuid
```
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t attr_handle
Included service attribute handle
```

```c
uint16_t service_handle
Service attribute handle
```

**struct gatts_cancel_open_evt_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_CANCEL_OPEN_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

**struct gatts_close EVT_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_CLOSE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t conn_id
Connection id
```

**struct gatts_conf EVT_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_CONF_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t conn_id
Connection id
```

```c
uint16_t handle
attribute handle
```

```c
uint16_t len
The indication or notification value length, len is valid when send notification or indication failed
```

```c
uint8_t* value
The indication or notification value, value is valid when send notification or indication failed
```

**struct gatts_congest EVT_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_LISTEN_EVT.
ESP_GATTS_CONGEST_EVT
```

Public Members

```c
uint16_t conn_id
Connection id
```
bool congested
Congested or not

struct gatts_connect_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_CONNECT_EVT.

Public Members

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

uint8_t link_role
Link role: master role = 0; slave role = 1

esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
Remote bluetooth device address

esp_gatt_conn_params_t conn_params
current Connection parameters

struct gatts_create_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_UNREG_EVT.

ESP_GATTS_CREATE_EVT

Public Members

esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status

uint16_t service_handle
Service attribute handle

esp_gatt_srvc_id_t service_id
Service id, include service uuid and other information

struct gatts_delete_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_DELETE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status

uint16_t service_handle
Service attribute handle

struct gatts_disconnect_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_DISCONNECT_EVT.

Public Members

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
Remote bluetooth device address

esp_gatt_conn_reason_t reason
Indicate the reason of disconnection
struct gatts_exec_write_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_EXEC_WRITE_EVT.

Public Members

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

uint32_t trans_id
Transfer id

esp_bd_addr_t bda
The bluetooth device address which been written

uint8_t exec_write_flag
Execute write flag

struct gatts_mtu_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_MTU_EVT.

Public Members

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

uint16_t mtu
MTU size

struct gatts_open_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_OPEN_EVT.

Public Members

esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status

struct gatts_read_evt_param
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_READ_EVT.

Public Members

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

uint32_t trans_id
Transfer id

esp_bd_addr_t bda
The bluetooth device address which been read

uint16_t handle
The attribute handle

uint16_t offset
Offset of the value, if the value is too long

bool is_long
The value is too long or not

bool need_rsp
The read operation need to do response
**struct gatts_reg_evt_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_REG_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t app_id
Application id which input in register API
```

**struct gatts_rsp_evt_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_RESPONSE_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t handle
Attribute handle which send response
```

**struct gatts_send_service_change_evt_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

**struct gatts_set_attr_val_evt_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_SET_ATTR_VAL_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint16_t srvc_handle
The service handle
```

```c
uint16_t attr_handle
The attribute handle
```

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

**struct gatts_start_evt_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_START_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status
```

```c
uint16_t service_handle
Service attribute handle
```

**struct gatts_stop_evt_param**

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h> ESP_GATTS_STOP_EVT.
```
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

- `esp_gatt_status_t status`
  Operation status

- `uint16_t service_handle`
  Service attribute handle

```c
#include <esp_gatts_api.h>
ESP_GATTS_WRITE_EVT.
```

Public Members

- `uint16_t conn_id`
  Connection id

- `uint32_t trans_id`
  Transfer id

- `esp_bd_addr_t bda`
  The bluetooth device address which been written

- `uint16_t handle`
  The attribute handle

- `uint16_t offset`
  Offset of the value, if the value is too long

- `bool need_rsp`
  The write operation need to do response

- `bool is_prep`
  This write operation is prepare write

- `uint16_t len`
  The write attribute value length

- `uint8_t *value`
  The write attribute value

Macros

- `ESP_GATT_PREP_WRITE_CANCEL`
  Prepare write flag to indicate cancel prepare write

- `ESP_GATT_PREP_WRITE_EXEC`
  Prepare write flag to indicate execute prepare write

Type Definitions

```c
typedef void (*esp_gatts_cb_t)(esp_gatts_cb_event_t event, esp_gatt_if_t gatts_if, esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t *param)
```

GATT Server callback function type.

Parameters

- `event`: Event type
- `gatts_if`: GATT server access interface, normally different gatts_if correspond to different profile
- `param`: Point to callback parameter, currently is union type

Enumerations
enum esp_gatts_cb_event_t
  GATT Server callback function events.

Values:

ESP_GATTS_REG_EVT = 0
  When register application id, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_READ_EVT = 1
  When gatt client request read operation, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_WRITE_EVT = 2
  When gatt client request write operation, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_EXEC_WRITE_EVT = 3
  When gatt client request execute write, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_MTU_EVT = 4
  When set mtu complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_CONF_EVT = 5
  When receive confirm, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_UNREG_EVT = 6
  When unregister application id, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_CREATE_EVT = 7
  When create service complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_ADD_INCL_SRVC_EVT = 8
  When add included service complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_ADD_CHAR_EVT = 9
  When add characteristic complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_ADD_CHAR_DESCR_EVT = 10
  When add descriptor complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_DELETE_EVT = 11
  When delete service complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_START_EVT = 12
  When start service complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_STOP_EVT = 13
  When stop service complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_CONNECT_EVT = 14
  When gatt client connect, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_DISCONNECT_EVT = 15
  When gatt client disconnect, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_OPEN_EVT = 16
  When connect to peer, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_CANCEL_OPEN_EVT = 17
  When disconnect from peer, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_CLOSE_EVT = 18
  When gatt server close, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_LISTEN_EVT = 19
  When gatt listen to be connected the event comes

ESP_GATTS_CONGEST_EVT = 20
  When congest happen, the event comes

ESP_GATTS_RESPONSE_EVT = 21
  When gatt send response complete, the event comes
Chapter 2. API

ESP_GATT_CREATE_ATTR_TAB_EVT = 22
When gatt create table complete, the event comes

ESP_GATT_SET_ATTR_VAL_EVT = 23
When gatt set attr value complete, the event comes

ESP_GATT_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_EVT = 24
When gatt send service change indication complete, the event comes

GATT CLIENT API

Overview

Instructions

Application Example
Check bluetooth/bluedroid/ble folder in ESP-IDF examples, which contains the following demos and their tutorials:

• This is a GATT client demo and its tutorial. This demo can scan for devices, connect to the GATT server and discover its services.
  – bluetooth/bluedroid/ble/gatt_client
  – GATT Client Example Walkthrough

• This is a multiple connection demo and its tutorial. This demo can connect to multiple GATT server devices and discover their services.
  – bluetooth/bluedroid/ble/gattc_multi_connect
  – GATT Client Multi-connection Example Walkthrough

• This is a BLE SPP-Like demo. This demo, which acts as a GATT client, can receive data from UART and then send the data to the peer device automatically.
  – bluetooth/bluedroid/ble/ble_spp_client

API Reference

Header File

• components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_gatc_api.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_register_callback(esp_gattc_cb_t callback)
This function is called to register application callbacks with GATTC module.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] callback:: pointer to the application callback function.

esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_app_register(uint16_t app_id)
This function is called to register application callbacks with GATTC module.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] app_id:: Application Identify (UUID), for different application

esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_app_unregister(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if)
This function is called to unregister an application from GATTC module.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed
Chapter 2. API

### Parameters

- **`gattc_if`**: Gatt client access interface.

```c
def esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_open(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, esp_ble_addr_type_t remote_addr_type, bool is_direct)
```

Open a direct connection or add a background auto connection.

**Return**

- **ESP_OK**: success
- **other**: failed

**Parameters**

- **`gattc_if`**: Gatt client access interface.
- **`remote_bda`**: remote device bluetooth device address.
- **`remote_addr_type`**: remote device bluetooth device the address type.
- **`is_direct`**: direct connection or background auto connection(by now, background auto connection is not supported).

```c
def esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_aux_open(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, esp_ble_addr_type_t remote_addr_type, bool is_direct)
```

```c
def esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_close(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id)
```

Close the virtual connection to the GATT server. gattc may have multiple virtual GATT server connections when multiple app_id registered, this API only close one virtual GATT server connection. if there exist other virtual GATT server connections, it does not disconnect the physical connection. if you want to disconnect the physical connection directly, you can use esp_ble_gap_disconnect(esp_bd_addr_t remote_device).

**Return**

- **ESP_OK**: success
- **other**: failed

**Parameters**

- **`gattc_if`**: Gatt client access interface.
- **`conn_id`**: connection ID to be closed.

```c
def esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_send_mtu_req(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id)
```

Configure the MTU size in the GATT channel. This can be done only once per connection. Before using, use esp_ble_gatt_set_local_mtu() to configure the local MTU size.

**Return**

- **ESP_OK**: success
- **other**: failed

**Parameters**

- **`gattc_if`**: Gatt client access interface.
- **`conn_id`**: connection ID.

```c
def esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_service(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, esp_btuuid_t *svc_uuid, esp_gatt_service_elem_t *result, uint16_t *count, uint16_t offset)
```

Find all the service with the given service uuid in the gattc cache, if the svc_uuid is NULL, find all the service.

**Note**: It just get service from local cache, won’t get from remote devices. If want to get it from remote device, need to used the esp_ble_gattc_cache_refresh, then call esp_ble_gattc_get_service again.
Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID which identify the server.
• [in] svc_uuid: the pointer to the service uuid.
• [out] result: The pointer to the service which has been found in the gattc cache.
• [inout] count: input the number of service want to find, it will output the number of service has been found in the gattc cache with the given service uuid.
• [in] offset: Offset of the service position to get.

\[
\text{esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_all_char(gattc_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t start_handle, uint16_t end_handle, esp_gattc_char_elem_t *result, uint16_t *count, uint16_t offset)}
\]

Find all the characteristic with the given service in the gattc cache Note: It just get characteristic from local cache, won’t get from remote devices.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID which identify the server.
• [in] start_handle: the attribute start handle.
• [in] end_handle: the attribute end handle
• [out] result: The pointer to the characteristic in the service.
• [inout] count: input the number of characteristic want to find, it will output the number of characteristic has been found in the gattc cache with the given service.
• [in] offset: Offset of the characteristic position to get.

\[
\text{esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_all_descr(gattc_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t char_handle, esp_gattc_descr_elem_t *result, uint16_t *count, uint16_t offset)}
\]

Find all the descriptor with the given characteristic in the gattc cache Note: It just get descriptor from local cache, won’t get from remote devices.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID which identify the server.
• [in] char_handle: the given characteristic handle
• [out] result: The pointer to the descriptor in the characteristic.
• [inout] count: input the number of descriptor want to find, it will output the number of descriptor has been found in the gattc cache with the given characteristic.
• [in] offset: Offset of the descriptor position to get.

\[
\text{esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_char_by_uuid(gattc_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t start_handle, uint16_t end_handle, esp_bt_uuid_t char_uuid, esp_gattc_char_elem_t *result, uint16_t *count)}
\]

Find the characteristic with the given characteristic uuid in the gattc cache Note: It just get characteristic from local cache, won’t get from remote devices.
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID which identify the server.
• [in] start_handle: the attribute start handle
• [in] end_handle: the attribute end handle
• [in] char_uuid: the characteristic uuid
• [out] result: The pointer to the characteristic in the service.
• [inout] count: input the number of characteristic want to find, it will output the number of characteristic has been found in the gattc cache with the given service.

```c
esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_descr_by_uuid(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t start_handle, uint16_t end_handle, esp_bt_uuid_t char_uuid, esp_bt_uuid_t descr_uuid, esp_gattc_descr_elem_t *result, uint16_t *count)
```

Find the descriptor with the given characteristic uuid in the gattc cache Note: It just get descriptor from local cache, won’t get from remote devices.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID which identify the server.
• [in] start_handle: the attribute start handle
• [in] end_handle: the attribute end handle
• [in] char_uuid: the characteristic uuid.
• [in] descr_uuid: the descriptor uuid.
• [out] result: The pointer to the descriptor in the given characteristic.
• [inout] count: input the number of descriptor want to find, it will output the number of descriptor has been found in the gattc cache with the given characteristic.

```c
esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_descr_by_char_handle(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t char_handle, esp_bt_uuid_t descr_uuid, esp_gattc_descr_elem_t *result, uint16_t *count)
```

Find the descriptor with the given characteristic handle in the gattc cache Note: It just get descriptor from local cache, won’t get from remote devices.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID which identify the server.
• [in] char_handle: the characteristic handle.
• [in] descr_uuid: the descriptor uuid.
• [out] result: The pointer to the descriptor in the given characteristic.
• [inout] count: input the number of descriptor want to find, it will output the number of descriptor has been found in the gattc cache with the given characteristic.

```c
esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_include_service(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t start_handle, uint16_t end_handle, esp_bt_uuid_t *incl_uuid, esp_gattc_incl_svc_elem_t *result, uint16_t *count)
```

Find the include service with the given service handle in the gattc cache Note: It just get include service from local cache, won’t get from remote devices.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
Chapter 2. API

Parameters
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] conn_id: connection ID which identify the server.
- [in] start_handle: the attribute start handle
- [in] end_handle: the attribute end handle
- [in] incl_uuid: the include service uuid
- [out] result: The pointer to the include service in the given service.
- [inout] count: input the number of include service want to find, it will output the number of include service has been found in the gattc cache with the given service.

```
esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_attr_count (esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, esp_gatt_db_attr_type_t type, uint16_t start_handle, uint16_t end_handle, uint16_t char_handle, uint16_t *count)
```

Find the attribute count with the given service or characteristic in the gattc cache.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

Parameters
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] type: the attribute type.
- [in] start_handle: the attribute start handle, if the type is ESP_GATT_DB_DESCRIPTOR, this parameter should be ignore
- [in] end_handle: the attribute end handle, if the type is ESP_GATT_DB_DESCRIPTOR, this parameter should be ignore
- [in] char_handle: the characteristic handle, this parameter valid when the type is ESP_GATT_DB_DESCRIPTOR. If the type isn’t ESP_GATT_DB_DESCRIPTOR, this parameter should be ignore.
- [out] count: output the number of attribute has been found in the gattc cache with the given attribute type.

```
esp_gatt_status_t esp_ble_gattc_get_db (esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t start_handle, uint16_t end_handle, esp_gattc_db_elem_t *db, uint16_t *count)
```

This function is called to get the GATT database. Note: It just get attribute data base from local cache, won’t get from remote devices.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

Parameters
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] start_handle: the attribute start handle
- [in] end_handle: the attribute end handle
- [in] conn_id: connection ID which identify the server.
- [in] db: output parameter which will contain the GATT database copy. Caller is responsible for freeing it.
- [in] count: number of elements in database.

```
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_read_char (esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t handle, esp_gatt_auth_req_t auth_req)
```

This function is called to read a service’s characteristics of the given characteristic handle.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

Parameters
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] conn_id: connection ID.
• [in] handle: characteristic handle to read.
• [in] auth_req: authenticate request type

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_read_by_type(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t start_handle, uint16_t end_handle, esp_bt_uid_t *uuid, esp_gatt_auth_req_t auth_req)
```

This function is called to read a service’s characteristics of the given characteristic UUID.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID.
• [in] start_handle: the attribute start handle.
• [in] end_handle: the attribute end handle
• [in] uuid: The UUID of attribute which will be read.
• [in] auth_req: authenticate request type

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_read_multiple(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, esp_gattc_multi_t *read_multi, esp_gatt_auth_req_t auth_req)
```

This function is called to read multiple characteristic or characteristic descriptors.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID.
• [in] read_multi: pointer to the read multiple parameter.
• [in] auth_req: authenticate request type

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_read_char_descr(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t handle, esp_gatt_auth_req_t auth_req)
```

This function is called to read a characteristics descriptor.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID.
• [in] handle: descriptor handle to read.
• [in] auth_req: authenticate request type

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_write_char(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t handle, uint16_t value_len, uint8_t *value, esp_gatt_write_type_t write_type, esp_gatt_auth_req_t auth_req)
```

This function is called to write characteristic value.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
• [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
• [in] conn_id: connection ID.
• [in] handle: characteristic handle to write.
• [in] value_len: length of the value to be written.
• [in] value: the value to be written.
• [in] write_type: the type of attribute write operation.
• [in] auth_req: authentication request.
**esp_err_t** esp_ble_gattc_write_char_descr(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t handle, uint16_t value_len, uint8_t *value, esp_gatt_write_type_t write_type, esp_gatt_auth_req_t auth_req)

This function is called to write characteristic descriptor value.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] conn_id: connection ID.
- [in] handle: descriptor handle to write.
- [in] value_len: length of the value to be written.
- [in] value: the value to be written.
- [in] write_type: the type of attribute write operation.
- [in] auth_req: authentication request.

**esp_err_t** esp_ble_gattc_prepare_write(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t handle, uint16_t offset, uint16_t value_len, uint8_t *value, esp_gatt_auth_req_t auth_req)

This function is called to prepare write a characteristic value.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] conn_id: connection ID.
- [in] handle: characteristic handle to prepare write.
- [in] offset: offset of the write value.
- [in] value_len: length of the value to be written.
- [in] value: the value to be written.
- [in] auth_req: authentication request.

**esp_err_t** esp_ble_gattc_prepare_write_char_descr(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, uint16_t handle, uint16_t offset, uint16_t value_len, uint8_t *value, esp_gatt_auth_req_t auth_req)

This function is called to prepare write a characteristic descriptor value.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] conn_id: connection ID.
- [in] handle: characteristic descriptor handle to prepare write.
- [in] offset: offset of the write value.
- [in] value_len: length of the value to be written.
- [in] value: the value to be written.
- [in] auth_req: authentication request.

**esp_err_t** esp_ble_gattc_execute_write(esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, uint16_t conn_id, bool is_execute)

This function is called to execute write a prepare write sequence.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] conn_id: connection ID.
```
void is_execute::execute or cancel.
```

```
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_register_for_notify (esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, esp_bd_addr_t server_bda, uint16_t handle)
```

This function is called to register for notification of a service.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: registration succeeds
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] handle: GATT characteristic handle.

```
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_unregister_for_notify (esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, esp_bd_addr_t server_bda, uint16_t handle)
```

This function is called to de-register for notification of a service.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: unregister succeeds
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] handle: GATT characteristic handle.

```
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_cache_refresh (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)
```

Refresh the server cache store in the gattc stack of the remote device. If the device is connected, this API will restart the discovery of service information of the remote device.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] remote_bda: remote device BD address.

```
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_cache_assoc (esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if, esp_bd_addr_t src_addr, esp_bd_addr_t assoc_addr, bool is_assoc)
```

Add or delete the associated address with the source address. Note: The role of this API is mainly when the client side has stored a server-side database, when it needs to connect another device, but the device’s attribute database is the same as the server database stored on the client-side, calling this API can use the database that the device has stored used as the peer server database to reduce the attribute database search and discovery process and speed up the connection time. The associated address mains that device want to used the database has stored in the local cache. The source address mains that device want to share the database to the associated address device.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] gattc_if: Gatt client access interface.
- [in] src_addr: the source address which provide the attribute table.
- [in] assoc_addr: the associated device address which went to share the attribute table with the source address.
- [in] is_assoc: true add the associated device address, false remove the associated device address.

```
esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_cache_get_addr_list (esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if)
```

Get the address list which has store the attribute table in the gattc cache. There will callback ESP_GATTC_GET_ADDR_LIST_EVT event when get address list complete.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed
Parameters
- \texttt{[in] gattc_if}: Gatt client access interface.

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_ble_gattc_cache_clean(esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)}
Clean the service cache of this device in the gattc stack.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

Parameters
- \texttt{[in] remote_bda}: remote device BD address.

Unions
\texttt{union esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t}
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> Gatt client callback parameters union.

Public Members

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_reg_evt_param \textbf{reg}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_REG_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_open_evt_param \textbf{open}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_OPEN_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_close_evt_param \textbf{close}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_CLOSE_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_cfg_mtu_evt_param \textbf{cfg_mtu}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_CFG_MTU_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_search_cmpl_evt_param \textbf{search_cmpl}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_CMPL_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_search_res_evt_param \textbf{search_res}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_RES_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_read_char_evt_param \textbf{read}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_READ_CHAR_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_write_evt_param \textbf{write}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_WRITE_DESCR_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_exec_cmpl_evt_param \textbf{exec_cmpl}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_EXEC_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_notify_evt_param \textbf{notify}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_NOTIFY_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_srvc_chg_evt_param \textbf{srvc_chg}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_SRVC_CHG_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_congest_evt_param \textbf{congest}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_CONGEST_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_reg_for_notify_evt_param \textbf{reg_for_notify}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_REG_FOR_NOTIFY_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_unreg_for_notify_evt_param \textbf{unreg_for_notify}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_UNREG_FOR_NOTIFY_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_connect_evt_param \textbf{connect}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_CONNECT_EVT

\texttt{struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_disconnect_evt_param \textbf{disconnect}}
Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_DISCONNECT_EVT
struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_set_assoc_addr_cmp_evt_param set_assoc_cmp
    Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_SET_ASSOC_EVT

struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_get_addr_list_evt_param get_addr_list
    Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_GET_ADDR_LIST_EVT

struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_queue_full_evt_param queue_full
    Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_QUEUE_FULL_EVT

struct esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::gattc_dis_srvc_cmpl_evt_param dis_srvc_cmpl
    Gatt client callback param of ESP_GATTC_DIS_SRVC_CMPL_EVT

struct gattc_cfg_mtu_evt_param
    #include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_CFG_MTU_EVT.

Public Members

    esp_gatt_status_t status
        Operation status

uint16_t conn_id
    Connection id

uint16_t mtu
    MTU size

struct gattc_close_evt_param
    #include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_CLOSE_EVT.

Public Members

    esp_gatt_status_t status
        Operation status

uint16_t conn_id
    Connection id

esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
    Remote bluetooth device address

esp_gatt_conn_reason_t reason
    The reason of gatt connection close

struct gattc_congest_evt_param
    #include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_CONGEST_EVT.

Public Members

    uint16_t conn_id
        Connection id

bool congested
    Congested or not

struct gattc_connect_evt_param
    #include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_CONNECT_EVT.
Public Members

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

uint8_t link_role
Link role: master role = 0; slave role = 1

esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
Remote bluetooth device address

esp_gatt_conn_params_t conn_params
Current connection parameters

struct gattc_dis_srvc_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_DIS_SRVC_CMPL_EVT.

Public Members

esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

struct gattc_disconnect_evt_param
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_DISCONNECT_EVT.

Public Members

esp_gatt_conn_reason_t reason
disconnection reason

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
Remote bluetooth device address

struct gattc_exec_cmpl_evt_param
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_EXEC_EVT.

Public Members

esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status

uint16_t conn_id
Connection id

struct gattc_get_addr_list_evt_param
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_GET_ADDR_LIST_EVT.

Public Members

esp_gatt_status_t status
Operation status

uint8_t num_addr
The number of address in the gatcc cache address list
`esp_bd_addr_t *addr_list`
The pointer to the address list which has been get from the gattc cache

**struct gattc_notify_evt_param**
```c
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_NOTIFY_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t conn_id`
  Connection id

- `esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda`
  Remote bluetooth device address

- `uint16_t handle`
  The Characteristic or descriptor handle

- `uint16_t value_len`
  Notify attribute value

- `uint8_t *value`
  Notify attribute value

- `bool is_notify`
  True means notify, false means indicate

**struct gattc_open_evt_param**
```c
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_OPEN_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

- `esp_gatt_status_t status`
  Operation status

- `uint16_t conn_id`
  Connection id

- `esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda`
  Remote bluetooth device address

- `uint16_t mtu`
  MTU size

**struct gattc_queue_full_evt_param**
```c
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_QUEUE_FULL_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

- `esp_gatt_status_t status`
  Operation status

- `uint16_t conn_id`
  Connection id

- `bool is_full`
  The gattc command queue is full or not

**struct gattc_read_char_evt_param**
```c
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_READ_CHAR_EVT, ESP_GATTC_READ_DESCR_EVT.
```
Public Members

```c
enum esp_gatt_status_t status
    Operation status

uint16_t conn_id
    Connection id

uint16_t handle
    Characteristic handle

t uint8_t* value
    Characteristic value

uint16_t value_len
    Characteristic value length
```

```c
#include <esp_gattc_api.h>
```

```c
struct gattc_reg_evt_param
    #include <esp_gatt_api.h> ESP_GATTC_REG_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
enum esp_gatt_status_t status
    Operation status

uint16_t app_id
    Application id which input in register API
```

```c
#include <esp_gattc_api.h>
```

```c
struct gattc_reg_for_notify_evt_param
    #include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_REG_FOR_NOTIFY_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
enum esp_gatt_status_t status
    Operation status

uint16_t handle
    The characteristic or descriptor handle
```

```c
#include <esp_gattc_api.h>
```

```c
struct gattc_search_cmpl_evt_param
    #include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_CMPL_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
enum esp_gatt_status_t status
    Operation status

uint16_t conn_id
    Connection id

esp_service_source_t searched_service_source
    The source of the service information
```

```c
#include <esp_gattc_api.h>
```

```c
struct gattc_search_res_evt_param
    #include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_RES_EVT.
```
Public Members

`uint16_t conn_id`
Connection id

`uint16_t start_handle`
Service start handle

`uint16_t end_handle`
Service end handle

`esp_gatt_id_t srvc_id`
Service id, includes service uuid and other information

`bool is_primary`
True if this is the primary service

```c
typedef struct gattc_set_assoc_addr_cmp_evt_param {
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_SET_ASSOC_EVT.
}
```

Public Members

`esp_gatt_status_t status`
Operation status

```c
typedef struct gattc_srvc_chg_evt_param {
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_SRVC_CHG_EVT.
}
```

Public Members

`esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda`
Remote bluetooth device address

```c
typedef struct gattc_unreg_for_notify_evt_param {
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_UNREG_FOR_NOTIFY_EVT.
}
```

Public Members

`esp_gatt_status_t status`
Operation status

`uint16_t handle`
The characteristic or descriptor handle

```c
typedef struct gattc_write_evt_param {
#include <esp_gattc_api.h> ESP_GATTC_WRITE_CHAR_EVT, ESP_GATTC_PREP_WRITE_EVT, ESP_GATTC_WRITE_DESCR_EVT.
}
```
uint16_t offset
    The prepare write offset, this value is valid only when prepare write

Type Definitions
typedef void (*esp_gattc_cb_t)(esp_gattc_cb_event_t event, esp_gatt_if_t gattc_if,
    esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t *param)
GATT Client callback function type.

Parameters
    • event:: Event type
    • gattc_if: GATT client access interface, normally different gattc_if correspond to different
        profile
    • param: Point to callback parameter, currently is union type

Enumerations
enum esp_gattc_cb_event_t
    GATT Client callback function events.
    Values:
    ESP_GATTC_REG_EVT = 0
        When GATT client is registered, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_UNREG_EVT = 1
        When GATT client is unregistered, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_OPEN_EVT = 2
        When GATT virtual connection is set up, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_READ_CHAR_EVT = 3
        When GATT characteristic is read, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_WRITE_CHAR_EVT = 4
        When GATT characteristic write operation completes, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_CLOSE_EVT = 5
        When GATT virtual connection is closed, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_CMPL_EVT = 6
        When GATT service discovery is completed, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_RES_EVT = 7
        When GATT service discovery result is got, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_READ_DESCR_EVT = 8
        When GATT characteristic descriptor read completes, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_WRITE_DESCR_EVT = 9
        When GATT characteristic descriptor write completes, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_NOTIFY_EVT = 10
        When GATT notification or indication arrives, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_PREP_WRITE_EVT = 11
        When GATT prepare-write operation completes, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_EXEC_EVT = 12
        When write execution completes, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_ACL_EVT = 13
        When ACL connection is up, the event comes
    ESP_GATTC_CANCEL_OPEN_EVT = 14
        When GATT client ongoing connection is cancelled, the event comes
ESP_GATTC_SRVC_CHG_EVT = 15
When “service changed” occurs, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_ENC_CMPL_CB_EVT = 17
When encryption procedure completes, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_CFG_MTU_EVT = 18
When configuration of MTU completes, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_ADV_DATA_EVT = 19
When advertising of data, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_MULT_ADV_ENB_EVT = 20
When multi-advertising is enabled, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_MULT_ADV_UPD_EVT = 21
When multi-advertising parameters are updated, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_MULT_ADV_DATA_EVT = 22
When multi-advertising data arrives, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_MULT_ADV_DIS_EVT = 23
When multi-advertising is disabled, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_CONGEST_EVT = 24
When GATT connection congestion comes, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_BTH_SCAN_ENB_EVT = 25
When batch scan is enabled, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_BTH_SCAN_CFG_EVT = 26
When batch scan storage is configured, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_BTH_SCAN_RD_EVT = 27
When Batch scan read event is reported, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_BTH_SCAN_THR_EVT = 28
When Batch scan threshold is set, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_BTH_SCAN_PARAM_EVT = 29
When Batch scan parameters are set, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_BTH_SCAN_DIS_EVT = 30
When Batch scan is disabled, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_SCAN_FLT_CFG_EVT = 31
When Scan filter configuration completes, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_SCAN_FLT_PARAM_EVT = 32
When Scan filter parameters are set, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_SCAN_FLT_STATUS_EVT = 33
When Scan filter status is reported, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_ADV_VSC_EVT = 34
When advertising vendor spec content event is reported, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_REG_FOR_NOTIFY_EVT = 38
When register for notification of a service completes, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_UNREG_FOR_NOTIFY_EVT = 39
When unregister for notification of a service completes, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_CONNECT_EVT = 40
When the ble physical connection is set up, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_DISCONNECT_EVT = 41
When the ble physical connection disconnected, the event comes
Chapter 2. API

ESP_GATTC_READ_MULTIPLE_EVT = 42
When the ble characteristic or descriptor multiple complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_QUEUE_FULL_EVT = 43
When the gattc command queue full, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_SET_ASSOC_EVT = 44
When the ble gattc set the associated address complete, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_GET_ADDR_LIST_EVT = 45
When the ble get gattc address list in cache finish, the event comes

ESP_GATTC_DIS_SRVC_CMPL_EVT = 46
When the ble discover service complete, the event comes

BLUFI API

Overview BLUFI is a profile based GATT to config ESP32 WIFI to connect/disconnect AP or setup a softap and etc. Use should concern these things:

1. The event sent from profile. Then you need to do something as the event indicate.
2. Security reference. You can write your own Security functions such as symmetrical encryption/decryption and checksum functions. Even you can define the “Key Exchange/Negotiation” procedure.

Application Example Check bluetooth folder in ESP-IDF examples, which contains the following application:

- This is the BLUFI demo. This demo can set ESP32’s wifi to softap/station/softap&station mode and config wifi connections - bluetooth/blufi

API Reference

Header File

- components/bt/common/api/include/api/esp_blufi_api.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_blufi_register_callbacks (esp_blufi_callbacks_t *callbacks)
This function is called to receive blufi callback event.

Return ESP_OK - success, other - failed

Parameters

- [in] callbacks: callback functions

esp_err_t esp_blufi_profile_init (void)
This function is called to initialize blufi_profile.

Return ESP_OK - success, other - failed

esp_err_t esp_blufi_profile_deinit (void)
This function is called to de-initialize blufi_profile.

Return ESP_OK - success, other - failed

esp_err_t esp_blufi_send_wifi_conn_report (wifi_mode_t opmode, esp_blufi_sta_conn_state_t sta_conn_state, uint8_t softap_conn_num, esp_blufi_extra_info_t *extra_info)
This function is called to send wifi connection report.

Return ESP_OK - success, other - failed

Parameters

- opmode: wifi opmode
- sta_conn_state: station is already in connection or not
• softap_conn_num: softap connection number
• extra_info: extra information, such as sta_ssid, softap_ssid and etc.

```c
esp_err_t esp_blufi_send_wifi_list (uint16_t apCount, esp_blufi_ap_record_t *list)
```
This function is called to send wifi list.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- apCount: wifi list count
- list: wifi list

```c
uint16_t esp_blufi_get_version (void)
```
Get BLUFI profile version.

**Return** Most 8bit significant is Great version, Least 8bit is Sub version

```c
esp_err_t esp_blufi_send_error_info (esp_blufi_error_state_t state)
```
This function is called to send blufi error information.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- state: error state

```c
esp_err_t esp_blufi_send_custom_data (uint8_t *data, uint32_t data_len)
```
This function is called to send custom data.

**Return** ESP_OK - success, other - failed

**Parameters**
- data: custom data value
- data_len: the length of custom data

**Unions**

```c
union esp_blufi_cb_param_t
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> BLUFI callback parameters union.
```

**Public Members**

```c
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_init_finish_evt_param init_finish
Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_INIT_FINISH
```

```c
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_deinit_finish_evt_param deinit_finish
Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_DEINIT_FINISH
```

```c
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_set_wifi_mode_evt_param wifi_mode
Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_INIT_FINISH
```

```c
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_connect_evt_param connect
Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_CONNECT
```

```c
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_disconnect_evt_param disconnect
Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_DISCONNECT
```

```c
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_sta_bssid_evt_param sta_bssid
Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_BSSID
```

```c
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_sta_ssid_evt_param sta_ssid
Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_SSID
```

```c
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_softap_ssid_evt_param softap_ssid
Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_SSID
```
struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_softap_passwd_evt_param softap_passwd
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_PASSWD

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_softap_max_conn_num_evt_param softap_max_conn_num
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_MAX_CONN_NUM

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_softap_auth_mode_evt_param softap_auth_mode
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_AUTH_MODE

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_softap_channel_evt_param softap_channel
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_CHANNEL

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_username_evt_param username
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_USERNAME

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_ca_evt_param ca
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CA_CERT

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_client_cert_evt_param client_cert
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CLIENT_CERT

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_server_cert_evt_param server_cert
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SERVER_CERT

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_client_pkey_evt_param client_pkey
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CLIENT_PRIV_KEY

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_server_pkey_evt_param server_pkey
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SERVER_PRIV_KEY

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_get_error_evt_param report_error
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_REPORT_ERROR

struct esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_custom_data_evt_param custom_data
  Blufi callback param of ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CUSTOM_DATA

struct blufi_connect_evt_param
  #include <esp_blufi.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_CONNECT.

Public Members

esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
  Blufi Remote bluetooth device address

uint8_t server_if
  server interface

uint16_t conn_id
  Connection id

struct blufi_deinit_finish_evt_param
  #include <esp_blufi.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_DEINIT_FINISH.

Public Members

esp_blufi_deinit_state_t state
  De-initial status

struct blufi_disconnect_evt_param
  #include <esp_blufi.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_DISCONNECT.
Public Members

```
ext_bd_addr_t remote_bda

Blufi Remote bluetooth device address
```

**struct blufi_get_error_evt_param**

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_REPORT_ERROR.
```

Public Members

```
est_blufi_error_state_t state

Blufi error state
```

**struct blufi_init_finish_evt_param**

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_INIT_FINISH.
```

Public Members

```
est_blufi_init_state_t state

Initial status
```

**struct blufi_recv_ca_evt_param**

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CA_CERT.
```

Public Members

```
uint8_t *cert

CA certificate point
```

```
int cert_len

CA certificate length
```

**struct blufi_recv_client_cert_evt_param**

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CLIENT_CERT
```

Public Members

```
uint8_t *cert

Client certificate point
```

```
int cert_len

Client certificate length
```

**struct blufi_recv_client_pkey_evt_param**

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CLIENT_PRIV_KEY
```

Public Members

```
uint8_t *pkey

Client Private Key point, if Client certificate not contain Key
```

```
int pkey_len

Client Private key length
```

**struct blufi_recv_custom_data_evt_param**

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CUSTOM_DATA.
```
Chapter 2. API Reference

Public Members

uint8_t* `data`
Custom data

uint32_t `data_len`
Custom data length

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h>
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SERVER_CERT
```

Public Members

uint8_t* `cert`
Client certificate point

int `cert_len`
Client certificate length

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h>
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SERVER_PRIV_KEY
```

Public Members

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h>
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_AUTH_MODE.
```

Public Members

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h>
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_CHANNEL.
```

Public Members

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h>
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_MAX_CONN_NUM.
```

Public Members

```
#include <esp_blufi_api.h>
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_PASSWD.
```
Chapter 2. API 参考

Public Members

uint8_t *passwd
Password

int passwd_len
Password Length

struct blufi_recv_softap_ssid_evt_param
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_SSID.

Public Members

uint8_t *ssid
SSID

int ssid_len
SSID length

struct blufi_recv_sta_bssid_evt_param
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_BSSID.

Public Members

uint8_t bssid[6]
BSSID

struct blufi_recv_sta_passwd_evt_param
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_PASSWD.

Public Members

uint8_t *passwd
Password

int passwd_len
Password Length

struct blufi_recv_sta_ssid_evt_param
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_SSID.

Public Members

uint8_t *ssid
SSID

int ssid_len
SSID length

struct blufi_recv_username_evt_param
#include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_USERNAME.

Public Members

uint8_t *name
Username point
```c
int name_len
   Username length

struct blufi_set_wifi_mode_evt_param
   #include <esp_blufi_api.h> ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_SET_WIFI_MODE.

Public Members

    wifi_mode_t op_mode
       Wifi operation mode

Structures

struct esp_blufi_extra_info_t
   BLUFI extra information structure.

Public Members

    uint8_t sta_bssid[6]
       BSSID of station interface

    bool sta_bssid_set
       is BSSID of station interface set

    uint8_t* sta_ssid
       SSID of station interface

    int sta_ssid_len
       length of SSID of station interface

    uint8_t* sta_passwd
       password of station interface

    int sta_passwd_len
       length of password of station interface

    uint8_t* softap_ssid
       SSID of softap interface

    int softap_ssid_len
       length of SSID of softap interface

    uint8_t* softap_passwd
       password of station interface

    int softap_passwd_len
       length of password of station interface

    uint8_t softap_authmode
       authentication mode of softap interface

    bool softap_authmode_set
       is authentication mode of softap interface set

    uint8_t softap_max_conn_num
       max connection number of softap interface

    bool softap_max_conn_num_set
       is max connection number of softap interface set

    uint8_t softap_channel
       channel of softap interface

    bool softap_channel_set
       is channel of softap interface set
```


```c
struct esp_blufi_ap_record_t
    Description of an WiFi AP.

    Public Members
    uint8_t ssid[33]
        SSID of AP
    int8_t rssi
        signal strength of AP

struct esp_blufi_callbacks_t
    BLUFI callback functions type.

    Public Members
    esp_blufi_event_cb_t event_cb
        BLUFI event callback
    esp_blufi_negotiate_data_handler_t negotiate_data_handler
        BLUFI negotiate data function for negotiate share key
    esp_blufi_encrypt_func_t encrypt_func
        BLUFI encrypt data function with share key generated by negotiate_data_handler
    esp_blufi_decrypt_func_t decrypt_func
        BLUFI decrypt data function with share key generated by negotiate_data_handler
    esp_blufi_checksum_func_t checksum_func
        BLUFI check sum function (FCS)

Macros

ESP_BD_ADDR_LEN
    Bluetooth address length.

Type Definitions

typedef uint8_t esp_bd_addr_t[ESP_BD_ADDR_LEN]
    Bluetooth device address.

typedef void (*esp_blufi_event_cb_t)(esp_blufi_cb_event_t event, esp_blufi_cb_param_t *param)
    BLUFI event callback function type.

    Parameters
    • event:: Event type
    • param:: Point to callback parameter, currently is union type

typedef void (*esp_blufi_negotiate_data_handler_t)(uint8_t *data, int len, uint8_t **output_data, int *output_len, bool *need_free)
    BLUFI negotiate data handler.

    Parameters
    • data:: data from phone
    • len:: length of data from phone
    • output_data:: data want to send to phone
    • output_len:: length of data want to send to phone
    • need_free:: output reporting if memory needs to be freed or not

typedef int (*esp_blufi_encrypt_func_t)(uint8_t iv8, uint8_t *crypt_data, int crypt_len)
    BLUFI encrypt the data after negotiate a share key.
```
**Return** Nonnegative number is encrypted length, if error, return negative number;

**Parameters**
- `iv8`: initial vector (8bit), normally, blufi core will input packet sequence number
- `crypt_data`: plain text and encrypted data, the encrypt function must support autochthonous encrypt
- `crypt_len`: length of plain text

```c
typedef int (*esp_blufi_decrypt_func_t)(uint8_t iv8, uint8_t *crypt_data, int crypt_len)
```

BLUFI decrypt the data after negotiate a share key.

**Return** Nonnegative number is decrypted length, if error, return negative number;

**Parameters**
- `iv8`: initial vector (8bit), normally, blufi core will input packet sequence number
- `crypt_data`: encrypted data and plain text, the encrypt function must support autochthonous decrypt
- `crypt_len`: length of encrypted text

```c
typedef uint16_t (*esp_blufi_checksum_func_t)(uint8_t iv8, uint8_t *data, int len)
```

BLUFI checksum.

**Parameters**
- `iv8`: initial vector (8bit), normally, blufi core will input packet sequence number
- `data`: data need to checksum
- `len`: length of data

**Enumerations**

```c
enum esp_blufi_cb_event_t
{
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_INIT_FINISH = 0,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_INIT_ADD_FINAL,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_DEINIT_FINISH,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_DEINIT_ADD_FINAL,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_SET_WIFI_OPMODE,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_BLE_CONNECT,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_BLE_DISCONNECT,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_REQ_CONNECT_TO_AP,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_REQ_DISCONNECT_FROM_AP,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_GET_WIFI_STATUS,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_DEAUTHENTICATE_STA,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_BSSID,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_SSID,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_PASSWD,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_SSID,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_PASSWD,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_MAX_CONN_NUM,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_AUTH_MODE,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SOFTAP_CHANNEL,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_USERNAME,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CA_CERT,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CLIENT_CERT,
    ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SERVER_CERT,
}
```
Chapter 2. API 参考

ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CLIENT_PRIV_KEY
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SERVER_PRIV_KEY
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_SLAVE_DISCONNECT_BLE
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_GET_WIFI_LIST
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_REPORT_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_CUSTOM_DATA

enum esp_blufi_sta_conn_state_t
BLUFI config status.

Values:
ESP_BLUFI_STA_CONN_SUCCESS = 0x00
ESP_BLUFI_STA_CONN_FAIL = 0x01

enum esp_blufi_init_state_t
BLUFI init status.

Values:
ESP_BLUFI_INIT_OK = 0
ESP_BLUFI_INIT_FAILED

enum esp_blufi_deinit_state_t
BLUFI deinit status.

Values:
ESP_BLUFI_DEINIT_OK = 0
ESP_BLUFI_DEINIT_FAILED

enum esp_blufi_error_state_t
Values:
ESP_BLUFI_SEQUENCE_ERROR = 0
ESP_BLUFI_CHECKSUM_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_DECRYPT_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_ENCRYPT_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_INIT_SECURITY_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_DH_MALLOC_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_DH_PARAM_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_READ_PARAM_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_MAKE_PUBLIC_ERROR
ESP_BLUFI_DATA_FORMAT_ERROR

2.1.4 CLASSIC BT

CLASSIC BLUETOOTH GAP API

Overview Instructions

Application Example Instructions
API Reference

Header File
- components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_gap_bt_api.h

Functions

```c
static uint32_t esp_bt_gap_get_cod_srvc(uint32_t cod)

get major service field of COD

Return major service bits

Parameters
- [in] cod: Class of Device

static uint32_t esp_bt_gap_get_cod_major_dev(uint32_t cod)

get major device field of COD

Return major device bits

Parameters
- [in] cod: Class of Device

static uint32_t esp_bt_gap_get_cod_minor_dev(uint32_t cod)

get minor service field of COD

Return minor service bits

Parameters
- [in] cod: Class of Device

static uint32_t esp_bt_gap_get_cod_format_type(uint32_t cod)

get format type of COD

Return format type

Parameters
- [in] cod: Class of Device

static bool esp_bt_gap_is_valid_cod(uint32_t cod)

decide the integrity of COD

Return
- true if cod is valid
- false otherwise

Parameters
- [in] cod: Class of Device
```

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_register_callback(esp_bt_gap_cb_t callback)

register callback function. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully

Return
- ESP_OK : Succeed
- ESP_FAIL: others
```

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_set_scan_mode(esp_bt_connection_mode_t c_mode,
                                   esp_bt_discovery_mode_t d_mode)

Set discoverability and connectability mode for legacy bluetooth. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

Return
- ESP_OK : Succeed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if argument invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] c_mode: one of the enums of esp_bt_connection_mode_t
- [in] d_mode: one of the enums of esp_bt_discovery_mode_t
```
esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_start_discovery(esp_bt_inq_mode_t mode, uint8_t inq_len, uint8_t num_rsps)

This function starts Inquiry and Name Discovery. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully. When Inquiry is halted and cached results do not contain device name, then Name Discovery will connect to the peer target to get the device name. esp_bt_gap_cb_t will be called with ESP_BT_GAP_DISC_STATE_CHANGED_EVT when Inquiry is started or Name Discovery is completed. esp_bt_gap_cb_t will be called with ESP_BT_GAP_DISC_RES_EVT each time the two types of discovery results are got.

Return
- ESP_OK: Succeed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if invalid parameters are provided
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] mode: - Inquiry mode
- [in] inq_len: - Inquiry duration in 1.28 sec units, ranging from 0x01 to 0x30. This parameter only specifies the total duration of the Inquiry process,
  - when this time expires, Inquiry will be halted.
- [in] num_rsps: - Number of responses that can be received before the Inquiry is halted, value 0 indicates an unlimited number of responses.

esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_cancel_discovery(void)

Cancel Inquiry and Name Discovery. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully. esp_bt_gap_cb_t will be called with ESP_BT_GAP_DISC_STATE_CHANGED_EVT if Inquiry or Name Discovery is cancelled by calling this function.

Return
- ESP_OK: Succeed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_get_remote_services (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)

Start SDP to get remote services. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully. esp_bt_gap_cb_t will be called with ESP_BT_GAP_RMT_SRVCS_EVT after service discovery ends.

Return
- ESP_OK: Succeed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_get_remote_service_record (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, esp_bt_uuid_t *uuid)

Start SDP to look up the service matching uuid on the remote device. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

esp_bt_gap_cb_t will be called with ESP_BT_GAP_RMT_SRVC_REC_EVT after service discovery ends.

Return
- ESP_OK: Succeed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

uint8_t *esp_bt_gap_resolve_eir_data (uint8_t *eir, esp_bt_eir_type_t type, uint8_t *length)

This function is called to get EIR data for a specific type.

Return pointer of starting position of eir data excluding eir data type, NULL if not found

Parameters
- [in] eir: - pointer of raw eir data to be resolved
- [in] type: - specific EIR data type
- [out] length: - return the length of EIR data excluding fields of length and data type
### Chapter 2. API 参考

**esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_config_eir_data (esp_bt_eir_data_t *eir_data)**

This function is called to config EIR data.

`esp_bt_gapCb_t` will be called with ESP_BT_GAP_CONFIG_EIR_DATA_EVT after config EIR ends.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : Succeed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if param is invalid
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**

- [in] eir_data: - pointer of EIR data content

**esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_set_cod (esp_bt_cod_t cod, esp_bt_cod_mode_t mode)**

This function is called to set class of device. The structure `esp_bt_gapCb_t` will be called with ESP_BT_GAP_SET_COD_EVT after set COD ends. Some profile have special restrictions on class of device, changes may cause these profile do not work.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : Succeed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if param is invalid
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**

- [in] cod: - class of device
- [in] mode: - setting mode

**esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_get_cod (esp_bt_cod_t *cod)**

This function is called to get class of device.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : Succeed
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**

- [out] cod: - class of device

**esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_read_rssi_delta (esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr)**

This function is called to read RSSI delta by address after connected. The RSSI value returned by ESP_BT_GAP_READ_RSSI_DELTA_EVT.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : Succeed
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**

- [in] remote_addr: - remote device address, corresponding to a certain connection handle

**esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_remove_bond_device (esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr)**

Removes a device from the security database list of peer device.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : success
- ESP_FAIL : failed

**Parameters**

- [in] bd_addr: : BD address of the peer device

**int esp_bt_gap_get_bond_device_num (void)**

Get the device number from the security database list of peer device. It will return the device bonded number immediately.

**Return**

- >= 0 : bonded devices number
- ESP_FAIL : failed

**esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_get_bond_device_list (int *dev_num, esp_bd_addr_t *dev_list)**

Get the device from the security database list of peer device. It will return the device bonded information immediately.
Chapter 2. API

Return
- ESP_OK: Succeed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [inout] dev_num: Indicate the dev_list array(buffer) size as input. If dev_num is large enough, it means the actual number as output. Suggest that dev_num value equal to esp_ble_get_bond_device_num().
- [out] dev_list: an array(buffer) of esp_bd_addr_t type. Use for storing the bonded devices address. The dev_list should be allocated by who call this API.

\[\text{esp_err_t } \text{esp_bt_gap_set_pin} (\text{esp_bt_pin_type_t } \text{pin_type}, \text{uint8_t } \text{pin_code_len}, \text{esp_bt_pin_code_t } \text{pin_code})\]

Set pin type and default pin code for legacy pairing.

Return - ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- other: failed

Parameters
- [in] pin_type: Use variable or fixed pin. If pin_type is ESP_BT_PIN_TYPE_VARIABLE, pin_code and pin_code_len will be ignored, and ESP_BT_GAP_PIN_REQ_EVT will come when control requests for pin code. Else, will use fixed pin code and not callback to users.
- [in] pin_code_len: Length of pin_code
- [in] pin_code: Pin_code

\[\text{esp_err_t } \text{esp_bt_gap_pin_reply} (\text{esp_bd_addr_t } \text{bd_addr}, \text{bool } \text{accept}, \text{uint8_t } \text{pin_code_len}, \text{esp_bt_pin_code_t } \text{pin_code})\]

Reply the pin_code to the peer device for legacy pairing when ESP_BT_GAP_PIN_REQ_EVT is coming.

Return - ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- other: failed

Parameters
- [in] bd_addr: BD address of the peer
- [in] accept: Pin_code reply successful or declined.
- [in] pin_code_len: Length of pin_code
- [in] pin_code: Pin_code

\[\text{esp_err_t } \text{esp_bt_gap_set_security_param} (\text{esp_bt_sp_param_t } \text{param_type}, \text{void *} \text{value}, \text{uint8_t } \text{len})\]

Set a GAP security parameter value. Overrides the default value.

Return - ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- other: failed

Parameters
- [in] param_type::: the type of the param which is to be set
- [in] value::: the param value
- [in] len::: the length of the param value

\[\text{esp_err_t } \text{esp_bt_gap_ssp_passkey_reply} (\text{esp_bd_addr_t } \text{bd_addr}, \text{bool } \text{accept}, \text{uint32_t } \text{passkey})\]

Reply the key value to the peer device in the legacy connection stage.

Return - ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- other: failed

Parameters
- [in] bd_addr::: BD address of the peer
- [in] accept::: passkey entry successful or declined.
- [in] passkey::: passkey value, must be a 6 digit number, can be lead by 0.

\[\text{esp_err_t } \text{esp_bt_gap_ssp_confirm_reply} (\text{esp_bd_addr_t } \text{bd_addr}, \text{bool } \text{accept})\]
Reply the confirm value to the peer device in the legacy connection stage.

**Return** - ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] bd_addr: BD address of the peer device
- [in] accept: numbers to compare are the same or different

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_set_afh_channels (esp_bt_gap_afh_channels channels)
```
Set the AFH channels.

**Return** - ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] channels: The n th such field (in the range 0 to 78) contains the value for channel n:
  0 means channel n is bad. 1 means channel n is unknown. The most significant bit is reserved and shall be set to 0. At least 20 channels shall be marked as unknown.

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_read_remote_name (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)
```
Read the remote device name.

**Return** - ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] remote_bda: The remote device’s address

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_gap_set_qos (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, uint32_t t_poll)
```
Config Quality of service.

**Return** - ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] remote_bda: The remote device’s address
- [in] t_poll: Poll interval, the maximum time between transmissions which from the master to a particular slave on the ACL logical transport. unit is 0.625ms

**Unions**

```c
union esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t
```
A2DP state callback parameters.

**Public Members**

```c
struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::disc_res_param disc_res
```
discovery result parameter struct

```c
struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::disc_state_changed_param disc_st_chg
```
discovery state changed parameter struct

```c
struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::rmt_srvcs_param rmt_srvcs
```
services of remote device parameter struct

```c
struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::rmt_svc_rec_param rmt_svc_rec
```
specific service record from remote device parameter struct

```c
struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::read_rssi_delta_param read_rssi_delta
```
read rssi parameter struct

```c
struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::config_eir_data_param config_eir_data
```
config EIR data
### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::auth_cmpl_param auth_cmpl

Authentication complete parameter struct

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::pin_req_param pin_req

Pin request parameter struct

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::cfm_req_param cfm_req

Confirm request parameter struct

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::key_notif_param key_notif

Passkey notification parameter struct

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::key_req_param key_req

Passkey request parameter struct

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::set_afh_channels_param set_afh_channels

Set AFH channel parameter struct

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::read_rmt_name_param read_rmt_name

Read Remote Name parameter struct

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::mode_chg_param mode_chg

Mode change event parameter struct

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::bt_remove_bond_dev_cmpl_evt_param remove_bond_dev_cmpl

Event parameter of ESP_BT_GAP_REMOVE_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT

### struct esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t::qos_cmpl_param qos_cmpl

QoS complete parameter struct

### struct auth_cmpl_param

```c
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h>
ESP_BT_GAP_AUTH_CMPL_EVT.
```

#### Public Members

- **esp_bd_addr_t bda**
  - Remote Bluetooth device address

- **esp_bt_status_t stat**
  - Authentication complete status

- **uint8_t device_name[ESP_BT_GAP_MAX_BDNAME_LEN + 1]**
  - Device name

### struct bt_remove_bond_dev_cmpl_evt_param

```c
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h>
ESP_BT_GAP_REMOVE_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT.
```

#### Public Members

- **esp_bd_addr_t bda**
  - Remote Bluetooth device address

- **esp_bt_status_t status**
  - Indicates the remove bond device operation success status

### struct cfm_req_param

```c
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h>
ESP_BT_GAP_CFM_REQ_EVT.
```

#### Public Members

- **esp_bd_addr_t bda**
  - Remote Bluetooth device address
uint32_t num_val
  the numeric value for comparison.

struct config_eir_data_param
  #include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_CONFIG_EIR_DATA_EVT *.

Public Members

  esp_bt_status_t stat
    config  EIR  status:  ESP_BT_STATUS_SUCCESS:  config  success
    ESP_BT_STATUS_EIR_TOO_LARGE:  the EIR data is more than 240B. The EIR may not
    contain the whole data.  others:  failed

uint8_t eir_type_num
  the number of EIR types in EIR type

  esp_bt_eir_type_t eir_type[ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_MAX_NUM]
    EIR types in EIR type

struct disc_res_param
  #include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_DISC_RES_EVT.

Public Members

  esp_bd_addr_t bda
    remote bluetooth device address

  int num_prop
    number of properties got

  esp_bt_gap_dev_prop_t *prop
    properties discovered from the new device

struct disc_state_changed_param
  #include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_DISC_STATE_CHANGED_EVT.

Public Members

  esp_bt_gap_discovery_state_t state
    discovery state

struct key_notif_param
  #include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_KEY_NOTIF_EVT.

Public Members

  esp_bd_addr_t bda
    remote bluetooth device address

uint32_t passkey
  the numeric value for passkey entry.

struct key_req_param
  #include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_KEY_REQ_EVT.
Public Members

```c
esp_bd_addr_t bda
  remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
struct mode_chg_param
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_MODE_CHG_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bd_addr_t bda
  remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
esp_bt_pm_mode_t mode
  PM mode
```

```c
struct pin_req_param
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_PIN_REQ_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bd_addr_t bda
  remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
bool min_16_digit
  TRUE if the pin returned must be at least 16 digits
```

```c
struct qos_cmpl_param
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_QOS_CMPL_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t stat
  QoS status
```

```c
esp_bd_addr_t bda
  remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
uint32_t t_poll
  poll interval, the maximum time between transmissions which from the master to a particular slave
  on the ACL logical transport. unit is 0.625ms.
```

```c
struct read_rmt_name_param
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_READ_REMOTE_NAME_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t stat
  read Remote Name status
```

```c
uint8_t rmt_name[ESP_BT_GAP_MAX_BDNAME_LEN + 1]
  Remote device name
```

```c
struct read_rssi_delta_param
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_READ_RSSI_DELTA_EVT *.
```
Public Members

```c
esp_bd_addr_t bda
    remote bluetooth device address

esp_bt_status_t stat
    read rssi status
```

```c
int8_t rssi_delta
    rssi delta value range -128 ~ 127, The value zero indicates that the RSSI is inside the Golden Receive Power Range, the Golden Receive Power Range is from ESP_BT_GAP_RSSI_LOW_THRLD to ESP_BT_GAP_RSSI_HIGH_THRLD
```

```c
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h>
```

```c
struct rmt_srvc_rec_param
```

```c
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_RMT_SRVC_REC_EVT.
```

```c
Public Members

```c
esp_bd_addr_t bda
    remote bluetooth device address

esp_bt_status_t stat
    service search status
```

```c
struct rmt_srvcs_param
```

```c
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_RMT_SRVCS_EVT.
```

```c
Public Members

```c
esp_bd_addr_t bda
    remote bluetooth device address

esp_bt_status_t stat
    service search status
```

```c
int num_uuids
    number of UUID in uuid_list

esp_bt_uuid_t *uuid_list
    list of service UUIDs of remote device
```

```c
#include <esp_gap_bt_api.h> ESP_BT_GAP_SET_AFH_CHANNELS_EVT.
```

```c
Public Members

```c
esp_bt_status_t stat
    set AFH channel status
```

Structures

```c
struct esp_bt_cod_t
```

Class of device.

```c
Public Members

```c
uint32_t reserved_2 : 2
    undefined
```
uint32_t minor: 6
    minor class
uint32_t major: 5
    major class
uint32_t service: 11
    service class
uint32_t reserved_8: 8
    undefined

struct esp_bt_gap_dev_prop_t
    Bluetooth Device Property Descriptor.

Public Members

    esp_bt_gap_dev_prop_type_t type
        Device property type
    int len
        Device property value length
    void *val
        Device property value

struct esp_bt_eir_data_t
    EIR data content, according to “Supplement to the Bluetooth Core Specification”.

Public Members

    bool fec_required
        FEC is required or not, true by default
    bool include_txpower
        EIR data include TX power, false by default
    bool include_uuid
        EIR data include UUID, false by default
    uint8_t flag
        EIR flags, see ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG for details, EIR will not include flag if it is 0, 0 by default
    uint16_t manufacturer_len
        Manufacturer data length, 0 by default
    uint8_t *p_manufacturer_data
        Manufacturer data point
    uint16_t url_len
        URL length, 0 by default
    uint8_t *p_url
        URL point

Macros

    ESP_BT_GAP_RSSI_HIGH_THRLD
        RSSI threshold.
        High RSSI threshold
    ESP_BT_GAP_RSSI_LOW_THRLD
        Low RSSI threshold
    ESP_BT_GAP_AFH_CHANNELS_LEN
Chapter 2. API

**ESP_BT_GAP_MAX_BDNAME_LEN**
Maximum bytes of Bluetooth device name.

**ESP_BT_GAP_EIR_DATA_LEN**
Maximum size of EIR Significant part.

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_FLAGS**
Extended Inquiry Response data type.
Flag with information such as BR/EDR and LE support

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_INCMPL_16BITS_UUID**
Incomplete list of 16-bit service UUIDs

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_CMPL_16BITS_UUID**
Complete list of 16-bit service UUIDs

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_INCMPL_32BITS_UUID**
Incomplete list of 32-bit service UUIDs

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_CMPL_32BITS_UUID**
Complete list of 32-bit service UUIDs

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_INCMPL_128BITS_UUID**
Incomplete list of 128-bit service UUIDs

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_CMPL_128BITS_UUID**
Complete list of 128-bit service UUIDs

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_SHORT_LOCAL_NAME**
Shortened Local Name

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_CMPL_LOCAL_NAME**
Complete Local Name

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_TX_POWER_LEVEL**
Tx power level, value is 1 octet ranging from -127 to 127, unit is dBm

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_URL**
Uniform resource identifier

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_MANU_SPECIFIC**
Manufacturer specific data

**ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_MAX_NUM**
MAX number of EIR type

**ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_LIMIT_DISC**

**ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_GEN_DISC**

**ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_BREDR_NOT_SPT**

**ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_DMT_CONTROLLER_SPT**

**ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_DMT_HOST_SPT**

**ESP_BT_EIR_MAX_LEN**

**ESP_BT_PIN_CODE_LEN**
Max pin code length

**ESP_BT_IO_CAP_OUT**

**ESP_BT_IO_CAP_IO**

**ESP_BT_IO_CAP_IN**

**ESP_BT_IO_CAP_NONE**

**ESP_BT_PM_MD_ACTIVE**
Active mode
ESP_BT_PM_MD_HOLD
Hold mode

ESP_BT_PM_MD_SNIFF
Sniff mode

ESP_BT_PM_MD_PARK
Park state

ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_BIT_MASK
Bits of major service class field.
Major service bit mask

ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_BIT_OFFSET
Major service bit offset

ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_BIT_MASK
Bits of major device class field.
Major device bit mask

ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_BIT_OFFSET
Major device bit offset

ESP_BT_COD_MINOR_DEV_BIT_MASK
Bits of minor device class field.
Minor device bit mask

ESP_BT_COD_MINOR_DEV_BIT_OFFSET
Minor device bit offset

ESP_BT_COD_FORMAT_TYPE_BIT_MASK
Bits of format type.
Format type bit mask

ESP_BT_COD_FORMAT_TYPE_BIT_OFFSET
Format type bit offset

ESP_BT_COD_FORMAT_TYPE_1
Class of device format type 1.

ESP_BT_GAP_MIN_INQ_LEN
Minimum and Maximum inquiry length Minimum inquiry duration, unit is 1.28s

ESP_BT_GAP_MAX_INQ_LEN
Maximum inquiry duration, unit is 1.28s

**Type Definitions**

typedef uint8_t esp_bt_gap_afh_channels[ESP_BT_GAP_AFH_CHANNELS_LEN]
typedef uint8_t esp_bt_eir_type_t

typedef uint8_t esp_bt_pin_code_t[ESP_BT_PIN_CODE_LEN]
Pin Code (upto 128 bits) MSB is 0

typedef uint8_t esp_bt_io_cap_t
Combination of the IO Capability

typedef uint8_t esp_bt_pm_mode_t

typedef void(*esp_bt_gap_cb_t)(esp_bt_gap_cb_event_t event, esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t *param)
bluetooth GAP callback function type

**Parameters**

- event:: Event type
- param:: Pointer to callback parameter
Enumerations

enum esp_bt_cod_mode_t
class of device settings

Values:

ESP_BT_SET_COD_MAJOR_MINOR = 0x01
overwrite major, minor class

ESP_BT_SET_COD_SERVICE_CLASS = 0x02
set the bits in the input, the current bit will remain

ESP_BT_CLR_COD_SERVICE_CLASS = 0x04
clear the bits in the input, others will remain

ESP_BT_SET_COD_ALL = 0x08
overwrite major, minor, set the bits in service class

ESP_BT_INIT_COD = 0x0a
overwrite major, minor, and service class

enum esp_bt_connection_mode_t
Discoverability and Connectability mode.

Values:

ESP_BT_NON_CONNECTABLE
Non-connectable

ESP_BT_CONNECTABLE
Connectable

enum esp_bt_discovery_mode_t
Values:

ESP_BT_NON_DISCOVERABLE
Non-discoverable

ESP_BT_LIMITED_DISCOVERABLE
Limited Discoverable

ESP_BT_GENERAL_DISCOVERABLE
General Discoverable

enum esp_bt_gap_dev_prop_type_t
Bluetooth Device Property type.

Values:

ESP_BT_GAP_DEV_PROP_BDNAME = 1
Bluetooth device name, value type is int8_t []

ESP_BT_GAP_DEV_PROP_COD
Class of Device, value type is uint32_t

ESP_BT_GAP_DEV_PROP_RSSI
Received Signal strength Indication, value type is int8_t, ranging from -128 to 127

ESP_BT_GAP_DEV_PROP_EIR
Extended Inquiry Response, value type is uint8_t []

enum esp_bt_cod_srvc_t
Major service class field of Class of Device, multiple bits can be set.

Values:

ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_NONE = 0
None indicates an invalid value

ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_LMTD_DISCOVER = 0x1
Limited Discoverable Mode
ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_POSITIONING = 0x8
  Positioning (Location identification)
ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_NETWORKING = 0x10
  Networking, e.g. LAN, Ad-hoc
ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_RENDERING = 0x20
  Rendering, e.g. Printing, Speakers
ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_CAPTURING = 0x40
  Capturing, e.g. Scanner, Microphone
ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_OBJ_TRANSFER = 0x80
  Object Transfer, e.g. v-Inbox, v-Folder
ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_AUDIO = 0x100
  Audio, e.g. Speaker, Microphone, Headset service
ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_TELEPHONY = 0x200
  Telephony, e.g. Cordless telephony, Modem, Headset service
ESP_BT_COD_SRVC_INFORMATION = 0x400
  Information, e.g. WEB-server, WAP-server

enum esp_bt_pin_type_t
  Values:
  ESP_BT_PIN_TYPE_VARIABLE = 0
      Refer to BTM_PIN_TYPE_VARIABLE
  ESP_BT_PIN_TYPE_FIXED = 1
      Refer to BTM_PIN_TYPE_FIXED

enum esp_bt_sp_param_t
  Values:
  ESP_BT_SP_IOCAP_MODE = 0
      Set IO mode

enum esp_bt_cod_major_dev_t
  Major device class field of Class of Device.
  Values:
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_MISC = 0
      Miscellaneous
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_COMPUTER = 1
      Computer
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_PHONE = 2
      Phone(cellular, cordless, pay phone, modem
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_LAN_NAP = 3
      LAN, Network Access Point
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_AV = 4
      Audio/Video(headset, speaker, stereo, video display, VCR
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_PERIPHERAL = 5
      Peripheral(mouse, joystick, keyboard)
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_IMAGING = 6
      Imaging(printer, scanner, camera, display
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_WEARABLE = 7
      Wearable
  ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_TOY = 8
      Toy
ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_HEALTH = 9
Health
ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_UNCATEGORIZED = 31
Uncategorized: device not specified

enum esp_bt_gap_discovery_state_t
Bluetooth Device Discovery state

Values:
ESP_BT_GAP_DISCOVERY_STOPPED
Device discovery stopped
ESP_BT_GAP_DISCOVERY_STARTED
Device discovery started

enum esp_bt_gap_cb_event_t
BT GAP callback events.

Values:
ESP_BT_GAP_DISC_RES_EVT = 0
Device discovery result event
ESP_BT_GAP_DISC_STATE_CHANGED_EVT
Discovery state changed event
ESP_BT_GAP_RMT_SRVCS_EVT
Get remote services event
ESP_BT_GAP_RMT_SRVC_REC_EVT
Get remote service record event
ESP_BT_GAP_AUTH_CMPI_EVT
Authentication complete event
ESP_BT_GAP_PIN_REQ_EVT
Legacy Pairing Pin code request
ESP_BT_GAP_CFM_REQ_EVT
Security Simple Pairing User Confirmation request.
ESP_BT_GAP_KEY_NOTIF_EVT
Security Simple Pairing Passkey Notification
ESP_BT_GAP_KEY_REQ_EVT
Security Simple Pairing Passkey request
ESP_BT_GAP_READ_RSSI_DELTA_EVT
Read rssi event
ESP_BT_GAP_CONFIG_EIR_DATA_EVT
Config EIR data event
ESP_BT_GAP_SET_AFH_CHANNELS_EVT
Set AFH channels event
ESP_BT_GAP_READ_REMOTE_NAME_EVT
Read Remote Name event
ESP_BT_GAP_MODE_CHG_EVT
ESP_BT_GAP_REMOVE_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT
remove bond device complete event
ESP_BT_GAP_QOS_CMPL_EVT
QOS complete event
ESP_BT_GAP_EVT_MAX
enum esp_bt_inq_mode_t
    Inquiry Mode

Values:
    ESP_BT_INQ_MODE_GENERAL_INQUIRY
        General inquiry mode
    ESP_BT_INQ_MODE_LIMITED_INQUIRY
        Limited inquiry mode

Bluetooth A2DP API

Overview

Instructions

Application Example
Check bluetooth/bluedroid/classic_bt folder in ESP-IDF examples, which contains the following application:

• This is a A2DP sink client demo. This demo can be discovered and connected by A2DP source device and receive the audio stream from remote device - bluetooth/bluedroid/classic_bt/a2dp_sink

API Reference

Header File

• components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_a2dp_api.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_a2d_register_callback (esp_a2d_cb_t callback)
    Register application callback function to A2DP module. This function should be called only after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully, used by both A2DP source and sink.
    Return
    • ESP_OK: success
    • ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
    • ESP_FAIL: if callback is a NULL function pointer
    Parameters
    • [in] callback: A2DP event callback function

esp_err_t esp_a2d_sink_register_data_callback (esp_a2d_sink_data_cb_t callback)
    Register A2DP sink data output function; For now the output is PCM data stream decoded from SBC format. This function should be called only after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully, used only by A2DP sink. The callback is invoked in the context of A2DP sink task whose stack size is configurable through menuconfig.
    Return
    • ESP_OK: success
    • ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
    • ESP_FAIL: if callback is a NULL function pointer
    Parameters
    • [in] callback: A2DP sink data callback function

esp_err_t esp_a2d_sink_init (void)
    Initialize the bluetooth A2DP sink module. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully, and ESP_A2D_PROF_STATE_EVT with ESP_A2D_INIT_SUCCESS will reported to the APP layer. Note: A2DP can work independently. If you want to use AVRC together, you should initiate AVRC first. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.
    Return
    • ESP_OK: if the initialization request is sent successfully
• ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
• ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_sink_deinit (void)`
De-initialize for A2DP sink module. This function should be called only after `esp_bluedroid_enable()` completes successfully, and ESP_A2D_PROF_STATE_EVT with ESP_A2D_DEINIT_SUCCESS will reported to APP layer.

   **Return**
   • ESP_OK: if the deinitialization request is sent successfully
   • ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
   • ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_sink_connect (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`
Connect to remote Bluetooth A2DP source device. This API must be called after `esp_a2d_sink_init()` and before `esp_a2d_sink_deinit()`.

   **Return**
   • ESP_OK: connect request is sent to lower layer successfully
   • ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
   • ESP_FAIL: others

   **Parameters**
   • [in] remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_sink_disconnect (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`
Disconnect from the remote A2DP source device. This API must be called after `esp_a2d_sink_init()` and before `esp_a2d_sink_deinit()`.

   **Return**
   • ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer successfully
   • ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
   • ESP_FAIL: others

   **Parameters**
   • [in] remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_media_ctrl (esp_a2d_media_ctrl_t ctrl)`
Media control commands. This API can be used for both A2DP sink and source and must be called after `esp_a2d_sink_init()` and before `esp_a2d_sink_deinit()`.

   **Return**
   • ESP_OK: control command is sent to lower layer successfully
   • ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
   • ESP_FAIL: others

   **Parameters**
   • [in] ctrl: control commands for A2DP data channel

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_source_init (void)`
Initialize the Bluetooth A2DP source module. A2DP can work independently. If you want to use AVRC together, you should initiate AVRC first. This function should be called after `esp_bluedroid_enable()` completes successfully, and ESP_A2D_PROF_STATE_EVT with ESP_A2D_INIT_SUCCESS will reported to the APP layer. Note: A2DP can work independently. If you want to use AVRC together, you should initiate AVRC first.

   **Return**
   • ESP_OK: if the initialization request is sent to lower layer successfully
   • ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
   • ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_source_deinit (void)`
De-initialize for A2DP source module. This function should be called only after `esp_bluedroid_enable()` completes successfully, and ESP_A2D_PROF_STATE_EVT with ESP_A2D_DEINIT_SUCCESS will reported to APP layer.

   **Return**
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_source_register_data_callback (esp_a2d_source_data_cb_t callback)`

Register A2DP source data input function. For now, the input should be PCM data stream. This function should be called only after `esp_bluedroid_enable()` completes successfully. The callback is invoked in the context of A2DP source task whose stack size is configurable through menuconfig.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: if callback is a NULL function pointer

**Parameters**
- `[in]` callback: A2DP source data callback function

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_source_connect (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`

Connect to remote A2DP sink device. This API must be called after `esp_a2d_source_init()` and before `esp_a2d_source_deinit()`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: connect request is sent to lower layer successfully
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
- `[in]` remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address

`esp_err_t esp_a2d_source_disconnect (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`

Disconnect from the remote A2DP sink device. This API must be called after `esp_a2d_source_init()` and before `esp_a2d_source_deinit()`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
- `[in]` remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address

**Unions**

`union esp_a2d_cb_param_t`  
#include `<esp_a2dp_api.h>` A2DP state callback parameters.

**Public Members**

- `struct esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_conn_stat_param conn_stat` A2DP connection status
- `struct esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_audio_stat_param audio_stat` audio stream playing state
- `struct esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_audio_cfg_param audio_cfg` media codec configuration information
- `struct esp_a2d_cb_param_t::media_ctrl_stat_param media_ctrl_stat` status in acknowledgement to media control commands
- `struct esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_prof_stat_param a2d_prof_stat` status to indicate a2d prof init or deinit

- `struct a2d_audio_cfg_param`  
#include `<esp_a2dp_api.h>` ESP_A2D_AUDIO_CFG_EVT.
Public Members

```c
enum esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
    remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
enum esp_a2d_mcc_t mcc
    A2DP media codec capability information
```

```c
typedef struct a2d_audio_stat_param
#include <esp_a2dp_api.h>
    ESP_A2D_AUDIO_STATE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
enum esp_a2d_audio_state_t state
    one of the values from esp_a2d_audio_state_t
```

```c
enum esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
    remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
typedef struct a2d_conn_stat_param
#include <esp_a2dp_api.h>
    ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
enum esp_a2d_connection_state_t state
    one of values from esp_a2d_connection_state_t
```

```c
enum esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
    remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
enum esp_a2d_disc_rsn_t disc_rsn
    reason of disconnection for "DISCONNECTED"
```

```c
typedef struct a2d_prof_stat_param
#include <esp_a2dp_api.h>
    ESP_A2D_PROF_STATE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
enum esp_a2d_init_state_t init_state
    a2dp profile state param
```

```c
typedef struct media_ctrl_stat_param
#include <esp_a2dp_api.h>
    ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_ACK_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
enum esp_a2d_media_ctrl_t cmd
    media control commands to acknowledge
```

```c
enum esp_a2d_media_ctrl_ack_t status
    acknowledgement to media control commands
```

Structures

```c
typedef struct esp_a2d_mcc_t
    A2DP media codec capabilities union
```
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

```c

typedef esp_a2d_mct_t type
    A2DP media codec type

uint8_t sbc[ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_SBC]          // SBC codec capabilities
uint8_t m12[ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_M12]         // MPEG-1,2 audio codec capabilities
uint8_t m24[ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_M24]         // MPEG-2, 4 AAC audio codec capabilities
uint8_t atrac[ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_ATRAC]     // ATRAC family codec capabilities

union esp_a2d_mcc_t:\[anonymous\] cie
    A2DP codec information element
```

Macros

```c

#define ESP_A2D_MCT_SBC                  Media codec types supported by A2DP.
#define ESP_A2D_MCT_M12                  MPEG-1, 2 Audio
#define ESP_A2D_MCT_M24                  MPEG-2, 4 AAC
#define ESP_A2D_MCT_ATRAC                ATRAC family
#define ESP_A2D_MCT_NON_A2DP             ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_SBC
#define ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_SBC              ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_M12
#define ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_M12              ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_M24
#define ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_M24
#define ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_ATRAC
```

Type Definitions

```c

typedef uint8_t esp_a2d_mct_t

typedef void (*esp_a2d_cb_t)(esp_a2d_cb_event_t event, esp_a2d_cb_param_t *param)
    A2DP profile callback function type.

Parameters
    • event:: Event type
    • param:: Pointer to callback parameter

typedef void (*esp_a2d_sink_data_cb_t)(const uint8_t* buf,uint32_t len)
    A2DP sink data callback function.

Parameters
    • [in] buf:: pointer to the data received from A2DP source device and is PCM format decoded
        from SBC decoder; buf references to a static memory block and can be overwritten by upcoming
        data
    • [in] len:: size(in bytes) in buf

typedef int32_t (*esp_a2d_source_data_cb_t)(uint8_t *buf, int32_t len)
    A2DP source data read callback function.

Return size of bytes read successfully, if the argument len is -1, this value is ignored.
```
Chapter 2. API 参考

Parameters

• [in] buf: buffer to be filled with PCM data stream from higher layer
• [in] len: size (in bytes) of data block to be copied to buf. -1 is an indication to user that data buffer shall be flushed

Enumerations

enum esp_a2d_connection_state_t
Bluetooth A2DP connection states.

Values:

ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_DISCONNECTED = 0
collection released

ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_CONNECTING
connecting remote device

ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_CONNECTED
connection established

ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_DISCONNECTING
disconnecting remote device

enum esp_a2d_disc_rsn_t
Bluetooth A2DP disconnection reason.

Values:

ESP_A2D_DISC_RSN_NORMAL = 0
Finished disconnection that is initiated by local or remote device

ESP_A2D_DISC_RSN_ABNORMAL
Abnormal disconnection caused by signal loss

enum esp_a2d_audio_state_t
Bluetooth A2DP datapath states.

Values:

ESP_A2D_AUDIO_STATE_REMOTE_SUSPEND = 0
audio stream datapath suspended by remote device

ESP_A2D_AUDIO_STATE_STOPPED
audio stream datapath stopped

ESP_A2D_AUDIO_STATE_STARTED
audio stream datapath started

enum esp_a2d_media_ctrl_ack_t
A2DP media control command acknowledgement code.

Values:

ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_ACK_SUCCESS = 0
media control command is acknowledged with success

ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_ACK_FAILURE
media control command is acknowledged with failure

ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_ACK_BUSY
media control command is rejected, as previous command is not yet acknowledged

enum esp_a2d_media_ctrl_t
A2DP media control commands.

Values:

ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_NONE = 0
Not for application use, use inside stack only.
**Chapter 2. API 参考**

**ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_CHECK_SRC_RDY**
- check whether AVDTP is connected, only used in A2DP source

**ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_START**
- command to set up media transmission channel

**ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_STOP**
- command to stop media transmission

**ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_SUSPEND**
- command to suspend media transmission

**enum esp_a2d_init_state_t**
- Bluetooth A2DP Initiation states.
  - Values:
    - **ESP_A2D_DEINIT_SUCCESS** = 0
      - A2DP profile deinit successful event
    - **ESP_A2D_INIT_SUCCESS**
      - A2DP profile init successful event

**enum esp_a2d_cb_event_t**
- A2DP callback events.
  - Values:
    - **ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT** = 0
      - connection state changed event
    - **ESP_A2D_AUDIO_STATE_EVT**
      - audio stream transmission state changed event
    - **ESP_A2D_AUDIO_CFG_EVT**
      - audio codec is configured, only used for A2DP SINK
    - **ESP_A2D_MEDIA_CTRL_ACK_EVT**
      - acknowledge event in response to media control commands
    - **ESP_A2D_PROF_STATE_EVT**
      - indicate a2dp init&deinit complete

**BT AVRCP APIs**

**Overview**
- Bluetooth AVRCP reference APIs.

**Instructions**

**Application Example**
- Instructions

**API Reference**

**Header File**
- components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_avrc_api.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_register_callback(esp_avrc_ct_cb_t callback)
```
- Register application callbacks to AVRCP module. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

**Return**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Return Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_init(void)`           | Initialize the bluetooth AVRCP controller module. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully. Note: AVRC cannot work independently, AVRC should be used along with A2DP and AVRC should be initialized before A2DP. | • ESP_OK: success  
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled  
• ESP_FAIL: others |
| `esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_deinit(void)`         | De-initialize AVRCP controller module. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully. Note: AVRC cannot work independently, AVRC should be used along with A2DP and AVRC should be deinitialized before A2DP. | • ESP_OK: success  
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled  
• ESP_FAIL: others |
| `esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_send_set_player_value_cmd(uint8_t tl, uint8_t attr_id, uint8_t value_id)` | Send player application settings command to AVRCP target. This function should be called after ESP_AVRC_CT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT is received and AVRCP connection is established. | • ESP_OK: success  
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled  
• ESP_FAIL: others |
| `esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_send_get_rn_capabilities_cmd(uint8_t tl)` | Send GetCapabilities PDU to AVRCP target to retrieve remote device’s supported notification event_ids. This function should be called after ESP_AVRC_CT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT is received and AVRCP connection is established. | • ESP_OK: success  
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled  
• ESP_FAIL: others |
| `esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_send_register_notification_cmd(uint8_t tl, uint8_t event_id, uint32_t event_parameter)` | Send register notification command to AVRCP target. This function should be called after ESP_AVRC_CT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT is received and AVRCP connection is established. | • ESP_OK: success  
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled  
• ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: if the event_id is not supported in current implementation  
• ESP_FAIL: others |

**Parameters**

- `[in] callback`: AVRCP controller callback function
- `[in] tl`: transaction label, 0 to 15, consecutive commands should use different values
- `[in] attr_id`: player application setting attribute IDs from one of esp_avrc_ps_attr_ids_t
- `[in] value_id`: attribute value defined for the specific player application setting attribute
- `[in] event_id`: supported notification event_ids
- `[in] event_parameter`: required parameter for specific event_id
• [in] `event_id`: id of events, e.g. `ESP_AVRC_RN_PLAY_STATUS_CHANGE`, `ESP_AVRC_RN_TRACK_CHANGE`, etc.
• [in] `event_parameter`: playback interval for `ESP_AVRC_RN_PLAY_POS_CHANGED`;
  For other events, value of this parameter is ignored.

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_send_set_absolute_volume_cmd(uint8_t tl, uint8_t volume)
```

Send set absolute volume command to AVRCP target. This function should be called after `ESP_AVRC_CT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT` is received and AVRCP connection is established.

**Return**
• ESP_OK: success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
• ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: if the `event_id` is not supported in current implementation
• ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
• [in] `tl`: transaction label, 0 to 15, consecutive commands should use different values
• [in] `volume`: volume, 0 to 0x7f, means 0% to 100%

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_send_metadata_cmd(uint8_t tl, uint8_t attr_mask)
```

Send metadata command to AVRCP target. This function should be called after `ESP_AVRC_CT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT` is received and AVRCP connection is established.

**Return**
• ESP_OK: success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
• ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
• [in] `tl`: transaction label, 0 to 15, consecutive commands should use different values.
• [in] `attr_mask`: mask of attributes, e.g. `ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_ID_TITLE` | `ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_ID_ARTIST`.

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_ct_send_passthrough_cmd(uint8_t tl, uint8_t key_code, uint8_t key_state)
```

Send passthrough command to AVRCP target. This function should be called after `ESP_AVRC_CT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT` is received and AVRCP connection is established.

**Return**
• ESP_OK: success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
• ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
• [in] `tl`: transaction label, 0 to 15, consecutive commands should use different values.
• [in] `key_code`: passthrough command code, e.g. `ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PLAY`, `ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_STOP`, etc.
• [in] `key_state`: passthrough command key state, `ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_STATE_PRESSED` or `ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_STATE_RELEASED`

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_tg_register_callback(esp_avrc_tg_cb_t callback)
```

Register application callbacks to AVRCP target module. This function should be called after `esp_bluedroid_enable()` completes successfully.

**Return**
• ESP_OK: success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
• ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
• [in] `callback`: AVRCP target callback function

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_tg_init(void)
```

Initialize the bluetooth AVRCP target module. This function should be called after `esp_bluedroid_enable()` completes successfully. Note: AVRC cannot work independently, AVRC should be used along with A2DP and AVR should be initialized before A2DP.

**Return**
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_tg_deinit (void)
```

De-initialize AVRCP target module. This function should be called after after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully. Note: AVRCP cannot work independently, AVRC should be used along with A2DP and AVRC should be deinitialized before A2DP.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_tg_get_psth_cmd_filter (esp_avrc_psth_filter_t filter,
                                         esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t *cmd_set)
```

Get the current filter of remote passthrough commands on AVRC target. Filter is given by filter type and bit mask for the passthrough commands. This function should be called after esp_avrc_tg_init(). For filter type ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_ALLOWED_CMD, the retrieved command set is constant and it covers all of the passthrough commands that can possibly be supported. For filter type ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_SUPPORT_COMMANDS, the retrieved command set covers the passthrough commands selected to be supported according to current configuration. The configuration can be changed using esp_avrc_tg_set_psth_cmd_filter().

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not enabled or AVRC TG is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if filter type is invalid or cmd_set is NULL
- ESP_FAIL: otherwise

```c
esp_err_t esp_avrc_tg_set_psth_cmd_filter (esp_avrc_psth_filter_t filter,
                                         const esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t *cmd_set)
```

Set the filter of remote passthrough commands on AVRC target. Filter is given by filter type and bit mask for the passthrough commands. This function should be called after esp_avrc_tg_init().

If filter type is ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_SUPPORT_CMD, the passthrough commands which are set “1” as given in cmd_set will generate ESP_AVRC_CT_PASSTHROUGH_RSP_EVT callback event and are auto-accepted in the protocol stack, other commands are replied with response type “NOT IMPLEMENTED” (8). The set of supported commands should be a subset of allowed command set. The allowed command set can be retrieved using esp_avrc_tg_get_psth_cmd_filter() with filter type “ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_ALLOWED_CMD”.

Filter type “ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_ALLOWED_CMD” does not apply to this function.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if filter type is invalid or cmd_set is NULL
- ESP_FAIL: otherwise

```c
bool esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_operation (esp_avrc_bit_mask_op_t op,
                                       esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t *psth,
                                       esp_avrc_pt_cmd_t cmd)
```

Operate on the type esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t with regard to a specific PASSTHROUGH command.

**Return** For operation ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_SET or ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_CLEAR, return true for a successful operation, otherwise return false. For operation ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_TEST, return true if the corresponding bit is set, otherwise false.

**Parameters**
- [in] op: operation requested on the bit mask field
- [in] psth: pointer to passthrough command bit mask structure
- [in] cmd: passthrough command code

Submit Document Feedback
### Chapter 2. API

**esp_err_t esp_avrc_tg_get_rn_evt_cap(esp_avrc_rn_evt_cap_t cap, esp_avrc_rn_evt_cap_mask_t *evt_set)**

Get the requested event notification capabilities on local AVRRC target. The capability is returned in a bit mask representation in `evt_set`. This function should be called after `esp_avrc_tg_init()`.

For capability type `ESP_AVRC_RN_CAP_ALLOWED_EVT`, the retrieved event set is constant and it covers all of the notification events that can possibly be supported with current implementation.

For capability type `ESP_AVRC_RN_CAP_SUPPORTED_EVT`, the event set covers the notification events selected to be supported under current configuration. The configuration can be changed using `esp_avrc_tg_set_rn_evt_cap()`.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not enabled or AVRRC TG is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if `cap` is invalid or `evt_set` is NULL
- ESP_FAIL: otherwise

**esp_err_t esp_avrc_tg_set_rn_evt_cap(const esp_avrc_rn_evt_cap_mask_t *evt_set)**

Set the event notification capabilities on local AVRCP target. The capability is given in a bit mask representation in `evt_set` and must be a subset of allowed event IDs with current implementation. This function should be called after `esp_avrc_tg_init()`.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if `evt_set` is NULL

**bool esp_avrc_rn_evt_bit_mask_operation(esp_avrc_bit_mask_op_t op, esp_avrc_rn_evt_cap_mask_t *events, esp_avrc_rn_event_ids_t event_id)**

Operate on the type `esp_avrc_rn_evt_cap_mask_t` with regard to a specific event.

For operation `ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_TEST`, return true if the corresponding bit is set, otherwise false.

**Return** For operation `ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_SET` or `ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_CLEAR`, return true for a successful operation, otherwise return false.

**Parameters**

- [in] `op`: operation requested on the bit mask field
- [in] `events`: pointer to event notification capability bit mask structure
- [in] `event_id`: notification event code

**esp_err_t esp_avrc_tg_send_rn_rsp(esp_avrc_rn_event_ids_t event_id, esp_avrc_rn_rsp_t rsp, esp_avrc_rn_param_t *param)**

Send RegisterNotification Response to remote AVRCP controller. Local event notification capability can be set using `esp_avrc_tg_set_rn_evt_cap()`, in a bit mask representation in `evt_set`. This function should be called after `esp_avrc_tg_init()`.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not enabled or AVRRC TG is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if `evt_set` is NULL

**Parameters**

- [in] `event_id`: notification event ID that remote AVRCP CT registers
- [in] `rsp`: notification response code
- [in] `param`: parameters included in the specific notification

**Unions**

```c
union esp_avrc_rn_param_t
    #include <esp_avrc_api.h> AVRCP notification parameters.
```
Public Members

uint8_t\_volume
  response data for ESP\_AVRC\_RN\_VOLUME\_CHANGE, ranges 0..127

\*esp\*\_avrc\_playback\_stat\_t*\_playback
  response data for ESP\_AVRC\_RN\_PLAY\_STATUS\_CHANGE

uint8_t\_elm_id[8]
  response data for ESP\_AVRC\_RN\_TRACK\_CHANGE

uint32_t\_play\_pos
  response data for ESP\_AVRC\_RN\_PLAY\_POS\_CHANGED, in millisecond

\*esp\*\_avrc\_batt\_stat\_t*\_batt
  response data for ESP\_AVRC\_RN\_BATTERY\_STATUS\_CHANGE

union \*esp\*\_avrc\*\_ct\*\_cb\*\_param\*\_t
  #include \*<esp\*\_avrc\*\_api\*\_h\*> AVRC controller callback parameters.

Public Members

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_cb\*\_param\*\_t::avrc\*\_ct\*\_conn\*\_stat\*\_param*\_conn\*\_stat
  AVRC connection status

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_cb\*\_param\*\_t::avrc\*\_ct\*\_psth\*\_rsp\*\_param*\_psth\*\_rsp
  passthrough command response

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_cb\*\_param\*\_t::avrc\*\_ct\*\_meta\*\_rsp\*\_param*\_meta\*\_rsp
  metadata attributes response

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_cb\*\_param\*\_t::avrc\*\_ct\*\_change\*\_notify\*\_param*\_change\*\_ntf
  notifications

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_cb\*\_param\*\_t::avrc\*\_ct\*\_rmt\*\_feats\*\_param*\_rmt\*\_feats
  AVRC features discovered from remote SDP server

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_cb\*\_param\*\_t::avrc\*\_ct\*\_get\*\_rn\*\_caps\*\_rsp\*\_param*\_get\*\_rn\*\_caps\*\_rsp
  get supported event capabilities response from AVRCP target

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_cb\*\_param\*\_t::avrc\*\_ct\*\_set\*\_volume\*\_rsp\*\_param*\_set\*\_volume\*\_rsp
  set absolute volume response event

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_change\*\_notify\*\_param
  #include \*<esp\*\_avrc\*\_api\*\_h\*> ESP\_AVRC\_CT\_CHANGE\_NOTIFY\__EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t\_event\_id
  id of AVRC event notification

\*esp\*\_avrc\*\_rn\*\_param\*\_t*\_event\*\_parameter
  event notification parameter

\*struct\*\ avrc\*\_ct\*\_conn\*\_stat\*\_param
  #include \*<esp\*\_avrc\*\_api\*\_h\*> ESP\_AVRC\_CT\_CONNECTION\_STATE\__EVT.

Public Members

bool\ connected
  whether AVRC connection is set up
**Chapter 2. API Reference**

```c
esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
remote bluetooth device address
```

**struct avrc_ct_get_rn_caps_rsp_param**

```c
#include <esp_avrc_api.h>
ESP_AVRC_CT_GET_RN_CAPABILITIES_RSP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t cap_count
   number of items provided in event or company_id according to cap_id used
```

```c
esp_avrc_rn_evt_cap_mask_t evt_set
   supported event_ids represented in bit-mask
```

```c
#include <esp_avrc_api.h>
ESP_AVRC_CT_METADATA_RSP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t attr_id
   id of metadata attribute
```

```c
uint8_t* attr_text
   attribute itself
```

```c
int attr_length
   attribute character length
```

```c
#include <esp_avrc_api.h>
ESP_AVRC_CT_PASSTHROUGH_RSP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t tl
   transaction label, 0 to 15
```

```c
uint8_t key_code
   passthrough command code
```

```c
uint8_t key_state
   0 for PRESSED, 1 for RELEASED
```

**struct avrc_ct_rmt_feats_param**

```c
#include <esp_avrc_api.h>
ESP_AVRC_CT_REMOTE_FEATURES_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint32_t feat_mask
   AVRC feature mask of remote device
```

```c
uint16_t tg_feat_flag
   feature flag of remote device as TG
```

```c
esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
remote bluetooth device address
```

**struct avrc_ct_set_volume_rsp_param**

```c
#include <esp_avrc_api.h>
ESP_AVRC_CT_SET_ABSOLUTE_VOLUME_RSP_EVT.
```
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

```c
uint8_t volume
the volume which has actually been set, range is 0 to 0x7f, means 0% to 100%
```

```c
union esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t
#include <esp_avrc_api.h> AVRC target callback parameters.
```

Public Members

```c
struct esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_conn_stat_param conn_stat
AVRC connection status
```

```c
struct esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_rmt_feats_param rmt_feats
AVRC features discovered through SDP
```

```c
struct esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_psth_cmd_param psth_cmd
pass through command
```

```c
struct esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_abs_vol_param set_abs_vol
set absolute volume command targeted on audio sink
```

```c
struct esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_reg_ntf_param reg_ntf
register notification
```

```c
struct esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_app_value_param set_app_value
set player application value
```

```c
struct avrc_tg_conn_stat_param
#include <esp_avrc_api.h> ESP_AVRC_TG_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
bool connected
whether AVRC connection is set up
```

```c
esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
struct avrc_tg_psth_cmd_param
#include <esp_avrc_api.h> ESP_AVRC_TG_PASSTHROUGH_CMD_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
uint8_t key_code
passthrough command code
```

```c
uint8_t key_state
0 for PRESSED, 1 for RELEASED
```

```c
struct avrc_tg_reg_ntf_param
#include <esp_avrc_api.h> ESP_AVRC_TG_REGISTER_NOTIFICATION_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
uint8_t event_id
event id of AVRC RegisterNotification
```

```c
uint32_t event_parameter
event notification parameter
```
```c
struct avrc_tg_rmt_feats_param
#include <esp_avrc_api.h> ESP_AVRC_TGREMOTEFEATURES_EVT.

Public Members

uint32_t feat_mask
AVRC feature mask of remote device

uint16_t ct_feat_flag
feature flag of remote device as CT

esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
struct avrc_tg_set_abs_vol_param
#include <esp_avrc_api.h> ESP_AVRC_TGSETABSOLUTE_VOLUME_CMD_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t volume
volume ranges from 0 to 127
```

```c
struct avrc_tg_set_app_value_param
#include <esp_avrc_api.h> ESP_AVRC_TGSETPLAYER_APPVALUE_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t num_val
attribute num

esp_avrc_set_app_value_param_t *p_vals
point to the id and value of player application attribute
```

Structures

```c
struct esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t
AVRC passthrough command bit mask.
```

```c
Public Members

uint16_t bits[8]
bit mask representation of PASSTHROUGH commands
```

```c
struct esp_avrc_rn_evt_cap_mask_t
AVRC target notification event capability bit mask.
```

```c
Public Members

uint16_t bits
bit mask representation of PASSTHROUGH commands
```

```c
struct esp_avrc_set_app_value_param_t
AVRCP set app value parameters.
```
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

```c
uint8_t attr_id
player application attribute id
```

```c
uint8_t attr_val
player application attribute value
```

Macros

```c
ESP_AVRC_TRANS_LABEL_MAX
max transaction label
```

Type Definitions

```c
typedef void (*esp_avrc_ct_cb_t)(esp_avrc_ct_cb_event_t event, esp_avrc_ct_cb_param_t *param)
AVRCP controller callback function type.
```

**Parameters**

- `event`: Event type
- `param`: Pointer to callback parameter union

```c
typedef void (*esp_avrc_tg_cb_t)(esp_avrc_tg_cb_event_t event, esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t *param)
AVRCP target callback function type.
```

**Parameters**

- `event`: Event type
- `param`: Pointer to callback parameter union

Enumerations

```c
enum esp_avrc_features_t
AVRC feature bit mask.
```

**Values:**

```c
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_RCTG = 0x0001
remote control target
```

```c
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_RCCT = 0x0002
remote control controller
```

```c
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_VENDOR = 0x0008
remote control vendor dependent commands
```

```c
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_BROWSE = 0x0010
use browsing channel
```

```c
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_META_DATA = 0x0040
remote control metadata transfer command/response
```

```c
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_ADV_CTRL = 0x0200
remote control advanced control command/response
```

```c
enum esp_avrc_feature_flag_t
AVRC supported features flag retrieved in SDP record.
```

**Values:**

```c
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_FLAG_CAT1 = 0x0001
category 1
```

```c
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_FLAG_CAT2 = 0x0002
category 2
```
Chapter 2. API

ESP_AVRC_FEAT_FLAG_CAT3 = 0x0004
    category 3
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_FLAG_CAT4 = 0x0008
    category 4
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_FLAG_BROWSING = 0x0040
    browsing
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_FLAG_COVER_ART_GET_IMAGE_PROP = 0x0080
    Cover Art GetImageProperties
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_FLAG_COVER_ART_GET_IMAGE = 0x0100
    Cover Art GetImage
ESP_AVRC_FEAT_FLAG_COVER_ART_GET_LINKED_THUMBNAIL = 0x0200
    Cover Art GetLinkedThumbnail

enum esp_avrc_pt_cmd_t
    AVRC passthrough command code.

    Values:
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SELECT = 0x00
        select
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_UP = 0x01
        up
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_DOWN = 0x02
        down
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_LEFT = 0x03
        left
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_RIGHT = 0x04
        right
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_RIGHT_UP = 0x05
        right-up
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_RIGHT_DOWN = 0x06
        right-down
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_LEFT_UP = 0x07
        left-up
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_LEFT_DOWN = 0x08
        left-down
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_ROOT_MENU = 0x09
        root menu
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SETUP_MENU = 0x0A
        setup menu
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_CONT_MENU = 0x0B
        contents menu
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_FAV_MENU = 0x0C
        favorite menu
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_EXIT = 0x0D
        exit
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_0 = 0x20
    ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_1 = 0x21
\begin{verbatim}
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_2 = 0x22
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_3 = 0x23
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_4 = 0x24
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_5 = 0x25
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_6 = 0x26
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_7 = 0x27
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_8 = 0x28
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_9 = 0x29
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_DOT = 0x2A
dot
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_ENTER = 0x2B
enter
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_CLEAR = 0x2C
clear
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_CHAN_UP = 0x30
channel up
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_CHAN_DOWN = 0x31
channel down
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PREV_CHAN = 0x32
previous channel
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SOUND_SEL = 0x33
sound select
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_INPUT_SEL = 0x34
input select
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_DISP_INFO = 0x35
display information
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_HELP = 0x36
help
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PAGE_UP = 0x37
page up
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PAGE_DOWN = 0x38
page down
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_POWER = 0x40
power
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_VOL_UP = 0x41
volume up
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_VOL_DOWN = 0x42
volume down
\end{verbatim}
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_MUTE = 0x43
mute
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PLAY = 0x44
play
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_STOP = 0x45
stop
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PAUSE = 0x46
pause
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_RECORD = 0x47
record
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_REWIND = 0x48
rewind
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_FAST_FORWARD = 0x49
fast forward
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_EJECT = 0x4A
eject
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_FORWARD = 0x4B
forward
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_BACKWARD = 0x4C
backward
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_ANGLE = 0x50
angle
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SUBPICT = 0x51
subpicture
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F1 = 0x71
F1
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F2 = 0x72
F2
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F3 = 0x73
F3
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F4 = 0x74
F4
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F5 = 0x75
F5
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_VENDOR = 0x7E
vendor unique

class enum esp_avrc_psth_filter_t
AVRC passthrough command filter.

Values:

ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_ALLOWED_CMD = 0
all of the PASSTHRU commands that can possibly be used, immutable
ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_SUPPORTED_CMD = 1
PASSTHRU commands selectively supported according to the current configuration
ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_SUPPORT_MAX

class enum esp_avrc_bit_mask_op_t

Values:
ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_TEST = 0
operation code to test a specific bit

ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_SET = 1
operation code to set a specific bit

ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_CLEAR = 2
operation code to clear a specific bit

defined enum esp_avrc_pt_cmd_state_t
AVRC passthrough command state.
Values:
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_STATE_PRESSED = 0
  key pressed
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_STATE_RELEASED = 1
  key released

defined enum esp_avrc_ct_cb_event_t
AVRC Controller callback events.
Values:
ESP_AVRC_CT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT = 0
  connection state changed event
ESP_AVRC_CT_PASSTHROUGH_RSP_EVT = 1
  passthrough response event
ESP_AVRC_CT_METADATA_RSP_EVT = 2
  metadata response event
ESP_AVRC_CT_PLAY_STATUS_RSP_EVT = 3
  play status response event
ESP_AVRC_CT_CHANGE_NOTIFY_EVT = 4
  notification event
ESP_AVRC_CT_REMOTEFEATURES_EVT = 5
  feature of remote device indication event
ESP_AVRC_CT_GET_RN_CAPABILITIES_RSP_EVT = 6
  supported notification events capability of peer device
ESP_AVRC_CT_SET_ABSOLUTE_VOLUME_RSP_EVT = 7
  set absolute volume response event

defined enum esp_avrc tg cb event t
AVRC Target callback events.
Values:
ESP_AVRC_TG_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT = 0
  connection state changed event
ESP_AVRC_TG_REMOTEFEATURES_EVT = 1
  feature of remote device indication event
ESP_AVRC_TG_PASSTHROUGH_CMD_EVT = 2
  passthrough command event
ESP_AVRC_TG_SET_ABSOLUTE_VOLUME_CMD_EVT = 3
  set absolute volume command from remote device
ESP_AVRC_TG_REGISTER_NOTIFICATION_EVT = 4
  register notification event
Chapter 2. API

ESP_AVRC_TG_SET_PLAYER_APP_VALUE_EVT = 5
set application attribute value, attribute refer to esp_avrc_ps_attr_ids_t

enum esp_avrc_md_attr_mask_t
AVRC metadata attribute mask.
Values:
ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_TITLE = 0x1
title of the playing track
ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_ARTIST = 0x2
track artist
ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_ALBUM = 0x4
album name
ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_TRACK_NUM = 0x8
track position on the album
ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_NUM_TRACKS = 0x10
number of tracks on the album
ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_GENRE = 0x20
track genre
ESP_AVRC_MD_ATTR_PLAYING_TIME = 0x40
total album playing time in miliseconds

enum esp_avrc_rn_event_ids_t
AVRC event notification ids.
Values:
ESP_AVRC_RN_PLAY_STATUS_CHANGE = 0x01
track status change, eg. from playing to paused
ESP_AVRC_RN_TRACK_CHANGE = 0x02
new track is loaded
ESP_AVRC_RN_TRACK_REACHED_END = 0x03
current track reached end
ESP_AVRC_RN_TRACK_REACHED_START = 0x04
current track reached start position
ESP_AVRC_RN_PLAY_POS_CHANGED = 0x05
track playing position changed
ESP_AVRC_RN_BATTERY_STATUS_CHANGE = 0x06
battery status changed
ESP_AVRC_RN_SYSTEM_STATUS_CHANGE = 0x07
system status changed
ESP_AVRC_RN_APP_SETTING_CHANGE = 0x08
application settings changed
ESP_AVRC_RN_NOW_PLAYING_CHANGE = 0x09
now playing content changed
ESP_AVRC_RN_AVAILABLE_PLAYERS_CHANGE = 0x0a
available players changed
ESP_AVRC_RN_ADDRESSED_PLAYER_CHANGE = 0x0b
the addressed player changed
ESP_AVRC_RN_UIDS_CHANGE = 0x0c
UIDs changed


```c
#define ESP_AVRC_RN_VOLUME_CHANGE 0x0d

volume changed locally on TG

#define ESP_AVRC_RN_MAX_EVT
enum esp_avrc_rn_evt_cap_t
AVRC target notification event notification capability.
Values:

#define ESP_AVRC_RN_CAP_ALLOWED_EVT 0
all of the notification events that can possibly be supported, immutable

#define ESP_AVRC_RN_CAP_SUPPORTED_EVT 1
notification events selectively supported according to the current configuration

#define ESP_AVRC_RN_CAP_MAX
enum esp_avrc_rn_rsp_t
AVRC notification response type.
Values:

#define ESP_AVRC_RN_RSP_INTERIM 13
initial response to RegisterNotification, should be sent T_mtp(1000ms) from receiving the command

#define ESP_AVRC_RN_RSP_CHANGED 15
final response to RegisterNotification command

enum esp_avrc_ps_attr_ids_t
AVRC player setting ids.
Values:

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_EQUALIZER 0x01
equalizer, on or off

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_REPEAT_MODE 0x02
repeat mode

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_MODE 0x03
shuffle mode

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_SCAN_MODE 0x04
scan mode on or off

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_MAX_ATTR
enum esp_avrc_ps_eq_value_ids_t
AVRC equalizer modes.
Values:

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_EQUALIZER_OFF 0x1
equalizer OFF

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_EQUALIZER_ON 0x2
equalizer ON

enum esp_avrc_ps_rpt_value_ids_t
AVRC repeat modes.
Values:

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_REPEAT_OFF 0x1
repeat mode off

#define ESP_AVRC_PS_REPEAT_SINGLE 0x2
single track repeat
```
ESP_AVRC_PS_REPEAT_GROUP = 0x3
    group repeat

enum esp_avrc_ps_shf_value_ids_t
    AVRC shuffle modes.
Values:
    ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_OFF = 0x1
    ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_ALL = 0x2
    ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_GROUP = 0x3

enum esp_avrc_ps_scn_value_ids_t
    AVRC scan modes.
Values:
    ESP_AVRC_PS_SCAN_OFF = 0x1
        scan off
    ESP_AVRC_PS_SCAN_ALL = 0x2
        all tracks scan
    ESP_AVRC_PS_SCAN_GROUP = 0x3
        group scan

enum esp_avrc_rsp_t
    AVCTP response codes.
Values:
    ESP_AVRC_RSP_NOT_IMPL = 8
        not implemented
    ESP_AVRC_RSP_ACCEPT = 9
        accept
    ESP_AVRC_RSP_REJECT = 10
        reject
    ESP_AVRC_RSP_IN_TRANS = 11
        in transition
    ESP_AVRC_RSP_IMPL_STBL = 12
        implemented/stable
    ESP_AVRC_RSP_CHANGED = 13
        changed
    ESP_AVRC_RSP_INTERIM = 15
        interim

enum esp_avrc_batt_stat_t
    AVRCP battery status.
Values:
    ESP_AVRC_BATT_NORMAL = 0
        normal state
    ESP_AVRC_BATT_WARNING = 1
        unable to operate soon
    ESP_AVRC_BATT_CRITICAL = 2
        cannot operate any more
    ESP_AVRC_BATT_EXTERNAL = 3
        plugged to external power supply
ESP_AVRC_BATT_FULL_CHARGE = 4
when completely charged from external power supply

enum esp_avrc_playback_stat_t
AVRCP current status of playback.

Values:

ESP_AVRC_PLAYBACK_STOPPED = 0
stopped
ESP_AVRC_PLAYBACK_PLAYING = 1
playing
ESP_AVRC_PLAYBACK_PAUSED = 2
paused
ESP_AVRC_PLAYBACK_FWD_SEEK = 3
forward seek
ESP_AVRC_PLAYBACK_REV_SEEK = 4
reverse seek
ESP_AVRC_PLAYBACK_ERROR = 0xFF
error

SPP API

Overview  Instructions

Application Example  Check bluetooth/bluedroid/classic_bt folder in ESP-IDF examples, which contains the following application:

• This is a SPP demo. This demo can discover the service, connect, send and receive SPP data bluetooth/bluedroid/classic_bt/bt_spp_acceptor, bluetooth/bluedroid/classic_bt/bt_spp_initiator

API Reference

Header File

• components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_spp_api.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_spp_register_callback (esp_spp_cb_t callback)
This function is called to init callbacks with SPP module.

Return

• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters

• [in] callback: pointer to the init callback function.

esp_err_t esp_spp_init (esp_spp_mode_t mode)
This function is called to init SPP module. When the operation is completed, the callback function will be called with ESP_SPP_INIT_EVT. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

Return

• ESP_OK: success
• other: failed

Parameters
Chapter 2. API

• [in] mode: Choose the mode of SPP, ESP_SPP_MODE_CB or ESP_SPP_MODE_VFS.

**esp_err_t esp_spp_deinit (void)**

This function is called to uninit SPP module. The operation will close all active SPP connection first, then the callback function will be called with ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT, and the number of ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT is equal to the number of connection. When the operation is completed, the callback function will be called with ESP_SPP_UNINIT_EVT. This function should be called after esp_spp_init() completes successfully.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**esp_err_t esp_spp_start_discovery (esp_bd_addr_t bd_addr)**

This function is called to perform service discovery for the services provided by the given peer device. When the operation is completed, the callback function will be called with ESP_SPP_DISCOVERY_COMP_EVT. This function must be called after esp_spp_init() successful and before esp_spp_deinit().

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] bd_addr: Remote device bluetooth device address.

**esp_err_t esp_spp_connect (esp_spp_sec_t sec_mask, esp_spp_role_t role, uint8_t remote_scn, esp_bd_addr_t peer_bd_addr)**

This function makes an SPP connection to a remote BD Address. When the connection is initiated or failed to initiate, the callback is called with ESP_SPP_CL_INIT_EVT. When the connection is established or failed, the callback is called with ESP_SPP_OPEN_EVT. This function must be called after esp_spp_init() successful and before esp_spp_deinit().

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] role: Master or slave.
- [in] remote_scn: Remote device bluetooth device SCN.
- [in] peer_bd_addr: Remote device bluetooth device address.

**esp_err_t esp_spp_disconnect (uint32_t handle)**

This function closes an SPP connection. When the operation is completed, the callback function will be called with ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT. This function must be called after esp_spp_init() successful and before esp_spp_deinit().

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
- [in] handle: The connection handle.

**esp_err_t esp_spp_start_srv (esp_spp_sec_t sec_mask, esp_spp_role_t role, uint8_t local_scn, const char *name)**

This function create a SPP server and starts listening for an SPP connection request from a remote Bluetooth device. When the server is started successfully, the callback is called with ESP_SPP_SRV_START_EVT. When the connection is established, the callback is called with ESP_SPP_SRV_OPEN_EVT. This function must be called after esp_spp_init() successful and before esp_spp_deinit().

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- other: failed

**Parameters**
Chapter 2. API

- **[in]** `sec_mask`: Security Setting Mask. Suggest to use ESP_SPP_SEC_NONE, ESP_SPP_SEC_AUTHORIZE or ESP_SPP_SEC_AUTHENTICATE only.
- **[in]** `role`: Master or slave.
- **[in]** `local_scn`: The specific channel you want to get. If channel is 0, means get any channel.
- **[in]** `name`: Server’s name.

### esp_err_t esp_spp_stop_srv (void)

This function stops all SPP servers. The operation will close all active SPP connection first, then the callback function will be called with ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT, and the number of ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT is equal to the number of connection. When the operation is completed, the callback is called with ESP_SPP_SRV_STOP_EVT. This function must be called after esp_spp_init() successful and before esp_spp_deinit().

**Return**
- **ESP_OK**: success
- **other**: failed

### esp_err_t esp_spp_stop_srv_scn (uint8_t `scn`)

This function stops a specific SPP server. The operation will close all active SPP connection first on the specific SPP server, then the callback function will be called with ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT, and the number of ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT is equal to the number of connection. When the operation is completed, the callback is called with ESP_SPP_SRV_STOP_EVT. This function must be called after esp_spp_init() successful and before esp_spp_deinit().

**Return**
- **ESP_OK**: success
- **other**: failed

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `scn`: Server channel number.

### esp_err_t esp_spp_write (uint32_t `handle`, int `len`, uint8_t *`p_data`)

This function is used to write data, only for ESP_SPP_MODE_CB. When this function need to be called repeatedly, it is strongly recommended to call this function again after the previous event ESP_SPP_WRITE_EVT is received and the parameter ‘cong’ is equal to false. If the previous event ESP_SPP_WRITE_EVT with parameter ‘cong’ is equal to true, the function can only be called again when the event ESP_SPP_CONG_EVT with parameter ‘cong’ equal to false is received. This function must be called after an connection between initiator and acceptor has been established.

**Return**
- **ESP_OK**: success
- **other**: failed

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `handle`: The connection handle.
- **[in]** `len`: The length of the data written.
- **[in]** `p_data`: The data written.

### esp_err_t esp_spp_vfs_register (void)

This function is used to register VFS. For now, SPP only supports write, read and close.

**Return**
- **ESP_OK**: success
- **other**: failed

### Unions

union esp_spp_cb_param_t

```c
#include <esp_spp_api.h>
```

SPP callback parameters union.

### Public Members

```c
struct esp_spp_cb_param_t* spp_init_evt_param
init
```

SPP callback param of SPP_INIT_EVT
struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_uninit_evt_param uninit
    SPP callback param of SPP_UNINIT_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_discovery_comp_evt_param disc_comp
    SPP callback param of SPP_DISCOVERY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_open_evt_param open
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_OPEN_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_srv_open_evt_param srv_open
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_SRV_OPEN_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_close_evt_param close
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_start_evt_param start
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_START_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_srv_stop_evt_param srv_stop
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_SRV_STOP_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cl_init_evt_param cl_init
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_CL_INIT_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_write_evt_param write
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_WRITE_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_data_ind_evt_param data_ind
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_DATA_IND_EVT

struct esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cong_evt_param cong
    SPP callback param of ESP_SPP_CONG_EVT

struct spp_cl_init_evt_param
    #include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_CL_INIT_EVT.

Public Members

    esp_spp_status_t status
    status

    uint32_t handle
        The connection handle

    uint8_t sec_id
        security ID used by this server

    bool use_co
        TRUE to use co_rfc_data

struct spp_close_evt_param
    #include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT.

Public Members

    esp_spp_status_t status
    status

    uint32_t port_status
        PORT status

    uint32_t handle
        The connection handle
bool async
   FALSE, if local initiates disconnect

struct spp_cong_evt_param
   #include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_CONG_EVT.

Public Members

   esp_spp_status_t status
   uint32_t handle
      The connection handle
   bool cong
      TRUE, congested. FALSE, uncongested

struct spp_data_ind_evt_param
   #include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_DATA_IND_EVT.

Public Members

   esp_spp_status_t status
   uint32_t handle
      The connection handle
   uint16_t len
      The length of data
   uint8_t* data
      The data received

struct spp_discovery_comp_evt_param
   #include <esp_spp_api.h> SPP_DISCOVERY_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

   esp_spp_status_t status
   uint8_t scn_num
      The num of scn_num
   uint8_t scn[ESP_SPP_MAX_SCN]
      channel #
   const char *service_name[ESP_SPP_MAX_SCN]
      service_name

struct spp_init_evt_param
   #include <esp_spp_api.h> SPP_INIT_EVT.

Public Members

   esp_spp_status_t status
   struct spp_open_evt_param
      #include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_OPEN_EVT.
Chapter 2. API 参考

Public Members

```c
esp_spp_status_t status
uint32_t handle
int fd
esp_bd_addr_t rem_bda
```

The connection handle

The file descriptor only for ESP_SPP_MODE_VFS

The peer address

### struct spp_srv_open_evt_param

```c
#include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_SRV_OPEN_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_spp_status_t status
uint32_t handle
uint32_t new_listen_handle
int fd
esp_bd_addr_t rem_bda
```

The new listen handle

The file descriptor only for ESP_SPP_MODE_VFS

The peer address

### struct spp_srv_stop_evt_param

```c
#include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_SRV_STOP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_spp_status_t status
uint8_t scn
```

Server channel number

### struct spp_start_evt_param

```c
#include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_START_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_spp_status_t status
uint32_t handle
uint8_t sec_id
uint8_t scn
```

The connection handle

security ID used by this server

Server channel number
bool use_co
    TRUE to use co_rfc_data

struct spp_uninit_evt_param
    #include <esp_spp_api.h> SPP_UNINIT_EVT.

Public Members

esp_spp_status_t status

struct spp_write_evt_param
    #include <esp_spp_api.h> ESP_SPP_WRITE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_spp_status_t status

uint32_t handle
    The connection handle

int len
    The length of the data written.

bool cong
    congestion status

Macros

ESP_SPP_SEC_NONE
    No security. relate to BTA_SEC_NONE in bta/bta_api.h

ESP_SPP_SEC_AUTHORIZE
    Authorization required (only needed for out going connection ) relate to BTA_SEC_AUTHORIZE in bta/bta_api.h

ESP_SPP_SEC_AUTHENTICATE
    Authentication required. relate to BTA_SEC_AUTHENTICATE in bta/bta_api.h

ESP_SPP_SEC_ENCRYPT
    Encryption required. relate to BTA_SEC_ENCRYPT in bta/bta_api.h

ESP_SPP_SEC_MODE4_LEVEL4
    Mode 4 level 4 service, i.e. incoming/outgoing MITM and P-256 encryption relate to BTA_SEC_MODE4_LEVEL4 in bta/bta_api.h

ESP_SPP_SEC_MITM
    Man-In-The_Middle protection relate to BTA_SEC_MITM in bta/bta_api.h

ESP_SPP_SEC_IN_16_DIGITS
    Min 16 digit for pin code relate to BTA_SEC_IN_16_DIGITS in bta/bta_api.h

ESP_SPP_MAX_MTU
    SPP max MTU

ESP_SPP_MAX_SCN
    SPP max SCN
Type Definitions

typedef uint16_t esp_spp_sec_t

typedef void (esp_spp_cb_t) (esp_spp_cb_event_t event, esp_spp_cb_param_t *param)

SPP callback function type. When handle ESP_SPP_DATA_IND_EVT, it is strongly recommended to cache incoming data, and process them in other lower priority application task rather than in this callback directly.

Parameters

- event: Event type
- param: Point to callback parameter, currently is union type

Enumerations

define esp_spp_status_t

Values:

ESP_SPP_SUCCESS = 0
Successful operation.

ESP_SPP_FAILURE
Generic failure.

ESP_SPP_BUSY
Temporarily can not handle this request.

ESP_SPP_NO_DATA
No data

ESP_SPP_NO_RESOURCE
No more resource

ESP_SPP_NEED_INIT
SPP module shall init first

ESP_SPP_NEED_DEINIT
SPP module shall deinit first

ESP_SPP_NO_CONNECTION
Connection may have been closed

ESP_SPP_NO_SERVER
No SPP server

define esp_spp_role_t

Values:

ESP_SPP_ROLE_MASTER = 0
Role: master

ESP_SPP_ROLE_SLAVE = 1
Role: slave

define esp_spp_mode_t

Values:

ESP_SPP_MODE_CB = 0
When data is coming, a callback will come with data

ESP_SPP_MODE_VFS = 1
Use VFS to write/read data

define esp_spp_cb_event_t

SPP callback function events.

Values:

ESP_SPP_INIT_EVT = 0
When SPP is initied, the event comes
Chapter 2. API Reference

**HFP DEFINES**

**Overview**

**Instructions**

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_hf_defs.h

**Macros**

- ESP_BT_HF_NUMBER_LEN
- ESP_BT_HF_OPERATOR_NAME_LEN
- BTC_HSAGSERVICE_NAME
- BTC_HFAGSERVICE_NAME
- BTC_HF_SERVICES
- BTC_HF_SERVICE_NAMES
- BTC_HF_SECURITY
- BTC_HF_CALL_END_TIMEOUT
- BTC_HF_INVALID_IDX

---

ESP_SPP_UNINIT_EVT = 1
When SPP is uninitied, the event comes

ESP_SPP_DISCOVERY_COMP_EVT = 8
When SDP discovery complete, the event comes

ESP_SPP_OPEN_EVT = 26
When SPP Client connection open, the event comes

ESP_SPP_CLOSE_EVT = 27
When SPP connection closed, the event comes

ESP_SPP_START_EVT = 28
When SPP server started, the event comes

ESP_SPP_CL_INIT_EVT = 29
When SPP client initiated a connection, the event comes

ESP_SPP_DATA_IND_EVT = 30
When SPP connection received data, the event comes, only for ESP_SPP_MODE_CB

ESP_SPP_CONG_EVT = 31
When SPP connection congestion status changed, the event comes, only for ESP_SPP_MODE_CB

ESP_SPP_WRITE_EVT = 33
When SPP write operation completes, the event comes, only for ESP_SPP_MODE_CB

ESP_SPP_SRV_OPEN_EVT = 34
When SPP Server connection open, the event comes

ESP_SPP_SRV_STOP_EVT = 35
When SPP server stopped, the event comes
**Type Definitions**

typedef void (*esp_hf_connection_state_callback)(esp_hf_connection_state_t state, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for connection state change. state will have one of the values from BtHFConnectionState

typedef void (*esp_hf_audio_state_callback)(esp_hf_audio_state_t state, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for audio connection state change. state will have one of the values from BtHFAudioState

typedef void (*esp_hf_vr_cmd_callback)(esp_hf_vr_state_t state, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for VR connection state change. state will have one of the values from BtHFVRState

typedef void (*esp_hf_answer_call_cmd_callback)(esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for answer incoming call (ATA)

typedef void (*esp_hf_hangup_call_cmd_callback)(esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for disconnect call (AT+CHUP)

typedef void (*esp_hf_volume_cmd_callback)(esp_hf_volume_control_target_t type, int volume, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for disconnect call (AT+CHUP) type will denote Speaker/Mic gain (BtHFVolumeControl).

typedef void (*esp_hf_dial_call_cmd_callback)(char* number, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for dialing an outgoing call If number is NULL, redial

typedef void (*esp_hf_dtmf_cmd_callback)(char tone, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for sending DTMF tones tone contains the dtmf character to be sent

typedef void (*esp_hf_nrec_cmd_callback)(esp_hf_nrec_t nrec, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for enabling/disabling noise reduction/echo cancellation value will be 1 to enable, 0 to disable

typedef void (*esp_hf_wbs_callback)(esp_hf_wbs_config_t wbs, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for AT+BCS and event from BAC WBS enable, WBS disable

typedef void (*esp_hf_chld_cmd_callback)(esp_hf_chld_type_t chld, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for call hold handling (AT+CHLD) value will contain the call hold command (0, 1, 2, 3)

typedef void (*esp_hf_cnum_cmd_callback)(esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for CNUM (subscriber number)

typedef void (*esp_hf_cind_cmd_callback)(esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for indicators (CIND)

typedef void (*esp_hf_cops_cmd_callback)(esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for operator selection (COPS)

typedef void (*esp_hf_clcc_cmd_callback)(esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for call list (AT+CLCC)

typedef void (*esp_hf_unknown_at_cmd_callback)(char *at_string, esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for unknown AT command recd from AG at_string will contain the unparsed AT string

typedef void (*esp_hf_key_pressed_cmd_callback)(esp_bd_addr_t *bd_addr)
    Callback for keypressed (HSP) event.

**Enumerations**

define esp_hf_in_band_ring_state_t
    in-band ring tone state
    
    Values:
    
    ESP_HF_IN_BAND_RINGTONE_NOT_PROVIDED = 0
    ESP_HF_IN_BAND_RINGTONE_PROVIDED

Espressif Systems 275 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
enum esp_hf_vr_state_t
voice recognition state

Values:

ESP_HF_VR_STATE_DISABLED = 0
voice recognition disabled

ESP_HF_VR_STATE_ENABLED
voice recognition enabled

enum esp_hf_volume_control_target_t
Bluetooth HFP audio volume control target.

Values:

ESP_HF_VOLUME_CONTROL_TARGET_SPK = 0
speaker

ESP_HF_VOLUME_CONTROL_TARGET_MIC
microphone

enum esp_hf_audio_state_t
Bluetooth HFP audio connection status.

Values:

ESP_HF_AUDIO_STATE_DISCONNECTED = 0
audio connection released

ESP_HF_AUDIO_STATE_CONNECTING
audio connection has been initiated

ESP_HF_AUDIO_STATE_CONNECTED
audio connection is established

ESP_HF_AUDIO_STATE_CONNECTED_MSBC
mSBC audio connection is established

enum esp_hf_volume_type_t

Values:

ESP_HF_VOLUME_TYPE_SPK = 0

ESP_HF_VOLUME_TYPE_MIC

enum esp_hf_network_state_t
+CIND network service availability status

Values:

ESP_HF_NETWORK_STATE_NOT_AVAILABLE = 0

ESP_HF_NETWORK_STATE_AVAILABLE

enum esp_hf_service_type_t
+CIEV Service type

Values:

ESP_HF_SERVICE_TYPE_HOME = 0

ESP_HF_SERVICE_TYPE_ROAMING

enum esp_hf_call_status_t
+CIND call status indicator values

Values:

ESP_HF_CALL_STATUS_NO_CALLS = 0
no call in progress
ESP_HF_CALL_STATUS_CALL_IN_PROGRESS = 1
  call is present (active or held)

def enum esp_hf_call_setup_status_t
  +CIND call setup status indicator values
  Values:
  ESP_HF_CALL_SETUP_STATUS_IDLE = 0
    no call setup in progress
  ESP_HF_CALL_SETUP_STATUS_INCOMING = 1
    incoming call setup in progress
  ESP_HF_CALL_SETUP_STATUS_OUTGOING_DIALING = 2
    outgoing call setup in dialing state
  ESP_HF_CALL_SETUP_STATUS_OUTGOING_ALERTING = 3
    outgoing call setup in alerting state

def enum esp_hf_roaming_status_t
  +CIND roaming status indicator values
  Values:
  ESP_HF_ROAMING_STATUS_INACTIVE = 0
    roaming is not active
  ESP_HF_ROAMING_STATUS_ACTIVE
    a roaming is active

def enum esp_hf_call_held_status_t
  +CIND call held indicator values
  Values:
  ESP_HF_CALL_HELD_STATUS_NONE = 0
    no calls held
  ESP_HF_CALL_HELD_STATUS_HELD_AND_ACTIVE = 1
    both active and held call
  ESP_HF_CALL_HELD_STATUS_HELD = 2
    call on hold, no active call

#define enum esp_hf_current_call_status_t
  +CLCC status of the call
  Values:
  ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_STATUS_ACTIVE = 0
    active
  ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_STATUS_HELD = 1
    held
  ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_STATUS_DIALING = 2
    dialing (outgoing calls only)
  ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_STATUS_ALERTING = 3
    alerting (outgoing calls only)
  ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_STATUS_INCOMING = 4
    incoming (incoming calls only)
  ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_STATUS_WAITING = 5
    waiting (incoming calls only)
  ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_STATUS_HELD_BY_RESP_HOLD = 6
    call held by response and hold
enum esp_hf_current_call_direction_t
+CLCC direction of the call
Values:
ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_DIRECTION_OUTGOING = 0
  outgoing
ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_DIRECTION_INCOMING = 1
  incoming

enum esp_hf_current_call_mpty_type_t
+CLCC multi-party call flag
Values:
ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_MPTY_TYPE_SINGLE = 0
  not a member of a multi-party call
ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_MPTY_TYPE_MULTI = 1
  member of a multi-party call

enum esp_hf_current_call_mode_t
+CLCC call mode
Values:
ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_MODE_VOICE = 0
ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_MODE_DATA = 1
ESP_HF_CURRENT_CALL_MODE_FAX = 2

enum esp_hf_call_addr_type_t
+CLCC address type
Values:
ESP_HF_CALL_ADDR_TYPE_UNKNOWN = 0x81
  unknown address type
ESP_HF_CALL_ADDR_TYPE_INTERNATIONAL = 0x91
  international address

enum esp_hf_subscriber_service_type_t
+CNUM service type of the phone number
Values:
ESP_HF_SUBSCRIBER_SERVICE_TYPE_UNKNOWN = 0
  unknown
ESP_HF_SUBSCRIBER_SERVICE_TYPE_VOICE
  voice service
ESP_HF_SUBSCRIBER_SERVICE_TYPE_FAX
  fax service

enum esp_hf_btrh_status_t
+BTRH response and hold result code
Values:
ESP_HF_BTRH_STATUS_HELD = 0
  incoming call is put on hold in AG
ESP_HF_BTRH_STATUS_ACCEPTED
  held incoming call is accepted in AG
ESP_HF_BTRH_STATUS_REJECTED
  held incoming call is rejected in AG
enum esp_hf_btrh_cmd_t
AT+BTRH response and hold action code.

Values:

ESP_HF_BTRH_CMD_HOLD = 0
put the incoming call on hold

ESP_HF_BTRH_CMD_ACCEPT = 1
accept a held incoming call

ESP_HF_BTRH_CMD_REJECT = 2
reject a held incoming call

enum esp_hf_nrec_t
Values:

ESP_HF_NREC_STOP = 0

ESP_HF_NREC_START

enum esp_hf_call_waiting_status_t
+CCWA respose status

Values:

ESP_HF_CALL_WAITING_INACTIVE

ESP_HF_CALL_WAITING_ACTIVE

enum esp_hf_wbs_config_t
Values:

ESP_HF_WBS_NONE

ESP_HF_WBS_NO

ESP_HF_WBS_YES

enum esp_hf_connection_state_t
Bluetooth HFP RFCOMM connection and service level connection status.

Values:

ESP_HF_CONNECTION_STATE_DISCONNECTED = 0
RFCOMM data link channel released

ESP_HF_CONNECTION_STATE_CONNECTING
connecting remote device on the RFCOMM data link

ESP_HF_CONNECTION_STATE_CONNECTED
RFCOMM connection established

ESP_HF_CONNECTION_STATE_SLC_CONNECTED
service level connection established

ESP_HF_CONNECTION_STATE_DISCONNECTING
disconnecting with remote device on the RFCOMM data link

enum esp_hf_chld_type_t
AT+CHLD command values.

Values:

ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_REL = 0
<0>, Terminate all held or set UDUB(“busy”) to a waiting call

ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_REL_ACC
<1>, Terminate all active calls and accepts a waiting/held call

ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_HOLD_ACC
<2>, Hold all active calls and accepts a waiting/held call
ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_MERGE
<3>, Add all held calls to a conference

ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_MERGE_DETACH
<4>, connect the two calls and disconnects the subscriber from both calls

ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_REL_X
<1x>, releases specified calls only

ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_PRIV_X
<2x>, request private consultation mode with specified call

enum esp_hf_at_response_code_t
Values:

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_OK = 0
acknowledges execution of a command line

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_ERR
command not accepted

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_NO_CARRIER
connection terminated

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_BUSY
busy signal detected

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_NO_ANSWER
connection completion timeout

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_DELAYED
delayed

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_BLACKLISTED
blacklisted

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_CME
CME error

enum esp_hf_at_response_t
Values:

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_ERROR = 0

ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_OK

enum esp_hf_cme_err_t
Extended Audio Gateway Error Result Code Response.
Values:

ESP_HF_CME_AG_FAILURE = 0
ag failure

ESP_HF_CME_NO_CONNECTION_TO_PHONE = 1
no connection to phone

ESP_HF_CME_OPERATION_NOT_ALLOWED = 3
operation not allowed

ESP_HF_CME_OPERATION_NOT_SUPPORTED = 4
operation not supported

ESP_HF_CME_PH_SIM_PIN_REQUIRED = 5
PH-SIM PIN Required

ESP_HF_CME_SIM_NOT_INSERTED = 10
SIM not inserted
ESP_HF_CME_SIM_PIN_REQUIRED = 11
SIM PIN required

ESP_HF_CME_SIM_PIN2_REQUIRED = 17
SIM PIN2 required

ESP_HF_CME_SIM_PUK_REQUIRED = 12
SIM PUK required

ESP_HF_CME_SIM_PUK2_REQUIRED = 18
SIM PUK2 required

ESP_HF_CME_SIM_FAILURE = 13
SIM failure

ESP_HF_CME_SIM_BUSY = 14
SIM busy

ESP_HF_CME_INCORRECT_PASSWORD = 16
incorrect password

ESP_HF_CME_INVALID_INDEX = 21
invalid index

ESP_HF_CME_MEMORY_FULL = 20
memory full

ESP_HF_CME_MEMORY_FAILURE = 23
memory failure

ESP_HF_CME_TEXT_STRING_TOO_LONG = 24
text string too long

ESP_HF_CME_INVALID_CHARACTERS_IN_TEXT_STRING = 25
invalid characters in text string

ESP_HF_CME_DIAL_STRING_TOO_LONG = 26
dial string too long

ESP_HF_CME_INVALID_CHARACTERS_IN.Dial_STRING = 27
invalid characters in dial string

ESP_HF_CME_NO_NETWORK_SERVICE = 30
no network service

ESP_HF_CME_NETWORK_TIMEOUT = 31
network timeout

ESP_HF_CME_NETWORK_NOT_ALLOWED = 32
network not allowed emergency calls only

HFP CLIENT API

Overview
Instructions

API Reference

Header File

- components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_hf_client_api.h
Functions

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_register_callback (esp_hf_client_cb_t callback)`

Register application callback function to HFP client module. This function should be called only after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: if callback is a NULL function pointer

Parameters

- [in] callback: HFP client event callback function

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_init (void)`

Initialize the Bluetooth HFP client module. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

Return

- ESP_OK: if the initialization request is sent successfully
- ESP_INVALIDSTATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_deinit (void)`

De-initialize for HFP client module. This function should be called only after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_INVALIDSTATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_connect (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`

Establish a Service Level Connection to remote Bluetooth HFP audio gateway (AG) device. This function must be called after esp_hf_client_init() and before esp_hf_client_deinit().

Return

- ESP_OK: connect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALIDSTATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters

- [in] remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_disconnect (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`

Disconnect from the remote HFP audio gateway. This function must be called after esp_hf_client_init() and before esp_hf_client_deinit().

Return

- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALIDSTATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters

- [in] remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_connect_audio (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`

Create audio connection with remote HFP AG. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return

- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALIDSTATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters

- [in] remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_disconnect_audio (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)`

Release the established audio connection with remote HFP AG. As a precondition to use this API, Service
Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address

esp_err_t esp_hf_client_start_voice_recognition(void)
Enable voice recognition in the AG. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

esp_err_t esp_hf_client_stop_voice_recognition(void)
Disable voice recognition in the AG. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

esp_err_t esp_hf_client_volume_update(esp_hf_volume_control_target_t type, int volume)
Volume synchronization with AG. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] type: volume control target, speaker or microphone
- [in] volume: gain of the speaker or microphone, ranges 0 to 15

esp_err_t esp_hf_client_dial(const char* number)
Place a call with a specified number, if number is NULL, last called number is called. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] number: number string of the call. If NULL, the last number is called (aka re-dial)

esp_err_t esp_hf_client_dial_memory(int location)
Place a call with number specified by location (speed dial). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] location: location of the number in the memory

esp_err_t esp_hf_client_send_chld_cmd(esp_hf_child_type_t child, int idx)
Send call hold and multiparty commands, or enhanced call control commands (Use AT+CHLD). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.
Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] chld: AT+CHLD call hold and multiparty handling AT command.
- [in] idx: used in Enhanced Call Control Mechanisms, used if chld is ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_REL_X or ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_PRIV_X

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_send_btrh_cmd (esp_hf_btrh_cmd_t btrh)`
Send response and hold action command (Send AT+BTRH command) As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] btrh: response and hold action to send

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_answer_call (void)`
Answer an incoming call (send AT+A command). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_reject_call (void)`
Reject an incoming call (send AT+CHUP command). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_query_current_calls (void)`
Query list of current calls in AG (send AT+CLCC command). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_query_current_operator_name (void)`
Query the name of currently selected network operator in AG (use AT+COPS commands). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

`esp_err_t esp_hf_client_retrieve_subscriber_info (void)`
Get subscriber information number from AG (send AT+CNUM command) As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others
Chapter 2. API

**esp_err_t esp_hf_client_send_dtmf(char code)**
Transmit DTMF codes during an ongoing call (use AT+VTS commands). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
- [in] code: dtmf code, single ascii character in the set 0-9, #, *, A-D

**esp_err_t esp_hf_client_request_last_voice_tag_number(void)**
Request a phone number from AG corresponding to last voice tag recorded (send AT+BINP command). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**esp_err_t esp_hf_client_send_nrec(void)**
Disable echo cancellation and noise reduction in the AG (use AT+NREC=0 command). As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: NREC=0 request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**esp_err_t esp_hf_client_register_data_callback(esp_hf_client_incoming_data_cb_t recv, esp_hf_client_outgoing_data_cb_t send)**
Register HFP client data output function; the callback is only used in the case that Voice Over HCI is enabled.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: if callback is a NULL function pointer

**Parameters**
- [in] recv: HFP client incoming data callback function
- [in] send: HFP client outgoing data callback function

**void esp_hf_client_outgoing_data_ready(void)**
Trigger the lower-layer to fetch and send audio data. This function is only only used in the case that Voice Over HCI is enabled. After this function is called, lower layer will invoke esp_hf_client_outgoing_data_cb_t to fetch data.

As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with AG.

**void esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init(uint32_t src_sps, uint32_t bits, uint32_t channels)**
Initialize the down sampling converter. This is a utility function that can only be used in the case that Voice Over HCI is enabled.

**Parameters**
- [in] src_sps: original samples per second (source audio data, i.e. 48000, 32000, 16000, 44100, 22050, 11025)
- [in] bits: number of bits per pcm sample (16)
- [in] channels: number of channels (i.e. mono(1), stereo(2)…)

**void esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit(void)**
Deinitialize the down sampling converter.

**int32_t esp_hf_client_pcm_resample(void *src, uint32_t in_bytes, void *dst)**
Down sampling utility to convert high sampling rate into 8K/16bits 1-channel mode PCM samples. This can only be used in the case that Voice Over HCI is enabled.
Return  number of samples converted

Parameters
• [in] src: pointer to the buffer where the original sampling PCM are stored
• [in] in_bytes: length of the input PCM sample buffer in byte
• [in] dst: pointer to the buffer which is to be used to store the converted PCM samples

Unions
union esp_hf_client_cb_param_t
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> HFP client callback parameters.

Public Members

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_conn_stat_param conn_stat
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_audio_stat_param audio_stat
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_bvra_param bvra
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_BVRA_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_service_availability_param service_availability
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_SERVICE_AVAILABILITY_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_network_roaming_param roaming
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_ROAMING_STATUS_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_signal_strength_ind_param signal_strength
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_SIGNAL_STRENGTH_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_battery_level_ind_param battery_level
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_BATTERY_LEVEL_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_current_operator_param cops
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_COPS_CURRENT_OPERATOR_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_call_ind_param call
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_CALL_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_call_setup_ind_param call_setup
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_BVRA_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_call_held_ind_param call_held
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_CALL_HELD_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_btrh_param btrh
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_BRTH_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_clip_param clip
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CLIP_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_ccwa_param ccwa
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_BVRA_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_clcc_param clcc
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CLCC_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_volume_control_param volume_control
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_VOLUME_CONTROL_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_at_response_param at_response
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_AT_RESPONSE_EVT

struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_cnum_param cnum
HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_CNUM_EVT
**Chapter 2. API**

```
struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_bsirparam bsir
    HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_BSIR_EVT
```

```
struct esp_hf_client_cb_param_t::hf_client_binp_param binp
    HF callback param of ESP_HF_CLIENT_BINP_EVT
```

```
struct hf_client_at_response_param
    #include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_AT_RESPONSE_EVT.

Public Members

    esp_hf_at_response_code_t code
        AT response code

    esp_hf_cme_err_t cme
        Extended Audio Gateway Error Result Code
```

```
struct hf_client_audio_stat_param
    #include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_EVT.

Public Members

    esp_hf_client_audio_state_t state
        audio connection state

    esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
        remote bluetooth device address
```

```
struct hf_client_battery_level_ind_param
    #include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_BATTERY_LEVEL_EVT.

Public Members

    int value
        battery charge value, ranges from 0 to 5
```

```
struct hf_client_binp_param
    #include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_BINP_EVT.

Public Members

    const char *number
        phone number corresponding to the last voice tag in the HF
```

```
struct hf_client_bsirparam
    #include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_BSIR_EVT.

Public Members

    esp_hf_client_in_band_ring_state_t state
        setting state of in-band ring tone
```

```
struct hf_client_btrh_param
    #include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_BTRH_EVT.
```
Public Members

`esp_hf_btrh_status_t status`
call hold and response status result code

`struct hf_client_bvra_param`
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_BVRA_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_hf_vr_state_t value`
voice recognition state

`struct hf_client_call_held_ind_param`
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_CALL_HELD_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_hf_call_held_status_t status`
bluetooth proprietary call hold status indicator

`struct hf_client_call_ind_param`
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_CALL_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_hf_call_status_t status`
call status indicator

`struct hf_client_call_setup_ind_param`
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_CALL_SETUP_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_hf_call_setup_status_t status`
call setup status indicator

`struct hf_client_ccwa_param`
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CCWA_EVT.

Public Members

`const char *number`
phone number string of waiting call

`struct hf_client_clcc_param`
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CLCC_EVT.

Public Members

`int idx`
numbering (starting with 1) of the call

`esp_hf_current_call_direction_t dir`
direction of the call
Chapter 2. API

```c
esp_hf_current_call_status_t status
status of the call

esp_hf_current_call_mpty_type_t mpty
multi-party flag

char *number
phone number (optional)
```

```c
struct hf_client_clip_param
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CLIP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
const char *number
phone number string of call
```

```c
struct hf_client_cnum_param
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CNUM_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
const char *number
phone number string

esp_hf_subscriber_service_type_t type
service type that the phone number relates to
```

```c
struct hf_client_conn_stat_param
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
esp_hf_client_connection_state_t state
HF connection state

uint32_t peer_feat
AG supported features

uint32_t chld_feat
AG supported features on call hold and multiparty services

esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda
remote bluetooth device address
```

```c
struct hf_client_current_operator_param
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_COPS_CURRENT_OPERATOR_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
const char *name
name of the network operator
```

```c
struct hf_client_network_roaming_param
#include <esp_hf_client_api.h> ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_ROAMING_STATUS_EVT.
```

Espressif Systems 289 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 2. API Reference

Public Members

`esp_hf_roaming_status_t status`
roaming status

`struct hf_client_service_availability_param`
#include `<esp_hf_client_api.h>` ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_SERVICE_AVAILABILITY_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_hf_network_state_t status`
service availability status

`struct hf_client_signal_strength_ind_param`
#include `<esp_hf_client_api.h>` ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_SIGNAL_STRENGTH_EVT.

Public Members

`int value`
signal strength value, ranges from 0 to 5

`struct hf_client_volume_control_param`
#include `<esp_hf_client_api.h>` ESP_HF_CLIENT_VOLUME_CONTROL_EVT.

Public Members

`esp_hf_volume_control_target_t type`
volume control target, speaker or microphone

`int volume`
gain, ranges from 0 to 15

Macros

ESP_BT_HF_CLIENT_NUMBER_LEN
ESP_BT_HF_CLIENT_OPERATOR_NAME_LEN
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_3WAY
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_ECNR
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_VREC
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_INBAND
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_VTAG
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_REJECT
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_ECS
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_ECC
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_EXTERR
ESP_HF_CLIENT_PEER_FEAT_CODEC
ESP_HF_CLIENT_CHLD_FEAT_REL
ESP_HF_CLIENT_CHLD_FEAT_REL_ACC
ESP_HF_CLIENT_CHLD_FEAT_REL_X
ESP_HF_CLIENT_CHLD_FEAT_HOLD_ACC
Type Definitions

typedef void (*esp_hf_client_incoming_data_cb_t)(const uint8_t*buf, uint32_t len)
HFP client incoming data callback function, the callback is useful in case of Voice Over HCI.

Parameters
• [in] buf: : pointer to incoming data(payload of HCI synchronous data packet), the buffer is allocated inside bluetooth protocol stack and will be released after invoke of the callback is finished.
• [in] len: : size(in bytes) in buf

typedef uint32_t(*esp_hf_client_outgoing_data_cb_t)(uint8_t*buf, uint32_t len)
HFP client outgoing data callback function, the callback is useful in case of Voice Over HCI. Once audio connection is set up and the application layer has prepared data to send, the lower layer will call this function to read data and then send. This callback is supposed to be implemented as non-blocking, and if data is not enough, return value 0 is supposed.

Return length of data successfully read

Parameters
• [in] buf: : pointer to incoming data(payload of HCI synchronous data packet), the buffer is allocated inside bluetooth protocol stack and will be released after invoke of the callback is finished.
• [in] len: : size(in bytes) in buf

typedef void (*esp_hf_client_cb_t)(esp_hf_client_cb_event_t event, esp_hf_client_cb_param_t *param)
HFP client callback function type.

Parameters
• event:: Event type
• param:: Pointer to callback parameter

Enumerations

enum esp_hf_client_connection_state_t
Bluetooth HFP RFCOMM connection and service level connection status.

Values:

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CONNECTION_STATE_DISCONNECTED = 0
RFCOMM data link channel released

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CONNECTION_STATE_CONNECTING
connecting remote device on the RFCOMM data link

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CONNECTION_STATE_CONNECTED
RFCOMM connection established

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CONNECTION_STATE_SLC_CONNECTED
service level connection established

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CONNECTION_STATE_DISCONNECTING
disconnecting with remote device on the RFCOMM dat link

enum esp_hf_client_audio_state_t
Bluetooth HFP audio connection status.

Values:

ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_DISCONNECTED = 0
audio connection released

ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_CONNECTING
audio connection has been initiated
Chapter 2. API 参考

```c
ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_CONNECTED
audio connection is established

ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_CONNECTED_MSBC
mSBC audio connection is established

defined

enum esp_hf_client_in_band_ring_state_t
in-band ring tone state

Values:

ESP_HF_CLIENT_IN_BAND_RINGTONE_NOT_PROVIDED = 0

ESP_HF_CLIENT_IN_BAND_RINGTONE_PROVIDED

enum esp_hf_client_cb_event_t
HF CLIENT callback events.

Values:

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT = 0
connection state changed event

ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_EVT
audio connection state change event

ESP_HF_CLIENT_BVRA_EVT
voice recognition state change event

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_CALL_EVT
call indication

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_CALL_SETUP_EVT
call setup indication

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_CALL_HELD_EVT
call held indication

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_SERVICE_AVAILABILITY_EVT
network service availability indication

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_SIGNAL_STRENGTH_EVT
signal strength indication

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_ROAMING_STATUS_EVT
roaming status indication

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CIND_BATTERY_LEVEL_EVT
battery level indication

ESP_HF_CLIENT_COPS_CURRENT_OPERATOR_EVT
current operator information

ESP_HF_CLIENT_BTRH_EVT
call response and hold event

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CLIP_EVT
Calling Line Identification notification

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CCWA_EVT
call waiting notification

ESP_HF_CLIENT_CLCC_EVT
list of current calls notification

ESP_HF_CLIENT_VOLUME_CONTROL_EVT
audio volume control command from AG, provided by +VGM or +VGS message

ESP_HF_CLIENT_AT_RESPONSE_EVT
AT command response event
```
ESP_HF_CLIENT_CNUM_EVT
subscriber information response from AG

ESP_HF_CLIENT_BSIR_EVT
setting of in-band ring tone

ESP_HF_CLIENT_BINP_EVT
requested number of last voicetag from AG

ESP_HF_CLIENT_RING_IND_EVT
ring indication event

HFP AG API

API Reference

Header File

- components/bt/host/bluedroid/api/include/api/esp_hf_ag_api.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_register_callback (esp_hf_cb_t callback)
Register application callback function to HFP AG module. This function should be called only after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: if callback is a NULL function pointer

Parameters
- [in] callback: HFP AG event callback function

esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_init (esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr)
Initialize the bluetooth HF AG module. This function should be called after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

Return
- ESP_OK: if the initialization request is sent successfully
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote bluetooth device address

esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_deinit (esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr)
De-initialize for HF AG module. This function should be called only after esp_bluedroid_enable() completes successfully.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote bluetooth device address

esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_connect (esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)
To establish a Service Level Connection to remote bluetooth HFP client device. This function must be called after esp_bt_hf_init() and before esp_bt_hf_deinit().

Return
- ESP_OK: connect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others
### Parameters
- **[in] remote_bda**: remote bluetooth HFP client device address

#### esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_disconnect(esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)
Disconnect from the remote HFP client. This function must be called after esp_bt_hf_init() and before esp_bt_hf_deinit().

**Return**
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
- **[in] remote_bda**: remote bluetooth device address

#### esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_connect_audio(esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)
Create audio connection with remote HFP client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
- **[in] remote_bda**: remote bluetooth device address

#### esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_disconnect_audio(esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda)
Release the established audio connection with remote HFP client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
- **[in] remote_bda**: remote bluetooth device address

#### esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_vra(esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, esp_hf_vr_state_t value)
Response of Volume Recognition Command(AT+VRA) from HFP client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
- **[in] remote_bda**: the device address of voice recognition initiator
- **[in] value**: 0 - voice recognition disabled, 1 - voice recognition enabled

#### esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_volume_control(esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, esp_hf_volume_control_target_t type, int volume)
Volume synchronization with HFP client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

**Parameters**
- **[in] remote_bda**: remote bluetooth device address
- **[in] type**: volume control target, speaker or microphone
- **[in] volume**: gain of the speaker of microphone, ranges 0 to 15

#### esp_err_t esp_hf_unat_response(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, char *unat)
Handle Unknown AT command from HFP Client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection
shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] unat: User AT command response to HF Client. It will respond “ERROR” by default if unat is NULL.

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_cmee_response(esp_bd_addr_t remote_bda, esp_hf_at_response_code_t response_code, esp_hf_cme_err_t error_code)
```

Unsolicited send extend AT error code to HFP Client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_bda: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] response_code: AT command response code
- [in] error_code: CME error code

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_indchange_notification(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, esp_hf_call_status_t call_state, esp_hf_call_setup_status_t call_setup_state, esp_hf_network_state_t ntk_state, int signal)
```

Unsolicited send device status notification to HFP Client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] call_state: call state
- [in] call_setup_state: call setup state
- [in] ntk_state: network service state
- [in] signal: signal strength from 0 to 5

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_cind_response(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, esp_hf_call_status_t call_state, esp_hf_call_setup_status_t call_setup_state, esp_hf_network_state_t ntk_state, int signal, esp_hf_roaming_status_t roam, int batt_lev, esp_hf_call_held_status_t call_held_status)
```

Response to device individual indicators to HFP Client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] call_state: call state
- [in] call_setup_state: call setup state
- [in] ntk_state: network service state
- [in] signal: signal strength from 0 to 5
- [in] roam: roam state
Chapter 2. API

- [in] batt_lev: battery level from 0 to 5
- [in] call_held_status: call held status

`esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_cops_response(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, char *name)`

Response for AT+COPS command from HF Client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] name: current operator name

`esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_clcc_response(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, int index, esp_hf_current_call_direction_t dir, esp_hf_current_call_status_t current_call_state, esp_hf_current_call_mode_t mode, esp_hf_current_call_mpty_type_t mpty, char *number, esp_hf_call_addr_type_t type)`

Response to AT+CLCC command from HFP Client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] index: the index of current call
- [in] dir: call direction (incoming/outgoing)
- [in] current_call_state: current call state
- [in] mode: current call mode (voice/data/fax)
- [in] mpty: single or multi type
- [in] number: current call number
- [in] type: international type or unknown

`esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_cnum_response(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, char *number)`

Response for AT+CNUM command from HF Client. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] number: registration number
- [in] type: service type (unknown/voice/fax)

`esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_bsir(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, esp_hf_in_band_ring_state_t state)`

Inform HF Client that AG Provided in-band ring tone or not. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
• [in] state: in-band ring tone state

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_answer_call (esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, int num_active, int num_held,
                                 esp_hf_call_status_t call_state, esp_hf_call_setup_status_t call_setup_state,
                                 char *number, esp_hf_call_addr_type_t call_addr_type)
```

Answer Incoming Call from AG. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] num_active: the number of active call
- [in] num_held: the number of held call
- [in] call_state: call state
- [in] call_setup_state: call setup state
- [in] number: number of the incoming call
- [in] call_addr_type: call address type

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_reject_call (esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, int num_active, int num_held,
                                  esp_hf_call_status_t call_state, esp_hf_call_setup_status_t call_setup_state,
                                  char *number, esp_hf_call_addr_type_t call_addr_type)
```

Reject Incoming Call from AG. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] num_active: the number of active call
- [in] num_held: the number of held call
- [in] call_state: call state
- [in] call_setup_state: call setup state
- [in] number: number of the incoming call
- [in] call_addr_type: call address type

```c
esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_out_call (esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, int num_active, int num_held,
                               esp_hf_call_status_t call_state, esp_hf_call_setup_status_t call_setup_state,
                               char *number, esp_hf_call_addr_type_t call_addr_type)
```

Initiate a call from AG. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] num_active: the number of active call
- [in] num_held: the number of held call
- [in] call_state: call state
- [in] call_setup_state: call setup state
- [in] number: number of the outgoing call
- [in] call_addr_type: call address type
Chapter 2. API

Esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_end_call(esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr, int num_active, int num_held, esp_hf_call_status_t call_state, esp_hf_call_setup_status_t call_setup_state, char *number, esp_hf_call_addr_type_t call_addr_type)

End an ongoing call. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client.

Return
- ESP_OK: disconnect request is sent to lower layer
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: others

Parameters
- [in] remote_addr: remote Bluetooth device address
- [in] num_active: the number of active call
- [in] num_held: the number of held call
- [in] call_state: call state
- [in] call_setup_state: call setup state
- [in] number: number of the call
- [in] call_addr_type: call address type

Esp_err_t esp_bt_hf_register_data_callback (esp_hf_incoming_data_cb_t recv, esp_hf_outgoing_data_cb_t send)

Register AG data output function. The callback is only used in the case that Voice Over HCI is enabled.

Return
- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_INVALID_STATE: if Bluetooth stack is not yet enabled
- ESP_FAIL: if callback is a NULL function pointer

Parameters
- [in] recv: HFP client incoming data callback function
- [in] send: HFP client outgoing data callback function

void esp_hf_outgoing_data_ready (void)

Trigger the lower-layer to fetch and send audio data.

This function is only used in the case that Voice Over HCI is enabled. As a precondition to use this API, Service Level Connection shall exist with HFP client. After this function is called, lower layer will invoke esp_hf_client_outgoing_data_cbt to fetch data

Unions
union esp_hf_cb_param_t

#include <esp_hf_ag_api.h> HFP AG callback parameters.

Public Members

struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_conn_stat_param conn_stat
AG callback param of ESP_HF_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT

struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_audio_stat_param audio_stat
AG callback param of ESP_HF_AUDIO_STATE_EVT

struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_vra_rep_param vra_rep
AG callback param of ESP_HF_BVRA_RESPONSE_EVT

struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_volume_control_param volume_control
AG callback param of ESP_HF_VOLUME_CONTROL_EVT

struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_unat_rep_param unat_rep
AG callback param of ESP_HF_UNAT_RESPONSE_EVT

struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param cind
AG callback param of ESP_HF_CIND_RESPONSE_EVT
**struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_out_call_param out_call**
AG callback param of ESP_HF_DIAL_EVT

**struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_vts_rep_param vts_rep**
AG callback param of ESP_HF_VTS_RESPONSE_EVT

**struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_nrec_param nrec**
AG callback param of ESP_HF_NREC_RESPONSE_EVT

**struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_wbs_rep_param wbs_rep**
AG callback param of ESP_HF_WBS_RESPONSE_EVT

**struct esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_bcs_rep_param bcs_rep**
AG callback param of ESP_HF_BCS_RESPONSE_EVT

**struct hf_audio_stat_param**

> `#include <esp_hf_ag_api.h>`
ESP_HF_AUDIO_STATE_EVT.

**Public Members**

* `esp_bd_addr_t remote_addr`
  Remote bluetooth device address

* `esp_hf_audio_state_t state`
  Audio connection state

**struct hf_bcs_rep_param**

> `#include <esp_hf_ag_api.h>`
ESP_HF_BCS_RESPONSE_EVT.

**Public Members**

* `esp_hf_wbs_config_t mode`
  codec mode CVSD or mSBC

**struct hf_cind_param**

> `#include <esp_hf_ag_api.h>`
ESP_HF_CIND_RESPONSE_EVT.

**Public Members**

* `esp_hf_call_status_t call_status`
  call status indicator

* `esp_hf_call_setup_status_t call_setup_status`
  call setup status indicator

* `esp_hf_network_state_t svc`
  bluetooth proprietary call hold status indicator

* `int signal_strength`
  bluetooth proprietary call hold status indicator

* `int battery_level`
  battery charge value, ranges from 0 to 5

* `esp_hf_call_held_status_t call_held_status`
  bluetooth proprietary call hold status indicator

**struct hf_conn_stat_param**

> `#include <esp_hf_ag_api.h>`
ESP_HS_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT.
Public Members

\textit{esp_bd_addr_t} \texttt{remote_bda}
Remote bluetooth device address

\textit{esp_hf_connection_state_t} \texttt{state}
Connection state

uint32_t \texttt{peer_feat}
HF supported features

uint32_t \texttt{chld_feat}
AG supported features on call hold and multiparty services

\texttt{struct hf_nrec_param}
\#include \texttt{<esp_hf_ag_api.h>} ESP_HF_NREC_RESPONSE_EVT.

Public Members

\textit{esp_hf_nrec_t} \texttt{state}
NREC enabled or disabled

\texttt{struct hf_out_call_param}
\#include \texttt{<esp_hf_ag_api.h>} ESP_HF_DIAL_EVT.

Public Members

\textit{esp_bd_addr_t} \texttt{remote_addr}
remote bluetooth device address

char* \texttt{num_or_loc}
location in phone memory

\texttt{struct hf_unat_rep_param}
\#include \texttt{<esp_hf_ag_api.h>} ESP_HF_UNAT_RESPONSE_EVT.

Public Members

char* \texttt{unat}
Unknown AT command string

\texttt{struct hf_volume_control_param}
\#include \texttt{<esp_hf_ag_api.h>} ESP_HF_VOLUME_CONTROL_EVT.

Public Members

\textit{esp_hf_volume_type_t} \texttt{type}
Volume control target, speaker or microphone

int \texttt{volume}
Gain, ranges from 0 to 15

\texttt{struct hf_vra_rep_param}
\#include \texttt{<esp_hf_ag_api.h>} ESP_HF_BVRA_RESPONSE_EVT.
Public Members

`esp_bd_addr_t` **remote_addr**  
Remote bluetooth device address

`esp_hf_vr_state_t` **value**  
Voice recognition state

```c
struct hf_vts_rep_param
#include <esp_hf_ag_api.h> ESP_HF_VTS_RESPONSE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
char *code
MTF code from HF Client
```

```c
struct hf_wbs_rep_param
#include <esp_hf_ag_api.h> ESP_HF_WBS_RESPONSE_EVT.
```

```
Public Members

`esp_hf_wbs_config_t` **codec**  
codec mode CVSD or mSBC
```

Macros

```c
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_3WAY
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_ECNR
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_VREC
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_INBAND
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_VTAG
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_REJECT
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_ECS
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_ECC
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_EXTERN
ESP_HF_PEER_FEAT_CODEC
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_REL
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_REL_ACC
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_REL_X
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_HOLD_ACC
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_PRIV_X
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_MERGE
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_MERGE_DETACH
```

Type Definitions

```c
typedef void (*esp_hf_incoming_data_cb_t)(const uint8_t *buf, uint32_t len)
AG incoming data callback function, the callback is useful in case of Voice Over HCI.
```

Parameters


- **[in]** `buf`: pointer to incoming data (payload of HCI synchronous data packet), the buffer is allocated inside Bluetooth protocol stack and will be released after invoke of the callback is finished.
- **[in]** `len`: size (in bytes) in `buf`

```c
typedef uint32_t (*esp_hf_outgoing_data_cb_t)(uint8_t *buf, uint32_t len);
```

AG outgoing data callback function, the callback is useful in case of Voice Over HCI. Once audio connection is set up and the application layer has prepared data to send, the lower layer will call this function to read data and then send. This callback is supposed to be implemented as non-blocking, and if data is not enough, return value 0 is supposed.

**Return**: length of data successfully read

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `buf`: pointer to incoming data (payload of HCI synchronous data packet), the buffer is allocated inside Bluetooth protocol stack and will be released after invoke of the callback is finished.
- **[in]** `len`: size (in bytes) in `buf`

```c
typedef void (*esp_hf_cb_t)(esp_hf_cb_event_t event, esp_hf_cb_param_t *param);
```

HF AG callback function type.

**Parameters**
- `event`: Event type
- `param`: Pointer to callback parameter

**Enumerations**

```c
eenum esp_hf_cb_event_t
{
    ESP_HF_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT = 0,
    ESP_HF_AUDIO_STATE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_BVRA_RESPONSE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_VOLUME_CONTROL_EVT,
    ESP_HF_UNAT_RESPONSE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_IND_UPDATE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_CIND_RESPONSE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_COPS_RESPONSE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_CLCC_RESPONSE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_CNUM_RESPONSE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_VTS_RESPONSE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_NREC_RESPONSE_EVT,
    ESP_HF_ATA_RESPONSE_EVT
};
```

HF callback events.

**Values:**
- `ESP_HF_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT`: Connection state changed event
- `ESP_HF_AUDIO_STATE_EVT`: Audio connection state change event
- `ESP_HF_BVRA_RESPONSE_EVT`: Voice recognition state change event
- `ESP_HF_VOLUME_CONTROL_EVT`: Audio volume control command from HF Client, provided by +VGM or +VGS message
- `ESP_HF_UNAT_RESPONSE_EVT`: Unknown AT cmd Response
- `ESP_HF_IND_UPDATE_EVT`: Indicator Update Event
- `ESP_HF_CIND_RESPONSE_EVT`: Call And Device Indicator Response
- `ESP_HF_COPS_RESPONSE_EVT`: Current operator information
- `ESP_HF_CLCC_RESPONSE_EVT`: List of current calls notification
- `ESP_HF_CNUM_RESPONSE_EVT`: Subscriber information response from HF Client
- `ESP_HF_VTS_RESPONSE_EVT`: Enable or not DTMF
- `ESP_HF_NREC_RESPONSE_EVT`: Enable or not NREC
- `ESP_HF_ATA_RESPONSE_EVT`: Answer an Incoming Call
Chapter 2. API

2.1.5 NimBLE-based host APIs

Overview

Apache MyNewt NimBLE is a highly configurable and BT SIG qualifiable BLE stack providing both host and controller functionalities. ESP-IDF supports NimBLE host stack which is specifically ported for ESP32 platform and FreeRTOS. The underlying controller is still the same (as in case of Bluedroid) providing VHCI interface. Refer to NimBLE user guide for a complete list of features and additional information on NimBLE stack. Most features of NimBLE including BLE Mesh are supported by ESP-IDF. The porting layer is kept cleaner by maintaining all the existing APIs of NimBLE along with a single ESP-NimBLE API for initialization, making it simpler for the application developers.

Architecture

Currently, NimBLE host and controller support different transports such as UART and RAM between them. However, RAM transport cannot be used as is in case of ESP as ESP controller supports VHCI interface and buffering schemes used by NimBLE host is incompatible with that used by ESP controller. Therefore, a new transport between NimBLE host and ESP controller has been added. This is depicted in the figure below. This layer is responsible for maintaining pool of transport buffers and formatting buffers exchanges between host and controller as per the requirements.

![ESP NimBLE Stack](image)

Typical programming sequence with NimBLE stack consists of the following steps:

1. Enable the NimBLE stack in menuconfig: choose NimBLE for the Bluetooth host.
2. Begin with the following steps:
   a. Make sure the NimBLE stack is enabled.
   b. Configure the stack settings.
   c. Initialize the NimBLE stack.
   d. Start advertising.

Programming Sequence

Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 2. API

• Initialize NVS flash using `nvs_flash_init()` API. This is because ESP controller uses NVS during initialization.
• Call `esp_nimble_hci_and_controller_init()` to initialize ESP controller as well as transport layer. This will also link the host and controller modules together. Alternatively, if ESP controller is already initialized, then `esp_nimble_hci_init()` can be called for the remaining initialization.
• Initialize the host stack using `nimble_port_init`.
• Initialize the required NimBLE host configuration parameters and callbacks.
• Perform application specific tasks/initialization.
• Run the thread for host stack using `nimble_port_freertos_init`.

This documentation does not cover NimBLE APIs. Refer to NimBLE tutorial for more details on the programming sequence/NimBLE APIs for different scenarios.

API Reference

Header File

- `components/bt/host/nimble/esp-hci/include/esp_nimble_hci.h`

Functions

```c
esp_err_t esp_nimble_hci_init (void)
Initialize VHCI transport layer between NimBLE Host and ESP Bluetooth controller.

This function initializes the transport buffers to be exchanged between NimBLE host and ESP controller. It also registers required host callbacks with the controller.

Return
- ESP_OK if the initialization is successful
- Appropriate error code from `esp_err_t` in case of an error
```
```c
esp_err_t esp_nimble_hci_and_controller_init (void)
Initialize ESP Bluetooth controller(link layer) and VHCI transport layer between NimBLE Host and ESP Bluetooth controller.

This function initializes ESP controller in BLE only mode and the transport buffers to be exchanged between NimBLE host and ESP controller. It also registers required host callbacks with the controller.

Below is the sequence of APIs to be called to init/enable NimBLE host and ESP controller:
```
```c
void ble_host_task(void *param)
{
    nimble_port_run(); //This function will return only when nimble_port__
    --stop() is executed.
    nimble_port_freertos_deinit();
}

int ret = esp_nimble_hci_and_controller_init();
if (ret != ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "esp_nimble_hci_and_controller_init() failed with error: %d
    ", ret);
    return;
}

nimble_port_init();

//Initialize the NimBLE Host configuration
nimble_port_freertos_init(ble_host_task);
```
```
nimble_port_freertos_init() is an optional call that creates a new task in which the NimBLE host will run. The task function should have a call to `nimble_port_run()`. If a separate task is not required, calling `nimble_port_run()` will run the NimBLE host in the current task.
Return
• ESP_OK if the initialization is successful
• Appropriate error code from esp_err_t in case of an error

```c
esp_err_t esp_nimble_hci_deinit (void)
```
Deinitialize VHCI transport layer between NimBLE Host and ESP Bluetooth controller.

**Note** This function should be called after the NimBLE host is deinitialized.

Return
• ESP_OK if the deinitialization is successful
• Appropriate error codes from esp_err_t in case of an error

```c
esp_err_t esp_nimble_hci_and_controller_deinit (void)
```
Deinitialize VHCI transport layer between NimBLE Host and ESP Bluetooth controller and disable and deinitialize the controller.

Below is the sequence of APIs to be called to disable/deinit NimBLE host and ESP controller:

**Note** This function should not be executed in the context of Bluetooth host task.
**Note** This function should be called after the NimBLE host is deinitialized.

```c
int ret = nimble_port_stop();
if (ret == 0) {
    nimble_port_deinit();
    ret = esp_nimble_hci_and_controller_deinit();
    if (ret != ESP_OK) {
        ESP_LOGE(TAG, "esp_nimble_hci_and_controller_deinit() failed with_-
        _error: %d", ret);
    }
}
```

If nimble_port_freertos_init() is used during initialization, then nimble_port_freertos_deinit() should be called in the host task after nimble_port_run().

Return
• ESP_OK if the deinitialization is successful
• Appropriate error codes from esp_err_t in case of an error

**Macros**

BLE_HCI_UART_H4_NONE
BLE_HCI_UART_H4_CMD
BLE_HCI_UART_H4_ACL
BLE_HCI_UART_H4_SCO
BLE_HCI_UART_H4_EVT

## 2.1.6 ESP-BLE-MESH

With various features of ESP-BLE-MESH, users can create a managed flooding mesh network for several scenarios, such as lighting, sensor and etc.

For an ESP32 to join and work on a ESP-BLE-MESH network, it must be provisioned firstly. By provisioning, the ESP32, as an unprovisioned device, will join the ESP-BLE-MESH network and become a ESP-BLE-MESH node, communicating with other nodes within or beyond the radio range.

Apart from ESP-BLE-MESH nodes, inside ESP-BLE-MESH network, there is also ESP32 that works as ESP-BLE-MESH Provisioner, which could provision unprovisioned devices into ESP-BLE-MESH nodes and configure the nodes with various features.
Chapter 2. API 参考

For information how to start using ESP32 and ESP-BLE-MESH, please see the Section ESP-BLE-MESH 快速入门. If you are interested in information on ESP-BLE-MESH architecture, including some details of software implementation, please see Section ESP-BLE-MESH 架构.

Application Examples and Demos

Please refer to Sections ESP-BLE-MESH 示例 and ESP-BLE-MESH 演示视频.

API Reference

ESP-BLE-MESH APIs are divided into the following parts:

- ESP-BLE-MESH Definitions
- ESP-BLE-MESH Core API Reference
- ESP-BLE-MESH Models API Reference

ESP-BLE-MESH Definitions

This section contains only one header file, which lists the following items of ESP-BLE-MESH.

- ID of all the models and related message opcodes
- Structs of model, element and Composition Data
- Structs of used by ESP-BLE-MESH Node/Provisioner for provisioning
- Structs used to transmit/receive messages
- Event types and related event parameters

Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/esp_ble_mesh_defs.h

Unions

union esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t

```c
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>
BLE Mesh Node/Provisioner callback parameters union.
```

Public Members

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_prov_register_comp_param prov_register_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_REGISTER_COMP_EVT
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_set_unprov_dev_name_comp_param node_set_unprov_dev_name
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_SET_UNPROV_DEV_NAME_COMP_EVT
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_prov_enable_comp_param node_prov_enable
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_ENABLE_COMP_EVT
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_prov_disable_comp_param node_prov_disable
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_DISABLE_COMP_EVT
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_link_open_evt_param node_prov_link_open
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_LINK_OPEN_EVT
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_link_close_evt_param node_prov_link_close
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_LINK_CLOSE_EVT
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_output_num_evt_param node_prov_output_num
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_OUTPUT_NUMBER_EVT
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_output_str_evt_param node_prov_output_str
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_OUTPUT_STRING_EVT
```
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_input_evt_param node_prov_input
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provision_complete_evt_param node_prov_complete
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provision_reset_param node_prov_reset
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_RESET_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_set_oob_pub_key_comp_param node_prov_set_oob_pub_key_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_SET_OOB_PUB_KEY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_input_number_comp_param node_prov_input_num_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_NUM_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_input_string_comp_param node_prov_input_str_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_STR_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_proxy_identity_enable_comp_param node_proxy_identity_enable_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_IDENTITY_ENABLE_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_proxy_gatt_enable_comp_param node_proxy_gatt_enable_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_GATT_ENABLE_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_proxy_gatt_disable_comp_param node_proxy_gatt_disable_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_GATT_DISABLE_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_node_add_local_net_key_comp_param node_add_net_key_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_ADD_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_node_add_local_app_key_comp_param node_add_app_key_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_ADD_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_node_bind_local_mod_app_comp_param node_bind_app_key_to_model_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_BIND_APP_KEY_TO_MODEL_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_recv_unprov_adv_pkt_param provisioner_recv_unprov_adv_pkt
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_UNPROV_ADV_PKT_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_enable_comp_param provisioner_prov_enable_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_ENABLE_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_disable_comp_param provisioner_prov_disable_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_DISABLE_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_link_open_evt_param provisioner_prov_link_open
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_LINK_OPEN_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_read_oob_pub_key_evt_param provisioner_prov_read_oob_pub_key
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_READ_OOB_PUB_KEY_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_input_evt_param provisioner_prov_input
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_output_evt_param provisioner_prov_output
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_OUTPUT_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_link_close_evt_param provisioner_prov_link_close
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_LINK_CLOSE_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_comp_param provisioner_prov_complete
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_COMPLETE_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_add_unprov_dev_comp_param provisioner_add_unprov_dev_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_UNPROV_DEV_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_dev_with_addr_comp_param provisioner_prov_dev_with_addr_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_DEV_WITH_ADDR_COMP_EVT
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_dev_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_DEV_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_set_dev_uuid_match_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_DEV_UUID_MATCH_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_set_prov_data_info_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_prov_data_info_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_set_static_oob_val_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_STATIC_OOB_VALUE_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_set_primary_elem_addr_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_PRIMARY_ELEM_ADDR_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_read_oob_pub_key_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_READ_OOB_PUB_KEY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_input_num_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_NUMBER_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_input_str_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_STRING_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_set_node_name_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_NODE_NAME_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_app_key_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_update_local_app_key_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_UPDATE_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_bind_local_mod_app_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_BIND_APP_KEY_TO_MODEL_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_net_key_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_update_local_net_key_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_UPDATE_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_store_node_comp_data_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_STORE_NODE_COMP_DATA_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_node_with_uuid_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_NODE_WITH_UUID_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t
    ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_node_with_addr_comp_param
    
    Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_NODE_WITH_ADDR_COMP_EVT

int err_code

    Indicate the result of enabling/disabling to receive heartbeat messages by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of setting the heartbeat filter type by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of setting the heartbeat filter address by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of directly erasing settings by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of opening settings with index by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of opening settings with user id by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of closing settings with index by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of closing settings with user id by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of deleting settings with index by the Provisioner
    Indicate the result of deleting settings with user id by the Provisioner
**bool enable**
Indicate enabling or disabling receiving heartbeat messages

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::[anonymous] provisioner_enable_heartbeat_recv_comp
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ENABLE_HEARTBEAT_RECV_COMP_EVT.
```
Event parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ENABLE_HEARTBEAT_RECV_COMP_EVT

```c
uint8_t t_type
Type of the filter used for receiving heartbeat messages
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::[anonymous] provisioner_set_heartbeat_filter_type_comp
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_TYPE_COMP_EVT.
```
Event parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_TYPE_COMP_EVT

```c
uint8_t t_op
Operation (add, remove, clean)
```

```c
uint16_t t hb src
Heartbeat source address
```

```c
uint16_t t hb dst
Heartbeat destination address
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::[anonymous] provisioner_set_heartbeat_filter_info_comp
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_INFO_COMP_EVT.
```
Event parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_INFO_COMP_EVT

```c
uint8_t t init ttl
Heartbeat InitTTL
```

```c
uint8_t t rx ttl
Heartbeat RxTTL
```

```c
uint8_t t hops
Heartbeat hops (InitTTL - RxTTL + 1)
```

```c
uint16_t t feature
Bit field of currently active features of the node
```

```c
int8_t t rssi
RSSI of the heartbeat message
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::[anonymous] provisioner_recv_heartbeat
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_HEARTBEAT_MESSAGE_EVT.
```
Event parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_HEARTBEAT_MESSAGE_EVT

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::[anonymous] provisioner_direct_erase_settings_comp
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DRIECT_ERASE_SETTINGS_COMP_EVT.
```
Event parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DRIECT_ERASE_SETTINGS_COMP_EVT

```c
uint8_t t index
Index of Provisioner settings
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::[anonymous] provisioner_open_settings_with_index_comp
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_OPEN_SETTINGST_WITH_INDEX_COMP_EVT.
```
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_OPEN_SETTINGS_WITH_INDEX_COMP_EVT

```c
char t uid[ESP_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS_UID_SIZE + 1]
Provisioner settings user id
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::[anonymous] provisioner_open_settings_with_uid_comp
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_OPEN_SETTINGS_WITH_UID_COMP_EVT.
```
Event parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_OPEN_SETTINGS_WITH_UID_COMP_EVT
### Chapter 2. API

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure Name</th>
<th>Event Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>provisioner_close_settings_with_index_comp</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_CLOSE_SETTINGS_WITH_INDEX_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>provisioner_close_settings_with_uid_comp</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_CLOSE_SETTINGS_WITH_UID_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>provisioner_delete_settings_with_index_comp</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_SETTINGS_WITH_INDEX_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>provisioner_delete_settings_with_uid_comp</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_SETTINGS_WITH_UID_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_set_fast_prov_info_comp_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_SET_FAST_PROV_INFO_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_set_fast_prov_action_comp_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_SET_FAST_PROV_ACTION_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_heartbeat_msg_recv_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_MESSAGE_RECV_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_lpn_enable_comp_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_ENABLE_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_lpn_disable_comp_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_DISABLE_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_lpn_poll_comp_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_POLL_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_lpn_friendship_establish_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_FRIENDSHIP_ESTABLISH_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_lpn_friendship_terminate_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_friend_friendship_establish_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_FRIENDSHIP_ESTABLISH_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_friend_friendship_terminate_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_proxy_client_recv_adv_pkt_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_RECV_ADV_PKT_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_proxy_client_connected_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_CONNECTED_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_proxy_client_disconnected_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_DISCONNECTED_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_proxy_client_recv_filter_status_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_RECV_FILTER_STATUS_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_proxy_client_connect_comp_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_CONNECT_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_proxy_client_disconnect_comp_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_DISCONNECT_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t</code></td>
<td><code>ble_mesh_proxy_client_set_filter_type_comp_param</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event parameter of <code>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_SET_FILTER_TYPE_COMP_EVT</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_proxy_client_add_filter_addr_comp_param

proxy_client_add_filter_addr_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_ADD_FILTER_ADDR_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_proxy_client_remove_filter_addr_comp_param

proxy_client_remove_filter_addr_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_REMOVE_FILTER_ADDR_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_model_sub_group_addr_comp_param

model_sub_group_addr_comp
Event parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SUBSCRIBE_GROUP_ADDR_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_model_unsub_group_addr_comp_param

model_unsub_group_addr_comp
Event parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_UNSUBSCRIBE_GROUP_ADDR_COMP_EVT

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_deinit_mesh_comp_param

deinit_mesh_comp
Event parameter of ESP_BLE_MESH_DEINIT_MESH_COMP_EVT

struct ble_mesh_deinit_mesh_comp_param

#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_DEINIT_MESH_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of BLE Mesh deinitialization

struct ble_mesh_friend_friendship_establish_param

#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_FRIENDSHIP_ESTABLISH_EVT.

Public Members

uint16_t lpn_addr
Low Power Node unicast address

struct ble_mesh_friend_friendship_terminate_param

#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_EVT.

Public Types

enum [anonymous]
This enum value is the reason of friendship termination on the friend node side

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_FRND_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_ESTABLISH_FAIL
Friend Offer has been sent, but Friend Offer is not received within 1 second, friendship fails to be established

ESP_BLE_MESH_FRND_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_POLL_TIMEOUT
Friendship is established, PollTimeout timer expires and no Friend Poll/Sub Add/Sub Remove is received

ESP_BLE_MESH_FRND_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_RECV_FRND_REQ
Receive Friend Request from existing Low Power Node

ESP_BLE_MESH_FRND_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_RECV_FRND_CLEAR
Receive Friend Clear from other friend node

ESP_BLE_MESH_FRND_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_DISABLE
Friend feature disabled or corresponding NetKey is deleted
Public Members

```c
uint16_t lpn_addr
Low Power Node unicast address
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_prov_ch_param_t::ble_mesh_friend_friendship_terminate_param::[anonymous] reason
This enum value is the reason of friendship termination on the friend node side Friendship terminated reason
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_heartbeat_msg_recv_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_MESSAGE_RECV_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
uint8_t hops
Heartbeat hops (InitTTL - RxTTL + 1)
```

```c
uint16_t feature
Bit field of currently active features of the node
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_input_evt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_input_action_t action
Action of Input OOB Authentication
```

```c
uint8_t size
Size of Input OOB Authentication
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_input_number_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_NUM_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
int err_code
Indicate the result of inputting number
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_input_string_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_STR_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
int err_code
Indicate the result of inputting string
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_link_close_evt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_LINK_CLOSE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearer
Type of the bearer used when device link is closed
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_link_open_evt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_LINK_OPEN_EVT.
```
Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearer`
Type of the bearer used when device link is open

```
struct ble_mesh_lpn_disable_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_DISABLE_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```
int err_code
Indicate the result of disabling LPN functionality
```

```
struct ble_mesh_lpn_enable_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_ENABLE_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```
int err_code
Indicate the result of enabling LPN functionality
```

```
struct ble_mesh_lpn_friendship_establish_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_FRIENDSHIP_ESTABLISH_EVT.
```

Public Members

```
uint16_t friend_addr
Friend Node unicast address
```

```
struct ble_mesh_lpn_friendship_terminate_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_EVT.
```

Public Members

```
uint16_t friend_addr
Friend Node unicast address
```

```
struct ble_mesh_lpn_poll_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_POLL_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```
int err_code
Indicate the result of sending Friend Poll
```

```
struct ble_mesh_model_sub_group_addr_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SUBSCRIBE_GROUP_ADDR_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```
int err_code
Indicate the result of local model subscribing group address
```

```
uint16_t element_addr
Element address
```
Chapter 2. API参考

```c
uint16_t company_id
    Company ID
uint16_t model_id
    Model ID
uint16_t group_addr
    Group Address

struct ble_mesh_model_unsub_group_addr_comp_param
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_UNSUBSCRIBE_GROUP_ADDR_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
    Indicate the result of local model unsubscribing group address
uint16_t element_addr
    Element address
uint16_t company_id
    Company ID
uint16_t model_id
    Model ID
uint16_t group_addr
    Group Address

struct ble_mesh_node_add_local_app_key_comp_param
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_ADD_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
    Indicate the result of adding local AppKey by the node
uint16_t net_idx
    NetKey Index
uint16_t app_idx
    AppKey Index

struct ble_mesh_node_add_local_net_key_comp_param
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_ADD_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
    Indicate the result of adding local NetKey by the node
uint16_t net_idx
    NetKey Index

struct ble_mesh_node_bind_local_mod_app_comp_param
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_BIND_APP_KEY_TO_MODEL_COMP_EVT.
```
Public Members

int **err_code**
Indicate the result of binding AppKey with model by the node

uint16_t **element_addr**
Element address

uint16_t **app_idx**
AppKey Index

uint16_t **company_id**
Company ID

uint16_t **model_id**
Model ID

**struct ble_mesh_output_num_evt_param**

#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_OUTPUT_NUMBER_EVT.

Public Members

**esp_ble_mesh_output_action_t** **action**
Action of Output OOB Authentication

uint32_t **number**
Number of Output OOB Authentication

**struct ble_mesh_output_str_evt_param**

#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_OUTPUT_STRING_EVT.

Public Members

char **string[8]**
String of Output OOB Authentication

**struct ble_mesh_prov_disable_comp_param**

#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_DISABLE_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int **err_code**
Indicate the result of disabling BLE Mesh device

**struct ble_mesh_prov_enable_comp_param**

#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_ENABLE_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int **err_code**
Indicate the result of enabling BLE Mesh device

**struct ble_mesh_prov_register_comp_param**

#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_REGISTER_COMP_EVT.
Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of BLE Mesh initialization

struct ble_mesh_provision_complete_evt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_COMPLETE_EVT.

Public Members

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index

uint8_t net_key[16]
NetKey

uint16_t addr
Primary address

uint8_t flags
Flags

uint32_t iv_index
IV Index

struct ble_mesh_provision_reset_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_RESET_EVT.

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_app_key_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of adding local AppKey by the Provisioner

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index

uint16_t app_idx
AppKey Index

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_net_key_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of adding local NetKey by the Provisioner

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_add_unprov_dev_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_UNPROV_DEV_COMP_EVT.
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

```c
int err_code
Indicate the result of adding device into queue by the Provisioner
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_bind_local_mod_app_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_BIND_APP_KEY_TO_MODEL_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
int err_code
Indicate the result of binding AppKey with model by the Provisioner
```

```c
uint16_t element_addr
Element address
```

```c
uint16_t app_idx
AppKey Index
```

```c
uint16_t company_id
Company ID
```

```c
uint16_t model_id
Model ID
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_dev_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_DEV_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
int err_code
Indicate the result of deleting device by the Provisioner
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_node_with_addr_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_NODE_WITH_ADDR_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
int err_code
Indicate the result of deleting node with unicast address by the Provisioner
```

```c
uint16_t unicast_addr
Node unicast address
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_node_with_uuid_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_NODE_WITH_UUID_COMP_EVT.
```

Public Members

```c
int err_code
Indicate the result of deleting node with uuid by the Provisioner
```

```c
uint8_t uuid[16]
Node device uuid
```

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_link_close_evt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_LINK_CLOSE_EVT.
```
Public Members

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_prov\_bearer\_t\ bearer}
Type of the bearer used when Provisioner link is closed

\texttt{uint8\_t\ reason}
Reason of the closed provisioning link

\texttt{struct\ ble\_mesh\_provisioner\_link\_open\_evt\_param}
#include <esp\_ble\_mesh\_defs.h> ESP\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER\_PROV\_LINK\_OPEN\__EVT.

Public Members

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_prov\_bearer\_t\ bearer}
Type of the bearer used when Provisioner link is opened

\texttt{struct\ ble\_mesh\_provisioner\_prov\_comp\_param}
#include <esp\_ble\_mesh\_defs.h> ESP\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER\_PROV\_COMPLETE\__EVT.

Public Members

\texttt{uint16\_t\ node\_idx}
Index of the provisioned device

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_octet16\_t\ device\_uuid}
Device UUID of the provisioned device

\texttt{uint16\_t\ unicast\_addr}
Primary address of the provisioned device

\texttt{uint8\_t\ element\_num}
Element count of the provisioned device

\texttt{uint16\_t\ netkey\_idx}
NetKey Index of the provisioned device

\texttt{struct\ ble\_mesh\_provisioner\_prov\_dev\_with\_addr\_comp\_param}
#include <esp\_ble\_mesh\_defs.h> ESP\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER\_PROV\_DEV\_WITH\_ADDR\_COMP\__EVT.

Public Members

\texttt{int\ err\_code}
Indicate the result of Provisioner starting to provision a device

\texttt{struct\ ble\_mesh\_provisioner\_prov\_disable\_comp\_param}
#include <esp\_ble\_mesh\_defs.h> ESP\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER\_PROV\_DISABLE\_COMP\__EVT.

Public Members

\texttt{int\ err\_code}
Indicate the result of disabling BLE Mesh Provisioner

\texttt{struct\ ble\_mesh\_provisioner\_prov\_enable\_comp\_param}
#include <esp\_ble\_mesh\_defs.h> ESP\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER\_PROV\_ENABLE\_COMP\__EVT.
Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of enabling BLE Mesh Provisioner

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_input_evt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_EVT.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_oob_method_t method
Method of device Output OOB Authentication

esp_ble_mesh_output_action_t action
Action of device Output OOB Authentication

uint8_t size
Size of device Output OOB Authentication

uint8_t link_idx
Index of the provisioning link

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_input_num_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_NUMBER_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of inputting number by the Provisioner

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_input_str_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_STRING_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of inputting string by the Provisioner

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_output_evt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_OUTPUT_EVT.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_oob_method_t method
Method of device Input OOB Authentication

esp_ble_mesh_input_action_t action
Action of device Input OOB Authentication

uint8_t size
Size of device Input OOB Authentication

uint8_t link_idx
Index of the provisioning link

char string[8]
String output by the Provisioner

uint32_t number
Number output by the Provisioner
union esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_output_evt_param::[anonymous] [anonymous]

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_read_oob_pub_key_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_READ_OOB_PUB_KEY_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of setting OOB Public Key by the Provisioner

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_read_oob_pub_key_evt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_READ_OOB_PUB_KEY_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t link_idx
Index of the provisioning link

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_recv_unprov_adv_pkt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_UNPROV_ADV_PKT_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t dev_uuid[16]
Device UUID of the unprovisioned device

esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr
Device address of the unprovisioned device

esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type
Device address type

uint16_t oob_info
OOB Info of the unprovisioned device

uint8_t adv_type
Advertising type of the unprovisioned device

esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearer
Bearer of the unprovisioned device

int8_t rssi
RSSI of the received advertising packet

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_set_dev_uuid_match_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_DEV_UUID_MATCH_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of setting Device UUID match value by the Provisioner

struct ble_mesh_provisioner_set_node_name_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_NODE_NAME_COMP_EVT.
Chapter 2. API Reference

**Public Members**

```c
int err_code
```
Indicate the result of setting provisioned device name by the Provisioner

```c
uint16_t node_index
```
Index of the provisioned device

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_set_primary_elem_addr_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_PRIMARY_ELEM_ADDR_COMP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
int err_code
```
Indicate the result of setting unicast address of primary element by the Provisioner

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_set_prov_data_info_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_PROV_DATA_INFO_COMP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
int err_code
```
Indicate the result of setting provisioning info by the Provisioner

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_set_static_oob_val_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_STATIC_OOB_VALUE_COMP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
int err_code
```
Indicate the result of setting static oob value by the Provisioner

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_store_node_comp_data_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_STORE_NODE_COMP_DATA_COMP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
int err_code
```
Indicate the result of storing node composition data by the Provisioner

```c
uint16_t addr
```
Node element address

```c
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_update_local_app_key_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_UPDATE_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT.
```

**Public Members**

```c
int err_code
```
Indicate the result of updating local AppKey by the Provisioner

```c
uint16_t net_idx
```
NetKey Index

```c
uint16_t app_idx
```
AppKey Index
struct ble_mesh_provisioner_update_local_net_key_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_UPDATE_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of updating local NetKey by the Provisioner

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_add_filter_addr_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_ADD_FILTER_ADDR_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of Proxy Client add filter address

uint8_t conn_handle
Proxy connection handle

uint16_t net_idx
Corresponding NetKey Index

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_connect_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_CONNECT_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of Proxy Client connect

esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr
Device address of the Proxy Server

esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type
Device address type

uint16_t net_idx
Corresponding NetKey Index

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_connected_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_CONNECTED_EVT.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr
Device address of the Proxy Server

esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type
Device address type

uint8_t conn_handle
Proxy connection handle

uint16_t net_idx
Corresponding NetKey Index

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_disconnect_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_DISCONNECT_COMP_EVT.
Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of Proxy Client disconnect

uint8_t conn_handle
Proxy connection handle

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_disconnected_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_DISCONNECTED_EVT.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr
Device address of the Proxy Server

esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type
Device address type

uint8_t conn_handle
Proxy connection handle

uint16_t net_idx
Corresponding NetKey Index

uint8_t reason
Proxy disconnect reason

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_recv_adv_pkt_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_RECV_ADV_PKT_EVT.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr
Device address

esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type
Device address type

uint16_t net_idx
Network ID related NetKey Index

uint8_t net_id[8]
Network ID contained in the advertising packet

int8_t rssi
RSSI of the received advertising packet

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_recv_filter_status_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_RECV_FILTER_STATUS_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t conn_handle
Proxy connection handle

uint16_t server_addr
Proxy Server primary element address

uint16_t net_idx
Corresponding NetKey Index
Chapter 2. API

uint8_t filter_type
Proxy Server filter type (whitelist or blacklist)

uint16_t list_size
Number of addresses in the Proxy Server filter list

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_remove_filter_addr_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_REMOVE_FILTER_ADDR_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of Proxy Client remove filter address

uint8_t conn_handle
Proxy connection handle

uint16_t net_idx
Corresponding NetKey Index

struct ble_mesh_proxy_client_set_filter_type_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_SET_FILTER_TYPE_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of Proxy Client set filter type

uint8_t conn_handle
Proxy connection handle

uint16_t net_idx
Corresponding NetKey Index

struct ble_mesh_proxy_gatt_disable_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_GATT_DISABLE_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of disabling Mesh Proxy Service

struct ble_mesh_proxy_gatt_enable_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_GATT_ENABLE_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of enabling Mesh Proxy Service

struct ble_mesh_proxy_identity_enable_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_IDENTITY_ENABLE_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of enabling Mesh Proxy advertising
struct ble_mesh_set_fast_prov_action_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_SET_FAST_PROV_ACTION_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t status_action
Indicate the result of setting action of fast provisioning

struct ble_mesh_set_fast_prov_info_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_SET_FAST_PROV_INFO_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

uint8_t status_unicast
Indicate the result of setting unicast address range of fast provisioning

uint8_t status_net_idx
Indicate the result of setting NetKey Index of fast provisioning

uint8_t status_match
Indicate the result of setting matching Device UUID of fast provisioning

struct ble_mesh_set_oob_pub_key_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_SET_OOB_PUB_KEY_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of setting OOB Public Key

struct ble_mesh_set_unprov_dev_name_comp_param
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_SET_UNPROV_DEV_NAME_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
Indicate the result of setting BLE Mesh device name

union esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> Server model state value union.

Public Members

uint8_t onoff
The value of the Generic OnOff state
The value of the Light LC Light OnOff state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] gen_onoff
The Generic OnOff state

int16_t level
The value of the Generic Level state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] gen_level
The Generic Level state

uint8_t onpowerup
The value of the Generic OnPowerUp state
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] gen_onpowerup
The Generic OnPowerUp state

typedef uint16_t power
The value of the Generic Power Actual state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] gen_power_actual
The Generic Power Actual state

typedef uint16_t lightness
The value of the Light Lightness Actual state
The value of the Light Lightness Linear state
The value of the Light CTL Lightness state
The value of the Light HSL Lightness state
The value of the Light xyl Lightness state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_lightness_actual
The Light Lightness Actual state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_lightness_linear
The Light Lightness Linear state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_ctl_lightness
The Light CTL Lightness state

typedef uint16_t temperature
The value of the Light CTL Temperature state

typedef int16_t delta_uv
The value of the Light CTL Delta UV state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_ctl_temp_delta_uv
The Light CTL Temperature & Delta UV states

typedef uint16_t hue
The value of the Light HSL Hue state

typedef uint16_t saturation
The value of the Light HSL Saturation state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_hsl
The Light HSL composite state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_hsl_lightness
The Light HSL Lightness state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_hsl_hue
The Light HSL Hue state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_hsl_saturation
The Light HSL Saturation state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_xyl_lightness
The Light xyl Lightness state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t::[anonymous] light_lc_light_onoff
The Light LC Light OnOff state

union esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> BLE Mesh model callback parameters union.
### Public Members

**struct esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_model_operation_evt_param**

- **model_operation**
  - Event parameter of `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OPERATION_EVT`

**struct esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_model_send_comp_param**

- **model_send_comp**
  - Event parameter of `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SEND_COMP_EVT`

**struct esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_model_publish_comp_param**

- **model_publish_comp**
  - Event parameter of `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUBLISH_COMP_EVT`

**struct esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_mod_recv_publish_msg_param**

- **client_recv_publish_msg**
  - Event parameter of `ESP_BLE_MESH_CLIENT_MODEL_RECV_PUBLISH_MSG_EVT`

**struct esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_client_model_send_timeout_param**

- **client_send_timeout**
  - Event parameter of `ESP_BLE_MESH_CLIENT_MODEL_SEND_TIMEOUT_EVT`

**struct esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_model_publish_update_evt_param**

- **model_publish_update**
  - Event parameter of `ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_MODEL_UPDATE_EVT`

**struct esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t::ble_mesh_server_model_update_state_comp_param**

- **server_model_update_state**
  - Event parameter of `ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_MODEL_UPDATE_STATE_COMP_EVT`

**struct ble_mesh_model_operation_evt_param**

- #include `<esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>`

### Public Members

- **uint32_t opcode**
  - Opcode of the previously sent message

- **esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model**
  - Pointer to the model which sends the previous message

- **esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t *ctx**
  - Pointer to the context of the previous message

**struct ble_mesh_mod_recv_publish_msg_param**

- #include `<esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>`

### Public Members

- **uint32_t opcode**
  - Opcode of the unsolicited received message

- **esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model**
  - Pointer to the model which receives the message

- **esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t *ctx**
  - Pointer to the context of the message

- **uint16_t length**
  - Length of the received message

- **uint8_t *msg**
  - Value of the received message

**struct ble_mesh_model_operation_evt_param**

- #include `<esp_ble_mesh_defs.h>`
Public Members

uint32_t **opcode
    Opcode of the received message

esp_ble_mesh_model_t **model
    Pointer to the model which receives the message

esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t **ctx
    Pointer to the context of the received message

uint16_t length
    Length of the received message

uint8_t **msg
    Value of the received message

struct ble_mesh_model_publish_comp_param
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUBLISH_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
    Indicate the result of publishing a message

esp_ble_mesh_model_t **model
    Pointer to the model which publishes the message

struct ble_mesh_model_publish_update_evt_param
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUBLISH_UPDATE_EVT.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t **model
    Pointer to the model which is going to update its publish message

struct ble_mesh_model_send_comp_param
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SEND_COMP_EVT.

Public Members

int err_code
    Indicate the result of sending a message

uint32_t opcode
    Opcode of the message

esp_ble_mesh_model_t **model
    Pointer to the model which sends the message

esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t **ctx
    Context of the message

struct ble_mesh_server_model_update_state_comp_param
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_defs.h> ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_MODEL_UPDATE_STATE_COMP_EVT.
Chapter 2. API 参考

Public Members

```
int err_code
   Indicate the result of updating server model state

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
   Pointer to the server model which state value is updated

esp_ble_mesh_server_state_type_t type
   Type of the updated server state
```

Structures

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_deinit_param_t
   BLE Mesh deinit parameters

Public Members

bool erase_flash
   Indicate if erasing flash when deinit mesh stack

struct esp_ble_mesh_elem_t
   Abstraction that describes a BLE Mesh Element. This structure is associated with struct bt_mesh_elem in mesh_access.h

Public Members

uint16_t element_addr
   Element Address, assigned during provisioning.

const uint16_t location
   Location Descriptor (GATT Bluetooth Namespace Descriptors)

const uint8_t sig_model_count
   SIG Model count

const uint8_t vnd_model_count
   Vendor Model count

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *sig_models
   SIG Models

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *vnd_models
   Vendor Models

struct esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t
   Abstraction that describes a model publication context. This structure is associated with struct bt_mesh_model_pub in mesh_access.h

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
   Pointer to the model to which the context belongs. Initialized by the stack.

uint16_t publish_addr
   Publish Address.

uint16_t app_idx : 12
   Publish AppKey Index.

uint16_t cred : 1
   Friendship Credentials Flag.
```
uint16_t send_rel : 1
    Force reliable sending (segment acks)

uint8_t ttl
    Publish Time to Live.

uint8_t retransmit
    Retransmit Count & Interval Steps.

uint8_t period
    Publish Period.

uint8_t period_div : 4
    Divisor for the Period.

uint8_t fast_period : 1
    Use FastPeriodDivisor

uint8_t count : 3
    Retransmissions left.

uint32_t period_start
    Start of the current period.

struct net_buf_simple *msg
    Publication buffer, containing the publication message.
    This will get correctly created when the publication context has been defined using the
    ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUB_DEFINE macro.
    ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUB_DEFINE(name, size);

esp_ble_mesh_cb_t update
    Callback used to update publish message. Initialized by the stack.

struct k_delayed_work timer
    Publish Period Timer. Initialized by the stack.

uint8_t dev_role
    Role of the device that is going to publish messages

struct esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t
    Abstraction that describes a model operation context. This structure is associated with struct
    bt_mesh_model_op in mesh_access.h

Public Members

const uint32_t opcode
    Message opcode

const size_t min_len
    Message minimum length

esp_ble_mesh_cb_t param_cb
    Callback used to handle message. Initialized by the stack.

struct esp_ble_mesh_model_cbs_t
    Abstraction that describes a model callback structure. This structure is associated with struct
    bt_mesh_model_cb in mesh_access.h

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_cb_t init_cb
    Callback used during model initialization. Initialized by the stack.
struct esp_ble_mesh_model
Abstraction that describes a Mesh Model instance. This structure is associated with struct bt_mesh_model in mesh_access.h

Public Members

const uint16_t model_id
16-bit model identifier

uint16_t company_id
16-bit company identifier

uint16_t model_id
16-bit model identifier

struct esp_ble_mesh_model::[anonymous]::[anonymous] vnd
Structure encapsulating a model ID with a company ID

union esp_ble_mesh_model::[anonymous] [anonymous]
Model ID

uint8_t element_idx
Internal information, mainly for persistent storage Belongs to Nth element

uint8_t model_idx
Is the Nth model in the element

uint16_t flags
Information about what has changed

esp_ble_mesh_elem_t *element
The Element to which this Model belongs

esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t *const pub
Model Publication

uint16_t keys[CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MODEL_KEY_COUNT]
AppKey List

uint16_t groups[CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GROUP_COUNT]
Subscription List (group or virtual addresses)

esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t *op
Model operation context

esp_ble_mesh_model_cbs_t *cb
Model callback structure

void *user_data
Model-specific user data

struct esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t
Message sending context. This structure is associated with struct bt_mesh_msg_ctx in mesh_access.h

Public Members

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index of the subnet through which to send the message.

uint16_t app_idx
AppKey Index for message encryption.

uint16_t addr
Remote address.
uint16_t recv_dst
  Destination address of a received message. Not used for sending.

int8_t recv_rssi
  RSSI of received packet. Not used for sending.

uint8_t recv_ttl : 7
  Received TTL value. Not used for sending.

uint8_t send_rel : 1
  Force sending reliably by using segment acknowledgement

uint8_t send_ttl
  TTL, or ESP_BLE_MESH_TTL_DEFAULT for default TTL.

uint32_t recv_op
  Opcode of a received message. Not used for sending message.

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
  Model corresponding to the message, no need to be initialized before sending message

bool srv_send
  Indicate if the message is sent by a node server model, no need to be initialized before sending message

struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_t
  Provisioning properties & capabilities. This structure is associated with struct bt_mesh_prov in mesh_access.h

struct esp_ble_mesh_comp_t
  Node Composition data context. This structure is associated with struct bt_mesh_comp in mesh_access.h

Public Members

uint16_t cid
  16-bit SIG-assigned company identifier

uint16_t pid
  16-bit vendor-assigned product identifier

uint16_t vid
  16-bit vendor-assigned product version identifier

size_t element_count
  Element count

esp_ble_mesh_elem_t *elements
  A sequence of elements

struct esp_ble_mesh_unprov_dev_add_t
  Information of the device which is going to be added for provisioning.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr
  Device address

esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type
  Device address type

uint8_t uuid[16]
  Device UUID

uint16_t oob_info
  Device OOB Info ADD_DEV_START_PROV_NOW_FLAG shall not be set if the bearer has both PB-ADV and PB-GATT enabled
esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t \texttt{bearer}
Provisioning Bearer

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_device_delete_t}
Information of the device which is going to be deleted.

\textbf{Public Members}

\texttt{esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t \texttt{addr}}
Device address

\texttt{esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t \texttt{addr_type}}
Device address type

\texttt{uint8_t \texttt{uuid}[16]}
Device UUID

\texttt{uint8_t \texttt{flag}}
BIT0: device address; BIT1: device UUID

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_prov_data_info_t}
Information of the provisioner which is going to be updated.

\textbf{Public Members}

\texttt{uint16_t \texttt{net_idx}}
NetKey Index

\texttt{uint8_t \texttt{flags}}
Flags

\texttt{uint32_t \texttt{iv_index}}
IV Index

\texttt{uint8_t \texttt{flag}}
BIT0: net_idx; BIT1: flags; BIT2: iv_index

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_node_t}
Information of the provisioned node

\textbf{Public Members}

\texttt{esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t \texttt{addr}}
Node device address

\texttt{esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t \texttt{addr_type}}
Node device address type

\texttt{uint8_t \texttt{dev_uuid}[16]}
Device UUID

\texttt{uint16_t \texttt{oob_info}}
Node OOB information

\texttt{uint16_t \texttt{unicast_addr}}
Node unicast address

\texttt{uint8_t \texttt{element_num}}
Node element number

\texttt{uint16_t \texttt{net_idx}}
Node NetKey Index
uint8_t flags
   Node key refresh flag and iv update flag

uint32_t iv_index
   Node IV Index

uint8_t dev_key[16]
   Node device key

char name[ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_NAME_MAX_LEN + 1]
   Node name

uint16_t comp_length
   Length of Composition Data

uint8_t* comp_data
   Value of Composition Data

struct esp_ble_mesh_fast_prov_info_t
   Context of fast provisioning which need to be set.

Public Members

uint16_t unicast_min
   Minimum unicast address used for fast provisioning

uint16_t unicast_max
   Maximum unicast address used for fast provisioning

uint16_t net_idx
   Netkey index used for fast provisioning

uint8_t flags
   Flags used for fast provisioning

uint32_t iv_index
   IV Index used for fast provisioning

uint8_t offset
   Offset of the UUID to be compared

uint8_t match_len
   Length of the UUID to be compared

uint8_t match_val[16]
   Value of UUID to be compared

struct esp_ble_mesh_heartbeat_filter_info_t
   Context of Provisioner heartbeat filter information to be set

Public Members

uint16_t hb_src
   Heartbeat source address (unicast address)

uint16_t hb_dst
   Heartbeat destination address (unicast address or group address)

struct esp_ble_mesh_client_op_pair_t
   BLE Mesh client models related definitions.
   Client model Get/Set message opcode and corresponding Status message opcode
Public Members

```c
uint32_t cli_op
The client message opcode
```

```c
uint32_t status_op
The server status opcode corresponding to the client message opcode
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_client_t
Client Model user data context.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the client model. Initialized by the stack.
```

```c
int op_pair_size
Size of the op_pair
```

```c
const esp_ble_mesh_client_op_pair_t *op_pair
Table containing get/set message opcode and corresponding status message opcode
```

```c
uint32_t publish_status
Callback used to handle the received unsolicited message. Initialized by the stack.
```

```c
void *internal_data
Pointer to the internal data of client model
```

```c
uint8_t msg_role
Role of the device (Node/Provisioner) that is going to send messages
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t
Common parameters of the messages sent by Client Model.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t opcode
Message opcode
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the client model structure
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t ctx
The context used to send message
```

```c
int32_t msg_timeout
Timeout value (ms) to get response to the sent message Note: if using default timeout value in menuconfig, make sure to set this value to 0
```

```c
uint8_t msg_role
Role of the device - Node/Provisioner
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t
Parameters of the server model state transition
```

Public Functions

```c
BLE_MESH_ATOMIC_DEFINE
Flag used to indicate if the transition timer has been started internally.
```

If the model which contains esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t sets “set_auto_rsp” to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP, the handler of the timer shall be initialized by the users.
And users can use this flag to indicate whether the timer is started or not.

**Public Members**

```cpp
bool just_started
   Indicate if the state transition has just started
```

```cpp
uint8_t trans_time
   State transition time
```

```cpp
uint8_t remain_time
   Remaining time of state transition
```

```cpp
delay
   Delay before starting state transition
```

```cpp
uint32_t quo_tt
   Duration of each divided transition step
```

```cpp
uint32_t counter
   Number of steps which the transition duration is divided
```

```cpp
uint32_t total_duration
   State transition total duration
```

```cpp
int64_t start_timestamp
   Time when the state transition is started
```

**struct k_delayed_work timer**

```
Timer used for state transition
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t**

```
Parameters of the server model received last same set message.
```

**Public Members**

```cpp
uint8_t tid
   Transaction number of the last message
```

```cpp
uint16_t src
   Source address of the last message
```

```cpp
uint16_t dst
   Destination address of the last message
```

```cpp
int64_t timestamp
   Time when the last message is received
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t**

```
Parameters of the Server Model response control
```

**Public Members**

```cpp
uint8_t get_auto_rsp : 1
   BLE Mesh Server Response Option.
```

1. If `get_auto_rsp` is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP, then the response of Client Get messages need to be replied by the application;
2. If `get_auto_rsp` is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_AUTO_RSP, then the response of Client Get messages will be replied by the server models;
3. If `set_auto_rsp` is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP, then the response of Client Set messages need to be replied by the application;
4. If `set_auto_rsp` is set to `ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_AUTO_RSP`, then the response of Client Set messages will be replied by the server models;
5. If `status_auto_rsp` is set to `ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP`, then the response of Server Status messages need to be replied by the application;
6. If `status_auto_rsp` is set to `ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_AUTO_RSP`, then the response of Server Status messages will be replied by the server models;

```c
uint8_t set_auto_rsp : 1
// Response control for Client Set messages
uint8_t status_auto_rsp : 1
// Response control for Server Status messages
```

**Macros**

- `ESP_BLE_MESH_SDU_MAX_LEN`<br>  
  The maximum length of a BLE Mesh message, including Opcode, Payload and TransMIC Length of a short Mesh MIC.
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_MIC_SHORT`<br>  
  Length of a long Mesh MIC.
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_MIC_LONG`<br>  
  The maximum length of a BLE Mesh provisioned node name
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_NAME_MAX_LEN`<br>  
  The maximum length of a BLE Mesh unprovisioned device name
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_DEVICE_NAME_MAX_LEN`<br>  
  The maximum length of settings user id
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS_UID_SIZE`<br>  
  Invalid settings index
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SETTINGS_IDX`<br>  
  Define the BLE Mesh octet 16 bytes size
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_OCTET16_LEN`<br>  
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_OCTET8_LEN`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_CID_NVAL`<br>  
  Special TTL value to request using configured default TTL
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_TTL_DEFAULT`<br>  
  Maximum allowed TTL value
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_TTL_MAX`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_UNASSIGNED`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_ALL_NODES`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_PROXIES`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_FRIENDS`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_RELAYS`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_KEY_UNUSED`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_KEY_DEV`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_KEY_PRIMARY`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_KEY_ANY`<br>  
  Primary Network Key index
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_NET_PRIMARY`<br>  
  Relay state value
ESP_BLE_MESH_RELAY_DISABLED
ESP_BLE_MESH_RELAY_ENABLED
ESP_BLE_MESH_RELAY_NOT_SUPPORTED
Beacon state value
ESP_BLE_MESH_BEACON_DISABLED
ESP_BLE_MESH_BEACON_ENABLED
GATT Proxy state value
ESP_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_DISABLED
ESP_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_ENABLED
ESP_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_NOT_SUPPORTED
Friend state value
ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_DISABLED
ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_ENABLED
ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_NOT_SUPPORTED
Node identity state value
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_IDENTITY_STOPPED
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_IDENTITY_RUNNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_IDENTITY_NOT_SUPPORTED
Supported features
ESP_BLE_MESH_FEATURE_RELAY
ESP_BLE_MESH_FEATURE_PROXY
ESP_BLE_MESH_FEATURE_FRIEND
ESP_BLE_MESH_FEATURE_LOW_POWER
ESP_BLE_MESH_FEATURE_ALL_SUPPORTED
ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_IS_UNICAST (addr)
ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_IS_GROUP (addr)
ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_IS_VIRTUAL (addr)
ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_IS_RFU (addr)
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_NODE_INDEX
ESP_BLE_MESH_TRANSMIT (count, int_ms)
    Encode transmission count & interval steps.
    
    Note For example, ESP_BLE_MESH_TRANSMIT(2, 20) means that the message will be sent about
    90ms(count is 3, step is 1, interval is 30 ms which includes 10ms of advertising interval random de-
    lay).
    
    Return BLE Mesh transmit value that can be used e.g. for the default values of the Configuration Model data.

    Parameters
    • count: Number of retransmissions (first transmission is excluded).
    • int_ms: Interval steps in milliseconds. Must be greater than 0 and a multiple of 10.

ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_TRANSMIT_COUNT (transmit)
    Decode transmit count from a transmit value.

    Return Transmission count (actual transmissions equal to N + 1).

    Parameters
    • transmit: Encoded transmit count & interval value.
**ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_TRANSMIT_INTERVAL** (transmit)

Decode transmit interval from a transmit value.

**Return**
Transmission interval in milliseconds.

**Parameters**
- *transmit*: Encoded transmit count & interval value.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_PUBLISH_TRANSMIT** (count, int_ms)

Encode Publish Retransmit count & interval steps.

**Return**
BLE Mesh transmit value that can be used e.g. for the default values of the Configuration Model data.

**Parameters**
- *count*: Number of retransmissions (first transmission is excluded).
- *int_ms*: Interval steps in milliseconds. Must be greater than 0 and a multiple of 50.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_PUBLISH_TRANSMIT_COUNT** (transmit)

Decode Publish Retransmit count from a given value.

**Return**
Retransmission count (actual transmissions equal to N + 1).

**Parameters**
- *transmit*: Encoded Publish Retransmit count & interval value.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_PUBLISH_TRANSMIT_INTERVAL** (transmit)

Decode Publish Retransmit interval from a given value.

**Callbacks which are not needed to be initialized by users (set with 0 and will be initialized internally)**

**Return**
Transmission interval in milliseconds.

**Parameters**
- *transmit*: Encoded Publish Retransmit count & interval value.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_STATIC_OOB_MAX_LEN**

Maximum length of string used by Output OOB authentication

**ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OUTPUT_OOB_MAX_LEN**

Maximum length of string used by Output OOB authentication

**ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_INPUT_OOB_MAX_LEN**

Macros used to define message opcode

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_1** (b0)

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_2** (b0, b1)

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_3** (b0, cid)

This macro is associated with BLE_MESH_MODEL_CB in mesh_access.h

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SIG_MODEL** (_id, _op, _pub, _user_data)

This macro is associated with BLE_MESH_MODEL_VND_CB in mesh_access.h

**ESP_BLE_MESH_VENDOR_MODEL** (_company, _id, _op, _pub, _user_data)

**ESP_BLE_MESH_ELEMENT** (_loc, _mods, _vnd_mods)

Helper to define a BLE Mesh element within an array.

In case the element has no SIG or Vendor models, the helper macro ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_NONE can be given instead.

**Note**
This macro is associated with BLE_MESH_ELEM in mesh_access.h

**Parameters**
- _loc: Location Descriptor.
- _mods: Array of SIG models.
- _vnd_mods: Array of vendor models.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV** (uuid, sta_val, sta_val_len, out_size, out_act, in_size, in_act)

**BT_OCTET32_LEN**

**BD_ADDR_LEN**
Chapter 2. API

ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_TYPE_PUBLIC
ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_TYPE_RANDOM
ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_TYPE_RPA_PUBLIC
ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_TYPE_RPA_RANDOM

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUB_DEFINE (_name, _msg_len, _role)
Define a model publication context.

Parameters
• _name: Variable name given to the context.
• _msg_len: Length of the publication message.
• _role: Role of the device which contains the model.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP (_opcode, _min_len)
Define a model operation context.

Parameters
• _opcode: Message opcode.
• _min_len: Message minimum length.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_END
Define the terminator for the model operation table. Each model operation struct array must use this terminator as the end tag of the operation unit.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_NONE
Helper to define an empty model array. This structure is associated with BLE_MESH_MODEL_NONE in mesh_access.h

ADD_DEV_RM_AFTER_PROV_FLAG
Device will be removed from queue after provisioned successfully

ADD_DEV_START_PROV_NOW_FLAG
Start provisioning device immediately

ADD_DEV_FLUSHABLE_DEV_FLAG
Device can be remove when queue is full and new device is going to added

DEL_DEV_ADDR_FLAG
DEL_DEV_UUID_FLAG
PROV_DATA_NET_IDX_FLAG
PROV_DATA_FLAGS_FLAG
PROV_DATA_IV_INDEX_FLAG
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_ACCEPTLIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_REJECTLIST
Provisioner heartbeat filter operation

ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_ADD
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_REMOVE

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_CONFIG_SRV
BLE Mesh models related Model ID and Opcode definitions.
< Foundation Models

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_CONFIG_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_HEALTH_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_HEALTH_CLI
Models from the Mesh Model Specification

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_ONOFF_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_ONOFF_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_LEVEL_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_LEVEL_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_POWER_ONOFF_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_POWER_ONOFF_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_POWER_ONOFF_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_BATTERY_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_BATTERY_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_LOCATION_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_LOCATION_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_LOCATION_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_ADMIN_PROP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_USER_PROP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_CLIENT_PROP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_GEN_PROP_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SENSOR_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SENSOR_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SENSOR_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_TIME_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_TIME_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_TIME_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCENE_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCENE_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCENE_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCHEDULER_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCHEDULER_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCHEDULER_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_CTL_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_CTL_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_CTL_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_CTL_TEMP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_SAT_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_XYL_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_XYL_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_XYL_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LC_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LC_SETUP_SRV
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LC_CLI
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_BEACON_GET
    Config Beacon Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_COMPOSITION_DATA_GET
    Config Composition Data Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_GET
    Config Default TTL Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GATT_PROXY_GET
    Config GATT Proxy Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_RELAY_GET
    Config Relay Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_PUB_GET
    Config Model Publication Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_FRIEND_GET
    Config Friend Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_PUB_GET
    Config Heartbeat Publication Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_SUB_GET
    Config Heartbeat Subscription Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_GET
    Config NetKey Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_GET
    Config AppKey Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_IDENTITY_GET
    Config Node Identity Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_SUB_GET
    Config SIG Model Subscription Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_SUB_GET
    Config Vendor Model Subscription Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_APP_GET
    Config SIG Model App Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_APP_GET
    Config Vendor Model App Get
Chapter 2. API Reference

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_GET
Config Key Refresh Phase Get

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LPN_POLL_TIMEOUT_GET
Config Low Power Node Poll Timeout Get

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NETWORK_TRANSMIT_GET
Config Network Transmit Get

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_BeaCON_SET
Config Beacon Set

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_SET
Config Default TTL Set

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GATT_PROXY_SET
Config GATT Proxy Set

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_RELAY_SET
Config Relay Set

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_PUB_SET
Config Model Publication Set

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_ADD
Config Model Subscription Add

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_VIRTUAL_ADDR_ADD
Config Model Subscription Virtual Address Add

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_DELETE
Config Model Subscription Delete

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_VIRTUAL_ADDR_DELETE
Config Model Subscription Virtual Address Delete

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_OVERWRITE
Config Model Subscription Overwrite

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_VIRTUAL_ADDR_OVERWRITE
Config Model Subscription Virtual Address Overwrite

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_ADD
Config NetKey Add

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_ADD
Config AppKey Add

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_APP_BIND
Config Model App Bind

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_RESET
Config Node Reset

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_FRIEND_SET
Config Friend Set

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_PUB_SET
Config Heartbeat Publication Set

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_SUB_SET
Config Heartbeat Subscription Set

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_UPDATE
Config NetKey Update

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_DELETE
Config NetKey Delete
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_UPDATE
    Config AppKey Update
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_DELETE
    Config AppKey Delete
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_IDENTITY_SET
    Config Node Identity Set
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_SET
    Config Key Refresh Phase Set
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_PUB_VIRTUAL_ADDR_SET
    Config Model Publication Virtual Address Set
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_DELETE_ALL
    Config Model Subscription Delete All
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_APP_UNBIND
    Config Model App Unbind
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NETWORK_TRANSMIT_SET
    Config Network Transmit Set
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_BEACON_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_COMPOSITION_DATA_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GATT_PROXY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_RELAY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_PUB_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_SUB_LIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_SUB_LIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_LIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_LIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_IDENTITY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_APP_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_APP_LIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_APP_LIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_RESET_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_FRIEND_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_PUB_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_SUB_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LPN_POLLTIMEOUT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NETWORK_TRANSMIT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_SUCCESS
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_ADDRESS
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_MODEL
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_APPKEY
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_NETKEY
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_KEY_INDEX_ALREADY_STORED
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_PUBLISH_PARAMETERS
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_NOT_A_SUBSCRIBE_MODEL
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_STORAGE_FAILURE
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_FEATURE_NOT_SUPPORTED
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_CANNOT_UPDATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_CANNOT_REMOVE
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_CANNOT_BIND
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_TEMP_UNABLE_TO_CHANGE_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_CANNOT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_UNSPECIFIED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_BINDING

Health Fault Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_GET

Health Period Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_PERIOD_GET

Health Attention Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_ATTENTION_GET

Health Fault Clear
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_CLEAR

Health Fault Clear Unacknowledged
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_CLEAR_UNACK

Health Fault Test
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_TEST

Health Fault Test Unacknowledged
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_TEST_UNACK

Health Period Set
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_PERIOD_SET

Health Period Set Unacknowledged
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_PERIOD_SET_UNACK

Health Attention Set
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_ATTENTION_SET

Health Attention Set Unacknowledged
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_ATTENTION_SET_UNACK

Health Current Status
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_CURRENT_STATUS

Health Fault Status
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_STATUS

Health Period Status
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_PERIOD_STATUS

Health Attention Status
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_ATTENTION_STATUS

Health On-Off Get
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONOFF_GET
Chapter 2. API Reference

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONOFF_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONOFF_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONOFF_STATUS
Generic Level Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DELTA_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DELTA_SET_UNACK

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MOVE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MOVE_SET_UNACK
Generic Default Transition Time Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_STATUS
Generic Power OnOff Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONPOWERUP_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONPOWERUP_STATUS
Generic Power OnOff Setup Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONPOWERUP_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONPOWERUP_SET_UNACK
Generic Power Level Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LAST_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LAST_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_DEFAULT_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_DEFAULT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_STATUS
Generic Power Level Setup Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_DEFAULT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_SET_UNACK
Generic Battery Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_BATTERY_GET
Chapter 2. API 参考

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_BATTERY_STATUS
Generic Location Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_GLOBAL_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_GLOBAL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_LOCAL_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_LOCAL_STATUS
Generic Location Setup Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_GLOBAL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_GLOBAL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_LOCAL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_LOCAL_SET_UNACK
Generic Manufacturer Property Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTIES_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTIES_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTY_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTY_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTY_STATUS
Generic Admin Property Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTIES_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTIES_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_STATUS
Generic User Property Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTIES_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTIES_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_STATUS
Generic Client Property Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_CLIENT_PROPERTIES_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_CLIENT_PROPERTIES_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_COLUMN_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_COLUMN_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SERIES_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SERIES_STATUS
   Sensor Setup Message Opcode
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTINGS_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTINGS_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ZONE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ZONE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ZONE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TAI_UTC_DELTA_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TAI_UTC_DELTA_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TAI_UTC_DELTA_STATUS
   Scene Message Opcode
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_RECALL
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_RECALL_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_REGISTER_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_REGISTER_STATUS
   Scene Setup Message Opcode
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STORE
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STORE_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_DELETE
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_DELETE_UNACK
   Scheduler Message Opcode
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_STATUS
Scheduler Setup Message Opcode
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LAST_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LAST_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_STATUS
Light Lightness Setup Message Opcode
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_SET_UNACK
Light CTL Message Opcode
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
Light CTL Setup Message Opcode
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_STATUS
Chapter 2. API

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_SET_UNACK

Light HSL Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HSL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_TARGET_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_TARGET_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_STATUS

Light HSL Setup Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_SET_UNACK

Light xyL Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_TARGET_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_TARGET_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_STATUS

Light xyL Setup Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
Chapter 2. API

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_SET_UNACK
Light Control Message Opcode

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_STATUS

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_STATUS

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_STATUS_SUCCESS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_STATUS_CANNOT_SET_RANGE_MIN
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_STATUS_CANNOT_SET_RANGE_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP
  Response need to be sent in the application
ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_AUTO_RSP
  Response will be sent internally

Type Definitions
typedef uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_octet16_t[ESP_BLE_MESH_OCTET16_LEN]
  Define the BLE Mesh octet 8 bytes size
typedef uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_octet8_t[ESP_BLE_MESH_OCTET8_LEN]
  Invalid Company ID

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_cb_t

typedef uint8_t UINT8

typedef uint16_t UINT16

typedef uint32_t UINT32

typedef uint64_t UINT64

typedef UINT8 BT_OCTET32[BT_OCTET32_LEN]

typedef uint8_t BD_ADDR[BD_ADDR_LEN]

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t[BD_ADDR_LEN]

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t
  BLE device address type.
typedef struct esp_ble_mesh_model esp_ble_mesh_model_t
typedef uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_dev_add_flag_t
typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_client_get_t
esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_client_get_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_config_client_get_state. The following opcodes will only be used in the esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state function.

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_client_set_t
esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_client_set_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state. The following opcodes will only be used in the esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state function.

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_status_t
esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_status_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_config_client_get_state. The following opcodes will only be used in the esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state function.

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_status_t
esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_status_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state. The following opcodes will only be used in the esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state function.

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_cfg_status_t
This typedef is only used to indicate the status code contained in some of the Configuration Server Model status message.

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_opcode_health_client_get_t
esp_ble_mesh_opcode_health_client_get_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state. The following opcodes will only be used in the esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state function.

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_opcode_health_client_set_t
esp_ble_mesh_opcode_health_client_set_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state. The following opcodes will only be used in the esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state function.

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_health_model_status_t
esp_ble_mesh_health_model_status_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state. The following opcodes will only be used in the esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state function.

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_health_model_status_t
esp_ble_mesh_health_model_status_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state. The following opcodes will only be used in the esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state function.

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_generic_message_opcode_t
esp_ble_mesh_generic_message_opcode_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_get_state & esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state.Generics OnOff Message Opcode

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_sensor_message_opcode_t
esp_ble_mesh_sensor_message_opcode_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_get_state & esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_set_state.Sensor Message Opcode

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_message_opcode_t
esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_message_opcode_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_get_state & esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_set_state.Time Message Opcode

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_light_messageOpcode_t
esp_ble_mesh_light_messageOpcode_t belongs to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t, this typedef is only used to locate the opcodes used by esp_ble_mesh_light_client_get_state & esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state.Light Lightness Message Opcode

typedef uint32_t esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t
End of defines of esp_ble_mesh_opcode_t

typedef uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_model_status_t
This typedef is only used to indicate the status code contained in some of the server models (e.g. Generic Server Model) status message.
Enumerations

enum esp_ble_mesh_cb_type_t

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_TYPE_PROV_CB
ESP_BLE_MESH_TYPE_OUTPUT_NUM_CB
ESP_BLE_MESH_TYPE_OUTPUT_STR_CB
ESP_BLE_MESH_TYPE_INPUT_CB
ESP_BLE_MESH_TYPE_LINK_OPEN_CB
ESP_BLE_MESH_TYPE_LINK_CLOSE_CB
ESP_BLE_MESH_TYPE_COMPLETE_CB
ESP_BLE_MESH_TYPE_RESET_CB

enum esp_ble_mesh_oob_method_t

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_NO_OOB
ESP_BLE_MESH_STATIC_OOB
ESP_BLE_MESH_OUTPUT_OOB
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_OOB

enum esp_ble_mesh_output_action_t

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_NO_OUTPUT = 0
ESP_BLE_MESH_BLINK = BIT(0)
ESP_BLE_MESH_BEEP = BIT(1)
ESP_BLE_MESH_VIBRATE = BIT(2)
ESP_BLE_MESH_DISPLAY_NUMBER = BIT(3)
ESP_BLE_MESH_DISPLAY_STRING = BIT(4)

enum esp_ble_mesh_input_action_t

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_NO_INPUT = 0
ESP_BLE_MESH_PUSH = BIT(0)
ESP_BLE_MESH_TWIST = BIT(1)
ESP_BLE_MESH_ENTER_NUMBER = BIT(2)
ESP_BLE_MESH_ENTER_STRING = BIT(3)

enum esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_ADV = BIT(0)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_GATT = BIT(1)

enum esp_ble_mesh_prov_oob_info_t

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_OTHER = BIT(0)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_URI = BIT(1)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_2D_CODE = BIT(2)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_BAR_CODE = BIT(3)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_NFC = BIT(4)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_NUMBER = BIT(5)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_STRING = BIT(6)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_ON_BOX = BIT(11)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_IN_BOX = BIT(12)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_ON_PAPER = BIT(13)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_IN_MANUAL = BIT(14)
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OOB_ON_DEV = BIT(15)

enum esp_ble_mesh_dev_role_t
Values:
ROLE_NODE = 0
ROLE_PROVISIONER
ROLE_FAST_PROV

enum esp_ble_mesh_fast_prov_action_t
Values:
FAST_PROV_ACT_NONE
FAST_PROV_ACT_ENTER
FAST_PROV_ACT_SUSPEND
FAST_PROV_ACT_EXIT
FAST_PROV_ACT_MAX

enum esp_ble_mesh_proxy_filter_type_t
Values:
PROXY_FILTER_WHITELIST
PROXY_FILTER_BLACKLIST

enum esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_event_t
Values:
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_REGISTER_COMP_EVT
  Initialize BLE Mesh provisioning capabilities and internal data information completion event
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_SET_UNPROV_DEV_NAME_COMP_EVT
  Set the unprovisioned device name completion event
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_ENABLE_COMP_EVT
  Enable node provisioning functionality completion event
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_DISABLE_COMP_EVT
  Disable node provisioning functionality completion event
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_LINK_OPEN_EVT
  Establish a BLE Mesh link event
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_LINK_CLOSE_EVT
  Close a BLE Mesh link event
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_OOB_PUB_KEY_EVT
  Generate Node input OOB public key event
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_OUTPUT_NUMBER_EVT
  Generate Node Output Number event
ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_OUTPUT_STRING_EVT
Generate Node Output String event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_EVT
Event requiring the user to input a number or string

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_COMPLETE_EVT
Provisioning done event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_RESET_EVT
Provisioning reset event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_SET_OOB_PUB_KEY_COMP_EVT
Node set oob public key completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_NUMBER_COMP_EVT
Node input number completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_STRING_COMP_EVT
Node input string completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_IDENTITY_ENABLE_COMP_EVT
Enable BLE Mesh Proxy Identity advertising completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_GATT_ENABLE_COMP_EVT
Enable BLE Mesh GATT Proxy Service completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROXY_GATT_DISABLE_COMP_EVT
Disable BLE Mesh GATT Proxy Service completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_ADD_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT
Node add NetKey locally completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_ADD_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT
Node add AppKey locally completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_BIND_APP_KEY_TO_MODEL_COMP_EVT
Node bind AppKey to model locally completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_ENABLE_COMP_EVT
Provisioner enable provisioning functionality completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_DISABLE_COMP_EVT
Provisioner disable provisioning functionality completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_RECV_UNPROV_ADV_PKT_EVT
Provisioner receives unprovisioned device beacon event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_READ_OOB_PUB_KEY_EVT
Provisioner read unprovisioned device OOB public key event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_EVT
Provisioner input value for provisioning procedure event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_OUTPUT_EVT
Provisioner output value for provisioning procedure event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_LINK_OPEN_EVT
Provisioner establish a BLE Mesh link event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_LINK_CLOSE_EVT
Provisioner close a BLE Mesh link event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_COMPLETE_EVT
Provisioner provisioning done event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_UNPROV_DEV_COMP_EVT
Provisioner add a device to the list which contains devices that are waiting/going to be provisioned completion event
Chapter 2. API 参考

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_DEV_WITH_ADDR_COMP_EVT
Provisioner start to provision an unprovisioned device completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_DEV_COMP_EVT
Provisioner delete a device from the list, close provisioning link with the device completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_DEV_UUID_MATCH_COMP_EVT
Provisioner set the value to be compared with part of the unprovisioned device UUID completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_PROV_DATA_INFO_COMP_EVT
Provisioner set net_idx/flags/iv_index used for provisioning completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_STATIC_OOB_VALUE_COMP_EVT
Provisioner set static oob value used for provisioning completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_PRIMARY_ELEM_ADDR_COMP_EVT
Provisioner set unicast address of primary element completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_READ_OOB_PUB_KEY_COMP_EVT
Provisioner read unprovisioned device OOB public key completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_NUMBER_COMP_EVT
Provisioner input number completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_INPUT_STRING_COMP_EVT
Provisioner input string completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_NODE_NAME_COMP_EVT
Provisioner set node name completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT
Provisioner add local app key completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_UPDATE_LOCAL_APP_KEY_COMP_EVT
Provisioner update local app key completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_BIND_APP_KEY_TO_MODEL_COMP_EVT
Provisioner bind local model with local app key completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ADD_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT
Provisioner add local network key completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_UPDATE_LOCAL_NET_KEY_COMP_EVT
Provisioner update local network key completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_STORE_NODE_COMP_DATA_COMP_EVT
Provisioner store node composition data completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_NODE_WITH_UUID_COMP_EVT
Provisioner delete node with uuid completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_NODE_WITH_ADDR_COMP_EVT
Provisioner delete node with unicast address completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_ENABLE_HEARTBEAT_RECV_COMP_EVT
Provisioner start to receive heartbeat message completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_TYPE_COMP_EVT
Provisioner set the heartbeat filter type completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_SET_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_INFO_COMP_EVT
Provisioner set the heartbeat filter information completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_HEARTBEAT_MESSAGE_EVT
Provisioner receive heartbeat message event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DRIECT_ERASE_SETTINGS_COMP_EVT
Provisioner directly erase settings completion event
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_OPEN_SETTINGS_WITH_INDEX_COMP_EVT
Provisioner open settings with index completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_OPEN_SETTINGS_WITH_UID_COMP_EVT
Provisioner open settings with user id completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_CLOSE_SETTINGS_WITH_INDEX_COMP_EVT
Provisioner close settings with index completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_CLOSE_SETTINGS_WITH_UID_COMP_EVT
Provisioner close settings with user id completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_SETTINGS_WITH_INDEX_COMP_EVT
Provisioner delete settings with index completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_DELETE_SETTINGS_WITH_UID_COMP_EVT
Provisioner delete settings with user id completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_SET_FAST_PROV_INFO_COMP_EVT
Set fast provisioning information (e.g. unicast address range, net_idx, etc.) completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_SET_FAST_PROV_ACTION_COMP_EVT
Set fast provisioning action completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_MESSAGE_RECV_EVT
Receive Heartbeat message event

ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_ENABLE_COMP_EVT
Enable Low Power Node completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_DISABLE_COMP_EVT
Disable Low Power Node completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_POLL_COMP_EVT
Low Power Node send Friend Poll completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_FRIENDSHIP_ESTABLISH_EVT
Low Power Node establishes friendship event

ESP_BLE_MESH_LPN_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_EVT
Low Power Node terminates friendship event

ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_FRIENDSHIP_ESTABLISH_EVT
Friend Node establishes friendship event

ESP_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_FRIENDSHIP_TERMINATE_EVT
Friend Node terminates friendship event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_RECV_ADV_PKT_EVT
Proxy Client receives Network ID advertising packet event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_CONNECTED_EVT
Proxy Client establishes connection successfully event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_DISCONNECTED_EVT
Proxy Client terminates connection successfully event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_RECV_FILTER_STATUS_EVT
Proxy Client receives Proxy Filter Status event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_CONNECT_COMP_EVT
Proxy Client connect completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_DISCONNECT_COMP_EVT
Proxy Client disconnect completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_SET_FILTER_TYPE_COMP_EVT
Proxy Client set filter type completion event
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_ADD_FILTER_ADDR_COMP_EVT
Proxy Client add filter address completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROXY_CLIENT_REMOVE_FILTER_ADDR_COMP_EVT
Proxy Client remove filter address completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SUBSCRIBE_GROUP_ADDR_COMP_EVT
Local model subscribes group address completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_UNSUBSCRIBE_GROUP_ADDR_COMP_EVT
Local model unsubscribes group address completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_DEINIT_MESH_COMP_EVT
De-initialize BLE Mesh stack completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_EVT_MAX

enum [anonymous]
BLE Mesh server models related definitions.
This enum value is the flag of transition timer operation
Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_TRANS_TIMER_START
ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_FLAG_MAX

enum esp_ble_mesh_server_state_type_t
This enum value is the type of server model states
Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_ONOFF_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_LEVEL_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_ONPOWERUP_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_POWER_ACTUAL_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_ACTUAL_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CTL_LIGHTNESS_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CTL_TEMP_DELTA_UV_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_LIGHTNESS_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_XYL_LIGHTNESS_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_STATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_MODEL_STATE_MAX

enum esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_event_t
Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OPERATION_EVT
User-defined models receive messages from peer devices (e.g. get, set, status, etc) event

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SEND_COMP_EVT
User-defined models send messages completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUBLISH_COMP_EVT
User-defined models publish messages completion event
ESP_BLE_MESH_CLIENT_MODEL_RECV_PUBLISH_MSG_EVT
User-defined client models receive publish messages event

ESP_BLE_MESH_CLIENT_MODEL_SEND_TIMEOUT_EVT
Timeout event for the user-defined client models that failed to receive response from peer server models

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUBLISH_UPDATE_EVT
When a model is configured to publish messages periodically, this event will occur during every publish period

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_MODEL_UPDATE_STATE_COMP_EVT
Server models update state value completion event

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_EVT_MAX

ESP-BLE-MESH Core API Reference

This section contains ESP-BLE-MESH Core related APIs, which can be used to initialize ESP-BLE-MESH stack, provision, send/publish messages, etc.

This API reference covers six components:

• ESP-BLE-MESH Stack Initialization
• Reading of Local Data Information
• Low Power Operation (Updating)
• Send/Publish Messages, add Local AppKey, etc.
• ESP-BLE-MESH Node/Provisioner Provisioning
• ESP-BLE-MESH GATT Proxy Server

ESP-BLE-MESH Stack Initialization

Header File

• components/bt/esp_bluetooth_api/interface/include/esp_bluetooth_common_api.h

Functions

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_init}(\texttt{esp_ble_mesh_prov_t *prov, esp_ble_mesh_comp_t *comp})

Initialize BLE Mesh module. This API initializes provisioning capabilities and composition data information.

\textbf{Note} After calling this API, the device needs to call \texttt{esp_ble_mesh_prov_enable()} to enable provisioning functionality again.

\textbf{Return} ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

\textbf{Parameters}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{[in] prov}: Pointer to the device provisioning capabilities. This pointer must remain valid during the lifetime of the BLE Mesh device.
  \item \texttt{[in] comp}: Pointer to the device composition data information. This pointer must remain valid during the lifetime of the BLE Mesh device.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_deinit}(\texttt{esp_ble_mesh_deinit_param_t *param})

De-initialize BLE Mesh module.

\textbf{Note} This function shall be invoked after \texttt{esp_ble_mesh_client_model_deinit().}

\textbf{Return} ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

\textbf{Parameters}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{[in] param}: Pointer to the structure of BLE Mesh deinit parameters.
\end{itemize}

Reading of Local Data Information
Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/core/include/esp_ble_mesh_local_data_operation_api.h

Functions

`int32_t esp_ble_mesh_get_model_publish_period(esp_mesh_model_t *model)`
Get the model publish period, the unit is ms.

**Return**  Publish period value on success, 0 or (negative) error code from errno.h on failure.

**Parameters**


`uint16_t esp_ble_mesh_get_primary_element_address(void)`
Get the address of the primary element.

**Return**  Address of the primary element on success, or ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_UNASSIGNED on failure which means the device has not been provisioned.

`uint16_t *esp_ble_mesh_is_model_subscribed_to_group(esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model, uint16_t group_addr)`
Check if the model has subscribed to the given group address. Note: E.g., once a status message is received and the destination address is a group address, the model uses this API to check if it is successfully subscribed to the given group address.

**Return**  Pointer to the group address within the Subscription List of the model on success, or NULL on failure which means the model has not subscribed to the given group address. Note: With the pointer to the group address returned, you can reset the group address to 0x0000 in order to unsubscribe the model from the group.

**Parameters**

- [in] `model`: Pointer to the model.
- [in] `group_addr`: Group address.

`esp_ble_mesh_elem_t *esp_ble_mesh_find_element(uint16_t element_addr)`
Find the BLE Mesh element pointer via the element address.

**Return**  Pointer to the element on success, or NULL on failure.

**Parameters**

- [in] `element_addr`: Element address.

`uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_get_element_count(void)`
Get the number of elements that have been registered.

**Return**  Number of elements.

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *esp_ble_mesh_find_vendor_model(const esp_ble_mesh_elem_t *element, uint16_t company_id, uint16_t model_id)`
Find the Vendor specific model with the given element, the company ID and the Vendor Model ID.

**Return**  Pointer to the Vendor Model on success, or NULL on failure which means the Vendor Model is not found.

**Parameters**

- [in] `element`: Element to which the model belongs.
- [in] `company_id`: A 16-bit company identifier assigned by the Bluetooth SIG.

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *esp_ble_mesh_find_sig_model(const esp_ble_mesh_elem_t *element, uint16_t model_id)`
Find the SIG model with the given element and Model id.

**Return**  Pointer to the SIG Model on success, or NULL on failure which means the SIG Model is not found.

**Parameters**

- [in] `element`: Element to which the model belongs.
**const esp_ble_mesh_comp_t**

Get the Composition data which has been registered.

**Return** Pointer to the Composition data on success, or NULL on failure which means the Composition data is not initialized.

**esp_err_t**

Get the Composition data which has been registered.

**Return** Pointer to the Composition data on success, or NULL on failure which means the Composition data is not initialized.

**esp_err_t**

A local model of node or Provisioner subscribes a group address.

**Note** This function shall not be invoked before node is provisioned or Provisioner is enabled.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** element_addr: Unicast address of the element to which the model belongs.
- **[in]** company_id: A 16-bit company identifier.
- **[in]** model_id: A 16-bit model identifier.
- **[in]** group_addr: The group address to be subscribed.

**esp_err_t**

A local model of node or Provisioner unsubscribes a group address.

**Note** This function shall not be invoked before node is provisioned or Provisioner is enabled.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** element_addr: Unicast address of the element to which the model belongs.
- **[in]** company_id: A 16-bit company identifier.
- **[in]** model_id: A 16-bit model identifier.
- **[in]** group_addr: The subscribed group address.

**const uint8_t**

This function is called by Node to get the local NetKey.

**Return** NetKey on success, or NULL on failure.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** net_idx: NetKey index.

**const uint8_t**

This function is called by Node to get the local AppKey.

**Return** AppKey on success, or NULL on failure.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** app_idx: AppKey index.

**esp_err_t**

This function is called by Node to add a local NetKey.

**Note** This function can only be called after the device is provisioned.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** net_key: NetKey to be added.
- **[in]** net_idx: NetKey Index.

**esp_err_t**

This function is called by Node to add a local AppKey.

**Note** The net_idx must be an existing one. This function can only be called after the device is provisioned.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** app_key: AppKey to be added.
- **[in]** net_idx: NetKey Index.
Chapter 2. API

### esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_node_bind_app_key_to_local_model(uint16_t element_addr, uint16_t company_id, uint16_t model_id, uint16_t app_idx)

This function is called by Node to bind AppKey to model locally.

**Note** If going to bind app_key with local vendor model, the company_id shall be set to 0xFFFF. This function can only be called after the device is provisioned.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- [in] `element_addr`: Node local element address
- [in] `company_id`: Node local company id
- [in] `model_id`: Node local model id
- [in] `app_idx`: Node local appkey index

## Low Power Operation (Updating)

### Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/core/include/esp_ble_mesh_low_power_api.h

### Functions

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_lpn_enable(void)**

Enable BLE Mesh device LPN functionality.

**Note** This API enables LPN functionality. Once called, the proper Friend Request will be sent.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_lpn_disable(bool force)**

Disable BLE Mesh device LPN functionality.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- [in] `force`: when disabling LPN functionality, use this flag to indicate whether directly clear corresponding information or just send friend clear to disable it if friendship has already been established.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_lpn_poll(void)**

LPN tries to poll messages from the Friend Node.

**Note** The Friend Poll message is sent by a Low Power node to ask the Friend node to send a message that it has stored for the Low Power node. Users can call this API to send Friend Poll message manually. If this API is not invoked, the bottom layer of the Low Power node will send Friend Poll before the PollTimeout timer expires. If the corresponding Friend Update is received and MD is set to 0, which means there are no messages for the Low Power node, then the Low Power node will stop scanning.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

## Send/Publish Messages, add Local AppKey, etc.

### Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/core/include/esp_ble_mesh_networking_api.h

### Functions
**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_custom_model_callback (esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_t callback)**

Register BLE Mesh callback for user-defined models’ operations. This callback can report the following events generated for the user-defined models:

- Call back the messages received by user-defined client and server models to the application layer;
- If users call esp_ble_mesh_server/client_model_send, this callback notifies the application layer of the send_complete event;
- If user-defined client model sends a message that requires response, and the response message is received after the timer expires, the response message will be reported to the application layer as published by a peer device;
- If the user-defined client model fails to receive the response message during a specified period of time, a timeout event will be reported to the application layer.

**Note** The client models (i.e. Config Client model, Health Client model, Generic Client models, Sensor Client model, Scene Client model and Lighting Client models) that have been realized internally have their specific register functions. For example, esp_ble_mesh_register_config_client_callback is the register function for Config Client Model.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** callback: Pointer to the callback function.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_model_msg_opcode_init (uint8_t *data, uint32_t opcode)**

Add the message opcode to the beginning of the model message before sending or publishing the model message.

**Note** This API is only used to set the opcode of the message.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** data: Pointer to the message data.
- **[in]** opcode: The message opcode.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_client_model_init (esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model)**

Initialize the user-defined client model. All user-defined client models shall call this function to initialize the client model internal data. Node: Before calling this API, the op_pair_size and op_pair variable(d within the user_data(defined using esp_ble_mesh_client_t_) of the client model need to be initialized.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** model: BLE Mesh Client model to which the message belongs.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_client_model_deinit (esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model)**

De-initialize the user-defined client model.

**Note** This function shall be invoked before esp_ble_mesh_deinit() is called.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** model: Pointer of the Client model.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_server_model_send_msg (esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model, esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t *ctx, uint32_t opcode, uint16_t length, uint8_t *data)**

Send server model messages(such as server model status messages).

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** model: BLE Mesh Server Model to which the message belongs.
- **[in]** ctx: Message context, includes keys, TTL, etc.
- **[in]** opcode: Message opcode.
- **[in]** length: Message length (exclude the message opcode).
- **[in]** data: Parameters of Access Payload (exclude the message opcode) to be sent.
**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_client_model_send_msg** *(esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model, esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t *ctx, uint32_t opcode, uint16_t length, uint8_t *data, int32_t msg_timeout, bool need_rsp, esp_ble_mesh_dev_role_t device_role)*

Send client model message (such as model get, set, etc).

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- **[in]** model: BLE Mesh Client Model to which the message belongs.
- **[in]** ctx: Message context, includes keys, TTL, etc.
- **[in]** opcode: Message opcode.
- **[in]** length: Message length (exclude the message opcode).
- **[in]** data: Parameters of the Access Payload (exclude the message opcode) to be sent.
- **[in]** msg_timeout: Time to get response to the message (in milliseconds).
- **[in]** need_rsp: TRUE if the opcode requires the peer device to reply, FALSE otherwise.
- **[in]** device_role: Role of the device (Node/Provisioner) that sends the message.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_model_publish** *(esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model, uint32_t opcode, uint16_t length, uint8_t *data, esp_ble_mesh_dev_role_t device_role)*

Send a model publication message.

Note Before calling this function, the user needs to ensure that the model publication message *(esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t::msg)* contains a valid message to be sent. And if users want to update the publishing message, this API should be called in *ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_PUBLISH_UPDATE_EVT* with the message updated.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- **[in]** model: Mesh (client) Model publishing the message.
- **[in]** opcode: Message opcode.
- **[in]** length: Message length (exclude the message opcode).
- **[in]** data: Parameters of the Access Payload (exclude the message opcode) to be sent.
- **[in]** device_role: Role of the device (node/provisioner) publishing the message of the type esp_ble_mesh_dev_role_t.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_server_model_update_state** *(esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model, esp_ble_mesh_server_state_type_t type, esp_ble_mesh_server_state_value_t *value)*

Update a server model state value. If the model publication state is set properly (e.g. publish address is set to a valid address), it will publish corresponding status message.

Note Currently this API is used to update bound state value, not for all server model states.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- **[in]** model: Server model which is going to update the state.
- **[in]** type: Server model state type.
- **[in]** value: Server model state value.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_node_local_reset** *(void)*

Reset the provisioning procedure of the local BLE Mesh node.

Note All provisioning information in this node will be deleted and the node needs to be re-provisioned. The API function esp_ble_mesh_node_prov_enable() needs to be called to start a new provisioning procedure.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_set_node_name** *(uint16_t index, const char *name)*

This function is called to set the node (provisioned device) name.

Note index is obtained from the parameters of *ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_COMPLETE_EVT*.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
const char *esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_node_name(uint16_t index)

This function is called to get the node (provisioned device) name.

Note index is obtained from the parameters of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_PROV_COMPLETE_EVT.

Parameters

• [in] index: Index of the node in the node queue.

uint16_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_node_index(const char *name)

This function is called to get the node (provisioned device) index.

Parameters

• [in] name: Name of the node (end by ‘\0’).

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_store_node_comp_data(uint16_t unicast_addr, uint8_t *data, uint16_t length)

This function is called to store the Composition Data of the node.

Parameters

• [in] unicast_addr: Element address of the node
• [in] data: Pointer of Composition Data
• [in] length: Length of Composition Data

esp_ble_mesh_node_t *esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_node_with_uuid(const uint8_t uuid[16])

This function is called to get the provisioned node information with the node device uuid.

Parameters

• [in] uuid: Device UUID of the node

esp_ble_mesh_node_t *esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_node_with_addr(uint16_t unicast_addr)

This function is called to get the provisioned node information with the node unicast address.

Parameters

• [in] unicast_addr: Unicast address of the node

esp_ble_mesh_node_t *esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_node_with_name(const char *name)

This function is called to get the provisioned node information with the node name.

Parameters

• [in] name: Name of the node (end by ‘\0’).

uint16_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_prov_node_count(void)

This function is called by Provisioner to get provisioned node count.

Parameters

Returns

Number of the provisioned nodes.

const esp_ble_mesh_node_t **esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_node_table_entry(void)

This function is called by Provisioner to get the entry of the node table.

Note After invoking the function to get the entry of nodes, users can use the “for” loop combined with the macro CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MAX_PROV_NODES to get each node’s information. Before trying to read the node’s information, users need to check if the node exists, i.e. if the *(esp_ble_mesh_node_t **node) is NULL. For example: “const esp_ble_mesh_node_t **entry = esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_node_table_entry(); for (int i = 0; i <
CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MAX_PROV_NODES; i++) { const esp_ble_mesh_node_t *node = entry[i];
    if (node) { …… } }

Return Pointer to the start of the node table.

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_node_with_uuid(const uint8_t uuid[16])
This function is called to delete the provisioned node information with the node device uuid.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] uuid: Device UUID of the node

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_node_with_addr(uint16_t unicast_addr)
This function is called to delete the provisioned node information with the node unicast address.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] unicast_addr: Unicast address of the node

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_app_key(const uint8_t app_key[16],
          uint16_t net_idx, uint16_t app_idx)
This function is called to add a local AppKey for Provisioner.

Note app_key: If set to NULL, app_key will be generated internally. net_idx: Should be an existing one.
app_idx: If it is going to be generated internally, it should be set to 0xFFFF, and the new app_idx will
be reported via an event.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] app_key: The app key to be set for the local BLE Mesh stack.
  • [in] net_idx: The network key index.
  • [in] app_idx: The app key index.

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_update_local_app_key(const uint8_t app_key[16],
          uint16_t net_idx, uint16_t app_idx)
This function is used to update a local AppKey for Provisioner.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] app_key: Value of the AppKey.
  • [in] net_idx: Corresponding NetKey Index.
  • [in] app_idx: The AppKey Index

const uint8_t *esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_local_app_key(uint16_t net_idx, uint16_t app_idx)
This function is called by Provisioner to get the local app key value.

Return App key on success, or NULL on failure.

Parameters
  • [in] app_idx: Application key index.

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_bind_app_key_to_local_model(uint16_t element_addr,
          uint16_t app_idx, uint16_t model_id,
          uint16_t company_id)
This function is called by Provisioner to bind own model with proper app key.

Note company_id: If going to bind app_key with local vendor model, company_id should be set to 0xFFFF.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] element_addr: Provisioner local element address
Chapter 2. API

- [in] app_idx: Provisioner local app key index
- [in] model_id: Provisioner local model id
- [in] company_id: Provisioner local company id

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_net_key(const uint8_t net_key[16],
                                                    uint16_t net_idx)
```

This function is called by Provisioner to add local network key.

**Note** net_key: If set to NULL, net_key will be generated internally. net_idx: If it is going to be generated internally, it should be set to 0xFFFF, and the new net_idx will be reported via an event.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- [in] net_key: The network key to be added to the Provisioner local BLE Mesh stack.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_update_local_net_key(const uint8_t net_key[16],
                                                        uint16_t net_idx)
```

This function is called by Provisioner to update a local network key.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- [in] net_key: Value of the NetKey.

```c
const uint8_t* esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_local_net_key(uint16_t net_idx)
```

This function is called by Provisioner to get the local network key value.

**Return** Network key on success, or NULL on failure.

**Parameters**

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_recv_heartbeat(bool enable)
```

This function is called by Provisioner to enable or disable receiving heartbeat messages.

**Note** If enabling receiving heartbeat message successfully, the filter will be an empty rejectlist by default, which means all heartbeat messages received by the Provisioner will be reported to the application layer.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- [in] enable: Enable or disable receiving heartbeat messages.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_set_heartbeat_filter_type(uint8_t type)
```

This function is called by Provisioner to set the heartbeat filter type.

**Note** 1. If the filter type is not the same with the current value, then all the filter entries will be cleared.
   1. If the previous type is rejectlist, and changed to acceptlist, then the filter will be an empty acceptlist, which means no heartbeat messages will be reported. Users need to add SRC or DST into the filter entry, then heartbeat messages from the SRC or to the DST will be reported.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- [in] type: Heartbeat filter type (acceptlist or rejectlist).

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_set_heartbeat_filter_info(uint8_t op, esp_ble_mesh_heartbeat_filter_info_t *info)
```

This function is called by Provisioner to add or remove a heartbeat filter entry.

1. If the operation is “REMOVE”, the “hb_src” can be set to the SRC (can only be a unicast address) of heartbeat messages, and the “hb_dst” can be set to the DST (unicast address or group address), at least one of them needs to be set.
   1. The filter entry with the same SRC or DST will be removed.

**Note** 1. If the operation is “ADD”, the “hb_src” can be set to the SRC (can only be a unicast address) of heartbeat messages, and the “hb_dst” can be set to the DST (unicast address or group address), at least one of them needs to be set.
• If only one of them is set, the filter entry will only use the configured SRC or DST to filter heartbeat messages.
• If both of them are set, the SRC and DST will both be used to decide if a heartbeat message will be handled.
• If SRC or DST already exists in some filter entry, then the corresponding entry will be cleaned firstly, then a new entry will be allocated to store the information.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] op: Add or REMOVE
  • [in] info: Heartbeat filter entry information, including: hb_src - Heartbeat source address; hb_dst - Heartbeat destination address;

.esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_direct_erase_settings (void)
This function is called by Provisioner to directly erase the mesh information from nvs namespace.

Note This function can be invoked when the mesh stack is not initialized or has been de-initialized.
Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

.esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_open_settings_with_index (uint8_t index)
This function is called by Provisioner to open a nvs namespace for storing mesh information.

Note Before open another nvs namespace, the previously opened nvs namespace must be closed firstly.
Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] index: Settings index.

.esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_open_settings_with_uid (const char *uid)
This function is called by Provisioner to open a nvs namespace for storing mesh information.

Note Before open another nvs namespace, the previously opened nvs namespace must be closed firstly.
Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] uid: Settings user id.

.esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_close_settings_with_index (uint8_t index, bool erase)
This function is called by Provisioner to close a nvs namespace which is opened previously for storing mesh information.

Note 1. Before closing the nvs namespace, it must be open.
2. When the function is invoked, the Provisioner functionality will be disabled firstly, and: a) If the "erase" flag is set to false, the mesh information will be cleaned (e.g. removing NetKey, AppKey, nodes, etc) from the mesh stack. b) If the "erase" flag is set to true, the mesh information stored in the nvs namespace will also be erased besides been cleaned from the mesh stack.
3. If Provisioner tries to work properly again, we can invoke the open function to open a new nvs namespace or a previously added one, and restore the mesh information from it if not erased.
4. The working process shall be as following: a) Open settings A b) Start to provision and control nodes c) Close settings A d) Open settings B e) Start to provision and control other nodes f) Close settings B g) …

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
  • [in] index: Settings index.
  • [in] erase: Indicate if erasing mesh information.

.esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_close_settings_with_uid (const char *uid, bool erase)
This function is called by Provisioner to close a nvs namespace which is opened previously for storing mesh information.

Note 1. Before closing the nvs namespace, it must be open.
2. When the function is invoked, the Provisioner functionality will be disabled firstly, and: a) If the "erase" flag is set to false, the mesh information will be cleaned (e.g. removing NetKey, AppKey,
nodes, etc) from the mesh stack. b) If the “erase” flag is set to true, the mesh information stored in the nvs namespace will also be erased besides been cleaned from the mesh stack.

2. If Provisioner tries to work properly again, we can invoke the open function to open a new nvs namespace or a previously added one, and restore the mesh information from it if not erased.

3. The working process shall be as following: a) Open settings A b) Start to provision and control nodes c) Close settings A d) Open settings B e) Start to provision and control other nodes f) Close settings B g) …

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
• [in] uid: Settings user id.
• [in] erase: Indicate if erasing mesh information.

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_settings_with_index(uint8_t index)

This function is called by Provisioner to erase the mesh information and settings user id from a nvs namespace.

Note When this function is called, the nvs namespace must not be open. This function is used to erase the mesh information and settings user id which are not used currently.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
• [in] index: Settings index.

const char* esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_settings_uid(uint8_t index)

This function is called by Provisioner to get settings user id.

Return Setting user id on success or NULL on failure.

Parameters
• [in] index: Settings index.

uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_settings_index(const char* uid)

This function is called by Provisioner to get settings index.

Return Settings index.

Parameters
• [in] uid: Settings user id.

uint8_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_free_settings_count(void)

This function is called by Provisioner to get the number of free settings user id.

Return Number of free settings user id.

const uint8_t *esp_ble_mesh_get_fast_prov_app_key(uint16_t net_idx, uint16_t app_idx)

This function is called to get fast provisioning application key.

Return Application key on success, or NULL on failure.

Parameters
• [in] app_idx: Application key index.

Type Definitions
typedef void (*esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_event_t event, esp_ble_mesh_model_cb_param_t *param)

.esp BLE-MESH Node/Provisioner Provisioning
Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/core/include/esp_ble_mesh_provisioning_api.h

Functions

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_prov_callback(esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_t callback)`
Register BLE Mesh provisioning callback.

Return: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters:
- `[in]` callback: Pointer to the callback function.

`bool esp_ble_mesh_node_is_provisioned(void)`
Check if a device has been provisioned.

Return: TRUE if the device is provisioned, FALSE if the device is unprovisioned.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_node_prov_enable(esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearers)`
Enable specific provisioning bearers to get the device ready for provisioning.

Note: PB-ADV: send unprovisioned device beacon. PB-GATT: send connectable advertising packets.
Return: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters:

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_node_prov_disable(esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearers)`
Disable specific provisioning bearers to make a device inaccessible for provisioning.

Return: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters:

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_node_set_oob_pub_key(uint8_t pub_key_x[32], uint8_t pub_key_y[32], uint8_t private_key[32])`
Unprovisioned device set own oob public key & private key pair.

Note: In order to avoid suffering brute-forcing attack (CVE-2020-26559). The Bluetooth SIG recommends that potentially vulnerable mesh provisioners use an out-of-band mechanism to exchange the public keys. So as an unprovisioned device, it should use this function to input the Public Key exchanged through the out-of-band mechanism.

Return: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters:
- `[in]` pub_key_x: Unprovisioned device’s Public Key X
- `[in]` pub_key_y: Unprovisioned device’s Public Key Y
- `[in]` private_key: Unprovisioned device’s Private Key

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_node_input_number(uint32_t number)`
Provide provisioning input OOB number.

Note: This is intended to be called if the user has received ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_EVT with ESP_BLE_MESH_ENTER_NUMBER as the action.

Return: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters:
- `[in]` number: Number input by device.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_node_input_string(const char *string)`
Provide provisioning input OOB string.

Note: This is intended to be called if the user has received ESP_BLE_MESH_NODE_PROV_INPUT_EVT with ESP_BLE_MESH_ENTER_STRING as the action.

Return: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters:
- `[in]` string: String input by device.
Chapter 2. API

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_set_unprovisioned_device_name (const char *name)**

Using this function, an unprovisioned device can set its own device name, which will be broadcasted in its advertising data.

**Note** This API applicable to PB-GATT mode only by setting the name to the scan response data, it doesn’t apply to PB-ADV mode.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `name`: Unprovisioned device name

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_read_oob_pub_key (uint8_t link_idx, uint8_t pub_key_x[32], uint8_t pub_key_y[32])**

Provisioner inputs unprovisioned device’s oob public key.

**Note** In order to avoid suffering brute-forcing attack (CVE-2020-26559). The Bluetooth SIG recommends that potentially vulnerable mesh provisioners use an out-of-band mechanism to exchange the public keys.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `link_idx`: The provisioning link index
- **[in]** `pub_key_x`: Unprovisioned device’s Public Key X
- **[in]** `pub_key_y`: Unprovisioned device’s Public Key Y

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_input_string (const char *string, uint8_t link_idx)**

Provide provisioning input OOB string.

This is intended to be called after the `esp_ble_mesh_prov_t prov_input_num` callback has been called with ESP_BLE_MESH_ENTER_STRING as the action.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `string`: String input by Provisioner.
- **[in]** `link_idx`: The provisioning link index.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_input_number (uint32_t number, uint8_t link_idx)**

Provide provisioning input OOB number.

This is intended to be called after the `esp_ble_mesh_prov_t prov_input_num` callback has been called with ESP_BLE_MESH_ENTER_NUMBER as the action.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `number`: Number input by Provisioner.
- **[in]** `link_idx`: The provisioning link index.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_enable (esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearers)**

Enable one or more provisioning bearers.

**Note** PB-ADV: Enable BLE scan. PB-GATT: Initialize corresponding BLE Mesh Proxy info.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `bearers`: Bit-wise OR of provisioning bearers.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_disable (esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearers)**

Disable one or more provisioning bearers.

**Note** PB-ADV: Disable BLE scan. PB-GATT: Break any existing BLE Mesh Provisioning connections.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** `bearers`: Bit-wise OR of provisioning bearers.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_add_unprov_dev (esp_ble_mesh_unprov_dev_add_t *add_dev, esp_ble_mesh_add_flag_t flags)**

Add unprovisioned device info to the unprov_dev queue.
Return  ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Note 1. Currently address type only supports public address and static random address.
2. For example, if the Provisioner wants to add an unprovisioned device info before receiving its unprovisioned device beacon or Mesh Provisioning advertising packets, the Provisioner can use this API to add the device info with each one or both of device UUID and device address added. When the Provisioner gets the device’s advertising packets, it will start provisioning the device internally.
   • In this situation, the Provisioner can set bearers with each one or both of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_ADV and ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_GATT enabled, and cannot set flags with ADD_DEV_START_PROV_NOW_FLAG enabled.
3. Another example is when the Provisioner receives the unprovisioned device’s beacon or Mesh Provisioning advertising packets, the advertising packets will be reported on to the application layer using the callback registered by the function esp_ble_mesh_register_prov_callback. And in the callback, the Provisioner can call this API to start provisioning the device.
   • If the Provisioner uses PB-ADV to provision, either one or both of device UUID and device address can be added, bearers shall be set with ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_ADV enabled and the flags shall be set with ADD_DEV_START_PROV_NOW_FLAG enabled.
   • If the Provisioner uses PB-GATT to provision, both the device UUID and device address need to be added, bearers shall be set with ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_GATT enabled, and the flags shall be set with ADD_DEV_START_PROV_NOW_FLAG enabled.
   • If the Provisioner just wants to store the unprovisioned device info when receiving its advertising packets and start to provision it the next time (e.g. after receiving its advertising packets again), then it can add the device info with either one or both of device UUID and device address included. Bearers can be set with either one or both of ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_ADV and ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_GATT enabled (recommend to enable the bearer which will receive its advertising packets, because if the other bearer is enabled, the Provisioner is not aware if the device supports the bearer), and flags cannot be set with ADD_DEV_START_PROV_NOW_FLAG enabled.
   • Note: ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_ADV, ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_GATT and ADD_DEV_START_PROV_NOW_FLAG can not be enabled at the same time.

Parameters
   • [in] add_dev: Pointer to a struct containing the device information
   • [in] flags: Flags indicate several operations on the device information
     – Remove device information from queue after device has been provisioned (BIT0)
     – Start provisioning immediately after device is added to queue (BIT1)
     – Device can be removed if device queue is full (BIT2)

\[
\text{esp_err_t } \text{esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_device_with_addr} (\text{const uint8_t uuid[16]}, \text{esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr}, \text{esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type}, \text{esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearer}, \text{uint16_t oob_info}, \text{uint16_t unicast_addr})
\]

Provision an unprovisioned device and assign a fixed unicast address for it in advance.

Return  Zero on success or (negative) error code otherwise.

Note 1. Currently address type only supports public address and static random address.
2. Bearer must be equal to ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_ADV or ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_GATT, since Provisioner will start to provision a device immediately once this function is invoked. And the input bearer must be identical with the one within the parameters of the ESP_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_UNPROV_ADV_PKT_EVT event.
3. If this function is used by a Provisioner to provision devices, the application should take care of the assigned unicast address and avoid overlap of the unicast addresses of different nodes.
4. Recommend to use only one of the functions “esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_add_unprov_dev” and “esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_prov_device_with_addr” by a Provisioner.
Parameters
- [in] uuid: Device UUID of the unprovisioned device
- [in] addr: Device address of the unprovisioned device
- [in] addr_type: Device address type of the unprovisioned device
- [in] bearer: Provisioning bearer going to be used by Provisioner
- [in] oob_info: OOB info of the unprovisioned device
- [in] unicast_addr: Unicast address going to be allocated for the unprovisioned device

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_delete_dev(esp_ble_mesh_device_delete_t *del_dev)
```
Delete device from queue, and reset current provisioning link with the device.

**Note** If the device is in the queue, remove it from the queue; if the device is being provisioned, terminate the provisioning procedure. Either one of the device address or device UUID can be used as input.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- [in] del_dev: Pointer to a struct containing the device information.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_set_dev_uuid_match(const uint8_t *match_val,
                                                  uint8_t match_len,
                                                  uint8_t offset,
                                                  bool prov_after_match)
```
This function is called by Provisioner to set the part of the device UUID to be compared before starting to provision.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- [in] match_val: Value to be compared with the part of the device UUID.
- [in] match_len: Length of the compared match value.
- [in] offset: Offset of the device UUID to be compared (based on zero).
- [in] prov_after_match: Flag used to indicate whether provisioner should start to provision the device immediately if the part of the UUID matches.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_set_prov_data_info(esp_ble_mesh_prov_data_info_t *prov_data_info)
```
This function is called by Provisioner to set provisioning data information before starting to provision.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- [in] prov_data_info: Pointer to a struct containing net_idx or flags or iv_index.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_set_static_oob_value(const uint8_t *value,
                                                  uint8_t length)
```
This function is called by Provisioner to set static oob value used for provisioning.

AuthValues selected using a cryptographically secure random or pseudorandom number generator and having the maximum permitted entropy (128-bits) will be most difficult to brute-force. AuthValues with reduced entropy or generated in a predictable manner will not grant the same level of protection against this vulnerability. Selecting a new AuthValue with each provisioning attempt can also make it more difficult to launch a brute-force attack by requiring the attacker to restart the search with each provisioning attempt (CVE-2020-26556).

**Note** The Bluetooth SIG recommends that mesh implementations enforce a randomly selected AuthValue using all of the available bits, where permitted by the implementation. A large entropy helps ensure that a brute-force of the AuthValue, even a static AuthValue, cannot normally be completed in a reasonable time (CVE-2020-26557).

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- [in] value: Pointer to the static oob value.
- [in] length: Length of the static oob value.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_set_primary_elem_addr(uint16_t addr)
```
This function is called by Provisioner to set own Primary element address.

**Note** This API must be invoked when BLE Mesh initialization is completed successfully, and can be invoked before Provisioner functionality is enabled. Once this API is invoked successfully, the prov_unicast_addr value in the struct esp_ble_mesh_prov.t will be ignored, and Provisioner will use this address as its own...
primary element address. And if the unicast address going to assigned for the next unprovisioned de-
vice is smaller than the input address + element number of Provisioner, then the address for the next
unprovisioned device will be recalculated internally.

**Parameters**
- [in] `addr`: Unicast address of the Primary element of Provisioner.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_set_fast_prov_info (esp_ble_mesh_fast_prov_info_t *fast_prov_info)**

This function is called to set provisioning data information before starting fast provisioning.

**Parameters**
- [in] `fast_prov_info`: Pointer to a struct containing unicast address range, net_idx, etc.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_set_fast_prov_action (esp_ble_mesh_fast_prov_action_t action)**

This function is called to start/suspend/exit fast provisioning.

**Parameters**
- [in] `action`: fast provisioning action (i.e. enter, suspend, exit).

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef void(*esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_t) (esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_event_t event, esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_param_t *param)
```

: event, event code of provisioning events; param, parameters of provisioning events

```c
typedef void(*esp_ble_mesh_prov_adv_cb_t) (const esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr, const esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type, const uint8_t adv_type, const uint8_t *dev_uuid, uint16_t oob_info, esp_ble_mesh_prov_bearer_t bearer)
```

Callback for Provisioner that received advertising packets from unprovisioned devices which are not in the
unprovisioned device queue.

Report on the unprovisioned device beacon and mesh provisioning service adv data to application.

**Parameters**
- [in] `addr`: Pointer to the unprovisioned device address.
- [in] `addr_type`: Unprovisioned device address type.
- [in] `adv_type`: Adv packet type(ADV_IND or ADV_NONCONN_IND).
- [in] `oob_info`: OOB information of the unprovisioned device.
- [in] `bearer`: Adv packet received from PB-GATT or PB-ADV bearer.

**ESP-BLE-MESH GATT Proxy Server**

**Header File**

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/core/include/esp_ble_mesh_proxy_api.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_proxy_identity_enable (void)
```

Enable advertising with Node Identity.

**Note** This API requires that GATT Proxy support be enabled. Once called, each subnet starts advertising
using Node Identity for the next 60 seconds, and after 60s Network ID will be advertised. Under normal
conditions, the BLE Mesh Proxy Node Identity and Network ID advertising will be enabled automatically
by BLE Mesh stack after the device is provisioned.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_proxy_gatt_enable (void)
```

Enable BLE Mesh GATT Proxy Service.
**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_proxy_gatt_disable(void)
```

Disconnect the BLE Mesh GATT Proxy connection if there is any, and disable the BLE Mesh GATT Proxy Service.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_proxy_client_connect(uint8_t* conn_handle, esp_ble_mesh_bd_addr_t addr,
                                          esp_ble_mesh_addr_type_t addr_type, uint16_t net_idx)
```

Proxy Client creates a connection with the Proxy Server.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `addr`: Device address of the Proxy Server.
- **[in]** `addr_type`: Device address type (public or static random).
- **[in]** `net_idx`: NetKey Index related with Network ID in the Mesh Proxy advertising packet.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_proxy_client_disconnect(uint8_t conn_handle)
```

Proxy Client terminates a connection with the Proxy Server.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `conn_handle`: Proxy connection handle.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_proxy_client_set_filter_type(uint8_t conn_handle, uint16_t net_idx,
                                                      esp_ble_mesh_proxy_filter_type_t filter_type)
```

Proxy Client sets the filter type of the Proxy Server.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `conn_handle`: Proxy connection handle.
- **[in]** `net_idx`: Corresponding NetKey Index.
- **[in]** `filter_type`: whitelist or blacklist.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_proxy_client_add_filter_addr(uint8_t conn_handle, uint16_t net_idx,
                                                    uint16_t *addr, uint16_t addr_num)
```

Proxy Client adds address to the Proxy Server filter list.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `conn_handle`: Proxy connection handle.
- **[in]** `net_idx`: Corresponding NetKey Index.
- **[in]** `addr`: Pointer to the filter address.
- **[in]** `addr_num`: Number of the filter address.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_proxy_client_remove_filter_addr(uint8_t conn_handle, uint16_t net_idx,
                                                       uint16_t *addr, uint16_t addr_num)
```

Proxy Client removes address from the Proxy Server filter list.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `conn_handle`: Proxy connection handle.
- **[in]** `net_idx`: Corresponding NetKey Index.
- **[in]** `addr`: Pointer to the filter address.
- **[in]** `addr_num`: Number of the filter address.
Chapter 2. API参考

ESP-BLE-MESH Models API Reference

This section contains ESP-BLE-MESH Model related APIs, event types, event parameters, etc.

There are six categories of models:

- Configuration Client/Server Models
- Health Client/Server Models
- Generic Client/Server Models
- Sensor Client/Server Models
- Time and Scenes Client/Server Models
- Lighting Client/Server Models

注意： Definitions related to Server Models are being updated, and will be released soon.

Configuration Client/Server Models

Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/models/include/esp_ble_mesh_config_model_api.h

Functions

- esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_config_client_callback(esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_cb_t callback)
  
  Register BLE Mesh Config Client Model callback.
  
  Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.
  
  Parameters
  
  • [in] callback: Pointer to the callback function.

- esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_config_server_callback(esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_cb_t callback)
  
  Register BLE Mesh Config Server Model callback.
  
  Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.
  
  Parameters
  
  • [in] callback: Pointer to the callback function.

- esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_config_client_get_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params, esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_get_state_t *get_state)
  
  Get the value of Config Server Model states using the Config Client Model get messages.
  
  Note If you want to find the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_client_get_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h
  
  Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.
  
  Parameters
  
  • [in] params: Pointer to BLE Mesh common client parameters.
  
  • [in] get_state: Pointer to a union, each kind of opcode corresponds to one structure inside. Shall not be set to NULL.

- esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params, esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t *set_state)
  
  Set the value of the Configuration Server Model states using the Config Client Model set messages.
  
  Note If you want to find the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_config_client_set_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h
  
  Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.
  
  Parameters
  
  • [in] params: Pointer to BLE Mesh common client parameters.
• [in] set_state: Pointer to a union, each kind of opcode corresponds to one structure inside. Shall not be set to NULL.

Unions
union esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_get_state_t

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_get_t model_pub_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_PUB_GET.

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_composition_data_get_t comp_data_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_COMPOSITION_DATA_GET.

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_sig_model_sub_get_t sig_model_sub_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_SUB_GET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_vnd_model_sub_get_t vnd_model_sub_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_SUB_GET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_get_t app_key_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_GET.

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_node_identity_get_t node_identity_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_IDENTITY_GET.

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_sig_model_app_get_t sig_model_app_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_APP_GET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_vnd_model_app_get_t vnd_model_app_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_APP_GET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_kr_phase_get_t kr_phase_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_GET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_lpn_polltimeout_get_t lpn_pollto_get
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LPN_POLLTIMEOUT_GET

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_beacon_set_t beacon_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_BEACON_SET

 unions esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_beacon_set_t beacon_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_BEACON_SET
**Chapter 2. API**

```c
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_set_t default_ttl_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_set_t friend_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_FRIEND_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_set_t gatt_proxy_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GATT_PROXY_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_relay_set_t relay_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_RELAY_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_add_t net_key_add
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_ADD

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_add_t app_key_add
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_ADD

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_bind_t model_app_bind
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_APP_BIND

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_set_t model_pub_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_PUB_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_add_t model_sub_add
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_ADD

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_delete_t model_sub_delete
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_DELETE

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_overwrite_t model_sub_overwrite
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_OVERWRITE

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_va_add_t model_sub_va_add
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_VIRTUAL_ADDR_ADD

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_va_delete_t model_sub_va_delete
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_VIRTUAL_ADDR_DELETE

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_va_overwrite_t model_sub_va_overwrite
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_VIRTUAL_ADDR_OVERWRITE

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_pub_set_t heartbeat_pub_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_PUB_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t heartbeat_sub_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_SUB_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_va_set_t model_pub_va_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_PUB_VIRTUAL_ADDR_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_delete_all_t model_sub_delete_all
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_SUB_DELETE_ALL

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_update_t net_key_update
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_UPDATE

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_delete_t net_key_delete
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_DELETE

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_update_t app_key_update
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_UPDATE

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_delete_t app_key_delete
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_APP_KEY_DELETE

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_node_identity_set_t node_identity_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_IDENTITTY_SET
```
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_unbind_t model_app_unbind
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_MODEL_APP_UNBIND

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_kr_phase_set_t kr_phase_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_SET

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_transmit_set_t net_transmit_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NETWORK_TRANSMIT_SET

union esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_common_cb_param_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_config_model_api.h> Configuration Client Model received message union.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_beacon_status_cb_t beacon_status
The beacon status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_comp_data_status_cb_t comp_data_status
The composition data status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_status_cb_t default_ttl_status
The default_ttl status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_status_cb_t gatt_proxy_status
The gatt_proxy status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg Relay_status_cb_t relay_status
The relay status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_status_cb_t model_pub_status
The model publication status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_status_cb_t model_sub_status
The model subscription status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_status_cb_t netkey_status
The netkey status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_status_cb_t appkey_status
The appkey status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_mod_app_status_cb_t model_app_status
The model app status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_status_cb_t friend_status
The friend status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_hb_pub_status_cb_t heartbeat_pub_status
The heartbeat publication status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_hb_sub_status_cb_t heartbeat_sub_status
The heartbeat subscription status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_transmit_status_cb_t net_transmit_status
The network transmit status value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_list_cb_t model_sub_list
The model subscription list value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_list_cb_t netkey_list
The network key index list value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_list_cb_t appkey_list
The application key index list value

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_node_id_status_cb_t node_identity_status
The node identity status value
Chapter 2. API

**esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_list_cb_t**

The model application key index list value

**esp_ble_mesh_cfg_kr_phase_status_cb_t**

The key refresh phase status value

**esp_ble_mesh_cfg_lpn_pollto_status_cb_t**

The low power node poll timeout status value

**union esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_state_change_t**

#include <esp_ble_mesh_config_model_api.h> Configuration Server model state change value union.

**Public Members**

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_mod_pub_set_t**

The recv_op in ctx can be used to decide which state is changed. Config Model Publication Set

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_mod_sub_add_t**

Config Model Subscription Add

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_mod_sub_delete_t**

Config Model Subscription Delete

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_netkey_add_t**

Config NetKey Add

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_netkey_update_t**

Config NetKey Update

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_netkey_delete_t**

Config NetKey Delete

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_appkey_add_t**

Config AppKey Add

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_appkey_update_t**

Config AppKey Update

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_appkey_delete_t**

Config AppKey Delete

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_model_app_bind_t**

Config Model App Bind

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_model_app_unbind_t**

Config Model App Unbind

**esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_kr_phase_set_t**

Config Key Refresh Phase Set

**union esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_cb_value_t**

#include <esp_ble_mesh_config_model_api.h> Configuration Server model callback value union.

**Public Members**

**esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_state_change_t**

ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT

**Structures**

**struct esp_ble_meshCfg_srv**

Configuration Server Model context
Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
Pointer to Configuration Server Model

`uint8_t net_transmit`
Network Transmit state

`uint8_t relay`
Relay Mode state

`uint8_t relay_retransmit`
Relay Retransmit state

`uint8_t beacon`
Secure Network Beacon state

`uint8_t gatt_proxy`
GATT Proxy state

`uint8_t friend_state`
Friend state

`uint8_t default_ttl`
Default TTL

`struct k_delayed_work timer`
Heartbeat Publication timer

`uint16_t dst`
Destination address for Heartbeat messages

`uint16_t count`
Number of Heartbeat messages to be sent
   Number of Heartbeat messages received

`uint8_t period`
Period for sending Heartbeat messages

`uint8_t ttl`
TTL to be used when sending Heartbeat messages

`uint16_t feature`
Bit field indicating features that trigger Heartbeat messages when changed

`uint16_t net_idx`
NetKey Index used by Heartbeat Publication

`struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv::[anonymous] heartbeat_pub`
Heartbeat Publication

`int64_t expiry`
Timestamp when Heartbeat subscription period is expired

`uint16_t src`
Source address for Heartbeat messages

`uint8_t min_hops`
Minimum hops when receiving Heartbeat messages

`uint8_t max_hops`
Maximum hops when receiving Heartbeat messages

`esp_ble_mesh_cb_t heartbeat_recv_cb`
Optional heartbeat subscription tracking function

`struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv::[anonymous] heartbeat_sub`
Heartbeat Subscription
**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_composition_data_get_t**

Parameters of Config Composition Data Get.

**Public Members**

`uint8_t page`

Page number of the Composition Data.

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_get_t**

Parameters of Config Model Publication Get.

**Public Members**

`uint16_t element_addr`

The element address

`uint16_t model_id`

The model id

`uint16_t company_id`

The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_sig_model_sub_get_t**

Parameters of Config SIG Model Subscription Get.

**Public Members**

`uint16_t element_addr`

The element address

`uint16_t model_id`

The model id

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_vnd_model_sub_get_t**

Parameters of Config Vendor Model Subscription Get.

**Public Members**

`uint16_t element_addr`

The element address

`uint16_t model_id`

The model id

`uint16_t company_id`

The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_get_t**

Parameters of Config AppKey Get.

**Public Members**

`uint16_t net_idx`

The network key index

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_node_identity_get_t**

Parameters of Config Node Identity Get.
Public Members

```c
uint16_t net_idx
```
The network key index

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_sig_model_app_get_t**
Parameters of Config SIG Model App Get.

Public Members

```c
uint16_t element_addr
```
The element address

```c
uint16_t model_id
```
The model id

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_vnd_model_app_get_t**
Parameters of Config Vendor Model App Get.

Public Members

```c
uint16_t element_addr
```
The element address

```c
uint16_t model_id
```
The model id

```c
uint16_t company_id
```
The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_kr_phase_get_t**
Parameters of Config Key Refresh Phase Get.

Public Members

```c
uint16_t net_idx
```
The network key index

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_lpn_polltimeout_get_t**
Parameters of Config Low Power Node PollTimeout Get.

Public Members

```c
uint16_t lpn_addr
```
The unicast address of the Low Power node

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_beacon_set_t**
Parameters of Config Beacon Set.

Public Members

```c
uint8_t beacon
```
New Secure Network Beacon state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_set_t**
Parameters of Config Default TTL Set.
Public Members

uint8_t \texttt{ttl} \\
\hspace{1em} The default TTL state value

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_friend\_set\_t} \\
Parameters of Config Friend Set.

Public Members

uint8_t \texttt{friend\_state} \\
\hspace{1em} The friend state value

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_gatt\_proxy\_set\_t} \\
Parameters of Config GATT Proxy Set.

Public Members

uint8_t \texttt{gatt\_proxy} \\
\hspace{1em} The GATT Proxy state value

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_relay\_set\_t} \\
Parameters of Config Relay Set.

Public Members

uint8_t \texttt{relay} \\
\hspace{1em} The relay value

uint8_t \texttt{relay\_retransmit} \\
\hspace{1em} The relay retransmit value

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_net\_key\_add\_t} \\
Parameters of Config NetKey Add.

Public Members

uint16_t \texttt{net\_idx} \\
\hspace{1em} The network key index

uint8_t \texttt{net\_key[16]} \\
\hspace{1em} The network key value

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_app\_key\_add\_t} \\
Parameters of Config AppKey Add.

Public Members

uint16_t \texttt{net\_idx} \\
\hspace{1em} The network key index

uint16_t \texttt{app\_idx} \\
\hspace{1em} The app key index

uint8_t \texttt{app\_key[16]} \\
\hspace{1em} The app key value

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_model\_app\_bind\_t} \\
Parameters of Config Model App Bind.
Public Members

```c
uint16_t element_addr
    The element address
```

```c
uint16_t model_app_idx
    Index of the app key to bind with the model
```

```c
uint16_t model_id
    The model id
```

```c
uint16_t company_id
    The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF
```

```
*struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_set_t*
Parameters of Config Model Publication Set.
```

Public Members

```c
uint16_t element_addr
    The element address
```

```c
uint16_t publish_addr
    Value of the publish address
```

```c
uint16_t publish_app_idx
    Index of the application key
```

```c
bool cred_flag
    Value of the Friendship Credential Flag
```

```c
uint8_t publish_ttl
    Default TTL value for the publishing messages
```

```c
uint8_t publish_period
    Period for periodic status publishing
```

```c
uint8_t publish_retransmit
    Number of retransmissions and number of 50-millisecond steps between retransmissions
```

```c
uint16_t model_id
    The model id
```

```c
uint16_t company_id
    The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF
```

```
*struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_add_t*
Parameters of Config Model Subscription Add.
```

Public Members

```c
uint16_t element_addr
    The element address
```

```c
uint16_t sub_addr
    The address to be added to the Subscription List
```

```c
uint16_t model_id
    The model id
```

```c
uint16_t company_id
    The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF
```

```
*struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_delete_t*
Parameters of Config Model Subscription Delete.
```
Public Members

uint16_t element_addr  
   The element address

uint16_t sub_addr  
The address to be removed from the Subscription List

uint16_t model_id  
The model id

uint16_t company_id  
The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_overwrite_t
Parameters of Config Model Subscription Overwrite.

Public Members

uint16_t element_addr  
The element address

uint16_t sub_addr  
The address to be added to the Subscription List

uint16_t model_id  
The model id

uint16_t company_id  
The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_va_add_t
Parameters of Config Model Subscription Virtual Address Add.

Public Members

uint16_t element_addr  
The element address

uint8_t label_uuid[16]
   The Label UUID of the virtual address to be added to the Subscription List

uint16_t model_id  
The model id

uint16_t company_id  
The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_va_delete_t
Parameters of Config Model Subscription Virtual Address Delete.

Public Members

uint16_t element_addr  
The element address

uint8_t label_uuid[16]
   The Label UUID of the virtual address to be removed from the Subscription List

uint16_t model_id  
The model id
uint16_t \textbf{company\_id}

The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_model\_sub\_va\_overwrite\_t}

Parameters of Config Model Subscription Virtual Address Overwrite.

**Public Members**

\begin{itemize}
  \item uint16_t \textbf{element\_addr}
    \hspace{2em} The element address
  \item uint8_t \textbf{label\_uuid}\[16\]
    \hspace{2em} The Label UUID of the virtual address to be added to the Subscription List
  \item uint16_t \textbf{model\_id}
    \hspace{2em} The model id
  \item uint16_t \textbf{company\_id}
    \hspace{2em} The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF
\end{itemize}

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_model\_pub\_va\_set\_t}

Parameters of Config Model Publication Virtual Address Set.

**Public Members**

\begin{itemize}
  \item uint16_t \textbf{element\_addr}
    \hspace{2em} The element address
  \item uint8_t \textbf{label\_uuid}\[16\]
    \hspace{2em} Value of the Label UUID publish address
  \item uint16_t \textbf{publish\_app\_idx}
    \hspace{2em} Index of the application key
  \item bool \textbf{cred\_flag}
    \hspace{2em} Value of the Friendship Credential Flag
  \item uint8_t \textbf{publish\_ttl}
    \hspace{2em} Default TTL value for the publishing messages
  \item uint8_t \textbf{publish\_period}
    \hspace{2em} Period for periodic status publishing
  \item uint8_t \textbf{publish\_retransmit}
    \hspace{2em} Number of retransmissions and number of 50-millisecond steps between retransmissions
  \item uint16_t \textbf{model\_id}
    \hspace{2em} The model id
  \item uint16_t \textbf{company\_id}
    \hspace{2em} The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF
\end{itemize}

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_cfg\_model\_sub\_delete\_all\_t}

Parameters of Config Model Subscription Delete All.

**Public Members**

\begin{itemize}
  \item uint16_t \textbf{element\_addr}
    \hspace{2em} The element address
  \item uint16_t \textbf{model\_id}
    \hspace{2em} The model id
\end{itemize}
uint16_t **company_id**
The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_update_t**
Parameters of Config NetKey Update.

**Public Members**

uint16_t **net_idx**
The network key index

uint8_t **net_key[16]**
The network key value

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_delete_t**
Parameters of Config NetKey Delete.

**Public Members**

uint16_t **net_idx**
The network key index

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_update_t**
Parameters of Config AppKey Update.

**Public Members**

uint16_t **net_idx**
The network key index

uint16_t **app_idx**
The app key index

uint8_t **app_key[16]**
The app key value

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_delete_t**
Parameters of Config AppKey Delete.

**Public Members**

uint16_t **net_idx**
The network key index

uint16_t **app_idx**
The app key index

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_node_identity_set_t**
Parameters of Config Node Identity Set.

**Public Members**

uint16_t **net_idx**
The network key index

uint8_t **identity**
New Node Identity state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_unbind_t**
Parameters of Config Model App Unbind.
Public Members

uint16_t `element_addr`
  The element address

uint16_t `model_app_idx`
  Index of the app key to bind with the model

uint16_t `model_id`
  The model id

uint16_t `company_id`
  The company id, if not a vendor model, shall set to 0xFFFF

`struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_kr_phase_set_t`
Parameters of Config Key Refresh Phase Set.

Public Members

uint16_t `net_idx`
  The network key index

uint8_t `transition`
  New Key Refresh Phase Transition

`struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_transmit_set_t`
Parameters of Config Network Transmit Set.

Public Members

uint8_t `net_transmit`
  Network Transmit State

`struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_pub_set_t`
Parameters of Config Model Heartbeat Publication Set.

Public Members

uint16_t `dst`
  Destination address for Heartbeat messages

uint8_t `count`
  Number of Heartbeat messages to be sent

uint8_t `period`
  Period for sending Heartbeat messages

uint8_t `ttl`
  TTL to be used when sending Heartbeat messages

uint16_t `feature`
  Bit field indicating features that trigger Heartbeat messages when changed

uint16_t `net_idx`
  NetKey Index

`struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t`
Parameters of Config Model Heartbeat Subscription Set.
Public Members

uint16_t src
Source address for Heartbeat messages

uint16_t dst
Destination address for Heartbeat messages

uint8_t period
Period for receiving Heartbeat messages

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_beacon_status_cb_t
Parameter of Config Beacon Status

Public Members

uint8_t beacon
Secure Network Beacon state value

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_comp_data_status_cb_t
Parameters of Config Composition Data Status

Public Members

uint8_t page
Page number of the Composition Data

struct net_buf_simple *composition_data
Pointer to Composition Data for the identified page

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_status_cb_t
Parameter of Config Default TTL Status

Public Members

uint8_t default_ttl
Default TTL state value

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_status_cb_t
Parameter of Config GATT Proxy Status

Public Members

uint8_t gatt_proxy
GATT Proxy state value

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_relay_status_cb_t
Parameters of Config Relay Status

Public Members

uint8_t relay
Relay state value

uint8_t retransmit
Relay retransmit value (number of retransmissions and number of 10-millisecond steps between retransmissions)
\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_status_cb_t}

Parameters of Config Model Publication Status

**Public Members**

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint8_t status}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Status Code for the request message
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t element_addr}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Address of the element
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t publish_addr}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Value of the publish address
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t app_idx}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Index of the application key
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{bool cred_flag}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Value of the Friendship Credential Flag
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint8_t ttl}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Default TTL value for the outgoing messages
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint8_t period}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Period for periodic status publishing
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint8_t transmit}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Number of retransmissions and number of 50-millisecond steps between retransmissions
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t company_id}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Company ID
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t model_id}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Model ID
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_status_cb_t}

Parameters of Config Model Subscription Status

**Public Members**

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint8_t status}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Status Code for the request message
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t element_addr}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Address of the element
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t sub_addr}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Value of the address
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t company_id}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Company ID
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint16_t model_id}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Model ID
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_status_cb_t}

Parameters of Config NetKey Status

**Public Members**

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{uint8_t status}  
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Status Code for the request message
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
Chapter 2. API

Uint16_t net_idx
Index of the NetKey

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_status_cb_t**
Parameters of Config AppKey Status

**Public Members**

uint8_t status
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t net_idx
Index of the NetKey

uint16_t app_idx
Index of the application key

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_mod_app_status_cb_t**
Parameters of Config Model App Status

**Public Members**

uint8_t status
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t element_addr
Address of the element

uint16_t app_idx
Index of the application key

uint16_t company_id
Company ID

uint16_t model_id
Model ID

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_status_cb_t**
Parameter of Config Friend Status

**Public Members**

uint8_t friend_state
Friend state value

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_hb_pub_status_cb_t**
Parameters of Config Heartbeat Publication Status

**Public Members**

uint8_t status
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t dst
Destination address for Heartbeat messages

uint8_t count
Number of Heartbeat messages remaining to be sent

uint8_t period
Period for sending Heartbeat messages
uint8_t _t ttl
TTL to be used when sending Heartbeat messages

uint16_t _t features
Features that trigger Heartbeat messages when changed

uint16_t _t net_idx
Index of the NetKey

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_hb_sub_status_cb_t
Parameters of Config Heartbeat Subscription Status

Public Members

uint8_t _t status
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t _t src
Source address for Heartbeat messages

uint16_t _t dst
Destination address for Heartbeat messages

uint8_t _t period
Remaining Period for processing Heartbeat messages

uint8_t _t count
Number of Heartbeat messages received

uint8_t _t min_hops
Minimum hops when receiving Heartbeat messages

uint8_t _t max_hops
Maximum hops when receiving Heartbeat messages

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_trans_status_cb_t
Parameters of Config Network Transmit Status

Public Members

uint8_t _t net_trans_count : 3
Number of transmissions for each Network PDU originating from the node

uint8_t _t net_trans_step : 5
Maximum hops when receiving Heartbeat messages

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_sub_list_cb_t
Parameters of Config SIG/Vendor Subscription List

Public Members

uint8_t _t status
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t _t element_addr
Address of the element

uint16_t _t company_id
Company ID

uint16_t _t model_id
Model ID
**struct net_buf_simple *sub_addr**
A block of all addresses from the Subscription List

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_key_list_cb_t**
Parameter of Config NetKey List

**Public Members**

**struct net_buf_simple *net_idx**
A list of NetKey Indexes known to the node

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_app_key_list_cb_t**
Parameters of Config AppKey List

**Public Members**

uint8_t **status**
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t **net_idx**
NetKey Index of the NetKey that the AppKeys are bound to

**struct net_buf_simple *app_idx**
A list of AppKey indexes that are bound to the NetKey identified by NetKeyIndex

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_node_id_status_cb_t**
Parameters of Config Node Identity Status

**Public Members**

uint8_t **status**
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t **net_idx**
Index of the NetKey

uint8_t **identity**
Node Identity state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_list_cb_t**
Parameters of Config SIG/Vendor Model App List

**Public Members**

uint8_t **status**
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t **element_addr**
Address of the element

uint16_t **company_id**
Company ID

uint16_t **model_id**
Model ID

**struct net_buf_simple *app_idx**
All AppKey indexes bound to the Model

**struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_kr_phase_status_cb_t**
Parameters of Config Key Refresh Phase Status
Public Members

uint8_t status
Status Code for the request message

uint16_t net_idx
Index of the NetKey

uint8_t phase
Key Refresh Phase state

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_lpn_pollto_status_cb_t
Parameters of Config Low Power Node PollTimeout Status

Public Members

uint16_t lpn_addr
The unicast address of the Low Power node

int32_t poll_timeout
The current value of the PollTimeout timer of the Low Power node

struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_cb_param_t
Configuration Client Model callback parameters

Public Members

int error_code
Appropriate error code

esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params
The client common parameters

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_common_cb_param_t status_cb
The config status message callback values

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_mod_pub_set_t
Configuration Server model related context.

Public Members

uint16_t element_addr
Element Address

uint16_t pub_addr
Publish Address

uint16_t app_idx
AppKey Index

bool cred_flag
Friendship Credential Flag

uint8_t pub_ttl
Publish TTL

uint8_t pub_period
Publish Period

uint8_t pub_retransmit
Publish Retransmit
uint16_t company_id  
  Company ID

uint16_t model_id  
  Model ID

*struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_model_sub_add_t*
Parameters of Config Model Subscription Add

**Public Members**

uint16_t element_addr  
  Element Address

uint16_t sub_addr  
  Subscription Address

uint16_t company_id  
  Company ID

uint16_t model_id  
  Model ID

*struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_model_sub_delete_t*
Parameters of Config Model Subscription Delete

**Public Members**

uint16_t element_addr  
  Element Address

uint16_t sub_addr  
  Subscription Address

uint16_t company_id  
  Company ID

uint16_t model_id  
  Model ID

*struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_netkey_add_t*
Parameters of Config NetKey Add

**Public Members**

uint16_t net_idx  
  NetKey Index

uint8_t net_key[16]  
  NetKey

*struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_netkey_update_t*
Parameters of Config NetKey Update

**Public Members**

uint16_t net_idx  
  NetKey Index

uint8_t net_key[16]  
  NetKey
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_netkey_delete_t
Parameter of Config NetKey Delete

Public Members

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_appkey_add_t
Parameters of Config AppKey Add

Public Members

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index
uint16_t app_idx
AppKey Index
uint8_t app_key[16]
AppKey

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_appkey_update_t
Parameters of Config AppKey Update

Public Members

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index
uint16_t app_idx
AppKey Index
uint8_t app_key[16]
AppKey

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_appkey_delete_t
Parameters of Config AppKey Delete

Public Members

uint16_t net_idx
NetKey Index
uint16_t app_idx
AppKey Index

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_cfg_model_app_bind_t
Parameters of Config Model App Bind

Public Members

uint16_t element_addr
Element Address
uint16_t app_idx
AppKey Index
uint16_t company_id
Company ID
uint16_t model_id
  Model ID

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_changeCfgModelAppUnbind_t
  Parameters of Config Model App Unbind

Public Members

uint16_t element_addr
  Element Address

uint16_t app_idx
  AppKey Index

uint16_t company_id
  Company ID

uint16_t model_id
  Model ID

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_changeCfgKPhaseSet_t
  Parameters of Config Key Refresh Phase Set

Public Members

uint16_t net_idx
  NetKey Index

uint8_t kr_phase
  New Key Refresh Phase Transition

struct esp_ble_meshCfgServerCbParam_t
  Configuration Server model callback parameters

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
  Pointer to the server model structure

esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t ctx
  Context of the received message

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_cb_value_t value
  Value of the received configuration messages

Macros

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_CFG_SRV(srv_data)
  Define a new Config Server Model.
  
  Note  The Config Server Model can only be included by a Primary Element.
  
  Return  New Config Server Model instance.
  
  Parameters
    • srv_data: Pointer to a unique Config Server Model user_data.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_CFG_CLI(cli_data)
  Define a new Config Client Model.
  
  Note  The Config Client Model can only be included by a Primary Element.
  
  Return  New Config Client Model instance.
  
  Parameters
    • cli_data: Pointer to a unique struct esp_ble_mesh_client_t.
Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv_t
Configuration Server Model context

typedef void (*esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_cb_event_t event,
                                          esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_cb_param_t *param)

Bluetooth Mesh Config Client and Server Model functions.
Configuration Client Model callback function type

Parameters
• event: Event type
• param: Pointer to callback parameter

typedef void (*esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_cb_event_t event,
                                          esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_cb_param_t *param)

Configuration Server Model callback function type.

Parameters
• event: Event type
• param: Pointer to callback parameter

Enumerations
enum esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_cb_event_t
This enum value is the event of Configuration Client Model

Values:
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_CLIENT_SET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_CLIENT_TIMEOUT_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_CLIENT_EVT_MAX

enum esp_ble_mesh_cfg_server_cb_event_t
This enum value is the event of Configuration Server model

Values:
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_SERVER_EVT_MAX

Health Client/Server Models

Header File
• components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/models/include/esp_ble_mesh_health_model_api.h

Functions
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_health_client_callback(esp_ble_mesh_health_client_cb_t callback)

Register BLE Mesh Health Model callback, the callback will report Health Client & Server Model events.

Return
ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
• [in] callback: Pointer to the callback function.

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_health_server_callback(esp_ble_mesh_health_server_cb_t callback)

Register BLE Mesh Health Server Model callback.
Chapter 2. API

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** callback: Pointer to the callback function.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params, esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state_t *get_state)
```

This function is called to get the Health Server states using the Health Client Model get messages.

**Note** If you want to find the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_health_client_get_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** params: Pointer to BLE Mesh common client parameters.
- **[in]** get_state: Pointer to a union, each kind of opcode corresponds to one structure inside. Shall not be set to NULL.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params, esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state_t *set_state)
```

This function is called to set the Health Server states using the Health Client Model set messages.

**Note** If you want to find the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_opcode_health_client_set_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** params: Pointer to BLE Mesh common client parameters.
- **[in]** set_state: Pointer to a union, each kind of opcode corresponds to one structure inside. Shall not be set to NULL.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_health_server_fault_update(esp_ble_mesh_elem_t *element)
```

This function is called by the Health Server Model to update the context of its Health Current status.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** element: The element to which the Health Server Model belongs.

**Unions**

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_health_model_api.h> For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_GET ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_ATTENTION_GET ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_PERIOD_GET
```

the get_state parameter in the esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state function should not be set to NULL.

**Public Members**

```c
esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_get_t fault_get
```

For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_GET.

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state_t
```

the set_state parameter in the esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state function should not be set to NULL.

**Public Members**

```c
esp_ble_mesh_health_attention_set_t attention_set
```

For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_ATTENTION_SET or ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_ATTENTION_SET_UNACK.
Chapter 2. API Reference

```c
#include <esp_ble_mesh_health_model_api.h>
```

## Structures

**union esp_ble_mesh_health_client_common_cb_param_t**

For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_PERIOD_SET or ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_PERIOD_SET_UNACK.

For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_TEST or ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_TEST_UNACK.

For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_CLEAR or ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEALTH_FAULT_CLEAR_UNACK.

### Public Members

**esp_ble_mesh_health_current_status_cb_t current_status**

The health current status value

**esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_status_cb_t fault_status**

The health fault status value

**esp_ble_mesh_health_period_status_cb_t period_status**

The health period status value

**esp_ble_mesh_health_attention_status_cb_t attention_status**

The health attention status value

### union esp_ble_mesh_health_server_cb_param_t

For ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_FAULT_UPDATE_COMP_EVT or ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_FAULT_UPDATE_COMP_EVT.

For ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_FAULT_CLEAR_EVT or ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_FAULT_CLEAR_EVT.

For ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_FAULT_TEST_EVT or ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_FAULT_TEST_EVT.

For ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_ATTENTION_ON_EVT or ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_ATTENTION_ON_EVT.

For ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_ATTENTION_OFF_EVT or ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_ATTENTION_OFF_EVT.

### Structures

**struct esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_cb_t**

ESP BLE Mesh Health Server callback

### Public Members

**esp_ble_mesh_cb_t fault_clear**

Clear health registered faults. Initialized by the stack.

**esp_ble_mesh_cb_t fault_test**

Run a specific health test. Initialized by the stack.
Chapter 2. API

```
esp_ble_mesh_cb_t attention_on
    Health attention on callback. Initialized by the stack.

esp_ble_mesh_cb_t attention_off
    Health attention off callback. Initialized by the stack.
```

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_health_test_t
    ESP BLE Mesh Health Server test Context
```

### Public Members

```
uint8_t id_count
    Number of Health self-test ID

const uint8_t *test_ids
    Array of Health self-test IDs

uint16_t company_id
    Company ID used to identify the Health Fault state

uint8_t prev_test_id
    Current test ID of the health fault test

uint8_t current_faults[ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_FAULT_ARRAY_SIZE]
    Array of current faults

uint8_t registered_faults[ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_FAULT_ARRAY_SIZE]
    Array of registered faults
```

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_t
    ESP BLE Mesh Health Server Model Context
```

### Public Members

```
esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
    Pointer to Health Server Model

esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_cb_t health_cb
    Health callback struct

struct k_delayed_work attention_timer
    Attention Timer state

bool attention_timer_start
    Attention Timer start flag

esp_ble_mesh_health_test_t health_test
    Health Server fault test
```

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_get_t
    Parameter of Health Fault Get
```

### Public Members

```
uint16_t company_id
    Bluetooth assigned 16-bit Company ID
```

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_health_attention_set_t
    Parameter of Health Attention Set
```
Public Members

uint8_t attention
    Value of the Attention Timer state

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_period_set_t
    Parameter of Health Period Set

Public Members

uint8_t fast_period_divisor
    Divider for the Publish Period

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_test_t
    Parameter of Health Fault Test

Public Members

uint16_t company_id
    Bluetooth assigned 16-bit Company ID

uint8_t test_id
    ID of a specific test to be performed

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_clear_t
    Parameter of Health Fault Clear

Public Members

uint16_t company_id
    Bluetooth assigned 16-bit Company ID

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_current_status_cb_t
    Parameters of Health Current Status

Public Members

uint8_t test_id
    ID of a most recently performed test

uint16_t company_id
    Bluetooth assigned 16-bit Company ID

struct net_buf_simple *fault_array
    FaultArray field contains a sequence of 1-octet fault values

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_status_cb_t
    Parameters of Health Fault Status

Public Members

uint8_t test_id
    ID of a most recently performed test

uint16_t company_id
    Bluetooth assigned 16-bit Company ID

struct net_buf_simple *fault_array
    FaultArray field contains a sequence of 1-octet fault values
struct esp_ble_mesh_health_period_status_cb_t
Parameter of Health Period Status

Public Members

uint8_t fast_period_divisor
Divider for the Publish Period

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_attention_status_cb_t
Parameter of Health Attention Status

Public Members

uint8_t attention
Value of the Attention Timer state

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_client_cb_param_t
Health Client Model callback parameters

Public Members

int error_code
Appropriate error code

esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params
The client common parameters.

esp_ble_mesh_health_client_common_cb_param_t status_cb
The health message status callback values

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_update_comp_cb_t
Parameter of publishing Health Current Status completion event

Public Members

int error_code
The result of publishing Health Current Status

esp_ble_mesh_elem_t *element
Pointer to the element which contains the Health Server Model

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_clear_cb_t
Parameters of Health Fault Clear event

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Health Server Model

uint16_t company_id
Bluetooth assigned 16-bit Company ID

struct esp_ble_mesh_health_fault_test_cb_t
Parameters of Health Fault Test event

Public Members
Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
Pointer to the Health Server Model

`uint8_t test_id`
ID of a specific test to be performed

`uint16_t company_id`
Bluetooth assigned 16-bit Company ID

`struct esp_ble_mesh_health_attention_on_cb_t`
Parameter of Health Attention On event

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
Pointer to the Health Server Model

`uint8_t time`
Duration of attention timer on (in seconds)

`struct esp_ble_mesh_health_attention_off_cb_t`
Parameter of Health Attention Off event

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
Pointer to the Health Server Model

Macros

`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_HEALTH_SRV(srv, pub)`
Define a new Health Server Model.

**Note** The Health Server Model can only be included by a Primary Element.

**Return** New Health Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_t`.
- `pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.

`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_HEALTH_CLI(cli_data)`
Define a new Health Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Health Client Model.

**Return** New Health Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `cli_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

`ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_PUB_DEFINE(_name, _max, _role)`
A helper to define a health publication context

**Parameters**
- `_name`: Name given to the publication context variable.
- `_max`: Maximum number of faults the element can have.
- `_role`: Role of the device which contains the model.

`ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_STANDARD_TEST`
SIG identifier of Health Fault Test. 0x01~0xFF: Vendor Specific Test.
ESP_BLE_MESH_NO_FAULT
Fault values of Health Fault Test. 0x33 ~ 0x7F: Reserved for Future Use. 0x80 ~ 0xFF: Vendor Specific Warning/Error.

ESP_BLE_MESH_BATTERY_LOW_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_BATTERY_LOW_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_SUPPLY_VOLTAGE_TOO_LOW_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_SUPPLY_VOLTAGE_TOO_LOW_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_SUPPLY_VOLTAGE_TOO_HIGH_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_SUPPLY_VOLTAGE_TOO_HIGH_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_POWER_SUPPLY_INTERRUPTED_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_POWER_SUPPLY_INTERRUPTED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_NO_LOAD_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_NO_LOAD_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_OVERLOAD_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_OVERLOAD_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_OVERHEAT_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_OVERHEAT_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESHCONDENSATION_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESHCONDENSATION_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_VIBRATION_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_VIBRATION_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_CONFIGURATION_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_CONFIGURATION_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_ELEMENT_NOT_CALIBRATED_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_ELEMENT_NOT_CALIBRATED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_MEMORY_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_MEMORY_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_SELF_TEST_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_SELF_TEST_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_LOW_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_LOW_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_HIGH_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_HIGH_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_NO_CHANGE_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_NO_CHANGE_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_ACTUATOR_BLOCKED_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_ACTUATOR_BLOCKED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_HOUSING_OPENED_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_HOUSING_OPENED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_TAMPER_WARNING
Chapter 2. API

ESP_BLE_MESH_TAMPER_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_DEVICE_MOVED_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_DEVICE_MOVED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_DEVICE_DROPPED_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_DEVICE_DROPPED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_OVERFLOW_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_OVERFLOW_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_EMPTY_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_EMPTY_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_INTERNAL_BUS_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INTERNAL_BUS_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_MECHANISM_JAMMED_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_MECHANISM_JAMMED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_FAULT_ARRAY_SIZE

Type Definitions

typedef void (*esp_ble_mesh_health_client_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_health_client_cb_event_t event, esp_ble_mesh_health_client_cb_param_t *param)

Bluetooth Mesh Health Client and Server Model function.

Health Client Model callback function type

Parameters

• event: Event type
• param: Pointer to callback parameter

typedef void (*esp_ble_mesh_health_server_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_health_server_cb_event_t event, esp_ble_mesh_health_server_cb_param_t *param)

Health Server Model callback function type.

Parameters

• event: Event type
• param: Pointer to callback parameter

Enumerations

define esp_ble_mesh_health_client_cb_event_t

This enum value is the event of Health Client Model

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_SET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_TIMEOUT_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX

enum esp_ble_mesh_health_server_cb_event_t

This enum value is the event of Health Server Model

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SERVER_FAULT_UPDATE_COMP_EVT
Generic Client/Server Models

Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/models/include/esp_ble_mesh_generic_model_api.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_generic_client_callback(esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_cb_t callback)
```

Register BLE Mesh Generic Client Model callback.

- **Return**: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.
- **Parameters**
  - `[in] callback`: Pointer to the callback function.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_get_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params,
                                             esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_get_state_t *get_state)
```

Get the value of Generic Server Model states using the Generic Client Model get messages.

- **Note**: If you want to find the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_generic_message_opcode_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h
- **Return**: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.
- **Parameters**
  - `[in] get_state`: Pointer to generic get message value. Shall not be set to NULL.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params,
                                             esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t *set_state)
```

Set the value of Generic Server Model states using the Generic Client Model set messages.

- **Note**: If you want to find the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_generic_message_opcode_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h
- **Return**: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.
- **Parameters**
  - `[in] set_state`: Pointer to generic set message value. Shall not be set to NULL.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_generic_server_callback(esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_t callback)
```

Register BLE Mesh Generic Server Model callback.

- **Return**: ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.
- **Parameters**
  - `[in] callback`: Pointer to the callback function.

Unions

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_get_state_t
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_generic_model_api.h> Generic Client Model get message union.
```
Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_property_get_t` `user_property_get`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_GET`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_property_get_t` `admin_property_get`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_GET`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_property_get_t` `manufacturer_property_get`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTY_SET`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_client_properties_get_t` `client_properties_get`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_CLIENT_PROPERTIES_GET`

union `esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t`
#include `<esp_ble_mesh_generic_model_api.h>` Generic Client Model set message union.

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_onoff_set_t` `onoff_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONOFF_SET` & `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONOFF_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_level_set_t` `level_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_SET` & `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_delta_set_t` `delta_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DELTA_SET` & `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DELTA_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_move_set_t` `move_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MOVE_SET` & `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MOVE_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_def_trans_time_set_t` `def_trans_time_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_onpowerup_set_t` `power_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONPOWERUP_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONPOWERUP_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_set_t` `power_level_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_default_set_t` `power_default_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_DEFAULT_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_range_set_t` `power_range_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_loc_global_set_t` `loc_global_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_GLOBAL_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_GLOBAL_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_loc_local_set_t` `loc_local_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_LOCAL_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_LOCAL_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_property_set_t` `user_property_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_property_set_t` `admin_property_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_SET` &
`ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK`
Chapter 2. API

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_property_set_t manufacturer_property_set`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTY_SET` & `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK`

union `esp_ble_mesh_gen_client_status_cb_t`

#include `<esp_ble_mesh_generic_model_api.h>` Generic Client Model received message union.

**Public Members**

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_onoff_status_cb_t onoff_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONOFF_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_level_status_cb_t level_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_def_trans_time_status_cb_t def_trans_time_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_onpowerup_status_cb_t onpowerup_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ONPOWERUP_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_status_cb_t power_level_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_last_status_cb_t power_last_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LAST_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_default_status_cb_t power_default_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_DEFAULT_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_range_status_cb_t power_range_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_battery_status_cb_t battery_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_BATTERY_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_loc_global_status_cb_t location_global_status`

For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_GLOBAL_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_loc_local_status_cb_t location_local_status`

ESP BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LOC_LOCAL_STATUS

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_properties_status_cb_t user_properties_status`

ESP BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTIES_STATUS

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_property_status_cb_t user_property_status`

ESP BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_STATUS

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_properties_status_cb_t admin_properties_status`

ESP BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTIES_STATUS

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_property_status_cb_t admin_property_status`

ESP BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_STATUS

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_properties_status_cb_t manufacturer_properties_status`

ESP BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTIES_STATUS

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_property_status_cb_t manufacturer_property_status`

ESP BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROPERTY_STATUS

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_client_properties_status_cb_t client_properties_status`

ESP BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_CLIENT_PROPERTIES_STATUS

union `esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_state_change_t`

#include `<esp_ble_mesh_generic_model_api.h>` Generic Server Model state change value union.
Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_onoff_set_t onoff_set

The recv_op in ctx can be used to decide which state is changed. Generic OnOff Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_level_set_t level_set

Generic Level Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_delta_set_t delta_set

Generic Delta Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_move_set_t move_set

Generic Move Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_def_trans_time_set_t def_trans_time_set

Generic Default Transition Time Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_onpowerup_set_t onpowerup_set

Generic OnPowerUp Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_level_set_t power_level_set

Generic Power Level Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_default_set_t power_default_set

Generic Power Default Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_range_set_t power_range_set

Generic Power Range Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_global_set_t loc_global_set

Generic Location Global Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_local_set_t loc_local_set

Generic Location Local Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_user_property_set_t user_property_set

Generic User Property Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_admin_property_set_t admin_property_set

Generic Admin Property Set
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_manu_property_set_t manu_property_set

Generic Manufacturer Property Set
```

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_get_msg_t

#include <esp_ble_mesh_generic_model_api.h> Generic Server Model received get message union. 
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_user_property_get_t user_property

Generic User Property Get
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_admin_property_get_t admin_property

Generic Admin Property Get
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_manufacturer_property_get_t manu_property

Generic Manufacturer Property Get
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_client_properties_get_t client_properties

Generic Client Properties Get
```

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t

#include <esp_ble_mesh_generic_model_api.h> Generic Server Model received set message union. 
```
Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_onoff_set_t onoff
   Generic OnOff Set/Generic OnOff Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_level_set_t level
   Generic Level Set/Generic Level Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_delta_set_t delta
   Generic Delta Set/Generic Delta Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_move_set_t move
   Generic Move Set/Generic Move Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_def_trans_time_set_t def_trans_time
   Generic Default Transition Time Set/Generic Default Transition Time Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_onpowerup_set_t onpowerup
   Generic OnPowerUp Set/Generic OnPowerUp Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_power_level_set_t power_level
   Generic Power Level Set/Generic Power Level Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_power_default_set_t power_default
   Generic Power Default Set/Generic Power Default Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_power_range_set_t power_range
   Generic Power Range Set/Generic Power Range Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_global_set_t location_global
   Generic Location Global Set/Generic Location Global Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_local_set_t location_local
   Generic Location Local Set/Generic Location Local Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_user_property_set_t user_property
   Generic User Property Set/Generic User Property Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_admin_property_set_t admin_property
   Generic Admin Property Set/Generic Admin Property Set Unack
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_manufacturer_property_set_t manu_property
   Generic Manufacturer Property Set/Generic Manufacturer Property Set Unack
```

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_value_t
   #include <esp_ble_mesh_generic_model_api.h> Generic Server Model callback value union.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_state_change_t state_change
   ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_get_msg_t get
   ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_RECV_GET_MSG_EVT
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t set
   ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_RECV_SET_MSG_EVT
```

Structures

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_onoff_set_t
   Bluetooth Mesh Generic Client Model Get and Set parameters structure.
```

Parameters of Generic OnOff Set.
Public Members

bool op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint8_t onoff
  Target value of Generic OnOff state

uint8_t tid
  Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
  Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_level_set_t
  Parameters of Generic Level Set.

Public Members

bool op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included

int16_t level
  Target value of Generic Level state

uint8_t tid
  Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
  Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_delta_set_t
  Parameters of Generic Delta Set.

Public Members

bool op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included

int32_t level
  Delta change of Generic Level state

uint8_t tid
  Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
  Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_move_set_t
  Parameters of Generic Move Set.

Public Members

bool op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included
int16_t delta_level  
Delta Level step to calculate Move speed for Generic Level state

uint8_t tid  
Transaction ID

tUint8_t trans_time  
Time to complete state transition (optional)

tUint8_t delay  
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_def_trans_time_set_t  
Parameter of Generic Default Transition Time Set.

Public Members

uint8_t trans_time  
The value of the Generic Default Transition Time state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_onpowerup_set_t  
Parameter of Generic OnPowerUp Set.

Public Members

uint8_t onpowerup  
The value of the Generic OnPowerUp state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_set_t  
Parameters of Generic Power Level Set.

Public Members

bool op_en  
Indicate if optional parameters are included

tUint16_t power  
Target value of Generic Power Actual state

tUint8_t tid  
Transaction ID

tUint8_t trans_time  
Time to complete state transition (optional)

tUint8_t delay  
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_default_set_t  
Parameter of Generic Power Default Set.

Public Members

uint16_t power  
The value of the Generic Power Default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_range_set_t  
Parameters of Generic Power Range Set.
Public Members

uint16_t range_min
   Value of Range Min field of Generic Power Range state

uint16_t range_max
   Value of Range Max field of Generic Power Range state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_loc_global_set_t
   Parameters of Generic Location Global Set.

Public Members

int32_t global_latitude
   Global Coordinates (Latitude)

int32_t global_longitude
   Global Coordinates (Longitude)

int16_t global_altitude
   Global Altitude

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_loc_local_set_t
   Parameters of Generic Location Local Set.

Public Members

int16_t local_north
   Local Coordinates (North)

int16_t local_east
   Local Coordinates (East)

int16_t local_altitude
   Local Altitude

uint8_t floor_number
   Floor Number

uint16_t uncertainty
   Uncertainty

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_property_get_t
   Parameter of Generic User Property Get.

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
   Property ID identifying a Generic User Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_property_set_t
   Parameters of Generic User Property Set.

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
   Property ID identifying a Generic User Property

struct net_buf_simple *property_value
   Raw value for the User Property
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_property_get_t
Parameter of Generic Admin Property Get.

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a Generic Admin Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_property_set_t
Parameters of Generic Admin Property Set.

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a Generic Admin Property

uint8_t user_access
Enumeration indicating user access

struct net_buf_simple *property_value
Raw value for the Admin Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_property_get_t
Parameter of Generic Manufacturer Property Get.

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a Generic Manufacturer Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_property_set_t
Parameters of Generic Manufacturer Property Set.

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a Generic Manufacturer Property

uint8_t user_access
Enumeration indicating user access

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_client_properties_get_t
Parameter of Generic Client Properties Get.

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
A starting Client Property ID present within an element

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_onoff_status_cb_t
Bluetooth Mesh Generic Client Model Get and Set callback parameters structure.
Parameters of Generic OnOff Status.
Public Members

```c
bool op_en
   Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint8_t present_onoff
   Current value of Generic OnOff state
```

```c
uint8_t target_onoff
   Target value of Generic OnOff state (optional)
```

```c
uint8_t remain_time
   Time to complete state transition (C.1)
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_level_status_cb_t
   Parameters of Generic Level Status.
```

Public Members

```c
bool op_en
   Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
int16_t present_level
   Current value of Generic Level state
```

```c
int16_t target_level
   Target value of the Generic Level state (optional)
```

```c
uint8_t remain_time
   Time to complete state transition (C.1)
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_def_trans_time_status_cb_t
   Parameter of Generic Default Transition Time Status.
```

Public Members

```c
uint8_t trans_time
   The value of the Generic Default Transition Time state
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_onpowerup_status_cb_t
```

Public Members

```c
uint8_t onpowerup
   The value of the Generic OnPowerUp state
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_status_cb_t
   Parameters of Generic Power Level Status.
```

Public Members

```c
bool op_en
   Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint16_t present_power
   Current value of Generic Power Actual state
```

```c
uint16_t target_power
   Target value of Generic Power Actual state (optional)
```
uint8_t \texttt{remain\_time}
Time to complete state transition (C.1)

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power\_last\_status\_cb\_t}
Parameter of Generic Power Last Status.

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{uint16_t \texttt{power}}
The value of the Generic Power Last state

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power\_default\_status\_cb\_t}
Parameter of Generic Power Default Status.

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{uint16_t \texttt{power}}
The value of the Generic Default Last state

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power\_range\_status\_cb\_t}
Parameters of Generic Power Range Status.

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{uint8_t \texttt{status\_code}}
Status Code for the request message

\textbf{uint16_t \texttt{range\_min}}
Value of Range Min field of Generic Power Range state

\textbf{uint16_t \texttt{range\_max}}
Value of Range Max field of Generic Power Range state

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_battery\_status\_cb\_t}
Parameters of Generic Battery Status.

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{uint32_t \texttt{battery\_level} : 8}
Value of Generic Battery Level state

\textbf{uint32_t \texttt{time\_to\_discharge} : 24}
Value of Generic Battery Time to Discharge state

\textbf{uint32_t \texttt{time\_to\_charge} : 24}
Value of Generic Battery Time to Charge state

\textbf{uint32_t \texttt{flags} : 8}
Value of Generic Battery Flags state

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_loc\_global\_status\_cb\_t}
Parameters of Generic Location Global Status.

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{int32_t \texttt{global\_latitude}}
Global Coordinates (Latitude)

\textbf{int32_t \texttt{global\_longitude}}
Global Coordinates (Longitude)
**Chapter 2. API 参考**

```c
int16_t global_altitude
Global Altitude
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_loc_local_status_cb_t**
Parameters of Generic Location Local Status.

**Public Members**

```c
int16_t local_north
Local Coordinates (North)
```

```c
int16_t local_east
Local Coordinates (East)
```

```c
int16_t local_altitude
Local Altitude
```

```c
uint8_t floor_number
Floor Number
```

```c
uint16_t uncertainty
Uncertainty
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_properties_status_cb_t**
Parameter of Generic User Properties Status.

**Public Members**

```c
struct net_buf_simple *property_ids
Buffer contains a sequence of N User Property IDs
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_property_status_cb_t**
Parameters of Generic User Property Status.

**Public Members**

```c
bool op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a Generic User Property
```

```c
uint8_t user_access
Enumeration indicating user access (optional)
```

```c
struct net_buf_simple *property_value
Raw value for the User Property (C.1)
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_properties_status_cb_t**
Parameter of Generic Admin Properties Status.

**Public Members**

```c
struct net_buf_simple *property_ids
Buffer contains a sequence of N Admin Property IDs
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_property_status_cb_t**
Parameters of Generic Admin Property Status.
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

```c
bool op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint16_t property_id
  Property ID identifying a Generic Admin Property
```

```c
uint8_t user_access
  Enumeration indicating user access (optional)
```

```c
struct net_buf_simple *property_value
  Raw value for the Admin Property (C.1)
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_properties_status_cb_t
  Parameter of Generic Manufacturer Properties Status.
```

Public Members

```c
struct net_buf_simple *property_ids
  Buffer contains a sequence of N Manufacturer Property IDs
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_property_status_cb_t
  Parameters of Generic Manufacturer Property Status.
```

Public Members

```c
bool op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint16_t property_id
  Property ID identifying a Generic Manufacturer Property
```

```c
uint8_t user_access
  Enumeration indicating user access (optional)
```

```c
struct net_buf_simple *property_value
  Raw value for the Manufacturer Property (C.1)
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_manufacturer_properties_status_cb_t
  Parameter of Generic Manufacturer Properties Status.
```

Public Members

```c
struct net_buf_simple *property_ids
  Buffer contains a sequence of N Client Property IDs
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_cb_param_t
  Generic Client Model callback parameters
```

Public Members

```c
int error_code
  Appropriate error code
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params
  The client common parameters.
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_gen_client_status_cb_t status_cb
  The generic status message callback values
```
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_onoff_state_t
Parameters of Generic OnOff state

Public Members

uint8_t onoff
The present value of the Generic OnOff state

uint8_t target_onoff
The target value of the Generic OnOff state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_onoff_srv_t
User data of Generic OnOff Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Generic OnOff Server Model. Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
Response control of the server model received messages

esp_ble_mesh_gen_onoff_state_t state
Parameters of the Generic OnOff state

esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t last
Parameters of the last received set message

esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t transition
Parameters of state transition

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_level_state_t
Parameters of Generic Level state

Public Members

int16_t level
The present value of the Generic Level state

int16_t target_level
The target value of the Generic Level state

int16_t last_level
When a new transaction starts, level should be set to last_level, and use “level + incoming delta” to calculate the target level. In another word, “last_level” is used to record “level” of the last transaction, and “last_delta” is used to record the previously received delta_level value. The last value of the Generic Level state

int32_t last_delta
The last delta change of the Generic Level state

bool move_start
Indicate if the transition of the Generic Level state has been started

bool positive
Indicate if the transition is positive or negative

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_level_srv_t
User data of Generic Level Server Model
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
   Pointer to the Generic Level Server Model. Initialized internally.

`esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`
   Response control of the server model received messages

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_level_state_t *state`
   Parameters of the Generic Level state

`esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t *last`
   Parameters of the last received set message

`esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t *transition`
   Parameters of state transition

`int32_t tt_delta_level`
   Delta change value of level state transition

`struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_def_trans_time_state_t`  
   Parameter of Generic Default Transition Time state

Public Members

`uint8_t trans_time`
   The value of the Generic Default Transition Time state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_def_trans_time_srv_t`  
   User data of Generic Default Transition Time Server Model

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
   Pointer to the Generic Default Transition Time Server Model. Initialized internally.

`esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`
   Response control of the server model received messages

`esp_ble_mesh_gen_def_trans_time_state_t *state`
   Parameters of the Generic Default Transition Time state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_onpowerup_state_t`
   Parameter of Generic OnPowerUp state

Public Members

`uint8_t onpowerup`
   The value of the Generic OnPowerUp state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_onoff_srv_t`  
   User data of Generic Power OnOff Server Model

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
   Pointer to the Generic Power OnOff Server Model. Initialized internally.

`esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`
   Response control of the server model received messages
Chapter 2. API

### esp_ble_mesh_gen_onpowerup_state_t
Parameters of the Generic OnPowerUp state

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
  Pointer to the Generic Power OnOff Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

- `esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`
  Response control of the server model received messages

- `esp_ble_mesh_gen_onpowerup_state_t *state`
  Parameters of the Generic OnPowerUp state

### struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_onoff_setup_srv_t
User data of Generic Power OnOff Setup Server Model

### struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_state_t
Parameters of the Generic Power Level state

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t power_actual`
  The present value of the Generic Power Actual state

- `uint16_t target_power_actual`
  The target value of the Generic Power Actual state

- `uint16_t power_last`
  The value of the Generic Power Last state

- `uint16_t power_default`
  The value of the Generic Power Default state

- `uint8_t status_code`
  The status code of setting Generic Power Range state

- `uint16_t power_range_min`
  The minimum value of the Generic Power Range state

- `uint16_t power_range_max`
  The maximum value of the Generic Power Range state

### struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_srv_t
User data of Generic Power Level Server Model

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
  Pointer to the Generic Power Level Server Model. Initialized internally.

- `esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`
  Response control of the server model received messages

- `esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_state_t *state`
  Parameters of the Generic Power Level state

- `esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t last`
  Parameters of the last received set message

- `esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t *transition`
  Parameters of state transition
### Public Members

**int32_t tt_delta_level**
Delta change value of level state transition

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_setup_srv_t**
User data of Generic Power Level Setup Server Model

**Public Members**

**esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model**
Pointer to the Generic Power Level Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

**esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl**
Response control of the server model received messages

**esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_state_t *state**
Parameters of the Generic Power Level state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_battery_state_t**
Parameters of Generic Battery state

**Public Members**

**uint32_t battery_level : 8**
The value of the Generic Battery Level state

**uint32_t time_to_discharge : 24**
The value of the Generic Battery Time to Discharge state

**uint32_t time_to_charge : 24**
The value of the Generic Battery Time to Charge state

**uint32_t battery_flags : 8**
The value of the Generic Battery Flags state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_battery_srv_t**
User data of Generic Battery Server Model

**Public Members**

**esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model**
Pointer to the Generic Battery Server Model. Initialized internally.

**esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl**
Response control of the server model received messages

**esp_ble_mesh_gen_battery_state_t *state**
Parameters of the Generic Battery state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_location_state_t**
Parameters of Generic Location state

**Public Members**

**int32_t global_latitude**
The value of the Global Latitude field

**int32_t global_longitude**
The value of the Global Longitude field

**int16_t global_altitude**
The value of the Global Altitude field
int16_t local_north
The value of the Local North field

int16_t local_east
The value of the Local East field

int16_t local_altitude
The value of the Local Altitude field

uint8_t floor_number
The value of the Floor Number field

uint16_t uncertainty
The value of the Uncertainty field

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_location_srv_t
User data of Generic Location Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Generic Location Server Model. Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
Response control of the server model received messages

esp_ble_mesh_gen_location_state_t *state
Parameters of the Generic Location state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_location_setup_srv_t
User data of Generic Location Setup Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Generic Location Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
Response control of the server model received messages

esp_ble_mesh_gen_location_state_t *state
Parameters of the Generic Location state

struct esp_ble_mesh_generic_property_t
Parameters of Generic Property states

Public Members

uint16_t id
The value of User/Admin/Manufacturer Property ID

uint8_t user_access
The value of User Access field

uint8_t admin_access
The value of Admin Access field

uint8_t manu_access
The value of Manufacturer Access field

struct net_buf_simple *val
The value of User/Admin/Manufacturer Property
struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_prop_srv_t
User data of Generic User Property Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Generic User Property Server Model. Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
Response control of the server model received messages

uint8_t property_count
Generic User Property count

esp_ble_mesh_generic_property_t *properties
Parameters of the Generic User Property state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_prop_srv_t
User data of Generic Admin Property Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Generic Admin Property Server Model. Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
Response control of the server model received messages

uint8_t property_count
Generic Admin Property count

esp_ble_mesh_generic_property_t *properties
Parameters of the Generic Admin Property state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_manu_prop_srv_t
User data of Generic Manufacturer Property Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Generic Manufacturer Property Server Model. Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
Response control of the server model received messages

uint8_t property_count
Generic Manufacturer Property count

esp_ble_mesh_generic_property_t *properties
Parameters of the Generic Manufacturer Property state

struct esp_ble_mesh_gen_client_prop_srv_t
User data of Generic Client Property Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Generic Client Property Server Model.Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
Response control of the server model received messages
Chapter 2. API

uint8_t id_count
  Generic Client Property ID count

uint16_t *property_ids
  Parameters of the Generic Client Property state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_onoff_set_t
  Parameter of Generic OnOff Set state change event

  Public Members

uint8_t onoff
  The value of Generic OnOff state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_level_set_t
  Parameter of Generic Level Set state change event

  Public Members

int16_t level
  The value of Generic Level state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_delta_set_t
  Parameter of Generic Delta Set state change event

  Public Members

int16_t level
  The value of Generic Level state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_move_set_t
  Parameter of Generic Move Set state change event

  Public Members

int16_t level
  The value of Generic Level state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_def_trans_time_set_t
  Parameter of Generic Default Transition Time Set state change event

  Public Members

uint8_t trans_time
  The value of Generic Default Transition Time state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_onpowerup_set_t
  Parameter of Generic OnPowerUp Set state change event

  Public Members

uint8_t onpowerup
  The value of Generic OnPowerUp state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_level_set_t
  Parameter of Generic Power Level Set state change event

  Public Members
Public Members

uint16_t power
The value of Generic Power Actual state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_default_set_t
Parameter of Generic Power Default Set state change event

Public Members

uint16_t power
The value of Generic Power Default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_range_set_t
Parameters of Generic Power Range Set state change event

Public Members

uint16_t range_min
The minimum value of Generic Power Range state
uint16_t range_max
The maximum value of Generic Power Range state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_global_set_t
Parameters of Generic Location Global Set state change event

Public Members

int32_t latitude
The Global Latitude value of Generic Location state
int32_t longitude
The Global Longitude value of Generic Location state
int16_t altitude
The Global Altitude value of Generic Location state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_local_set_t
Parameters of Generic Location Local Set state change event

Public Members

int16_t north
The Local North value of Generic Location state
int16_t east
The Local East value of Generic Location state
int16_t altitude
The Local Altitude value of Generic Location state
uint8_t floor_number
The Floor Number value of Generic Location state
uint16_t uncertainty
The Uncertainty value of Generic Location state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_user_property_set_t
Parameters of Generic User Property Set state change event
Public Members

```
uint16_t id
    The property id of Generic User Property state

struct net_buf_simple *value
    The property value of Generic User Property state
```

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_admin_property_set_t
    Parameters of Generic Admin Property Set state change event
```

Public Members

```
uint16_t id
    The property id of Generic Admin Property state

uint8_t access
    The property access of Generic Admin Property state

struct net_buf_simple *value
    The property value of Generic Admin Property state
```

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_manu_property_set_t
    Parameters of Generic Manufacturer Property Set state change event
```

Public Members

```
uint16_t id
    The property id of Generic Manufacturer Property state

uint8_t access
    The property value of Generic Manufacturer Property state
```

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_user_property_get_t
    Context of the received Generic User Property Get message
```

Public Members

```
uint16_t property_id
    Property ID identifying a Generic User Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_admin_property_get_t
    Context of the received Generic Admin Property Get message
```

Public Members

```
uint16_t property_id
    Property ID identifying a Generic Admin Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_manufacturer_property_get_t
    Context of the received Generic Manufacturer Property message
```

Public Members

```
uint16_t property_id
    Property ID identifying a Generic Manufacturer Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_client_properties_get_t
    Context of the received Generic Client Properties Get message
```
Public Members

`uint16_t property_id`
A starting Client Property ID present within an element

`struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_onoff_set_t`
Context of the received Generic OnOff Set message

Public Members

`bool op_en`
Indicate if optional parameters are included

`uint8_t onoff`
Target value of Generic OnOff state

`uint8_t tid`
Transaction ID

`uint8_t trans_time`
Time to complete state transition (optional)

`uint8_t delay`
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

`struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_level_set_t`
Context of the received Generic Level Set message

Public Members

`bool op_en`
Indicate if optional parameters are included

`int16_t level`
Target value of Generic Level state

`uint8_t tid`
Transaction ID

`uint8_t trans_time`
Time to complete state transition (optional)

`uint8_t delay`
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

`struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_delta_set_t`
Context of the received Generic Delta Set message

Public Members

`bool op_en`
Indicate if optional parameters are included

`int32_t delta_level`
Delta change of Generic Level state

`uint8_t tid`
Transaction ID

`uint8_t trans_time`
Time to complete state transition (optional)
uint8_t delay
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_move_set_t
  Context of the received Generic Move Set message

Public Members

bool op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included

int16_t delta_level
  Delta Level step to calculate Move speed for Generic Level state

uint8_t tid
  Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
  Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_def_trans_time_set_t
  Context of the received Generic Default Transition Time Set message

Public Members

uint8_t trans_time
  The value of the Generic Default Transition Time state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_onpowerup_set_t
  Context of the received Generic OnPowerUp Set message

Public Members

uint8_t onpowerup
  The value of the Generic OnPowerUp state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_power_level_set_t
  Context of the received Generic Power Level Set message

Public Members

bool op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t power
  Target value of Generic Power Actual state

uint8_t tid
  Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
  Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_power_default_set_t
  Context of the received Generic Power Default Set message
Public Members

```c
uint16_t power
```
The value of the Generic Power Default state

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_power_range_set_t
```
Context of the received Generic Power Range Set message

Public Members

```c
uint16_t range_min
```
Value of Range Min field of Generic Power Range state

```c
uint16_t range_max
```
Value of Range Max field of Generic Power Range state

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_global_set_t
```
Context of the received Generic Location Global Set message

Public Members

```c
int32_t global_latitude
```
Global Coordinates (Latitude)

```c
int32_t global_longitude
```
Global Coordinates (Longitude)

```c
int16_t global_altitude
```
Global Altitude

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_local_set_t
```
Context of the received Generic Location Local Set message

Public Members

```c
int16_t local_north
```
Local Coordinates (North)

```c
int16_t local_east
```
Local Coordinates (East)

```c
int16_t local_altitude
```
Local Altitude

```c
uint8_t floor_number
```
Floor Number

```c
uint16_t uncertainty
```
Uncertainty

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_user_property_set_t
```
Context of the received Generic User Property Set message

Public Members

```c
uint16_t property_id
```
Property ID identifying a Generic User Property

```c
struct net_buf_simple *property_value
```
Raw value for the User Property
**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_admin_property_set_t**

Context of the received Generic Admin Property Set message

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t property_id`
  Property ID identifying a Generic Admin Property
- `uint8_t user_access`
  Enumeration indicating user access
- `struct net_buf_simple *property_value`
  Raw value for the Admin Property

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_manufacturer_property_set_t**

Context of the received Generic Manufacturer Property Set message

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t property_id`
  Property ID identifying a Generic Manufacturer Property
- `uint8_t user_access`
  Enumeration indicating user access

**struct esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_param_t**

Generic Server Model callback parameters

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
  Pointer to Generic Server Models
- `esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t ctx`
  Context of the received messages
- `esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_value_t value`
  Value of the received Generic Messages

**Macros**

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_ONOFF_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)

Define a new Generic OnOff Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Generic OnOff Client Model.

**Return** New Generic OnOff Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `cli_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `cli_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_LEVEL_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)

Define a new Generic Level Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Generic Level Client Model.

**Return** New Generic Level Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `cli_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `cli_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`. 
**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)
Define a new Generic Default Transition Time Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Generic Default Transition Time Client Model.

**Return** New Generic Default Transition Time Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_POWER_ONOFF_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)
Define a new Generic Power OnOff Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Generic Power OnOff Client Model.

**Return** New Generic Power OnOff Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)
Define a new Generic Power Level Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Generic Power Level Client Model.

**Return** New Generic Power Level Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_BATTERY_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)
Define a new Generic Battery Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Generic Battery Client Model.

**Return** New Generic Battery Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_LOCATION_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)
Define a new Generic Location Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Generic Location Client Model.

**Return** New Generic Location Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_PROPERTY_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)
Define a new Generic Property Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Generic Property Client Model.

**Return** New Generic Property Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_ONOFF_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)
Generic Server Models related context.

Define a new Generic OnOff Server Model.
Note 1. The Generic OnOff Server Model is a root model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
Return New Generic OnOff Server Model instance.
Parameters
   • srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
   • srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_onoff_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_LEVEL_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Generic Level Server Model.

Note 1. The Generic Level Server Model is a root model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
Return New Generic Level Server Model instance.
Parameters
   • srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
   • srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_level_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Generic Default Transition Time Server Model.

Note 1. The Generic Default Transition Time Server Model is a root model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
Return New Generic Default Transition Time Server Model instance.
Parameters
   • srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
   • srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_def_trans_time_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_POWER_ONOFF_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Generic Power OnOff Server Model.

Note 1. The Generic Power OnOff Server model extends the Generic OnOff Server model. When this model
is present on an element, the corresponding Generic Power OnOff Setup Server model shall also be
present.
   1. This model may be used to represent a variety of devices that do not fit any of the model descriptions
   that have been defined but support the generic properties of On/Off.
   2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
Parameters
   • srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
   • srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_onoff_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_POWER_ONOFF_SETUP_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Generic Power OnOff Setup Server Model.

Note 1. The Generic Power OnOff Setup Server model extends the Generic Power OnOff Server model and
the Generic Default Transition Time Server model.
   1. This model shall support model subscription.
Parameters
   • srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
   • srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_onoff_setup_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Generic Power Level Server Model.

Note 1. The Generic Power Level Server model extends the Generic Power OnOff Server model and the
Generic Level Server model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Generic
Power Level Setup Server model shall also be present.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
Return New Generic Power Level Server Model instance.
Parameters
   • srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
   • srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_srv_t`. 
### Esp BLE Mesh Model Gen Power Level Setup SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Generic Power Level Setup Server Model.

   1. This model shall support model subscription.

**Return** New Generic Power Level Setup Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_power_level_setup_srv_t`.

### Esp BLE Mesh Model Gen Battery SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Generic Battery Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Generic Battery Server Model is a root model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
   2. The model may be used to represent an element that is powered by a battery.

**Return** New Generic Battery Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_battery_srv_t`.

### Esp BLE Mesh Model Gen Location SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Generic Location Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Generic Location Server model is a root model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Generic Location Setup Server model shall also be present.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
   2. The model may be used to represent an element that knows its location (global or local).

**Return** New Generic Location Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_location_srv_t`.

### Esp BLE Mesh Model Gen Location Setup SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Generic Location Setup Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Generic Location Setup Server model extends the Generic Location Server model.
   1. This model shall support model subscription.

**Return** New Generic Location Setup Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_location_setup_srv_t`.

### Esp BLE Mesh Model Gen User Prop SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Generic User Property Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Generic User Property Server model is a root model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.

**Return** New Generic User Property Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_prop_srv_t`.

### Esp BLE Mesh Model Gen Admin Prop SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Generic Admin Property Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Generic Admin Property Server model extends the Generic User Property Server model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.

**Return** New Generic Admin Property Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_prop_srv_t`. 
Chapter 2. API

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_MANUFACTURER_PROP_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Generic Manufacturer Property Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Generic Manufacturer Property Server model extends the Generic User Property Server model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
**Return** New Generic Manufacturer Property Server Model instance.
**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_manu_prop_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GEN_CLIENT_PROP_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Generic User Property Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Generic Client Property Server model is a root model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
**Return** New Generic Client Property Server Model instance.
**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_gen_client_prop_srv_t`.

**Type Definitions**

**typedef** void (*esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_cb_event_t event,
                                                      esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_cb_param_t *param)

Bluetooth Mesh Generic Client Model function.
Generic Client Model callback function type

**Parameters**
- `event`: Event type
- `param`: Pointer to callback parameter

**typedef** void (*esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_event_t event,
                                                      esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_param_t *param)

Bluetooth Mesh Generic Server Model function.
Generic Server Model callback function type

**Parameters**
- `event`: Event type
- `param`: Pointer to callback parameter

**Enumerations**

**enum** esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_cb_event_t
This enum value is the event of Generic Client Model

**Values:**

- `ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_CLIENT_SET_STATE_EVT`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_CLIENT_TIMEOUT_EVT`

**enum** esp_ble_mesh_gen_user_prop_access_t
This enum value is the access value of Generic User Property

**Values:**

- `ESP_BLE_MESH_GEN_USER_ACCESS_PROHIBIT`
Chapter 2. API

```c
enum esp_ble_mesh_gen_admin_prop_access_t
This enum value is the access value of Generic Admin Property
Values:
ESP_BLE_MESH_GEN_ADMIN_NOT_USER_PROP
ESP_BLE_MESH_GEN_ADMIN_ACCESS_READ
ESP_BLE_MESH_GEN_ADMIN_ACCESS_WRITE
ESP_BLE_MESH_GEN_ADMIN_ACCESS_READ_WRITE
```

```c
enum esp_ble_mesh_gen_manu_prop_access_t
This enum value is the access value of Generic Manufacturer Property
Values:
ESP_BLE_MESH_GEN_MANU_NOT_USER_PROP
ESP_BLE_MESH_GEN_MANU_ACCESS_READ
```

```c
enum esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_event_t
This enum value is the event of Generic Server Model
Values:
ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_RECV_GET_MSG_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_RECV_SET_MSG_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_EVT_MAX
```

Sensor Client/Server Models

Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/models/include/esp_ble_mesh_sensor_model_api.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_sensor_client_callback(esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_cb_t callback)
```

Register BLE Mesh Sensor Client Model callback.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- (in) `callback`: Pointer to the callback function.
**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_get_state** (\*params, \*get_state)

Get the value of Sensor Server Model states using the Sensor Client Model get messages.

**Note** If you want to know the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_sensor_message_opcode_tinesp_ble_mesh_defs.h

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- \[in\] params: Pointer to BLE Mesh common client parameters.
- \[in\] get_state: Pointer to sensor get message value. Shall not be set to NULL.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_set_state** (\*params, \*set_state)

Set the value of Sensor Server Model states using the Sensor Client Model set messages.

**Note** If you want to know the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_sensor_message_opcode_tinesp_ble_mesh_defs.h

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- \[in\] params: Pointer to BLE Mesh common client parameters.
- \[in\] set_state: Pointer to sensor set message value. Shall not be set to NULL.

**esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_sensor_server_callback** (callback)

Register BLE Mesh Sensor Server Model callback.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- \[in\] callback: Pointer to the callback function.

**Unions**

union esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_get_state_t

```c
#include <esp_ble_mesh_sensor_model_api.h> Sensor Client Model get message union.
```

**Public Members**

- **esp_ble_mesh_sensor_descriptor_get_t** descriptor_get
  For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_GET

- **esp_ble_mesh_sensor_cadence_get_t** cadence_get
  For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_GET

- **esp_ble_mesh_sensor_settings_get_t** settings_get
  For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTINGS_GET

- **esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setting_get_t** setting_get
  For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_GET

- **esp_ble_mesh_sensor_set_t** sensor_get
  For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_GET

- **esp_ble_mesh_sensor_column_get_t** column_get
  For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_COLUMN_GET

- **esp_ble_mesh_sensor_series_get_t** series_get
  For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SERIES_GET

union esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_set_state_t

```c
#include <esp_ble_mesh_sensor_model_api.h> Sensor Client Model set message union.
```
Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_cadence_set_t cadence_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_SET` & `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_SET_UNACK`

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setting_set_t setting_set`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_SET` & `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_SET_UNACK`

union `esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_status_cb_t`
#include <esp_ble_mesh_sensor_model_api.h> Sensor Client Model received message union.

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_descriptor_status_cb_t descriptor_status`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_cadence_status_cb_t cadence_status`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_settings_status_cb_t settings_status`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTINGS_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setting_status_cb_t setting_status`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_status_cb_t sensor_status`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_column_status_cb_t column_status`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_COLUMN_STATUS`

`esp_ble_mesh_sensor_series_status_cb_t series_status`
For `ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SERIES_STATUS`

union `esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_state_change_t`
#include <esp_ble_mesh_sensor_model_api.h> Sensor Server Model state change value union.

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_state_change_sensor_cadence_set_t sensor_cadence_set`
The `recv_op` in `ctx` can be used to decide which state is changed. Sensor Cadence Set

`esp_ble_mesh_state_change_sensor_setting_set_t sensor_setting_set`
Sensor Setting Set

union `esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_recv_get_msg_t`
#include <esp_ble_mesh_sensor_model_api.h> Sensor Server Model received get message union.

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_descriptor_get_t sensor_descriptor`
Sensor Descriptor Get

`esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_cadence_get_t sensor_cadence`
Sensor Cadence Get

`esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_settings_get_t sensor_settings`
Sensor Settings Get

`esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_setting_get_t sensor_setting`
Sensor Setting Get
Chapter 2. API

### Public Members

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_recv_set_msg_t
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_sensor_model_api.h> Sensor Server Model received set message union.
```

#### Public Members

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_recv_set_msg_t
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_sensor_model_api.h> Sensor Server Model callback value union.
```

#### Structures

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_descriptor_get_t
    Bluetooth Mesh Sensor Client Model Get and Set parameters structure.
```

#### Structures

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_cadence_get_t
    Parameters of Sensor Cadence Get
```

#### Structures

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_cadence_set_t
    Parameters of Sensor Cadence Set
```

---

Espressif Systems 441
Submit Document Feedback
Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Public Members

uint16_t property_id
   Property ID for the sensor

uint8_t fast_cadence_period_divisor : 7
   Divisor for the publish period

uint8_t status_trigger_type : 1
   The unit and format of the Status Trigger Delta fields

struct net_buf_simple *status_trigger_delta_down
   Delta down value that triggers a status message

struct net_buf_simple *status_trigger_delta_up
   Delta up value that triggers a status message

uint8_t status_min_interval
   Minimum interval between two consecutive Status messages

struct net_buf_simple *fast_cadence_low
   Low value for the fast cadence range

struct net_buf_simple *fast_cadence_high
   Fast value for the fast cadence range

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_settings_get_t
   Parameter of Sensor Settings Get

Public Members

uint16_t sensor_property_id
   Property ID of a sensor

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setting_get_t
   Parameters of Sensor Setting Get

Public Members

uint16_t sensor_property_id
   Property ID of a sensor

uint16_t sensor_setting_property_id
   Setting ID identifying a setting within a sensor

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setting_set_t
   Parameters of Sensor Setting Set

Public Members

uint16_t sensor_property_id
   Property ID identifying a sensor

uint16_t sensor_setting_property_id
   Setting ID identifying a setting within a sensor

struct net_buf_simple *sensor_setting_raw
   Raw value for the setting

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_get_t
   Parameters of Sensor Get
Public Members

bool op_en
   Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t property_id
   Property ID for the sensor (optional)

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_column_get_t
   Parameters of Sensor Column Get

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
   Property identifying a sensor

struct net_buf_simple *raw_value_x
   Raw value identifying a column

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_series_get_t
   Parameters of Sensor Series Get

Public Members

bool op_en
   Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t property_id
   Property identifying a sensor

struct net_buf_simple *raw_value_x1
   Raw value identifying a starting column (optional)

struct net_buf_simple *raw_value_x2
   Raw value identifying an ending column (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_descriptor_status_cb_t
   Bluetooth Mesh Sensor Client Model Get and Set callback parameters structure.

   Parameter of Sensor Descriptor Status

Public Members

struct net_buf_simple *descriptor
   Sequence of 8-octet sensor descriptors (optional)

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_cadence_status_cb_t
   Parameters of Sensor Cadence Status

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
   Property for the sensor

struct net_buf_simple *sensor_cadence_value
   Value of sensor cadence state

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_settings_status_cb_t
   Parameters of Sensor Settings Status
Public Members

```c
uint16_t sensor_property_id
    Property ID identifying a sensor

struct net_buf_simple *sensor_setting_property_ids
    A sequence of N sensor setting property IDs (optional)
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setting_status_cb_t
    Parameters of Sensor Setting Status
```

```c
bool op_en
    Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t sensor_property_id
    Property ID identifying a sensor

uint16_t sensor_setting_property_id
    Setting ID identifying a setting within a sensor

uint8_t sensor_setting_access
    Read/Write access rights for the setting (optional)

struct net_buf_simple *sensor_setting_raw
    Raw value for the setting
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_status_cb_t
    Parameter of Sensor Status
```

```c
struct net_buf_simple *marshalled_sensor_data
    Value of sensor data state (optional)
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_column_status_cb_t
    Parameters of Sensor Column Status
```

```c
uint16_t property_id
    Property identifying a sensor and the Y axis

struct net_buf_simple *sensor_column_value
    Left values of sensor column status
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_series_status_cb_t
    Parameters of Sensor Series Status
```

```c
uint16_t property_id
    Property identifying a sensor and the Y axis

struct net_buf_simple *sensor_series_value
    Left values of sensor series status
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_cb_param_t
    Sensor Client Model callback parameters
```
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

```c
int error_code
```
0: success, otherwise failure. For the error code values please refer to errno.h file. A negative sign is added to the standard error codes in errno.h.

```c
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params
```
The client common parameters.

```c
esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_status_cb_t status_cb
```
The sensor status message callback values

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_descriptor_t
```
Parameters of Sensor Descriptor state

Public Members

```c
uint32_t positive_tolerance : 12
```
The value of Sensor Positive Tolerance field

```c
uint32_t negative_tolerance : 12
```
The value of Sensor Negative Tolerance field

```c
uint32_t sampling_function : 8
```
The value of Sensor Sampling Function field

```c
uint8_t measure_period
```
The value of Sensor Measurement Period field

```c
uint8_t update_interval
```
The value of Sensor Update Interval field

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setting_t
```
Parameters of Sensor Setting state

Public Members

```c
uint16_t property_id
```
The value of Sensor Setting Property ID field

```c
uint8_t access
```
The value of Sensor Setting Access field

```c
struct net_buf_simple *raw
```
The value of Sensor Setting Raw field

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_cadence_t
```
Parameters of Sensor Cadence state

Public Members

```c
uint8_t period_divisor : 7
```
The value of Fast Cadence Period Divisor field

```c
uint8_t trigger_type : 1
```
The value of Status Trigger Type field

```c
struct net_buf_simple *trigger_delta_down
```
Note: The parameter “size” in trigger_delta_down, trigger_delta_up, fast_cadence_low & fast_cadence_high indicates the exact length of these four parameters, and they are associated with the Sensor Property ID. Users need to initialize the “size” precisely. The value of Status Trigger Delta Down field
struct net_buf_simple *trigger_delta_up
  The value of Status Trigger Delta Up field

uint8_t min_interval
  The value of Status Min Interval field

struct net_buf_simple *fast_cadence_low
  The value of Fast Cadence Low field

struct net_buf_simple *fast_cadence_high
  The value of Fast Cadence High field

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_data_t
  Parameters of Sensor Data state

Public Members

uint8_t format : 1
  Format A: The Length field is a 1-based uint4 value (valid range 0x0–0xF, representing range of 1–16).
  Format B: The Length field is a 1-based uint7 value (valid range 0x0–0x7F, representing range of 1–127). The value 0x7F represents a length of zero. The value of the Sensor Data format

uint8_t length : 7
  The value of the Sensor Data length

struct net_buf_simple *raw_value
  The value of Sensor Data raw value

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_series_column_t
  Parameters of Sensor Series Column state

Public Members

struct net_buf_simple *raw_value_x
  The value of Sensor Raw Value X field

struct net_buf_simple *column_width
  The value of Sensor Column Width field

struct net_buf_simple *raw_value_y
  The value of Sensor Raw Value Y field

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_state_t
  Parameters of Sensor states

Public Members

uint16_t sensor_property_id
  The value of Sensor Property ID field

esp_ble_mesh_sensor_descriptor_t descriptor
  Parameters of the Sensor Descriptor state

const uint8_t setting_count
  Multiple Sensor Setting states may be present for each sensor. The Sensor Setting Property ID values shall be unique for each Sensor Property ID that identifies a sensor within an element.

esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setting_t *settings
  Parameters of the Sensor Setting state
**Chapter 2. API**

*esp_ble_mesh_sensor_cadence_t* \*cadence

The Sensor Cadence state may be not supported by sensors based on device properties referencing “non-scalar characteristics” such as “histograms” or “composite characteristics”. Parameters of the Sensor Cadence state

*esp_ble_mesh_sensor_data_t* \*sensor_data

Parameters of the Sensor Data state

*esp_ble_mesh_sensor_series_column_t* \*series_column

Parameters of the Sensor Series Column state

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_srv_t
User data of Sensor Server Model
```

**Public Members**

*esp_ble_mesh_model_t* \*model

Pointer to the Sensor Server Model. Initialized internally.

*esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t* \*rsp_ctrl

Response control of the server model received messages

```c
const uint8_t state_count
Sensor state count
```

*esp_ble_mesh_sensor_state_t* \*states

Parameters of the Sensor states

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setup_srv_t
User data of Sensor Setup Server Model
```

**Public Members**

*esp_ble_mesh_model_t* \*model

Pointer to the Sensor Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

*esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t* \*rsp_ctrl

Response control of the server model received messages

```c
const uint8_t state_count
Sensor state count
```

*esp_ble_mesh_sensor_state_t* \*states

Parameters of the Sensor states

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_sensor_cadence_set_t
Parameters of Sensor Cadence Set state change event
```

**Public Members**

*uint16_t* property_id

The value of Sensor Property ID state

*uint8_t* period_divisor : 7

The value of Fast Cadence Period Divisor state

*uint8_t* trigger_type : 1

The value of Status Trigger Type state

```c
struct net_buf_simple *trigger_delta_down
The value of Status Trigger Delta Down state
```
The value of Status Trigger Delta Up state

The value of Status Min Interval state

The value of Fast Cadence Low state

The value of Fast Cadence High state

Parameters of Sensor Setting Set state change event

The value of Sensor Property ID state

The value of Sensor Setting Property ID state

The value of Sensor Property Value state

Context of the received Sensor Descriptor Get message

Indicate if optional parameters are included

Property ID of a sensor (optional)

Context of the received Sensor Cadence Get message

Property ID of a sensor

Context of the received Sensor Settings Get message

Property ID of a sensor

Context of the received Sensor Setting Get message
Public Members

```c
uint16_t property_id
    Property ID of a sensor
```

```c
uint16_t setting_property_id
    Setting ID identifying a setting within a sensor
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_get_t**
Context of the received Sensor Get message

Public Members

```c
bool op_en
    Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint16_t property_id
    Property ID for the sensor (optional)
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_column_get_t**
Context of the received Sensor Column Get message

Public Members

```c
uint16_t property_id
    Property identifying a sensor
```

```c
struct net_buf_simple *raw_value_x
    Raw value identifying a column
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_series_get_t**
Context of the received Sensor Series Get message

Public Members

```c
bool op_en
    Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint16_t property_id
    Property identifying a sensor
```

```c
struct net_buf_simple *raw_value
    Raw value containing X1 and X2 (optional)
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_cadence_set_t**
Context of the received Sensor Cadence Set message

Public Members

```c
uint16_t property_id
    Property ID for the sensor
```

```c
struct net_buf_simple *cadence
    Value of Sensor Cadence state
```

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_setting_set_t**
Context of the received Sensor Setting Set message
Chapter 2. API Reference

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a sensor

uint16_t setting_property_id
Setting ID identifying a setting within a sensor

struct net_buf_simple *setting_raw
Raw value for the setting

struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_cb_param_t
Sensor Server Model callback parameters

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to Sensor Server Models

esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t ctx
Context of the received messages

esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_cb_value_t value
Value of the received Sensor Messages

Macros

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SENSOR_CLI (cli_pub, cli_data)
Define a new Sensor Client Model.

Note: This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Sensor Client Model.

Return: New Sensor Client Model instance.

Parameters:
  • cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t.
  • cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_client_t.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SENSOR_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Sensor Server Models related context.

Define a new Sensor Server Model.

Note: 1. The Sensor Server model is a root model. When this model is present on an element, the corresponding Sensor Setup Server model shall also be present.
  1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.


Parameters:
  • srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t.
  • srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_srv_t.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SENSOR_SETUP_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Sensor Setup Server Model.

Note: 1. The Sensor Setup Server model extends the Sensor Server model.
  1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.


Parameters:
  • srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t.
  • srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_sensor_setup_srv_t.

ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SENSOR_PROPERTY_ID
Invalid Sensor Property ID

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_PROPERTY_ID_LEN
Length of Sensor Property ID
ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_LEN
    Length of Sensor Descriptor state

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_UNSPECIFIED_POS_TOLERANCE
    Unspecified Sensor Positive Tolerance

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_UNSPECIFIED_NEG_TOLERANCE
    Unspecified Sensor Negative Tolerance

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_NOT_APPL_MEASURE_PERIOD
    Not applicable Sensor Measurement Period

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_NOT_APPL_UPDATE_INTERVAL
    Not applicable Sensor Update Interval

ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SENSOR_SETTING_PROPERTY_ID
    Invalid Sensor Setting Property ID

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SETTING_PROPERTY_ID_LEN
    Length of Sensor Setting Property ID

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SETTING_ACCESS_LEN
    Length of Sensor Setting Access

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SETTING_ACCESS_READ
    Sensor Setting Access - Read

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SETTING_ACCESS_READ_WRITE
    Sensor Setting Access - Read & Write

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DIVISOR_TRIGGER_TYPE_LEN
    Length of Sensor Divisor Trigger Type

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_STATUS_MIN_INTERVAL_LEN
    Length of Sensor Status Min Interval

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_PERIOD_DIVISOR_MAX_VALUE
    Maximum value of Sensor Period Divisor

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_STATUS_MIN_INTERVAL_MAX
    Maximum value of Sensor Status Min Interval

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_STATUS_TRIGGER_TYPE_CHAR
    Sensor Status Trigger Type - Format Type of the characteristic that the Sensor Property ID state references

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_STATUS_TRIGGER_TYPE_UINT16
    Sensor Status Trigger Type - Format Type “uint16”

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DATA_FORMAT_A
    Sensor Data Format A

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DATA_FORMAT_B
    Sensor Data Format B

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DATA_FORMAT_A_MPID_LEN
    MPID length of Sensor Data Format A

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DATA_FORMAT_B_MPID_LEN
    MPID length of Sensor Data Format B

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DATA_ZERO_LEN
    Zero length of Sensor Data.

    Note: The Length field is a 1-based uint7 value (valid range 0x0-0x7F, representing range of 1-127). The value 0x7F represents a length of zero.

ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_SENSOR_DATA_FORMAT(_data)
    Get format of the sensor data.
Note Multiple sensor data may be concatenated. Make sure the _data pointer is updated before getting the format of the corresponding sensor data.

Return Format of the sensor data.

Parameters
- _data: Pointer to the start of the sensor data.

ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_SENSOR_DATA_LENGTH (_data, _fmt)
Get length of the sensor data.

Note Multiple sensor data may be concatenated. Make sure the _data pointer is updated before getting the length of the corresponding sensor data.

Return Length (zero-based) of the sensor data.

Parameters
- _data: Pointer to the start of the sensor data.
- _fmt: Format of the sensor data.

ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_SENSOR_DATA_PROPERTY_ID (_data, _fmt)
Get Sensor Property ID of the sensor data.

Note Multiple sensor data may be concatenated. Make sure the _data pointer is updated before getting Sensor Property ID of the corresponding sensor data.

Return Sensor Property ID of the sensor data.

Parameters
- _data: Pointer to the start of the sensor data.
- _fmt: Format of the sensor data.

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DATA_FORMAT_A_MPID (_len, _id)
Generate a MPID value for sensor data with Format A.

Note
1. The Format field is 0b0 and indicates that Format A is used.
   1. The Length field is a 1-based uint4 value (valid range 0x0–0xF, representing range of 1–16).
   2. The Property ID is an 11-bit bit field representing 11 LSb of a Property ID.
   3. This format may be used for Property Values that are not longer than 16 octets and for Property IDs less than 0x0800.

Return 2-octet MPID value for sensor data with Format A.

Parameters
- _len: Length of Sensor Raw value.
- _id: Sensor Property ID.

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_DATA_FORMAT_B_MPID (_len, _id)
Generate a MPID value for sensor data with Format B.

Note
1. The Format field is 0b1 and indicates Format B is used.
   1. The Length field is a 1-based uint7 value (valid range 0x0–0x7F, representing range of 1–127). The value 0x7F represents a length of zero.
   2. The Property ID is a 16-bit bit field representing a Property ID.
   3. This format may be used for Property Values not longer than 128 octets and for any Property IDs. Property values longer than 128 octets are not supported by the Sensor Status message.
   4. Exclude the generated 1-octet value, the 2-octet Sensor Property ID

Return 3-octet MPID value for sensor data with Format B.

Parameters
- _len: Length of Sensor Raw value.
- _id: Sensor Property ID.

Type Definitions

typedef void (*esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_cb_event_t event, esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_cb_param_t *param)

Bluetooth Mesh Sensor Client Model function.

Sensor Client Model callback function type

Parameters
typedef void (*esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_cb_t)(esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_cb_event_t event, esp_ble_mesh_sensor_server_cb_param_t *param)

Bluetooth Mesh Sensor Server Model function.

Sensor Server Model callback function type

Parameters
- event: Event type
- param: Pointer to callback parameter

Enumerations

enum esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_cb_event_t
This enum value is the event of Sensor Client Model

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_CLIENT_SET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_CLIENT_TIMEOUT_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_CLIENT_EVT_MAX

enum esp_ble_mesh_sensor_sample_func
This enum value is value of Sensor Sampling Function

Values:

ESP_BLE_MESH_SAMPLE_FUNC_UNSPECIFIED
ESP_BLE_MESH_SAMPLE_FUNC_INSTANTANEOUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_SAMPLE_FUNC_ARITHMETIC_MEAN
ESP_BLE_MESH_SAMPLE_FUNC_RMS
ESP_BLE_MESH_SAMPLE_FUNC_MAXIMUM
ESP_BLE_MESH_SAMPLE_FUNC_MINIMUM
ESP_BLE_MESH_SAMPLE_FUNC_ACCUMULATED
ESP_BLE_MESH_SAMPLE_FUNC_COUNT

default: When get_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_AUTO_RSP, no event will be callback to the application layer when Sensor Get messages are received.

2. When set_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_AUTO_RSP, this event will be callback to the application layer when Sensor Set/Set Unack messages are received.

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SERVER_RECV_GET_MSG_EVT
When get_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP, this event will be callback to the application layer when Sensor Get messages are received.

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SERVER_RECV_SET_MSG_EVT
When set_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP, this event will be callback to the application layer when Sensor Set/Set Unack messages are received.

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SERVER_EVT_MAX
Time and Scenes Client/Server Models

Header File

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/models/include/esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h

Functions

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_time_scene_client_callback(esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_cb_t callback)`

Register BLE Mesh Time Scene Client Model callback.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** callback: Pointer to the callback function.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_get_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params, esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_get_state_t *get_state)`

Get the value of Time Scene Server Model states using the Time Scene Client Model get messages.

**Note** If you want to know the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_message_opcode_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** params: Pointer to BLE Mesh common client parameters.
- **[in]** get_state: Pointer to time scene get message value. Shall not be set to NULL.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_set_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params, esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_set_state_t *set_state)`

Set the value of Time Scene Server Model states using the Time Scene Client Model set messages.

**Note** If you want to know the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_message_opcode_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** params: Pointer to BLE Mesh common client parameters.
- **[in]** set_state: Pointer to time scene set message value. Shall not be set to NULL.

`esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_time_scene_server_callback(esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_cb_t callback)`

Register BLE Mesh Time and Scenes Server Model callback.

**Return** ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** callback: Pointer to the callback function.

Unions

`union esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_get_state_t` #include <esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h> Time Scene Client Model get message union.

Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_act_get_t scheduler_act_get`  
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_GET

`union esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_set_state_t` #include <esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h> Time Scene Client Model set message union.
Public Members

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_time_set_t time_set
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_SET

union esp_ble_mesh_time_zone_set_t time_zone_set
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ZONE_SET

union esp_ble_mesh_tai_utc_delta_set_t tai_utc_delta_set
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TAI_UTC_DELTA_SET

union esp_ble_mesh_time_role_set_t time_role_set
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_SET

union esp_ble_mesh_scene_store_t scene_store
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STORE & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STORE_UNACK

union esp_ble_mesh_scene_recall_t scene_recall
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_RECALL & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_RECALL_UNACK

union esp_ble_mesh_scene_delete_t scene_delete
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_DELETE & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_DELETE_UNACK

union esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_act_set_t scheduler_act_set
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_SET_UNACK

union esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_status_cb_t
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h> Time Scene Client Model received message union.

Public Members

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_time_status_cb_t time_status
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_STATUS

union esp_ble_mesh_time_zone_status_cb_t time_zone_status
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ZONE_STATUS

union esp_ble_mesh_tai_utc_delta_status_cb_t tai_utc_delta_status
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TAI_UTC_DELTA_STATUS

union esp_ble_mesh_time_role_status_cb_t time_role_status
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_STATUS

union esp_ble_mesh_scene_status_cb_t scene_status
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STATUS

union esp_ble_mesh_scene_register_status_cb_t scene_register_status
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_REGISTER_STATUS

union esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_status_cb_t scheduler_status
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_STATUS

union esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_act_status_cb_t scheduler_act_status
    For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_STATUS

union esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_state_change_t
    #include <esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h> Time Scene Server Model state change value union.

Public Members

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_state_change_time_set_t time_set
    The recv_op in ctx can be used to decide which state is changed. Time Set
```
Chapter 2. API Reference

```
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_time_status_t time_status
Time Status

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_time_zone_set_t time_zone_set
Time Zone Set

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_tai_utc_delta_set_t tai_utc_delta_set
TAI UTC Delta Set

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_time_role_set_t time_role_set
Time Role Set

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_scene_store_t scene_store
Scene Store

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_scene_recall_t scene_recall
Scene Recall

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_scene_delete_t scene_delete
Scene Delete

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_scheduler_act_set_t scheduler_act_set
Scheduler Action Set

union esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_recv_get_msg_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h> Time Scene Server Model received get message union.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scheduler_act_get_t scheduler_act
Scheduler Action Get

union esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_recv_set_msg_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h> Time Scene Server Model received set message union.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_time_set_t time
Time Set

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_time_zone_set_t time_zone
Time Zone Set

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_tai_utc_delta_set_t tai_utc_delta
TAI-UTC Delta Set

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_time_role_set_t time_role
Time Role Set

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scene_store_t scene_store
Scene Store/Scene Store Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scene_recall_t scene_recall
Scene Recall/Scene Recall Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scene_delete_t scene_delete
Scene Delete/Scene Delete Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scheduler_act_set_t scheduler_act
Scheduler Action Set/Scheduler Action Set Unack

union esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_recv_status_msg_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h> Time Scene Server Model received status message union.
```
Chapter 2. API Reference

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_time_status_t time_status
```
Time Status

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_cb_value_t
```
#include <esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_model_api.h> Time Scene Server Model callback value union.

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_state_change_t state_change
ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_recv_get_msg_t get
ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_RECV_GET_MSG_EVT
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_recv_set_msg_t set
ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_RECV_SET_MSG_EVT
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_recv_status_msg_t status
ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_RECV_STATUS_MSG_EVT
```

Structures

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_time_set_t
```
Bluetooth Mesh Time Scene Client Model Get and Set parameters structure.

Parameters of Time Set

Public Members

```c
uint8_t tai_seconds[5]
```
The current TAI time in seconds

```c
uint8_t sub_second
```
The sub-second time in units of 1/256 second

```c
uint8_t uncertainty
```
The estimated uncertainty in 10-millisecond steps

```c
uint16_t time_authority = 1
0 = No Time Authority, 1 = Time Authority
```

```c
uint16_t tai_utc_delta = 15
```
The current difference between TAI and UTC in seconds

```c
uint8_t time_zone_offset
```
The local time zone offset in 15-minute increments

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_time_zone_set_t
```
Parameters of Time Zone Set

Public Members

```c
uint8_t time_zone_offset_new
```
Upcoming local time zone offset

```c
uint8_t tai_zone_change[5]
```
TAI Seconds time of the upcoming Time Zone Offset change

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_tai_utc_delta_set_t
```
Parameters of TAI-UTC Delta Set
### Public Members

**uint16_t** `tai_utc_delta_new`: 15  
Upcoming difference between TAI and UTC in seconds

**uint16_t** `padding`: 1  
Always 0b0. Other values are Prohibited.

**uint8_t** `tai_delta_change[5]`  
TAI Seconds time of the upcoming TAI-UTC Delta change

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_time_role_set_t
Parameter of Time Role Set
```

### Public Members

**uint8_t** `time_role`  
The Time Role for the element

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_time_role_set_t
Parameter of Time Role Set
```

### Public Members

**uint16_t** `scene_number`  
The number of scenes to be stored

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_scene_store_t
Parameter of Scene Store
```

### Public Members

**bool** `op_en`  
Indicate if optional parameters are included

**uint16_t** `scene_number`  
The number of scenes to be recalled

**uint8_t** `tid`  
Transaction ID

**uint8_t** `trans_time`  
Time to complete state transition (optional)

**uint8_t** `delay`  
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_scene_delete_t
Parameter of Scene Delete
```

### Public Members

**uint16_t** `scene_number`  
The number of scenes to be deleted

```
struct esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_act_get_t
Parameter of Scheduler Action Get
```
**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t index
```
Index of the Schedule Register entry to get

**struct esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_act_set_t**
Parameters of Scheduler Action Set

**Public Members**

```c
uint64_t index : 4
```
Index of the Schedule Register entry to set

```c
uint64_t year : 7
```
Scheduled year for the action

```c
uint64_t month : 12
```
Scheduled month for the action

```c
uint64_t day : 5
```
Scheduled day of the month for the action

```c
uint64_t hour : 5
```
Scheduled hour for the action

```c
uint64_t minute : 6
```
Scheduled minute for the action

```c
uint64_t second : 6
```
Scheduled second for the action

```c
uint64_t day_of_week : 7
```
Schedule days of the week for the action

```c
uint64_t action : 4
```
Action to be performed at the scheduled time

```c
uint64_t trans_time : 8
```
Transition time for this action

```c
uint16_t scene_number
```
Transition time for this action

**struct esp_ble_mesh_time_status_cb_t**
Bluetooth Mesh Time Scene Client Model Get and Set callback parameters structure.

Parameters of Time Status

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t tai_seconds[5]
```
The current TAI time in seconds

```c
uint8_t sub_second
```
The sub-second time in units of 1/256 second

```c
uint8_t uncertainty
```
The estimated uncertainty in 10-millisecond steps

```c
uint16_t time_authority : 1
```
`0 = No Time Authority, 1 = Time Authority`

```c
uint16_t tai_utc_delta : 15
```
Current difference between TAI and UTC in seconds


```c
uint8_t time_zone_offset
    The local time zone offset in 15-minute increments
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_time_zone_status_cb_t
    Parameters of Time Zone Status
```

### Public Members

```c
uint8_t time_zone_offset_curr
    Current local time zone offset
```

```c
uint8_t time_zone_offset_new
    Upcoming local time zone offset
```

```c
uint8_t tai_zone_change[5]
    TAI Second time of the upcoming Time Zone Offset change
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_tai_utc_delta_status_cb_t
    Parameters of TAI-UTC Delta Status
```

### Public Members

```c
uint16_t tai_utc_delta_curr : 15
    Current difference between TAI and UTC in seconds
```

```c
uint16_t padding_1 : 1
    Always 0b0. Other values are Prohibited.
```

```c
uint16_t tai_utc_delta_new : 15
    Upcoming difference between TAI and UTC in seconds
```

```c
uint16_t padding_2 : 1
    Always 0b0. Other values are Prohibited.
```

```c
uint8_t tai_delta_change[5]
    TAI Seconds time of the upcoming TAI-UTC Delta change
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_time_role_status_cb_t
    Parameter of Time Role Status
```

### Public Members

```c
uint8_t time_role
    The Time Role for the element
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_scene_status_cb_t
    Parameters of Scene Status
```

### Public Members

```c
bool op_en
    Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint8_t status_code
    Status code of the last operation
```

```c
uint16_t current_scene
    Scene Number of the current scene
```

```c
uint16_t target_scene
    Scene Number of the target scene (optional)
```
uint8_t \texttt{remain\_time} \\
Time to complete state transition (C.1)

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_scene\_register\_status\_cb\_t} \\
Parameters of Scene Register Status

\textbf{Public Members} \\
\begin{itemize}
\item uint8_t \texttt{status\_code} \\
Status code for the previous operation
\item uint16_t \texttt{current\_scene} \\
Scene Number of the current scene
\item \textbf{struct} net\_buf\_simple *\texttt{scenes} \\
A list of scenes stored within an element
\end{itemize}

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_scheduler\_status\_cb\_t} \\
Parameter of Scheduler Status

\textbf{Public Members} \\
\begin{itemize}
\item uint16_t \texttt{schedules} \\
Bit field indicating defined Actions in the Schedule Register
\end{itemize}

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_scheduler\_act\_status\_cb\_t} \\
Parameters of Scheduler Action Status

\textbf{Public Members} \\
\begin{itemize}
\item uint64_t \texttt{index} : 4 \\
Enumerates (selects) a Schedule Register entry
\item uint64_t \texttt{year} : 7 \\
Scheduled year for the action
\item uint64_t \texttt{month} : 12 \\
Scheduled month for the action
\item uint64_t \texttt{day} : 5 \\
Scheduled day of the month for the action
\item uint64_t \texttt{hour} : 5 \\
Scheduled hour for the action
\item uint64_t \texttt{minute} : 6 \\
Scheduled minute for the action
\item uint64_t \texttt{second} : 6 \\
Scheduled second for the action
\item uint64_t \texttt{day\_of\_week} : 7 \\
Schedule days of the week for the action
\item uint64_t \texttt{action} : 4 \\
Action to be performed at the scheduled time
\item uint64_t \texttt{trans\_time} : 8 \\
Transition time for this action
\item uint16_t \texttt{scene\_number} \\
Transition time for this action
\end{itemize}
**struct esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_cb_param_t**  
Time Scene Client Model callback parameters

**Public Members**

- `int error_code`: Appropriate error code
- `esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params`: The client common parameters.
- `esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_status_cb_t status_cb`: The scene status message callback values

**struct esp_ble_mesh_time_state_t**  
Parameters of Time state

**Public Members**

- `uint8_t tai_seconds[5]`: The value of the TAI Seconds state
- `uint8_t subsecond`: The value of the Subsecond field
- `uint8_t uncertainty`: The value of the Uncertainty field
- `uint8_t time_zone_offset_curr`: The value of the Time Zone Offset Current field
- `uint8_t time_zone_offset_new`: The value of the Time Zone Offset New state
- `uint8_t tai_zone_change[5]`: The value of the TAI of Zone Chaneg field
- `uint16_t time_authority`: The value of the Time Authority bit
- `uint16_t tai_utc_delta_curr`: The value of the TAI-UTC Delta Current state
- `uint16_t tai_utc_delta_new`: The value of the TAI-UTC Delta New state
- `uint8_t tai_delta_change[5]`: The value of the TAI of Delta Change field

**struct esp_ble_mesh_time_state_t::[anonymous] time**  
Parameters of the Time state

- `uint8_t time_role`: The value of the Time Role state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_time_srv_t**  
User data of Time Server Model

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`: Pointer to the Time Server Model. Initialized internally.
**Chapter 2. API**

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
```

Response control of the server model received messages

```c
esp_ble_mesh_time_state_t *state
```

Parameters of the Time state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_time_setup_srv_t**

User data of Time Setup Server Model

**Public Members**

```c
esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
```

Pointer to the Time Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
```

Response control of the server model received messages

```c
esp_ble_mesh_time_state_t *state
```

Parameters of the Time state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_scene_register_t**

1. Scene Store is an operation of storing values of a present state of an element.
2. The structure and meaning of the stored state is determined by a model. States to be stored are specified by each model.
3. The Scene Store operation shall persistently store all values of all states marked as Stored with Scene for all models present on all elements of a node.
4. If a model is extending another model, the extending model shall determine the Stored with Scene behavior of that model. Parameters of Scene Register state

**Public Members**

```c
uint16_t scene_number
```

The value of the Scene Number

```c
uint8_t scene_type
```

The value of the Scene Type

```c
struct net_buf_simple *scene_value
```

Scene value may use a union to represent later, the union contains structures of all the model states which can be stored in a scene. The value of the Scene Value

**struct esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t**

Parameters of Scenes state.

Scenes serve as memory banks for storage of states (e.g., a power level or a light level/color). Values of states of an element can be stored as a scene and can be recalled later from the scene memory.

A scene is represented by a Scene Number, which is a 16-bit non-zero, mesh-wide value. (There can be a maximum of 65535 scenes in a mesh network.) The meaning of a scene, as well as the state storage container associated with it, are determined by a model.

The Scenes state change may start numerous parallel model transitions. In that case, each individual model handles the transition internally.

The scene transition is defined as a group of individual model transitions started by a Scene Recall operation. The scene transition is in progress when at least one transition from the group of individual model transitions is in progress.
Public Members

const uint16_t scene_count
The Scenes state’s scene count

exp_ble_mesh_scene_register_t *scenes
Parameters of the Scenes state

uint16_t current_scene
The Current Scene state is a 16-bit value that contains either the Scene Number of the currently active
scene or a value of 0x0000 when no scene is active.

When a Scene Store operation or a Scene Recall operation completes with success, the Current Scene
state value shall be to the Scene Number used during that operation.

When the Current Scene Number is deleted from a Scene Register state as a result of Scene Delete
operation, the Current Scene state shall be set to 0x0000.

When any of the element’s state that is marked as “Stored with Scene” has changed not as a result of
a Scene Recall operation, the value of the Current Scene state shall be set to 0x0000.

When a scene transition is in progress, the value of the Current Scene state shall be set to 0x0000. The
value of the Current Scene state

uint16_t target_scene
The Target Scene state is a 16-bit value that contains the target Scene Number when a scene transition is
in progress.

When the scene transition is in progress and the target Scene Number is deleted from a Scene Register
state as a result of Scene Delete operation, the Target Scene state shall be set to 0x0000.

When the scene transition is in progress and a new Scene Number is stored in the Scene Register as a
result of Scene Store operation, the Target Scene state shall be set to the new Scene Number.

When the scene transition is not in progress, the value of the Target Scene state shall be set to 0x0000. The
value of the Target Scene state

uint8_t status_code
The status code of the last scene operation

bool in_progress
Indicate if the scene transition is in progress

struct esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t
Parameters of Scenes state

Esignif Systems 464 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Public Members

`esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
- Pointer to the Scene Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

`esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`
- Response control of the server model received messages

`esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t *state`
- Parameters of the Scenes state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_schedule_register_t`
- Parameters of Scheduler Register state

Public Members

`bool in_use`
- Indicate if the registered schedule is in use

`uint64_t year : 7`
- The value of Scheduled year for the action

`uint64_t month : 12`
- The value of Scheduled month for the action

`uint64_t day : 5`
- The value of Scheduled day of the month for the action

`uint64_t hour : 5`
- The value of Scheduled hour for the action

`uint64_t minute : 6`
- The value of Scheduled minute for the action

`uint64_t second : 6`
- The value of Scheduled second for the action

`uint64_t day_of_week : 7`
- The value of Schedule days of the week for the action

`uint64_t action : 4`
- The value of Action to be performed at the scheduled time

`uint64_t trans_time : 8`
- The value of Transition time for this action

`uint16_t scene_number`
- The value of Scene Number to be used for some actions

`struct esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_state_t`
- Parameters of Scheduler state

Public Members

`const uint8_t schedule_count`
- Scheduler count

`esp_ble_mesh_schedule_register_t *schedules`
- Up to 16 scheduled entries

`struct esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_srv_t`
- User data of Scheduler Server Model
Public Members

*esp_ble_mesh_model_t* model
  Pointer to the Scheduler Server Model. Initialized internally.

*esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t* rsp_ctrl
  Response control of the server model received messages

*esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_state_t* state
  Parameters of the Scheduler state

*struct esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_setup_srv_t*
  User data of Scheduler Setup Server Model

Public Members

*esp_ble_mesh_model_t* model
  Pointer to the Scheduler Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

*esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t* rsp_ctrl
  Response control of the server model received messages

*esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_state_t* state
  Parameters of the Scheduler state

*struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_time_set_t*
  Parameters of Time Set state change event

Public Members

uint8_t tai_seconds[5]
  The current TAI time in seconds

uint8_t subsecond
  The sub-second time in units of 1/256 second

uint8_t uncertainty
  The estimated uncertainty in 10-millisecond steps

uint16_t time_authority : 1
  0 = No Time Authority, 1 = Time Authority

uint16_t tai_utc_delta_curr : 15
  Current difference between TAI and UTC in seconds

uint8_t time_zone_offset_curr
  The local time zone offset in 15-minute increments

*struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_time_status_t*
  Parameters of Time Status state change event

Public Members

uint8_t tai_seconds[5]
  The current TAI time in seconds

uint8_t subsecond
  The sub-second time in units of 1/256 second

uint8_t uncertainty
  The estimated uncertainty in 10-millisecond steps
uint16_t time_authority : 1  
0 = No Time Authority, 1 = Time Authority

uint16_t tai_utc_delta_curr : 15  
Current difference between TAI and UTC in seconds

uint8_t time_zone_offset_curr  
The local time zone offset in 15-minute increments

**struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_time_zone_set_t**  
Parameters of Time Zone Set state change event

**Public Members**

uint8_t time_zone_offset_new  
Upcoming local time zone offset

uint8_t tai_zone_change[5]  
TAI Seconds time of the upcoming Time Zone Offset change

**struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_tai_utc_delta_set_t**  
Parameters of TAI UTC Delta Set state change event

**Public Members**

uint16_t tai_utc_delta_new : 15  
Upcoming difference between TAI and UTC in seconds

uint8_t tai_delta_change[5]  
TAI Seconds time of the upcoming TAI-UTC Delta change

**struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_time_role_set_t**  
Parameter of Time Role Set state change event

**Public Members**

uint8_t time_role  
The Time Role for the element

**struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_scene_store_t**  
Parameter of Scene Store state change event

**Public Members**

uint16_t scene_number  
The number of scenes to be stored

**struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_scene_recall_t**  
Parameter of Scene Recall state change event

**Public Members**

uint16_t scene_number  
The number of scenes to be recalled

**struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_scene_delete_t**  
Parameter of Scene Delete state change event
Public Members

uint16_t scene_number
The number of scenes to be deleted

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_scheduler_act_set_t
Parameter of Scheduler Action Set state change event

Public Members

uint64_t index: 4
Index of the Schedule Register entry to set

uint64_t year: 7
Scheduled year for the action

uint64_t month: 12
Scheduled month for the action

uint64_t day: 5
Scheduled day of the month for the action

uint64_t hour: 5
Scheduled hour for the action

uint64_t minute: 6
Scheduled minute for the action

uint64_t second: 6
Scheduled second for the action

uint64_t day_of_week: 7
Schedule days of the week for the action

uint64_t action: 4
Action to be performed at the scheduled time

uint64_t trans_time: 8
Transition time for this action

uint16_t scene_number
Scene number to be used for some actions

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scheduler_act_get_t
Context of the received Scheduler Action Get message

Public Members

uint8_t index
Index of the Schedule Register entry to get

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_time_set_t
Context of the received Time Set message

Public Members

uint8_t tai_seconds[5]
The current TAI time in seconds

uint8_t subsecond
The sub-second time in units of 1/256 second
uint8_t uncertainty
   The estimated uncertainty in 10-millisecond steps

uint16_t time_authority : 1
   0 = No Time Authority, 1 = Time Authority

uint16_t tai_utc_delta : 15
   Current difference between TAI and UTC in seconds

uint8_t time_zone_offset
   The local time zone offset in 15-minute increments

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_time_zone_set_t
   Context of the received TimeZone Set message

Public Members

uint8_t time_zone_offset_new
   Upcoming local time zone offset

uint8_t tai_zone_change[5]
   TAI Seconds time of the upcoming Time Zone Offset change

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_tai_utc_delta_set_t
   Context of the received TAI UTC Delta Set message

Public Members

uint16_t tai_utc_delta_new : 15
   Upcoming difference between TAI and UTC in seconds

uint16_t padding : 1
   Always 0b0. Other values are Prohibited.

uint8_t tai_delta_change[5]
   TAI Seconds time of the upcoming TAI-UTC Delta change

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_time_role_set_t
   Context of the received Time Role Set message

Public Members

uint8_t time_role
   The Time Role for the element

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scene_store_t
   Context of the received Scene Store message

Public Members

uint16_t scene_number
   The number of scenes to be stored

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scene_recall_t
   Context of the received Scene Recall message
Chapter 2. API Reference

**Public Members**

`bool op_en`
Indicate if optional parameters are included

`uint16_t scene_number`
The number of scenes to be recalled

`uint8_t tid`
Transaction ID

`uint8_t trans_time`
Time to complete state transition (optional)

`uint8_t delay`
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scene_delete_t
Context of the received Scene Delete message
```

**Public Members**

`uint16_t scene_number`
The number of scenes to be deleted

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_scheduler_act_set_t
Context of the received Scheduler Action Set message
```

**Public Members**

`uint64_t index`: 4
Index of the Schedule Register entry to set

`uint64_t year`: 7
Scheduled year for the action

`uint64_t month`: 12
Scheduled month for the action

`uint64_t day`: 5
Scheduled day of the month for the action

`uint64_t hour`: 5
Scheduled hour for the action

`uint64_t minute`: 6
Scheduled minute for the action

`uint64_t second`: 6
Scheduled second for the action

`uint64_t day_of_week`: 7
Scheduled days of the week for the action

`uint64_t action`: 4
Action to be performed at the scheduled time

`uint64_t trans_time`: 8
Transition time for this action

`uint16_t scene_number`
Scene number to be used for some actions

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_time_status_t
Context of the received Time Status message
```
Public Members

- **uint8_t _tai_seconds[5]**
  The current TAI time in seconds
- **uint8_t _subsecond**
  The sub-second time in units of 1/256 second
- **uint8_t _uncertainty**
  The estimated uncertainty in 10-millisecond steps
- **uint16_t _time_authority : 1**
  0 = No Time Authority, 1 = Time Authority
- **uint16_t _tai_utc_delta : 15**
  Current difference between TAI and UTC in seconds
- **uint8_t _time_zone_offset**
  The local time zone offset in 15-minute increments

**struct esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_cb_param_t**
Time Scene Server Model callback parameters

Public Members

- **esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model**
  Pointer to Time and Scenes Server Models
- **esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t ctx**
  Context of the received messages
- **esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_cb_value_t value**
  Value of the received Time and Scenes Messages

Macros

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_TIME_CLI (cli_pub, cli_data)**
Define a new Time Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Time Client Model.

**Return** New Time Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **cli_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t.
- **cli_data**: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_client_t.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SCENE_CLI (cli_pub, cli_data)**
Define a new Scene Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Scene Client Model.

**Return** New Scene Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **cli_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t.
- **cli_data**: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_client_t.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SCHEDULER_CLI (cli_pub, cli_data)**
Define a new Scheduler Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Scheduler Client Model.

**Return** New Scheduler Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **cli_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t.
- **cli_data**: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_client_t.
**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_TIME_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Time Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Time Server model is a root model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Time Setup Server model shall also be present.
2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.

**Return**
New Time Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_time_srv_t`.

---

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_TIME_SETUP_SRV** (srv_data)

Define a new Time Setup Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Time Setup Server model extends the Time Server model. Time is sensitive information that is propagated across a mesh network.
2. Only an authorized Time Client should be allowed to change the Time and Time Role states. A dedicated application key Bluetooth SIG Proprietary should be used on the Time Setup Server to restrict access to the server to only authorized Time Clients.
3. This model does not support subscribing nor publishing.

**Return**

**Parameters**
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_time_setup_srv_t`.

---

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SCENE_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Scene Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Scene Server model is a root model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Scene Setup Server model shall also be present.
2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
3. The model may be present only on the Primary element of a node.

**Return**
New Scene Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_scene_srv_t`.

---

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SCENE_SETUP_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Scene Setup Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Scene Setup Server model extends the Scene Server model and the Generic Default Transition Time Server model.
2. The model may be present only on the Primary element of a node.

**Return**
New Scene Setup Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_scene_setup_srv_t`.

---

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_SCHEDULER_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Scheduler Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Scheduler Server model extends the Scene Server model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Scheduler Setup Server model shall also be present.
2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
3. The model may be present only on the Primary element of a node.
4. The model requires the Time Server model shall be present on the element.

**Return**
New Scheduler Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_srv_t`.

---

---

---
Define a new Scheduler Setup Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Scheduler Setup Server model extends the Scheduler Server and the Scene Setup Server models.  
2. The model may be present only on the Primary element of a node.

**Return** New Scheduler Setup Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_setup_srv_t`.

**Return** New Scheduler Setup Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_scheduler_setup_srv_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_UNKNOWN_TAI_SECONDS**
Unknown TAI Seconds

**ESP_BLE_MESH_UNKNOWN_TAI_ZONE_CHANGE**
Unknown TAI of Zone Change

**ESP_BLE_MESH_UNKNOWN_TAI_DELTA_CHANGE**
Unknown TAI of Delta Change

**ESP_BLE_MESH_TAI_UTC_DELTA_MAX_VALUE**
Maximum TAI-UTC Delta value

**ESP_BLE_MESH_TAI_SECONDS_LEN**
Length of TAI Seconds

**ESP_BLE_MESH_TAI_OF_ZONE_CHANGE_LEN**
Length of TAI of Zone Change

**ESP_BLE_MESH_TAI_OF_DELTA_CHANGE_LEN**
Length of TAI of Delta Change

**ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SCENE_NUMBER**
Invalid Scene Number

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCENE_NUMBER_LEN**
Length of the Scene Number

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_YEAR_ANY_YEAR**
Any year of the Scheduled year

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_DAY_ANY_DAY**
Any day of the Scheduled day

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_HOUR_ANY_HOUR**
Any hour of the Scheduled hour

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_HOUR_ONCE_A_DAY**
Any hour of the Scheduled Day

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SEC_ANY_OF_HOUR**
Any minute of the Scheduled hour

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SEC_EVERY_15_MIN**
Every 15 minutes of the Scheduled hour

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SEC_EVERY_20_MIN**
Every 20 minutes of the Scheduled hour

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SEC_ONCE_AN_HOUR**
Once of the Scheduled hour

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SEC_ANY_OF_MIN**
Any second of the Scheduled minute

**ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SEC_EVERY_15_SEC**
Every 15 seconds of the Scheduled minute
### Chapter 2. API Reference

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SEC_EVERY_20_SEC
Every 20 seconds of the Scheduled minute

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SEC_ONCE_AN_MIN
Once of the Scheduled minute

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_ACT_TURN_OFF
Scheduled Action - Turn Off

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_ACT_TURN_ON
Scheduled Action - Turn On

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_ACT_SCENE_RECALL
Scheduled Action - Scene Recall

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_ACT_NO_ACTION
Scheduled Action - No Action

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_SCENE_NO_SCENE
Scheduled Scene - No Scene

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULE_ENTRY_MAX_INDEX
Maximum number of Scheduled entries

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_NONE
Time Role - None

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_AUTHORITY
Time Role - Mesh Time Authority

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_RELAY
Time Role - Mesh Time Relay

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_CLINET
Time Role - Mesh Time Client

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCENE_SUCCESS
Scene operation - Success

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCENE_REG_FULL
Scene operation - Scene Register Full

#### ESP_BLE_MESH_SCENE_NOT_FOUND
Scene operation - Scene Not Found

### Type Definitions

```c
typedef void(*esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_cb_t)(
    esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_cb_event_t event,
    esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_cb_param_t *param);
```

Bluetooth Mesh Time Scene Client Model function.

Time Scene Client Model callback function type

**Parameters**
- `event`: Event type
- `param`: Pointer to callback parameter

```c
typedef void(*esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_cb_t)(
    esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_cb_event_t event,
    esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_cb_param_t *param);
```

Bluetooth Mesh Time and Scenes Server Model function.

Time Scene Server Model callback function type

**Parameters**
- `event`: Event type
**Enumerations**

```c
enum esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_cb_event_t

This enum value is the event of Time Scene Client Model

Values:

- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_CLIENT_SET_STATE_EVT
- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_CLIENT_TIMEOUT_EVT
- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_CLIENT_EVT_MAX

enum esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_server_cb_event_t

This enum value is the event of Time Scene Server Model

Values:

- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT
- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_RECV_GET_MSG_EVT
- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_RECV_SET_MSG_EVT
- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_RECV_STATUS_MSG_EVT
- ESP_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER_EVT_MAX
```

**Lighting Client/Server Models**

**Header File**

- components/bt/esp_ble_mesh/api/models/include/esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_light_client_callback (esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_t callback)

Register BLE Mesh Light Client Model callback.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters

* [in] callback: pointer to the callback function.

esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_light_client_get_state (esp_ble_mesh_light_client_common_param_t *params, esp_ble_mesh_light_client_get_state_t *get_state)

Get the value of Light Server Model states using the Light Client Model get messages.

Note If you want to know the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_light_message_opcode_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h
```
Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- [in] get_state: Pointer of light get message value. Shall not be set to NULL.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state(esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params, esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t *set_state)
```

Set the value of Light Server Model states using the Light Client Model set messages.

Note If you want to know the opcodes and corresponding meanings accepted by this API, please refer to esp_ble_mesh_light_message_opcode_t in esp_ble_mesh_defs.h

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- [in] set_state: Pointer of light set message value. Shall not be set to NULL.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ble_mesh_register_lighting_server_callback(esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_cb_t *callback)
```

Register BLE Mesh Lighting Server Model callback.

Return ESP_OK on success or error code otherwise.

Parameters
- [in] callback: Pointer to the callback function.

Unions

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_light_client_get_state_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h> Lighting Client Model get message union.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_property_get_t lc_property_get
```

For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_GET

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h> Lighting Client Model set message union.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_set_t lightness_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SET_UNACK
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_linear_set_t lightness_linear_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_SET_UNACK
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_default_set_t lightness_default_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_range_set_t lightness_range_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_SET_UNACK
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_set_t ctl_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_SET_UNACK
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_set_t ctl_temperature_set
For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_SET_UNACK
```
Chapter 2. API

**esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_default_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_saturation_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_default_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_default_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_range_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_mode_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_om_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_light_onoff_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_SET_UNACK

**esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_property_set**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_SET & ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK

union esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t

#include <esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h> Lighting Client Model received message union.

**Public Members**

**esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_status_cb_t**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_STATUS

**esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_linear_status_cb_t**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_STATUS

**esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_last_status_cb_t**
   
   For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LAST_STATUS
**Chapter 2. API**

- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_default_status_cb_t lightness_default_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_range_status_cb_t lightness_range_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_status_cb_t ctl_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_status_cb_t ctl_temperature_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_status_cb_t ctl_temperature_range_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_default_status_cb_t ctl_default_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_status_cb_t hsl_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_target_status_cb_t hsl_target_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_TARGET_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_status_cb_t hsl_hue_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_saturation_status_cb_t hsl_saturation_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_default_status_cb_t hsl_default_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_status_cb_t hsl_range_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_status_cb_t xyl_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_target_status_cb_t xyl_target_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_TARGET_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_default_status_cb_t xyl_default_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_range_status_cb_t xyl_range_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_mode_status_cb_t lc_mode_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_om_status_cb_t lc_om_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_light_onoff_status_cb_t lc_light_onoff_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_STATUS
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_property_status_cb_t lc_property_status` For ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_STATUS

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_state_change_t

#include <esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h> Lighting Server Model state change value union.
```

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lightness_set_t lightness_set`
  The recv_op in ctx can be used to decide which state is changed. Light Lightness Set
Chapter 2. API

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lightness_linear_set_t
- **lightness_linear_set**: Light Lightness Linear Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lightness_default_set_t
- **lightness_default_set**: Light Lightness Default Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lightness_range_set_t
- **lightness_range_set**: Light Lightness Range Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_set_t
- **ctl_set**: Light CTL Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_set_t
- **ctl_temp_set**: Light CTL Temperature Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t
- **ctl_temp_range_set**: Light CTL Temperature Range Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_default_set_t
- **ctl_default_set**: Light CTL Default Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_set_t
- **hsl_set**: Light HSL Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_hue_set_t
- **hsl_hue_set**: Light HSL Hue Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_saturation_set_t
- **hsl_saturation_set**: Light HSL Saturation Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_default_set_t
- **hsl_default_set**: Light HSL Default Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_range_set_t
- **hsl_range_set**: Light HSL Range Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_xyl_set_t
- **xyl_set**: Light xyL Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_xyl_default_set_t
- **xyl_default_set**: Light xyL Default Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_xyl_range_set_t
- **xyl_range_set**: Light xyL Range Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lc_mode_set_t
- **lc_mode_set**: Light LC Mode Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lc_om_set_t
- **lc_om_set**: Light LC Occupancy Mode Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lc_light_onoff_set_t
- **lc_light_onoff_set**: Light LC Light OnOff Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lc_property_set_t
- **lc_property_set**: Light LC Property Set

##esp_ble_mesh_state_change_sensor_status_t
- **sensor_status**: Sensor Status

###union esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_recv_get_msg_t

```c
#include <esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h>

```

**Lighting Server Model received get message union.**

### Public Members

####esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_property_get_t
- **lc_property**: Light LC Property Get
union esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_recv_set_msg_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h> Lighting Server Model received set message union.

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lightness_set_t lightness
Light Lightness Set/Light Lightness Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lightness_linear_set_t lightness_linear
Light Lightness Linear Set/Light Lightness Linear Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lightness_default_set_t lightness_default
Light Lightness Default Set/Light Lightness Default Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lightness_range_set_t lightness_range
Light Lightness Range Set/Light Lightness Range Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set_t ctl
Light CTL Set/Light CTL Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_temperature_set_t ctl_temp
Light CTL Temperature Set/Light CTL Temperature Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t ctl_temp_range
Light CTL Temperature Range Set/Light CTL Temperature Range Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_default_set_t ctl_default
Light CTL Default Set/Light CTL Default Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_set_t hsl
Light HSL Set/Light HSL Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_hue_set_t hsl_hue
Light HSL Hue Set/Light HSL Hue Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_saturation_set_t hsl_saturation
Light HSL Saturation Set/Light HSL Saturation Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_default_set_t hsl_default
Light HSL Default Set/Light HSL Default Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_range_set_t hsl_range
Light HSL Range Set/Light HSL Range Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_xyl_set_t xyl
Light xyl Set/Light xyl Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_xyl_default_set_t xyl_default
Light xyl Default Set/Light xyl Default Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_xyl_range_set_t xyl_range
Light xyl Range Set/Light xyl Range Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_mode_set_t lc_mode
Light LC Mode Set/Light LC Mode Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_om_set_t lc_om
Light LC OM Set/Light LC OM Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_light_onoff_set_t lc_light_onoff
Light LC Light OnOff Set/Light LC Light OnOff Set Unack

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_property_set_t lc_property
Light LC Property Set/Light LC Property Set Unack

union esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_recv_status_msg_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h> Lighting Server Model received status message union.
Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_status_t sensor_status
```
Sensor Status

```c
union esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_cb_value_t
#include <esp_ble_mesh_lighting_model_api.h> Lighting Server Model callback value union.
```

Public Members

```c
esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_state_change_t state_change
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_recv_get_msg_t get
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_RECV_GET_MSG_EVT
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_recv_set_msg_t set
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_RECV_SET_MSG_EVT
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_recv_status_msg_t status
ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_RECV_STATUS_MSG_EVT
```

Structures

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_set_t
```
Bluetooth Mesh Light Lightness Client Model Get and Set parameters structure.

Parameters of Light Lightness Set

```c
bool op_en
    Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint16_t lightness
    Target value of light lightness actual state
```

```c
uint8_t tid
    Transaction ID
```

```c
uint8_t trans_time
    Time to complete state transition (optional)
```

```c
uint8_t delay
    Indicate message execution delay (C.1)
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_linear_set_t
```
Parameters of Light Lightness Linear Set

Public Members

```c
bool op_en
    Indicate if optional parameters are included
```

```c
uint16_t lightness
    Target value of light lightness linear state
```

```c
uint8_t tid
    Transaction ID
```

```c
uint8_t trans_time
    Time to complete state transition (optional)
Chapter 2. API

\[\text{uint8_t} \ delay\]
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_default_set_t}
Parameter of Light Lightness Default Set

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{uint16_t} \ lightness
The value of the Light Lightness Default state

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_range_set_t}
Parameters of Light Lightness Range Set

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{uint16_t} \ range_min
Value of range min field of light lightness range state

\textbf{uint16_t} \ range_max
Value of range max field of light lightness range state

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_set_t}
Parameters of Light CTL Set

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{bool} \ op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

\textbf{uint16_t} \ ctl_lightness
Target value of light ctl lightness state

\textbf{uint16_t} \ ctl_temperatrue
Target value of light ctl temperature state

\textbf{int16_t} \ ctl_delta_uv
Target value of light ctl delta UV state

\textbf{uint8_t} \ tid
Transaction ID

\textbf{uint8_t} \ trans_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

\textbf{uint8_t} \ delay
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

\textbf{struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_set_t}
Parameters of Light CTL Temperature Set

\textbf{Public Members}

\textbf{bool} \ op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

\textbf{uint16_t} \ ctl_temperatrue
Target value of light ctl temperature state

\textbf{int16_t} \ ctl_delta_uv
Target value of light ctl delta UV state
uint8_t **tid
  Transaction ID
uint8_t **trans_time
  Time to complete state transition (optional)
uint8_t **delay
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t**
Parameters of Light CTL Temperature Range Set

**Public Members**

uint16_t **range_min
  Value of temperature range min field of light ctl temperature range state
uint16_t **range_max
  Value of temperature range max field of light ctl temperature range state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_default_set_t**
Parameters of Light CTL Default Set

**Public Members**

uint16_t **lightness
  Value of light lightness default state
uint16_t **temperature
  Value of light temperature default state
int16_t **delta_uv
  Value of light delta UV default state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_set_t**
Parameters of Light HSL Set

**Public Members**

bool **op_en
  Indicate if optional parameters are included
uint16_t **hsl_lightness
  Target value of light hsl lightness state
uint16_t **hsl_hue
  Target value of light hsl hue state
uint16_t **hsl_saturation
  Target value of light hsl saturation state
uint8_t **tid
  Transaction ID
uint8_t **trans_time
  Time to complete state transition (optional)
uint8_t **delay
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t**
Parameters of Light HSL Hue Set

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t**
Parameters of Light HSL Hue Set
Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t hue
Target value of light hsl hue state

uint8_t tid
Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_saturation_set_t
Parameters of Light HSL Saturation Set

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t saturation
Target value of light hsl hue state

uint8_t tid
Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_default_set_t
Parameters of Light HSL Default Set

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
Value of light lightness default state

uint16_t hue
Value of light hue default state

uint16_t saturation
Value of light saturation default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_set_t
Parameters of Light HSL Range Set

Public Members

uint16_t hue_range_min
Value of hue range min field of light hsl hue range state

uint16_t hue_range_max
Value of hue range max field of light hsl hue range state
uint16_t saturation_range_min
   Value of saturation range min field of light hsl saturation range state

uint16_t saturation_range_max
   Value of saturation range max field of light hsl saturation range state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_set_t
   Parameters of Light xyL Set

   Public Members

   bool op_en
      Indicate whether optional parameters included

   uint16_t xyl_lightness
      The target value of the Light xyL Lightness state

   uint16_t xyl_x
      The target value of the Light xyL x state

   uint16_t xyl_y
      The target value of the Light xyL y state

   uint8_t tid
      Transaction Identifier

   uint8_t trans_time
      Time to complete state transition (optional)

   uint8_t delay
      Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_default_set_t
   Parameters of Light xyL Default Set

   Public Members

   uint16_t lightness
      The value of the Light Lightness Default state

   uint16_t xyl_x
      The value of the Light xyL x Default state

   uint16_t xyl_y
      The value of the Light xyL y Default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_range_set_t
   Parameters of Light xyL Range Set

   Public Members

   uint16_t xyl_x_range_min
      The value of the xyL x Range Min field of the Light xyL x Range state

   uint16_t xyl_x_range_max
      The value of the xyL x Range Max field of the Light xyL x Range state

   uint16_t xyl_y_range_min
      The value of the xyL y Range Min field of the Light xyL y Range state

   uint16_t xyl_y_range_max
      The value of the xyL y Range Max field of the Light xyL y Range state
struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_mode_set_t
   Parameter of Light LC Mode Set

   Public Members

   uint8_t mode
      The target value of the Light LC Mode state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_om_set_t
   Parameter of Light LC OM Set

   Public Members

   uint8_t mode
      The target value of the Light LC Occupancy Mode state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_light_onoff_set_t
   Parameters of Light LC Light OnOff Set

   Public Members

   bool op_en
      Indicate whether optional parameters included

   uint8_t light_onoff
      The target value of the Light LC Light OnOff state

   uint8_t tid
      Transaction Identifier

   uint8_t trans_time
      Time to complete state transition (optional)

   uint8_t delay
      Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_property_get_t
   Parameter of Light LC Property Get

   Public Members

   uint16_t property_id
      Property ID identifying a Light LC Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_property_set_t
   Parameters of Light LC Property Set

   Public Members

   uint16_t property_id
      Property ID identifying a Light LC Property

struct net_buf_simple *property_value
   Raw value for the Light LC Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_status_cb_t
   Bluetooth Mesh Light Lightness Client Model Get and Set callback parameters structure.
   Parameters of Light Lightness Status
Public Members

bool op_en
   Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t present_lightness
   Current value of light lightness actual state

uint16_t target_lightness
   Target value of light lightness actual state (optional)

uint8_t remain_time
   Time to complete state transition (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_linear_status_cb_t
   Parameters of Light Lightness Linear Status

Public Members

bool op_en
   Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t present_lightness
   Current value of light lightness linear state

uint16_t target_lightness
   Target value of light lightness linear state (optional)

uint8_t remain_time
   Time to complete state transition (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_last_status_cb_t
   Parameter of Light Lightness Last Status

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
   The value of the Light Lightness Last state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_default_status_cb_t
   Parameter of Light Lightness Default Status

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
   The value of the Light Lightness default State

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_range_status_cb_t
   Parameters of Light Lightness Range Status

Public Members

uint8_t status_code
   Status Code for the request message

uint16_t range_min
   Value of range min field of light lightness range state

uint16_t range_max
   Value of range max field of light lightness range state
struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light CTL Status

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t present_ctl_lightness
Current value of light ctl lightness state

uint16_t present_ctl_temperature
Current value of light ctl temperature state

uint16_t target_ctl_lightness
Target value of light ctl lightness state (optional)

uint16_t target_ctl_temperature
Target value of light ctl temperature state (C.1)

uint8_t remain_time
Time to complete state transition (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light CTL Temperature Status

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t present_ctl_temperature
Current value of light ctl temperature state

uint16_t present_ctl_delta_uv
Current value of light ctl delta UV state

uint16_t target_ctl_temperature
Target value of light ctl temperature state (optional)

uint16_t target_ctl_delta_uv
Target value of light ctl delta UV state (C.1)

uint8_t remain_time
Time to complete state transition (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light CTL Temperature Range Status

Public Members

uint8_t status_code
Status code for the request message

uint16_t range_min
Value of temperature range min field of light ctl temperature range state

uint16_t range_max
Value of temperature range max field of light ctl temperature range state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_default_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light CTL Default Status
Public Members

`uint16_t lightness`
Value of light lightness default state

`uint16_t temperature`
Value of light temperature default state

`int16_t delta_uv`
Value of light delta UV default state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_status_cb_t`
Parameters of Light HSL Status

Public Members

`bool op_en`
Indicate if optional parameters are included

`uint16_t hsl_lightness`
Current value of light hsl lightness state

`uint16_t hsl_hue`
Current value of light hsl hue state

`uint16_t hsl_saturation`
Current value of light hsl saturation state

`uint8_t remain_time`
Time to complete state transition (optional)

`struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_target_status_cb_t`
Parameters of Light HSL Target Status

Public Members

`bool op_en`
Indicate if optional parameters are included

`uint16_t hsl_lightness_target`
Target value of light hsl lightness state

`uint16_t hsl_hue_target`
Target value of light hsl hue state

`uint16_t hsl_saturation_target`
Target value of light hsl saturation state

`uint8_t remain_time`
Time to complete state transition (optional)

`struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_status_cb_t`
Parameters of Light HSL Hue Status

Public Members

`bool op_en`
Indicate if optional parameters are included

`uint16_t present_hue`
Current value of light hsl hue state
uint16_t target_hue
    Target value of light hsl hue state (optional)

uint8_t remain_time
    Time to complete state transition (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_saturation_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light HSL Saturation Status

Public Members

bool op_en
    Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t present_saturation
    Current value of light hsl saturation state

uint16_t target_saturation
    Target value of light hsl saturation state (optional)

uint8_t remain_time
    Time to complete state transition (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_default_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light HSL Default Status

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
    Value of light lightness default state

uint16_t hue
    Value of light hue default state

uint16_t saturation
    Value of light saturation default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light HSL Range Status

Public Members

uint8_t status_code
    Status code for the request message

uint16_t hue_range_min
    Value of hue range min field of light hsl hue range state

uint16_t hue_range_max
    Value of hue range max field of light hsl hue range state

uint16_t saturation_range_min
    Value of saturation range min field of light hsl saturation range state

uint16_t saturation_range_max
    Value of saturation range max field of light hsl saturation range state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light xyL Status
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate whether optional parameters included

uint16_t xyl_lightness
The present value of the Light xyL Lightness state

uint16_t xyl_x
The present value of the Light xyL x state

uint16_t xyl_y
The present value of the Light xyL y state

uint8_t remain_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_target_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light xyL Target Status

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate whether optional parameters included

uint16_t target_xyl_lightness
The target value of the Light xyL Lightness state

uint16_t target_xyl_x
The target value of the Light xyL x state

uint16_t target_xyl_y
The target value of the Light xyL y state

uint8_t remain_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_default_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light xyL Default Status

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
The value of the Light Lightness Default state

uint16_t xyl_x
The value of the Light xyL x Default state

uint16_t xyl_y
The value of the Light xyL y Default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_range_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light xyL Range Status

Public Members

uint8_t status_code
Status Code for the requesting message

uint16_t xyl_x_range_min
The value of the xyL x Range Min field of the Light xyL x Range state
uint16_t xyl_x_range_max
The value of the xyL x Range Max field of the Light xyL x Range state

uint16_t xyl_y_range_min
The value of the xyL y Range Min field of the Light xyL y Range state

uint16_t xyl_y_range_max
The value of the xyL y Range Max field of the Light xyL y Range state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_mode_status_cb_t
Parameter of Light LC Mode Status

Public Members

uint8_t mode
The present value of the Light LC Mode state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_om_status_cb_t
Parameter of Light LC OM Status

Public Members

uint8_t mode
The present value of the Light LC Occupancy Mode state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_light_onoff_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light LC Light OnOff Status

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate whether optional parameters included

uint8_t present_light_onoff
The present value of the Light LC Light OnOff state

uint8_t target_light_onoff
The target value of the Light LC Light OnOff state (Optional)

uint8_t remain_time
Time to complete state transition (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_property_status_cb_t
Parameters of Light LC Property Status

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a Light LC Property

struct net_buf_simple *property_value
Raw value for the Light LC Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_param_t
Lighting Client Model callback parameters
Public Members

int error_code
  Appropriate error code

esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t *params
  The client common parameters.

esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t status_cb
  The light status message callback values

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_state_t
  Parameters of Light Lightness state

Public Members

uint16_t lightness_linear
  The present value of Light Lightness Linear state

uint16_t target_lightness_linear
  The target value of Light Lightness Linear state

uint16_t lightness_actual
  The present value of Light Lightness Actual state

uint16_t target_lightness_actual
  The target value of Light Lightness Actual state

uint16_t lightness_last
  The value of Light Lightness Last state

uint16_t lightness_default
  The value of Light Lightness Default state

uint8_t status_code
  The status code of setting Light Lightness Range state

uint16_t lightness_range_min
  The minimum value of Light Lightness Range state

uint16_t lightness_range_max
  The maximum value of Light Lightness Range state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_srv_t
  User data of Light Lightness Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
  Pointer to the Lighting Lightness Server Model. Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
  Response control of the server model received messages

esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_state_t *state
  Parameters of the Light Lightness state

esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t *last
  Parameters of the last received set message

esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t *actual_transition
  Parameters of state transition

esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t *linear_transition
  Parameters of state transition
Chapter 2. API

```c
int32_t tt_delta_lightness_actual
    Delta change value of lightness actual state transition
```

```c
int32_t tt_delta_lightness_linear
    Delta change value of lightness linear state transition
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_setup_srv_t
    User data of Light Lightness Setup Server Model
```

**Public Members**

```c
esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
    Pointer to the Lighting Lightness Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
    Response control of the server model received messages
```

```c
esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_state_t *state
    Parameters of the Light Lightness state
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_state_t
    Parameters of Light CTL state
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint16_t lightness
    The present value of Light CTL Lightness state
```

```c
uint16_t target_lightness
    The target value of Light CTL Lightness state
```

```c
uint16_t temperature
    The present value of Light CTL Temperature state
```

```c
uint16_t target_temperature
    The target value of Light CTL Temperature state
```

```c
int16_t delta_uv
    The present value of Light CTL Delta UV state
```

```c
int16_t target_delta_uv
    The target value of Light CTL Delta UV state
```

```c
uint8_t status_code
    The status code of setting Light CTL Temperature Range state
```

```c
uint16_t temperature_range_min
    The minimum value of Light CTL Temperature Range state
```

```c
uint16_t temperature_range_max
    The maximum value of Light CTL Temperature Range state
```

```c
uint16_t lightness_default
    The value of Light Lightness Default state
```

```c
uint16_t temperature_default
    The value of Light CTL Temperature Default state
```

```c
int16_t delta_uv_default
    The value of Light CTL Delta UV Default state
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_srv_t
    User data of Light CTL Server Model
```
Public Members

```
 ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_T *model
 Pointer to the Lighting CTL Server Model. Initialized internally.

 ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_CTRL_T *rsp_ctrl
 Response control of the server model received messages

 ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CTL_STATE_T *state
 Parameters of the Light CTL state

 ESP_BLE_MESH_LAST_MSG_INFO_T *last
 Parameters of the last received set message

 ESP_BLE_MESH_STATE_TRANSITION_T *transition
 Parameters of state transition

 int32_t tt_delta_lightness
 Delta change value of lightness state transition

 int32_t tt_delta_temperature
 Delta change value of temperature state transition

 int32_t tt_delta_delta_uv
 Delta change value of delta uv state transition
```

```
 struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_setup_srv_t
 User data of Light CTL Setup Server Model
```

Public Members

```
 ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_T *model
 Pointer to the Lighting CTL Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

 ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_CTRL_T *rsp_ctrl
 Response control of the server model received messages

 ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CTL_STATE_T *state
 Parameters of the Light CTL state

 struct esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t
 User data of Light CTL Temperature Server Model
```

Public Members

```
 ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_T *model
 Pointer to the Lighting CTL Temperature Server Model. Initialized internally.

 ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_CTRL_T *rsp_ctrl
 Response control of the server model received messages

 ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CTL_STATE_T *state
 Parameters of the Light CTL state

 ESP_BLE_MESH_LAST_MSG_INFO_T *last
 Parameters of the last received set message

 ESP_BLE_MESH_STATE_TRANSITION_T *transition
 Parameters of state transition

 int32_t tt_delta_temperature
 Delta change value of temperature state transition

 int32_t tt_delta_delta_uv
 Delta change value of delta uv state transition
```
**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_state_t**

Parameters of Light HSL state

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t lightness`
  The present value of Light HSL Lightness state

- `uint16_t target_lightness`
  The target value of Light HSL Lightness state

- `uint16_t hue`
  The present value of Light HSL Hue state

- `uint16_t target_hue`
  The target value of Light HSL Hue state

- `uint16_t saturation`
  The present value of Light HSL Saturation state

- `uint16_t target_saturation`
  The target value of Light HSL Saturation state

- `uint16_t lightness_default`
  The value of Light Lightness Default state

- `uint16_t hue_default`
  The value of Light HSL Hue Default state

- `uint16_t saturation_default`
  The value of Light HSL Saturation Default state

- `uint8_t status_code`
  The status code of setting Light HSL Hue & Saturation Range state

- `uint16_t hue_range_min`
  The minimum value of Light HSL Hue Range state

- `uint16_t hue_range_max`
  The maximum value of Light HSL Hue Range state

- `uint16_t saturation_range_min`
  The minimum value of Light HSL Saturation state

- `uint16_t saturation_range_max`
  The maximum value of Light HSL Saturation state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_srv_t**

User data of Light HSL Server Model

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`
  Pointer to the Lighting HSL Server Model. Initialized internally.

- `esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`
  Response control of the server model received messages

- `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_state_t *state`
  Parameters of the Light HSL state

- `esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t last`
  Parameters of the last received set message

- `esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t *transition`
  Parameters of state transition
int32_t \texttt{tt\_delta\_lightness} \\
Delta change value of lightness state transition

int32_t \texttt{tt\_delta\_hue} \\
Delta change value of hue state transition

int32_t \texttt{tt\_delta\_saturation} \\
Delta change value of saturation state transition

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_light\_hsl\_setup\_srv\_t} \\
User data of Light HSL Setup Server Model

\textbf{Public Members}

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_model\_t *} \texttt{model} \\
Pointer to the Lighting HSL Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_server\_rsp\_ctrl\_t *} \texttt{rsp\_ctrl} \\
Response control of the server model received messages

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_light\_hsl\_state\_t *} \texttt{state} \\
Parameters of the Light HSL state

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_light\_hsl\_hue\_srv\_t} \\
User data of Light HSL Hue Server Model

\textbf{Public Members}

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_model\_t *} \texttt{model} \\
Pointer to the Lighting HSL Hue Server Model. Initialized internally.

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_server\_rsp\_ctrl\_t *} \texttt{rsp\_ctrl} \\
Response control of the server model received messages

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_light\_hsl\_state\_t *} \texttt{state} \\
Parameters of the Light HSL state

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_last\_msg\_info\_t} \texttt{last} \\
Parameters of the last received set message

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_state\_transition\_t} \texttt{transition} \\
Parameters of state transition

int32_t \texttt{tt\_delta\_hue} \\
Delta change value of hue state transition

\textbf{struct esp\_ble\_mesh\_light\_hsl\_sat\_srv\_t} \\
User data of Light HSL Saturation Server Model

\textbf{Public Members}

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_model\_t *} \texttt{model} \\
Pointer to the Lighting HSL Saturation Server Model. Initialized internally.

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_server\_rsp\_ctrl\_t *} \texttt{rsp\_ctrl} \\
Response control of the server model received messages

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_light\_hsl\_state\_t *} \texttt{state} \\
Parameters of the Light HSL state

\texttt{esp\_ble\_mesh\_last\_msg\_info\_t} \texttt{last} \\
Parameters of the last received set message
**esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t**

Parameters of state transition

**int32_t tt_delta_saturation**

Delta change value of saturation state transition

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_state_t**

Parameters of Light xyL state

**Public Members**

**uint16_t lightness**

The present value of Light xyL Lightness state

**uint16_t target_lightness**

The target value of Light xyL Lightness state

**uint16_t x**

The present value of Light xyL x state

**uint16_t target_x**

The target value of Light xyL x state

**uint16_t y**

The present value of Light xyL y state

**uint16_t target_y**

The target value of Light xyL y state

**uint16_t lightness_default**

The value of Light Lightness Default state

**uint16_t x_default**

The value of Light xyL x Default state

**uint16_t y_default**

The value of Light xyL y Default state

**uint8_t status_code**

The status code of setting Light xyL x & y Range state

**uint16_t x_range_min**

The minimum value of Light xyL x Range state

**uint16_t x_range_max**

The maximum value of Light xyL x Range state

**uint16_t y_range_min**

The minimum value of Light xyL y Range state

**uint16_t y_range_max**

The maximum value of Light xyL y Range state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_srv_t**

User data of Light xyL Server Model

**Public Members**

**esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model**

Pointer to the Lighting xyL Server Model. Initialized internally.

**esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl**

Response control of the server model received messages

**esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_state_t *state**

Parameters of the Light xyL state
esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t last
Parameters of the last received set message

esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t transition
Parameters of state transition

int32_t tt_delta_lightness
Delta change value of lightness state transition

int32_t tt_delta_x
Delta change value of x state transition

int32_t tt_delta_y
Delta change value of y state transition

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_setup_srv_t
User data of Light xyL Setup Server Model

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to the Lighting xyL Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.

esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl
Response control of the server model received messages

esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_state_t *state
Parameters of the Light xyL state

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_state_t
Parameters of Light LC states

Public Members

uint32_t mode : 1
0b0 The controller is turned off.
• The binding with the Light Lightness state is disabled. 0b1 The controller is turned on.
• The binding with the Light Lightness state is enabled. The value of Light LC Mode state

uint32_t occupancy_mode : 1
The value of Light LC Occupancy Mode state

uint32_t light_onoff : 1
The present value of Light LC Light OnOff state

uint32_t target_light_onoff : 1
The target value of Light LC Light OnOff state

uint32_t occupancy : 1
The value of Light LC Occupancy state

uint32_t ambient_luxlevel : 24
The value of Light LC Ambient LuxLevel state

uint16_t linear_output
1. Light LC Linear Output = max((Lightness Out)^2/65535, Regulator Output)
2. If the Light LC Mode state is set to 0b1, the binding is enabled and upon a change of the Light LC Linear Output state, the following operation shall be performed: Light Lightness Linear = Light LC Linear Output
3. If the Light LC Mode state is set to 0b0, the binding is disabled (i.e., upon a change of the Light LC Linear Output state, no operation on the Light Lightness Linear state is performed). The value of Light LC Linear Output state
struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_property_state_t
Parameters of Light Property states. The Light LC Property states are read / write states that determine the configuration of a Light Lightness Controller. Each state is represented by a device property and is controlled by Light LC Property messages.

Public Members

uint32_t time_occupancy_delay
A timing state that determines the delay for changing the Light LC Occupancy state upon receiving a Sensor Status message from an occupancy sensor. The value of Light LC Time Occupancy Delay state

uint32_t time_fade_on
A timing state that determines the time the controlled lights fade to the level determined by the Light LC Lightness On state. The value of Light LC Time Fade On state

uint32_t time_run_on
A timing state that determines the time the controlled lights stay at the level determined by the Light LC Lightness On state. The value of Light LC Time Run On state

uint32_t time_fade
A timing state that determines the time the controlled lights fade from the level determined by the Light LC Lightness On state to the level determined by the Light Lightness Prolong state. The value of Light LC Time Fade state

uint32_t time_prolong
A timing state that determines the time the controlled lights stay at the level determined by the Light LC Lightness Prolong state. The value of Light LC Time Prolong state

uint32_t time_fade_standby_auto
A timing state that determines the time the controlled lights fade from the level determined by the Light LC Lightness Prolong state to the level determined by the Light LC Lightness Standby state when the transition is automatic. The value of Light LC Time Fade Standby Auto state

uint32_t time_fade_standby_manual
A timing state that determines the time the controlled lights fade from the level determined by the Light LC Lightness Prolong state to the level determined by the Light LC Lightness Standby state when the transition is triggered by a change in the Light FC Light On/Off state. The value of Light LC Time Fade Standby Manual state

uint16_t lightness_on
A lightness state that determines the perceptive light lightness at the Occupancy and Run internal controller states. The value of Light LC Lightness On state

uint16_t lightness_prolong
A lightness state that determines the light lightness at the Prolong internal controller state. The value of Light LC Lightness Prolong state

uint16_t lightness_standby
A lightness state that determines the light lightness at the Standby internal controller state. The value of Light LC Lightness Standby state

uint16_t ambient_luxlevel_on
A uint16 state representing the Ambient LuxLevel level that determines if the controller transitions from the Light Control Standby state. The value of Light LC Ambient LuxLevel On state

uint16_t ambient_luxlevel_prolong
A uint16 state representing the required Ambient LuxLevel level in the Prolong state. The value of Light LC Ambient LuxLevel Prolong state

uint16_t ambient_luxlevel_standby
A uint16 state representing the required Ambient LuxLevel level in the Standby state. The value of Light LC Ambient LuxLevel Standby state
float regulator_kiu
A float32 state representing the integral coefficient that determines the integral part of the equation defining the output of the Light LC PI Feedback Regulator, when Light LC Ambient LuxLevel is less than LuxLevel Out. Valid range: 0.0 ~ 1000.0. The default value is 250.0. The value of Light LC Regulator Kiu state

float regulator_kid
A float32 state representing the integral coefficient that determines the integral part of the equation defining the output of the Light LC PI Feedback Regulator, when Light LC Ambient LuxLevel is greater than or equal to the value of the LuxLevel Out state. Valid range: 0.0 ~ 1000.0. The default value is 25.0. The value of Light LC Regulator Kid state

float regulator_kpu
A float32 state representing the proportional coefficient that determines the proportional part of the equation defining the output of the Light LC PI Feedback Regulator, when Light LC Ambient LuxLevel is less than the value of the LuxLevel Out state. Valid range: 0.0 ~ 1000.0. The default value is 80.0. The value of Light LC Regulator Kpu state

float regulator_kpd
A float32 state representing the proportional coefficient that determines the proportional part of the equation defining the output of the Light LC PI Feedback Regulator, when Light LC Ambient LuxLevel is greater than or equal to the value of the LuxLevel Out state. Valid range: 0.0 ~ 1000.0. The default value is 80.0. The value of Light LC Regulator Kpd state

int8_t regulator_accuracy
A int8 state representing the percentage accuracy of the Light LC PI Feedback Regulator. Valid range: 0.0 ~ 100.0. The default value is 2.0. The value of Light LC Regulator Accuracy state

uint32_t set_occupancy_to_1_delay
If the message Raw field contains a Raw Value for the Time Since Motion Sensed device property, which represents a value less than or equal to the value of the Light LC Occupancy Delay state, it shall delay setting the Light LC Occupancy state to 0b1 by the difference between the value of the Light LC Occupancy Delay state and the received Time Since Motion value. The value of the difference between the value of the Light LC Occupancy Delay state and the received Time Since Motion value

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_state_machine_t
Parameters of Light LC state machine

Public Members

uint8_t fade_on
The value of transition time of Light LC Time Fade On

uint8_t fade
The value of transition time of Light LC Time Fade

uint8_t fade_standby_auto
The value of transition time of Light LC Time Fade Standby Auto

uint8_t fade_standby_manual
The value of transition time of Light LC Time Fade Standby Manual

struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_state_machine_t::[anonymous] trans_time
The Fade On, Fade, Fade Standby Auto, and Fade Standby Manual states are transition states that define the transition of the Lightness Out and LuxLevel Out states. This transition can be started as a result of the Light LC State Machine change or as a result of receiving the Light LC Light OnOff Set or Light LC Light Set Unacknowledged message. The value of transition time

esp_ble_mesh_lc_state_t state
The value of Light LC state machine state

struct k_delayed_work timer
Timer of Light LC state machine
**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_control_t**  
Parameters of Light Lightness controller

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_state_t state`  
Parameters of Light LC state
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_property_state_t prop_state`  
Parameters of Light LC Property state
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_state_machine_t state_machine`  
Parameters of Light LC state machine

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_srv_t**  
User data of Light LC Server Model

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`  
Pointer to the Lighting LC Server Model. Initialized internally.
- `esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`  
Response control of the server model received messages
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_control_t *lc`  
Parameters of the Light controller
- `esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t last`  
Parameters of the last received set message
- `esp_ble_mesh_state_transition_t *transition`  
Parameters of state transition

**struct esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_setup_srv_t**  
User data of Light LC Setup Server Model

**Public Members**

- `esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model`  
Pointer to the Lighting LC Setup Server Model. Initialized internally.
- `esp_ble_mesh_server_rsp_ctrl_t *rsp_ctrl`  
Response control of the server model received messages
- `esp_ble_mesh_light_control_t *lc`  
Parameters of the Light controller

**struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lightness_set_t**  
Parameter of Light Lightness Actual state change event

**Public Members**

- `uint16_t lightness`  
The value of Light Lightness Actual state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lightness_linear_set_t**  
Parameter of Light Lightness Linear state change event
Public Members

`uint16_t lightness`
The value of Light Lightness Linear state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lightness_default_set_t`
Parameter of Light Lightness Default state change event

Public Members

`uint16_t lightness`
The value of Light Lightness Default state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lightness_range_set_t`
Parameters of Light Lightness Range state change event

Public Members

`uint16_t range_min`
The minimum value of Light Lightness Range state

`uint16_t range_max`
The maximum value of Light Lightness Range state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_set_t`
Parameters of Light CTL state change event

Public Members

`uint16_t lightness`
The value of Light CTL Lightness state

`uint16_t temperature`
The value of Light CTL Temperature state

`int16_t delta_uv`
The value of Light CTL Delta UV state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_set_t`
Parameters of Light CTL Temperature state change event

Public Members

`uint16_t temperature`
The value of Light CTL Temperature state

`int16_t delta_uv`
The value of Light CTL Delta UV state

`struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t`
Parameters of Light CTL Temperature Range state change event

Public Members

`uint16_t range_min`
The minimum value of Light CTL Temperature Range state

`uint16_t range_max`
The maximum value of Light CTL Temperature Range state
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_default_set_t
Parameters of Light CTL Default state change event

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
    The value of Light CTL Lightness Default state

uint16_t temperature
    The value of Light CTL Temperature Default state

int16_t delta_uv
    The value of Light CTL Delta UV Default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_set_t
Parameters of Light HSL state change event

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
    The value of Light HSL Lightness state

uint16_t hue
    The value of Light HSL Hue state

uint16_t saturation
    The value of Light HSL Saturation state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_hue_set_t
Parameter of Light HSL Hue state change event

Public Members

uint16_t hue
    The value of Light HSL Hue state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_saturation_set_t
Parameter of Light HSL Saturation state change event

Public Members

uint16_t saturation
    The value of Light HSL Saturation state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_default_set_t
Parameters of Light HSL Default state change event

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
    The value of Light HSL Lightness Default state

uint16_t hue
    The value of Light HSL Hue Default state

uint16_t saturation
    The value of Light HSL Saturation Default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_range_set_t
Parameters of Light HSL Range state change event
Chapter 2. API

**Public Members**

```c
uint16_t hue_range_min
The minimum hue value of Light HSL Range state
```

```c
uint16_t hue_range_max
The maximum hue value of Light HSL Range state
```

```c
uint16_t saturation_range_min
The minimum saturation value of Light HSL Range state
```

```c
uint16_t saturation_range_max
The maximum saturation value of Light HSL Range state
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_xyl_set_t
Parameters of Light xyL state change event
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint16_t lightness
The value of Light xyL Lightness state
```

```c
uint16_t x
The value of Light xyL x state
```

```c
uint16_t y
The value of Light xyL y state
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_xyl_default_set_t
Parameters of Light xyL Default state change event
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint16_t lightness
The value of Light Lightness Default state
```

```c
uint16_t x
The value of Light xyL x Default state
```

```c
uint16_t y
The value of Light xyL y Default state
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_xyl_range_set_t
Parameters of Light xyL Range state change event
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint16_t x_range_min
The minimum value of Light xyL x Range state
```

```c
uint16_t x_range_max
The maximum value of Light xyL x Range state
```

```c
uint16_t y_range_min
The minimum value of Light xyL y Range state
```

```c
uint16_t y_range_max
The maximum value of Light xyL y Range state
```

```c
struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lc_mode_set_t
Parameter of Light LC Mode state change event
```
Public Members

uint8_t mode
The value of Light LC Mode state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lc_om_set_t
Parameter of Light LC Occupancy Mode state change event

Public Members

uint8_t mode
The value of Light LC Occupancy Mode state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lc_light_onoff_set_t
Parameter of Light LC Light OnOff state change event

Public Members

uint8_t onoff
The value of Light LC Light OnOff state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_lc_property_set_t
Parameters of Light LC Property state change event

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
The property id of Light LC Property state

struct net_buf_simple *property_value
The property value of Light LC Property state

struct esp_ble_mesh_state_change_sensor_status_t
Parameters of Sensor Status state change event

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
The value of Sensor Property ID

uint8_t occupancy
The value of Light LC Occupancy state

uint32_t set_occupancy_to_1_delay
The value of Light LC Set Occupancy to 1 Delay state

uint32_t ambient_luxlevel
The value of Light LC Ambient Luxlevel state

union esp_ble_mesh_state_change_sensor_status_t::[anonymous] state
Parameters of Sensor Status related state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_property_get_t
Context of the received Light LC Property Get message
Public Members

uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a Light LC Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lightness_set_t
Context of the received Light Lightness Set message

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t lightness
Target value of light lightness actual state

uint8_t tid
Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lightness_linear_set_t
Context of the received Light Lightness Linear Set message

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t lightness
Target value of light lightness linear state

uint8_t tid
Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lightness_default_set_t
Context of the received Light Lightness Default Set message

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
The value of the Light Lightness Default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lightness_range_set_t
Context of the received Light Lightness Range Set message

Public Members

uint16_t range_min
Value of range min field of light lightness range state
**uint16_t range_max**

Value of range max field of light lightness range state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set_t**

Context of the received Light CTL Set message

**Public Members**

- **bool op_en**
  Indicate if optional parameters are included
- **uint16_t lightness**
  Target value of light ctl lightness state
- **uint16_t temperature**
  Target value of light ctl temperature state
- **int16_t delta_uv**
  Target value of light ctl delta UV state
- **uint8_t tid**
  Transaction ID
- **uint8_t trans_time**
  Time to complete state transition (optional)
- **uint8_t delay**
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_temperature_set_t**

Context of the received Light CTL Temperature Set message

**Public Members**

- **bool op_en**
  Indicate if optional parameters are included
- **uint16_t temperature**
  Target value of light ctl temperature state
- **int16_t delta_uv**
  Target value of light ctl delta UV state
- **uint8_t tid**
  Transaction ID
- **uint8_t trans_time**
  Time to complete state transition (optional)
- **uint8_t delay**
  Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t**

Context of the received Light CTL Temperature Range Set message

**Public Members**

- **uint16_t range_min**
  Value of temperature range min field of light ctl temperature range state
- **uint16_t range_max**
  Value of temperature range max field of light ctl temperature range state
struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_default_set_t
Context of the received Light CTL Default Set message

**Public Members**

\[
\text{uint16_t lightness} \\
\text{Value of light lightness default state}
\]
\[
\text{uint16_t temperature} \\
\text{Value of light temperature default state}
\]
\[
\text{int16_t delta_uv} \\
\text{Value of light delta UV default state}
\]

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_set_t
Context of the received Light HSL Set message

**Public Members**

\[
\text{bool op_en} \\
\text{Indicate if optional parameters are included}
\]
\[
\text{uint16_t lightness} \\
\text{Target value of light hsl lightness state}
\]
\[
\text{uint16_t hue} \\
\text{Target value of light hsl hue state}
\]
\[
\text{uint16_t saturation} \\
\text{Target value of light hsl saturation state}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t tid} \\
\text{Transaction ID}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t trans_time} \\
\text{Time to complete state transition (optional)}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t delay} \\
\text{Indicate message execution delay (C.1)}
\]

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_hue_set_t
Context of the received Light HSL Hue Set message

**Public Members**

\[
\text{bool op_en} \\
\text{Indicate if optional parameters are included}
\]
\[
\text{uint16_t hue} \\
\text{Target value of light hsl hue state}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t tid} \\
\text{Transaction ID}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t trans_time} \\
\text{Time to complete state transition (optional)}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t delay} \\
\text{Indicate message execution delay (C.1)}
\]

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_saturation_set_t
Context of the received Light HSL Saturation Set message

**Public Members**

\[
\text{bool op_en} \\
\text{Indicate if optional parameters are included}
\]
\[
\text{uint16_t hue} \\
\text{Target value of light hsl hue state}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t tid} \\
\text{Transaction ID}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t trans_time} \\
\text{Time to complete state transition (optional)}
\]
\[
\text{uint8_t delay} \\
\text{Indicate message execution delay (C.1)}
\]
Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate if optional parameters are included

uint16_t saturation
Target value of light hsl hue state

uint8_t tid
Transaction ID

uint8_t trans_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_default_set_t
Context of the received Light HSL Default Set message

Public Members

uint16_t lightness
Value of light lightness default state

uint16_t hue
Value of light hue default state

uint16_t saturation
Value of light saturation default state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_hsl_range_set_t
Context of the received Light HSL Range Set message

Public Members

uint16_t hue_range_min
Value of hue range min field of light hsl hue range state

uint16_t hue_range_max
Value of hue range max field of light hsl hue range state

uint16_t saturation_range_min
Value of saturation range min field of light hsl saturation range state

uint16_t saturation_range_max
Value of saturation range max field of light hsl saturation range state

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_xyl_set_t
Context of the received Light xyL Set message

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate whether optional parameters included

uint16_t lightness
The target value of the Light xyL Lightness state

uint16_t x
The target value of the Light xyL x state
uint16_t y
The target value of the Light xyL y state

uint8_t tid
Transaction Identifier

uint8_t trans_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_xyl_default_set_t**
Context of the received Light xyL Default Set message

**Public Members**

uint16_t lightness
The value of the Light Lightness Default state

uint16_t x
The value of the Light xyL x Default state

uint16_t y
The value of the Light xyL y Default state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_xyl_range_set_t**
Context of the received Light xyl Range Set message

**Public Members**

uint16_t x_range_min
The value of the xyl x Range Min field of the Light xyl x Range state

uint16_t x_range_max
The value of the xyl x Range Max field of the Light xyl x Range state

uint16_t y_range_min
The value of the xyl y Range Min field of the Light xyl y Range state

uint16_t y_range_max
The value of the xyl y Range Max field of the Light xyl y Range state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_mode_set_t**
Context of the received Light LC Mode Set message

**Public Members**

uint8_t mode
The target value of the Light LC Mode state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_om_set_t**
Context of the received Light OM Set message

**Public Members**

uint8_t mode
The target value of the Light LC Occupancy Mode state

**struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_light_onoff_set_t**
Context of the received Light LC Light OnOff Set message

**Public Members**

uint8_t mode
The target value of the Light LC Occupancy Mode state
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

bool op_en
Indicate whether optional parameters included

uint8_t light_onoff
The target value of the Light LC Light OnOff state

uint8_t tid
Transaction Identifier

uint8_t trans_time
Time to complete state transition (optional)

uint8_t delay
Indicate message execution delay (C.1)

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_lc_property_set_t
Context of the received Light LC Property Set message

Public Members

uint16_t property_id
Property ID identifying a Light LC Property

struct net_buf_simple *property_value
Raw value for the Light LC Property

struct esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_sensor_status_t
Context of the received Sensor Status message

Public Members

struct net_buf_simple *data
Value of sensor data state (optional)

struct esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_cb_param_t
Lighting Server Model callback parameters

Public Members

esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model
Pointer to Lighting Server Models

esp_ble_mesh_msg_ctx_t ctx
Context of the received messages

esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_cb_value_t value
Value of the received Lighting Messages

Macros

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_CLI (cli_pub, cli_data)
Define a new Light Lightness Client Model.

Note This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Light Lightness Client Model.

Return New Light Lightness Client Model instance.

Parameters
  • cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t.
  • cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct esp_ble_mesh_client_t.
**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_CTL_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)

Define a new Light CTL Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Light CTL Client Model.

**Return** New Light CTL Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_HSL_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)

Define a new Light HSL Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Light HSL Client Model.

**Return** New Light HSL Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_XYL_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)

Define a new Light xyL Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Light xyL Client Model.

**Return** New Light xyL Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_LC_CLI** (cli_pub, cli_data)

Define a new Light LC Client Model.

**Note** This API needs to be called for each element on which the application needs to have a Light LC Client Model.

**Return** New Light LC Client Model instance.

**Parameters**
- cli_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- cli_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_client_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Lighting Server Models related context.

Define a new Light Lightness Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Light Lightness Server model extends the Generic Power OnOff Server model and the Generic Level Server model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Light Lightness Setup Server model shall also be present. 1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.

**Return** New Light Lightness Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_srv_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SETUP_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Light Lightness Setup Server Model.

**Note** 1. The Light Lightness Setup Server model extends the Light Lightness Server model and the Generic Power OnOff Setup Server model. 1. This model shall support model subscription.

**Return** New Light Lightness Setup Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- srv_pub: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- srv_data: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_lightness_setup_srv_t`. 
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_CTL_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Light CTL Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light CTL Server model extends the Light Lightness Server model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Light CTL Temperature Server model and the corresponding Light CTL Setup Server model shall also be present.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
   2. The model requires two elements: the main element and the Temperature element. The Temperature element contains the corresponding Light CTL Temperature Server model and an instance of a Generic Level state bound to the Light CTL Temperature state on the Temperature element. The Light CTL Temperature state on the Temperature element is bound to the Light CTL state on the main element.

**Return**
New Light CTL Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_CTL_SETUP_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Light CTL Setup Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light CTL Setup Server model extends the Light CTL Server and the Light Lightness Setup Server.
   1. This model shall support model subscription.

**Return**
New Light CTL Setup Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_setup_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_CTL_TEMP_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Light CTL Temperature Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light CTL Temperature Server model extends the Generic Level Server model.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.

**Return**
New Light CTL Temperature Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_HSL_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Light HSL Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light HSL Server model extends the Light Lightness Server model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Light HSL Hue Server model and the corresponding Light HSL Saturation Server model and the corresponding Light HSL Setup Server model shall also be present.
   1. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
   2. The model requires three elements: the main element and the Hue element and the Saturation element. The Hue element contains the corresponding Light HSL Hue Server model and an instance of a Generic Level state bound to the Light HSL Hue state on the Hue element. The Saturation element contains the corresponding Light HSL Saturation Server model and an instance of a Generic Level state bound to the Light HSL Saturation state on the Saturation element. The Light HSL Hue state on the Hue element is bound to the Light HSL state on the main element and the Light HSL Saturation state on the Saturation element is bound to the Light HSL state on the main element.

**Return**
New Light HSL Server Model instance.

**Parameters**
- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_srv_t`.

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_HSL_SETUP_SRV (srv_pub, srv_data)
Define a new Light HSL Setup Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light HSL Setup Server model extends the Light HSL Server and the Light Lightness Setup Server.
   1. This model shall support model subscription.
Return New Light HSL Setup Server Model instance.

Parameters
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_setup_srv_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Light HSL Hue Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light HSL Hue Server model extends the Generic Level Server model. This model is associated with the Light HSL Server model.
2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.

Return New Light HSL Hue Server Model instance.

Parameters
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_HSL_SAT_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Light HSL Saturation Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light HSL Saturation Server model extends the Generic Level Server model. This model is associated with the Light HSL Server model.
2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.

Return New Light HSL Saturation Server Model instance.

Parameters
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_sat_srv_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_XYL_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Light xyL Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light xyL Server model extends the Light Lightness Server model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Light xyL Setup Server model shall also be present.
2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.

Return New Light xyL Server Model instance.

Parameters
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_srv_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_XYL_SETUP_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Light xyL Setup Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light xyL Setup Server model extends the Light xyL Server and the Light Lightness Setup Server.
2. This model shall support model subscription.

Return New Light xyL Setup Server Model instance.

Parameters
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_xyl_setup_srv_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_LC_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Light LC Server Model.

**Note**
1. The Light LC (Lightness Control) Server model extends the Light Lightness Server model and the Generic OnOff Server model. When this model is present on an Element, the corresponding Light LC Setup Server model shall also be present.
2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
3. This model may be used to represent an element that is a client to a Sensor Server model and controls the Light Lightness Actual state via defined state bindings.

Return New Light LC Server Model instance.

Parameters
- `srv_pub`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- `srv_data`: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_srv_t`.

**ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_LIGHT_LC_SETUP_SRV** (srv_pub, srv_data)

Define a new Light LC Setup Server Model.
Chapter 2. API

**Note**

1. The Light LC (Lightness Control) Setup model extends the Light LC Server model.
2. This model shall support model publication and model subscription.
3. This model may be used to configure setup parameters for the Light LC Server model.

**Return**

New Light LC Setup Server Model instance.

**Parameters**

- **srv_pub**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_model_pub_t`.
- **srv_data**: Pointer to the unique struct `esp_ble_mesh_light_lc_setup_srv_t`.

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef void(*esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_t)(
    esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_event_t event,
    esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_param_t *param)
```

Bluetooth Mesh Light Client Model function.

Lighting Client Model callback function type

**Parameters**

- **event**: Event type
- **param**: Pointer to callback parameter

```c
typedef void(*esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_cb_t)(
    esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_cb_event_t event,
    esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_cb_param_t *param)
```

Bluetooth Mesh Lighting Server Model function.

Lighting Server Model callback function type

**Parameters**

- **event**: Event type
- **param**: Pointer to callback parameter

**Enumerations**

```c
enum esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_event_t
```

This enum value is the event of Lighting Client Model

**Values**:

- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CLIENT_SET_STATE_EVT`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CLIENT_TIMEOUT_EVT`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CLIENT_EVT_MAX`

```c
enum esp_ble_mesh_lc_state_t
```

This enum value is the Light LC State Machine states

**Values**:

- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_OFF`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_STANDBY`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_FADE_ON`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_RUN`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_FADE`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_PROLONG`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_FADE_STANDBY_AUTO`
- `ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_FADE_STANDBY_MANUAL`
enum esp_ble_mesh_lighting_server_cb_event_t
   This enum value is the event of Lighting Server Model
   Values:

   ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT
   1. When get_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_AUTO_RSP, no event will be callback
do the application layer when Lighting Get messages are received.
   2. When set_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_AUTO_RSP, this event will be callback
do the application layer when Lighting Set/Set Unack messages are received.

   ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_RECV_GET_MSG_EVT
   When get_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP, this event will be callback to
the application layer when Lighting Get messages are received.

   ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_RECV_SET_MSG_EVT
   When set_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP, this event will be callback
to the application layer when Lighting Set/Set Unack messages are received.

   ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_RECV_STATUS_MSG_EVT
   When status_auto_rsp is set to ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RSP_BY_APP, this event will be callback
to the application layer when Sensor Status message is received.

   ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER_EVT_MAX

Please click below link, view ESP32 Bluetooth:

ESP32 蓝牙架构(PDF)

Bluetooth API 的示例代码存放于 ESP-IDF bluetooth/bluedroid 示例目录下，请查看。

下面的示例给出了详细介绍:
   • GATT 客户端示例
   • GATT 服务端服务表格示例
   • GATT 服务端示例
   • GATT 客户端安全性示例
   • GATT 服务端安全性示例
   • GATT 客户端多连接示例

2.2 连网 API

2.2.1 Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi 库

概述 Wi-Fi 库支持配置及监控 ESP32 Wi-Fi 连网功能。

支持配置:
   • 基站模式（即 STA 模式或 Wi-Fi 客户端模式），此时 ESP32 连接到接入点 (AP)。
   • AP 模式（即 Soft-AP 模式或接入点模式），此时基站连接到 ESP32。
   • AP-STA 共存模式 (ESP32 既是接入点，同时又作为基站连接到另一个接入点)。
   • 上述模式的各种安全模式 (WPA, WPA2 及 WEP 等)。
   • 扫描接入点（包括手动扫描及被动扫描）。
   • 使用混杂模式监控 IEEE802.11 Wi-Fi 数据包。

应用示例 ESP-IDF 示例项目的 wifi 目录下包含以下应用程序:
   • Wi-Fi 示例代码；
   • 另外一个简单的应用程序 esp-idf-template，演示了如何将 ESP32 模组连接到 AP。
Chapter 2. API 参考

API 参考

Header File

- components/esp_wifi/include/esp_wifi.h

Functions

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_init (const wifi_init_config_t *config)**
Init WiFi Alloc resource for WiFi driver, such as WiFi control structure, RX/TX buffer, WiFi NVS structure etc, this WiFi also start WiFi task.

**Attention** 1. This API must be called before all other WiFi API can be called
**Attention** 2. Always use WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT macro to init the config to default values, this can guarantee all the fields got correct value when more fields are added into wifi_init_config_t in future release. If you want to set your owner initial values, overwrite the default values which are set by WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT, please be notified that the field ‘magic’ of wifi_init_config_t should always be WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_MAGIC!

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: out of memory
- others: refer to error code esp_err.h

**Parameters**
- config: pointer to WiFi init configuration structure; can point to a temporary variable.

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_deinit (void)**
Deinit WiFi Free all resource allocated in esp_wifi_init and stop WiFi task.

**Attention** 1. This API should be called if you want to remove WiFi driver from the system

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_mode (wifi_mode_t mode)**
Set the WiFi operating mode.

Set the WiFi operating mode as station, soft-AP or station+soft-AP, The default mode is station mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- others: refer to error code esp_err.h

**Parameters**
- mode: WiFi operating mode

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_mode (wifi_mode_t *mode)**
Get current operating mode of WiFi.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- [out] mode: store current WiFi mode

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_start (void)**
Start WiFi according to current configuration If mode is WIFI_MODE_STA, it create station control block and start station If mode is WIFI_MODE_AP, it create soft-AP control block and start soft-AP If mode is WIFI_MODE_APSTA, it create soft-AP and station control block and start soft-AP and station.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: out of memory
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: WiFi internal error, station or soft-AP control block wrong
- ESP_FAIL: other WiFi internal errors

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_stop(void)`
Stop WiFi If mode is WIFI_MODE_STA, it stop station and free station control block If mode is WIFI_MODE_AP, it stop soft-AP and free soft-AP control block If mode is WIFI_MODE_APSTA, it stop station/soft-AP and free station/soft-AP control block.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_restore(void)`
Restore WiFi stack persistent settings to default values.
This function will reset settings made using the following APIs:
- esp_wifi_set_bandwidth,
- esp_wifi_set_protocol,
- esp_wifi_set_config related
- esp_wifi_set_mode

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_connect(void)`
Connect the ESP32 WiFi station to the AP.

Attention 1. This API only impact WIFI_MODE_STA or WIFI_MODE_APSTA mode
Attention 2. If the ESP32 is connected to an AP, call esp_wifi_disconnect to disconnect.
Attention 3. The scanning triggered by esp_wifi_start_scan() will not be effective until connection between ESP32 and the AP is established. If ESP32 is scanning and connecting at the same time, ESP32 will abort scanning and return a warning message and error number ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE. If you want to do re-connection after ESP32 received disconnect event, remember to add the maximum retry time, otherwise the called scan will not work. This is especially true when the AP doesn’t exist, and you still try reconnection after ESP32 received disconnect event with the reason code WIFI_REASON_NO_AP_FOUND.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: WiFi internal error, station or soft-AP control block wrong
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_SSID: SSID of AP which station connects is invalid

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_disconnect(void)`
Disconnect the ESP32 WiFi station from the AP.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi was not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi was not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_FAIL: other WiFi internal errors

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_clear_fast_connect(void)`
Currently this API is just an stub API.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_deauth_sta(uint16_t aid)`
deauthenticate all stations or associated id equals to aid
Chapter 2. API Reference

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi was not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: WiFi mode is wrong

Parameters
- aid: when aid is 0, deauthenticate all stations, otherwise deauthenticate station whose associated id is aid

\[ \text{esp_err_t} \esp_wifi_scan_start( \text{const wifi_scan_config_t *} \text{config}, \text{bool} \ \text{block}) \]

Scan all available APs.

Attention If this API is called, the found APs are stored in WiFi driver dynamic allocated memory and the will be freed in esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records, so generally, call esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records to cause the memory to be freed once the scan is done.

Attention The values of maximum active scan time and passive scan time per channel are limited to 1500 milliseconds. Values above 1500ms may cause station to disconnect from AP and are not recommended.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi was not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_TIMEOUT: blocking scan is timeout
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE: wifi still connecting when invoke esp_wifi_scan_start
- others: refer to error code in esp_err.h

Parameters
- config: configuration of scanning
- block: if block is true, this API will block the caller until the scan is done, otherwise it will return immediately

\[ \text{esp_err_t} \esp_wifi_scan_stop( \text{void}) \]

Stop the scan in process.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start

\[ \text{esp_err_t} \esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_num( \text{uint16_t *} \text{number}) \]

Get number of APs found in last scan.

Attention This API can only be called when the scan is completed, otherwise it may get wrong value.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- [inout] number: store number of APs found in last scan

\[ \text{esp_err_t} \esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records( \text{uint16_t *} \text{number}, \text{wifi_ap_record_t *} \text{ap_records}) \]

Get AP list found in last scan.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: out of memory

Parameters
- [inout] number: As input param, it stores max AP number ap_records can hold. As output param, it receives the actual AP number this API returns.
• **ap_records**: `wifi_ap_record_t` array to hold the found APs

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_sta_get_ap_info(wifi_ap_record_t *ap_info)
```

Get information of AP which the ESP32 station is associated with.

**Attention** When the obtained country information is empty, it means that the AP does not carry country information.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: The station interface don’t initialized
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_CONNECT: The station is in disconnect status

**Parameters**

- `ap_info`: the `wifi_ap_record_t` to hold AP information sta can get the connected ap’s phy mode info through the struct member phy_11b, phy_11g, phy_11n, phy_1r in the `wifi_ap_record_t` struct.

  For example, phy_11b = 1 imply that ap support 802.11b mode.

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_ps(wifi_ps_type_t type)
```

Set current WiFi power save type.

**Attention** Default power save type is WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM.

**Return** ESP_OK: succeed

**Parameters**

- `type`: power save type

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_ps(wifi_ps_type_t *type)
```

Get current WiFi power save type.

**Attention** Default power save type is WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM.

**Return** ESP_OK: succeed

**Parameters**

- `[out]` `type`: store current power save type

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_protocol(wifi_interface_t ifx, uint8_t protocol_bitmap)
```

Set protocol type of specified interface. The default protocol is (WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B|WIFI_PROTOCOL_11G|WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N|WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N2|WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N3|WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N4).

**Attention** Currently we only support 802.11b or 802.11bg or 802.11bgn mode

**Return**

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- others: refer to error codes in esp_err.h

**Parameters**

- `ifx`: interfaces
- `protocol_bitmap`: WiFi protocol bitmap

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_protocol(wifi_interface_t ifx, uint8_t* protocol_bitmap)
```

Get the current protocol bitmap of the specified interface.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- others: refer to error codes in esp_err.h

**Parameters**

- `ifx`: interface
- `[out]` `protocol_bitmap`: store current WiFi protocol bitmap of interface ifx

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_bandwidth(wifi_interface_t ifx, wifi_bandwidth_t bw)
```

Set the bandwidth of ESP32 specified interface.

**Attention** 1. API return false if try to configure an interface that is not enabled

**Attention** 2. WIFI_BW_HT40 is supported only when the interface support 11N

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- others: refer to error codes in esp_err.h

**Parameters**
- `ifx`: interface to be configured
- `bw`: bandwidth

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_bandwidth** *(wifi_interface_t ifx, wifi_bandwidth_t *bw)*
Get the bandwidth of ESP32 specified interface.

**Attention** 1. API return false if try to get a interface that is not enable

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- `ifx`: interface to be configured
- `[out] bw`: store bandwidth of interface ifx

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_channel** *(uint8_t primary, wifi_second_chan_t second)*
Set primary/secondary channel of ESP32.

**Attention** 1. This API should be called after esp_wifi_start()
**Attention** 2. When ESP32 is in STA mode, this API should not be called when STA is scanning or connecting to an external AP
**Attention** 3. When ESP32 is in softAP mode, this API should not be called when softAP has connected to external STAs
**Attention** 4. When ESP32 is in STA+softAP mode, this API should not be called when in the scenarios described above

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- `primary`: for HT20, primary is the channel number, for HT40, primary is the primary channel
- `second`: for HT20, second is ignored, for HT40, second is the second channel

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_channel** *(uint8_t *primary, wifi_second_chan_t *second)*
Get the primary/secondary channel of ESP32.

**Attention** 1. API return false if try to get a interface that is not enable

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- `primary`: store current primary channel
- `[out] second`: store current second channel

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_country** *(const wifi_country_t *country)*
configure country info

**Attention** 1. It is discouraged to call this API since this doesn’t validate the per-country rules, it’s up to the user to fill in all fields according to local regulations. Please use esp_wifi_set_country_code instead.
**Attention** 2. The default country is CHINA { `.cc=”CN”, .schan=1, .nchan=13, policy=WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO` }
**Attention** 3. When the country policy is WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO, the country info of the AP to which the station is connected is used. E.g. if the configured country info is { `.cc=”USA”, .schan=1, .nchan=13, policy=WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO` }
.nchan=11} and the country info of the AP to which the station is connected is 
{.cc=”JP”, .schan=1, .nchan=14} then the country info that will be used is 
{.cc=”JP”, .schan=1, .nchan=14}. If the station disconnected from the AP the country info is set back to the country info of the station automatically, 
{.cc=”US”, .schan=1, .nchan=11} in the example.

Attention 4. When the country policy is WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL, then the configured country info is used always.

Attention 5. When the country info is changed because of configuration or because the station connects to a different external AP, the country IE in probe response/beacon of the soft-AP is also changed.

Attention 6. The country configuration is stored into flash.

Attention 7. When this API is called, the PHY init data will switch to the PHY init data type corresponding to the country info.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- country: the configured country info

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_country (wifi_country_t *country)
```
get the current country info

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- country: country info

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_mac (wifi_interface_t ifx, const uint8_t mac[6])
```
Set MAC address of the ESP32 WiFi station or the soft-AP interface.

Attention 1. This API can only be called when the interface is disabled
Attention 2. ESP32 soft-AP and station have different MAC addresses, do not set them to be the same.
Attention 3. The bit 0 of the first byte of ESP32 MAC address can not be 1. For example, the MAC address can set to be “1a:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX”, but can not be “15:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX”.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MAC: invalid mac address
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: WiFi mode is wrong
- others: refer to error codes in esp_err.h

Parameters
- ifx: interface
- mac: the MAC address

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_mac (wifi_interface_t ifx, uint8_t mac[6])
```
Get mac of specified interface.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface

Parameters
- ifx: interface
- [out] mac: store mac of the interface ifx

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_rx_cb (wifi_promiscuous_cb_t cb)
```
Register the RX callback function in the promiscuous mode.
Each time a packet is received, the registered callback function will be called.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

**Parameters**
- cb: callback

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_promiscuous (bool en)
```
Enable the promiscuous mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

**Parameters**
- en: false - disable, true - enable

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_promiscuous (bool *en)
```
Get the promiscuous mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- [out] en: store the current status of promiscuous mode

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_filter (const wifi_promiscuous_filter_t *filter)
```
Enable the promiscuous mode packet type filter.

**Note** The default filter is to filter all packets except WIFI_PKT_MISC

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

**Parameters**
- filter: the packet type filtered in promiscuous mode.

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_promiscuous_filter (wifi_promiscuous_filter_t *filter)
```
Get the promiscuous filter.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- [out] filter: store the current status of promiscuous filter

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_ctrl_filter (const wifi_promiscuous_filter_t *filter)
```
Enable subtype filter of the control packet in promiscuous mode.

**Note** The default filter is to filter none control packet.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

**Parameters**
- filter: the subtype of the control packet filtered in promiscuous mode.

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_promiscuous_ctrl_filter (wifi_promiscuous_filter_t *filter)
```
Get the subtype filter of the control packet in promiscuous mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**

• `[out]` filter: store the current status of subtype filter of the control packet in promiscuous mode

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_config(wifi_interface_t interface, wifi_config_t *conf)
```
Set the configuration of the ESP32 STA or AP.

**Attention** 1. This API can be called only when specified interface is enabled, otherwise, API fail
**Attention** 2. For station configuration, bssid_set needs to be 0; and it needs to be 1 only when users need to check the MAC address of the AP.
**Attention** 3. ESP32 is limited to only one channel, so when in the soft-AP+station mode, the soft-AP will adjust its channel automatically to be the same as the channel of the ESP32 station.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: invalid mode
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_PASSWORD: invalid password
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NV: WiFi internal NVS error
- others: refer to the erro code in esp_err.h

**Parameters**
- `interface`: interface
- `conf`: station or soft-AP configuration

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_config(wifi_interface_t interface, wifi_config_t *conf)
```
Get configuration of specified interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface

**Parameters**
- `interface`: interface
- `[out]` `conf`: station or soft-AP configuration

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_ap_get_sta_list(wifi_sta_list_t *sta)
```
Get STAs associated with soft-AP.

**Attention** SSC only API

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: WiFi mode is wrong
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: WiFi internal error, the station/soft-AP control block is invalid

**Parameters**
- `[out]` `sta`: station list ap can get the connected sta’s phy mode info through the struct member phy_11b, phy_11g, phy_11n, phy_lr in the wifi_sta_info_t struct. For example, phy_11b = 1 imply that sta support 802.11b mode

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_ap_get_sta_aid(const uint8_t mac[6], uint16_t *aid)
```
Get AID of STA connected with soft-AP.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Requested resource not found
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: WiFi mode is wrong
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: WiFi internal error, the station/soft-AP control block is invalid

**Parameters**
- `[out]` `mac`: theSTA’s MAC address
- `*aid`: AID of STA connected with soft-AP


**Chapter 2. API**

- **mac**: STA’s mac address
- **[out] aid**: Store the AID corresponding to STA mac

### `esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_storage (wifi_storage_t storage)`

Set the WiFi API configuration storage type.

**Attention**
1. The default value is WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- **storage**: storage type

### `esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie (bool enable, wifi_vendor_ie_type_t type, wifi_vendor_ie_id_t idx, const void *vnd_ie)`

Set 802.11 Vendor-Specific Information Element.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init()
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument, including if first byte of vnd_ie is not WIFI_VENDOR_IE_ELEMENT_ID (0xDD) or second byte is an invalid length.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Out of memory

**Parameters**
- **enable**: If true, specified IE is enabled. If false, specified IE is removed.
- **type**: Information Element type. Determines the frame type to associate with the IE.
- **idx**: Index to set or clear. Each IE type can be associated with up to two elements (indices 0 & 1).
- **vnd_ie**: Pointer to vendor specific element data. First 6 bytes should be a header with fields matching `vendor_ie_data_t`. If enable is false, this argument is ignored and can be NULL. Data does not need to remain valid after the function returns.

### `esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie_cb (esp_vendor_ie_cb_t cb, void *ctx)`

Register Vendor-Specific Information Element monitoring callback.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

**Parameters**
- **cb**: Callback function
- **ctx**: Context argument, passed to callback function.

### `esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_max_tx_power (int8_t power)`

Set maximum transmitting power after WiFi start.

**Attention**
1. Maximum power before wifi startup is limited by PHY init data bin.
2. The value set by this API will be mapped to the max_tx_power of the structure `wifi_country_t` variable.
3. Mapping Table (Power, max_tx_power) = {{8, 2}, {20, 5}, {28, 7}, {34, 8}, {44, 11}, {52, 13}, {56, 14}, {60, 15}, {66, 16}, {72, 18}, {80, 20}}.
4. Param power unit is 0.25dBm, range is [8, 84] corresponding to 2dBm - 20dBm.
5. Relationship between set value and actual value. As follows: {set value range, actual value} = {{[8, 19],8}, {[20, 27],20}, {[28, 33],28}, {[34, 43],34}, {[44, 51],44}, {[52, 55],52}, {[56, 59],56}, {[60, 65],60}, {[66, 71],66}, {[72, 79],72}, {[80, 84],80}}.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_START: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument, e.g. parameter is out of range

**Parameters**
- **power**: Maximum WiFi transmitting power.
**esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_max_tx_power (int8_t *power)**

Get maximum transmitting power after WiFi start.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_START: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**

- **power**: Maximum WiFi transmitting power, unit is 0.25dBm.

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_event_mask (uint32_t mask)**

Set mask to enable or disable some WiFi events.

**Attention** 1. Mask can be created by logical OR of various WIFI_EVENT_MASK_ constants. Events which have corresponding bit set in the mask will not be delivered to the system event handler.

**Attention** 2. Default WiFi event mask is WIFI_EVENT_MASK_AP_PROBEREQRECVED.

**Attention** 3. There may be lots of stations sending probe request data around. Don’t unmask this event unless you need to receive probe request data.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

**Parameters**

- **mask**: WiFi event mask.

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_event_mask (uint32_t *mask)**

Get mask of WiFi events.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**

- **mask**: WiFi event mask.

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_80211_tx (wifi_interface_t ifx, const void *buffer, int len, bool en_sys_seq)**

Send raw ieee80211 data.

**Attention** Currently only support for sending beacon/probe request/probe response/action and non-QoS data frame

**Return**

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: Invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_INVALID_ARG: Invalid parameter
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NO_MEM: out of memory

**Parameters**

- **ifx**: interface if the Wi-Fi mode is Station, the ifx should be WIFI_IF_STA. If the Wi-Fi mode is SoftAP, the ifx should be WIFI_IF_AP. If the Wi-Fi mode is Station+SoftAP, the ifx should be WIFI_IF_STA or WIFI_IF_AP. If the ifx is wrong, the API returns ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF.
- **buffer**: raw ieee80211 buffer
- **len**: the length of raw buffer, the len must be <= 1500 Bytes and >= 24 Bytes
- **en_sys_seq**: indicate whether use the internal sequence number. If en_sys_seq is false, the sequence in raw buffer is unchanged, otherwise it will be overwritten by WiFi driver with the system sequence number. Generally, if esp_wifi_80211_tx is called before the Wi-Fi connection has been set up, both en_sys_seq==true and en_sys_seq==false are fine. However, if the API is called after the Wi-Fi connection has been set up, en_sys_seq must be true, otherwise ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG is returned.

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_csi_rx_cb (wifi_csi_cb_t cb, void *ctx)**

Register the RX callback function of CSI data.

Each time a CSI data is received, the callback function will be called.
Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

Parameters
- cb: callback
- ctx: context argument, passed to callback function

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_csi_config(const wifi_csi_config_t *config)`
Set CSI data configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_START: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start or promiscuous mode is not enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- config: configuration

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_csi(bool en)`
Enable or disable CSI.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_START: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start or promiscuous mode is not enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- en: true - enable, false - disable

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_ant_gpio(const wifi_ant_gpio_config_t *config)`
Set antenna GPIO configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: Invalid argument, e.g. parameter is NULL, invalid GPIO number etc

Parameters
- config: Antenna GPIO configuration.

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_ant_gpio(wifi_ant_gpio_config_t *config)`
Get current antenna GPIO configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument, e.g. parameter is NULL

Parameters
- config: Antenna GPIO configuration.

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_ant(const wifi_ant_config_t *config)`
Set antenna configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: Invalid argument, e.g. parameter is NULL, invalid antenna mode or invalid GPIO number

Parameters
- config: Antenna configuration.
`esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_ant (wifi_ant_config_t *config)`
Get current antenna configuration.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument, e.g. parameter is NULL

**Parameters**
- config: Antenna configuration.

`int64_t esp_wifi_get_tsf_time (wifi_interface_t interface)`
Get the TSF time In Station mode or SoftAP+Station mode if station is not connected or station doesn’t receive at least one beacon after connected, will return 0.

**Attention** Enabling power save may cause the return value inaccurate, except WiFi modem sleep

**Return** 0 or the TSF time

**Parameters**
- interface: The interface whose tsf_time is to be retrieved.

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_inactive_time (wifi_interface_t ifx, uint16_t sec)`
Set the inactive time of the ESP32 STA or AP.

**Attention**  1. For Station, If the station does not receive a beacon frame from the connected SoftAP during the inactive time, disconnect from SoftAP. Default 6s.
2. For SoftAP, If the softAP doesn’t receive any data from the connected STA during inactive time, the softAP will force deauth the STA. Default is 300s.
3. The inactive time configuration is not stored into flash

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument, For Station, if sec is less than 3. For SoftAP, if sec is less than 10.

**Parameters**
- ifx: interface to be configured.
- sec: Inactive time. Unit seconds.

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_inactive_time (wifi_interface_t ifx, uint16_t *sec)`
Get inactive time of specified interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- ifx: Interface to be configured.
- sec: Inactive time. Unit seconds.

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_statis_dump (uint32_t modules)`
Dump WiFi statistics.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

**Parameters**
- modules: statistic modules to be dumped

`esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_rssi_threshold (int32_t rssi)`
Set RSSI threshold below which APP will get an event.

**Attention** This API needs to be called every time after WIFI_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW event is received.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- rssi: threshold value in dbm between -100 to 0

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_ftm_initiate_session(wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t *cfg)
```
Start an FTM Initiator session by sending FTM request. If successful, event WIFI_EVENT_FTM_REPORT is generated with the result of the FTM procedure.

**Attention** Use this API only in Station mode

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

**Parameters**
- cfg: FTM Initiator session configuration

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_ftm_end_session(void)
```
End the ongoing FTM Initiator session.

**Attention** This API works only on FTM Initiator

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_ftm_resp_set_offset(int16_t offset_cm)
```
Set offset in cm for FTM Responder. An equivalent offset is calculated in picoseconds and added in TOD of FTM Measurement frame (T1).

**Attention** Use this API only in AP mode before performing FTM as responder

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

**Parameters**
- offset_cm: T1 Offset to be added in centimeters

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_config_11b_rate(wifi_interface_t ifx, bool disable)
```
Enable or disable 11b rate of specified interface.

**Attention**
1. This API should be called after esp_wifi_init() and before esp_wifi_start().
2. Only when really need to disable 11b rate call this API otherwise don’t call this.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

**Parameters**
- ifx: Interface to be configured.
- disable: true means disable 11b rate while false means enable 11b rate.

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_config_espnow_rate(wifi_interface_t ifx, wifi_phy_rate_t rate)
```
Config ESPNOW rate of specified interface.

**Attention**
1. This API should be called after esp_wifi_init() and before esp_wifi_start().

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

**Parameters**
- ifx: Interface to be configured.
- rate: Phy rate to be configured.

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_connectionless_wake_interval(uint16_t interval)
```
Set interval for station to wake up periodically at disconnected.

**Attention**
1. Only when ESP_WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLE is enabled, this configuration could work
2. This configuration only work for station mode and disconnected status
### Chapter 2. API

#### Attention 3.** This configuration would influence nothing until some module configure `wake_window`**

#### Attention 4. A sensible interval which is not too small is recommended (e.g. 100ms)

**Parameters**
- `interval`: how much microsecond would the chip wake up, from 1 to 65535.

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_country_code(const char* country, bool ieee80211d_enabled)
```

configure country

**Attention 1.** When `ieee80211d_enabled`, the country info of the AP to which the station is connected is used.

**E.g.** if the configured country is US and the country info of the AP to which the station is connected is JP then the country info that will be used is JP. If the station disconnected from the AP the country info is set back to the country info of the station automatically, US in the example.

**Attention 2.** When `ieee80211d_enabled` is disabled, then the configured country info is used always.

**Attention 3.** When the country info is changed because of configuration or because the station connects to a different external AP, the country IE in probe response/beacon of the soft-AP is also changed.

**Attention 4.** The country configuration is stored into flash.

**Attention 5.** When this API is called, the PHY init data will switch to the PHY init data type corresponding to the country info.

**Attention 6.** Supported country codes are **01** (world safe mode) ```AT”,” AU”,” BE”,” BG”,” BR” , “CA”,” CH”,” CN”,” CY”,” CZ”,” DE”,” DK”,” EE”,” ES”,” FI”,” FR”,” GB” ,” GR”,” HK”,” HR”,” HU”,” “IE”,” IN”,” IS”,” IT”,” JP”,” KR”,” LI”,” LT”,” LU”,” LV”,” MT”,” MX”,” NL”,” NO”,” NZ”,” PL”,” PT”,” “RO”,”” SE”,”” SI”,” SK”,” TW”,” US”```.

**Attention 7.** When country code ```01``` (world safe mode) is set, SoftAP mode won’t contain country IE.

**Attention 8.** The default country is ```CN”``` and `ieee80211d_enabled` is TRUE.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by `esp_wifi_init`
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- `country`: the configured country ISO code
- `ieee80211d_enabled`: 802.11d is enabled or not

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_get_country_code(char* country)
```

get the current country code

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by `esp_wifi_init`
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

**Parameters**
- `country`: country code

```c
esp_err_t esp_wifi_config_80211_tx_rate(wifi_interface_t ifx, wifi_phy_rate_t rate)
```

Config 80211 tx rate of specified interface.

**Attention 1.** This API should be called after `esp_wifi_init()` and before `esp_wifi_start()`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

**Parameters**
- `ifx`: Interface to be configured.
- `rate`: Phy rate to be configured.

**Structures**

```c
struct wifi_init_config_t
```

WiFi stack configuration parameters passed to `esp_wifi_init` call.
**Public Members**

```c
system_event_handler_t event_handler
    WiFi event handler

wifi_osi_funcs_t *osi_funcs
    WiFi OS functions

wpa_crypto_funcs_t wpa_crypto_funcs
    WiFi station crypto functions when connect

int static_rx_buf_num
    WiFi static RX buffer number

int dynamic_rx_buf_num
    WiFi dynamic RX buffer number

int tx_buf_type
    WiFi TX buffer type

int static_tx_buf_num
    WiFi static TX buffer number

int dynamic_tx_buf_num
    WiFi dynamic TX buffer number

int cache_tx_buf_num
    WiFi TX cache buffer number

int csi_enable
    WiFi channel state information enable flag

int ampdu_rx_enable
    WiFi AMPDU RX feature enable flag

int ampdu_tx_enable
    WiFi AMPDU TX feature enable flag

int amsdru_tx_enable
    WiFi AMSDU TX feature enable flag

int nvs_enable
    WiFi NVS flash enable flag

int nano_enable
    Nano option for printf/scan family enable flag

int rx_ba_win
    WiFi Block Ack RX window size

int wifi_task_core_id
    WiFi Task Core ID

int beacon_max_len
    WiFi softAP maximum length of the beacon

int mgmt_sbuf_num
    WiFi management short buffer number, the minimum value is 6, the maximum value is 32

uint64_t feature_caps
    Enables additional WiFi features and capabilities

bool sta_disconnected_pm
    WiFi Power Management for station at disconnected status

int magic
    WiFi init magic number, it should be the last field
```
Chapter 2. API 参考

Macros

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
WiFi driver was not installed by esp_wifi_init

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED
WiFi driver was not started by esp_wifi_start

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STOPPED
WiFi driver was not stopped by esp_wifi_stop

ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF
WiFi interface error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE
WiFi mode error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE
WiFi internal state error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN
WiFi internal control block of station or soft-AP error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NVS
WiFi internal NVS module error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_MAC
MAC address is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_SSID
SSID is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_PASSWORD
Password is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_TIMEOUT
Timeout error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_WAKE_FAIL
WiFi is in sleep state (RF closed) and wakeup fail

ESP_ERR_WIFI_WOULD_BLOCK
The caller would block

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_CONNECT
Station still in disconnect status

ESP_ERR_WIFI_POST
Failed to post the event to WiFi task

ESP_ERR_WIFI_INIT_STATE
Invalid WiFi state when init/deinit is called

ESP_ERR_WIFI_STOP_STATE
Returned when WiFi is stopping

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_ASSOC
The WiFi connection is not associated

ESP_ERR_WIFI_TX_DISALLOW
The WiFi TX is disallowed

WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM
WIFI_CACHE_TX_BUFFER_NUM
WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM
WIFI_CSI_ENABLED
WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED
Chapter 2. API

WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED
WIFI_AMSDU_TX_ENABLED
WIFI_NVS_ENABLED
WIFI_NANO_FORMAT_ENABLED
WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_MAGIC
WIFI_DEFAULT_RX_BA_WIN
WIFI_TASK_CORE_ID
WIFI_SOFTAP_BEACON_MAX_LEN
WIFI_MGMT_SBUF_NUM
WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLED
CONFIG_FEATURE_WPA3_SAE_BIT
CONFIG_FEATURE_CACHE_TX_BUF_BIT
CONFIG_FEATURE_FTM_INITIATOR_BIT
CONFIG_FEATURE_FTM_RESPONDER_BIT
WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

Type Definitions

```c
typedef void(*wifi_promiscuous_cb_t)(void*buf, wifi_promiscuous_pkt_type_t type)
```

The RX callback function in the promiscuous mode. Each time a packet is received, the callback function will be called.

**Parameters**
- `buf`: Data received. Type of data in buffer (`wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t` or `wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t`) indicated by `type` parameter.
- `type`: promiscuous packet type.

```c
typedef void(*esp_vendor_ie_cb_t)(void*ctx, wifi_vendor_ie_type_t type, const uint8_t sa[6],
                                 const vendor_ie_data_t*vnd_ie, int rssi)
```

Function signature for received Vendor-Specific Information Element callback.

**Parameters**
- `ctx`: context argument, as passed to `esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie_cb()` when registering callback.
- `type`: Information element type, based on frame type received.
- `sa`: Source 802.11 address.
- `vnd_ie`: Pointer to the vendor specific element data received.
- `rssi`: Received signal strength indication.

```c
typedef void(*wifi_csi_cb_t)(void*ctx, wifi_csi_info_t *data)
```

The RX callback function of Channel State Information(CSI) data.

Each time a CSI data is received, the callback function will be called.

**Parameters**
- `ctx`: context argument, passed to `esp_wifi_set_csi_rx_cb()` when registering callback function.
- `data`: CSI data received. The memory that it points to will be deallocated after callback function returns.

Header File

- `components/esp_wifi/include/esp_wifi_types.h`
Unions
union wifi_config_t
#include <esp_wifi_types.h> Configuration data for ESP32 AP or STA.

The usage of this union (for ap or sta configuration) is determined by the accompanying interface argument passed to esp_wifi_set_config() or esp_wifi_get_config()

Public Members

wifi_ap_config_t ap
configuration of AP

wifi_sta_config_t sta
configuration of STA

Structures

struct wifi_country_t
Structure describing WiFi country-based regional restrictions.

Public Members

char cc[3]
country code string

uint8_t schan
start channel

uint8_t nchan
total channel number

int8_t max_tx_power
This field is used for getting WiFi maximum transmitting power, call esp_wifi_set_max_tx_power to set the maximum transmitting power.

wifi_country_policy_t policy
country policy

struct wifi_active_scan_time_t
Range of active scan times per channel.

Public Members

uint32_t min
minimum active scan time per channel, units: millisecond

uint32_t max
maximum active scan time per channel, units: millisecond, values above 1500ms may cause station to disconnect from AP and are not recommended.

struct wifi_scan_time_t
Aggregate of active & passive scan time per channel.

Public Members

wifi_active_scan_time_t active
active scan time per channel, units: millisecond.

uint32_t passive
passive scan time per channel, units: millisecond, values above 1500ms may cause station to disconnect from AP and are not recommended.
struct wifi_scan_config_t
Parameters for an SSID scan.

**Public Members**

- uint8_t *ssid
  SSID of AP
- uint8_t *bssid
  MAC address of AP
- uint8_t channel
  channel, scan the specific channel
- bool show_hidden
  enable to scan AP whose SSID is hidden
- wifi_scan_type_t scan_type
  scan type, active or passive
- wifi_scan_time_t scan_time
  scan time per channel

struct wifi_ap_record_t
Description of a WiFi AP.

**Public Members**

- uint8_t bssid[6]
  MAC address of AP
- uint8_t ssid[33]
  SSID of AP
- uint8_t primary
  channel of AP
- wifi_second_chan_t second
  secondary channel of AP
- int8_t rssi
  signal strength of AP
- wifi_auth_mode_t authmode
  authmode of AP
- wifi_cipher_type_t pairwise_cipher
  pairwise cipher of AP
- wifi_cipher_type_t group_cipher
  group cipher of AP
- wifi_ant_t ant
  antenna used to receive beacon from AP
- uint32_t phy_11b : 1
  bit: 0 flag to identify if 11b mode is enabled or not
- uint32_t phy_11g : 1
  bit: 1 flag to identify if 11g mode is enabled or not
- uint32_t phy_11n : 1
  bit: 2 flag to identify if 11n mode is enabled or not
- uint32_t phy_lr : 1
  bit: 3 flag to identify if low rate is enabled or not
uint32_t wps : 1
    bit: 4 flag to identify if WPS is supported or not

uint32_t ftm_responder : 1
    bit: 5 flag to identify if FTM is supported in responder mode

uint32_t ftm_initiator : 1
    bit: 6 flag to identify if FTM is supported in initiator mode

uint32_t reserved : 25
    bit: 7..31 reserved

`wifi_country_t` country
    country information of AP

`struct wifi_scan_threshold_t`
    Structure describing parameters for a WiFi fast scan.

**Public Members**

int8_t rssi
    The minimum rssi to accept in the fast scan mode

`wifi_auth_mode_t` authmode
    The weakest authmode to accept in the fast scan mode

`struct wifi_pmf_config_t`
    Configuration structure for Protected Management Frame

**Public Members**

bool capable
    Advertizes support for Protected Management Frame. Device will prefer to connect in PMF mode if other device also advertizes PMF capability.

bool required
    Advertizes that Protected Management Frame is required. Device will not associate to non-PMF capable devices.

`struct wifi_ap_config_t`
    Soft-AP configuration settings for the ESP32.

**Public Members**

uint8_t ssid[32]
    SSID of ESP32 soft-AP. If ssid_len field is 0, this must be a Null terminated string. Otherwise, length is set according to ssid_len.

uint8_t password[64]
    Password of ESP32 soft-AP.

uint8_t ssid_len
    Optional length of SSID field.

uint8_t channel
    Channel of ESP32 soft-AP

`wifi_auth_mode_t` authmode
    Auth mode of ESP32 soft-AP. Do not support AUTH_WEP in soft-AP mode

uint8_t ssid_hidden
    Broadcast SSID or not, default 0, broadcast the SSID
uint8_t max_connection
Max number of stations allowed to connect in, default 4, max 10

uint16_t beacon_interval
Beacon interval which should be multiples of 100. Unit: TU(time unit, 1 TU = 1024 us). Range: 100 ~ 60000. Default value: 100

wifi_cipher_type_t pairwise_cipher
pairwise cipher of SoftAP, group cipher will be derived using this. cipher values are valid starting from WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP, enum values before that will be considered as invalid and default cipher suites(TKIP+CCMP) will be used. Valid cipher suites in softAP mode are WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP, WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_CCMP and WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP_CCMP.

bool ftm_responder
Enable FTM Responder mode

struct wifi_sta_config_t
STA configuration settings for the ESP32.

Public Members

uint8_t ssid[32]
SSID of target AP.

uint8_t password[64]
Password of target AP.

wifi_scan_method_t scan_method
do all channel scan or fast scan

bool bssid_set
whether set MAC address of target AP or not. Generally, station_config.bssid_set needs to be 0; and it needs to be 1 only when users need to check the MAC address of the AP.

uint8_t bssid[6]
MAC address of target AP

uint8_t channel
channel of target AP. Set to 1~13 to scan starting from the specified channel before connecting to AP. If the channel of AP is unknown, set it to 0.

uint16_t listen_interval
Listen interval for ESP32 station to receive beacon when WIFI_PS_MAX_MODEM is set. Units: AP beacon intervals. Default to 3 if set to 0.

wifi_sort_method_t sort_method
sort the connect AP in the list by rss or security mode

wifi_scan_threshold_t threshold
When sort_method is set, only APs which have an auth mode that is more secure than the selected auth mode and a signal stronger than the minimum RSSI will be used.

wifi_pmf_config_t pmf_cfg
Configuration for Protected Management Frame. Will be advertized in RSN Capabilities in RSN IE.

uint32_t rm_enabled : 1
Whether Radio Measurements are enabled for the connection

uint32_t btm_enabled : 1
Whether BSS Transition Management is enabled for the connection

uint32_t mbo_enabled : 1
Whether MBO is enabled for the connection
uint32_t reserved: 29
Reserved for future feature set

struct wifi_sta_info_t
Description of STA associated with AP.

Public Members

uint8_t mac[6]
mac address

int8_t rssi
current average rssi of sta connected

uint32_t phy_11b: 1
bit: 0 flag to identify if 11b mode is enabled or not

uint32_t phy_11g: 1
bit: 1 flag to identify if 11g mode is enabled or not

uint32_t phy_11n: 1
bit: 2 flag to identify if 11n mode is enabled or not

uint32_t phy_lr: 1
bit: 3 flag to identify if low rate is enabled or not

uint32_t is_mesh_child: 1
bit: 4 flag to identify mesh child

uint32_t reserved: 27
bit: 5..31 reserved

struct wifi_sta_list_t
List of stations associated with the ESP32 Soft-AP.

Public Members

wifi_sta_info_t sta[ESP_WIFI_MAX_CONN_NUM]
station list

int num
number of stations in the list (other entries are invalid)

struct vendor_ie_data_t
Vendor Information Element header.

The first bytes of the Information Element will match this header. Payload follows.

Public Members

uint8_t element_id
Should be set to WIFI_VENDOR_IE_ELEMENT_ID (0xDD)

uint8_t length
Length of all bytes in the element data following this field. Minimum 4.

uint8_t vendor_oui[3]
Vendor identifier (OUI).

uint8_t vendor_oui_type
Vendor-specific OUI type.

uint8_t payload[0]
Payload. Length is equal to value in ‘length’ field, minus 4.
struct wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t

Received packet radio metadata header, this is the common header at the beginning of all promiscuous mode RX callback buffers.

**Public Members**

signed rssi : 8
  Received Signal Strength Indicator(RSSI) of packet. unit: dBm

unsigned rate : 5
  PHY rate encoding of the packet. Only valid for non HT(11bg) packet

unsigned __pad0__ : 1
  reserved

unsigned sig_mode : 2
  0: non HT(11bg) packet; 1: HT(11n) packet; 3: VHT(11ac) packet

unsigned __pad1__ : 16
  reserved

unsigned mcs : 7
  Modulation Coding Scheme. If is HT(11n) packet, shows the modulation, range from 0 to 76(MCS0 ~ MCS76)

unsigned cw : 1
  Channel Bandwidth of the packet. 0: 20MHz; 1: 40MHz

unsigned __pad2__ : 16
  reserved

unsigned smoothing : 1
  reserved

unsigned not_sounding : 1
  reserved

unsigned __pad3__ : 1
  reserved

unsigned aggregation : 1
  Aggregation. 0: MPDU packet; 1: AMPDU packet

unsigned stbc : 2
  Space Time Block Code(STBC). 0: non STBC packet; 1: STBC packet

unsigned fec_coding : 1
  Flag is set for 11n packets which are LDPC

unsigned sgi : 1
  Short Guide Interval(SGI). 0: Long GI; 1: Short GI

signed noise_floor : 8
  Noise floor of Radio Frequency Module(RF). unit: 0.25dBm

unsigned ampdu_cnt : 8
  ampdu cnt

unsigned channel : 4
  primary channel on which this packet is received

unsigned secondary_channel : 4
  secondary channel on which this packet is received. 0: none; 1: above; 2: below

unsigned __pad4__ : 8
  reserved
unsigned **timestamp** : 32
  
  timestamp. The local time when this packet is received. It is precise only if modem sleep or light sleep is not enabled. unit: microsecond

unsigned **__pad5__** : 32
  reserved

unsigned **__pad6__** : 32
  reserved

unsigned **ant** : 1
  
  antenna number from which this packet is received. 0: WiFi antenna 0; 1: WiFi antenna 1

unsigned **sig_len** : 12
  
  length of packet including Frame Check Sequence(FCS)

unsigned **__pad7__** : 12
  reserved

unsigned **rx_state** : 8
  
  state of the packet. 0: no error; others: error numbers which are not public

**struct wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t**

Payload passed to “buf” parameter of promiscuous mode RX callback.

**Public Members**

**wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t** **rx_ctrl**
  
  metadata header

uint8_t **payload[0]**
  
  Data or management payload. Length of payload is described by rx_ctrl.sig_len. Type of content determined by packet type argument of callback.

**struct wifi_promiscuous_filter_t**

Mask for filtering different packet types in promiscuous mode.

**Public Members**

uint32_t **filter_mask**
  
  OR of one or more filter values WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_*

**struct wifi_csi_config_t**

Channel state information(CSI) configuration type.

**Public Members**

bool **lltf_en**
  
  enable to receive legacy long training field(lltf) data. Default enabled

bool **htltf_en**
  
  enable to receive HT long training field(htltf) data. Default enabled

bool **stbc_htltf2_en**
  
  enable to receive space time block code HT long training field(stbc-hltf2) data. Default enabled

bool **ltf_merge_en**
  
  enable to generate hltf data by averaging lltf and ht_ltf data when receiving HT packet. Otherwise, use ht_ltf data directly. Default enabled

bool **channel_filter_en**
  
  enable to turn on channel filter to smooth adjacent sub-carrier. Disable it to keep independence of adjacent sub-carrier. Default enabled
bool manu_scale
manually scale the CSI data by left shifting or automatically scale the CSI data. If set true, please set the
shift bits. false: automatically. true: manually. Default false

uint8_t shift
manually left shift bits of the scale of the CSI data. The range of the left shift bits is 0~15

struct wifi_csi_info_t
CSI data type.

Public Members

wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t rx_ctrl
received packet radio metadata header of the CSI data

uint8_t mac[6]
source MAC address of the CSI data

bool first_word_invalid
first four bytes of the CSI data is invalid or not

int8_t *buf
buffer of CSI data

uint16_t len
length of CSI data

struct wifi_ant_gpio_t
WiFi GPIO configuration for antenna selection.

Public Members

uint8_t gpio_select : 1
Whether this GPIO is connected to external antenna switch

uint8_t gpio_num : 7
The GPIO number that connects to external antenna switch

struct wifi_ant_gpio_config_t
WiFi GPIOs configuration for antenna selection.

Public Members

wifi_ant_gpio_t gpio_cfg[4]
The configurations of GPIOs that connect to external antenna switch

struct wifi_ant_config_t
WiFi antenna configuration.

Public Members

wifi_ant_mode_t rx_ant_mode
WiFi antenna mode for receiving

wifi_ant_mode_t rx_ant_default
Default antenna mode for receiving, it’s ignored if rx_ant_mode is not WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO

wifi_ant_mode_t tx_ant_mode
WiFi antenna mode for transmission, it can be set to WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO only if rx_ant_mode
is set to WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO
Chapter 2. API Reference

uint8_t enabled_ant0 : 4
   Index (in antenna GPIO configuration) of enabled WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0

uint8_t enabled_ant1 : 4
   Index (in antenna GPIO configuration) of enabled WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1

struct wifi_action_tx_req_t
   Action Frame Tx Request.

**Public Members**

* wifi_interface_t ifx
  WiFi interface to send request to

* uint8_t dest_mac[6]
  Destination MAC address

* bool no_ack
  Indicates no ack required

* wifi_action_rx_cb_t rx_cb
  Rx Callback to receive any response

* uint32_t data_len
  Length of the appended Data

* uint8_t data[0]
  Appended Data payload

struct wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t
   FTM Initiator configuration.

**Public Members**

* uint8_t resp_mac[6]
  MAC address of the FTM Responder

* uint8_t channel
  Primary channel of the FTM Responder

* uint8_t frm_count
  No. of FTM frames requested in terms of 4 or 8 bursts (allowed values - 0(No pref), 16, 24, 32, 64)

* uint16_t burst_period
  Requested time period between consecutive FTM bursts in 100’s of milliseconds (0 - No pref)

struct wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t
   Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE event

**Public Members**

* uint32_t status
  status of scanning APs: 0 — success, 1 - failure

* uint8_t number
  number of scan results

* uint8_t scan_id
  scan sequence number, used for block scan

struct wifi_event_sta_connected_t
   Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED event

Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback
Public Members

- `uint8_t ssid[32]`  
  SSID of connected AP

- `uint8_t ssid_len`  
  SSID length of connected AP

- `uint8_t bssid[6]`  
  BSSID of connected AP

- `uint8_t channel`  
  Channel of connected AP

- `wifi_auth_mode_t authmode`  
  Authentication mode used by AP

`struct wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t`  
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED event

Public Members

- `uint8_t ssid[32]`  
  SSID of disconnected AP

- `uint8_t ssid_len`  
  SSID length of disconnected AP

- `uint8_t bssid[6]`  
  BSSID of disconnected AP

- `uint8_t reason`  
  Reason of disconnection

`struct wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t`  
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE event

Public Members

- `wifi_auth_mode_t old_mode`  
  The old auth mode of AP

- `wifi_auth_mode_t new_mode`  
  The new auth mode of AP

`struct wifi_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t`  
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN event

Public Members

- `uint8_t pin_code[8]`  
  PIN code of station in enrollee mode

`struct wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t`  
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS event

Public Members

- `uint8_t ap_cred_cnt`  
  Number of AP credentials received
Chapter 2. API

```c
uint8_t ssid[MAX_SSID_LEN]
    SSID of AP
uint8_t passphrase[MAX_PASSPHRASE_LEN]
    Passphrase for the AP

struct wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t::[anonymous] ap_cred[MAX_WPS_AP_CRED]
    All AP credentials received from WPS handshake

struct wifi_event_ap_stacconnected_t
    Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED event

Public Members

uint8_t mac[6]
    MAC address of the station connected to ESP32 soft-AP
uint8_t aid
    the aid that ESP32 soft-AP gives to the station connected to
bool is_mesh_child
    flag to identify mesh child

struct wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t
    Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED event

Public Members

uint8_t mac[6]
    MAC address of the station disconnects to ESP32 soft-AP
uint8_t aid
    the aid that ESP32 soft-AP gave to the station disconnects to
bool is_mesh_child
    flag to identify mesh child

struct wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t
    Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED event

Public Members

int rssi
    Received probe request signal strength
uint8_t mac[6]
    MAC address of the station which send probe request

struct wifi_event_bss_rssi_low_t
    Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW event

Public Members

int32_t rssi
    RSSI value of bss

struct wifi_ftm_report_entry_t
    Argument structure for
```
Chapter 2. API 参考

**Public Members**

`uint8_t dlog_token`
Dialog Token of the FTM frame

`int8_t rssi`
RSSI of the FTM frame received

`uint32_t rtt`
Round Trip Time in pSec with a peer

`uint64_t t1`
Time of departure of FTM frame from FTM Responder in pSec

`uint64_t t2`
Time of arrival of FTM frame at FTM Initiator in pSec

`uint64_t t3`
Time of departure of ACK from FTM Initiator in pSec

`uint64_t t4`
Time of arrival of ACK at FTM Responder in pSec

**struct wifi_event_ftm_report_t**
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_FTM_REPORT event

**Public Members**

`uint8_t peer_mac[6]`
MAC address of the FTM Peer

`wifi_ftm_status_t status`
Status of the FTM operation

`uint32_t rtt_raw`
Raw average Round-Trip-Time with peer in Nano-Seconds

`uint32_t rtt_est`
Estimated Round-Trip-Time with peer in Nano-Seconds

`uint32_t dist_est`
Estimated one-way distance in Centi-Meters

`wifi_ftm_report_entry_t *ftm_report_data`
Pointer to FTM Report with multiple entries, should be freed after use

`uint8_t ftm_report_num_entries`
Number of entries in the FTM Report data

**struct wifi_event_action_tx_status_t**
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS event

**Public Members**

`wifi_interface_t ifx`
WiFi interface to send request to

`uint32_t context`
Context to identify the request

`uint8_t da[6]`
Destination MAC address

`uint8_t status`
Status of the operation
\textbf{struct wifi_event_roc_done_t}

Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_ROC_DONE event

\textbf{Public Members}

\begin{verbatim}
uint32_t context
    Context to identify the request
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Macros}

\begin{verbatim}
WIFI_OFFCHAN_TX_REQ
WIFI_OFFCHAN_TX_CANCEL
WIFI_ROC_REQ
WIFI_ROC_CANCEL
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11G
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N
WIFI_PROTOCOL_LR
ESP_WIFI_MAX_CONN_NUM
    max number of stations which can connect to ESP32 soft-AP
WIFI_VENDOR_IE_ELEMENT_ID
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_ALL
    filter all packets
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_MGMT
    filter the packets with type of WIFI_PKT_MGMT
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_CTRL
    filter the packets with type of WIFI_PKT_CTRL
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA
    filter the packets with type of WIFI_PKT_DATA
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_MISC
    filter the packets with type of WIFI_PKT_MISC
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA_MPDU
    filter the MPDU which is a kind of WIFI_PKT_DATA
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA_AMPDU
    filter the AMPDU which is a kind of WIFI_PKT_DATA
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_FCSFAIL
    filter the FCS failed packets, do not open it in general
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_ALL
    filter all control packets
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_WRAPPER
    filter the control packets with subtype of Control Wrapper
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_BAR
    filter the control packets with subtype of Block Ack Request
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRLFILTER_MASK_BA
    filter the control packets with subtype of Block Ack
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_PSPOLL
    filter the control packets with subtype of PS-Poll
\end{verbatim}
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_RTS
filter the control packets with subtype of RTS

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CTS
filter the control packets with subtype of CTS

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_ACK
filter the control packets with subtype of ACK

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CFEND
filter the control packets with subtype of CF-END

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CFENDACK
filter the control packets with subtype of CF-END+CF-ACK

WIFI_EVENT_MASK_ALL
mask all WiFi events

WIFI_EVENT_MASK_NONE
mask none of the WiFi events

WIFI_EVENT_MASK_AP_PROBEREQRECVED
mask SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED event

MAX_SSID_LEN

MAX_PASSPHRASE_LEN

MAX_WPS_AP_CRED

WIFI_STATIS_BUFFER

WIFI_STATIS_RXTX

WIFI_STATIS_HW

WIFI_STATIS_DIAG

WIFI_STATIS_PS

WIFI_STATIS_ALL

Type Definitions

typedef int (*wifi_action_rx_cb_t) (uint8_t *hdr, uint8_t* payload, size_t len, uint8_t channel)
The Rx callback function of Action Tx operations.

Parameters
• hdr: pointer to the IEEE 802.11 Header structure
• payload: pointer to the Payload following 802.11 Header
• len: length of the Payload
• channel: channel number the frame is received on

Enumerations
enum wifi_mode_t
    Values:
    
    WIFI_MODE_NULL = 0
null mode

    WIFI_MODE_STA
WiFi station mode

    WIFI_MODE_AP
WiFi soft-AP mode

    WIFI_MODE_APSTA
WiFi station + soft-AP mode
WIFI_MODE_MAX

enum wifi_interface_t
Values:

WIFI_IF_STA = ESP_IF_WIFI_STA
WIFI_IF_AP = ESP_IF_WIFI_AP

enum wifi_country_policy_t
Values:

WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO
Country policy is auto, use the country info of AP to which the station is connected

WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL
Country policy is manual, always use the configured country info

enum wifi_auth_mode_t
Values:

WIFI_AUTH_OPEN = 0
authenticate mode: open

WIFI_AUTH_WEP
authenticate mode: WEP

WIFI_AUTH_WPA_PSK
authenticate mode: WPA_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_PSK
authenticate mode: WPA2_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WPA_WPA2_PSK
authenticate mode: WPA_WPA2_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_ENTERPRISE
authenticate mode: WPA2_ENTERPRISE

WIFI_AUTH_WPA3_PSK
authenticate mode: WPA3_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_WPA3_PSK
authenticate mode: WPA2_WPA3_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WAPI_PSK
authenticate mode: WAPI_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_MAX

enum wifi_err_reason_t
Values:

WIFI_REASON_UNSPECIFIED = 1
WIFI_REASON_AUTH_EXPIRE = 2
WIFI_REASON_AUTH_LEAVE = 3
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_EXPIRE = 4
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_TOOMANY = 5
WIFI_REASON_NOT_AUTHED = 6
WIFI_REASON_NOT_ASSOCED = 7
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_LEAVE = 8
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_NOT_AUTHED = 9
WIFI_REASON_DISASSOC_PWRCAP_BAD = 10
WIFI_REASON_DISASSOC_SUPCHAN_BAD = 11
WIFI_REASON_BSS_TRANSITION_DISASSOC = 12
WIFI_REASON_IE_INVALID = 13
WIFI_REASON_MIC_FAILURE = 14
WIFI_REASON_4WAY_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT = 15
WIFI_REASON_GROUP_KEY_UPDATE_TIMEOUT = 16
WIFI_REASON_IE_IN_4WAY_DIFFERS = 17
WIFI_REASON_GROUP_CIPHER_INVALID = 18
WIFI_REASON_PAIRWISE_CIPHER_INVALID = 19
WIFI_REASON_AKMP_INVALID = 20
WIFI_REASON_UNSUPP_RSN_IE_VERSION = 21
WIFI_REASON_INVALID_RSN_IE_CAP = 22
WIFI_REASON_802_1X_AUTH_FAILED = 23
WIFI_REASON_CIPHER_SUITE_REJECTED = 24
WIFI_REASON_INVALID_PMKID = 53
WIFI_REASON_BEACON_TIMEOUT = 200
WIFI_REASON_NO_AP_FOUND = 201
WIFI_REASON_AUTH_FAIL = 202
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_FAIL = 203
WIFI_REASON_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT = 204
WIFI_REASON_CONNECTION_FAIL = 205
WIFI_REASON_AP_TSF_RESET = 206
WIFI_REASON_ROAMING = 207

enum wifi_second_chan_t
Values:
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_NONE = 0
the channel width is HT20
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_ABOVE
the channel width is HT40 and the secondary channel is above the primary channel
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_BELOW
the channel width is HT40 and the secondary channel is below the primary channel

enum wifi_scan_type_t
Values:
WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_ACTIVE = 0
active scan
WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_PASSIVE
passive scan

enum wifi_cipher_type_t
Values:
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_NONE = 0
the cipher type is none
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_WEP40
the cipher type is WEP40

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_WEP104
the cipher type is WEP104

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP
the cipher type is TKIP

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_CCMP
the cipher type is CCMP

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP_CCMP
the cipher type is TKIP and CCMP

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_AES CMAC128
the cipher type is AES-CMAC-128

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_SMS4
the cipher type is SMS4

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_GCMP
the cipher type is GCMP

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_GCMP256
the cipher type is GCMP-256

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_AES GMAC128
the cipher type is AES-GMAC-128

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_AES GMAC256
the cipher type is AES-GMAC-256

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_UNKNOWN
the cipher type is unknown

enum wifi_ant_t
WiFi antenna.
Values:

WIFI_ANT_ANT0
WiFi antenna 0

WIFI_ANT_ANT1
WiFi antenna 1

WIFI_ANT_MAX
Invalid WiFi antenna

denum wifi_scan_method_t
Values:

WIFI_FAST_SCAN = 0
Do fast scan, scan will end after find SSID match AP

WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN
All channel scan, scan will end after scan all the channel

enum wifi_sort_method_t
Values:

WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SIGNAL = 0
Sort match AP in scan list by RSSI

WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SECURITY
Sort match AP in scan list by security mode

denum wifi_ps_type_t
Values:
WIFI_PS_NONE
No power save
WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM
Minimum modem power saving. In this mode, station wakes up to receive beacon every DTIM period
WIFI_PS_MAX_MODEM
Maximum modem power saving. In this mode, interval to receive beacons is determined by the listen_interval parameter in wifi_sta_config_t

enum wifi_bandwidth_t
Values:
WIFI_BW_HT20 = 1
WIFI_BW_HT40

enum wifi_storage_t
Values:
WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH
all configuration will store in both memory and flash
WIFI_STORAGE_RAM
all configuration will only store in the memory

enum wifi_vendor_ie_type_t
Vendor Information Element type.
Determines the frame type that the IE will be associated with.
Values:
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_BEACON
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_PROBE_REQ
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_PROBE_RESP
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_ASSOC_REQ
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_ASSOC_RESP

enum wifi_vendor_ie_id_t
Vendor Information Element index.
Each IE type can have up to two associated vendor ID elements.
Values:
WIFI_VND_IE_ID_0
WIFI_VND_IE_ID_1

enum wifi_promiscuous_pkt_type_t
Promiscuous frame type.
Passed to promiscuous mode RX callback to indicate the type of parameter in the buffer.
Values:
WIFI_PKT_MGMT
Management frame, indicates ‘buf’ argument is wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t
WIFI_PKT_CTRL
Control frame, indicates ‘buf’ argument is wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t
WIFI_PKT_DATA
Data frame, indicates ‘buf’ argument is wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t
WIFI_PKT_MISC
Other type, such as MIMO etc. ‘buf’ argument is wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t but the payload is zero length.
enum wifi_ant_mode_t
WiFi antenna mode.

Values:

WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0
Enable WiFi antenna 0 only

WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1
Enable WiFi antenna 1 only

WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO
Enable WiFi antenna 0 and 1, automatically select an antenna

WIFI_ANT_MODE_MAX
Invalid WiFi enabled antenna

enum wifi_phy_rate_t
WiFi PHY rate encodings.

Values:

WIFI_PHY_RATE_1M_L = 0x00
1 Mbps with long preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_2M_L = 0x01
2 Mbps with long preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_5M_L = 0x02
5.5 Mbps with long preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_11M_L = 0x03
11 Mbps with long preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_2M_S = 0x05
2 Mbps with short preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_5M_S = 0x06
5.5 Mbps with short preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_11M_S = 0x07
11 Mbps with short preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_48M = 0x08
48 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_24M = 0x09
24 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_12M = 0x0A
12 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_6M = 0x0B
6 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_54M = 0x0C
54 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_36M = 0x0D
36 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_18M = 0x0E
18 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_9M = 0x0F
9 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS0_LGI = 0x10
MCS0 with long GI, 6.5 Mbps for 20MHz, 13.5 Mbps for 40MHz
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS1_LGI = 0x11
MCS1 with long GI, 13 Mbps for 20MHz, 27 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS2_LGI = 0x12
MCS2 with long GI, 19.5 Mbps for 20MHz, 40.5 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS3_LGI = 0x13
MCS3 with long GI, 26 Mbps for 20MHz, 54 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS4_LGI = 0x14
MCS4 with long GI, 39 Mbps for 20MHz, 81 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS5_LGI = 0x15
MCS5 with long GI, 52 Mbps for 20MHz, 108 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS6_LGI = 0x16
MCS6 with long GI, 58.5 Mbps for 20MHz, 121.5 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS7_LGI = 0x17
MCS7 with long GI, 65 Mbps for 20MHz, 135 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS0_SGI = 0x18
MCS0 with short GI, 7.2 Mbps for 20MHz, 15 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS1_SGI = 0x19
MCS1 with short GI, 14.4 Mbps for 20MHz, 30 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS2_SGI = 0x1A
MCS2 with short GI, 21.7 Mbps for 20MHz, 45 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS3_SGI = 0x1B
MCS3 with short GI, 28.9 Mbps for 20MHz, 60 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS4_SGI = 0x1C
MCS4 with short GI, 43.3 Mbps for 20MHz, 90 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS5_SGI = 0x1D
MCS5 with short GI, 57.8 Mbps for 20MHz, 120 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS6_SGI = 0x1E
MCS6 with short GI, 65 Mbps for 20MHz, 135 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS7_SGI = 0x1F
MCS7 with short GI, 72.2 Mbps for 20MHz, 150 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_LORA_250K = 0x29
250 Kbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_LORA_500K = 0x2A
500 Kbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MAX

enum wifi_event_t
WiFi event declarations

Values:

WIFI_EVENT_WIFI_READY = 0
ESP32 WiFi ready

WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE
ESP32 finish scanning AP

WIFI_EVENT_STA_START
ESP32 station start

WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP
ESP32 station stop
WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED
ESP32 station connected to AP

WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED
ESP32 station disconnected from AP

WIFI_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE
the auth mode of AP connected by ESP32 station changed

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS
ESP32 station wps succeeds in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED
ESP32 station wps fails in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT
ESP32 station wps timeout in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN
ESP32 station wps pin code in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PBC_OVERLAP
ESP32 station wps overlap in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_AP_START
ESP32 soft-AP start

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STOP
ESP32 soft-AP stop

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED
a station connected to ESP32 soft-AP

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED
a station disconnected from ESP32 soft-AP

WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED
Receive probe request packet in soft-AP interface

WIFI_EVENT_FTM_REPORT
Receive report of FTM procedure

WIFI_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW
AP’s RSSI crossed configured threshold

WIFI_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS
Status indication of Action Tx operation

WIFI_EVENT_ROC_DONE
Remain-on-Channel operation complete

WIFI_EVENT_STA_BEACON_TIMEOUT
ESP32 station beacon timeout

WIFI_EVENT_MAX
Invalid WiFi event ID

enum wifi_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED event

Values:

WPS_FAIL_REASON_NORMAL = 0
ESP32 WPS normal fail reason

WPS_FAIL_REASON_RECV_M2D
ESP32 WPS receive M2D frame

WPS_FAIL_REASON_MAX
enum wifi_ftm_status_t
    FTM operation status types.

Values:

FTM_STATUS_SUCCESS = 0
    FTM exchange is successful

FTM_STATUS_UNSUPPORTED
    Peer does not support FTM

FTM_STATUS_CONF_REJECTED
    Peer rejected FTM configuration in FTM Request

FTM_STATUS_NO_RESPONSE
    Peer did not respond to FTM Requests

FTM_STATUS_FAIL
    Unknown error during FTM exchange

SmartConfig

The SmartConfig™ is a provisioning technology developed by TI to connect a new Wi-Fi device to a Wi-Fi network. It uses a mobile app to broadcast the network credentials from a smartphone, or a tablet, to an un-provisioned Wi-Fi device.

The advantage of this technology is that the device does not need to directly know SSID or password of an Access Point (AP). This information is provided using the smartphone. This is particularly important to headless device and systems, due to their lack of a user interface.

If you are looking for other options to provision your ESP32 devices, check API.

Application Example   Connect ESP32 to target AP using SmartConfig: wifi/smart_config.

API Reference

Header File

• components/esp_wifi/include/esp_smartconfig.h

Functions

const char *esp_smartconfig_get_version (void)
    Get the version of SmartConfig.

    Return
    • SmartConfig version const char.

esp_err_t esp_smartconfig_start (const smartconfig_start_config_t *config)
    Start SmartConfig, config ESP device to connect AP. You need to broadcast information by phone APP. Device sniffer special packets from the air that containing SSID and password of target AP.

    Attention 1. This API can be called in station or softAP-station mode.
    Attention 2. Can not call esp_smartconfig_start twice before it finish, please call esp_smartconfig_stop first.

    Return
    • ESP_OK: succeed
    • others: fail

    Parameters
    • config: pointer to smartconfig start configure structure

esp_err_t esp_smartconfig_stop (void)
    Stop SmartConfig, free the buffer taken by esp_smartconfig_start.
Attention Whether connect to AP succeed or not, this API should be called to free memory taken by smart-config_start.

Return
• ESP_OK: succeed
• others: fail

calls esp_esptouch_set_timeout (uint8_t time_s)
Set timeout of SmartConfig process.

Attention Timing starts from SC_STATUS_FIND_CHANNEL status. SmartConfig will restart if timeout.

Return
• ESP_OK: succeed
• others: fail

Parameters
• time_s: range 15s~255s, offset: 45s.

calls esp_smartconfig_set_type (smartconfig_type_t type)
Set protocol type of SmartConfig.

Attention If users need to set the SmartConfig type, please set it before calling esp_smartconfig_start.

Return
• ESP_OK: succeed
• others: fail

Parameters
• type: Choose from the smartconfig_type_t.

calls esp_smartconfig_fast_mode (bool enable)
Set mode of SmartConfig. default normal mode.

Attention 1. Please call it before API esp_smartconfig_start.
Attention 2. Fast mode have corresponding APP(phone).
Attention 3. Two mode is compatible.

Return
• ESP_OK: succeed
• others: fail

Parameters
• enable: false-disable(default); true-enable;

calls esp_smartconfig_get_rvd_data (uint8_t *rvd_data, uint8_t len)
Get reserved data of ESPTouch v2.

Return
• ESP_OK: succeed
• others: fail

Parameters
• rvd_data: reserved data
• len: length of reserved data

Structures

struct smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t
Argument structure for SC_EVENT_GOT_SSID_PSWD event

Public Members

uint8_t ssid[32]
SSID of the AP. Null terminated string.

uint8_t password[64]
Password of the AP. Null terminated string.

bool bssid_set
whether set MAC address of target AP or not.
Chapter 2. API 参考

uint8_t bssid[6]
MAC address of target AP.

smartconfig_type_t type
Type of smartconfig (ESPTouch or AirKiss).

uint8_t token
Token from cellphone which is used to send ACK to cellphone.

uint8_t cellphone_ip[4]
IP address of cellphone.

struct smartconfig_start_config_t
Configure structure for esp_smartconfig_start

**Public Members**

bool enable_log
Enable smartconfig logs.

bool esp_touch_v2_enable_crypt
Enable ESPTouch v2 crypt.

char *esp_touch_v2_key
ESPTouch v2 crypt key, len should be 16.

**Macros**

SMARTCONFIG_START_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

**Enumerations**

defined smartconfig_type_t

Values:

SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH = 0
protocol: ESPTouch

SC_TYPE_AIRKISS
protocol: AirKiss

SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH_AIRKISS
protocol: ESPTouch and AirKiss

SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH_V2
protocol: ESPTouch v2

defined smartconfig_event_t

Smartconfig event declarations

Values:

SC_EVENT_SCAN_DONE
ESP32 station smartconfig has finished to scan for APs

SC_EVENT_FOUND_CHANNEL
ESP32 station smartconfig has found the channel of the target AP

SC_EVENT_GOT_SSID_PSWD
ESP32 station smartconfig got the SSID and password

SC_EVENT_SEND_ACK_DONE
ESP32 station smartconfig has sent ACK to cellphone
Chapter 2. API 参考

ESP-NOW

概述 ESP-NOW 是一种由乐鑫公司定义的无连接 Wi-Fi 通信协议。在 ESP-NOW 中，应用程序数据被封装在各个供应商的动作帧中，然后在网络连接的情况下，从一个 Wi-Fi 设备传输到另一个 Wi-Fi 设备。CTR 与 CBC-MAC 协议 (CCMP) 可用来保护动作帧的安全。ESP-NOW 广泛应用于智能照明、远程控制、传感器等领域。

帧格式 ESP-NOW 使用各个供应商的动作帧传输数据，默认比特率为 1 Mbps。各个供应商的动作帧格式为：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAC 报头</th>
<th>分类代码</th>
<th>组标识符</th>
<th>随机值</th>
<th>供应商特定内容</th>
<th>FCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24 字节</td>
<td>1 字节</td>
<td>3 字节</td>
<td>4 字节</td>
<td>7-255 字节</td>
<td>4 字节</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 分类代码：分类代码字段可用于指示各个供应商的类别（比如 127）。
- 组标识符：组标识符包含一个唯一标识符（比如 0x18fe34），为乐鑫指定的 MAC 地址的前三个字节。
- 随机值：防止重放攻击。
- 供应商特定内容：供应商特定内容包含供应商特定字段，如下所示：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>元素 ID</th>
<th>长度</th>
<th>组标识符</th>
<th>类型</th>
<th>版本</th>
<th>正文</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 字节</td>
<td>1 字节</td>
<td>3 字节</td>
<td>1 字节</td>
<td>1 字节</td>
<td>0 - 250 字节</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 元素 ID：元素 ID 字段可用于指示特定于供应商的元素。
- 长度：长度是组标识符、类型、版本和正文的总长度。
- 组标识符：组标识符包含一个唯一标识符（比如 0x18fe34），为乐鑫指定的 MAC 地址的前三个字节。
- 类型：类型字段设置为 4，代表 ESP-NOW。
- 版本：版本字段设置为 ESP-NOW 的版本。
- 正文：正文包含 ESP-NOW 数据。

由于 ESP-NOW 是无连接的，因此 MAC 报头与标准帧略有不同。FrameControl 字段的 FromDS 和 ToDS 位均为 0。第一个地址字段用于配置目标地址。第二个地址字段用于配置源地址。第三个地址字段用于配置广播地址 (0xff:0xff:0xff:0xff:0xff:0xff)。

安全 ESP-NOW 采用 CCMP 方法保护供应商特定动作帧的安全，具体可参考 IEEE Std. 802.11-2012。Wi-Fi 设备维护一个初始 PMK，用于传输 ESP-NOW 数据。PMK 可使用 AES-128 算法加密 LMK。请注意，ESP-NOW 数据必须在 Wi-Fi 启动后传输，因此建议在初始化 ESP-NOW 之前启动 Wi-Fi，并在反初始化 ESP-NOW 之后停止 Wi-Fi。当调用 esp_now_deinit() 时，配对设备的所有信息都将被删除。

初始化和反初始化 调用 esp_now_init() 初始化 ESP-NOW。调用 esp_now_deinit() 反初始化 ESP-NOW。ESP-NOW 数据必须在 Wi-Fi 启动后传输，因此建议在初始化 ESP-NOW 之前启动 Wi-Fi，并在反初始化 ESP-NOW 之后停止 Wi-Fi。当调用 esp_now_deinit() 时，配对设备的所有信息都将被删除。

Espressif Systems 559 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 2. API

**Header File**
- components/esp_wifi/include/esp_now.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t esp_now_init ( void )
// Initialize ESPNOW function.

esp_err_t esp_now_deinit ( void )
// De-initialize ESPNOW function.

esp_err_t esp_now_get_version ( uint32_t *version )
// Get the version of ESPNOW.

esp_err_t esp_now_register_recv_cb ( esp_now_recv_cb_t cb )
// Register callback function of receiving ESPNOW data.
```

**API 参考**

**发送 ESP-NOW 数据** 调用 `esp_now_send()` 发送 ESP-NOW 数据，调用 `esp_now_register_send_cb` 注册发送回调函数。如果 MAC 层成功接收到数据，则该函数将返回 `ESP_NOW_SEND_SUCCESS` 事件。否则，它将返回 `ESP_NOW_SEND_FAIL`。ESP-NOW 数据发送失败可能有几种原因，比如目标设备不存在、设备的信道不相同、动作在传输过程中丢失等。应用层并不一定可以总能接收到数据。如果需要，应用层可在接收 ESP-NOW 数据时发回一个应答 (ACK) 数据。如果接收 ACK 数据超时，则将重新传输 ESP-NOW 数据。可以为 ESP-NOW 数据设置序列号，从而删除重复的数据。

如果有大量 ESP-NOW 数据要发送，则调用 `esp_now_send()` 一次性发送不大于 250 字节的数据。请注意，两个 ESP-NOW 数据包的发送间隔太短可能导致回调函数被调用。“乱” 因此，建议在等到上一次回调函数返回 ACK 后再发送下一个 ESP-NOW 数据。发送回调函数从高优先级的 Wi-Fi 任务中运行。因此，不要在回调函数中执行冗长的操作。相反，将必要的数据存储到队列，并交给优先级较低的任务处理。

**接收 ESP-NOW 数据** 调用 `esp_now_register_recv_cb` 注册接收回调函数。当接收 ESP-NOW 数据时，需要调用接收回调函数。接收回调函数也在 Wi-Fi 任务中运行。因此，不要在回调函数中执行冗长的操作。相反，将必要的数据存储到队列，并交给优先级较低的任务处理。

```c
Submit Document Feedback
```
Chapter 2. API

- cb: callback function of receiving ESPNOW data

```c
esp_err_t esp_now_unregister_recv_cb (void)
```
Unregister callback function of receiving ESPNOW data.

- esp_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized

```c
esp_err_t esp_now_register_send_cb (esp_now_send_cb_t cb)
```
Register callback function of sending ESPNOW data.

- esp_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL : internal error

- cb: callback function of sending ESPNOW data

```c
esp_err_t esp_now_unregister_send_cb (void)
```
Unregister callback function of sending ESPNOW data.

- esp_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized

```c
esp_err_t esp_now_send (const uint8_t* peer_addr, const uint8_t* data, size_t len)
```
Send ESPNOW data.

- Attention 1. If peer_addr is not NULL, send data to the peer whose MAC address matches peer_addr
- Attention 2. If peer_addr is NULL, send data to all of the peers that are added to the peer list
- Attention 3. The maximum length of data must be less than ESP_NOW_MAX_DATA_LEN
- Attention 4. The buffer pointed to by data argument does not need to be valid after esp_now_send returns

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL : internal error
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM : out of memory
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND : peer is not found
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_IF : current WiFi interface doesn’t match that of peer

- peer_addr: peer MAC address
- data: data to send
- len: length of data

```c
esp_err_t esp_now_add_peer (const esp_now_peer_info_t *peer)
```
Add a peer to peer list.

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL : peer list is full
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM : out of memory
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_EXIST : peer has existed

- peer: peer information

```c
esp_err_t esp_now_del_peer (const uint8_t* peer_addr)
```
Delete a peer from peer list.

- ESP_OK : succeed

---

Submit Document Feedback

Espressif Systems 561 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Chapter 2. API Reference

- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT: ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND: peer is not found

Parameters
- peer_addr: peer MAC address

`esp_err_t esp_now_mod_peer(const esp_now_peer_info_t *peer)`
Modify a peer.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT: ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL: peer list is full

Parameters
- peer: peer information

`esp_err_t esp_now_get_peer(const uint8_t *peer_addr, esp_now_peer_info_t *peer)`
Get a peer whose MAC address matches `peer_addr` from peer list.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT: ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND: peer is not found

Parameters
- peer_addr: peer MAC address
- peer: peer information

`esp_err_t esp_now_fetch_peer(bool from_head, esp_now_peer_info_t *peer)`
Fetch a peer from peer list. Only return the peer which address is unicast, for the multicast/broadcast address, the function will ignore and try to find the next in the peer list.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT: ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND: peer is not found

Parameters
- from_head: fetch from head of list or not
- peer: peer information

`bool esp_now_is_peer_exist(const uint8_t *peer_addr)`
Peer exists or not.

Return
- true: peer exists
- false: peer not exists

Parameters
- peer_addr: peer MAC address

`esp_err_t esp_now_get_peer_num(esp_now_peer_num_t *num)`
Get the number of peers.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT: ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- num: number of peers

`esp_err_t esp_now_set_pmk(const uint8_t *pmk)`
Set the primary master key.
Attention 1. primary master key is used to encrypt local master key

Return
  • ESP_OK : succeed
  • ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
  • ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument

Parameters
  • pmk: primary master key

`esp_err_t esp_now_set_wake_window(uint16_t window)`
Set esp_now wake window for sta_disconnected power management.

Attention 1. Only when ESP_WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLE is enabled, this configuration could work
Attention 2. This configuration only work for station mode and disconnected status
Attention 3. If more than one module has configured its wake_window, chip would choose the largest one to stay waked
Attention 4. If the gap between interval and window is smaller than 5ms, the chip would keep waked all the time
Attention 5. If never configured wake_window, the chip would keep waked at disconnected once it uses esp_now

Return
  • ESP_OK : succeed
  • ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized

Parameters
  • window: how much microsecond would the chip keep waked each interval, vary from 0 to 65535

Structures

`struct esp_now_peer_info`
ESPNOW peer information parameters.

Public Members

- `uint8_t peer_addr[ESP_NOW_ETH_ALEN]`
  ESPNOW peer MAC address that is also the MAC address of station or softap
- `uint8_t lmk[ESP_NOW_KEY_LEN]`
  ESPNOW peer local master key that is used to encrypt data
- `uint8_t channel`
  Wi-Fi channel that peer uses to send/receive ESPNOW data. If the value is 0, use the current channel which station or softap is on. Otherwise, it must be set as the channel that station or softap is on.
- `wifi_interface_t ifidx`
  Wi-Fi interface that peer uses to send/receive ESPNOW data
- `bool encrypt`
  ESPNOW data that this peer sends/receives is encrypted or not
- `void *priv`
  ESPNOW peer private data

`struct esp_now_peer_num`
Number of ESPNOW peers which exist currently.

Public Members

- `int total_num`
  Total number of ESPNOW peers, maximum value is ESP_NOW_MAX_TOTAL_PEER_NUM
- `int encrypt_num`
  Number of encrypted ESPNOW peers, maximum value is ESP_NOW_MAX_ENCRYPT_PEER_NUM
### Macros

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_BASE**
- ESPNOW error number base.

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT**
- ESPNOW is not initialized.

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG**
- Invalid argument

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM**
- Out of memory

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL**
- ESPNOW peer list is full

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND**
- ESPNOW peer is not found

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL**
- Internal error

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_EXIST**
- ESPNOW peer has existed

**ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_IF**
- Interface error

**ESP_NOW_ETH_ALEN**
- Length of ESPNOW peer MAC address

**ESP_NOW_KEY_LEN**
- Length of ESPNOW peer local master key

**ESP_NOW_MAX_TOTAL_PEER_NUM**
- Maximum number of ESPNOW total peers

**ESP_NOW_MAX_ENCRYPT_PEER_NUM**
- Maximum number of ESPNOW encrypted peers

**ESP_NOW_MAX_DATA_LEN**
- Maximum length of ESPNOW data which is sent very time

### Type Definitions

```c
typedef struct esp_now_peer_info esp_now_peer_info_t
    ESPNOW peer information parameters.

typedef struct esp_now_peer_num esp_now_peer_num_t
    Number of ESPNOW peers which exist currently.

typedef void (*esp_now_recv_cb_t)(const uint8_t *mac_addr, const uint8_t *data, int data_len)
    Callback function of receiving ESPNOW data.

    Parameters
    • mac_addr: peer MAC address
    • data: received data
    • data_len: length of received data

typedef void (*esp_now_send_cb_t)(const uint8_t *mac_addr, esp_now_send_status_t status)
    Callback function of sending ESPNOW data.

    Parameters
    • mac_addr: peer MAC address
    • status: status of sending ESPNOW data (succeed or fail)
```
Enumerations

```c
enum esp_now_send_status_t
{
    ESP_NOW_SEND_SUCCESS = 0,
    ESP_NOW_SEND_FAIL,
};
```

**Values:**

- `ESP_NOW_SEND_SUCCESS`: Send ESPNOW data successfully
- `ESP_NOW_SEND_FAIL`: Send ESPNOW data fail

**ESP-WIFI-MESH 編程指南**

这是 ESP-WIFI-MESH 的编程指南，包括 API 参考和编码示例。本指南分为以下部分:

1. ESP-WIFI-MESH 編程模型
2. 编写 ESP-WIFI-MESH 应用程序
3. 自组网
4. 应用实例
5. API 参考

有关 ESP-WIFI-MESH 协议的文档，请见 ESP-WIFI-MESH API 指南。有关 ESP-WIFI-MESH 开发框架的更多内容，请见 ESP-WIFI-MESH 开发框架。

**ESP-WIFI-MESH 編程模型**

ESP-WIFI-MESH 软件栈基于 Wi-Fi 驱动程序和 FreeRTOS 构建，某些情况下（如根节点）也会使用 LwIP 软件栈。下图展示了 ESP-WIFI-MESH 软件栈。

![ESP-WIFI-MESH 软件栈](image)

图 2: ESP-WIFI-MESH 软件栈

**系统事件** 应用程序可通过 ESP-WIFI-MESH 事件与 ESP-WIFI-MESH 交互。由于 ESP-WIFI-MESH 构建在 Wi-Fi 软件栈之上，因此也可以通过 Wi-Fi 事件任务与 Wi-Fi 驱动程序进行交互。下图展示了 ESP-WIFI-MESH 应用程序中各种系统事件的接口。

`mesh_event_id_t` 定义了所有可能的 ESP-WIFI-MESH 事件，并且可以指示父节点和子节点的连接或断开等事件。应用程序如需使用 ESP-WIFI-MESH 事件，则必须通过 `esp_event_handler_register()` 将 Mesh 事件处理程序注册在默认事件任务中。注册完成后，ESP-WIFI-MESH 事件将包含与应用程序所有相关事件相关的处理程序。

Mesh 事件的典型应用场景包括：使用 `MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED` 和 `MESH_EVENT_CHILD_CONNECTED` 事件来指示节点何时可以分别开始传输上行和下行的数据。
同样，也可以使用 IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP 和 IP_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP 事件来指示根节点何时可以向外部 IP 网络传输数据。

警告：在自组网模式下使用 ESP-WIFI-MESH 时，用户必须确保不得调用 Wi-Fi API。原因在于：自组网模式将内部调用 Wi-Fi API 实现连接/断开/扫描等操作。此时，如果外部应用程序调用 Wi-Fi API（包括来自回调函数和 Wi-Fi 事件处理程序的调用）都可能会干扰 ESP-WIFI-MESH 的自组网行为。因此，用户不应该在 esp_mesh_start() 和 esp_mesh_stop() 之间调用 Wi-Fi API。

LwIP & ESP-WIFI-MESH 应用程序无需通过 LwIP 层便可直接访问 ESP-WIFI-MESH 软件栈。LwIP 层仅在根节点和外部 IP 网络的数据发送与接收时会用到。但是，由于每个节点都有可能成为根节点（由于自动根节点选择机制的存在），每个节点仍必须初始化 LwIP 软件栈。

每个节点都需要通过调用 tcpip_adapter_init() 初始化 LwIP 软件栈。为了防止非根节点访问 LwIP，应用程序应该在 LwIP 初始化完成后停止以下服务：

- SoftAP 接口上的 DHCP 服务器服务。
- Station 接口上的 DHCP 客户端服务。

下方代码片段展示如何为 ESP-WIFI-MESH 应用程序进行 LwIP 初始化。

```c
/* tcpip 初始化 */
tcpip_adapter_init();
/*
* 对于 MESH
* 默认情况下，在 SoftAP 接口上停止 DHCP 服务器
* 默认情况下，在 Station 接口上停止 DHCP 客户端
*/
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(tcpip_adapter_dhcps_stop(TCPIP_ADAPTER_IF_AP));
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(tcpip_adapter_dhcpc_stop(TCPIP_ADAPTER_IF_STA));
```

注解：ESP-WIFI-MESH 的根节点必须与路由器连接。因此，当一个节点成为根节点时，该节点对应的处理程序必须启动 DHCP 客户端服务并立即获取 IP 地址。这样做将允许其他节点开始向/从外部 IP 网络发送/接收数据包。但是，如果使用静态 IP 设置，则不需要执行此步骤。

编写 ESP-WIFI-MESH 应用程序 ESP-WIFI-MESH 在正常启动前必须先初始化 LwIP 和 Wi-Fi 软件栈。下方代码展示了 ESP-WIFI-MESH 在开始自身初始化前必须完成的步骤。

```c
tcpip_adapter_init();
/*
* 对于 MESH
* 默认情况下，在 SoftAP 接口上停止 DHCP 服务器
*/
```
在完成 LwIP 和 Wi-Fi 的初始化后，需完成以下三个步骤以启动并运行 ESP-WIFI-MESH。

1. 初始化 Mesh
2. 配置 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络
3. 启动 Mesh

初始化 Mesh 下方代码片段展示如何初始化 ESP-WIFI-MESH。

```c
/* Mesh 初始化 */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_mesh_init());
/* 注册 mesh 事件处理程序 */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_event_handler_register(MESH_EVENT, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID, &mesh_,
    event_handler, NULL));
```

配置 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络 ESP-WIFI-MESH 可通过 `esp_mesh_set_config()` 进行配置，并使用 `mesh_cfg_t` 结构体传递参数。该结构体包含以下 ESP-WIFI-MESH 的配置参数:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Channel (信道)</td>
<td>1 到 14 信道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesh ID</td>
<td>ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的 ID，见 <code>mesh_addr_t</code>。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Router (路由器)</td>
<td>路由器配置，见 <code>mesh_router_t</code>。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesh AP</td>
<td>Mesh AP 配置，见 <code>mesh_ap_cfg_t</code>。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crypto Functions (加密函数)</td>
<td>Mesh IE 的加密函数，见 <code>mesh_crypto_funcs_t</code>。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

下方代码片段展示如何配置 ESP-WIFI-MESH。

```c
/* 默认启用 MESH IE 加密 */
memcpy((uint8_t *) &cfg.mesh_id, MESH_ID, 6);
/* 随机值与路由器信道匹配 */
cfg.channel = CONFIG_MESH_CHANNEL;
/* 路由器 */
cfg.router.ssid_len = strlen(CONFIG_MESH_ROUTER_SSID);
memcpy((uint8_t *) &cfg.router.ssid, CONFIG_MESH_ROUTER_SSID, cfg.router.ssid_len);
memcpy((uint8_t *) &cfg.router.password, CONFIG_MESH_ROUTER_PASSWD, strlen(CONFIG_MESH_ROUTER_PASSWD));
/* Mesh softAP */
cfg.mesh_ap.max_connection = CONFIG_MESH_AP_CONNECTIONS;
memcpy((uint8_t *) &cfg.mesh_ap.password, CONFIG_MESH_AP_PASSWD, 
```
启动 Mesh

启动 ESP-WIFI-MESH 后，应用程序应检查 ESP-WIFI-MESH 事件，以确定它是何时连接到网络的。连接后，应用程序可使用 esp_mesh_send() 和 esp_mesh_recv() 在 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中发送、接收数据包。

自组网

自组网是 ESP-WIFI-MESH 的功能之一，允许节点自动扫描/选择/连接/重新连接到其他节点和路由器。此功能允许 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络具有很高的自主性，可适应变化的动态网络拓扑结构和环境。启用自组网功能后，ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的节点能够自主完成以下操作:

- 选择或选举根节点（见建立网络中的自动根节点选择）
- 选择首选的父节点（见建立网络中的父节点选择）
- 网络断开时自动重新连接（见管理网络中的中间父节点失败）

启用自组网功能后，ESP-WIFI-MESH 软件栈将内部调用 Wi-Fi API。因此，在启用自组网功能时，应用层不得调用 Wi-Fi API，否则会干扰 ESP-WIFI-MESH 的工作。

开关自组网

应用程序可以在运行时通过调用 esp_mesh_set_self_organized() 函数，启用或禁用自组网功能。该函数具有以下两个参数:

- bool enable 指定启用或禁用自组网功能。
- bool select_parent 指定在启用自组网功能时是否应选择新的父节点。根据节点类型和节点当前状态，选择新的父节点具有不同的作用。在禁用自组网功能时，此参数不使用。

禁用自组网

ESP-WIFI-MESH 将在禁用自组网时尝试维护节点的当前 Wi-Fi 状态。

- 如果节点先前已连接到其他节点，则保持连接。
- 如果节点先前已断开连接并且正在扫描父节点或路由器，则将停止扫描。
- 如果节点以前尝试重新连接到父节点或路由器，则将停止重新连接。

启用自组网

ESP-WIFI-MESH 将尝试在启用自组网时保持节点的当前 Wi-Fi 状态。但是，根据节点类型以及是否选择了新的父节点，节点的 Wi-Fi 状态可能会发生变化。下表显示了启用自组网的效果。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>是否选择父节点</th>
<th>是否为根节点</th>
<th>作用</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>已连接到父节点的节点将保持连接。之前扫描父节点的节点将停止扫描。调用 esp_mesh_connect() 重新启动。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>已连接到路由器的根节点将保持连接。从路由器断开的根节点需调用 esp_mesh_connect() 进行重连。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>没有父节点的节点将自动选择首选父节点并连接。已连接到父节点的节点将断开连接，重新选择首选父节点并进行重连。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>根节点在连接至父节点前必须放弃“根节点”的角色。因此，根节点将断开与路由器和所有子节点的连接，选择首选父节点并进行连接。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

下方代码片段展示了如何启用自组网功能。
// 启用自组网，并选择一个新的父节点
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(true, true);

...  

// 启用自组网并手动重新连接
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(true, false);
esp_mesh_connect();

// 使用 Wi-Fi API，在有些情况下，应用程序可能希望在使用 ESP-WIFI-MESH 期间调用 Wi-Fi API。例如，
// 应用程序可能需要手动扫描邻近的接入点 (AP)。但在应用程序调用任何 Wi-Fi API 之前，必须先禁用自
// 组网。否则，ESP-WIFI-MESH 软件栈可能会同时调用 Wi-Fi API，进而影响应用程序的正常调用。
// 应用程序不应在 esp_mesh_set_self_organized() 之间调用 Wi-Fi API。下面代码片段展示了应用程序如何在 ESP-WIFI-MESH 运行期间安全地调用 esp_wifi_scan_start()。

// 禁用自组网
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(0, 0);

// 停止任何正在进行的扫描
esp_wifi_scan_stop();
// 手动启动扫描后完成时自动停止
esp_wifi_scan_start();

// 进行扫描结果
...

// 如果为连接状态，则重新启用自组网
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(1, 0);

...

// 如果为根节点且未连接，则重新启用自组网
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(1, 1);

...

// 如果为根节点且未连接，则重新启用
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(1, 0);  // 不选择新的父节点
esp_mesh_connect();  // 手动重新连接到路由器

应用实例 ESP-IDF 包含以下 ESP-WIFI-MESH 示例项目:
内部通信示例 展示了如何搭建 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络，并让根节点向网络中的每个节点发送数据包。
手动连网示例 展示了如何禁用自组网功能的网络使用 ESP-WIFI-MESH。此示例展示了如何对节点
进行编程，以手动扫描潜在父节点的列表，并根据自定义标准选择父节点。

API 参考

Header File

- components/esp_wifi/include/esp_mesh.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_mesh_init (void)
Mesh initialization.
Check whether Wi-Fi is started.
Initialize mesh global variables with default values.

**Attention** This API shall be called after Wi-Fi is started.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_deinit(void)
```

Mesh de-initialization.

- Release resources and stop the mesh

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_start(void)
```

Start mesh.

- Initialize mesh IE.
- Start mesh network management service.
- Create TX and RX queues according to the configuration.
- Register mesh packets receive callback.

**Attention** This API shall be called after mesh initialization and configuration.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL
- ESP_ERR.Mesh.NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_MESH.NOT_CONFIG
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_stop(void)
```

Stop mesh.

- Deinitialize mesh IE.
- Disconnect with current parent.
- Disassociate all currently associated children.
- Stop mesh network management service.
- Unregister mesh packets receive callback.
- Delete TX and RX queues.
- Release resources.
- Restore Wi-Fi softAP to default settings if Wi-Fi dual mode is enabled.
- Set Wi-Fi Power Save type to WIFI_PS_NONE.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_send(const mesh_addr_t *to, const mesh_data_t *data, int flag, const mesh_opt_t opt[], int opt_count)
```

Send a packet over the mesh network.

- Send a packet to any device in the mesh network.
- Send a packet to external IP network.

**Attention** This API is not reentrant.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
- ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED
- ESP_ERR_MESH_OPT_UNKNOWN
**Chapter 2. API**

- ESP_ERR_MESH_EXCEED_MTU
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY
- ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_ROUTE_FOUND
- ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD

**Parameters**

- **[in]** to: the address of the final destination of the packet
  - If the packet is to the root, set this parameter to NULL.
  - If the packet is to an external IP network, set this parameter to the IPv4:PORT combination. This packet will be delivered to the root firstly, then the root will forward this packet to the final IP server address.
- **[in]** data: pointer to a sending mesh packet
  - Field size should not exceed MESH_MPS. Note that the size of one mesh packet should not exceed MESH_MTU.
  - Field proto should be set to data protocol in use (default is MESH_PROTO_BIN for binary).
  - Field tos should be set to transmission tos (type of service) in use (default is MESH_TOS_P2P for point-to-point reliable).
- **[in]** flag: bitmap for data sent
  - Speed up the route search
    * If the packet is to the root and “to” parameter is NULL, set this parameter to 0.
    * If the packet is to an internal device, MESH_DATA_P2P should be set.
    * If the packet is to the root ( “to” parameter isn’t NULL) or to external IP network, MESH_DATA_TODS should be set.
    * If the packet is from the root to an internal device, MESH_DATA_FROMDS should be set.
  - Specify whether this API is block or non-block, block by default
    * If needs non-blocking, MESH_DATA_NONBLOCK should be set. Otherwise, may use esp_mesh_send_block_time() to specify a blocking time.
  - In the situation of the root change, MESH_DATA_DROP identifies this packet can be dropped by the new root for upstream data to external IP network, we try our best to avoid data loss caused by the root change, but there is a risk that the new root is running out of memory because most of memory is occupied by the pending data which isn’t read out in time by esp_mesh_recv_toDS(). Generally, we suggest esp_mesh_recv_toDS() is called after a connection with IP network is created. Thus data outgoing to external IP network via socket is just from reading esp_mesh_recv_toDS() which avoids unnecessary memory copy.
- **[in]** opt: options
  - In case of sending a packet to a certain group, MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP is a good choice. In this option, the value field should be set to the target receiver addresses in this group.
  - Root sends a packet to an internal device, this packet is from external IP network in case the receiver device responds this packet, MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR is required to attach the target DS address.
- **[in]** opt_count: option count
  - Currently, this API only takes one option, so opt_count is only supported to be 1.

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_send_block_time (uint32_t time_ms)**

Set blocking time of esp_mesh_send()

**Attention** This API shall be called before mesh is started.

**Return**

- ESP_OK

**Parameters**

- **[in]** time_ms: blocking time of esp_mesh_send(), unit:ms

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_recv (mesh_addr_t *from, mesh_data_t *data, int timeout_ms, int *flag, mesh_opt_t opt[], int opt_count)**

Receive a packet targeted to self over the mesh network.

**flag** could be MESH_DATA_FROMDS or MESH_DATA_TODS.

**Attention** Mesh RX queue should be checked regularly to avoid running out of memory.
• Use esp_mesh_get_rx_pending() to check the number of packets available in the queue waiting to be received by applications.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
• ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
• ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT
• ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD

Parameters
• **[out]** from: the address of the original source of the packet
• **[out]** data: pointer to the received mesh packet
  – Field proto is the data protocol in use. Should follow it to parse the received data.
  – Field tos is the transmission tos (type of service) in use.
• **[in]** timeout_ms: wait time if a packet isn’t immediately available (0:no wait, port-MAX_DELAY:wait forever)
• **[out]** flag: bitmap for data received
  – MESH_DATA_FROMDS represents data from external IP network
  – MESH_DATA_TODS represents data directed upward within the mesh network

---

Use esp_mesh_recv_toDS() to check the number of packets available in the queue waiting to be received by applications in case of running out of memory in the root.

Using esp_mesh_set_xon_qsize() users may configure the RX queue size, default:32. If this size is too large, and esp_mesh_recv_toDS() hasn’t been called by applications, packets from the whole mesh network will be pending in toDS queue.

flag could be MESH_DATA_TODS.

Attention This API is only called by the root.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
• ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
• ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT
• ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD
• ESP_ERR_MESH_RECV_RELEASE

Parameters
• **[out]** from: the address of the original source of the packet
• **[out]** to: the address contains remote IP address and port (IPv4:PORT)
• **[out]** data: pointer to the received packet
  – Contain the protocol and applications should follow it to parse the data.
• **[in]** timeout_ms: wait time if a packet isn’t immediately available (0:no wait, port-MAX_DELAY:wait forever)
• **[out]** flag: bitmap for data received
  – MESH_DATA_TODS represents the received data target to external IP network. Root shall forward this data to external IP network via the association with router.
Parameters
- \([\text{out}]\) \text{opt}\): options desired to receive
- \([\text{in}]\) \text{opt\_count}\): option count desired to receive

\text{esp\_err\_t} \text{esp\_mesh\_set\_config} (\text{const mesh\_cfg\_t *} \text{config})

Set mesh stack configuration.

- Use \text{MESH\_INIT\_CONFIG\_DEFAULT()} to initialize the default values, mesh IE is encrypted by default.
- Mesh network is established on a fixed channel (1-14).
- Mesh event callback is mandatory.
- Mesh ID is an identifier of an MBSS. Nodes with the same mesh ID can communicate with each other.
- Regarding to the router configuration, if the router is hidden, BSSID field is mandatory.

If BSSID field isn’t set and there exists more than one router with same SSID, there is a risk that more roots than one connected with different BSSID will appear. It means more than one mesh network is established with the same mesh ID.

Root conflict function could eliminate redundant roots connected with the same BSSID, but couldn’t handle roots connected with different BSSID. Because users might have such requirements of setting up routers with same SSID for the future replacement. But in that case, if the above situations happen, please make sure applications implement forward functions on the root to guarantee devices in different mesh networks can communicate with each other. max_connection of mesh softAP is limited by the max number of Wi-Fi softAP supported (max:10).

\textbf{Attention} This API shall be called before mesh is started after mesh is initialized.

Return
- \text{ESP\_OK}
- \text{ESP\_ERR\_MESH\_ARGUMENT}
- \text{ESP\_ERR\_MESH\_NOT\_ALLOWED}

Parameters
- \([\text{in}]\) \text{config}\): pointer to mesh stack configuration

\text{esp\_err\_t} \text{esp\_mesh\_get\_config} (\text{mesh\_cfg\_t *} \text{config})

Get mesh stack configuration.

Return
- \text{ESP\_OK}
- \text{ESP\_ERR\_MESH\_ARGUMENT}

Parameters
- \([\text{out}]\) \text{config}\): pointer to mesh stack configuration

\text{esp\_err\_t} \text{esp\_mesh\_set\_router} (\text{const mesh\_router\_t *} \text{router})

Get router configuration.

\textbf{Attention} This API is used to dynamically modify the router configuration after mesh is configured.

Return
- \text{ESP\_OK}
- \text{ESP\_ERR\_MESH\_ARGUMENT}

Parameters
- \([\text{in}]\) \text{router}\): pointer to router configuration

\text{esp\_err\_t} \text{esp\_mesh\_get\_router} (\text{mesh\_router\_t *} \text{router})

Get router configuration.

Return
- \text{ESP\_OK}
- \text{ESP\_ERR\_MESH\_ARGUMENT}

Parameters
- \([\text{out}]\) \text{router}\): pointer to router configuration

\text{esp\_err\_t} \text{esp\_mesh\_set\_id} (\text{const mesh\_addr\_t *} \text{id})

Set mesh network ID.

\textbf{Attention} This API is used to dynamically modify the mesh network ID.
Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT: invalid argument

Parameters
• [in] id: pointer to mesh network ID

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_id(mesh_addr_t *id)}
Get mesh network ID.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters
• [out] id: pointer to mesh network ID

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_type(mesh_type_t type)}
Designate device type over the mesh network.

• MESH_IDLE: designates a device as a self-organized node for a mesh network
• MESH_ROOT: designates the root node for a mesh network
• MESH_LEAF: designates a device as a standalone Wi-Fi station that connects to a parent
• MESH_STA: designates a device as a standalone Wi-Fi station that connects to a router

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
• [in] type: device type

\texttt{mesh_type_t esp_mesh_get_type(void)}
Get device type over mesh network.

Attention This API shall be called after having received the event MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED.

Return mesh type

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_max_layer(int max_layer)}
Set network max layer value.

• for tree topology, the max is 25.
• for chain topology, the max is 1000.
• Network max layer limits the max hop count.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
• ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
• [in] max_layer: max layer value

\texttt{int esp_mesh_get_max_layer(void)}
Get max layer value.

Return max layer value

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_ap_password(const uint8_t *pwd, int len)}
Set mesh softAP password.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
• ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
Chapter 2. API 参考

- [in] pwd: pointer to the password
- [in] len: password length

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_ap_authmode (wifi_auth_mode_t authmode)**
Set mesh softAP authentication mode.

**Attention** This API shall be called before mesh is started.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

**Parameters**
- [in] authmode: authentication mode

**wifi_auth_mode_t esp_mesh_get_ap_authmode (void)**
Get mesh softAP authentication mode.

**Return** authentication mode

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_ap_connections (int connections)**
Set mesh max connection value.

- Set mesh softAP max connection = mesh max connection + non-mesh max connection

**Attention** This API shall be called before mesh is started.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

**Parameters**
- [in] connections: the number of max connections

**int esp_mesh_get_ap_connections (void)**
Get mesh max connection configuration.

**Return** the number of mesh max connections

**int esp_mesh_get_non_mesh_connections (void)**
Get non-mesh max connection configuration.

**Return** the number of non-mesh max connections

**int esp_mesh_get_layer (void)**
Get current layer value over the mesh network.

**Attention** This API shall be called after having received the event MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED.

**Return** layer value

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_parent_bssid (mesh_addr_t *bssid)**
Get the parent BSSID.

**Attention** This API shall be called after having received the event MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

**Parameters**
- [out] bssid: pointer to parent BSSID

**bool esp_mesh_is_root (void)**
Return whether the device is the root node of the network.

**Return** true/false

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_self_organized (bool enable, bool select_parent)**
Enable/disable self-organized networking.
Self-organized networking has three main functions: select the root node; find a preferred parent; initiate reconnection if a disconnection is detected.

Self-organized networking is enabled by default.

If self-organized is disabled, users should set a parent for the device via esp_mesh_set_parent().

Attention This API is used to dynamically modify whether to enable the self organizing.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- [in] enable: enable or disable self-organized networking
- [in] select_parent: Only valid when self-organized networking is enabled.
  - if select_parent is set to true, the root will give up its mesh root status and search for a new parent like other non-root devices.

bool esp_mesh_get_self_organized (void)
Return whether enable self-organized networking or not.

Return true/false

esp_err_t esp_mesh_waive_root (const mesh_vote_t *vote, int reason)
Cause the root device to give up (waive) its mesh root status.

A device is elected root primarily based on RSSI from the external router.

If external router conditions change, users can call this API to perform a root switch.

In this API, users could specify a desired root address to replace itself or specify an attempts value to ask current root to initiate a new round of voting. During the voting, a better root candidate would be expected to find to replace the current one.

If no desired root candidate, the vote will try a specified number of attempts (at least 15). If no better root candidate is found, keep the current one. If a better candidate is found, the new better one will send a root switch request to the current root, current root will respond with a root switch acknowledgment.

After that, the new candidate will connect to the router to be a new root, the previous root will disconnect with the router and choose another parent instead.

Root switch is completed with minimal disruption to the whole mesh network.

Attention This API is only called by the root.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL
- ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- [in] vote: vote configuration
  - If this parameter is set NULL, the vote will perform the default 15 times.
  - Field percentage threshold is 0.9 by default.
  - Field is_rc_specified shall be false.
  - Field attempts shall be at least 15 times.
- [in] reason: only accept MESH_VOTE_REASON_ROOT_INITIATED for now

esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_vote_percentage (float percentage)
Set vote percentage threshold for approval of being a root (default:0.9)

During the networking, only obtaining vote percentage reaches this threshold, the device could be a root.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- [in] percentage: vote percentage threshold

float esp_mesh_get_vote_percentage (void)
Get vote percentage threshold for approval of being a root.
Chapter 2. API

Return percentage threshold

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_ap_assoc_expire** (int seconds)
Set mesh softAP associate expired time (default: 10 seconds)

- If mesh softAP hasn’t received any data from an associated child within this time, mesh softAP will take this child inactive and disassociate it.
- If mesh softAP is encrypted, this value should be set a greater value, such as 30 seconds.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- [in] seconds: the expired time

**int esp_mesh_get_ap_assoc_expire** (void)
Get mesh softAP associate expired time.

Return seconds

**int esp_mesh_get_total_node_num** (void)
Get total number of devices in current network (including the root)

Attention The returned value might be incorrect when the network is changing.

Return total number of devices (including the root)

**int esp_mesh_get_routing_table_size** (void)
Get the number of devices in this device’s sub-network (including self)

Return the number of devices over this device’s sub-network (including self)

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_routing_table** (mesh_addr_t *mac, int len, int *size)
Get routing table of this device’s sub-network (including itself)

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- [out] mac: pointer to routing table
- [in] len: routing table size (in bytes)
- [out] size: pointer to the number of devices in routing table (including itself)

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_post_toDS_state** (bool reachable)
Post the toDS state to the mesh stack.

Attention This API is only for the root.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- [in] reachable: this state represents whether the root is able to access external IP network

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_tx_pending** (mesh_tx_pending_t *pending)
Return the number of packets pending in the queue waiting to be sent by the mesh stack.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- [out] pending: pointer to the TX pending

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_rx_pending** (mesh_rx_pending_t *pending)
Return the number of packets available in the queue waiting to be received by applications.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL
Parameters
• [out] pending: pointer to the RX pending

int esp_mesh_available_txupQ_num(const mesh_addr_t *addr, uint32_t *xseqno_in)
Return the number of packets could be accepted from the specified address.
Parameters
• [in] addr: self address or an associate children address
• [out] xseqno_in: sequence number of the last received packet from the specified address

esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_xon_qsize(int qsize)
Set the number of queue.
Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.
Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_FAIL
Parameters
• [in] qsize: default:32 (min:16)

int esp_mesh_get_xon_qsize(void)
Get queue size.
Return the number of queue

esp_err_t esp_mesh_allow_root_conflicts(bool allowed)
Set whether allow more than one root existing in one network.
Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_WIFI_ERR_NOT_INIT
• ESP_WIFI_ERR_NOT_START
Parameters
• [in] allowed: allow or not

bool esp_mesh_is_root_conflicts_allowed(void)
Check whether allow more than one root to exist in one network.
Return true/false

esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_group_id(const mesh_addr_t *addr, int num)
Set group ID addresses.
Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT
Parameters
• [in] addr: pointer to new group ID addresses
• [in] num: the number of group ID addresses

esp_err_t esp_mesh_delete_group_id(const mesh_addr_t *addr, int num)
Delete group ID addresses.
Parameters
• [in] addr: pointer to deleted group ID address
• [in] num: the number of group ID addresses

int esp_mesh_get_group_num(void)
Get the number of group ID addresses.
Return the number of group ID addresses
**esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_group_list** *(mesh_addr_t *addr, int num)*
Get group ID addresses.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

**Parameters**
- [out] addr: pointer to group ID addresses
- [in] num: the number of group ID addresses

**bool esp_mesh_is_my_group** *(const mesh_addr_t *addr)*
Check whether the specified group address is my group.

**Return** true/false

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_capacity_num** *(int num)*
Set mesh network capacity (max:1000, default:300)

**Attention** This API shall be called before mesh is started.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

**Parameters**
- [in] num: mesh network capacity

**int esp_mesh_get_capacity_num** *(void)*
Get mesh network capacity.

**Return** mesh network capacity

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_ie_crypto_funcs** *(const mesh_crypto_funcs_t *crypto_funcs)*
Set mesh IE crypto functions.

**Attention** This API can be called at any time after mesh is initialized.

**Return** ESP_OK

**Parameters**
- [in] crypto_funcs: crypto functions for mesh IE
  - If crypto_funcs is set to NULL, mesh IE is no longer encrypted.

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_ie_crypto_key** *(const char *key, int len)*
Set mesh IE crypto key.

**Attention** This API can be called at any time after mesh is initialized.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

**Parameters**
- [in] key: ASCII crypto key
- [in] len: length in bytes, range:8~64

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_ie_crypto_key** *(char *key, int len)*
Get mesh IE crypto key.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

**Parameters**
- [out] key: ASCII crypto key
- [in] len: length in bytes, range:8~64

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_root_healing_delay** *(int delay_ms)*
Set delay time before starting root healing.

**Return**
Chapter 2. API

**Parameters**

- **ESP_OK**

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `delay_ms`: delay time in milliseconds

```c
int esp_mesh_get_root_healing_delay(void)
```

Get delay time before network starts root healing.

**Return**

delay time in milliseconds

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_fix_root(bool enable)
```

Enable network Fixed Root Setting.

- Enabling fixed root disables automatic election of the root node via voting.
- All devices in the network shall use the same Fixed Root Setting (enabled or disabled).
- If Fixed Root is enabled, users should make sure a root node is designated for the network.

**Return**

- **ESP_OK**

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `enable`: enable or not

```c
bool esp_mesh_is_root_fixed(void)
```

Check whether network Fixed Root Setting is enabled.

- Enable/disable network Fixed Root Setting by API `esp_mesh_fix_root()`.
- Network Fixed Root Setting also changes with the "flag" value in parent networking IE.

**Return**

true/false

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_parent(const wifi_config_t *parent, const mesh_addr_t *parent_mesh_id, mesh_type_t my_type, int my_layer)
```

Set a specified parent for the device.

**Attention**

This API can be called at any time after mesh is configured.

**Return**

- **ESP_OK**
- **ESP_ERR_ARGUMENT**
- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG**

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `parent`: parent configuration, the SSID and the channel of the parent are mandatory.
  - If the BSSID is set, make sure that the SSID and BSSID represent the same parent, otherwise the device will never find this specified parent.
- **[in]** `parent_mesh_id`: parent mesh ID.
  - If this value is not set, the original mesh ID is used.
- **[in]** `my_type`: mesh type
  - `MESH_STA` is not supported.
  - If the parent set for the device is the same as the router in the network configuration, then `my_type` shall set `MESH_ROOT` and `my_layer` shall set `MESH_ROOT_LAYER`.
- **[in]** `my_layer`: mesh layer
  - `my_layer` of the device may change after joining the network.
  - If `my_type` is set `MESH_NODE`, `my_layer` shall be greater than `MESH_ROOT_LAYER`.
  - If `my_type` is set `MESH_LEAF`, the device becomes a standalone Wi-Fi station and no longer has the ability to extend the network.

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_scan_get_ap_ie_len(int *len)
```

Get mesh networking IE length of one AP.

**Return**

- **ESP_OK**
- **ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT**
- **ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG**
- **ESP_ERR_WIFI_FAIL**

**Parameters**

- **[out]** `len`: mesh networking IE length
**esp_err_t esp_mesh_scan_get_ap_record (wifi_ap_record_t *ap_record, void *buffer)**

Get AP record.

**Attention** Different from esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records(), this API only gets one of APs scanned each time. See “manual_networking” example.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_FAIL

**Parameters**
- [out] ap_record: pointer to one AP record
- [out] buffer: pointer to the mesh networking IE of this AP

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_flush_upstream_packets (void)**

Flush upstream packets pending into _parent queue and to_parent_p2p queue.

**Return**
- ESP_OK

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_num (const mesh_addr_t *child_mac, int *nodes_num)**

Get the number of nodes in the subnet of a specific child.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

**Parameters**
- [in] child_mac: an associated child address of this device
- [out] nodes_num: pointer to the number of nodes in the subnet of a specific child

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_list (const mesh_addr_t *child_mac, mesh_addr_t *nodes, int nodes_num)**

Get nodes in the subnet of a specific child.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

**Parameters**
- [in] child_mac: an associated child address of this device
- [out] nodes: pointer to nodes in the subnet of a specific child
- [in] nodes_num: the number of nodes in the subnet of a specific child

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_disconnect (void)**

Disconnect from current parent.

**Return**
- ESP_OK

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_connect (void)**

Connect to current parent.

**Return**
- ESP_OK

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_flush_scan_result (void)**

Flush scan result.

**Return**
- ESP_OK

**esp_err_t esp_mesh_switch_channel (const uint8_t *new_bssid, int csa_newchan, int csa_count)**

Cause the root device to add Channel Switch Announcement Element (CSA IE) to beacon.

- Set the new channel
Chapter 2. API 参考

- Set how many beacons with CSA IE will be sent before changing a new channel
- Enable the channel switch function

**Attention** This API is only called by the root.

**Return**
- ESP_OK

**Parameters**
- `[in]` new_bssid: the new router BSSID if the router changes
- `[in]` csa_newchan: the new channel number to which the whole network is moving
- `[in]` csa_count: channel switch period(beacon count), unit is based on beacon interval of its softAP, the default value is 15.

```
esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_router_bssid(uint8_t *router_bssid)
```
Get the router BSSID.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG

**Parameters**
- `[out]` router_bssid: pointer to the router BSSID

```
int64_t esp_mesh_get_tsf_time(void)
```
Get the TSF time.

**Return** the TSF time

```
esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_topology(esp_mesh_topology_t topo)
```
Set mesh topology. The default value is MESH_TOPO_TREE.

- MESH_TOPO_CHAIN supports up to 1000 layers

**Attention** This API shall be called before mesh is started.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

**Parameters**
- `[in]` topo: MESH_TOPO_TREE or MESH_TOPO_CHAIN

```
esp_mesh_topology_t esp_mesh_get_topology(void)
```
Get mesh topology.

**Return** MESH_TOPO_TREE or MESH_TOPO_CHAIN

```
esp_err_t esp_mesh_enable_ps(void)
```
Enable mesh Power Save function.

**Attention** This API shall be called before mesh is started.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

```
esp_err_t esp_mesh_disable_ps(void)
```
Disable mesh Power Save function.

**Attention** This API shall be called before mesh is started.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

```
bool esp_mesh_is_ps_enabled(void)
```
Check whether the mesh Power Save function is enabled.
Return true/false

bool esp_mesh_is_device_active (void)
Check whether the device is in active state.

- If the device is not in active state, it will neither transmit nor receive frames.

Return true/false

esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_active_duty_cycle (int dev_duty, int dev_duty_type)
Set the device duty cycle and type.

- The range of dev_duty values is 1 to 100. The default value is 10.
- dev_duty = 100, the PS will be stopped.
- dev_duty is better to not less than 5.
- dev_duty_type could be MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST or MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND.
- If dev_duty_type is set to MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST, the device will use a nwk_duty provided by the network.
- If dev_duty_type is set to MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND, the device will use the specified dev_duty.

Attention This API can be called at any time after mesh is started.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- [in] dev_duty: device duty cycle
- [in] dev_duty_type: device PS duty cycle type, not accept MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_MASTER

esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_active_duty_cycle (int *dev_duty, int *dev_duty_type)
Get device duty cycle and type.

Return
- ESP_OK

Parameters
- [out] dev_duty: device duty cycle
- [out] dev_duty_type: device PS duty cycle type

esp_err_t esp_mesh_set_network_duty_cycle (int nwk_duty, int duration_mins, int applied_rule)
Set the network duty cycle, duration and rule.

- The range of nwk_duty values is 1 to 100. The default value is 10.
- nwk_duty is the network duty cycle the entire network or the up-link path will use. A device that successfully sets the nwk_duty is known as a NWK-DUTY-MASTER.
- duration_mins specifies how long the specified nwk_duty will be used. Once duration_mins expires, the root will take over as the NWK-DUTY-MASTER. If an existing NWK-DUTY-MASTER leaves the network, the root will take over as the NWK-DUTY-MASTER again.
- duration_mins = (-1) represents nwk_duty will be used until a new NWK-DUTY-MASTER with a different nwk_duty appears.
- Only the root can set duration_mins to (-1).
- If applied_rule is set to MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE, the nwk_duty will be used by the entire network.
- If applied_rule is set to MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_UPLINK, the nwk_duty will only be used by the up-link path nodes.
- The root does not accept MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_UPLINK.
- A nwk_duty with duration_mins(-1) set by the root is the default network duty cycle used by the entire network.

Attention This API can be called at any time after mesh is started.
- In self-organized network, if this API is called before mesh is started in all devices, (1)nwk_duty shall be set to the same value for all devices; (2)duration_mins shall be set to (-1); (3)applied_rule shall be set to MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE; after the voted root appears,
the root will become the NWK-DUTY-MASTER and broadcast the nwk_duty and its identity of NWK-DUTY-MASTER.

- If the root is specified (FIXED-ROOT), call this API in the root to provide a default nwk_duty for the entire network.
- After joins the network, any device can call this API to change the nwk_duty, duration_mins or applied_rule.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

**Parameters**
- [in] nwk_duty: network duty cycle
- [in] duration_mins: duration (unit: minutes)
- [in] applied_rule: only support MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_get_network_duty_cycle(int *nwk_duty, int *duration_mins, int *dev_duty_type, int *applied_rule)
```

Get the network duty cycle, duration, type and rule.

**Return**
- ESP_OK

**Parameters**
- [out] nwk_duty: current network duty cycle
- [out] duration_mins: the duration of current nwk_duty
- [out] dev_duty_type: if it includes MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_MASTER, this device is the current NWK-DUTY-MASTER.
- [out] applied_rule: MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE

```c
int esp_mesh_get_running_active_duty_cycle(void)
```

Get the running active duty cycle.

- The running active duty cycle of the root is 100.
- If duty type is set to MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST, the running active duty cycle is nwk_duty provided by the network.
- If duty type is set to MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND, the running active duty cycle is dev_duty specified by the users.
- In a mesh network, devices are typically working with a certain duty-cycle (transmitting, receiving and sleep) to reduce the power consumption. The running active duty cycle decides the amount of awake time within a beacon interval. At each start of beacon interval, all devices wake up, broadcast beacons, and transmit packets if they do have pending packets for their parents or for their children. Note that Low-duty-cycle means devices may not be active in most of the time, the latency of data transmission might be greater.

**Return**
the running active duty cycle

```c
esp_err_t esp_mesh_ps_duty_signaling(int fwd_times)
```

Duty signaling.

**Return**
- ESP_OK

**Parameters**
- [in] fwd_times: the times of forwarding duty signaling packets

---

**Unions**

```c
union mesh_addr_t
#include <esp_mesh.h> Mesh address.
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t addr[6]
mac address
```
mip_t mip
mip address
union mesh_event_info_t
#include <esp_mesh.h> Mesh event information.

Public Members

mesh_event_channel_switch_t channel_switch
channel switch

mesh_event_child_connected_t child_connected
child connected

mesh_event_child_disconnected_t child_disconnected
child disconnected

mesh_event_routing_table_change_t routing_table
routing table change

mesh_event_connected_t connected
parent connected

mesh_event_disconnected_t disconnected
parent disconnected

mesh_event_no_parent_found_t no_parent
no parent found

mesh_event_layer_change_t layer_change
layer change

mesh_event_toDS_state_t toDS_state
toDS state, devices shall check this state firstly before trying to send packets to external IP network. This state indicates right now whether the root is capable of sending packets out. If not, devices had better to wait until this state changes to be MESH_TODS_REACHABLE.

mesh_event_vote_started_t vote_started
vote started

mesh_event_root_address_t root_addr
root address

mesh_event_root_switch_req_t switch_req
root switch request

mesh_event_root_conflict_t root_conflict
other powerful root

mesh_event_root_fixed_t root_fixed
fixed root

mesh_event_scan_done_t scan_done
scan done

mesh_event_network_state_t network_state
network state, such as whether current mesh network has a root.

mesh_event_find_network_t find_network
network found that can join

mesh_event_router_switch_t router_switch
new router information

mesh_event_ps_duty_t ps_duty
PS duty information
union mesh_rc_config_t
   
   #include <esp_mesh.h> Vote address configuration.

**Public Members**

int attempts
   max vote attempts before a new root is elected automatically by mesh network. (min:15, 15 by default)

mesh_addr_t rc_addr
   a new root address specified by users for API esp_mesh_waive_root()

**Structures**

**struct mip_t**
   IP address and port.

**Public Members**

ip4_addr_t ip4
   IP address

uint16_t port
   port

**struct mesh_event_channel_switch_t**
   Channel switch information.

**Public Members**

uint8_t channel
   new channel

**struct mesh_event_connected_t**
   Parent connected information.

**Public Members**

wifi_event_sta_connected_t connected
   parent information, same as Wi-Fi event SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED does

uint16_t self_layer
   layer

uint8_t duty
   parent duty

**struct mesh_event_no_parent_found_t**
   No parent found information.

**Public Members**

int scan_times
   scan times being through

**struct mesh_event_layer_change_t**
   Layer change information.
Public Members

uint16_t new_layer
new layer

struct mesh_event_vote_started_t
vote started information

Public Members

int reason
vote reason, vote could be initiated by children or by the root itself

int attempts
max vote attempts before stopped

mesh_addr_t rc_addr
root address specified by users via API esp_mesh_waive_root()

struct mesh_event_find_network_t
find a mesh network that this device can join

Public Members

uint8_t channel
channel number of the new found network

uint8_t router_bssid[6]
router BSSID

struct mesh_event_root_switch_req_t
Root switch request information.

Public Members

int reason
root switch reason, generally root switch is initialized by users via API esp_mesh_waive_root()

mesh_addr_t rc_addr
the address of root switch requester

struct mesh_event_root_conflict_t
Other powerful root address.

Public Members

int8_t rssi
rssi with router

uint16_t capacity
the number of devices in current network

uint8_t addr[6]
other powerful root address

struct mesh_event_routing_table_change_t
Routing table change.
Public Members

- `uint16_t rt_size_new`
  the new value
- `uint16_t rt_size_change`
  the changed value

**struct mesh_event_root_fixed_t**
Root fixed.

Public Members

- `bool is_fixed`
  status

**struct mesh_event_scan_done_t**
Scan done event information.

Public Members

- `uint8_t number`
  the number of APs scanned

**struct mesh_event_network_state_t**
Network state information.

Public Members

- `bool is_rootless`
  whether current mesh network has a root

**struct mesh_event_ps_duty_t**
PS duty information.

Public Members

- `uint8_t duty`
  parent or child duty

**mesh_event_child_connected_t**
child info

**struct mesh_opt_t**
Mesh option.

Public Members

- `uint8_t type`
  option type
- `uint16_t len`
  option length
- `uint8_t *val`
  option value

**struct mesh_data_t**
Mesh data for esp_mesh_send() and esp_mesh_recv()
Chapter 2. API 参考

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t *data
    data
uint16_t size
    data size
mesh_proto_t proto
    data protocol
mesh_tos_t tos
    data type of service
```

**struct mesh_router_t**
Router configuration.

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t ssid[32]
    SSID
uint8_t ssid_len
    length of SSID
uint8_t bssid[6]
    BSSID, if this value is specified, users should also specify “allow_router_switch”.
uint8_t password[64]
    password
bool allow_router_switch
    if the BSSID is specified and this value is also set, when the router of this specified BSSID fails to be found after “fail” (mesh_attempts_t) times, the whole network is allowed to switch to another router with the same SSID. The new router might also be on a different channel. The default value is false. There is a risk that if the password is different between the new switched router and the previous one, the mesh network could be established but the root will never connect to the new switched router.
```

**struct mesh_ap_cfg_t**
Mesh softAP configuration.

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t password[64]
    mesh softAP password
uint8_t max_connection
    max number of stations allowed to connect in, default 6, max 10 = max_connection + non-mesh_max_connection max mesh connections
uint8_t nonmesh_max_connection
    max non-mesh connections
```

**struct mesh_cfg_t**
Mesh initialization configuration.

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t channel
    channel, the mesh network on
```
bool allow_channel_switch
  if this value is set, when “fail” (mesh_attempts_t) times is reached, device will change to a full channel
  scan for a network that could join. The default value is false.

mesh_addr_t mesh_id
  mesh network identification

mesh_router_t router
  router configuration

mesh_ap_cfg_t mesh_ap
  mesh softAP configuration

const mesh_crypto_funcs_t *crypto_funcs
  crypto functions

struct mesh_vote_t
  Vote.

Public Members

float percentage
  vote percentage threshold for approval of being a root

bool is_rc_specified
  if true, rc_addr shall be specified (Unimplemented). if false, attempts value shall be specified to make
  network start root election.

mesh_rc_config_t config
  vote address configuration

struct mesh_tx_pending_t
  The number of packets pending in the queue waiting to be sent by the mesh stack.

Public Members

int to_parent
  to parent queue

int to_parent_p2p
  to parent (P2P) queue

int to_child
  to child queue

int to_child_p2p
  to child (P2P) queue

int mgmt
  management queue

int broadcast
  broadcast and multicast queue

struct mesh_rx_pending_t
  The number of packets available in the queue waiting to be received by applications.

Public Members

int toDS
  to external DS
int toSelf
    to self

**Macros**

- **MESH_ROOT_LAYER**
  - root layer value

- **MESH_MTU**
  - max transmit unit (in bytes)

- **MESH_MPS**
  - max payload size (in bytes)

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_WIFI_NOT_START**
  - Mesh error code definition.
  - Wi-Fi isn’t started

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_INIT**
  - mesh isn’t initialized

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG**
  - mesh isn’t configured

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START**
  - mesh isn’t started

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_SUPPORT**
  - not supported yet

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED**
  - operation is not allowed

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY**
  - out of memory

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT**
  - illegal argument

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_EXCEED_MTU**
  - packet size exceeds MTU

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT**
  - timeout

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED**
  - disconnected with parent on station interface

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FAIL**
  - queue fail

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL**
  - queue full

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_PARENT_FOUND**
  - no parent found to join the mesh network

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_ROUTE_FOUND**
  - no route found to forward the packet

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_NULL**
  - no option found

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_UNKNOWN**
  - unknown option

- **ESP_ERR_MESH_XON_NO_WINDOW**
  - no window for software flow control on upstream
ESP_ERR_MESH_INTERFACE
low-level Wi-Fi interface error

ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD_DUPLICATE
discard the packet due to the duplicate sequence number

ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD
discard the packet

ESP_ERR_MESH_VOTING
vote in progress

ESP_ERR_MESH_XMIT
XMIT

ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_READ
error in reading queue

ESP_ERR_MESH_PS
mesh PS is not specified as enable or disable

ESP_ERR_MESH_RECV_RELEASE
release esp_mesh_recv_toDS

MESH_DATA_ENC
Flags bitmap for esp_mesh_send() and esp_mesh_recv()
data encrypted (Unimplemented)

MESH_DATA_P2P
point-to-point delivery over the mesh network

MESH_DATA_FROMDS
receive from external IP network

MESH_DATA_TODS
identify this packet is target to external IP network

MESH_DATA_NONBLOCK
esp_mesh_send() non-block

MESH_DATA_DROP
in the situation of the root having been changed, identify this packet can be dropped by new root

MESH_DATA_GROUP
identify this packet is target to a group address

MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP
Option definitions for esp_mesh_send() and esp_mesh_recv()
data transmission by group; used with esp_mesh_send() and shall have payload

MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR
return a remote IP address; used with esp_mesh_send() and esp_mesh_recv()

MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_VOTE_IN_PROGRESS
Flag of mesh networking IE.
vote in progress

MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_NETWORK_FREE
no root in current network

MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_ROOTS_FOUND
root conflict is found

MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_ROOT_FIXED
fixed root
Chapter 2. API

**MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST**
Mesh PS (Power Save) duty cycle type. requests to join a network PS without specifying a device duty cycle. After the device joins the network, a network duty cycle will be provided by the network

**MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND**
requests to join a network PS and specifies a demanded device duty cycle

**MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_MASTER**
indicates the device is the NWK-DUTY-MASTER (network duty cycle master)

**MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE**
Mesh PS (Power Save) duty cycle applied rule.

**MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_UPLINK**

Type Definitions

```c
typedef mesh_addr_t mesh_event_root_address_t
// Root address.

typedef wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t mesh_event_disconnected_t
// Parent disconnected information.

typedef wifi_event_ap_sta_connected_t mesh_event_child_connected_t
// Child connected information.

typedef wifi_event_ap_sta_disconnected_t mesh_event_child_disconnected_t
// Child disconnected information.

typedef wifi_event_sta_connected_t mesh_event_router_switch_t
// New router information.
```

Enumerations

```c
enum mesh_event_id_t
// Enumerated list of mesh event id.

Values:

MESH_EVENT_STARTED
// mesh is started

MESH_EVENT_STOPPED
// mesh is stopped

MESH_EVENT_CHANNEL_SWITCH
// channel switch

MESH_EVENT_CHILD_CONNECTED
// a child is connected on softAP interface

MESH_EVENT_CHILD_DISCONNECTED
// a child is disconnected on softAP interface

MESH_EVENT_ROUTING_TABLE_ADD
// routing table is changed by adding newly joined children

MESH_EVENT_ROUTING_TABLE_REMOVE
// routing table is changed by removing leave children

MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED
// parent is connected on station interface

MESH_EVENT_PARENT_DISCONNECTED
// parent is disconnected on station interface
```
MESH_EVENT_NO_PARENT_FOUND
  no parent found

MESH_EVENT_LAYER_CHANGE
  layer changes over the mesh network

MESH_EVENT_TODS_STATE
  state represents whether the root is able to access external IP network

MESH_EVENT_VOTE_STARTED
  the process of voting a new root is started either by children or by the root

MESH_EVENT_VOTE_STOPPED
  the process of voting a new root is stopped

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_ADDRESS
  the root address is obtained. It is posted by mesh stack automatically.

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_SWITCH_REQ
  root switch request sent from a new voted root candidate

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_SWITCH_ACK
  root switch acknowledgment responds the above request sent from current root

MESH_EVENT_ROOTAsked_YIELD
  the root is asked yield by a more powerful existing root. If self organized is disabled and this device is specified to be a root by users, users should set a new parent for this device. if self organized is enabled, this device will find a new parent by itself, users could ignore this event.

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_FIXED
  when devices join a network, if the setting of Fixed Root for one device is different from that of its parent, the device will update the setting the same as its parent’s. Fixed Root Setting of each device is variable as that setting changes of the root.

MESH_EVENT_SCAN_DONE
  if self-organized networking is disabled, user can call esp_wifi_scan_start() to trigger this event, and add the corresponding scan done handler in this event.

MESH_EVENT_NETWORK_STATE
  network state, such as whether current mesh network has a root.

MESH_EVENT_STOP_RECONNECTION
  the root stops reconnecting to the router and non-root devices stop reconnecting to their parents.

MESH_EVENT_FIND_NETWORK
  when the channel field in mesh configuration is set to zero, mesh stack will perform a full channel scan to find a mesh network that can join, and return the channel value after finding it.

MESH_EVENT_ROUTER_SWITCH
  if users specify BSSID of the router in mesh configuration, when the root connects to another router with the same SSID, this event will be posted and the new router information is attached.

MESH_EVENT_PS_PARENT_DUTY
  parent duty

MESH_EVENT_PS_CHILD_DUTY
  child duty

MESH_EVENT_PS_DEVICE_DUTY
  device duty

MESH_EVENT_MAX

enum mesh_type_t
  Device type.

Values:
MESH_IDLE
hasn’t joined the mesh network yet

MESH_ROOT
the only sink of the mesh network. Has the ability to access external IP network

MESH_NODE
intermediate device. Has the ability to forward packets over the mesh network

MESH_LEAF
has no forwarding ability

MESH_STA
connect to router with a standalone Wi-Fi station mode, no network expansion capability

enum mesh_proto_t
Protocol of transmitted application data.

Values:

MESH_PROTO_BIN
binary

MESH_PROTO_HTTP
HTTP protocol

MESH_PROTO_JSON
JSON format

MESH_PROTO_MQTT
MQTT protocol

MESH_PROTO_AP
IP network mesh communication of node’s AP interface

MESH_PROTO_STA
IP network mesh communication of node’s STA interface

enum mesh_tos_t
For reliable transmission, mesh stack provides three type of services.

Values:

MESH_TOS_P2P
provide P2P (point-to-point) retransmission on mesh stack by default

MESH_TOS_E2E
provide E2E (end-to-end) retransmission on mesh stack (Unimplemented)

MESH_TOS_DEF
no retransmission on mesh stack

enum mesh_vote_reason_t
Vote reason.

Values:

MESH_VOTE_REASON_ROOT_INITIATED = 1
vote is initiated by the root

MESH_VOTE_REASON_CHILD_INITIATED
vote is initiated by children

enum mesh_disconnect_reason_t
Mesh disconnect reason code.

Values:

MESH_REASON_CYCLIC = 100
cyclic is detected
MESH_REASON_PARENT_IDLE
parent is idle

MESH_REASON_LEAF
the connected device is changed to a leaf

MESH_REASON_DIFF_ID
in different mesh ID

MESH_REASON_ROOTS
root conflict is detected

MESH_REASON_PARENT_STOPPED
parent has stopped the mesh

MESH_REASON_SCAN_FAIL
scan fail

MESH_REASON_IE_UNKNOWN
unknown IE

MESH_REASON_WAIVE_ROOT
waive root

MESH_REASON_PARENT_WORSE
parent with very poor RSSI

MESH_REASON_EMPTY_PASSWORD
use an empty password to connect to an encrypted parent

MESH_REASON_PARENT_UNENCRYPTED
connect to an unencrypted parent/router

enum esp_mesh_topology_t
Mesh topology.
Values:

MESH_TOPO_TREE
treetopology

MESH_TOPO_CHAIN
chaintopology

enum mesh_event_toDS_state_t
The reachability of the root to a DS (distribute system)
Values:

MESH_TODS_UNREACHABLE
the root isn’t able to access external IP network

MESH_TODS_REACHABLE
the root is able to access external IP network

Wi-Fi Easy Connect™ (DPP)

Wi-Fi Easy Connect™, also known as Device Provisioning Protocol (DPP) or Easy Connect, is a provisioning protocol certified by Wi-Fi Alliance. It is a secure and standardized provisioning protocol for configuration of Wi-Fi Devices. With Easy Connect adding a new device to a network is as simple as scanning a QR Code. This reduces complexity and enhances user experience while onboarding devices without UI like Smart Home and IoT products. Unlike old protocols like WiFi Protected Setup (WPS), Wi-Fi Easy Connect incorporates strong encryption through public key cryptography to ensure networks remain secure as new devices are added. Easy Connect brings many benefits in the User Experience:

• Simple and intuitive to use; no lengthy instructions to follow for new device setup
• No need to remember and enter passwords into the device being provisioned
Chapter 2. API

- Works with electronic or printed QR codes, or human-readable strings
- Supports both WPA2 and WPA3 networks

Please refer to Wi-Fi Alliance’s official page on Easy Connect for more information.

ESP32 supports Enrollee mode of Easy Connect with QR Code as the provisioning method. A display is required to display this QR Code. Users can scan this QR Code using their capable device and provision the ESP32 to their Wi-Fi network. The provisioning device needs to be connected to the AP which need not support Wi-Fi Easy Connect™. Easy Connect is still an evolving protocol. Of known platforms that support the QR Code method are some Android smartphones with Android 10 or higher. To use Easy Connect no additional App needs to be installed on the supported smartphone.

**Application Example** Example on how to provision ESP32 using a supported smartphone: wifi/wifi_easy_connect/dpp-enrollee.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/wpa_supplicant/esp_supplicant/include/esp_dpp.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t esp_supp_dpp_init (esp_supp_dpp_event_cb_t evt_cb)
 Initialize DPP Supplicant.
 Starts DPP Supplicant and initializes related Data Structures.
 return
 • ESP_OK: Success
 • ESP_FAIL: Failure

Parameters
 • evt_cb: Callback function to receive DPP related events

void esp_supp_dpp_deinit (void)
 De-initialize DPP Supplicant.
 Frees memory from DPP Supplicant Data Structures.

esp_err_t esp_supp_dpp_bootstrap_gen (const char *chan_list, esp_supp_dpp_bootstrap_t type, const char *key, const char *info)
 Generates Bootstrap Information as an Enrollee.
 Generates Out Of Band Bootstrap information as an Enrollee which can be used by a DPP Configurator to provision the Enrollee.

Return
 • ESP_OK: Success
 • ESP_FAIL: Failure

Parameters
 • chan_list: List of channels device will be available on for listening
 • type: Bootstrap method type, only QR Code method is supported for now.
 • key: (Optional) Private Key used to generate a Bootstrapping Public Key
 • info: (Optional) Ancillary Device Information like Serial Number

esp_err_t esp_supp_dpp_start_listen (void)
 Start listening on Channels provided during esp_supp_dpp_bootstrap_gen.
 Listens on every Channel from Channel List for a pre-defined wait time.

Return
 • ESP_OK: Success
```
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_FAIL: Generic Failure
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: ROC attempted before WiFi is started
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Memory allocation failed while posting ROC request

```c
void esp_supp_dpp_stop_listen (void)
Stop listening on Channels.

Stops listening on Channels and cancels ongoing listen operation.
```

**Macros**

- **ESP_ERR_DPP_FAILURE**
  Generic failure during DPP Operation
- **ESP_ERR_DPP_TX_FAILURE**
  DPP Frame Tx failed OR not Acked
- **ESP_ERR_DPP_INVALID_ATTR**
  Encountered invalid DPP Attribute

**Type Definitions**

- **typedef enum dpp_bootstrap_type esp_supp_dpp_bootstrap_t**
  Types of Bootstrap Methods for DPP.
- **typedef void (*esp_supp_dpp_event_cb_t)(esp_supp_dpp_event_t *evt, void *data)**
  Callback function for receiving DPP Events from Supplicant.

  Callback function will be called with DPP related information.

  **Parameters**
  - *evt*: DPP event ID
  - *data*: Event data payload

**Enumerations**

- **enum dpp_bootstrap_type**
  Types of Bootstrap Methods for DPP.
  **Values:**
  - **DPP_BOOTSTRAP_QR_CODE**
    QR Code Method
  - **DPP_BOOTSTRAP_PKEX**
    Proof of Knowledge Method
  - **DPP_BOOTSTRAP_NFC_URI**
    NFC URI record Method

- **enum esp_supp_dpp_event_t**
  Types of Callback Events received from DPP Supplicant.
  **Values:**
  - **ESP_SUPP_DPP_URI_READY**
    URI is ready through Bootstrapping
  - **ESP_SUPP_DPP_CFG_RECVD**
    Config received via DPP Authentication
  - **ESP_SUPP_DPP_FAIL**
    DPP Authentication failure
2.2.2 以太网

应用示例
- 以太网基本示例：ethernet/basic.
- 以太网 iPerf 示例：ethernet/iPerf.

以太网驱动程序模型
- esp_eth/include/esp_eth.h

以太网通用接口
- esp_eth/include/esp_eth_com.h

以太网 MAC 接口
- esp_eth/include/esp_eth_mac.h

以太网 PHY 接口
- esp_eth/include/esp_eth_phy.h

以太网 PHY 公共寄存器
- esp_eth/include/eth_phy_regs_struct.h

API 参考 - 驱动程序模型

Header File
- components/esp_eth/include/esp_eth.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t esp_eth_driver_install(const esp_eth_config_t *config,
                                 esp_eth_handle_t *out_hdl)
```

Install Ethernet driver.

Return
- ESP_OK: install esp_eth driver successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: install esp_eth driver failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: install esp_eth driver failed because there’s no memory for driver
- ESP_FAIL: install esp_eth driver failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
- [in] config: configuration of the Ethernet driver
- [out] out_hdl: handle of Ethernet driver

```c
esp_err_t esp_eth_driver_uninstall(esp_eth_handle_t hdl)
```

Uninstall Ethernet driver.

Note 由于 history of the code, it’s not recommended to uninstall Ethernet driver unless it won’t get used any more in application code. To uninstall Ethernet driver, you have to make sure, all references to the driver are released. Ethernet driver can only be uninstalled successfully when reference counter equals to one.

Return
- ESP_OK: uninstall esp_eth driver successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: uninstall esp_eth driver failed because of some invalid argument
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: uninstall esp_eth driver failed because it has more than one reference
• ESP_FAIL: uninstall esp_eth driver failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t esp_eth_start (esp_eth_handle_t hdl)

Start Ethernet driver ONLY in standalone mode (i.e. without TCP/IP stack)

Note This API will start driver state machine and internal software timer (for checking link status).

Return
• ESP_OK: start esp_eth driver successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: start esp_eth driver failed because of some invalid argument
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: start esp_eth driver failed because driver has started already
• ESP_FAIL: start esp_eth driver failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t esp_eth_stop (esp_eth_handle_t hdl)

Stop Ethernet driver.

Note This function does the opposite operation of esp_eth_start.

Return
• ESP_OK: stop esp_eth driver successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: stop esp_eth driver failed because of some invalid argument
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: stop esp_eth driver failed because driver has not started yet
• ESP_FAIL: stop esp_eth driver failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t esp_eth_update_input_path (esp_eth_handle_t hdl, esp_err_t (*stack_input)(esp_eth_handle_t hdl, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length, void *priv), void *priv)

Update Ethernet data input path (i.e. specify where to pass the input buffer)

Note After install driver, Ethernet still don’t know where to deliver the input buffer. In fact, this API registers a callback function which get invoked when Ethernet received new packets.

Return
• ESP_OK: update input path successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: update input path failed because of some invalid argument
• ESP_FAIL: update input path failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver
• [in] stack_input: function pointer, which does the actual process on incoming packets
• [in] priv: private resource, which gets passed to stack_input callback without any modification

esp_err_t esp_eth_transmit (esp_eth_handle_t hdl, void *buf, size_t length)

General Transmit.

Return
• ESP_OK: transmit frame buffer successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: transmit frame buffer failed because of some invalid argument
• ESP_FAIL: transmit frame buffer failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver
• [in] buf: buffer of the packet to transfer
• [in] length: length of the buffer to transfer

esp_err_t esp_eth_receive (esp_eth_handle_t hdl, uint8_t *buf, uint32_t *length)

General Receive is deprecated and shall not be accessed from app code, as polling is not supported by Ethernet.
Note Before this function got invoked, the value of “length” should set by user, equals the size of buffer. After the function returned, the value of “length” means the real length of received data.

Note This API was exposed by accident, users should not use this API in their applications. Ethernet driver is interrupt driven, and doesn’t support polling mode. Instead, users should register input callback with esp_eth_update_input_path.

Return
- ESP_OK: receive frame buffer successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: receive frame buffer failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: input buffer size is not enough to hold the incoming data. In this case, value of returned “length” indicates the real size of incoming data.
- ESP_FAIL: receive frame buffer failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
- [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver
- [out] buf: buffer to preserve the received packet
- [out] length: length of the received packet

```
int esp_eth_ioctl(esp_eth_handle_t hdl, esp_eth_io_cmd_t cmd, void *data)
```

Misc IO function of Ethernet driver.

The following IO control commands are supported:

- **ETH_CMD_S_MAC_ADDR**: sets Ethernet interface MAC address. data argument is pointer to MAC address buffer with expected size of 6 bytes.
- **ETH_CMD_G_MAC_ADDR**: gets Ethernet interface MAC address. data argument is pointer to a buffer to which MAC address is to be copied. The buffer size must be at least 6 bytes.
- **ETH_CMD_S_PHY_ADDR**: sets PHY address in range of <0-31>. data argument is pointer to memory of uint32_t datatype from where the configuration option is read.
- **ETH_CMD_G_PHY_ADDR**: gets PHY address. data argument is pointer to memory of uint32_t datatype to which the PHY address is to be stored.
- **ETH_CMD_S_AUTONEGO**: enables or disables Ethernet link speed and duplex mode autonegotiation. data argument is pointer to memory of bool datatype from which the configuration option is read. Preconditions: Ethernet driver needs to be stopped.
- **ETH_CMD_G_AUTONEGO**: gets current configuration of the Ethernet link speed and duplex mode autonegotiation. data argument is pointer to memory of bool datatype to which the current configuration is to be stored.
- **ETH_CMD_S_SPEED**: sets the Ethernet link speed. data argument is pointer to memory of eth_speed_t datatype from which the configuration option is read. Preconditions: Ethernet driver needs to be stopped and auto-negotiation disabled.
- **ETH_CMD_G_SPEED**: gets current Ethernet link speed. data argument is pointer to memory of eth_speed_t datatype to which the speed is to be stored.
- **ETH_CMD_S_PROMISCUOUS**: sets/resets Ethernet interface promiscuous mode. data argument is pointer to memory of bool datatype from which the configuration option is read.
- **ETH_CMD_S_FLOW_CTRL**: sets/resets Ethernet interface flow control. data argument is pointer to memory of bool datatype from which the configuration option is read.
- **ETH_CMD_S_DUPLEX_MODE**: sets the Ethernet duplex mode. data argument is pointer to memory of eth_duplex_t datatype from which the configuration option is read. Preconditions: Ethernet driver needs to be stopped and auto-negotiation disabled.
- **ETH_CMD_G_DUPLEX_MODE**: gets current Ethernet link duplex mode. data argument is pointer to memory of eth_duplex_t datatype to which the duplex mode is to be stored.
- **ETH_CMD_S_PHY_LOOPBACK**: sets/resets PHY to/from loopback mode. data argument is pointer to memory of bool datatype from which the configuration option is read.

Return
- ESP_OK: process io command successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: process io command failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: process io command failed because some other error occurred
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: requested feature is not supported

Parameters
- [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver
- [in] cmd: IO control command
Chapter 2. API

- [inout] data: address of data for set command or address where to store the data when used with get command

```c
esp_err_t esp_eth_increase_reference(esp_eth_handle_t hdl)
```
Increase Ethernet driver reference.

**Note** Ethernet driver handle can be obtained by os timer, netif, etc. It’s dangerous when thread A is using Ethernet but thread B uninstall the driver. Using reference counter can prevent such risk, but care should be taken, when you obtain Ethernet driver, this API must be invoked so that the driver won’t be uninstalled during your using time.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: increase reference successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: increase reference failed because of some invalid argument

**Parameters**
- [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver

```c
esp_err_t esp_eth_decrease_reference(esp_eth_handle_t hdl)
```
Decrease Ethernet driver reference.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: increase reference successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: increase reference failed because of some invalid argument

**Parameters**
- [in] hdl: handle of Ethernet driver

**Structures**

```c
struct esp_eth_config_t
```
Configuration of Ethernet driver.

**Public Members**

```c
esp_eth_mac_t *mac
```
Ethernet MAC object.

```c
esp_eth_phy_t *phy
```
Ethernet PHY object.

```c
uint32_t check_link_period_ms
```
Period time of checking Ethernet link status.

```c
bool auto_nego_en
```
Configuration status of PHY autonegotiation feature.

```c
esp_err_t (*stack_input)(esp_eth_handle_t eth_handle, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length, void *priv)
```
Input frame buffer to user’s stack.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: input frame buffer to upper stack successfully
- ESP_FAIL: error occurred when inputting buffer to upper stack

**Parameters**
- [in] eth_handle: handle of Ethernet driver
- [in] buffer: frame buffer that will get input to upper stack
- [in] length: length of the frame buffer

```c
esp_err_t (*on_lowlevel_init_done)(esp_eth_handle_t eth_handle)
```
Callback function invoked when lowlevel initialization is finished.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: process extra lowlevel initialization successfully
- ESP_FAIL: error occurred when processing extra lowlevel initialization

**Parameters**
Chapter 2. API

- [in] eth_handle: handle of Ethernet driver

```c
esp_err_t (*on_lowlevel_deinit_done)(esp_eth_handle_t eth_handle)
```

Callback function invoked when low-level deinitialization is finished.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: process extra lowlevel deinitialization successfully
- ESP_FAIL: error occurred when processing extra lowlevel deinitialization

**Parameters**
- [in] eth_handle: handle of Ethernet driver

```c
esp_err_t (*read_phy_reg)(esp_eth_handle_t eth_handle, uint32_t phy_addr, uint32_t phy_reg, uint32_t *reg_value)
```

Read PHY register.

**Note** Usually the PHY register read/write function is provided by MAC (SMI interface), but if the PHY device is managed by other interface (e.g. I2C), then user needs to implement the corresponding read/write. Setting this to NULL means your PHY device is managed by MAC’s SMI interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: read PHY register successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: read PHY register failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: read PHY register failed because of timeout
- ESP_FAIL: read PHY register failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**
- [in] eth_handle: handle of Ethernet driver
- [in] phy_addr: PHY chip address (0-31)
- [in] phy_reg: PHY register index code
- [out] reg_value: PHY register value

```c
esp_err_t (*write_phy_reg)(esp_eth_handle_t eth_handle, uint32_t phy_addr, uint32_t phy_reg, uint32_t reg_value)
```

Write PHY register.

**Note** Usually the PHY register read/write function is provided by MAC (SMI interface), but if the PHY device is managed by other interface (e.g. I2C), then user needs to implement the corresponding read/write. Setting this to NULL means your PHY device is managed by MAC’s SMI interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: write PHY register successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: write PHY register failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: write PHY register failed because of timeout
- ESP_FAIL: write PHY register failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**
- [in] eth_handle: handle of Ethernet driver
- [in] phy_addr: PHY chip address (0-31)
- [in] phy_reg: PHY register index code
- [in] reg_value: PHY register value

**Macros**

```c
ETH_DEFAULT_CONFIG (emac, ephy)
```

Default configuration for Ethernet driver.

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef void *esp_eth_handle_t
```

Handle of Ethernet driver.

**Enumerations**

```c
enum esp_eth_io_cmd_t
```

Command list for ioctl API.

**Values:**
Chapter 2. API

ETH_CMD_G_MAC_ADDR
Get MAC address

ETH_CMD_S_MAC_ADDR
Set MAC address

ETH_CMD_G_PHY_ADDR
Get PHY address

ETH_CMD_S_PHY_ADDR
Set PHY address

ETH_CMD_G_AUTONEGO
Get PHY Auto Negotiation

ETH_CMD_S_AUTONEGO
Set PHY Auto Negotiation

ETH_CMD_G_SPEED
Get Speed

ETH_CMD_S_SPEED
Set Speed

ETH_CMD_S_PROMISCUOUS
Set promiscuous mode

ETH_CMD_S_FLOW_CTRL
Set flow control

ETH_CMD_G_DUPLEX_MODE
Get Duplex mode

ETH_CMD_S_DUPLEX_MODE
Set Duplex mode

ETH_CMD_S_PHY_LOOPBACK
Set PHY loopback

API 参考 - 通用接口

Header File

- components/esp_eth/include/esp_eth_com.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_eth_detect_phy_addr(esp_eth_mediator_t *eth, int *detected_addr)
Detect PHY address.

Return
- ESP_OK: detect phy address successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameter
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: can’t detect any PHY device
- ESP_FAIL: detect phy address failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- [in] eth: mediator of Ethernet driver
- [out] detected_addr: a valid address after detection

Structures

struct esp_eth_mediator_s
Ethernet mediator.
Public Members

\texttt{esp_err_t(*phy\_reg\_read)(esp\_eth\_mediator\_t \*eth, uint32\_t phy\_addr, uint32\_t phy\_reg, uint32\_t *reg\_value)}

Read PHY register.

\textbf{Return}
- ESP\_OK: read PHY register successfully
- ESP\_FAIL: read PHY register failed because some error occurred

\textbf{Parameters}
- \texttt{[in] eth: mediator of Ethernet driver}
- \texttt{[in] phy\_addr: PHY Chip address (0-31)}
- \texttt{[in] phy\_reg: PHY register index code}
- \texttt{[out] reg\_value: PHY register value}

\texttt{esp_err_t(*phy\_reg\_write)(esp\_eth\_mediator\_t \*eth, uint32\_t phy\_addr, uint32\_t phy\_reg, uint32\_t reg\_value)}

Write PHY register.

\textbf{Return}
- ESP\_OK: write PHY register successfully
- ESP\_FAIL: write PHY register failed because some error occurred

\textbf{Parameters}
- \texttt{[in] eth: mediator of Ethernet driver}
- \texttt{[in] phy\_addr: PHY Chip address (0-31)}
- \texttt{[in] phy\_reg: PHY register index code}
- \texttt{[in] reg\_value: PHY register value}

\texttt{esp_err_t(*stack\_input)(esp\_eth\_mediator\_t \*eth, uint8\_t *buffer, uint32\_t length)}

Deliver packet to upper stack.

\textbf{Return}
- ESP\_OK: deliver packet to upper stack successfully
- ESP\_FAIL: deliver packet failed because some error occurred

\textbf{Parameters}
- \texttt{[in] eth: mediator of Ethernet driver}
- \texttt{[in] buffer: packet buffer}
- \texttt{[in] length: length of the packet}

\texttt{esp_err_t(*on\_state\_changed)(esp\_eth\_mediator\_t \*eth, esp\_eth\_state\_t state, void *args)}

Callback on Ethernet state changed.

\textbf{Return}
- ESP\_OK: process the new state successfully
- ESP\_FAIL: process the new state failed because some error occurred

\textbf{Parameters}
- \texttt{[in] eth: mediator of Ethernet driver}
- \texttt{[in] state: new state}
- \texttt{[in] args: optional argument for the new state}

Type Definitions

\texttt{typedef struct esp\_eth\_mediator\_s esp\_eth\_mediator\_t}

Ethernet mediator.

Enumerations

\texttt{enum esp\_eth\_state\_t}

Ethernet driver state.

\textbf{Values}

\texttt{ETH\_STATE\_LLINIT}
Lowlevel init done
### API Reference

#### MAC

**Header File**
- components/esp_eth/include/esp_eth_mac.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_eth_mac_t *esp_eth_mac_new_esp32 (const eth_mac_config_t *config);
```
Create ESP32 Ethernet MAC instance.

**Return**
- instance: create MAC instance successfully
- NULL: create MAC instance failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**
- `config`: Ethernet MAC configuration

**Unions**

```c
union eth_mac_clock_config_t
```

**Public Members**

```c
struct eth_mac_clock_config_t:[anonymous] mii
```
EMAC MII Clock Configuration

```c
dmac_rmii_clock_mode_t clock_mode
```
RMII Clock Mode Configuration

```c
dmac_rmii_clock_gpio_t clock_gpio
```
RMII Clock GPIO Configuration

---

**ETH_STATE_DEINIT**
- Deinit done

**ETH_STATE_LINK**
- Link status changed

**ETH_STATE_SPEED**
- Speed updated

**ETH_STATE_DUPLEX**
- Duplex updated

**ETH_STATE_PAUSE**
- Pause ability updated

**enum eth_event_t**
Ethernet event declarations.

**Values:**

- **ETHERNET_EVENT_START**
  - Ethernet driver start

- **ETHERNET_EVENT_STOP**
  - Ethernet driver stop

- **ETHERNET_EVENT_CONNECTED**
  - Ethernet got a valid link

- **ETHERNET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED**
  - Ethernet lost a valid link
struct eth_mac_clock_config_t {[anonymous] rmii}  
EMAC RMII Clock Configuration

**Structures**

**struct esp_eth_mac_s**  
Ethernet MAC.

**Public Members**

```
esp_err_t (*set_mediator)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, esp_eth_mediator_t *eth)  
Set mediator for Ethernet MAC.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK: set mediator for Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set mediator for Ethernet MAC failed because of invalid argument

**Parameters**

- [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance
- [in] eth: Ethernet mediator

```
esp_err_t (*init)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac)  
Initialize Ethernet MAC.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK: initialize Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: initialize Ethernet MAC failed because of timeout
- ESP_FAIL: initialize Ethernet MAC failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**

- [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance

```
esp_err_t (*deinit)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac)  
Deinitialize Ethernet MAC.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK: deinitialize Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_FAIL: deinitialize Ethernet MAC failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

- [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance

```
esp_err_t (*start)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac)  
Start Ethernet MAC.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK: start Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_FAIL: start Ethernet MAC failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**

- [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance

```
esp_err_t (*stop)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac)  
Stop Ethernet MAC.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK: stop Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_FAIL: stop Ethernet MAC failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

- [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance

```
esp_err_t (*transmit)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, uint8_t *buf, uint32_t length)  
Transmit packet from Ethernet MAC.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK: transmit packet successfully
Chapter 2. API

• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: transmit packet failed because of invalid argument
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: transmit packet failed because of wrong state of MAC
• ESP_FAIL: transmit packet failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance
• [in] buf: packet buffer to transmit
• [in] length: length of packet

```
esp_err_t (*receive)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, uint8_t *buf, uint32_t *length)
```

Receive packet from Ethernet MAC.

Note Memory of buf is allocated in the Layer2, make sure it get free after process.

Note Before this function got invoked, the value of “length” should set by user, equals the size of buffer.
After the function returned, the value of “length” means the real length of received data.

Return
• ESP_OK: receive packet successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: receive packet failed because of invalid argument
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: input buffer size is not enough to hold the incoming data. in this case, value of returned “length” indicates the real size of incoming data.
• ESP_FAIL: receive packet failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance
• [in] buf: packet buffer which will preserve the received frame
• [in] length: length of the received packet

```
esp_err_t (*read_phy_reg)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, uint32_t phy_addr, uint32_t phy_reg, uint32_t *reg_value)
```

Read PHY register.

Return
• ESP_OK: read PHY register successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: read PHY register failed because of invalid argument
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: read PHY register failed because of wrong state of MAC
• ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: read PHY register failed because of timeout
• ESP_FAIL: read PHY register failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance
• [in] phy_addr: PHY chip address (0~31)
• [in] phy_reg: PHY register index code
• [out] reg_value: PHY register value

```
esp_err_t (*write_phy_reg)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, uint32_t phy_addr, uint32_t phy_reg, uint32_t reg_value)
```

Write PHY register.

Return
• ESP_OK: write PHY register successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: write PHY register failed because of wrong state of MAC
• ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: write PHY register failed because of timeout
• ESP_FAIL: write PHY register failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
• [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance
• [in] phy_addr: PHY chip address (0~31)
• [in] phy_reg: PHY register index code
• [in] reg_value: PHY register value

```
esp_err_t (*set_addr)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, uint8_t *addr)
```

Set MAC address.

Return
• ESP_OK: set MAC address successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set MAC address failed because of invalid argument
• ESP_FAIL: set MAC address failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- **[in]** `addr`: MAC address

```c
esp_err_t (*get_addr)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, uint8_t *addr)
```
Get MAC address.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: get MAC address successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: get MAC address failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: get MAC address failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- **[out]** `addr`: MAC address

```c
esp_err_t (*set_speed)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, eth_speed_t speed)
```
Set speed of MAC.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: set MAC speed successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set MAC speed failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: set MAC speed failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- **[in]** `speed`: MAC speed

```c
esp_err_t (*set_duplex)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, eth_duplex_t duplex)
```
Set duplex mode of MAC.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: set MAC duplex mode successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set MAC duplex failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: set MAC duplex failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- **[in]** `duplex`: MAC duplex

```c
esp_err_t (*set_link)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, eth_link_t link)
```
Set link status of MAC.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: set link status successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set link status failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: set link status failed because some other error occurred

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- **[in]** `link`: Link status

```c
esp_err_t (*set_promiscuous)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, bool enable)
```
Set promiscuous of MAC.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: set promiscuous mode successfully
- ESP_FAIL: set promiscuous mode failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- **[in]** `enable`: set true to enable promiscuous mode; set false to disable promiscuous mode

```c
esp_err_t (*enable_flow_ctrl)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, bool enable)
```
Enable flow control on MAC layer or not.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: set flow control successfully
### ESP_FAIL: set flow control failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

- [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance
- [in] enable: set true to enable flow control; set false to disable flow control

```c
esp_err_t (*set_flowcontrol)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, uint32_t enable)
```

Set the PAUSE ability of peer node.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: set peer pause ability successfully
- ESP_FAIL: set peer pause ability failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

- [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance
- [in] ability: zero indicates that pause function is supported by link partner; non-zero indicates that pause function is not supported by link partner

```c
esp_err_t (*set_peer_pause_ability)(esp_eth_mac_t *mac, uint32_t ability)
```

Free memory of Ethernet MAC.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: free Ethernet MAC instance successfully
- ESP_FAIL: free Ethernet MAC instance failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

- [in] mac: Ethernet MAC instance

```c
struct eth_mac_config_t
```

Configuration of Ethernet MAC object.

**Public Members**

- `uint32_t sw_reset_timeout_ms`
  
  Software reset timeout value (Unit: ms)

- `uint32_t rx_task_stack_size`
  
  Stack size of the receive task

- `uint32_t rx_task_prio`
  
  Priority of the receive task

- `int smi_mdc_gpio_num`
  
  SMI MDC GPIO number, set to -1 could bypass the SMI GPIO configuration

- `int smi_mdio_gpio_num`
  
  SMI MDIO GPIO number, set to -1 could bypass the SMI GPIO configuration

- `uint32_t flags`
  
  Flags that specify extra capability for mac driver

- `eth_data_interface_t interface`
  
  EMAC Data interface to PHY (MII/RMII)

- `eth_mac_clock_config_t clock_config`
  
  EMAC Interface clock configuration

**Macros**

- `ETH_MAC_FLAG_WORK_WITH_CACHE_DISABLE`
  
  MAC driver can work when cache is disabled

- `ETH_MAC_FLAG_PIN_TO_CORE`
  
  Pin MAC task to the CPU core where driver installation happened

- `ETH_MAC_DEFAULT_CONFIG()`
  
  Default configuration for Ethernet MAC object.
Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_eth_mac_s esp_eth_mac_t
    Ethernet MAC.

Enumerations

ever_int emac_rmii_clock_mode_t
    RMII Clock Mode Options.
    Values:
    EMAC_CLK_DEFAULT
        Default values configured using Kconfig are going to be used when “Default” selected.
    EMAC_CLK_EXT_IN
        Input RMII Clock from external. EMAC Clock GPIO number needs to be configured when this option is selected.
        Note MAC will get RMII clock from outside. Note that ESP32 only supports GPIO0 to input the RMII clock.
    EMAC_CLK_OUT
        Output RMII Clock from internal APLL Clock. EMAC Clock GPIO number needs to be configured when this option is selected.

ever_int emac_rmii_clock_gpio_t
    RMII Clock GPIO number Options.
    Values:
    EMAC_CLK_IN_GPIO = 0
        MAC will get RMII clock from outside at this GPIO.
        Note ESP32 only supports GPIO0 to input the RMII clock.
    EMAC_APPL_CLK_OUT_GPIO = 0
        Output RMII Clock from internal APLL Clock available at GPIO0.
        Note GPIO0 can be set to output a pre-divided PLL clock (test only!). Enabling this option will configure GPIO0 to output a 50MHz clock. In fact this clock doesn’t have a directly relationship with EMAC peripheral. Sometimes this clock won’t work well with your PHY chip. You might need to add some extra devices after GPIO0 (e.g. inverter). Note that outputting RMII clock on GPIO0 is an experimental practice. If you want the Ethernet to work with WiFi, don’t select GPIO0 output mode for stability.
    EMAC_CLK_OUT_GPIO = 16
        Output RMII Clock from internal APLL Clock available at GPIO16.
    EMAC_CLK_OUT_180_GPIO = 17
        Inverted Output RMII Clock from internal APLL Clock available at GPIO17.

API 参考 PHY 接口

Header File

- components/esp_eth/include/esp_ethphy.h

Functions

esp_eth_phy_t *esp_eth_phy_new_ip101(const eth_phy_config_t *config)
    Create a PHY instance of IP101.

    Return
    - instance: create PHY instance successfully
    - NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred
Chapter 2. API

Parameters

• [in] config: configuration of PHY

```
esp_eth_phy_t *esp_ethphy_new_rtl8201(const eth_phy_config_t *config)
```

Create a PHY instance of RTL8201.

Return

• instance: create PHY instance successfully
• NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters

• [in] config: configuration of PHY

```
esp_eth_phy_t *esp_ethphy_new_lan87xx(const eth_phy_config_t *config)
```

Create a PHY instance of LAN87xx.

Return

• instance: create PHY instance successfully
• NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters

• [in] config: configuration of PHY

```
static esp_eth_phy_t *esp_ethphy_new_lan8720(const eth_phy_config_t *config)
```

Create a PHY instance of LAN8720.

Note For ESP-IDF backwards compatibility reasons. In all other cases, use esp_ethphy_new_lan87xx instead.

Return

• instance: create PHY instance successfully
• NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters

• [in] config: configuration of PHY

```
esp_eth_phy_t *esp_ethphy_new_dp83848(const eth_phy_config_t *config)
```

Create a PHY instance of DP83848.

Return

• instance: create PHY instance successfully
• NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters

• [in] config: configuration of PHY

```
esp_eth_phy_t *esp_ethphy_new_ksz8041(const eth_phy_config_t *config)
```

Create a PHY instance of KSZ8041.

Return

• instance: create PHY instance successfully
• NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters

• [in] config: configuration of PHY

```
esp_eth_phy_t *esp_ethphy_new_ksz8081(const eth_phy_config_t *config)
```

Create a PHY instance of KSZ8081.

Return

• instance: create PHY instance successfully
• NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters

• [in] config: configuration of PHY

```
static esp_eth_phy_t *esp_ethphy_new_ksz8091(const eth_phy_config_t *config)
```

Create a PHY instance of KSZ8091.

Return

• instance: create PHY instance successfully
• NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
• [in] config: configuration of PHY

**Structures**

```c
struct esp_eth_phy_s

Ethernet PHY.
```

**Public Members**

```c
esp_err_t (*set_mediator)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy, esp_eth_mediator_t *mediator)

Set mediator for PHY.
```

Return

- ESP_OK: set mediator for Ethernet PHY instance successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set mediator for Ethernet PHY instance failed because of some invalid arguments

Parameters

- [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance
- [in] mediator: mediator of Ethernet driver

```c
esp_err_t (*reset)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy)

Software Reset Ethernet PHY.
```

Return

- ESP_OK: reset Ethernet PHY successfully
- ESP_FAIL: reset Ethernet PHY failed because some error occurred

Parameters

- [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance

```c
esp_err_t (*reset_hw)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy)

Hardware Reset Ethernet PHY.
```

Note Hardware reset is mostly done by pull down and up PHY’s nRST pin

Return

- ESP_OK: reset Ethernet PHY successfully
- ESP_FAIL: reset Ethernet PHY failed because some error occurred

Parameters

- [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance

```c
esp_err_t (*init)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy)

Initialize Ethernet PHY.
```

Return

- ESP_OK: initialize Ethernet PHY successfully
- ESP_FAIL: initialize Ethernet PHY failed because some error occurred

Parameters

- [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance

```c
esp_err_t (*deinit)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy)

Deinitialize Ethernet PHY.
```

Return

- ESP_OK: deinitialize Ethernet PHY successfully
- ESP_FAIL: deinitialize Ethernet PHY failed because some error occurred

Parameters

- [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance

```c
esp_err_t (*autonego_ctrl)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy, eth_phy_autoneg_cmd_t cmd, bool *autonego_en_stat)

Configure auto negotiation.
```

Return

- ESP_OK: restart auto negotiation successfully
• ESP_FAIL: restart auto negotiation failed because some error occurred
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid command

Parameters
• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance
• [in] cmd: Configuration command, it is possible to Enable (restart), Disable or get current status of PHY auto negotiation
• [out] autonego_en_stat: Address where to store current status of auto negotiation configuration

```
esp_err_t (*get_link)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy)
Get Ethernet PHY link status.
```

Return
• ESP_OK: get Ethernet PHY link status successfully
• ESP_FAIL: get Ethernet PHY link status failed because some error occurred

Parameters
• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance

```
esp_err_t (*pwrctl)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy, bool enable)
Power control of Ethernet PHY.
```

Return
• ESP_OK: control Ethernet PHY power successfully
• ESP_FAIL: control Ethernet PHY power failed because some error occurred

Parameters
• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance
• [in] enable: set true to power on Ethernet PHY; set false to power off Ethernet PHY

```
esp_err_t (*set_addr)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy, uint32_t addr)
Set PHY chip address.
```

Return
• ESP_OK: set Ethernet PHY address successfully
• ESP_FAIL: set Ethernet PHY address failed because some error occurred

Parameters
• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance
• [in] addr: PHY chip address

```
esp_err_t (*get_addr)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy, uint32_t *addr)
Get PHY chip address.
```

Return
• ESP_OK: get Ethernet PHY address successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: get Ethernet PHY address failed because of invalid argument

Parameters
• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance
• [out] addr: PHY chip address

```
esp_err_t (*advertise_pause_ability)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy, uint32_t ability)
Advertise pause function supported by MAC layer.
```

Return
• ESP_OK: Advertise pause ability successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Advertise pause ability failed because of invalid argument

Parameters
• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance

```
esp_err_t (*loopback)(esp_eth_phy_t *phy, bool enable)
Sets the PHY to loopback mode.
```

Return
• ESP_OK: PHY instance loopback mode has been configured successfully
• ESP_FAIL: PHY instance loopback configuration failed because some error occurred
Parameters

• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance
• [in] enable: enables or disables PHY loopback

\textbf{esp_err_t (\texttt{\_set\_speed}) (esp\_eth\_phy\_t *phy, eth\_speed\_t speed)}

Sets PHY speed mode.

\textbf{Note} Autonegotiation feature needs to be disabled prior to calling this function for the new setting to be applied

**Return**

• ESP_OK: PHY instance speed mode has been configured successfully
• ESP_FAIL: PHY instance speed mode configuration failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance
• [in] speed: Speed mode to be set

\textbf{esp_err_t (\texttt{\_set\_duplex}) (esp\_eth\_phy\_t *phy, eth\_duplex\_t duplex)}

Sets PHY duplex mode.

\textbf{Note} Autonegotiation feature needs to be disabled prior to calling this function for the new setting to be applied

**Return**

• ESP_OK: PHY instance duplex mode has been configured successfully
• ESP_FAIL: PHY instance duplex mode configuration failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance
• [in] duplex: Duplex mode to be set

\textbf{esp_err_t (\texttt{\_del}) (esp\_eth\_phy\_t *phy)}

Free memory of Ethernet PHY instance.

**Return**

• ESP_OK: free PHY instance successfully
• ESP_FAIL: free PHY instance failed because some error occurred

**Parameters**

• [in] phy: Ethernet PHY instance

\textbf{struct eth\_phy\_config\_t}

Ethernet PHY configuration.

**Public Members**

int32\_t phy\_addr

PHY address, set -1 to enable PHY address detection at initialization stage

uint32\_t reset\_timeout\_ms

Reset timeout value (Unit: ms)

uint32\_t autonego\_timeout\_ms

Auto-negotiation timeout value (Unit: ms)

int reset\_gpio\_num

Reset GPIO number, -1 means no hardware reset

**Macros**

\textbf{ESP_ETH_PHY_ADDR\_AUTO}

\textbf{ETH_PHY\_DEFAULT\_CONFIG()} ()

Default configuration for Ethernet PHY object.

**Type Definitions**

typedef struct esp\_eth\_phy\_t

Ethernet PHY.
Enumerations
enum eth_phy_autoneg_cmd_t
Auto-negotiation control commands.
Values:
- ESP_ETH_PHY_AUTONEGO_RESTART
- ESP_ETH_PHY_AUTONEGO_EN
- ESP_ETH_PHY_AUTONEGO_DIS
- ESP_ETH_PHY_AUTONEGO_G_STAT

API Reference

Header File
- components/esp_eth/include/esp_eth_netif_glue.h

Functions

esp_eth_netif_glue_handle_t esp_eth_new_netif_glue(esp_eth_handle_t eth_hdl)
Create a netif glue for Ethernet driver.

Note: netif glue is used to attach io driver to TCP/IP netif
Return: glue object, which inherits esp_netif_driver_base_t
Parameters
- eth_hdl: Ethernet driver handle

esp_err_t esp_eth_del_netif_glue(esp_eth_netif_glue_handle_t eth_netif_glue)
Delete netif glue of Ethernet driver.

Return: -ESP_OK: delete netif glue successfully
Parameters
- eth_netif_glue: netif glue

esp_err_t esp_eth_set_default_handlers(void *esp_netif)
Register default IP layer handlers for Ethernet.

Note: Ethernet handle might not yet properly initialized when setting up these default handlers
Warning: This function is deprecated and is kept here only for compatibility reasons. Registration of default
IP layer handlers for Ethernet is now handled automatically. Do not call this function if you want to use
multiple Ethernet instances at a time.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameter (esp_netif is NULL)
- ESP_OK: set default IP layer handlers successfully
- others: other failure occurred during register esp_event handler
Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: esp network interface handle created for Ethernet driver

esp_err_t esp_eth_clear_default_handlers(void *esp_netif)
Unregister default IP layer handlers for Ethernet.

Warning: This function is deprecated and is kept here only for compatibility reasons. Unregistration
of default IP layer handlers for Ethernet is now handled automatically if not registered by calling
esp_eth_set_default_handlers.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameter (esp_netif is NULL)
- ESP_OK: clear default IP layer handlers successfully
- others: other failure occurred during unregister esp_event handler
Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: esp network interface handle created for Ethernet driver
Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_eth_netif_glue *esp_eth_netif_glue_handle_t

Handle of netif glue - an intermediate layer between netif and Ethernet driver.

2.2.3 Thread

Thread

Introduction  Thread is a IP-based mesh networking protocol. It’s based on the 802.15.4 physical and MAC layer.

Application Examples  The openthread directory of ESP-IDF examples contains the following applications:

- The OpenThread interactive shell openthread/ot_cli.
- The Thread border router openthread/ot_br.
- The Thread radio co-processor openthread/ot_rcp.

API Reference  For manipulating the Thread network, the OpenThread api shall be used. The OpenThread api docs can be found at the OpenThread official website.

ESP-IDF provides extra apis for launching and managing the OpenThread stack, binding to network interfaces and border routing features.

Header File

- components/openthread/include/esp_openthread.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_openthread_init(const esp_openthread_platform_config_t *init_config)

Initializes the full OpenThread stack.

Note  The OpenThread instance will also be initialized in this function.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocation has failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if radio or host connection mode not supported
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already initialized

Parameters

- [in] init_config: The initialization configuration.

esp_err_t esp_openthread_launch_mainloop(void)

Launches the OpenThread main loop.

Note  This function will not return unless error happens when running the OpenThread stack.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocation has failed
- ESP_FAIL on other failures

esp_err_t esp_openthread_deinit(void)

This function performs OpenThread stack and platform driver deinitialization.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if not initialized

otInstance *esp_openthread_get_instance(void)

This function acquires the underlying OpenThread instance.
Note  This function can be called on other tasks without lock.

Return  The OpenThread instance pointer

Header File

- components/openthread/include/esp_openthread_types.h

Structures

struct esp_openthread_mainloop_context_t

This structure represents a context for a select() based mainloop.

Public Members

fd_set read_fds
The read file descriptors

fd_set write_fds
The write file descriptors

fd_set error_fds
The error file descriptors

int max_fd
The max file descriptor

struct timeval timeout
The timeout

struct esp_openthread_uart_config_t

The uart port config for OpenThread.

Public Members

uart_port_t port
UART port number

uart_config_t uart_config
UART configuration, see uart_config_t docs

int rx_pin
UART RX pin

int tx_pin
UART TX pin

struct esp_openthread_radio_config_t

The OpenThread radio configuration.

Public Members

esp_openthread_radio_mode_t radio_mode
The radio mode

esp_openthread_uart_config_t radio_uart_config
The uart configuration to RCP

struct esp_openthread_host_connection_config_t

The OpenThread host connection configuration.
Public Members

```c
esp_openthread_host_connection_mode_t host_connection_mode
    The host connection mode
```n
```c
esp_openthread_uart_config_t host_uart_config
    The UART configuration to host
```n
```c
struct esp_openthread_port_config_t
    The OpenThread port specific configuration.
```n
Public Members

```c
const char *storage_partition_name
    The partition for storing OpenThread dataset
```n
```c
uint8_t netif_queue_size
    The packet queue size for the network interface
```n
```c
uint8_t task_queue_size
    The task queue size
```n
```c
struct esp_openthread_platform_config_t
    The OpenThread platform configuration.
```n
Public Members

```c
esp_openthread_radio_config_t radio_config
    The radio configuration
```n
```c
esp_openthread_host_connection_config_t host_config
    The host connection configuration
```n
```c
esp_openthread_port_config_t port_config
    The port configuration
```n
Enumerations

```c
enum esp_openthread_event_t
    OpenThread event declarations.
```n
Values:

```c
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_START
    OpenThread stack start
```n
```c
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_STOP
    OpenThread stack stop
```n
```c
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_IF_UP
    OpenThread network interface up
```n
```c
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_IF_DOWN
    OpenThread network interface down
```n
```c
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_GOT_IP6
    OpenThread stack added IPv6 address
```n
```c
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_LOST_IP6
    OpenThread stack removed IPv6 address
```n
```c
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_MULTICAST_GROUP_JOIN
    OpenThread stack joined IPv6 multicast group
```n
**OPENTHREAD_EVENT_MULTICAST_GROUP_LEAVE**
OpenThread stack left IPv6 multicast group

**OPENTHREAD_EVENT_TREL_ADD_IP6**
OpenThread stack added TREL IPv6 address

**OPENTHREAD_EVENT_TREL_REMOVE_IP6**
OpenThread stack removed TREL IPv6 address

**OPENTHREAD_EVENT_TREL_MULTICAST_GROUP_JOIN**
OpenThread stack joined TREL IPv6 multicast group

### enum esp_openthread_radio_mode_t

The radio mode of OpenThread.

*Values:*

- **RADIO_MODE_NATIVE** = 0x0
  Use the native 15.4 radio

- **RADIO_MODE_UART_RCP** = 0x1
  UART connection to a 15.4 capable radio co-processor (RCP)

- **RADIO_MODE_SPI_RCP** = 0x2
  SPI connection to a 15.4 capable radio co-processor (RCP)

### enum esp_openthread_host_connection_mode_t

How OpenThread connects to the host.

*Values:*

- **HOST_CONNECTION_MODE_NONE** = 0x0
  Disable host connection

- **HOST_CONNECTION_MODE_CLI_UART** = 0x1
  CLI UART connection to the host

- **HOST_CONNECTION_MODE_RCP_UART** = 0x2
  RCP UART connection to the host

### Header File

- components/openthread/include/esp_openthread_lock.h

### Functions

**esp_err_t esp_openthread_lock_init (void)**
This function initializes the OpenThread API lock.

*Return*

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocation has failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already initialized

**void esp_openthread_lock_deinit (void)**
This function deinitializes the OpenThread API lock.

**bool esp_openthread_lock_acquire (TickType_t block_ticks)**
This function acquires the OpenThread API lock.

*Note*
Every OT APIs that takes an otInstance argument MUST be protected with this API lock except that the call site is in OT callbacks.

*Return*

- True on lock acquired
- False on failing to acquire the lock with the timeout.

*Parameters*

- [in] block_ticks: The maximum number of RTOS ticks to wait for the lock.
void esp_openthread_lock_release (void)
    This function releases the OpenThread API lock.

Header File
    • components/openthread/include/esp_openthread_netif_glue.h

Functions
void *esp_openthread_netif_glue_init (const esp_openthread_platform_config_t *config)
    This function initializes the OpenThread network interface glue.
    Return
        • glue pointer on success
        • NULL on failure
    Parameters
        • [in] config: The platform configuration.
void esp_openthread_netif_glue_deinit (void)
    This function deinitializes the OpenThread network interface glue.

esp_netif_t *esp_openthread_get_netif (void)
    This function acquires the OpenThread netif.
    Return The OpenThread netif or NULL if not initialized.

Header File
    • components/openthread/include/esp_openthread_border_router.h

Functions
void esp_openthread_set_backbone_netif (esp_netif_t *backbone_netif)
    Sets the backbone interface used for border routing.
    Note This function must be called before esp_openthread_init
    Parameters
        • [in] backbone_netif: The backbone network interface (WiFi or ethernet)
esp_err_t esp_openthread_border_router_init (void)
    Initializes the border router features of OpenThread.
    Note Calling this function will make the device behave as an OpenThread border router. Kconfig option
        CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_BORDER_ROUTER is required.
    Return
        • ESP_OK on success
        • ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if feature not supported
        • ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already initialized
        • ESP_FIAL on other failures

esp_err_t esp_openthread_border_router_deinit (void)
    Deinitializes the border router features of OpenThread.
    Return
        • ESP_OK on success
        • ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not initialized
        • ESP_FIAL on other failures

esp_netif_t *esp_openthread_get_backbone_netif (void)
    Gets the backbone interface of OpenThread border router.
    Return The backbone interface or NULL if border router not initialized.

本部分的 Thread API 示例代码存放在 ESP-IDF 示例项目的 openthread 目录下。
2.2.4 IP 网络层协议

ESP-NETIF

The purpose of ESP-NETIF library is twofold:

- It provides an abstraction layer for the application on top of the TCP/IP stack. This will allow applications to choose between IP stacks in the future.
- The APIs it provides are thread safe, even if the underlying TCP/IP stack APIs are not.

ESP-IDF currently implements ESP-NETIF for the lwIP TCP/IP stack only. However, the adapter itself is TCP/IP implementation agnostic and different implementations are possible.

Some ESP-NETIF API functions are intended to be called by application code, for example to get/set interface IP addresses, configure DHCP. Other functions are intended for internal ESP-IDF use by the network driver layer.

In many cases, applications do not need to call ESP-NETIF APIs directly as they are called from the default network event handlers.

ESP-NETIF component is a successor of the tcpip_adapter, former network interface abstraction, which has become deprecated since IDF v4.1. Please refer to the TCP/IP 配置迁移指南 section in case existing applications to be ported to use the esp-netif API instead.

ESP-NETIF architecture
Data and event flow in the diagram

- Initialization line from user code to ESP-NETIF and communication driver
- Data packets going from communication media to TCP/IP stack and back
- Events aggregated in ESP-NETIF propagates to driver, user code and network stack
- User settings and runtime configuration

ESP-NETIF interaction

A) User code, boiler plate

Overall application interaction with a specific IO driver for communication media and configured TCP/IP network stack is abstracted using ESP-NETIF APIs and outlined as below:

A) Initialization code
- 1) Initializes IO driver
- 2) Creates a new instance of ESP-NETIF and configure with
  - ESP-NETIF specific options (flags, behaviour, name)
  - Network stack options (netif init and input functions, not publicly available)
  - IO driver specific options (transmit, free rx buffer functions, IO driver handle)
- 3) Attaches the IO driver handle to the ESP-NETIF instance created in the above steps
- 4) Configures event handlers
  - use default handlers for common interfaces defined in IO drivers; or define a specific handlers for customised behaviour/new interfaces
  - register handlers for app related events (such as IP lost/acquired)

B) Interaction with network interfaces using ESP-NETIF API
- Getting and setting TCP/IP related parameters (DHCP, IP, etc)
- Receiving IP events (connect/disconnect)
- Controlling application lifecycle (set interface up/down)

B) Communication driver, IO driver, media driver

Communication driver plays these two important roles in relation with ESP-NETIF:
- 1) Event handlers: Define behaviour patterns of interaction with ESP-NETIF (for example: ethernet link-up -> turn netif on)
- 2) Glue IO layer: Adapts the input/output functions to use ESP-NETIF transmit, receive and free receive buffer
  - Installs driver transmit to appropriate ESP-NETIF object, so that outgoing packets from network stack are passed to the IO driver
  - Calls esp_netif_receive() to pass incoming data to network stack

C) ESP-NETIF, former tcpip_adapter

ESP-NETIF is an intermediary between an IO driver and a network stack, connecting packet data path between these two. As that it provides a set of interfaces for attaching a driver to ESP-NETIF object (runtime) and configuring a network stack (compile time). In addition to that a set of API is provided to control network interface lifecycle and its TCP/IP properties. As an overview, the ESP-NETIF public interface could be divided into these 6 groups:

1) Initialization APIs (to create and configure ESP-NETIF instance)
2) Input/Output API (for passing data between IO driver and network stack)
3) Event or Action API
  - Used for network interface lifecycle management
  - ESP-NETIF provides building blocks for designing event handlers
4) Setters and Getters for basic network interface properties
5) Network stack abstraction: enabling user interaction with TCP/IP stack
  - Set interface up or down
Chapter 2. API

- DHCP server and client API
- DNS API

6) Driver conversion utilities

D) Network stack  
Network stack has no public interaction with application code with regard to public interfaces and shall be fully abstracted by ESP-NETIF API.

E) ESP-NETIF L2 TAP Interface  
The ESP-NETIF L2 TAP interface is ESP-IDF mechanism utilized to access Data Link Layer (L2 per OSI/ISO) for frame reception and transmission from user application. Its typical usage in embedded world might be implementation of non-IP related protocols such as PTP, Wake on LAN and others. Note that only Ethernet (IEEE 802.3) is currently supported.

From user perspective, the ESP-NETIF L2 TAP interface is accessed using file descriptors of VFS which provides a file-like interfacing (using functions like `open()`, `read()`, `write()`, etc). Refer to 虚拟文件系统组件 to learn more.

There is only one ESP-NETIF L2 TAP interface device (path name) available. However multiple file descriptors with different configuration can be opened at a time since the ESP-NETIF L2 TAP interface can be understood as generic entry point to the NETIF internal structure. Important is then specific configuration of particular file descriptor. It can be configured to give an access to specific Network Interface identified by `if_key` (e.g. `ETH_DEF`) and to filter only specific frames based on their type (e.g. Ethernet type in case of IEEE 802.3). Filtering only specific frames is crucial since the ESP-NETIF L2 TAP needs to work along with IP stack and so the IP related traffic (IP, ARP, etc.) should not be passed directly to the user application. Even though such option is still configurable, it is not recommended in standard use cases. Filtering is also advantageous from a perspective the user’s application gets access only to frame types it is interested in and the remaining traffic is either passed to other L2 TAP file descriptors or to IP stack.

ESP-NETIF L2 TAP Interface Usage Manual

Initialization  
To be able to use the ESP-NETIF L2 TAP interface, it needs to be enabled in Kconfig by `CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP` first and then registered by `esp_vfs_l2tap_intf_register()` prior usage of any VFS function.

`open()`  
Once the ESP-NETIF L2 TAP is registered, it can be opened at path name “/dev/net/tap”. The same path path name can be opened multiple times up to `CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP_MAX_FDS` and multiple file descriptors with with different configuration may access the Data Link Layer in the NETIF.

The ESP-NETIF L2 TAP can be opened with `O_NONBLOCK` file status flag to the `read()` does not block. Note that the `write()` may block in current implementation when accessing a Network interface since it is a shared resource among multiple ESP-NETIF L2 TAP file descriptors and IP stack, and there is currently no queuing mechanism deployed. The file status flag can be retrieved and modified using `fcntl()`.

On success, `open()` returns the new file descriptor (a nonnegative integer). On error, -1 is returned and `errno` is set to indicate the error.

`ioctl()`  
The newly opened ESP-NETIF L2 TAP file descriptor needs to be configured prior its usage since it is not bounded to any specific Network Interface and no frame type filter is configured. The following configuration options are available to do so:

- `L2TAP_S_INTF_DEVICE` - bounds the file descriptor to specific Network Interface which is identified by its `if_key`. Network Interface `if_key` is passed to `ioctl()` as the third parameter. Note that default Network Interfaces `if_key`’ s used in ESP-IDF can be found in `esp_netif/include/esp_netif_defaults.h`.
- `L2TAP_S_RCV_FILTER` - sets the filter to frames with this type to be passed to the file descriptor. In case of Ethernet frames, the frames are to be filtered based on Length/Ethernet type field. In case the filter value is set less than or equal to 0x05DC, the Ethernet type field is considered to represent IEEE802.3 Length Field and all frames with values in interval <0, 0x05DC> at that field are to be passed to the file descriptor. The IEEE802.2
logical link control (LLC) resolution is then expected to be performed by user’s application. In case the filter value is set greater than 0x05DC, the Ethernet type field is considered to represent protocol identification and only frames which are equal to the set value are to be passed to the file descriptor.

All set configuration options have getter counterpart option to read the current settings.

| Note: VLAN tagged frames are currently not recognized. If user needs to process VLAN tagged frames, they need set filter to be equal to VLAN tag (i.e. 0x8100 or 0x88A8) and process the VLAN tagged frames in user application. |

On success, `ioctl()` returns 0. On error, -1 is returned, and `errno` is set to indicate the error.

- EBAADF - not a valid file descriptor.
- EINVAL - invalid configuration argument. Ethernet type filter is already used by other file descriptor.
- ENODEV - no such Network Interface which is tried to be assigned to the file descriptor exists.
- ENOSPC - NETIF L2 receive hook is already taken by other function when trying to assign Network Interface to the file descriptor.
- ENOSYS - unsupported operation, passed configuration option does not exists.

### read()

Opened and configured ESP-NETIF L2 TAP file descriptor can be accessed by `read()` to get inbound frames. The read operation can be either blocking or non-blocking based on actual state of `O_NONBLOCK` file status flag. When the file status flag is set blocking, the read operation waits until a frame is received and context is switched to other task. When the file status flag is set non-blocking, the read operation returns immediately. In such case, either a frame is returned if it was already queued or the function indicates the queue is empty. The number of queued frames associated with one file descriptor is limited by `CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP_RX_QUEUE_SIZE` Kconfig option. Once the number of queued frames reach configured threshold, the newly arriving frames are dropped until the queue has enough room to accept incoming traffic (Tail Drop queue management).

On success, `read()` returns the number of bytes read. Zero is returned when size of the destination buffer is 0. On error, -1 is returned, and `errno` is set to indicate the error.

- EBAADF - not a valid file descriptor.
- EAGAIN - the file descriptor has been marked non-blocking (`O_NONBLOCK`), and the read would block.

### write()

A raw Data Link Layer frame can be sent to Network Interface via opened and configured ESP-NETIF L2 TAP file descriptor. User’s application is responsible to construct the whole frame except for fields which are added automatically by the physical interface device. The following fields need to be constructed by the user’s application in case of Ethernet link: source/destination MAC addresses, Ethernet type, actual protocol header and user data. See below for more information about Ethernet frame structure.

```
+-------------------+-------------------+-------------+----------------------------
| Destination MAC   | Source MAC        | Type/Length | Payload (protocol header/  
data) ... |
+-------------------+-------------------+-------------+----------------------------
```

In other words, there is no additional frame processing performed by the ESP-NETIF L2 TAP interface. It only checks the Ethernet type of the frame is the same as the filter configured in the file descriptor. If the Ethernet type is different, an error is returned and the frame is not sent. Note that the `write()` may block in current implementation when accessing a Network Interface since it is a shared resource among multiple ESP-NETIF L2 TAP file descriptors and IP stack, and there is currently no queuing mechanism deployed.

On success, `write()` returns the number of bytes written. Zero is returned when size of the input buffer is 0. On
Chapter 2. API 参考

error, -1 is returned, and errno is set to indicate the error.

EBADF - not a valid file descriptor.
EBADMSG - Ethernet type of the frame is different then file descriptor configured filter.
EIO - Network interface not available or busy.

close() Opened ESP-NETIF L2 TAP file descriptor can be closed by the close() to free its allocated resources. The ESP-NETIF L2 TAP implementation of close() may block. On the other hand, it is thread safe and can be called from different task than the file descriptor is actually used. If such situation occurs and one task is blocked in I/O operation and another task tries to close the file descriptor, the first task is unblocked. The first’s task read operation then ends with error.

On success, close() returns zero. On error, -1 is returned, and errno is set to indicate the error.
EBADF - not a valid file descriptor.

select() Select is used in a standard way, just CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_SELECT needs to be enabled to be the select() function available.

ESP-NETIF programmer’s manual Please refer to the example section for basic initialization of default interfaces:

- WiFi Station: wifi/getting_started/station/main/station_example_main.c
- WiFi Access Point: wifi/getting_started/softAP/main/softap_example_main.c
- Ethernet: ethernet/basic/main/ethernet_example_main.c

For more specific cases please consult this guide: ESP-NETIF Custom I/O Driver.

WiFi default initialization The initialization code as well as registering event handlers for default interfaces, such as softAP and station, are provided in two separate APIs to facilitate simple startup code for most applications:

- esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap()
- esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta()

Please note that these functions return the esp_netif handle, i.e. a pointer to a network interface object allocated and configured with default settings, which as a consequence, means that:

- The created object has to be destroyed if a network de-initialization is provided by an application using esp_netif_destroy_default_wifi().
- These default interfaces must not be created multiple times, unless the created handle is deleted using esp_netif_destroy().
- When using Wifi in AP+STA mode, both these interfaces has to be created.

API Reference

Header File

- components/esp_netif/include/esp_netif.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_netif_init (void)
Initialize the underlying TCP/IP stack.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL if initializing failed

Note This function should be called exactly once from application code, when the application starts up.
**esp_err_t esp_netif_deinit (void)**

Deinitialize the esp-netif component (and the underlying TCP/IP stack)

**Note:** Deinitialization is not supported yet

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_netif not initialized
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED otherwise

**esp_netif_t **esp_netif_new (const esp_netif_config_t **esp_netif_config)**

Creates an instance of new esp-netif object based on provided config.

**Return**
- pointer to esp-netif object on success
- NULL otherwise

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif_config: pointer esp-netif configuration

**void esp_netif_destroy (esp_netif_t **esp_netif)**

Destroys the esp_netif object.

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: pointer to the object to be deleted

**esp_err_t esp_netif_set_driver_config (esp_netif_t **esp_netif, const esp_netif_driver_ifconfig_t **driver_config)**

Configures driver related options of esp_netif object.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS if invalid parameters provided

**Parameters**
- [inout] esp_netif: pointer to the object to be configured
- [in] driver_config: pointer esp-netif io driver related configuration

**esp_err_t esp_netif_attach (esp_netif_t **esp_netif, esp_netif_iodriver_handle driver_handle)**

Attaches esp_netif instance to the io driver handle.

Calling this function enables connecting specific esp_netif object with already initialized io driver to update esp_netif object with driver specific configuration (i.e. calls post_attach callback, which typically sets io driver callbacks to esp_netif instance and starts the driver)

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DRIVER_ATTACH_FAILED if driver’s post_attach callback failed

**Parameters**
- [inout] esp_netif: pointer to esp_netif object to be attached
- [in] driver_handle: pointer to the driver handle

**esp_err_t esp_netif_receive (esp_netif_t **esp_netif, void **buffer, size_t len, void **eb)**

Passes the raw packets from communication media to the appropriate TCP/IP stack.

This function is called from the configured (peripheral) driver layer. The data are then forwarded as frames to the TCP/IP stack.

**Return**
- ESP_OK

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [in] buffer: Received data
- [in] len: Length of the data frame
- [in] eb: Pointer to internal buffer (used in Wi-Fi driver)

**esp_err_t esp_netif_transmit_hook_attach (esp_netif_t **esp_netif, void **hook_fn)**

Add transmit hook callback function reference into ESP-NETIF. This callback function is then called just prior the ESP-NETIF passes data to network driver.
Return
• ESP_OK - success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• [in] hook_fn: reference to transmit hook call-back function

esp_err_t esp_netif_post_transmit_hook_attach (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, void *hook_fn)
Add post transmit hook callback function reference into ESP-NETIF. This callback function is then called just after the ESP-NETIF passes data to network driver.

Note Intention of this function is either to release resources allocated by transmit hook function or for other use cases such as time stamping, etc.

Return
• ESP_OK - success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• [in] hook_fn: reference to post transmit hook call-back function

esp_err_t esp_netif_recv_hook_attach (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, void *hook_fn)
Add receive hook callback function reference into ESP-NETIF. This callback function is then called when network driver receives data.

Return
• ESP_OK - success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• [in] hook_fn: reference to receive hook callback function

esp_err_t esp_netif_transmit_hook_detach (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)
Removes reference to previously attached transmit hook callback function.

Return
• ESP_OK - success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t esp_netif_post_transmit_hook_detach (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)
Removes reference to previously attached post transmit hook callback function.

Return
• ESP_OK - success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t esp_netif_recv_hook_detach (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)
Removes reference to previously attached receive hook callback function.

Return
• ESP_OK - success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

void esp_netif_action_start (void *esp_netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IO driver start event Creates network interface, if AUTOUP enabled turns the interface on, if DHCPS enabled starts dhcp server.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
void esp_netif_action_stop (void *esp_netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IO driver stop event.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• base:
• event_id:
• data:

void esp_netif_action_connected (void *esp_netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IO driver connected event.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• base:
• event_id:
• data:

void esp_netif_action_disconnected (void *esp_netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IO driver disconnected event.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• base:
• event_id:
• data:

void esp_netif_action_got_ip (void *esp_netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon network got IP event.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• base:
• event_id:
• data:

void esp_netif_action_join_ip6_multicast_group (void *esp_netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IPv6 multicast group join.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• base:
• event_id:
• data:

void esp_netif_action_leave_ip6_multicast_group (void *esp_netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IPv6 multicast group leave.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
void esp_netif_action_add_ip6_address (void *netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)

Default building block for network interface action upon IPv6 address added by the underlying stack.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- base:
- event_id:
- data:

void esp_netif_action_remove_ip6_address (void *netif, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t event_id, void *data)

Default building block for network interface action upon IPv6 address removed by the underlying stack.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- base:
- event_id:
- data:

```c
esp_err_t esp_netif_set_mac (esp_netif_t *netif, uint8_t mac[])  
```

Set the mac address for the interface instance.

Return
- ESP_OK - success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY - interface status error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - mac not supported on this interface

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [in] mac: Desired mac address for the related network interface

```c
esp_err_t esp_netif_get_mac (esp_netif_t *netif, uint8_t mac[])  
```

Get the mac address for the interface instance.

Return
- ESP_OK - success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY - interface status error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - mac not supported on this interface

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] mac: Resultant mac address for the related network interface

```c
esp_err_t esp_netif_set_hostname (esp_netif_t *netif, const char *hostname)  
```

Set the hostname of an interface.

The configured hostname overrides the default configuration value CONFIG_LWIP_LOCAL_HOSTNAME. Please note that when the hostname is altered after interface started/connected the changes would only be reflected once the interface restarts/reconnects

Return
- ESP_OK - success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY - interface status error
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS - parameter error

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
**esp_err_t esp_netif_get_hostname (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, const char **hostname)**

Get interface hostname.

**Return**
- ESP_OK - success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY - interface status error
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS - parameter error

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] hostname: Returns a pointer to the hostname. May be NULL if no hostname is set. If set non-NULL, pointer remains valid (and string may change if the hostname changes).

**bool esp_netif_is_netif_up (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)**

Test if supplied interface is up or down.

**Return**
- true - Interface is up
- false - Interface is down

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

**esp_err_t esp_netif_get_ip_info (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_ip_info_t *ip_info)**

Get interface’s IP address information.

If the interface is up, IP information is read directly from the TCP/IP stack. If the interface is down, IP information is read from a copy kept in the ESP-NETIF instance.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] ip_info: If successful, IP information will be returned in this argument.

**esp_err_t esp_netif_get_old_ip_info (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_ip_info_t *ip_info)**

Get interface’s old IP information.

Returns an “old” IP address previously stored for the interface when the valid IP changed.

If the IP lost timer has expired (meaning the interface was down for longer than the configured interval) then the old IP information will be zero.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] ip_info: If successful, IP information will be returned in this argument.

**esp_err_t esp_netif_set_ip_info (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, const esp_netif_ip_info_t *ip_info)**

Set interface’s IP address information.

This function is mainly used to set a static IP on an interface.

If the interface is up, the new IP information is set directly in the TCP/IP stack.

The copy of IP information kept in the ESP-NETIF instance is also updated (this copy is returned if the IP is queried while the interface is still down.)

**Note** DHCP client/server must be stopped (if enabled for this interface) before setting new IP information.

**Note** Calling this interface for may generate a SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP or SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP event.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_NOT_STOPPED If DHCP server or client is still running
Chapter 2. API

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [in] ip_info: IP information to set on the specified interface

`esp_err_t esp_netif_set_old_ip_info(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, const esp_netif_ip_info_t *ip_info)`

Set interface old IP information.

This function is called from the DHCP client (if enabled), before a new IP is set. It is also called from the default handlers for the SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED and SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_CONNECTED events.

Calling this function stores the previously configured IP, which can be used to determine if the IP changes in the future.

If the interface is disconnected or down for too long, the “IP lost timer” will expire (after the configured interval) and set the old IP information to zero.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [in] ip_info: Store the old IP information for the specified interface

`int esp_netif_get_netif_impl_index(esp_netif_t *esp_netif)`

Get net interface index from network stack implementation.

Note This index could be used in `setsockopt()` to bind socket with multicast interface

Return implementation specific index of interface represented with supplied `esp_netif`

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

`esp_err_t esp_netif_get_netif_impl_name(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, char *name)`

Get net interface name from network stack implementation.

Note This name could be used in `setsockopt()` to bind socket with appropriate interface

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] name: Interface name as specified in underlying TCP/IP stack. Note that the actual name will be copied to the specified buffer, which must be allocated to hold maximum interface name size (6 characters for lwIP)

`esp_err_t esp_netif_dhcps_option(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_dhcp_option_mode_t opt_op, esp_netif_dhcp_option_id_t opt_id, void *opt_val, uint32_t opt_len)`

Set or Get DHCP server option.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STOPPED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED

Parameters
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [in] opt_op: ESP_NETIF_OP_SET to set an option, ESP_NETIF_OP_GET to get an option.
- [in] opt_id: Option index to get or set, must be one of the supported enum values.
- [inout] opt_val: Pointer to the option parameter.
- [in] opt_len: Length of the option parameter.
\texttt{esp_err_t esp_netif_dhcpc_option}\,(\texttt{esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_dhcp_option_mode_t opt_op, esp_netif_dhcp_option_id_t opt_id, void *opt_val, uint32_t opt_len})

Set or Get DHCP client option.

**Return**

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STOPPED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED

**Parameters**

- [in] \texttt{esp_netif}: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [in] \texttt{opt_op}: \texttt{ESP_NETIF_OP_SET} to set an option, \texttt{ESP_NETIF_OP_GET} to get an option.
- [in] \texttt{opt_id}: Option index to get or set, must be one of the supported enum values.
- [inout] \texttt{opt_val}: Pointer to the option parameter.
- [in] \texttt{opt_len}: Length of the option parameter.

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_netif_dhcpc_start}\,(\texttt{esp_netif_t* esp_netif})

Start DHCP client (only if enabled in interface object)

**Note** The default event handlers for the \texttt{SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED} and \texttt{SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_CONNECTED} events call this function.

**Return**

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCPC_START_FAILED

**Parameters**

- [in] \texttt{esp_netif}: Handle to esp-netif instance

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_netif_dhcpc_stop}\,(\texttt{esp_netif_t* esp_netif})

Stop DHCP client (only if enabled in interface object)

**Note** Calling \texttt{action_netif_stop()} will also stop the DHCP Client if it is running.

**Return**

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STOPPED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY

**Parameters**

- [in] \texttt{esp_netif}: Handle to esp-netif instance

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_netif_dhcpc_get_status}\,(\texttt{esp_netif_t* esp_netif, esp_netif_dhcp_status_t* status})

Get DHCP client status.

**Return**

- ESP_OK

**Parameters**

- [in] \texttt{esp_netif}: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] \texttt{status}: If successful, the status of DHCP client will be returned in this argument.

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_netif_dhcps_get_status}\,(\texttt{esp_netif_t* esp_netif, esp_netif_dhcp_status_t* status})

Get DHCP Server status.

**Return**

- ESP_OK

**Parameters**

- [in] \texttt{esp_netif}: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] \texttt{status}: If successful, the status of the DHCP server will be returned in this argument.

\texttt{esp_err_t esp_netif_dhcps_start}\,(\texttt{esp_netif_t* esp_netif})

Start DHCP server (only if enabled in interface object)

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

**esp_err_t esp_netif_dhcps_stop (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)**

Stop DHCP server (only if enabled in interface object)

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

**esp_err_t esp_netif_set_dns_info (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_dns_type_t type, esp_netif_dns_info_t *dns)**

Set DNS Server information.

This function behaves differently if DHCP server or client is enabled.

If DHCP client is enabled, main and backup DNS servers will be updated automatically from the DHCP lease if the relevant DHCP options are set. Fallback DNS Server is never updated from the DHCP lease and is designed to be set via this API. If DHCP client is disabled, all DNS server types can be set via this API only.

If DHCP server is enabled, the Main DNS Server setting is used by the DHCP server to provide a DNS Server option to DHCP clients (Wi-Fi stations).

- The default Main DNS server is typically the IP of the Wi-Fi AP interface itself.
- This function can override it by setting server type ESP_NETIF_DNS_MAIN.
- Other DNS Server types are not supported for the Wi-Fi AP interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS invalid params

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [in] type: Type of DNS Server to set: ESP_NETIF_DNS_MAIN, ESP_NETIF_DNS_BACKUP, ESP_NETIF_DNS_FALLBACK
- [in] dns: DNS Server address to set

**esp_err_t esp_netif_get_dns_info (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_dns_type_t type, esp_netif_dns_info_t *dns)**

Get DNS Server information.

Return the currently configured DNS Server address for the specified interface and Server type.

This may be result of a previous call to `esp_netif_set_dns_info()`. If the interface’s DHCP client is enabled, the Main or Backup DNS Server may be set by the current DHCP lease.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS invalid params

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [in] type: Type of DNS Server to get: ESP_NETIF_DNS_MAIN, ESP_NETIF_DNS_BACKUP, ESP_NETIF_DNS_FALLBACK
- [out] dns: DNS Server result is written here on success

**esp_err_t esp_netif_create_ip6_linklocal (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)**

Create interface link-local IPv6 address.

Cause the TCP/IP stack to create a link-local IPv6 address for the specified interface.
This function also registers a callback for the specified interface, so that if the link-local address becomes verified as the preferred address then a SYSTEM_EVENT_GOT_IP6 event will be sent.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

```c
esp_err_t esp_netif_get_ip6_linklocal(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_ip6_addr_t *if_ip6)
```
Get interface link-local IPv6 address.

If the specified interface is up and a preferred link-local IPv6 address has been created for the interface, return a copy of it.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL If interface is down, does not have a link-local IPv6 address, or the link-local IPv6 address is not a preferred address.

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] if_ip6: IPv6 information will be returned in this argument if successful.

```c
esp_err_t esp_netif_get_ip6_global(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_ip6_addr_t *if_ip6)
```
Get interface global IPv6 address.

If the specified interface is up and a preferred global IPv6 address has been created for the interface, return a copy of it.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL If interface is down, does not have a global IPv6 address, or the global IPv6 address is not a preferred address.

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] if_ip6: IPv6 information will be returned in this argument if successful.

```c
int esp_netif_get_all_ip6(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_ip6_addr_t *if_ip6[])]
```
Get all IPv6 addresses of the specified interface.

**Return** number of returned IPv6 addresses

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
- [out] if_ip6: Array of IPv6 addresses will be copied to the argument

```c
void esp_netif_set_ip4_addr(esp_ip4_addr_t *addr, uint8_t a, uint8_t b, uint8_t c, uint8_t d)
```
Sets IPv4 address to the specified octets.

**Parameters**
- [out] addr: IP address to be set
- a: the first octet (127 for IP 127.0.0.1)
- b:
- c:
- d:

```c
char *esp_ip4addr_ntoa(const esp_ip4_addr_t *addr, char *buf, int buflen)
```
Converts numeric IP address into decimal dotted ASCII representation.

**Return** either pointer to buf which now holds the ASCII representation of addr or NULL if buf was too small

**Parameters**
- addr: ip address in network order to convert
- buf: target buffer where the string is stored
- buflen: length of buf
uint32_t esp_ip4addr_aton(const char *addr)

Ascii internet address interpretation routine. The value returned is in network order.

Return  ip address in network order

Parameters
  • addr: IP address in ascii representation (e.g. “127.0.0.1”)

esp_err_t esp_netif_str_to_ip4(const char *src, esp_ip4_addr_t *dst)

Converts Ascii internet IPv4 address into esp_ip4_addr_t.

Return  
  • ESP_OK on success
  • ESP_FAIL if conversion failed
  • ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if invalid parameter is passed into

Parameters
  • [in] src: IPv4 address in ascii representation (e.g. “127.0.0.1”)
  • [out] dst: Address of the target esp_ip4_addr_t structure to receive converted address

esp_err_t esp_netif_str_to_ip6(const char *src, esp_ip6_addr_t *dst)

Converts Ascii internet IPv6 address into esp_ip6_addr_t. Zeros in the IP address can be stripped or completely omitted: “2001:db8:85a3:0:0:0:0:2:1” or “2001:db8::2:1”

Return  
  • ESP_OK on success
  • ESP_FAIL if conversion failed
  • ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if invalid parameter is passed into

Parameters
  • [in] src: IPv6 address in ascii representation (e.g. “2001:db8:85a3:0:0:0:0:0:0:2:1”)
  • [out] dst: Address of the target esp_ip6_addr_t structure to receive converted address

esp_netif_iodriver_handle esp_netif_get_io_driver(esp_netif_t *esp_netif)

Gets media driver handle for this esp-netif instance.

Return  opaque pointer of related IO driver

Parameters
  • [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_netif_t *esp_netif_get_handle_from_ifkey(const char *if_key)

Searches over a list of created objects to find an instance with supplied if key.

Return  Handle to esp-netif instance

Parameters
  • if_key: Textual description of network interface

esp_netif_flags_t esp_netif_get_flags(esp_netif_t *esp_netif)

Returns configured flags for this interface.

Return  Configuration flags

Parameters
  • [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

const char *esp_netif_get_ifkey(esp_netif_t *esp_netif)

Returns configured interface key for this esp-netif instance.

Return  Textual description of related interface

Parameters
  • [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

const char *esp_netif_get_desc(esp_netif_t *esp_netif)

Returns configured interface type for this esp-netif instance.

Return  Enumerated type of this interface, such as station, AP, ethernet

Parameters
  • [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
int esp_netif_get_route_prio (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)
Returns configured routing priority number.

Return Integer representing the instance’s route-prio, or -1 if invalid parameters

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

int32_t esp_netif_get_event_id (esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_ip_event_type_t event_type)
Returns configured event for this esp-netif instance and supplied event type.

Return Specific event id which is configured to be raised if the interface lost or acquired IP address -1 if supplied event_type is not known

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• event_type: (either get or lost IP)

esp_netif_t *esp_netif_next (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)
Iterates over list of interfaces. Returns first netif if NULL given as parameter.

Return First netif from the list if supplied parameter is NULL, next one otherwise

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance

size_t esp_netif_get_nr_of_ifs (void)
Returns number of registered esp_netif objects.

Return Number of esp_netifs

void esp_netif_netstack_buf_ref (void *netstack_buf)
Increase the reference counter of net stack buffer

Parameters
• [in] netstack_buf: the net stack buffer

void esp_netif_netstack_buf_free (void *netstack_buf)
Free the netstack buffer

Parameters
• [in] netstack_buf: the net stack buffer

Macros
_ESP_NETIF_SUPPRESS_LEGACY_WARNING_

WiFi default API reference

Header File
• components/esp_wifi/include/esp_wifi_default.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_netif_attach_wifi_station (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)
Attaches wifi station interface to supplied netif.

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_FAIL if attach failed

Parameters
• esp_netif: instance to attach the wifi station to

esp_err_t esp_netif_attach_wifi_ap (esp_netif_t *esp_netif)
Attaches wifi soft AP interface to supplied netif.

Return
### Chapter 2. API 参考

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL if attach failed

#### Parameters
- esp_netif: instance to attach the wifi AP to

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_default_wifi_sta_handlers (void)**
Sets default wifi event handlers for STA interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success, error returned from esp_event_handler_register if failed

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_set_default_wifi_ap_handlers (void)**
Sets default wifi event handlers for AP interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success, error returned from esp_event_handler_register if failed

**esp_err_t esp_wifi_clear_default_wifi_driver_and_handlers (void*)**
Clears default wifi event handlers for supplied network interface.

**Parameters**
- esp_netif: instance of corresponding if object

**esp_netif_t *esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap (void)**
Creates default WiFi AP. In case of any init error this API aborts.

**Note** The API creates esp_netif object with default WiFi access point config, attaches the netif to wifi and registers default wifi handlers.

**Return** pointer to esp-netif instance

**esp_netif_t *esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta (void)**
Creates default WiFi STA. In case of any init error this API aborts.

**Note** The API creates esp_netif object with default WiFi station config, attaches the netif to wifi and registers default wifi handlers.

**Return** pointer to esp-netif instance

**void esp_netif_destroy_default_wifi (void*)**
Destroys default WiFi netif created with esp_netif_create_default_wifi() API.

**Note** This API unregisters wifi handlers and detaches the created object from the wifi. (this function is a no-operation if esp_netif is NULL)

**Parameters**
- [in] esp_netif: object to detach from WiFi and destroy

**esp_netif_t *esp_netif_create_wifi (wifi_interface_t wifi_if, esp_netif_inherent_config_t *esp_netif_config)**
Creates esp_netif WiFi object based on the custom configuration.

**Attention** This API DOES NOT register default handlers!

**Return** pointer to esp-netif instance

**Parameters**
- [in] wifi_if: type of wifi interface
- [in] esp_netif_config: inherent esp-netif configuration pointer

**esp_err_t esp_netif_create_default_wifi_mesh_netifs (esp_netif_t **p_netif_sta, esp_netif_t **p_netif_ap)**
Creates default STA and AP network interfaces for esp-mesh.

Both netifs are almost identical to the default station and softAP, but with DHCP client and server disabled. Please note that the DHCP client is typically enabled only if the device is promoted to a root node.

Returns created interfaces which could be ignored setting parameters to NULL if an application code does not need to save the interface instances for further processing.
## TCP/IP 适配器迁移指南

TCP/IP 适配器在 ESP-NETIF 之前版本中用于简化网络接口抽象组件。本文档概述了从 tcpip_adapter 移出至其后继者 ESP-NETIF 的过程。

### 更新网络连接代码

**网络软件栈初始化** 只需将 tcpip_adapter_init() 替换为 esp_netif_init()。请注意，ESP-NETIF 初始化 API 可返回标准错误代码，还可以使用 esp_netif_deinit() 进行去初始化。

此外，还需将 #include "tcpip_adapter.h" 替换为 #include "esp_netif.h"。

### 创建网络接口

TCP/IP 适配器静态定义了三个接口:

- Wi-Fi Station
- Wi-Fi AP
- 以太网

网络接口的设计应严格参考 ESP-NETIF，以使其能够连接到 TCP/IP 软件栈。例如，在 TCP/IP 软件栈和事件循环初始化完成后，Wi-Fi 的初始化代码必须显示调用 esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta()；或 esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap()。请参阅这三个接口的初始化代码示例:

- Wi-Fi Station: wifi/getting_started/station/main/station_example_main.c
- Wi-Fi AP: wifi/getting_started/softAP/main/softap_example_main.c
- 以太网: ethernet/basic/main/ethernet_example_main.c

### 更改其他 tcpip_adapter API

所有 tcpip_adapter 函数都有对应的 esp_netif。具体请见 esp_netif 的内容:

- Setters/Getters
- DHCP
- DNS
- IP address

### 默认事件处理程序

事件处理程序已经从 tcpip_adapter 移动到相应的驱动程序代码。从应用程序的角度来看，这不会带来任何影响，所有事件仍以相同的方式处理。请注意，在与 IP 相关的事件处理程序中，应用程序代码通常以 esp-netif 结构体的形式接收 IP 地址（不是 LwIP 结构，但兼容二进制格式）。这是打印地址的首选方式:

```c
ESP_LOGI(TAG, "got ip: IPSTR \n", IP2STR(&event->ip_info.ip));
```

而不是

```c
ESP_LOGI(TAG, "got ip:%s\n", ip4addr_ntoa(&event->ip_info.ip));
```

由于 ip4addr_ntoa() 为 LwIP API，因此 esp-netif 还提供了替代函数 esp_ip4addr_ntoa()，但整体而言仍推荐上述方法。

### IP 地址

推荐使用 esp-netif 定义的 IP 结构。请注意，在启用默认兼容性时，LwIP 结构体仍然可以工作。

* esp-netif IP address definitions
Chapter 2. API

본보기 为了移植应用程序使其可以使用ESP-NETIF 还需完成的步骤包括：在组件配置中禁用 tcpip_adapter 兼容层。方法为：ESP NETIF Adapter -> Enable backward compatible tcpip_adapter interface，并检查工程是否编译成功。TCP/IP 适配器涉及大量依赖项，这一步可能有助于将应用程序与特定 TCP/IP 软件栈的 API 分离开来。

ESP-NETIF Custom I/O Driver

This section outlines implementing a new I/O driver with esp-netif connection capabilities. By convention the I/O driver has to register itself as an esp-netif driver and thus holds a dependency on esp-netif component and is responsible for providing data path functions, post-attach callback and in most cases also default event handlers to define network interface actions based on driver’s lifecycle transitions.

Packet input/output  As shown in the diagram, the following three API functions for the packet data path must be defined for connecting with esp-netif:

- esp_netif_transmit()
- esp_netif_free_rx_buffer()
- esp_netif_receive()

The first two functions for transmitting and freeing the rx buffer are provided as callbacks, i.e. they get called from esp-netif (and its underlying TCP/IP stack) and I/O driver provides their implementation.

The receiving function on the other hand gets called from the I/O driver, so that the driver’s code simply calls esp_netif_receive() on a new data received event.

Post attach callback  A final part of the network interface initialization consists of attaching the esp-netif instance to the I/O driver, by means of calling the following API:

```c
esp_err_t esp_netif_attach(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_iodriver_handle_t *driver_handle);
```

It is assumed that the esp_netif_iodriver_handle is a pointer to driver’s object, a struct derived from struct esp_netif_driver_base_s, so that the first member of I/O driver structure must be this base structure with pointers to

- post-attach function callback
- related esp-netif instance

As a consequence the I/O driver has to create an instance of the struct per below:

```c
typedef struct my_netif_driver_s {
    esp_netif_driver_base_t base;       //!< base structure reserved as...
    esp_netif_iodriver_impl_t *h;      //!< handle of driver...
} my_netif_driver_t;
```

with actual values of my_netif_driver_t::base.post_attach and the actual drivers handle my_netif_driver_t::h. So when the esp_netif_attach() gets called from the initialization code, the post-attach callback from I/O driver’s code gets executed to mutually register callbacks between esp-netif and I/O driver instances. Typically the driver is started as well in the post-attach callback. An example of a simple post-attach callback is outlined below:

```c
static esp_err_t my_post_attach_start(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, void *args)
{
    my_netif_driver_t *driver = args;
    const esp_netif_driver_ifconfig_t driver_ifconfig = {
        .driver_free_rx_buffer = my_free_rx_buf,
        .transmit = my_transmit,
    };
    //...
}
```

（下页继续）
Default handlers
I/O drivers also typically provide default definitions of lifecycle behaviour of related network interfaces based on state transitions of I/O drivers. For example \textit{driver start} $\rightarrow$ \textit{network start}, etc. An example of such a default handler is provided below:

```c
esp_err_t my_driver_netif_set_default_handlers(my_netif_driver_t *driver, esp_netif_t * esp_netif)
{
    driver_set_event_handler(driver->driver_impl, esp_netif_action_start, MY_DRV_EVT_START, esp_netif);
    driver_set_event_handler(driver->driver_impl, esp_netif_action_stop, MY_DRV_EVT_STOP, esp_netif);
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

Network stack connection
The packet data path functions for transmitting and freeing the rx buffer (defined in the I/O driver) are called from the esp-netif, specifically from its TCP/IP stack connecting layer. The following API reference outlines these network stack interaction with the esp-netif.

Header File
- components/esp_netif/include/esp_netif_net_stack.h

Functions

- \texttt{esp_netif_t* esp_netif_get_handle_from_netif_impl (void *dev)}
  Returns esp-netif handle.
  \textbf{Return} handle to related esp-netif instance
  \textbf{Parameters}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item [in] dev: opaque ptr to network interface of specific TCP/IP stack
  \end{itemize}

- \texttt{esp_netif_t* esp_netif_get_netif_impl (esp_netif_t* esp_netif)}
  Returns network stack specific implementation handle (if supported)
  Note that it is not supported to acquire PPP netif impl pointer and this function will return NULL for esp_netif instances configured to PPP mode
  \textbf{Return} handle to related network stack netif handle
  \textbf{Parameters}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
  \end{itemize}

- \texttt{esp_err_t esp_netif_transmit (esp_netif_t* esp_netif, void *data, size_t len)}
  Outputs packets from the TCP/IP stack to the media to be transmitted.
  This function gets called from network stack to output packets to IO driver.
  \textbf{Return} ESP_OK on success, an error passed from the I/O driver otherwise
  \textbf{Parameters}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
    \item [in] data: Data to be transmitted
    \item [in] len: Length of the data frame
  \end{itemize}
esp_err_t esp_netif_transmit_wrap(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, void *data, size_t len, void *netstack_buf)

Outputs packets from the TCP/IP stack to the media to be transmitted.

This function gets called from network stack to output packets to IO driver.

Return ESP_OK on success, an error passed from the I/O driver otherwise

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• [in] data: Data to be transmitted
• [in] len: Length of the data frame
• [in] netstack_buf: net stack buffer

void esp_netif_free_rx_buffer(void *esp_netif, void *buffer)

Free the rx buffer allocated by the media driver.

This function gets called from network stack when the rx buffer to be freed in IO driver context, i.e. to deallocate a buffer owned by io driver (when data packets were passed to higher levels to avoid copying)

Parameters
• [in] esp_netif: Handle to esp-netif instance
• [in] buffer: Rx buffer pointer

TCP/IP 套接字 API 的示例代码存放在 ESP-IDF 示例项目的 protocols/sockets 目录下。

2.2.5 应用层协议

应用层网络协议（IP 网络层协议之上）的相关文档存放在 应用层协议。

2.3 外设 API

2.3.1 Analog to Digital Converter (ADC)

ADC Channels

The ESP32 integrates 2 SAR (Successive Approximation Register) ADCs, supporting a total of 18 measurement channels (analog enabled pins).

These channels are supported:

ADC1:
• 8 channels: GPIO32 - GPIO39

ADC2:
• 10 channels: GPIO0, GPIO2, GPIO4, GPIO12 - GPIO15, GPIO25 - GPIO27

ADC Attenuation

Vref is the reference voltage used internally by ESP32 ADCs for measuring the input voltage. The ESP32 ADCs can measure analog voltages from 0 V to Vref. Among different chips, the Vref varies, the median is 1.1 V. In order to convert voltages larger than Vref, input voltages can be attenuated before being input to the ADCs. There are 4 available attenuation options, the higher the attenuation is, the higher the measurable input voltage could be.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attenuation</th>
<th>Measurable input voltage range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADC_ATTEN_DB_0</td>
<td>100 mV ~ 950 mV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_ATTEN_DB_2_5</td>
<td>100 mV ~ 1250 mV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_ATTEN_DB_6</td>
<td>150 mV ~ 1750 mV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_ATTEN_DB_11</td>
<td>150 mV ~ 2450 mV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADC Conversion

An ADC conversion is to convert the input analog voltage to a digital value. The ADC conversion results provided by the ADC driver APIs are raw data. Resolution of ESP32 ADC raw results under Single Read mode is 12-bit.

- `adc1_get_raw()`
- `adc2_get_raw()`

To calculate the voltage based on the ADC raw results, this formula can be used:

\[
V_{out} = \frac{D_{out} \times V_{max}}{D_{max}} \quad (1)
\]

where:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(V_{out})</td>
<td>Digital output result, standing for the voltage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D_{out})</td>
<td>ADC raw digital reading result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(V_{max})</td>
<td>Maximum measurable input analog voltage, see ADC Attenuation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D_{max})</td>
<td>Maximum of the output ADC raw digital reading result, which is 4095 under Single Read mode, 4095 under Continuous Read mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For boards with eFuse ADC calibration bits, `esp_adc_cal_raw_to_voltage()` can be used to get the calibrated conversion results. These results stand for the actual voltage (in mV). No need to transform these data via the formula (1). If ADC calibration APIs are used on boards without eFuse ADC calibration bits, warnings will be generated. See ADC Calibration.

ADC Limitations

- Some of the ADC2 pins are used as strapping pins (GPIO 0, 2, 15) thus cannot be used freely. Such is the case in the following official Development Kits:
  - ESP32 DevKitC: GPIO 0 cannot be used due to external auto program circuits.
  - ESP-WROVER-KIT: GPIO 0, 2, 4 and 15 cannot be used due to external connections for different purposes.
  - Since the ADC2 module is also used by the Wi-Fi, only one of them could get the preemption when using together, which means the `adc2_get_raw()` may get blocked until Wi-Fi stops, and vice versa.

Driver Usage

Both of the ADC units support single read mode, which is suitable for low-frequency sampling operations.

ADC Single Read mode

The ADC should be configured before reading is taken.

- For ADC1, configure desired precision and attenuation by calling functions `adc1_config_width()` and `adc1_config_channel_atten()`.
- For ADC2, configure the attenuation by `adc2_config_channel_atten()`. The reading width of ADC2 is configured every time you take the reading.

Attenuation configuration is done per channel, see `adc1_channel_t` and `adc2_channel_t`, set as a parameter of above functions.

Then it is possible to read ADC conversion result with `adc1_get_raw()` and `adc2_get_raw()`. Reading width of ADC2 should be set as a parameter of `adc2_get_raw()` instead of in the configuration functions.
Chapter 2. API Reference

Single Read mode ADC example can be found in peripherals/adc/single_read directory of ESP-IDF examples. It is also possible to read the internal hall effect sensor via ADC1 by calling dedicated function `hall_sensor_read()`. Note that even the hall sensor is internal to ESP32, reading from it uses channels 0 and 3 of ADC1 (GPIO 36 and 39). Do not connect anything else to these pins and do not change their configuration. Otherwise it may affect the measurement of low value signal from the sensor.

This API provides convenient way to configure ADC1 for reading from ULP. To do so, call function `adc1_ulp_enable()` and then set precision and attenuation as discussed above.

There is another specific function `adc_vref_to_gpio()` used to route internal reference voltage to a GPIO pin. It comes handy to calibrate ADC reading and this is discussed in section ADC Calibration.

### Minimizing Noise

The ESP32 ADC can be sensitive to noise leading to large discrepancies in ADC readings. Depending on the usage scenario, users may connect a bypass capacitor (e.g. a 100 nF ceramic capacitor) to the ADC input pad in use, to minimize noise. Besides, multisampling may also be used to further mitigate the effects of noise.

![ADC Noise Comparison](image)

**图 4: Graph illustrating noise mitigation using capacitor and multisampling of 64 samples.

### ADC Calibration

The `esp_adc_cal/include/esp_adc_cal.h` API provides functions to correct for differences in measured voltages caused by variation of ADC reference voltages (Vref) between chips. Per design the ADC reference voltage is 1100 mV, however the true reference voltage can range from 1000 mV to 1200 mV amongst different ESP32s.

Correcting ADC readings using this API involves characterizing one of the ADCs at a given attenuation to obtain a characteristics curve (ADC-Voltage curve) that takes into account the difference in ADC reference voltage. The characteristics curve is in the form of \( y = \text{coeff}_a \times x + \text{coeff}_b \) and is used to convert ADC readings to

---

**Notes**: See ADC Limitations for the limitation of using ADC single read mode.
voltages in mV. Calculation of the characteristics curve is based on calibration values which can be stored in eFuse or provided by the user.

**Calibration Values**

Calibration values are used to generate characteristic curves that account for the variation of ADC reference voltage of a particular ESP32 chip. There are currently 3 source(s) of calibration values on ESP32. The availability of these calibration values will depend on the type and production date of the ESP32 chip/module.

- **Two Point** values represent each of the ADCs’ readings at 150 mV and 850 mV. To obtain more accurate calibration results these values should be measured by user and burned into eFuse BLOCK3.
- **eFuse Vref** represents the true ADC reference voltage. This value is measured and burned into eFuse BLOCK0 during factory calibration.
- **Default Vref** is an estimate of the ADC reference voltage provided by the user as a parameter during characterization. If Two Point or eFuse Vref values are unavailable, Default Vref will be used.

Individual measurement and burning of the eFuse Vref has been applied to ESP32-D0WD and ESP32-D0WDQ6 chips produced on/after the 1st week of 2018. Such chips may be recognized by date codes on/after than 012018 (see Line 4 on figure below).

If you would like to purchase chips or modules with calibration, double check with distributor or Espressif (sales@espressif.com) directly.

If you are unable to check the date code (i.e. the chip may be enclosed inside a canned module, etc.), you can still verify if eFuse Vref is present by running the espefuse.py tool with adc_info parameter

```
$IDF_PATH/components/esptool_py/esptool/espefuse.py --port /dev/ttyUSB0 adc_info
```

Replace /dev/ttyUSB0 with ESP32 board’s port name.

A chip that has specific eFuse Vref value programmed (in this case 1093 mV) will be reported as follows:

```
ADC VRef calibration: 1093 mV
```

In another example below the eFuse Vref is not programmed:
Chapter 2. API 参考

图 6: ESP32 Chip Surface Marking

ADC VRef calibration: None (1100 mV nominal)

For a chip with two point calibration the message will look similar to:

ADC VRef calibration: 1149 mV
ADC readings stored in efuse BLK3:
ADC1 Low reading (150 mV): 306
ADC1 High reading (850 mV): 3153
ADC2 Low reading (150 mV): 389
ADC2 High reading (850 mV): 3206

Application Extensions

For a full example see esp-idf: peripherals/adc/single_read

Characterizing an ADC at a particular attenuation:

```c
#include "driver/adc.h"
#include "esp_adc_cal.h"
...

//Characterize ADC at particular attenu
essp_adc_cal_characteristics_t *adc_chars = calloc(1, sizeof(esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t));
essp_adc_cal_value_t val_type = esp_adc_cal_characterize(unit, atten, ADC_WIDTH_BIT_12, DEFAULT_VREF, adc_chars);
//Check type of calibration value used to characterize ADC
if (val_type == ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_VREF) {
    printf("eFuse Vref");
} else if (val_type == ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP) {
    printf("Two Point");
} else {
    printf("Default");
}
```

Reading an ADC then converting the reading to a voltage:
#include "driver/adc.h"
#include "esp_adc_cal.h"
...
  uint32_t reading = adc1_get_raw(ADC1_CHANNEL_5);
  uint32_t voltage = esp_adc_cal_raw_to_voltage(reading, adc_chars);

Routing ADC reference voltage to GPIO, so it can be manually measured (for Default Vref):

#include "driver/adc.h"
...
  esp_err_t status = adc_vref_to_gpio(ADC_UNIT_1, GPIO_NUM_25);
  if (status == ESP_OK) {
    printf("v_ref routed to GPIO\n");
  } else {
    printf("failed to route v_ref\n");
  }

**GPIO Lookup Macros**

There are macros available to specify the GPIO number of a ADC channel, or vice versa. e.g.

1. **ADC1_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM** is the GPIO number of ADC1 channel 0.
2. **ADC1_GPIOn_CHANNEL** is the ADC1 channel number of GPIO n.

**API Reference**

This reference covers three components:

- **ADC driver**
- **ADC Calibration**
- **GPIO Lookup Macros**

**ADC driver**

**Header File**

- components/driver/esp32/include/driver/adc.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t adc_set_i2s_data_source(adc_i2s_source_t src)
```
Set I2S data source.

- **Return**
  - ESP_OK success

- **Parameters**
  - src: I2S DMA data source, I2S DMA can get data from digital signals or from ADC.

```c
esp_err_t adc_i2s_mode_init(adc_unit_t adc_unit, adc_channel_t channel)
```
Initialize 12S ADC mode.

- **Return**
  - ESP_OK success

- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG** Parameter error

- **Parameters**
  - adc_unit: ADC unit index
• channel: ADC channel index

```c
int hall_sensor_read (void)
    Read Hall Sensor.
```

**Note** When the power switch of SARADC1, SARADC2, HALL sensor and AMP sensor is turned on, the input of GPIO36 and GPIO39 will be pulled down for about 80ns. When enabling power for any of these peripherals, ignore input from GPIO36 and GPIO39. Please refer to section 3.11 of ‘ECO_and_Workarounds_for_Bugs_in_ESP32’ for the description of this issue.

**Note** The Hall Sensor uses channels 0 and 3 of ADC1. Do not configure these channels for use as ADC channels.

**Note** The ADC1 module must be enabled by calling adc1_config_width() before calling hall_sensor_read(). ADC1 should be configured for 12 bit readings, as the hall sensor readings are low values and do not cover the full range of the ADC.

**Return** The hall sensor reading.

**Header File**

- components/hal/include/hal/adc_types.h

**Structures**

```c
struct adc_digi_pattern_table_t
    ADC digital controller (DMA mode) conversion rules setting.
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint8_t atten : 2
    ADC sampling voltage attenuation configuration. Modification of attenuation affects the range of measurements. 0: measurement range 0 - 800mV, 1: measurement range 0 - 1100mV, 2: measurement range 0 - 1350mV, 3: measurement range 0 - 2600mV.
```

```c
uint8_t bit_width : 2
    ADC resolution.
    • 0: 9 bit;
    • 1: 10 bit;
    • 2: 11 bit;
    • 3: 12 bit.
```

```c
int8_t channel : 4
    ADC channel index.
```

```c
uint8_t val
    Raw data value
```

```c
struct adc_digi_output_data_t
    ADC digital controller (DMA mode) output data format. Used to analyze the acquired ADC (DMA) data.
```

**Note** ESP32-S2: Member channel can be used to judge the validity of the ADC data, because the role of the arbiter may get invalid ADC data.

**Public Members**

```c
uint16_t data : 12
    ADC real output data info. Resolution: 12 bit.
```

```c
uint16_t data : 11
    ADC real output data info. Resolution: 11 bit.
```

```c
uint16_t channel : 4
    ADC channel index info. For ESP32-S2: If (channel < ADC_CHANNEL_MAX), The data is valid. If (channel > ADC_CHANNEL_MAX), The data is invalid.
```
struct adc_digi_output_data_t::[anonymous]::[anonymous] type1

When the configured output format is 12bit. ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_12BIT

uint16_t unit: 1
ADC unit index info. 0: ADC1; 1: ADC2.

struct adc_digi_output_data_t::[anonymous]::[anonymous] type2

When the configured output format is 11bit. ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_11BIT

uint16_t val
Raw data value

struct adc_digi_config_t
CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_ESP32.

ADC digital controller (DMA mode) configuration parameters.

Example setting: When using ADC1 channel0 to measure voltage, the sampling rate is required to be 1 kHz:

```
+---------------------+--------+--------+--------+
| sample rate | 1 kHz | 1 kHz | 1 kHz |
| conv_mode | single | both | alter |
| adc1_pattern_len | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| dig_clk.use_apll | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| dig_clk.div_num | 99 | 99 | 99 |
| dig_clk.div_b | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| dig_clk.div_a | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| interval | 400 | 400 | 200 |
+---------------------+--------+--------+--------+
| `trigger_meas_freq` | 1 kHz | 1 kHz | 2 kHz |
+---------------------+--------+--------+--------+
```

Explanation of the relationship between conv_limit_num, dma_eof_num and the number of DMA outputs:

```
+---------------------+--------+--------+--------+
| conv_mode | single | both | alter |
| trigger meas times | 1 | 1 | 1 |
+---------------------+--------+--------+--------+
| conv_limit_num | +1 | +1 | +1 |
| dma_eof_num | +1 | +2 | +1 |
| dma output (byte) | +2 | +4 | +2 |
+---------------------+--------+--------+--------+
```

**Public Members**

bool conv_limit_en
Enable the function of limiting ADC conversion times. If the number of ADC conversion trigger count is equal to the limit_num, the conversion is stopped.

uint32_t conv_limit_num
Set the upper limit of the number of ADC conversion triggers. Range: 1 ~ 255.

uint32_t adc1_pattern_len
Pattern table length for digital controller. Range: 0 ~ 16 (0: Don’t change the pattern table setting). The pattern table that defines the conversion rules for each SAR ADC. Each table has 16 items, in which channel selection, resolution and attenuation are stored. When the conversion is started, the controller reads conversion rules from the pattern table one by one. For each controller the scan sequence has at most 16 different rules before repeating itself.

uint32_t adc2_pattern_len
Refer to adc1_pattern_len
adc_digi_pattern_table_t *adc1_pattern
   Pointer to pattern table for digital controller. The table size defined by adc1_pattern_len.

adc_digi_pattern_table_t *adc2_pattern
   Refer to adc1_pattern

adc_digi_convert_mode_t conv_mode
   ADC conversion mode for digital controller. See adc_digi_convert_mode_t.

adc_digi_output_format_t format
   ADC output data format for digital controller. See adc_digi_output_format_t.

Enumerations
enum adc_unit_t
   ADC unit enumeration.

   Note For ADC digital controller (DMA mode), ESP32 doesn’t support ADC_UNIT_2, ADC_UNIT_BOTH, ADC_UNIT_ALTER.

   Values:
   
   ADC_UNIT_1 = 1
      SAR ADC 1.
   ADC_UNIT_2 = 2
      SAR ADC 2.
   ADC_UNIT_BOTH = 3
      SAR ADC 1 and 2.
   ADC_UNIT_ALTER = 7
      SAR ADC 1 and 2 alternative mode.
   ADC_UNIT_MAX

enum adc_channel_t
   ADC channels handle. See adc1_channel_t, adc2_channel_t.

   Note For ESP32 ADC1, don’t use ADC_CHANNEL_8, ADC_CHANNEL_9. See adc1_channel_t.

   Values:
   
   ADC_CHANNEL_0 = 0
      ADC channel
   ADC_CHANNEL_1
      ADC channel
   ADC_CHANNEL_2
      ADC channel
   ADC_CHANNEL_3
      ADC channel
   ADC_CHANNEL_4
      ADC channel
   ADC_CHANNEL_5
      ADC channel
   ADC_CHANNEL_6
      ADC channel
   ADC_CHANNEL_7
      ADC channel
   ADC_CHANNEL_8
      ADC channel
ADC_CHANNEL_9
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_MAX

enum adc_atten_t
ADC attenuation parameter. Different parameters determine the range of the ADC. See adc1_config_channel_atten.

Values:

ADC_ATTEN_DB_0 = 0
No input attenuation, ADC can measure up to approx. 800 mV.

ADC_ATTEN_DB_2_5 = 1
The input voltage of ADC will be attenuated extending the range of measurement by about 2.5 dB (1.33x)

ADC_ATTEN_DB_6 = 2
The input voltage of ADC will be attenuated extending the range of measurement by about 6 dB (2x)

ADC_ATTEN_DB_11 = 3
The input voltage of ADC will be attenuated extending the range of measurement by about 11 dB (3.55x)

ADC_ATTEN_MAX

enum adc_i2s_source_t
ESP32 ADC DMA source selection.

Values:

ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_IO_SIG = 0
I2S data from GPIO matrix signal

ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_ADC = 1
I2S data from ADC

ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_MAX

enum adc_bits_width_t
ADC resolution setting option.

Values:

ADC_WIDTH_BIT_9 = 0
ADC capture width is 9Bit.

ADC_WIDTH_BIT_10 = 1
ADC capture width is 10Bit.

ADC_WIDTH_BIT_11 = 2
ADC capture width is 11Bit.

ADC_WIDTH_BIT_12 = 3
ADC capture width is 12Bit.

ADC_WIDTH_MAX

enum adc_digi_convert_mode_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) work mode.

Note The conversion mode affects the sampling frequency: SINGLE_UNIT_1: When the measurement is triggered, only ADC1 is sampled once. SINGLE_UNIT_2: When the measurement is triggered, only ADC2 is sampled once. BOTH_UNIT: When the measurement is triggered, ADC1 and ADC2 are sampled at the same time. ALTER_UNIT: When the measurement is triggered, ADC1 or ADC2 samples alternately.

Values:
ADC_CONV_SINGLE_UNIT_1 = 1
SAR ADC 1.

ADC_CONV_SINGLE_UNIT_2 = 2
SAR ADC 2.

ADC_CONV_BOTH_UNIT = 3
SAR ADC 1 and 2.

ADC_CONV_ALTER_UNIT = 7
SAR ADC 1 and 2 alternative mode.

ADC_CONV_UNIT_MAX

enum adc_digi_output_format_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) output data format option.

Values:

ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_12BIT
ADC to DMA data format, [15:12]-channel, [11: 0]-12 bits ADC data (adc_digi_output_data_t). Note: For single convert mode.

ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_11BIT
ADC to DMA data format, [15]-adc unit, [14:11]-channel, [10: 0]-11 bits ADC data (adc_digi_output_data_t). Note: For multi or alter convert mode.

ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_MAX

Header File
- components/driver/include/driver/adc_common.h

Functions
void adc_power_on (void)
Enable ADC power.

void adc_power_off (void)
Power off SAR ADC.

void adc_power_acquire (void)
Increment the usage counter for ADC module. ADC will stay powered on while the counter is greater than 0.
Call adc_power_release when done using the ADC.

void adc_power_release (void)
Decrement the usage counter for ADC module. ADC will stay powered on while the counter is greater than 0.
Call this function when done using the ADC.

esp_err_t adc_gpio_init (adc_unit_t adc_unit, adc_channel_t channel)
Initialize ADC pad.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- adc_unit: ADC unit index
- channel: ADC channel index

esp_err_t adcl_pad_get_io_num (adc1_channel_t channel, gpio_num_t *gpio_num)
Get the GPIO number of a specific ADC1 channel.

Return
- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if channel not valid

Parameters
- channel: Channel to get the GPIO number
Chapter 2. API

- `gpio_num`: output buffer to hold the GPIO number

`esp_err_t adcl_config_channel_atten (adc1_channel_t channel, adc_atten_t atten)`

Set the attenuation of a particular channel on ADC1, and configure its associated GPIO pin mux.

The default ADC voltage is for attenuation 0 dB and listed in the table below. By setting higher attenuation it is possible to read higher voltages.

Due to ADC characteristics, most accurate results are obtained within the “suggested range” shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SoC</th>
<th>attenuation (dB)</th>
<th>suggested range (mV)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100 ~ 950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>100 ~ 1250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>150 ~ 1750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>150 ~ 2450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-S2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 ~ 750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0 ~ 1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0 ~ 1300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0 ~ 2500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For maximum accuracy, use the ADC calibration APIs and measure voltages within these recommended ranges.

**Note** For any given channel, this function must be called before the first time `adc1_get_raw()` is called for that channel.

**Note** This function can be called multiple times to configure multiple ADC channels simultaneously. You may call `adc1_get_raw()` only after configuring a channel.

**Return**

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- `channel`: ADC1 channel to configure
- `atten`: Attenuation level

`esp_err_t adcl_config_width (adc_bits_width_t width_bit)`

Configure ADC1 capture width, meanwhile enable output invert for ADC1. The configuration is for all channels of ADC1.

**Return**

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- `width_bit`: Bit capture width for ADC1

`int adcl_get_raw (adc1_channel_t channel)`

Take an ADC1 reading from a single channel.

**Note** ESP32: When the power switch of SARADC1, SARADC2, HALL sensor and AMP sensor is turned on, the input of GPIO36 and GPIO39 will be pulled down for about 80ns. When enabling power for any of these peripherals, ignore input from GPIO36 and GPIO39. Please refer to section 3.11 of ‘ECO_and_Workarounds_for_Bugs_in_ESP32’ for the description of this issue. As a workaround, call
adc_power_acquire() in the app. This will result in higher power consumption (by ~1mA), but will re-
move the glitches on GPIO36 and GPIO39.

**Note** Call `adc1_config_width()` before the first time this function is called.

**Note** For any given channel, `adc1_config_channel_atten(channel)` must be called before the first time this
function is called. Configuring a new channel does not prevent a previously configured channel from
being read.

**Return**
-1: Parameter error
Other: ADC1 channel reading.

**Parameters**
- `channel`: ADC1 channel to read

```c
esp_err_t adc_set_data_inv (adc_unit_t adc_unit, bool inv_en)
```
Set ADC data invert.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `adc_unit`: ADC unit index
- `inv_en`: whether enable data invert

```c
esp_err_t adc_set_clk_div (uint8_t clk_div)
```
Set ADC source clock.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success

**Parameters**
- `clk_div`: ADC clock divider, ADC clock is divided from APB clock

```c
esp_err_t adc_set_data_width (adc_unit_t adc_unit, adc_bits_width_t width_bit)
```
Configure ADC capture width.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `adc_unit`: ADC unit index
- `width_bit`: Bit capture width for ADC unit.

```c
void adc1_ulp_enable (void)
```
Configure ADC1 to be usable by the ULP.

This function reconfigures ADC1 to be controlled by the ULP. Effect of this function can be reverted using
`adc1_get_raw()` function.

Note that `adc1_config_channel_atten, adc1_config_width()` functions need to be called to configure
ADC1 channels, before ADC1 is used by the ULP.

```c
esp_err_t adc2_pad_get_io_num (adc2_channel_t channel, gpio_num_t *gpio_num)
```
Get the GPIO number of a specific ADC2 channel.

**Return**
- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if channel not valid

**Parameters**
- `channel`: Channel to get the GPIO number
- `gpio_num`: output buffer to hold the GPIO number

```c
esp_err_t adc2_config_channel_atten (adc2_channel_t channel, adc_atten_t atten)
```
Configure the ADC2 channel, including setting attenuation.

The default ADC voltage is for attenuation 0 dB and listed in the table below. By setting higher attenuation it
is possible to read higher voltages.
Due to ADC characteristics, most accurate results are obtained within the "suggested range" shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SoC</th>
<th>attenuation</th>
<th>suggested range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(dB)</td>
<td>(mV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>100 ~ 950</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>100 ~ 1250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>150 ~ 1750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>150 ~ 2450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 ~ 750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0 ~ 1050</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32-S2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0 ~ 1300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0 ~ 2500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For maximum accuracy, use the ADC calibration APIs and measure voltages within these recommended ranges.

**Note** This function also configures the input GPIO pin mux to connect it to the ADC2 channel. It must be called before calling `adc2_get_raw()` for this channel.

**Note** For any given channel, this function must be called before the first time `adc2_get_raw()` is called for that channel.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `channel`: ADC2 channel to configure
- `atten`: Attenuation level

```c
esp_err_t adc2_get_raw(adc2_channel_t channel, adc_bits_width_t width_bit, int *raw_out)
```

Take an ADC2 reading on a single channel.

**Note** ESP32: When the power switch of SARADC1, SARADC2, HALL sensor and AMP sensor is turned on, the input of GPIO36 and GPIO39 will be pulled down for about 80ns. When enabling power for any of these peripherals, ignore input from GPIO36 and GPIO39. Please refer to section 3.11 of ‘ECO_and_Workarounds_for_Bugs_in_ESP32’ for the description of this issue. As a workaround, call `adc_power_acquire()` in the app. This will result in higher power consumption (by ~1mA), but will remove the glitches on GPIO36 and GPIO39.

**Note** ESP32: For a given channel, `adc2_config_channel_atten()` must be called before the first time this function is called. If Wi-Fi is started via `esp_wifi_start()`, this function will always fail with ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT.

**Note** ESP32-S2: ADC2 support hardware arbiter. The arbiter is to improve the use efficiency of ADC2. After the control right is robbed by the high priority, the low priority controller will read the invalid ADC2 data. Default priority: Wi-Fi > RTC > Digital;

**Return**
- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT ADC2 is being used by other controller and the request timed out.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE The controller status is invalid. Please try again.

**Parameters**
- `channel`: ADC2 channel to read
- `width_bit`: Bit capture width for ADC2
- `raw_out`: the variable to hold the output data.
**esp_err_t adc_vref_to_gpio (adc_unit_t adc_unit, gpio_num_t gpio)**

Output ADC1 or ADC2’s reference voltage to adc2_channe_t’s IO.

This function routes the internal reference voltage of ADCn to one of ADC2’s channels. This reference voltage can then be manually measured for calibration purposes.

**Note** ESP32 only supports output of ADC2’s internal reference voltage.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: v_ref successfully routed to selected GPIO
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Unsupported GPIO

**Parameters**
- [in] adc_unit: ADC unit index
- [in] gpio: GPIO number (Only ADC2’s channels IO are supported)

**esp_err_t adc2_vref_to_gpio (gpio_num_t gpio)**

Output ADC2 reference voltage to adc2_channe_t’s IO.

This function routes the internal reference voltage of ADCn to one of ADC2’s channels. This reference voltage can then be manually measured for calibration purposes.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: v_ref successfully routed to selected GPIO
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Unsupported GPIO

**Parameters**
- [in] gpio: GPIO number (ADC2’s channels are supported)

**esp_err_t adc_digi_init (void)**

ADC digital controller initialization.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success

**esp_err_t adc_digi_deinit (void)**

ADC digital controller deinitialization.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success

**esp_err_t adc_digi_controller_config (const adc_digi_config_t *config)**

Setting the digital controller.

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver state is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG If the combination of arguments is invalid.
- ESP_OK On success

**Parameters**
- config: Pointer to digital controller paramter. Refer to adc_digi_config_t.

**Macros**

**ADC_ATTEN_0db**
ADC rtc controller attenuation option.

**Note** This definitions are only for being back-compatible

**ADC_ATTEN_2_5db**

**ADC_ATTEN_6db**

**ADC_ATTEN_11db**

**ADC_WIDTH_BIT_DEFAULT**
The default (max) bit width of the ADC of current version. You can also get the maximum bitwidth by SOC_ADC_MAX_BITWIDTH defined in soc_caps.h.

**ADC_WIDTH_9Bit**

**ADC_WIDTH_10Bit**
ADC_WIDTH_11Bit
ADC_WIDTH_12Bit

Enumerations

enum adc1_channel_t

Values:
ADC1_CHANNEL_0 = 0
ADC1 channel 0 is GPIO36
ADC1_CHANNEL_1
ADC1 channel 1 is GPIO37
ADC1_CHANNEL_2
ADC1 channel 2 is GPIO38
ADC1_CHANNEL_3
ADC1 channel 3 is GPIO39
ADC1_CHANNEL_4
ADC1 channel 4 is GPIO32
ADC1_CHANNEL_5
ADC1 channel 5 is GPIO33
ADC1_CHANNEL_6
ADC1 channel 6 is GPIO34
ADC1_CHANNEL_7
ADC1 channel 7 is GPIO35
ADC1_CHANNEL_MAX

enum adc2_channel_t

Values:
ADC2_CHANNEL_0 = 0
ADC2 channel 0 is GPIO4 (ESP32), GPIO11 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_1
ADC2 channel 1 is GPIO0 (ESP32), GPIO12 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_2
ADC2 channel 2 is GPIO2 (ESP32), GPIO13 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_3
ADC2 channel 3 is GPIO15 (ESP32), GPIO14 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_4
ADC2 channel 4 is GPIO13 (ESP32), GPIO15 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_5
ADC2 channel 5 is GPIO12 (ESP32), GPIO16 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_6
ADC2 channel 6 is GPIO14 (ESP32), GPIO17 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_7
ADC2 channel 7 is GPIO27 (ESP32), GPIO18 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_8
ADC2 channel 8 is GPIO25 (ESP32), GPIO19 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_9
ADC2 channel 9 is GPIO26 (ESP32), GPIO20 (ESP32-S2)
ADC2_CHANNEL_MAX
### enum adc_i2s_encode_t

ADC digital controller encode option.

Values:

- **ADC_ENCODE_12BIT**: ADC to DMA data format, [15:12]-channel [11:0]-12 bits ADC data
- **ADC_ENCODE_11BIT**: ADC to DMA data format, [15]-unit, [14:11]-channel [10:0]-11 bits ADC data
- **ADC_ENCODE_MAX**

### ADC Calibration

**Header File**

- components/esp_adc_cal/include/esp_adc_cal.h

**Functions**

- **esp_err_t esp_adc_cal_check_efuse(esp_adc_cal_value_t value_type)**

  Checks if ADC calibration values are burned into eFuse.

  This function checks if ADC reference voltage or Two Point values have been burned to the eFuse of the current ESP32

  **Note**: in ESP32S2, only ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP is supported. Some old ESP32S2s do not support this, either. In which case you have to calibrate it manually, possibly by performing your own two-point calibration on the chip.

  **Return**
  - ESP_OK: The calibration mode is supported in eFuse
  - ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Error, eFuse values are not burned
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error, invalid argument (ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_DEFAULT_VREF)

- **esp_adc_cal_value_t esp_adc_cal_characterize(adc_unit_t adc_num, adc_atten_t atten, adc_bits_width_t bit_width, uint32_t default_vref, esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t *chars)**

  Characterize an ADC at a particular attenuation.

  This function will characterize the ADC at a particular attenuation and generate the ADC-Voltage curve in the form of \[y = \text{coeff}_a \times x + \text{coeff}_b\]. Characterization can be based on Two Point values, eFuse Vref, or default Vref and the calibration values will be prioritized in that order.

  **Note**: For ESP32, Two Point values and eFuse Vref calibration can be enabled/disabled using menuconfig. For ESP32s2, only Two Point values calibration and only ADC_WIDTH_BIT_13 is supported. The parameter default_vref is unused.

  **Return**
  - ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_VREF: eFuse Vref used for characterization
  - ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP: Two Point value used for characterization (only in Linear Mode)
  - ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_DEFAULT_VREF: Default Vref used for characterization

  **Parameters**
  - \[\text{in}\] adc_num: ADC to characterize (ADC_UNIT_1 or ADC_UNIT_2)
  - \[\text{in}\] atten: Attenuation to characterize
  - \[\text{in}\] bit_width: Bit width configuration of ADC
  - \[\text{in}\] default_vref: Default ADC reference voltage in mV (Only in ESP32, used if eFuse values is not available)
  - \[\text{out}\] chars: Pointer to empty structure used to store ADC characteristics
uint32_t esp_adc_cal_raw_to_voltage (uint32_t adc_reading, const esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t *chars)

Convert an ADC reading to voltage in mV.

This function converts an ADC reading to a voltage in mV based on the ADC’s characteristics.

**Note** Characteristics structure must be initialized before this function is called (call esp_adc_cal_characterize())

**Return** Voltage in mV

**Parameters**
- [in] adc_reading: ADC reading
- [in] chars: Pointer to initialized structure containing ADC characteristics

esp_err_t esp_adc_cal_get_voltage (adc_channel_t channel, const esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t *chars, uint32_t *voltage)

Reads an ADC and converts the reading to a voltage in mV.

This function reads an ADC then converts the raw reading to a voltage in mV based on the characteristics provided. The ADC that is read is also determined by the characteristics.

**Note** The Characteristics structure must be initialized before this function is called (call esp_adc_cal_characterize())

**Return**
- ESP_OK: ADC read and converted to mV
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error due to invalid arguments
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Reading result is invalid. Try to read again.

**Parameters**
- [in] channel: ADC Channel to read
- [in] chars: Pointer to initialized ADC characteristics structure
- [out] voltage: Pointer to store converted voltage

**Structures**

**struct esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t**

Structure storing characteristics of an ADC.

**Note** Call esp_adc_cal_characterize() to initialize the structure

**Public Members**

**adc_unit_t**

ADC number

**adc_atten_t**

ADC attenuation

**adc_bits_width_t**

ADC bit width

**uint32_t**

Gradient of ADC-Voltage curve

**uint32_t**

Offset of ADC-Voltage curve

**uint32_t**

Vref used by lookup table

**const uint32_t**

Pointer to low Vref curve of lookup table (NULL if unused)

**const uint32_t**

Pointer to high Vref curve of lookup table (NULL if unused)
uint8_t version
    ADC Calibration

Enumerations

enum esp_adc_cal_value_t
    Type of calibration value used in characterization.
    Values:
    ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_VREF = 0
        Characterization based on reference voltage stored in eFuse
    ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP = 1
        Characterization based on Two Point values stored in eFuse
    ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_DEFAULT_VREF = 2
        Characterization based on default reference voltage
    ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP_FIT = 3
        Characterization based on Two Point values and fitting curve coefficients stored in eFuse
    ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_MAX
    ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_NOT_SUPPORTED

GPIO Lookup Macros

Header File

• components/soc/esp32/include/soc/adc_channel.h

Macros

ADC1_GPIO36_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM
ADC1_GPIO37_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM
ADC1_GPIO38_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM
ADC1_GPIO39_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_3_GPIO_NUM
ADC1_GPIO32_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM
ADC1_GPIO33_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_5_GPIO_NUM
ADC1_GPIO34_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM
ADC1_GPIO35_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO4_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO0_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO2_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO15_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_3_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO13_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO12_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_5_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO14_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO27_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO25_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_8_GPIO_NUM
ADC2_GPIO26_CHANNEL
ADC2_CHANNEL_9_GPIO_NUM

2.3.2 Digital To Analog Converter (DAC)

Overview

ESP32 has two 8-bit DAC (digital to analog converter) channels, connected to GPIO25 (Channel 1) and GPIO26 (Channel 2).

The DAC driver allows these channels to be set to arbitrary voltages.

The DAC channels can also be driven with DMA-style written sample data by the digital controller, via the I2S driver when using the “built-in DAC mode”.

For other analog output options, see the Sigma-delta Modulation module and the LED Control module. Both these modules produce high frequency PWM output, which can be hardware low-pass filtered in order to generate a lower frequency analog output.

Application Example

Setting DAC channel 1 (GPIO25) voltage to approx 0.78 of VDD_A voltage (VDD_A * 200 / 255). For VDD_A 3.3V, this is 2.59V:

```c
#include <driver/dac.h>
...
dac_output_enable(DAC_CHANNEL_1);
dac_output_voltage(DAC_CHANNEL_1, 200);
```
Chapter 2. API

API Reference

Header File

- components/driver/esp32/include/driver/dac.h

Functions

*esp_err_t dac_i2s_enable (void)*
Enable DAC output data from I2S.

Return
- ESP_OK success

*esp_err_t dac_i2s_disable (void)*
Disable DAC output data from I2S.

Return
- ESP_OK success

Header File

- components/driver/include/driver/dac_common.h

Functions

*esp_err_t dac_pad_get_io_num (dac_channel_t channel, gpio_num_t *gpio_num)*
Get the GPIO number of a specific DAC channel.

Return
- ESP_OK if success

Parameters
- channel: Channel to get the gpio number
- gpio_num: output buffer to hold the gpio number

*esp_err_t dac_output_voltage (dac_channel_t channel, uint8_t dac_value)*
Set DAC output voltage. DAC output is 8-bit. Maximum (255) corresponds to VDD3P3_RTC.

Note Need to configure DAC pad before calling this function. DAC channel 1 is attached to GPIO25, DAC channel 2 is attached to GPIO26

Return
- ESP_OK success

Parameters
- channel: DAC channel
- dac_value: DAC output value

*esp_err_t dac_output_enable (dac_channel_t channel)*
DAC pad output enable.

Note DAC channel 1 is attached to GPIO25, DAC channel 2 is attached to GPIO26 I2S left channel will be mapped to DAC channel 2 I2S right channel will be mapped to DAC channel 1

Parameters
- channel: DAC channel

*esp_err_t dac_output_disable (dac_channel_t channel)*
DAC pad output disable.

Note DAC channel 1 is attached to GPIO25, DAC channel 2 is attached to GPIO26

Return
- ESP_OK success

Parameters
- channel: DAC channel

*esp_err_t dac_cw_generator_enable (void)*
Enable cosine wave generator output.
Chapter 2. API

Return
• ESP_OK success

\texttt{esp_err_t dac_cw_generator_disable (void)}
Disable cosine wave generator output.

Return
• ESP_OK success

\texttt{esp_err_t dac_cw_generator_config (dac_config_t *cw)}
Config the cosine wave generator function in DAC module.

Parameters
• \texttt{cw}: Configuration.

\textbf{GPIO Lookup Macros} Some useful macros can be used to specified the GPIO number of a DAC channel, or vice versa. e.g.
1. \texttt{DAC_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM} is the GPIO number of channel 1 (GPIO25);
2. \texttt{DAC_GPIO26_CHANNEL} is the channel number of GPIO 26 (channel 2).

\textbf{Header File}
• components/soc/esp32/include/soc/dac_channel.h

\textbf{Macros}
\texttt{DAC_GPIO25_CHANNEL}
\texttt{DAC_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM}
\texttt{DAC_GPIO26_CHANNEL}
\texttt{DAC_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM}

\textbf{Header File}
• components/hal/include/hal/dac_types.h

\textbf{Structures}
\texttt{struct dac_cw_config_t}
Config the cosine wave generator function in DAC module.

\textbf{Public Members}
\texttt{dac_channel_t en_ch}
Enable the cosine wave generator of DAC channel.

\texttt{dac_cw_scale_t scale}
Set the amplitude of the cosine wave generator output.

\texttt{dac_cw_phase_t phase}
Set the phase of the cosine wave generator output.

\texttt{uint32_t freq}
Set frequency of cosine wave generator output. Range: 130(130Hz) \~ 55000(100KHz).
int8_t offset
Set the voltage value of the DC component of the cosine wave generator output. Note: Unreasonable settings can cause waveform to be oversaturated. Range: -128 ~ 127.

Enumerations
enum dac_channel_t
Values:
DAC_CHANNEL_1 = 0
DAC channel 1 is GPIO25(ESP32) / GPIO17(ESP32S2)
DAC_CHANNEL_2 = 1
DAC channel 2 is GPIO26(ESP32) / GPIO18(ESP32S2)
DAC_CHANNEL_MAX
enum dac_cw_scale_t
The multiple of the amplitude of the cosine wave generator. The max amplitude is VDD3P3_RTC.
Values:
DAC_CW_SCALE_1 = 0x0
1/1. Default.
DAC_CW_SCALE_2 = 0x1
1/2.
DAC_CW_SCALE_4 = 0x2
1/4.
DAC_CWSCALE_8 = 0x3
1/8.
enum dac_cw_phase_t
Set the phase of the cosine wave generator output.
Values:
DAC_CW_PHASE_0 = 0x2
Phase shift +0°
DAC_CW_PHASE_180 = 0x3
Phase shift +180°

2.3.3 通用定时间器
简介
ESP32 芯片提供两组硬件定时器。每组包含 2 个通用硬件定时器。这些 64 位通用定时器均基于 16 位预分频器和 64 位可自动重新加载向上/向下计数器。

功能概述
下文介绍了配置和操作定时器的常规步骤：
• 定时器初始化 - 启动定时器前应设置的参数，以及每个设置提供的具体功能。
• 定时器控制 - 如何读取定时器的值。如何暂停/启动定时器以及如何改变定时器的操作方式。
• 警报 - 如何设置和使用警报。
• 处理中断事务 - 如何使用中断提供的回调函数。
定时器初始化

两个 ESP32 定时器组中，每组都有 2 个定时器，总共共有 4 个定时器供使用。可使用 `timer_group_t` 查看 ESP32 定时器组的类型，使用 `timer_idx_t` 查看每组中的具体定时器类型。

首先调用 `timer_init()` 函数，并将 `timer_config_t` 结构体传递给此函数，用于定义定时器的工作方式。实现定时器初始化。特别注意设置各个定时器参数：

- **分频器**：设置定时器中计数器计数的速度，`divider` 的设置将用作输入时钟源的除数。默认的时钟源是 APB_CLK（一般是 80 MHz）。更多有关 APB_CLK 时钟频率信息，请查看 ESP32 技术参考手册 > 复位和时钟 [PDF] 章节。
- **模式**：设置计数器的递增或递减。可通过从 `timer_count_dir_t` 中选取一个值，然后使用 `counter_dir` 来选择模式。
- **计数器使能**：如果计数器已使能，在调用 `timer_init()` 后计数器将立即开始递增/递减。您可通过从 `timer_start_t` 中选取一个值，然后使用 `counter_en` 改变此行为。
- **报警使能**：可使用 `alarm_en` 设置。
- **自动重载**：设置计数器是否应该在定时器警报上使用 `auto_reload` 自动重载首个计数值，还是继续递增或递减。

要获取定时器设置的当前值，请使用函数 `timer_get_config()`。

定时器控制

定时器使能后会开始计数。要使能定时器，可首先设置 `counter_en` 为 `true`，然后调用函数 `timer_init()`，或者直接调用函数 `timer_start()`。您可通过调用函数 `timer_set_counter_value()` 来指定定时器的首个计数值。要检查定时器的当前值，调用函数 `timer_get_counter_value()` 或 `timer_get_counter_time_sec()`。

可通过调用函数 `timer_pause()` 随时暂停定时器。若要再次启动它，可调用函数 `timer_start()`。

要重新配置定时器，可调用函数 `timer_init()`，该函数详细介绍见定时器初始化。

除此之外，还可通过使用专有函数更改个别设置来重新配置定时器：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>设置</th>
<th>专有函数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>分频器</td>
<td>timer_set_divider()</td>
<td>更改分频器，为避免发生不可预测情况，更改分频器时应暂停定时器。如果定时器正在运行，则使用 <code>timer_set_divider()</code> 将其暂停并更改设置，然后重新启动定时器。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>模式</td>
<td>timer_set_count_dir()</td>
<td>设置计数器为递增还是递减</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>自动重载</td>
<td>timer_set_auto_reload()</td>
<td>设置是否在定时器警报上重载首个计数值</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

警告

要设置警报，先调用函数 `timer_set_alarm_value()`，然后使用 `timer_set_alarm()` 使能警报。当调用函数 `timer_init()` 时，也可以在定时器初始化阶段使能警报。

警报已使能且定时器达到警报值后，根据配置，可能会出现以下两种行为：

- 如果先前已配置，此时将触发中断。有关如何配置中断，请参见处理中断事务。
- 如 `auto_reload` 已使能，定时器的计数器将重新加载，从先前配置好的值开始再次计数。应使用函数 `timer_set_counter_value()` 预先设置该值。

注解：

- 如果已设置警报值且定时器已超过该值，则将立即触发警报。
- 一旦触发后，警报将自动关闭，需要重新使能才能再次触发。

要检查某特定的警报值，调用函数 `timer_get_alarm_value()`。

---

**Chapter 2. API 参考**

| ESP32 Systems | 665 | Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36 | Submit Document Feedback |

- timer_init()
- timer_get_counter_value()
- timer_set_alarm_value()
- timer_set_counter_value()
- timer_start()
- timer_get_config()
- timer_set_divider()
**处理中断事务** 通过调用 `timer_isr_callback_add()` 函数并向该函数传递组 ID、定时器 ID、回调处理程序以及用户数据，可以给某个定时器注册一个中断回调函数。回调处理程序会在 ISR 上下文中调用，因此用户不能在回调函数中放置任何会阻塞 CPU 的 API。

相较于从头编写中断处理程序，使用中断回调函数的好处是，用户无需检测和处理中断的状态位，这些操作会由驱动中默认的中断处理程序替我们完成。

有关如何使用中断回调函数，请参考如下应用示例。

**应用示例**

64 位通用硬件定时器示例：`peripherals/timer_group`。

**API 参考**

**Header File**

- components/driver/include/driver/timer.h

**Functions**

* `esp_err_t timer_get_counter_value (timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, uint64_t *timer_val)`

Read the counter value of hardware timer.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- group_num: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- timer_val: Pointer to accept timer counter value.

* `esp_err_t timer_get_counter_time_sec (timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, double *time)`

Read the counter value of hardware timer, in unit of a given scale.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- group_num: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- time: Pointer, type of double*, to accept timer counter value, in seconds.

* `esp_err_t timer_set_counter_value (timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, uint64_t load_val)`

Set counter value to hardware timer.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- group_num: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- load_val: Counter value to write to the hardware timer.

* `esp_err_t timer_start (timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)`

Start the counter of hardware timer.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
Parameters
- group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]

`esp_err_t timer_pause(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)`

Pause the counter of hardware timer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]

`esp_err_t timer_set_counter_mode(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, timer_count_dir_t counter_dir)`

Set counting mode for hardware timer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- counter_dir: Counting direction of timer, count-up or count-down

`esp_err_t timer_set_auto_reload(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, timer_autoreload_t reload)`

Enable or disable counter reload function when alarm event occurs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- reload: Counter reload mode

`esp_err_t timer_set_divider(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, uint32_t divider)`

Set hardware divider of the source clock to the timer group. By default, the source clock is APB clock running at 80 MHz. For more information, please check Chapter Reset and Clock in Chip Technical Reference Manual.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- divider: Timer clock divider value. The divider’s range is from from 2 to 65536.

`esp_err_t timer_set_alarm_value(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, uint64_t alarm_value)`

Set timer alarm value.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- group_num: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- timer_num: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- alarm_value: A 64-bit value to set the alarm value.

`esp_err_t timer_get_alarm_value(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, uint64_t *alarm_value)`

Get timer alarm value.
## Chapter 2. API

### Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

### Parameters
- **group_num**: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **timer_num**: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- **alarm_value**: Pointer of A 64-bit value to accept the alarm value.

```c
esp_err_t timer_set_alarm(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, timer_alarm_t alarm_en)
```

Enable or disable generation of timer alarm events.

### Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

### Parameters
- **group_num**: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **timer_num**: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- **alarm_en**: To enable or disable timer alarm function.

```c
esp_err_t timer_isr_callback_add(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, timer_isr_t isr_handler, void* arg, int intr_alloc_flags)
```

Add ISR handle callback for the corresponding timer.

The callback should return a bool value to determine whether need to do YIELD at the end of the ISR.

**Note** This ISR handler will be called from an ISR. This ISR handler do not need to handle interrupt status, and should be kept short. If you want to realize some specific applications or write the whole ISR, you can call `timer_isr_register(...)` to register ISR.

### Parameters
- **group_num**: Timer group number
- **timer_num**: Timer index of timer group
- **isr_handler**: Interrupt handler function, it is a callback function.
- **arg**: Parameter for handler function
- **intr_alloc_flags**: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

If the `intr_alloc_flags` value ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is set, the handler function must be declared with IRAM_ATTR attribute and can only call functions in IRAM or ROM. It cannot call other timer APIs.

### Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

```c
esp_err_t timer_isr_callback_remove(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)
```

Remove ISR handle callback for the corresponding timer.

### Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

```c
esp_err_t timer_isr_register(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, void (*fn)(void*) void * arg, int intr_alloc_flags, timer_isr_handle_t *handle)
```

Register Timer interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

If the `intr_alloc_flags` value ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is set, the handler function must be declared with IRAM_ATTR attribute and can only call functions in IRAM or ROM. It cannot call other timer APIs. Use direct register access to configure timers from inside the ISR in this case.

**Note** If use this function to register ISR, you need to write the whole ISR. In the interrupt handler, you need to call `timer_spinlock_take(..)` before your handling, and call `timer_spinlock_give(…)` after your handling.
### Parameters
- **group_num**: Timer group number
- **timer_num**: Timer index of timer group
- **fn**: Interrupt handler function.
- **arg**: Parameter for handler function
- **intr_alloc_flags**: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- **handle**: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

### Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

```c
esp_err_t timer_init (timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, const timer_config_t *config)
```
Initializes and configures the timer.

### Parameters
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **timer_num**: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- **config**: Pointer to timer initialization parameters.

```c
esp_err_t timer_deinit (timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)
```
Deinitializes the timer.

### Parameters
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **timer_num**: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]

```c
esp_err_t timer_get_config (timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, timer_config_t *config)
```
Get timer configure value.

### Parameters
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **timer_num**: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- **config**: Pointer of struct to accept timer parameters.

```c
esp_err_t timer_group_intr_enable (timer_group_t group_num, timer_intr_t intr_mask)
```
Enable timer group interrupt, by enable mask.

### Parameters
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **intr_mask**: Timer interrupt enable mask.
  - TIMER_INTR_T0: t0 interrupt
  - TIMER_INTR_T1: t1 interrupt
  - TIMER_INTR_WDT: watchdog interrupt

```c
esp_err_t timer_group_intr_disable (timer_group_t group_num, timer_intr_t intr_mask)
```
Disable timer group interrupt, by disable mask.

### Return
- ESP_OK Success
Chapter 2. API

• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
• intr_mask: Timer interrupt disable mask.
  – TIMER_INTR_T0: t0 interrupt
  – TIMER_INTR_T1: t1 interrupt
  – TIMER_INTR_WDT: watchdog interrupt

`esp_err_t timer_enable_intr(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)`
Enable timer interrupt.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
• timer_num: Timer index.

`esp_err_t timer_disable_intr(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)`
Disable timer interrupt.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
• timer_num: Timer index.

`void timer_group_intr_clr_in_isr(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)`
Clear timer interrupt status, just used in ISR.

Parameters
• group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
• timer_num: Timer index.

`void timer_group_clr_intr_status_in_isr(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)`
Clear timer interrupt status, just used in ISR.

Parameters
• group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
• timer_num: Timer index.

`void timer_group_enable_alarm_in_isr(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)`
Enable alarm interrupt, just used in ISR.

Parameters
• group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
• timer_num: Timer index.

`uint64_t timer_group_get_counter_value_in_isr(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num)`
Get the current counter value, just used in ISR.

Return
• Counter value

Parameters
• group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
• timer_num: Timer index.

`void timer_group_set_alarm_value_in_isr(timer_group_t group_num, timer_idx_t timer_num, uint64_t alarm_val)`
Set the alarm threshold for the timer, just used in ISR.

Parameters
• group_num: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
**void timer_group_set_counter_enable_in_isr**

Enable/disable a counter, just used in ISR.

**Parameters**
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **timer_num**: Timer index.
- **counter_en**: Enable/disable.

**timer_intr_t**

**timer_group_intr_get_in_isr**

Get the masked interrupt status, just used in ISR.

**Return**
- Interrupt status

**Parameters**
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1

**uint32_t**

**timer_group_get_intr_status_in_isr**

Get interrupt status, just used in ISR.

**Return**
- Interrupt status

**Parameters**
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1

**void timer_group_clr_intr_sta_in_isr**

Clear the masked interrupt status, just used in ISR.

**Parameters**
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **intr_mask**: Masked interrupt.

**bool timer_group_get_auto_reload_in_isr**

Get auto reload enable status, just used in ISR.

**Return**
- True Auto reload enabled
- False Auto reload disabled

**Parameters**
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- **timer_num**: Timer index

**esp_err_t**

**timer_spinlock_take**

Take timer spinlock to enter critical protect.

**Note** Deprecated, the recommended way is to use ISR callbacks instead, see timer_group_example_main

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1

**esp_err_t**

**timer_spinlock_give**

Give timer spinlock to exit critical protect.

**Note** Deprecated, the recommended way is to use ISR callbacks instead, see timer_group_example_main

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- **group_num**: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
Chapter 2. API 参考

**Structures**

```c
struct timer_config_t {
    // Data structure with timer’s configuration settings.
}
```

**Public Members**

- `timer_alarm_t alarm_en`
  - Timer alarm enable
- `timer_start_t counter_en`
  - Counter enable
- `timer_intr_mode_t intr_type`
  - Interrupt mode
- `timer_count_dir_t counter_dir`
  - Counter direction
- `timer_autoreload_t auto_reload`
  - Timer auto-reload
- `timer_src_clk_t clk_src`
  - Selects source clock.
- `uint32_t divider`
  - Counter clock divider

**Macros**

```c
#define TIMER_BASE_CLK
```

- Frequency of the clock on the input of the timer groups.

  **Note** This macro is not correct for Timer Groups with multiple clock sources (e.g. APB, XTAL) So please don’t use it in your application, we keep it here only for backward compatible

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef bool (*timer_isr_t)(void *)
```

- Interrupt handle callback function. User need to retrun a bool value in callback.

  **Return**
  - True Do task yield at the end of ISR
  - False Not do task yield at the end of ISR

  **Note** If you called FreeRTOS functions in callback, you need to return true or false based on the retrun value of argument pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken. For example, xQueueSendFromISR is called in callback, if the return value pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken of any FreeRTOS calls is pdTRUE, return true; otherwise return false.

**Enumerations**

```c
enum timer_group_t {
    TIMER_GROUP_0 = 0,
    TIMER_GROUP_1 = 1
}
```

- Selects a Timer-Group out of 2 available groups.

  **Values:**
  - `TIMER_GROUP_0 = 0`
    - Hw timer group 0
  - `TIMER_GROUP_1 = 1`
    - Hw timer group 1
Chapter 2. API

TIMER_GROUP_MAX
Maximum number of Hw timer groups

enum timer_idx_t
Select a hardware timer from timer groups.
Values:

TIMER_0 = 0
Select timer0 of GROUPx

TIMER_1 = 1
Select timer1 of GROUPx

TIMER_MAX

enum timer_intr_t
Interrupt types of the timer.
Values:

TIMER_INTR_T0 = 1 << 0
interrupt of timer 0

TIMER_INTR_T1 = 1 << 1
interrupt of timer 1

TIMER_INTR_WDT = 1 << 2
interrupt of watchdog

TIMER_INTR_NONE = 0

enum timer_count_dir_t
Decides the direction of counter.
Values:

TIMER_COUNT_DOWN = GPTIMER_COUNT_DOWN
Descending Count from cnt.high\|cnt.low

TIMER_COUNT_UP = GPTIMER_COUNT_UP
Ascending Count from Zero

TIMER_COUNT_MAX
Maximum number of timer count directions

enum timer_start_t
Decides whether timer is on or paused.
Values:

TIMER_PAUSE
Pause timer counter

TIMER_START
Start timer counter

enum timer_alarm_t
Decides whether to enable alarm mode.
Values:

TIMER_ALARM_DIS = 0
Disable timer alarm

TIMER_ALARM_EN = 1
Enable timer alarm

TIMER_ALARM_MAX
enum timer_intr_mode_t
Select interrupt type if running in alarm mode.

Values:

TIMER_INTR_LEVEL = 0
Interrupt mode: level mode

TIMER_INTR_MAX

enum timer_autoreload_t
Select if Alarm needs to be loaded by software or automatically reload by hardware.

Values:

TIMER_AUTORELOAD_DIS = 0
Disable auto-reload: hardware will not load counter value after an alarm event

TIMER_AUTORELOAD_EN = 1
Enable auto-reload: hardware will load counter value after an alarm event

TIMER_AUTORELOAD_MAX

enum timer_src_clk_t
Select timer source clock.

Values:

TIMER_SRC_CLK_APB = GPTIMER_CLK_SRC_APB
Select APB as the source clock

Header File
• components/hal/include/hal/timer_types.h

Enumerations
enum gptimer_clock_source_t
GPTimer clock source.

Note The clock source listed here is not supported on all targets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPTimer clock source</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Power Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GPTIMER_CLK_SRC_APB</td>
<td>High resolution</td>
<td>ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPTIMER_CLK_SRC_XTAL</td>
<td>Medium resolution, high accuracy</td>
<td>No PM lock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values:

GPTIMER_CLK_SRC_APB
Select APB as the source clock

GPTIMER_CLK_SRC_XTAL
Select XTAL as the source clock

enum gptimer_count_direction_t
GPTimer count direction.

Values:

GPTIMER_COUNT_DOWN
Decrease count value

GPTIMER_COUNT_UP
Increase count value
enum gptimer_alarm_action_t
GPTimer actions on alarm event.

Values:

GPTIMER_ALARM_ACTION_CONTINUE
Counter will pass through the alarm point and continue counting

GPTIMER_ALARM_ACTION_STOP
Counter will stop on alarm event

GPTIMER_ALARM_ACTION_RELOAD
Counter will do reload on alarm event

2.3.4 GPIO & RTC GPIO

Overview

The ESP32 chip features 34 physical GPIO pads. Some GPIO pads cannot be used or do not have the corresponding pin on the chip package. For more details, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > IO MUX and GPIO Matrix (GPIO, IO_MUX) [PDF].

Each pad can be used as a general purpose I/O or can be connected to an internal peripheral signal. The table below provides more information on pin usage, and please note the comments in the table for GPIOs with restrictions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPIO</th>
<th>Analog Function</th>
<th>RTC GPIO</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GPIO0</td>
<td>ADC2_CH1</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO11</td>
<td>Strapping pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO1</td>
<td></td>
<td>TXD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO2</td>
<td>ADC2_CH2</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO12</td>
<td>Strapping pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO3</td>
<td></td>
<td>RXD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO4</td>
<td>ADC2_CH0</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Strapping pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPI0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPI0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPI0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPI0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPI0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPI0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO12</td>
<td>ADC2_CH5</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO15</td>
<td>Strapping pin; JTAG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO13</td>
<td>ADC2_CH4</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO14</td>
<td>JTAG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO14</td>
<td>ADC2_CH6</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO16</td>
<td>JTAG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO15</td>
<td>ADC2_CH3</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO13</td>
<td>Strapping pin; JTAG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPI0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPI0/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This pin is only available on ESP32-PICO-V3 chip package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO25</td>
<td>ADC2_CH8</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO26</td>
<td>ADC2_CH9</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO27</td>
<td>ADC2_CH7</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO32</td>
<td>ADC1_CH4</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO33</td>
<td>ADC1_CH5</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO34</td>
<td>ADC1_CH6</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO4</td>
<td>GPI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GPIO Analog Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPIO</th>
<th>Analog Function</th>
<th>RTC_GPIO</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GPIO35</td>
<td>ADC1_CH7</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO5</td>
<td>GPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO36</td>
<td>ADC1_CH0</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO0</td>
<td>GPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO37</td>
<td>ADC1_CH1</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO1</td>
<td>GPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO38</td>
<td>ADC1_CH2</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO2</td>
<td>GPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO39</td>
<td>ADC1_CH3</td>
<td>RTC_GPIO3</td>
<td>GPI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

- Strapping pin: GPIO0, GPIO2, GPIO5, GPIO12 (MTDI), and GPIO15 (MTDO) are strapping pins. For more information, please refer to ESP32 datasheet.
- SPI0/1: GPIO6-11 and GPIO16-17 are usually connected to the SPI flash and PSRAM integrated on the module and therefore should not be used for other purposes.
- JTAG: GPIO12-15 are usually used for inline debug.
- GPI: GPIO34-39 can only be set as input mode and do not have software-enabled pullup or pulldown functions.
- TXD & RXD are usually used for flashing and debugging.
- ADC2: ADC2 pins cannot be used when Wi-Fi is used. So, if you’re using Wi-Fi and you’re having trouble getting the value from an ADC2 GPIO, you may consider using an ADC1 GPIO instead, that should solve your problem. For more details, please refer to ADC limitations.

There is also separate “RTC GPIO” support, which functions when GPIOs are routed to the “RTC” low-power and analog subsystem. These pin functions can be used when:

- In deep sleep
- The Ultra Low Power co-processor is running
- Analog functions such as ADC/DAC/etc are in use.

### Application Example

GPIO output and input interrupt example: peripherals/gpio/generic_gpio.

### API Reference - Normal GPIO

#### Header File

- components/driver/include/driver/gpio.h

#### Functions

```c
esp_err_t gpio_config (const gpio_config_t *pGPIOConfig)
```

GPIO common configuration.

Configure GPIO’s Mode, pull-up, pull-down, IntrType

**Return**

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- pGPIOConfig: Pointer to GPIO configure struct

```c
esp_err_t gpio_reset_pin (gpio_num_t gpio_num)
```

Reset an gpio to default state (select gpio function, enable pullup and disable input and output).

**Note** This function also configures the IOMUX for this pin to the GPIO function, and disconnects any other peripheral output configured via GPIO Matrix.

**Return** Always return ESP_OK.

**Parameters**

- gpio_num: GPIO number.
**esp_err_t gpio_set_intr_type(gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_int_type_t intr_type)**

Set interrupt trigger type.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- **gpio_num**: GPIO number. If you want to set the trigger type of e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- **intr_type**: Interrupt type, select from gpio_int_type_t

**esp_err_t gpio_intr_enable(gpio_num_t gpio_num)**

Enable GPIO module interrupt signal.

**Note** Please do not use the interrupt of GPIO36 and GPIO39 when using ADC or Wi-Fi with sleep mode enabled. Please refer to the comments of adc1_get_raw. Please refer to section 3.11 of ‘ECO_and_Workarounds_for_Bugs_in_ESP32’ for the description of this issue. As a workaround, call adc_power_acquire() in the app. This will result in higher power consumption (by ~1mA), but will remove the glitches on GPIO36 and GPIO39.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- **gpio_num**: GPIO number. If you want to enable an interrupt on e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);

**esp_err_t gpio_intr_disable(gpio_num_t gpio_num)**

Disable GPIO module interrupt signal.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- **gpio_num**: GPIO number. If you want to disable the interrupt of e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);

**esp_err_t gpio_set_level(gpio_num_t gpio_num, uint32_t level)**

Set output level.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO number error

**Parameters**
- **gpio_num**: GPIO number. If you want to set the output level of e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- **level**: Output level. 0: low; 1: high

**int gpio_get_level(gpio_num_t gpio_num)**

Get input level.

**Warning** If the pad is not configured for input (or input and output) the returned value is always 0.

**Return**
- 0 the GPIO input level is 0
- 1 the GPIO input level is 1

**Parameters**
- **gpio_num**: GPIO number. If you want to get the logic level of e.g. pin GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);

**esp_err_t gpio_set_direction(gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_mode_t mode)**

Set direction.

Configure GPIO direction, such as output_only, input_only, output_and_input

**Return**
**Parameters**

- `gpio_num`: Configure GPIO pins number, it should be GPIO number. If you want to set direction of e.g. GPIO16, `gpio_num` should be `GPIO_NUM_16`(16);
- `mode`: GPIO direction

`esp_err_t gpio_set_pull_mode(gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_pull_mode_t pull)`

Configure GPIO pull-up/pull-down resistors.

Only pins that support both input & output have integrated pull-up and pull-down resistors. Input-only GPIOs 34-39 do not.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Parameter error

**Parameters**

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to set pull up or down mode for e.g. GPIO16, `gpio_num` should be `GPIO_NUM_16`(16);
- `pull`: GPIO pull up/down mode.

`esp_err_t gpio_wakeup_enable(gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_int_type_t intr_type)`

Enable GPIO wake-up function.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Parameter error

**Parameters**

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number.
- `intr_type`: GPIO wake-up type. Only `GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL` or `GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL` can be used.

`esp_err_t gpio_wakeup_disable(gpio_num_t gpio_num)`

Disable GPIO wake-up function.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Parameter error

**Parameters**

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

`esp_err_t gpio_isr_register(void (*fn)(void *)) void * , void *arg, int intr_alloc_flags, gpio_isr_handle_t *handle)`

Register GPIO interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

This ISR function is called whenever any GPIO interrupt occurs. See the alternative `gpio_install_isr_service()` and `gpio_isr_handler_add()` API in order to have the driver support per-GPIO ISRs.

To disable or remove the ISR, pass the returned handle to the interrupt allocation functions.

**Parameters**

- `fn`: Interrupt handler function.
- `arg`: Parameter for handler function
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) `ESP_INTR_FLAG_*` values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `handle`: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : GPIO error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : No free interrupt found with the specified flags

`esp_err_t gpio_pullup_en(gpio_num_t gpio_num)`

Enable pull-up on GPIO.
Chapter 2. API 参考

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number

esp_err_t gpio_pullup_dis(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
Disable pull-up on GPIO.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number

esp_err_t gpio_pulldown_en(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
Enable pull-down on GPIO.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number

esp_err_t gpio_pulldown_dis(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
Disable pull-down on GPIO.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number

esp_err_t gpio_install_isr_service(int intr_alloc_flags)
Install the driver’s GPIO ISR handler service, which allows per-pin GPIO interrupt handlers.

This function is incompatible with gpio_isr_register() - if that function is used, a single global ISR is registered for all GPIO interrupts. If this function is used, the ISR service provides a global GPIO ISR and individual pin handlers are registered via the gpio_isr_handler_add() function.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No memory to install this service
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE ISR service already installed.
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND No free interrupt found with the specified flags
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO error

Parameters
• intr_alloc_flags: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

void gpio_uninstall_isr_service(void)
Uninstall the driver’s GPIO ISR service, freeing related resources.

esp_err_t gpio_isr_handler_add(gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_isr_t isr_handler, void *args)
Add ISR handler for the corresponding GPIO pin.

Call this function after using gpio_install_isr_service() to install the driver’s GPIO ISR handler service.

The pin ISR handlers no longer need to be declared with IRAM_ATTR, unless you pass the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag when allocating the ISR in gpio_install_isr_service().

This ISR handler will be called from an ISR. So there is a stack size limit (configurable as “ISR stack size” in menuconfig). This limit is smaller compared to a global GPIO interrupt handler due to the additional level of indirection.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Wrong state, the ISR service has not been initialized.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number
• isr_handler: ISR handler function for the corresponding GPIO number.
• args: parameter for ISR handler.

esp_err_t gpio_isr_handler_remove (gpio_num_t gpio_num)
Remove ISR handler for the corresponding GPIO pin.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Wrong state, the ISR service has not been initialized.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number

esp_err_t gpio_set_drive_capability (gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_drive_cap_t strength)
Set GPIO pad drive capability.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number, only support output GPIOs
• strength: Drive capability of the pad

esp_err_t gpio_get_drive_capability (gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_drive_cap_t *strength)
Get GPIO pad drive capability.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number, only support output GPIOs
• strength: Pointer to accept drive capability of the pad

esp_err_t gpio_hold_en (gpio_num_t gpio_num)
Enable gpio pad hold function.

The gpio pad hold function works in both input and output modes, but must be output-capable gpios. If pad hold enabled: in output mode: the output level of the pad will be force locked and can not be changed. in input mode: the input value read will not change, regardless the changes of input signal.

The state of digital gpio cannot be held during Deep-sleep, and it will resume the hold function when the chip wakes up from Deep-sleep. If the digital gpio also needs to be held during Deep-sleep, gpio_deep_sleep_hold_en should also be called.

Power down or call gpio_hold_dis will disable this function.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Not support pad hold function

Parameters
• gpio_num: GPIO number, only support output-capable GPIOs

esp_err_t gpio_hold_dis (gpio_num_t gpio_num)
Disable gpio pad hold function.

When the chip is woken up from Deep-sleep, the gpio will be set to the default mode, so, the gpio will output the default level if this function is called. If you don’t want the level changes, the gpio should be configured to a known state before this function is called. e.g. If you hold gpio18 high during Deep-sleep, after the chip is woken up and gpio_hold_dis is called, gpio18 will output low level (because gpio18 is input mode by
default). If you don’t want this behavior, you should configure gpio18 as output mode and set it to high level before calling gpio_hold_dis.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Not support pad hold function

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number, only support output-capable GPIOs

void gpio_deep_sleep_hold_en (void)
Enable all digital gpio pad hold function during Deep-sleep.

When the chip is in Deep-sleep mode, all digital gpio will hold the state before sleep, and when the chip is woken up, the status of digital gpio will not be held. Note that the pad hold feature only works when the chip is in Deep-sleep mode, when not in sleep mode, the digital gpio state can be changed even you have called this function.

Power down or call gpio_hold_dis will disable this function, otherwise, the digital gpio hold feature works as long as the chip enter Deep-sleep.

void gpio_deep_sleep_hold_dis (void)
Disable all digital gpio pad hold function during Deep-sleep.

void gpio_iomux_in (uint32_t gpio_num, uint32_t signal_idx)
Set pad input to a peripheral signal through the IOMUX.

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number of the pad.
- signal_idx: Peripheral signal id to input. One of the *_IN_IDX signals in soc/gpio_sig_map.h.

void gpio_iomux_out (uint8_t gpio_num, int func, bool oen_inv)
Set peripheral output to an GPIO pad through the IOMUX.

Parameters
- gpio_num: gpio_num GPIO number of the pad.
- func: The function number of the peripheral pin to output pin. One of the FUNC_X_* of specified pin (X) in soc/io_mux_reg.h.
- oen_inv: True if the output enable needs to be inverted, otherwise False.

esp_err_t gpio_sleep_sel_en (gpio_num_t gpio_num)
Enable SLP_SEL to change GPIO status automatically in lightsleep.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number of the pad.

esp_err_t gpio_sleep_sel_dis (gpio_num_t gpio_num)
Disable SLP_SEL to change GPIO status automatically in lightsleep.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number of the pad.

esp_err_t gpio_sleep_set_direction (gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_mode_t mode)
GPIO set direction at sleep.

Configure GPIO direction, such as output_only,input_only,output_and_input

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO error

Parameters
**Chapter 2. API**

- `gpio_num`: Configure GPIO pins number, it should be GPIO number. If you want to set direction of e.g. GPIO16, `gpio_num` should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- `mode`: GPIO direction

```c
esp_err_t gpio_sleep_set_pull_mode (gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_pull_mode_t pull)
```
Configure GPIO pull-up/pull-down resistors at sleep.

Only pins that support both input & output have integrated pull-up and pull-down resistors. Input-only GPIOs 34-39 do not.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to set pull up or down mode for e.g. GPIO16, `gpio_num` should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- `pull`: GPIO pull up/down mode.

**Macros**

- `GPIO_PIN_COUNT`
- `GPIO_IS_VALID_GPIO (gpio_num)`
  Check whether it is a valid GPIO number.
- `GPIO_IS_VALID_OUTPUT_GPIO (gpio_num)`
  Check whether it can be a valid GPIO number of output mode.

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef intr_handle_t gpio_isr_handle_t
```

**Header File**

- components/hal/include/hal/gpio_types.h

**Structures**

```c
struct gpio_config_t
Configuration parameters of GPIO pad for gpio_config function.
```

**Public Members**

- `uint64_t pin_bit_mask`
  GPIO pin: set with bit mask, each bit maps to a GPIO
- `gpio_mode_t mode`
  GPIO mode: set input/output mode
- `gpio_pullup_t pull_up_en`
  GPIO pull-up
- `gpio_pulldown_t pull_down_en`
  GPIO pull-down
- `gpio_int_type_t intr_type`
  GPIO interrupt type

**Macros**

- `GPIO_SEL_0`
  Pin 0 selected
GPIO_SEL_1
Pin 1 selected

GPIO_SEL_2
Pin 2 selected

GPIO_SEL_3
Pin 3 selected

GPIO_SEL_4
Pin 4 selected

GPIO_SEL_5
Pin 5 selected

GPIO_SEL_6
Pin 6 selected

GPIO_SEL_7
Pin 7 selected

GPIO_SEL_8
Pin 8 selected

GPIO_SEL_9
Pin 9 selected

GPIO_SEL_10
Pin 10 selected

GPIO_SEL_11
Pin 11 selected

GPIO_SEL_12
Pin 12 selected

GPIO_SEL_13
Pin 13 selected

GPIO_SEL_14
Pin 14 selected

GPIO_SEL_15
Pin 15 selected

GPIO_SEL_16
Pin 16 selected

GPIO_SEL_17
Pin 17 selected

GPIO_SEL_18
Pin 18 selected

GPIO_SEL_19
Pin 19 selected

GPIO_SEL_20
Pin 20 selected

GPIO_SEL_21
Pin 21 selected

GPIO_SEL_22
Pin 22 selected

GPIO_SEL_23
Pin 23 selected
Chapter 2. API

GPIO_SEL_25
Pin 25 selected

GPIO_SEL_26
Pin 26 selected

GPIO_SEL_27
Pin 27 selected

GPIO_SEL_28
Pin 28 selected

GPIO_SEL_29
Pin 29 selected

GPIO_SEL_30
Pin 30 selected

GPIO_SEL_31
Pin 31 selected

GPIO_SEL_32
Pin 32 selected

GPIO_SEL_33
Pin 33 selected

GPIO_SEL_34
Pin 34 selected

GPIO_SEL_35
Pin 35 selected

GPIO_SEL_36
Pin 36 selected

GPIO_SEL_37
Pin 37 selected

GPIO_SEL_38
Pin 38 selected

GPIO_SEL_39
Pin 39 selected

GPIO_PIN_REG_0
GPIO_PIN_REG_1
GPIO_PIN_REG_2
GPIO_PIN_REG_3
GPIO_PIN_REG_4
GPIO_PIN_REG_5
GPIO_PIN_REG_6
GPIO_PIN_REG_7
GPIO_PIN_REG_8
GPIO_PIN_REG_9
GPIO_PIN_REG_10
GPIO_PIN_REG_11
GPIO_PIN_REG_12
GPIO_PIN_REG_13
Chapter 2. API 参考

GPIO_PIN_REG_14
GPIO_PIN_REG_15
GPIO_PIN_REG_16
GPIO_PIN_REG_17
GPIO_PIN_REG_18
GPIO_PIN_REG_19
GPIO_PIN_REG_20
GPIO_PIN_REG_21
GPIO_PIN_REG_22
GPIO_PIN_REG_23
GPIO_PIN_REG_24
GPIO_PIN_REG_25
GPIO_PIN_REG_26
GPIO_PIN_REG_27
GPIO_PIN_REG_28
GPIO_PIN_REG_29
GPIO_PIN_REG_30
GPIO_PIN_REG_31
GPIO_PIN_REG_32
GPIO_PIN_REG_33
GPIO_PIN_REG_34
GPIO_PIN_REG_35
GPIO_PIN_REG_36
GPIO_PIN_REG_37
GPIO_PIN_REG_38
GPIO_PIN_REG_39
GPIO_PIN_REG_40
GPIO_PIN_REG_41
GPIO_PIN_REG_42
GPIO_PIN_REG_43
GPIO_PIN_REG_44
GPIO_PIN_REG_45
GPIO_PIN_REG_46
GPIO_PIN_REG_47
GPIO_PIN_REG_48

Type Definitions

typedef void (*gpio_isr_t)(void *)
Enumerations

```c
enum gpio_port_t
{
    GPIO_PORT_0 = 0,
    GPIO_PORT_MAX
}
```

```c
enum gpio_num_t
{
    GPIO_NUM_NC = -1,
    Use to signal not connected to S/W
    GPIO_NUM_0 = 0,
    GPIO0, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_1 = 1,
    GPIO1, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_2 = 2,
    GPIO2, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_3 = 3,
    GPIO3, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_4 = 4,
    GPIO4, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_5 = 5,
    GPIO5, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_6 = 6,
    GPIO6, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_7 = 7,
    GPIO7, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_8 = 8,
    GPIO8, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_9 = 9,
    GPIO9, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_10 = 10,
    GPIO10, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_11 = 11,
    GPIO11, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_12 = 12,
    GPIO12, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_13 = 13,
    GPIO13, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_14 = 14,
    GPIO14, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_15 = 15,
    GPIO15, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_16 = 16,
    GPIO16, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_17 = 17,
    GPIO17, input and output
    GPIO_NUM_18 = 18,
    GPIO18, input and output
```
Chapter 2. API

```c
GPIO_NUM_19 = 19
GPIO19, input and output

GPIO_NUM_20 = 20
GPIO20, input and output

GPIO_NUM_21 = 21
GPIO21, input and output

GPIO_NUM_22 = 22
GPIO22, input and output

GPIO_NUM_23 = 23
GPIO23, input and output

GPIO_NUM_25 = 25
GPIO25, input and output

GPIO_NUM_26 = 26
GPIO26, input and output

GPIO_NUM_27 = 27
GPIO27, input and output

GPIO_NUM_28 = 28
GPIO28, input and output

GPIO_NUM_29 = 29
GPIO29, input and output

GPIO_NUM_30 = 30
GPIO30, input and output

GPIO_NUM_31 = 31
GPIO31, input and output

GPIO_NUM_32 = 32
GPIO32, input and output

GPIO_NUM_33 = 33
GPIO33, input and output

GPIO_NUM_34 = 34
GPIO34, input mode only

GPIO_NUM_35 = 35
GPIO35, input mode only

GPIO_NUM_36 = 36
GPIO36, input mode only

GPIO_NUM_37 = 37
GPIO37, input mode only

GPIO_NUM_38 = 38
GPIO38, input mode only

GPIO_NUM_39 = 39
GPIO39, input mode only

GPIO_NUM_MAX

enum gpio_int_type_t

Values:

    GPIO_INTR_DISABLE = 0
        Disable GPIO interrupt

    GPIO_INTR_POSEDGE = 1
        GPIO interrupt type: rising edge
```
Chapter 2. API

GPIO_INTR_NEGEDGE = 2
GPIO interrupt type: falling edge

GPIO_INTR_ANYEDGE = 3
GPIO interrupt type: both rising and falling edge

GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL = 4
GPIO interrupt type: input low level trigger

GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL = 5
GPIO interrupt type: input high level trigger

GPIO_INTR_MAX

enum gpio_mode_t
Values:

GPIO_MODE_DISABLE = GPIO_MODE_DEF_DISABLE
GPIO mode: disable input and output

GPIO_MODE_INPUT = GPIO_MODE_DEF_INPUT
GPIO mode: input only

GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT = GPIO_MODE_DEF_OUTPUT
GPIO mode: output only mode

GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_OD = ((GPIO_MODE_DEF_OUTPUT) | (GPIO_MODE_DEF_OD))
GPIO mode: output only with open-drain mode

GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT_OD = ((GPIO_MODE_DEF_INPUT) | (GPIO_MODE_DEF_OUTPUT) | (GPIO_MODE_DEF_OD))
GPIO mode: input and output with open-drain mode

GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT = ((GPIO_MODE_DEF_INPUT) | (GPIO_MODE_DEF_OUTPUT))
GPIO mode: input and output mode

enum gpio_pullup_t
Values:

GPIO_PULLUP_DISABLE = 0x0
Disable GPIO pull-up resistor

GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE = 0x1
Enable GPIO pull-up resistor

enum gpio_pulldown_t
Values:

GPIO_PULLDOWN_DISABLE = 0x0
Disable GPIO pull-down resistor

GPIO_PULLDOWN_ENABLE = 0x1
Enable GPIO pull-down resistor

enum gpio_pull_mode_t
Values:

GPIO_PULLUP_ONLY
Pad pull up

GPIO_PULLDOWN_ONLY
Pad pull down

GPIO_PULLUP_PULLDOWN
Pad pull up + pull down

GPIO_FLOATING
Pad floating

enum gpio_drive_cap_t
Values:
GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_0 = 0
    Pad drive capability: weak

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_1 = 1
    Pad drive capability: stronger

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_2 = 2
    Pad drive capability: medium

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_DEFAULT = 2
    Pad drive capability: medium

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_3 = 3
    Pad drive capability: strongest

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_MAX

API Reference - RTC GPIO

Header File

• components/driver/include/driver/rtc_io.h

Functions

static bool rtc_gpio_is_valid_gpio(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
    Determine if the specified GPIO is a valid RTC GPIO.
    Return true if GPIO is valid for RTC GPIO use. false otherwise.
    Parameters
    • gpio_num: GPIO number

static int rtc_io_number_get(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
    Get RTC IO index number by gpio number.
    Return >=0: Index of rtcio. -1: The gpio is not rtcio.
    Parameters
    • gpio_num: GPIO number

esp_err_t rtc_gpio_init(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
    Init a GPIO as RTC GPIO.
    This function must be called when initializing a pad for an analog function.
    Return
    • ESP_OK success
    • ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO
    Parameters
    • gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t rtc_gpio_deinit(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
    Init a GPIO as digital GPIO.
    Return
    • ESP_OK success
    • ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO
    Parameters
    • gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

uint32_t rtc_gpio_get_level(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
    Get the RTC IO input level.
    Return
    • 1 High level
    • 0 Low level
    • ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO
Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

```c
esp_err_t rtc_gpio_set_level(gpio_num_t gpio_num, uint32_t level)
```
Set the RTC IO output level.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)
- level: output level

```c
esp_err_t rtc_gpio_set_direction(gpio_num_t gpio_num, rtc_gpio_mode_t mode)
```
RTC GPIO set direction.

Configure RTC GPIO direction, such as output only, input only, output and input.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)
- mode: GPIO direction

```c
esp_err_t rtc_gpio_set_direction_in_sleep(gpio_num_t gpio_num, rtc_gpio_mode_t mode)
```
RTC GPIO set direction in deep sleep mode or disable sleep status (default). In some application scenarios, IO needs to have another states during deep sleep.

NOTE: ESP32 support INPUT_ONLY mode. ESP32S2 support INPUT_ONLY, OUTPUT_ONLY, INPUT_OUTPUT mode.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)
- mode: GPIO direction

```c
esp_err_t rtc_gpio_pullup_en(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
```
RTC GPIO pullup enable.

This function only works for RTC IOs. In general, call gpio_pullup_en, which will work both for normal GPIOs and RTC IOs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

```c
esp_err_t rtc_gpio_pulldown_en(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
```
RTC GPIO pulldown enable.

This function only works for RTC IOs. In general, call gpio_pulldown_en, which will work both for normal GPIOs and RTC IOs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

```c
esp_err_t rtc_gpio_pullup_dis(gpio_num_t gpio_num)
```
RTC GPIO pullup disable.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)
This function only works for RTC IOs. In general, call gpio_pullup_dis, which will work both for normal GPIOs and RTC IOs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

`esp_err_t rtc_gpio_pulldown_dis(gpio_num_t gpio_num)`
RTC GPIO pulldown disable.

This function only works for RTC IOs. In general, call gpio_pulldown_dis, which will work both for normal GPIOs and RTC IOs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

`esp_err_t rtc_gpio_set_drive_capability(gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_drive_cap_t strength)`
Set RTC GPIO pad drive capability.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number, only support output GPIOs
- strength: Drive capability of the pad

`esp_err_t rtc_gpio_get_drive_capability(gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_drive_cap_t *strength)`
Get RTC GPIO pad drive capability.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number, only support output GPIOs
- strength: Pointer to accept drive capability of the pad

`esp_err_t rtc_gpio_hold_en(gpio_num_t gpio_num)`
Enable hold function on an RTC IO pad.

Enabling HOLD function will cause the pad to latch current values of input enable, output enable, output value, function, drive strength values. This function is useful when going into light or deep sleep mode to prevent the pin configuration from changing.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

`esp_err_t rtc_gpio_hold_dis(gpio_num_t gpio_num)`
Disable hold function on an RTC IO pad.

Disabling hold function will allow the pad receive the values of input enable, output enable, output value, function, drive strength from RTC_IO peripheral.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)
**esp_err_t rtc_gpio_isolate(gpio_num_t gpio_num)**

Helper function to disconnect internal circuits from an RTC IO. This function disables input, output, pullup, pulldown, and enables hold feature for an RTC IO. Use this function if an RTC IO needs to be disconnected from internal circuits in deep sleep, to minimize leakage current.

In particular, for ESP32-WROVER module, call rtc_gpio_isolate(GPIO_NUM_12) before entering deep sleep, to reduce deep sleep current.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if GPIO is not an RTC IO

**Parameters**

- gpio_num: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12).

**esp_err_t rtc_gpio_force_hold_all(void)**

Enable force hold signal for all RTC IOs.

Each RTC pad has a “force hold” input signal from the RTC controller. If this signal is set, pad latches current values of input enable, function, output enable, and other signals which come from the RTC mux. Force hold signal is enabled before going into deep sleep for pins which are used for EXT1 wakeup.

**esp_err_t rtc_gpio_force_hold_dis_all(void)**

Disable force hold signal for all RTC IOs.

**esp_err_t rtc_gpio_wakeup_enable(gpio_num_t gpio_num, gpio_int_type_t intr_type)**

Enable wakeup from sleep mode using specific GPIO.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if gpio_num is not an RTC IO, or intr_type is not one of GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL, GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL.

**Parameters**

- gpio_num: GPIO number
- intr_type: Wakeup on high level (GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL) or low level (GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL)

**esp_err_t rtc_gpio_wakeup_disable(gpio_num_t gpio_num)**

Disable wakeup from sleep mode using specific GPIO.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if gpio_num is not an RTC IO

**Parameters**

- gpio_num: GPIO number

**Macros**

RTC_GPIO_IS_VALID_GPIO(gpio_num)

**Header File**

- components/hal/include/hal/rtc_io_types.h

**Enumerations**

enum rtc_gpio_mode_t

RTCIO output/input mode type.

**Values:**

- RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_ONLY
  - Pad input
- RTC_GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_ONLY
  - Pad output
**RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT**
Pad input + output

**RTC_GPIO_MODE_DISABLED**
Pad (output + input) disable

**RTC_GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_OD**
Pad open-drain output

**RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT_OD**
Pad input + open-drain output

### 2.3.5 I2C

#### 概述

I2C 是一种串行同步半双工通信协议，总线上可以同时挂载多个主机和从机。I2C 总线由串行数据线（SDA）和串行时钟线（SCL）线构成。这些线都需要上拉电阻。

I2C 具有简单且制造成本低廉等优点，主要用于低速外围设备的短距离通信（一英尺以内）。

ESP32 有两个 I2C 控制器（也称为端口），负责处理在 I2C 两根总线上的通信。每个控制器都可以设置为主机或从机。例如，可以同时让一个控制器用作主机，另一个用作从机。

#### 驱动程序的功能

I2C 驱动程序管理在 I2C 总线上设备的通信，该驱动程序具备以下功能：

- 在主机模式下读写字节
- 支持从机模式
- 读取并写入寄存器，然后由主机读取/写入

#### 使用驱动程序

以下部分将指导您完成 I2C 驱动程序配置和工作的基本步骤：

1. 配置驱动程序 - 设置初始化参数（如主机模式或从机模式，SDA 和 SCL 使用的 GPIO 管脚，时钟速度等）
2. 安装驱动程序 - 激活一个 I2C 控制器的驱动，该控制器可为主机也可为从机
3. 根据是为机还是从机配置驱动程序，选择合适的项目
   a. 主机模式下通信 - 发起通信（主机模式）
   b. 从机模式下通信 - 响应主机消息（从机模式）
4. 中断处理 - 配置 I2C 中断服务
5. 用户自定义配置 - 调整默认的 I2C 通信参数（如时序、位序等）
6. 错误处理 - 如何识别和处理驱动程序配置和通信错误
7. 删除驱动程序 - 在通信结束时释放 I2C 驱动程序所使用的资源

#### 配置驱动程序

建立 I2C 通信第一步是配置驱动程序，这需要设置 I2C 配置结构中的几个参数：

- 设置 I2C 工作模式 - 从 i2c_mode_t 中选择主机模式或从机模式
- 设置通信管脚
  - 指定 SDA 和 SCL 信号使用的 GPIO 管脚
  - 是否启用 ESP32 的内部上拉电阻
- (仅限主机模式) 设置 I2C 时钟速度
- (仅限从机模式) 设置以下内容：
  - 是否应启用 10 位寻址模式
  - 定义 从机地址
然而，初始化给定I2C端口的配置，请使用端口号和i2c_config_t作为函数调用参数来调用i2c_param_config() 函数。

配置示例（主）：

```c
int i2c_master_port = 0;
i2c_config_t conf = {
    .mode = I2C_MODE_MASTER,
    .sda_io_num = I2C_MASTER_SDA_IO,  // select GPIO specific to your...
    .scl_io_num = I2C_MASTER_SCL_IO,  // select GPIO specific to your...
    .sda_pullup_en = GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE,
    .scl_pullup_en = GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE,
    .master.clk_speed = I2C_MASTER_FREQ_HZ, // select frequency specific to your...
    .clk_flags = 0,  // < Optional, you can use I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_*
                      // .clk_flags = 0, /*!< Optional, you can use I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_*
                      // flags to choose i2c source clock here. */
};
```

配置示例（从）：

```c
int i2c_slave_port = I2C_SLAVE_NUM;
i2c_config_t conf_slave = {
    .sda_io_num = I2C_SLAVE_SDA_IO,  // select GPIO specific to your...
    .scl_io_num = I2C_SLAVE_SCL_IO,  // select GPIO specific to your...
    .sda_pullup_en = GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE,
    .scl_pullup_en = GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE,
    .mode = I2C_MODE_SLAVE,
    .slave.addr_10bit_en = 0,
    .slave.slave_addr = ESP_SLAVE_ADDR,  // address of your project
};
```

在此阶段，i2c_param_config() 还将其他I2C配置参数设置为I2C总线协议规范中定义的默认值。有关默认值及修改默认值的详细信息，请参考用户自定义配置。

### 时钟源配置

增加了时钟源分配器，用于支持不同的时钟源。时钟分配器将选择一个满足所有频率和能力要求的时钟源（如i2c_config_t::clk_flags中的要求）。

当i2c_config_t::clk_flags为0时，时钟分配器将仅根据所需频率进行选择。如果不需要诸如APB之类的特殊功能，则可以将时钟分配器配置为仅根据所需频率选择源时钟。为此，请将i2c_config_t::clk_flags设置为0。有关时钟特性，请参见下表。

#### 注解：
如果时钟不满足请求的功能，则该时钟不是有效的选项，即，请求的功能中的任何位（clk_flags）在时钟的功能中均为0。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时钟名称</th>
<th>时钟频率</th>
<th>SCL 的最大频率</th>
<th>时钟功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>APB时钟</td>
<td>80 MHz</td>
<td>4 MHz</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

表2: ESP32时钟源特性

对i2c_config_t::clk_flags的解释如下：

Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 2. API 参考

1. **I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_AWARE_DFS**: 当 APB 时钟改变时，时钟的波特率不会改变。
2. **I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_LIGHT_SLEEP**: 支持轻度睡眠模式，APB 时钟则不支持。
3. **ESP32** 可能不支持某些标志，请在使用前阅读技术参考手册。

注解：在主机模式下，SCL 的时钟频率不应大于上表中提到的 SCL 的最大频率。

安装驱动程序 配置好 I2C 驱动程序后，使用以下参数调用函数 `i2c_driver_install()` 安装驱动程序：

- 端口号，从 `i2c_port_t` 中二选一
- 主机或从机模式，从 `i2c_mode_t` 中选择
- (仅限从机模式) 分配用于在从机模式下发送和接收数据的缓存区大小。

I2C 是一个以主机为中心的总线，数据只能根据主机的要求从从机传输到主机。因此，从机通常有一个发送缓存区，供从应用程序写入数据使用。数据保留在发送缓存区中，由主机自行读取。

用于分配中断的标志（请参考 `esp_hw_support/include/esp_intr_alloc.h` 中 ESP_INTR_FLAG_* 值）

主机模式下通信 安装 I2C 驱动程序后，ESP32 即可与其他 I2C 设备通信。

ESP32 的 I2C 控制器在主机模式下负责与 I2C 从机设备建立通信，并发送命令让从机响应，如进行测量并将结果发回给主机。

为优化通信流程，驱动程序提供一个名为“命令链接”的容器。该容器应填充一系列命令，然后传递给 I2C 控制器执行。

主机写入数据 下面的示例展示如何为 I2C 主机构建命令链，从而向从机发送 n 个字节。

![I2C command link - master write example](image)

图 7: I2C command link - master write example

下面介绍如何为“主机写入数据”设置命令链，并其内部内容：

1. 使用 `i2c_cmd_link_create()` 创建一个命令链接。
   然后，将一系列待发送给从机的数据填充命令链：
   a) 启动位 - `i2c_master_start()`
   b) 从机地址 - `i2c_master_write_byte()`，提供单字节地址作为调用此函数的实参。
   c) 数据 - 一个或多个字节的数据作为 `i2c_master_write()` 的实参。
   d) 停止位 - `i2c_master_stop()`

   函数 `i2c_master_write_byte()` 和 `i2c_master_write()` 都有额外的实参，规定主机是否应确认其有无接受到 ACK 位。
2. 通过调用 `i2c_master_cmd_begin()` 来触发 I2C 控制器执行命令链接。一旦开始执行，就不能再修改命令链接。
3. 命令发送后，通过调用 `i2c_cmd_link_delete()` 释放命令链接使用的资源。

**主机读取数据** 下面的示例展示如何为 I2C 主机构建命令链接，以便从从机读取 n 个字节。

![I2C command link - master read example](image)

在读取数据时，在上述步骤 4 中，不是用 `i2c_master_write...`，而是用 `i2c_master_read_byte()` 和或 `i2c_master_read()` 填充命令链接。同样，在步骤 5 中配置最后一次的读取，以便主机不提供 ACK 位。

**指示写入或读取数据** 发送从机地址后（请参考上图中第 3 步），主机可以写入或从从机读取数据。

主机实际执行的操作信息存储在从机地址的最低有效位中。

因此，为了将数据写入从机，主机发送的命令链接应包含地址 `(ESP_SLAVE_ADDR << 1) | I2C_MASTER_WRITE`，如下所示:

```c
i2c_master_write_byte(cmd, (ESP_SLAVE_ADDR << 1) | I2C_MASTER_WRITE, ACK_EN);
```

同理，指示从从机读取数据的命令链接如下所示:

```c
i2c_master_write_byte(cmd, (ESP_SLAVE_ADDR << 1) | I2C_MASTER_READ, ACK_EN);
```

**从机模式下通信** 安装 I2C 驱动程序后，ESP32 即可与其他 I2C 设备通信。

API 为从机提供以下功能:

* `i2c_slave_read_buffer()`
  当从机将数据写入从机时，从机将自动将其存储在接收缓存区中。从机应用程序可自行调用函数 `i2c_slave_read_buffer()`。如果接收缓存区中没有数据，此函数还具有一个参数用于指定阻塞时间。这将允许从机应用程序在指定的超时设定内等待数据到达缓存区。

* `i2c_slave_write_buffer()`
  发送缓存区是用于存储从机要以 FIFO 顺序发送给主机的所有数据。在主机请求接收前，这些数据一直存储在发送缓存区。函数 `i2c_slave_write_buffer()` 有一个参数，用于指定发送缓冲区已满时的块时间。这将允许从机应用程序在指定的超时设定内等待发送缓存区中足够的可用空间。

在 `peripherals/i2c` 中可找到介绍如何使用这些功能的代码示例。
中断处理  安装驱动程序时，默认情况下会安装中断处理程序。但是，您可以通过调用函数 `i2c_isr_register()` 来注册自己的而不是默认的中断处理程序。在运行自己的中断处理程序时，可以参考 ESP32 技术参考手册 > I2C 控制器 (I2C) > 中断 [PDF]，以获取有关 I2C 控制器触发的中断描述。

调用函数 `i2c_isr_free()` 删除中断处理程序。

用户自定义配置  如本节末尾所述，配置驱动程序，函数 `i2c_param_config()` 在初始化 I2C 端口的驱动程序配置时，也会将几个 I2C 通信参数设置为 I2C 总线协议规范 规定的默认值。其他一些相关参数已在 I2C 控制器的寄存器中预先配置。

通过调用下表中提供的专用函数，可以将所有这些参数更改为用户自定义值。请注意，时序值是在 APB 时钟周期中定义。APB 的频率在 `I2C_APB_CLK_FREQ` 中指定。

### 表3: 其他可配置的 I2C 通信参数

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>要更改的参数</th>
<th>函数</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCL 时钟周期的高电平和低电平</td>
<td><code>i2c_set_period()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>在产生自动信号期间使用的 SCL 和 SDA 信号时序</td>
<td><code>i2c_set_start_timing()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>在产生停止信号期间使用的 SCL 和 SDA 信号时序</td>
<td><code>i2c_set_stop_timing()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>从机采样以及主机切换时，SCL 和 SDA 信号之间的时序关系</td>
<td><code>i2c_set_data_timing()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I2C 超时</td>
<td><code>i2c_set_timeout()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>优选发送/接收最高有效位 (LSB) 或最低有效位 (MSB)，可在 <code>i2c_trans_mode()</code> 定义的模式中选择</td>
<td><code>i2c_set_data_mode()</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

上述每个函数都有一个 `_get_` 对应项来检查当前设置的值。例如，调用 `i2c_get_timeout()` 来检查 I2C 超时值。

要检查在驱动程序配置过程中设置的参数默认值，请参考文件 `driver/i2c.c` 并查找带有后缀 `_DEFAULT` 的定义。

通过函数 `i2c_set_pin()` 可以为 SDA 和 SCL 信号选择不同的管脚并改变上拉配置。如果要修改已经输入的值，请使用函数 `i2c_param_config()`。

**注解:** ESP32 的内部上拉电阻范围为几万欧姆，因此在大多数情况下，它们本身不足以用作 I2C 上拉电阻。建议用户使用阻值在 I2C 总线协议规范 规定范围内的上拉电阻。

错误处理  大多数 I2C 驱动程序的函数在成功完成时会返回 ESP_OK，或在失败时会返回特定的错误代码。实时检查返回的值并进行错误处理是一种好习惯。驱动程序也会打印日志消息，其中包含错误说明，例如检查输入配置的正确性。有关详细信息，请参考文件 `driver/i2c.c` 并用后缀 `_ERR_STR` 查找定义。

使用专用中断来捕获通信故障。例如，如果从机将数据发送回主机耗时太长时间，会触发 `I2C_TIME_OUT_INT` 中断。详细信息请参考 中断处理。

如果出现通信失败，可以分别为发送和接收缓存区调用 `i2c_reset_tx_fifo()` 和 `i2c_reset_rx_fifo()` 来重置内部硬件缓存区。

删除驱动程序 当使用 `i2c_driver_install()` 建立 I2C 通信，一段时间后不再需要 I2C 通信时，可以通过调用 `i2c_driver_delete()` 来移除驱动程序以释放分配的资源。

由于函数 `i2c_driver_delete()` 无法移除驱动程序前务必确保所有的线程都已停止使用驱动程序。

应用示例

I2C 主机和从机示例: `peripherals/i2c`。

---

**Espressif Systems**

**Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36**

Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 2. API 参考

Header File

- components/driver/include/driver/i2c.h

Functions

`esp_err_t i2c_driver_install(i2c_port_t i2c_num, i2c_mode_t mode, size_t slv_rx_buf_len, size_t slv_tx_buf_len, int intr_alloc_flags)`

Install an I2C driver.

**Note** In master mode, if the cache is likely to be disabled (such as write flash) and the slave is time-sensitive, ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is suggested to be used. In this case, please use the memory allocated from internal RAM in `i2c` read and write function, because we cannot access the psram (if psram is enabled) in interrupt handle function when cache is disabled.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Driver installation error

**Parameters**

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `mode`: I2C mode (either master or slave)
- `slv_rx_buf_len`: Receiving buffer size. Only slave mode will use this value, it is ignored in master mode.
- `slv_tx_buf_len`: Sending buffer size. Only slave mode will use this value, it is ignored in master mode.
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

`esp_err_t i2c_driver_delete(i2c_port_t i2c_num)`

Delete I2C driver.

**Note** This function does not guarantee thread safety. Please make sure that no thread will continuously hold semaphores before calling the delete function.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- `i2c_num`: I2C port to delete

`esp_err_t i2c_param_config(i2c_port_t i2c_num, const i2c_config_t *i2c_conf)`

Configure an I2C bus with the given configuration.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- `i2c_num`: I2C port to configure
- `i2c_conf`: Pointer to the I2C configuration

`esp_err_t i2c_reset_tx_fifo(i2c_port_t i2c_num)`

reset I2C tx hardware fifo

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number

`esp_err_t i2c_reset_rx_fifo(i2c_port_t i2c_num)`

reset I2C rx fifo

**Return**
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number

```c
esp_err_t i2c_isr_register(i2c_port_t i2c_num, void (*fn) (void *arg), intr_alloc_flags *handle)
```

Register an I2C ISR handler.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number to attach handler to
- `fn`: ISR handler function
- `arg`: Parameter for the ISR handler
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) `ESP_INTR_FLAG_*` values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `handle`: Handle return from esp_intr_alloc.

```c
esp_err_t i2c_isr_free(intr_handle_t handle)
```

Delete and free I2C ISR handle.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `handle`: Handle of isr to delete.

```c
esp_err_t i2c_set_pin(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int sda_io_num, int scl_io_num, bool sda_pullup_en, bool scl_pullup_en, i2c_mode_t mode)
```

Configure GPIO pins for I2C SCK and SDA signals.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `sda_io_num`: GPIO number for I2C SDA signal
- `scl_io_num`: GPIO number for I2C SCL signal
- `sda_pullup_en`: Enable the internal pullup for SDA pin
- `scl_pullup_en`: Enable the internal pullup for SCL pin
- `mode`: I2C mode

```c
esp_err_t i2c_master_write_to_device(i2c_port_t i2c_num, uint8_t device_address, const uint8_t *write_buffer, size_t write_size, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Perform a write to a device connected to a particular I2C port. This function is a wrapper to `i2c_master_start()`, `i2c_master_write()`, `i2c_master_read()`, etc … It shall only be called in I2C master mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Sending command error, slave hasn’t ACK the transfer.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE I2C driver not installed or not in master mode.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Operation timeout because the bus is busy.

**Parameters**
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number to perform the transfer on
- `device_address`: I2C device’s 7-bit address
- `write_buffer`: Bytes to send on the bus
- `write_size`: Size, in bytes, of the write buffer
- `ticks_to_wait`: Maximum ticks to wait before issuing a timeout.
**Chapter 2. API**

### esp_err_t i2c_master_read_from_device

```c
i2c_master_read_from_device(i2c_port_t i2c_num, uint8_t device_address,
                              uint8_t *read_buffer, size_t read_size, TickType_t
ticks_to_wait)
```

Perform a read to a device connected to a particular I2C port. This function is a wrapper to `i2c_master_start()`, `i2c_master_write()`, `i2c_master_read()`, etc... It shall only be called in I2C master mode.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Sending command error, slave hasn’t ACK the transfer.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE I2C driver not installed or not in master mode.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Operation timeout because the bus is busy.

**Parameters**

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number to perform the transfer on
- `device_address`: I2C device’s 7-bit address
- `read_buffer`: Buffer to store the bytes received on the bus
- `read_size`: Size, in bytes, of the read buffer
- `ticks_to_wait`: Maximum ticks to wait before issuing a timeout.

### esp_err_t i2c_master_write_read_device

```c
i2c_master_write_read_device(i2c_port_t i2c_num, uint8_t device_address,
                              const uint8_t *write_buffer, size_t write_size,
                              uint8_t *read_buffer, size_t read_size, TickType_t
ticks_to_wait)
```

Perform a write followed by a read to a device on the I2C bus. A repeated start signal is used between the write and read, thus, the bus is not released until the two transactions are finished. This function is a wrapper to `i2c_master_start()`, `i2c_master_write()`, `i2c_master_read()`, etc... It shall only be called in I2C master mode.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Sending command error, slave hasn’t ACK the transfer.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE I2C driver not installed or not in master mode.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Operation timeout because the bus is busy.

**Parameters**

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number to perform the transfer on
- `device_address`: I2C device’s 7-bit address
- `write_buffer`: Bytes to send on the bus
- `write_size`: Size, in bytes, of the write buffer
- `read_buffer`: Buffer to store the bytes received on the bus
- `read_size`: Size, in bytes, of the read buffer
- `ticks_to_wait`: Maximum ticks to wait before issuing a timeout.

### i2c_cmd_handle_t i2c_cmd_link_create_static

```c
i2c_cmd_link_create_static(uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t size)
```

Create and initialize an I2C commands list with a given buffer. All the allocations for data or signals (START, STOP, ACK, ...) will be performed within this buffer. This buffer must be valid during the whole transaction. After finishing the I2C transactions, it is required to call `i2c_cmd_link_delete_static()`.

**Note** It is highly advised to not allocate this buffer on the stack. The size of the data used underneath may increase in the future, resulting in a possible stack overflow as the macro `I2C_LINK_RECOMMENDED_SIZE` would also return a bigger value. A better option is to use a buffer allocated statically or dynamically (with malloc).

**Return** Handle to the I2C command link or NULL if the buffer provided is too small, please use `I2C_LINK_RECOMMENDED_SIZE` macro to get the recommended size for the buffer.

**Parameters**

- `buffer`: Buffer to use for commands allocations
- `size`: Size in bytes of the buffer

### i2c_cmd_handle_t i2c_cmd_link_create

```c
i2c_cmd_link_create(void)
```

Create and initialize an I2C commands list with a given buffer. After finishing the I2C transactions, it is
required to call `i2c_cmd_link_delete()` to release and return the resources. The required bytes will be dynamically allocated.

Return Handle to the I2C command link

```c
void i2c_cmd_link_delete_static(i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle)
```

Free the I2C commands list allocated statically with `i2c_cmd_link_create_static`.

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C commands list allocated statically. This handle should be created thanks to `i2c_cmd_link_create_static()` function

void i2c_cmd_link_delete(i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle)

Free the I2C commands list.

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C commands list. This handle should be created thanks to `i2c_cmd_link_create()` function

```c
esp_err_t i2c_master_start(i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle)
```

Queue a “START signal” to the given commands list. This function shall only be called in I2C master mode. Call `i2c_master_cmd_begin()` to send all the queued commands.

Return
- `ESP_OK` Success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` Parameter error
- `ESP_ERR_NO_MEM` The static buffer used to create `cmd_handler` is too small
- `ESP_FAIL` No more memory left on the heap

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C commands list

```c
esp_err_t i2c_master_write_byte(i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle, uint8_t data, bool ack_en)
```

Queue a “write byte” command to the commands list. A single byte will be sent on the I2C port. This function shall only be called in I2C master mode. Call `i2c_master_cmd_begin()` to send all queued commands.

Return
- `ESP_OK` Success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` Parameter error
- `ESP_ERR_NO_MEM` The static buffer used to create `cmd_handler` is too small
- `ESP_FAIL` No more memory left on the heap

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C commands list
- `data`: Byte to send on the port
- `ack_en`: Enable ACK signal

```c
esp_err_t i2c_master_write(i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle, const uint8_t *data, size_t data_len, bool ack_en)
```

Queue a “write (multiple) bytes” command to the commands list. This function shall only be called in I2C master mode. Call `i2c_master_cmd_begin()` to send all queued commands.

Return
- `ESP_OK` Success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` Parameter error
- `ESP_ERR_NO_MEM` The static buffer used to create `cmd_handler` is too small
- `ESP_FAIL` No more memory left on the heap

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C commands list
- `data`: Bytes to send. This buffer shall remain valid until the transaction is finished. If the PSRAM is enabled and `intr_flag` is set to `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM`, `data` should be allocated from internal RAM.
- `data_len`: Length, in bytes, of the data buffer
- `ack_en`: Enable ACK signal
Chapter 2. API

esp_err_t i2c_master_read_byte (i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle, uint8_t *data, i2c_ack_type_t ack)

Queue a “read byte” command to the commands list. A single byte will be read on the I2C bus. This function shall only be called in I2C master mode. Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM The static buffer used to create cmd_handler is too small
• ESP_FAIL No more memory left on the heap

Parameters
• cmd_handle: I2C commands list
• data: Pointer where the received byte will be stored. This buffer shall remain valid until the transaction is finished.
• ack: ACK signal

esp_err_t i2c_master_read (i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle, uint8_t *data, size_t data_len, i2c_ack_type_t ack)

Queue a “read (multiple) bytes” command to the commands list. Multiple bytes will be read on the I2C bus. This function shall only be called in I2C master mode. Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM The static buffer used to create cmd_handler is too small
• ESP_FAIL No more memory left on the heap

Parameters
• cmd_handle: I2C commands list
• data: Pointer where the received bytes will be stored. This buffer shall remain valid until the transaction is finished.
• data_len: Size, in bytes, of the data buffer
• ack: ACK signal

esp_err_t i2c_master_stop (i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle)

Queue a “STOP signal” to the given commands list. This function shall only be called in I2C master mode. Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM The static buffer used to create cmd_handler is too small
• ESP_FAIL No more memory left on the heap

Parameters
• cmd_handle: I2C commands list

esp_err_t i2c_master_cmd_begin (i2c_port_t i2c_num, i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)

Send all the queued commands on the I2C bus, in master mode. The task will be blocked until all the commands have been sent out. The I2C APIs are not thread-safe, if you want to use one I2C port in different tasks, you need to take care of the multi-thread issue. This function shall only be called in I2C master mode.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_FAIL Sending command error, slave hasn’t ACK the transfer.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE I2C driver not installed or not in master mode.
• ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Operation timeout because the bus is busy.

Parameters
• i2c_num: I2C port number
• cmd_handle: I2C commands list
• ticks_to_wait: Maximum ticks to wait before issuing a timeout.
int i2c_slave_write_buffer(i2c_port_t i2c_num, const uint8_t *data, int size, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
Write bytes to internal ringbuffer of the I2C slave data. When the TX fifo empty, the ISR will fill the hardware FIFO with the internal ringbuffer’s data.

Note This function shall only be called in I2C slave mode.

Return
• ESP_FAIL (-1) Parameter error
• Other (>=0) The number of data bytes pushed to the I2C slave buffer.

Parameters
• i2c_num: I2C port number
• data: Bytes to write into internal buffer
• size: Size, in bytes, of data buffer
• ticks_to_wait: Maximum ticks to wait.

int i2c_slave_read_buffer(i2c_port_t i2c_num, uint8_t *data, size_t max_size, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
Read bytes from I2C internal buffer. When the I2C bus receives data, the ISR will copy them from the hardware RX FIFO to the internal ringbuffer. Calling this function will then copy bytes from the internal ringbuffer to the data user buffer.

Note This function shall only be called in I2C slave mode.

Return
• ESP_FAIL(-1) Parameter error
• Others(>=0) The number of data bytes read from I2C slave buffer.

Parameters
• i2c_num: I2C port number
• data: Buffer to fill with ringbuffer’s bytes
• max_size: Maximum bytes to read
• ticks_to_wait: Maximum waiting ticks

esp_err_t i2c_set_period(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int high_period, int low_period)
Set I2C master clock period.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• i2c_num: I2C port number
• high_period: Clock cycle number during SCL is high level, high_period is a 14 bit value
• low_period: Clock cycle number during SCL is low level, low_period is a 14 bit value

esp_err_t i2c_get_period(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int *high_period, int *low_period)
Get I2C master clock period.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• i2c_num: I2C port number
• high_period: pointer to get clock cycle number during SCL is high level, will get a 14 bit value
• low_period: pointer to get clock cycle number during SCL is low level, will get a 14 bit value

esp_err_t i2c_filter_enable(i2c_port_t i2c_num, uint8_t cyc_num)
Enable hardware filter on I2C bus Sometimes the I2C bus is disturbed by high frequency noise(about 20ns), or the rising edge of the SCL clock is very slow, these may cause the master state machine to break. Enable hardware filter can filter out high frequency interference and make the master more stable.

Note Enable filter will slow down the SCL clock.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
Chapter 2. API

- **i2c_num**: I2C port number to filter
- **cyc_num**: the APB cycles need to be filtered (0<=cyc_num <=7). When the period of a pulse is less than cyc_num * APB_cycle, the I2C controller will ignore this pulse.

**esp_err_t i2c_filter_disable(i2c_port_t i2c_num)**

Disable filter on I2C bus.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- i2c_num: I2C port number

**esp_err_t i2c_set_start_timing(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int setup_time, int hold_time)**

set I2C master start signal timing

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- setup_time: clock number between the falling-edge of SDA and rising-edge of SCL for start mark, it’s a 10-bit value.
- hold_time: clock number between the falling-edge of SDA and falling-edge of SCL for start mark, it’s a 10-bit value.

**esp_err_t i2c_get_start_timing(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int *setup_time, int *hold_time)**

get I2C master start signal timing

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- setup_time: pointer to get setup time
- hold_time: pointer to get hold time

**esp_err_t i2c_set_stop_timing(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int setup_time, int hold_time)**

set I2C master stop signal timing

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- setup_time: clock num between the rising-edge of SCL and the rising-edge of SDA, it’s a 10-bit value.
- hold_time: clock number after the STOP bit’s rising-edge, it’s a 14-bit value.

**esp_err_t i2c_get_stop_timing(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int *setup_time, int *hold_time)**

get I2C master stop signal timing

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- setup_time: pointer to get setup time.
- hold_time: pointer to get hold time.

**esp_err_t i2c_set_data_timing(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int sample_time, int hold_time)**

set I2C data signal timing

**Return**
Chapter 2. API Reference

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- sample_time: clock number I2C used to sample data on SDA after the rising-edge of SCL, it’s a 10-bit value
- hold_time: clock number I2C used to hold the data after the falling-edge of SCL, it’s a 10-bit value

```c
esp_err_t i2c_get_data_timing(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int *sample_time, int *hold_time)
```

get I2C data signal timing

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- sample_time: pointer to get sample time
- hold_time: pointer to get hold time

```c
esp_err_t i2c_set_timeout(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int timeout)
```

set I2C timeout value

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- timeout: timeout value for I2C bus (unit: APB 80Mhz clock cycle)

```c
esp_err_t i2c_get_timeout(i2c_port_t i2c_num, int *timeout)
```

get I2C timeout value

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- timeout: pointer to get timeout value

```c
esp_err_t i2c_set_data_mode(i2c_port_t i2c_num, i2c_trans_mode_t tx_trans_mode, i2c_trans_mode_t rx_trans_mode)
```

set I2C data transfer mode

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- tx_trans_mode: I2C sending data mode
- rx_trans_mode: I2C receiving data mode

```c
esp_err_t i2c_get_data_mode(i2c_port_t i2c_num, i2c_trans_mode_t *tx_trans_mode, i2c_trans_mode_t *rx_trans_mode)
```

get I2C data transfer mode

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- i2c_num: I2C port number
- tx_trans_mode: pointer to get I2C sending data mode
- rx_trans_mode: pointer to get I2C receiving data mode
Structures

struct i2c_config_t
I2C initialization parameters.

Public Members

i2c_mode_t mode
I2C mode

int sda_io_num
GPIO number for I2C sda signal

int scl_io_num
GPIO number for I2C scl signal

bool sda_pullup_en
Internal GPIO pull mode for I2C sda signal

bool scl_pullup_en
Internal GPIO pull mode for I2C scl signal

uint32_t clk_speed
I2C clock frequency for master mode, (no higher than 1MHz for now)

struct i2c_config_t::[anonymous]:[anonymous] master
I2C master config

uint8_t addr_10bit_en
I2C 10bit address mode enable for slave mode

uint16_t slave_addr
I2C address for slave mode

uint32_t maximum_speed
I2C expected clock speed from SCL.

struct i2c_config_t::[anonymous]:[anonymous] slave
I2C slave config

uint32_t clk_flags
Bitwise of I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_**FOR_DFS** for clk source choice

Macros

I2C_APB_CLK_FREQ
I2C source clock is APB clock, 80MHz

I2C_NUM_MAX
I2C port max

I2C_NUM_0
I2C port 0

I2C_NUM_1
I2C port 1

I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_FOR_NOMAL
Any one clock source that is available for the specified frequency may be choosen

I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_AWARE_DFS
For REF tick clock, it won’t change with APB.

I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_LIGHT_SLEEP
For light sleep mode.

I2C_INTERNAL_STRUCT_SIZE
Minimum size, in bytes, of the internal private structure used to describe I2C commands link.
The following macro is used to determine the recommended size of the buffer to pass to `i2c_cmd_link_create_static()` function. It requires one parameter, `TRANSACTIONS`, describing the number of transactions intended to be performed on the I2C port. For example, if one wants to perform a read on an I2C device register, `TRANSACTIONS` must be at least 2, because the commands required are the following:

- write device register
- read register content

Signals such as “(repeated) start”, “stop”, “nack”, “ack” shall not be counted.

Type Definitions

```c
typedef void *i2c_cmd_handle_t

I2C command handle
```

Header File

```c
components/hal/include/hal/i2c_types.h
```

Macros

```c
I2C_CLK_FREQ_MAX

Use the highest speed that is available for the clock source picked by clk_flags.
```

Type Definitions

```c
typedef int i2c_port_t

I2C port number, can be I2C_NUM_0 ~ (I2C_NUM_MAX-1).
```

Enumerations

```c
enum i2c_mode_t

Values:

I2C_MODE_SLAVE = 0
I2C slave mode

I2C_MODE_MASTER
I2C master mode

I2C_MODE_MAX

```

```c
enum i2c_rw_t

Values:

I2C_MASTER_WRITE = 0
I2C write data

I2C_MASTER_READ
I2C read data

```

```c
enum i2c_trans_mode_t

Values:

I2C_DATA_MODE_MSB_FIRST = 0
I2C data msb first

I2C_DATA_MODE_LSB_FIRST = 1
I2C data lsb first

I2C_DATA_MODE_MAX

```

```c
enum i2c_addr_mode_t

Values:
```
Chapter 2. API

I2C_ADDR_BIT_7 = 0
I2C 7bit address for slave mode

I2C_ADDR_BIT_10 = 0
I2C 10bit address for slave mode

I2C_ADDR_BIT_MAX

enum i2c_ack_type_t
Values:

I2C_MASTER_ACK = 0x0
I2C ack for each byte read

I2C_MASTER_NACK = 0x1
I2C nack for each byte read

I2C_MASTER_LAST_NACK = 0x2
I2C nack for the last byte

I2C_MASTER_ACK_MAX

enum i2c_sclk_t
I2C clock source, sorting from smallest to largest, place them in order. This can be expanded in the future use.
Values:

I2C_SCLK_DEFAULT = 0
I2C source clock not selected

I2C_SCLK_APB
I2C source clock from APB, 80M

I2C_SCLK_MAX

enum i2c_opmode_t
Values:

I2C_CMD_RESTART = 0
I2C restart command

I2C_CMD_WRITE
I2C write command

I2C_CMD_READ
I2C read command

I2C_CMD_STOP
I2C stop command

I2C_CMD_END
I2C end command

2.3.6 Inter-IC Sound (I2S)

Overview

I2S (Inter-IC Sound) is a serial, synchronous communication protocol that is usually used for transmitting audio data between two digital audio devices.

ESP32 contains two I2S peripheral(s). These peripherals can be configured to input and output sample data via the I2S driver.

An I2S bus consists of the following lines:

- Master clock line (operational)
- Bit clock line
- Channel select line
• Serial data line

Each I2S controller has the following features that can be configured using the I2S driver:

• Operation as system master or slave
• Capable of acting as transmitter or receiver
• DMA controller that allows for streaming sample data without requiring the CPU to copy each data sample

Each controller can operate in half-duplex communication mode. Thus, the two controllers can be combined to establish full-duplex communication.

I2S0 output can be routed directly to the digital-to-analog converter’s (DAC) output channels (GPIO 25 & GPIO 26) to produce direct analog output without involving any external I2S codecs. I2S0 can also be used for transmitting PDM (Pulse-density modulation) signals.

The I2S peripherals also support LCD mode for communicating data over a parallel bus, as used by some LCD displays and camera modules. LCD mode has the following operational modes:

• LCD master transmitting mode
• Camera slave receiving mode
• ADC/DAC mode

For more information, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > I2S Controller (I2S) > LCD Mode [PDF].

注解：For high accuracy clock applications, use the APLL_CLK clock source, which has the frequency range of 16 ~ 128 MHz. You can enable the APLL_CLK clock source by setting `i2s_config_t::use_apll` to `TRUE`.

If `i2s_config_t::use_apll` = `TRUE` and `i2s_config_t::fixed_mclk > 0`, then the master clock output frequency for I2S will be equal to the value of `i2s_config_t::fixed_mclk`, which means that the mclk frequency is provided by the user, instead of being calculated by the driver.

The clock rate of the word select line, which is called audio left-right clock rate (LRCK) here, is always the divisor of the master clock output frequency and for which the following is always true: 0 < MCLK/LRCK/channels/bits_per_sample < 64.

### Functional Overview

#### Installing the Driver

Install the I2S driver by calling the function `i2s_driver_install` and passing the following arguments:

• Port number
• The structure `i2s_config_t` with defined communication parameters
• Event queue size and handle

Once `i2s_driver_install` returns `ESP_OK`, it means I2S has started.

Configuration example:

```c
static const int i2s_num = 0; // I2S port number

i2s_config_t i2s_config = {
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_16BIT,
    .channel_format = I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_RIGHT_LEFT,
    .communication_format = I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S
    .tx_desc_auto_clear = false,
    .dma_buf_count = 8,
    .dma_buf_len = 64,
    .use_apll = false,
    .intr_alloc_flags = ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL1 // Interrupt level 1, default 0
};
```

(代码翻译)
**Setting Communication Pins** Once the driver is installed, configure physical GPIO pins to which signals will be routed. For this, call the function `i2s_set_pin` and pass the following arguments to it:

- Port number
- The structure `i2s_pin_config_t` defining the GPIO pin numbers to which the driver should route the MCK, BCK, WS, DATA out, and DATA in signals. If you want to keep a currently allocated pin number for a specific signal, or if this signal is unused, then pass the macro `I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE`. See the example below.

```c
static const i2s_pin_config_t pin_config = {
  .mck_io_num = 0,
  .bck_io_num = 4,
  .ws_io_num = 5,
  .data_out_num = 18,
  .data_in_num = I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE
};
i2s_set_pin(i2s_num, &pin_config);
```

**Running I2S Communication** To perform a transmission:

- Prepare the data for sending
- Call the function `i2s_write()` and pass the data buffer address and data length to it

The function will write the data to the DMA Tx buffer, and then the data will be transmitted automatically.

```c
i2s_write(I2S_NUM, samples_data, ((bits+8)/16)*SAMPLE_PER_CYCLE*4, i2s_bytes_write, 100);
```

To retrieve received data, use the function `i2s_read()`. It will retrieve the data from the DMA Rx buffer, once the data is received by the I2S controller.

```c
i2s_read(I2S_NUM, data_recv, ((bits+8)/16)*SAMPLE_PER_CYCLE*4, i2s_bytes_read, 100);
```

You can temporarily stop the I2S driver by calling the function `i2s_stop()`, which will disable the I2S Tx/Rx units until the function `i2s_start()` is called. If the function `i2s_driver_install` is used, the driver will start up automatically eliminating the need to call `i2s_start()`.

**Deleting the Driver** If the established communication is no longer required, the driver can be removed to free allocated resources by calling `i2s_driver_uninstall()`.

**Application Example**

A code example for the I2S driver can be found in the directory `peripherals/i2s`. In addition, there are two short configuration examples for the I2S driver. In addition, there is a short configuration examples for the I2S driver.
**I2S configuration**  Example for general usage.

```c
#include "driver/i2s.h"

static const int i2s_num = 0; // i2s port number

i2s_config_t i2s_config = {
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_16BIT,
    .communication_format = I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S,
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_16BIT,
    .communication_format = I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S,
    .tx_desc_auto_clear = false,
    .dma_buf_count = 8,
    .dma_buf_len = 64,
    .use_apll = false,
    .intr_alloc_flags = ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL1 // Interrupt level 1, default 0
};

static const i2s_pin_config_t pin_config = {
    .bck_io_num = 4,
    .ws_io_num = 5,
    .data_out_num = 18,
    .data_in_num = I2S_PIN_NOCHANGE
};

i2s_driver_install(i2s_num, &i2s_config, 0, NULL); //install and start i2s driver
i2s_set_pin(i2s_num, &pin_config);

/* You can reset parameters by calling 'i2s_set_clk'
 * The low 16 bits are the valid data bits in one chan and the high 16 bits are
 * the total bits in one chan. If high 16 bits is smaller than low 16 bits, it will
 * be set to a same value as low 16 bits.
 */
uint32_t bits_cfg = (I2S_BITS_PER_CHAN_32BIT << 16) | I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_16BIT;
i2s_set_clk(i2s_num, 22050, bits_cfg, I2S_CHANNEL_STEREO);
...
i2s_driver_uninstall(i2s_num); //stop & destroy i2s driver
```

**Configuring I2S to use internal DAC for analog output**

```c
#include "driver/i2s.h"
#include "freertos/queue.h"

static const int i2s_num = 0; // i2s port number

static const i2s_config_t i2s_config = {
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = 16,
    .communication_format = I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S,
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = 16,
    .communication_format = I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S,
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_DAC_BUILT_IN,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = 16,
    .communication_format = I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S,
    .tx_desc_auto_clear = false,
    .dma_buf_count = 8,
    .dma_buf_len = 64,
    .use_apll = false,
    .intr_alloc_flags = 0 /* default interrupt priority */
};
...
```

(下页继续)
i2s_driver_install(i2s_num, &i2s_config, 0, NULL);  //install and start i2s

i2s_set_pin(i2s_num, NULL);  //for internal DAC, this will enable both of the
//internal channels

//You can call i2s_set_dac_mode to set built-in DAC output mode.
//i2s_set_dac_mode(I2S_DAC_CHANNEL_BOTH_EN);

i2s_set_sample_rates(i2s_num, 22050);  //set sample rates

i2s_driver_uninstall(i2s_num);  //stop & destroy i2s driver

---

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/driver/include/driver/i2s.h

**Functions**

**esp_err_t i2s_set_pin(i2s_port_t i2s_num, const i2s_pin_config_t *pin)**

Set I2S pin number.

Inside the pin configuration structure, set I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE for any pin where the current configuration should not be changed.

**Note**  The I2S peripheral output signals can be connected to multiple GPIO pads. However, the I2S peripheral input signal can only be connected to one GPIO pad.

**Parameters**

- i2s_num: I2S port number
- pin: I2S Pin structure, or NULL to set 2-channel 8-bit internal DAC pin configuration (GPIO25 & GPIO26)

**Note**  if *pin is set as NULL, this function will initialize both of the built-in DAC channels by default. if you don’t want this to happen and you want to initialize only one of the DAC channels, you can call i2s_set_dac_mode instead.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL IO error

**esp_err_t i2s_set_pdm_rx_down_sample(i2s_port_t i2s_num, i2s_pdm_dsr_t downsamplerate)**

Set PDM mode down-sample rate In PDM RX mode, there would be 2 rounds of downsampling process in hardware. In the first downsampling process, the sampling number can be 16 or 8. In the second downsampling process, the sampling number is fixed as 8. So the clock frequency in PDM RX mode would be (fpcm * 64) or (fpcm * 128) accordingly.

**Note**  After calling this function, it would call i2s_set_clk inside to update the clock frequency. Please call this function after I2S driver has been initialized.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Out of memory

**Parameters**

- i2s_num: I2S port number
- downsamplerate: I2S RX down sample rate for PDM mode.

**esp_err_t i2s_set_pdm_tx_up_sample(i2s_port_t i2s_num, const i2s_pdm_tx_upsample_cfg_t *upsample_cfg)**

Set TX PDM mode up-sample rate.
Note If you have set PDM mode while calling ‘i2s_driver_install’, default PDM TX upsample parameters have already been set, no need to call this function again if you don’t have to change the default configuration

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Out of memory

Parameters
- i2s_num: I2S port number
- upsample_cfg: Set I2S PDM up-sample rate configuration

```c
esp_err_t i2s_driver_install(i2s_port_t i2s_num, const i2s_config_t *i2s_config, int queue_size, void *i2s_queue)
```

Install and start I2S driver.

This function must be called before any I2S driver read/write operations.

Parameters
- i2s_num: I2S port number
- i2s_config: I2S configurations - see i2s_config_t struct
- queue_size: I2S event queue size/depth.
- i2s_queue: I2S event queue handle, if set NULL, driver will not use an event queue.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Out of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Current I2S port is in use

```c
esp_err_t i2s_driver_uninstall(i2s_port_t i2s_num)
```

Uninstall I2S driver.

Parameters
- i2s_num: I2S port number

```c
esp_err_t i2s_write(i2s_port_t i2s_num, const void *src, size_t size, size_t *bytes_written, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Write data to I2S DMA transmit buffer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- i2s_num: I2S port number
- src: Source address to write from
- size: Size of data in bytes
- [out] bytes_written: Number of bytes written, if timeout, the result will be less than the size passed in.
- ticks_to_wait: TX buffer wait timeout in RTOS ticks. If this many ticks pass without space becoming available in the DMA transmit buffer, then the function will return (note that if the data is written to the DMA buffer in pieces, the overall operation may still take longer than this timeout.) Pass portMAX_DELAY for no timeout.

```c
esp_err_t i2s_write_expand(i2s_port_t i2s_num, const void *src, size_t size, size_t src_bits, size_t aim_bits, size_t *bytes_written, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Write data to I2S DMA transmit buffer while expanding the number of bits per sample. For example, expanding 16-bit PCM to 32-bit PCM. Format of the data in source buffer is determined by the I2S configuration (see i2s_config_t).
### Chapter 2. API 参考

#### Parameters
- `i2s_num`: I2S port number
- `src`: Source address to write from
- `size`: Size of data in bytes
- `src_bits`: Source audio bit
- `aim_bits`: Bit wanted, no more than 32, and must be greater than `src_bits`
- `[out] bytes_written`: Number of bytes written, if timeout, the result will be less than the size passed in.
- `ticks_to_wait`: TX buffer wait timeout in RTOS ticks. If this many ticks pass without space becoming available in the DMA transmit buffer, then the function will return (note that if the data is written to the DMA buffer in pieces, the overall operation may still take longer than this timeout.) Pass `portMAX_DELAY` for no timeout.

#### Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

```c
esp_err_t i2s_read (i2s_port_t i2s_num, void *dest, size_t size, size_t *bytes_read, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Read data from I2S DMA receive buffer.

**Note** If the built-in ADC mode is enabled, we should call `i2s_adc_enable` and `i2s_adc_disable` around the whole reading process, to prevent the data getting corrupted.

#### Parameters
- `i2s_num`: I2S port number
- `dest`: Destination address to read into
- `size`: Size of data in bytes
- `[out] bytes_read`: Number of bytes read, if timeout, bytes read will be less than the size passed in.
- `ticks_to_wait`: RX buffer wait timeout in RTOS ticks. If this many ticks pass without bytes becoming available in the DMA receive buffer, then the function will return (note that if data is read from the DMA buffer in pieces, the overall operation may still take longer than this timeout.) Pass `portMAX_DELAY` for no timeout.

```c
esp_err_t i2s_set_sample_rates (i2s_port_t i2s_num, uint32_t rate)
```

Set sample rate used for I2S RX and TX.

The bit clock rate is determined by the sample rate and `i2s_config_t` configuration parameters (number of channels, `bits_per_sample`).

\[
\text{bit\_clock} = \text{rate} \times (\text{number\ of\ channels}) \times \text{bits\_per\ sample}
\]

#### Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Out of memory

#### Parameters
- `i2s_num`: I2S port number
- `rate`: I2S sample rate (ex: 8000, 44100…)

```c
esp_err_t i2s_stop (i2s_port_t i2s_num)
```

Stop I2S driver.

There is no need to call `i2s_stop()` before calling `i2s_driver_uninstall()`.

Disables I2S TX/RX, until `i2s_start()` is called.

#### Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

#### Parameters
Chapter 2. API

**• i2s_num**: I2S port number

```c
esp_err_t i2s_start (i2s_port_t i2s_num)
```

Start I2S driver.

It is not necessary to call this function after `i2s_driver_install()` (it is started automatically), however it is necessary to call it after `i2s_stop()`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `i2s_num`: I2S port number

```c
esp_err_t i2s_zero_dma_buffer (i2s_port_t i2s_num)
```

Zero the contents of the TX DMA buffer.

Pushes zero-byte samples into the TX DMA buffer, until it is full.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `i2s_num`: I2S port number

```c
esp_err_t i2s_set_clk (i2s_port_t i2s_num, uint32_t rate, uint32_t bits_cfg, i2s_channel_t ch)
```

Set clock & bit width used for I2S RX and TX.

Similar to `i2s_set_sample_rates()`, but also sets bit width.

1. stop i2s;
2. calculate mclk, bck, bck_factor
3. malloc dma buffer;
4. start i2s

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Out of memory

**Parameters**
- `i2s_num`: I2S port number
- `rate`: I2S sample rate (ex: 8000, 44100…)
- `bits_cfg`: I2S bits configuration the low 16 bits is for data bits per sample in one channel (see `i2s_bits_per_sample_t`) the high 16 bits is for total bits in one channel (see `i2s_bits_per_chan_t`) high 16bits =0 means same as the bits per sample.
- `ch`: I2S channel, (I2S_CHANNEL_MONO, I2S_CHANNEL_STEREO or specific channel in TDM mode)

```c
float i2s_get_clk (i2s_port_t i2s_num)
```

get clock set on particular port number.

**Return**
- actual clock set by i2s driver

**Parameters**
- `i2s_num`: I2S port number

```c
esp_err_t i2s_set_adc_mode (adc_unit_t adc_unit, adc1_channel_t adc1_channel, adc2_channel)
```

Set built-in ADC mode for I2S DMA, this function will initialize ADC pad, and set ADC parameters.

**Note** In this mode, the ADC maximum sampling rate is 150KHz. Set the sampling rate through `i2s_config_t`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `adc_unit`: ADC unit
- `adc1_channel`: ADC1 channel
- `adc2_channel`: ADC2 channel

---

Espressif Systems 715 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
• adc_unit: SAR ADC unit index
• adc_channel: ADC channel index

`esp_err_t i2s_adc_enable(i2s_port_t i2s_num)`
Start to use I2S built-in ADC mode.

**Note** This function would acquire the lock of ADC to prevent the data getting corrupted during the I2S peripheral being used to do fully continuous ADC sampling.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver state error

**Parameters**
- `i2s_num`: i2s port index

`esp_err_t i2s_adc_disable(i2s_port_t i2s_num)`
Stop to use I2S built-in ADC mode.

**Note** This function would release the lock of ADC so that other tasks can use ADC.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver state error

**Parameters**
- `i2s_num`: i2s port index

`esp_err_t i2s_set_dac_mode(i2s_dac_mode_t dac_mode)`
Set I2S dac mode, I2S built-in DAC is disabled by default.

**Note** Built-in DAC functions are only supported on I2S0 for current ESP32 chip. If either of the built-in DAC channel are enabled, the other one cannot be used as RTC DAC function at the same time.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `dac_mode`: DAC mode configurations - see i2s_dac_mode_t

**Structures**

```c
struct i2s_pdm_tx_upsample_cfg_t
I2S PDM up-sample rate configuration.

**Note** TX PDM can only be set to the following two upsampling rate configurations: 1: fp = 960, fs = sample_rate / 100, in this case, Fpdm = 128*48000 2: fp = 960, fs = 480, in this case, Fpdm = 128*Fpcm = 128*sample_rate If the pdm receiver do not care the pdm serial clock, it’s recommended set Fpdm = 128*48000. Otherwise, the second configuration should be applied.
```

**Public Members**

```c
int sample_rate
I2S PDM sample rate

int fp
I2S PDM TX upsampling parameter. Normally it should be set to 960

int fs
I2S PDM TX upsampling parameter. When it is set to 480, the pdm clock frequency Fpdm = 128 * sample_rate, when it is set to sample_rate / 100, Fpdm will be fixed to 128*48000
```

`struct i2s_pin_config_t`
I2S pin number for i2s_set_pin.
Public Members

```c
int mck_io_num
    MCK in out pin. Note that ESP32 supports setting MCK on GPIO0/GPIO1/GPIO3 only
```

```c
int bck_io_num
    BCK in out pin
```

```c
int ws_io_num
    WS in out pin
```

```c
int data_out_num
    DATA out pin
```

```c
int data_in_num
    DATA in pin
```

```c
struct i2s_driver_config_t
```
I2S driver configuration parameters.

Public Members

```c
i2s_mode_t mode
    I2S work mode
```

```c
uint32_t sample_rate
    I2S sample rate
```

```c
i2s_bits_per_sample_t bits_per_sample
    I2S sample bits in one channel
```

```c
i2s_channel_fmt_t channel_format
    I2S channel format.
```

```c
i2s_comm_format_t communication_format
    I2S communication format
```

```c
int intr_alloc_flags
    Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info
```

```c
int dma_buf_count
    I2S DMA Buffer Count
```

```c
int dma_buf_len
    I2S DMA Buffer Length
```

```c
bool use_apll
    I2S using APLL as main I2S clock, enable it to get accurate clock
```

```c
bool tx_desc_auto_clear
    I2S auto clear tx descriptor if there is underflow condition (helps in avoiding noise in case of data unavailability)
```

```c
int fixed_mclk
    I2S using fixed MCLK output. If use_apll = true and fixed_mclk > 0, then the clock output for i2s is fixed and equal to the fixed_mclk value. If fixed_mclk set, mclk_multiple won’t take effect
```

```c
i2s_mclk_multiple_t/mclk_multiple
    The multiple of I2S master clock(MCLK) to sample rate
```

```c
i2s_bits_per_chan_t/bits_per_chan
    I2S total bits in one channel, only take effect when larger than ‘bits_per_sample’, default ‘0’ means equal to ‘bits_per_sample’
```
struct i2s_event_t
   Event structure used in I2S event queue.

Public Members

\texttt{i2s\_event\_type\_t \texttt{type}}
   I2S event type

\texttt{size\_t \texttt{size}}
   I2S data size for I2S\_DATA event

Macros

\texttt{I2S\_PIN\_NO\_CHANGE}
   Use in \texttt{i2s\_pin\_config\_t} for pins which should not be changed

\texttt{I2S\_PDM\_DEFAULT\_UPSAMPLE\_CONFIG(rate)}
   Default I2S PDM Up-Sampling Rate configuration.

Type Definitions

\texttt{typedef \texttt{i2s\_driver\_config\_t} \texttt{i2s\_config\_t}}

\texttt{typedef \texttt{intr\_handle\_t} \texttt{i2s\_isr\_handle\_t}}

Enumerations

\texttt{enum i2s\_port\_t}
   I2S port number, the max port number is (I2S\_NUM\_MAX -1).
   
   \texttt{Values:}
   \begin{itemize}
   \item \texttt{I2S\_NUM\_0 = 0}  
      I2S port 0
   \item \texttt{I2S\_NUM\_1 = 1}  
      I2S port 1
   \item \texttt{I2S\_NUM\_MAX}  
      I2S port max
   \end{itemize}

\texttt{enum i2s\_event\_type\_t}
   I2S event queue types.
   
   \texttt{Values:}
   \begin{itemize}
   \item \texttt{I2S\_EVENT\_DMA\_ERROR}
   \item \texttt{I2S\_EVENT\_TX\_DONE}
      I2S DMA finish sent 1 buffer
   \item \texttt{I2S\_EVENT\_RX\_DONE}
      I2S DMA finish received 1 buffer
   \item \texttt{I2S\_EVENT\_TX\_Q\_OVF}
      I2S DMA sent queue overflow
   \item \texttt{I2S\_EVENT\_RX\_Q\_OVF}
      I2S DMA receive queue overflow
   \item \texttt{I2S\_EVENT\_MAX}
      I2S event max index
   \end{itemize}

Header File

- components/hal/include/hal/i2s_types.h
Enumerations

enum i2s_bits_per_sample_t
I2S bit width per sample.

Values:

I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_8BIT = 8
data bit-width: 8

I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_16BIT = 16
data bit-width: 16

I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_24BIT = 24
data bit-width: 24

I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_32BIT = 32
data bit-width: 32

enum i2s_bits_per_chan_t
I2S bit width per chan.

Values:

I2S_BITS_PER_CHAN_DEFAULT = (0)
channel bit-width equals to data bit-width

I2S_BITS_PER_CHAN_8BIT = (8)
channel bit-width: 8

I2S_BITS_PER_CHAN_16BIT = (16)
channel bit-width: 16

I2S_BITS_PER_CHAN_24BIT = (24)
channel bit-width: 24

I2S_BITS_PER_CHAN_32BIT = (32)
channel bit-width: 32

enum i2s_channel_t
I2S channel.

Values:

I2S_CHANNEL_MONO = (0x01 << 31) | 0x03
I2S channel (mono), two channel enabled. In this mode, you only need to send one channel data but the fifo will copy same data for another channel automatically, then both channels will transmit same data. The highest bit is for differentiating I2S_CHANNEL_STEREO since they both use two channels

I2S_CHANNEL_STEREO = 0x03
I2S channel (stereo), two channel enabled. In this mode, two channels will transmit different data.

enum i2s_comm_format_t
I2S communication standard format.

Values:

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S = 0X01
I2S communication I2S Philips standard, data launch at second BCK

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_MSB = 0X02
I2S communication MSB alignment standard, data launch at first BCK

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_SHORT = 0x04
PCM Short standard, also known as DSP mode. The period of synchronization signal (WS) is 1 bck cycle.

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_LONG = 0x0C
PCM Long standard. The period of synchronization signal (WS) is channel_bit*bck cycles.
Chapter 2. API

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_MAX

standard max

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S = 0x01

I2S communication format I2S, correspond to I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_MSB = 0x01

I2S format MSB, (I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S | I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_MSB) correspond to I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_LSB = 0x02

I2S format LSB, (I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S | I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_LSB) correspond to I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_MSB

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM = 0x04

I2S communication format PCM, correspond to I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_SHORT

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_SHORT = 0x04

PCM Short, (I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM | I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_SHORT) correspond to I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_SHORT

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_LONG = 0x08

PCM Long, (I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM | I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_LONG) correspond to I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_LONG

enum i2s_channel_fmt_t

I2S channel format type.

Values:

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_RIGHT_LEFT

Separated left and right channel

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ALL_RIGHT

Load right channel data in both two channels

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ALL_LEFT

Load left channel data in both two channels

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ONLY_RIGHT

Only load data in right channel (mono mode)

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ONLY_LEFT

Only load data in left channel (mono mode)

enum i2s_mode_t

I2S Mode.

Values:

I2S_MODE_MASTER = (0x1 « 0)

Master mode

I2S_MODE_SLAVE = (0x1 « 1)

Slave mode

I2S_MODE_TX = (0x1 « 2)

TX mode

I2S_MODE_RX = (0x1 « 3)

RX mode

I2S_MODE_DAC_BUILT_IN = (0x1 « 4)

Output I2S data to built-in DAC, no matter the data format is 16bit or 32 bit, the DAC module will only take the 8bits from MSB

I2S_MODE_ADC_BUILT_IN = (0x1 « 5)

Input I2S data from built-in ADC, each data can be 12-bit width at most
**Chapter 2. API**

**I2S_MODE_PDM** = (0x1 « 6)
I2S PDM mode

**enum i2s_clock_src_t**
I2S source clock.

*Values:*

- **I2S_CLK_D2CLK** = 0
  Clock from PLL_D2_CLK(160M)

- **I2S_CLK_APLL**
  Clock from APLL

**enum i2s_mclk_multiple_t**
The multiple of mclk to sample rate.

*Values:*

- **I2S_MCLK_MULTIPLE_DEFAULT** = 0
  Default value. mclk = sample_rate * 256

- **I2S_MCLK_MULTIPLE_128** = 128
  mclk = sample_rate * 128

- **I2S_MCLK_MULTIPLE_256** = 256
  mclk = sample_rate * 256

- **I2S_MCLK_MULTIPLE_384** = 384
  mclk = sample_rate * 384

**enum i2s_dac_mode_t**
I2S DAC mode for i2s_set_dac_mode.

*Note* Built-in DAC functions are only supported on I2S0 for current ESP32 chip.

*Values:*

- **I2S_DAC_CHANNEL_DISABLE** = 0
  Disable I2S built-in DAC signals

- **I2S_DAC_CHANNEL_RIGHT_EN** = 1
  Enable I2S built-in DAC right channel, maps to DAC channel 1 on GPIO25

- **I2S_DAC_CHANNEL_LEFT_EN** = 2
  Enable I2S built-in DAC left channel, maps to DAC channel 2 on GPIO26

- **I2S_DAC_CHANNEL_BOTH_EN** = 0x3
  Enable both of the I2S built-in DAC channels.

- **I2S_DAC_CHANNEL_MAX** = 0x4
  I2S built-in DAC mode max index

**enum i2s_pdm_dsr_t**
I2S PDM RX downsample mode.

*Values:*

- **I2S_PDM_DSR_8S** = 0
  downsampling number is 8 for PDM RX mode

- **I2S_PDM_DSR_16S**
  downsampling number is 16 for PDM RX mode

- **I2S_PDM_DSR_MAX**

**enum i2s_pdm_sig_scale_t**

*Values:*

- **I2S_PDM_SIG_SCALING_DIV_2** = 0
  I2S TX PDM sigmadelta signal scaling: /2
Chapter 2. API 参考

I2S_PDM_SIG_SCALING_MUL_1 = 1
I2S TX PDM sigmadelta signal scaling: x1

I2S_PDM_SIG_SCALING_MUL_2 = 2
I2S TX PDM sigmadelta signal scaling: x2

I2S_PDM_SIG_SCALING_MUL_4 = 3
I2S TX PDM sigmadelta signal scaling: x4

2.3.7 LCD

Introduction

ESP chips can generate various kinds of timings that needed by common LCDs on the market, like SPI LCD, I2C LCD, RGB LCD, I2C LCD, etc. The esp_lcd component is officially to support those LCDs with a group of universal APIs across chips.

Functional Overview

In esp_lcd, an LCD panel is represented by esp_lcd_panel_handle_t, which plays the role of an abstract frame buffer, regardless of the frame memory is allocated inside ESP chip or in external LCD controller. Based on the location of the frame buffer, the LCD panel allocation functions are mainly grouped into the following categories:

• RGB LCD panel - is simply based on a group of specific synchronous signals indicating where to start and stop a frame.
• Controller based LCD panel involves multiple steps to get a panel handle, like bus allocation, IO device registration and controller driver install.

After we get the LCD handle, the remaining LCD operations are the same for different LCD interfaces and vendors.

Application Example

LCD examples are located under: peripherals/lcd:

• Jpeg decoding and LCD display - peripherals/lcd/tjgpd
• LVGL porting and animation UI - peripherals/lcd/lvgl

API Reference

Header File

• components/hal/include/hal/lcd_types.h

Enumerations

enum lcd_clock_source_t
LCD clock source.

Note User should select the clock source based on the real requirement:

Values:

LCD_CLK_SRC_PLL160M
Select PLL160M as the source clock

LCD_CLK_SRC_APLL
Select APLL as the source clock

LCD_CLK_SRC_XTAL
Select XTAL as the source clock
Header File

- components/esp_lcd/include/esp_lcd_types.h

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_lcd_panel_io_t* esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t
Type of LCD panel IO handle

typedef struct esp_lcd_panel_t* esp_lcd_panel_handle_t
Type of LCD panel handle

Enumerations

enum esp_lcd_color_space_t
LCD color space type definition.

Values:

ESP_LCD_COLOR_SPACE_RGB
Color space: RGB

ESP_LCD_COLOR_SPACE_BGR
Color space: BGR

ESP_LCD_COLOR_SPACE_MONOCHROME
Color space: monochrome

Header File

- components/esp_lcd/include/esp_lcd_panel_io.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_io_tx_param(esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t io, int lcd_cmd, const void *param, size_t param_size)
Transmit LCD command and corresponding parameters.

Note Commands sent by this function are short, so they are sent using polling transactions. The function does not return before the command transfer is completed. If any queued transactions sent by esp_lcd_panel_io_tx_color() are still pending when this function is called, this function will wait until they are finished and the queue is empty before sending the command(s).

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- [in] io: LCD panel IO handle, which is created by other factory API like esp_lcd_new_panel_io_spi()
- [in] lcd_cmd: The specific LCD command
- [in] param: Buffer that holds the command specific parameters, set to NULL if no parameter is needed for the command
- [in] param_size: Size of param in memory, in bytes, set to zero if no parameter is needed for the command

esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_io_tx_color(esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t io, int lcd_cmd, const void *color, size_t color_size)
Transmit LCD RGB data.

Note This function will package the command and RGB data into a transaction, and push into a queue. The real transmission is performed in the background (DMA+interrupt). The caller should take care of the lifecycle of the color buffer. Recycling of color buffer should be done in the callback on_color_trans_done().

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success
Parameters
- [in] io: LCD panel IO handle, which is created by factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_io_spi()`
- [in] lcd_cmd: The specific LCD command
- [in] color: Buffer that holds the RGB color data
- [in] color_size: Size of color in memory, in bytes

`esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_io_del(esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t io)`
Destroy LCD panel IO handle (deinitialize panel and free all corresponding resource)

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- [in] io: LCD panel IO handle, which is created by factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_io_spi()`

`esp_err_t esp_lcd_new_panel_io_spi(esp_lcd_spi_bus_handle_t bus, const esp_lcd_panel_io_spi_config_t *io_config, esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t *ret_io)`
Create LCD panel IO handle, for SPI interface.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- [in] bus: SPI bus handle
- [in] io_config: IO configuration, for SPI interface
- [out] ret_io: Returned IO handle

`esp_err_t esp_lcd_new_panel_io_i2c(esp_lcd_i2c_bus_handle_t bus, const esp_lcd_panel_io_i2c_config_t *io_config, esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t *ret_io)`
Create LCD panel IO handle, for I2C interface.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- [in] bus: I2C bus handle
- [in] io_config: IO configuration, for I2C interface
- [out] ret_io: Returned IO handle

`esp_err_t esp_lcd_new_i80_bus(const esp_lcd_i80_bus_config_t *bus_config, esp_lcd_i80_bus_handle_t *ret_bus)`
Create Intel 8080 bus handle.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if no free bus is available
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- [in] bus_config: Bus configuration
- [out] ret_bus: Returned bus handle

`esp_err_t esp_lcd_del_i80_bus(esp_lcd_i80_bus_handle_t bus)`
Destroy Intel 8080 bus handle.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if there still be some device attached to the bus
• ESP_OK on success

Parameters
• [in] bus: Intel 8080 bus handle, created by esp_lcd_new_i80_bus()

`esp_err_t esp_lcd_new_panel_io_i80(esp_lcd_i80_bus_handle_t bus, const esp_lcd_panel_io_i80_config_t *io_config, esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t *ret_io)`

Create LCD panel IO, for Intel 8080 interface.

Return
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
• ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if some configuration can’t be satisfied, e.g. pixel clock out of the range
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
• ESP_OK on success

Parameters
• [in] bus: Intel 8080 bus handle, created by esp_lcd_new_i80_bus()
• [in] io_config: IO configuration, for i80 interface
• [out] ret_io: Returned panel IO handle

Structures

`struct esp_lcd_panel_io_event_data_t`  
Type of LCD panel IO event data.

`struct esp_lcd_panel_io_spi_config_t`  
Panel IO configuration structure, for SPI interface.

Public Members

int cs_gpio_num  
GPIO used for CS line

int dc_gpio_num  
GPIO used to select the D/C line, set this to -1 if the D/C line not controlled by manually pulling high/low GPIO

int spi_mode  
Traditional SPI mode (0~3)

unsigned int pclk_hz  
Frequency of pixel clock

size_t trans_queue_depth  
Size of internal transaction queue

`esp_lcd_panel_io_color_trans_done_cb_t on_color_trans_done`  
Callback invoked when color data transfer has finished

void *user_ctx  
User private data, passed directly to on_color_trans_done’s user_ctx

int lcd_cmd_bits  
Bit-width of LCD command

int lcd_param_bits  
Bit-width of LCD parameter

unsigned int dc_as_cmd_phase : 1  
D/C line value is encoded into SPI transaction command phase

unsigned int dc_low_on_data : 1  
If this flag is enabled, DC line = 0 means transfer data, DC line = 1 means transfer command; vice versa
Chapter 2. API

unsigned int octal_mode : 1
    transmit with octal mode (8 data lines), this mode is used to simulate Intel 8080 timing

struct esp_lcd_panel_io_i2c_config_t

Public Members

uint32_t dev_addr
    I2C device address

estp_lcd_panel_io_color_trans_done_cb_t on_color_trans_done
    Callback invoked when color data transfer has finished

void *user_ctx
    User private data, passed directly to on_color_trans_done’s user_ctx

size_t control_phase_bytes
    I2C LCD panel will encode control information (e.g. D/C selection) into control phase, in several bytes

unsigned int dc_bit_offset
    Offset of the D/C selection bit in control phase

int lcd_cmd_bits
    Bit-width of LCD command

int lcd_param_bits
    Bit-width of LCD parameter

unsigned int dc_low_on_data : 1
    If this flag is enabled, DC line = 0 means transfer data, DC line = 1 means transfer command; vice versa

struct esp_lcd_i80_bus_config_t
    LCD Intel 8080 bus configuration structure.

Public Members

int dc_gpio_num
    GPIO used for D/C line

int wr_gpio_num
    GPIO used for WR line

clock_source_t clk_src
    Clock source for the 80 LCD peripheral

int data_gpio_nums[(24)]
    GPIOs used for data lines

size_t bus_width
    Number of data lines, 8 or 16

size_t max_transfer_bytes
    Maximum transfer size, this determines the length of internal DMA link

struct esp_lcd_panel_io_i80_config_t
    Panel IO configuration structure, for intel 8080 interface.

Public Members

int cs_gpio_num
    GPIO used for CS line, set to -1 will declaim exclusively use of I80 bus

unsigned int pclk_hz
    Frequency of pixel clock
size_t\ trans\_queue\_depth
Transaction\ queue\ size,\ larger\ queue,\ higher\ throughput

\texttt{esp\_lcd\_panel\_io\_color\_trans\_done\_cb\_t} \ on\_color\_trans\_done
Callback\ invoked\ when\ color\ data\ was\ transferred\ done

\textbf{void \*user\_ctx}
User\ private\ data,\ passed\ directly\ to\ on\_color\_trans\_done’\ s\ user\_ctx

\textbf{int \ lcdn\_cmd\_bits}
Bit-width\ of\ LCD\ command

\textbf{int \ lcdn\_param\_bits}
Bit-width\ of\ LCD\ parameter

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ dc\_idle\_level}: 1
Level\ of\ DC\ line\ in\ IDLE\ phase

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ dc\_cmd\_level}: 1
Level\ of\ DC\ line\ in\ CMD\ phase

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ dc\_dummy\_level}: 1
Level\ of\ DC\ line\ in\ DUMMY\ phase

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ dc\_data\_level}: 1
Level\ of\ DC\ line\ in\ DATA\ phase

\textbf{struct \ esp\_lcd\_panel\_io\_i80\_config\_t:\[anonymous\]dc\_levels}
Each\ i80\ device\ might\ have\ its\ own\ D/C\ control\ logic

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ cs\_active\_high}: 1
If\ set,\ a\ high\ level\ of\ CS\ line\ will\ select\ the\ device,\ otherwise,\ CS\ line\ is\ low\ level\ active

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ reverse\_color\_bits}: 1
Reverse\ the\ data\ bits,\ D[N:0] \&gt; D[0:N]

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ swap\_color\_bytes}: 1
Swap\ adjacent\ two\ color\ bytes

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ pclk\_active\_neg}: 1
The\ display\ will\ write\ data\ lines\ when\ there’s\ a\ falling\ edge\ on\ WR\ signal\ (a.k.a\ the\ PCLK)

\textbf{unsigned\ int \ pclk\_idle\_low}: 1
The\ WR\ signal\ (a.k.a\ the\ PCLK)\ stays\ at\ low\ level\ in\ IDLE\ phase

\textbf{Type\ Definitions}

\textbf{typedef} \ void \*\texttt{esp\_lcd\_spi\_bus\_handle\_t}
Type\ of\ LCD\ SPI\ bus\ handle

\textbf{typedef} \ void \*\texttt{esp\_lcd\_i2c\_bus\_handle\_t}
Type\ of\ LCD\ I2C\ bus\ handle

\textbf{typedef} \ struct \ esp\_lcd\_i80\_bus\_t \*\texttt{esp\_lcd\_i80\_bus\_handle\_t}
Type\ of\ LCD\ intel\ 8080\ bus\ handle

\textbf{typedef} \ bool (*\texttt{esp\_lcd\_panel\_io\_color\_trans\_done\_cb\_t})(\texttt{esp\_lcd\_panel\_io\_handle\_t}\ panel\_io,\ 
\texttt{esp\_lcd\_panel\_io\_event\_data\_t}\ *edata,\ \texttt{void} \*\texttt{user\_ctx})

Declare\ the\ prototype\ of\ the\ function\ that\ will\ be\ invoked\ when\ panel\ IO\ finishes\ transferring\ color\ data.

\textbf{Return} Whether\ a\ high\ priority\ task\ has\ been\ waken\ up\ by\ this\ function

\textbf{Parameters}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{[in]} \texttt{panel\_io}: LCD\ panel\ IO\ handle,\ which\ is\ created\ by\ factory\ API\ like\ 
  \texttt{esp\_lcd\_new\_panel\_io\_spi()}
  \item \textbf{[in]} \texttt{edata}: Panel\ IO\ event\ data,\ fed\ by\ driver
  \item \textbf{[in]} \texttt{user\_ctx}: User\ data,\ passed\ from\ \texttt{esp\_lcd\_panel\_io\_xxx\_config\_t}
\end{itemize}
Header File

- components/esp_lcd/include/esp_lcd_panel_ops.h

Functions

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_reset (esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel)**

Reset LCD panel.

**Note** Panel reset must be called before attempting to initialize the panel using `esp_lcd_panel_init()`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- [in] panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_init (esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel)**

Initialize LCD panel.

**Note** Before calling this function, make sure the LCD panel has finished the reset stage by `esp_lcd_panel_reset()`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- [in] panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_del (esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel)**

Deinitialize the LCD panel.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- [in] panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_draw_bitmap (esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel, int x_start, int y_start, int x_end, int y_end, const void* color_data)**

Draw bitmap on LCD panel.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- [in] panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`
- [in] x_start: Start index on x-axis (x_start included)
- [in] y_start: Start index on y-axis (y_start included)
- [in] x_end: End index on x-axis (x_end not included)
- [in] y_end: End index on y-axis (y_end not included)
- [in] color_data: RGB color data that will be dumped to the specific window range

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_mirror (esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel, bool mirror_x, bool mirror_y)**

Mirror the LCD panel on specific axis.

**Note** Combined with `esp_lcd_panel_swap_xy()`, one can realize screen rotation

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if this function is not supported by the panel

**Parameters**
- [in] panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`
- [in] mirror_x: Whether the panel will be mirrored about the x axis
- [in] mirror_y: Whether the panel will be mirrored about the y axis
**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_swap_xy(esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel, bool swap_axes)**

Swap/Exchange x and y axis.

**Note** Combined with `esp_lcd_panel_mirror()`, one can realize screen rotation

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if this function is not supported by the panel

**Parameters**
- **[in]** panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`
- **[in]** swap_axes: Whether to swap the x and y axis

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_set_gap(esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel, int x_gap, int y_gap)**

Set extra gap in x and y axis.

The gap is the space (in pixels) between the left/top sides of the LCD panel and the first row/column respectively of the actual contents displayed.

**Note** Setting a gap is useful when positioning or centering a frame that is smaller than the LCD.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- **[in]** panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`
- **[in]** x_gap: Extra gap on x axis, in pixels
- **[in]** y_gap: Extra gap on y axis, in pixels

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_invert_color(esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel, bool invert_color_data)**

Invert the color (bit-wise invert the color data line)

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- **[in]** panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`
- **[in]** invert_color_data: Whether to invert the color data

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_panel_disp_off(esp_lcd_panel_handle_t panel, bool off)**

Turn off the display.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if this function is not supported by the panel

**Parameters**
- **[in]** panel: LCD panel handle, which is created by other factory API like `esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789()`
- **[in]** off: Whether to turn off the screen

### Header File
- components/esp_lcd/include/esp_lcd_panel_rgb.h

### Header File
- components/esp_lcd/include/esp_lcd_panel_vendor.h

### Functions

**esp_err_t esp_lcd_new_panel_st7789(const esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t io, const esp_lcd_panel_dev_config_t *panel_dev_config, esp_lcd_panel_handle_t *ret_panel)**

Create LCD panel for model ST7789.
Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- [in] io: LCD panel IO handle
- [in] panel_dev_config: general panel device configuration
- [out] ret_panel: Returned LCD panel handle

```c
esp_err_t esp_lcd_new_panel_nt35510(const esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t io, const esp_lcd_panel_dev_config_t *panel_dev_config, esp_lcd_panel_handle_t *ret_panel)
```

Create LCD panel for model NT35510.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- [in] io: LCD panel IO handle
- [in] panel_dev_config: general panel device configuration
- [out] ret_panel: Returned LCD panel handle

```c
esp_err_t esp_lcd_new_panel_ssd1306(const esp_lcd_panel_io_handle_t io, const esp_lcd_panel_dev_config_t *panel_dev_config, esp_lcd_panel_handle_t *ret_panel)
```

Create LCD panel for model SSD1306.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- [in] io: LCD panel IO handle
- [in] panel_dev_config: general panel device configuration
- [out] ret_panel: Returned LCD panel handle

Structures

```c
struct esp_lcd_panel_dev_config_t
```

Configuration structure for panel device.

Public Members

```c
int reset_gpio_num
```

GPIO used to reset the LCD panel, set to -1 if it’s not used

```c
esp_lcd_color_space_t color_space
```

Set the color space used by the LCD panel

```c
unsigned int bits_per_pixel
```

Color depth, in bpp

```c
unsigned int reset_active_high: 1
```

Setting this if the panel reset is high level active

2.3.8 LED PWM 控制器
概述

LED 控制器 (LEDC) 主要用于控制 LED，也可产生 PWM 信号用于其他设备的控制。该控制器有 16 路通道，可以产生独立的波形来驱动 RGB LED 等设备。

LEDC 通道共有两组，分别为 8 路高速通道和 8 路低速通道。高速通道模式在硬件中实现，可以自动且无干扰地改变 PWM 占空比。低速通道模式下，PWM 占空比需要由软件中的驱动器来变化。每组通道都可以使用不同的时钟源。

LED PWM 控制器可在无需 CPU 干预的情况下自动改变占空比，实现亮度和颜色渐变。

功能概要

设置 LEDC 通道在高速模式或低速模式下运行，需要进行如下配置：

1. 定时器配置 指定 PWM 信号的频率和占空比分辨率。
2. 通道配置 绑定定时器和输出 PWM 信号的 GPIO。
3. 改变 PWM 信号 输出 PWM 信号来驱动 LED。可通过软件控制或使用硬件逐变功能来改变 LED 的亮度。

另一个可选步骤是可以在渐变终端设置一个中断。

图 9: LED PWM 控制器 API 的关键配置

定时器配置 要设置定时器，可调用函数 ledc_timer_config()，并将包括如下配置参数的数据结构 ledc_timer_config_t 传递给该函数：

- 速度模式 ledc_mode_t
- 定时器索引 ledc_timer_t
- PWM 信号频率
- PWM 占空比分辨率

频率和占空比分辨率相互关联。PWM 频率越高，占空比分辨率越低，反之亦然。如果 API 不是用来改变 LED 亮度，而是用于其它目的，这种相互关系可能会很重要。更多信息详见频率和占空比分辨率支持范围 一节。

通道配置 定时器设置好后，请配置所需的通道 (ledc_channel_t 之一)。配置通道需调用函数 ledc_channel_config()。
通道的配置与定时器设置类似，需向通道配置函数传递包括通道配置参数的结构体`ledc_channel_config_t`。

此时，通道会按照`ledc_channel_config_t`的配置开始运作，并在选定的GPIO上生成由定时器设置指定的频率和占空比的PWM信号。在通道运作过程中，可以随时通过调用函数`ledc_stop()`将其暂停。

### 改变PWM信号
通道开始运行，生成具有恒定占空比和频率的PWM信号之后，有几种方式可以改变该信号。驱动LED时，主要通过改变占空比来变化光线亮度。

以下两节介绍了如何使用软件和硬件改变占空比。如有需要，PWM信号的频率也可更改，详见改变PWM频率一节。

#### 使用软件改变PWM占空比
调用函数`ledc_set_duty()`可以设置新的占空比。之后，调用函数`ledc_update_duty()`使新配置生效。要查看当前设置的占空比，可使用`_get_`函数`ledc_get_duty()`。

另外一种设置占空比和其他通道参数的方式是调用通道配置一节提到的函数`ledc_channel_config()`。

传递给函数的占空比数值范围取决于选定的`duty_resolution`，应为0至`(2 ** duty_resolution) - 1`。例如，如选定的占空比分辨率为10，则占空比的数值范围为0至1023，此时分辨率为~0.1%。

#### 使用硬件改变PWM占空比
LED PWM控制器硬件可逐渐改变占空比的数值。要使用此功能，需用函数`ledc_fade_func_install()`使能渐变，之后用下列可用渐变函数之一配置：

- `ledc_set_fade_with_time()`
- `ledc_set_fade_with_step()`
- `ledc_set_fade()`

最后用`ledc_fade_start()`开启渐变。

如不需要渐变和渐变中断，可用函数`ledc_fade_func_uninstall()`关闭。

### 改变PWM频率
LED PWM控制器API有多种方式即时改变PWM频率：

- 通过调用函数`ledc_set_freq()`设置频率。可用函数`ledc_get_freq()`查看当前频率。
- 通过调用函数`ledc_bind_channel_timer()`将其他定时器绑定到该通道来改变频率和占空比分辨率。
- 通过调用函数`ledc_channel_config()`改变通道的定时器。

### 控制PWM的更多方式
有一些较底层的定时器特定函数可用于更改PWM设置：

- `ledc_timer_set()`
- `ledc_timer_rst()`
- `ledc_timer_pause()`
- `ledc_timer_resume()`

前两个功能可通过函数`ledc_channel_config()`在后台运行，在定时器配置后启动。

### 使用中断配置
LED PWM控制器通道时，可在`ledc_channel_config_t`中选取参数`ledc_intr_type_t`，在渐变完成时触发中断。

要注册处理程序来处理中断，可调用函数`ledc_isr_register()`。
LED PWM 控制器高速和低速模式

高速模式的优点是可平稳地改变定时器。也就是说，高速模式下如定时器设置改变，此变更会自动应用于定时器的下一次溢出中断。而更新低速定时器时，设置变更应由软件显示触发。LED PWM 驱动的设置将在硬件层面被修改，比如在调用函数 ledc_timer_config() 或 ledc_timer_set() 时。

更多关于速度模式的详细信息请参阅 ESP32 技术参考手册 > LED PWM 控制器 (LEDC) [PDF]。注意，该手册中提到的支持 SLOW_CLOCK 限适用于 LED PWM 驱动。

频率和占空比分辨率支持范围

LED PWM 控制器主要用于驱动 LED。该控制器 PWM 占空比设置的分辨率范围较广。比如，PWM 频率为 5 kHz 时，占空比分辨率最大可为 13 位。这意味着占空比为 0 至 100% 之间的任意值，分辨率约为 0.012% (2 ** 13 = 8192 LED 亮度的离散电平)。然而，这些参数取决于为 LED PWM 控制器定时器计时的时钟信号。LED PWM 控制器为通道提供时钟（具体可参考定时器配置和 ESP32 技术参考手册 > LED PWM 计时器 (LEDC) [PDF])。

LED PWM 控制器可用于生成频率较高的信号，足以为数码相机模组等其他设备提供时钟。此时，最大频率可为 40 MHz，占空比分辨率可为 1 位。也就是说，占空比固定为 50%，无法调整。

LED PWM 控制器 API 会在设定的频率和占空比分辨率超过 LED PWM 控制器硬件范围时报错。例如，试图将频率设置为 20 MHz，占空比分辨率设置为 3 位时，串行端口监视器会报告如下错误：

```
E (196) ledc: requested frequency and duty resolution cannot be achieved, try__
    ~reducing freq_hz or duty_resolution. div_param=128
```

此时，占空比分辨率或频率必须降低。比如，将占空比分辨率设置为 2 会解决这一问题，让占空比设置为 25% 的倍数，即 25%、50% 或 75%。

如设置的频率和占空比分辨率低于所支持的最低值，LED PWM 驱动器也会反映并报告，如：

```
E (196) ledc: requested frequency and duty resolution cannot be achieved, try__
    ~increasing freq_hz or duty_resolution. div_param=12800000
```

占空比分辨率通常用 ledc_timer_bit_t 设置，范围是 10 至 15 位。如需较低的占空比分辨率（上至 10，下至 1），可直接输入相应数值。

应用实例

使用 LEDC 改变占空比和渐变控制的实例请参考 peripherals/ledc/ledc.fade。

使用 LEDC 基本实例请参照 peripherals/ledc/ledc_basic。

API 参考

Header File

- components/driver/include/driver/ledc.h

Functions

```
esp_err_t ledc_channel_config(const ledc_channel_config_t *ledc_conf)
```

LEDCC channel configuration Configure LEDC channel with the given channel/output
gpio_num/interrupt/source timer/frequency(Hz)/LEDC duty resolution.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- ledc_conf: Pointer of LEDC channel configure struct
**esp_err_t ledc_timer_config(const ledc_timer_config_t *timer_conf)**

LED timer configuration. Configure LEDC timer with the given source timer/frequency(Hz)/duty_resolution.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Can not find a proper pre-divider number base on the given frequency and the current duty_resolution.

**Parameters**
- timer_conf: Pointer of LEDC timer configure struct

**esp_err_t ledc_update_duty(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel)**

LED update channel parameters.

**Note**
Call this function to activate the LEDC updated parameters. After ledc_set_duty, we need to call this function to update the settings.

**Note**
ledc_set_duty, ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint and ledc_update_duty are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_duty_and_update

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t

**esp_err_t ledc_set_pin(int gpio_num, ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t ledc_channel)**

Set LEDC output gpio.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- gpio_num: The LEDC output gpio
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- ledc_channel: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t

**esp_err_t ledc_stop(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t idle_level)**

LED stop. Disable LEDC output, and set idle level.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- idle_level: Set output idle level after LEDC stops.

**esp_err_t ledc_set_freq(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_timer_t timer_num, uint32_t freq_hz)**

LED set channel frequency (Hz)

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Can not find a proper pre-divider number base on the given frequency and the current duty_resolution.

**Parameters**
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- timer_num: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t
• freq_hz: Set the LEDC frequency

```c
uint32_t ledc_get_freq (ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_timer_t timer_num)
```

LEDC get channel frequency (Hz)

**Return**
- 0 error
- Others Current LEDC frequency

**Parameters**
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- timer_num: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

```c
esp_err_t ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint (ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t duty, uint32_t hpoint)
```

LEDC set duty and hpoint value. Only after calling ledc_update_duty will the duty update.

**Note**
- ledc_set_duty, ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint and ledc_update_duty are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_duty_and_update.
- If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- duty: Set the LEDC duty, the range of duty setting is \([0, (2^{*duty\_resolution}) - 1]\)
- hpoint: Set the LEDC hpoint value (max: 0xfffff)

```c
int ledc_get_hpoint (ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel)
```

LEDC get hpoint value, the counter value when the output is set high level.

**Return**
- LEDC_ERR_VAL if parameter error
- Others Current hpoint value of LEDC channel

**Parameters**
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t

```c
esp_err_t ledc_set_duty (ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t duty)
```

LEDC set duty. This function do not change the hpoint value of this channel. if needed, please call ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint. only after calling ledc_update_duty will the duty update.

**Note**
- ledc_set_duty, ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint and ledc_update_duty are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_duty_and_update.
- If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- duty: Set the LEDC duty, the range of duty setting is \([0, (2^{*duty\_resolution}) - 1]\)

```c
uint32_t ledc_get_duty (ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel)
```

LEDC get duty.
Chapter 2. API

Return
- LEDC_ERR_DUTY if parameter error
- Others Current LEDC duty

Parameters
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t

```c
esp_err_t ledc_set_fade(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t duty,
ledc_duty_direction_t fade_direction, uint32_t step_num, uint32_t duty_cycle_num, uint32_t duty_scale)
```
LEDCC set gradient Set LEDC gradient, After the function calls the ledc_update_duty function, the function can take effect.

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- duty: Set the start of the gradient duty, the range of duty setting is [0, (2**duty_resolution) - 1]
- fade_direction: Set the direction of the gradient
- step_num: Set the number of the gradient
- duty_cycle_num: Set how many LEDC tick each time the gradient lasts
- duty_scale: Set gradient change amplitude

```c
esp_err_t ledc_isr_register(void (*fn) void *)
```
void *arg, int intr_alloc_flags, ledc_isr_handle_t *handleRegister LEDC interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

Parameters
- fn: Interrupt handler function.
- arg: User-supplied argument passed to the handler function.
- intr_alloc_flags: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- handle: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

```c
esp_err_t ledc_timer_set(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_timer_t timer_sel, uint32_t clock_divider,
uint32_t duty_resolution, ledc_clk_src_t clk_src)
```
Configure LEDC settings.

Return
- (-1) Parameter error
- Other Current LEDC duty

Parameters
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- timer_sel: Timer index (0-3), there are 4 timers in LEDC module
- clock_divider: Timer clock divide value, the timer clock is divided from the selected clock source
- duty_resolution: Resolution of duty setting in number of bits. The range of duty values is [0, (2**duty_resolution)]
- clk_src: Select LEDC source clock.

```c
esp_err_t ledc_timer_rst(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_timer_t timer_sel)
```
Reset LEDC timer.
Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- timer_sel: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

`esp_err_t ledc_timer_pause(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_timer_t timer_sel)`
Pause LEDC timer counter.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- timer_sel: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

`esp_err_t ledc_timer_resume(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_timer_t timer_sel)`
Resume LEDC timer.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- timer_sel: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

`esp_err_t ledc_bind_channel_timer(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, ledc_timer_t timer_sel)`
Bind LEDC channel with the selected timer.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel index (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- timer_sel: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

`esp_err_t ledc_set_fade_with_step(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t target_duty, uint32_t scale, uint32_t cycle_num)`
Set LEDC fade function.

Note Call ledc_fade_func_install() once before calling this function. Call ledc_fade_start() after this to start fading.

Note ledc_set_fade_with_step, ledc_set_fade_with_time and ledc_fade_start are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_fade_step_and_start

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
- ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

Parameters
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
• channel: LEDC channel index (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
• target_duty: Target duty of fading [0, (2*duty_resolution) - 1]
• scale: Controls the increase or decrease step scale.
• cycle_num: increase or decrease the duty every cycle_num cycles

call esp_err_t ledc_set_fade_with_time(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t target_duty, int max_fade_time_ms)

Set LEDC fade function, with a limited time.

Note Call ledc_fade_func_install() once before calling this function. Call ledc_fade_start() after this to start fading.

Note ledc_set_fade_with_step, ledc_set_fade_with_time and ledc_fade_start are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_fade_step_and_start

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
• ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

Parameters
• speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
• channel: LEDC channel index (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
• target_duty: Target duty of fading [0, (2*duty_resolution) - 1]
• max_fade_time_ms: The maximum time of the fading (ms).

call esp_err_t ledc_fade_func_install(int intr_alloc_flags)

Install LEDC fade function. This function will occupy interrupt of LEDC module.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function already installed.

Parameters
• intr_alloc_flags: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORed) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

void ledc_fade_func_uninstall(void)

Uninstall LEDC fade function.

call esp_err_t ledc_fade_start(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, ledc_fade_mode_t fade_mode)

Start LEDC fading.

Note Call ledc_fade_func_install() once before calling this function. Call this API right after ledc_set_fade_with_time or ledc_set_fade_with_step before to start fading.

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error.

Parameters
• speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
• channel: LEDC channel number
• fade_mode: Whether to block until fading done.

call esp_err_t ledc_set_duty_and_update(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t duty, uint32_t hpoint)

A thread-safe API to set duty for LEDC channel and return when duty updated.
Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

**Parameters**

- **speed_mode**: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- **channel**: LEDC channel (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- **duty**: Set the LEDC duty, the range of duty setting is \[0, (2^{*duty\_resolution}) - 1\]
- **hpoint**: Set the LEDC hpoint value(max: 0xfffff)

```c
esp_err_t ledc_set_fade_time_and_start(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t target_duty, uint32_t max_fade_time_ms, ledc_fade_mode_t fade_mode)
```

A thread-safe API to set and start LEDC fade function, with a limited time.

**Note** Call `ledc_fade_func_install()` once, before calling this function.

**Note** If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
- ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

**Parameters**

- **speed_mode**: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- **channel**: LEDC channel index (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- **target_duty**: Target duty of fading \[0, (2^{*duty\_resolution}) - 1\]
- **max_fade_time_ms**: The maximum time of the fading (ms).
- **fade_mode**: choose blocking or non-blocking mode

```c
esp_err_t ledc_set_fade_step_and_start(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, uint32_t target_duty, uint32_t scale, uint32_t cycle_num, ledc_fade_mode_t fade_mode)
```

A thread-safe API to set and start LEDC fade function.

**Note** Call `ledc_fade_func_install()` once before calling this function.

**Note** If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
- ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

**Parameters**

- **speed_mode**: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- **channel**: LEDC channel index (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- **target_duty**: Target duty of fading \[0, (2^{*duty\_resolution}) - 1\]
- **scale**: Controls the increase or decrease step scale.
- **cycle_num**: increase or decrease the duty every cycle_num cycles
- **fade_mode**: choose blocking or non-blocking mode

```c
esp_err_t ledc_cb_register(ledc_mode_t speed_mode, ledc_channel_t channel, ledc_cbs_t *cbs, void *user_arg)
```

LEDC callback registration function.

**Note** The callback is called from an ISR, it must never attempt to block, and any FreeRTOS API called must be ISR capable.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
* ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

**Parameters**
- speed_mode: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- channel: LEDC channel index (0 - LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1), select from ledc_channel_t
- cbs: Group of LEDC callback functions
- user_arg: user registered data for the callback function

**Structures**

```c
struct ledc_channel_config_t
```

Configuration parameters of LEDC channel for ledc_channel_config function.

**Public Members**

```c
int gpio_num
```

the LEDC output gpio_num, if you want to use gpio16, gpio_num = 16

```c
ledc_mode_t speed_mode
```

LEDC speed speed_mode, high-speed mode or low-speed mode

```c
ledc_channel_t channel
```

LEDC channel (0 - 7)

```c
ledc_intr_type_t intr_type
```

configure interrupt, Fade interrupt enable or Fade interrupt disable

```c
ledc_timer_t timer_sel
```

Select the timer source of channel (0 - 3)

```c
uint32_t duty
```

LEDC channel duty, the range of duty setting is [0, \((2^{**duty_resolution})\)]

```c
int hpoint
```

LEDC channel hpoint value, the max value is 0xffffff

```c
unsigned int output_invert : 1
```

Enable (1) or disable (0) gpio output invert

```c
struct ledc_channel_config_t::[anonymous] flags
```

LEDC flags

```c
struct ledc_timer_config_t
```

Configuration parameters of LEDC Timer timer for ledc_timer_config function.

**Public Members**

```c
ledc_mode_t speed_mode
```

LEDC speed speed_mode, high-speed mode or low-speed mode

```c
ledc_timer_bit_t duty_resolution
```

LEDC channel duty resolution

```c
ledc_timer_bit_t bit_num
```

Deprecated in ESP-IDF 3.0. This is an alias to ‘duty_resolution’ for backward compatibility with ESP-IDF 2.1

```c
ledc_timer_t timer_num
```

The timer source of channel (0 - 3)

```c
uint32_t freq_hz
```

LEDC timer frequency (Hz)
**Chapter 2. API Reference**

**ledc_clk_cfg_t** `clk_cfg`

Configure LEDC source clock. For low speed channels and high speed channels, you can specify the source clock using `LEDC_USE_REF_TICK`, `LEDC_USE_APB_CLK` or `LEDC_AUTO_CLK`. For low speed channels, you can also specify the source clock using `LEDC_USE_RTC8M_CLK`, in this case, all low speed channel’s source clock must be `RTC8M_CLK`.

**struct ledc_cb_param_t**

LEDC callback parameter.

**Public Members**

**ledc_cb_event_t** `event`

Event name

**uint32_t** `speed_mode`

Speed mode of the LEDC channel group

**uint32_t** `channel`

LEDC channel (0 - `LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX-1`)

**uint32_t** `duty`

LEDC current duty of the channel, the range of duty is `[0, (2**duty_resolution) - 1]`

**struct ledc_cbs_t**

Group of supported LEDC callbacks.

**Note** The callbacks are all running under ISR environment.

**Public Members**

**ledc_cb_t** `fade_cb`

LEDC fade end callback function

**Macros**

`LEDC_APB_CLK_HZ`

`LEDC_REF_CLK_HZ`

`LEDC_ERR_DUTY`

`LEDC_ERR_VAL`

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef intr_handle_t ledc_isr_handle_t
typedef bool (*ledc_cb_t)(const ledc_cb_param_t *param, void *user_arg)
```

Type of LEDC event callback.

**Parameters**

- `param`: LEDC callback parameter
- `user_arg`: User registered data

**Enumerations**

**enum ledc_cb_event_t**

LEDC callback event type.

**Values:**

`LEDC_FADE_END_EVT`

LEDC fade end event
Chapter 2. API 参考

Header File

- components/hal/include/hal/ledc_types.h

Enumerations

enum ledc_mode_t

Values:

LEDC_HIGH_SPEED_MODE = 0
LEDC high speed speed_mode

LEDC_LOW_SPEED_MODE
LEDC low speed speed_mode

LEDC_SPEED_MODE_MAX
LEDC speed limit

enum ledc_intr_type_t

Values:

LEDC_INTR_DISABLE = 0
Disable LEDC interrupt

LEDC_INTR_FADE_END
Enable LEDC interrupt

LEDC_INTR_MAX

enum ledc_duty_direction_t

Values:

LEDC_DUTY_DIR_DECREASE = 0
LEDC duty decrease direction

LEDC_DUTY_DIR_INCREASE = 1
LEDC duty increase direction

LEDC_DUTY_DIR_MAX

enum ledc_slow_clk_sel_t

Values:

LEDC_SLOW_CLK_RTC8M = 0
LEDC low speed timer clock source is 8MHz RTC clock

LEDC_SLOW_CLK_APB
LEDC low speed timer clock source is 80MHz APB clock

enum ledc_clk_cfg_t

In theory, the following enumeration shall be placed in LEDC driver’s header. However, as the next enumeration, ledc_clk_src_t, makes the use of some of these values and to avoid mutual inclusion of the headers, we must define it here.

Values:

LEDC_AUTO_CLK = 0
The driver will automatically select the source clock(REF_TICK or APB) based on the giving resolution and duty parameter when init the timer

LEDC_USE_APB_CLK
LEDC timer select APB clock as source clock

LEDC_USE_RTC8M_CLK
LEDC timer select RTC8M_CLK as source clock. Only for low speed channels and this parameter must be the same for all low speed channels

LEDC_USE_REF_TICK
LEDC timer select REF_TICK clock as source clock
enum ledc_clk_src_t
Values:

LEDC_REF_TICK = LEDC_USE_REF_TICK
    LEDC timer clock divided from reference tick (1Mhz)

LEDC_APB_CLK = LEDC_USE_APB_CLK
    LEDC timer clock divided from APB clock (80Mhz)

LEDC_SCLK = LEDC_USE_APB_CLK
    Selecting this value for LEDC_TICK_SEL_TIMER let the hardware take its source clock from LEDC_APB_CLK_SEL

enum ledc_timer_t
Values:

LEDC_TIMER_0 = 0
    LEDC timer 0

LEDC_TIMER_1
    LEDC timer 1

LEDC_TIMER_2
    LEDC timer 2

LEDC_TIMER_3
    LEDC timer 3

LEDC_TIMER_MAX

enum ledc_channel_t
Values:

LEDC_CHANNEL_0 = 0
    LEDC channel 0

LEDC_CHANNEL_1
    LEDC channel 1

LEDC_CHANNEL_2
    LEDC channel 2

LEDC_CHANNEL_3
    LEDC channel 3

LEDC_CHANNEL_4
    LEDC channel 4

LEDC_CHANNEL_5
    LEDC channel 5

LEDC_CHANNEL_6
    LEDC channel 6

LEDC_CHANNEL_7
    LEDC channel 7

LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX

enum ledc_timer_bit_t
Values:

LEDC_TIMER_1_BIT = 1
    LEDC PWM duty resolution of 1 bits

LEDC_TIMER_2_BIT
    LEDC PWM duty resolution of 2 bits

LEDC_TIMER_3_BIT
    LEDC PWM duty resolution of 3 bits
Chapter 2. API

**LEDC_TIMER_4_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 4 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_5_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 5 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_6_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 6 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_7_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 7 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_8_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 8 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_9_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 9 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_10_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 10 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_11_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 11 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_12_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 12 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_13_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 13 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_14_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 14 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_15_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 15 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_16_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 16 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_17_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 17 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_18_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 18 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_19_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 19 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_20_BIT**
LED PWM duty resolution of 20 bits

**LEDC_TIMER_BIT_MAX**

**enum ledc_fade_mode_t**

*Values:*

**LEDC_FADE_NO_WAIT** = 0
LED fade function will return immediately

**LEDC_FADE_WAIT_DONE**
LED fade function will block until fading to the target duty

**LEDC_FADE_MAX**

### 2.3.9 Motor Control Pulse Width Modulator (MCPWM)

ESP32 has two MCPWM units which can be used to control different types of motors. Each unit has three pairs of PWM outputs.
Further in documentation the outputs of a single unit are labeled PWMxA/PWMxB.

More detailed block diagram of the MCPWM unit is shown below. Each A/B pair may be clocked by any one of the three timers Timer 0, 1 and 2. The same timer may be used to clock more than one pair of PWM outputs. Each unit is also able to collect inputs such as SYNC SIGNALS, detect FAULT SIGNALS like motor overcurrent or overvoltage, as well as obtain feedback with CAPTURE SIGNALS on e.g. a rotor position.

Description of this API starts with configuration of MCPWM’s Timer and Generator submodules to provide the basic motor control functionality. Then it discusses more advanced submodules and functionalities of a Fault Handler, signal Capture and Carrier.

**Contents**

- **Configure** a basic functionality of the outputs
- **Operate** the outputs to drive a motor
- **Adjust** how the motor is driven
- **Synchronize** sync timers to work together
- **Capture** external signals to provide additional control over the outputs
- **Use** Fault Handler to detect and manage faults
- **Add** a higher frequency Carrier, if output signals are passed through an isolation transformer
- **Extra** configuration of Resolution.

**Configure**

The scope of configuration depends on the motor type, in particular how many outputs and inputs are required, and what will be the sequence of signals to drive the motor.

In this case we will describe a simple configuration to control a brushed DC motor that is using only some of the available MCPWM’s resources. An example circuit is shown below. It includes a H-Bridge to switch polarization of a voltage applied to the motor (M) and to provide sufficient current to drive it.

Configuration covers the following steps:

1. Selection of a MCPWM unit that will be used to drive the motor. There are two units available on-board of ESP32 and enumerated in `mcpwm_unit_t`.
2. Initialization of two GPIOs as output signals within selected unit by calling `mcpwm_gpio_init()`. The two output signals are typically used to command the motor to rotate right or left. All available signal options are listed in `mcpwm_io_signals_t`. To set more than a single pin at a time, use function `mcpwm_set_pin()` together with `mcpwm_pin_config_t`. 
Chapter 2. API 参考

图 11: MCPWM Block Diagram

图 12: Example of Brushed DC Motor Control with MCPWM
3. Selection of a timer. There are three timers available within the unit. The timers are listed in `mcpwm_timer_t`.
4. Setting of the timer frequency and initial duty within `mcpwm_config_t` structure.
5. Setting timer resolution if necessary, by calling `mcpwm_group_set_resolution()` and `mcpwm_timer_set_resolution()`.
6. Calling of `mcpwm_init()` with the above parameters to make the configuration effective.

### Operate

To operate a motor connected to the MCPWM unit, e.g. turn it left or right, or vary the speed, we should apply some control signals to the unit’s outputs. The outputs are organized into three pairs. Within a pair they are labeled “A” and “B” and each driven by a submodule called an “Generator”. To provide a PWM signal, the Operator itself, which contains two Generator, should be clocked by one of three available Timers. To make the API simpler, each Timer is automatically associated by the API to drive an Operator of the same index, e.g. Timer 0 is associated with Operator 0.

There are the following basic ways to control the outputs:

- We can drive particular signal steady high or steady low with function `mcpwm_set_signal_high()` or `mcpwm_set_signal_low()`. This will make the motor to turn with a maximum speed or stop. Depending on selected output A or B the motor will rotate either right or left.
- Another option is to drive the outputs with the PWM signal by calling `mcpwm_start()` or `mcpwm_stop()`. The motor speed will be proportional to the PWM duty.
- To vary PWM’s duty call `mcpwm_set_duty()` and provide the duty value in %. Optionally, you may call `mcpwm_set_duty_in_us()`, if you prefer to set the duty in microseconds. Checking of currently set value is possible by calling `mcpwm_get_duty()`. Phase of the PWM signal may be altered by calling `mcpwm_set_duty_type()`. The duty is set individually for each A and B output using `mcpwm_generator_t` in specific function calls. The duty value refers either to high or low output signal duration. This is configured when calling `mcpwm_init()`, as discussed in section Configure, and selecting one of options from `mcpwm_duty_type_t`.

| 注解： | Call function `mcpwm_set_duty_type()` every time after `mcpwm_set_signal_high()` or `mcpwm_set_signal_low()` to resume with previously set duty cycle. |

### Adjust

There are couple of ways to adjust a signal on the outputs and changing how the motor operates.

- Set specific PWM frequency by calling `mcpwm_set_frequency()`. This may be required to adjust to electrical or mechanical characteristics of particular motor and driver. To check what frequency is set, use function `mcpwm_get_frequency()`.
- Introduce a dead time between outputs A and B when they are changing the state to reverse direction of the motor rotation. This is to make up for on/off switching delay of the motor driver FETs. The dead time options are defined in `mcpwm_deadtime_type_t` and enabled by calling `mcpwm_deadtime_enable()`. To disable this functionality call `mcpwm_deadtime_disable()`.
- Synchronize outputs of operator submodules, e.g. to get raising edge of PWM0A/B and PWM1A/B to start exactly at the same time, or shift them between each other by a given phase. Synchronization is triggered by SYNC SIGNALS shown on the block diagram of the MCPWM above, and defined in `mcpwm_sync_signal_t`. To attach the signal to a GPIO call `mcpwm_gpio_init()`. You can then enable synchronization with function `mcpwm_sync_configure()`. As input parameters provide MCPWM unit, timer to synchronize, the synchronization signal and a phase to delay the timer.

| 注解： | Synchronization signals are referred to using two different enumerations. First one `mcpwm_io_signals_t` is used together with function `mcpwm_gpio_init()` when selecting a GPIO |
as the signal input source. The second one `mcpwm_sync_signal_t` is used when enabling or disabling synchronization with `mcpwm_sync_configure()` or `mcpwm_sync_disable()`.

- Vary the pattern of the A/B output signals by getting MCPWM counters to count up, down and up/down (automatically changing the count direction). Respective configuration is done when calling `mcpwm_init()`, as discussed in section Configure, and selecting one of counter types from `mcpwm_counter_type_t`. For explanation of how A/B PWM output signals are generated, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > Motor Control PWM (MCPWM) [PDF].

**Synchronize**

Each PWM timer has a synchronization input and a synchronization output. The synchronization input can be selected from other timers’ synchronization outputs or GPIO signals via the GPIO matrix. Timer’s synchronization signal can be generated from either the input sync signal or when the count value reaches peak/zero. Thus, the PWM timers can be chained together with their phase-locked. During synchronization, the PWM timer clock prescaler will reset its counter in order to synchronize the PWM timer clock.

The functionality is enabled in following steps:

1. Make sure the PWM timer and operator are already configured so that sync will inherit its config (count mode, freq and duty).
2. Enabling sync input of the timer by invoking `mcpwm_sync_configure()`, selecting desired signal input from `mcpwm_sync_signal_t`, and setting the desired phase range from 0 to 999 which is mapped to 0%-99.9%. 0 means zero phase is applied and output is fired at the same time. And selecting desired counting direction.
3. Enabling one of sync event source from another timer or from external GPIO input.

To sync with another timer:

Enabling sync output of another timer by invoking `mcpwm_set_timer_sync_output()` and selecting desired event to generate sync output from `mcpwm_timer_sync_trigger_t`.

To sync with GPIO positive edge input (negative edge requires `mcpwm_sync_invert_gpio_synchro()`):

Configuring GPIOs to act as the sync signal inputs by calling functions `mcpwm_gpio_init()` or `mcpwm_set_pin()`, which were described in section Configure.

It’s normal condition that chained sync signal may have tens or even hundreds of nanoseconds of delay between each timer output due to hardware limitation. To sync two timers accurately it is required to have the third timer occupied to produce sync event that can be consumed parallel by other two timer, so that those two timer will have no delay between each other but have the same delay between the timer which provides events. Another solution is introducing an external GPIO event source so that all three timers can be synced together with no delay.

If not required anymore, the capture functionality may be disabled with `mcpwm_sync_disable()`.

**Capture**

One of requirements of BLDC (Brushless DC, see figure below) motor control is sensing of the rotor position. To facilitate this task each MCPWM unit provides three sensing inputs together with dedicated hardware. The hardware is able to detect the input signal’s edge and measure time between signals. As result the control software is simpler and the CPU power may be used for other tasks.

The capture functionality may be used for other types of motors or tasks. The functionality is enabled in two steps:

1. Configuration of GPIOs to act as the capture signal inputs by calling functions `mcpwm_gpio_init()` or `mcpwm_set_pin()`, that were described in section Configure.
2. Enabling of the functionality itself by invoking `mcpwm_capture_enable_channel()`, selecting desired signal input from `mcpwm_capture_channel_id_t`, setting the signal edge, signal count prescaler and user callback within `mcpwm_capture_config_t`
Within the second step above a 32-bit capture timer is enabled. The timer runs continuously driven by the APB clock. The clock frequency is typically 80 MHz. On each capture event the capture timer’s value is stored in timestamp register that may be then checked by calling `mcpwm_capture_signal_get_value()`. The edge of the last signal may be checked with `mcpwm_capture_signal_get_edge()`. Those data are also provided inside callback function as event data `cap_event_data_t`.

If not required anymore, the capture functionality may be disabled with `mcpwm_capture_disable_channel()`.

Capture prescale is different from other modules as it is applied to the input signal, not the timer source. Prescaler has maintained its own level state with the initial value set to low and is detecting the positive edge of the input signal to change its internal state. That means if two pairs of positive and negative edges are passed to input, the prescaler’s internal state will change twice. ISR will report on this internal state change, not the input signal. For example, setting prescale to 2 will generate ISR callback on each positive edge of input if both edge is selected via `mcpwm_capture_config_t`. Or each 2 positive edges of input if only one edge is selected though `mcpwm_capture_config_t`.

### Fault Handler

Each unit of the MCPWM is able to sense external signals with information about failure of the motor, the motor driver or any other device connected to the MCPWM. There are three fault inputs per unit that may be routed to user selectable GPIOs. The MCPWM may be configured to perform one of four predefined actions on A/B outputs when a fault signal is received:

- lock current state of the output
- set the output low
- set the output high
- toggle the output

The user should determine possible failure modes of the motor and what action should be performed on detection of particular fault, e.g. drive all outputs low for a brushed motor, or lock current state for a stepper motor, etc. As result of this action the motor should be put into a safe state to reduce likelihood of a damage caused by the fault.
The fault handler functionality is enabled in two steps:

1. Configuration of GPIOs to act as fault signal inputs. This is done in analogous way as described for capture signals in section above. It includes setting the signal level to trigger the fault as defined in `mcpwm_fault_input_level_t`.

2. Initialization of the fault handler by calling either `mcpwm_fault_set_oneshot_mode()` or `mcpwm_fault_set_cyc_mode()`. These functions set the mode that MCPWM should operate once fault signal becomes inactive. There are two modes possible:
   - State of MCPWM unit will be locked until reset - `mcpwm_fault_set_oneshot_mode()`.
   - The MCPWM will resume operation once fault signal becoming inactive - `mcpwm_fault_set_cyc_mode()`.

The function call parameters include selection of one of three fault inputs defined in `mcpwm_fault_signal_t` and specific action on outputs A and B defined in `mcpwm_action_on_pwmxa_t` and `mcpwm_action_on_pwmxb_t`.

Particular fault signal may be disabled at the runtime by calling `mcpwm_fault_deinit()`.

**Carrier**

The MCPWM has a carrier submodule used if galvanic isolation from the motor driver is required by passing the A/B output signals through transformers. Any of A and B output signals may be at 100% duty and not changing whenever motor is required to run steady at the full load. Coupling of non alternating signals with a transformer is problematic, so the signals are modulated by the carrier submodule to create an AC waveform, to make the coupling possible.

To use the carrier submodule, it should be first initialized by calling `mcpwm_carrier_init()`. The carrier parameters are defined in `mcpwm_carrier_config_t` structure invoked within the function call. Then the carrier functionality may be enabled by calling `mcpwm_carrier_enable()`.

The carrier parameters may be then altered at a runtime by calling dedicated functions to change individual fields of the `mcpwm_carrier_config_t` structure, like `mcpwm_carrier_set_period()`, `mcpwm_carrier_set_duty_cycle()`, `mcpwm_carrier_output_invert()`, etc.

This includes enabling and setting duration of the first pulse of the carrier with `mcpwm_carrier_oneshot_mode_enable()`. For more details, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > Motor Control PWM (MCPWM) > PWM Carrier Submodule [PDF].

To disable carrier functionality call `mcpwm_carrier_disable()`.

**Interrupts**

Registering of the MCPWM interrupt handler is possible by calling `mcpwm_isr_register()`. Note if `mcpwm_capture_enable_channel()` is used then a default ISR routine will be installed hence please do not call this function to register any more.

**Resolution**

The default resolution for MCPWM group and MCPWM timer are configured to 10MHz and 1MHz in `mcpwm_init()`, which might be not enough for some applications. The driver also provides two APIs that can be used to override the default resolution: `mcpwm_group_set_resolution()` and `mcpwm_timer_set_resolution()`.

Note that, these two APIs won’t update the frequency and duty automatically, to achieve that, one has to call `mcpwm_set_frequency()` and `mcpwm_set_duty()` accordingly.

To get PWM pulse that is below 15Hz, please set the resolution to a lower value. For high frequency PWM with limited step range, please set them with higher value.
Chapter 2. API 参考

Application Example

MCPWM example are located under: peripherals/mcpwm:

• Control of BLDC (brushless DC) motor with hall sensor feedback - peripherals/mcpwm/mcpwm_bldc_hall_control
• Brushed DC motor control - peripherals/mcpwm/mcpwm_brushed_dc_control
• Servo motor control - peripherals/mcpwm/mcpwm_servo_control
• HC-SR04 sensor with capture - peripherals/mcpwm/mcpwm_capture_hc_sr04

API Reference

Header File

• components/hal/include/hal/mcpwm_types.h

Enumerations

enum mcpwm_timer_direction_t
Values:

MCPWM_TIMER_DIRECTION_UP
Counting direction: Increase

MCPWM_TIMER_DIRECTION_DOWN
Counting direction: Decrease

enum mcpwm_timer_event_t
Values:

MCPWM_TIMER_EVENT_ZERO
MCPWM timer counts to zero

MCPWM_TIMER_EVENT_PEAK
MCPWM timer counts to peak

enum mcpwm_timer_count_mode_t
Values:

MCPWM_TIMER_COUNT_MODE_PAUSE
MCPWM timer paused

MCPWM_TIMER_COUNT_MODE_UP
MCPWM timer counting up

MCPWM_TIMER_COUNT_MODE_DOWN
MCPWM timer counting down

MCPWM_TIMER_COUNT_MODE_UP_DOWN
MCPWM timer counting up and down

enum mcpwm_timer_execute_cmd_t
Values:

MCPWM_TIMER_STOP_AT_ZERO
MCPWM timer stops when counting to zero

MCPWM_TIMER_STOP_AT_PEAK
MCPWM timer stops when counting to peak

MCPWM_TIMER_START_NO_STOP
MCPWM timer starts counting

MCPWM_TIMER_START_STOP_AT_ZERO
MCPWM timer starts counting and stops when counting to zero
**Chapter 2. API 参考**

**MCPWM_TIMER_START_STOP_AT_PEAK**
MCPWM timer starts counting and stops when counting to peak

**enum mcpwm_generator_action_t**
**Values:**

**MCPWM_GEN_ACTION_KEEP**
Generator action: Keep the same level

**MCPWM_GEN_ACTION_LOW**
Generator action: Force to low level

**MCPWM_GEN_ACTION_HIGH**
Generator action: Force to high level

**MCPWM_GEN_ACTION_TOGGLE**
Generator action: Toggle level

**enum mcpwm_trip_type_t**
**Values:**

**MCPWM_TRIP_TYPE_CBC**
CBC trip type, shut down the operator cycle by cycle

**MCPWM_TRIP_TYPE_OST**
OST trip type, shut down the operator in one shot

**Header File**

- components/driver/include/driver/mcpwm.h

**Functions**

**esp_err_t mcpwm_gpio_init(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_io_signals_t io_signal, int gpio_num)**
This function initializes each gpio signal for MCPWM.

**Note** This function initializes one gpio at a time.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- io_signal: set MCPWM signals, each MCPWM unit has 6 output(MCPWMXA, MCPWMXB) and 9 input(SYNC_X, FAULT_X, CAP_X) ‘X’ is timer_num(0-2)
- gpio_num: set this to configure gpio for MCPWM, if you want to use gpio16, gpio_num = 16

**esp_err_t mcpwm_set_pin(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, const mcpwm_pin_config_t *mcpwm_pin)**
Initialize MCPWM gpio structure.

**Note** This function initialize a group of MCPWM GPIOs at a time.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- mcpwm_pin: MCPWM pin structure

**esp_err_t mcpwm_init(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, const mcpwm_config_t *mcpwm_conf)**
Initialize MCPWM parameters.

**Note** The default resolution configured for MCPWM group and timer are 160M / 16 = 10M and 10M / 10 = 1M The default resolution can be changed by calling mcpwm_group_set_resolution() and mcpwm_timer_set_resolution(), before calling this function.

**Return**
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

### Parameters

- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers.
- `mcpwm_conf`: configure structure `mcpwm_config_t`

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_group_set_resolution(`mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, unsigned long int resolution`) Set resolution of the MCPWM group.

**Note** This will override default resolution of group (=10,000,000). This WILL NOT automatically update frequency and duty. Call `mcpwm_set_frequency()` and `mcpwm_set_duty()` manually to set them back.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

### Parameters

- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `resolution`: set expected frequency resolution

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_timer_set_resolution(`mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, unsigned long int resolution`) Set resolution of each timer.

**Note** This WILL override default resolution of timer (=1,000,000). This WILL NOT automatically update frequency and duty. Call `mcpwm_set_frequency()` and `mcpwm_set_duty()` manually to set them back.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

### Parameters

- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- `resolution`: set expected frequency resolution

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_set_frequency(`mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, uint32_t frequency`) Set frequency (in Hz) of MCPWM timer.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

### Parameters

- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- `frequency`: set the frequency in Hz of each timer

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_set_duty(`mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_generator_t gen, float duty`) Set duty cycle of each operator (MCPWMXA/MCPWMXB)

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

### Parameters

- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- `gen`: set the generator (MCPWMXA/MCPWMXB), ‘X’ is operator number selected
- `duty`: set duty cycle in % (i.e. for 62.3% duty cycle, duty = 62.3) of each operator

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_set_duty_in_us(`mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_generator_t gen, uint32_t duty_in_us`) Set duty cycle of each operator (MCPWMXA/MCPWMXB) in us.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
• timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
• gen: set the generator(MCPWMXA/MCPWMXB), ‘x’ is operator number selected
• duty_in_us: set duty value in microseconds of each operator

esp_err_t mcpwm_set_duty_type(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_generator_t gen, mcpwm_duty_type_t duty_type)

Set duty either active high or active low(out of phase/inverted)

Note Call this function every time after mcpwm_set_signal_high or mcpwm_set_signal_low to resume with previously set duty cycle

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
• timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
• gen: set the generator(MCPWMXA/MCPWMXB), ‘x’ is operator number selected
• duty_type: set active low or active high duty type

uint32_t mcpwm_get_frequency(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)

Get frequency of timer.

Return
• frequency of timer

Parameters
• mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
• timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers

float mcpwm_get_duty(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_operator_t gen)

Get duty cycle of each operator.

Return
• duty cycle in % of each operator(56.7 means duty is 56.7%)

Parameters
• mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
• timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
• gen: set the generator(MCPWMXA/MCPWMXB), ‘x’ is operator number selected

uint32_t mcpwm_get_duty_in_us(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_operator_t gen)

Get duty cycle of each operator in us.

Return
• duty cycle in us of each operator

Parameters
• mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
• timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
• gen: set the generator(MCPWMXA/MCPWMXB), ‘x’ is operator number selected

esp_err_t mcpwm_set_signal_high(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_generator_t gen)

Use this function to set MCPWM signal high.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
• mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
• timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
• gen: set the operator(MCPWMXA/MCPWMXB), ‘x’ is timer number selected
**esp_err_t mcpwm_set_signal_low** (mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_generator_t gen)

Use this function to set MCPWM signal low.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- gen: set the operator(MCPWMXA/MCPWMX8), ‘x’ is timer number selected

**esp_err_t mcpwm_start** (mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)

Start MCPWM signal on timer ‘x’.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers

**esp_err_t mcpwm_stop** (mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)

Start MCPWM signal on timer ‘x’.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers

**esp_err_t mcpwm_carrier_init** (mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, const mcpwm_carrier_config_t *carrier_conf)

Initialize carrier configuration.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- carrier_conf: configure structure mcpwm_carrier_config_t

**esp_err_t mcpwm_carrier_enable** (mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)

Enable MCPWM carrier submodule, for respective timer.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers

**esp_err_t mcpwm_carrier_disable** (mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)

Disable MCPWM carrier submodule, for respective timer.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- timer_num: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
API Reference

`esp_err_t mcpwm_carrier_set_period(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, uint8_t carrier_period)`

Set period of carrier.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM
- `carrier_period`: set the carrier period of each timer, carrier period = (carrier_period + 1)∗800ns (carrier_period <= 15)

`esp_err_t mcpwm_carrier_set_duty_cycle(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, uint8_t carrier_duty)`

Set duty_cycle of carrier.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM
- `carrier_duty`: set duty_cycle of carrier, carrier duty cycle = carrier_duty*12.5% (chop_duty <= 7)

`esp_err_t mcpwm_carrier_oneshot_mode_enable(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, uint8_t pulse_width)`

Enable and set width of first pulse in carrier oneshot mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM
- `pulse_width`: set pulse width of first pulse in oneshot mode, width = (carrier period)*(pulse_width +1) (pulse_width <= 15)

`esp_err_t mcpwm_carrier_oneshot_mode_disable(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)`

Disable oneshot mode, width of first pulse = carrier period.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM

`esp_err_t mcpwm_carrier_output_invert(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_carrier_out_ivt_t carrier_ivt_mode)`

Enable or disable carrier output inversion.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM
- `carrier_ivt_mode`: enable or disable carrier output inversion

`esp_err_t mcpwm_deadtime_enable(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_deadtime_type_t dt_mode, uint32_t red, uint32_t fed)`
Enable and initialize deadtime for each MCPWM timer.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- `dt_mode`: set deadtime mode
- `red`: set rising edge delay = red*100ns
- `fed`: set rising edge delay = fed*100ns

```c
esp_err_t mcpwm_deadtime_disable(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)
```

Disable deadtime on MCPWM timer.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers

```c
esp_err_t mcpwm_fault_init(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_fault_input_level_t input_level, mcpwm_fault_signal_t fault_sig)
```

Initialize fault submodule, currently low level triggering is not supported.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `input_level`: set fault signal level, which will cause fault to occur
- `fault_sig`: set the fault pin, which needs to be enabled

```c
esp_err_t mcpwm_fault_set_oneshot_mode(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_fault_signal_t fault_sig, mcpwm_output_action_t action_on_pwmxa, mcpwm_output_action_t action_on_pwmxb)
```

Set oneshot mode on fault detection, once fault occur in oneshot mode reset is required to resume MCPWM signals.  

**Note** currently low level triggering is not supported

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- `fault_sig`: set the fault pin, which needs to be enabled for oneshot mode
- `action_on_pwmxa`: action to be taken on MCPWMXA when fault occurs, either no change or high or low or toggle
- `action_on_pwmxb`: action to be taken on MCPWMXB when fault occurs, either no change or high or low or toggle

```c
esp_err_t mcpwm_fault_set_cyc_mode(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_fault_signal_t fault_sig, mcpwm_output_action_t action_on_pwmxa, mcpwm_output_action_t action_on_pwmxb)
```

Set cycle-by-cycle mode on fault detection, once fault occur in cyc mode MCPWM signal resumes as soon as fault signal becomes inactive.  

**Note** currently low level triggering is not supported

**Return**
Chapter 2. API

Esp_err_t mcpwm_fault_deinit(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_fault_signal_t fault_sig)

Disable fault signal.

Parameters
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- fault_sig: fault pin, which needs to be disabled

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Esp_err_t mcpwm_capture_enable(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_capture_signal_t cap_sig,
                                 mcpwm_capture_on_edge_t cap_edge, uint32_t num_of_pulse)

Initialize capture submodule.

Note: Enabling capture feature would also enable the capture interrupt event. Users have to register an interrupt
handler by mcpwm_isr_register, and in there, query the capture data.

Parameters
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- cap_edge: set capture edge, BIT(0) - negative edge, BIT(1) - positive edge
- cap_sig: capture pin, which needs to be enabled
- num_of_pulse: Input capture signal prescaling, ranges from 0 to 255, representing prescaling from 1 to 256.

Esp_err_t mcpwm_capture_disable(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_capture_signal_t cap_sig)

Disable capture signal.

Parameters
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- cap_sig: capture pin, which needs to be disabled

Esp_err_t mcpwm_capture_enable_channel(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_capture_channel_id_t cap_channel, const
                                        mcpwm_capture_config_t *cap_conf)

Enable capture channel.

Parameters
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- cap_channel: capture channel, which needs to be enabled
- cap_conf: capture channel configuration

Esp_err_t mcpwm_capture_disable_channel(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_capture_channel_id_t cap_channel)

Parameters
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- cap_channel: capture channel, which needs to be enabled
**Disable capture channel.**

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `cap_channel`: capture channel, which needs to be disabled

```c
uint32_t mcpwm_capture_signal_get_value(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_capture_signal_t cap_sig)
```

Get capture value.

**Return** Captured value

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `cap_sig`: capture channel on which value is to be measured

```c
uint32_t mcpwm_capture_signal_get_edge(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_capture_signal_t cap_sig)
```

Get edge of capture signal.

**Return** Capture signal edge: 1 - positive edge, 2 - negative edge

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `cap_sig`: capture channel of whose edge is to be determined

```c
esp_err_t mcpwm_sync_enable(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_sync_signal_t sync_sig, uint32_t phase_val)
```

Initialize sync submodule and sets the signal that will cause the timer be loaded with pre-defined value.

**Note** Count direction is undefined within this API

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- `sync_sig`: set the synchronization input signal
- `phase_val`: phase value in 1/1000 (for 86.7%, phase_val = 867) which timer moves to on sync signal

```c
esp_err_t mcpwm_sync_configure(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, const mcpwm_sync_config_t *sync_conf)
```

Initialize sync submodule and sets the signal that will cause the timer be loaded with pre-defined value.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- `sync_conf`: sync configuration on this timer

```c
esp_err_t mcpwm_sync_disable(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)
```

Disable sync submodule on given timer.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `mcpwm_num`: set MCPWM unit(0-1)
- `timer_num`: set timer number(0-2) of MCPWM, each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
### Chapter 2. API

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_set_timer_sync_output(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num, mcpwm_timer_sync_trigger_t trigger)

Sets sync output on given timer. Configures what event triggers MCPWM timer to output a sync signal.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- timer_num: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM. Each MCPWM unit has 3 timers
- trigger: set the trigger that will cause the timer to generate a software sync signal. Specifically, MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_DISABLED will disable the timer from generating sync signal.

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_timer_trigger_soft_sync(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_timer_t timer_num)

Trigger a software sync event and sends it to a specific timer.

**Note** This software sync event will have the same effect as hw one, except that:
- On esp32s3 the soft sync event can be routed to its output if MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_SYNCIN is selected via mcpwm_set_timer_sync_output().
- On esp32 there is no such behavior and soft sync event will only take effect on this timer and can not be propagated to others.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- timer_num: set timer number (0-2) of MCPWM. Each MCPWM unit has 3 timers

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_sync_invert_gpio_synchro(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, mcpwm_sync_signal_t sync_sig, bool invert)

Set external GPIO sync input inverter.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- sync_sig: set sync signal of MCPWM, only supports GPIO sync signal
- invert: whether GPIO sync source input is inverted (to get negative edge trigger)

#### esp_err_t mcpwm_isr_register(mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm_num, void (*fn)(void *, void *, int *intr_alloc_flags), intr_handle_t *handle)

Register MCPWM interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. the handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

**Parameters**
- mcpwm_num: set MCPWM unit (0-1)
- fn: interrupt handler function.
- arg: user-supplied argument passed to the handler function.
- intr_alloc_flags: flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. see esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- handle: pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

### Structures

#### struct mcpwm_pin_config_t

- pin number for MCPWM
Public Members

```c
int mcpwm0a_out_num
MCPWM0A out pin
int mcpwm0b_out_num
MCPWM0A out pin
int mcpwm1a_out_num
MCPWM0A out pin
int mcpwm1b_out_num
MCPWM0A out pin
int mcpwm2a_out_num
MCPWM0A out pin
int mcpwm2b_out_num
MCPWM0A out pin
int mcpwm_sync0_in_num
SYNC0 in pin
int mcpwm_sync1_in_num
SYNC1 in pin
int mcpwm_sync2_in_num
SYNC2 in pin
int mcpwm_fault0_in_num
FAULT0 in pin
int mcpwm_fault1_in_num
FAULT1 in pin
int mcpwm_fault2_in_num
FAULT2 in pin
int mcpwm_cap0_in_num
CAP0 in pin
int mcpwm_cap1_in_num
CAP1 in pin
int mcpwm_cap2_in_num
CAP2 in pin
struct cap_event_data_t
event data that will be passed into ISR callback
```

Public Members

```c
mcpwm_capture_on_edge_t cap_edge
Which signal edge is detected
```

```c
uint32_t cap_value
Corresponding timestamp when event occurs. Clock rate = APB(usually 80M)
```

```c
struct mcpwm_config_t
MCPWM config structure.
```

Public Members

```c
uint32_t frequency
Set frequency of MCPWM in Hz
```
float cmpr_a
Set % duty cycle for operator a (MCPWMXA), i.e. for 62.3% duty cycle, duty_a = 62.3

float cmpr_b
Set % duty cycle for operator b (MCPWMXB), i.e. for 48% duty cycle, duty_b = 48.0

mcpwm_duty_type_t duty_mode
Set type of duty cycle

mcpwm_counter_type_t counter_mode
Set type of MCPWM counter

struct mcpwm_carrier_config_t
MCPWM carrier configuration structure.

Public Members

uint8_t carrier_period
Set carrier period = (carrier_period + 1) * 800ns, carrier_period should be < 16

uint8_t carrier_duty
Set carrier duty cycle, carrier_duty should be less than 8 (increment every 12.5%)

uint8_t pulse_width_in_os
Set pulse width of first pulse in one shot mode = (carrier period) * (pulse_width_in_os + 1), should be less then 16

mcpwm_carrier_os_t carrier_os_mode
Enable or disable carrier oneshot mode

mcpwm_carrier_out_ivt_t carrier_ivt_mode
Invert output of carrier

struct mcpwm_capture_config_t
MCPWM config capture structure.

Public Members

mcpwm_capture_on_edge_t cap_edge
Set capture edge

uint32_t cap_prescale
Prescale of capture signal, ranging from 1 to 256

cap_isr_cb_t capture_cb
User defined capture event callback, running under interrupt context

void* user_data
User defined ISR callback function args

struct mcpwm_sync_config_t
MCPWM config sync structure.

Public Members

mcpwm_sync_signal_t sync_sig
Set sync input signal that will cause timer to sync

uint32_t timer_val
Counter value to be set after sync, in 0 ~ 999, unit: 1 / 1000 * peak

mcpwm_timer_direction_t count_direction
Counting direction to be set after sync
Chapter 2. API

Macros
MCPWM_OPR_A
MCPWM_OPR_B
MCPWM_OPR_MAX
MCPWM_SELCT_SYNC0
MCPWM_SELCT_SYNC1
MCPWM_SELCT_SYNC2
MCPWM_NO_CHANGE_IN_MCPWMXA
MCPWM_FORCE_MCPWMXA_LOW
MCPWM_FORCE_MCPWMXA_HIGH
MCPWM_TOG_MCPWMXA
MCPWM_NO_CHANGE_IN_MCPWMXB
MCPWM_FORCE_MCPWMXB_LOW
MCPWM_FORCE_MCPWMXB_HIGH
MCPWM_TOG_MCPWMXB

Type Definitions
typedef mcpwm_generator_t mcpwm_operator_t
typedef mcpwm_output_action_t mcpwm_action_on_pwmxa_t
typedef mcpwm_output_action_t mcpwm_action_on_pwmxb_t
typedef mcpwm_capture_signal_t mcpwm_capture_channel_id_t
       MCPWM capture channel ID alias.
typedef bool (*cap_isr_cb_t) (mcpwm_unit_t mcpwm, mcpwm_capture_channel_id_t cap_channel,
       const cap_event_data_t *edata, void *user_data)

Type of capture event callback.

Note  Since this an ISR callback so do not do anything that may block and call APIs that is designed to be used
      within ISR (usually has ‘_ISR’ postfix)

Return  Whether a task switch is needed after the callback function returns, this is usually due to the callback
         wakes up some high priority task.

Parameters
• mcpwm: MCPWM unit (0-1)
• cap_channel: capture channel ID
• edata: Capture event data, contains capture edge and capture value, fed by the driver
• user_data: User registered data, passed from mcpwm_capture_config_t

Enumerations
enum mcpwm_io_signals_t
   IO signals for the MCPWM.
   • 6 MCPWM output pins that generate PWM signals
   • 3 MCPWM fault input pins to detect faults like overcurrent, overvoltage, etc.
   • 3 MCPWM sync input pins to synchronize MCPWM outputs signals
   • 3 MCPWM capture input pins to gather feedback from controlled motors, using e.g. hall sensors

Values:
MCPWM0A = 0
   PWM0A output pin
MCPWM0B
   PWM0B output pin
MCPWM1A
PWM1A output pin

MCPWM1B
PWM1B output pin

MCPWM2A
PWM2A output pin

MCPWM2B
PWM2B output pin

MCPWM_SYNC_0
SYNC0 input pin

MCPWM_SYNC_1
SYNC1 input pin

MCPWM_SYNC_2
SYNC2 input pin

MCPWM_FAULT_0
FAULT0 input pin

MCPWM_FAULT_1
FAULT1 input pin

MCPWM_FAULT_2
FAULT2 input pin

MCPWM_CAP_0 = 84
CAP0 input pin

MCPWM_CAP_1
CAP1 input pin

MCPWM_CAP_2
CAP2 input pin

```c
enum mcpwm_unit_t
Select MCPWM unit.
```

Values:

```c
MCPWM_UNIT_0
MCPWM unit0 selected

MCPWM_UNIT_1
MCPWM unit1 selected

MCPWM_UNIT_MAX
Max number of MCPWM units
```

```c
enum mcpwm_timer_t
Select MCPWM timer.
```

Values:

```c
MCPWM_TIMER_0
Select MCPWM timer0

MCPWM_TIMER_1
Select MCPWM timer1

MCPWM_TIMER_2
Select MCPWM timer2

MCPWM_TIMER_MAX
Max number of timers in a unit
```
enum mcpwm_generator_t
    Select MCPWM operator.

Values:

MCPWM_GEN_A
    Select MCPWMXA, where ‘X’ is operator number

MCPWM_GEN_B
    Select MCPWMXB, where ‘X’ is operator number

MCPWM_GEN_MAX
    Num of generators to each operator of MCPWM

enum mcpwm_carrier_os_t
    MCPWM carrier oneshot mode, in this mode the width of the first pulse of carrier can be programmed.

Values:

MCPWM_ONESHOT_MODE_DIS
    Enable oneshot mode

MCPWM_ONESHOT_MODE_EN
    Disable oneshot mode

enum mcpwm_carrier_out_ivt_t
    MCPWM carrier output inversion, high frequency carrier signal active with MCPWM signal is high.

Values:

MCPWM_CARRIER_OUT_IVT_DIS
    Enable carrier output inversion

MCPWM_CARRIER_OUT_IVT_EN
    Disable carrier output inversion

enum mcpwm_fault_signal_t
    MCPWM select fault signal input.

Values:

MCPWM_SELECT_F0
    Select F0 as input

MCPWM_SELECT_F1
    Select F1 as input

MCPWM_SELECT_F2
    Select F2 as input

enum mcpwm_sync_signal_t
    MCPWM select sync signal input.

Values:

MCPWM_SELECT_NO_INPUT
    No sync input selected

MCPWM_SELECT_TIMER0_SYNC
    Select software sync signal from timer0 as input

MCPWM_SELECT_TIMER1_SYNC
    Select software sync signal from timer1 as input

MCPWM_SELECT_TIMER2_SYNC
    Select software sync signal from timer2 as input

MCPWM_SELECT_GPIO_SYNC0
    Select GPIO SYNC0 as input
MCPWM_SELECT_GPIO_SYNC1
Select GPIO SYNC1 as input

MCPWM_SELECT_GPIO_SYNC2
Select GPIO SYNC2 as input

enum mcpwm_timer_sync_trigger_t
MCPWM timer sync event trigger.

Values:

MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_SYNCIN
the input sync signal will be routed to its sync output path

MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_TEZ
sync signal generated when timer counts to zero

MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_TEP
sync signal generated when timer counts to peak

MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_DISABLED
timer does not generate sync signals

enum mcpwm_fault_input_level_t
MCPWM select triggering level of fault signal.

Values:

MCPWM_LOW_LEVEL_TGR
Fault condition occurs when fault input signal goes from high to low

MCPWM_HIGH_LEVEL_TGR
Fault condition occurs when fault input signal goes low to high

enum mcpwm_capture_on_edge_t
MCPWM select capture starts from which edge.

Values:

MCPWM_NEG_EDGE = BIT(0)
Capture the negative edge

MCPWM_POS_EDGE = BIT(1)
Capture the positive edge

MCPWM_BOTH_EDGE = BIT(1) | BIT(0)
Capture both edges

enum mcpwm_intr_t
Interrupt masks for MCPWM capture.

Values:

MCPWM_LL_INTR_CAP0 = BIT(27)
Capture 0 happened.

MCPWM_LL_INTR_CAP1 = BIT(28)
Capture 1 happened.

MCPWM_LL_INTR_CAP2 = BIT(29)
Capture 2 happened.

enum mcpwm_counter_type_t
Select type of MCPWM counter.

Values:

MCPWM_FREEZE_COUNTER
Counter freeze
**MCPWM_UP_COUNTER**
For asymmetric MCPWM

**MCPWM_DOWN_COUNTER**
For asymmetric MCPWM

**MCPWM_UP_DOWN_COUNTER**
For symmetric MCPWM, frequency is half of MCPWM frequency set

**MCPWM_COUNTER_MAX**
Maximum counter mode

```c
enum mcpwm_duty_type_t
```
Select type of MCPWM duty cycle mode.

*Values:*

**MCPWM_DUTY_MODE_0 = 0**
Active high duty, i.e. duty cycle proportional to high time for asymmetric MCPWM

**MCPWM_DUTY_MODE_1**
Active low duty, i.e. duty cycle proportional to low time for asymmetric MCPWM, out of phase(inverted) MCPWM

**MCPWM_HAL_GENERATOR_MODE_FORCE_LOW**

**MCPWM_HAL_GENERATOR_MODE_FORCE_HIGH**

**MCPWM_DUTY_MODE_MAX**
Num of duty cycle modes

```c
enum mcpwm_deadtime_type_t
```
MCPWM deadtime types, used to generate deadtime, RED refers to rising edge delay and FED refers to falling edge delay.

*Values:*

**MCPWM_DEADTIME_BYPASS = 0**
Bypass the deadtime

**MCPWM_BYPASS_RED**
MCPWMXA Out = MCPWMXA In with no delay, MCPWMXB Out = MCPWMXA In with falling edge delay

**MCPWM_BYPASS_FED**
MCPWMXA Out = MCPWMXA In with rising edge delay, MCPWMXB Out = MCPWMXB In with no delay

**MCPWM_ACTIVE_HIGH_MODE**
MCPWMXA Out = MCPWMXA In with rising edge delay, MCPWMXB Out = MCPWMXA In with falling edge delay

**MCPWM_ACTIVE_LOW_MODE**
MCPWMXA Out = MCPWMXA In with compliment of rising edge delay, MCPWMXB Out = MCPWMXB In with compliment of falling edge delay

**MCPWM_ACTIVE_HIGH_COMPLIMENT_MODE**
MCPWMXA Out = MCPWMXA In with rising edge delay, MCPWMXB = MCPWMXA In with compliment of falling edge delay

**MCPWM_ACTIVE_LOW_COMPLIMENT_MODE**
MCPWMXA Out = MCPWMXA In with compliment of rising edge delay, MCPWMXB Out = MCPWMXB In with falling edge delay

**MCPWM_ACTIVE_RED_FED_FROM_PWMXA**
MCPWMXA Out = MCPWMXB Out = MCPWMXA In with rising edge delay as well as falling edge delay
MCPWM_ACTIVE_RED_FED_FROM_PWMXB
MCPWMXA Out = MCPWMXB Out = MCPWMXB In with rising edge delay as well as falling edge delay

MCPWM_DEADTIME_TYPE_MAX
Maximum number of supported dead time modes

enum mcpwm_output_action_t
MCPWM select action to be taken on the output when event happens.

Values:

MCPWM_ACTION_NO_CHANGE = 0
No change in the output

MCPWM_ACTION_FORCE_LOW
Make output low

MCPWM_ACTION_FORCE_HIGH
Make output high

MCPWM_ACTION_TOGGLE
Make output toggle

enum mcpwm_capture_signal_t
MCPWM select capture signal input.

Values:

MCPWM_SELECT_CAP0
Select CAP0 as input

MCPWM_SELECT_CAP1
Select CAP1 as input

MCPWM_SELECT_CAP2
Select CAP2 as input

2.3.10 Pulse Counter (PCNT)

Introduction

The PCNT (Pulse Counter) module is designed to count the number of rising and/or falling edges of an input signal. Each pulse counter unit has a 16-bit signed counter register and two channels that can be configured to either increment or decrement the counter. Each channel has a signal input that accepts signal edges to be detected, as well as a control input that can be used to enable or disable the signal input. The inputs have optional filters that can be used to discard unwanted glitches in the signal.

Functionality Overview

Description of functionality of this API has been broken down into four sections:

- Configuration - describes counter’s configuration parameters and how to setup the counter.
- Operating the Counter - provides information on control functions to pause, measure and clear the counter.
- Filtering Pulses - describes options to filtering pulses and the counter control signals.
- Using Interrupts - presents how to trigger interrupts on specific states of the counter.

Configuration

The PCNT module has 8 independent counting units numbered from 0 to 7. In the API they are referred to using pcnt_unit_t. Each unit has two independent channels numbered as 0 and 1 and specified with pcnt_channel_t.
Chapter 2. API 参考

The configuration is provided separately per unit’s channel using `pcnt_config_t` and covers:

- The unit and the channel number this configuration refers to.
- GPIO numbers of the pulse input and the pulse gate input.
- Two pairs of parameters: `pcnt_ctrl_mode_t` and `pcnt_count_mode_t` to define how the counter reacts depending on the the status of control signal and how counting is done positive / negative edge of the pulses.
- Two limit values (minimum / maximum) that are used to establish watchpoints and trigger interrupts when the pulse count is meeting particular limit.

Setting up of particular channel is then done by calling a function `pcnt_unit_config()` with above `pcnt_config_t` as the input parameter.

To disable the pulse or the control input pin in configuration, provide `PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED` instead of the GPIO number.

### Operating the Counter

After doing setup with `pcnt_unit_config()`, the counter immediately starts to operate. The accumulated pulse count can be checked by calling `pcnt_get_counter_value()`.

There are couple of functions that allow to control the counter’s operation: `pcnt_counter_pause()`, `pcnt_counter_resume()` and `pcnt_counter_clear()`.

It is also possible to dynamically change the previously set up counter modes with `pcnt_unit_config()` by calling `pcnt_set_mode()`.

If desired, the pulse input pin and the control input pin may be changed “on the fly” using `pcnt_set_pin()`. To disable particular input provide as a function parameter `PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED` instead of the GPIO number.

---

注解：For the counter not to miss any pulses, the pulse duration should be longer than one APB_CLK cycle (12.5 ns). The pulses are sampled on the edges of the APB_CLK clock and may be missed, if fall between the edges. This applies to counter operation with or without a filter.

### Filtering Pulses

The PCNT unit features filters on each of the pulse and control inputs, adding the option to ignore short glitches in the signals.

The length of ignored pulses is provided in APB_CLK clock cycles by calling `pcnt_set_filter_value()`. The current filter setting may be checked with `pcnt_get_filter_value()`. The APB_CLK clock is running at 80 MHz.

The filter is put into operation / suspended by calling `pcnt_filter_enable()` / `pcnt_filter_disable()`.

### Using Interrupts

There are five counter state watch events, defined in `pcnt_evt_type_t`, that are able to trigger an interrupt. The event happens on the pulse counter reaching specific values:

- Minimum or maximum count values: `counter_l_lim` or `counter_h_lim` provided in `pcnt_config_t` as discussed in Configuration
- Threshold 0 or Threshold 1 values set using function `pcnt_set_event_value()`.
- Pulse count = 0

To register, enable or disable an interrupt to service the above events, call `pcnt_isr_register()`, `pcnt_intr_enable()`, and `pcnt_intr_disable()`. To enable or disable events on reaching threshold values, you will also need to call functions `pcnt_event_enable()` and `pcnt_event_disable()`.
In order to check what are the threshold values currently set, use function `pcnt_get_event_value()`.

**Application Example**

- Pulse counter with control signal and event interrupt example: `peripherals/pcnt/pulse_count_event`.
- Parse the signal generated from rotary encoder: `peripherals/pcnt/rotary_encoder`.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- `components/driver/include/driver/pcnt.h`

**Functions**

### `esp_err_t pcnt_unit_config(const pcnt_config_t *pcnt_config)`

Configure Pulse Counter unit.

**Note**
This function will disable three events: `PCNT_EVT_L_LIM`, `PCNT_EVT_H_LIM`, `PCNT_EVT ZERO`.

**Return**
- `ESP_OK` Success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE` pcnt driver already initialized
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `pcnt_config`: Pointer of Pulse Counter unit configure parameter

### `esp_err_t pcnt_get_counter_value(pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit, int16_t *count)`

Get pulse counter value.

**Return**
- `ESP_OK` Success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE` pcnt driver has not been initialized
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `pcnt_unit`: Pulse Counter unit number
- `count`: Pointer to accept counter value

### `esp_err_t pcnt_counter_pause(pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit)`

Pause PCNT counter of PCNT unit.

**Return**
- `ESP_OK` Success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE` pcnt driver has not been initialized
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `pcnt_unit`: PCNT unit number

### `esp_err_t pcnt_counter_resume(pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit)`

Resume counting for PCNT counter.

**Return**
- `ESP_OK` Success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE` pcnt driver has not been initialized
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `pcnt_unit`: PCNT unit number

### `esp_err_t pcnt_counter_clear(pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit)`

Clear and reset PCNT counter value to zero.

**Return**
- `ESP_OK` Success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE` pcnt driver has not been initialized
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `pcnt_unit`: PCNT unit number, select from `pcnt_unit_t`
Chapter 2. API 參考

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- pcnt_unit: PCNT unit number, select from pcnt_unit_t

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_intr_enable (pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit)
```
Enable PCNT interrupt for PCNT unit.

**Note** Each Pulse counter unit has five watch point events that share the same interrupt. Configure events with pcnt_event_enable() and pcnt_event_disable()

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- pcnt_unit: PCNT unit number

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_intr_disable (pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit)
```
Disable PCNT interrupt for PCNT unit.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- pcnt_unit: PCNT unit number

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_event_enable (pcnt_unit_t unit, pcnt_evt_type_t evt_type)
```
Enable PCNT event of PCNT unit.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number
- evt_type: Watch point event type. All enabled events share the same interrupt (one interrupt per pulse counter unit).

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_event_disable (pcnt_unit_t unit, pcnt_evt_type_t evt_type)
```
Disable PCNT event of PCNT unit.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number
- evt_type: Watch point event type. All enabled events share the same interrupt (one interrupt per pulse counter unit).

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_set_event_value (pcnt_unit_t unit, pcnt_evt_type_t evt_type, int16_t value)
```
Set PCNT event value of PCNT unit.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number
- evt_type: Watch point event type. All enabled events share the same interrupt (one interrupt per pulse counter unit).
Chapter 2. API

- **value**: Counter value for PCNT event

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_get_event_value (pcnt_unit_t unit, pcnt_evt_type_t evt_type, int16_t *value)
```

Get PCNT event value of PCNT unit.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- **unit**: PCNT unit number
- **evt_type**: Watchpoint event type. All enabled events share the same interrupt (one interrupt per pulse counter unit).
- **value**: Pointer to accept counter value for PCNT event

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_get_event_status (pcnt_unit_t unit, uint32_t *status)
```

Get PCNT event status of PCNT unit.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- **unit**: PCNT unit number
- **status**: Pointer to accept event status word

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_isr_unregister (pcnt_isr_handle_t handle)
```

Unregister PCNT interrupt handler (registered by `pcnt_isr_register`), the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on. If the interrupt service is registered by `pcnt_isr_service_install`, please call `pcnt_isr_service_uninstall` instead.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Cannot find the interrupt that matches the flags.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

**Parameters**
- **handle**: handle to unregister the ISR service.

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_isr_register (void (*fn) (void *), void *arg, int intr_alloc_flags, pcnt_isr_handle_t *handle)
```

Register PCNT interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on. Please do not use `pcnt_isr_service_install` if this function was called.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Cannot find the interrupt that matches the flags.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

**Parameters**
- **fn**: Interrupt handler function.
- **arg**: Parameter for handler function
- **intr_alloc_flags**: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORed) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- **handle**: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here. Calling `pcnt_isr_unregister` to unregister this ISR service if needed, but only if the handle is not NULL.

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_set_pin (pcnt_unit_t unit, pcnt_channel_t channel, int pulse_io, int ctrl_io)
```

Configure PCNT pulse signal input pin and control input pin.

**Note** Set the signal input to PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED if unused.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
**Chapter 2. API**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number
- channel: PCNT channel number
- pulse_io: Pulse signal input GPIO
- ctrl_io: Control signal input GPIO

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_filter_enable (pcnt_unit_t unit)
```
Enable PCNT input filter.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_filter_disable (pcnt_unit_t unit)
```
Disable PCNT input filter.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_set_filter_value (pcnt_unit_t unit, uint16_t filter_val)
```
Set PCNT filter value.

**Note**
filter_val is a 10-bit value, so the maximum filter_val should be limited to 1023.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number
- filter_val: PCNT signal filter value, counter in APB_CLK cycles. Any pulses lasting shorter than this will be ignored when the filter is enabled.

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_get_filter_value (pcnt_unit_t unit, uint16_t *filter_val)
```
Get PCNT filter value.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number
- filter_val: Pointer to accept PCNT filter value.

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_set_mode (pcnt_unit_t unit, pcnt_channel_t channel, pcnt_count_mode_t pos_mode, pcnt_count_mode_t neg_mode, pcnt_ctrl_mode_t hctrl_mode, pcnt_ctrl_mode_t lctrl_mode)
```
Set PCNT counter mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number
- channel: PCNT channel number
• pos_mode: Counter mode when detecting positive edge
• neg_mode: Counter mode when detecting negative edge
• hctrl_mode: Counter mode when control signal is high level
• lctrl_mode: Counter mode when control signal is low level

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_isr_handler_add (pcnt_unit_t unit, void (*isr_handler)(void), void *args)
```
Add ISR handler for specified unit.

Call this function after using pcnt_isr_service_install() to install the PCNT driver’s ISR handler service.

The ISR handlers do not need to be declared with IRAM_ATTR, unless you pass the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag when allocating the ISR in pcnt_isr_service_install().

This ISR handler will be called from an ISR. So there is a stack size limit (configurable as “ISR stack size” in menuconfig). This limit is smaller compared to a global PCNT interrupt handler due to the additional level of indirection.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number
- isr_handler: Interrupt handler function.
- args: Parameter for handler function

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_isr_service_install (int intr_alloc_flags)
```
Install PCNT ISR service.

**Note** We can manage different interrupt service for each unit. This function will use the default ISR handle service. Calling pcnt_isr_service_uninstall to uninstall the default service if needed. Please do not use pcnt_isr_register if this function was called.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No memory to install this service
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE ISR service already installed

**Parameters**
- intr_alloc_flags: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

```c
void pcnt_isr_service_uninstall (void)
```
Uninstall PCNT ISR service, freeing related resources.

```c
esp_err_t pcnt_isr_handler_remove (pcnt_unit_t unit)
```
Delete ISR handler for specified unit.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**
- unit: PCNT unit number

**Structures**

```c
struct pcnt_config_t
```
Pulse Counter configuration for a single channel.

**Public Members**

```c
int pulse_gpio_num
```
Pulse input GPIO number, if you want to use GPIO16, enter pulse_gpio_num = 16, a negative value will
be ignored

```c
int ctrl_gpio_num
    Control signal input GPIO number, a negative value will be ignored
```

```c
pcnt_ctrl_mode_t lctrl_mode
    PCNT low control mode
```

```c
pcnt_ctrl_mode_t hctrl_mode
    PCNT high control mode
```

```c
pcnt_count_mode_t pos_mode
    PCNT positive edge count mode
```

```c
pcnt_count_mode_t neg_mode
    PCNT negative edge count mode
```

```c
int16_t counter_h_lim
    Maximum counter value
```

```c
int16_t counter_l_lim
    Minimum counter value
```

```c
pcnt_unit_t unit
    PCNT unit number
```

```c
pcnt_channel_t channel
    the PCNT channel
```

**Macros**

```c
PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED
    When selected for a pin, this pin will not be used
```

```c
PCNT_MODE_KEEP
    Control mode: won’t change counter mode
```

```c
PCNT_MODE_REVERSE
    Control mode: invert counter mode(increase -> decrease, decrease -> increase)
```

```c
PCNT_MODE_DISABLE
    Control mode: Inhibit counter(counter value will not change in this condition)
```

```c
PCNT_MODE_MAX
```

```c
PCNT_COUNT_DIS
    Counter mode: Inhibit counter(counter value will not change in this condition)
```

```c
PCNT_COUNT_INC
    Counter mode: Increase counter value
```

```c
PCNT_COUNT_DEC
    Counter mode: Decrease counter value
```

```c
PCNT_COUNT_MAX
```

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef intr_handle_t pcnt_isr_handle_t
```

```c
typedef pcnt_channel_level_action_t pcnt_ctrl_mode_t
    Selection of available modes that determine the counter’s action depending on the state of the control signal’s input GPIO.
```

**Note** Configuration covers two actions, one for high, and one for low level on the control input

```c
typedef pcnt_channel_edge_action_t pcnt_count_mode_t
    Selection of available modes that determine the counter’s action on the edge of the pulse signal’s input GPIO.
```

**Note** Configuration covers two actions, one for positive, and one for negative edge on the pulse input
Enumerations

enum pcnt_port_t
PCNT port number; the max port number is (PCNT_PORT_MAX - 1).

Values:

\texttt{PCNT\_PORT\_0}
PCNT port 0

\texttt{PCNT\_PORT\_MAX}
PCNT port max

enum pcnt_unit_t
Selection of all available PCNT units.

Values:

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_0}
PCNT unit 0

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_1}
PCNT unit 1

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_2}
PCNT unit 2

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_3}
PCNT unit 3

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_4}
PCNT unit 4

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_5}
PCNT unit 5

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_6}
PCNT unit 6

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_7}
PCNT unit 7

\texttt{PCNT\_UNIT\_MAX}

enum pcnt_channel_t
Selection of channels available for a single PCNT unit.

Values:

\texttt{PCNT\_CHANNEL\_0}
PCNT channel 0

\texttt{PCNT\_CHANNEL\_1}
PCNT channel 1

\texttt{PCNT\_CHANNEL\_MAX}

enum pcnt_evt_type_t
Selection of counter’s events the may trigger an interrupt.

Values:

\texttt{PCNT\__EVT\_THRES\_1} = 1 \ll 2
PCNT watch point event: threshold1 value event

\texttt{PCNT\__EVT\_THRES\_0} = 1 \ll 3
PCNT watch point event: threshold0 value event

\texttt{PCNT\__EVT\_L\_LIM} = 1 \ll 4
PCNT watch point event: Minimum counter value
PCNT_EVT_H_LIM = 1 \times 5
PCNT watch point event: Maximum counter value

PCNT_EVT_ZERO = 1 \times 6
PCNT watch point event: counter value zero event

PCNT_EVT_MAX

Header File
- components/hal/include/hal/pcnt_types.h

Enumerations
enum pcnt_channel_level_action_t
PCNT channel action on control level.
Values:
- PCNT_CHANNEL_LEVEL_ACTION_KEEP
  Keep current count mode
- PCNT_CHANNEL_LEVEL_ACTION_INVERSE
  Invert current count mode (increase -> decrease, decrease -> increase)
- PCNT_CHANNEL_LEVEL_ACTION_HOLD
  Hold current count value

enum pcnt_channel_edge_action_t
PCNT channel action on signal edge.
Values:
- PCNT_CHANNEL_EDGE_ACTION_HOLD
  Hold current count value
- PCNT_CHANNEL_EDGE_ACTION_INCREASE
  Increase count value
- PCNT_CHANNEL_EDGE_ACTION_DECREASE
  Decrease count value

enum pcnt_unit_count_sign_t
PCNT unit counter value’s sign.
Values:
- PCNT_UNIT_COUNT_SIGN_ZERO_POS
  positive value to zero
- PCNT_UNIT_COUNT_SIGN_ZERO_NEG
  negative value to zero
- PCNT_UNIT_COUNT_SIGN_NEG
  counter value negative
- PCNT_UNIT_COUNT_SIGN_POS
  counter value positive

2.3.11 Remote Control (RMT)

The RMT (Remote Control) module driver can be used to send and receive infrared remote control signals. Due to flexibility of RMT module, the driver can also be used to generate or receive many other types of signals.

The signal, which consists of a series of pulses, is generated by RMT’s transmitter based on a list of values. The values define the pulse duration and a binary level, see below. The transmitter can also provide a carrier and modulate it with provided pulses.
There reverse operation is performed by the receiver, where a series of pulses is decoded into a list of values containing the pulse duration and binary level. A filter may be applied to remove high frequency noise from the input signal.

There couple of typical steps to setup and operate the RMT and they are discussed in the following sections:

1. Configure Driver
2. Transmit Data or Receive Data
3. Change Operation Parameters
4. Use Interrupts

The RMT has eight channels numbered from zero to seven. Each channel is able to independently transmit or receive data. They are referred to using indexes defined in structure `rmt_channel_t`.

**Configure Driver**

There are several parameters that define how particular channel operates. Most of these parameters are configured by setting specific members of `rmt_config_t` structure. Some of the parameters are common to both transmit or receive mode, and some are mode specific. They are all discussed below.

**Common Parameters**

- The channel to be configured, select one from the `rmt_channel_t` enumerator.
- The RMT operation mode - whether this channel is used to transmit or receive data, selected by setting a `rmt_mode` members to one of the values from `rmt_mode_t`.
- What is the pin number to transmit or receive RMT signals, selected by setting `gpio_num`.
- How many memory blocks will be used by the channel, set with `mem_block_num`.
- Extra miscellaneous parameters for the channel can be set in the `flags`.
When **RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS** is set, RMT channel will take REF_TICK or XTAL as source clock. The benefit is, RMT channel can continue work even when APB clock is changing. See *power_management* for more information.

When **RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_INVERT_SIG** is set, the driver will invert the RMT signal sending to or receiving from the channel. It just works like an external inverter connected to the GPIO of certain RMT channel.

- A **clock divider**, that will determine the range of pulse length generated by the RMT transmitter or discriminated by the receiver. Selected by setting **clk_div** to a value within [1..255] range. The RMT source clock is typically APB CLK, 80Mhz by default. But when **RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS** is set in **flags**, RMT source clock is changed to REF_TICK or XTAL.

There are also couple of specific parameters that should be set up depending if selected channel is configured in **Transmit Mode** or **Receive Mode**.

**Transmit Mode**  When configuring channel in transmit mode, set **tx_config** and the following members of **rmt_tx_config_t**:

- Transmit the currently configured data items in a loop - **loop_en**
- Enable the RMT carrier signal - **carrier_en**
- Frequency of the carrier in Hz - **carrier_freq_hz**
- Duty cycle of the carrier signal in percent (%) - **carrier_duty_percent**
- Level of the RMT output, when the carrier is applied - **carrier_level**
- Enable the RMT output if idle - **idle_output_en**
- Set the signal level on the RMT output if idle - **idle_level**

**Receive Mode**  In receive mode, set **rx_config** and the following members of **rmt_rx_config_t**:

- Enable a filter on the input of the RMT receiver - **filter_en**
- A threshold of the filter, set in the number of ticks - **filter_ticks_thresh**. Pulses shorter than this setting will be filtered out. Note, that the range of entered tick values is [0..255].
- A pulse length threshold that will turn the RMT receiver idle, set in number of ticks - **idle_threshold**. The receiver will ignore pulses longer than this setting.

**Finalize Configuration**  Once the **rmt_config_t** structure is populated with parameters, it should be then invoked with **rmt_config()** to make the configuration effective.

The last configuration step is installation of the driver in memory by calling **rmt_driver_install()**. If **rx_buf_size** parameter of this function is > 0, then a ring buffer for incoming data will be allocated. A default ISR handler will be installed, see a note in *Use Interrupts*.

Now, depending on how the channel is configured, we are ready to either **Transmit Data** or **Receive Data**. This is described in next two sections.

**Transmit Data**

Before being able to transmit some RMT pulses, we need to define the pulse pattern. The minimum pattern recognized by the RMT controller, later called an ‘item’, is provided in a structure **rmt_item32_t**. Each item consists of two pairs of two values. The first value in a pair describes the signal duration in ticks and is 15 bits long, the second provides the signal level (high or low) and is contained in a single bit. A block of couple of items and the structure of an item is presented below.

For a simple example how to define a block of items see *peripherals/rmt/morse_code*. 
Chapter 2. API

16: Structure of RMT items (L - signal level)

The items are provided to the RMT controller by calling function `rmt_write_items()`. This function also automatically triggers start of transmission. It may be called to wait for transmission completion or exit just after transmission start. In such case you can wait for the transmission end by calling `rmt_wait_tx_done()`. This function does not limit the number of data items to transmit. It is using an interrupt to successively copy the new data chunks to RMT’s internal memory as previously provided data are sent out.

Another way to provide data for transmission is by calling `rmt_fill_tx_items()`. In this case transmission is not started automatically. To control the transmission process use `rmt_tx_start()` and `rmt_tx_stop()`. The number of items to send is restricted by the size of memory blocks allocated in the RMT controller’s internal memory, see `rmt_set_mem_block_num()`.

Receive Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>警告：RMT RX channel can’t receive packet whose items are larger than its memory block size. If you set the memory block number to 1, then this RX channel can’t receive packet with more than 64 items. This is a hardware limitation.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Before starting the receiver we need some storage for incoming items. The RMT controller has 512 x 32-bits of internal RAM shared between all eight channels.

In typical scenarios it is not enough as an ultimate storage for all incoming (and outgoing) items. Therefore this API supports retrieval of incoming items on the fly to save them in a ring buffer of a size defined by the user. The size is provided when calling `rmt_driver_install()` discussed above. To get a handle to this buffer call `rmt_get_ringbuf_handle()`.

With the above steps complete we can start the receiver by calling `rmt_rx_start()` and then move to checking what’s inside the buffer. To do so, you can use common FreeRTOS functions that interact with the ring buffer. Please see an example how to do it in peripherals/rmt/ir_protocols.

To stop the receiver, call `rmt_rx_stop()`.

Change Operation Parameters

Previously described function `rmt_config()` provides a convenient way to set several configuration parameters in one shot. This is usually done on application start. Then, when the application is running, the API provides an
alternate way to update individual parameters by calling dedicated functions. Each function refers to the specific RMT channel provided as the first input parameter. Most of the functions have _get_ counterpart to read back the currently configured value.

**Parameters Common to Transmit and Receive Mode**

- Selection of a GPIO pin number on the input or output of the RMT - `rmt_set_gpio()`
- Number of memory blocks allocated for the incoming or outgoing data - `rmt_set_mem_pd()`
- Setting of the clock divider - `rmt_set_clk_div()`
- Selection of the clock source, note that currently one clock source is supported, the APB clock which is 80Mhz - `rmt_set_source_clk()`

**Transmit Mode Parameters**

- Enable or disable the loop back mode for the transmitter - `rmt_set_tx_loop_mode()`
- Binary level on the output to apply the carrier - `rmt_set_tx_carrier()`, selected from `rmt_carrier_level_t`
- Determines the binary level on the output when transmitter is idle - `rmt_set_idle_level()`, selected from `rmt_idle_level_t`

**Receive Mode Parameters**

- The filtersetting - `rmt_set_rx_filter()`
- The receiver threshold setting - `rmt_set_rx_idle_thresh()`
- Whether the transmitter or receiver is entitled to access RMT’s memory - `rmt_set_memory_owner()`, selection is from `rmt_mem_owner_t`

**Use Interrupts**

Registering of an interrupt handler for the RMT controller is done be calling `rmt_isr_register()`.

---

**注解:** When calling `rmt_driver_install()` to use the system RMT driver, a default ISR is being installed. In such a case you cannot register a generic ISR handler with `rmt_isr_register()`.

---

The RMT controller triggers interrupts on four specific events described below. To enable interrupts on these events, the following functions are provided:

- The RMT receiver has finished receiving a signal - `rmt_set_rx_intr_en()`
- The RMT transmitter has finished transmitting the signal - `rmt_set_tx_intr_en()`
- The number of events the transmitter has sent matches a threshold value - `rmt_set_tx_thr_intr_en()`
- Ownership to the RMT memory block has been violated - `rmt_set_err_intr_en()`

Setting or clearing an interrupt enable mask for specific channels and events may be also done by calling `rmt_set_intr_enable_mask()` or `rmt_clr_intr_enable_mask()`.

When servicing an interrupt within an ISR, the interrupt need to explicitly cleared. To do so, set specific bits described as `RMT.int_clr.val.chN_event_name` and defined as a volatile struct in `soc/esp32/include/soc/rmt_struct.h`, where N is the RMT channel number [0, n] and the event_name is one of four events described above.

If you do not need an ISR anymore, you can deregister it by calling a function `rmt_isr_deregister()`.

---

**警告:** It’s not recommended for users to register an interrupt handler in their applications. RMT driver is highly dependent on interrupt, especially when doing transaction in a ping-pong way, so the driver itself has registered a default handler called `rmt_driver_isr_default`. Instead, if what you want is to get a notification when transaction is done, go ahead with `rmt_register_tx_end_callback()`.
Uninstall Driver

If the RMT driver has been installed with `rmt_driver_install()` for some specific period of time and then not required, the driver may be removed to free allocated resources by calling `rmt_driver_uninstall()`.

Application Examples

- Using RMT to send morse code: `peripherals/rmt/morse_code`
- Using RMT to drive RGB LED strip: `peripherals/rmt/led_strip`
- NEC remote control TX and RX example: `peripherals/rmt/ir_protocols`
- Musical buzzer example: `peripherals/rmt/musical_buzzer`

API Reference

Header File

- `components/driver/include/driver/rmt.h`

Functions

`esp_err_t rmt_set_clk_div(rmt_channel_t channel, uint8_t div_cnt)`

Set RMT clock divider, channel clock is divided from source clock.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `div_cnt`: RMT counter clock divider

`esp_err_t rmt_get_clk_div(rmt_channel_t channel, uint8_t* div_cnt)`

Get RMT clock divider, channel clock is divided from source clock.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `div_cnt`: pointer to accept RMT counter divider

`esp_err_t rmt_set_rx_idle_thresh(rmt_channel_t channel, uint16_t thresh)`

Set RMT RX idle threshold value.

In receive mode, when no edge is detected on the input signal for longer than idle_thres channel clock cycles, the receive process is finished.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `thresh`: RMT RX idle threshold

`esp_err_t rmt_get_rx_idle_thresh(rmt_channel_t channel, uint16_t* thresh)`

Get RMT idle threshold value.

In receive mode, when no edge is detected on the input signal for longer than idle_thres channel clock cycles, the receive process is finished.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
Chapter 2. API Reference

Parameters

- channel: RMT channel
- thresh: pointer to accept RMT RX idle threshold value

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_mem_block_num(rmt_channel_t channel, uint8_t rmt_mem_num)
```

Set RMT memory block number for RMT channel.

This function is used to configure the amount of memory blocks allocated to channel n. The 8 channels share a 512x32-bit RAM block which can be read and written by the processor cores over the APB bus, as well as read by the transmitters and written by the receivers.

The RAM address range for channel n is start_addr_CHn to end_addr_CHn, which are defined by: Memory block start address is RMT_CHANNEL_MEM(n) (in soc/rmt_reg.h), that is, start_addr_chn = RMT base address + 0x800 + 64 * 4 * n, and end_addr_chn = RMT base address + 0x800 + 64 * 4 * n + 64 * 4 * RMT_MEM_SIZE_CHn mod 512 * 4

Note If memory block number of one channel is set to a value greater than 1, this channel will occupy the memory block of the next channel. Channel 0 can use at most 8 blocks of memory, accordingly channel 7 can only use one memory block.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- channel: RMT channel
- rmt_mem_num: RMT RX memory block number, one block has 64 * 32 bits.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_get_mem_block_num(rmt_channel_t channel, uint8_t* rmt_mem_num)
```

Get RMT memory block number.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- channel: RMT channel
- rmt_mem_num: Pointer to accept RMT RX memory block number

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_tx_carrier(rmt_channel_t channel, bool carrier_en, uint16_t high_level, uint16_t low_level, rmt_carrier_level_t carrier_level)
```

Configure RMT carrier for TX signal.

Set different values for carrier_high and carrier_low to set different frequency of carrier. The unit of carrier_high/low is the source clock tick, not the divided channel counter clock.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- channel: RMT channel
- carrier_en: Whether to enable output carrier.
- high_level: High level duration of carrier
- low_level: Low level duration of carrier.
- carrier_level: Configure the way carrier wave is modulated for channel.
  - 1'b1: transmit on low output level
  - 1'b0: transmit on high output level

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_mem_pd(rmt_channel_t channel, bool pd_en)
```

Set RMT memory in low power mode.

Reduce power consumed by memory. 1: memory is in low power state.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
• channel: RMT channel
• pd_en: RMT memory low power enable.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_get_mem_pd(rmt_channel_t channel, bool *pd_en)
```
Get RMT memory low power mode.

**Return**
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success

**Parameters**
• channel: RMT channel
• pd_en: Pointer to accept RMT memory low power mode.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_tx_start(rmt_channel_t channel, bool tx_idx_rst)
```
Set RMT start sending data from memory.

**Return**
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success

**Parameters**
• channel: RMT channel
• tx_idx_rst: Set true to reset memory index for TX. Otherwise, transmitter will continue sending from the last index in memory.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_tx_stop(rmt_channel_t channel)
```
Set RMT stop sending.

**Return**
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success

**Parameters**
• channel: RMT channel

```c
esp_err_t rmt_rx_start(rmt_channel_t channel, bool rx_idx_rst)
```
Set RMT start receiving data.

**Return**
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success

**Parameters**
• channel: RMT channel
• rx_idx_rst: Set true to reset memory index for receiver. Otherwise, receiver will continue receiving data to the last index in memory.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_rx_stop(rmt_channel_t channel)
```
Set RMT stop receiving data.

**Return**
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success

**Parameters**
• channel: RMT channel

```c
esp_err_t rmt_tx_memory_reset(rmt_channel_t channel)
```
Reset RMT TX memory.

**Return**
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success

**Parameters**
• channel: RMT channel

```c
esp_err_t rmt_rx_memory_reset(rmt_channel_t channel)
```
Reset RMT RX memory.
Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel

`esp_err_t rmt_set_memory_owner(rmt_channel_t channel, rmt_mem_owner_t owner)`
Set RMT memory owner.

Note Setting memory is only valid for RX channel.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- owner: To set when the transmitter or receiver can process the memory of channel.

`esp_err_t rmt_get_memory_owner(rmt_channel_t channel, rmt_mem_owner_t *owner)`
Get RMT memory owner.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- owner: Pointer to get memory owner.

`esp_err_t rmt_set_tx_loop_mode(rmt_channel_t channel, bool loop_en)`
Set RMT tx loop mode.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- loop_en: Enable RMT transmitter loop sending mode. If set true, transmitter will continue sending from the first data to the last data in channel over and over again in a loop.

`esp_err_t rmt_get_tx_loop_mode(rmt_channel_t channel, bool *loop_en)`
Get RMT tx loop mode.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- loop_en: Pointer to accept RMT transmitter loop sending mode.

`esp_err_t rmt_set_rx_filter(rmt_channel_t channel, bool rx_filter_en, uint8_t thresh)`
Set RMT RX filter.

In receive mode, channel will ignore input pulse when the pulse width is smaller than threshold. Counted in source clock, not divided counter clock.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- rx_filter_en: To enable RMT receiver filter.
- thresh: Threshold of pulse width for receiver.

`esp_err_t rmt_set_source_clk(rmt_channel_t channel, rmt_source_clk_t base_clk)`
Set RMT source clock.
RMT module has two clock sources:
1. APB clock which is 80Mhz
2. REF tick clock, which would be 1Mhz (not supported in this version).

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- base_clk: To choose source clock for RMT module.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_get_source_clk (rmt_channel_t channel, rmt_source_clk_t *src_clk)
```
Get RMT source clock.

RMT module has two clock sources:
1. APB clock which is 80Mhz
2. REF tick clock, which would be 1Mhz (not supported in this version).

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- src_clk: Pointer to accept source clock for RMT module.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_idle_level (rmt_channel_t channel, bool idle_out_en, rmt_idle_level_t level)
```
Set RMT idle output level for transmitter.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- idle_out_en: To enable idle level output.
- level: To set the output signal’s level for channel in idle state.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_get_idle_level (rmt_channel_t channel, bool *idle_out_en, rmt_idle_level_t *level)
```
Get RMT idle output level for transmitter.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- idle_out_en: Pointer to accept value of enable idle.
- level: Pointer to accept value of output signal’s level in idle state for specified channel.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_get_status (rmt_channel_t channel, uint32_t *status)
```
Get RMT status.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- status: Pointer to accept channel status. Please refer to RMT_CHnSTATUS_REG(n=0-7) in rmt_reg.h for more details of each field.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_rx_intr_en (rmt_channel_t channel, bool en)
```
Set RMT RX interrupt enable.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
Chapter 2. API

ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- en: enable or disable RX interrupt.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_err_intr_en(rmt_channel_t channel, bool en)
```
Set RMT RX error interrupt enable.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- en: enable or disable RX err interrupt.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_tx_intr_en(rmt_channel_t channel, bool en)
```
Set RMT TX interrupt enable.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- en: enable or disable TX interrupt.

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_tx_thr_intr_en(rmt_channel_t channel, bool en, uint16_t evt_thresh)
```
Set RMT TX threshold event interrupt enable.

An interrupt will be triggered when the number of transmitted items reaches the threshold value

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- en: enable or disable TX event interrupt.
- evt_thresh: RMT event interrupt threshold value

```c
esp_err_t rmt_set_gpio(rmt_channel_t channel, rmt_mode_t mode, gpio_num_t gpio_num, bool invert_signal)
```
Configure the GPIO used by RMT channel.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Configure RMT GPIO failed because of wrong parameter
- ESP_OK Configure RMT GPIO successfully

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- mode: RMT mode, either RMT_MODE_TX or RMT_MODE_RX
- gpio_num: GPIO number, which is connected with certain RMT signal
- invert_signal: Invert RMT signal physically by GPIO matrix

```c
esp_err_t rmt_config(const rmt_config_t *rmt_param)
```
Configure RMT parameters.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- rmt_param: RMT parameter struct

```c
esp_err_t rmt_isr_register(void (*fn)(void *), void *arg, int intr_alloc_flags, rmt_isr_handle_t *handle)
```
Register RMT interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR.

The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.
Note: If you already called rmt_driver_install to use system RMT driver, please do not register ISR handler again.

Return:
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.
- ESP_FAIL System driver installed, can not register ISR handler for RMT

Parameters:
- fn: Interrupt handler function.
- arg: Parameter for the handler function.
- intr_alloc_flags: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORed) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- handle: If non-zero, a handle to later clean up the ISR gets stored here.

esp_err_t rmt_isr_deregister(rmt_isr_handle_t handle)
Deregister previously registered RMT interrupt handler.

Return:
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Handle invalid

Parameters:
- handle: Handle obtained from rmt_isr_register

esp_err_t rmt_fill_tx_items(rmt_channel_t channel, const rmt_item32_t *item, uint16_t item_num, uint16_t mem_offset)
Fill memory data of channel with given RMT items.

Return:
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters:
- channel: RMT channel
- item: Pointer of items.
- item_num: RMT sending items number.
- mem_offset: Index offset of memory.

esp_err_t rmt_driver_install(rmt_channel_t channel, size_t rx_buf_size, int intr_alloc_flags)
Initialize RMT driver.

Return:
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver is already installed, call rmt_driver_uninstall first.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Memory allocation failure
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters:
- channel: RMT channel
- rx_buf_size: Size of RMT RX ringbuffer. Can be 0 if the RX ringbuffer is not used.
- intr_alloc_flags: Flags for the RMT driver interrupt handler. Pass 0 for default flags. See esp_intr_alloc.h for details. If ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is used, please do not use the memory allocated from psram when calling rmt_write_items.

esp_err_t rmt_driver_uninstall(rmt_channel_t channel)
Uninstall RMT driver.

Return:
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters:
- channel: RMT channel

esp_err_t rmt_get_channel_status(rmt_channel_status_result_t *channel_status)
Get the current status of eight channels.
Note  Do not call this function if it is possible that \texttt{rmt\_driver\_uninstall} will be called at the same time.

Return
- ESP\_ERR\_INVALID\_ARG Parameter is NULL
- ESP\_OK Success

Parameters
- \[\text{out}\] channel\_status: store the current status of each channel

\textit{esp\_err\_t rmt\_get\_counter\_clock} (\texttt{rmt\_channel\_t channel}, uint32\_t \*clock\_hz)

Get speed of channel’s internal counter clock.

Return
- ESP\_ERR\_INVALID\_ARG Parameter is NULL
- ESP\_OK Success

Parameters
- \text{channel}: RMT channel
- \[\text{out}\] clock\_hz: counter clock speed, in hz

\textit{esp\_err\_t rmt\_write\_items} (\texttt{rmt\_channel\_t channel}, const rmt\_item32\_t \*rmt\_item, int item\_num, bool wait\_tx\_done)

RMT send waveform from rmt\_item array.

This API allows user to send waveform with any length.

Note  This function will not copy data, instead, it will point to the original items, and send the waveform items.

If \texttt{wait\_tx\_done} is set to true, this function will block and will not return until all items have been sent out. If \texttt{wait\_tx\_done} is set to false, this function will return immediately, and the driver interrupt will continue sending the items. We must make sure the item data will not be damaged when the driver is still sending items in driver interrupt.

Return
- ESP\_ERR\_INVALID\_ARG Parameter error
- ESP\_OK Success

Parameters
- \text{channel}: RMT channel
- \text{rmt\_item}: head point of RMT items array. If ESP\_INTR\_FLAG\_IRAM is used, please do not use the memory allocated from psram when calling rmt\_write\_items.
- \text{item\_num}: RMT data item number.
- \text{wait\_tx\_done}:
  - If set 1, it will block the task and wait for sending done.
  - If set 0, it will not wait and return immediately.

\textit{esp\_err\_t rmt\_wait\_tx\_done} (\texttt{rmt\_channel\_t channel}, TickType\_t wait\_time)

Wait RMT TX finished.

Return
- ESP\_OK RMT Tx done successfully
- ESP\_ERR\_TIMEOUT Exceeded the ‘wait\_time’ given
- ESP\_ERR\_INVALID\_ARG Parameter error
- ESP\_FAIL Driver not installed

Parameters
- \text{channel}: RMT channel
- \text{wait\_time}: Maximum time in ticks to wait for transmission to be complete. If set 0, return immediately with ESP\_ERR\_TIMEOUT if TX is busy (polling).

\textit{esp\_err\_t rmt\_get\_ringbuf\_handle} (\texttt{rmt\_channel\_t channel}, RingbufHandle\_t \*buf\_handle)

Get ringbuffer from RMT.

Users can get the RMT RX ringbuffer handle, and process the RX data.

Return
- ESP\_ERR\_INVALID\_ARG Parameter error
- ESP\_OK Success

Parameters
Chapter 2. API 参考

```c

• channel: RMT channel
• buf_handle: Pointer to buffer handle to accept RX ringbuffer handle.

esp_err_t rmt_translator_init (rmt_channel_t channel, sample_to_rmt_t fn)
Init rmt translator and register user callback. The callback will convert the raw data that needs to be sent to rmt format. If a channel is initialized more than once, the user callback will be replaced by the later.

Return
• ESP_FAIL Init fail.
• ESP_OK Init success.

Parameters
• channel: RMT channel.
• fn: Point to the data conversion function.

esp_err_t rmt_translator_set_context (rmt_channel_t channel, void *context)
Set user context for the translator of specific channel.

Return
• ESP_FAIL Set context fail
• ESP_OK Set context success

Parameters
• channel: RMT channel number
• context: User context

esp_err_t rmt_translator_get_context (const size_t *item_num, void **context)
Get the user context set by ‘rmt_translator_set_context’. 

Note  This API must be invoked in the RMT translator callback function, and the first argument must be the actual parameter ‘item_num’ you got in that callback function.

Return
• ESP_FAIL Get context fail
• ESP_OK Get context success

Parameters
• item_num: Address of the memory which contains the number of translated items (It’s from driver’s internal memory)
• context: Returned User context

esp_err_t rmt_write_sample (rmt_channel_t channel, const uint8_t *src, size_t src_size, bool wait_tx_done)
Translate uint8_t type of data into rmt format and send it out. Requires rmt_translator_init to init the translator first.

Return
• ESP_FAIL Send fail
• ESP_OK Send success

Parameters
• channel: RMT channel.
• src: Pointer to the raw data.
• src_size: The size of the raw data.
• wait_tx_done: Set true to wait all data send done.

rmt_tx_end_callback_t rmt_register_tx_end_callback (rmt_tx_end_fn_t function, void *arg)
Registers a callback that will be called when transmission ends.

Called by rmt_driver_isr_default in interrupt context.

Note  Requires rmt_driver_install to install the default ISR handler.

Return the previous callback settings (members will be set to NULL if there was none)

Parameters
• function: Function to be called from the default interrupt handler or NULL.
• arg: Argument which will be provided to the callback when it is called.

esp_err_t rmt_memory_rw_rst (rmt_channel_t channel)
Reset RMT TX/RX memory index.
```

Espressif Systems  790  Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel

`void rmt_set_intr_enable_mask(uint32_t mask)`
Set mask value to RMT interrupt enable register.

Parameters
- mask: Bit mask to set to the register

`void rmt_clr_intr_enable_mask(uint32_t mask)`
Clear mask value to RMT interrupt enable register.

Parameters
- mask: Bit mask to clear the register

`esp_err_t rmt_set_pin(rmt_channel_t channel, rmt_mode_t mode, gpio_num_t gpio_num)`
Set RMT pin.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- channel: RMT channel
- mode: TX or RX mode for RMT
- gpio_num: GPIO number to transmit or receive the signal.

Structures
`struct rmt_tx_config_t`
Data struct of RMT TX configure parameters.

Public Members

uint32_t `carrier_freq_hz`
RMT carrier frequency

`rmt_carrier_level_t carrier_level`
Level of the RMT output, when the carrier is applied

`rmt_idle_level_t idle_level`
RMT idle level

uint8_t `carrier_duty_percent`
RMT carrier duty (%)

bool `carrier_en`
RMT carrier enable

bool `loop_en`
Enable sending RMT items in a loop

bool `idle_output_en`
RMT idle level output enable

`struct rmt_rx_config_t`
Data struct of RMT RX configure parameters.

Public Members

uint16_t `idle_threshold`
RMT RX idle threshold
# Chapter 2. API

```c
uint8_t filter_ticks_thresh
    RMT filter tick number

bool filter_en
    RMT receiver filter enable

struct rmt_config_t
    Data struct of RMT configure parameters.
```

## Public Members

- `rmt_mode_t rmt_mode`
  - RMT mode: transmitter or receiver
- `rmt_channel_t channel`
  - RMT channel
- `gpio_num_t gpio_num`
  - RMT GPIO number
- `uint8_t clk_div`
  - RMT channel counter divider
- `uint8_t mem_block_num`
  - RMT memory block number
- `uint32_t flags`
  - RMT channel extra configurations, OR’d with RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_[*]

- `rmt_tx_config_t tx_config`
  - RMT TX parameter
- `rmt_rx_config_t rx_config`
  - RMT RX parameter

## struct rmt_tx_end_callback_t

Structure encapsulating a RMT TX end callback.

## Public Members

- `rmt_tx_end_fn_t function`
  - Function which is called on RMT TX end
- `void *arg`
  - Optional argument passed to function

## Macros

- `RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS`
  - Channel can work during APB clock scaling
- `RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_INVERT_SIG`
  - Invert RMT signal
- `RMT_MEM_ITEM_NUM`
  - Define memory space of each RMT channel (in words = 4 bytes)

- `RMT_DEFAULT_CONFIG_TX (gpio, channel_id)`
  - Default configuration for Tx channel.
- `RMT_DEFAULT_CONFIG_RX (gpio, channel_id)`
  - Default configuration for RX channel.
Type Definitions

```c
typedef intr_handler_t rmt_isr_handler_t
RMT interrupt handle.
```

```c
typedef void (*rmt_tx_end_fn_t)(rmt_channel_t channel, void*arg)
Type of RMT Tx End callback function.
```

```c
typedef void(*sample_to_rmt_t)(const void *src, rmt_item32_t *dest, size_t src_size, size_t
wanted_num, size_t *translated_size, size_t *item_num)
User callback function to convert uint8_t type data to rmt format(rmt_item32_t).
```

This function may be called from an ISR, so, the code should be short and efficient.

**Note** In fact, item_num should be a multiple of translated_size, e.g. When we convert each byte of uint8_t
 type data to rmt format data, the relation between item_num and translated_size should be:

\[
\text{item\_num} = \text{translated\_size} \times 8.
\]

**Parameters**
- `src`: Pointer to the buffer storing the raw data that needs to be converted to rmt format.
- `[out] dest`: Pointer to the buffer storing the rmt format data.
- `src_size`: The raw data size.
- `wanted_num`: The number of rmt format data that wanted to get.
- `[out] translated_size`: The size of the raw data that has been converted to rmt format, it
  should return 0 if no data is converted in user callback.
- `[out] item_num`: The number of the rmt format data that actually converted to, it can be less
  than wanted_num if there is not enough raw data, but cannot exceed wanted_num. It should return
  0 if no data was converted.

Header File

- components/hal/include/hal/rmt_types.h

Structures

```c
struct rmt_channel_status_result_t
Data struct of RMT channel status.
```

**Public Members**

```c
rmt_channel_status_t status[RMT_CHANNEL_MAX]
Store the current status of each channel
```

Enumerations

```c
typedef enum rmt_channel_t
RMT channel ID.
```

**Values**

- `RMT_CHANNEL_0`: RMT channel number 0
- `RMT_CHANNEL_1`: RMT channel number 1
- `RMT_CHANNEL_2`: RMT channel number 2
- `RMT_CHANNEL_3`: RMT channel number 3
- `RMT_CHANNEL_4`: RMT channel number 4
RMT_CHANNEL_5
RMT channel number 5

RMT_CHANNEL_6
RMT channel number 6

RMT_CHANNEL_7
RMT channel number 7

RMT_CHANNEL_MAX
Number of RMT channels

enum rmt_mem_owner_t
RMT Internal Memory Owner.

Values:

RMT_MEM_OWNER_TX
RMT RX mode, RMT transmitter owns the memory block

RMT_MEM_OWNER_RX
RMT RX mode, RMT receiver owns the memory block

RMT_MEM_OWNER_MAX

enum rmt_source_clk_t
Clock Source of RMT Channel.

Values:

RMT_BASECLK_REF = 0
RMT source clock is REF_TICK, 1MHz by default

RMT_BASECLK_APB = 1
RMT source clock is APB CLK, 80Mhz by default

RMT_BASECLK_MAX

enum rmt_data_mode_t
RMT Data Mode.

Note We highly recommended to use MEM mode not FIFO mode since there will be some gotcha in FIFO mode.

Values:

RMT_DATA_MODE_FIFO
RMT_DATA_MODE_MEM
RMT_DATA_MODE_MAX

enum rmt_mode_t
RMT Channel Working Mode (TX or RX)

Values:

RMT_MODE_TX
RMT TX mode

RMT_MODE_RX
RMT RX mode

RMT_MODE_MAX

enum rmt_idle_level_t
RMT Idle Level.

Values:

RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_LOW
RMT TX idle level: low Level
RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_HIGH
RMT TX idle level: high Level

RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_MAX

**enum rmt_carrier_level_t**
RMT Carrier Level.

*Values:*

RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_LOW
RMT carrier wave is modulated for low Level output

RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_HIGH
RMT carrier wave is modulated for high Level output

RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_MAX

**enum rmt_channel_status_t**
RMT Channel Status.

*Values:*

RMT_CHANNEL_UNINIT
RMT channel uninitialized

RMT_CHANNEL_IDLE
RMT channel status idle

RMT_CHANNEL_BUSY
RMT channel status busy

### 2.3.12 SD Pull-up Requirements

Espressif hardware products are designed for multiple use cases which may require different pull states on pins. For this reason, the pull state of particular pins on certain products will need to be adjusted to provide the pull-ups required in the SD bus.

SD pull-up requirements apply to cases where ESP32 uses the SPI controller to communicate with SD cards. When an SD card is operating in SPI mode or 1-bit SD mode, the CMD and DATA (DAT0 - DAT3) lines of the SD bus must be pulled up by 10 kOhm resistors. Slaves should also have pull-ups on all above-mentioned lines (regardless of whether these lines are connected to the host) in order to prevent SD cards from entering a wrong state.

By default, the MTDI bootstrapping pin is incompatible with the DAT2 line pull-up if the flash voltage is 3.3 V. For more information, see *MTDI Strapping Pin* below.

This document has the following structure:

- *Overview of compatibility* between the default pull states on pins of Espressif’s products and the states required by the SD bus
- *Solutions* - ideas on how to resolve compatibility issues
- *Related information* - other relevant information

**Overview of Compatibility**

This section provides an overview of compatibility issues that might occur when using SDIO (secure digital input output). Since the SD bus needs to be connected to pull-ups, these issues should be resolved regardless of whether they are related to master (host) or slave (device). Each issue has links to its respective solution. A solution for a host and device may differ.
Systems on a Chip (SoCs)

• ESP32 (except for D2WD versions, see ESP32 datasheet):
  – No Pull-ups
  – Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2 for models with 3.3 V flash chip

• ESP32-D2WD:
  – No Pull-ups
  – No Pull-up on GPIO12

Systems in Packages (SIP)

• ESP32-PICO-D4:
  – No Pull-ups
  – Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2

Modules

  – No Pull-ups
  – Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2

• ESP32-WROVER Series, including ESP32-WROVER and ESP32-WROVER-I
  – No Pull-ups

• ESP32-WROVER-B Series, including ESP32-WROVER-B and ESP32-WROVER-IB
  – No Pull-ups
  – Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2

Development Boards

• ESP32-PICO-KIT, including PICO-KIT v4.1, v4.0, and v3
  – No Pull-ups
  – Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2
  – Download Mode Not Working (minor issue)

• ESP32-DevKitC, including ESP32-DevKitC v4 and v2
  – No Pull-ups
  – Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2
  – Download Mode Not Working (minor issue)

• ESP-WROVER-KIT
  – Required pull-ups are provided
  – Pull-up Conflicts on GPIO13 (v4.1, v3, v2, and v1)
  – Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2 (v4.1, v2, and v1)
  – Download Mode Not Working (minor issue) (v2, v1)

You can determine the version of your ESP32-WROVER-KIT by checking which module is mounted on it:
  – ESP32-WROVER-B on v4.1
  – ESP32-WROVER on v3
  – ESP32-WROOM-32 on v1 and v2

• ESP32-LyraTD-MSC
  – Required pull-ups are provided
  – Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2

• ESP32-LyraT
  – Required pull-ups are provided
  – Pull-up Conflicts on GPIO13

Non-Espressif Hosts

Please make sure that your SDIO host provides necessary pull-ups for all SD bus signals.
Solutions

No Pull-ups  If you use a development board without pull-ups, you can do the following:

• If your host and slave device are on separate boards, replace one of them with a board that has pull-ups. For the list of Espressif’s development boards with pull-ups, go to Development Boards.
• Attach external pull-ups by connecting each pin which requires a pull-up to VDD via a 10 kOhm resistor.

Pull-up Conflicts on GPIO13  If DAT3 of your device is not properly pulled up, you have the following options:

• Use 1-bit SD mode and tie the device’s DAT3 to VDD
• Use SPI mode
• Perform one of the following actions on the GPIO13 pin:
  – Remove the pull-down resistors
  – Attach a pull-up resistor of less than 5 kOhm (2 kOhm suggested)
  – Pull it up or drive it high either by using the host or with 3.3 V on VDD in 1-bit SD mode

Conflicts Between Bootstrap and SDIO on DAT2  There is a conflict between the boot strapping requirements of the ESP32 and the SDIO protocol. For details, see MTDI Strapping Pin.

To resolve the conflict, you have the following options:

1. (Recommended) Burn the flash voltage selection eFuses. This will permanently configure the internal regulator’s output voltage to 3.3 V, and GPIO12 will not be used as a bootstrapping pin. After that, connect a pull-up resistor to GPIO12.

   警告： Burning eFuses is irreversible! The issue list above might be out of date, so please make sure that the module you are burning has a 3.3 V flash chip by checking the information on http://www.espressif.com/. If you burn the 3.3 V eFuses on a module with a 1.8 V flash chip, the module will stop functioning.

   If you are sure that you need to irreversibly burn eFuses, go to your ESP-IDF directory and run the following command:

   ```
   components/esptool_py/esptool/espefuse.py set_flash_voltage 3.3V
   ```

   This command will burn the XPD_SDIO_TIEH, XPD_SDIO_FORCE, and XPD_SDIO_REG eFuses. After all the three eFuses are burned to value 1, the internal VDD_SDIO flash voltage regulator will be permanently set to 3.3 V. You will see the following log if the burning succeeds:

   ![espefuse.py v2.6](image)

   To check the status of the eFuses, run:

   ```
   "components/esptool_py/esptool/espefuse.py summary"
   ```

   If running from an automated flashing script, espefuse.py has an option --do-not-confirm. For more details, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual [PDF].

   2. If using 1-bit SD mode or SPI mode, disconnect the DAT2 pin and make sure it is pulled high. For this, do one of the following:

   • Leave the host’s DAT2 floating and directly connect the slave’s DAT2 to VDD.
   • For a slave device, build a firmware with the option SDIO_SLAVE_FLAG_DAT2_DISABLED and re-flash your device. This option will help avoid slave detecting on the DAT2 line. Note that 4-bit SD mode
will no longer be supported by the standard Card Common Control Register (CCCR); however, the host will not be aware of that. The use of 4-bit SD mode will have to be disabled on the host’s side.

**No Pull-up on GPIO12** Your module is compatible with the SDIO protocol. Just connect GPIO12 to VDD via a 10 kOhm resistor.

**Download Mode Not Working (minor issue)** When the GPIO2 pin is pulled high in accordance with the SD pull-up requirements, you cannot enter Download mode because GPIO2 is a bootstrapping pin which in this case must be pulled low.

There are the following solutions:

- For boards that require shorting the GPIO0 and GPIO2 pins with a jumper, put the jumper in place, and the auto-reset circuit will pull GPIO2 low along with GPIO0 before entering Download mode.
- For boards with components attached to their GPIO2 pin (such as pull-down resistors and/or LEDs), check the schematic of your development board for anything connected to GPIO2.
  - **LEDs** would not affect operation in most cases.
  - **Pull-down resistors** can interfere with DAT0 signals and must be removed.

If the above solutions do not work for you, please determine if it is the host or slave device that has pull-ups affecting their GPIO2, then locate these pull-ups and remove them.

**Related Information**

**MTDI Strapping Pin** MTDI (GPIO12) is used as a bootstrapping pin to select the output voltage of an internal regulator (VDD_SDIO) which powers the flash chip. This pin has an internal pull-down, so, if left unconnected, it will read low at startup, which will lead to selecting the default 3.3 V operation.

All ESP32-WROVER modules, excluding ESP32-WROVER-B, use 1.8 V flash and have internal pull-ups on GPIO12. Other modules that use 3.3 V flash have no pull-ups on the GPIO12 pin, and this pin is slightly pulled down internally.

When adding a pull-up to this pin for SD card operation, consider the following:

- For boards that do not use the internal regulator (VDD_SDIO) to power flash, GPIO12 can be pulled high.
- For boards using 1.8 V flash chips, GPIO12 needs to be pulled high at reset. This is fully compatible with the SD card operation.
- On boards using the internal regulator and a 3.3 V flash chip, GPIO12 must be pulled low at reset. This is incompatible with the SD card operation. For reference information on compatibility of Espressif’s boards with the SD card operation, see *Overview of Compatibility*.

**Internal Pull-ups and Strapping Requirements** Using external resistors is always preferable. However, Espressif’s products have internal weak pull-up and pull-down resistors which can be enabled and used instead of external ones. Please keep in mind that this solution cannot guarantee reliable SDIO communication.

With that said, the information about these internal pull-ups and strapping requirements can still be useful. Espressif hardware products have different weak internal pull-ups / pull-downs connected to CMD and DATA pins. The table below shows the default pull-up and pull-down states of the CMD and DATA pins.

The following abbreviations are used in the table:

- **WPU**: Weak pull-up inside the SoC
- **WPD**: Weak pull-down inside the SoC
- **PU**: Pull-up inside Espressif modules but outside the SoC
### 2.3.13 SDMMC Host Driver

#### Overview

ESP32’s SDMMC host peripheral has two slots:

- Slot 0 (**SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0**) is an 8-bit slot. It uses HS1_* signals in the PIN MUX.
- Slot 1 (**SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1**) is a 4-bit slot. It uses HS2_* signals in the PIN MUX.

Pin mappings of these slots are given in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Slot 0</th>
<th>Slot 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>GPIO11</td>
<td>GPIO15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLK</td>
<td>GPIO6</td>
<td>GPIO14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D0</td>
<td>GPIO7</td>
<td>GPIO2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1</td>
<td>GPIO8</td>
<td>GPIO4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>GPIO9</td>
<td>GPIO12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>GPIO10</td>
<td>GPIO13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>GPIO16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>GPIO17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D6</td>
<td>GPIO5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D7</td>
<td>GPIO18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>any input via GPIO matrix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WP</td>
<td>any input via GPIO matrix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Card Detect and Write Protect signals can be routed to arbitrary pins using the GPIO matrix. To reserve the pins, set the `gpio_cd` and `gpio_wp` members of the `sdmmc_slot_config_t` structure before calling `sdmmc_host_init_slot()`. Please note that it is not advised to specify a Card Detect pin when working with SDIO cards, because the card detect signal in ESP32 can also trigger SDIO slave interrupt.

**Warning:** Pins used by Slot 0 (HS1_*-) are also used to connect the SPI flash chip in ESP32-WROOM and ESP32-WROVER modules. These pins cannot be shared between an SD card and SPI flash. If you need to use Slot 0, connect SPI flash to different pins and set eFuses accordingly.

#### Supported Speed Modes

SDMMC Host driver supports the following speed modes:

- Default Speed (20 MHz), 1/4-line (with SD cards), and 1/4/8-line (with 3.3 V eMMC)
- High Speed (40 MHz), 1/4-line (with SD cards), and 1/4/8-line (with 3.3 V eMMC)
- High Speed DDR (40 MHz), 4-line (with 3.3 V eMMC)

Speed modes not supported at present:

- High Speed DDR mode, 8-line eMMC
- UHS-I 1.8 V modes, 4-line SD cards
Using the SDMMC Host Driver

Of all the functions listed below, only the following ones will be used directly by most applications:

- `sdmmc_host_init()`
- `sdmmc_host_init_slot()`
- `sdmmc_host_deinit()`

Other functions, such as the ones given below, will be called by the SD/MMC protocol layer via function pointers in the `sdmmc_host_t` structure:

- `sdmmc_host_set_bus_width()`
- `sdmmc_host_set_card_clk()`
- `sdmmc_host_do_transaction()`

Configuring Bus Width and Frequency

With the default initializers for `sdmmc_host_t` and `sdmmc_slot_config_t` (`SDMMC_HOST_DEFAULT` and `SDMMC_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT`), SDMMC Host driver will attempt to use the widest bus supported by the card (4 lines for SD, 8 lines for eMMC) and the frequency of 20 MHz.

In the designs where communication at 40 MHz frequency can be achieved, it is possible to increase the bus frequency by changing the `max_freq_khz` field of `sdmmc_host_t`:

```c
sdmmc_host_t host = SDMMC_HOST_DEFAULT();
host.max_freq_khz = SDMMC_FREQ_HIGHSPEED;
```

To configure the bus width, set the `width` field of `sdmmc_slot_config_t`. For example, to set 1-line mode:

```c
sdmmc_slot_config_t slot = SDMMC_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT();
slot.width = 1;
```

See also

See `SD/SDIO/MMC Driver` for the higher level driver which implements the protocol layer.

See `SD SPI Host Driver` for a similar driver which uses the SPI controller and is limited to SD protocol’s SPI mode.

See `SD Pull-up Requirements` for pullup support and compatibilities of modules and development kits.

API Reference

Header File

- `components/driver/include/driver/sdmmc_host.h`

Functions

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_init (void)
```

Initialize SDMMC host peripheral.

**Note** This function is not thread safe

**Return**

- `ESP_OK` on success
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE` if `sdmmc_host_init` was already called
- `ESP_ERR_NO_MEM` if memory cannot be allocated

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_init_slot (int slot, const sdmmc_slot_config_t *slot_config)
```

Initialize given slot of SDMMC peripheral.

On the ESP32, SDMMC peripheral has two slots:
Chapter 2. API

- Slot 0: 8-bit wide, maps to HS1_* signals in PIN MUX
- Slot 1: 4-bit wide, maps to HS2_* signals in PIN MUX

Card detect and write protect signals can be routed to arbitrary GPIOs using GPIO matrix.

**Note** This function is not thread safe

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if host has not been initialized using sdmmc_host_init

**Parameters**
- `slot`: slot number (SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 or SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1)
- `slot_config`: additional configuration for the slot

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_set_bus_width (int slot, size_t width)
```

Select bus width to be used for data transfer.

SD/MMC card must be initialized prior to this command, and a command to set bus width has to be sent to the card (e.g. SD_APP_SET_BUS_WIDTH)

**Note** This function is not thread safe

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if slot number or width is not valid

**Parameters**
- `slot`: slot number (SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 or SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1)
- `width`: bus width (1, 4, or 8 for slot 0; 1 or 4 for slot 1)

```c
size_t sdmmc_host_get_slot_width (int slot)
```

Get bus width configured in sdmmc_host_init_slot to be used for data transfer.

**Return** configured bus width of the specified slot.

**Parameters**
- `slot`: slot number (SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 or SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1)

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_set_card_clk (int slot, uint32_t freq_khz)
```

Set card clock frequency.

Currently only integer fractions of 40MHz clock can be used. For High Speed cards, 40MHz can be used. For Default Speed cards, 20MHz can be used.

**Note** This function is not thread safe

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- other error codes may be returned in the future

**Parameters**
- `slot`: slot number (SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 or SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1)
- `freq_khz`: card clock frequency, in kHz

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_set_bus_ddr_mode (int slot, bool ddr_enabled)
```

Enable or disable DDR mode of SD interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if DDR mode is not supported on this slot

**Parameters**
- `slot`: slot number (SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 or SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1)
- `ddr_enabled`: enable or disable DDR mode

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_do_transaction (int slot, sdmmc_command_t *cmdinfo)
```

Send command to the card and get response.

This function returns when command is sent and response is received, or data is transferred, or timeout occurs.

**Note** This function is not thread safe w.r.t. init/deinit functions, and bus width/clock speed configuration functions. Multiple tasks can call sdmmc_host_do_transaction as long as other sdmmc_host_* functions are not called.
Attention  Data buffer passed in cmdinfo->data must be in DMA capable memory

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if response or data transfer has timed out
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC if response or data transfer CRC check has failed
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE if the card has sent an invalid response
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if the size of data transfer is not valid in SD protocol
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the data buffer is not in DMA capable memory

Parameters
• slot: slot number (SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 or SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1)
• cmdinfo: pointer to structure describing command and data to transfer

```
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_io_int_enable (int slot)
```
Enable IO interrupts.

This function configures the host to accept SDIO interrupts.

Return  returns ESP_OK, other errors possible in the future

Parameters
• slot: slot number (SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 or SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1)

```
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_io_int_wait (int slot, TickType_t timeout_ticks)
```
Block until an SDIO interrupt is received, or timeout occurs.

Return
• ESP_OK on success (interrupt received)
• ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the interrupt did not occur within timeout_ticks

Parameters
• slot: slot number (SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 or SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1)
• timeout_ticks: number of RTOS ticks to wait for the interrupt

```
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_deinit (void)
```
Disable SDMMC host and release allocated resources.

Note  This function is not thread safe

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if sdmmc_host_init function has not been called

```
esp_err_t sdmmc_host_pullup_en (int slot, int width)
```
Enable the pull-ups of sd pins.

This function is deprecated. Please set SDMMC SLOT FLAG INTERNAL_PULLUP flag in sdmmc_slot_config_t:flags instead.

Note  You should always place actual pullups on the lines instead of using this function. Internal pullup resistance are high and not sufficient, may cause instability in products. This is for debug or examples only.

Return
• ESP_OK: if success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if configured width larger than maximum the slot can support

Parameters
• slot: Slot to use, normally set it to 1.
• width: Bit width of your configuration, 1 or 4.

Structures
```
struct sdmmc_slot_config_t
```
Extra configuration for SDMMC peripheral slot
Public Members

```c
uint8_t width
    Bus width used by the slot (might be less than the max width supported)

uint32_t flags
    Features used by this slot.
```

Macros

- `SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0` SDMMC slot 0.
- `SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1` SDMMC slot 1.
- `SDMMC_HOST_DEFAULT()` Default `sdmmc_host_t` structure initializer for SDMMC peripheral.
  - Uses SDMMC peripheral, with 4-bit mode enabled, and max frequency set to 20MHz
- `SDMMC_SLOT_FLAG_INTERNAL_PULLUP` Enable internal pullups on enabled pins. The internal pullups are insufficient however, please make sure external pullups are connected on the bus. This is for debug / example purpose only.
- `SDMMC_SLOT_NO_CD` indicates that card detect line is not used
- `SDMMC_SLOT_NO_WP` indicates that write protect line is not used
- `SDMMC_SLOT_WIDTH_DEFAULT` use the maximum possible width for the slot
- `SDMMC_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT()` Macro defining default configuration of SDMMC host slot

### 2.3.14 SD SPI Host Driver

**Overview**

The SD SPI host driver allows communicating with one or more SD cards by the SPI Master driver which makes use of the SPI host. Each card is accessed through an SD SPI device represented by an `sdspi_dev_handle_t` `spi_handle` returned when attaching the device to an SPI bus by calling `sdspi_host_init_device`. The bus should be already initialized before (by `spi_bus_initialize`).

This driver’s naming pattern was adopted from the SDMMC Host driver due to their similarity. Likewise, the APIs of both drivers are also very similar.

SD SPI driver (access the SD card in SPI mode) offers lower throughput but makes pin selection more flexible. With the help of the GPIO matrix, an SPI peripheral’s signals can be routed to any ESP32 pin. Otherwise, if SDMMC host driver is used (See SDMMC Host) to access the card in SD 1-bit/4-bit mode, higher throughput can be reached but it requires routing the signals through their dedicated IO_MUX pins only.
With the help of SPI Master driver based on, the SPI bus can be shared among SD cards and other SPI devices. The SPI Master driver will handle exclusive access from different tasks.

The SD SPI driver uses software-controlled CS signal.

**How to Use**

Firstly, use the macro `SDSPI_DEVICE_CONFIG_DEFAULT` to initialize a structure `sdmmc_slot_config_t`, which is used to initialize an SD SPI device. This macro will also fill in the default pin mappings, which is same as the pin mappings of SDMMC host driver. Modify the host and pins of the structure to desired value. Then call `sdspi_host_init_device` to initialize the SD SPI device and attach to its bus.

Then use `SDSPI_HOST_DEFAULT` macro to initialize a `sdmmc_host_t` structure, which is used to store the state and configurations of upper layer (SD/SDIO/MMC driver). Modify the `slot` parameter of the structure to the SD SPI device `spi_handle` just returned from `sdspi_host_init_device`. Call `sdmmc_card_init` with the `sdmmc_host_t` to probe and initialize the SD card.

Now you can use SD/SDIO/MMC driver functions to access your card!

**Other Details**

Only the following driver’s API functions are normally used by most applications:

- `sdspi_host_init()`
- `sdspi_host_init_device()`
- `sdspi_host_remove_device()`
- `sdspi_host_deinit()`

Other functions are mostly used by the protocol level SD/SDIO/MMC driver via function pointers in the `sdmmc_host_t` structure. For more details, see the SD/SDIO/MMC Driver.

注解：SD over SPI does not support speeds above `SDMMC_FREQ_DEFAULT` due to the limitations of the SPI driver.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- `components/driver/include/driver/sdspi_host.h`

**Functions**

`esp_err_t sdspi_host_init (void)`

Initialize SD SPI driver.

**Note** This function is not thread safe

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- other error codes may be returned in future versions

`esp_err_t sdspi_host_init_device (const sdspi_device_config_t *dev_config, sdspi_dev_handle_t *out_handle)`

Attach and initialize an SD SPI device on the specific SPI bus.

**Note** This function is not thread safe

**Note** Initialize the SPI bus by `spi_bus_initialize()` before calling this function.

**Note** The SDIO over sdspi needs an extra interrupt line. Call `gpio_install_isr_service()` before this function.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if sdspi_host_init_device has invalid arguments
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory can not be allocated
• other errors from the underlying spi_master and gpio drivers

Parameters
• dev_config: pointer to device configuration structure
• out_handle: Output of the handle to the sdspi device.

\textbf{esp_err_t sdspi_host_remove_device (sdspi_dev_handle_t handle)}

Remove an SD SPI device.

\textbf{Return} Always ESP_OK

\textbf{Parameters}
• handle: Handle of the SD SPI device

\textbf{esp_err_t sdspi_host_do_transaction (sdspi_dev_handle_t handle, sdmmc_command_t \*cmdinfo)}

Send command to the card and get response.

This function returns when command is sent and response is received, or data is transferred, or timeout occurs.

\textbf{Note} This function is not thread safe w.r.t. init/deinit functions, and bus width/clock speed configuration functions. Multiple tasks can call sdspi_host_do_transaction as long as other sdspi_host_* functions are not called.

\textbf{Return}
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if response or data transfer has timed out
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC if response or data transfer CRC check has failed
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE if the card has sent an invalid response

\textbf{Parameters}
• handle: Handle of the sdspi device
• cmdinfo: pointer to structure describing command and data to transfer

\textbf{esp_err_t sdspi_host_set_card_clk (sdspi_dev_handle_t host, uint32_t freq_khz)}

Set card clock frequency.

Currently only integer fractions of 40MHz clock can be used. For High Speed cards, 40MHz can be used. For Default Speed cards, 20MHz can be used.

\textbf{Note} This function is not thread safe

\textbf{Return}
• ESP_OK on success
• other error codes may be returned in the future

\textbf{Parameters}
• host: Handle of the sdspi device
• freq_khz: card clock frequency, in kHz

\textbf{esp_err_t sdspi_host_deinit (void)}

Release resources allocated using sdspi_host_init.

\textbf{Note} This function is not thread safe

\textbf{Return}
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if sdspi_host_init function has not been called

\textbf{esp_err_t sdspi_host_io_int_enable (sdspi_dev_handle_t handle)}

Enable SDIO interrupt.

\textbf{Return}
• ESP_OK on success

\textbf{Parameters}
• handle: Handle of the sdspi device

\textbf{esp_err_t sdspi_host_io_int_wait (sdspi_dev_handle_t handle, TickType_t timeout_ticks)}

Wait for SDIO interrupt until timeout.

\textbf{Return}
• ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- `handle`: Handle of the sdspi device
- `timeout_ticks`: Ticks to wait before timeout.

```c
desp_err_t sdspi_host_init_slot (int slot, const sdspi_slot_config_t *slot_config)
```
Initialize SD SPI driver for the specific SPI controller.

**Note** This function is not thread safe
**Note** The SDIO overs dspi needs an extra interrupt line. Call `gpio_install_isr_service()` before this function.

**Parameters**
- `slot`: SPI controller to use (SPI2_HOST or SPI3_HOST)
- `slot_config`: pointer to slot configuration structure

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if sdspi_init_slot has invalid arguments
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory cannot be allocated
- other errors from the underlying spi_master and gpio drivers

**Structures**

```c
struct sdspi_device_config_t
Extra configuration for SD SPI device.
```

**Public Members**

```c
tspt_host_device_t host_id
SPI host to use, SPIx_HOST (see spi_types.h).
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_cs
GPIO number of CS signal.
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_cd
GPIO number of card detect signal.
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_wp
GPIO number of write protect signal.
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_int
GPIO number of interrupt line (input) for SDIO card.
```

```c
struct sdspi_slot_config_t
Extra configuration for SPI host.
```

**Public Members**

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_cs
GPIO number of CS signal.
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_cd
GPIO number of card detect signal.
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_wp
GPIO number of write protect signal.
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_int
GPIO number of interrupt line (input) for SDIO card.
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_miso
GPIO number of MISO signal.
```
**Chapter 2. API**

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_mosi
GPIO number of MOSI signal.
```

```c
gpio_num_t gpio_sck
GPIO number of SCK signal.
```

```c
int dma_channel
DMA channel to be used by SPI driver (1 or 2).
```

**Macros**

```c
SDSPI_DEFAULT_HOST
```

Default `sdmmc_host_t` structure initializer for SD over SPI driver.

Uses SPI mode and max frequency set to 20MHz

‘slot’ should be set to an `sdspi_device` initialized by `sdspi_host_init_device()`.

```c
SDSPI_SLOT_NO_CD
```

indicates that card detect line is not used

```c
SDSPI_SLOT_NO_WP
```

indicates that write protect line is not used

```c
SDSPI_SLOT_NO_INT
```

indicates that interrupt line is not used

```c
SDSPI_DEVICE_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
```

Macro defining default configuration of SD SPI device.

```c
SDSPI_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
```

Macro defining default configuration of SPI host

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef int sdspi_dev_handle_t
```

Handle representing an SD SPI device.

### 2.3.15 SDIO Card Slave Driver

**Overview**

The ESP32 SDIO Card peripherals (Host, Slave) shares two sets of pins as below table. The first set is usually occupied by SPI0 bus which is responsible for the SPI flash holding the code to run. This means SDIO slave driver can only runs on the second set of pins while SDIO host is not using it.

The SDIO slave can run under 3 modes: SPI, 1-bit SD and 4-bit SD modes, which is detected automatically by the hardware. According to the SDIO specification, CMD and DAT0-3 lines should be pulled up no matter in 1-bit, 4-bit or SPI mode.

**Connections**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pin Name</th>
<th>Corresponding pins in SPI mode</th>
<th>Slot1</th>
<th>Slot2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLK</td>
<td>SCLK</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>MOSI</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT0</td>
<td>MISO</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT1</td>
<td>Interrupt</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT2</td>
<td>N.C. (pullup)</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT3</td>
<td>#CS</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **1-bit SD mode**: Connect CLK, CMD, DAT0, DAT1 pins and the ground.
Chapter 2. API

- 4-bit SD mode: Connect all pins and the ground.
- SPI mode: Connect SCLK, MOSI, MISO, Interrupt, #CS pins and the ground.

**Overview of Compatibility**

Please check if CMD and DATA lines D0-D3 of the card are properly pulled up by 10 KOhm resistors. This should be ensured even in 1-bit mode or SPI mode. Most official modules don’t offer these pullups internally. If you are using official development boards, check **Overview of Compatibility** to see whether your development boards have such pullups.

- **Most official modules have conflicts on strapping pins with the SDIO slave function.** If you are using an ESP32 module with 3.3 V flash inside, you have to burn the EFUSE when you are developing on the module for the first time. See **Overview of Compatibility** to see how to make your modules compatible with the SDIO.

Here is a list for modules/kits with 3.3 V flash:

- **Modules:** ESP32-PICO-D4, ESP32-WROOM-32 series (including ESP32-SOLO-1), ESP32-WROVER-B and ESP32-WROVER-IB
- **Kits:** ESP32-PICO-KIT, ESP32-DevKitC (till v4), ESP32-WROVER-KIT (v4.1 (also known as ESP32-WROVER-KIT-VB), v2, v1 (also known as DevKitJ v1))

You can tell the version of your ESP32-WROVER-KIT version from the module on it: v4.1 are with ESP32-WROVER-B modules, v3 are with ESP32-WROVER modules, while v2 and v1 are with ESP32-WROOM-32 modules.

Refer to **SD Pull-up Requirements** for more technical details of the pullups.

The host initialize the slave into SD mode by first sending CMD0 with DAT3 pin high, or in SPI mode by sending CMD0 with CS pin (the same pin as DAT3) low.

After the initialization, the host can enable the 4-bit SD mode by writing CCCR register 0x07 by CMD52. All the bus detection process are handled by the slave peripheral.

The host has to communicate with the slave by an ESP-slave-specific protocol. The slave driver offers 3 services over Function 1 access by CMD52 and CMD53: (1) a sending FIFO and a receiving FIFO, (2) 52 8-bit R/W registers shared by host and slave, (3) 16 interrupt sources (8 from host to slave, and 8 from slave to host).

**Terminology**

The SDIO slave driver uses the following terms:

- **Transfer:** a transfer is always started by a command token from the host, and may contain a reply and several data blocks. ESP32 slave software is based on transfers.
- **Sending:** slave to host transfers.
- **Receiving:** host to slave transfers.

**Register names in ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > SDIO Slave Controller [PDF]** are oriented from the point of view of the host, i.e. ‘rx’ registers refer to sending, while ‘tx’ registers refer to receiving. We’re not using tx or rx in the driver to avoid ambiguities.

- **FIFO:** specific address in Function 1 that can be access by CMD53 to read/write large amount of data. The address is related to the length requested to read from/write to the slave in a single transfer: \( \text{requested length} = 0x1F800\text{-address} \)
- **Ownership:** When the driver takes ownership of a buffer, it means the driver can randomly read/write the buffer (usually via DMA). The application should not read/write the buffer until the ownership is returned to the application. If the application reads from a buffer owned by a receiving driver, the data read can be random; if the application writes to a buffer owned by a sending driver, the data sent may be corrupted.
- **Requested length:** The length requested in one transfer determined by the FIFO address.
- **Transfer length:** The length requested in one transfer determined by the CMD53 byte/block count field.
**Chapter 2. API Reference**

**Note:** Requested length is different from the transfer length. ESP32 slave DMA base on the requested length rather than the transfer length. The transfer length should be no shorter than the requested length, and the rest part will be filled with 0 (sending) or discard (receiving).

- Receiving buffer size: The buffer size is pre-defined between the host and the slave before communication starts. Slave application has to set the buffer size during initialization by the `recv_buffer_size` member of `sdio_slave_config_t`.
- Interrupts: the esp32 slave support interrupts in two directions: from host to slave (called slave interrupts below) and from slave to host (called host interrupts below). See more in **Interrupts**.
- Registers: specific address in Function 1 access by CMD52 or CMD53.

**Communication with ESP SDIO Slave** The host should initialize the ESP32 SDIO slave according to the standard SDIO initialization process (Sector 3.1.2 of **SDIO Simplified Specification**), which is described briefly in **ESP SDIO Slave Initialization**.

Furthermore, there’s an ESP32-specific upper-level communication protocol upon the CMD52/CMD53 to Func 1. Please refer to **ESP SDIO Slave Protocol**. There is also a component **ESP Serial Slave Link** for ESP32 master to communicate with ESP32 SDIO slave, see example peripherals/sdio when programming your host.

**Interrupts** There are interrupts from host to slave, and from slave to host to help communicating conveniently.

**Slave Interrupts** The host can interrupt the slave by writing any one bit in the register 0x08D. Once any bit of the register is set, an interrupt is raised and the SDIO slave driver calls the callback function defined in the `slave_intr_cb` member in the `sdio_slave_config_t` structure.

**Note:** The callback function is called in the ISR, do not use any delay, loop or spinlock in the callback.

There’s another set of functions can be used. You can call `sdio_slave_wait_int` to wait for an interrupt within a certain time, or call `sdio_slave_clear_int` to clear interrupts from host. The callback function can work with the wait functions perfectly.

**Host Interrupts** The slave can interrupt the host by an interrupt line (at certain time) which is level sensitive. When the host see the interrupt line pulled down, it may read the slave interrupt status register, to see the interrupt source. Host can clear interrupt bits, or choose to disable a interrupt source. The interrupt line will hold active until all the sources are cleared or disabled.

There are several dedicated interrupt sources as well as general purpose sources. see `sdio_slave_hostint_t` for more information.

**Shared Registers** There are 52 8-bit R/W shared registers to share information between host and slave. The slave can write or read the registers at any time by `sdio_slave_read_reg` and `sdio_slave_write_reg`. The host can access (R/W) the register by CMD52 or CMD53.

**Receiving FIFO** When the host is going to send the slave some packets, it has to check whether the slave is ready to receive by reading the buffer number of slave.

To allow the host sending data to the slave, the application has to load buffers to the slave driver by the following steps:

1. Register the buffer by calling `sdio_slave_recv_register_buf`, and get the handle of the registered buffer. The driver will allocate memory for the linked-list descriptor needed to link the buffer onto the hardware. The size of these buffers should equal to the Receiving buffer size.
2. Load buffers onto the driver by passing the buffer handle to `sdio_slave_recv_load_buf`.
3. Get the received data by calling sdio_slave_recv or sdio_slave_recv_packet. If non-blocking call is needed, set wait=0.
   The difference between two APIs is that, sdio_slave_recv_packet gives more information about packet, which can consist of several buffers. When ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED is returned by this API, you should call this API iteratively until the return value is ESP_OK. All the continuous buffers returned with ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED, together with the last buffer returned with ESP_OK, belong to one packet from the host. Call sdio_slave_recv_get_buf to get the address of the received data, and the actual length received in each buffer. The packet length is the sum of received length of all the buffers in the packet.
   If the host never sends data longer than the Receiving buffer size, or you don’t care about the packet boundary (e.g. the data is only a byte stream), you can call the simpler version sdio_slave_recv instead.
4. Pass the handle of processed buffer back to the driver by sdio_recv_load_buf again.

**Sending FIFO** Each time the slave has data to send, it raises an interrupt and the host will request for the packet length. There are two sending modes:

- Stream Mode: when a buffer is loaded to the driver, the buffer length will be counted into the packet length requested by host in the incoming communications. Regardless previous packets are sent or not. This means the host can get data of several buffers in one transfer.
- Packet Mode: the packet length is updated packet by packet, and only when previous packet is sent. This means that the host can only get data of one buffer in one transfer.

**注解:** To avoid overhead from copying data, the driver itself doesn’t have any buffer inside, the application is responsible to offer new buffers in time. The DMA will automatically store received data to the buffer.

The sending mode can be set in the sending_mode member of sdio_slave_config_t, and the buffer numbers can be set in the send_queue_size. All the buffers are restricted to be no larger than 4092 bytes. Though in the stream mode several buffers can be sent in one transfer, each buffer is still counted as one in the queue.

The application can call sdio_slave_transmit to send packets. In this case the function returns when the transfer is successfully done, so the queue is not fully used. When higher efficiency is required, the application can use the following functions instead:

1. Pass buffer information (address, length, as well as an arg indicating the buffer) to sdio_slave_send_queue. If non-blocking call is needed, set wait=0. If the wait is not portMAX_DELAY (wait until success), application has to check the result to know whether the data is put in to the queue or discard.
2. Call sdio_slave_send_get_finished to get and deal with a finished transfer. A buffer should be keep unmodified until returned from sdio_slave_send_get_finished. This means the buffer is actually sent to the host, rather than just staying in the queue.

There are several ways to use the arg in the queue parameter:

1. Directly point arg to a dynamic-allocated buffer, and use the arg to free it when transfer finished.
2. Wrap transfer informations in a transfer structure, and point arg to the structure. You can use the structure to do more things like:

```c
typedef struct {
    uint8_t * buffer;
    size_t  size;
    int     id;
} sdio_transfer_t;

// and send as:
```

(下頁繼續)
Chapter 2. API

```c
sdio_transfer_t trans = {
    .buffer = ADDRESS_TO_SEND,
    .size = 8,
    .id = 3,  // the 3rd transfer so far
};
sdio_slave_send_queue(trans.buffer, trans.size, &trans, portMAX_DELAY);

//... maybe more transfers are sent here

// and deal with finished transfer as:
sdio_transfer_t* arg = NULL;
ESP_LOGI("tag", "(#d) successfully send %d bytes of %p", arg->id, arg->size,
    arg->buffer);
some_post_callback(arg);  // do more things
```

3. Working with the receiving part of this driver, point `arg` to the receive buffer handle of this buffer. So that we can directly use the buffer to receive data when it’s sent:

```c
uint8_t buffer[256] = {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8};
sdio_slave_buf_handle_t handle = sdio_slave_recv_register_buf(buffer);
sdio_slave_send_queue(buffer, 8, handle, portMAX_DELAY);

//... maybe more transfers are sent here

// and load finished buffer to receive as
sdio_slave_buf_handle_t handle = NULL;
sdio_slave_send_get_finished((void**)handle, portMAX_DELAY);
sdio_slave_recv_load_buf(handle);
```

More about this, see peripherals/sdio.

### Application Example

Slave/master communication: peripherals/sdio.

### API Reference

#### Header File

- components/hal/include/hal/sdio_slave_types.h

#### Enumerations

**enum sdio_slave_hostint_t**

Mask of interrupts sending to the host.

**Values:**

- `SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_BIT0` = BIT(0)
  
  General purpose interrupt bit 0.

- `SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_BIT1` = BIT(1)

- `SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_BIT2` = BIT(2)

- `SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_BIT3` = BIT(3)

- `SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_BIT4` = BIT(4)

- `SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_BIT5` = BIT(5)

- `SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_BIT6` = BIT(6)
```c
SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_BIT7 = BIT(7)
SDIO_SLAVE_HOSTINT_SEND_NEW_PACKET = BIT(23)
    New packet available.

enum sdio_slave_timing_t
    Timing of SDIO slave.
    Values:
    SDIO_SLAVE_TIMING_PSEND_PSAMPLE = 0
        Send at posedge, and sample at posedge. Default value for HS mode. Normally there’s no problem using this to work in DS mode.
    SDIO_SLAVE_TIMING_NSEND_PSAMPLE
        Send at negedge, and sample at posedge. Default value for DS mode and below.
    SDIO_SLAVE_TIMING_PSEND_NSAMPLE
        Send at posedge, and sample at negedge.
    SDIO_SLAVE_TIMING_NSEND_NSAMPLE
        Send at negedge, and sample at negedge.

enum sdio_slave_sending_mode_t
    Configuration of SDIO slave mode.
    Values:
    SDIO_SLAVE_SEND_STREAM = 0
        Stream mode, all packets to send will be combined as one if possible.
    SDIO_SLAVE_SEND_PACKET = 1
        Packet mode, one packets will be sent one after another (only increase packet_len if last packet sent).

Header File
    • components/driver/include/driver/sdio_slave.h

Functions
    esp_err_t sdio_slave_initialize (sdio_slave_config_t *config)
        Initialize the sdio slave driver
        Return
            • ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if no free interrupt found.
            • ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already initialized.
            • ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if fail due to memory allocation failed.
            • ESP_OK if success
        Parameters
            • config: Configuration of the sdio slave driver.
    void sdio_slave_deinit (void)
        De-initialize the sdio slave driver to release the resources.
    esp_err_t sdio_slave_start (void)
        Start hardware for sending and receiving, as well as set the IOREADY1 to 1.
        Note: The driver will continue sending from previous data and PKT_LEN counting, keep data received as well as start receiving from current TOKEN1 counting. See sdio_slave_reset.
        Return
            • ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already started.
            • ESP_OK otherwise.
    void sdio_slave_stop (void)
        Stop hardware from sending and receiving, also set IOREADY1 to 0.
        Note: this will not clear the data already in the driver, and also not reset the PKT_LEN and TOKEN1 counting. Call sdio_slave_reset to do that.
```
**Chapter 2. API**

**esp_err_t sdio_slave_reset** (void)

Clear the data still in the driver, as well as reset the PKT_LEN and TOKEN1 counting.

**Return** always return ESP_OK.

**sdio_buf_handle_t sdio_slave_recv_register_buf** (uint8_t *start)

Register buffer used for receiving. All buffers should be registered before used, and then can be used (again) in the driver by the handle returned.

**Note** The driver will use and only use the amount of space specified in the `recv_buffer_size` member set in the `sdio_slave_config_t`. All buffers should be larger than that. The buffer is used by the DMA, so it should be DMA capable and 32-bit aligned.

**Return** The buffer handle if success, otherwise NULL.

**Parameters**
- **start**: The start address of the buffer.

**esp_err_t sdio_slave_recv_unregister_buf** (sdio_buf_handle_t handle)

Unregister buffer from driver, and free the space used by the descriptor pointing to the buffer.

**Return** ESP_OK if success, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is NULL or the buffer is being used.

**Parameters**
- **handle**: Handle to the buffer to release.

**esp_err_t sdio_slave_recv_load_buf** (sdio_buf_handle_t handle)

Load buffer to the queue waiting to receive data. The driver takes ownership of the buffer until the buffer is returned by `sdio_slave_send_get_finished` after the transaction is finished.

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if invalid handle or the buffer is already in the queue. Only after the buffer is returned by `sdio_slave_recv` can you load it again.
- ESP_OK if success

**Parameters**
- **handle**: Handle to the buffer ready to receive data.

**esp_err_t sdio_slave_recv_packet** (sdio_buf_handle_t *handle_ret, TickType_t wait)

Get buffer of received data if exist with packet information. The driver returns the ownership of the buffer to the app.

When you see return value is ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED, you should call this API iteratively until the return value is ESP_OK. All the continuous buffers returned with ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED, together with the last buffer returned with ESP_OK, belong to one packet from the host.

You can call simpler `sdio_slave_recv` instead, if the host never send data longer than the Receiving buffer size, or you don’t care about the packet boundary (e.g. the data is only a byte stream).

**Note** Call `sdio_slave_load_buf` with the handle to re-load the buffer onto the link list, and receive with the same buffer again. The address and length of the buffer got here is the same as got from `sdio_slave_get_buffer`.

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if `handle_ret` is NULL
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if timeout before receiving new data
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED if returned buffer is not the end of a packet from the host, should call this API again until the end of a packet
- ESP_OK if success

**Parameters**
- **handle_ret**: Handle of the buffer holding received data. Use this handle in `sdio_slave_recv_load_buf()` to receive in the same buffer again.
- **wait**: Time to wait before data received.

**esp_err_t sdio_slave_recv** (sdio_buf_handle_t *handle_ret, uint8_t **out_addr, size_t *out_len, TickType_t wait)

Get received data if exist. The driver returns the ownership of the buffer to the app.

**Note** Call `sdio_slave_load_buf` with the handle to re-load the buffer onto the link list, and receive with the same buffer again. The address and length of the buffer got here is the same as got from `sdio_slave_get_buffer`.

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if `handle_ret` is NULL
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if timeout before receiving new data
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED if returned buffer is not the end of a packet from the host, should call this API again until the end of a packet
- ESP_OK if success

**Parameters**
- **handle_ret**: Handle of the buffer holding received data. Use this handle in `sdio_slave_recv_load_buf()` to receive in the same buffer again.
- **wait**: Time to wait before data received.
sdio_slave_get_buffer.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if handle_ret is NULL
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if timeout before receiving new data
- ESP_OK if success

Parameters
- handle_ret: Handle to the buffer holding received data. Use this handle in sdio_slave_recv_load_buf to receive in the same buffer again.
- [out] out_addr: Output of the start address, set to NULL if not needed.
- [out] out_len: Actual length of the data in the buffer, set to NULL if not needed.
- wait: Time to wait before data received.

uint8_t* sdio_slave_recv_get_buf(sdio_slave_buf_handle_t handle, size_t* len_o)
Retrieve the buffer corresponding to a handle.

Return buffer address if success, otherwise NULL.

Parameters
- handle: Handle to get the buffer.
- len_o: Output of buffer length

esp_err_t sdio_slave_send_queue(uint8_t* addr, size_t len, void* arg, TickType_t wait)
Put a new sending transfer into the send queue. The driver takes ownership of the buffer until the buffer is returned by sdio_slave_send_get_finished after the transaction is finished.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the length is not greater than 0.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the queue is still full until timeout.
- ESP_OK if success.

Parameters
- addr: Address for data to be sent. The buffer should be DMA capable and 32-bit aligned.
- len: Length of the data, should not be longer than 4092 bytes (may support longer in the future).
- arg: Argument to returned in sdio_slave_send_get_finished. The argument can be used to indicate which transaction is done, or as a parameter for a callback. Set to NULL if not needed.
- wait: Time to wait if the buffer is full.

esp_err_t sdio_slave_send_get_finished(void** out_arg, TickType_t wait)
Return the ownership of a finished transaction.

Return ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if no transaction finished, or ESP_OK if succeed.

Parameters
- out_arg: Argument of the finished transaction. Set to NULL if unused.
- wait: Time to wait if there’s no finished sending transaction.

esp_err_t sdio_slave_transmit(uint8_t* addr, size_t len)
Start a new sending transfer, and wait for it (blocked) to be finished.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the length of descriptor is not greater than 0.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the queue is full or host do not start a transfer before timeout.
- ESP_OK if success.

Parameters
- addr: Start address of the buffer to send
- len: Length of buffer to send.

uint8_t sdio_slave_read_reg(int pos)
Read the spi slave register shared with host.

Note register 28 to 31 are reserved for interrupt vector.

Return value of the register.

Parameters
- pos: register address, 0-27 or 32-63.
**esp_err_t** `sdio_slave_write_reg(int pos, uint8_t reg)`
Write the SPI slave register shared with host.

**Note** register 29 and 31 are used for interrupt vector.
**Return** ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if address wrong, otherwise ESP_OK.
**Parameters**
- **pos**: register address, 0-11, 14-15, 18-19, 24-27 and 32-63, other address are reserved.
- **reg**: the value to write.

`sdio_slave_hostint_t` `sdio_slave_get_host_intena(void)`
Get the interrupt enable for host.

**Return** the interrupt mask.

void `sdio_slave_set_host_intena(sdio_slave_hostint_t mask)`
Set the interrupt enable for host.

**Parameters**
- **mask**: Enable mask for host interrupt.

`esp_err_t` `sdio_slave_send_host_int(uint8_t pos)`
Interrupt the host by general purpose interrupt.

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if interrupt num error
- ESP_OK otherwise

**Parameters**
- **pos**: Interrupt num, 0-7.

void `sdio_slave_clear_host_int(sdio_slave_hostint_t mask)`
Clear general purpose interrupt to host.

**Parameters**
- **mask**: Interrupt bits to clear, by bit mask.

`esp_err_t` `sdio_slave_wait_int(int pos, TickType_t wait)`
Wait for general purpose interrupt from host.

**Note** this clears the interrupt at the same time.
**Return** ESP_OK if success, ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if timeout.
**Parameters**
- **pos**: Interrupt source number to wait for. is set.
- **wait**: Time to wait before interrupt triggered.

**Structures**

`struct sdio_slave_config_t`
Configuration of SDIO slave.

**Public Members**

`sdio_slave_timing_t` `timing`
timing of `sdio_slave`. see `sdio_slave_timing_t`.

`sdio_slave_sending_mode_t` `sending_mode`
mode of `sdio_slave`. `SDIO_SLAVE_MODE_STREAM` if the data needs to be sent as much as possible; `SDIO_SLAVE_MODE_PACKET` if the data should be sent in packets.

`int` `send_queue_size`
max buffers that can be queued before sending.

`size_t` `recv_buffer_size`
If buffer size is too small, it costs more CPU time to handle larger number of buffers. If buffer size is too large, the space larger than the transaction length is left blank but still counts a buffer, and the buffers are easily run out. Should be set according to length of data really transferred. All data that do not fully
fill a buffer is still counted as one buffer. E.g. 10 bytes data costs 2 buffers if the size is 8 bytes per buffer. Buffer size of the slave pre-defined between host and slave before communication. All receive buffer given to the driver should be larger than this.

**`sdio_event_cb_t event_cb`**
- when the host interrupts slave, this callback will be called with interrupt number (0-7).

**`uint32_t flags`**
- Features to be enabled for the slave, combinations of `SDIO_SLAVE_FLAG_`.*

### Macros

#### `SDIO_SLAVE_RECV_MAX_BUFFER`
- It is required by the SD specification that all 4 data lines should be used and pulled up even in 1-bit mode or SPI mode. However, as a feature, the user can specify this flag to make use of DAT2 pin in 1-bit mode. Note that the host cannot read CCCR registers to know we don’t support 4-bit mode anymore, please do this at your own risk.

#### `SDIO_SLAVE_FLAG_HOST_INTR_DISABLED`
- The DAT1 line is used as the interrupt line in SDIO protocol. However, as a feature, the user can specify this flag to make use of DAT1 pin of the slave in 1-bit mode. Note that the host has to do polling to the interrupt registers to know whether there are interrupts from the slave. And it cannot read CCCR registers to know we don’t support 4-bit mode anymore, please do this at your own risk.

#### `SDIO_SLAVE_FLAG_INTERNAL_PULLUP`
- Enable internal pullups for enabled pins. It is required by the SD specification that all the 4 data lines should be pulled up even in 1-bit mode or SPI mode. Note that the internal pull-ups are not sufficient for stable communication, please do connect external pull-ups on the bus. This is only for example and debug use.

### Type Definitions

**`typedef void (*sdio_event_cb_t)(uint8_t event)`**

**`typedef void *sdio_slave_buf_handle_t`**
- Handle of a receive buffer, register a handle by calling `sdio_slave_recv_register_buf`. Use the handle to load the buffer to the driver, or call `sdio_slave_recv_unregister_buf` if it is no longer used.

### 2.3.16 Sigma-delta Modulation

#### Introduction

ESP32 has a second-order sigma-delta modulation module. This driver configures the channels of the sigma-delta module.

#### Functionality Overview

There are 8 independent sigma-delta modulation channels identified with `sigmadelta_channel_t`. Each channel is capable to output the binary, hardware generated signal with the sigma-delta modulation.

Selected channel should be set up by providing configuration parameters in `sigmadelta_config_t` and then applying this configuration with `sigmadelta_config()`.

Another option is to call individual functions, that will configure all required parameters one by one:

- **Prescaler** of the sigma-delta generator - `sigmadelta_set_prescale()`
- **Duty** of the output signal - `sigmadelta_set_duty()`
- **GPIO pin** to output modulated signal - `sigmadelta_set_pin()`
The range of the ‘duty’ input parameter of `sigmadelta_set_duty()` is from -128 to 127 (eight bit signed integer). If zero value is set, then the output signal’s duty will be about 50%, see description of `sigmadelta_set_duty()`.

Convert to analog signal (Optional)

Typically, if the sigma-delta signal is connected to an LED, you don’t have to add any filter between them (because our eyes are a low pass filter naturally). However, if you want to check the real voltage or watch the analog waveform, you need to design an analog low pass filter. Also, it is recommended to use an active filter instead of a passive filter to gain better isolation and not lose too much voltage.

For example, you can take the following Sallen-Key topology Low Pass Filter as a reference.

![Sallen-Key Low Pass Filter](image)

**图 17: Sallen-Key Low Pass Filter**

Application Example

Sigma-delta Modulation example: `peripherals/sigmadelta`.

API Reference

**Header File**

- `components/driver/include/driver/sigmadelta.h`

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t sigmadelta_config(const sigmadelta_config_t *config)
```

Configure Sigma-delta channel.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE sigmadelta driver already initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
Parameters

- **config**: Pointer of Sigma-delta channel configuration struct

```c
esp_err_t sigmadelta_set_duty(sigmadelta_channel_t channel, int8_t duty)
```

Set Sigma-delta channel duty.

This function is used to set Sigma-delta channel duty. If you add a capacitor between the output pin and ground, the average output voltage will be \( V_{dc} = \frac{VDDIO}{256} \times \text{duty} + \frac{VDDIO}{2} \), where VDDIO is the power supply voltage.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE sigmadelta driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- **channel**: Sigma-delta channel number
- **duty**: Sigma-delta duty of one channel, the value ranges from -128 to 127, recommended range is -90 ~ 90. The waveform is more like a random one in this range.

```c
esp_err_t sigmadelta_set_prescale(sigmadelta_channel_t channel, uint8_t prescale)
```

Set Sigma-delta channel’s clock pre-scale value. The source clock is APP_CLK, 80MHz. The clock frequency of the sigma-delta channel is APP_CLK / pre_scale.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE sigmadelta driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- **channel**: Sigma-delta channel number
- **prescale**: The divider of source clock, ranges from 0 to 255

```c
esp_err_t sigmadelta_set_pin(sigmadelta_channel_t channel, gpio_num_t gpio_num)
```

Set Sigma-delta signal output pin.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE sigmadelta driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

**Parameters**

- **channel**: Sigma-delta channel number
- **gpio_num**: GPIO number of output pin.

**Header File**

- `components/hal/include/hal/sigmadelta_types.h`

**Structures**

```c
struct sigmadelta_config_t
```

Sigma-delta configure struct.

**Public Members**

```c
ten8_t sigmadelta_duty
```

Sigma-delta duty, duty ranges from -128 to 127.

```c
uint8_t sigmadelta_prescale
```

Sigma-delta prescale, prescale ranges from 0 to 255.
Chapter 2. API

uint8_t sigmaDelta_gpio
Sigma-delta output io number, refer to gpio.h for more details.

Enumerations

enum sigmaDelta_port_t
SIGMADELTA port number, the max port number is (SIGMADELTA_NUM_MAX -1).

Values:

SIGMADELTA_PORT_0
SIGMADELTA port 0
SIGMADELTA_PORT_MAX
SIGMADELTA port max

enum sigmaDelta_channel_t
Sigma-delta channel list.

Values:

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_0
Sigma-delta channel 0
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_1
Sigma-delta channel 1
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_2
Sigma-delta channel 2
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_3
Sigma-delta channel 3
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_4
Sigma-delta channel 4
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_5
Sigma-delta channel 5
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_6
Sigma-delta channel 6
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_7
Sigma-delta channel 7
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_MAX
Sigma-delta channel max

2.3.17 SPI Master Driver

SPI Master driver is a program that controls ESP32’s SPI peripherals while they function as masters.

Overview of ESP32’s SPI peripherals

ESP32 integrates 4 SPI peripherals.

- SPI0 and SPI1 are used internally to access the ESP32’s attached flash memory. Both controllers share the same SPI bus signals, and there is an arbiter to determine which can access the bus. There are quite a few limitations when using SPI Master driver on the SPI1 bus, see Notes on Using the SPI Master driver on SPI1 Bus.

- SPI2 and SPI3 are general purpose SPI controllers, sometimes referred to as HSPI and VSPI, respectively. They are open to users. SPI2 and SPI3 have independent bus signals with the same respective names. Each bus has three CS lines to drive up to same number of SPI slaves.
Chapter 2. API

Terminology

The terms used in relation to the SPI master driver are given in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>The SPI controller peripheral inside ESP32 that initiates SPI transmissions over the bus, and acts as an SPI Master.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>SPI slave device. An SPI bus may be connected to one or more Devices. Each Device shares the MOSI, MISO and SCLK signals but is only active on the bus when the Host asserts the Device’s individual CS line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus</td>
<td>A signal bus, common to all Devices connected to one Host. In general, a bus includes the following lines: MOSI, MOSI, SCLK, one or more CS lines, and, optionally, QUADWP and QUADHD. So Devices are connected to the same lines, with the exception that each Device has its own CS line. Several Devices can also share one CS line if connected in the daisy-chain manner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOSI</td>
<td>Master Out, Slave In, a.k.a. D. Data transmission from a Host to Device. Also data0 signal in Octal/OPI mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISO</td>
<td>Master In, Slave Out, a.k.a. Q. Data transmission from a Device to Host. Also data1 signal in Octal/OPI mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCLK</td>
<td>Serial Clock. Oscillating signal generated by a Host that keeps the transmission of data bits in sync.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>Chip Select. Allows a Host to select individual Device(s) connected to the bus in order to send or receive data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUADWP</td>
<td>Write Protect signal. Used for 4-bit (qio/qout) transactions. Also for data2 signal in Octal/OPI mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUADHD</td>
<td>Hold signal. Used for 4-bit (qio/qout) transactions. Also for data3 signal in Octal/OPI mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA4</td>
<td>Data4 signal in Octal/OPI mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA5</td>
<td>Data5 signal in Octal/OPI mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA6</td>
<td>Data6 signal in Octal/OPI mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA7</td>
<td>Data7 signal in Octal/OPI mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assertion</td>
<td>The action of activating a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deassertion</td>
<td>The action of returning the line back to inactive (back to idle) status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transaction</td>
<td>One instance of a Host asserting a CS line, transferring data to and from a Device, and de-asserting the CS line. Transactions are atomic, which means they can never be interrupted by another transaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Launch edge</td>
<td>Edge of the clock at which the source register launches the signal onto the line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latch edge</td>
<td>Edge of the clock at which the destination register latches in the signal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Driver Features

The SPI master driver governs communications of Hosts with Devices. The driver supports the following features:

- Multi-threaded environments
- Transparent handling of DMA transfers while reading and writing data
- Automatic time-division multiplexing of data coming from different Devices on the same signal bus, see SPI Bus Lock.

!!! warning: The SPI master driver has the concept of multiple Devices connected to a single bus (sharing a single ESP32 SPI peripheral). As long as each Device is accessed by only one task, the driver is thread safe. However, if multiple tasks try to access the same SPI Device, the driver is not thread-safe. In this case, it is recommended to either:

- Refactor your application so that each SPI peripheral is only accessed by a single task at a time.
- Add a mutex lock around the shared Device using xSemaphoreCreateMutex.
SPI Features

SPI Master

SPI Bus Lock  To realize the multiplexing of different devices from different drivers (SPI Master, SPI Flash, etc.), an SPI bus lock is applied on each SPI bus. Drivers can attach their devices onto the bus with the arbitration of the lock.

Each bus lock are initialized with a BG (background) service registered, all devices request to do transactions on the bus should wait until the BG to be successfully disabled.

- For SPI1 bus, the BG is the cache, the bus lock will help to disable the cache before device operations starts, and enable it again after device releasing the lock. No devices on SPI1 is allowed using ISR (it’s meaningless for the task to yield to other tasks when the cache is disabled).
  There are quite a few limitations when using SPI Master driver on the SPI1 bus, see Notes on Using the SPI Master driver on SPI1 Bus.
- For other buses, the driver may register its ISR as the BG. The bus lock will block a device task when it requests for exclusive use of the bus, try to disable the ISR, and unblock the device task allowed to exclusively use the bus when the ISR is successfully disabled. When the task releases the lock, the lock will also try to resume the ISR if there are pending transactions to be done in the ISR.

SPI Transactions

An SPI bus transaction consists of five phases which can be found in the table below. Any of these phases can be skipped.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Com-</td>
<td>In this phase, a command (0-16 bit) is written to the bus by the Host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mand</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In this phase, an address (0-64 bit) is transmitted over the bus by the Host.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write</td>
<td>Host sends data to a Device. This data follows the optional command and address phases and is indistinguishable from them at the electrical level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dummy</td>
<td>This phase is configurable and is used to meet the timing requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read</td>
<td>Device sends data to its Host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The attributes of a transaction are determined by the bus configuration structure `spi_bus_config_t`, device configuration structure `spi_device_interface_config_t`, and transaction configuration structure `spi_transaction_t`.

An SPI Host can send full-duplex transactions, during which the read and write phases occur simultaneously. The total transaction length is determined by the sum of the following members:

- `spi_device_interface_config_t::command_bits`
- `spi_device_interface_config_t::address_bits`
- `spi_transaction_t::length`

While the member `spi_transaction_t::rxlength` only determines the length of data received into the buffer.

In half-duplex transactions, the read and write phases are not simultaneous (one direction at a time). The lengths of the write and read phases are determined by `length` and `rxlength` members of the struct `spi_transaction_t` respectively.

The command and address phases are optional, as not every SPI device requires a command and/or address. This is reflected in the Device’s configuration: if `command_bits` and/or `address_bits` are set to zero, no command or address phase will occur.
Chapter 2. API

The read and write phases can also be optional, as not every transaction requires both writing and reading data. If \texttt{rx\_buffer} is \texttt{NULL} and \texttt{SPI\_TRANS\_USE\_RXDATA} is not set, the read phase is skipped. If \texttt{tx\_buffer} is \texttt{NULL} and \texttt{SPI\_TRANS\_USE\_TXDATA} is not set, the write phase is skipped.

The driver supports two types of transactions: the interrupt transactions and polling transactions. The programmer can choose to use a different transaction type per Device. If your Device requires both transaction types, see \textit{Notes on Sending Mixed Transactions to the Same Device}.

\textbf{Interrupt Transactions} Interrupt transactions will block the transaction routine until the transaction completes, thus allowing the CPU to run other tasks.

An application task can queue multiple transactions, and the driver will automatically handle them one-by-one in the interrupt service routine (ISR). It allows the task to switch to other procedures until all the transactions complete.

\textbf{Polling Transactions} Polling transactions do not use interrupts. The routine keeps polling the SPI Host’s status bit until the transaction is finished.

All the tasks that use interrupt transactions can be blocked by the queue. At this point, they will need to wait for the ISR to run twice before the transaction is finished. Polling transactions save time otherwise spent on queue handling and context switching, which results in smaller transaction duration. The disadvantage is that the CPU is busy while these transactions are in progress.

The \texttt{spi\_device\_polling\_end()} routine needs an overhead of at least 1 us to unblock other tasks when the transaction is finished. It is strongly recommended to wrap a series of polling transactions using the functions \texttt{spi\_device\_acquire\_bus()} and \texttt{spi\_device\_release\_bus()} to avoid the overhead. For more information, see \textit{Bus Acquiring}.

\textbf{Transaction Line Mode} Supported line modes for ESP32 are listed as follows, to make use of these modes, set the member \texttt{flags} in the struct \texttt{spi\_transaction\_t} as shown in the \textit{Transaction Flag} column. If you want to check if corresponding IO pins are set or not, set the member \texttt{flags} in the \texttt{spi\_bus\_config\_t} as shown in the \textit{Bus IO setting Flag} column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode name</th>
<th>Command Line Width</th>
<th>Address Line Width</th>
<th>Data Line Width</th>
<th>Transaction Flag</th>
<th>Bus IO setting Flag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal SPI</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual Output</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIO</td>
<td>SPICOM_MON_BUSFLAG_DUAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual I/O</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIO</td>
<td>SPICOM_MON_BUSFLAG_DUAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quad Output</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>SPI_TRANS_MODE_QIO</td>
<td>SPICOM_MON_BUSFLAG_QUAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quad I/O</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>SPI_TRANS_MODE_QIO</td>
<td>SPICOM_MON_BUSFLAG_QUAD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textbf{Command and Address Phases} During the command and address phases, the members \texttt{cmd} and \texttt{addr} in the struct \texttt{spi\_transaction\_t} are sent to the bus, nothing is read at this time. The default lengths of the command and address phases are set in \texttt{spi\_device\_interface\_config\_t} by calling \texttt{spi\_bus\_add\_device()}. If the flags \texttt{SPI\_TRANS\_VARIABLE\_CMD} and \texttt{SPI\_TRANS\_VARIABLE\_ADDR} in the member \texttt{spi\_transaction\_t::flags} are not set, the driver automatically sets the length of these phases to default values during Device initialization.

If the lengths of the command and address phases need to be variable, declare the struct \texttt{spi\_transaction\_ext\_t}, set the flags \texttt{SPI\_TRANS\_VARIABLE\_CMD} and/or \texttt{SPI\_TRANS\_VARIABLE\_ADDR} in the member \texttt{spi\_transaction\_ext\_t::base} and configure the

Submit Document Feedback
rest of base as usual. Then the length of each phase will be equal to \texttt{command_bits} and \texttt{address_bits} set in the struct \texttt{spi_transaction_ext_t}.

If the command and address phase need to be as the same number of lines as data phase, you need to set \texttt{SPI_TRANS_MULTILINE_CMD} and/or \texttt{SPI_TRANS_MULTILINE_ADDR} to the \texttt{flags} member in the struct \texttt{spi_transaction_t}. Also see \textit{Transaction Line Mode}.

**Write and Read Phases** Normally, the data that needs to be transferred to or from a Device will be read from or written to a chunk of memory indicated by the members \texttt{rx_buffer} and \texttt{tx_buffer} of the structure \texttt{spi_transaction_t}. If DMA is enabled for transfers, the buffers are required to be:

1. Allocated in DMA-capable internal memory. If \textit{external PSRAM is enabled}, this means using \texttt{pvPortMallocCaps(size, MALLOC_CAP_DMA)}.
2. 32-bit aligned (starting from a 32-bit boundary and having a length of multiples of 4 bytes).

If these requirements are not satisfied, the transaction efficiency will be affected due to the allocation and copying of temporary buffers.

If using more than one data lines to transmit, please set \texttt{SPI_DEVICE_HALFDUPLEX} flag for the member \texttt{flags} in the struct \texttt{spi_device_interface_config_t}. And the member \texttt{flags} in the struct \texttt{spi_transaction_t} should be set as described in \textit{Transaction Line Mode}.

---

Nota: Half-duplex transactions with both read and write phases are not supported when using DMA. For details and workarounds, see \textit{Known Issues}.

---

**Bus Acquiring** Sometimes you might want to send SPI transactions exclusively and continuously so that it takes as little time as possible. For this, you can use bus acquiring, which helps to suspend transactions (both polling or interrupt) to other devices until the bus is released. To acquire and release a bus, use the functions \texttt{spi_device_acquire_bus()} and \texttt{spi_device_release_bus()}.  

**Driver Usage**

- Initialize an SPI bus by calling the function \texttt{spi_bus_initialize()}. Make sure to set the correct I/O pins in the struct \texttt{spi_bus_config_t}. Set the signals that are not needed to -1.
- Register a Device connected to the bus with the driver by calling the function \texttt{spi_bus_add_device()}. Make sure to configure any timing requirements the device might need with the parameter \texttt{dev_config}. You should now have obtained the Device’s handle which will be used when sending a transaction to it.
- To interact with the Device, fill one or more \texttt{spi_transaction_t} structs with any transaction parameters required. Then send the structs either using a polling transaction or an interrupt transaction:
  - **Interrupt** Either queue all transactions by calling the function \texttt{spi_device_queue_trans()} and, at a later time, query the result using the function \texttt{spi_device_get_trans_result()}, or handle all requests synchronously by feeding them into \texttt{spi_device_transmit()}.
  - **Polling** Call the function \texttt{spi_device_polling_transmit()} to send polling transactions. Alternatively, if you want to insert something in between, send the transactions by using \texttt{spi_device_polling_start()} and \texttt{spi_device_polling_end()}.
- (Optional) To perform back-to-back transactions with a Device, call the function \texttt{spi_device_acquire_bus()} before sending transactions and \texttt{spi_device_release_bus()} after the transactions have been sent.
- (Optional) To unload the driver for a certain Device, call \texttt{spi_bus_remove_device()} with the Device handle as an argument.
- (Optional) To remove the driver for a bus, make sure no more drivers are attached and call \texttt{spi_bus_free()}.  

The example code for the SPI master driver can be found in the \texttt{peripherals/spi_master} directory of ESP-IDF examples.
Transactions with Data Not Exceeding 32 Bits  When the transaction data size is equal to or less than 32 bits, it will be sub-optimal to allocate a buffer for the data. The data can be directly stored in the transaction struct instead. For transmitted data, it can be achieved by using the tx_data member and setting the SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA flag on the transmission. For received data, use rx_data and set SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA. In both cases, do not touch the tx_buffer or rx_buffer members, because they use the same memory locations as tx_data and rx_data.

Transactions with Integers Other Than uint8_t  An SPI Host reads and writes data into memory byte by byte. By default, data is sent with the most significant bit (MSB) first, as LSB first used in rare cases. If a value less than 8 bits needs to be sent, the bits should be written into memory in the MSB first manner.

For example, if 0b00010 needs to be sent, it should be written into a uint8_t variable, and the length for reading should be set to 5 bits. The Device will still receive 8 bits with 3 additional “random” bits, so the reading must be performed correctly.

On top of that, ESP32 is a little-endian chip, which means that the least significant byte of uint16_t and uint32_t variables is stored at the smallest address. Hence, if uint16_t is stored in memory, bits [7:0] are sent first, followed by bits [15:8].

For cases when the data to be transmitted has the size differing from uint8_t arrays, the following macros can be used to transform data to the format that can be sent by the SPI driver directly:

- SPI_SWAP_DATA_TX for data to be transmitted
- SPI_SWAP_DATA_RX for data received

Notes on Sending Mixed Transactions to the Same Device  To reduce coding complexity, send only one type of transactions (interrupt or polling) to one Device. However, you still can send both interrupt and polling transactions alternately. The notes below explain how to do this.

The polling transactions should be initiated only after all the polling and interrupt transactions are finished.

Since an unfinished polling transaction blocks other transactions, please do not forget to call the function spi_device_polling_end() after spi_device_polling_start() to allow other transactions or to allow other Devices to use the bus. Remember that if there is no need to switch to other tasks during your polling transaction, you can initiate a transaction with spi_device_polling_transmit() so that it will be ended automatically.

In-flight polling transactions are disturbed by the ISR operation to accommodate interrupt transactions. Always make sure that all the interrupt transactions sent to the ISR are finished before you call spi_device_polling_start(). To do that, you can keep calling spi_device_get_trans_result() until all the transactions are returned.

To have better control of the calling sequence of functions, send mixed transactions to the same Device only within a single task.

Notes on Using the SPI Master driver on SPI1 Bus  Though the SPI Bus Lock feature makes it possible to use SPI Master driver on the SPI1 bus, it’s still tricky and needs a lot of special treatment. It’s a feature for advanced developers.

To use SPI Master driver on SPI1 bus, you have to take care of two problems:

1. The code and data, required at the meanwhile the driver is operating SPI1 bus, should be in the internal memory. SPI1 bus is shared among devices and the cache for data (code) in the Flash as well as the PSRAM. The cache should be disabled during the other drivers are operating the SPI1 bus. Hence the data (code) in the flash as well as the PSRAM cannot be fetched at the meanwhile the driver acquires the SPI1 bus by:
   - Explicit bus acquiring between spi_device_acquire_bus() and spi_device_release_bus().
   - Implicit bus acquiring between spi_device_polling_start() and spi_device_polling_end() (or inside spi_device_polling_transmit()).
During the time above, all other tasks and most ISRs will be disabled (see IRAM 安全中断处理程序). Application code and data used by current task should be placed in internal memory (DRAM or IRAM), or already in the ROM. Access to external memory (flash code, const data in the flash, and static/heap data in the PSRAM) will cause a Cache disabled but cached memory region accessed exception. For differences between IRAM, DRAM, and flash cache, please refer to the application memory layout documentation.

To place functions into the IRAM, you can either:
1. Add `IRAM_ATTR` (include `esp_attr.h`) to the function like:
   ```c
   IRAM_ATTR void foo(void) {}
   ```
   Please note that when a function is inlined, it will follow its caller’s segment, and the attribute will not take effect. You may need to use `NOLINE_ATTR` to avoid this.
2. Use the `noflash` placement in the `linker.lf`. See more in 链接器脚本生成机制. Please note that, some code may be transformed into lookup table in the const data by the compiler, so `noflash_text` is not safe. Please do take care that the optimization level may affect the compiler behavior of inline, or transforming some code into lookup table in the const data, etc.

To place data into the DRAM, you can either:
1. Add `DRAM_ATTR` (include `esp_attr.h`) to the data definition like:
   ```c
   DRAM_ATTR int g_foo = 3;
   ```
2. Use the `noflash` placement in the `linker.lf`. See more in 链接器脚本生成机制.

Please also see the example peripherals/spi_master/hd_eeprom.

### GPIO Matrix and IO_MUX

Most of ESP32’s peripheral signals have direct connection to their dedicated IO_MUX pins. However, the signals can also be routed to any other available pins using the less direct GPIO matrix. If at least one signal is routed through the GPIO matrix, then all signals will be routed through it. The GPIO matrix introduces flexibility of routing but also brings the following disadvantages:

- Increases the input delay of the MISO signal, which makes MISO setup time violations more likely. If SPI needs to operate at high speeds, use dedicated IO_MUX pins.
- Allows signals with clock frequencies only up to 40 MHz, as opposed to 80 MHz if IO_MUX pins are used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pin Name</th>
<th>SPI2</th>
<th>SPI3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS0*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCLK</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISO</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOSI</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUADWP</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUADHD</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Only the first Device attached to the bus can use the CS0 pin.

### Transfer Speed Considerations

There are three factors limiting the transfer speed:

- Transaction interval
- SPI clock frequency
- Cache miss of SPI functions, including callbacks

The main parameter that determines the transfer speed for large transactions is clock frequency. For multiple small transactions, the transfer speed is mostly determined by the length of transaction intervals.
**Transaction Duration**  Transaction duration includes setting up SPI peripheral registers, copying data to FIFOs or setting up DMA links, and the time for SPI transaction.

Interrupt transactions allow appending extra overhead to accommodate the cost of FreeRTOS queues and the time needed for switching tasks and the ISR.

For interrupt transactions, the CPU can switch to other tasks when a transaction is in progress. This saves the CPU time but increases the transaction duration. See Interrupt Transactions. For polling transactions, it does not block the task but allows to do polling when the transaction is in progress. For more information, see Polling Transactions.

If DMA is enabled, setting up the linked list requires about 2 us per transaction. When a master is transferring data, it automatically reads the data from the linked list. If DMA is not enabled, the CPU has to write and read each byte from the FIFO by itself. Usually, this is faster than 2 us, but the transaction length is limited to 64 bytes for both write and read.

Typical transaction duration for one byte of data are given below.

- Interrupt Transaction via DMA: 28 µs.
- Interrupt Transaction via CPU: 25 µs.
- Polling Transaction via DMA: 10 µs.
- Polling Transaction via CPU: 8 µs.

**SPI Clock Frequency**  Transferring each byte takes eight times the clock period 8/fspi.

If the clock frequency is too high, the use of some functions might be limited. See Timing Considerations.

**Cache Miss**  The default config puts only the ISR into the IRAM. Other SPI related functions, including the driver itself and the callback, might suffer from cache misses and will need to wait until the code is read from flash. Select `CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_IN_IRAM` to put the whole SPI driver into IRAM and put the entire callback(s) and its callee functions into IRAM to prevent cache misses.

For an interrupt transaction, the overall cost is 20+8n/fspi[MHz] [us] for n bytes transferred in one transaction. Hence, the transferring speed is: n/(20+8n/fspi). An example of transferring speed at 8 MHz clock speed is given in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency (MHz)</th>
<th>Transaction Interval (us)</th>
<th>Transaction Length (bytes)</th>
<th>Total Time (us)</th>
<th>Total Speed (Kbps)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>38.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>242.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>490.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>719.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>836.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a transaction length is short, the cost of transaction interval is high. If possible, try to squash several short transactions into one transaction to achieve a higher transfer speed.

Please note that the ISR is disabled during flash operation by default. To keep sending transactions during flash operations, enable `CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_ISR_IN_IRAM` and set `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM` in the member `spi_bus_config_t::intr_flags`. In this case, all the transactions queued before starting flash operations will be handled by the ISR in parallel. Also note that the callback of each Device and their callee functions should be in IRAM, or your callback will crash due to cache miss. For more details, see IRAM.

**Timing Considerations**

As shown in the figure below, there is a delay on the MISO line after the SCLK launch edge and before the signal is latched by the internal register. As a result, the MISO pin setup time is the limiting factor for the SPI clock speed. When the delay is too long, the setup slack is < 0, which means the setup timing requirement is violated and the reading might be incorrect.
The maximum allowed frequency is dependent on:

- `input_delay_ns` - maximum data valid time on the MISO bus after a clock cycle on SCLK starts
- If the IO_MUX pin or the GPIO Matrix is used

When the GPIO matrix is used, the maximum allowed frequency is reduced to about 33-77% in comparison to the existing input delay. To retain a higher frequency, you have to use the IO_MUX pins or the dummy bit workaround. You can obtain the maximum reading frequency of the master by using the function `spi_get_freq_limit()`.

**Dummy bit workaround**: Dummy clocks, during which the Host does not read data, can be inserted before the read phase begins. The Device still sees the dummy clocks and sends out data, but the Host does not read until the read phase comes. This compensates for the lack of the MISO setup time required by the Host and allows the Host to do reading at a higher frequency.

In the ideal case, if the Device is so fast that the input delay is shorter than an APB clock cycle - 12.5 ns - the maximum frequency at which the Host can read (or read and write) in different conditions is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Limit (MHz)</th>
<th>Dummy Bits Used By Driver</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GPIO matrix</td>
<td>IO_MUX pins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the Host only writes data, the dummy bit workaround and the frequency check can be disabled by setting the bit `SPI_DEVICE_NO_DUMMY` in the member `spi_device_interface_config_t::flags`. When disabled, the output frequency can be 80MHz, even if the GPIO matrix is used.

The SPI master driver still works even if the `input_delay_ns` in the structure `spi_device_interface_config_t::flags` is set to 0. However, setting an accurate value helps to:

- Calculate the frequency limit for full-duplex transactions
- Compensate the timing correctly with dummy bits for half-duplex transactions

You can approximate the maximum data valid time after the launch edge of SPI clocks by checking the statistics in the AC characteristics chapter of your Device’s specification or measure the time using an oscilloscope or logic analyzer.

Please note that the actual PCB layout design and excessive loads may increase the input delay. It means that non-optimal wiring and/or a load capacitor on the bus will most likely lead to input delay values exceeding the values given in the Device specification or measured while the bus is floating.
Some typical delay values are shown in the following table. (These data are retrieved when the slave device is on a different physical chip)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device</th>
<th>Input delay (ns)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ideal Device</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32 slave using IO_MUX*</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32 slave using GPIO_MUX*</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The MISO path delay (valid time) consists of a slave’s input delay plus master’s GPIO matrix delay. This delay determines the frequency limit above which full-duplex transfers will not work as well as the dummy bits used in the half-duplex transactions. The frequency limit is:

\[
\text{Freq limit (MHz)} = \frac{80}{\left\lfloor \frac{\text{MISO delay (ns)}}{12.5} \right\rfloor + 1}
\]

The figure below shows the relationship between frequency limit and input delay. Two extra APB clock cycle periods should be added to the MISO delay if the master uses the GPIO matrix.

Corresponding frequency limits for different Devices with different input delay times are shown in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Master</th>
<th>Input delay (ns)</th>
<th>MISO path delay (ns)</th>
<th>Freq. limit (MHz)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IO_MUX (0ns)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>75</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>11.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO (25ns)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>26.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>11.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>75</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Known Issues**

1. Half-duplex transactions are not compatible with DMA when both writing and reading phases are used.
If such transactions are required, you have to use one of the alternative solutions:
1. Use full-duplex transactions instead.
2. Disable DMA by setting the bus initialization function’s last parameter to 0 as follows:
   ```c
   ret = spi_bus_initialize(VSPI_HOST, &buscfg, 0);
   ```
   This can prohibit you from transmitting and receiving data longer than 64 bytes. 3. Try using the command and address fields to replace the write phase.
2. Full-duplex transactions are not compatible with the dummy bit workaround, hence the frequency is limited. See dummy bit speed-up workaround.
3. dummy_bits in `spi_device_interface_config_t` and `spi_transaction_ext_t` are not available when SPI read and write phases are both enabled (regardless of full duplex or half duplex mode).
4. `cs_ena_pretrans` is not compatible with the command and address phases of full-duplex transactions.

**Application Example**

The code example for using the SPI master half duplex mode to read/write a AT93C46D EEPROM (8-bit mode) can be found in the `peripherals/spi_master/hd_eeprom` directory of ESP-IDF examples.

**API Reference - SPI Common**

**Header File**
- `components/hal/include/hal/spi_types.h`

**Structures**

`struct spi_line_mode_t`

Line mode of SPI transaction phases: CMD, ADDR, DOUT/DIN.

**Public Members**

- `uint8_t cmd_lines`
  The line width of command phase, e.g. 2-line-cmd-phase.
- `uint8_t addr_lines`
  The line width of address phase, e.g. 1-line-addr-phase.
- `uint8_t data_lines`
  The line width of data phase, e.g. 4-line-data-phase.

**Enumerations**

`enum spi_host_device_t`

Enum with the three SPI peripherals that are software-accessible in it.

**Values:**

- `SPI1_HOST = 0`
  SPI1.
- `SPI2_HOST = 1`
  SPI2.
- `SPI3_HOST = 2`
  SPI3.
- `SPI_HOST_MAX`
  invalid host value

`enum spi_event_t`

SPI Events.

**Values:**
**Chapter 2. API 参考**

**SPI_EV_BUF_TX** = BIT(0)
The buffer has sent data to master.

**SPI_EV_BUF_RX** = BIT(1)
The buffer has received data from master.

**SPI_EV_SEND_DMA_READY** = BIT(2)
Slave has loaded its TX data buffer to the hardware (DMA).

**SPI_EV_SEND** = BIT(3)
Master has received certain number of the data, the number is determined by Master.

**SPI_EV_RECV_DMA_READY** = BIT(4)
Slave has loaded its RX data buffer to the hardware (DMA).

**SPI_EV_RECV** = BIT(5)
Slave has received certain number of data from master, the number is determined by Master.

**SPI_EV_CMD9** = BIT(6)
Received CMD9 from master.

**SPI_EV_CMDA** = BIT(7)
Received CMDA from master.

**SPI_EV_TRANS** = BIT(8)
A transaction has done.

**Header File**
- components/driver/include/driver/spi_common.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t spi_bus_initialize(spi_host_device_t host_id, const spi_bus_config_t *bus_config,
                             spi_dma_chan_t dma_chan)
```
Initialize a SPI bus.

**Warning** SPI0/1 is not supported

**Warning** If a DMA channel is selected, any transmit and receive buffer used should be allocated in DMA-capable memory.

**Warning** The ISR of SPI is always executed on the core which calls this function. Never starve the ISR on this core or the SPI transactions will not be handled.

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if configuration is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if host already is in use
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no available DMA channel
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- *host_id*: SPI peripheral that controls this bus
- *bus_config*: Pointer to a `spi_bus_config_t` struct specifying how the host should be initialized
- *dma_chan*: Selecting a DMA channel for an SPI bus allows transactions on the bus with size only limited by the amount of internal memory.
  - Selecting SPI_DMA_DISABLED limits the size of transactions.
  - Set to SPI_DMA_DISABLED if only the SPI flash uses this bus.
  - Set to SPI_DMA_CH_AUTO to let the driver to allocate the DMA channel.

```c
esp_err_t spi_bus_free(spi_host_device_t host_id)
```
Free a SPI bus.

**Warning** In order for this to succeed, all devices have to be removed first.

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not all devices on the bus are freed
• ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **host_id**: SPI peripheral to free

**Structures**

```c
define spi_bus_config_t

This is a configuration structure for a SPI bus.

You can use this structure to specify the GPIO pins of the bus. Normally, the driver will use the GPIO matrix to route the signals. An exception is made when all signals either can be routed through the IO_MUX or are -1. In that case, the IO_MUX is used, allowing for >40MHz speeds.

**Note** Be advised that the slave driver does not use the quadwp/quadhd lines and fields in `spi_bus_config_t` referencing to these lines will be ignored and can thus safely be left uninitialized.

**Public Members**

- **int mosi_io_num**: GPIO pin for Master Out Slave In (=spi_d) signal, or -1 if not used.
- **int data0_io_num**: GPIO pin for spi data0 signal in quad/octet mode, or -1 if not used.
- **int miso_io_num**: GPIO pin for Master In Slave Out (=spi_q) signal, or -1 if not used.
- **int data1_io_num**: GPIO pin for spi data1 signal in quad/octet mode, or -1 if not used.
- **int sclk_io_num**: GPIO pin for SPI Clock signal, or -1 if not used.
- **int quadwp_io_num**: GPIO pin for WP (Write Protect) signal, or -1 if not used.
- **int data2_io_num**: GPIO pin for spi data2 signal in quad/octet mode, or -1 if not used.
- **int quadhd_io_num**: GPIO pin for HD (Hold) signal, or -1 if not used.
- **int data3_io_num**: GPIO pin for spi data3 signal in quad/octet mode, or -1 if not used.
- **int data4_io_num**: GPIO pin for spi data4 signal in octal mode, or -1 if not used.
- **int data5_io_num**: GPIO pin for spi data5 signal in octal mode, or -1 if not used.
- **int data6_io_num**: GPIO pin for spi data6 signal in octal mode, or -1 if not used.
- **int data7_io_num**: GPIO pin for spi data7 signal in octal mode, or -1 if not used.
- **int max_transfer_sz**: Maximum transfer size, in bytes. Defaults to 4092 if 0 when DMA enabled, or to SOC_SPI_MAXIMUM_BUFFER_SIZE if DMA is disabled.
- **uint32_t flags**: Abilities of bus to be checked by the driver. Or-ed value of SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_* flags.
int intr_flags
Interrupt flag for the bus to set the priority, and IRAM attribute, see esp_intr_alloc.h. Note that the EDGE, INTRDISABLED attribute are ignored by the driver. Note that if ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is set, ALL the callbacks of the driver, and their callee functions, should be put in the IRAM.

Macros
SPI_MAX_DMA_LEN
SPI_SWAP_DATA_TX (DATA, LEN)
Transform unsigned integer of length <= 32 bits to the format which can be sent by the SPI driver directly.
E.g. to send 9 bits of data, you can:

```c
uint16_t data = SPI_SWAP_DATA_TX(0x145, 9);
```

Then points tx_buffer to &data.

Parameters
- DATA: Data to be sent, can be uint8_t, uint16_t or uint32_t.
- LEN: Length of data to be sent, since the SPI peripheral sends from the MSB, this helps to shift the data to the MSB.

SPI_SWAP_DATA_RX (DATA, LEN)
Transform received data of length <= 32 bits to the format of an unsigned integer.
E.g. to transform the data of 15 bits placed in a 4-byte array to integer:

```c
uint16_t data = SPI_SWAP_DATA_RX(*(uint32_t*)tx_data, 15);
```

Parameters
- DATA: Data to be rearranged, can be uint8_t, uint16_t or uint32_t.
- LEN: Length of data received, since the SPI peripheral writes from the MSB, this helps to shift the data to the LSB.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_SLAVE
Initialize I/O in slave mode.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MASTER
Initialize I/O in master mode.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_IOMUX_PINS
Check using iomux pins. Or indicates the pins are configured through the IO mux rather than GPIO matrix.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_GPIO_PINS
Force the signals to be routed through GPIO matrix. Or indicates the pins are routed through the GPIO matrix.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_SCLK
Check existing of SCLK pin. Or indicates CLK line initialized.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MISO
Check existing of MISO pin. Or indicates MISO line initialized.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MOSI
Check existing of MOSI pin. Or indicates MOSI line initialized.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_DUAL
Check MOSI and MISO pins can output. Or indicates bus able to work under DIO mode.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_WPHD
Check existing of WP and HD pins. Or indicates WP & HD pins initialized.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_QUAD
Check existing of MOSI/MISO/WP/HD pins as output. Or indicates bus able to work under QIO mode.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_IO4_IO7
Check existing of IO4~IO7 pins. Or indicates IO4~IO7 pins initialized.
**SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_OCTAL**

Check existing of MOSI/MISO/WP/HD/SPII04/SPII05/SPII06/SPII07 pins as output. Or indicates bus able to work under octal mode.

**SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_NATIVE_PINS**

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef spi_common_dma_t spi_dma_chan_t
```

**Enumerations**

```c
enum spi_common_dma_t
{
    SPI_DMA_DISABLED = 0,
    SPI_DMA_CH1 = 1,
    SPI_DMA_CH2 = 2,
    SPI_DMA_CH_AUTO = 3
};
```

**Values:**

- **SPI_DMA_DISABLED** = 0
  - Do not enable DMA for SPI.
- **SPI_DMA_CH1** = 1
  - Enable DMA, select DMA Channel 1.
- **SPI_DMA_CH2** = 2
  - Enable DMA, select DMA Channel 2.
- **SPI_DMA_CH_AUTO** = 3
  - Enable DMA, channel is automatically selected by driver.

**API Reference - SPI Master**

**Header File**

- components/driver/include/driver/spi_master.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t spi_bus_add_device(spi_host_device_t host_id, const spi_device_interface_config_t *dev_config, spi_device_handle_t *handle)
```

Allocate a device on a SPI bus.

This initializes the internal structures for a device, plus allocates a CS pin on the indicated SPI master peripheral and routes it to the indicated GPIO. All SPI master devices have three CS pins and can thus control up to three devices.

**Note** While in general, speeds up to 80MHz on the dedicated SPI pins and 40MHz on GPIO-matrix-routed pins are supported, full-duplex transfers routed over the GPIO matrix only support speeds up to 26MHz.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if host doesn’t have any free CS slots
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- `host_id`: SPI peripheral to allocate device on
- `dev_config`: SPI interface protocol config for the device
- `handle`: Pointer to variable to hold the device handle

```c
esp_err_t spi_bus_remove_device(spi_device_handle_t handle)
```

Remove a device from the SPI bus.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if device already is freed
- ESP_OK on success
Parameters

- **handle**: Device handle to free

```c
esp_err_t spi_device_queue_trans(spi_device_handle_t handle, spi_transaction_t *trans_desc, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Queue a SPI transaction for interrupt transaction execution. Get the result by `spi_device_get_trans_result`.

**Note** Normally a device cannot start (queue) polling and interrupt transactions simultaneously.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid. This can happen if **SPI_DEVICE_CS_KEEP_LOW** flag is specified while the bus was not acquired (spi_device_acquire_bus() should be called first)
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if there was no room in the queue before ticks_to_wait expired
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocating DMA-capable temporary buffer failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if previous transactions are not finished
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **handle**: Device handle obtained using `spi_host_add_dev`
- **trans_desc**: Description of transaction to execute
- **ticks_to_wait**: Ticks to wait until there’s room in the queue; use `portMAX_DELAY` to never timeout.

```c
esp_err_t spi_device_get_trans_result(spi_device_handle_t handle, spi_transaction_t **trans_desc, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Get the result of a SPI transaction queued earlier by `spi_device_queue_trans`. This routine will wait until a transaction to the given device successfully completed. It will then return the description of the completed transaction so software can inspect the result and e.g. free the memory or re-use the buffers.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if there was no completed transaction before ticks_to_wait expired
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **handle**: Device handle obtained using `spi_host_add_dev`
- **trans_desc**: Pointer to variable able to contain a pointer to the description of the transaction that is executed. The descriptor should not be modified until the descriptor is returned by `spi_device_get_trans_result`
- **ticks_to_wait**: Ticks to wait until there’s a returned item; use `portMAX_DELAY` to never timeout.

```c
esp_err_t spi_device_transmit(spi_device_handle_t handle, spi_transaction_t *trans_desc)
```

Send a SPI transaction, wait for it to complete, and return the result.

This function is the equivalent of calling `spi_device_queue_trans()` followed by `spi_device_get_trans_result()`. Do not use this when there is still a transaction separately queued (started) from `spi_device_queue_trans()` or polling_start/transmit that hasn’t been finalized.

**Note** This function is not thread safe when multiple tasks access the same SPI device. Normally a device cannot start (queue) polling and interrupt transactions simultaneously.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **handle**: Device handle obtained using `spi_host_add_dev`
- **trans_desc**: Description of transaction to execute

```c
esp_err_t spi_device_polling_start(spi_device_handle_t handle, spi_transaction_t *trans_desc, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Immediately start a polling transaction.
Note Normally a device cannot start (queue) polling and interrupt transactions simultaneously. Moreover, a device cannot start a new polling transaction if another polling transaction is not finished.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid. This can happen if SPI_DEVICE_CS_KEEP_LOW flag is specified while the bus was not acquired (spi_device_acquire_bus() should be called first)
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the device cannot get control of the bus before ticks_to_wait expired
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocating DMA-capable temporary buffer failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if previous transactions are not finished
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- handle: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- trans_desc: Description of transaction to execute
- ticks_to_wait: Ticks to wait until there’s room in the queue; currently only port-MAX_DELAY is supported.

esp_err_t spi_device_polling_end(spi_device_handle_t handle, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)

Poll until the polling transaction ends.

This routine will not return until the transaction to the given device has successfully completed. The task is not blocked, but actively busy-spins for the transaction to be completed.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the transaction cannot finish before ticks_to_wait expired
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- handle: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- ticks_to_wait: Ticks to wait until there’s a returned item; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

esp_err_t spi_device_polling_transmit(spi_device_handle_t handle, spi_transaction_t *trans_desc)

Send a polling transaction, wait for it to complete, and return the result.

This function is the equivalent of calling spi_device_polling_start() followed by spi_device_polling_end(). Do not use this when there is still a transaction that hasn’t been finalized.

Note This function is not thread safe when multiple tasks access the same SPI device. Normally a device cannot start (queue) polling and interrupt transactions simultaneously.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- handle: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- trans_desc: Description of transaction to execute

esp_err_t spi_device_acquire_bus(spi_device_handle_t device, TickType_t wait)

 Occupy the SPI bus for a device to do continuous transactions.

Transactions to all other devices will be put off until spi_device_release_bus is called.

Note The function will wait until all the existing transactions have been sent.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : wait is not set to portMAX_DELAY.
- ESP_OK : Success.

Parameters
- device: The device to occupy the bus.
- wait: Time to wait before the the bus is occupied by the device. Currently MUST set to port-MAX_DELAY.

void spi_device_release_bus(spi_device_handle_t dev)

Release the SPI bus occupied by the device. All other devices can start sending transactions.
### Chapter 2. API

**Parameters**

- dev: The device to release the bus.

```c
int spi_cal_clock (int fapb, int hz, int duty_cycle, uint32_t *reg_o)
```

Calculate the working frequency that is most close to desired frequency, and also the register value.

**Parameters**

- fapb: The frequency of apb clock, should be APB_CLK_FREQ.
- hz: Desired working frequency
- duty_cycle: Duty cycle of the spi clock
- reg_o: Output of value to be set in clock register, or NULL if not needed.

**Return**
Actual working frequency that most fit.

```c
int spi_get_actual_clock (int fapb, int hz, int duty_cycle)
```

Calculate the working frequency that is most close to desired frequency.

**Return**
Actual working frequency that most fit.

**Parameters**

- fapb: The frequency of apb clock, should be APB_CLK_FREQ.
- hz: Desired working frequency
- duty_cycle: Duty cycle of the spi clock

```c
void spi_get_timing (bool gpio_is_used, int input_delay_ns, int eff_clk, int *dummy_o, int *cycles_remain_o)
```

Calculate the timing settings of specified frequency and settings.

**Note**
If **dummy_o** is not zero, it means dummy bits should be applied in half duplex mode, and full duplex mode may not work.

**Parameters**

- gpio_is_used: True if using GPIO matrix, or False if iomux pins are used.
- input_delay_ns: Input delay from SCLK launched edge to MISO data valid.
- eff_clk: Effective clock frequency (in Hz) from spi_cal_clock.
- dummy_o: Address of dummy bits used output. Set to NULL if not needed.
- cycles_remain_o: Address of cycles remaining (after dummy bits are used) output.
  - -1 If too many cycles remaining, suggest to compensate half a clock.
  - 0 If no remaining cycles or dummy bits are not used.
  - positive value: cycles suggest to compensate.

```c
int spi_get_freq_limit (bool gpio_is_used, int input_delay_ns)
```

Get the frequency limit of current configurations. SPI master working at this limit is OK, while above the limit, full duplex mode and DMA will not work, and dummy bits will be applied in the half duplex mode.

**Return**
Frequency limit of current configurations.

**Parameters**

- gpio_is_used: True if using GPIO matrix, or False if native pins are used.
- input_delay_ns: Input delay from SCLK launch edge to MISO data valid.

### Structures

**struct spi_device_interface_config_t**

This is a configuration for a SPI slave device that is connected to one of the SPI buses.

#### Public Members

**uint8_t command_bits**

Default amount of bits in command phase (0-16), used when SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD is not used, otherwise ignored.

**uint8_t address_bits**

Default amount of bits in address phase (0-64), used when SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR is not used, otherwise ignored.

---

Espressif Systems 836

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
uint8_t **dummy_bits**
Amount of dummy bits to insert between address and data phase.

uint8_t **mode**
SPI mode, representing a pair of (CPOL, CPHA) configuration:
- 0: (0, 0)
- 1: (0, 1)
- 2: (1, 0)
- 3: (1, 1)

uint16_t **duty_cycle_pos**
Duty cycle of positive clock, in 1/256th increments (128 = 50%/50% duty). Setting this to 0 (=not setting it) is equivalent to setting this to 128.

uint16_t **cs_ena_pretrans**
Amount of SPI bit-cycles the cs should be activated before the transmission (0-16). This only works on half-duplex transactions.

uint8_t **cs_ena_posttrans**
Amount of SPI bit-cycles the cs should stay active after the transmission (0-16)

int **clock_speed_hz**
Clock speed, divisors of 80MHz, in Hz. See SPI_MASTER_FREQ_*.

int **input_delay_ns**
Maximum data valid time of slave. The time required between SCLK and MISO valid, including the possible clock delay from slave to master. The driver uses this value to give an extra delay before the MISO is ready on the line. Leave at 0 unless you know you need a delay. For better timing performance at high frequency (over 8MHz), it’s suggest to have the right value.

int **spics_io_num**
CS GPIO pin for this device, or -1 if not used.

uint32_t **flags**
Bitwise OR of SPI_DEVICE_* flags.

int **queue_size**
Transaction queue size. This sets how many transactions can be ‘in the air’ (queued using spi_device_queue_trans but not yet finished using spi_device_get_trans_result) at the same time.

**transaction_cb_t pre_cb**
Callback to be called before a transmission is started.

This callback is called within interrupt context should be in IRAM for best performance, see “Transferring Speed” section in the SPI Master documentation for full details. If not, the callback may crash during flash operation when the driver is initialized with ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM.

**transaction_cb_t post_cb**
Callback to be called after a transmission has completed.

This callback is called within interrupt context should be in IRAM for best performance, see “Transferring Speed” section in the SPI Master documentation for full details. If not, the callback may crash during flash operation when the driver is initialized with ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM.

**struct spi_transaction_t**
This structure describes one SPI transaction. The descriptor should not be modified until the transaction finishes.

**Public Members**

uint32_t **flags**
Bitwise OR of SPI_TRANS_* flags.

uint16_t **cmd**
Command data, of which the length is set in the command_bits of spi_device_interface_config_t.
Chapter 2. API

NOTE: this field, used to be “command” in ESP-IDF 2.1 and before, is re-written to be used in a new way in ESP-IDF 3.0.

Example: write 0x0123 and command_bits=12 to send command 0x12, 0x3_ (in previous version, you may have to write 0x3_.12).

```c
uint64_t addr
Address data, of which the length is set in the address_bits of spi_device_interface_config_t.
```

NOTE: this field, used to be “address” in ESP-IDF 2.1 and before, is re-written to be used in a new way in ESP-IDF3.0.

Example: write 0x123400 and address_bits=24 to send address of 0x12, 0x34, 0x00 (in previous version, you may have to write 0x12340000).

```c
size_t length
Total data length, in bits.
```

```c
size_t rxlength
Total data length received, should be not greater than length in full-duplex mode (0 defaults this to the value of length).
```

```c
void *user
User-defined variable. Can be used to store eg transaction ID.
```

```c
const void *tx_buffer
Pointer to transmit buffer, or NULL for no MOSI phase.
```

```c
uint8_t tx_data[4]
If SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA is set, data set here is sent directly from this variable.
```

```c
void *rx_buffer
Pointer to receive buffer, or NULL for no MISO phase. Written by 4 bytes-unit if DMA is used.
```

```c
uint8_t rx_data[4]
If SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA is set, data is received directly to this variable.
```

```c
struct spi_transaction_ext_t
This struct is for SPI transactions which may change their address and command length. Please do set the flags in base to SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD_ADR to use the bit length here.
```

Public Members

```c
struct spi_transaction_t base
Transaction data, so that pointer to spi_transaction_t can be converted into spi_transaction_ext_t.
```

```c
uint8_t command_bits
The command length in this transaction, in bits.
```

```c
uint8_t address_bits
The address length in this transaction, in bits.
```

```c
uint8_t dummy_bits
The dummy length in this transaction, in bits.
```

Macros

```c
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_8M
SPI master clock is divided by 80MHz apb clock. Below defines are example frequencies, and are accurate. Be free to specify a random frequency, it will be rounded to closest frequency (to macros below if above 8MHz).
```

```c
8MHz
```

```c
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_9M
8.89MHz
```

```c
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_10M
10MHz
```
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_11M
11.43MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_13M
13.33MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_16M
16MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_20M
20MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_26M
26.67MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_40M
40MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_80M
80MHz

SPI_DEVICE_TXBIT_LSBFIRST
Transmit command/address/data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_DEVICE_RXBIT_LSBFIRST
Receive data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_DEVICE_BIT_LSBFIRST
Transmit and receive LSB first.

SPI_DEVICE_3WIRE
Use MOSI (=spid) for both sending and receiving data.

SPI_DEVICE_POSITIVE_CS
Make CS positive during a transaction instead of negative.

SPIDEVICE_HALFDUPLEX
Transmit data before receiving it, instead of simultaneously.

SPI_DEVICE_CLK_AS_CS
Output clock on CS line if CS is active.

SPI_DEVICE_NO_DUMMY
There are timing issue when reading at high frequency (the frequency is related to whether iomux pins are used, valid time after slave sees the clock).

- In half-duplex mode, the driver automatically inserts dummy bits before reading phase to fix the timing issue. Set this flag to disable this feature.
- In full-duplex mode, however, the hardware cannot use dummy bits, so there is no way to prevent data being read from getting corrupted. Set this flag to confirm that you’re going to work with output only, or read without dummy bits at your own risk.

SPI_DEVICE_DDRCLK

SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIO
Transmit/receive data in 2-bit mode.

SPI_TRANS_MODE_QIO
Transmit/receive data in 4-bit mode.

SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA
Receive into rx_data member of spi_transaction_t instead into memory at rx_buffer.

SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA
Transmit tx_data member of spi_transaction_t instead of data at tx_buffer. Do not set tx_buffer when using this.

SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIOQIO_ADDR
Also transmit address in mode selected by SPI_MODE_DIO/SPI_MODE_QIO.
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD
Use the command_bits in spi_transaction_ext_t rather than default value in spi_device_interface_config_t.

SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR
Use the address_bits in spi_transaction_ext_t rather than default value in spi_device_interface_config_t.

SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_DUMMY
Use the dummy_bits in spi_transaction_ext_t rather than default value in spi_device_interface_config_t.

SPI_TRANS_CS_KEEP_ACTIVE
Keep CS active after data transfer.

SPI_TRANS_MULTILINE_CMD
The data lines used at command phase is the same as data phase (otherwise, only one data line is used at command phase)

SPI_TRANS_MODE_OCT
Transmit/receive data in 8-bit mode.

SPI_TRANS_MULTILINE_ADDR
The data lines used at address phase is the same as data phase (otherwise, only one data line is used at address phase)

Type Definitions
typedef struct spi_transaction_t spi_transaction_t
typedef void(*transaction_cb_t)(spi_transaction_t *trans)
typedef struct spi_device_t *spi_device_handle_t
Handle for a device on a SPI bus.

2.3.18 SPI Slave Driver

SPI Slave driver is a program that controls ESP32’s SPI peripherals while they function as slaves.

Overview of ESP32’s SPI peripherals

ESP32 integrates two general purpose SPI controllers which can be used as slave nodes driven by an off-chip SPI master

• SPI2, sometimes referred to as HSPI
• SPI3, sometimes referred to as VSPI

SPI2 and SPI3 have independent signal buses with the same respective names.

Terminology

The terms used in relation to the SPI slave driver are given in the table below.
### Term | Definition
--- | ---
**Host** | The SPI controller peripheral external to ESP32 that initiates SPI transmissions over the bus, and acts as an SPI Master.

**Device** | SPI slave device (general purpose SPI controller). Each Device shares the MOSI, MISO and SCLK signals but is only active on the bus when the Host asserts the Device’s individual CS line.

**Bus** | A signal bus, common to all Devices connected to one Host. In general, a bus includes the following lines: MISO, MOSI, SCLK, one or more CS lines, and, optionally, QUADWP and QUADHD. So Devices are connected to the same lines, with the exception that each Device has its own CS line. Several Devices can also share one CS line if connected in the daisy-chain manner.

- **MISO** | Master In, Slave Out, a.k.a. Q. Data transmission from a Device to Host.

- **MOSI** | Master Out, Slave in, a.k.a. D. Data transmission from a Host to Device.

- **SCLK** | Serial Clock. Oscillating signal generated by a Host that keeps the transmission of data bits in sync.

- **CS** | Chip Select. Allows a Host to select individual Device(s) connected to the bus in order to send or receive data.

- **QUADWP** | Write Protect signal. Only used for 4-bit (qio/qout) transactions.

- **QUADHD** | Hold signal. Only used for 4-bit (qio/qout) transactions.

- **Assertion** | The action of activating a line. The opposite action of returning the line back to inactive (back to idle) is called de-assertion.

**Transaction** | One instance of a Host asserting a CS line, transferring data to and from a Device, and de-asserting the CS line. Transactions are atomic, which means they can never be interrupted by another transaction.

**Launch edge** | Edge of the clock at which the source register launches the signal onto the line.

**Latch edge** | Edge of the clock at which the destination register latches in the signal.

### Driver Features

The SPI slave driver allows using the SPI peripherals as full-duplex Devices. The driver can send/receive transactions up to 64 bytes in length, or utilize DMA to send/receive longer transactions. However, there are some known issues related to DMA.

### SPI Transactions

A full-duplex SPI transaction begins when the Host asserts the CS line and starts sending out clock pulses on the SCLK line. Every clock pulse, a data bit is shifted from the Host to the Device on the MOSI line and back on the MISO line at the same time. At the end of the transaction, the Host de-asserts the CS line.
The attributes of a transaction are determined by the configuration structure for an SPI host acting as a slave device `spi_slave_interface_config_t`, and transaction configuration structure `spi_slave_transaction_t`.

As not every transaction requires both writing and reading data, you have a choice to configure the `spi_transaction_t` structure for TX only, RX only, or TX and RX transactions. If `spi_slave_transaction_t::rx_buffer` is set to NULL, the read phase will be skipped. If `spi_slave_transaction_t::tx_buffer` is set to NULL, the write phase will be skipped.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>注解：A Host should not start a transaction before its Device is ready for receiving data. It is recommended to use another GPIO pin for a handshake signal to sync the Devices. For more details, see Transaction Interval.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Driver Usage**

- Initialize an SPI peripheral as a Device by calling the function `spi_slave_initialize`. Make sure to set the correct I/O pins in the structure `bus_config`. Set the unused signals to -1.

  If transactions will be longer than 32 bytes, allow a DMA channel 1 or 2 by setting the parameter `dma_chan` to 1 or 2 respectively. Otherwise, set `dma_chan` to 0.

  - Before initiating transactions, fill one or more `spi_slave_transaction_t` structs with the transaction parameters required. Either queue all transactions by calling the function `spi_slave_queue_trans()` and, at a later time, query the result by using the function `spi_slave_get_trans_result()`, or handle all requests individually by feeding them into `spi_slave_transmit()`. The latter two functions will be blocked until the Host has initiated and finished a transaction, causing the queued data to be sent and received.

  - (Optional) To unload the SPI slave driver, call `spi_slave_free()`.

**Transaction Data and Master/Slave Length Mismatches**

Normally, the data that needs to be transferred to or from a Device is read or written to a chunk of memory indicated by the `rx_buffer` and `tx_buffer` members of the `spi_transaction_t` structure. The SPI driver can be configured to use DMA for transfers, in which case these buffers must be allocated in DMA-capable memory using `pvPortMallocCaps(size, MALLOC_CAP_DMA)`.

The amount of data that the driver can read or write to the buffers is limited by the member `spi_transaction_t::length`. However, this member does not define the actual length of an SPI transaction. A transaction’s length is determined by a Host which drives the clock and CS lines. The actual length of the transmission can be read only after a transaction is finished from the member `spi_slave_transaction_t::trans_len`.

If the length of the transmission is greater than the buffer length, only the initial number of bits specified in the `length` member will be sent and received. In this case, `trans_len` is set to `length` instead of the actual transaction length. To meet the actual transaction length requirements, set `length` to a value greater than the maximum `trans_len` expected. If the transmission length is shorter than the buffer length, only the data equal to the length of the buffer will be transmitted.

**GPIO Matrix and IO_MUX**

Most of ESP32’s peripheral signals have direct connection to their dedicated IO_MUX pins. However, the signals can also be routed to any other available pins using the less direct GPIO matrix.

If at least one signal is routed through the GPIO matrix, then all signals will be routed through it. The GPIO matrix samples all signals at 80 MHz and transmits them between the GPIO and the peripheral.

If the driver is configured so that all SPI signals are either routed to their dedicated IO_MUX pins or are not connected at all, the GPIO matrix will be bypassed.
The GPIO matrix introduces flexibility of routing but also increases the input delay of the MISO signal, which makes MISO setup time violations more likely. If SPI needs to operate at high speeds, use dedicated IO_MUX pins.

Note: For more details about the influence of the MISO input delay on the maximum clock frequency, see Timing Considerations.

The IO_MUX pins for SPI buses are given below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pin Name</th>
<th>SPI2</th>
<th>SPI3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GPIO Number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS0*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCLK</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISO</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOSI</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUADWP</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUADHD</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Only the first Device attached to the bus can use the CS0 pin.

**Speed and Timing Considerations**

**Transaction Interval** The ESP32 SPI slave peripherals are designed as general purpose Devices controlled by a CPU. As opposed to dedicated slaves, CPU-based SPI Devices have a limited number of pre-defined registers. All transactions must be handled by the CPU, which means that the transfers and responses are not real-time, and there might be noticeable latency.

As a solution, a Device’s response rate can be doubled by using the functions `spi_slave_queue_trans()` and then `spi_slave_get_trans_result()` instead of using `spi_slave_transmit()`.

You can also configure a GPIO pin through which the Device will signal to the Host when it is ready for a new transaction. A code example of this can be found in `peripherals/spi_slave`.

**SCLK Frequency Requirements** The SPI slaves are designed to operate at up to 10 MHz. The data cannot be recognized or received correctly if the clock is too fast or does not have a 50% duty cycle.

On top of that, there are additional requirements for the data to meet the timing constraints:

- **Read (MOSI):** The Device can read data correctly only if the data is already set at the launch edge. Although it is usually the case for most masters.
- **Write (MISO):** The output delay of the MISO signal needs to be shorter than half of a clock cycle period so that the MISO line is stable before the next latch edge. Given that the clock is balanced, the output delay and frequency limitations in different cases are given below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Output delay of MISO (ns)</th>
<th>Freq. limit (MHz)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IO_MUX</td>
<td>43.75</td>
<td>&lt;11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIO matrix</td>
<td>68.75</td>
<td>&lt;7.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 1. If the frequency is equal to the limitation, it can lead to random errors. 2. The clock uncertainty between Host and Device (12.5ns) is included. 3. The output delay is measured under ideal circumstances (no load). If the MISO pin is heavily loaded, the output delay will be longer, and the maximum allowed frequency will be lower.

Exception: The frequency is allowed to be higher if the master has more tolerance for the MISO setup time, e.g., latch data at the next edge, or configurable latching time.
Restrictions and Known Issues

1. If DMA is enabled, the rx buffer should be word-aligned (starting from a 32-bit boundary and having a length of multiples of 4 bytes). Otherwise, DMA may write incorrectly or not in a boundary aligned manner. The driver reports an error if this condition is not satisfied. Also, a Host should write lengths that are multiples of 4 bytes. The data with inappropriate lengths will be discarded.

2. Furthermore, DMA requires SPI modes 1 and 3. For SPI modes 0 and 2, the MISO signal has to be launched half a clock cycle earlier to meet the timing. The new timing is as follows:

If DMA is enabled, a Device’s launch edge is half of an SPI clock cycle ahead of the normal time, shifting to the Master’s actual latch edge. In this case, if the GPIO matrix is bypassed, the hold time for data sampling is 68.75 ns and no longer a half of an SPI clock cycle. If the GPIO matrix is used, the hold time will increase to 93.75 ns. The Host should sample the data immediately at the latch edge or communicate in SPI modes 1 or 3. If your Host cannot meet these timing requirements, initialize your Device without DMA.

Application Example

The code example for Device/Host communication can be found in the peripherals/spi_slave directory of ESP-IDF examples.

API Reference

Header File

- components/driver/include/driver/spi_slave.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t spi_slave_initialize (spi_host_device_t host, const spi_bus_config_t *bus_config,
                                 const spi_slave_interface_config_t *slave_config,
                                 spi_dma_chan_t dma_chan)
```

Initialize a SPI bus as a slave interface.

**Warning** SPI0/1 is not supported

**Warning** If a DMA channel is selected, any transmit and receive buffer used should be allocated in DMA-capable memory.

**Warning** The ISR of SPI is always executed on the core which calls this function. Never starve the ISR on this core or the SPI transactions will not be handled.

**Return**

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if configuration is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if host already is in use
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no available DMA channel
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **host**: SPI peripheral to use as a slave interface
- **bus_config**: Pointer to a `spi_bus_config_t` struct specifying how the host should be initialized
- **slave_config**: Pointer to a `spi_slave_interface_config_t` struct specifying the details for the slave interface
• dma_chan: - Selecting a DMA channel for an SPI bus allows transactions on the bus with size only limited by the amount of internal memory.
  – Selecting SPI_DMA_DISABLED limits the size of transactions.
  – Set to SPI_DMA_DISABLED if only the SPI flash uses this bus.
  – Set to SPI_DMA_CH_AUTO to let the driver to allocate the DMA channel.

\[
\text{esp_err_t spi_slave_free} (\text{spi_host_device_t host})
\]
Free a SPI bus claimed as a SPI slave interface.

Return

• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
• ESP_OK on success

Parameters

• host: SPI peripheral to free

\[
\text{esp_err_t spi_slave_queue_trans} (\text{spi_host_device_t host, const spi_slave_transaction_t *} \text{trans_desc}, \text{TickType_t ticks_to_wait})
\]
Queue a SPI transaction for execution.

Queues a SPI transaction to be executed by this slave device. (The transaction queue size was specified when the slave device was initialised via spi_slave_initialize.) This function may block if the queue is full (depending on the ticks_to_wait parameter). No SPI operation is directly initiated by this function, the next queued transaction will happen when the master initiates a SPI transaction by pulling down CS and sending out clock signals.

This function hands over ownership of the buffers in trans_desc to the SPI slave driver; the application is not to access this memory until spi_slave_queue_trans is called to hand ownership back to the application.

Return

• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
• ESP_OK on success

Parameters

• host: SPI peripheral that is acting as a slave
• trans_desc: Description of transaction to execute. Not const because we may want to write status back into the transaction description.
• ticks_to_wait: Ticks to wait until there’s room in the queue; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

\[
\text{esp_err_t spi_slave_get_trans_result} (\text{spi_host_device_t host, spi_slave_transaction_t **trans_desc, TickType_t ticks_to_wait})
\]
Get the result of a SPI transaction queued earlier.

This routine will wait until a transaction to the given device (queued earlier with spi_slave_queue_trans) has successfully completed. It will then return the description of the completed transaction so software can inspect the result and e.g. free the memory or re-use the buffers.

It is mandatory to eventually use this function for any transaction queued by spi_slave_queue_trans.

Return

• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
• ESP_OK on success

Parameters

• host: SPI peripheral to that is acting as a slave
• [out] trans_desc: Pointer to variable able to contain a pointer to the description of the transaction that is executed
• ticks_to_wait: Ticks to wait until there’s a returned item; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

\[
\text{esp_err_t spi_slave_transmit} (\text{spi_host_device_t host, spi_slave_transaction_t *trans_desc, TickType_t ticks_to_wait})
\]
Do a SPI transaction.

Essentially does the same as spi_slave_queue_trans followed by spi_slave_get_trans_result. Do not use this when there is still a transaction queued that hasn’t been finalized using spi_slave_get_trans_result.
Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- host: SPI peripheral to that is acting as a slave
- trans_desc: Pointer to variable able to contain a pointer to the description of the transaction that is executed. Not const because we may want to write status back into the transaction description.
- ticks_to_wait: Ticks to wait until there’s a returned item; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

Structures

struct spi_slave_interface_config_t
This is a configuration for a SPI host acting as a slave device.

Public Members

int spics_io_num
CS GPIO pin for this device.

uint32_t flags
Bitwise OR of SPI_SLAVE_* flags.

int queue_size
Transaction queue size. This sets how many transactions can be ‘in the air’ (queued using spi_slave_queue_trans but not yet finished using spi_slave_get_trans_result) at the same time.

uint8_t mode
SPI mode, representing a pair of (CPOL, CPHA) configuration:
- 0: (0,0)
- 1: (0,1)
- 2: (1,0)
- 3: (1,1)

slave_transaction_cb / post_setup_cb
Callback called after the SPI registers are loaded with new data.
This callback is called within interrupt context should be in IRAM for best performance, see “Transferring Speed” section in the SPI Master documentation for full details. If not, the callback may crash during flash operation when the driver is initialized with ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM.

slave_transaction_cb / post_trans_cb
Callback called after a transaction is done.
This callback is called within interrupt context should be in IRAM for best performance, see “Transferring Speed” section in the SPI Master documentation for full details. If not, the callback may crash during flash operation when the driver is initialized with ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM.

struct spi_slave_transaction_t
This structure describes one SPI transaction

Public Members

size_t length
Total data length, in bits.

size_t trans_len
Transaction data length, in bits.

const void *tx_buffer
Pointer to transmit buffer, or NULL for no MOSI phase.
`void rx_buffer`  
Pointer to receive buffer, or NULL for no MISO phase. When the DMA is enabled, must start at WORD boundary (`rx_buffer % 4 == 0`), and has length of a multiple of 4 bytes.

`void user`  
User-defined variable. Can be used to store eg transaction ID.

**Macros**

SPI_SLAVE_TXBIT_LSBFIRST  
Transmit command/address/data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_SLAVE_RXBIT_LSBFIRST  
Receive data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_SLAVE_BIT_LSBFIRST  
Transmit and receive LSB first.

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef struct spi_slave_transaction_t spi_slave_transaction_t
typedef void(*slave_transaction_cb_t)(spi_slave_transaction_t *trans)
```

### 2.3.19 ESP32-WROOM-32SE (Secure Element)

**Overview**

The ESP32-WROOM-32SE has integrated Microchip’s ATECC608A cryptoauth chip in the module. ATECC608A is secure element which would generate and store ECC private key in the hardware. The ECC private key can be used to enhance security to connect to IoT cloud services with use of X.509 based mutual authentication. The application example demonstrates ECDSA sign and verify functions using ECC private key stored in ATECC608A.

**Application Example**

Secure Element ECDSA Sign/Verify example: `peripherals/secure_element/atecc608_ecdsa`.

**How to configure and provision ESP32-WROOM-32SE for TLS**

To configure and provision ATECC608A chip on ESP32-WROOM-32SE please visit `esp_cryptoauth_utility`.

**How to use ATECC608A of ESP32-WROOM-32SE for TLS**

ATECC608A can be used for TLS connections using ESP-TLS. To configure ESP-TLS for using secure element please refer `ATECC608A with ESP-TLS in ESP-TLS documentation`.

### 2.3.20 触摸传感器

**概述**

触摸传感器系统由保护覆盖层、触摸电极、绝缘基板和走线组成。保护覆盖层位于最上层，绝缘基板上设有电极及走线。用户触摸覆盖层将产生电容变化，根据电容变化判断此次触摸是否为有效触摸行为。

ESP32 最多可支持 10 个电容式触摸传感器通道/GPIO。

触摸传感器可以以矩阵或滑条等方式组合使用，从而覆盖更大触摸区域及更多触感点。触摸传感由软件或专用硬件计时器发起，由有限状态机 (FSM) 硬件控制。
如需了解触摸传感器设计、操作及其控制寄存器等相关信息，请参考《ESP32 技术参考手册》PDF 中“片上传感器与模拟信号处理”章节。

请参考触摸传感器应用方案简介，查看触摸传感器设计详情和固件开发指南。

如果想评估触摸传感器的多种应用场景，请查看 ESP32 触摸功能开发套件。

功能介绍

下面将 API 分解成几个函数组进行介绍，帮助用户快速了解以下功能:

- 初始化触摸传感器驱动程序
- 配置触摸传感器 GPIO 管脚
- 触摸状态测量
- 调整测量参数（优化测量）
- 滤波采样
- 触控监测方式
- 设置中断信号触发触碰动作
- 中断触发，唤醒睡眠模式

请前往 API 参考 章节，查看某一函数的具体描述。应用示例 章节则介绍了此 API 的具体实现。

初始化触摸传感器驱动程序 使用触摸传感器之前，需要先调用 touch_pad_init() 函数初始化触摸传感器驱动程序。此函数设置了 API 参考 下的 Macros 中列出的几项 .DEFAULT 驱动程序参数，同时删除之前设置过的触摸传感器信息 (如有)，并禁用中断。

如果不再需要该驱动程序，可以调用 touch_pad_deinit() 释放已初始化的驱动程序。

配置触摸传感器 GPIO 管脚 调用 touch_pad_config() 使能某一 GPIO 的触感功能。

使用 touch_pad_set_fsm_mode() 选择触控传感器测量 (由 FSM 操作) 是由硬件定时器自动启动，还是由软件自动启动。如果选择软件模式，请使用 touch_pad_sw_start() 启动 FSM。

触摸状态测量 借助以下两个函数从传感器读取原始数据和滤波后的数据:

- touch_pad_read_raw_data()
- touch_pad_read_filtered()

这两个函数也可以用于检查触碰和释放触摸传感器时传感器读数变化范围，然后根据这些信息设定触摸传感器的触碰阈值。

注解：使用 touch_pad_read_filtered() 之前，需要先调用滤波采样 中特定的滤波器函数来初始化并配置该滤波器。

请参考应用示例 peripherals/touch_sensor/touch_sensor_v1/touch_pad_read，查看如何使用读取触摸传感器数据。

优化测量 触控传感器设有数个可配置参数，以适应触摸传感器设计特点。例如，如果需要感知较细微的电容变化，则可以缩小触控传感器充放电的参考电压范围。用户可以使用 touch_pad_set_voltage() 函数设置电压参考低值和参考高值。

优化测量除了可以识别细微的电容变化之外，还可以降低应用程序功耗，但可能会增加测量噪声干扰。如果得到的动态范围结果比较理想，则可以调用 touch_pad_set_meas_time() 函数来减少测量时间，从而进一步降低功耗。

可用的测量参数及相应的‘set’函数总结如下：

- 触摸传感器充放电参数:
  - 电压门限: touch_pad_set_voltage()
- 速率（斜率）
  - touch_pad_set_cnt_mode()
- 测量时间
  - touch_pad_set_meas_time()

电压门限（参考低值/参考高值）、速率（斜率）与测量时间的关系如下图所示:

图 18: 触摸传感器 - 测量参数之间的关系

上图中的 Output 代表触摸传感器读值，即一个测量周期内测得的脉冲计数值。
所有函数均成对出现，用于设定某一特定参数，并获取当前参数值，例如: touch_pad_set_voltage() 和 touch_pad_get_voltage()。

滤波采样
如果测量中存在噪声，可以使用提供的 API 函数对采样进行滤波。使用滤波器之前，请先调用 touch_pad_filter_start() 启动该滤波器。
滤波器类型为 IIR（无限脉冲响应滤波器），用户可以调用 touch_pad_set_filter_period() 配置此类滤波器的采样周期。
 如需停止滤波器，请调用 touch_pad_filter_stop() 函数。如果不再使用该滤波器，请调用 touch_pad_filter_delete() 删除此滤波器。

触摸监测
触摸监测基于用户配置的阈值和 FSM 执行的原始测量，并由 ESP32 硬件实现。用户可以调用 touch_pad_get_status() 查看被触碰的触摸传感器，或调用 touch_pad_clear_status() 清除触摸状态信息。
用户也可以将硬件触摸监测连接至中断，详细介绍见下一章节。
如果测量中存在噪声，且电容变化幅度较小，硬件触摸监测结果可能就不太理想。如需解决这一问题，不建议使用硬件监测或中断信号，建议用户在自己的应用程序中进行采样滤波，并执行触摸监测。请参考 peripherals/touch_sensor/touch_sensor_v1/touch_pad_interrupt，查看以上两种触摸监测的实现方式。

中断触发
在对触摸监测启用中断之前，请先设置一个触摸监测阈值。然后使用触摸状态测量 中所述的函数读取并显示触摸和释放触摸传感器时测得的结果。如果测量中存在噪声且相对电容变化较小，请使用滤波器。用户也可以根据应用程序和环境条件，测试温度和电源电压变化对测量值的影响。
确定监测阈值后就可以在初始化时调用 touch_pad_config() 设置此阈值，或在运行时调用 touch_pad_set_thresh() 设置此阈值。
下一步就是设置如何触发中断。用户可以设置在阈值以下或以上触发中断，具体触发模式由函数 touch_pad_set_trigger_mode() 设置。
最后用户可以使用以下函数配置和管理中断调用:

- `touch_pad_isr_register()` / `touch_pad_isr_deregister()`
- `touch_pad_intr_enable()` / `touch_pad_intr_disable()`

中断配置完成后，用户可以调用`touch_pad_get_status()`查看中断信号来自哪个触摸传感器，也可以调用`touch_pad_clear_status()`清除触摸传感器状态信息。

**注解：**触摸监测中的中断信号基于原始/未经滤波的采样（对比用户设置的阈值），并在硬件中实现。启用软件滤波API（请参考滤波采样）并不会影响这一过程。

### 从睡眠模式唤醒
如果使用触摸传感器中断将芯片从睡眠模式唤醒，用户可以选择配置一些触摸传感器，例如SET1或SET1和SET2。触摸这些触动传感器将触发中断并唤醒芯片，请调用`touch_pad_set_trigger_source()`实现上述操作。

用户可以使用以下函数管理‘SET’中触摸传感器所需的位模式配置:

- `touch_pad_set_group_mask()` / `touch_pad_get_group_mask()`
- `touch_pad_clear_group_mask()`

### 应用示例

- 触摸传感器读值示例：`peripherals/touch_sensor/touch_sensor_v1/touch_pad_read`
- 触摸传感器中断示例：`peripherals/touch_sensor/touch_sensor_v1/touch_pad_interrupt`

### API 参考

**Header File**

- `components/driver/esp32/include/driver/touch_sensor.h`

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_config(touch_pad_t touch_num, uint16_t threshold)
```

Configure touch pad interrupt threshold.

**Note** If FSM mode is set to TOUCH_FSM_MODE_TIMER, this function will be blocked for one measurement cycle and wait for data to be valid.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument wrong
- ESP_FAIL if touch pad not initialized

**Parameters**

- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `threshold`: interrupt threshold.

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_read(touch_pad_t touch_num, uint16_t *touch_value)
```

Get touch sensor counter value. Each touch sensor has a counter to count the number of charge/discharge cycles. When the pad is not ‘touched’, we can get a number of the counter. When the pad is ‘touched’, the value in counter will get smaller because of the larger equivalent capacitance.

**Note** This API requests hardware measurement once. If IIR filter mode is enabled, please use ‘touch_pad_read_raw_data’ interface instead.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Touch pad parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE This touch pad hardware connection is error, the value of “touch_value” is 0.
- ESP_FAIL Touch pad not initialized
Parameters
- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `touch_value`: pointer to accept touch sensor value

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_read_filtered(touch_pad_t touch_num, uint16_t *touch_value)
```

get filtered touch sensor counter value by IIR filter.

**Note**
touch_pad_filter_start has to be called before calling touch_pad_read_filtered. This function can be called from ISR

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Touch pad parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE This touch pad hardware connection is error, the value of “touch_value” is 0.
- ESP_FAIL Touch pad not initialized

Parameters
- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `touch_value`: pointer to accept touch sensor value

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_read_raw_data(touch_pad_t touch_num, uint16_t *touch_value)
```

get raw data (touch sensor counter value) from IIR filter process. Need not request hardware measurements.

**Note**
touch_pad_filter_start has to be called before calling touch_pad_read_raw_data. This function can be called from ISR

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Touch pad parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE This touch pad hardware connection is error, the value of “touch_value” is 0.
- ESP_FAIL Touch pad not initialized

Parameters
- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `touch_value`: pointer to accept touch sensor value

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_set_filter_read_cb(filter_cb_t read_cb)
```

Register the callback function that is called after each IIR filter calculation.

**Note**
The `read_cb` callback is called in timer task in each filtering cycle.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Set error

Parameters
- `read_cb`: Pointer to filtered callback function. If the argument passed in is NULL, the callback will stop.

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_isr_register(intr_handler_t fn, void *arg)
```

Register touch-pad ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No memory

Parameters
- `fn`: Pointer to ISR handler
- `arg`: Parameter for ISR

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_set_meas_time(uint16_t sleep_cycle, uint16_t meas_cycle)
```

Set touch sensor measurement and sleep time. Excessive total time will slow down the touch response. Too small measurement time will not be sampled enough, resulting in inaccurate measurements.

**Note**
The greater the duty cycle of the measurement time, the more system power is consumed.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
Parameters

- **sleep_cycle**: The touch sensor will sleep after each measurement. sleep_cycle decide the interval between each measurement. \( t_{\text{sleep}} = \text{sleep\_cycle} / (\text{RTC\_SLOW\_CLK} \text{ frequency}) \). The approximate frequency value of RTC\_SLOW\_CLK can be obtained using rtc\_clk\_slow\_freq\_get\_hz function.
- **meas_cycle**: The duration of the touch sensor measurement. \( t_{\text{meas}} = \text{meas\_cycle} / 8\text{M} \), the maximum measure time is \( 0\text{xffff} / 8\text{M} = 8.19 \text{ ms} \)

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_get_meas_time(uint16_t *sleep_cycle, uint16_t *meas_cycle)
```
Get touch sensor measurement and sleep time.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **sleep_cycle**: Pointer to accept sleep cycle number
- **meas_cycle**: Pointer to accept measurement cycle count.

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_sw_start(void)
```
Trigger a touch sensor measurement, only support in SW mode of FSM.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_set_thresh(touch_pad_t touch_num, uint16_t threshold)
```
Set touch sensor interrupt threshold.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**

- **touch_num**: touch pad index
- **threshold**: threshold of touchpad count, refer to touch_pad_set_trigger_mode to see how to set trigger mode.

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_get_thresh(touch_pad_t touch_num, uint16_t *threshold)
```
Get touch sensor interrupt threshold.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**

- **touch_num**: touch pad index
- **threshold**: pointer to accept threshold

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_set_trigger_mode(touch_trigger_mode_t mode)
```
Set touch sensor interrupt trigger mode. Interrupt can be triggered either when counter result is less than threshold or when counter result is more than threshold.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**

- **mode**: touch sensor interrupt trigger mode

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_get_trigger_mode(touch_trigger_mode_t *mode)
```
Get touch sensor interrupt trigger mode.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **mode**: pointer to accept touch sensor interrupt trigger mode

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_set_trigger_source(touch_trigger_src_t src)
```
Set touch sensor interrupt trigger source. There are two sets of touch signals. Set1 and set2 can be mapped to
several touch signals. Either set will be triggered if at least one of its touch signal is ‘touched’. The interrupt can be configured to be generated if set1 is triggered, or only if both sets are triggered.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**
- `src`: touch sensor interrupt trigger source

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_get_trigger_source (touch_trigger_src_t *src)
```
Get touch sensor interrupt trigger source.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- `src`: pointer to accept touch sensor interrupt trigger source

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_set_group_mask (uint16_t set1_mask, uint16_t set2_mask, uint16_t en_mask)
```
Set touch sensor group mask. Touchpad module has two sets of signals. ‘Touched’ signal is triggered only if at least one of touch pad in this group is “touched”. This function will set the register bits according to the given bitmask.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**
- `set1_mask`: bitmask of touch sensor signal group1, it’s a 10-bit value
- `set2_mask`: bitmask of touch sensor signal group2, it’s a 10-bit value
- `en_mask`: bitmask of touch sensor work enable, it’s a 10-bit value

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_get_group_mask (uint16_t *set1_mask, uint16_t *set2_mask, uint16_t *en_mask)
```
Get touch sensor group mask.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**
- `set1_mask`: pointer to accept bitmask of touch sensor signal group1, it’s a 10-bit value
- `set2_mask`: pointer to accept bitmask of touch sensor signal group2, it’s a 10-bit value
- `en_mask`: pointer to accept bitmask of touch sensor work enable, it’s a 10-bit value

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_clear_group_mask (uint16_t set1_mask, uint16_t set2_mask, uint16_t en_mask)
```
Clear touch sensor group mask. Touch pad module has two sets of signals. Interrupt is triggered only if at least one of touch pad in this group is “touched”. This function will clear the register bits according to the given bitmask.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**
- `set1_mask`: bitmask touch sensor signal group1, it’s a 10-bit value
- `set2_mask`: bitmask touch sensor signal group2, it’s a 10-bit value
- `en_mask`: bitmask of touch sensor work enable, it’s a 10-bit value

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_intr_enable (void)
```
To enable touch pad interrupt.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_intr_disable (void)
```
To disable touch pad interrupt.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
**Chapter 2. API**

- ESP_OK on success

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_intr_clear (void)
```
- To clear touch pad interrupt.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_set_filter_period (uint32_t new_period_ms)
```
- set touch pad filter calibration period, in ms. Need to call touch_pad_filter_start before all touch filter APIs

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE driver state error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

**Parameters**
- `new_period_ms`: filter period, in ms

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_get_filter_period (uint32_t* p_period_ms)
```
- get touch pad filter calibration period, in ms Need to call touch_pad_filter_start before all touch filter APIs

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE driver state error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

**Parameters**
- `p_period_ms`: pointer to accept period

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_filter_start (uint32_t filter_period_ms)
```
- start touch pad filter function This API will start a filter to process the noise in order to prevent false triggering when detecting slight change of capacitance. Need to call touch_pad_filter_start before all touch filter APIs

**Note** This filter uses FreeRTOS timer, which is dispatched from a task with priority 1 by default on CPU 0. So if some application task with higher priority takes a lot of CPU0 time, then the quality of data obtained from this filter will be affected. You can adjust FreeRTOS timer task priority in menuconfig.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE driver state error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No memory for driver
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE driver state error

**Parameters**
- `filter_period_ms`: filter calibration period, in ms

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_filter_stop (void)
```
- stop touch pad filter function Need to call touch_pad_filter_start before all touch filter APIs

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE driver state error

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_filter_delete (void)
```
- delete touch pad filter driver and release the memory Need to call touch_pad_filter_start before all touch filter APIs

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE driver state error

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef void (*filter_cb_t) (uint16_t *raw_value, uint16_t *filtered_value)
```
- Callback function that is called after each IIR filter calculation.

**Note** This callback is called in timer task in each filtering cycle.

**Note** This callback should not be blocked.
Parameters

- **raw_value**: The latest raw data (touch sensor counter value) that points to all channels (raw_value[0..TOUCH_PAD_MAX-1]).
- **filtered_value**: The latest IIR filtered data (calculated from raw data) that points to all channels (filtered_value[0..TOUCH_PAD_MAX-1]).

Header File

- components/driver/include/driver/touch_sensor_common.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_init (void)
Initializes touch module.
```

**Note** If default parameter don’t match the usage scenario, it can be changed after this function.
**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Touch pad init error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Touch pad is providing current to external XTAL

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_deinit (void)
Uninstall touch pad driver.
```

**Note** After this function is called, other touch functions are prohibited from being called.
**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Touch pad driver not initialized

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_io_init (touch_pad_t touch_num)
Initializes touch pad GPIO.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**

- **touch_num**: touch pad index

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_set_voltage (touch_high_volt_t refh, touch_low_volt_t refl, touch_volt_atten_t atten)
Set touch sensor high voltage threshold of charge. The touch sensor measures the channel capacitance value by charging and discharging the channel. So the high threshold should be less than the supply voltage.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**

- **refh**: the value of DREFH
- **refl**: the value of DREFL
- **atten**: the attenuation on DREFH

```c
esp_err_t touch_pad_get_voltage (touch_high_volt_t *refh, touch_low_volt_t *refl, touch_volt_atten_t *atten)
Get touch sensor reference voltage.
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **refh**: pointer to accept DREFH value
- **refl**: pointer to accept DREFL value
- **atten**: pointer to accept the attenuation on DREFH
`esp_err_t touch_pad_set_cnt_mode(touch_pad_t touch_num, touch_cnt_slope_t slope, touch_tie_opt_t opt)`

Set touch sensor charge/discharge speed for each pad. If the slope is 0, the counter would always be zero. If the slope is 1, the charging and discharging would be slow, accordingly. If the slope is set 7, which is the maximum value, the charging and discharging would be fast.

**Note** The higher the charge and discharge current, the greater the immunity of the touch channel, but it will increase the system power consumption.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**
- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `slope`: touch pad charge/discharge speed
- `opt`: the initial voltage

`esp_err_t touch_pad_get_cnt_mode(touch_pad_t touch_num, touch_cnt_slope_t *slope, touch_tie_opt_t *opt)`

Get touch sensor charge/discharge speed for each pad.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**
- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `slope`: pointer to accept touch pad charge/discharge slope
- `opt`: pointer to accept the initial voltage

`esp_err_t touch_pad_isr_deregister(void (*fn))(void *arg)`

Deregister the handler previously registered using `touch_pad_isr_handler_register`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if a handler matching both `fn` and `arg` isn’t registered

**Parameters**
- `fn`: handler function to call (as passed to `touch_pad_isr_handler_register`)
- `arg`: argument of the handler (as passed to `touch_pad_isr_handler_register`)

`esp_err_t touch_pad_get_wakeup_status(touch_pad_t *pad_num)`

Get the touch pad which caused wakeup from deep sleep.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter is NULL

**Parameters**
- `pad_num`: pointer to touch pad which caused wakeup

`esp_err_t touch_pad_set_fsm_mode(touch_fsm_mode_t mode)`

Set touch sensor FSM mode, the test action can be triggered by the timer, as well as by the software.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

**Parameters**
- `mode`: FSM mode

`esp_err_t touch_pad_get_fsm_mode(touch_fsm_mode_t *mode)`

Get touch sensor FSM mode.

**Parameters**
- `mode`: pointer to accept FSM mode
**esp_err_t touch_pad_clear_status (void)**

To clear the touch sensor channel active status.

**Note** The FSM automatically updates the touch sensor status. It is generally not necessary to call this API to clear the status.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success

**uint32_t touch_pad_get_status (void)**

Get the touch sensor channel active status mask. The bit position represents the channel number. The 0/1 status of the bit represents the trigger status.

**Return**
- The touch sensor status. e.g. Touch1 trigger status is `status_mask & (BIT1)`.

**bool touch_pad_meas_is_done (void)**

Check touch sensor measurement status.

**Return**
- True measurement is under way
- False measurement done

---

**GPIO 宏查找表** 用于使用宏定义某一触摸传感器通道的 GPIO，或定义某一 GPIO 的通道。例如):

1. `TOUCH_PAD_NUM5_GPIO_NUM` 定义了通道 5 的 GPIO (即 GPIO 12);
2. `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO4_CHANNEL` 定义了 GPIO 4 的通道 (即通道 0).

**Header File**

- `components/soc/esp32/include/soc/touch_sensor_channel.h`

**Macros**

- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO4_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM0_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO0_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM1_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO2_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM2_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO15_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM3_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO13_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM4_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO12_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM5_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO14_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM6_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO27_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM7_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO33_CHANNEL`
- `TOUCH_PAD_NUM8_GPIO_NUM`
- `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO32_CHANNEL`
Chapter 2. API

TOUCH_PAD_NUM9_GPIO_NUM

Header File

- components/hal/include/hal/touch_sensor_types.h

Macros

- TOUCH_PAD_BIT_MASK_ALL
- TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_DEFAULT
- TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_DEFAULT
- TOUCH_PAD_BIT_MASK_MAX
- TOUCH_PAD_HIGH_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD
- TOUCH_PAD_LOW_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD
- TOUCH_PAD_ATTEN_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD
- TOUCH_PAD_IDLE_CH_CONNECT_DEFAULT
- TOUCH_PAD_THRESHOLD_MAX
  If set touch threshold max value, The touch sensor can’t be in touched status
- TOUCH_PAD_SLEEP_CYCLE_DEFAULT
  The timer frequency is RTC_SLOW_CLK (can be 150k or 32k depending on the options), max value is 0xffff
- TOUCH_PAD_MEASURE_CYCLE_DEFAULT
  The timer frequency is 8Mhz, the max value is 0x7fff
- TOUCH_FSM_MODE_DEFAULT
  The touch FSM my be started by the software or timer
- TOUCH_TRIGGER_MODE_DEFAULT
  Interrupts can be triggered if sensor value gets below or above threshold
- TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_DEFAULT
  The wakeup trigger source can be SET1 or both SET1 and SET2

Enumerations

enum touch_pad_t
  Touch pad channel

Values:

- TOUCH_PAD_NUM0 = 0
  Touch pad channel 0 is GPIO4(ESP32)
- TOUCH_PAD_NUM1
  Touch pad channel 1 is GPIO0(ESP32) / GPIO1(ESP32-S2)
- TOUCH_PAD_NUM2
  Touch pad channel 2 is GPIO2(ESP32) / GPIO2(ESP32-S2)
- TOUCH_PAD_NUM3
  Touch pad channel 3 is GPIO15(ESP32) / GPIO3(ESP32-S2)
- TOUCH_PAD_NUM4
  Touch pad channel 4 is GPIO13(ESP32) / GPIO4(ESP32-S2)
- TOUCH_PAD_NUM5
  Touch pad channel 5 is GPIO12(ESP32) / GPIO5(ESP32-S2)
- TOUCH_PAD_NUM6
  Touch pad channel 6 is GPIO14(ESP32) / GPIO6(ESP32-S2)
Chapter 2. API

TOUCH_PAD_NUM7
Touch pad channel 7 is GPIO27(ESP32) / GPIO7(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM8
Touch pad channel 8 is GPIO33(ESP32) / GPIO8(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM9
Touch pad channel 9 is GPIO32(ESP32) / GPIO9(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_MAX

enum touch_high_volt_t
Touch sensor high reference voltage

Values:

TOUCH_HVOLT_KEEP = -1
Touch sensor high reference voltage, no change

TOUCH_HVOLT_2V4 = 0
Touch sensor high reference voltage, 2.4V

TOUCH_HVOLT_2V5
Touch sensor high reference voltage, 2.5V

TOUCH_HVOLT_2V6
Touch sensor high reference voltage, 2.6V

TOUCH_HVOLT_2V7
Touch sensor high reference voltage, 2.7V

TOUCH_HVOLT_MAX

enum touch_low_volt_t
Touch sensor low reference voltage

Values:

TOUCH_LVOLT_KEEP = -1
Touch sensor low reference voltage, no change

TOUCH_LVOLT_0V5 = 0
Touch sensor low reference voltage, 0.5V

TOUCH_LVOLT_0V6
Touch sensor low reference voltage, 0.6V

TOUCH_LVOLT_0V7
Touch sensor low reference voltage, 0.7V

TOUCH_LVOLT_0V8
Touch sensor low reference voltage, 0.8V

TOUCH_LVOLT_MAX

enum touch_volt_atten_t
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation

Values:

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_KEEP = -1
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, no change

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_1V5 = 0
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, 1.5V attenuation

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_1V
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, 1.0V attenuation

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_0V5
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, 0.5V attenuation
**TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_0V**

Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, 0V attenuation

**TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_MAX**

**enum touch_cnt_slope_t**

Touch sensor charge/discharge speed

*Values:*

- **TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_0 = 0**
  Touch sensor charge / discharge speed, always zero

- **TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_1 = 1**
  Touch sensor charge / discharge speed, slowest

- **TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_2 = 2**
  Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

- **TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_3 = 3**
  Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

- **TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_4 = 4**
  Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

- **TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_5 = 5**
  Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

- **TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_6 = 6**
  Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

- **TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_7 = 7**
  Touch sensor charge / discharge speed, fast

**TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_MAX**

**enum touch_tie_opt_t**

Touch sensor initial charge level

*Values:*

- **TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_LOW = 0**
  Initial level of charging voltage, low level

- **TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_HIGH = 1**
  Initial level of charging voltage, high level

**TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_MAX**

**enum touch_fsm_mode_t**

Touch sensor FSM mode

*Values:*

- **TOUCH_fsm_mode_Timer = 0**
  To start touch FSM by timer

- **TOUCH_fsm_mode_SW**
  To start touch FSM by software trigger

**TOUCH_fsm_mode_MAX**

**enum touch_trigger_mode_t**

*Values:*

- **TOUCH_TRIGGER_BELOW = 0**
  Touch interrupt will happen if counter value is less than threshold.

- **TOUCH_TRIGGER_ABOVE = 1**
  Touch interrupt will happen if counter value is larger than threshold.
**Chapter 2. API**

**TOUCH_TRIGGER_MAX**

```c
enum touch_trigger_src_t
{
    TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_BOTH = 0,
    wakeup interrupt is generated if both SET1 and SET2 are “touched”
    TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_SET1 = 1,
    wakeup interrupt is generated if SET1 is “touched”
    TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_MAX
}
```

### 2.3.21 Two-Wire Automotive Interface (TWAI)

**Overview**

The Two-Wire Automotive Interface (TWAI) is a real-time serial communication protocol suited for automotive and industrial applications. It is compatible with ISO11898-1 Classical frames, thus can support Standard Frame Format (11-bit ID) and Extended Frame Format (29-bit ID). The ESP32’s peripherals contains a TWAI controller that can be configured to communicate on a TWAI bus via an external transceiver.

**Warning:** The TWAI controller is not compatible with ISO11898-1 FD Format frames, and will interpret such frames as errors.

This programming guide is split into the following sections:

1. **TWAI Protocol Summary**
2. **Signals Lines and Transceiver**
3. **Driver Configuration**
4. **Driver Operation**
5. **Examples**

**TWAI Protocol Summary**

The TWAI is a multi-master, multi-cast, asynchronous, serial communication protocol. TWAI also supports error detection and signalling, and inbuilt message prioritization.

**Multi-master:** Any node on the bus can initiate the transfer of a message.

**Multi-cast:** When a node transmits a message, all nodes on the bus will receive the message (i.e., broadcast) thus ensuring data consistency across all nodes. However, some nodes can selectively choose which messages to accept via the use of acceptance filtering (multi-cast).

**Asynchronous:** The bus does not contain a clock signal. All nodes on the bus operate at the same bit rate and synchronize using the edges of the bits transmitted on the bus.

**Error Detection and Signalling:** Every node will constantly monitor the bus. When any node detects an error, it will signal the detection by transmitting an error frame. Other nodes will receive the error frame and transmit their own error frames in response. This will result in an error detection being propagated to all nodes on the bus.

**Message Priorities:** Messages contain an ID field. If two or more nodes attempt to transmit simultaneously, the node transmitting the message with the lower ID value will win arbitration of the bus. All other nodes will become receivers ensuring that there is at most one transmitter at any time.

**TWAI Messages** TWAI Messages are split into Data Frames and Remote Frames. Data Frames are used to deliver a data payload to other nodes, whereas a Remote Frame is used to request a Data Frame from other nodes (other nodes can optionally respond with a Data Frame). Data and Remote Frames have two frame formats known as **Extended**
Frame and Standard Frame which contain a 29-bit ID and an 11-bit ID respectively. A TWAI message consists of the following fields:

- 29-bit or 11-bit ID: Determines the priority of the message (lower value has higher priority).
- Data Length Code (DLC) between 0 to 8: Indicates the size (in bytes) of the data payload for a Data Frame, or the amount of data to request for a Remote Frame.
- Up to 8 bytes of data for a Data Frame (should match DLC).

**Error States and Counters** The TWAI protocol implements a feature known as “fault confinement” where a persistently erroneous node will eventually eliminate itself from the bus. This is implemented by requiring every node to maintain two internal error counters known as the Transmit Error Counter (TEC) and the Receive Error Counter (REC). The two error counters are incremented and decremented according to a set of rules (where the counters increase on an error, and decrease on a successful message transmission/reception). The values of the counters are used to determine a node’s error state, namely Error Active, Error Passive, and Bus-Off.

**Error Active**: A node is Error Active when both TEC and REC are less than 128 and indicates that the node is operating normally. Error Active nodes are allowed to participate in bus communications, and will actively signal the detection of any errors by automatically transmitting an Active Error Flag over the bus.

**Error Passive**: A node is Error Passive when either the TEC or REC becomes greater than or equal to 128. Error Passive nodes are still able to take part in bus communications, but will instead transmit a Passive Error Flag upon detection of an error.

**Bus-Off**: A node becomes Bus-Off when the TEC becomes greater than or equal to 256. A Bus-Off node is unable to influence the bus in any manner (essentially disconnected from the bus) thus eliminating itself from the bus. A node will remain in the Bus-Off state until it undergoes bus-off recovery.

**Signals Lines and Transceiver**

The TWAI controller does not contain an integrated transceiver. Therefore, to connect the TWAI controller to a TWAI bus, an external transceiver is required. The type of external transceiver used should depend on the application’s physical layer specification (e.g. using SN65HVD23x transceivers for ISO 11898-2 compatibility).

The TWAI controller’s interface consists of 4 signal lines known as TX, RX, BUS-OFF, and CLKOUT. These four signal lines can be routed through the GPIO Matrix to the ESP32’s GPIO pads.

![Diagram of TWAI Controller Signals Lines](image)

图 19: Signal lines of the TWAI controller
**TX and RX:** The TX and RX signal lines are required to interface with an external transceiver. Both signal lines represent/interpret a dominant bit as a low logic level (0V), and a recessive bit as a high logic level (3.3V).

**BUS-OFF:** The BUS-OFF signal line is optional and is set to a low logic level (0V) whenever the TWAI controller reaches a bus-off state. The BUS-OFF signal line is set to a high logic level (3.3V) otherwise.

**CLKOUT:** The CLKOUT signal line is optional and outputs a prescaled version of the controller’s source clock (APB Clock).

**Driver Configuration**

This section covers how to configure the TWAI driver.

**Operating Modes**  The TWAI driver supports the following modes of operations:

**Normal Mode:** The normal operating mode allows the TWAI controller to take part in bus activities such as transmitting and receiving messages/error frames. Acknowledgement from another node is required when transmitting a message.

**No Ack Mode:** The No Acknowledgement mode is similar to normal mode, however acknowledgements are not required for a message transmission to be considered successful. This mode is useful when self testing the TWAI controller (loopback of transmissions).

**Listen Only Mode:** This mode will prevent the TWAI controller from influencing the bus. Therefore, transmission of messages/acknowledgement/error frames will be disabled. However the TWAI controller will still be able to receive messages but will not acknowledge the message. This mode is suited for bus monitor applications.

**Alerts**  The TWAI driver contains an alert feature that is used to notify the application layer of certain TWAI controller or TWAI bus events. Alerts are selectively enabled when the TWAI driver is installed, but can be reconfigured during runtime by calling `twai_reconfigure_alerts()`. The application can then wait for any enabled alerts to occur by calling `twai_read_alerts()`. The TWAI driver supports the following alerts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Flag</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_TX_IDLE</td>
<td>No more messages queued for transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_TX_SUCCESS</td>
<td>The previous transmission was successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_RX_DATA</td>
<td>A frame has been received and added to the RX queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_BELOW_ERR_WARN</td>
<td>Both error counters have dropped below error warning limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_ERR_ACTIVE</td>
<td>TWAI controller has become error active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_RECOVERY_IN_PROGRESS</td>
<td>TWAI controller is undergoing bus recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_BUS_RECOVERED</td>
<td>TWAI controller has successfully completed bus recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_ARB_LOST</td>
<td>The previous transmission lost arbitration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_ABOVE_ERR_WARN</td>
<td>One of the error counters have exceeded the error warning limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_BUS_ERROR</td>
<td>A (Bit, Stuff, CRC, Form, ACK) error has occurred on the bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_TX_FAILED</td>
<td>The previous transmission has failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_RX_QUEUE_FULL</td>
<td>The RX queue is full causing a received frame to be lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_ERR_PASS</td>
<td>TWAI controller has become error passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_ALERT_BUS_OFF</td>
<td>Bus-off condition occurred. TWAI controller can no longer influence bus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注解:** The TWAI controller’s error warning limit is used to preemptively warn the application of bus errors.
before the error passive state is reached. By default, the TWAI driver sets the error warning limit to 96. The TWAI_ALERT_ABOVE_ERR_WARN is raised when the TEC or REC becomes larger then or equal to the error warning limit. The TWAI_ALERT_BELOW_ERR_WARN is raised when both TEC and REC return back to values below 96.

**Bit Timing**  The operating bit rate of the TWAI driver is configured using the `twai_timing_config_t` structure. The period of each bit is made up of multiple **time quanta**, and the period of a **time quantum** is determined by a prescaled version of the TWAI controller’s source clock. A single bit contains the following segments in the following order:

1. **The Synchronization Segment** consists of a single time quantum
2. **Timing Segment 1** consists of 1 to 16 time quanta before sample point
3. **Timing Segment 2** consists of 1 to 8 time quanta after sample point

The **Baudrate Prescaler** is used to determine the period of each time quantum by dividing the TWAI controller’s source clock (80 MHz APB clock). On the ESP32, the **brp** can be any even number from 2 to 128. If the ESP32 is a revision 2 or later chip, the **brp** will also support any multiple of 4 from 132 to 256, and can be enabled by setting the `CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN` to revision 2 or higher.

![Bit Timing Configuration](image)

**图 20:** Bit timing configuration for 500kbit/s given BRP = 8

The sample point of a bit is located on the intersection of Timing Segment 1 and 2. Enabling **Triple Sampling** will cause 3 time quanta to be sampled per bit instead of 1 (extra samples are located at the tail end of Timing Segment 1).

The **Synchronization Jump Width** is used to determine the maximum number of time quanta a single bit time can be lengthened/shortened for synchronization purposes. **sjw** can range from 1 to 4.

**注解:** Multiple combinations of **brp**, **tseg_1**, **tseg_2**, and **sjw** can achieve the same bit rate. Users should tune these values to the physical characteristics of their bus by taking into account factors such as **propagation delay**, **node information processing time**, and **phase errors**.

Bit timing **macro initializers** are also available for commonly used bit rates. The following macro initializers are provided by the TWAI driver.

- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_1MBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_800KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_500KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_250KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_125KBITS()`
Revision 2 or later of the ESP32 also supports the following bit rates:

- TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_100KBITS()
- TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_50KBITS()
- TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_25KBITS()

Acceptance Filter  The TWAI controller contains a hardware acceptance filter which can be used to filter messages of a particular ID. A node that filters out a message **will not receive the message, but will still acknowledge it.** Acceptance filters can make a node more efficient by filtering out messages sent over the bus that are irrelevant to the node. The acceptance filter is configured using two 32-bit values within `twai_filter_config_t` known as the acceptance code and the acceptance mask.

The acceptance code specifies the bit sequence which a message’s ID, RTR, and data bytes must match in order for the message to be received by the TWAI controller. The acceptance mask is a bit sequence specifying which bits of the acceptance code can be ignored. This allows for a messages of different IDs to be accepted by a single acceptance code.

The acceptance filter can be used under **Single or Dual Filter Mode.** Single Filter Mode will use the acceptance code and mask to define a single filter. This allows for the first two data bytes of a standard frame to be filtered, or the entirety of an extended frame’s 29-bit ID. The following diagram illustrates how the 32-bit acceptance code and mask will be interpreted under Single Filter Mode (Note: The yellow and blue fields represent standard and extended frame formats respectively).

![Bit layout of single filter mode (Right side MSBit)](image1)

**Dual Filter Mode** will use the acceptance code and mask to define two separate filters allowing for increased flexibility of ID’s to accept, but does not allow for all 29-bits of an extended ID to be filtered. The following diagram illustrates how the 32-bit acceptance code and mask will be interpreted under **Dual Filter Mode** (Note: The yellow and blue fields represent standard and extended frame formats respectively).

![Bit layout of dual filter mode (Right side MSBit)](image2)

Disabling TX Queue  The TX queue can be disabled during configuration by setting the `tx_queue_len` member of `twai_general_config_t` to 0. This will allow applications that do not require message transmission to save a small amount of memory when using the TWAI driver.

Placing ISR into IRAM  The TWAI driver’s ISR (Interrupt Service Routine) can be placed into IRAM so that the ISR can still run whilst the cache is disabled. Placing the ISR into IRAM may be necessary to maintain the TWAI
driver’s functionality during lengthy cache disabling operations (such as SPI Flash writes, OTA updates etc). Whilst the cache is disabled, the ISR will continue to:

- Read received messages from the RX buffer and place them into the driver’s RX queue.
- Load messages pending transmission from the driver’s TX queue and write them into the TX buffer.

To place the TWAI driver’s ISR, users must do the following:

- Enable the CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM option using idf.py menuconfig.
- When calling twai_driver_install(), the intr_flags member of twai_general_config_t should set the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM set.

**注解:** When the CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM option is enabled, the TWAI driver will no longer log any alerts (i.e., the TWAI_ALERT_AND_LOG flag will not have any effect).

**Driver Operation**

The TWAI driver is designed with distinct states and strict rules regarding the functions or conditions that trigger a state transition. The following diagram illustrates the various states and their transitions.

![State transition diagram of the TWAI driver](diagram)

**Label** | **Transition** | **Action/Condition**
---|---|---
A | Uninstalled -> Stopped | twai_driver_install()
B | Stopped -> Uninstalled | twai_driver_uninstall()
C | Stopped -> Running | twai_start()
D | Running -> Stopped | twai_stop()
E | Running -> Bus-Off | Transmit Error Counter >= 256
F | Bus-Off -> Uninstalled | twai_driver_uninstall()
G | Bus-Off -> Recovering | twai_initiate_recovery()
H | Recovering -> Stopped | 128 occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits.

**Driver States**

**Uninstalled:** In the uninstalled state, no memory is allocated for the driver and the TWAI controller is powered OFF.

**Stopped:** In this state, the TWAI controller is powered ON and the TWAI driver has been installed. However the TWAI controller will be unable to take part in any bus activities such as transmitting, receiving, or acknowledging messages.

**Running:** In the running state, the TWAI controller is able to take part in bus activities. Therefore messages can be transmitted/received/acknowledged. Furthermore the TWAI controller will be able to transmit error frames upon detection of errors on the bus.
Bus-Off: The bus-off state is automatically entered when the TWAI controller’s Transmit Error Counter becomes greater than or equal to 256. The bus-off state indicates the occurrence of severe errors on the bus or in the TWAI controller. Whilst in the bus-off state, the TWAI controller will be unable to take part in any bus activities. To exit the bus-off state, the TWAI controller must undergo the bus recovery process.

Recovering: The recovering state is entered when the TWAI controller undergoes bus recovery. The TWAI controller/TWAI driver will remain in the recovering state until the 128 occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits is observed on the bus.

Message Fields and Flags: The TWAI driver distinguishes different types of messages by using the various bit field members of the twai_message_t structure. These bit field members determine whether a message is in standard or extended format, a remote frame, and the type of transmission to use when transmitting such a message.

These bit field members can also be toggled using the the flags member of twai_message_t and the following message flags:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message Flag</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_MSG_FLAG_EXTD</td>
<td>Message is in Extended Frame Format (29bit ID)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_MSG_FLAG_RTR</td>
<td>Message is a Remote Frame (Remote Transmission Request)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_MSG_FLAG_SS</td>
<td>Transmit message using Single Shot Transmission (Message will not be retransmitted upon error or loss of arbitration). Unused for received message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_MSG_FLAG_SELF</td>
<td>Transmit message using Self Reception Request (Transmitted message will also be received by the same node). Unused for received message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_MSG_FLAG_DLC_NON_COMP</td>
<td>Message’s Data length code is larger than 8. This will break compliance with TWAI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWAI_MSG_FLAG_NONE</td>
<td>Clears all bit fields. Equivalent to a Standard Frame Format (11bit ID) Data Frame.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

Configuration & Installation: The following code snippet demonstrates how to configure, install, and start the TWAI driver via the use of the various configuration structures, macro initializers, the twai_driver_install() function, and the twai_start() function.

```c
#include "driver/gpio.h"
#include "driver/twai.h"

void app_main()
{
    //Initialize configuration structures using macro initializers
    twai_general_config_t g_config = TWAI_GENERAL_CONFIG_DEFAULT(GPIO_NUM_21, GPIO_NUM_22, TWAI_MODE_NORMAL);
    twai_timing_config_t t_config = TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_500KBITS();
    twai_filter_config_t f_config = TWAI_FILTER_CONFIG_ACCEPT_ALL();

    //Install TWAI driver
    if (twai_driver_install(&g_config, &t_config, &f_config) == ESP_OK) {
        printf("Driver installed\n");
    } else {
        printf("Failed to install driver\n");
        return;
    }

    //Start TWAI driver
    if (twai_start() == ESP_OK) {
        printf("Driver started\n");
    } else {
        printf("Failed to start driver\n");
    }
}
```
The usage of macro initializers is not mandatory and each of the configuration structures can be manually.

**Message Transmission**  The following code snippet demonstrates how to transmit a message via the usage of the `twai_message_t` type and `twai_transmit()` function.

```c
#include "driver/twai.h"
...
//Configure message to transmit
twai_message_t message;
message.identifier = 0xAAAA;
message.extd = 1;
message.data_length_code = 4;
for (int i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
    message.data[i] = 0;
}
//Queue message for transmission
if (twai_transmit(&message, pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000)) == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Message queued for transmission\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to queue message for transmission\n");
}
```

**Message Reception**  The following code snippet demonstrates how to receive a message via the usage of the `twai_message_t` type and `twai_receive()` function.

```c
#include "driver/twai.h"
...
//Wait for message to be received
twai_message_t message;
if (twai_receive(&message, pdMS_TO_TICKS(10000)) == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Message received\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to receive message\n");
    return;
}
//Process received message
if (message.extd) {
    printf("Message is in Extended Format\n");
} else {
    printf("Message is in Standard Format\n");
}
printf("ID is %d\n", message.identifier);
if (!message.rtr) {
    for (int i = 0; i < message.data_length_code; i++) {
        printf("Data byte %d = %d\n", i, message.data[i]);
    }
}
```
Reconfiguring and Reading Alerts   The following code snippet demonstrates how to reconfigure and read TWAI driver alerts via the use of the `twai_reconfigure_alerts()` and `twai_read_alerts()` functions.

```c
#include "driver/twai.h"
...

//Reconfigure alerts to detect Error Passive and Bus-Off error states
uint32_t alerts_to_enable = TWAI_ALERT_ERR_PASS | TWAI_ALERT_BUS_OFF;
if (twai_reconfigure_alerts(alerts_to_enable, NULL) == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Alerts reconfigured\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to reconfigure alerts\n");
}

//Block indefinitely until an alert occurs
uint32_t alerts_triggered;
twai_read_alerts(&alerts_triggered, portMAX_DELAY);
```

Stop and Uninstall  The following code demonstrates how to stop and uninstall the TWAI driver via the use of the `twai_stop()` and `twai_driver_uninstall()` functions.

```c
#include "driver/twai.h"
...

//Stop the TWAI driver
if (twai_stop() == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Driver stopped\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to stop driver\n");
    return;
}

//Uninstall the TWAI driver
if (twai_driver_uninstall() == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Driver uninstalled\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to uninstall driver\n");
    return;
}
```

Multiple ID Filter Configuration  The acceptance mask in `twai_filter_config_t` can be configured such that two or more IDs will be accepted for a single filter. For a particular filter to accept multiple IDs, the conflicting bit positions amongst the IDs must be set in the acceptance mask. The acceptance code can be set to any one of the IDs.

The following example shows how the calculate the acceptance mask given multiple IDs:

```
ID1 = 11'b101 1010 0000
ID2 = 11'b101 1010 0001
ID3 = 11'b101 1010 0100
ID4 = 11'b101 1010 1000
//Acceptance Mask
MASK = 11'b000 0000 1101
```
**Application Examples**

**Network Example:** The TWAI Network example demonstrates communication between two ESP32s using the TWAI driver API. One TWAI node acts as a network master that initiates and ceases the transfer of a data from another node acting as a network slave. The example can be found via peripherals/twai/twai_network.

**Alert and Recovery Example:** This example demonstrates how to use the TWAI driver’s alert and bus-off recovery API. The example purposely introduces errors on the bus to put the TWAI controller into the Bus-Off state. An alert is used to detect the Bus-Off state and trigger the bus recovery process. The example can be found via peripherals/twai/twai_alert_and_recovery.

**Self Test Example:** This example uses the No Acknowledge Mode and Self Reception Request to cause the TWAI controller to send and simultaneously receive a series of messages. This example can be used to verify if the connections between the TWAI controller and the external transceiver are working correctly. The example can be found via peripherals/twai/twai_self_test.

---

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/hal/include/hal/twai_types.h

**Structures**

```c
struct twai_message_t
    Structure to store a TWAI message.

    **Note** The flags member is deprecated
```

**Public Members**

```c
uint32_t extd : 1
    Extended Frame Format (29bit ID)

uint32_t rtr : 1
    Message is a Remote Frame

uint32_t ss : 1
    Transmit as a Single Shot Transmission. Unused for received.

uint32_t self : 1
    Transmit as a Self Reception Request. Unused for received.

uint32_t dlc_non_comp : 1
    Message’s Data length code is larger than 8. This will break compliance with ISO 11898-1

uint32_t reserved : 27
    Reserved bits

uint32_t flags
    Deprecated: Alternate way to set bits using message flags

uint32_t identifier
    11 or 29 bit identifier

uint8_t data_length_code
    Data length code

uint8_t data[TWAI_FRAME_MAX_DLC]
    Data bytes (not relevant in RTR frame)
```

**Structure**

```c
struct twai_timing_config_t
    Structure for bit timing configuration of the TWAI driver.

    **Note** Macro initializers are available for this structure
```
Public Members

`uint32_t brp`
Baudrate prescaler (i.e., APB clock divider). Any even number from 2 to 128 for ESP32, 2 to 32768 for ESP32S2. For ESP32 Rev 2 or later, multiples of 4 from 132 to 256 are also supported

`uint8_t tseg_1`
Timing segment 1 (Number of time quanta, between 1 to 16)

`uint8_t tseg_2`
Timing segment 2 (Number of time quanta, 1 to 8)

`uint8_t sjw`
Synchronization Jump Width (Max time quanta jump for synchronize from 1 to 4)

`bool triple_sampling`
Enables triple sampling when the TWAI controller samples a bit

```c
struct twai_filter_config_t
```
Structure for acceptance filter configuration of the TWAI driver (see documentation)

**Note** Macro initializers are available for this structure

Public Members

`uint32_t acceptance_code`
32-bit acceptance code

`uint32_t acceptance_mask`
32-bit acceptance mask

`bool single_filter`
Use Single Filter Mode (see documentation)

Macros

`TWAI_EXTD_ID_MASK`
TWAI Constants.

Bit mask for 29 bit Extended Frame Format ID

`TWAI_STD_ID_MASK`
Bit mask for 11 bit Standard Frame Format ID

`TWAI_FRAME_MAX_DLC`
Max data bytes allowed in TWAI

`TWAI_FRAME_EXTD_ID_LEN_BYTES`
EFF ID requires 4 bytes (29bit)

`TWAI_FRAME_STD_ID_LEN_BYTES`
SFF ID requires 2 bytes (11bit)

`TWAI_ERR_PASS_THRESH`
Error counter threshold for error passive

Enumerations

```c
enum twai_mode_t
```
TWAI Controller operating modes.

**Values:**

`TWAI_MODE_NORMAL`
Normal operating mode where TWAI controller can send/receive/acknowledge messages
TWAI_MODE_NO_ACK
Transmission does not require acknowledgment. Use this mode for self testing

TWAI_MODE_LISTEN_ONLY
The TWAI controller will not influence the bus (No transmissions or acknowledgments) but can receive messages

Header File
• components/driver/include/driver/twai.h

Functions

esp_err_t twai_driver_install(const twai_general_config_t *g_config, const twai_timing_config_t *t_config, const twai_filter_config_t *f_config)
Install TWAI driver.
This function installs the TWAI driver using three configuration structures. The required memory is allocated and the TWAI driver is placed in the stopped state after running this function.

Note Macro initializers are available for the configuration structures (see documentation)
Note To reinstall the TWAI driver, call twai_driver_uninstall() first

Return
• ESP_OK: Successfully installed TWAI driver
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Driver is already installed

Parameters
• [in] g_config: General configuration structure
• [in] t_config: Timing configuration structure
• [in] f_config: Filter configuration structure

esp_err_t twai_driver_uninstall(void)
Uninstall the TWAI driver.
This function uninstalls the TWAI driver, freeing the memory utilized by the driver. This function can only be called when the driver is in the stopped state or the bus-off state.

Warning The application must ensure that no tasks are blocked on TX/RX queues or alerts when this function is called.

Return
• ESP_OK: Successfully uninstalled TWAI driver
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Driver is not in stopped/bus-off state, or is not installed

esp_err_t twai_start(void)
Start the TWAI driver.
This function starts the TWAI driver, putting the TWAI driver into the running state. This allows the TWAI driver to participate in TWAI bus activities such as transmitting/receiving messages. The TX and RX queue are reset in this function, clearing any messages that are unread or pending transmission. This function can only be called when the TWAI driver is in the stopped state.

Return
• ESP_OK: TWAI driver is now running
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Driver is not in stopped state, or is not installed

esp_err_t twai_stop(void)
Stop the TWAI driver.
This function stops the TWAI driver, preventing any further message from being transmitted or received until twai_start() is called. Any messages in the TX queue are cleared. Any messages in the RX queue should be read by the application after this function is called. This function can only be called when the TWAI driver is in the running state.
Warning  A message currently being transmitted/received on the TWAI bus will be ceased immediately. This may lead to other TWAI nodes interpreting the unfinished message as an error.

Return  
- ESP_OK: TWAI driver is now Stopped
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Driver is not in running state, or is not installed

```c
twai_transmit(const twai_message_t *message, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```
Transmit a TWAI message.

This function queues a TWAI message for transmission. Transmission will start immediately if no other messages are queued for transmission. If the TX queue is full, this function will block until more space becomes available or until it times out. If the TX queue is disabled (TX queue length = 0 in configuration), this function will return immediately if another message is undergoing transmission. This function can only be called when the TWAI driver is in the running state and cannot be called under Listen Only Mode.

Note  This function does not guarantee that the transmission is successful. The TX_SUCCESS/TX_FAILED alert can be enabled to alert the application upon the success/failure of a transmission.

Note  The TX_IDLE alert can be used to alert the application when no other messages are awaiting transmission.

Return  
- ESP_OK: Transmission successfully queued/initiated
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timed out waiting for space on TX queue
- ESP_FAIL: TX queue is disabled and another message is currently transmitting
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not in running state, or is not installed
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Listen Only Mode does not support transmissions

Parameters  
- [in] message: Message to transmit
- [in] ticks_to_wait: Number of FreeRTOS ticks to block on the TX queue

```c
twai_receive(twai_message_t *message, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```
Receive a TWAI message.

This function receives a message from the RX queue. The flags field of the message structure will indicate the type of message received. This function will block if there are no messages in the RX queue

Warning  The flags field of the received message should be checked to determine if the received message contains any data bytes.

Return  
- ESP_OK: Message successfully received from RX queue
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timed out waiting for message
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

Parameters  
- [out] message: Received message
- [in] ticks_to_wait: Number of FreeRTOS ticks to block on RX queue

```c
twai_read_alerts(uint32_t *alerts, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```
Read TWAI driver alerts.

This function will read the alerts raised by the TWAI driver. If no alert has been issued when this function is called, this function will block until an alert occurs or until it timeouts.

Note  Multiple alerts can be raised simultaneously. The application should check for all alerts that have been enabled.

Return  
- ESP_OK: Alerts read
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timed out waiting for alerts
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

Parameters  
- [out] alerts: Bit field of raised alerts (see documentation for alert flags)
- [in] ticks_to_wait: Number of FreeRTOS ticks to block for alert
### Chapter 2. API 参考

**Esp_err_t twai_reconfigure_alerts (uint32_t alerts_enabled, uint32_t* current_alerts)**

Reconfigure which alerts are enabled.

This function reconfigures which alerts are enabled. If there are alerts which have not been read whilst reconfiguring, this function can read those alerts.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Alerts reconfigured
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

**Parameters**

- [in] alerts_enabled: Bit field of alerts to enable (see documentation for alert flags)
- [out] current_alerts: Bit field of currently raised alerts. Set to NULL if unused

**Esp_err_t twai_initiate_recovery (void)**

Start the bus recovery process.

This function initiates the bus recovery process when the TWAI driver is in the bus-off state. Once initiated, the TWAI driver will enter the recovering state and wait for 128 occurrences of the bus-free signal on the TWAI bus before returning to the stopped state. This function will reset the TX queue, clearing any messages pending transmission.

**Note** The BUS_RECOVERED alert can be enabled to alert the application when the bus recovery process completes.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Bus recovery started
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not in the bus-off state, or is not installed

**Esp_err_t twai_get_status_info (twai_status_info_t* status_info)**

Get current status information of the TWAI driver.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Status information retrieved
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

**Parameters**

- [out] status_info: Status information

**Esp_err_t twai_clear_transmit_queue (void)**

Clear the transmit queue.

This function will clear the transmit queue of all messages.

**Note** The transmit queue is automatically cleared when twai_stop() or twai_initiate_recovery() is called.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Transmit queue cleared
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed or TX queue is disabled

**Esp_err_t twai_clear_receive_queue (void)**

Clear the receive queue.

This function will clear the receive queue of all messages.

**Note** The receive queue is automatically cleared when twai_start() is called.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Transmit queue cleared
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

**Structures**

**struct twai_general_config_t**

Structure for general configuration of the TWAI driver.

**Note** Macro initializers are available for this structure
Chapter 2. API

**Public Members**

`twai_mode_t mode`
Mode of TWAI controller

`gpio_num_t tx_io`
Transmit GPIO number

`gpio_num_t rx_io`
Receive GPIO number

`gpio_num_t clkout_io`
CLKOUT GPIO number (optional, set to -1 if unused)

`gpio_num_t bus_off_io`
Bus off indicator GPIO number (optional, set to -1 if unused)

`uint32_t tx_queue_len`
Number of messages TX queue can hold (set to 0 to disable TX Queue)

`uint32_t rx_queue_len`
Number of messages RX queue can hold

`uint32_t alerts_enabled`
Bit field of alerts to enable (see documentation)

`uint32_t clkout_divider`
CLKOUT divider. Can be 1 or any even number from 2 to 14 (optional, set to 0 if unused)

`int intr_flags`
Interrupt flags to set the priority of the driver’s ISR. Note that to use the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM, the CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM option should be enabled first.

**struct twai_status_info_t**
Structure to store status information of TWAI driver.

**Public Members**

`twai_state_t state`
Current state of TWAI controller (Stopped/Running/Bus-Off/Recovery)

`uint32_t msgs_to_tx`
Number of messages queued for transmission or awaiting transmission completion

`uint32_t msgs_to_rx`
Number of messages in RX queue waiting to be read

`uint32_t tx_error_counter`
Current value of Transmit Error Counter

`uint32_t rx_error_counter`
Current value of Receive Error Counter

`uint32_t tx_failed_count`
Number of messages that failed transmissions

`uint32_t rx_missed_count`
Number of messages that were lost due to a full RX queue (or errata workaround if enabled)

`uint32_t rx_overrun_count`
Number of messages that were lost due to a RX FIFO overrun

`uint32_t arb_lost_count`
Number of instances arbitration was lost

`uint32_t bus_error_count`
Number of instances a bus error has occurred
Macros

\texttt{TWAI\_IO\_UNUSED}
Marks GPIO as unused in TWAI configuration

Enumerations

\textbf{enum twai\_state\_t}

\begin{verbatim}
    TWAI\_STATE\_STOPPED
    Stopped state. The TWAI controller will not participate in any TWAI bus activities

    TWAI\_STATE\_RUNNING
    Running state. The TWAI controller can transmit and receive messages

    TWAI\_STATE\_BUS\_OFF
    Bus-off state. The TWAI controller cannot participate in bus activities until it has recovered

    TWAI\_STATE\_RECOVERING
    Recovering state. The TWAI controller is undergoing bus recovery
\end{verbatim}

2.3.22 Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART)

Overview

A Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) is a hardware feature that handles communication (i.e.,
timing requirements and data framing) using widely-adopted asynchronous serial communication interfaces, such as
RS232, RS422, RS485. A UART provides a widely adopted and cheap method to realize full-duplex or half-duplex
data exchange among different devices.

The ESP32 chip has three UART controllers (UART0, UART1, and UART2), each featuring an identical set of
registers to simplify programming and for more flexibility.

Each UART controller is independently configurable with parameters such as baud rate, data bit length, bit ordering,
number of stop bits, parity bit etc. All the controllers are compatible with UART-enabled devices from various
manufacturers and can also support Infrared Data Association protocols (IrDA).

Functional Overview

The following overview describes how to establish communication between an ESP32 and other UART devices using
the functions and data types of the UART driver. The overview reflects a typical programming workflow and is broken
down into the sections provided below:

1. Setting Communication Parameters - Setting baud rate, data bits, stop bits, etc.
2. Setting Communication Pins - Assigning pins for connection to a device.
3. Driver Installation - Allocating ESP32’s resources for the UART driver.
4. Running UART Communication - Sending / receiving data
5. Using Interrupts - Triggering interrupts on specific communication events
6. Deleting a Driver - Freeing allocated resources if a UART communication is no longer required

Steps 1 to 3 comprise the configuration stage. Step 4 is where the UART starts operating. Steps 5 and 6 are optional.
The UART driver’s functions identify each of the UART controllers using \texttt{uart\_port\_t}. This identification is
needed for all the following function calls.

\textbf{Setting Communication Parameters}

UART communication parameters can be configured all in a single step or individually in multiple steps.
**Chapter 2. API 参考**

**Single Step** Call the function `uart_param_config()` and pass to it a `uart_config_t` structure. The `uart_config_t` structure should contain all the required parameters. See the example below.

```c
const uart_port_t uart_num = UART_NUM_2;
uart_config_t uart_config = {
  .baud_rate = 115200,
  .data_bits = UART_DATA_8_BITS,
  .parity = UART_PARITY_DISABLE,
  .stop_bits = UART_STOP_BITS_1,
  .flow_ctrl = UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS_RTS,
  .rx_flow_ctrl_thresh = 122,
};
// Configure UART parameters
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_param_config(uart_num, &uart_config));
```

**Multiple Steps** Configure specific parameters individually by calling a dedicated function from the table given below. These functions are also useful if re-configuring a single parameter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter to Configure</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baudrate</td>
<td><code>uart_set_baudrate()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of transmitted bits</td>
<td><code>uart_set_word_length()</code> selected out of <code>uart_word_length_t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parity control</td>
<td><code>uart_set_parity()</code> selected out of <code>uart_parity_t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of stop bits</td>
<td><code>uart_set_stop_bits()</code> selected out of <code>uart_stop_bits_t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware flow control mode</td>
<td><code>uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl()</code> selected out of <code>uart_hw_flowcontrol_t</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication mode</td>
<td><code>uart_set_mode()</code> selected out of <code>uart_mode_t</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each of the above functions has a `_get_` counterpart to check the currently set value. For example, to check the current baud rate value, call `uart_get_baudrate()`.

**Setting Communication Pins** After setting communication parameters, configure the physical GPIO pins to which the other UART device will be connected. For this, call the function `uart_set_pin()` and specify the GPIO pin numbers to which the driver should route the Tx, Rx, RTS, and CTS signals. If you want to keep a currently allocated pin number for a specific signal, pass the macro `UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE`.

The same macro should be specified for pins that will not be used.

```c
// Set UART pins(TX: IO4, RX: IO5, RTS: IO18, CTS: IO19)
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_set_pin(UART_NUM_2, 4, 5, 18, 19));
```

**Driver Installation** Once the communication pins are set, install the driver by calling `uart_driver_install()` and specify the following parameters:

- Size of Tx ring buffer
- Size of Rx ring buffer
- Event queue handle and size
- Flags to allocate an interrupt

The function will allocate the required internal resources for the UART driver.

```c
// Setup UART buffered IO with event queue
const int uart_buffer_size = (1024 * 2);
QueueHandle_t uart_queue;
// Install UART driver using an event queue here
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_driver_install(UART_NUM_2, uart_buffer_size,
                      uart_buffer_size, 10, &uart_queue, 0));
```
Once this step is complete, you can connect the external UART device and check the communication.

**Running UART Communication** Serial communication is controlled by each UART controller’s finite state machine (FSM).

The process of sending data involves the following steps:

1. Write data into Tx FIFO buffer
2. FSM serializes the data
3. FSM sends the data out

The process of receiving data is similar, but the steps are reversed:

1. FSM processes an incoming serial stream and parallelizes it
2. FSM writes the data into Rx FIFO buffer
3. Read the data from Rx FIFO buffer

Therefore, an application will be limited to writing and reading data from a respective buffer using `uart_write_bytes()` and `uart_read_bytes()` respectively, and the FSM will do the rest.

**Transmitting** After preparing the data for transmission, call the function `uart_write_bytes()` and pass the data buffer’s address and data length to it. The function will copy the data to the Tx ring buffer (either immediately or after enough space is available), and then exit. When there is free space in the Tx FIFO buffer, an interrupt service routine (ISR) moves the data from the Tx ring buffer to the Tx FIFO buffer in the background. The code below demonstrates the use of this function.

```c
// Write data to UART.
char* test_str = "This is a test string.\n";
uart_write_bytes(uart_num, (const char*)test_str, strlen(test_str));
```

The function `uart_write_bytes_with_break()` is similar to `uart_write_bytes()` but adds a serial break signal at the end of the transmission. A ‘serial break signal’ means holding the Tx line low for a period longer than one data frame.

```c
// Write data to UART, end with a break signal.
uart_write_bytes_with_break(uart_num, "test break\n", strlen("test break\n"), 100);
```

Another function for writing data to the Tx FIFO buffer is `uart_tx_chars()`. Unlike `uart_write_bytes()`, this function will not block until space is available. Instead, it will write all data which can immediately fit into the hardware Tx FIFO, and then return the number of bytes that were written.

There is a ‘companion’ function `uart_wait_tx_done()` that monitors the status of the Tx FIFO buffer and returns once it is empty.

```c
// Wait for packet to be sent
const uart_port_t uart_num = UART_NUM_2;
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_wait_tx_done(uart_num, 100)); // wait timeout is 100 RTOS_ticks (TickType_t)
```

**Receiving** Once the data is received by the UART and saved in the Rx FIFO buffer, it needs to be retrieved using the function `uart_read_bytes()`. Before reading data, you can check the number of bytes available in the Rx FIFO buffer by calling `uart_get_buffered_data_len()`. An example of using these functions is given below.

```c
// Read data from UART.
const uart_port_t uart_num = UART_NUM_2;
uint8_t data[128];
int length = 0;
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_get_buffered_data_len(uart_num, (size_t*)&length));
length = uart_read_bytes(uart_num, data, length, 100);
```
If the data in the Rx FIFO buffer is no longer needed, you can clear the buffer by calling `uart_flush()

**Software Flow Control**  If the hardware flow control is disabled, you can manually set the RTS and DTR signal levels by using the functions `uart_set_rts()` and `uart_set_dtr()` respectively.

**Communication Mode Selection**  The UART controller supports a number of communication modes. A mode can be selected using the function `uart_set_mode()`. Once a specific mode is selected, the UART driver will handle the behavior of a connected UART device accordingly. As an example, it can control the RS485 driver chip using the RTS line to allow half-duplex RS485 communication.

```
// Setup UART in rs485 half duplex mode
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_set_mode(uart_num, UART_MODE_RS485_HALF_DUPLEX));
```

**Using Interrupts**  There are many interrupts that can be generated following specific UART states or detected errors. The full list of available interrupts is provided in ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > UART Controller (UART) > UART Interrupts and UHCI Interrupts [PDF]. You can enable or disable specific interrupts by calling `uart_enable_intr_mask()` or `uart_disable_intr_mask()` respectively. The mask of all interrupts is available as `UART_INTR_MASK`.

By default, the `uart_driver_install()` function installs the driver’s internal interrupt handler to manage the Tx and Rx ring buffers and provides high-level API functions like events (see below). It is also possible to register a lower level interrupt handler instead using `uart_isr_register()`, and to free it again using `uart_isr_free()`. Some UART driver functions which use the Tx and Rx ring buffers, events, etc. will not automatically work in this case - it is necessary to handle the interrupts directly in the ISR. Inside the custom handler implementation, clear the interrupt status bits using `uart_clear_intr_status()`.

The API provides a convenient way to handle specific interrupts discussed in this document by wrapping them into dedicated functions:

- **Event detection**: There are several events defined in `uart_event_type_t` that may be reported to a user application using the FreeRTOS queue functionality. You can enable this functionality when calling `uart_driver_install()` described in Driver Installation. An example of using Event detection can be found in peripherals/uart/uart_events.

- **FIFO space threshold or transmission timeout reached**: The Tx and Rx FIFO buffers can trigger an interrupt when they are filled with a specific number of characters, or on a timeout of sending or receiving data. To use these interrupts, do the following:  
  - Configure respective threshold values of the buffer length and timeout by entering them in the structure `uart_intr_config_t` and calling `uart_intr_config()`  
  - Enable the interrupts using the functions `uart_enable_tx_intr()` and `uart_enable_rx_intr()`  
  - Disable these interrupts using the corresponding functions `uart_disable_tx_intr()` or `uart_disable_rx_intr()`

- **Pattern detection**: An interrupt triggered on detecting a ‘pattern’ of the same character being received/sent repeatedly for a number of times. This functionality is demonstrated in the example peripherals/uart/uart_events. It can be used, e.g., to detect a command string followed by a specific number of identical characters (the ‘pattern’) added at the end of the command string. The following functions are available:  
  - Configure and enable this interrupt using `uart_enable_pattern_det_intr()`  
  - Disable the interrupt using `uart_disable_pattern_det_intr()`

**Macros**  The API also defines several macros. For example, `UART_FIFO_LEN` defines the length of hardware FIFO buffers; `UART_BITRATE_MAX` gives the maximum baud rate supported by the UART controllers, etc.

**Deleting a Driver**  If the communication established with `uart_driver_install()` is no longer required, the driver can be removed to free allocated resources by calling `uart_driver_delete()`.
Overview of RS485 specific communication options

The following section will use `[UART_REGISTER_NAME].[UART_FIELD_BIT]` to refer to UART register fields/bits. For more information on a specific option bit, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > UART Controller (UART) > Register Summary [PDF]. Use the register name to navigate to the register description and then find the field/bit.

- **UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485_EN**: setting this bit enables RS485 communication mode support.
- **UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485TX_RX_EN**: if this bit is set, the transmitter’s output signal loops back to the receiver’s input signal.
- **UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485RXBY_TX_EN**: if this bit is set, the transmitter will still be sending data if the receiver is busy (remove collisions automatically by hardware).

The ESP32’s RS485 UART hardware can detect signal collisions during transmission of a datagram and generate the interrupt UART_RS485_CLASH_INT if this interrupt is enabled. The term collision means that a transmitted datagram is not equal to the one received on the other end. Data collisions are usually associated with the presence of other active devices on the bus or might occur due to bus errors.

The collision detection feature allows handling collisions when their interrupts are activated and triggered. The interrupts UART_RS485_FRM_ERR_INT and UART_RS485_PARITY_ERR_INT can be used with the collision detection feature to control frame errors and parity bit errors accordingly in RS485 mode. This functionality is supported in the UART driver and can be used by selecting the UART_MODE_RS485_APP_CTRL mode (see the function `uart_set_mode()`).

The collision detection feature can work with circuit A and circuit C (see Section Interface Connection Options). In the case of using circuit A or B, the RTS pin connected to the DE pin of the bus driver should be controlled by the user application. Use the function `uart_get_collision_flag()` to check if the collision detection flag has been raised.

The ESP32 UART controllers themselves do not support half-duplex communication as they cannot provide automatic control of the RTS pin connected to the -RE/DE input of RS485 bus driver. However, half-duplex communication can be achieved via software control of the RTS pin by the UART driver. This can be enabled by selecting the UART_MODE_RS485_HALF_DUPLEX mode when calling `uart_set_mode()`.

Once the host starts writing data to the Tx FIFO buffer, the UART driver automatically asserts the RTS pin (logic 1); once the last bit of the data has been transmitted, the driver de-asserts the RTS pin (logic 0). To use this mode, the software would have to disable the hardware flow control function. This mode works with all the used circuits shown below.

**Interface Connection Options** This section provides example schematics to demonstrate the basic aspects of ESP32’s RS485 interface connection.

- **The schematics below do not necessarily contain all required elements.**
- **The analog devices ADM483 & ADM2483 are examples of common RS485 transceivers and can be replaced with other similar transceivers.**

**Circuit A: Collision Detection Circuit**

```
VCC --------------+           
                   |           
                   +------------x----------+
RXD <--------| R |           
|           | |           
|           |B|----------<> B
TXD -------->| D | ADM483 |
```

(下页継続)
This circuit is preferable because it allows for collision detection and is quite simple at the same time. The receiver in the line driver is constantly enabled, which allows the UART to monitor the RS485 bus. Echo suppression is performed by the UART peripheral when the bit UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485TX_RX_EN is enabled.

**Circuit B: Manual Switching Transmitter/Receiver Without Collision Detection**

This circuit does not allow for collision detection. It suppresses the null bytes that the hardware receives when the bit UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485TX_RX_EN is set. The bit UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485RXBY_TX_EN is not applicable in this case.

**Circuit C: Auto Switching Transmitter/Receiver**

This galvanically isolated circuit does not require RTS pin control by a software application or driver because it controls the transceiver direction automatically. However, it requires suppressing null bytes during transmission by setting UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485RXBY_TX_EN to 1 and UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485TX_RX_EN to 0. This setup can work in any RS485 UART mode or even in UART_MODE_UART.
Application Examples

The table below describes the code examples available in the directory peripherals/uart/.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>peripherals/uart/uart_echo</td>
<td>Configuring UART settings, installing the UART driver, and reading/writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>over the UART1 interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peripherals/uart/uart_events</td>
<td>Reporting various communication events, using pattern detection interrupts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peripherals/uart/uart_async_rxtxtasks</td>
<td>Transmitting and receiving data in two separate FreeRTOS tasks over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the same UART.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peripherals/uart/uart_select</td>
<td>Using synchronous I/O multiplexing for UART file descriptors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peripherals/uart/uart_echo_rs485</td>
<td>Setting up UART driver to communicate over RS485 interface in half-duplex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mode. This example is similar to peripherals/uart/uart_echo but allows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>communication through an RS485 interface chip connected to ESP32 pins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peripherals/uart/nmea0183_parser</td>
<td>Obtaining GPS information by parsing NMEA0183 statements received from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPS via the UART peripheral.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

API Reference

Header File

- components/driver/include/driver/uart.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t uart_driver_install(uart_port_t uart_num, int rx_buffer_size, int tx_buffer_size, int queue_size, QueueHandle_t *uart_queue, int intr_alloc_flags)
```

Install UART driver and set the UART to the default configuration.

UART ISR handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

**Note** Rx_buffer_size should be greater than UART_FIFO_LEN. Tx_buffer_size should be either zero or greater than UART_FIFO_LEN.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**

- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- rx_buffer_size: UART RX ring buffer size.
- tx_buffer_size: UART TX ring buffer size. If set to zero, driver will not use TX buffer, TX function will block task until all data have been sent out.
- queue_size: UART event queue size/depth.
- uart_queue: UART event queue handle (out param). On success, a new queue handle is written here to provide access to UART events. If set to NULL, driver will not use an event queue.
- intr_alloc_flags: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info. Do not set ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM here (the driver’s ISR handler is not located in IRAM)

```c
esp_err_t uart_driver_delete(uart_port_t uart_num)
```

Uninstall UART driver.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**

- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).

```c
bool uart_is_driver_installed(uart_port_t uart_num)
```

Checks whether the driver is installed or not.
Return
- true driver is installed
- false driver is not installed

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).

`esp_err_t uart_set_word_length(uart_port_t uart_num, uart_word_length_t data_bit)`
Set UART data bits.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- data_bit: UART data bits

`esp_err_t uart_get_word_length(uart_port_t uart_num, uart_word_length_t *data_bit)`
Get the UART data bit configuration.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*data_bit)

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- data_bit: Pointer to accept value of UART data bits.

`esp_err_t uart_set_stop_bits(uart_port_t uart_num, uart_stop_bits_t stop_bits)`
Set UART stop bits.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- stop_bits: UART stop bits

`esp_err_t uart_get_stop_bits(uart_port_t uart_num, uart_stop_bits_t *stop_bits)`
Get the UART stop bit configuration.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*stop_bit)

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- stop_bits: Pointer to accept value of UART stop bits.

`esp_err_t uart_set_parity(uart_port_t uart_num, uart_parity_t parity_mode)`
Set UART parity mode.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- parity_mode: the enum of uart parity configuration

`esp_err_t uart_get_parity(uart_port_t uart_num, uart_parity_t *parity_mode)`
Get the UART parity mode configuration.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*parity_mode)

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
• parity_mode: Pointer to accept value of UART parity mode.

```c
esp_err_t uart_set_baudrate(uart_port_t uart_num, uint32_t baudrate)
```
Set UART baud rate.

**Return**
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

**Parameters**
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `baudrate`: UART baud rate.

```c
esp_err_t uart_get_baudrate(uart_port_t uart_num, uint32_t* baudrate)
```
Get the UART baud rate configuration.

**Return**
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*baudrate)

**Parameters**
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `baudrate`: Pointer to accept value of UART baud rate

```c
esp_err_t uart_set_line_inverse(uart_port_t uart_num, uint32_t inverse_mask)
```
Set UART line inverse mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `inverse_mask`: Choose the wires that need to be inverted. Using the ORred mask of
  ```c
  uart_signal_inv_t
  ```

```c
esp_err_t uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl(uart_port_t uart_num, uart_hw_flowcontrol_t flow_ctrl, uint8_t rx_thresh)
```
Set hardware flow control.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `flow_ctrl`: Hardware flow control mode
- `rx_thresh`: Threshold of Hardware RX flow control (0 ~ UART_FIFO_LEN). Only when
  UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_RTS is set, will the rx_thresh value be set.

```c
esp_err_t uart_set_sw_flow_ctrl(uart_port_t uart_num, bool enable, uint8_t rx_thresh_xon, uint8_t rx_thresh_xoff)
```
Set software flow control.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- `uart_num`: UART_NUM_0, UART_NUM_1 or UART_NUM_2
- `enable`: switch on or off
- `rx_thresh_xon`: low water mark
- `rx_thresh_xoff`: high water mark

```c
esp_err_t uart_get_hw_flow_ctrl(uart_port_t uart_num, uart_hw_flowcontrol_t* flow_ctrl)
```
Get the UART hardware flow control configuration.

**Return**
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*flow_ctrl)

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
• flow_ctrl: Option for different flow control mode.

`esp_err_t uart_clear_intr_status(uart_port_t uart_num, uint32_t clr_mask)`
Clear UART interrupt status.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
• clr_mask: Bit mask of the interrupt status to be cleared.

`esp_err_t uart_enable_intr_mask(uart_port_t uart_num, uint32_t enable_mask)`
Set UART interrupt enable.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
• enable_mask: Bitmask of the enable bits.

`esp_err_t uart_disable_intr_mask(uart_port_t uart_num, uint32_t disable_mask)`
Clear UART interrupt enable bits.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
• disable_mask: Bit mask of the disable bits.

`esp_err_t uart_enable_rx_intr(uart_port_t uart_num)`
Enable UART RX interrupt (RX_FULL & RX_TIMEOUT INTERRUPT)

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).

`esp_err_t uart_disable_rx_intr(uart_port_t uart_num)`
Disable UART RX interrupt (RX_FULL & RX_TIMEOUT INTERRUPT)

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).

`esp_err_t uart_disable_tx_intr(uart_port_t uart_num)`
Disable UART TX interrupt (TX_FULL & TX_TIMEOUT INTERRUPT)

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number

`esp_err_t uart_enable_tx_intr(uart_port_t uart_num, int enable, int thresh)`
Enable UART TX interrupt (TX_FULL & TX_TIMEOUT INTERRUPT)
Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- enable: 1: enable; 0: disable
- thresh: Threshold of TX interrupt, 0 ~ UART_FIFO_LEN

`esp_err_t uart_isr_register (uart_port_t uart_num, void (*fn) void *, void *arg, int intr_alloc_flags, uart_isr_handle_t *handle)`
Register UART interrupt handler (ISR).

Note UART ISR handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- fn: Interrupt handler function.
- arg: parameter for handler function
- intr_alloc_flags: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORed) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- handle: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

`esp_err_t uart_isr_free (uart_port_t uart_num)`
Free UART interrupt handler registered by uart_isr_register. Must be called on the same core as uart_isr_register was called.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

`esp_err_t uart_set_pin (uart_port_t uart_num, int tx_io_num, int rx_io_num, int rts_io_num, int cts_io_num)`
Assign signals of a UART peripheral to GPIO pins.

Note If the GPIO number configured for a UART signal matches one of the IOMUX signals for that GPIO, the signal will be connected directly via the IOMUX. Otherwise the GPIO and signal will be connected via the GPIO Matrix. For example, if on an ESP32 the call `uart_set_pin(0, 1, 3, -1, -1)` is performed, as GPIO1 is UART0’s default TX pin and GPIO3 is UART0’s default RX pin, both will be connected to respectively U0TXD and U0RXD through the IOMUX, totally bypassing the GPIO matrix. The check is performed on a per-pin basis. Thus, it is possible to have RX pin binded to a GPIO through the GPIO matrix, whereas TX is binded to its GPIO through the IOMUX.

Note Internal signal can be output to multiple GPIO pads. Only one GPIO pad can connect with input signal.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- tx_io_num: UART TX pin GPIO number.
- rx_io_num: UART RX pin GPIO number.
- rts_io_num: UART RTS pin GPIO number.
- cts_io_num: UART CTS pin GPIO number.

`esp_err_t uart_set_rts (uart_port_t uart_num, int level)`
Manually set the UART RTS pin level.

Note UART must be configured with hardware flow control disabled.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- level: 1: RTS output low (active); 0: RTS output high (block)

`esp_err_t uart_set_dtr (uart_port_t uart_num, int level)`
Manually set the UART DTR pin level.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- level: 1: DTR output low; 0: DTR output high

`esp_err_t uart_set_tx_idle_num (uart_port_t uart_num, uint16_t idle_num)`
Set UART idle interval after tx FIFO is empty.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- idle_num: idle interval after tx FIFO is empty (unit: the time it takes to send one bit under current baudrate)

`esp_err_t uart_param_config (uart_port_t uart_num, const uart_config_t *uart_config)`
Set UART configuration parameters.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- uart_config: UART parameter settings

`esp_err_t uart_intr_config (uart_port_t uart_num, const uart_intr_config_t *intr_conf)`
Configure UART interrupts.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- intr_conf: UART interrupt settings

`esp_err_t uart_wait_tx_done (uart_port_t uart_num, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)`
Wait until UART TX FIFO is empty.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Timeout

Parameters
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- ticks_to_wait: Timeout, count in RTOS ticks

`int uart_tx_chars (uart_port_t uart_num, const char *buffer, uint32_t len)`
Send data to the UART port from a given buffer and length.

This function will not wait for enough space in TX FIFO. It will just fill the available TX FIFO and return when the FIFO is full.

Note This function should only be used when UART TX buffer is not enabled.

Return
- (-1) Parameter error
Chapter 2. API

• OTHERS (>=0) The number of bytes pushed to the TX FIFO

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
• buffer: data buffer address
• len: data length to send

int uart_write_bytes (uart_port_t uart_num, const *src, size_t size)

Send data to the UART port from a given buffer and length.

If the UART driver’s parameter ‘tx_buffer_size’ is set to zero: This function will not return until all the data have been sent out, or at least pushed into TX FIFO.

Otherwise, if the ‘tx_buffer_size’ > 0, this function will return after copying all the data to tx ring buffer, UART ISR will then move data from the ring buffer to TX FIFO gradually.

Return
• (-1) Parameter error
• OTHERS (>=0) The number of bytes pushed to the TX FIFO

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
• src: data buffer address
• size: data length to send

int uart_write_bytes_with_break (uart_port_t uart_num, const void *src, size_t size, int brk_len)

Send data to the UART port from a given buffer and length.

If the UART driver’s parameter ‘tx_buffer_size’ is set to zero: This function will not return until all the data and the break signal have been sent out. After all data is sent out, send a break signal.

Otherwise, if the ‘tx_buffer_size’ > 0, this function will return after copying all the data to tx ring buffer, UART ISR will then move data from the ring buffer to TX FIFO gradually. After all data sent out, send a break signal.

Return
• (-1) Parameter error
• OTHERS (>=0) The number of bytes pushed to the TX FIFO

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
• src: data buffer address
• size: data length to send
• brk_len: break signal duration(unit: the time it takes to send one bit at current baudrate)

int uart_read_bytes (uart_port_t uart_num, void *buf, uint32_t length, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)

UART read bytes from UART buffer.

Return
• (-1) Error
• OTHERS (>=0) The number of bytes read from UART FIFO

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
• buf: pointer to the buffer.
• length: data length
• ticks_to_wait: sTimeout, count in RTOS ticks

esp_err_t uart_flush (uart_port_t uart_num)

Alias of uart_flush_input. UART ring buffer flush. This will discard all data in the UART RX buffer.

Note Instead of waiting the data sent out, this function will clear UART rx buffer. In order to send all the data in tx FIFO, we can use uart_wait_tx_done function.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

```c
esp_err_t uart_flush_input(uart_port_t uart_num)
```
Clear input buffer, discard all the data is in the ring-buffer.

**Note** In order to send all the data in tx FIFO, we can use uart_wait_tx_done function.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

```c
esp_err_t uart_get_buffered_data_len(uart_port_t uart_num, size_t *size)
```
UART get RX ring buffer cached data length.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- size: Pointer of size_t to accept cached data length

```c
esp_err_t uart_disable_pattern_det_intr(uart_port_t uart_num)
```
UART disable pattern detect function. Designed for applications like ‘AT commands’. When the hardware detects a series of one same character, the interrupt will be triggered.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

```c
esp_err_t uart_enable_pattern_det_intr(uart_port_t uart_num, char pattern_chr, uint8_t chr_num, int chr_tout, int post_idle, int pre_idle)
```
UART enable pattern detect function. Designed for applications like ‘AT commands’. When the hardware detect a series of one same character, the interrupt will be triggered.

**Note** This function only works for esp32. And this function is deprecated, please use uart_enable_pattern_det_baud_intr instead.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- uart_num: UART port number.
- pattern_chr: character of the pattern.
- chr_num: number of the character, 8bit value.
- chr_tout: timeout of the interval between each pattern characters, 24bit value, unit is APB (80Mhz) clock cycle. When the duration is less than this value, it will not take this data as at_cmd char.
- post_idle: idle time after the last pattern character, 24bit value, unit is APB (80Mhz) clock cycle. When the duration is less than this value, it will not take the previous data as the last at_cmd char
- pre_idle: idle time before the first pattern character, 24bit value, unit is APB (80Mhz) clock cycle. When the duration is less than this value, it will not take this data as the first at_cmd char.

```c
esp_err_t uart_enable_pattern_det_baud_intr(uart_port_t uart_num, char pattern_chr, uint8_t chr_num, int chr_tout, int post_idle, int pre_idle)
```
UART enable pattern detect function. Designed for applications like ‘AT commands’. When the hardware detect a series of one same character, the interrupt will be triggered.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
Chapter 2. API

• ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number.
• pattern_chr: character of the pattern.
• chr_num: number of the character, 8bit value.
• chr_tout: timeout of the interval between each pattern characters, 16bit value, unit is the baud-rate cycle you configured. When the duration is more than this value, it will not take this data as at_cmd char.
• post_idle: idle time after the last pattern character, 16bit value, unit is the baud-rate cycle you configured. When the duration is less than this value, it will not take the previous data as the last at_cmd char.
• pre_idle: idle time before the first pattern character, 16bit value, unit is the baud-rate cycle you configured. When the duration is less than this value, it will not take this data as the first at_cmd char.

int uart_pattern_pop_pos (uart_port_t uart_num)
Return the nearest detected pattern position in buffer. The positions of the detected pattern are saved in a queue, this function will dequeue the first pattern position and move the pointer to next pattern position.

The following APIs will modify the pattern position info: uart_flush_input, uart_read_bytes, uart_driver_delete, uart_pop_pattern_pos It is the application’s responsibility to ensure atomic access to the pattern queue and the rx data buffer when using pattern detect feature.

Note If the RX buffer is full and flow control is not enabled, the detected pattern may not be found in the rx buffer due to overflow.

Return
• (-1) No pattern found for current index or parameter error
• others the pattern position in rx buffer.

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

int uart_pattern_get_pos (uart_port_t uart_num)
Return the nearest detected pattern position in buffer. The positions of the detected pattern are saved in a queue, This function do nothing to the queue.

The following APIs will modify the pattern position info: uart_flush_input, uart_read_bytes, uart_driver_delete, uart_pop_pattern_pos It is the application’s responsibility to ensure atomic access to the pattern queue and the rx data buffer when using pattern detect feature.

Note If the RX buffer is full and flow control is not enabled, the detected pattern may not be found in the rx buffer due to overflow.

Return
• (-1) No pattern found for current index or parameter error
• others the pattern position in rx buffer.

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t uart_pattern_queue_reset (uart_port_t uart_num, int queue_length)
Allocate a new memory with the given length to save record the detected pattern position in rx buffer.

Return
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No enough memory
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver not installed
• ESP_FAIL Parameter error
• ESP_OK Success

Parameters
• uart_num: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
• queue_length: Max queue length for the detected pattern. If the queue length is not large enough, some pattern positions might be lost. Set this value to the maximum number of patterns that could be saved in data buffer at the same time.
** Chapter 2. API **

** `esp_err_t uart_set_mode (uart_port_t uart_num, uart_mode_t mode)` **

UART set communication mode.

** Note **
This function must be executed after `uart_driver_install()`, when the driver object is initialized.

** Return **
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

** Parameters **
- `uart_num`: Uart number to configure, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `mode`: UART UART mode to set

** `esp_err_t uart_set_rx_full_threshold (uart_port_t uart_num, int threshold)` **

Set uart threshold value for RX fifo full.

** Note **
If application is using higher baudrate and it is observed that bytes in hardware RX fifo are overwitten then this threshold can be reduced

** Return **
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver is not installed

** Parameters **
- `uart_num`: UART_NUM_0, UART_NUM_1 or UART_NUM_2
- `threshold`: Threshold value above which RX fifo full interrupt is generated

** `esp_err_t uart_set_tx_empty_threshold (uart_port_t uart_num, int threshold)` **

Set uart threshold values for TX fifo empty.

** Return **
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver is not installed

** Parameters **
- `uart_num`: UART_NUM_0, UART_NUM_1 or UART_NUM_2
- `threshold`: Threshold value below which TX fifo empty interrupt is generated

** `esp_err_t uart_set_rx_timeout (uart_port_t uart_num, const uint8_t tout_thresh)` **

UART set threshold timeout for TOUT feature.

** Return **
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver is not installed

** Parameters **
- `uart_num`: Uart number to configure, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `tout_thresh`: This parameter defines timeout threshold in uart symbol periods. The maximum value of threshold is 126. `tou_thresh = 1`, defines TOUT interrupt timeout equal to transmission time of one symbol (~11 bit) on current baudrate. If the time is expired the UART_RXFIFO_TOUT_INT interrupt is triggered. If `tout_thresh == 0`, the TOUT feature is disabled.

** `esp_err_t uart_get_collision_flag (uart_port_t uart_num, bool *collision_flag)` **

Returns collision detection flag for RS485 mode Function returns the collision detection flag into variable pointed by collision_flag. `*collision_flag = true`, if collision detected else it is equal to false. This function should be executed when actual transmission is completed (after `uart_write_bytes()`).

** Return **
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

** Parameters **
- `uart_num`: Uart number to configure the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `collision_flag`: Pointer to variable of type bool to return collision flag.

** `esp_err_t uart_set_wakeup_threshold (uart_port_t uart_num, int wakeup_threshold)` **

Set the number of RX pin signal edges for light sleep wakeup.

---

** Espressif Systems **

891

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
UART can be used to wake up the system from light sleep. This feature works by counting the number of positive edges on RX pin and comparing the count to the threshold. When the count exceeds the threshold, system is woken up from light sleep. This function allows setting the threshold value.

Stop bit and parity bits (if enabled) also contribute to the number of edges. For example, letter ‘a’ with ASCII code 97 is encoded as 0100001101 on the wire (with 8n1 configuration), start and stop bits included. This sequence has 3 positive edges (transitions from 0 to 1). Therefore, to wake up the system when ‘a’ is sent, set wakeup_threshold=3.

The character that triggers wakeup is not received by UART (i.e. it can not be obtained from UART FIFO). Depending on the baud rate, a few characters after that will also not be received. Note that when the chip enters and exits light sleep mode, APB frequency will be changing. To make sure that UART has correct baud rate all the time, select REF_TICK as UART clock source, by setting use_ref_tick field in `uart_config_t` to true.

Note in ESP32, the wakeup signal can only be input via IO_MUX (i.e. GPIO3 should be configured as function_1 to wake up UART0, GPIO9 should be configured as function_5 to wake up UART1), UART2 does not support light sleep wakeup feature.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if uart_num is incorrect or wakeup_threshold is outside of [3, 0x3ff] range.

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- `wakeup_threshold`: number of RX edges for light sleep wakeup, value is 3 .. 0x3ff.

`esp_err_t uart_get_wakeup_threshold (uart_port_t uart_num, int *out_wakeup_threshold)`
Get the number of RX pin signal edges for light sleep wakeup.

See description of `uart_set_wakeup_threshold` for the explanation of UART wakeup feature.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if out_wakeup_threshold is NULL.

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX - 1).
- [out] `out_wakeup_threshold`: output, set to the current value of wakeup threshold for the given UART.

`esp_err_t uart_wait_tx_idle_polling (uart_port_t uart_num)`
Wait until UART tx memory empty and the last char send ok (polling mode).

- Return
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
  - ESP_FAIL Driver not installed

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART number

`esp_err_t uart_set_loop_back (uart_port_t uart_num, bool loop_back_en)`
Configure TX signal loop back to RX module, just for the test usage.

- Return
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
  - ESP_FAIL Driver not installed

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART number
- `loop_back_en`: Set true to enable the loop back function, else set it false.

void `uart_set_always_rx_timeout (uart_port_t uart_num, bool always_rx_timeout_en)`
Configure behavior of UART RX timeout interrupt.
When always_rx_timeout is true, timeout interrupt is triggered even if FIFO is full. This function can cause extra timeout interrupts triggered only to send the timeout event. Call this function only if you want to ensure timeout interrupt will always happen after a byte stream.

**Parameters**

- `uart_num`: UART number
- `always_rx_timeout_en`: Set to false enable the default behavior of timeout interrupt, set it to true to always trigger timeout interrupt.

**Structures**

```c
struct uart_intr_config_t
UART interrupt configuration parameters for uart_intr_config function.
```

**Public Members**

- `intr_enable_mask`: UART interrupt enable mask, choose from UART_XXXX_INT_ENA_M under UART_INT_ENA_REG(i), connect with bit-or operator
- `rx_timeout_thresh`: UART timeout interrupt threshold (unit: time of sending one byte)
- `txfifo_empty_intr_thresh`: UART TX empty interrupt threshold.
- `rxfifo_full_thresh`: UART RX full interrupt threshold.

```c
struct uart_event_t
Event structure used in UART event queue.
```

**Public Members**

- `type`: UART event type
- `size`: UART data size for UART_DATA event
- `timeout_flag`: UART data read timeout flag for UART_DATA event (no new data received during configured RX TOUT) If the event is caused by FIFO-full interrupt, then there will be no event with the timeout flag before the next byte coming.

**Macros**

- `UART_NUM_0`: UART port 0
- `UART_NUM_1`: UART port 1
- `UART_NUM_2`: UART port 2
- `UART_NUM_MAX`: UART port max
- `UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE`: Length of the UART HW FIFO.
UART_BITRATE_MAX
Maximum configurable bitrate.

Type Definitions
typedef intr_handle_t uart_isr_handle_t

Enumerations
enum uart_event_type_t
UART event types used in the ring buffer.
Values:

UART_DATA
UART data event

UART_BREAK
UART break event

UART_BUFFER_FULL
UART RX buffer full event

UART_FIFO_OVF
UART FIFO overflow event

UART_FRAME_ERR
UART RX frame error event

UART_PARITY_ERR
UART RX parity event

UART_DATA_BREAK
UART TX data and break event

UART_PATTERN_DET
UART pattern detected

UART_EVENT_MAX
UART event max index

Header File
- components/hal/include/hal/uart_types.h

Structures
struct uart_at_cmd_t
UART AT cmd char configuration parameters Note that this function may different on different chip. Please refer to the TRM at configuration.

Public Members

uint8_t cmd_char
UART AT cmd char

uint8_t char_num
AT cmd char repeat number

uint32_t gap_tout
gap time(in baud-rate) between AT cmd char

uint32_t pre_idle
the idle time(in baud-rate) between the non AT char and first AT char
Chapter 2. API

- **Post_idle**: The idle time (in baud-rate) between the last AT char and the none AT char

- **struct uart_sw_flowctrl_t**: UART software flow control configuration parameters.
  
  **Public Members**
  
  - `uint8_t xon_char`: Xon flow control char
  - `uint8_t xoff_char`: Xoff flow control char
  - `uint8_t xon_thrd`: If the software flow control is enabled and the data amount in rxfifo is less than xon_thrd, an xon_char will be sent
  - `uint8_t xoff_thrd`: If the software flow control is enabled and the data amount in rxfifo is more than xoff_thrd, an xoff_char will be sent

- **struct uart_config_t**: UART configuration parameters for uart_param_config function.
  
  **Public Members**
  
  - `int baud_rate`: UART baud rate
  - `uart_word_length_t data_bits`: UART byte size
  - `uart_parity_t parity`: UART parity mode
  - `uart_stop_bits_t stop_bits`: UART stop bits
  - `uart_hw_flowcontrol_t flow_ctrl`: UART HW flow control mode (cts/rts)
  - `uint8_t rx_flow_ctrl_thresh`: UART HW RTS threshold
  - `uart_sclk_t source_clk`: UART source clock selection
  - `bool use_ref_tick`: Deprecated method to select ref tick clock source, set source_clk field instead

- **Type Definitions**
  
  - `typedef int uart_port_t`: UART port number, can be UART_NUM_0 ~ (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

- **Enumerations**
  
  - `enum uart_mode_t`: UART mode selection.
    
    **Values**:
    
    - `UART_MODE_UART = 0x00`: mode: regular UART mode


```c
UART_MODE_RS485_HALF_DUPLEX = 0x01
mode: half duplex RS485 UART mode control by RTS pin

UART_MODE_IRDA = 0x02
mode: IRDA UART mode

UART_MODE_RS485_COLLISION_DETECT = 0x03
mode: RS485 collision detection UART mode (used for test purposes)

UART_MODE_RS485_APP_CTRL = 0x04
mode: application control RS485 UART mode (used for test purposes)
```

### enum uart_word_length_t

UART word length constants.

**Values:**

- **UART_DATA_5_BITS = 0x0**
  - word length: 5bits
- **UART_DATA_6_BITS = 0x1**
  - word length: 6bits
- **UART_DATA_7_BITS = 0x2**
  - word length: 7bits
- **UART_DATA_8_BITS = 0x3**
  - word length: 8bits
- **UART_DATA_BITS_MAX = 0x4**

### enum uart_stop_bits_t

UART stop bits number.

**Values:**

- **UART_STOP_BITS_1 = 0x1**
  - stop bit: 1bit
- **UART_STOP_BITS_1_5 = 0x2**
  - stop bit: 1.5bits
- **UART_STOP_BITS_2 = 0x3**
  - stop bit: 2bits
- **UART_STOP_BITS_MAX = 0x4**

### enum uart_parity_t

UART parity constants.

**Values:**

- **UART_PARITY_DISABLE = 0x0**
  - Disable UART parity
- **UART_PARITY_EVEN = 0x2**
  - Enable UART even parity
- **UART_PARITY_ODD = 0x3**
  - Enable UART odd parity

### enum uart_hw_flowcontrol_t

UART hardware flow control modes.

**Values:**

- **UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_DISABLE = 0x0**
  - disable hardware flow control
- **UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_RTS = 0x1**
  - enable RX hardware flow control (rts)
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS = 0x2
enable TX hardware flow control (cts)

UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS_RTS = 0x3
enable hardware flow control

UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_MAX = 0x4

enum uart_signal_inv_t
UART signal bit map.

Values:

UART_SIGNAL_INV_DISABLE = 0
Disable UART signal inverse

UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_TX_INV = (0x1 « 0)
inverse the UART irda_tx signal

UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_RX_INV = (0x1 « 1)
inverse the UART irda_rx signal

UART_SIGNAL_RXD_INV = (0x1 « 2)
inverse the UART rxd signal

UART_SIGNAL_CTS_INV = (0x1 « 3)
inverse the UART cts signal

UART_SIGNAL_DSR_INV = (0x1 « 4)
inverse the UART dsr signal

UART_SIGNAL_TXD_INV = (0x1 « 5)
inverse the UART txd signal

UART_SIGNAL_RTS_INV = (0x1 « 6)
inverse the UART rts signal

UART_SIGNAL_DTR_INV = (0x1 « 7)
inverse the UART dtr signal

enum uart_sclk_t
UART source clock.

Values:

UART_SCLK_APB = 0x0
UART source clock from APB

UART_SCLK_REF_TICK = 0x3
UART source clock from REF_TICK

GPIO Lookup Macros The UART peripherals have dedicated IO_MUX pins to which they are connected directly. However, signals can also be routed to other pins using the less direct GPIO matrix. To use direct routes, you need to know which pin is a dedicated IO_MUX pin for a UART channel. GPIO Lookup Macros simplify the process of finding and assigning IO_MUX pins. You choose a macro based on either the IO_MUX pin number, or a required UART channel name, and the macro will return the matching counterpart for you. See some examples below.

注解：These macros are useful if you need very high UART baud rates (over 40 MHz), which means you will have to use IO_MUX pins only. In other cases, these macros can be ignored, and you can use the GPIO Matrix as it allows you to configure any GPIO pin for any UART function.

1. UART_NUM_2_TXDDIRECT_GPIO_NUM returns the IO_MUX pin number of UART channel 2 TXD pin (pin 17)
2. UART_GPIO19DIRECT_CHANNEL returns the UART number of GPIO 19 when connected to the UART peripheral via IO_MUX (this is UART_NUM_0)
3. **UART_CTS_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL** returns the UART number of GPIO 19 when used as the UART CTS pin via IO_MUX (this is UART_NUM_0). Similar to the above macro but specifies the pin function which is also part of the IO_MUX assignment.

**Header File**

- components/soc/esp32/include/soc/uart_channel.h

**Macros**

- UART_GPIO1_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_0_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_0_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_0_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_0_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_TXD_GPIO1_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_RXD_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_CTS_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_RTS_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_GPIO10_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_1_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_1_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO6_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_1_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO11_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_1_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_TXD_GPIO10_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_RXD_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_CTS_GPIO6_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_RTS_GPIO11_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_GPIO17_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_2_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_2_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO8_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_2_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL
- UART_NUM_2_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM
- UART_TXD_GPIO17_DIRECT_CHANNEL
UART_RXD_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL
UART_CTS_GPIO8_DIRECT_CHANNEL
UART_RTS_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL

本部分的 API 示例代码存放在 ESP-IDF 示例项目的 peripherals 目录下。

2.4 应用层协议

2.4.1 mDNS 服务

概述

mDNS 是一种组播 UDP 服务，用来提供本地网络服务和主机发现。
绝大多数的操作系统默认都会安装 mDNS 服务，或者提供单独的安装包。Mac OS 默认会安装名为Bonjour 的服务（该服务基于 mDNS），此外 Apple 还发布了适用于 Windows 系统的安装程序，可以在官方支持找到。在 Linux 上，mDNS 服务由 avahi 提供，通常也会被默认安装。

mDNS 属性

- hostname: 设备会去响应的主机名，如果没有设置，会根据设备的网络接口名定义 hostname。例如，my-esp32 会被解析为 my-esp32.local。
- default_instance: 默认实例名 (即易记的服务名)，例如 Jhon's ESP32 Thing。如果没有设置，将会使用 hostname。

以下为 STA 接口启动 mDNS 服务并设置 hostname 和 default_instance 的示例方法：

```c
void start_mdns_service()
{
    // 初始化 mDNS 服务
    esp_err_t err = mdns_init();
    if (err) {
        printf("MDNS Init failed: %d\n", err);
        return;
    }

    // 设置 hostname
    mdns_hostname_set("my-esp32");
    // 设置默认实例
    mdns_instance_name_set("Jhon's ESP32 Thing");
}
```

mDNS 服务 mDNS 可以广播设备能够提供的网络服务的相关信息，每个服务会由以下属性构成。

- instance_name: 实例名 (即易记的服务名)，例如 Jhon's ESP32 Web Server。如果没有定义，会使用 default_instance。
- service_type: (必需) 服务类型，以下划线为前缀，这里列出了常见的类型。
- proto: (必需) 服务运行所依赖的协议，以下划线为前缀，例如 _tcp 或者 _udp。
- port: (必需) 服务运行所用的端口号。
- txt: 形如 {var, val} 的字符串数组，用于定义服务的属性。

添加一些服务和不同属性的示例方法：

```c
void add_mdns_services()
{
    // 添加服务
    mdns_service_add(NULL, ".http", ".tcp", 80, NULL, 0);
    // (下页继续)
}
```
mdns_service_add(NULL, "_arduino", "_tcp", 3232, NULL, 0);
mdns_service_add(NULL, "_myservice", "_udp", 1234, NULL, 0);

// 注意：必须先添加服务，然后才能设置其属性
// web 服务器使用自定义的实例名
mdns_service_instance_name_set("_http", "_tcp", "Jhon's ESP32 Web Server");

mdns_txt_item_t serviceTxtData[3] = {
    {"board", "esp32"},
    {"u", "user"},
    {"p", "password"}
};
// 设置服务的文本数据（会释放并替换当前数据）
mdns_service_txt_set("_http", "_tcp", serviceTxtData, 3);

void resolve_mdns_host(const char *host_name)
{
    printf("Query A: %s.local", host_name);
    struct ip4_addr addr;
    addr.addr = 0;
    esp_err_t err = mdns_query_a(host_name, 2000, &addr);
    if (err) {
        if (err == ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND) {
            printf("Host was not found!");
        }
        printf("Query Failed");
    }
    printf(IPSTR, IP2STR(&addr));
}

void mdns_print_results(mdns_result_t *results)
{
    mdns_result_t *r = results;
    mdns_ip_addr_t *a = NULL;
    int i = -1, t;
    while (r) {
        printf("%d: Interface: %s, Type: %s\n", i++, ip_str[r->tcpip_if], ip_protocol_str[r->ip_protocol]);
        if (r->instance_name) {
            printf(" %s: %s", r->instance_name);
        }
    }
}

mDNS 查询：mDNS 提供查询服务和解析主机 IP/IPv6 地址的方法。
服务查询的结果会作为 mdns_result_t 类型对象的链表返回。
解析主机 IP 地址的示例方法：

解析本地服务的示例方法：
if (r->hostname){
    printf(" SRV : %s.local:%u", r->hostname, r->port);
}
if (r->txt_count){
    printf(" TXT : [%u]", r->txt_count);
    for (t=0; t<r->txt_count; t++){
        printf("%s=%s;", r->txt[t].key, r->txt[t].value);
    }
    printf("\n");
}

for (t=0; t<r->addr_list; t++){
    if (r->addr.type == IPADDR_TYPE_V6){
        printf(" AAAA: " IPV6STR "\n", IPV62STR(r->addr.u_addr.ip6));
    } else {
        printf(" A : " IPSTR "\n", IP2STR(&r->addr.u_addr.ip4));
    }
    a = r->next;
}

r = r->next;

void find_mdns_service(const char * service_name, const char * proto)
{
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Query PTR: %s.%s.local\n", service_name, proto);
    mdns_result_t * results = NULL;
    esp_err_t err = mdns_query_ptr(service_name, proto, 3000, 20, &results);
    if (err){
        ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Query Failed");
        return;
    }
    if (!results){
        ESP_LOGW(TAG, "No results found!");
        return;
    }
    mdns_print_results(results);
    mdns_query_results_free(results);
}

使用上述方法的示例:

void my_app_some_method(){
    // 搜索 esp32-mdns.local
    resolve_mdns_host("esp32-mdns");

    // 搜索 HTTP 服务器
    find_mdns_service("_http", "_tcp");
    // 或者搜索文件服务器
    find_mdns_service("_smb", "_tcp"); // Windows 系统的共享服务
    find_mdns_service("_afpovertcp", "_tcp"); // Apple AFP 文件共享服务
    find_mdns_service("_nfs", "_tcp"); // NFS 服务器
    find_mdns_service("_ftp", "_tcp"); // FTP 服务器
    // 或者网络打印机
    find_mdns_service("_printer", "_tcp");
    find_mdns_service("_ipp", "_tcp");
}
Chapter 2. API 参考

应用示例

有关 mDNS 服务器和查询器的应用示例请参考 protocols/mdns。

API 参考

Header File

- components/mdns/include/mdns.h

Functions

`esp_err_t mdns_init (void)`
Initialize mDNS on given interface.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE when failed to register event handler
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM on memory error
- ESP_FAIL when failed to start mdns task

void `mdns_free (void)`
Stop and free mDNS server.

`esp_err_t mdns_hostname_set (const char *hostname)`
Set the hostname for mDNS server required if you want to advertise services.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

**Parameters**
- `hostname`: Hostname to set

`esp_err_t mdns_delegate_hostname_add (const char *hostname, const mdns_ip_addr_t *address_list)`
Adds a hostname and address to be delegated A/AAAA queries will be replied for the hostname and services can be added to this host.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

**Parameters**
- `hostname`: Hostname to add
- `address_list`: The IP address list of the host

`esp_err_t mdns_delegate_hostname_remove (const char *hostname)`
Remove a delegated hostname All the services added to this host will also be removed.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

**Parameters**
- `hostname`: Hostname to remove

`bool mdns_hostname_exists (const char *hostname)`
Query whether a hostname has been added.

**Return**
- true The hostname has been added.
false The hostname has not been added.

**Parameters**
- `hostname`: Hostname to query

**esp_err_t mdns_instance_name_set(const char *instance_name)**

Set the default instance name for mDNS server.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

**Parameters**
- `instance_name`: Instance name to set

**esp_err_t mdns_service_add(const char *instance_name, const char *service_type, const char *proto, uint16_t port, mdns_txt_item_t txt[], size_t num_items)**

Add service to mDNS server.

**Note**
The value length of `txt` items will be automatically decided by `strlen`

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_FAIL failed to add service

**Parameters**
- `instance_name`: instance name to set. If NULL, global instance name or hostname will be used.
- Note that MDNS_MULTIPLE_INSTANCE config option needs to be enabled for adding multiple instances with the same instance type.
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `port`: service port
- `txt`: string array of TXT data (eg. {{“var”,” val”},{ “other”,” 2”}})
- `num_items`: number of items in TXT data

**esp_err_t mdns_service_add_for_host(const char *instance_name, const char *service_type, const char *proto, const char *hostname, uint16_t port, mdns_txt_item_t txt[], size_t num_items)**

Add service to mDNS server with a delegated hostname.

**Note**
The value length of `txt` items will be automatically decided by `strlen`

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_FAIL failed to add service

**Parameters**
- `instance_name`: instance name to set. If NULL, global instance name or hostname will be used.
- Note that MDNS_MULTIPLE_INSTANCE config option needs to be enabled for adding multiple instances with the same instance type.
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `hostname`: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.
- `port`: service port
- `txt`: string array of TXT data (eg. {{“var”,” val”},{ “other”,” 2”}})
- `num_items`: number of items in TXT data

**bool mdns_service_exists(const char *service_type, const char *proto, const char *hostname)**

Check whether a service has been added.

**Return**
- true Corresponding service has been added.
- false Service not found.
Chapter 2. API

Parameters
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `hostname`: service hostname. If NULL, checks for the local hostname.

```c
bool mdns_service_exists_with_instance(const char *instance, const char *service_type,
                                       const char *proto, const char *hostname)
```

Check whether a service has been added.

Return
- true Corresponding service has been added.
- false Service not found.

Parameters
- `instance`: instance name
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `hostname`: service hostname. If NULL, checks for the local hostname.

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_remove(const char *service_type, const char *proto)
```

Remove service from mDNS server.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_remove_for_host(const char *service_type, const char *proto,
                                       const char *hostname)
```

Remove service from mDNS server with hostname.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `hostname`: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_instance_name_set(const char *service_type, const char *proto,
                                         const char *instance_name)
```

Set instance name for service.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `instance_name`: instance name to set

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_instance_name_set_for_host(const char *service_type, const char *proto,
                                                  const char *hostname, const char *instance_name)
```

Set instance name for service with hostname.

Return
• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
• service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
• hostname: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.
• instance_name: instance name to set

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_port_set (const char *service_type, const char *proto, uint16_t port)
```

Set service port.

Return
• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
• service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
• port: service port

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_port_set_for_host (const char *service_type, const char *proto,
                                          const char *hostname, uint16_t port)
```

Set service port with hostname.

Return
• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
• service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
• hostname: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.
• port: service port

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_txt_set (const char *service_type, const char *proto,
                                 mdns_txt_item_t txt[], uint8_t num_items)
```

Replace all TXT items for service.

Note The value length of txt items will be automatically decided by strlen

Return
• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
• service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
• txt: array of TXT data (eg. [ { "var", "val" }, { "other", "2" } ])
• num_items: number of items in TXT data

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_txt_set_for_host (const char *service_type, const char *proto,
                                         const char *hostname, mdns_txt_item_t txt[],
                                         uint8_t num_items)
```

Replace all TXT items for service with hostname.

Note The value length of txt items will be automatically decided by strlen

Return
• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
• service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
• hostname: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.
• txt: array of TXT data (eg. {{ "var", "val" }, { "other", "2" }})
• num_items: number of items in TXT data

`esp_err_t mdns_service_txt_item_set(const char *service_type, const char *proto, const char *key, const char *value)`

Set/Add TXT item for service TXT record.

Note The value length will be automatically decided by strlen

Return
• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
• service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
• key: the key that you want to add/update
• value: the new value of the key

`esp_err_t mdns_service_txt_item_set_with_explicit_value_len(const char *service_type, const char *proto, const char *key, const char *value, uint8_t value_len)`

Set/Add TXT item for service TXT record.

Return
• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
• service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
• key: the key that you want to add/update
• value: the new value of the key
• value_len: the length of the value

`esp_err_t mdns_service_txt_item_set_for_host(const char *service_type, const char *proto, const char *hostname, const char *key, const char *value)`

Set/Add TXT item for service TXT record with hostname.

Note The value length will be automatically decided by strlen

Return
• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters
• service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
• hostname: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.
• key: the key that you want to add/update
• value: the new value of the key
```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_txt_item_set_for_host_with_explicit_value_len(const char *service_type, const char *proto, const char *hostname, const char *key, const char *value, uint8_t value_len)
```

Set/Add TXT item for service TXT record with hostname and txt value length.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

**Parameters**
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `hostname`: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.
- `key`: the key that you want to add/update
- `value`: the new value of the key
- `value_len`: the length of the value

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_txt_item_remove(const char *service_type, const char *proto, const char *key)
```

Remove TXT item for service TXT record.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

**Parameters**
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `key`: the key that you want to remove

```c
esp_err_t mdns_service_txt_item_remove_for_host(const char *service_type, const char *proto, const char *hostname, const char *key)
```

Remove TXT item for service TXT record with hostname.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

**Parameters**
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `hostname`: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.
- `key`: the key that you want to remove
Add subtype for service.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

**Parameters**
- instance_name: instance name. If NULL, will find the first service with the same service type and protocol.
- service_type: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- hostname: service hostname. If NULL, local hostname will be used.
- subtype: The subtype to add.

Remove and free all services from mDNS server.

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Deletes the finished query. Call this only after the search has ended!

**Return**
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE search has not finished
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG pointer to search object is NULL

Get results from search pointer. Results available as a pointer to the output parameter. Pointer to search object has to be deleted via mdns_query_async_delete once the query has finished. The results although have to be freed manually.

**Return** True if search has finished before or at timeout False if search timeout is over

**Parameters**
- search: pointer to search object
- timeout: time in milliseconds to wait for answers
- results: pointer to the results of the query

Query mDNS for host or service asynchronously. Search has to be tested for progress and deleted manually!

**Return** mdns_search_once_s pointer to new search object if query initiated successfully. NULL otherwise.

**Parameters**
- name: service instance or host name (NULL for PTR queries)
- service_type: service type (_http, _arduino, _ftp etc.) (NULL for host queries)
- proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.) (NULL for host queries)
- type: type of query (MDNS_TYPE_*)
- timeout: time in milliseconds during which mDNS query is active
- max_results: maximum results to be collected
- notifier: Notification function to be called when the result is ready, can be NULL

Get result of search query.

**Return**
- esp_err_t esp_err_t: OK success

**Parameters**
- name: service instance or host name (NULL for PTR queries)
- service_type: service type (_http, _arduino, _ftp etc.) (NULL for host queries)
- proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.) (NULL for host queries)
- type: type of query (MDNS_TYPE_*)
- timeout: time in milliseconds during which mDNS query is active
- max_results: maximum results to be collected
- notifier: Notification function to be called when the result is ready, can be NULL
Chapter 2. API

Query mDNS for host or service

All following query methods are derived from this one.

Return

• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG timeout was not given

Parameters

• name: service instance or host name (NULL for PTR queries)
• service_type: service type (http, _arduino, _ftp etc.) (NULL for host queries)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.) (NULL for host queries)
• type: type of query (MDNS_TYPE_*)
• timeout: time in milliseconds to wait for answers.
• max_results: maximum results to be collected
• results: pointer to the results of the query results must be freed using mdns_query_results_free below

```c
void mdns_query_results_free (mdns_result_t *results)
```

Free query results.

Parameters

• results: linked list of results to be freed

```c
esp_err_t mdns_query_ptr (const char *service_type, const char *proto, uint32_t timeout, size_t max_results, mdns_result_t **results)
```

Query mDNS for service.

Return

• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters

• service_type: service type (http, _arduino, _ftp etc.)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.)
• timeout: time in milliseconds to wait for answer.
• max_results: maximum results to be collected
• results: pointer to the results of the query

```c
disp_err_t mdns_query_srv (const char *instance_name, const char *service_type, const char *proto, uint32_t timeout, mdns_result_t **result)
```

Query mDNS for SRV record.

Return

• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters

• instance_name: service instance name
• service_type: service type (http, _arduino, _ftp etc.)
• proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.)
• timeout: time in milliseconds to wait for answer.
• result: pointer to the result of the query

```c
disp_err_t mdns_query_txt (const char *instance_name, const char *service_type, const char *proto, uint32_t timeout, mdns_result_t **result)
```

Query mDNS for TXT record.

Return

• ESP_OK success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters
- instance_name: service instance name
- service_type: service type (_http, _arduino, _ftp etc.)
- proto: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.)
- timeout: time in milliseconds to wait for answer.
- result: pointer to the result of the query

```c
esp_err_t mdns_query_a (const char *host_name, uint32_t timeout, esp_ip4_addr_t *addr)
```
Query mDNS for A record.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters
- host_name: host name to look for
- timeout: time in milliseconds to wait for answer.
- addr: pointer to the resulting IP4 address

```c
esp_err_t mdns_query_aaaa (const char *host_name, uint32_t timeout, esp_ip6_addr_t *addr)
```
Query mDNS for A record.

Please note that hostname must not contain domain name, as mDNS uses ‘.local’ domain.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters
- host_name: host name to look for
- timeout: time in milliseconds to wait for answer. If 0, max_results needs to be defined
- addr: pointer to the resulting IP6 address

```c
esp_err_t mdns_handle_system_event (void *ctx, system_event_t *event)
```
System event handler This method controls the service state on all active interfaces and applications are required to call it from the system event handler for normal operation of mDNS service.

Please note that hostname must not contain domain name, as mDNS uses ‘.local’ domain.

Parameters
- ctx: The system event context
- event: The system event

Structures
```c
struct mdns_txt_item_t
```
mDNS basic text item structure Used in mdns_service_add()

Public Members
```c
const char *key
```
item key name
```c
const char *value
```
item value string
```c
struct mdns_ip_addr_s
```
mDNS query linked list IP item
Public Members

```c
esp_ip_addr_t addr
   IP address
```

```c
struct mdns_ip_addr_s *next
   next IP, or NULL for the last IP in the list
```

```c
struct mdns_result_s
   mDNS query result structure
```

Public Members

```c
struct mdns_result_s *next
   next result, or NULL for the last result in the list
```

```c
mdns_if_t tcpip_if
   interface index
```

```c
uint32_t ttl
   time to live
```

```c
mdns_ip_protocol_t ip_protocol
   ip_protocol type of the interface (v4/v6)
```

```c
char *instance_name
   instance name
```

```c
char *service_type
   service type
```

```c
char *proto
   service protocol
```

```c
char *hostname
   hostname
```

```c
uint16_t port
   service port
```

```c
mdns_txt_item_t *txt
   txt record
```

```c
uint8_t *txt_value_len
   array of txt value len of each record
```

```c
size_t txt_count
   number of txt items
```

```c
mdns_ip_addr_t *addr
   linked list of IP addresses found
```

Macros

```c
#define MDNS_TYPE_A
#define MDNS_TYPE_PTR
#define MDNS_TYPE_TXT
#define MDNS_TYPE_AAAA
#define MDNS_TYPE_SRV
#define MDNS_TYPE_OPT
#define MDNS_TYPE_NSEC
#define MDNS_TYPE_ANY
```
Type Definitions

typedef struct mdns_search_once_s mdns_search_once_t
    Asynchronous query handle.
typedef struct mdns_ip_addr_s mdns_ip_addr_t
    mDNS query linked list IP item

typedef enum mdns_if_internal mdns_if_t

typedef struct mdns_result_s mdns_result_t
    mDNS query result structure

typedef void (*mdns_query_notify_t)(mdns_search_once_t *search)

Enumerations
enum mdns_ip_protocol_t
    mDNS enum to specify the ip_protocol type
    Values:
    MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_V4
    MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_V6
    MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_MAX

enum mdns_if_internal
    Values:
    MDNS_IF_STA = 0
    MDNS_IF_AP = 1
    MDNS_IF_ETH = 2
    MDNS_IF_MAX

2.4.2 ESP-TLS

Overview

The ESP-TLS component provides a simplified API interface for accessing the commonly used TLS functionality. It supports common scenarios like CA certification validation, SNI, ALPN negotiation, non-blocking connection among others. All the configuration can be specified in the esp_tls_cfg_t data structure. Once done, TLS communication can be conducted using the following APIs:

- esp_tls_conn_new(): for opening a new TLS connection.
- esp_tls_conn_read(): for reading from the connection.
- esp_tls_conn_write(): for writing into the connection.
- esp_tls_conn_delete(): for freeing up the connection.

Any application layer protocol like HTTP1, HTTP2 etc can be executed on top of this layer.

Application Example

Simple HTTPS example that uses ESP-TLS to establish a secure socket connection: protocols/https_request.

Tree structure for ESP-TLS component
Chapter 2. API

The ESP-TLS component has a file esp-tls/esp_tls.h which contain the public API headers for the component. Internally ESP-TLS component uses one of the two SSL/TLS Libraries between mbedtls and wolfssl for its operation. API specific to mbedtls are present in esp-tls/private_include/esp_tls_mbedtls.h and API specific to wolfssl are present in esp-tls/private_include/esp_tls_wolfssl.h.

### TLS Server verification

The ESP-TLS provides multiple options for TLS server verification on the client side. The ESP-TLS client can verify the server by validating the peer’s server certificate or with the help of pre-shared keys. The user should select only one of the following options in the esp_tls_cfg_t structure for TLS server verification. If no option is selected then client will return a fatal error by default at the time of the TLS connection setup.

- **cacert_buf** and **cacert_bytes**: The CA certificate can be provided in a buffer to the esp_tls_cfg_t structure. The ESP-TLS will use the CA certificate present in the buffer to verify the server. The following variables in esp_tls_cfg_t structure must be set.
  - cacert_buf - pointer to the buffer which contains the CA cert.
  - cacert_bytes - size of the CA certificate in bytes.

- **use_global_ca_store**: The global_ca_store can be initialized and set at once. Then it can be used to verify the server for all the ESP-TLS connections which have set use_global_ca_store = true in their respective esp_tls_cfg_t structure. See API Reference section below on information regarding different API used for initializing and setting up the global_ca_store.

- **crt_bundle_attach**: The ESPx509 Certificate Bundle API provides an easy way to include a bundle of custom x509 root certificates for TLS server verification. More details can be found at ESP x509 Certificate Bundle.

- **psk_hint_key**: To use pre-shared keys for server verification, CONFIG_ESP_TLS_PSK_VERIFICATION should be enabled in the ESP-TLS menuconfig. Then the pointer to PSK hint and key should be provided to the esp_tls_cfg_t structure. The ESP-TLS will use the PSK for server verification only when no other option regarding the server verification is selected.

- **skip server verification**: This is an insecure option provided in the ESP-TLS for testing purpose. The option can be set by enabling CONFIG_ESP_TLS_INSECURE and CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SKIP_SERVER_CERT_VERIFY in the ESP-TLS menuconfig. When this option is enabled the ESP-TLS will skip server verification by default when no other options for server verification are selected in the esp_tls_cfg_t structure. WARNING:Enabling this option comes with a potential risk of establishing a TLS connection with a server which has a fake identity, provided that the server certificate is not provided either through API or other mechanism like ca_store etc.

### Underlying SSL/TLS Library Options

The ESP-TLS component has an option to use mbedtls or wolfssl as their underlying SSL/TLS library. By default only mbedtls is available and is used, wolfssl SSL/TLS library is available publicly at https://github.com/espressif/esp-wolfssl. The repository provides wolfssl component in binary format, it also provides few examples which are useful for understanding the API. Please refer the repository README.md for information on licensing and other options. Please see below option for using wolfssl in your project.

---

**Note**: As the library options are internal to ESP-TLS, switching the libraries will not change ESP-TLS specific code for a project.
How to use wolfssl with ESP-IDF

There are two ways to use wolfssl in your project

1) Directly add wolfssl as a component in your project with following three commands:

```
(First change directory (cd) to your project directory)
mkdir components
cd components
git clone https://github.com/espressif/esp-wolfssl.git
```

2) Add wolfssl as an extra component in your project.
   • Download wolfssl with:
     ```
git clone https://github.com/espressif/esp-wolfssl.git
     ```
   • Include esp-wolfssl in ESP-IDF with setting EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS in CMakeLists.txt of your project as done in wolfssl/examples. For reference see Optional Project variables in build-system.

After above steps, you will have option to choose wolfssl as underlying SSL/TLS library in configuration menu of your project as follows:

```
idf.py menuconfig -> ESP-TLS -> choose SSL/TLS Library -> mbedtls/wolfssl
```

Comparison between mbedtls and wolfssl

The following table shows a typical comparison between wolfssl and mbedtls when protocols/https_request example (which has server authentication) was run with both SSL/TLS libraries and with all respective configurations set to default. (mbedtls IN_CONTENT length and OUT_CONTENT length were set to 16384 bytes and 4096 bytes respectively)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Wolfssl</th>
<th>Mbedtls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Heap Consumed</td>
<td>~19 Kb</td>
<td>~37 Kb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Stack Used</td>
<td>~2.2 Kb</td>
<td>~3.6 Kb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bin size</td>
<td>~858 Kb</td>
<td>~736 Kb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: These values are subject to change with change in configuration options and version of respective libraries.

ATECC608A (Secure Element) with ESP-TLS

ESP-TLS provides support for using ATECC608A cryptoauth chip with ESP32-WROOM-32SE. Use of ATECC608A is supported only when ESP-TLS is used with mbedTLS as its underlying SSL/TLS stack. ESP-TLS uses mbedtls as its underlying TLS/SSL stack by default unless changed manually.

Note: ATECC608A chip on ESP32-WROOM-32SE must be already configured and provisioned, for details refer esp_cryptoauth_utility

To enable the secure element support, and use it in your project for TLS connection, you will have to follow below steps

1) Add esp-cryptoauthlib in your project, for details please refer esp-cryptoauthlib with ESP_IDF
2) Enable following menuconfig option:

```
menuconfig->Component config->ESP-TLS->Use Secure Element (ATECC608A) with ESP-TLS
```
3) Select type of ATECC608A chip with following option:

```
menuconfig->Component config->esp-cryptoauthlib->Choose Type of ATECC608A chip
```

to know more about different types of ATECC608A chips and how to obtain type of ATECC608A connected to
your ESP module please visit ATECC608A chip type

4) Enable use of ATECC608A in ESP-TLS by providing following config option in `esp_tls_cfg_t`

```
esp_tls_cfg_t cfg = {
    /* other configurations options */
    .use_secure_element = true,
};
```

API Reference

Header File

- components/esp-tls/esp_tls.h

Functions

```c
esp_tls_t *esp_tls_init (void)
Create TLS connection.
This function allocates and initializes esp-tls structure handle.
```

Return
tls Pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle if successfully initialized, NULL if allocation error

```c
esp_tls_t *esp_tls_conn_new(const char *hostname, int hostlen, int port, const esp_tls_cfg_t *cfg)
Create a new blocking TLS/SSL connection.
This function establishes a TLS/SSL connection with the specified host in blocking manner.
Note: This API is present for backward compatibility reasons. Alternative function with the same functionality
is `esp_tls_conn_new_sync` (and its asynchronous version `esp_tls_conn_new_async`)
```

Return pointer to esp_tls_t, or NULL if connection couldn’t be opened.

Parameters

- [in] hostname: Hostname of the host.
- [in] port: Port number of the host.
- [in] cfg: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t. If you wish to open non-TLS connection, keep this
NULL. For TLS connection, a pass pointer to esp_tls_cfg_t. At a minimum, this structure should
be zero-initialized.

```c
int esp_tls_conn_new_sync(const char *hostname, int hostlen, int port, const esp_tls_cfg_t *cfg,
                          esp_tls_t *tls)
Create a new blocking TLS/SSL connection.
This function establishes a TLS/SSL connection with the specified host in blocking manner.
```

Return

- -1 If connection establishment fails.
- 1 If connection establishment is successful.
- 0 If connection state is in progress.

Parameters

- [in] hostname: Hostname of the host.
- [in] port: Port number of the host.
- [in] cfg: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t. If you wish to open non-TLS connection, keep this
NULL. For TLS connection, a pass pointer to esp_tls_cfg_t. At a minimum, this structure should
be zero-initialized.
- [in] tls: Pointer to esp_tls as esp-tls handle.
**esp_tls_t** *esp_tls_conn_http_new(const *url, const esp_tls_cfg_t *cfg)*

Create a new blocking TLS/SSL connection with a given “HTTP” url.

The behaviour is same as esp_tls_conn_new() API. However this API accepts host’s url.

**Return**  
pointer to esp_tls_t, or NULL if connection couldn’t be opened.

**Parameters**

- [in] url: url of host.
- [in] cfg: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t. If you wish to open non-TLS connection, keep this NULL. For TLS connection, a pass pointer to ‘esp_tls_cfg_t’. At a minimum, this structure should be zero-initialized.

**int esp_tls_conn_new_async(const char *hostname, int hostlen, int port, const esp_tls_cfg_t *cfg, esp_tls_t **tls)**

Create a new non-blocking TLS/SSL connection.

This function initiates a non-blocking TLS/SSL connection with the specified host, but due to its non-blocking nature, it doesn’t wait for the connection to get established.

**Return**

- -1 If connection establishment fails.
- 0 If connection establishment is in progress.
- 1 If connection establishment is successful.

**Parameters**

- [in] hostname: Hostname of the host.
- [in] port: Port number of the host.
- [in] cfg: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t. non_block member of this structure should be set to be true.
- [in] tls: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

**int esp_tls_conn_http_new_async(const char *url, const esp_tls_cfg_t *cfg, esp_tls_t **tls)**

Create a new non-blocking TLS/SSL connection with a given “HTTP” url.

The behaviour is same as esp_tls_conn_new() API. However this API accepts host’s url.

**Return**

- -1 If connection establishment fails.
- 0 If connection establishment is in progress.
- 1 If connection establishment is successful.

**Parameters**

- [in] url: url of host.
- [in] cfg: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t.
- [in] tls: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

**static ssize_t esp_tls_conn_write(esp_tls_t *tls, const void *data, size_t datalen)**

Write from buffer ‘data’ into specified tls connection.

**Return**

- >=0 if write operation was successful, the return value is the number of bytes actually written to the TLS/SSL connection.
- <0 if write operation was not successful, because either an error occurred or an action must be taken by the calling process.
- ESP_TLS_ERR_SSL_WANT_READ/ ESP_TLS_ERR_SSL_WANT_WRITE. if the handshake is incomplete and waiting for data to be available for reading. In this case this functions needs to be called again when the underlying transport is ready for operation.

**Parameters**

- [in] tls: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.
- [in] data: Buffer from which data will be written.
- [in] datalen: Length of data buffer.

**static ssize_t esp_tls_conn_read(esp_tls_t *tls, void *data, size_t datalen)**

Read from specified tls connection into the buffer ‘data’.
Return
• >0 if read operation was successful, the return value is the number of bytes actually read from the TLS/SSL connection.
• 0 if read operation was not successful. The underlying connection was closed.
• <0 if read operation was not successful, because either an error occurred or an action must be taken by the calling process.

Parameters
• [in] tls: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.
• [in] data: Buffer to hold read data.
• [in] datalen: Length of data buffer.

void esp_tls_conn_delete (esp_tls_t *tls)
Compatible version of esp_tls_conn_destroy() to close the TLS/SSL connection.

Note This API will be removed in IDFv5.0

Parameters
• [in] tls: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

int esp_tls_conn_destroy (esp_tls_t *tls)
Close the TLS/SSL connection and free any allocated resources.
This function should be called to close each tls connection opened with esp_tls_conn_new() or esp_tls_conn_http_new() APIs.

Return
- 0 on success
• -1 if socket error or an invalid argument

Parameters
• [in] tls: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

ssize_t esp_tls_get_bytes_avail (esp_tls_t *tls)
Return the number of application data bytes remaining to be read from the current record.
This API is a wrapper over mbedtls’s mbedtls_ssl_get_bytes_avail() API.

Return
• -1 in case of invalid arg
• bytes available in the application data record read buffer

Parameters
• [in] tls: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

esp_err_t esp_tls_get_conn_sockfd (esp_tls_t *tls, int *sockfd)
Returns the connection socket file descriptor from esp_tls session.

Return
- ESP_OK on success and value of sockfd will be updated with socket file descriptor for connection
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if (tls == NULL || sockfd == NULL)

Parameters
• [in] tls: handle to esp_tls context
• [out] sockfd: int pointer to sockfd value.

esp_err_t esp_tls_init_global_ca_store (void)
Create a global CA store, initially empty.
This function should be called if the application wants to use the same CA store for multiple connections. This function initialises the global CA store which can be then set by calling esp_tls_set_global_ca_store(). To be effective, this function must be called before any call to esp_tls_set_global_ca_store().

Return
• ESP_OK if creating global CA store was successful.
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if an error occurred when allocating the mbedtls resources.

esp_err_t esp_tls_set_global_ca_store (const unsigned char *cacert_pem_buf, const unsigned int cacert_pem_bytes)
Set the global CA store with the buffer provided in pem format.
This function should be called if the application wants to set the global CA store for multiple connections i.e. to add the certificates in the provided buffer to the certificate chain. This function implicitly calls
esp_tls_init_global_ca_store() if it has not already been called. The application must call this function before calling esp_tls_conn_new().

Return
- ESP_OK if adding certificates was successful.
- Other if an error occurred or an action must be taken by the calling process.

Parameters
- [in] cacert_pem_buf: Buffer which has certificates in pem format. This buffer is used for creating a global CA store, which can be used by other tls connections.

void esp_tls_free_global_ca_store(void)
Free the global CA store currently being used.

The memory being used by the global CA store to store all the parsed certificates is freed up. The application can call this API if it no longer needs the global CA store.

esp_err_t esp_tls_get_and_clear_last_error(esp_tls_error_handle_t h, int *esp_tls_code, int *esp_tls_flags)
Returns last error in esp_tls with detailed mbedtls related error codes. The error information is cleared internally upon return.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if invalid parameters
- ESP_OK (0) if no error occurred
- specific error code (based on ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_BASE) otherwise

Parameters
- [in] h: esp-tls error handle.
- [out] esp_tls_code: last error code returned from mbedtls api (set to zero if none) This pointer could be NULL if caller does not care about esp_tls_code
- [out] esp_tls_flags: last certification verification flags (set to zero if none) This pointer could be NULL if caller does not care about esp_tls_code

esp_err_t esp_tls_get_and_clear_error_type(esp_tls_error_handle_t h, esp_tls_error_type_t err_type, int *error_code)
Returns the last error captured in esp_tls of a specific type The error information is cleared internally upon return.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if invalid parameters
- ESP_OK if a valid error returned and was cleared

Parameters
- [in] h: esp-tls error handle.
- [in] err_type: specific error type
- [out] error_code: last error code returned from mbedtls api (set to zero if none) This pointer could be NULL if caller does not care about esp_tls_code

mbedtls_x509_crt *esp_tls_get_global_ca_store(void)
Get the pointer to the global CA store currently being used.

The application must first call esp_tls_set_global_ca_store(). Then the same CA store could be used by the application for APIs other than esp_tls.

Note  Modifying the pointer might cause a failure in verifying the certificates.

Return
- Pointer to the global CA store currently being used if successful.
- NULL if there is no global CA store set.

esp_err_t esp_tls_plain_tcp_connect(const char *host, int hostlen, int port, const esp_tls_cfg_t *cfg, esp_tls_error_handle_t error_handle, int *sockfd)
Creates a plain TCP connection, returning a valid socket fd on success or an error handle.

Return  ESP_OK on success ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if invalid output parameters ESP-TLS based error codes on failure

Parameters
• [in] host: Hostname of the host.
• [in] hostlen: Length of hostname.
• [in] port: Port number of the host.
• [in] cfg: ESP-TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t.
• [out] error_handle: ESP-TLS error handle holding potential errors occurred during connection
• [out] sockfd: Socket descriptor if successfully connected on TCP layer

Structures

struct psk_key_hint
ESP-TLS preshared key and hint structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t *key
key in PSK authentication mode in binary format

const size_t key_size
length of the key

const char *hint
hint in PSK authentication mode in string format

struct tls_keep_alive_cfg
esp-tls client session ticket ctx
Keep alive parameters structure

Public Members

bool keep_alive_enable
Enable keep-alive timeout

int keep_alive_idle
Keep-alive idle time (second)

int keep_alive_interval
Keep-alive interval time (second)

int keep_alive_count
Keep-alive packet retry send count

struct esp_tls_cfg
ESP-TLS configuration parameters.

Note
Note about format of certificates:
• This structure includes certificates of a Certificate Authority, of client or server as well as private keys, which may be of PEM or DER format. In case of PEM format, the buffer must be NULL terminated (with NULL character included in certificate size).
• Certificate Authority’s certificate may be a chain of certificates in case of PEM format, but could be only one certificate in case of DER format.
• Variables names of certificates and private key buffers and sizes are defined as unions providing backward compatibility for legacy *_pem_buf and *_pem_bytes names which suggested only PEM format was supported. It is encouraged to use generic names such as cacert_buf and cacert_bytes.

Public Members

const char **alpn_protos
Application protocols required for HTTP2. If HTTP2/ALPN support is required, a list of protocols that
should be negotiated. The format is length followed by protocol name. For the most common cases the
following is ok: const char **alpn_protos = { “h2”, NULL };

- where ‘h2’ is the protocol name

```c
const unsigned char *cacert_buf
Certificate Authority’s certificate in a buffer. Format may be PEM or DER, depending on mbedtls-support
This buffer should be NULL terminated in case of PEM
```

```c
const unsigned char *cacert_pem_buf
CA certificate buffer legacy name
```

unsigned int cacert_bytes
Size of Certificate Authority certificate pointed to by cacert_buf (including NULL-terminator in case of PEM format)

unsigned int cacert_pem_bytes
Size of Certificate Authority certificate legacy name

```c
const unsigned char *clientcert_buf
Client certificate in a buffer Format may be PEM or DER, depending on mbedtls-support This buffer
should be NULL terminated in case of PEM
```

```c
const unsigned char *clientcert_pem_buf
Client certificate legacy name
```

unsigned int clientcert_bytes
Size of client certificate pointed to by clientcert_pem_buf (including NULL-terminator in case of PEM format)

unsigned int clientcert_pem_bytes
Size of client certificate legacy name

```c
const unsigned char *clientkey_buf
Client key in a buffer Format may be PEM or DER, depending on mbedtls-support This buffer should be
NULL terminated in case of PEM
```

```c
const unsigned char *clientkey_pem_buf
Client key legacy name
```

unsigned int clientkey_bytes
Size of client key pointed to by clientkey_pem_buf (including NULL-terminator in case of PEM format)

unsigned int clientkey_pem_bytes
Size of client key legacy name

```c
const unsigned char *clientkey_password
Client key decryption password string
```

unsigned int clientkey_password_len
String length of the password pointed to by clientkey_password

bool non_block
Configure non-blocking mode. If set to true the underneath socket will be configured in non blocking
mode after tls session is established

bool use_secure_element
Enable this option to use secure element or atecc608a chip (Integrated with ESP32-WROOM-32SE)

int timeout_ms
Network timeout in milliseconds

bool use_global_ca_store
Use a global ca_store for all the connections in which this bool is set.

```c
const char *common_name
If non-NULL, server certificate CN must match this name. If NULL, server certificate CN must match
hostname.
```
bool skip_common_name
Skip any validation of server certificate CN field

tls_keep_alive_cfg_t *keep_alive_cfg
Enable TCP keep-alive timeout for SSL connection

const psk_hint_key_t *psk_hint_key
Pointer to PSK hint and key. If not NULL (and certificates are NULL) then PSK authentication is enabled with configured setup. Important note: the pointer must be valid for connection

esp_err_t (*crt_bundle_attach) (void *conf)
Function pointer to esp_crt_bundle_attach. Enables the use of certification bundle for server verification, must be enabled in menuconfig

void *ds_data
Pointer for digital signature peripheral context

bool is_plain_tcp
Use non-TLS connection: When set to true, the esp-tls uses plain TCP transport rather than TLS/SSL connection. Note, that it is possible to connect using a plain tcp transport directly with esp_tls_plain_tcp_connect() API

struct ifreq *if_name
The name of interface for data to go through. Use the default interface without setting

struct esp_tls
ESP-TLS Connection Handle.

Public Members

mbedtls_ssl_context ssl
TLS/SSL context

mbedtls_entropy_context entropy
mbedtls entropy context structure

mbedtls_ctr_drbg_context ctr_drbg
mbedtls ctr drbg context structure. CTR_DRBG is deterministic random bit generation based on AES-256

mbedtls_ssl_config conf
TLS/SSL configuration to be shared between mbedtls_ssl_context structures

mbedtls_net_context server_fd
mbedtls wrapper type for sockets

mbedtls_x509_crt cacert
Container for the X.509 CA certificate

mbedtls_x509_crt *cacert_ptr
Pointer to the cacert being used.

mbedtls_x509_crt clientcert
Container for the X.509 client certificate

mbedtls_pk_context clientkey
Container for the private key of the client certificate

int sockfd
Underlying socket file descriptor.

ssize_t (*read) (struct esp_tls *tls, char *data, size_t datalen)
Callback function for reading data from TLS/SSL connection.

ssize_t (*write) (struct esp_tls *tls, const char *data, size_t datalen)
Callback function for writing data to TLS/SSL connection.
**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef enum esp_tls_conn_state esp_tls_conn_state_t ESP-TLS Connection State.
typedef enum esp_tls_role esp_tls_role_t ESP-TLS role.
typedef struct psk_key_hint psk_hint_key_t ESP-TLS preshared key and hint structure.
typedef struct tls_keep_alive_cfg tls_keep_alive_cfg_t esp-tls client session ticket ctx.
typedef struct esp_tls_cfg esp_tls_cfg_t ESP-TLS configuration parameters.
```

**Note**
- This structure includes certificates of a Certificate Authority, of client or server as well as private keys, which may be of PEM or DER format. In case of PEM format, the buffer must be NULL terminated (with NULL character included in certificate size).
- Certificate Authority’s certificate may be a chain of certificates in case of PEM format, but could be only one certificate in case of DER format.
- Variables names of certificates and private key buffers and sizes are defined as unions providing backward compatibility for legacy *_pem_buf and *_pem_bytes names which suggested only PEM format was supported. It is encouraged to use generic names such as cacert_buf and cacert_bytes.

```c
typedef struct esp_tls esp_tls_t ESP-TLS Connection Handle.
```

**Enumerations**

```c
enum esp_tls_conn_state

ESP-TLS Connection State.

Values:

ESP_TLS_INIT = 0
ESP_TLS_CONNECTING
ESP_TLS_HANDSHAKE
ESP_TLS_FAIL
ESP_TLS_DONE
```
Chapter 2. API

```c
enum esp_tls_role
{
    ESP_TLS_CLIENT = 0,
    ESP_TLS_SERVER
};
```

2.4.3 OpenSSL-APIs

注解：The OpenSSL-API will be discontinued in ESP-IDF from v5.0. Please use ESP-TLS <esp_tls> instead.

The code of this API (located in openssl directory), does not contain OpenSSL itself but is intended as a wrapper for applications using the OpenSSL API. It uses mbedtls to do the actual work, so anyone compiling openssl code needs the mbedtls library and header file.

OpenSSL APIs not mentioned in this article are not open to public for the time, also do not have the corresponding function. If user calls it directly, it will always return an error or may show cannot link at compiling time.

Chapter 1. SSL Context Method Create

1.1 `const SSL_METHOD* SSLv3_client_method(void)`

Arguments:

| none |

Return:

| SSLV3.0 version SSL context client method point |

Description:

| create the target SSL context method |

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = SSLv3_client_method();
    ...
}
```

1.2 `const SSL_METHOD* TLSv1_client_method(void)`

Arguments:

| none |

Return:
Chapter 2. API 参考

### 1.3 const SSL_METHOD* TLSv1_1_client_method (void)

**Arguments:**

none

**Return:**

TLSV1.1 version SSL context client method point

**Description:**

create the target SSL context method

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_1_client_method();
    ...
}
```

### 1.4 const SSL_METHOD* TLSv1_2_client_method (void)

**Arguments:**

none

**Return:**

TLSV1.2 version SSL context client method point

**Description:**

create the target SSL context method

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_2_client_method();
    ...
}
```

### 1.5 const SSL_METHOD* TLS_client_method (void)

TLSV1.0 version SSL context client method point

**Description:**

create the target SSL context method

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_client_method();
    ...
}
```
### 2. API

**TLSv1.2 version SSL context client method point**

**Description:**
create the default SSL context method, it's always to be TLSV1.2

**Example:**
```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_2_client_method();
    ...
}
```

### 1.6 const SSL_METHOD* SSLv3_server_method (void)

**Arguments:**
none

**Return:**
SSLV3.0 version SSL context server method point

**Description:**
create the target SSL context method

**Example:**
```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = SSLv3_server_method();
    ...
}
```

### 1.7 const SSL_METHOD* TLSv1_server_method (void)

**Arguments:**
none

**Return:**
TLSV1.0 version SSL context server method point

**Description:**
create the target SSL context method

**Example:**
```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_server_method();
    ...
}
```
1.8 const SSL_METHOD* TLSv1_1_server_method (void)

Arguments:

none

Return:

TLSV1.1 version SSL context server method point

Description:

create the target SSL context method

Example:

void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_1_server_method();
    ...
}

1.9 const SSL_METHOD* TLSv1_2_server_method (void)

Arguments:

none

Return:

TLSV1.2 version SSL context server method point

Description:

create the target SSL context method

Example:

void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_2_server_method();
    ...
}

1.10 const SSL_METHOD* TLS_server_method (void)

Arguments:

none

Return:

TLSV1.2 version SSL context server method point

Description:
create the default SSL context method, it's always to be TLSV1.2

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_2_server_method();
    ...
}
```

Chapter 2. SSL Context Function

2.1 SSL_CTX* SSL_CTX_new (const SSL_METHOD * method)

Arguments:

- method - the SSL context method point

Return:

- context point

Description:

- create a SSL context

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL_CTX *ctx = SSL_CTX_new(SSLv3_server_method());
    ...
}
```

2.2 void SSL_CTX_free (SSL_CTX * ctx)

Arguments:

- ctx - the SSL context point

Return:

- none

Description:

- free a SSL context

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    ...
    SSL_CTX_free(ctx);
}
```
2.3 int SSL_CTX_set_ssl_version (SSL_CTX *ctx, const SSL_METHOD *meth)

Arguments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ctx</th>
<th>SSL context point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meth</td>
<td>SSL method point</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>OK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>failed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description:

set the SSL context version

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    const SSL_METHOD *meth;
    ...
    SSL_CTX_set_ssl_version(ctx, meth);
}
```

2.4 const SSL_METHOD* SSL_CTX_get_ssl_method (SSL_CTX *ctx)

Arguments:

| ctx | SSL context point |

Return:

SSL context method

Description:

get the SSL context method

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    ...
    method = SSL_CTX_get_ssl_method(ctx);
}
```

Chapter 3. SSL Function

3.1 SSL* SSL_new (SSL_CTX *ctx)

Arguments:

| ctx | SSL context point |

Return:
SSL method

Description:
create a SSL

Example:
```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    ...
    ssl = SSL_new(ctx);
}
```

3.2 void SSL_free (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
none

Description:
free SSL

Example:
```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    ...
    SSL_free(ssl);
}
```

3.3 int SSL_do_handshake (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
1 : OK
0 : failed, connect is close by remote
-1 : a error catch

Description:
perform the SSL handshake

Example:
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_do_handshake(ssl);
}

3.4 int SSL_connect (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

1 : OK
0 : failed, connect is close by remote
-1 : a error catch

Description:

connect to the remote SSL server

Example:

void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_connect(ssl);
}

3.5 int SSL_accept (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

1 : OK
0 : failed, connect is close by remote
-1 : a error catch

Description:

accept the remote connection

Example:

void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    (下页继续)
3.6 int SSL_shutdown (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
1 : OK
0 : failed, connect is close by remote
-1 : a error catch

Description:
shutdown the connection

Example:
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;
    ... ...
    ret = SSL_shutdown(ssl);
}

3.7 int SSL_clear (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
1 : OK
0 : failed

Description:
shutdown the connection

Example:
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;
    ... ...
    ret = SSL_clear(ssl);
}

3.8 int SSL_read (SSL * ssl, void * buffer, int len)

Arguments:
Chapter 2. API 参考

### 2.1 SSL_read

**Arguments:**

- `ssl` - point
- `buffer` - data buffer point
- `len` - data length

**Return:**

- `> 0` : OK, and return received data bytes
- `= 0` : no data received or connection is closed
- `< 0` : an error catch

**Description:**

read data from remote

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *buf;
    int len;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_read(ssl, buf, len);
}
```

### 3.9 int SSL_write (SSL * ssl, const void * buffer, int len)

**Arguments:**

- `ssl` - SSL point
- `buffer` - data buffer point
- `len` - data length

**Return:**

- `> 0` : OK, and return received data bytes
- `= 0` : no data sent or connection is closed
- `< 0` : an error catch

**Description:**

send the data to remote

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *buf;
    int len;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_write(ssl, buf, len);
}
```

### 3.10 SSL_CTX *SSL_get_SSL_CTX (const SSL * ssl)

**Arguments:**
Chapter 2. API

### 2.1 SSL

**ssl - SSL point**

**Return:**

SSL context

**Description:**

get SSL context of the SSL

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    ... ...
    ctx = SSL_get_SSL_CTX(ssl);
}
```

### 3.11 int SSL_get_shutdown (const SSL * ssl)

**Arguments:**

ssl - SSL point

**Return:**

shutdown mode

**Description:**

get SSL shutdown mode

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int mode;
    ... ...
    mode = SSL_get_SSL_CTX(ssl);
}
```

### 3.12 void SSL_set_shutdown (SSL * ssl, int mode)

**Arguments:**

ssl - SSL point

**Return:**

shutdown mode

**Description:**

set SSL shutdown mode

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    ... ...
    ctx = SSL_get_SSL_CTX(ssl);
}
```
3.13 const SSL_METHOD* SSL_get_ssl_method (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

SSL method

Description:

set SSL shutdown mode

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    const SSL_METHOD *method;
    ... ...
    method = SSL_get_ssl_method(ssl);
}
```

3.14 int SSL_set_ssl_method (SSL * ssl, const SSL_METHOD * method)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point
meth - SSL method point

Return:

1 : OK
0 : failed

Description:

set the SSL method

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    const SSL_METHOD *method;
    ... ...
    (下页继续)
```
Chapter 2. API 参考

```
ret = SSL_set_ssl_method(ssl, method);
```

3.15 int SSL_pending (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

data bytes

Description:

get received data bytes

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    ...
    ret = SSL_pending(ssl);
}
```

3.16 int SSL_has_pending (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

1 : Yes
0 : No

Description:

check if data is received

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    ...
    ret = SSL_has_pending(ssl);
}
```

3.17 int SSL_get_fd (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:
Chapter 2. API

3.18 int SSL_get_rfd (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

>= 0 : socket id
< 0 : a error catch

Description:

get the read only socket of the SSL

Example:

void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    ...
    ret = SSL_get_rfd(ssl);
}

3.19 int SSL_get_wfd (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

>= 0 : socket id
< 0 : a error catch

Description:

get the write only socket of the SSL

Example:
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    ...
    ret = SSL_get_wfd(ssl);
}

3.20 int SSL_set_fd (SSL * ssl, int fd)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point
fd - socket id

Return:
1 : OK
0 : failed

Description:
set socket to SSL

Example:

void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    int socket;
    ...
    ret = SSL_set_fd(ssl, socket);
}

3.21 int SSL_set_rfd (SSL * ssl, int fd)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point
fd - socket id

Return:
1 : OK
0 : failed

Description:
set read only socket to SSL

Example:

void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    int socket;
    ...
}
Chapter 2. API 参考

3.22 int SSL_set_wfd (SSL * ssl, int fd)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point
fd - socket id

Return:

1 : OK
0 : failed

Description:
set write only socket to SSL

Example:

void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    int socket;
    ...
    ret = SSL_set_wfd(ssl, socket);
}

3.23 int SSL_version (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

SSL version

Description:
get SSL version

Example:

void example(void)
{
    int version;
    SSL *ssl;
    ...
    version = SSL_version(ssl);
}

3.24 const char* SSL_get_version (const SSL * ssl)
2. API

### SSL_get_version

**Arguments:**
ssl - SSL point

**Return:**
SSL version string

**Description:**
get the SSL current version string

**Example:**
```c
void example(void)
{
    char *version;
    SSL *ssl;
    ...
    version = SSL_get_version(ssl);
}
```

### SSL_get_state

**Arguments:**
ssl - SSL point

**Return:**
SSL state

**Description:**
get the SSL state

**Example:**
```c
void example(void)
{
    OSSL_HANDSHAKE_STATE state;
    SSL *ssl;
    ...
    state = SSL_get_state(ssl);
}
```

### SSL_alert_desc_string

**Arguments:**
value - SSL description

**Return:**
alert value string

**Description:**
get alert description string

Example:
void example(void)
{
    int val;
    char *str;
    ...
    str = SSL_alert_desc_string(val);
}

3.27 const char* SSL_alert_desc_string_long (int value)

Arguments:
value - SSL description

Return:
alert value long string

Description:
get alert description long string

Example:
void example(void)
{
    int val;
    char *str;
    ...
    str = SSL_alert_desc_string_long(val);
}

3.28 const char* SSL_alert_type_string (int value)

Arguments:
value - SSL type description

Return:
alert type string

Description:
get alert type string

Example:
void example(void)
{
    int val;
    char *str;
    ...
}
3.29 `const char* SSL_alert_type_string_long(int value)`

**Arguments:**

value - SSL type description

**Return:**

alert type long string

**Description:**

get alert type long string

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    int val;
    char *str;
    ... ...
    str = SSL_alert_type_string_long(val);
}
```

3.30 `const char* SSL_rstate_string(SSL *ssl)`

**Arguments:**

ssl - SSL point

**Return:**

state string

**Description:**

get the state string where SSL is reading

**Example:**

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *str;
    ... ...
    str = SSL_rstate_string(ssl);
}
```

3.31 `const char* SSL_rstate_string_long(SSL *ssl)`

**Arguments:**

ssl - SSL point

**Return:**
state long string

Description:
get the state long string where SSL is reading

Example:
```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *str;
    .... ....
    str = SSL_rstate_string_long(ssl);
}
```

3.32 `const char* SSL_state_string (const SSL * ssl)`

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
state string

Description:
get the state string

Example:
```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    const char *str;
    .... ....
    str = SSL_state_string(ssl);
}
```

3.33 `char* SSL_state_string_long (const SSL * ssl)`

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
state long string

Description:
get the state long string

Example:
null
3.36 int SSL_want_nothing (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
0 : false
1 : true

Description:
check if SSL want nothing

Example:
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;
    ...
    ret = SSL_want_nothing(ssl);
}

3.37 int SSL_want_read (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
0 : false
1 : true

Description:
check if SSL want to read

Example:
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;
    ...
    ret = SSL_want_read(ssl);
}

3.38 int SSL_want_write (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point

Return:
0 : false
1 : true
Chapter 2. API

Description:
check if SSL want to write

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;
    ... ...
    ret = SSL_want_write(ssl);
}
```

Chapter 4. SSL X509 Certification and Private Key Function

4.1 X509 * d2i_X509 (X509 ** cert, const unsigned char * buffer, long len)

Arguments:
cert - a point pointed to X509 certification
buffer - a point pointed to the certification context memory point
length - certification bytes

Return:
X509 certification object point

Description:
load a character certification context into system context. If '*cert' is
...pointed to the
certification, then load certification into it. Or create a new X509_.
...certification object

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    X509 *new;
    X509 *cert;
    unsigned char *buffer;
    long len;
    ... ...
    new = d2i_X509(&cert, buffer, len);
}
```

4.2 int SSL_add_client_CA (SSL * ssl, X509 * x)

Arguments:
ssl - SSL point
x - CA certification point

Return:
1 : OK
0 : failed
Chapter 2. API

Description:

add CA client certification into the SSL

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    X509 *new;
    ...
    ret = SSL_add_client_CA(ssl, new);
}
```

4.3 int SSL_CTX_add_client_CA (SSL_CTX * ctx, X509 * x)

Arguments:

ctx - SSL context point
x  - CA certification point

Return:

1 : OK
0 : failed

Description:

add CA client certification into the SSL context

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    X509 *new;
    ...
    ret = SSL_CTX_add_client_CA(ctx, new);
}
```

4.4 X509* SSL_get_certificate (const SSL * sss)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

SSL certification point

Description:

get the SSL certification point

Example:
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    X509 *cert;
    ...
    cert = SSL_get_certificate(ssl);
}

4.5 long SSL_get_verify_result (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

the result of verifying

Description:

get the verifying result of the SSL certification

Example:

void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    long ret;
    ...
    ret = SSL_get_verify_result(ssl);
}

4.6 int SSL_CTX_use_certificate (SSL_CTX * ctx, X509 * x)

Arguments:

ctx - the SSL context point
pkey - certification object point

Return:

1 : OK
0 : failed

Description:

load the certification into the SSL_CTX or SSL object

Example:

void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx
    X509 *new;
    ...
    }
4.7 int SSL_CTX_use_certificate_ASN1 (SSL_CTX * ctx, int len, const unsigned char * d)

Arguments:

- ctx - SSL context point
- len - certification length
- d - data point

Return:

- 1 : OK
- 0 : failed

Description:

load the ASN1 certification into SSL context

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    const unsigned char *buf;
    int len;
    ...
    ret = SSL_CTX_use_certificate_ASN1(ctx, len, buf);
}
```

4.8 int SSL_CTX_use_PrivateKey (SSL_CTX * ctx, EVP_PKEY * pkey)

Arguments:

- ctx - SSL context point
- pkey - private key object point

Return:

- 1 : OK
- 0 : failed

Description:

load the private key into the context object

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    EVP_PKEY *pkey;
    ...
    ret = SSL_CTX_use_PrivateKey(ctx, pkey);
}
```
4.9 int SSL_CTX_use_PrivateKey_ASN1 (int pk, SSL_CTX *ctx, const unsigned char *d, long len)

Arguments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ctx</td>
<td>SSL context point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>data point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>len</td>
<td>private key length</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>failed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description:

load the ASN1 private key into SSL context

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    int pk;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    const unsigned char *buf;
    long len;
    ...
    ...
    ret = SSL_CTX_use_PrivateKey_ASN1(pk, ctx, buf, len);
}
```

4.10 int SSL_CTX_use_RSAPrivateKey_ASN1 (SSL_CTX *ctx, const unsigned char *d, long len)

Arguments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ctx</td>
<td>SSL context point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>data point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>len</td>
<td>private key length</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>failed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description:

load the RSA ASN1 private key into SSL context

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    const unsigned char *buf;
    long len;
    ...
    ...
    ret = SSL_CTX_use_RSAPrivateKey_ASN1(ctx, buf, len);
}
```

4.11 int SSL_use_certificate_ASN1 (SSL *ssl, int len, const unsigned char *d)
Arguments:

ssl - SSL point
len - data bytes
d - data point

Return:

1 : OK
0 : failed

Description:

load certification into the SSL

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    const unsigned char *buf;
    long len;
    ... ...
    ret = SSL_use_certificate_ASN1(ssl, len, buf);
}
```

4.12 X509* SSL_get_peer_certificate (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

ssl - SSL point

Return:

peer certification

Description:

get peer certification

Example:

```c
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    X509 *peer;
    ... ...
    peer = SSL_get_peer_certificate(ssl);
}
```

### 2.4.4 ESP HTTP Client

**Overview**

esp_http_client provides an API for making HTTP/S requests from ESP-IDF programs. The steps to use this API for an HTTP request are:
• **esp_http_client_init()**: To use the HTTP client, the first thing we must do is create an esp_http_client bypass into this function with the esp_http_client_config_t configurations. Which configuration values we do not define, the library will use default.

• **esp_http_client_perform()**: The esp_http_client argument created from the init function is needed. This function performs all operations of the esp_http_client, from opening the connection, sending data, downloading data and closing the connection if necessary. All related events will be invoked in the event_handle (defined by esp_http_client_config_t). This function performs its job and blocks the current task until it’s done.

• **esp_http_client_cleanup()**: After completing our esp_http_client’s task, this is the last function to be called. It will close the connection (if any) and free up all the memory allocated to the HTTP client.

### Application Example

```c
esp_err_t _http_event_handle(esp_http_client_event_t *evt)
{
    switch(evt->event_id) {
        case HTTP_EVENT_ERROR:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ERROR");
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_ON_CONNECTED:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ON_CONNECTED");
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_HEADER_SENT:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_HEADER_SENT");
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER");
            printf("%.s", evt->data_len, (char*)evt->data);
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_ON_DATA:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ON_DATA, len=%d", evt->data_len);
            if (!esp_http_client_is_chunked_response(evt->client)) {
                printf("%.s", evt->data_len, (char*)evt->data);
            }
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_ON_FINISH:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ON_FINISH");
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_DISCONNECTED:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_DISCONNECTED");
            break;
    }
    return ESP_OK;
}

esp_http_client_config_t config = {
    .url = "http://httpbin.org/redirect/2",
    .event_handler = _http_event_handle,
};
esp_http_client_handle_t client = esp_http_client_init(&config);
esp_err_t err = esp_http_client_perform(client);
if (err == ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Status = %d, content_length = %d",
             esp_http_client_get_status_code(client),
             esp_http_client_get_content_length(client));
}
esp_http_client_cleanup(client);
```
Persistent Connections

Persistent connections mean that the HTTP client can re-use the same connection for several transfers. If the server does not request to close the connection with the `Connection: close` header, the new transfer with sample ip address, port, and protocol.

To allow the HTTP client to take full advantage of persistent connections, you should do as many of your file transfers as possible using the same handle.

Persistent Connections example

```c
esp_err_t err;
esp_http_client_config_t config = {
    .url = "http://httpbin.org/get",
};
esp_http_client_handle_t client = esp_http_client_init(&config);
// first request
err = esp_http_client_perform(client);

// second request
esp_http_client_set_url(client, "http://httpbin.org/anything")
esp_http_client_set_method(client, HTTP_METHOD_DELETE);
esp_http_client_set_header(client, "HeaderKey", "HeaderValue");
err = esp_http_client_perform(client);
esp_http_client_cleanup(client);
```

HTTPS

The HTTP client supports SSL connections using mbedtls, with the `url` configuration starting with `https` scheme (or `transport_type = HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL`). HTTPS support can be configured via `CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_HTTPS` (enabled by default).

注解： By providing information using HTTPS, the library will use the SSL transport type to connect to the server. If you want to verify server, then need to provide additional certificate in PEM format, and provide to `cert.pem` in `esp_http_client_config_t`.

HTTPS example

```c
static void https()
{
    esp_http_client_config_t config = {
        .url = "https://www.howsmyssl.com",
        .cert_pem = howsmyssl_com_root_cert_pem_start,
    };
    esp_http_client_handle_t client = esp_http_client_init(&config);
    esp_err_t err = esp_http_client_perform(client);

    if (err == ESP_OK) {
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Status = %d, content_length = %d",
            esp_http_client_get_status_code(client),
            esp_http_client_get_content_length(client));
    }
    esp_http_client_cleanup(client);
}
```
HTTP Stream

Some applications need to open the connection and control the reading of the data in an active manner. The HTTP client supports some functions to make this easier. Of course, once you use these functions, you should not use the `esp_http_client_perform()` function with that handle, and `esp_http_client_init()` always called first to get the handle. Perform these functions in the order below:

- `esp_http_client_init()`: to create and handle
- `esp_http_client_set_*` or `esp_http_client_delete_*`: to modify the http connection information (optional)
- `esp_http_client_open()`: Open the http connection with `write_len` parameter, `write_len=0` if we only need read
- `esp_http_client_write()`: Upload data, max length equal to `write_len` of `esp_http_client_open()` function. We may not need to call it if `write_len=0`
- `esp_http_client_fetch_headers()`: After sending the headers and write data (if any) to the server, this function will read the HTTP Server response headers. Calling this function will return the content-length from the Server, and we can call `esp_http_client_get_status_code()` for the HTTP status of the connection.
- `esp_http_client_read()`: Now, we can read the HTTP stream by this function.
- `esp_http_client_close()`: We should close the connection after finish
- `esp_http_client_cleanup()`: And release the resources

**Perform HTTP request as Stream reader** Check the example function `http_perform_as_stream_reader` at [protocols/esp_http_client](https://espressif.github.io/esp-http-client/)

HTTP Authentication

The HTTP client supports both Basic and Digest Authentication. By providing usernames and passwords in `url` or in the `username`, `password` of config entry. And with `auth_type = HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC`, the HTTP client takes only 1 perform to pass the authentication process. If `auth_type = HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_NONE`, but there are `username` and `password` in the configuration, the HTTP client takes 2 performs. The first time it connects to the server and receives the UNAUTHORIZED header. Based on this information, it will know which authentication method to choose, and perform it on the second.

**Config authentication example with URI**

```c
esp_http_client_config_t config = {
  .url = "http://user:passwd@httpbin.org/basic-auth/user/passwd",
  .auth_type = HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC,
};
```

**Config authentication example with username, password entry**

```c
esp_http_client_config_t config = {
  .url = "http://httpbin.org/basic-auth/user/passwd",
  .username = "user",
  .password = "passwd",
  .auth_type = HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC,
};
```

HTTP Client example: [protocols/esp_http_client](https://espressif.github.io/esp-http-client/).

API Reference

**Header File**

- `components/esp_http_client/include/esp_http_client.h`
## Functions

**esp_http_client_handle_t esp_http_client_init(const esp_http_client_config_t *config)**

Start a HTTP session. This function must be the first function to call, and it returns a `esp_http_client_handle_t` that you must use as input to other functions in the interface. This call MUST have a corresponding call to `esp_http_client_cleanup` when the operation is complete.

**Return**
- `esp_http_client_handle_t`
- `NULL` if any errors

**Parameters**
- `[in] config`: The configurations, see `http_client_config_t`

**esp_err_t esp_http_client_perform(esp_http_client_handle_t client)**

Invoke this function after `esp_http_client_init` and all the options calls are made, and will perform the transfer as described in the options. It must be called with the same `esp_http_client_handle_t` as input as the `esp_http_client_init` call returned. `esp_http_client_perform` performs the entire request in either blocking or non-blocking manner. By default, the API performs request in a blocking manner and returns when done, or if it failed, and in non-blocking manner, it returns if EAGAIN/EWOULDBLOCK or EINPROGRESS is encountered, or if it failed. And in case of non-blocking request, the user may call this API multiple times unless request & response is complete or there is a failure. To enable non-blocking `esp_http_client_perform()`, `is_async` member of `esp_http_client_config_t` must be set while making a call to `esp_http_client_init()` API. You can do any amount of calls to `esp_http_client_perform` while using the same `esp_http_client_handle_t`. The underlying connection may be kept open if the server allows it. If you intend to transfer more than one file, you are even encouraged to do so. `esp_http_client` will then attempt to re-use the same connection for the following transfers, thus making the operations faster, less CPU intense and using less network resources. Just note that you will have to use `esp_http_client_set_**` between the invoke to set options for the following `esp_http_client_perform`.

**Note** You must never call this function simultaneously from two places using the same client handle. Let the function return first before invoking it another time. If you want parallel transfers, you must use several `esp_http_client_handle_t`. This function include `esp_http_client_open` -> `esp_http_client_write` -> `esp_http_client_fetch_headers` -> `esp_http_client_read` (and option) `esp_http_client_close`.

**Return**
- `ESP_OK` on successful
- `ESP_FAIL` on error

**Parameters**
- `client`: The `esp_http_client` handle

**esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_url(esp_http_client_handle_t client, const char *url)**

Set URL for client, when performing this behavior, the options in the URL will replace the old ones.

**Return**
- `ESP_OK`
- `ESP_FAIL`

**Parameters**
- `[in] client`: The `esp_http_client` handle
- `[in] url`: The url

**esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_post_field(esp_http_client_handle_t client, const char *data, int len)**

Set post data, this function must be called before `esp_http_client_perform`. Note: The data parameter passed to this function is a pointer and this function will not copy the data.

**Return**
- `ESP_OK`
- `ESP_FAIL`

**Parameters**
- `[in] client`: The `esp_http_client` handle
- `[in] data`: post data pointer
- `[in] len`: post length

**int esp_http_client_get_post_field(esp_http_client_handle_t client, char **data)**
Get current post field information.

**Return** Size of post data

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The client
- **[out]** data: Point to post data pointer

```c
esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_header(esp_http_client_handle_t client, const char *key, const char *value)
```

Set http request header, this function must be called after `esp_http_client_init` and before any perform function.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The `esp_http_client` handle
- **[in]** key: The header key
- **[in]** value: The header value

```c
esp_err_t esp_http_client_get_header(esp_http_client_handle_t client, const char *key, char **value)
```

Get http request header. The value parameter will be set to NULL if there is no header which is same as the key specified, otherwise the address of header value will be assigned to value parameter. This function must be called after `esp_http_client_init`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The `esp_http_client` handle
- **[in]** key: The header key
- **[out]** value: The header value

```c
esp_err_t esp_http_client_get_username(esp_http_client_handle_t client, char **value)
```

Get http request username. The address of username buffer will be assigned to value parameter. This function must be called after `esp_http_client_init`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The `esp_http_client` handle
- **[out]** value: The username value

```c
esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_username(esp_http_client_handle_t client, const char *username)
```

Set http request username. The value of username parameter will be assigned to username buffer. If the username parameter is NULL then username buffer will be freed.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The `esp_http_client` handle
- **[in]** username: The username value

```c
esp_err_t esp_http_client_get_password(esp_http_client_handle_t client, char **value)
```

Get http request password. The address of password buffer will be assigned to value parameter. This function must be called after `esp_http_client_init`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

**Parameters**
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle
• [out] value: The password value

```
esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_password(esp_http_client_handle_t client, const char *password)
```

Set http request password. The value of password parameter will be assigned to password buffer. If the password parameter is NULL then password buffer will be freed.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle
• [in] password: The password value

```
esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_authtype(esp_http_client_handle_t client,
                                         esp_http_client_auth_type_t auth_type)
```

Set http request auth_type.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle
• [in] auth_type: The esp_http_client auth type

```
int esp_http_client_get_errno(esp_http_client_handle_t client)
```

Get HTTP client session errno.

Return
• (-1) if invalid argument
• errno

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle

```
esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_method(esp_http_client_handle_t client,
                                         esp_http_client_method_t method)
```

Set http request method.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle
• [in] method: The method

```
esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_timeout_ms(esp_http_client_handle_t client, int timeout_ms)
```

Set http request timeout.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle
• [in] timeout_ms: The timeout value

```
esp_err_t esp_http_client_delete_header(esp_http_client_handle_t client, const char *key)
```

Delete http request header.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_FAIL

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle
• [in] key: The key
**esp_err_t esp_http_client_open** *(esp_http_client_handle_t client, int write_len)*

This function will be open the connection, write all header strings and return.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The esp_http_client handle
- **[in]** write_len: HTTP Content length need to write to the server

**int esp_http_client_write** *(esp_http_client_handle_t client, const char* buffer, int len)*

This function will write data to the HTTP connection previously opened by esp_http_client_open()

**Return**
- (-1) if any errors
- Length of data written

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The esp_http_client handle
- buffer: The buffer
- **[in]** len: This value must not be larger than the write_len parameter provided to esp_http_client_open()

**int64_t esp_http_client_fetch_headers** *(esp_http_client_handle_t client)*

This function need to call after esp_http_client_open, it will read from http stream, process all receive headers.

**Return**
- (0) if stream doesn’t contain content-length header, or chunked encoding (checked by esp_http_client_is_chunked_response)
- (-1: ESP_FAIL) if any errors
- Download data length defined by content-length header

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The esp_http_client handle

**bool esp_http_client_is_chunked_response** *(esp_http_client_handle_t client)*

Check response data is chunked.

**Return** true or false

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The esp_http_client handle

**int esp_http_client_read** *(esp_http_client_handle_t client, char* buffer, int len)*

Read data from http stream.

**Return**
- (-1) if any errors
- Length of data was read

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The esp_http_client handle
- buffer: The buffer
- **[in]** len: The length

**int esp_http_client_get_status_code** *(esp_http_client_handle_t client)*

Get http response status code, the valid value if this function invoke after esp_http_client_perform

**Return** Status code

**Parameters**
- **[in]** client: The esp_http_client handle

**int64_t esp_http_client_get_content_length** *(esp_http_client_handle_t client)*

Get http response content length (from header Content-Length) the valid value if this function invoke after esp_http_client_perform

**Return**
- (-1) Chunked transfer
- Content-Length value as bytes
Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle

esp_err_t esp_http_client_close (esp_http_client_handle_t client)
Close http connection, still kept all http request resources.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_FAIL

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle

esp_err_t esp_http_client_cleanup (esp_http_client_handle_t client)
This function must be the last function to call for an session. It is the opposite of the esp_http_client_init function and must be called with the same handle as input that a esp_http_client_init call returned. This might close all connections this handle has used and possibly has kept open until now. Don’t call this function if you intend to transfer more files, re-using handles is a key to good performance with esp_http_client.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_FAIL

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle

esp_http_client_transport_t esp_http_client_get_transport_type (esp_http_client_handle_t client)
Get transport type.

Return
• HTTP_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN
• HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP
• HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle

esp_err_t esp_http_client_set_redirection (esp_http_client_handle_t client)
Set redirection URL. When received the 30x code from the server, the client stores the redirect URL provided by the server. This function will set the current URL to redirect to enable client to execute the redirection request.

Return
• ESP_OK
• ESP_FAIL

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle

void esp_http_client_add_auth (esp_http_client_handle_t client)
On receiving HTTP Status code 401, this API can be invoked to add authorization information.

Note There is a possibility of receiving body message with redirection status codes, thus make sure to flush off body data after calling this API.

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle

bool esp_http_client_is_complete_data_received (esp_http_client_handle_t client)
Checks if entire data in the response has been read without any error.

Return
• true
• false

Parameters
• [in] client: The esp_http_client handle

int esp_http_client_read_response (esp_http_client_handle_t client, char *buffer, int len)
Helper API to read larger data chunks This is a helper API which internally calls esp_http_client_read
multiple times till the end of data is reached or till the buffer gets full.

**Return**
- Length of data was read

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `buffer`: The buffer
- `[in]` `len`: The buffer length

```c
esp_err_t esp_http_client_flush_response(esp_http_client_handle_t client, int *len)
```
Process all remaining response data. This uses an internal buffer to repeatedly receive, parse, and discard response data until complete data is processed. As no additional user-supplied buffer is required, this may be preferable to `esp_http_client_read_response` in situations where the content of the response may be ignored.

**Return**
- ESP_OK If successful, `len` will have discarded length
- ESP_FAIL If failed to read response
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG If the client is NULL

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `len`: Length of data discarded

```c
esp_err_t esp_http_client_get_url(esp_http_client_handle_t client, char *url, const int len)
```
Get URL from client.

**Return**
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[inout]` `url`: The buffer to store URL
- `[in]` `len`: The buffer length

```c
esp_err_t esp_http_client_get_chunk_length(esp_http_client_handle_t client, int *len)
```
Get Chunk-Length from client.

**Return**
- ESP_OK If successful, `len` will have length of current chunk
- ESP_FAIL If the server is not a chunked server
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG If the client or `len` are NULL

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[out]` `len`: Variable to store length

**Structures**

```c
def struct esp_http_client_event:
    HTTPClient events data.
```

**Public Members**

```c
def event_id event_id
    event_id, to know the cause of the event
```

```c
def esp_http_client_handle_t client
    esp_http_client_handle_t context
```

```c
void *data
data of the event
```

```c
int data_len
data length of data
```
void *user_data
    user_data context, from esp_http_client_config_t user_data

char *header_key
    For HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER event_id, it’s store current http header key

char *header_value
    For HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER event_id, it’s store current http header value

struct esp_http_client_config_t
    HTTP configuration.

Public Members

const char *url
    HTTP URL, the information on the URL is most important, it overrides the other fields below, if any

const char *host
    Domain or IP as string

int port
    Port to connect, default depend on esp_http_client_transport_t (80 or 443)

const char *username
    Using for Http authentication

const char *password
    Using for Http authentication

esp_http_client_auth_type_t auth_type
    Http authentication type, see esp_http_client_auth_type_t

const char *path
    HTTP Path, if not set, default is /

const char *query
    HTTP query

const char *cert_pem
    SSL server certification, PEM format as string, if the client requires to verify server

size_t cert_len
    Length of the buffer pointed to by cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char *client_cert_pem
    SSL client certification, PEM format as string, if the server requires to verify client

size_t client_cert_len
    Length of the buffer pointed to by client_cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char *client_key_pem
    SSL client key, PEM format as string, if the server requires to verify client

size_t client_key_len
    Length of the buffer pointed to by client_key_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char *client_key_password
    Client key decryption password string

size_t client_key_password_len
    String length of the password pointed to by client_key_password

const char *user_agent
    The User Agent string to send with HTTP requests

esp_http_client_method_t method
    HTTP Method
int timeout_ms
   Network timeout in milliseconds

bool disable_auto_redirect
   Disable HTTP automatic redirects

int max_redirection_count
   Max number of redirections on receiving HTTP redirect status code, using default value if zero

int max_authorization_retries
   Max connection retries on receiving HTTP unauthorized status code, using default value if zero. Disables
   authorization retry if -1

http_event_handle_cb event_handler
   HTTP Event Handle

esp_http_client_transport_t transport_type
   HTTP transport type, see esp_http_client_transport_t

int buffer_size
   HTTP receive buffer size

int buffer_size_tx
   HTTP transmit buffer size

void *user_data
   HTTP user_data context

bool is_async
   Set asynchronous mode, only supported with HTTPS for now

bool use_global_ca_store
   Use a global ca_store for all the connections in which this bool is set.

bool skip_cert_common_name_check
   Skip any validation of server certificate CN field

esp_err_t (crt_bundle_attach) (void *conf)
   Function pointer to esp_crt_bundle_attach. Enables the use of certification bundle for server verification,
   must be enabled in menuconfig

bool keep_alive_enable
   Enable keep-alive timeout

int keep_alive_idle
   Keep-alive idle time. Default is 5 (second)

int keep_alive_interval
   Keep-alive interval time. Default is 5 (second)

int keep_alive_count
   Keep-alive packet retry send count. Default is 3 counts

struct ifreq *if_name
   The name of interface for data to go through. Use the default interface without setting

Macros

DEFAULT_HTTP_BUF_SIZE
ESP_ERR_HTTP_BASE
   Starting number of HTTP error codes

ESP_ERR_HTTP_MAX_REDIRECT
   The error exceeds the number of HTTP redirects

ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECT
   Error open the HTTP connection
Chapter 2. API

ESP_ERR_HTTP_WRITE_DATA
Error write HTTP data

ESP_ERR_HTTP_FETCH_HEADER
Error read HTTP header from server

ESP_ERR_HTTP_INVALID_TRANSPORT
There are no transport support for the input scheme

ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTING
HTTP connection hasn’t been established yet

ESP_ERR_HTTP_EAGAIN
Mapping of errno EAGAIN to esp_err_t

ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTION_CLOSED
Read FIN from peer and the connection closed

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_http_client *esp_http_client_handle_t

typedef struct esp_http_client_event *esp_http_client_event_handle_t

typedef struct esp_http_client_event esp_http_client_event_t
HTTP Client events data.

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_CLIENT_EVENTS_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_CLIENT_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_PARSER_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_TRANSPORT_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_SERVER_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_SHARED_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_STREAM_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_PARSER_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_CLIENT_EVENTS_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_CLIENT_HANDLE_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_PROCESSOR_H_

#ifndef _ESP_IDF_HTTP_STREAM_H_

#endif _ESP_IDF_HTTP_PARSER_EVENTS_H_

enum esp_http_client_event_id_t
HTTP Client events id.

Values:

HTTP_EVENT_ERROR = 0
This event occurs when there are any errors during execution

HTTP_EVENT_ON_CONNECTED
Once the HTTP has been connected to the server, no data exchange has been performed

HTTP_EVENT_HEADERS_SENT
After sending all the headers to the server

HTTP_EVENT_HEADER_SENT = HTTP_EVENT_HEADERS_SENT
This header has been kept for backward compatability and will be deprecated in future versions esp-idf

HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER
Occurs when receiving each header sent from the server

HTTP_EVENT_ON_DATA
Occurs when receiving data from the server, possibly multiple portions of the packet

HTTP_EVENT_ON_FINISH
Occurs when finish a HTTP session

HTTP_EVENT_DISCONNECTED
The connection has been disconnected

eenum esp_http_client_transport_t
HTTP Client transport.

Values:

HTTP_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN = 0x0
Unknown

HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP
Transport over tcp
HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL
Transport over ssl

enum esp_http_client_method_t
HTTP method.
Values:

HTTP_METHOD_GET = 0
HTTP GET Method

HTTP_METHOD_POST
HTTP POST Method

HTTP_METHOD_PUT
HTTP PUT Method

HTTP_METHOD_PATCH
HTTP PATCH Method

HTTP_METHOD_DELETE
HTTP DELETE Method

HTTP_METHOD_HEAD
HTTP HEAD Method

HTTP_METHOD_NOTIFY
HTTP NOTIFY Method

HTTP_METHOD_SUBSCRIBE
HTTP SUBSCRIBE Method

HTTP_METHOD_UNSUBSCRIBE
HTTP UNSUBSCRIBE Method

HTTP_METHOD_OPTIONS
HTTP OPTIONS Method

HTTP_METHOD_COPY
HTTP COPY Method

HTTP_METHOD_MOVE
HTTP MOVE Method

HTTP_METHOD_LOCK
HTTP LOCK Method

HTTP_METHOD_UNLOCK
HTTP UNLOCK Method

HTTP_METHOD_PROPFIND
HTTP PROPFIND Method

HTTP_METHOD_PROPPATCH
HTTP PROPPATCH Method

HTTP_METHOD_MKCOL
HTTP MKCOL Method

HTTP_METHOD_MAX

enum esp_http_client_auth_type_t
HTTP Authentication type.
Values:

HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_NONE = 0
No authention
HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC
HTTP Basic authentication

HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_DIGEST
HTTP Digest authentication

enum HttpStatus_Code
Enum for the HTTP status codes.

Values:
HttpStatus_Ok = 200
HttpStatus_MultipleChoices = 300
HttpStatus MovedPermanently = 301
HttpStatus_Found = 302
HttpStatus_TemporaryRedirect = 307
HttpStatus_BadRequest = 400
HttpStatus_Unauthorized = 401
HttpStatus_Forbidden = 403
HttpStatus_NotFound = 404
HttpStatus_InternalError = 500

2.4.5 ESP WebSocket Client

Overview
The ESP WebSocket client is an implementation of WebSocket protocol client for ESP32

Features

• Supports WebSocket over TCP, TLS with mbedtls
• Easy to setup with URI
• Multiple instances (Multiple clients in one application)

Configuration

URI

• Supports ws, wss schemes
• WebSocket samples:
  – ws://echo.websocket.org: WebSocket over TCP, default port 80
  – wss://echo.websocket.org: WebSocket over SSL, default port 443

Minimal configurations:

```c
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "ws://echo.websocket.org",
};
```

The WebSocket client supports the use of both path and query in the URI. Sample:

```c
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "ws://echo.websocket.org/connectionhandler?id=104",
};
```
If there are any options related to the URI in `esp_websocket_client_config_t`, the option defined by the URI will be overridden. Sample:

```c
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "ws://echo.websocket.org:123",
    .port = 4567,
};
//WebSocket client will connect to websocket.org using port 4567
```

**TLS Configuration:**

```c
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "wss://echo.websocket.org",
    .cert_pem = (const char *)websocket_org_pem_start,
};
```

注解：If you want to verify the server, then you need to provide a certificate in PEM format, and provide to `cert_pem` in `websocket_client_config_t`. If no certificate is provided then the TLS connection will default not requiring verification.

PEM certificate for this example could be extracted from an openssl `s_client` command connecting to websocket.org. In case a host operating system has `openssl` and `sed` packages installed, one could execute the following command to download and save the root or intermediate root certificate to a file (Note for Windows users: Both Linux like environment or Windows native packages may be used).

```
` echo "" | openssl s_client -showcerts -connect websocket.org:443 | sed -n "1,/Root/d; /BEGIN/,/END/p" | openssl x509 -outform PEM >websocket_org.pem`
```

This command will extract the second certificate in the chain and save it as a pem-file.

**Subprotocol**  The subprotocol field in the config struct can be used to request a subprotocol

```c
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "ws://websocket.org",
    .subprotocol = "soap",
};
```

注解：The client is indifferent to the subprotocol field in the server response and will accept the connection no matter what the server replies.

For more options on `esp_websocket_client_config_t`, please refer to API reference below

**Events**

- `WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CONNECTED`: The client has successfully established a connection to the server. The client is now ready to send and receive data. Contains no event data.
- `WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED`: The client has aborted the connection due to the transport layer failing to read data, e.g. because the server is unavailable. Contains no event data.
- `WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DATA`: The client has successfully received and parsed a WebSocket frame. The event data contains a pointer to the payload data, the length of the payload data as well as the opcode of the received frame. A message may be fragmented into multiple events if the length exceeds the buffer size. This event will also be posted for non-payload frames, e.g. pong or connection close frames.
- `WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ERROR`: Not used in the current implementation of the client.

If the client handle is needed in the event handler it can be accessed through the pointer passed to the event handler:
esp_websocket_client_init(client, config);  

Limitations and Known Issues

- The client is able to request the use of a subprotocol from the server during the handshake, but does not do any subprotocol related checks on the response from the server.

Application Example

A simple WebSocket example that uses esp_websocket_client to establish a websocket connection and send/receive data with the websocket.org server can be found here: protocols/websocket.

Sending Text Data

The WebSocket client supports sending data as a text data frame, which informs the application layer that the payload data is text data encoded as UTF-8. Example:

esp_websocket_client_send_text(client, data, len, portMAX_DELAY);

API Reference

Header File

- components/esp_websocket_client/include/esp_websocket_client.h

Functions

- esp_websocket_client_init(config)
  - Start a Websocket session. This function must be the first function to call, and it returns a esp_websocket_client_handle_t that you must use as input to other functions in the interface. This call MUST have a corresponding call to esp_websocket_client_destroy when the operation is complete.
    
    **Return**
    - esp_websocket_client_handle_t
    - NULL if any errors

    **Parameters**
    - [in] config: The configuration

- esp_websocket_client_set_uri(client, uri)
  - Set URL for client, when performing this behavior, the options in the URL will replace the old ones. Must stop the WebSocket client before set URI if the client has been connected.
    
    **Return**
    - esp_err_t

    **Parameters**
    - [in] client: The client
    - [in] uri: The uri

- esp_websocket_client_start(client)
  - Open the WebSocket connection.
    
    **Return**
    - esp_err_t

    **Parameters**
    - [in] client: The client

- esp_websocket_client_stop(client)
  - Stops the WebSocket connection without websocket closing handshake.
    
    This API stops ws client and closes TCP connection directly without sending close frames. It is a good practice to close the connection in a clean way using esp_websocket_client_close().

Submit Document Feedback
Notes:

- Cannot be called from the websocket event handler

**Return** esp_err_t

**Parameters**

- [in] client: The client

```c
esp_err_t esp_websocket_client_destroy(esp_websocket_client_handle_t client)
```

Destroy the WebSocket connection and free all resources. This function must be the last function to call for a session. It is the opposite of the esp_websocket_client_init function and must be called with the same handle as input that a esp_websocket_client_init call returned. This might close all connections this handle has used.

Notes:

- Cannot be called from the websocket event handler

**Return** esp_err_t

**Parameters**

- [in] client: The client

```c
int esp_websocket_client_send(esp_websocket_client_handle_t client, const char *data, int len, TickType_t timeout)
```

Generic write data to the WebSocket connection; defaults to binary send.

**Return**

- Number of data was sent
- (-1) if any errors

**Parameters**

- [in] client: The client
- [in] data: The data
- [in] len: The length
- [in] timeout: Write data timeout in RTOS ticks

```c
int esp_websocket_client_send_bin(esp_websocket_client_handle_t client, const char *data, int len, TickType_t timeout)
```

Write binary data to the WebSocket connection (data send with WS OPCODE=02, i.e. binary)

**Return**

- Number of data was sent
- (-1) if any errors

**Parameters**

- [in] client: The client
- [in] data: The data
- [in] len: The length
- [in] timeout: Write data timeout in RTOS ticks

```c
int esp_websocket_client_send_text(esp_websocket_client_handle_t client, const char *data, int len, TickType_t timeout)
```

Write textual data to the WebSocket connection (data send with WS OPCODE=01, i.e. text)

**Return**

- Number of data was sent
- (-1) if any errors

**Parameters**

- [in] client: The client
- [in] data: The data
- [in] len: The length
- [in] timeout: Write data timeout in RTOS ticks

```c
esp_err_t esp_websocket_client_close(esp_websocket_client_handle_t client, TickType_t timeout)
```

Close the WebSocket connection in a clean way.

Sequence of clean close initiated by client:
• Client sends CLOSE frame
• Client waits until server echos the CLOSE frame
• Client waits until server closes the connection
• Client is stopped the same way as by the `esp_websocket_client_stop()`

Notes:
  – Cannot be called from the websocket event handler

Return: `esp_err_t`
Parameters:
  • `[in] client`: The client
  • `[in] timeout`: Timeout in RTOS ticks for waiting

```c
esp_err_t esp_websocket_client_close_with_code(esp_websocket_client_handle_t client, int code, const char *data, int len, TickType_t timeout)
```

Close the WebSocket connection in a clean way with custom code/data. Closing sequence is the same as for `esp_websocket_client_close()`

Notes:
  • Cannot be called from the websocket event handler

Return: `esp_err_t`
Parameters:
  • `[in] client`: The client
  • `[in] code`: Close status code as defined in RFC6455 section-7.4
  • `[in] data`: Additional data to closing message
  • `[in] len`: The length of the additional data
  • `[in] timeout`: Timeout in RTOS ticks for waiting

```c
bool esp_websocket_client_is_connected(esp_websocket_client_handle_t client)
```

Check the WebSocket client connection state.

Return:
  • `true`
  • `false`

Parameters:
  • `[in] client`: The client handle

```c
esp_err_t esp_websocket_register_events(esp_websocket_client_handle_t client, esp_websocket_event_id_t event, esp_event_handler_t event_handler, void *event_handler_arg)
```

Register the Websocket Events.

Return: `esp_err_t`
Parameters:
  • `client`: The client handle
  • `event`: The event id
  • `event_handler`: The callback function
  • `event_handler_arg`: User context

### Structures

```c
struct esp_websocket_event_data_t
Websocket event data.
```

### Public Members

```c
custom char *data_ptr
Data pointer
```

```c
int data_len
Data length
```
uint8_t op_code
    Received opcode

esp_websocket_client_handle_t client
    esp_websocket_client_handle_t context

void *user_context
    user_data context, from esp_websocket_client_config_t user_data

int payload_len
    Total payload length, payloads exceeding buffer will be posted through multiple events

int payload_offset
    Actual offset for the data associated with this event

struct esp_websocket_client_config_t
    Websocket client setup configuration.

Public Members

const char *uri
    Websocket URI, the information on the URI can be overrides the other fields below, if any

const char *host
    Domain or IP as string

int port
    Port to connect, default depend on esp_websocket_transport_t (80 or 443)

const char *username
    Using for Http authentication - Not supported for now

const char *password
    Using for Http authentication - Not supported for now

const char *path
    HTTP Path, if not set, default is /

bool disable_auto_reconnect
    Disable the automatic reconnect function when disconnected

void *user_context
    HTTP user data context

int task_prio
    Websocket task priority

int task_stack
    Websocket task stack

int buffer_size
    Websocket buffer size

const char *cert_pem
    Pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for server verify (with SSL), default is NULL, not required to verify the server. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in cert_len.

size_t cert_len
    Length of the buffer pointed to by cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char *client_cert
    Pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed. If it is not NULL, also client_key has to be provided. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in client_cert_len.
size_t client_cert_len
Length of the buffer pointed to by client_cert. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char *client_key
Pointer to private key data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed. If it is not NULL, also client_cert has to be provided. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in client_key_len

size_t client_key_len
Length of the buffer pointed to by client_key_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

esp_websocket_transport_t transport
Websocket transport type, see 'esp_websocket_transport_t

const char *subprotocol
Websocket subprotocol

const char *user_agent
Websocket user-agent

const char *headers
Websocket additional headers

int pingpong_timeout_sec
Period before connection is aborted due to no PONGs received

bool disable_pingpong_discon
Disable auto-disconnect due to no PONG received within pingpong_timeout_sec

bool use_global_ca_store
Use a global ca_store for all the connections in which this bool is set.

bool skip_cert_common_name_check
Skip any validation of server certificate CN field

bool keep_alive_enable
Enable keep-alive timeout

int keep_alive_idle
Keep-alive idle time. Default is 5 (second)

int keep_alive_interval
Keep-alive interval time. Default is 5 (second)

int keep_alive_count
Keep-alive packet retry send count. Default is 3 counts

size_t ping_interval_sec
Websocket ping interval, defaults to 10 seconds if not set

struct ifreq *if_name
The name of interface for data to go through. Use the default interface without setting

Type Definitions
typedef struct esp_websocket_client *esp_websocket_client_handle_t

Enumerations
enum esp_websocket_event_id_t
WebSocket Client events id.

Values:
WEB_SOCKET_EVENT_ANY = -1
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ERROR = 0
This event occurs when there are any errors during execution

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CONNECTED
Once the WebSocket has been connected to the server, no data exchange has been performed

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED
The connection has been disconnected

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DATA
When receiving data from the server, possibly multiple portions of the packet

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CLOSED
The connection has been closed cleanly

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_MAX

enum esp_websocket_transport_t
Websocket Client transport.

Values:

WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN = 0x0
Transport unknown
WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP
Transport over tcp
WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL
Transport over ssl

2.4.6 HTTP 服务器

概述
HTTP Server 组件提供了在 ESP32 上运行轻量级 Web 服务器的功能，下面介绍使用 HTTP Server 组件 API 的详细步骤:

• httpd_start(): 创建 HTTP 服务器的实例，根据具体的配置为其分配内存和资源，并返回该服务器实例的句柄。服务器使用了两个套接字，一个用来监听 HTTP 流量 (TCP 类型)，另一个用来处理控制信号 (UDP 类型)，它们在服务器的任务循环中轮流使用。通过向 httpd_start() 传递 httpd_config_t 结构体，可以在创建服务器实例时配置任务的优先级和堆栈的大小。TCP 流量被解析为 HTTP 请求，根据请求的 URI 来调用用户注册的处理程序，在处理程序中需要发送回 HTTP 响应数据包。

• httpd_stop(): 根据传入的句柄停止服务器，并释放相关联的内存和资源。这是一个阻塞函数，首先给服务器任务发送停止信号，然后等待其终止。期间服务器任务会关闭所有已打开的连接，删除已注册的 URI 处理程序，并将所有会话的上下文数据重置为空。

• httpd_register_uri_handler(): 通过传入httpd_uri_t 结构体类型的对象来注册 URI 处理程序。该结构体包含如下成员: uri 名字, method 类型（比如 HTTPD_GET/HTTPD_POST/HTTPD_PUT 等等), esp_err_t * handler (httpd_req_t *req) 类型的函数指针，指向用户上下文数据的 user_ctx 指针。

应用示例

```c
/* URI 处理函数，在客户端发起 GET /uri 请求时被调用 */
esp_err_t get_handler (httpd_req_t *req)
{
    /* 发送回简单的响应数据包 */
    const char[] resp = "URI GET Response";
    httpd_resp_send(req, resp, HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN);
    return ESP_OK;
}
```
/* URI 处理函数，在客户端发起 POST /uri 请求时被调用 */

esp_err_t post_handler(httpd_req_t *req)
{
    /* 定义 HTTP POST 请求数据的目标缓存区 */
    /* httpd_req_recv() 只接收 char* 数据，但也可以是任意二进制数据（需要类型转换）
     * 对于字符串数据，null 终止符会被省略，content_len 会给出字符串的长度 */
    char content[100];

    /* 如果内容长度大于缓冲区则截断 */
    size_t recv_size = MIN(req->content_len, sizeof(content));

    int ret = httpd_req_recv(req, content, recv_size);
    if (ret <= 0) { /* 返回 0 表示连接已关闭 */
        /* 检查是否超时 */
        if (ret == HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT) {
            /* 如果是超时，可以调用 httpd_req_recv() 重试 */
            /* 简单起见，这里我们直接响应 HTTP 408（请求超时）错误给客户端 */
            httpd_resp_send_408(req);
        }

        /* 如果发生了错误，返回 ESP_FAIL 可以确保低层套接字被关闭 */
        return ESP_FAIL;
    }

    /* 发送简单的响应数据包 */
    const char[] resp = "URI POST Response";
    httpd_resp_send(req, resp, HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN);
    return ESP_OK;
}

/* GET /uri 的 URI 处理结构 */

httpd_uri_t uri_get = {
    .uri = "/uri",
    .method = HTTP_GET,
    .handler = get_handler,
    .user_ctx = NULL
};

/* POST /uri 的 URI 处理结构 */

httpd_uri_t uri_post = {
    .uri = "/uri",
    .method = HTTP_POST,
    .handler = post_handler,
    .user_ctx = NULL
};

/* 启动 Web 服务器的函数 */

httpd_handle_t start_webserver(void)
{
    /* 生成默认的配置参数 */
    httpd_config_t config = HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG();

    /* 设置 esp_http_server 的实例句柄 */
    httpd_handle_t server = NULL;

    /* 启动 httpd server */
    if (httpd_start(&server, &config) == ESP_OK) {
        /* 注册 URI 处理程序 */
        httpd_register_uri_handler(server, &uri_get);
        httpd_register_uri_handler(server, &uri_post);
    }
}
API 参考

HTTP 长连接

HTTP 服务器具有长连接的功能，允许重复使用同一个连接（会话）进行多次传输，同时保持会话的上下文数据。上下文数据可由处理程序动态分配，在这种情况下需要提前指定好自定义的回调函数，以便在连接/会话被关闭时释放这部分内存资源。

长连接示例

```c
/* 定义函数，用来释放上下文数据 */
void free_ctx_func(void *ctx)
{
    /* 也可以是 free 以外的代码逻辑 */
    free(ctx);
}

esp_err_t adder_post_handler(httpd_req_t *req)
{
    /* 如果会话上下文不存在则新建一个 */
    if (!req->sess_ctx) {
        req->sess_ctx = malloc(sizeof(ANY_DATA_TYPE)); /* 指向上文数据 */
        req->free_ctx_func = free_ctx_func; /* 释放上下文数据的函数 */
    }

    /* 访问上下文数据 */
    ANY_DATA_TYPE *ctx_data = (ANY_DATA_TYPE *)req->sess_ctx;

    /* 响应 */
    /* ................. */
    /* ................. */
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

详情请参考位于 protocols/http_server/persistent_sockets 的示例代码。

API 参考

Header File

- components/esp_http_server/include/esp_http_server.h
**Functions**

`esp_err_t httpd_register_uri_handler(httpd_handle_t handle, const httpd_uri_t *uri_handler)`

Registers a URI handler.

Example usage:

```c
esp_err_t my_uri_handler(httpd_req_t *req)
{
    // Recv, Process and Send
    ....
    ....
    ....

    // Fail condition
    if (....) {
        // Return fail to close session
        return ESP_FAIL;
    }

    // On success
    return ESP_OK;
}

// URI handler structure
httpd_uri_t my_uri {
    .uri = "/my.Uri/path/xyz",
    .method = HTTPD_GET,
    .handler = my_uri_handler,
    .user_ctx = NULL
};

// Register handler
if (httpd_register_uri_handler(server_handle, &my_uri) != ESP_OK) {
    // If failed to register handler
    ....
}
```

**Note** URI handlers can be registered in real time as long as the server handle is valid.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : On successfully registering the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLERS_FULL : If no slots left for new handler
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLER_EXISTS : If handler with same URI and method is already registered

**Parameters**

- [in] handle: handle to HTTPD server instance
- [in] uri_handler: pointer to handler that needs to be registered

`esp_err_t httpd_unregister_uri_handler(httpd_handle_t handle, const char *uri, httpd_method_t method)`

Unregister a URI handler.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : On successfully deregistering the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Handler with specified URI and method not found

**Parameters**

- [in] handle: handle to HTTPD server instance
- [in] uri: URI string
- [in] method: HTTP method

`esp_err_t httpd_unregister_uri(httpd_handle_t handle, const char *uri)`

Unregister all URI handlers with the specified uri string.
Return
• ESP_OK: On successfully deregistering all such handlers
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: No handler registered with specified uri string

Parameters
• [in] handle: handle to HTTPD server instance
• [in] uri: uri string specifying all handlers that need to be deregistered

esp_err_t httpd_sess_set_recv_override (httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd, httpd_recv_func_t recv_func)
Overwrite web server’s receive function (by session FD)
This function overrides the web server’s receive function. This same function is used to read HTTP request packets.

Note This API is supposed to be called either from the context of
• an http session APIs where sockfd is a valid parameter
• a URI handler where sockfd is obtained using httpd_req_to_sockfd()

Return
• ESP_OK: On successfully registering override
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments

Parameters
• [in] hd: HTTPD instance handle
• [in] sockfd: Session socket FD
• [in] recv_func: The receive function to be set for this session

esp_err_t httpd_sess_set_send_override (httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd, httpd_send_func_t send_func)
Overwrite web server’s send function (by session FD)
This function overrides the web server’s send function. This same function is used to send out any response to any HTTP request.

Note This API is supposed to be called either from the context of
• an http session APIs where sockfd is a valid parameter
• a URI handler where sockfd is obtained using httpd_req_to_sockfd()

Return
• ESP_OK: On successfully registering override
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments

Parameters
• [in] hd: HTTPD instance handle
• [in] sockfd: Session socket FD
• [in] send_func: The send function to be set for this session

esp_err_t httpd_sess_set_pending_override (httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd, httpd_pending_func_t pending_func)
Overwrite web server’s pending function (by session FD)
This function overrides the web server’s pending function. This function is used to test for pending bytes in a socket.

Note This API is supposed to be called either from the context of
• an http session APIs where sockfd is a valid parameter
• a URI handler where sockfd is obtained using httpd_req_to_sockfd()

Return
• ESP_OK: On successfully registering override
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments

Parameters
• [in] hd: HTTPD instance handle
• [in] sockfd: Session socket FD
• [in] pending_func: The receive function to be set for this session

int httpd_req_to_sockfd (httpd_req_t *r)
Get the Socket Descriptor from the HTTP request.
This API will return the socket descriptor of the session for which URI handler was executed on reception of HTTP request. This is useful when user wants to call functions that require session socket fd, from within a URI handler, e.g.: `httpd_sess_get_ctx()`, `httpd_sess_trigger_close()`, `httpd_sess_update_lru_counter()`.

**Note** This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where `httpd_req_t*` request pointer is valid.

**Return**
- Socket descriptor : The socket descriptor for this request
- -1 : Invalid/NUL request pointer

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `r`: The request whose socket descriptor should be found

```c
int httpd_req_recv(httpd_req_t *r, char* buf, size_t buf_len)
```

This API will read HTTP content data from the HTTP request into provided buffer. Use `content_len` provided in `httpd_req_t` structure to know the length of data to be fetched. If `content_len` is too large for the buffer then user may have to make multiple calls to this function, each time fetching `buf_len` number of bytes, while the pointer to content data is incremented internally by the same number.

**Note**
- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where `httpd_req_t*` request pointer is valid.
- If an error is returned, the URI handler must further return an error. This will ensure that the erroneous socket is closed and cleaned up by the web server.
- Presently Chunked Encoding is not supported

**Return**
- Bytes: Number of bytes read into the buffer successfully
- 0: Buffer length parameter is zero / connection closed by peer
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID : Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT : Timeout/interrupted while calling socket recv() 
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL : Unrecoverable error while calling socket recv()

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `r`: The request being responded to
- `[in]` `buf`: Pointer to a buffer that the data will be read into
- `[in]` `buf_len`: Length of the buffer

```c
size_t httpd_req_get_hdr_value_len(httpd_req_t *r, const char* field)
```

Search for a field in request headers and return the string length of it’s value.

**Note**
- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where `httpd_req_t*` request pointer is valid.
- Once `httpd_resp_send()` API is called all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

**Return**
- Length : If field is found in the request URL
- Zero : Field not found / Invalid request / Null arguments

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `r`: The request being responded to
- `[in]` `field`: The header field to be searched in the request

```c
esp_err_t httpd_req_get_hdr_value_str(httpd_req_t *r, const char* field, char *val, size_t val_size)
```

Get the value string of a field from the request headers.

**Note**
- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where `httpd_req_t*` request pointer is valid.
- Once `httpd_resp_send()` API is called all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.
Chapter 2. API

• If output size is greater than input, then the value is truncated, accompanied by truncation error as return value.

Use `httpd_req_get_hdr_value_len()` to know the right buffer length

Return

• ESP_OK : Field found in the request header and value string copied
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Key not found
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid HTTP request pointer
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC : Value string truncated

Parameters

• [in] r: The request being responded to
• [in] field: The field to be searched in the header
• [out] val: Pointer to the buffer into which the value will be copied if the field is found
• [in] val_size: Size of the user buffer “val”

size_t `httpd_req_get_url_query_len(httpd_req_t *r)`

Get Query string length from the request URL.

Note

This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where `httpd_req_t*` request pointer is valid

Return

• Length : Query is found in the request URL
• Zero : Query not found / Null arguments / Invalid request

Parameters

• [in] r: The request being responded to

Esp_err_t `httpd_req_get_url_query_str(httpd_req_t *r, char* buf, size_t buf_len)`

Get Query string from the request URL.

Note

• Presently, the user can fetch the full URL query string, but decoding will have to be performed by the user. Request headers can be read using `httpd_req_get_hdr_value_str()` to know the ‘Content-Type’ (eg. Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded) and then the appropriate decoding algorithm needs to be applied.
• This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where `httpd_req_t*` request pointer is valid
• If output size is greater than input, then the value is truncated, accompanied by truncation error as return value
• Prior to calling this function, one can use `httpd_req_get_url_query_len()` to know the query string length beforehand and hence allocate the buffer of right size (usually query string length + 1 for null termination) for storing the query string

Return

• ESP_OK : Query is found in the request URL and copied to buffer
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Query not found
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid HTTP request pointer
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC : Query string truncated

Parameters

• [in] r: The request being responded to
• [out] buf: Pointer to the buffer into which the query string will be copied (if found)
• [in] buf_len: Length of output buffer

Esp_err_t `httpd_query_key_value(const char *qry, const char *key, char *val, size_t val_size)`

Helper function to get a URL query tag from a query string of the type `param1=val1&param2=val2`.

Note

• The components of URL query string (keys and values) are not URL decoded. The user must check for ‘Content-Type’ field in the request headers and then depending upon the specified encoding (URL encoded or otherwise) apply the appropriate decoding algorithm.
• If actual value size is greater than `val_size`, then the value is truncated, accompanied by truncation error as return value.
Return

- ESP_OK: Key is found in the URL query string and copied to buffer
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Key not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC: Value string truncated

Parameters

- [in] qry: Pointer to query string
- [in] key: The key to be searched in the query string
- [out] val: Pointer to the buffer into which the value will be copied if the key is found
- [in] val_size: Size of the user buffer “val”

`esp_err_t httpd_req_get_cookie_val(httpd_req_t *req, const char *cookie_name, char *val, size_t *val_size)`

Get the value string of a cookie value from the “Cookie” request headers by cookie name.

Return

- ESP_OK: Key is found in the cookie string and copied to buffer
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Key not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC: Value string truncated
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Memory allocation failure

Parameters

- [in] req: Pointer to the HTTP request
- [in] cookie_name: The cookie name to be searched in the request
- [out] val: Pointer to the buffer into which the value of cookie will be copied if the cookie is found
- [inout] val_size: Pointer to size of the user buffer “val”. This variable will contain cookie length if ESP_OK is returned and required buffer length incase ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC is returned.

`bool httpd_uri_matchWildcard(const char *uri_template, const char *uri_to_match, size_t match_upto)`

Test if a URI matches the given wildcard template.

Template may end with “?” to make the previous character optional (typically a slash), “*” for a wildcard match, and “?*” to make the previous character optional, and if present, allow anything to follow.

Example:

- * matches everything
- /foo/* matches /foo and /foo/
- /foo/* (sans the backslash) matches /foo/ and /foo/bar, but not /foo or /foo/
- /foo/* or /foo/*? (sans the backslash) matches /foo/*, /foo/bar, and also /foo, but not /foo or /foo/

The special characters “?” and “*” anywhere else in the template will be taken literally.

Return true if a match was found

Parameters

- [in] uri_template: URI template (pattern)
- [in] uri_to_match: URI to be matched
- [in] match_upto: how many characters of the URI buffer to test (there may be trailing query string etc.)

`esp_err_t httpd_resp_send(httpd_req_t *r, const char *buf, ssize_t buf_len)`

API to send a complete HTTP response.

This API will send the data as an HTTP response to the request. This assumes that you have the entire response ready in a single buffer. If you wish to send response in incremental chunks use `httpd_resp_send_chunk()` instead.

If no status code and content-type were set, by default this will send 200 OK status code and content type as text/html. You may call the following functions before this API to configure the response headers: `httpd_resp_set_status()` - for setting the HTTP status string, `httpd_resp_set_type()` - for setting the Content Type, `httpd_resp_set_hdr()` - for appending any additional field value entries in the response header.
Note
• This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
• Once this API is called, the request has been responded to.
• No additional data can then be sent for the request.
• Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return
• ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null request pointer
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Essential headers are too large for internal buffer
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request

Parameters
• [in] r : The request being responded to
• [in] buf : Buffer from where the content is to be fetched
• [in] buf_len : Length of the buffer, HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN to use strlen()

static esp_err_t httpd_resp_send_chunk (httpd_req_t *r, const char *buf, ssize_t buf_len)

API to send one HTTP chunk.

This API will send the data as an HTTP response to the request. This API will use chunked-encoding and send the response in the form of chunks. If you have the entire response contained in a single buffer, please use httpd_resp_send() instead.

If no status code and content-type were set, by default this will send 200 OK status code and content type as text/html. You may call the following functions before this API to configure the response headers httpd_resp_set_status() - for setting the HTTP status string, httpd_resp_set_type() - for setting the Content Type, httpd_resp_set_hdr() - for appending any additional field value entries in the response header

Note
• This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
• When you are finished sending all your chunks, you must call this function with buf_len as 0.
• Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return
• ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet chunk
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null request pointer
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Essential headers are too large for internal buffer
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request

Parameters
• [in] r : The request being responded to
• [in] buf : Pointer to a buffer that stores the data
• [in] buf_len : Length of the buffer, HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN to use strlen()

static esp_err_t httpd_resp_sendstr (httpd_req_t *r, const char *str)

API to send a complete string as HTTP response.

This API simply calls httpd_resp_send with buffer length set to string length assuming the buffer contains a null terminated string

Return
• ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null request pointer
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Essential headers are too large for internal buffer
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request

Parameters
• [in] r : The request being responded to
• [in] str : String to be sent as response body
Chapter 2. API

**static esp_err_t httpd_resp_sendstr_chunk (httpd_req_t *r, const char *str)**

API to send a string as an HTTP response chunk.

This API simply calls httpd_resp_send_chunk with buffer length set to string length assuming the buffer contains a null terminated string.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null request pointer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Essential headers are too large for internal buffer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request

**Parameters**

- [in] r: The request being responded to
- [in] str: String to be sent as response body (NULL to finish response packet)

**esp_err_t httpd_resp_set_status (httpd_req_t *r, const char *status)**

API to set the HTTP status code.

This API sets the status of the HTTP response to the value specified. By default, the ‘200 OK’ response is sent as the response.

**Note**

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- This API only sets the status to this value. The status isn’t sent out until any of the send APIs is executed.
- Make sure that the lifetime of the status string is valid till send function is called.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : On success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

**Parameters**

- [in] r: The request being responded to
- [in] status: The HTTP status code of this response

**esp_err_t httpd_resp_set_type (httpd_req_t *r, const char *type)**

API to set the HTTP content type.

This API sets the ‘Content Type’ field of the response. The default content type is ‘text/html’.

**Note**

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- This API only sets the content type to this value. The type isn’t sent out until any of the send APIs is executed.
- Make sure that the lifetime of the type string is valid till send function is called.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : On success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

**Parameters**

- [in] r: The request being responded to
- [in] type: The Content Type of the response

**esp_err_t httpd_resp_set_hdr (httpd_req_t *r, const char *field, const char *value)**

API to append any additional headers.

This API sets any additional header fields that need to be sent in the response.

**Note**

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- The header isn’t sent out until any of the send APIs is executed.
Chapter 2. API

The maximum allowed number of additional headers is limited to value of max_resp_headers in config structure.
Make sure that the lifetime of the field value strings are valid till send function is called.

Return
- ESP_OK: On successfully appending new header
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR: Total additional headers exceed max allowed
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ: Invalid request pointer

Parameters
- [in] r: The request being responded to
- [in] field: The field name of the HTTP header
- [in] value: The value of this HTTP header

```c
esp_err_t httpd_resp_send_err(httpd_req_t *req, httpd_err_code_t error, const char *msg)
```
For sending out error code in response to HTTP request.

Note
- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.
- If you wish to send additional data in the body of the response, please use the lower-level functions directly.

Return
- ESP_OK: On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND: Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ: Invalid request pointer

Parameters
- [in] req: Pointer to the HTTP request for which the response needs to be sent
- [in] error: Error type to send
- [in] msg: Error message string (pass NULL for default message)

```c
static esp_err_t httpd_resp_send_404(httpd_req_t *r)
```
Helper function for HTTP 404.

Send HTTP 404 message. If you wish to send additional data in the body of the response, please use the lower-level functions directly.

Note
- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return
- ESP_OK: On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND: Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ: Invalid request pointer

Parameters
- [in] r: The request being responded to

```c
static esp_err_t httpd_resp_send_408(httpd_req_t *r)
```
Helper function for HTTP 408.

Send HTTP 408 message. If you wish to send additional data in the body of the response, please use the lower-level functions directly.

Note
- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
• Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return
• ESP_OK: On successfully sending the response packet
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND: Error in raw send
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ: Invalid request pointer

Parameters
• [in] r: The request being responded to

static esp_err_t httpd_resp_send_500(httpd_req_t *r)
Helper function for HTTP 500.
Send HTTP 500 message. If you wish to send additional data in the body of the response, please use the lower-level functions directly.

Note
• This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
• Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return
• ESP_OK: On successfully sending the response packet
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND: Error in raw send
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ: Invalid request pointer

Parameters
• [in] r: The request being responded to

int httpd_send(httpd_req_t *r, const char *buf, size_t buf_len)
Raw HTTP send.
Call this API if you wish to construct your custom response packet. When using this, all essential header, eg. HTTP version, Status Code, Content Type and Length, Encoding, etc. will have to be constructed manually, and HTTP delimiters (CRLF) will need to be placed correctly for separating sub-sections of the HTTP response packet.
If the send override function is set, this API will end up calling that function eventually to send data out.

Note
• This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
• Unless the response has the correct HTTP structure (which the user must now ensure) it is not guaranteed that it will be recognized by the client. For most cases, you wouldn’t have to call this API, but you would rather use either of: httpd_resp_send(), httpd_resp_send_chunk()

Return
• Bytes: Number of bytes that were sent successfully
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID: Invalid arguments
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timeout/interrupted while calling socket send()
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL: Unrecoverable error while calling socket send()

Parameters
• [in] r: The request being responded to
• [in] buf: Buffer from where the fully constructed packet is to be read
• [in] buf_len: Length of the buffer

int httpd_socket_send(httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd, const char *buf, size_t buf_len, int flags)
A low level API to send data on a given socket
This internally calls the default send function, or the function registered by httpd_sess_set_send_override().

Note This API is not recommended to be used in any request handler. Use this only for advanced use cases, wherein some asynchronous data is to be sent over a socket.

Return
Chapter 2. API

- Bytes: The number of bytes sent successfully
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID: Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timeout/interrupted while calling socket send()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL: Unrecoverable error while calling socket send()

Parameters
- [in] hd: server instance
- [in] sockfd: session socket file descriptor
- [in] buf: buffer with bytes to send
- [in] buf_len: data size
- [in] flags: flags for the send() function

int httpd_socket_recv(httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd, char* buf, size_t buf_len, int flags)

A low level API to receive data from a given socket

Note This API is not recommended to be used in any request handler. Use this only for advanced use cases, wherein some asynchronous communication is required.

Return
- Bytes: The number of bytes received successfully
- 0: Buffer length parameter is zero / connection closed by peer
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID: Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timeout/interrupted while calling socket recv()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL: Unrecoverable error while calling socket recv()

Parameters
- [in] hd: server instance
- [in] sockfd: session socket file descriptor
- [in] buf: buffer with bytes to send
- [in] buf_len: data size
- [in] flags: flags for the send() function

esp_err_t httpd_register_err_handler(httpd_handle_t handle, httpd_err_code_t error, httpd_err_handler_func_t handler_fn)

Function for registering HTTP error handlers.

This function maps a handler function to any supported error code given by httpd_err_code_t. See prototype httpd_err_handler_func_t above for details.

Return
- ESP_OK: handler registered successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid error code or server handle

Parameters
- [in] handle: HTTP server handle
- [in] error: Error type
- [in] handler_fn: User implemented handler function (Pass NULL to unset any previously set handler)

esp_err_t httpd_start(httpd_handle_t *handle, const httpd_config_t *config)

Starts the web server.

Create an instance of HTTP server and allocate memory/resources for it depending upon the specified configuration.

Example usage:

```c
//Function for starting the webserver
httpd_handle_t start_webserver(void)
{
    // Generate default configuration
    httpd_config_t config = HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG();

    // Empty handle to http_server
```
httpd_handle_t server = NULL;

    // Start the httpd server
    if (httpd_start(&server, &config) == ESP_OK) {
        // Register URI handlers
        httpd_register_uri_handler(server, &uri_get);
        httpd_register_uri_handler(server, &uri_post);
    }
    // If server failed to start, handle will be NULL
    return server;
}

Return
• ESP_OK: Instance created successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null argument(s)
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_ALLOC_MEM: Failed to allocate memory for instance
• ESP_ERR_HTTPD_TASK: Failed to launch server task

Parameters
• [in] config: Configuration for new instance of the server
• [out] handle: Handle to newly created instance of the server. NULL on error

esp_err_t httpd_stop(httpd_handle_t handle)

Stop the web server.

Deallocates memory/resources used by an HTTP server instance and deletes it. Once deleted the handle can no longer be used for accessing the instance.

Example usage:

    // Function for stopping the webserver
    void stop_webserver(httpd_handle_t server) {
        // Ensure handle is non NULL
        if (server != NULL) {
            // Stop the httpd server
            httpd_stop(server);
        }
    }

Return
• ESP_OK: Server stopped successfully
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Handle argument is Null

Parameters
• [in] handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start

esp_err_t httpd_queue_work(httpd_handle_t handle, httpd_work_fn_t work, void *arg)

Queue execution of a function in HTTPD’s context.

This API queues a work function for asynchronous execution

Note Some protocols require that the web server generate some asynchronous data and send it to the persistently opened connection. This facility is for use by such protocols.

Return
• ESP_OK: On successfully queueing the work
• ESP_FAIL: Failure in ctrl socket
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments

Parameters
• [in] handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
• [in] work: Pointer to the function to be executed in the HTTPD’s context
• [in] arg: Pointer to the arguments that should be passed to this function
void *httpd_sess_get_ctx(httpd_handle_t handle, int sockfd)
Get session context from socket descriptor.

Typically if a session context is created, it is available to URI handlers through the httpd_req_t structure.
But, there are cases where the web server’s send/receive functions may require the context (for example,
for accessing keying information etc). Since the send/receive function only have the socket descriptor at their
disposal, this API provides them with a way to retrieve the session context.

Return
• void*: Pointer to the context associated with this session
• NULL: Empty context / Invalid handle / Invalid socket fd

Parameters
• [in] handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
• [in] sockfd: The socket descriptor for which the context should be extracted.

void httpd_sess_set_ctx(httpd_handle_t handle, int sockfd, void* ctx, httpd_free_ctx_fn_t free_fn)
Set session context by socket descriptor.

Parameters
• [in] handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
• [in] sockfd: The socket descriptor for which the context should be extracted.
• [in] ctx: Context object to assign to the session
• [in] free_fn: Function that should be called to free the context

void *httpd_sess_get_transport_ctx(httpd_handle_t handle, int sockfd)
Get session ‘transport’ context by socket descriptor.

This context is used by the send/receive functions, for example to manage SSL context.

See httpd_sess_get_ctx()

Return
• void*: Pointer to the transport context associated with this session
• NULL: Empty context / Invalid handle / Invalid socket fd

Parameters
• [in] handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
• [in] sockfd: The socket descriptor for which the context should be extracted.

void httpd_sess_set_transport_ctx(httpd_handle_t handle, int sockfd, void* ctx, httpd_free_ctx_fn_t free_fn)
Set session ‘transport’ context by socket descriptor.

See httpd_sess_set_ctx()

Parameters
• [in] handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
• [in] sockfd: The socket descriptor for which the context should be extracted.
• [in] ctx: Transport context object to assign to the session
• [in] free_fn: Function that should be called to free the transport context

void *httpd_get_global_user_ctx(httpd_handle_t handle)
Get HTTPD global user context (it was set in the server config struct)

Return global user context

Parameters
• [in] handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start

void *httpd_get_global_transport_ctx(httpd_handle_t handle)
Get HTTPD global transport context (it was set in the server config struct)

Return global transport context

Parameters
• [in] handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start

esp_err_t httpd_sess_trigger_close(httpd_handle_t handle, int sockfd)
Trigger an http session close externally.
**Note** Calling this API is only required in special circumstances wherein some application requires to close an httpd client session asynchronously.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : On successfully initiating closure
- ESP_FAIL : Failure to queue work
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Socket fd not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

**Parameters**
- **[in]** handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- **[in]** sockfd: The socket descriptor of the session to be closed

```c
esp_err_t httpd_sess_update_lru_counter(httpd_handle_t handle, int sockfd)
```

Update LRU counter for a given socket.

LRU Counters are internally associated with each session to monitor how recently a session exchanged traffic. When LRU purge is enabled, if a client is requesting for connection but maximum number of sockets/sessions is reached, then the session having the earliest LRU counter is closed automatically.

Updating the LRU counter manually prevents the socket from being purged due to the Least Recently Used (LRU) logic, even though it might not have received traffic for some time. This is useful when all open sockets/session are frequently exchanging traffic but the user specifically wants one of the sessions to be kept open, irrespective of when it last exchanged a packet.

**Note** Calling this API is only necessary if the LRU Purge Enable option is enabled.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Socket found and LRU counter updated
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Socket not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

**Parameters**
- **[in]** handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- **[in]** sockfd: The socket descriptor of the session for which LRU counter is to be updated

```c
esp_err_t httpd_get_client_list(httpd_handle_t handle, size_t* fds, int* client_fds)
```

Returns list of current socket descriptors of active sessions.

**Note** Size of provided array has to be equal or greater than maximum number of opened sockets, configured upon initialization with max_open_sockets field in httpd_config_t structure.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Successfully retrieved session list
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Wrong arguments or list is longer than provided array

**Parameters**
- **[in]** handle: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- **[inout]** fds: In: Size of provided client_fds array Out: Number of valid client fds returned in client_fds,
- **[out]** client_fds: Array of client fds

**Structures**

**struct httpd_config**

HTTP Server Configuration Structure.

**Note** Use HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG() to initialize the configuration to a default value and then modify only those fields that are specifically determined by the use case.

**Public Members**

**unsigned task_priority**
Priority of FreeRTOS task which runs the server

**size_t stack_size**
The maximum stack size allowed for the server task
The core the HTTP server task will run on

**core_id**

TCP Port number for receiving and transmitting HTTP traffic

**server_port**

UDP Port number for asynchronously exchanging control signals between various components of the server

**ctrl_port**

Max number of sockets/clients connected at any time

**max_open_sockets**

Maximum allowed uri handlers

**max_uri_handlers**

Maximum allowed additional headers in HTTP response

**max_resp_headers**

Number of backlog connections

**backlog_conn**

Purge “Least Recently Used” connection

**lru_purge_enable**

Timeout for recv function (in seconds)

**recv_wait_timeout**

Timeout for send function (in seconds)

**send_wait_timeout**

Global user context.

This field can be used to store arbitrary user data within the server context. The value can be retrieved using the server handle, available e.g. in the httpd_req_t struct.

When shutting down, the server frees up the user context by calling free() on the global_user_ctx field. If you wish to use a custom function for freeing the global user context, please specify that here.

**global_user_ctx**

Free function for global user context

**httpd_free_ctx_fn_t**

Global user context

**global_user_ctx_free_fn**

Global transport context.

Similar to global_user_ctx, but used for session encoding or encryption (e.g. to hold the SSL context). It will be freed using free(), unless global_transport_ctx_free_fn is specified.

**httpd_free_ctx_fn_t**

Free function for global transport context

**global_transport_ctx_free_fn**

Custom session opening callback.

Called on a new session socket just after accept(), but before reading any data.

This is an opportunity to set up e.g. SSL encryption using global_transport_ctx and the send/recv/pending session overrides.

If a context needs to be maintained between these functions, store it in the session using httpd_sess_set_transport_ctx() and retrieve it later with httpd_sess_get_transport_ctx()

Returning a value other than ESP_OK will immediately close the new socket.

**httpd_close_func_t**

Custom session closing callback.

Called when a session is deleted, before freeing user and transport contexts and before closing the socket.

This is a place for custom de-init code common to all sockets.
Set the user or transport context to NULL if it was freed here, so the server does not try to free it again.

This function is run for all terminated sessions, including sessions where the socket was closed by the network stack - that is, the file descriptor may not be valid anymore.

### `httpd_uri_match_func_t uri_match_fn`

URI matcher function.

Called when searching for a matching URI: 1) whose request handler is to be executed right after an HTTP request is successfully parsed 2) in order to prevent duplication while registering a new URI handler using `httpd_register_uri_handler()`

Available options are: 1) NULL : Internally do basic matching using `strncmp()` 2) `httpd_uri_match_wildcard()` : URI wildcard matcher

Users can implement their own matching functions (See description of the `httpd_uri_match_func_t` function prototype)

#### `struct httpd_req`

HTTP Request Data Structure.

**Public Members**

#### `httpd_handle_t handle`
Handle to server instance

#### `int method`
The type of HTTP request, `-1` if unsupported method

#### `const char uri[HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN + 1]`
The URI of this request (1 byte extra for null termination)

#### `size_t content_len`
Length of the request body

#### `void *aux`
Internally used members

#### `void *user_ctx`
User context pointer passed during URI registration.

#### `void *sess_ctx`
Session Context Pointer

A session context. Contexts are maintained across ‘sessions’ for a given open TCP connection. One session could have multiple request responses. The web server will ensure that the context persists across all these request and responses.

By default, this is NULL. URI Handlers can set this to any meaningful value.

If the underlying socket gets closed, and this pointer is non-NULL, the web server will free up the context by calling `free()`, unless `free_ctx` function is set.

#### `httpd_free_ctx_fn_t free_ctx`
Pointer to free context hook

Function to free session context

If the web server’s socket closes, it frees up the session context by calling `free()` on the `sess_ctx` member. If you wish to use a custom function for freeing the session context, please specify that here.

#### `bool ignore_sess_ctx_changes`
Flag indicating if Session Context changes should be ignored

By default, if you change the `sess_ctx` in some URI handler, the http server will internally free the earlier context (if non NULL), after the URI handler returns. If you want to manage the allocation/reallocation/freeing of `sess_ctx` yourself, set this flag to true, so that the server will not perform
any checks on it. The context will be cleared by the server (by calling free_ctx or free()) only if the
socket gets closed.

**struct httpd_uri**
Structure for URI handler.

**Public Members**

```
const char *uri
   The URI to handle

httpd_method_t method
   Method supported by the URI

esp_err_t (*handler)(httpd_req_t *r)
   Handler to call for supported request method. This must return ESP_OK, or else the underlying socket
   will be closed.

void *user_ctx
   Pointer to user context data which will be available to handler
```

**Macros**

```
HTTPD_MAX_REQ_HDR_LEN
HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT
HTTPD_200
   HTTP Response 200
HTTPD_204
   HTTP Response 204
HTTPD_207
   HTTP Response 207
HTTPD_400
   HTTP Response 400
HTTPD_404
   HTTP Response 404
HTTPD_408
   HTTP Response 408
HTTPD_500
   HTTP Response 500
HTTPD_TYPE_JSON
   HTTP Content type JSON
HTTPD_TYPE_TEXT
   HTTP Content type text/HTML
HTTPD_TYPE_OCTET
   HTTP Content type octet-stream
HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_BASE
   Starting number of HTTPD error codes
```
Chapter 2. API

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLERS_FULL
All slots for registering URI handlers have been consumed

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLER_EXISTS
URI handler with same method and target URI already registered

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ
Invalid request pointer

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC
Result string truncated

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR
Response header field larger than supported

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND
Error occurred while sending response packet

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_ALLOC_MEM
Failed to dynamically allocate memory for resource

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_TASK
Failed to launch server task/thread

HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN

Type Definitions
typedef struct httpd_req httpd_req_t
HTTP Request Data Structure.

typedef struct httpd_uri httpd_uri_t
Structure for URI handler.

typedef int (*httpd_send_func_t)(httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd, const char *buf, size_t buf_len, int flags)
Prototype for HTTPD low-level send function.

Note User specified send function must handle errors internally, depending upon the set value of errno,
and return specific HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_ codes, which will eventually be conveyed as return value
of httpd_send() function

Return
• Bytes: The number of bytes sent successfully
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID: Invalid arguments
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timeout/interrupted while calling socket send()
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL: Unrecoverable error while calling socket send()

Parameters
• [in] hd: server instance
• [in] sockfd: session socket file descriptor
• [in] buf: buffer with bytes to send
• [in] buf_len: data size
• [in] flags: flags for the send() function

typedef int (*httpd_recv_func_t)(httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd, char *buf, size_t buf_len, int flags)
Prototype for HTTPD low-level recv function.

Note User specified recv function must handle errors internally, depending upon the set value of errno,
and return specific HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_ codes, which will eventually be conveyed as return value
of httpd_req_recv() function

Return
• Bytes: The number of bytes received successfully
• 0: Buffer length parameter is zero / connection closed by peer
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID: Invalid arguments
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timeout/interrupted while calling socket recv()
• HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL: Unrecoverable error while calling socket recv()
Chapter 2. API

Parameters
- [in] hd: server instance
- [in] sockfd: session socket file descriptor
- [in] buf: buffer with bytes to send
- [in] buf_len: data size
- [in] flags: flags for the send() function

typedef int (*httpd_pending_func_t)(httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd)
Prototype for HTTPD's low-level “get pending bytes” function.

Note: User specified pending function must handle errors internally, depending upon the set value of errno, and return specific HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_ codes, which will be handled accordingly in the server task.

Return
- Bytes: The number of bytes waiting to be received
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID: Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timeout/interrupted while calling socket pending()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL: Unrecoverable error while calling socket pending()

Parameters
- [in] hd: server instance
- [in] sockfd: session socket file descriptor

typedef esp_err_t (*httpd_err_handler_func_t)(httpd_req_t *req, httpd_err_code_t error)
Function prototype for HTTP error handling.
This function is executed upon HTTP errors generated during internal processing of an HTTP request. This is used to override the default behavior on error, which is to send HTTP error response and close the underlying socket.

Note
- If implemented, the server will not automatically send out HTTP error response codes, therefore, httpd_resp_send_err() must be invoked inside this function if user wishes to generate HTTP error responses.
- When invoked, the validity of uri, method, content_len and user_ctx fields of the httpd_req_t parameter is not guaranteed as the HTTP request may be partially received/parsed.
- The function must return ESP_OK if underlying socket needs to be kept open. Any other value will ensure that the socket is closed. The return value is ignored when error is of type HTTPD_500_INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR and the socket closed anyway.

Return
- ESP_OK: error handled successful
- ESP_FAIL: failure indicates that the underlying socket needs to be closed

Parameters
- [in] req: HTTP request for which the error needs to be handled
- [in] error: Error type

typedef void *httpd_handle_t
HTTP Server Instance Handle.
Every instance of the server will have a unique handle.

typedef enum http_method httpd_method_t
HTTP Method Type wrapper over “enum http_method” available in “http_parser” library.

typedef void (*httpd_free_ctx_fn_t)(void *ctx)
Prototype for freeing context data (if any)

Parameters
- [in] ctx: object to free

typedef esp_err_t (*httpd_open_func_t)(httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd)
Function prototype for opening a session.
Called immediately after the socket was opened to set up the send/recv functions and other parameters of the socket.

Return
Chapter 2. API

• ESP_OK : On success
  • Any value other than ESP_OK will signal the server to close the socket immediately

Parameters
  • [in] hd: server instance
  • [in] sockfd: session socket file descriptor

typedef void (*httpd_close_func_t)(httpd_handle_t hd, int sockfd)
Function prototype for closing a session.

  Note It’s possible that the socket descriptor is invalid at this point, the function is called for all terminated
  sessions. Ensure proper handling of return codes.

Parameters
  • [in] hd: server instance
  • [in] sockfd: session socket file descriptor

typedef bool(*httpd_uri_match_func_t)(const char *reference_uri, const char *uri_to_match, size_t match_upto)
Function prototype for URI matching.

  Return true on match

Parameters
  • [in] reference_uri: URI/template with respect to which the other URI is matched
  • [in] uri_to_match: URI/template being matched to the reference URI/template
  • [in] match_upto: For specifying the actual length of uri_to_match up to which the
    matching algorithm is to be applied (The maximum value is strlen(uri_to_match), inde-
    pendent of the length of reference_uri)

typedef struct httpd_config httpd_config_t
HTTP Server Configuration Structure.

  Note Use HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG() to initialize the configuration to a default value and then modify
  only those fields that are specifically determined by the use case.

typedef void(*httpd_work_fn_t)(void *arg)
Prototype of the HTTPD work function Please refer to httpd_queue_work() for more details.

Parameters
  • [in] arg: The arguments for this work function

Enumerations
enum httpd_err_code_t
Error codes sent as HTTP response in case of errors encountered during processing of an HTTP request.

 Values:
HTTPD_500_INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR = 0
HTTPD_501_METHOD_NOT_IMPLEMENTED
HTTPD_505_VERSION_NOT_SUPPORTED
HTTPD_400_BAD_REQUEST
HTTPD_401_UNAUTHORIZED
HTTPD_403_FORBIDDEN
HTTPD_404_NOT_FOUND
HTTPD_405_METHOD_NOT_ALLOWED
HTTPD_408_REQ_TIMEOUT
HTTPD_411_LENGTH_REQUIRED
HTTPD_414_URI_TOO_LONG
HTTPD_431_REQ_HDR_FIELDS_TOO_LARGE
2.4.7 HTTPS server

Overview

This component is built on top of esp_http_server. The HTTPS server takes advantage of hooks and function overrides in the regular HTTP server to provide encryption using OpenSSL.

All documentation for esp_http_server applies also to a server you create this way.

Used APIs

The following API of esp_http_server should not be used with esp_https_server, as they are used internally to handle secure sessions and to maintain internal state:

- “send”, “receive” and “pending” function overrides - secure socket handling
  - httpd_sess_set_send_override()
  - httpd_sess_set_recv_override()
  - httpd_sess_set_pending_override()
- “transport context” - both global and session
  - httpd_sess_get_transport_ctx() - returns SSL used for the session
  - httpd_sess_set_transport_ctx()
  - httpd_get_global_transport_ctx() - returns the shared SSL context
  - httpd_config_t.global_transport_ctx
  - httpd_config_t.global_transport_ctx_free_fn
  - httpd_config_t.open_fn - used to set up secure sockets

Everything else can be used without limitations.

Usage

Please see the example protocols/https_server to learn how to set up a secure server.

Basically all you need is to generate a certificate, embed it in the firmware, and provide its pointers and lengths to the start function via the init struct.

The server can be started with or without SSL by changing a flag in the init struct - httpd_ssl_config.transport_mode. This could be used e.g. for testing or in trusted environments where you prefer speed over security.

Performance

The initial session setup can take about two seconds, or more with slower clock speeds or more verbose logging. Subsequent requests through the open secure socket are much faster (down to under 100 ms).

API Reference

Header File

- components/esp_https_server/include/esp_https_server.h
Chapter 2. API

Functions

esp_err_t httpd_ssl_start (httpd_handle_t *handle, httpd_ssl_config_t *config)

Create a SSL capable HTTP server (secure mode may be disabled in config)

Return success

Parameters

• [inout] config: - server config, must not be const. Does not have to stay valid after calling this function.
• [out] handle: - storage for the server handle, must be a valid pointer

void httpd_ssl_stop (httpd_handle_t handle)

Stop the server. Blocks until the server is shut down.

Parameters

• [in] handle:

Structures

struct esp_https_server_user_cb_arg

Callback data struct, contains the ESP-TLS connection handle.

struct httpd_ssl_config

HTTPS server config struct

Please use HTTPD_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULT() to initialize it.

Public Members

httpd_config_t httpd

Underlying HTTPD server config

Parameters like task stack size and priority can be adjusted here.

const uint8_t *cacert_pem

CA certificate (here it is treated as server cert) Todo: Fix this change in release/v5.0 as it would be a breaking change i.e. Rename the nomenclature of variables holding different certs in https_server component as well as example 1)The cacert variable should hold the CA which is used to authenticate clients (should inherit current role of client_verify_cert_pem var) 2)There should be another variable servercert which should hold servers own certificate (should inherit current role of cacert var)

size_t cacert_len

CA certificate byte length

const uint8_t *client_verify_cert_pem

Client verify authority certificate (CA used to sign clients, or client cert itself

size_t client_verify_cert_len

Client verify authority cert len

const uint8_t *prvtkey_pem

Private key

size_t prvtkey_len

Private key byte length

httpd_ssl_transport_mode_t transport_mode

Transport Mode (default secure)

uint16_t port_secure

Port used when transport mode is secure (default 443)

uint16_t port_insecure

Port used when transport mode is insecure (default 80)

bool session_tickets

Enable tls session tickets
Chapter 2. API

```c
esp_https_server_user_cb *user_cb

User callback for esp_https_server
```

**Macros**

`HTTPD_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULT()`

Default config struct init

(http_server default config had to be copied for customization)

**Notes:**

- port is set when starting the server, according to ‘transport_mode’
- one socket uses ~40k BRAM with SSL, we reduce the default socket count to 4
- SSL sockets are usually long-lived, closing LRU prevents pool exhaustion DOS
- Stack size may need adjustments depending on the user application

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef struct esp_https_server_user_cb_arg esp_https_server_user_cb_arg_t

Callback data struct, contains the ESP-TLS connection handle.
```

```c
typedef void esp_https_server_user_cb (esp_https_server_user_cb_arg_t *user_cb)

Callback function prototype. Can be used to get connection or client information (SSL context). E.g. Client certificate, Socket FD, Connection state, etc.
```

**Parameters**

- `user_cb`: Callback data struct

```c
typedef struct httpd_ssl_config httpd_ssl_config_t
```

**Enumerations**

```c
enum httpd_ssl_transport_mode_t

Values:

HTTPD_SSL_TRANSPORT_SECURE
HTTPD_SSL_TRANSPORT_INSECURE
```

### 2.4.8 ICMP Echo

**Overview**

ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol) is used for diagnostic or control purposes or generated in response to errors in IP operations. The common network util `ping` is implemented based on the ICMP packets with the type field value of 0, also called Echo Reply.

During a ping session, the source host firstly sends out an ICMP echo request packet and wait for an ICMP echo reply with specific times. In this way, it also measures the round-trip time for the messages. After receiving a valid ICMP echo reply, the source host will generate statistics about the IP link layer (e.g. packet loss, elapsed time, etc).

It is common that IoT device needs to check whether a remote server is alive or not. The device should show the warnings to users when it got offline. It can be achieved by creating a ping session and sending/parsing ICMP echo packets periodically.

To make this internal procedure much easier for users, ESP-IDF provides some out-of-box APIs.

**Create a new ping session**

To create a ping session, you need to fill in the `esp_ping_config_t` configuration structure firstly, specifying target IP address, interval times, and etc. Optionally, you can also register some callback functions with the `esp_ping_callbacks_t` structure.

Example method to create a new ping session and register callbacks:
static void test_on_ping_success(esp_ping_handle_t hdl, void *args)
{
    // optionally, get callback arguments
    // const char* str = (const char*) args;
    // printf("%s\r\n", str); // "foo"
    uint8_t ttl;
    uint16_t seqno;
    uint32_t elapsed_time, recv_len;
    ip_addr_t target_addr;
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_SEQNO, &seqno, sizeof(seqno));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_TTL, &ttl, sizeof(ttl));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_IPADDR, &target_addr, sizeof(target_addr));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_SIZE, &recv_len, sizeof(recv_len));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_TIMEGAP, &elapsed_time, sizeof(elapsed_time));
    printf("%d bytes from %s icmp_seq=%d ttl=%d time=%d ms\n", recv_len, inet_ntoa(target_addr.u_addr.ip4), seqno, ttl, elapsed_time);
}
static void test_on_ping_timeout(esp_ping_handle_t hdl, void *args)
{
    uint16_t seqno;
    ip_addr_t target_addr;
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_SEQNO, &seqno, sizeof(seqno));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_IPADDR, &target_addr, sizeof(target_addr));
    printf("From %s icmp_seq=%d timeout\n", inet_ntoa(target_addr.u_addr.ip4), seqno);
}
static void test_on_ping_end(esp_ping_handle_t hdl, void *args)
{
    uint32_t transmitted;
    uint32_t received;
    uint32_t total_time_ms;
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_REQUEST, &transmitted, sizeof(transmitted));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_REPLY, &received, sizeof(received));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_DURATION, &total_time_ms, sizeof(total_time_ms));
    printf("%d packets transmitted, %d received, time %dms\n", transmitted, received, total_time_ms);
}
void initialize_ping()
{
    /* convert URL to IP address */
    ip_addr_t target_addr;
    struct addrinfo hint;
    struct addrinfo *res = NULL;
    memset(&hint, 0, sizeof(hint));
    memset(&target_addr, 0, sizeof(target_addr));
    getaddrinfo("www.espressif.com", NULL, &hint, &res);
    struct in_addr addr4 = ((struct sockaddr_in *) (res->ai_addr))->sin_addr;
    inet_addr_to_ip4addr(ip_2_ip4(&target_addr), &addr4);
    freeaddrinfo(res);
    esp_ping_config_t ping_config = ESP_PING_DEFAULT_CONFIG();
    ping_config.target_addr = target_addr; // target IP address
    ping_config.count = ESP_PING_COUNT_INFINITE; // ping in infinite mode, esp_ping_stop can stop it
}
Start and Stop ping session  You can start and stop ping session with the handle returned by esp_ping_new_session. Note that, the ping session won’t start automatically after creation. If the ping session is stopped, and restart again, the sequence number in ICMP packets will recount from zero again.

Delete a ping session  If a ping session won’t be used any more, you can delete it with esp_ping_delete_session. Please make sure the ping session is in stop state (i.e. you have called esp_ping_stop before or the ping session has finished all the procedures) when you call this function.

Get runtime statistics  As the example code above, you can call esp_ping_get_profile to get different runtime statistics of ping session in the callback function.

Application Example

ICMP echo example: protocols/icmp_echo

API Reference

Header File

- components/lwip/include/apps/ping/ping_sock.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_ping_new_session(const esp_ping_config_t *config, const esp_ping_callbacks_t *cbs, esp_ping_handle_t *hdl_out)

Create a ping session.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. configuration is null, etc)
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: out of memory
- ESP_FAIL: other internal error (e.g. socket error)
- ESP_OK: create ping session successfully, user can take the ping handle to do follow-on jobs

Parameters

- config: ping configuration
- cbs: a bunch of callback functions invoked by internal ping task
- hdl_out: handle of ping session

esp_err_t esp_ping_delete_session(esp_ping_handle_t hdl)

Delete a ping session.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. ping handle is null, etc)
- ESP_OK: delete ping session successfully
Parameters
- hdl: handle of ping session

\texttt{esp_err_t esp\_ping\_start (esp\_ping\_handle\_t hdl)}
Start the ping session.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. ping handle is null, etc)
- ESP_OK: start ping session successfully

Parameters
- hdl: handle of ping session

\texttt{esp_err_t esp\_ping\_stop (esp\_ping\_handle\_t hdl)}
Stop the ping session.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. ping handle is null, etc)
- ESP_OK: stop ping session successfully

Parameters
- hdl: handle of ping session

\texttt{esp_err_t esp\_ping\_get\_profile (esp\_ping\_handle\_t hdl, esp\_ping\_profile\_t profile, void *data, uint32\_t size)}
Get runtime profile of ping session.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. ping handle is null, etc)
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: the actual profile data size doesn’t match the “size” parameter
- ESP_OK: get profile successfully

Parameters
- hdl: handle of ping session
- profile: type of profile
- data: profile data
- size: profile data size

Structures
\texttt{struct esp\_ping\_callbacks\_t}
Type of “ping” callback functions.

Public Members

void *cb\_args
arguments for callback functions

void (*on\_ping\_success) (esp\_ping\_handle\_t hdl, void *args)
Invoked by internal ping thread when received ICMP echo reply packet.

void (*on\_ping\_timeout) (esp\_ping\_handle\_t hdl, void *args)
Invoked by internal ping thread when receive ICMP echo reply packet timeout.

void (*on\_ping\_end) (esp\_ping\_handle\_t hdl, void *args)
Invoked by internal ping thread when a ping session is finished.

\texttt{struct esp\_ping\_config\_t}
Type of “ping” configuration.

Public Members

uint32\_t count
A “ping” session contains count procedures
uint32_t interval_ms
    Milliseconds between each ping procedure
uint32_t timeout_ms
    Timeout value (in milliseconds) of each ping procedure
uint32_t data_size
    Size of the data next to ICMP packet header
uint8_t tos
    Type of Service, a field specified in the IP header
ip_addr_t target_addr
    Target IP address, either IPv4 or IPv6
uint32_t task_stack_size
    Stack size of internal ping task
uint32_t task_prio
    Priority of internal ping task
uint32_t interface
    Netif index, interface=0 means NETIF_NO_INDEX

Macros
ESP_PING_DEFAULT_CONFIG()
    Default ping configuration.
ESP_PING_COUNT_INFINITE
    Set ping count to zero will ping target infinitely

Type Definitions
typedef void *esp_ping_handle_t
    Type of “ping” session handle.

Enumerations
enum esp_ping_profile_t
    Profile of ping session.
    Values:
    ESP_PING_PROF_SEQNO
        Sequence number of a ping procedure
    ESP_PING_PROF_TTL
        Time to live of a ping procedure
    ESP_PING_PROF_REQUEST
        Number of request packets sent out
    ESP_PING_PROF_REPLY
        Number of reply packets received
    ESP_PING_PROF_IPADDR
        IP address of replied target
    ESP_PING_PROF_SIZE
        Size of received packet
    ESP_PING_PROF_TIMEGAP
        Elapsed time between request and reply packet
    ESP_PING_PROF_DURATION
        Elapsed time of the whole ping session
2.4.9 ASIO port

Overview

Asio is a cross-platform C++ library, see https://think-async.com. It provides a consistent asynchronous model using a modern C++ approach.

**ASIO documentation** Please refer to the original asio documentation at https://think-async.com/Asio/Documentation. Asio also comes with a number of examples which could be find under Documentation/Examples on that web site.

**Supported features**  ESP platform port currently supports only network asynchronous socket operations; does not support serial port. SSL/TLS support is disabled by default and could be enabled in component configuration menu by choosing TLS library from

- mbedTLS with OpenSSL translation layer (default option)
- wolfSSL

SSL support is very basic at this stage and it does include following features:

- Verification callbacks
- DH property files
- Certificates/private keys file APIs

Internal asio settings for ESP include

- EXCEPTIONS are enabled in ASIO if enabled in menuconfig
- TYPEID is enabled in ASIO if enabled in menuconfig

Application Example

ESP examples are based on standard asio protocols/asio:

- protocols/asio/udp_echo_server
- protocols/asio/tcp_echo_server
- protocols/asio/asio_chat
- protocols/asio/ssl_client_server

Please refer to the specific example README.md for details

2.4.10 ESP-MQTT

Overview

ESP-MQTT is an implementation of MQTT protocol client (MQTT is a lightweight publish/subscribe messaging protocol).

**Features**

- Supports MQTT over TCP, SSL with mbedtls, MQTT over Websocket, MQTT over Websocket Secure.
- Easy to setup with URI
- Multiple instances (Multiple clients in one application)
- Support subscribing, publishing, authentication, last will messages, keep alive pings and all 3 QoS levels (it should be a fully functional client).
Application Example

- protocols/mqtt/tcp: MQTT over tcp, default port 1883
- protocols/mqtt/ssl: MQTT over tcp, default port 8883
- protocols/mqtt/ssl_psk: MQTT over tcp using pre-shared keys for authentication, default port 8883
- protocols/mqtt/ws: MQTT over Websocket, default port 80
- protocols/mqtt/wss: MQTT over Websocket Secure, default port 443

Configuration

URI

- Currently support mqtt, mqtts, ws, wss schemes
- MQTT over TCP samples:
  - mqtt://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io: MQTT over TCP, default port 1883;
  - mqtt://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:1884: MQTT over TCP, port 1884;
  - mqtt://username:password@mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:1884: MQTT over TCP, port 1884, with username and password
- MQTT over SSL samples:
  - mqtts://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io: MQTT over SSL, port 8883
  - mqtts://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:8884: MQTT over SSL, port 8884
- MQTT over Websocket samples:
  - ws://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:80/mqtt
- MQTT over Websocket Secure samples:
  - wss://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:443/mqtt

  Minimal configurations:

```c
const esp_mqtt_client_config_t mqtt_cfg = {
  .uri = "mqtt://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io",
  // .user_context = (void *)your_context
};
```

```c
esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client = esp_mqtt_client_init(&mqtt_cfg);
esp_mqtt_client_register_event(client, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID, mqtt_event_handler, ...
  client);
esp_mqtt_client_start(client);
```

  Note: By default mqtt client uses event loop library to post related mqtt events (connected, subscribed, published, etc.)

SSL

- Get certificate from server, example: mqtt.eclipseprojects.io openssl s_client
  -showcerts -connect mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:8883 </dev/null 2>/dev/null
  openssl x509 -outform PEM >mqtt_eclipse_org.pem
- Check the sample application: examples/mqtt_ssl
- Configuration:

```c
const esp_mqtt_client_config_t mqtt_cfg = {
  .uri = "mqtts://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:8883",
  .event_handle = mqtt_event_handler,
  .cert_pem = (const char *)mqtt_eclipse_org.pem_start,
};
```

If the certificate is not null-terminated then cert_len should also be set. Other SSL related configuration parameters are:

- use_global_ca_store: use the global certificate store to verify server certificate, see esp-tls.h for more information
- client_cert_pem: pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed.
Chapter 2. API

- **client_cert_len**: length of the buffer pointed to by client_cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem.
- **client_key_pem**: pointer to private key data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed.
- **client_key_len**: length of the buffer pointed to by client_key_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem.
- **psk_hint_key**: pointer to PSK struct defined in esp_tls.h to enable PSK authentication (as alternative to certificate verification). If not NULL and server/client certificates are NULL, PSK is enabled
- **alpn_protos**: NULL-terminated list of protocols to be used for ALPN.

**Last Will and Testament**  MQTT allows for a last will and testament (LWT) message to notify other clients when a client ungracefully disconnects. This is configured by the following fields in the esp_mqtt_client_config_t-struct.

- **lwt_topic**: pointer to the LWT message topic
- **lwt_msg**: pointer to the LWT message
- **lwt_msg_len**: length of the LWT message, required if lwt_msg is not null-terminated
- **lwt_qos**: quality of service for the LWT message
- **lwt_retain**: specifies the retain flag of the LWT message

**Other Configuration Parameters**

- **disable_clean_session**: determines the clean session flag for the connect message, defaults to a clean session
- **keepalive**: determines how many seconds the client will wait for a ping response before disconnecting, default is 120 seconds.
- **disable_auto_reconnect**: enable to stop the client from reconnecting to server after errors or disconnects
- **user_context**: custom context that will be passed to the event handler
- **task_prio**: MQTT task priority, defaults to 5
- **task_stack**: MQTT task stack size, defaults to 6144 bytes, setting this will override setting from menu-config
- **buffer_size**: size of MQTT send/receive buffer, default is 1024 bytes
- **username**: pointer to the username used for connecting to the broker
- **password**: pointer to the password used for connecting to the broker
- **client_id**: pointer to the client id, defaults to ESP32_%CHIPID% where %CHIPID% are the last 3 bytes of MAC address in hex format
- **host**: MQTT broker domain (ipv4 as string), setting the uri will override this
- **port**: MQTT broker port, specifying the port in the uri will override this
- **transport**: sets the transport protocol, setting the uri will override this
- **refresh_connection_after_ms**: refresh connection after this value (in milliseconds)
- **event_handle**: handle for MQTT events as a callback in legacy mode
- **event_loop_handle**: handle for MQTT event loop library

For more options on esp_mqtt_client_config, please refer to API reference below

**Change settings in Project Configuration Menu**  The settings for MQTT can be found using idf.py menu-config, under Component config -> ESP-MQTT Configuration

The following settings are available:

- **CONFIG_MQTT_PROTOCOL_311**: Enables 3.1.1 version of MQTT protocol
- **CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_SSL, CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET**: Enables specific MQTT transport layer, such as SSL, WEBSOCKET, WEBSOCKET_SECURE
- **CONFIG_MQTT_CUSTOM_OUTBOX**: Disables default implementation of mqtt_outbox, so a specific implementation can be supplied

**Events**

The following events may be posted by the MQTT client:
• **MQTT_EVENT_BEFORE_CONNECT**: The client is initialized and about to start connecting to the broker.
• **MQTT_EVENT_CONNECTED**: The client has successfully established a connection to the broker. The client is now ready to send and receive data.
• **MQTT_EVENT_DISCONNECTED**: The client has aborted the connection due to being unable to read or write data, e.g. because the server is unavailable.
• **MQTT_EVENT_SUBSCRIBED**: The broker has acknowledged the client’s subscribe request. The event data will contain the message ID of the subscribe message.
• **MQTT_EVENT_UNSUBSCRIBED**: The broker has acknowledged the client’s unsubscribe request. The event data will contain the message ID of the unsubscribe message.
• **MQTT_EVENT_PUBLISHED**: The broker has acknowledged the client’s publish message. This will only be posted for Quality of Service level 1 and 2, as level 0 does not use acknowledgements. The event data will contain the message ID of the publish message.
• **MQTT_EVENT_DATA**: The client has received a publish message. The event data contains: message ID, name of the topic it was published to, received data and its length. For data that exceeds the internal buffer multiple **MQTT_EVENT_DATA** will be posted and **current_data_offset** and **total_data_len** from event data updated to keep track of the fragmented message.
• **MQTT_EVENT_ERROR**: The client has encountered an error. **esp_mqtt_error_type_t** from **error_handle** in the event data can be used to further determine the type of the error. The type of error will determine which parts of the **error_handle** struct is filled.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/mqtt/esp-mqtt/include/mqtt_client.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_mqtt_client_handle_t esp_mqtt_client_init(const esp_mqtt_client_config_t *config)
```

Creates mqtt client handle based on the configuration.

**Return**
.

**Parameters**

- **config**: mqtt configuration structure

```c
esp_err_t esp_mqtt_client_set_uri(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client, const char *uri)
```

Sets mqtt connection URI. This API is usually used to overrides the URI configured in esp_mqtt_client_init.

**Return**

ESP_FAIL if URI parse error, ESP_OK on success

**Parameters**

- **client**: mqtt client handle
- **uri**:

```c
esp_err_t esp_mqtt_client_start(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client)
```

Starts mqtt client with already created client handle.

**Return**

ESP_OK on success ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG on wrong initialization ESP_FAIL on other error

**Parameters**

- **client**: mqtt client handle

```c
esp_err_t esp_mqtt_client_reconnect(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client)
```

This api is typically used to force reconnection upon a specific event.

**Return**

ESP_OK on success ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG on wrong initialization ESP_FAIL if client is in invalid state

**Parameters**

- **client**: mqtt client handle

```c
esp_err_t esp_mqtt_client_disconnect(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client)
```

This api is typically used to force disconnection from the broker.

**Return**

ESP_OK on success ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG on wrong initialization

**Parameters**
• client: mqtt client handle

    `esp_err_t esp_mqtt_client_stop(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client)`
    Stops mqtt client tasks.
    * Notes:
      * Cannot be called from the mqtt event handler
    * Return ESP_OK on success ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG on wrong initialization ESP_FAIL if client is in invalid state
    * Parameters
      * client: mqtt client handle

int `esp_mqtt_client_subscribe(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client, const char* topic, int qos)`
  Subscribe the client to defined topic with defined qos.
  * Notes:
    * Client must be connected to send subscribe message
    * This API is could be executed from a user task or from a mqtt event callback i.e. internal mqtt task (API is protected by internal mutex, so it might block if a longer data receive operation is in progress.
  * Return message_id of the subscribe message on success -1 on failure
  * Parameters
    * client: mqtt client handle
    * topic:
    * qos:

int `esp_mqtt_client_unsubscribe(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client, const char* topic)`
  Unsubscribe the client from defined topic.
  * Notes:
    * Client must be connected to send unsubscribe message
    * It is thread safe, please refer to esp_mqtt_client_subscribe for details
  * Return message_id of the subscribe message on success -1 on failure
  * Parameters
    * client: mqtt client handle
    * topic:

int `esp_mqtt_client_publish(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client, const char* topic, const char* data, int len, int qos, int retain)`
  Client to send a publish message to the broker.
  * Notes:
    * This API might block for several seconds, either due to network timeout (10s) or if publishing payloads longer than internal buffer (due to message fragmentation)
    * Client doesn’t have to be connected for this API to work, enqueuing the messages with qos>1 (returning -1 for all the qos=0 messages if disconnected). If MQTT_SKIP_PUBLISH_IF_DISCONNECTED is enabled, this API will not attempt to publish when the client is not connected and will always return -1.
    * It is thread safe, please refer to esp_mqtt_client_subscribe for details
  * Return message_id of the publish message (for QoS 0 message_id will always be zero) on success. -1 on failure
  * Parameters
    * client: mqtt client handle
    * topic: topic string
    * data: payload string (set to NULL, sending empty payload message)
    * len: data length, if set to 0, length is calculated from payload string
    * qos: qos of publish message
    * retain: retain flag
int esp_mqtt_client_enqueue(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client, const char *topic, const char *data, int len, int qos, int retain, bool store)

Enqueue a message to the outbox, to be sent later. Typically used for messages with qos>0, but could be also used for qos=0 messages if store=true.

This API generates and stores the publish message into the internal outbox and the actual sending to the network is performed in the mqtt-task context (in contrast to the esp_mqtt_client_publish() which sends the publish message immediately in the user task’s context). Thus, it could be used as a non blocking version of esp_mqtt_client_publish().

Return message_id if queued successfully, -1 otherwise

Parameters
• client: mqtt client handle
• topic: topic string
• data: payload string (set to NULL, sending empty payload message)
• len: data length, if set to 0, length is calculated from payload string
• qos: qos of publish message
• retain: retain flag
• store: if true, all messages are enqueued; otherwise only qos1 and qos2 are enqueued

esp_err_t esp_mqtt_client_destroy(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client)

Destroys the client handle.

Notes:
• Cannot be called from the mqtt event handler

Return ESP_OK ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG on wrong initialization

Parameters
• client: mqtt client handle

esp_err_t esp_mqtt_set_config(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client, const esp_mqtt_client_config_t *config)

Set configuration structure, typically used when updating the config (i.e. on “before_connect” event.

Return ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if failed to allocate ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if conflicts on transport configuration. ESP_OK on success

Parameters
• client: mqtt client handle
• config: mqtt configuration structure

esp_err_t esp_mqtt_client_register_event(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client,
                                      esp_mqtt_event_id_t event,
                                      esp_event_handler_t event_handler,
                                      void *event_handler_arg)

 Registers mqtt event.

Return ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if failed to allocate ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG on wrong initialization
ESP_OK on success

Parameters
• client: mqtt client handle
• event: event type
• event_handler: handler callback
• event_handler_arg: handlers context

int esp_mqtt_client_get_outbox_size(esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client)

Get outbox size.

Return outbox size 0 on wrong initialization

Parameters
• client: mqtt client handle

Structures
struct esp_mqtt_error_codes

MQTT error code structure to be passed as a contextual information into ERROR event.
Important: This structure extends `esp_tls_last_error` error structure and is backward compatible with it (so might be down-casted and treated as `esp_tls_last_error` error, but recommended to update applications if used this way previously)

Use this structure directly checking error_type first and then appropriate error code depending on the source of the error:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>error_type</th>
<th>related member variables</th>
<th>note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT</td>
<td>esp_tls_last_err, esp_tls_stack_err, esp_tls_cert_verify_flags, sock_errno</td>
<td>Error reported from tcp_transport/esp-tls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_CONNECTION_REFUSED</td>
<td>connect_return_code</td>
<td>Internal error reported from MQTT broker on connection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Public Members**

`esp_err_t esp_tls_last_esp_err`
- last esp_err code reported from esp-tls component

`int esp_tls_stack_err`
- tls specific error code reported from underlying tls stack

`int esp_tls_cert_verify_flags`
- tls flags reported from underlying tls stack during certificate verification

`esp_mqtt_error_type_t error_type`
- error type referring to the source of the error

`esp_mqtt_connect_return_code_t connect_return_code`
- connection refused error code reported from MQTT broker on connection

`int esp_transport_sock_errno`
- errno from the underlying socket

`struct esp_mqtt_event_t`
- MQTT event configuration structure

**Public Members**

`esp_mqtt_event_id_t event_id`
- MQTT event type

`esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client`
- MQTT client handle for this event

`void *user_context`
- User context passed from MQTT client config

`char *data`
- Data associated with this event

`int data_len`
- Length of the data for this event

`int total_data_len`
- Total length of the data (longer data are supplied with multiple events)

`int current_data_offset`
- Actual offset for the data associated with this event

`char *topic`
- Topic associated with this event

`int topic_len`
- Length of the topic for this event associated with this event

`int msg_id`
- MQTT message id of message
Chapter 2. API

int session_present
MQTT session_present flag for connection event

esp_mqtt_error_codes_t *error_handle
esp-mqtt error handle including esp-tls errors as well as internal mqtt errors

bool retain
Retained flag of the message associated with this event

struct esp_mqtt_client_config_t
MQTT client configuration structure

Public Members

mqtt_event_callback_t event_handle
handle for MQTT events as a callback in legacy mode

esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop_handle
handle for MQTT event loop library

const char *host
MQTT server domain (ipv4 as string)

const char *uri
Complete MQTT broker URI

uint32_t port
MQTT server port

const char *client_id
default client id is ESP32_CHIPID% where CHIPID% are last 3 bytes of MAC address in hex format

const char *username
MQTT username

const char *password
MQTT password

const char *lwt_topic
LWT (Last Will and Testament) message topic (NULL by default)

const char *lwt_msg
LWT message (NULL by default)

int lwt_qos
LWT message qos

int lwt_retain
LWT retained message flag

int lwt_msg_len
LWT message length

int disable_clean_session
mqtt clean session, default clean_session is true

int keepalive
mqtt keepalive, default is 120 seconds

bool disable_auto_reconnect
this mqtt client will reconnect to server (when errors/disconnect). Set disable_auto_reconnect=true to disable

void *user_context
pass user context to this option, then can receive that context in event->user_context
**Chapter 2. API**

**task_prio**
- MQTT task priority, default is 5, can be changed in `make menuconfig`

**task_stack**
- MQTT task stack size, default is 6144 bytes, can be changed in `make menuconfig`

**buffer_size**
- size of MQTT send/receive buffer, default is 1024 (only receive buffer size if `out_buffer_size` defined)

**cert_pem**
- Pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for server verify (with SSL), default is NULL, not required to verify the server. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in `cert_len`.

**client_cert_len**
- Length of the buffer pointed to by `cert_pem`. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

**client_key_pem**
- Pointer to private key data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed. If it is not NULL, also `client_cert_pem` has to be provided. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in `client_key_len`.

**client_key_len**
- Length of the buffer pointed to by `client_key_pem`. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

**transport**
- Overrides URI transport

**refresh_connection_after_ms**
- Refresh connection after this value (in milliseconds)

**psk_hint_key**
- Pointer to PSK struct defined in esp_tls.h to enable PSK authentication (as alternative to certificate verification). If not NULL and server/client certificates are NULL, PSK is enabled

**use_global_ca_store**
- Use a global ca store for all the connections in which this bool is set.

**crt_bundle_attach**
- Pointer to ESP x509 Certificate Bundle attach function for the usage of certification bundles in mqtt

**reconnect_timeout_ms**
- Reconnect to the broker after this value in milliseconds if auto reconnect is not disabled (defaults to 10s)

**alpn_protos**
- NULL-terminated list of supported application protocols to be used for ALPN

**clientkey_password**
- Client key decryption password string

**clientkey_password_len**
- String length of the password pointed to by `clientkey_password`

**protocol_ver**
- MQTT protocol version used for connection, defaults to value from menuconfig
Chapter 2. API

```c
int out_buffer_size
size of MQTT output buffer. If not defined, both output and input buffers have the same size defined as buffer_size

bool skip_cert_common_name_check
Skip any validation of server certificate CN field, this reduces the security of TLS and makes the mqtt client susceptible to MITM attacks

bool use_secure_element
enable secure element for enabling SSL connection

void *ds_data
carrier of handle for digital signature parameters

int network_timeout_ms
Abort network operation if it is not completed after this value, in milliseconds (defaults to 10s)

bool disable_keepalive
Set disable_keepalive=true to turn off keep-alive mechanism, false by default (keepalive is active by default). Note: setting the config value keepalive to 0 doesn’t disable keepalive feature, but uses a default keepalive period

const char *path
Path in the URI

int message_retransmit_timeout
timeout for retransmit of failed packet
```

**Macros**

MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_ESP_TLS
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT error type hold all sorts of transport layer errors, including ESP-TLS error, but in the past only the errors from MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_ESP_TLS layer were reported, so the ESP-TLS error type is re-defined here for backward compatibility.

**Type Definitions**

typedef struct esp_mqtt_client *esp_mqtt_client_handle_t

typedef struct esp_mqtt_error_codes esp_mqtt_error_codes_t
MQTT error code structure to be passed as a contextual information into ERROR event.

Important: This structure extends esp_tls_last_error error structure and is backward compatible with it (so might be down-casted and treated as esp_tls_last_error error, but recommended to update applications if used this way previously)

Use this structure directly checking error_type first and then appropriate error code depending on the source of the error:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>error_type</th>
<th>related member variables</th>
<th>note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT</td>
<td>esp_tls_last_err, esp_tls_stack_err, esp_tls_cert_verify_flags, sock_errno</td>
<td>Error reported from tcp_transport/esp-tls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_CONNECTION_REFUSED</td>
<td>connect_return_code</td>
<td>Internal error reported from MQTT broker on connection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Enumerations**

enum esp_mqtt_event_id_t
MQTT event types.

User event handler receives context data in esp_mqtt_event_t structure with

- user_context - user data from esp_mqtt_client_config_t
- client - mqtt client handle
• various other data depending on event type

Values:

MQTT_EVENT_ANY = -1

MQTT_EVENT_ERROR = 0
  on error event, additional context: connection return code, error handle from esp_tls (if supported)

MQTT_EVENT_CONNECTED
  connected event, additional context: session_present flag

MQTT_EVENT_DISCONNECTED
  disconnected event

MQTT_EVENT_SUBSCRIBED
  subscribed event, additional context: msg_id

MQTT_EVENT_UNSUBSCRIBED
  unsubscribed event

MQTT_EVENT_PUBLISHED
  published event, additional context: msg_id

MQTT_EVENT_DATA
  data event, additional context:
  • msg_id message id
  • topic pointer to the received topic
  • topic_len length of the topic
  • data pointer to the received data
  • data_len length of the data for this event
  • current_data_offset offset of the current data for this event
  • total_data_len total length of the data received
  • retain retain flag of the message Note: Multiple MQTT_EVENT_DATA could be fired for one message, if it is longer than internal buffer. In that case only first event contains topic pointer and length, other contain data only with current data length and current data offset updating.

MQTT_EVENT_BEFORE_CONNECT
  The event occurs before connecting

MQTT_EVENT_DELETED
  Notification on delete of one message from the internal outbox, if the message couldn’t have been sent and acknowledged before expiring defined in OUTBOX_EXPIRED_TIMEOUT_MS. (events are not posted upon deletion of successfully acknowledged messages)
  • This event id is posted only if MQTT_REPORT_DELETED_MESSAGES==1
  • Additional context: msg_id (id of the deleted message).

enum esp_mqtt_connect_return_code_t
MQTT connection error codes propagated via ERROR event

Values:

MQTT_CONNECTION_ACCEPTED = 0
  Connection accepted

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_PROTOCOL
  MQTT connection refused reason: Wrong protocol

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_ID_REJECTED
  MQTT connection refused reason: ID rejected

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_SERVER_UNAVAILABLE
  MQTT connection refused reason: Server unavailable

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_BAD_USERNAME
  MQTT connection refused reason: Wrong user
MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_NOT_AUTHORIZED
MQTT connection refused reason: Wrong username or password

enum esp_mqtt_error_type_t
MQTT connection error codes propagated via ERROR event
Values:
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_NONE = 0
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_CONNECTION_REFUSED

enum esp_mqtt_transport_t
Values:
MQTT_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN = 0x0
MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP
MQTT over TCP, using scheme: mqtt
MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL
MQTT over SSL, using scheme: mqtts
MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_WS
MQTT over Websocket, using scheme:: ws
MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_WSS
MQTT over Websocket Secure, using scheme: wss

enum esp_mqtt_protocol_ver_t
MQTT protocol version used for connection
Values:
MQTT_PROTOCOL_UNDEFINED = 0
MQTT_PROTOCOL_V_3_1
MQTT_PROTOCOL_V_3_1_1

2.4.11 ESP-Modbus

Overview

The Modbus serial communication protocol is de facto standard protocol widely used to connect industrial electronic devices. Modbus allows communication among many devices connected to the same network, for example, a system that measures temperature and humidity and communicates the results to a computer. The Modbus protocol uses several types of data: Holding Registers, Input Registers, Coils (single bit output), Discrete Inputs. Versions of the Modbus protocol exist for serial port and for Ethernet and other protocols that support the Internet protocol suite. There are many variants of Modbus protocols, some of them are:

- Modbus RTU — This is used in serial communication and makes use of a compact, binary representation of the data for protocol communication. The RTU format follows the commands/data with a cyclic redundancy check checksum as an error check mechanism to ensure the reliability of data. Modbus RTU is the most common implementation available for Modbus. A Modbus RTU message must be transmitted continuously without inter-character hesitations. Modbus messages are framed (separated) by idle (silent) periods. The RS-485 interface communication is usually used for this type.
- Modbus ASCII — This is used in serial communication and makes use of ASCII characters for protocol communication. The ASCII format uses a longitudinal redundancy check checksum. Modbus ASCII messages are framed by leading colon (":" ) and trailing newline (CR/LF).
- Modbus TCP/IP or Modbus TCP — This is a Modbus variant used for communications over TCP/IP networks, connecting over port 502. It does not require a checksum calculation, as lower layers already provide checksum protection.
The following document (and included code snippets) requires some familiarity with the Modbus protocol. Refer to the Modbus Organization’s with protocol specifications for specifics.

**Messaging Model And Data Mapping**

Modbus is an application protocol that defines rules for messaging structure and data organization that are independent of the data transmission medium. Traditional serial Modbus is a register-based protocol that defines message transactions that occur between master(s) and slave devices (multiple masters are allowed on using Modbus TCP/IP). The slave devices listen for communication from the master and simply respond as instructed. The master(s) always controls communication and may communicate directly to one slave, or all connected slaves, but the slaves cannot communicate directly with each other.

![Modbus segment diagram](image)

**图 24: Modbus segment diagram**

**Note:** It is assumed that the number of slaves and their register maps are known by the Modbus master before the start of stack.

The register map of each slave device is usually part of its device manual. A Slave device usually permits configuration of its short slave address and communication options that are used within the device’s network segment.

The Modbus protocol allows devices to map data to four types of registers (Holding, Input, Discrete, Coil). The figure below illustrates an example mapping of a device’s data to the four types of registers.
Modbus Port Initialization

The ESP_Modbus supports Modbus SERIAL and TCP ports and a port must be initialized before calling any other Modbus API. The functions below are used to create and then initialize Modbus controller interface (either master or slave) over a particular transmission medium (either Serial or TCP/IP):

- `mbc_slave_init()`
- `mbc_master_init()`
- `mbc_slave_init_tcp()`
- `mbc_master_init_tcp()`

The API call uses the first parameter to recognize the type of port being initialized. Supported enumeration for different ports: `MB_PORT_SERIAL_MASTER, MB_PORT_SERIAL_SLAVE` accordingly. The parameters `MB_PORT_TCP_MASTER, MB_PORT_TCP_SLAVE` are reserved for internal usage.

```c
void* master_handler = NULL; // Pointer to allocate interface structure
// Initialization of Modbus master for serial port
esp_err_t err = mbc_master_init(MB_PORT_SERIAL_MASTER, &master_handler);
if (master_handler == NULL || err != ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "mb controller initialization fail.");
}
```

This example code to initialize slave port:

```c
void* slave_handler = NULL; // Pointer to allocate interface structure
// Initialization of Modbus slave for TCP
esp_err_t err = mbc_slave_init_tcp(&slave_handler);
if (slave_handler == NULL || err != ESP_OK) {
    // Error handling is performed here
}
```
Modbus Master API Overview

The following overview describes how to setup Modbus master communication. The overview reflects a typical programming workflow and is broken down into the sections provided below:

1. **Modbus Port Initialization** - Initialization of Modbus controller interface for the selected port.
2. **Configuring Master Data Access** - Configure data descriptors to access slave parameters.
3. **Master Communication Options** - Allows to setup communication options for selected port.
4. **Master Communication** - Start stack and sending / receiving data.
5. **Modbus Master Teardown** - Destroy Modbus controller and its resources.

**Configuring Master Data Access** The architectural approach of ESP_Modbus includes one level above standard Modbus IO driver. The additional layer is called Modbus controller and its goal is to add an abstraction such as CID - characteristic identifier. The CID is linked to a corresponding Modbus registers through the table called Data Dictionary and represents device physical parameter (such as temperature, humidity, etc.) in specific Modbus slave device. This approach allows the upper layer (e.g., MESH or MQTT) to be isolated from Modbus specifics thus simplify Modbus integration with other protocols/networks.

The Data Dictionary is the list in the Modbus master which shall be defined by user to link each CID to its corresponding Modbus registers representation using Register Mapping table of the Modbus slave being used. Each element in this data dictionary is of type `mb_parameter_descriptor_t` and represents the description of one physical characteristic:
### Table 1: Modbus master Data Dictionary description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cid</td>
<td>Characteristic ID (must be unique).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param_key</td>
<td>String description of the characteristic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param_units</td>
<td>Physical Units of the characteristic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mb_slave_addr</td>
<td>The short address of the device with correspond parameter UID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mb_param_type</td>
<td>Type of Modbus register area. MB_PARAM_INPUT, MB_PARAM_HOLDING, MB_PARAM_COIL, MB_PARAM_DISCRETE - represents Input, Holding, Coil and Discrete input register area accordingly;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mb_reg_start</td>
<td>Relative register address of the characteristic in the register area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mb_size</td>
<td>Length of characteristic in registers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param_offset</td>
<td>Offset to instance of the characteristic in bytes. It is used to calculate the absolute address to the characteristic in the storage structure. It is optional field and can be set to zero if the parameter is not used in the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param_type</td>
<td>Specifies type of the characteristic. PARAM_TYPE_U8, PARAM_TYPE_U16, PARAM_TYPE_U32 - Unsigned integer 8/16/32 bit type; PARAM_TYPE_FLOAT - IEEE754 floating point format; PARAM_TYPE_ASCII - ASCII string or binary data;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param_size</td>
<td>The storage size of the characteristic (bytes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param_opts</td>
<td>Limits, options of characteristic used during processing of alarm in user application (optional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>access</td>
<td>Can be used in user application to define the behavior of the characteristic during processing of data in user application; PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER, PAR_PERMS_READ, PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The cid and param_key have to be unique. Please use the prefix to the parameter key if you have several similar parameters in your register map table.

### Table 2: Example Register mapping table of Modbus slave

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CID</th>
<th>Register Range</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>30000-30003</td>
<td>MAX_UINT32</td>
<td>Not defined</td>
<td>Serial number of device (4 bytes) read-only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>30002-30003</td>
<td>MAX_UINT16</td>
<td>Not defined</td>
<td>Software version (4 bytes) read-only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>40000-40003</td>
<td>FLOAT</td>
<td>DegC</td>
<td>Room temperature in DegC. Writing a temperature value to this register for single point calibration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```c
// Enumeration of modbus slave addresses accessed by master device
typedef enum {
    MB_DEVICE_ADDR1 = 1,
    MB_DEVICE_ADDR2,
    MB_SLAVE_COUNT
};
```

(下頁繼續)
Chapter 2. API

Enumeration of all supported CIDs for device

```c
enum {
    CID_SER_NUM1 = 0,
    CID_SW_VER1,
    CID_TEMP_DATA_1,
    CID_SER_NUM2,
    CID_SW_VER2,
    CID_TEMP_DATA_2
};
```

Example Data Dictionary for Modbus parameters in 2 slaves in the segment

```c
mb_parameter_descriptor_t device_parameters[] = {
    // CID, Name, Units, Modbus addr, register type, Modbus Reg Start Addr, Modbus Reg read length,
    // Instance offset (NA), Instance type, Instance length (bytes), Options (NA), Permissions
    { CID_SER_NUM1, STR("Serial_number_1"), STR("--"), MB_DEVICE_ADDR1, MB_PARAM_INPUT, 0, 2, 0, PARAM_TYPE_U32, 4, OPTS(0,0,0), PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER },
    { CID_SW_VER1, STR("Software_version_1"), STR("--"), MB_DEVICE_ADDR1, MB_PARAM_INPUT, 2, 1, 0, PARAM_TYPE_U16, 2, OPTS(0,0,0), PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER },
    { CID_TEMP_DATA_1, STR("Temperature_1"), STR("C"), MB_DEVICE_ADDR1, MB_PARAM_HOLDING, 0, 2, 0, PARAM_TYPE_FLOAT, 4, OPTS(16,30,1), PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER },
    { CID_SER_NUM2, STR("Serial_number_2"), STR("--"), MB_DEVICE_ADDR2, MB_PARAM_INPUT, 0, 2, 0, PARAM_TYPE_U32, 4, OPTS(0,0,0), PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER },
    { CID_SW_VER2, STR("Software_version_2"), STR("--"), MB_DEVICE_ADDR2, MB_PARAM_INPUT, 2, 1, 0, PARAM_TYPE_U16, 2, OPTS(0,0,0), PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER },
    { CID_TEMP_DATA_2, STR("Temperature_2"), STR("C"), MB_DEVICE_ADDR2, MB_PARAM_HOLDING, 0, 2, 0, PARAM_TYPE_FLOAT, 4, OPTS(20,30,1), PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER },
};
```

```
// Calculate number of parameters in the table
uint16_t num_device_parameters = (sizeof(device_parameters) / sizeof(device_parameters[0]));
```

During initialization of the Modbus stack, a pointer to the Data Dictionary (called descriptor) must be provided as the parameter of the function below.

`mbc_master_set_descriptor()`: Initialization of master descriptor.

```c
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(mbc_master_set_descriptor(&device_parameters[0], num_device_parameters));
```

The Data Dictionary can be initialized from SD card, MQTT or other source before start of stack. Once the initialization and setup is done, the Modbus controller allows the reading of complex parameters from any slave included in descriptor table using its CID.

**Master Communication Options** Calling the setup function allows for specific communication options to be defined for port.
mbc_master_setup()

The communication structure provided as a parameter is different for serial and TCP communication mode.

Example setup for serial port:

```c
mb_communication_info_t comm_info = {
    .port = MB_PORT_NUM,  // Serial port number
    .mode = MB_MODE_RTU,   // Modbus mode of communication (MB_MODE_RTU or MB_MODE_ASCII)
    .baudrate = 9600,      // Modbus communication baud rate
    .parity = MB_PARITY_NONE // parity option for serial port
};
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(mbc_master_setup((void*)&comm_info));
```

Modbus master TCP port requires additional definition of IP address table where number of addresses should be equal to number of unique slave addresses in master Modbus Data Dictionary:

```c
#define MB_SLAVE_COUNT 2 // Number of slaves in the segment being accessed (as defined in Data Dictionary)
char* slave_ip_address_table[MB_SLAVE_COUNT] = {
    "192.168.1.2",  // Address corresponds to UID1 and set to predefined value by user
    "192.168.1.3",  // corresponds to UID2 in the segment
    NULL // end of table
};
mb_communication_info_t comm_info = {
    .ip_port = MB_TCP_PORT,  // Modbus TCP port number (default = 502)
    .ip_addr_type = MB_IPV4,  // version of IP protocol
    .ip_mode = MB_MODE_TCP,  // Port communication mode
    .ip_addr = (void*)slave_ip_address_table, // assign table of IP addresses
    .ip_netif_ptr = esp_netif_ptr // esp_netif_ptr pointer to the corresponding network interface
};
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(mbc_master_setup((void*)&comm_info));
```

注解：Refer to esp_netif component for more information about network interface initialization.

The slave IP addresses in the table can be assigned automatically using mDNS service as described in the example. Refer to protocols/modbus/tcp/mb_tcp_master for more information.

注解：RS485 communication requires call to UART specific APIs to setup communication mode and pins. Refer to Running UART Communication section of UART documentation.

Master Communication The starting of the Modbus controller is the final step in enabling communication. This is performed using function below:

```c
mbc_master_start()
```

```c
esp_err_t err = mbc_master_start();
if (err != ESP_OK) {
```
The list of functions below are used by the Modbus master stack from a user’s application:

`mbc_master_send_request()`: This function executes a blocking Modbus request. The master sends a data request (as defined in parameter request structure `mb_param_request_t`) and then blocks until a response from corresponding slave and returns the status of command execution. This function provides a standard way for read/write access to Modbus devices in the network.

`mbc_master_get_cid_info()`: The function gets information about each characteristic supported in the data dictionary and returns the characteristic’s description in the form of the `mb_parameter_descriptor_t` structure. Each characteristic is accessed using its CID.

`mbc_master_get_parameter()`: The function reads the data of a characteristic defined in the parameters of a Modbus slave device. The additional data for request is taken from parameter description table.

Example:

```c
const mb_parameter_descriptor_t* param_descriptor = NULL;
uint8_t temp_data[4] = {0}; // temporary buffer to hold maximum CID size
uint8_t type = 0;

// Get the information for characteristic cid from data dictionary
esp_err_t err = mbc_master_get_cid_info(cid, &param_descriptor);
if ((err != ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND) && (param_descriptor != NULL)) {
    err = mbc_master_get_parameter(param_descriptor->cid, (char*)param_descriptor->param_key, (uint8_t*)temp_data, &type);
    if (err == ESP_OK) {
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Characteristic #\%d %s (%s) value = (0x%08x) read successful.
        ",
                   param_descriptor->cid,
                   (char*)param_descriptor->param_key,
                   (char*)param_descriptor->param_units,
                   "(uint32_t)" temp_data);
    } else {  
        ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Characteristic #\%d %s (%s) read fail, err = 0x%x (%s).", 
                   param_descriptor->cid,
                   (char*)param_descriptor->param_key,
                   (int)err,
                   (char*)esp_err_to_name(err));
    }
} else {  
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Could not get information for characteristic #\%d.", cid);
}
```

`mbc_master_set_parameter()`

The function writes characteristic’s value defined as a name and cid parameter in corresponded slave device. The additional data for parameter request is taken from master parameter description table.

```c
uint8_t type = 0; // Type of parameter
uint8_t temp_data[4] = {0}; // temporary buffer

esp_err_t err = mbc_master_set_parameter(CID_TEMP_DATA_2, "Temperature_2", (uint8_t*)temp_data, &type);
if (err == ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Set parameter data successfully.");
} else {  
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Set data fail, err = 0x%x (%s) ", (int)err, (char*)esp_err_to_name(err));
}
```
Modbus Master Teardown This function stops Modbus communication stack and destroys controller interface and free all used active objects.

```c
mbc_master_destroy()
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(mbc_master_destroy());
```

Modbus Slave API Overview

The sections below represent typical programming workflow for the slave API which should be called in following order:

1. **Modbus Port Initialization** - Initialization of Modbus controller interface for the selected port.
2. **Configuring Slave Data Access** - Configure data descriptors to access slave parameters.
3. **Slave Communication Options** - Allows to setup communication options for selected port.
4. **Slave Communication** - Start stack and sending / receiving data. Filter events when master accesses the register areas.
5. **Modbus Slave Teardown** - Destroy Modbus controller and its resources.

**Configuring Slave Data Access** The following functions must be called when the Modbus controller slave port is already initialized. Refer to **Modbus Port Initialization**.

The slave stack requires the user to define structures (memory storage areas) that store the Modbus parameters accessed by stack. These structures should be prepared by the user and be assigned to the Modbus controller interface using `mbc_slave_set_descriptor()` API call before the start of communication. The slave task can call the `mbc_slave_check_event()` function which will block until the Modbus master access the slave. The slave task can then get information about the data being accessed.

**Register area** is defined by using the `mb_register_area_descriptor_t` structure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>start_offset</td>
<td>Zero based register relative offset for defined register area. Example: register address = 40001 (4x register area - Function 3 - holding register), start_offset = 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Type of the Modbus register area. Refer to <code>mb_param_type_t</code> for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address</td>
<td>A pointer to the memory area which is used to store the register data for this area descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>The size of the memory area in bytes which is used to store register data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```c
mbc_slave_set_descriptor()
```

The function initializes Modbus communication descriptors for each type of Modbus register area (Holding Registers, Input Registers, Coils (single bit output), Discrete Inputs). Once areas are initialized and the `mbc_slave_start()` API is called the Modbus stack can access the data in user data structures by request from master.

```c
#define MB_REG_INPUT_START_AREA0 (0)
#define MB_REG_HOLDING_START_AREA0 (0)
#define MB_REG_HOLD_CNT (100)
#define MB_REG_INPUT_CNT (100)
mb_register_area_descriptor_t reg_area; // Modbus register area descriptor_
  ->structure
unit16_t holding_reg_area[MB_REG_HOLD_CNT] = {0}; // storage area for holding_
  ->registers
unit16_t input_reg_area[MB_REG_INPUT_CNT] = {0}; // storage area for input_
  ->registers
```

(下页继续)
At least one area descriptor per each Modbus register type must be set in order to provide register access to its area. If the master tries to access an undefined area, the stack will generate a Modbus exception.

Direct access to register area from user application must be protected by critical section:

```c
portENTER_CRITICAL(&param_lock);
holding_reg_area[2] += 10;
portEXIT_CRITICAL(&param_lock);
```

Slave Communication Options  The function initializes the Modbus controller interface and its active context (tasks, RTOS objects and other resources).

`mbc_slave_setup()`

The function is used to setup communication parameters of the Modbus stack.

Example initialization of Modbus TCP communication:

```c
esp_netif_init();
...
mb_communication_info_t comm_info = {
    .ip_port = MB_TCP_PORT,  // Modbus TCP port number (default = 502)
    .ip_addr_type = MB_IPV4,  // version of IP protocol
    .ip_mode = MB_MODE_TCP,  // Port communication mode
    .ip_addr = NULL,  // This field keeps the client IP
    .address_to_bind, NULL - bind to any client
    .ip_netif_ptr = esp_netif_ptr  // esp_netif_ptr = pointer to the
    .corresponding network interface
};
// Setup communication parameters and start stack
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(mbc_slave_set_descriptor((void*)&comm_info));
```

Example initialization of Modbus serial communication:

```c
#define MB_SLAVE_DEV_SPEED 9600
#define MB_SLAVE_ADDR 1
#define MB_SLAVE_PORT_NUM 2
...
// Setup communication parameters and start stack
mb_communication_info_t comm_info = {
```
Slave Communication

The function below is used to start Modbus controller interface and allows communication.

```c
mbc_slave_start();
```

```c
mbc_slave_check_event();
```

The blocking call to function waits for an event specified (represented as an event mask parameter). Once the master accesses the parameter and the event mask matches the parameter type, the application task will be unblocked and function will return the corresponding event `mb_event_group_t` which describes the type of register access being done.

```c
mbc_slave_get_param_info();
```

The function gets information about accessed parameters from the Modbus controller event queue. The KConfig `CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE` key can be used to configure the notification queue size. The timeout parameter allows a timeout to be specified when waiting for a notification. The `mb_param_info_t` structure contains information about accessed parameter.

### Table 4 Description of the register info structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>time_stamp</td>
<td>the time stamp of the event when defined parameter is accessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mb_offset</td>
<td>start Modbus register accessed by master</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>type of the Modbus register area being accessed (See the <code>mb_event_group_t</code> for more information)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address</td>
<td>memory address that corresponds to accessed register in defined area descriptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>number of registers being accessed by master</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example to get event when holding or input registers accessed in the slave:

```c
#define MB_READ_MASK ((MB_EVENT_INPUT_REG_RD | MB_EVENT_HOLDING_REG_RD))
#define MB_WRITE_MASK (MB_EVENT_HOLDING_REG_WR)
#define MB_READ_WRITE_MASK (MB_READ_MASK | MB_WRITE_MASK)
#define MB_PAR_INFO_GET_TOUT (10 / portTICK_RATE_MS)
....

// The function blocks while waiting for register access
mb_event_group_t event = mbc_slave_check_event(MB_READ_WRITE_MASK);

// Get information about data accessed from master
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(mbc_slave_get_param_info(&reg_info, MB_PAR_INFO_GET_TOUT));
const char* rw_str = (event & MB_READ_MASK) ? "READ" : "WRITE";

// Filter events and process them accordingly
if (event & (MB_EVENT_HOLDING_REG REGARD | MB_EVENT_HOLDING_REG_RD)) {
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HOLDING %s (%u us), ADDR:%u, TYPE:%u, INST_ADDR:0x%.4x, SIZE:%u",
            rw_str,
            // (下页继续)
```
Modbus Slave Teardown  This function stops the Modbus communication stack, destroys the controller interface, and frees all used active objects allocated for the slave.

```c
mbc_slave_destroy()
```

ESP_ERROR_CHECK(mbc_slave_destroy());

Possible Communication Issues And Solutions

If the examples do not work as expected and slave and master boards are not able to communicate correctly, it is possible to find the reason for errors. The most important errors are described in master example output and formatted as below:

```
E (1692332) MB_CONTROLLER_MASTER: mbc_master_get_parameter(111): SERIAL master_get_<parameter> failure error=(0x107) (ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT).
```
### Table 5: Modbus error codes and troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x106</td>
<td>ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - Invalid register request - slave returned an exception because the requested register is not supported.</td>
<td>Refer to slave register map. Check the master data dictionary for correctness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x107</td>
<td>ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT - Slave response timeout - Modbus slave did not send response during configured slave response timeout.</td>
<td>Measure and increase the maximum slave response timeout idf.py menu-config, option CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND. Check physical connection or network configuration and make sure that the slave response can reach the master side. If the application has some high performance tasks with higher priority than CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO it is recommended to place Modbus tasks on the other core using an option CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_AFFINITY. Configure the Modbus task’s priority CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO to ensure that the task gets sufficient processing time to handle Modbus stack events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x108</td>
<td>ESP_ERRINVALID_RESPONSE - Received unsupported response from slave or frame check failure. Master can not execute command handler because the command is either not supported or is incorrect.</td>
<td>Check the physical connection then refer to register map of your slave to configure the master data dictionary properly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x103</td>
<td>ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE - Critical failure or FSM sequence failure or master FSM is busy processing previous request.</td>
<td>Make sure your physical connection is working properly. Increase task stack size and check Modbus initialization sequence.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Application Example

The examples below use the FreeModbus library port for serial TCP slave and master implementations accordingly. The selection of stack is performed through KConfig menu option “Enable Modbus stack support …” for appropriate communication mode and related configuration keys.

- `protocols/modbus/serial/mb_slave`
- `protocols/modbus/serial/mb_master`
- `protocols/modbus/tcp/mb_tcp_slave`
- `protocols/modbus/tcp/mb_tcp_master`

Please refer to the specific example README.md for details.

### Protocol References


### API Reference

**Header File**

- `components/freemodbus/common/include/esp_modbus_common.h`

**Unions**
union mb_communication_info_t
#include <esp_modbus_common.h> Device communication structure to setup Modbus controller.

Public Members

mb_mode_type_t mode
Modbus communication mode

uint8_t slave_addr
Modbus slave address field (dummy for master)

uart_port_t port
Modbus communication port (UART) number

uint32_t baudrate
Modbus baudrate

uart_parity_t parity
Modbus UART parity settings

uint16_t dummy_port
Dummy field, unused

struct mb_communication_info_t::[anonymous] [anonymous]

mb_mode_type_t ip_mode
Modbus communication mode

uint16_t ip_port
Modbus port

mb_tcp_addr_type_t ip_addr_type
Modbus address type

void *ip_addr
Modbus address table for connection

void *ip_netif_ptr
Modbus network interface

struct mb_communication_info_t::[anonymous] [anonymous]

Macros

MB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE
MB_CONTROLLER_PRIORITY

MB_DEVICE_ADDRESS
MB_DEVICE_SPEED

MB_UART_PORT
MB_PAR_INFO_TOUT

MB_PARITY_NONE

_XFER_4_RD (dst, src)
_XFER_2_RD (dst, src)
_XFER_4_WR (dst, src)
_XFER_2_WR (dst, src)
Type Definitions

```c
typedef esp_err_t (*iface_init)(void **)
common interface method types
```

```c
typedef esp_err_t (*iface_destroy)(void)
Interface method destroy
```

```c
typedef esp_err_t (*iface_setup)(void *)
Interface method setup
```

```c
typedef esp_err_t (*iface_start)(void)
Interface method start
```

Enumerations

```c
enum mb_port_type_t
Types of actual Modbus implementation.

Values:

MB_PORT_SERIAL_MASTER = 0x00
Modbus port type serial master.

MB_PORT_SERIAL_SLAVE
Modbus port type serial slave.

MB_PORT_TCP_MASTER
Modbus port type TCP master.

MB_PORT_TCP_SLAVE
Modbus port type TCP slave.

MB_PORT_COUNT
Modbus port count.

MB_PORT_INACTIVE = 0xFF
```

```c
enum mb_event_group_t
Event group for parameters notification.

Values:

MB_EVENT_NO_EVENTS = 0x00

MB_EVENT_HOLDING_REG_WR = BIT0
Modbus Event Write Holding registers.

MB_EVENT_HOLDING_REG_RD = BIT1
Modbus Event Read Holding registers.

MB_EVENT_INPUT_REG_RD = BIT3
Modbus Event Read Input registers.

MB_EVENT_COILS_WR = BIT4
Modbus Event Write Coils.

MB_EVENT_COILS_RD = BIT5
Modbus Event Read Coils.

MB_EVENT_DISCRETE_RD = BIT6
Modbus Event Read Discrete bits.

MB_EVENT_STACK_STARTED = BIT7
Modbus Event Stack started
```

```c
enum mb_param_type_t
Type of Modbus parameter.

Values:
```
**MB_PARAM_HOLDING** = 0x00
Modbus Holding register.

**MB_PARAM_INPUT**
Modbus Input register.

**MB_PARAM_COIL**
Modbus Coils.

**MB_PARAM_DISCRETE**
Modbus Discrete bits.

**MB_PARAM_COUNT**

**MB_PARAM_UNKNOWN** = 0xFF

```c
enum mb_mode_type_t
    Modbus serial transmission modes (RTU/ASCII).

Values:

**MB_MODE_RTU**
    RTU transmission mode.

**MB_MODE_ASCII**
    ASCII transmission mode.

**MB_MODE_TCP**
    TCP communication mode.

**MB_MODE_UDP**
    UDP communication mode.
```

```c
enum mb_tcp_addr_type_t
    Modbus TCP type of address.

Values:

**MB_IPV4** = 0
    TCP IPV4 addressing

**MB_IPV6** = 1
    TCP IPV6 addressing
```

---

**Header File**

- components/freemodbus/common/include/esp_modbus_master.h

---

**Functions**

`esp_err mbc_master_init_tcp(void **handler)`

Initialize Modbus controller and stack for TCP port.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Port type not supported
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Initialization failure

**Parameters**

- [out] handler: handler(pointer) to master data structure

`esp_err mbc_master_init(mb_port_type_t port_type, void **handler)`

Initialize Modbus Master controller and stack for Serial port.

**Return**

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Port type not supported
Chapter 2. API

• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Initialization failure

Parameters
• [out] handler: handler(pointer) to master data structure
• [in] port_type: type of stack

void mbc_master_init_iface (void *handler)
Initialize Modbus Master controller interface handle.

Parameters
• [in] handler: pointer to master data structure

esp_err_t mbc_master_destroy (void)
Destroy Modbus controller and stack.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Parameter error

esp_err_t mbc_master_start (void)
Start Modbus communication stack.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Modbus stack start error

esp_err_t mbc_master_setup (void *comm_info)
Set Modbus communication parameters for the controller.

Return
• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Incorrect parameter data

Parameters
• comm_info: Communication parameters structure.

esp_err_t mbc_master_set_descriptor (const mb_parameter_descriptor_t *descriptor, const uint16_t num_elements)
Assign parameter description table for Modbus controller interface.

Return
• esp_err_t ESP_OK - set descriptor successfully
• esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument in function call

Parameters
• [in] descriptor: pointer to parameter description table
• num_elements: number of elements in the table

esp_err_t mbc_master_send_request (mb_param_request_t *request, void *data_ptr)
Send data request as defined in parameter request, waits response from slave and returns status of command execution. This function provides standard way for read/write access to Modbus devices in the network.

Return
• esp_err_t ESP_OK - request was successful
• esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument of function
• esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE - an invalid response from slave
• esp_err_t ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT - operation timeout or no response from slave
• esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - the request command is not supported by slave
• esp_err_t ESP_FAIL - slave returned an exception or other failure

Parameters
• [in] request: pointer to request structure of type mb_param_request_t
• [in] data_ptr: pointer to data buffer to send or received data (dependent of command field in request)

esp_err_t mbc_master_get_cid_info (uint16_t cid, const mb_parameter_descriptor_t **param_info)
Get information about supported characteristic defined as cid. Uses parameter description table to get this
information. The function will check if characteristic defined as a cid parameter is supported and returns its description in param_info. Returns ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if characteristic is not supported.

Return
- esp_err_t ESP_OK - request was successful and buffer contains the supported characteristic name
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument of function
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND - the characteristic (cid) not found
- esp_err_t ESP_FAIL - unknown error during lookup table processing

Parameters
- [in] cid: characteristic id
- param_info: pointer to pointer of characteristic data.

\texttt{esp_err_t \textit{mbc_master_get_parameter} (uint16_t \textit{cid}, char *\textit{name}, uint8_t *\textit{value}, uint8_t *\textit{type})}

Read parameter from modbus slave device whose name is defined by name and has cid. The additional data for request is taken from parameter description (lookup) table.

Return
- esp_err_t ESP_OK - request was successful and value buffer contains representation of actual parameter data from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument of function or parameter descriptor
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE - an invalid response from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE - invalid state during data processing or allocation failure
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT - operation timed out and no response from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - the request command is not supported by slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND - the parameter is not found in the parameter description table
- esp_err_t ESP_FAIL - slave returned an exception or other failure

Parameters
- [in] cid: id of the characteristic for parameter
- [in] name: pointer into string name (key) of parameter (null terminated)
- [out] value: pointer to data buffer of parameter
- [out] type: parameter type associated with the name returned from parameter description table.

\texttt{esp_err_t \textit{mbc_master_set_parameter} (uint16_t \textit{cid}, char *\textit{name}, uint8_t *\textit{value}, uint8_t *\textit{type})}

Set characteristic’s value defined as a name and cid parameter. The additional data for cid parameter request is taken from master parameter lookup table.

Return
- esp_err_t ESP_OK - request was successful and value was saved in the slave device registers
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument of function or parameter descriptor
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE - an invalid response from slave during processing of parameter
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE - invalid state during data processing or allocation failure
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT - operation timed out and no response from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - the request command is not supported by slave
- esp_err_t ESP_FAIL - slave returned an exception or other failure

Parameters
- [in] cid: id of the characteristic for parameter
- [in] name: pointer into string name (key) of parameter (null terminated)
- [out] value: pointer to data buffer of parameter (actual representation of json value field in binary form)
- [out] type: pointer to parameter type associated with the name returned from parameter lookup table.

Unions

\texttt{union \textit{mb_parameter_opt_t}}

\texttt{\#include <esp_modbus_master.h> Modbus parameter options for description table.}
Public Members

int opt1
  Parameter option1
int opt2
  Parameter option2
int opt3
  Parameter option3

struct mb_parameter_opt_t::[anonymous] [anonymous]
int min
  Parameter minimum value
int max
  Parameter maximum value
int step
  Step of parameter change tracking

struct mb_parameter_opt_t::[anonymous] [anonymous]

Structures

struct mb_parameter_descriptor_t
  Characteristics descriptor type is used to describe characteristic and link it with Modbus parameters that reflect its data.

Public Members

uint16_t cid
  Characteristic cid
const char *param_key
  The key (name) of the parameter
const char *param_units
  The physical units of the parameter
uint8_t mb_slave_addr
  Slave address of device in the Modbus segment
mb_param_type_t mb_param_type
  Type of modbus parameter
uint16_t mb_reg_start
  This is the Modbus register address. This is the 0 based value.
uint16_t mb_size
  Size of mb parameter in registers
uint16_t param_offset
  Parameter name (OFFSET in the parameter structure)
mb_descr_type_t param_type
  Float, U8, U16, U32, ASCII, etc.
mb_descr_size_t param_size
  Number of bytes in the parameter.
mb_parameter_opt_t param_opts
  Parameter options used to check limits and etc.
mb_param_perms_t access
  Access permissions based on mode
**struct mb_param_request_t**

Modbus register request type structure.

**Public Members**

- `uint8_t slave_addr`
  Modbus slave address
- `uint8_t command`
  Modbus command to send
- `uint16_t reg_start`
  Modbus start register
- `uint16_t reg_size`
  Modbus number of registers

**Enumerations**

**enum mb_descr_type_t**

Modbus descriptor table parameter type defines.

*Values:*

- `PARAM_TYPE_U8 = 0x00`
  Unsigned 8
- `PARAM_TYPE_U16 = 0x01`
  Unsigned 16
- `PARAM_TYPE_U32 = 0x02`
  Unsigned 32
- `PARAM_TYPE_FLOAT = 0x03`
  Float type
- `PARAM_TYPE_ASCII = 0x04`
  ASCII type

**enum mb_descr_size_t**

Modbus descriptor table parameter size in bytes.

*Values:*

- `PARAM_SIZE_U8 = 0x01`
  Unsigned 8
- `PARAM_SIZE_U16 = 0x02`
  Unsigned 16
- `PARAM_SIZE_U32 = 0x04`
  Unsigned 32
- `PARAM_SIZE_FLOAT = 0x04`
  Float size
- `PARAM_SIZE_ASCII = 0x08`
  ASCII size
- `PARAM_SIZE_ASCII24 = 0x18`
  ASCII24 size
- `PARAM_MAX_SIZE`

**enum mb_param_perms_t**

Permissions for the characteristics.

*Values:*

PAR_PERMS_READ = 1 « BIT0
the characteristic of the device are readable

PAR_PERMS_WRITE = 1 « BIT1
the characteristic of the device are writable

PAR_PERMS_TRIGGER = 1 « BIT2
the characteristic of the device are triggerable

PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE = PAR_PERMS_READ | PAR_PERMS_WRITE
the characteristic of the device are readable & writable

PAR_PERMS_READ_TRIGGER = PAR_PERMS_READ | PAR_PERMS_TRIGGER
the characteristic of the device are readable & triggerable

PAR_PERMS_WRITE_TRIGGER = PAR_PERMS_WRITE | PAR_PERMS_TRIGGER
the characteristic of the device are writable & triggerable

PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE_TRIGGER = PAR_PERMS_READ_WRITE | PAR_PERMS_TRIGGER
the characteristic of the device are readable & writable & triggerable

Header File

- components/freemodbus/common/include/esp_modbus_slave.h

Functions

esp_err_t mbc_slave_init_tcp(void **handler)
Initialize Modbus Slave controller and stack for TCP port.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Port type not supported
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Initialization failure

Parameters
- [out] handler: handler(pointer) to master data structure

esp_err_t mbc_slave_init (mb_port_type_t port_type, void **handler)
Initialize Modbus Slave controller and stack for Serial port.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Port type not supported
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Initialization failure

Parameters
- [out] handler: handler(pointer) to master data structure
- [in] port_type: the type of port

void mbc_slave_init_iface (void *handler)
Initialize Modbus Slave controller interface handle.

Parameters
- [in] handler: - pointer to slave interface data structure

esp_err_t mbc_slave_destroy (void)
Destroy Modbus controller and stack.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Parameter error

esp_err_t mbc_slave_start (void)
Start Modbus communication stack.
Return

• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Modbus stack start error

`esp_err_t mbc_slave_setup(void *comm_info)`
Set Modbus communication parameters for the controller.

Return

• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Incorrect parameter data

Parameters

• comm_info: Communication parameters structure.

`mb_event_group_t mbc_slave_check_event(mb_event_group_t group)`
Wait for specific event on parameter change.

Return

• mb_event_group_t event bit triggered

Parameters

• group: Group event bit mask to wait for change

`esp_err_t mbc_slave_get_param_info(mb_param_info_t *reg_info, uint32_t timeout)`
Get parameter information.

Return

• ESP_OK Success
• ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Can not get data from parameter queue or queue overflow

Parameters

• [out] reg_info: parameter info structure
• timeout: Timeout in milliseconds to read information from parameter queue

`esp_err_t mbc_slave_set_descriptor(mb_register_area_descriptor_t descr_data)`
Set Modbus area descriptor.

Return

• ESP_OK: The appropriate descriptor is set
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The argument is incorrect

Parameters

• descr_data: Modbus registers area descriptor structure

Structures

`struct mb_param_info_t`
Parameter access event information type.

Public Members

`uint32_t time_stamp`
Timestamp of Modbus Event (uS)

`uint16_t mb_offset`
Modbus register offset

`mb_event_group_t type`
Modbus event type

`uint8_t *address`
Modbus data storage address

`size_t size`
Modbus event register size (number of registers)

`struct mb_register_area_descriptor_t`
Parameter storage area descriptor.
Public Members

- **uint16_t** `start_offset`  
  Modbus start address for area descriptor

- **mb_param_type_t** `type`  
  Type of storage area descriptor

- **void**`*address`  
  Instance address for storage area descriptor

- **size_t** `size`  
  Instance size for area descriptor (bytes)

### 2.4.12 ESP Local Control

**Overview**

ESP Local Control (esp_local_ctrl) component in ESP-IDF provides capability to control an ESP device over Wi-Fi + HTTPS or BLE. It provides access to application defined properties that are available for reading / writing via a set of configurable handlers.

Initialization of the esp_local_ctrl service over BLE transport is performed as follows:

```c
esp_local_ctrl_config_t config = {
    .transport = ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_BLE,
    .transport_config = {
        .ble = & (protocomm_ble_config_t) {
            .device_name = SERVICE_NAME,
            .service_uuid = {
                /* LSB <---------------------------------------*/
                /* ---------------------------------------> MSB */
                0x21, 0xd5, 0x3b, 0x8d, 0xbd, 0x75, 0x68, 0x8a,
                0xb4, 0x42, 0xeb, 0x31, 0x4a, 0x1e, 0x98, 0x3d
            },
            ...
        },
        .proto_sec = {
            .version = PROTOCOL_SEC0,
            .custom_handle = NULL,
            .pop = NULL,
        },
        .handlers = {
            /* User defined handler functions */
            .get_prop_values = get_property_values,
            .set_prop_values = set_property_values,
            .usr_ctx = NULL,
        },
        /* Maximum number of properties that may be set */
        .max_properties = 10
    },
    /* Start esp_local_ctrl service */
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_local_ctrl_start(&config));
}
```

Similarly for HTTPS transport:

```c
/* Set the configuration */
httpd_ssl_config_t https_conf = HTTPD_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULT();
```
You may set security for transport in ESP local control using following options:

1. `PROTOCOM_SEC1`: specifies that end to end encryption is used.
2. `PROTOCOM_SEC0`: specifies that data will be exchanged as a plain text.
3. `PROTOCOM_SEC_CUSTOM`: you can define your own security requirement. Please note that you will also have to provide `custom_handle` of type `protocomm_security_t *` in this context.

**Creating a property**

Now that we know how to start the `esp_local_ctrl` service, let’s add a property to it. Each property must have a unique `name` (string), a `type` (e.g. enum), `flags` (bit fields) and `size.`

The `size` is to be kept 0, if we want our property value to be of variable length (e.g. if its a string or bytestream). For fixed length property value data-types, like int, float, etc., setting the `size` field to the right value, helps `esp_local_ctrl` to perform internal checks on arguments received with write requests.

The interpretation of `type` and `flags` fields is totally up to the application, hence they may be used as enumerations, bit-fields, or even simple integers. One way is to use `type` values to classify properties, while `flags` to specify characteristics of a property.

Here is an example property which is to function as a timestamp. It is assumed that the application defines
Chapter 2. API

`TYPE_TIMESTAMP` and `READONLY`, which are used for setting the `type` and `flags` fields here.

```c
/* Create a timestamp property */
esp_local_ctrl_prop_t timestamp = {
    .name = "timestamp",
    .type = TYPE_TIMESTAMP,
    .size = sizeof(int32_t),
    .flags = READONLY,
    .ctx = func_get_time,
    .ctx_free_fn = NULL
};
/* Now register the property */
esp_local_ctrl_add_property(&timestamp);
```

Also notice that there is a `ctx` field, which is set to point to some custom `func_get_time()`. This can be used inside the property get / set handlers to retrieve timestamp.

Here is an example of `get_prop_values()` handler, which is used for retrieving the timestamp.

```c
static esp_err_t get_property_values(size_t props_count, const esp_local_ctrl_prop_t *props, esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t *prop_values, void *usr_ctx) {
    for (uint32_t i = 0; i < props_count; i++) {
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Reading %s", props[i].name);
        if (props[i].type == TYPE_TIMESTAMP) {
            /* Obtain the timer function from ctx */
            int32_t (*func_get_time)(void) = props[i].ctx;
            /* Use static variable for saving the value.
             * This is essential because the value has to be
             * valid even after this function returns.
             * Alternative is to use dynamic allocation
             * and set the free_fn field */
            static int32_t ts = func_get_time();
            prop_values[i].data = &ts;
        }
    }
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

Here is an example of `set_prop_values()` handler. Notice how we restrict from writing to read-only properties.

```c
static esp_err_t set_property_values(size_t props_count, const esp_local_ctrl_prop_t *props, esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t *prop_values, void *usr_ctx) {
    for (uint32_t i = 0; i < props_count; i++) {
        if (props[i].flags & READONLY) {
            ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Cannot write to read-only property %s", props[i].name);
            return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG;
        } else {
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Setting %s", props[i].name);
            /* For keeping it simple, lets only log the incoming data */
            ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX_LEVEL(TAG, prop_values[i].data, prop_values[i].size, ESP_LOG_INFO);
        }
    }
    return ESP_OK;
}
```
For complete example see protocols/esp_local_ctrl

**Client Side Implementation**

The client side implementation will have establish a protocomm session with the device first, over the supported mode of transport, and then send and receive protobuf messages understood by the esp_local_ctrl service. The service will translate these messages into requests and then call the appropriate handlers (set / get). Then, the generated response for each handler is again packed into a protobuf message and transmitted back to the client.

See below the various protobuf messages understood by the esp_local_ctrl service:

1. `get_prop_count`: This should simply return the total number of properties supported by the service
2. `get_prop_values`: This accepts an array of indices and should return the information (name, type, flags) and values of the properties corresponding to those indices
3. `set_prop_values`: This accepts an array of indices and an array of new values, which are used for setting the values of the properties corresponding to the indices

Note that indices may or may not be the same for a property, across multiple sessions. Therefore, the client must only use the names of the properties to uniquely identify them. So, every time a new session is established, the client should first call `get_prop_count` and then `get_prop_values`, hence form an index to name mapping for all properties. Now when calling `set_prop_values` for a set of properties, it must first convert the names to indexes, using the created mapping. As emphasized earlier, the client must refresh the index to name mapping every time a new session is established with the same device.

The various protocomm endpoints provided by esp_local_ctrl are listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint Name (BLE + GATT Server)</th>
<th>URI (HTTPS Server + mDNS)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esp_local_ctrl/version</td>
<td>https://&lt;mdns-hostname&gt;.local/esp_local_ctrl/version</td>
<td>Endpoint used for retrieving version string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_local_ctrl/control</td>
<td>https://&lt;mdns-hostname&gt;.local/esp_local_ctrl/control</td>
<td>Endpoint used for sending / receiving control messages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/esp_local_ctrl/include/esp_local_ctrl.h

**Functions**

`const esp_local_ctrl_transport_t *esp_local_ctrl_get_transport_ble (void)`  
Function for obtaining BLE transport mode.

`const esp_local_ctrl_transport_t *esp_local_ctrl_get_transport_httpd (void)`  
Function for obtaining HTTPD transport mode.

`esp_err_t esp_local_ctrl_start (const esp_local_ctrl_config_t *config)`  
Start local control service.
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Failure

**Parameters**
- [in] config: Pointer to configuration structure

```c
esp_err_t esp_local_ctrl_stop(void)
```
Stop local control service.

```c
esp_err_t esp_local_ctrl_add_property(const esp_local_ctrl_prop_t *prop)
```
Add a new property.

- This adds a new property and allocates internal resources for it. The total number of properties that could be added is limited by configuration option max_properties

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Failure

**Parameters**
- [in] prop: Property description structure

```c
esp_err_t esp_local_ctrl_remove_property(const char *name)
```
Remove a property.

- This finds a property by name, and releases the internal resources which are associated with it.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Failure

**Parameters**
- [in] name: Name of the property to remove

```c
const esp_local_ctrl_prop_t *esp_local_ctrl_get_property(const char *name)
```
Get property description structure by name.

- This API may be used to get a property’s context structure esp_local_ctrl_prop_t when its name is known

**Return**
- Pointer to property
- NULL if not found

**Parameters**
- [in] name: Name of the property to find

```c
esp_err_t esp_local_ctrl_set_handler(const char *ep_name, protocomm_reg_handler_t handler, void *user_ctx)
```
Register protocomm handler for a custom endpoint.

- This API can be called by the application to register a protocomm handler for an endpoint after the local control service has started.

**Note** In case of BLE transport the names and uids of all custom endpoints must be provided beforehand as a part of the protocomm_ble_config_t structure set in esp_local_ctrl_config_t, and passed to esp_local_ctrl_start().

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Failure

**Parameters**
- [in] ep_name: Name of the endpoint
- [in] handler: Endpoint handler function
- [in] user_ctx: User data

**Unions**

```c
union esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t
```

- #include <esp_local_ctrl.h> Transport mode (BLE / HTTPD) configuration.
Chapter 2. API

Public Members

`esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_ble_t *ble`
This is same as `protocomm_ble_config_t`. See `protocomm_ble.h` for available configuration parameters.

`esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_httpd_t *httpd`
This is same as `httpd_ssl_config_t`. See `esp_https_server.h` for available configuration parameters.

Structures

`struct esp_local_ctrl_prop`
Property description data structure, which is to be populated and passed to the `esp_local_ctrl_add_property()` function.

Once a property is added, its structure is available for read-only access inside `get_prop_values()` and `set_prop_values()` handlers.

Public Members

`char *name`
Unique name of property

`uint32_t type`
Type of property. This may be set to application defined enums

`size_t size`
Size of the property value, which:

• if zero, the property can have values of variable size
• if non-zero, the property can have values of fixed size only, therefore, checks are performed internally by `esp_local_ctrl` when setting the value of such a property

`uint32_t flags`
Flags set for this property. This could be a bit field. A flag may indicate property behavior, e.g. read-only / constant

`void *ctx`
Pointer to some context data relevant for this property. This will be available for use inside the `get_prop_values` and `set_prop_values` handlers as a part of this property structure. When set, this is valid throughout the lifetime of a property, till either the property is removed or the `esp_local_ctrl` service is stopped.

`void (*ctx_free_fn)(void *ctx)`
Function used by `esp_local_ctrl` to internally free the property context when `esp_local_ctrl_remove_property()` or `esp_local_ctrl_stop()` is called.

`struct esp_local_ctrl_prop_val`
Property value data structure. This gets passed to the `get_prop_values()` and `set_prop_values()` handlers for the purpose of retrieving or setting the present value of a property.

Public Members

`void *data`
Pointer to memory holding property value

`size_t size`
Size of property value

`void (*free_fn)(void *data)`
This may be set by the application in `get_prop_values()` handler to tell `esp_local_ctrl`
struct esp_local_ctrl_handlers
Handlers for receiving and responding to local control commands for getting and setting properties.

Public Members

desp_err_t (*get_prop_values)(size_t props_count, const esp_local_ctrl_prop_t props[], esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t prop_values[], void *usr_ctx)
Handler function to be implemented for retrieving current values of properties.

Note If any of the properties have fixed sizes, the size field of corresponding element in prop_values need to be set.

Return Returning different error codes will convey the corresponding protocol level errors to the client:
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: InvalidArgument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: InvalidProto
- All other error codes: InternalError

Parameters
- [in] props_count: Total elements in the props array
- [in] props: Array of properties, the current values for which have been requested by the client
- [out] prop_values: Array of empty property values, the elements of which need to be populated with the current values of those properties specified by props argument
- [in] usr_ctx: This provides value of the usr_ctx field of esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t structure

desp_err_t (*set_prop_values)(size_t props_count, const esp_local_ctrl_prop_t props[], const esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t prop_values[], void *usr_ctx)
Handler function to be implemented for changing values of properties.

Note If any of the properties have variable sizes, the size field of the corresponding element in prop_values must be checked explicitly before making any assumptions on the size.

Return Returning different error codes will convey the corresponding protocol level errors to the client:
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: InvalidArgument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: InvalidProto
- All other error codes: InternalError

Parameters
- [in] props_count: Total elements in the props array
- [in] props: Array of properties, the values for which the client requests to change
- [in] prop_values: Array of property values, the elements of which need to be used for updating those properties specified by props argument
- [in] usr_ctx: This provides value of the usr_ctx field of esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t structure

void *usr_ctx
Context pointer to be passed to above handler functions upon invocation. This is different from the property level context, as this is valid throughout the lifetime of the esp_local_ctrl service, and freed only when the service is stopped.

void (*usr_ctx_free_fn)(void *usr_ctx)
 Pointer to function which will be internally invoked on usr_ctx for freeing the context resources when esp_local_ctrl_stop() is called.

struct esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg
Protocol security configs
Chapter 2. API

**Public Members**

```c
const esp_local_ctrl_transport_t *transport
```
Transport layer over which service will be provided

```c
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t transport_config
```
Transport layer over which service will be provided

```c
esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg_t proto_sec
```
Security version and POP

```c
esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t handlers
```
Register handlers for responding to get/set requests on properties

```c
size_t max_properties
```
This limits the number of properties that are available at a time

**Macros**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_BLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_HTTPD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef struct esp_local_ctrl_prop esp_local_ctrl_prop_t
```
Property description data structure, which is to be populated and passed to the `esp_local_ctrl_add_property()` function.

Once a property is added, its structure is available for read-only access inside `get_prop_values()` and `set_prop_values()` handlers.

```c
typedef struct esp_local_ctrl_prop_val esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t
```
Property value data structure. This gets passed to the `get_prop_values()` and `set_prop_values()` handlers for the purpose of retrieving or setting the present value of a property.

```c
typedef struct esp_local_ctrl_handlers esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t
```
Handlers for receiving and responding to local control commands for getting and setting properties.

```c
typedef struct esp_local_ctrl_transport esp_local_ctrl_transport_t
```
Transport mode (BLE / HTTPD) over which the service will be provided.

This is forward declaration of a private structure, implemented internally by `esp_local_ctrl`

```c
typedef struct protocomm_ble_config esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_ble_t
```
Configuration for transport mode BLE.

This is a forward declaration for `protocomm_ble_config_t`. To use this, application must set CONFIG_BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED and include `protocomm_ble.h`.
typedef struct httpd_ssl_config esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_httpd_t
Configuration for transport mode HTTPD.

This is a forward declaration for httpd_ssl_config_t. To use this, application must set CON-
FIG_ESP_HTTPS_SERVER_ENABLE and include esp_https_server.h

typedef enum esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_t
Security types for esp_local_control.

typedef struct esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg_t
Protocom security configs

typedef struct esp_local_ctrl_config esp_local_ctrl_config_t
Configuration structure to pass to esp_local_ctrl_start()

Enumerations
enum esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec
Security types for esp_local_control.

Values:

PROTOCOM_SEC0 = 0
PROTOCOM_SEC1
PROTOCOM_SEC_CUSTOM

2.4.13 ESP Serial Slave Link

Overview

Espressif provides several chips that can work as slaves. These slave devices rely on some common buses, and have
their own communication protocols over those buses. The esp_serial_slave_link component is designed for the master
to communicate with ESP slave devices through those protocols over the bus drivers.

After an esp_serial_slave_link device is initialized properly, the application can use it to communicate with the ESP
slave devices conveniently.

Espressif Device protocols

For more details about Espressif device protocols, see the following documents.

Communication with ESP SDIO Slave This document describes the process of initialization of an ESP SDIO
Slave device and then provides details on the ESP SDIO Slave protocol - a non-standard protocol that allows an SDIO
Host to communicate with an ESP SDIO slave.

The ESP SDIO Slave protocol was created to implement the communication between SDIO host and slave, because
the SDIO specification only shows how to access the custom region of a card (by sending CMD52 and CMD53 to
Functions 1-7) without any details regarding the underlying hardware implementation.

SDIO Slave Capabilities of Espressif chips The services provided by the SDIO Slave peripheral of the ESP32
chip are listed in the table below:
## ESP SDIO Slave Initialization

The host should initialize the ESP32 SDIO slave according to the standard SDIO initialization process (Section 3.1.2 of *SDIO Simplified Specification*). In this specification as well as below, the SDIO slave is called an (SD)IO card. Here is a brief example of an ESP SDIO Slave initialization process:

1. **SDIO reset** CMD52 (Write 0x6=0x8)
2. **SD reset** CMD0
3. **Check whether IO card (optional)** CMD8
4. **Send SDIO op cond and wait for card ready** CMD5 arg = 0x00000000
   - **Example:** Arg of R4 after first CMD5 (arg=0x00000000) is 0XXFFFFF00. Keep sending CMD5 with arg=0x00FF0000 until the R4 shows card ready (arg bit 31=1).
5. **Set address** CMD3
6. **Select card** CMD7 (arg address according to CMD3 response)
   - **Example:** Arg of R6 after CMD3 is 0x0001xxxx.
    - Arg of CMD7 should be 0x00010000.
7. **Select 4-bit mode (optional)** CMD52 (Write 0x07=0x02)
8. **Enable func1** CMD52 (Write 0x02=0x02)
9. **Enable SDIO interrupt (required if interrupt line (DAT1) is used)** CMD52 (Write 0x04=0x03)
10. **Set Func0 blocksize (optional, default value is 512 (0x200))** CMD52/53 (Read 0x010~0x011)
    - CMD52/53 (Write 0x10=0x00)
    - CMD52/53 (Write 0x11=0x02)
    - CMD52/53 (Read 0x10~0x11, read to check the final value)
11. **Set Func1 blocksize (optional, default value is 512 (0x200))** CMD52/53 (Read 0x110~0x111)
    - CMD52/53 (Write 0x110=0x00)
    - CMD52/53 (Write 0x111=0x02)
    - CMD52/53 (Read 0x110~0x111, read to check the final value)

## ESP SDIO Slave Protocol

The ESP SDIO Slave protocol is based on the SDIO Specification’s I/O Read/Write commands, i.e., CMD52 and CMD53. The protocol offers the following services:

- Sending FIFO and receiving FIFO
- 52 8-bit R/W registers shared by host and slave (For details, see *ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > SDIO Slave Controller > Register Summary > SDIO SLC Host registers* [PDF])
- 16 general purpose interrupt sources, 8 from host to slave and 8 from slave to host

To begin communication, the host needs to enable the I/O Function 1 in the slave and access its registers as described below.

Check the code example peripherals/sdio.

The *ESP Serial Slave Link* component implements the logic of this protocol for ESP32 SDIO Host when communicating with an ESP32 SDIO slave.

### Slave register table

#### 32-bit

- 0x044 (TOKEN_RDATA): in which bit 27-16 holds the number of the receiving buffer.
Chapter 2. API

- 0x058 (INT_ST): holds the interrupt source bits from slave to host.
- 0x060 (PKT_LEN): holds the accumulated data length (in bytes) already read by host plus the data copied to the buffer but yet to be read.
- 0x0D4 (INT_CLR): write 1 to clear interrupt bits corresponding to INT_ST.
- 0x0DC (INT_ENA): mask bits for interrupts from slave to host.

8-bit Shared general purpose registers:
- 0x06C-0x077: R/W registers 0-11 shared by slave and host.
- 0x07A-0x07B: R/W registers 14-15 shared by slave and host.
- 0x088-0x08B: R/W registers 24-27 shared by slave and host.
- 0x09C-0x0BB: R/W registers 32-63 shared by slave and host.

Interrupt Registers: - 0x08D (SLAVE_INT): bits for host to interrupt slave. auto clear.

FIFO (sending and receiving)  0x090 - 0x1F7FF are reserved for FIFOs.
The address of CMD53 is related to the length requested to read from or write to the slave in a single transfer, as demonstrated by the equation below:

\[ \text{requested length} = 0x1F800 - \text{address} \]

The slave will respond with data that has a length equal to the length field of CMD53. In cases where the data is longer than the requested length, the data will be zero filled (when sending) or discarded (when receiving). This includes both the block and the byte mode of CMD53.

Interrupts  SDIO interrupts are "level sensitive". For host interrupts, the slave sends an interrupt by pulling the DAT1 line down at a proper time. The host detects when the interrupt line is pulled down and reads the INT_ST register to determine the source of the interrupt. After that, the host can clear the interrupt bits by writing the INT_CLR register and process the interrupt. The host can also mask unneeded sources by clearing the bits in the INT_ENA register corresponding to the sources. If all the sources are cleared (or masked), the DAT1 line goes inactive.

On ESP32, the corresponding host_int bits are: bit 0 to bit 7.

For slave interrupts, the host sends a transfer to write the SLAVE_INT register. Once a bit is set to 1, the slave hardware and the driver will detect it and inform the application.

Receiving FIFO  To write to the slave’s receiving FIFO, the host should complete the following steps:

1. Read the TOKEN1 field (bits 27-16) of the register TOKEN_RDATA (0x044). The buffer number remaining is TOKEN1 minus the number of buffers used by host.
2. Make sure the buffer number is sufficient (buffer_size x buffer_num is greater than the data to write, buffer_size is pre-defined between the host and the slave before the communication starts). Otherwise, keep returning to Step 1 until the buffer size is sufficient.
3. Write to the FIFO address with CMD53. Note that the requested length should not exceed the length calculated at Step 2, and the FIFO address is related to requested length.
4. Calculate used buffers. Note that a partially used buffer at the tail is counted as used.
Sending FIFO  To read the slave’s sending FIFO, the host should complete the following steps:

1. **Wait for the interrupt line to become active** (optional, low by default).
2. **Read (poll) the interrupt bits in the INT_ST register** to monitor if new packets exist.
3. **If new packets are ready, read the PKT_LEN register.** Before reading the packets, determine the length of data to be read. As the host keeps the length of data already read from the slave, subtract this value from PKT_LEN, the result will be the maximum length of data available for reading. If no data has been added to the sending FIFO yet, wait and poll until the slave is ready and update PKT_LEN.
4. **Read from the FIFO using CMD53.** Note that the requested length should not be greater than calculated at Step 3, and the FIFO address is related to requested length.
5. **Update the read length.**

Esp: The driver for ESP32 hasn’t been developed yet.

ESP SPI Slave HD (Half Duplex) Mode Protocol

**SPI Slave Capabilities of Espressif chips**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>ESP32</th>
<th>ESP32-S2</th>
<th>ESP32-C3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPI Slave HD</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y (v2)</td>
<td>Y (v2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tohost intr</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frhost intr</td>
<td>2 *</td>
<td>2 *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX DMA</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX DMA</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared registers</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**  In the half duplex mode, the master has to use the protocol defined by the slave to communicate with the slave. Each transaction may consist of the following phases (list by the order they should exist):

- **Command:** 8-bit, master to slave
  
  This phase determines the rest phases of the transactions. See *Supported Commands*.

- **Address:** 8-bit, master to slave, optional
  
  For some commands (WRBUF, RDBUF), this phase specifies the address of shared buffer to write to/read from. For other commands with this phase, they are meaningless, but still have to exist in the transaction.

- **Dummy:** 8-bit, floating, optional
  
  This phase is the turn around time between the master and the slave on the bus, and also provides enough time for the slave to prepare the data to send to master.

- **Data:** variable length, the direction is also determined by the command.
  
  This may be a data OUT phase, in which the direction is slave to master, or a data IN phase, in which the direction is master to slave.

The direction means which side (master or slave) controls the MOSI, MISO, WP and HD pins.

**Data IO Modes**  In some IO modes, more data wires can be used to send the data. As a result, the SPI clock cycles required for the same amount of data will be less than in 1-bit mode. For example, in QIO mode, address and data (IN and OUT) should be sent on all 4 data wires (MOSI, MISO, WP, and HD). Here’s the modes supported by ESP32-S2 SPI slave and the wire number used in corresponding modes.
Chapter 2. API

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>command WN</th>
<th>address WN</th>
<th>dummy cycles</th>
<th>data WN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-bit</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOUT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIO</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QOUT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QIO</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Normally, which mode is used is determined by the command sent by the master (See **Supported Commands**), except from the QPI mode.

**QPI Mode** The QPI mode is a special state of the SPI Slave. The master can send ENQPI command to put the slave into the QPI mode state. In the QPI mode, the command is also sent in 4-bit, thus it’s not compatible with the normal modes. The master should only send QPI commands when the slave is in the QPI mode. To exit form the QPI mode, master can send EXQPI command.

**Supported Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WRBUF</td>
<td>Write buffer</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>Buf addr</td>
<td>master to slave, no longer than buffer size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDBUF</td>
<td>Read buffer</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>Buf addr</td>
<td>slave to master, no longer than buffer size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WRDMA</td>
<td>Write DMA</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>8 bits</td>
<td>master to slave, no longer than length provided by slave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDDMA</td>
<td>Read DMA</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>8 bits</td>
<td>slave to master, no longer than length provided by slave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEG_DONE</td>
<td>Segments done</td>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENQPI</td>
<td>Enter QPI mode</td>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WR_DONE</td>
<td>Write segments done</td>
<td>0x07</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMD8</td>
<td>Interrupt</td>
<td>0x08</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMD9</td>
<td>Interrupt</td>
<td>0x09</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMDA</td>
<td>Interrupt</td>
<td>0x0A</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXQPI</td>
<td>Exit QPI mode</td>
<td>0xDD</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Moreover, WRBUF, RDBUF, WRDMA, RDDMA commands have their 2-bit and 4-bit version. To do transactions in 2-bit or 4-bit mode, send the original command ORed by the corresponding command mask below. For example, command 0xA1 means WRBUF in QIO mode.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Mask</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-bit</td>
<td>0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOUT</td>
<td>0x10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIO</td>
<td>0x50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QOUT</td>
<td>0x20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QIO</td>
<td>0xA0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QPI</td>
<td>0xA0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Segment Transaction Mode**  Segment transaction mode is the only mode supported by the SPI Slave HD driver for now. In this mode, for a transaction the slave load onto the DMA, the master is allowed to read or write in segments. This way the master doesn’t have to prepare large buffer as the size of data provided by the slave. After the master finish reading/writing a buffer, it has to send corresponding termination command to the slave as a synchronization signal. The slave driver will update new data (if exist) onto the DMA upon seeing the termination command.

The termination command is WR_DONE (0x07) for the WRDMA, and CMD8 (0x08) for the RDDMA.

Here’s an example for the flow the master read data from the slave DMA:

1. The slave loads 4092 bytes of data onto the RDDMA
2. The master do seven RDDMA transactions, each of them are 512 bytes long, and reads the first 3584 bytes from the slave
3. The master do the last RDDMA transaction of 512 bytes (equal, longer or shorter than the total length loaded by the slave are all allowed). The first 508 bytes are valid data from the slave, while the last 4 bytes are meaningless bytes.
4. The master sends CMD8 to the slave
5. The slave loads another 4092 bytes of data onto the RDDMA
6. The master can start new reading transactions after it sends the CMD8

**Terminology**

- **ESSL**: Abbreviation for ESP Serial Slave Link, the component described by this document.
- **Master**: The device running the esp_serial_slave_link component.
- **ESSL device**: a virtual device on the master associated with an ESP slave device. The device context has the knowledge of the slave protocol above the bus, relying on some bus drivers to communicate with the slave.
- **ESSL device handle**: a handle to ESSL device context containing the configuration, status and data required by the ESSL component. The context stores the driver configurations, communication state, data shared by master and slave, etc. The context should be initialized before it is used, and get deinitialized if not used any more. The master application operates on the ESSL device through this handle.
- **ESP slave**: the slave device connected to the bus, which ESSL component is designed to communicate with.
- **Bus**: The bus over which the master and the slave communicate with each other.
- **Slave protocol**: The special communication protocol specified by Espressif HW/SW over the bus.
- **TX buffer num**: a counter, which is on the slave and can be read by the master, indicates the accumulated buffer numbers that the slave has loaded to the hardware to receive data from the master.
- **RX data size**: a counter, which is on the slave and can be read by the master, indicates the accumulated data size that the slave has loaded to the hardware to send to the master.

**Services provided by ESP slave**

There are some common services provided by the Espressif slaves:

1. Tohost Interrupts: The slave can inform the master about certain events by the interrupt line. (optional)
2. Frhost Interrupts: The master can inform the slave about certain events.
3. Tx FIFO (master to slave): the slave can send data in stream to the master. The SDIO slave can also indicate it has new data to send to master by the interrupt line.

The slave updates the TX buffer num to inform the master how much data it can receive, and the master then read the TX buffer num, and take off the used buffer number to know how many buffers are remaining.
4. Rx FIFO (slave to master): the slave can receive data from the master in units of receiving buffers. The slave updates the RX data size to inform the master how much data it has prepared to send, and then the master read the data size, and take off the data length it has already received to know how many data is remaining.

5. Shared registers: the master can read some part of the registers on the slave, and also write these registers to let the slave read.

The services provided by the slave depends on the slave’s model. See SDIO Slave Capabilities of Expressif chips and SPI Slave Capabilities of Expressif chips for more details.

**Initialization of ESP Serial Slave Link**

**ESP SDIO Slave** The ESP SDIO slave link (ESSL SDIO) devices relies on the sdmmc component. It includes the usage of communicating with ESP SDIO Slave device via SDSPI feature. The ESSL device should be initialized as below:

1. Initialize a sdmmc card (see :doc:`Document of SDMMC driver </api-reference/storage/sdmmc>` structure.
2. Call `sdmmc_card_init()` to initialize the card.
3. Initialize the ESSL device with `essl_sdio_config_t`. The `card` member should be the `sdmmc_card_t` got in step 2, and the `recv_buffer_size` member should be filled correctly according to pre-negotiated value.
4. Call `essl_init()` to do initialization of the SDIO part.
5. Call `essl_wait_for_ready()` to wait for the slave to be ready.

**ESP SPI Slave** 注解: If you are communicating with the ESP SDIO Slave device through SPI interface, you should use the SDIO interface instead.

Hasn’t been supported yet.

**APIs**

After the initialization process above is performed, you can call the APIs below to make use of the services provided by the slave:

**Tohost Interrupts (optional)**

1. Call `essl_get_intr_ena()` to know which events will trigger the interrupts to the master.
2. Call `essl_set_intr_ena()` to set the events that will trigger interrupts to the master.
3. Call `essl_wait_int()` to wait until interrupt from the slave, or timeout.
4. When interrupt is triggered, call `essl_get_intr()` to know which events are active, and call `essl_clear_intr()` to clear them.

**Frhost Interrupts**

1. Call `essl_send_slave_intr()` to trigger general purpose interrupt of the slave.

**TX FIFO**

1. Call `essl_get_tx_buffer_num()` to know how many buffers the slave has prepared to receive data from the master. This is optional. The master will poll `tx_buffer_num` when it try to send packets to the slave, until the slave has enough buffer or timeout.
2. Call `essl_send_paket()` to send data to the slave.
RX FIFO

1. Call `essi_get_rx_data_size()` to know how many data the slave has prepared to send to the master. This is optional. When the master tries to receive data from the slave, it will update the `rx_data_size` for once, if the current `rx_data_size` is shorter than the buffer size the master prepared to receive. And it may poll the `rx_data_size` if the `rx_dat_size` keeps 0, until timeout.
2. Call `essi_get_packet()` to receive data from the slave.

Reset counters (Optional)  Call `essi_reset_cnt()` to reset the internal counter if you find the slave has reset its counter.

Application Example

The example below shows how ESP32 SDIO host and slave communicate with each other. The host use the ESSL SDIO.

Please refer to the specific example README.md for details.

API Reference

Header File

- components/esp_serial_slave_link/include/esp_serial_slave_link/essl.h

Functions

`esp_err_t essl_init (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t wait_ms)`

Initialize the slave.

Return

- ESP_OK: If success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Current device does not support this function.
- Other value returned from lower layer `init`.

Parameters

- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

`esp_err_t essl_wait_for_ready (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t wait_ms)`

Wait for interrupt of an ESSL slave device.

Return

- ESP_OK: If success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Current device does not support this function.
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

`esp_err_t essl_get_tx_buffer_num (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t *out_tx_num, uint32_t wait_ms)`

Get buffer num for the host to send data to the slave. The buffers are size of `buffer_size`.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: This API is not supported in this mode
- One of the error codes from SDMMC/SPI host controller

Parameters

- handle: Handle of a ESSL device.
- out_tx_num: Output of buffer num that host can send data to ESSL slave.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.
**esp_err_t** essl_get_rx_data_size (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t* out_rx_size, uint32_t wait_ms)

Get the size, in bytes, of the data that the ESSL slave is ready to send

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: This API is not supported in this mode
- One of the error codes from SDMMC/SPI host controller

Parameters
- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- out_rx_size: Output of data size to read from slave, in bytes
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

**esp_err_t** essl_reset_cnt (essl_handle_t handle)

Reset the counters of this component. Usually you don’t need to do this unless you know the slave is reset.

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: This API is not supported in this mode
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument, handle is not init.

Parameters
- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.

**esp_err_t** essl_send_packet (essl_handle_t handle, const void* start, size_t length, uint32_t wait_ms)

Send a packet to the ESSL Slave. The Slave receives the packet into buffers whose size is buffer_size (configured during initialization).

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument, handle is not init or other argument is not valid.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: No buffer to use, or error from SDMMC host controller.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Slave is not ready for receiving.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: This API is not supported in this mode
- One of the error codes from SDMMC/SPI host controller.

Parameters
- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- start: Start address of the packet to send
- length: Length of data to send, if the packet is over-size, the it will be divided into blocks and hold into different buffers automatically.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

**esp_err_t** essl_get_packet (essl_handle_t handle, void* out_data, size_t size, size_t* out_length, uint32_t wait_ms)

Get a packet from ESSL slave.

Return
- ESP_OK: Success: All the data has been read from the slave.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument, The handle is not initialized or the other arguments are invalid.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED: Read was successful, but there is still data remaining.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Slave is not ready to send data.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: This API is not supported in this mode
- One of the error codes from SDMMC/SPI host controller.

Parameters
- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- [out] out_data: Data output address
- size: The size of the output buffer, if the buffer is smaller than the size of data to receive from slave, the driver returns ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED
- [out] out_length: Output of length the data actually received from slave.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

**esp_err_t** essl_write_reg (essl_handle_t handle, uint8_t addr, uint8_t value, uint8_t* value_o, uint32_t wait_ms)

Write general purpose R/W registers (8-bit) of ESSL slave.
Note: 
sdio 28-31 are reserved, the lower API helps to skip.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC/SPI host controller

Parameters

- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- addr: Address of register to write. For SDIO, valid address: 0-59. For SPI, see `essl_spi.h`
- value: Value to write to the register.
- value_o: Output of the returned written value.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

```c
esp_err_t essl_read_reg (essl_handle_t handle, uint8_t addr, uint8_t *value_o, uint32_t wait_ms)
```

Read general purpose R/W registers (8-bit) of ESSL slave.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC/SPI host controller

Parameters

- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- add: Address of register to read. For SDIO, Valid address: 0-27, 32-63 (28-31 reserved, return
  interrupt bits on read). For SPI, see `essl_spi.h`
- value_o: Output value read from the register.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

```c
esp_err_t essl_wait_int (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t wait_ms)
```

wait for an interrupt of the slave

Return

- ESP_OK: If interrupt is triggered.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Current device does not support this function.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: No interrupts before timeout.

Parameters

- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

```c
esp_err_t essl_clear_intr (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t intr_mask, uint32_t wait_ms)
```

Clear interrupt bits of ESSL slave. All the bits set in the mask will be cleared, while other bits will stay the
same.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Current device does not support this function.

Parameters

- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- intr_mask: Mask of interrupt bits to clear.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

```c
esp_err_t essl_get_intr (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t *intr_raw, uint32_t *intr_st, uint32_t wait_ms)
```

Get interrupt bits of ESSL slave.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_INVALID_ARG: If both intr_raw and intr_st are NULL.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Current device does not support this function.

Parameters

- handle: Handle of an ESSL device.
- intr_raw: Output of the raw interrupt bits. Set to NULL if only masked bits are read.
- intr_st: Output of the masked interrupt bits. set to NULL if only raw bits are read.
- wait_ms: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.
Chapter 2. API

**esp_err_t essl_set_intr_ena (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t ena_mask, uint32_t wait_ms)**

Set interrupt enable bits of ESSL slave. The slave only sends interrupt on the line when there is a bit both the raw status and the enable are set.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Current device does not support this function.
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

**Parameters**
- `handle`: Handle of an ESSL device.
- `ena_mask`: Mask of the interrupt bits to enable.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

**esp_err_t essl_get_intr_ena (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t *ena_mask_o, uint32_t wait_ms)**

Get interrupt enable bits of ESSL slave.

**Return**
- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

**Parameters**
- `handle`: Handle of an ESSL device.
- `ena_mask_o`: Output of interrupt bit enable mask.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

**esp_err_t essl_send_slave_intr (essl_handle_t handle, uint32_t intr_mask, uint32_t wait_ms)**

Send interrupts to slave. Each bit of the interrupt will be triggered.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Current device does not support this function.
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

**Parameters**
- `handle`: Handle of an ESSL device.
- `intr_mask`: Mask of interrupt bits to send to slave.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef struct essl_dev_t *essl_handle_t
```

Handle of an ESSL device.

**Header File**

- components/esp_serial_slave_link/include/esp_serial_slave_link/essl_sdio.h

**Functions**

**esp_err_t essl_sdio_init_dev (essl_handle_t *out_handle, const essl_sdio_config_t *config)**

Initialize the ESSL SDIO device and get its handle.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: memory exhausted.

**Parameters**
- `out_handle`: Output of the handle.
- `config`: Configuration for the ESSL_SDIO device.

**esp_err_t essl_sdio_deinit_dev (essl_handle_t handle)**

Deinitialize and free the space used by the ESSL SDIO device.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: wrong handle passed
Parameters

• handle: Handle of the ESSL SDIO device to deinit.

Structures

`struct essl_sdio_config_t`

Configuration for the ESSL SDIO device.

Public Members

sdmmc_card_t *card

The initialized sdmmc card pointer of the slave.

int recv_buffer_size

The pre-negotiated recv buffer size used by both the host and the slave.

Header File

• components/esp_serial_slave_link/include/esp_serial_slave_link/essl_spi.h

Functions

`esp_err_t essl_spi_init_dev(essl_handle_t*out_handle, const essl_spi_config_t *init_config)`

Initialize the ESSL SPI device function list and get its handle.

Return

• ESP_OK: On success
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Memory exhausted
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: SPI driver is not initialized
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Wrong register ID

Parameters

• [out] out_handle: Output of the handle
• init_config: Configuration for the ESSL SPI device

`esp_err_t essl_spi_deinit_dev(essl_handle_t handle)`

Deinitialize the ESSL SPI device and free the memory used by the device.

Return

• ESP_OK: On success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: ESSL SPI is not in use

Parameters

• handle: Handle of the ESSL SPI device

`esp_err_t essl_spi_read_reg(void *arg, uint8_t addr, uint8_t*out_value, uint32_t wait_ms)`

Read from the shared registers.

Note: The registers for Master/Slave synchronization are reserved. Do not use them. (see rx_sync_reg in essl_spi_config_t)

Return

• ESP_OK: success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: ESSL SPI has not been initialized.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The address argument is not valid. See note1.
• or other return value from :cpp:func:spi_device_transmit.

Parameters

• arg: Context of the component. (Member arg from essl_handle_t)
• addr: Address of the shared registers. (Valid: 0 ~ SOC_SPI_MAXIMUM_BUFFER_SIZE, registers for M/S sync are reserved, see note1).
• [out] out_value: Read buffer for the shared registers.
• wait_ms: Time to wait before timeout (reserved for future use, user should set this to 0).

`esp_err_t essl_spi_get_packet(void *arg, void *out_data, size_t size, uint32_t wait_ms)`

Get a packet from Slave.
Return

- ESP_OK: On Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: ESSL SPI has not been initialized.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The output data address is neither DMA capable nor 4 byte-aligned
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: Master requires size bytes of data but Slave did not load enough bytes.

Parameters

- arg: Context of the component. (Member arg from essl_handle_t)
- [out] out_data: Output data address
- size: The size of the output data.
- wait_ms: Time to wait before timeout (reserved for future use, user should set this to 0).

void *essl_spi_write_reg (void *arg, uint8_t addr, uint8_t value, uint8_t *out_value, uint32_t wait_ms)

Write to the shared registers.

Note The registers for Master/Slave synchronization are reserved. Do not use them. (see tx_sync_reg in essl_spi_config_t)

Note Feature of checking the actual written value (out_value) is not supported.

Return

- ESP_OK: On success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: ESSL SPI has not been initialized.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The address argument is not valid. See note 1.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Should set out_value to NULL. See note 2.
- or other return value from :cpp:func:spi_device_transmit.

Parameters

- arg: Context of the component. (Member arg from essl_handle_t)
- addr: Address of the shared registers. (Valid: 0 ~ SOC_SPI_MAXIMUM_BUFFER_SIZE, reg-
- isters for M/S sync are reserved, see note1)
- value: Buffer for data to send, should be align to 4.
- [out] out_value: Not supported, should be set to NULL.
- wait_ms: Time to wait before timeout (reserved for future use, user should set this to 0).

void *essl_spi_send_packet (void *arg, const void *data, size_t size, uint32_t wait_ms)

Send a packet to Slave.

Return

- ESP_OK: On success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: ESSL SPI has not been initialized.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The data address is not DMA capable
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: Master will send size bytes of data but Slave did not load enough RX buffer

Parameters

- arg: Context of the component. (Member arg from essl_handle_t)
- data: Address of the data to send
- size: Size of the data to send.
- wait_ms: Time to wait before timeout (reserved for future use, user should set this to 0).

void essl_spi_reset_cnt (void *arg)

Reset the counter in Master context.

Note Shall only be called if the slave has reset its counter. Else, Slave and Master would be desynchronized

Parameters

- arg: Context of the component. (Member arg from essl_handle_t)
DMA. When a byte is written, the remaining bytes in the same word will also be overwritten, even the `len` is shorter than a word.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: on success
- or other return value from `cpp:func:spl_device_transmit`.

**Parameters**
- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `[out] out_data`: Buffer for read data, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and aligned to 4
- `addr`: Address of the slave shared buffer
- `len`: Length to read
- `flags`: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

```c
esp_err_t essl_spi_rdbuf_polling(spi_device_handle_t spi, uint8_t *out_data, int addr, int len, uint32_t flags)
```

Read the shared buffer from the slave in polling way.

**Note** `out_data` should be prepared in words and in the DRAM. The buffer may be written in words by the DMA. When a byte is written, the remaining bytes in the same word will also be overwritten, even the `len` is shorter than a word.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: on success
- or other return value from `cpp:func:spl_device_transmit`.

**Parameters**
- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `[out] out_data`: Buffer for read data, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and aligned to 4
- `addr`: Address of the slave shared buffer
- `len`: Length to read
- `flags`: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

```c
esp_err_t essl_spi_wrbuf_polling(spi_device_handle_t spi, const uint8_t *data, int addr, int len, uint32_t flags)
```

Write the shared buffer of the slave in polling way.

**Note** `out_data` should be prepared in words and in the DRAM. The buffer may be written in words by the DMA. When a byte is written, the remaining bytes in the same word will also be overwritten, even the `len` is shorter than a word.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from `cpp:func:spl_device_polling_transmit`.

**Parameters**
- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `data`: Buffer for data to send, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM
- `addr`: Address of the slave shared buffer
- `len`: Length to write
- `flags`: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

```c
esp_err_t essl_spi_wrbuf_polling(spi_device_handle_t spi, const uint8_t *data, int addr, int len, uint32_t flags)
```

Write the shared buffer of the slave in polling way.

**Note** `out_data` should be prepared in words and in the DRAM. The buffer may be written in words by the DMA. When a byte is written, the remaining bytes in the same word will also be overwritten, even the `len` is shorter than a word.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from `cpp:func:spl_device_polling_transmit`.

**Parameters**
- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `data`: Buffer for data to send, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM
- `addr`: Address of the slave shared buffer
- `len`: Length to write
- `flags`: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.
**esp_err_t** `essel_spi_rddma` *(spi_device_handle_t spi, uint8_t *out_data, int len, int seg_len, uint32_t flags)*

Receive long buffer in segments from the slave through its DMA.

**Note** This function combines several :cpp:func:`essel_spi_rddma_seg` and one :cpp:func:`essel_spi_rddma_done` at the end. Used when the slave is working in segment mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

**Parameters**
- spi: SPI device handle representing the slave
- [out] out_data: Buffer to hold the received data, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and aligned to 4
- len: Total length of data to receive.
- seg_len: Length of each segment, which is not larger than the maximum transaction length allowed for the spi device. Suggested to be multiples of 4. When set < 0, means send all data in one segment (the rddma_done will still be sent.)
- flags: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

**esp_err_t** `essel_spi_rddma_seg` *(spi_device_handle_t spi, uint8_t *out_data, int seg_len, uint32_t flags)*

Read one data segment from the slave through its DMA.

**Note** To read long buffer, call :cpp:func:`essel_spi_rddma` instead.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

**Parameters**
- spi: SPI device handle representing the slave
- [out] out_data: Buffer to hold the received data. strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and aligned to 4
- seg_len: Length of this segment
- flags: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

**esp_err_t** `essel_spi_rddma_done` *(spi_device_handle_t spi, uint32_t flags)*

Send the rddma_done command to the slave. Upon receiving this command, the slave will stop sending the current buffer even there are data unsent, and maybe prepare the next buffer to send.

**Note** This is required only when the slave is working in segment mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

**Parameters**
- spi: SPI device handle representing the slave
- flags: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

**esp_err_t** `essel_spi_wrdma` *(spi_device_handle_t spi, const uint8_t *data, int len, int seg_len, uint32_t flags)*

Send long buffer in segments to the slave through its DMA.

**Note** This function combines several :cpp:func:`essel_spi_wrdma_seg` and one :cpp:func:`essel_spi_wrdma_done` at the end. Used when the slave is working in segment mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

**Parameters**
- spi: SPI device handle representing the slave
- data: Buffer for data to send, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM
- len: Total length of data to send.
- seg_len: Length of each segment, which is not larger than the maximum transaction length allowed for the spi device. Suggested to be multiples of 4. When set < 0, means send all data in one
segment (the wrdma_done will still be sent.)
• flags: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

```c
esp_err_t essl_spi_wrdma_seg(spi_device_handle_t spi, const uint8_t *data, int seg_len, uint32_t flags)
```

Send one data segment to the slave through its DMA.

Note To send long buffer, call :cpp:func:essl_spi_wrdma instead.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• or other return value from :cpp:func:spi_device_transmit.

Parameters
• spi: SPI device handle representing the slave
• data: Buffer for data to send, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM
• seg_len: Length of this segment
• flags: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

```c
esp_err_t essl_spi_wrdma_done(spi_device_handle_t spi, uint32_t flags)
```

Send the wrdma_done command to the slave. Upon receiving this command, the slave will stop receiving, process the received data, and maybe prepare the next buffer to receive.

Note This is required only when the slave is working in segment mode.

Return
• ESP_OK: success
• or other return value from :cpp:func:spi_device_transmit.

Parameters
• spi: SPI device handle representing the slave
• flags: SPI_TRANS_* flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

### Structures

```c
struct essl_spi_config_t
```

Configuration of ESSL SPI device.

### Public Members

```c
spi_device_handle_t *spi
```

Pointer to SPI device handle.

```c
uint32_t tx_buf_size
```

The pre-negotiated Master TX buffer size used by both the host and the slave.

```c
uint8_t tx_sync_reg
```

The pre-negotiated register ID for Master-TX-SLAVE-RX synchronization. 1 word (4 Bytes) will be reserved for the synchronization.

```c
uint8_t rx_sync_reg
```

The pre-negotiated register ID for Master-RX-Slave-TX synchronization. 1 word (4 Bytes) will be reserved for the synchronization.

### 2.4.14 ESP x509 Certificate Bundle

#### Overview

The ESP x509 Certificate Bundle API provides an easy way to include a bundle of custom x509 root certificates for TLS server verification.

Note: The bundle is currently not available when using WolfSSL.
The bundle comes with the complete list of root certificates from Mozilla’s NSS root certificate store. Using the gen_crt_bundle.py python utility the certificates’ subject name and public key are stored in a file and embedded in the ESP32 binary.

When generating the bundle you may choose between:

- The full root certificate bundle from Mozilla, containing more than 130 certificates. The current bundle was updated Tue Oct 5 09:35:35 2021 GMT.
- A pre-selected filter list of the name of the most commonly used root certificates, reducing the amount of certificates to around 35 while still having around 90% coverage according to market share statistics.

In addition it is possible to specify a path to a certificate file or a directory containing certificates which then will be added to the generated bundle.

注解：Trusting all root certificates means the list will have to be updated if any of the certificates are retracted. This includes removing them from cacrt_all.pem.

Configuration

Most configuration is done through menuconfig. CMake will generate the bundle according to the configuration and embed it.

- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE`: automatically build and attach the bundle.
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEFAULT_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE`: decide which certificates to include from the complete root list.
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_PATH`: specify the path of any additional certificates to embed in the bundle.

To enable the bundle when using ESP-TLS simply pass the function pointer to the bundle attach function:

```c
esp_tls_cfg_t cfg = {
    .crt_bundle_attach = esp_crt_bundle_attach,
};
```

This is done to avoid embedding the certificate bundle unless activated by the user.

If using mbedTLS directly then the bundle may be activated by directly calling the attach function during the setup process:

```c
mbedtls_ssl_config conf;
mbedtls_ssl_config_init(&conf);
esp_crt_bundle_attach(&conf);
```

Generating the List of Root Certificates

The list of root certificates comes from Mozilla’s NSS root certificate store, which can be found here. The list can be downloaded and created by running the script mk-ca-bundle.pl that is distributed as a part of curl. Another alternative would be to download the finished list directly from the curl website: CA certificates extracted from Mozilla

The common certificates bundle were made by selecting the authorities with a market share of more than 1% from w3tech’s SSL Survey. These authorities were then used to pick the names of the certificates for the filter list, cmn_crtAuthorities.csv, from this list provided by Mozilla.
Chapter 2. API

### Updating the Certificate Bundle

The bundle is embedded into the app and can be updated along with the app by an OTA update. If you want to include a more up-to-date bundle than the bundle currently included in IDF, then the certificate list can be downloaded from Mozilla as described in *Updating the Certificate Bundle*.

### Application Example

Simple HTTPS example that uses ESP-TLS to establish a secure socket connection using the certificate bundle with two custom certificates added for verification: [protocols/https_x509_bundle](protocols/https_x509_bundle).

HTTPS example that uses ESP-TLS and the default bundle: [protocols/https_request](protocols/https_request).

HTTPS example that uses mbedTLS and the default bundle: [protocols/https_mbedtls](protocols/https_mbedtls).

### API Reference

#### Header File

- components/mbedtls/esp_crt_bundle/include/esp_crt_bundle.h

#### Functions

- **esp_err_t esp_crt_bundle_attach(void *conf)**
  
  Attach and enable use of a bundle for certificate verification.

  Attach and enable use of a bundle for certificate verification through a verification callback. If no specific bundle has been set through esp_crt_bundle_set() it will default to the bundle defined in menuconfig and embedded in the binary.

  **Return**

  - ESP_OK if adding certificates was successful.
  - Other if an error occurred or an action must be taken by the calling process.

  **Parameters**

  - [in] conf: The config struct for the SSL connection.

- **void esp_crt_bundle_detach(mbedtls_ssl_config *conf)**
  
  Disable and dealloc the certification bundle.

  Removes the certificate verification callback and deallocates used resources.

  **Parameters**

  - [in] conf: The config struct for the SSL connection.

- **void esp_crt_bundle_set(const uint8_t *x509_bundle)**
  
  Set the default certificate bundle used for verification.

  Overrides the default certificate bundle. In most use cases the bundle should be set through menuconfig. The bundle needs to be sorted by subject name since binary search is used to find certificates.

  **Parameters**

  - [in] x509_bundle: A pointer to the certificate bundle.

此 API 部分的示例代码在 ESP-IDF 示例工程的 protocols 目录下提供。

### 2.4.15 IP 网络层协议

IP 网络层协议（应用层协议之下）的文档位于连网 API。
Chapter 2. API

2.5 配网 API

2.5.1 Unified Provisioning

Overview

Unified provisioning support in the ESP-IDF provides an extensible mechanism to the developers to configure the device with the Wi-Fi credentials and/or other custom configuration using various transports and different security schemes. Depending on the use-case it provides a complete and ready solution for Wi-Fi network provisioning along with example iOS and Android applications. Or developers can extend the device-side and phone-app side implementations to accommodate their requirements for sending additional configuration data. Following are the important features of this implementation.

1. **Extensible Protocol:** The protocol is completely flexible and it offers the ability for the developers to send custom configuration in the provisioning process. The data representation too is left to the application to decide.

2. **Transport Flexibility:** The protocol can work on Wi-Fi (SoftAP + HTTP server) or on BLE as a transport protocol. The framework provides an ability to add support for any other transport easily as long as command-response behaviour can be supported on the transport.

3. **Security Scheme Flexibility:** It’s understood that each use-case may require different security scheme to secure the data that is exchanged in the provisioning process. Some applications may work with SoftAP that’s WPA2 protected or BLE with “just-works” security. Or the applications may consider the transport to be insecure and may want application level security. The unified provisioning framework allows application to choose the security as deemed suitable.

4. **Compact Data Representation:** The protocol uses Google Protobufs as a data representation for session setup and Wi-Fi provisioning. They provide a compact data representation and ability to parse the data in multiple programming languages in native format. Please note that this data representation is not forced on application specific data and the developers may choose the representation of their choice.

Typical Provisioning Process

**Deciding on Transport**

Unified provisioning subsystem supports Wi-Fi (SoftAP+HTTP server) and BLE (GATT based) transport schemes. Following points need to be considered while selecting the best possible transport for provisioning.

1. BLE based transport has an advantage that in the provisioning process, the BLE communication channel stays intact between the device and the client. That provides reliable provisioning feedback.

2. BLE based provisioning implementation makes the user-experience better from the phone apps as on Android and iOS both, the phone app can discover and connect to the device without requiring user to go out of the phone app

3. BLE transport however consumes ~110KB memory at runtime. If the product does not use the BLE or BT functionality after provisioning is done, almost all the memory can be reclaimed back and can be added into the heap.

4. SoftAP based transport is highly interoperable; however as the same radio is shared between SoftAP and Station interface, the transport is not reliable in the phase when the Wi-Fi connection to external AP is attempted. Also, the client may roam back to different network when the SoftAP changes the channel at the time of Station connection.

5. SoftAP transport does not require much additional memory for the Wi-Fi use-cases

6. SoftAP based provisioning requires the phone app user to go to “System Settings” to connect to Wi-Fi network hosted by the device in case of iOS. The discovery (scanning) as well as connection API is not available for the iOS applications.

**Deciding on Security**

Depending on the transport and other constraints the security scheme needs to be selected by the application developers. Following considerations need to be given from the provisioning security perspective: 1. The configuration data sent from the client to the device and the response has to be secured. 2. The client should authenticate the device.
Chapter 2. API

Typical Provisioning Process

1. Transport specific discovery and connection

   Some form of beaoning

   Client connects

2. Session Establishment

   Get Version Request

   Get Version Response

   Session Setup Request

   Session Setup Response

   One or multiple steps as per protocol

3. Configuration

   App specific Set Config (optional)

   Set Config Response (optional)

   Wi-Fi SetConfig (SSID, Passphrase...)

   Wi-Fi SetConfig response

   Wi-Fi ApplyConfig cmd

   Wi-Fi ApplyConfig resp

   Wi-Fi GetStatus cmd (repeated)

   Wi-Fi GetStatus resp (repeated)

4. Close connection

   Close Connection
it is connected to. 3. The device manufacturer may choose proof-of-possession - a unique per device secret to be entered on the provisioning client as a security measure to make sure that the user can provisions the device in the possession.

There are two levels of security schemes. The developer may select one or combination depending on requirements.

1. Transport Security: SoftAP provisioning may choose WPA2 protected security with unique per-device passphrase. Per-device unique passphrase can also act as a proof-of-possession. For BLE, “just-works” security can be used as a transport level security after understanding the level of security it provides.

2. Application Security: The unified provisioning subsystem provides application level security (security1) that provides data protection and authentication (through proof-of-possession) if the application does not use the transport level security or if the transport level security is not sufficient for the use-case.

Device Discovery

The advertisement and device discovery is left to the application and depending on the protocol chosen, the phone apps and device firmware application can choose appropriate method to advertise and discovery.

For the SoftAP+HTTP transport, typically the SSID (network name) of the AP hosted by the device can be used for discovery.

For the BLE transport device name or primary service included in the advertisement or combination of both can be used for discovery.

Architecture

The below diagram shows architecture of unified provisioning.

![Unified Provisioning Architecture](image)

It relies on the base layer called Protocol Communication (Protocol Communication) which provides a framework for security schemes and transport mechanisms. Wi-Fi Provisioning layer uses Protocomm to provide simple callbacks to the application for setting the configuration and getting the Wi-Fi status. The application has control over implementation of these callbacks. In addition application can directly use protocomm to register custom handlers.
Application creates a protocomm instance which is mapped to a specific transport and specific security scheme. Each transport in the protocomm has a concept of an “end-point” which corresponds to logical channel for communication for specific type of information. For example security handshake happens on a different endpoint than the Wi-Fi configuration endpoint. Each end-point is identified using a string and depending on the transport internal representation of the end-point changes. In case of SoftAP+HTTP transport the end-point corresponds to URI whereas in case of BLE the end-point corresponds to GATT characteristic with specific UUID. Developers can create custom end-points and implement handler for the data that is received or sent over the same end-point.

### Security Schemes

At present unified provisioning supports two security schemes: 1. Security0 - No security (No encryption) 2. Security1 - Curve25519 based key exchange, shared key derivation and AES256-CTR mode encryption of the data. It supports two modes:

- **Authorized** - Proof of Possession (PoP) string used to authorize session and derive shared key
- **No Auth** (Null PoP) - Shared key derived through key exchange only

Security1 scheme details are shown in the below sequence diagram

### Sample Code

Please refer to Protocol Communication and Wi-Fi Provisioning for API guides and code snippets on example usage. Application implementation can be found as an example under provisioning.

### Provisioning Tools

Provisioning applications are available for various platforms, along with source code:

- **Android:**
  - BLE Provisioning app on Play Store.
  - SoftAP Provisioning app on Play Store.
  - Source code on GitHub: esp-idf-provisioning-android.
- **iOS:**
  - BLE Provisioning app on app store.
  - SoftAP Provisioning app on app Store.
  - Source code on GitHub: esp-idf-provisioning-ios.
- **Linux/MacOS/Windows:** tools/esp_prov (a python based command line tool for provisioning)

The phone applications offer simple UI and thus more user centric, while the command line application is useful as a debugging tool for developers.

### 2.5.2 Protocol Communication

#### Overview

Protocol Communication (protocomm) component manages secure sessions and provides framework for multiple transports. The application can also use protocomm layer directly to have application specific extensions for the provisioning (or non-provisioning) use cases.

**Following features are available for provisioning:**

- **Communication security at application level -**
  - protocomm_security0 (no security)
  - protocomm_security1 (curve25519 key exchange + AES-CTR encryption)
- **Proof-of-possession** (support with protocomm_security1 only)
ProtoComm internally uses Protobuf (Protocol Buffers) for secure session establishment. Though users can implement their own security (even without using Protobuf). One can even use ProtoComm without any security layer.

ProtoComm provides framework for various transports - WiFi (SoftAP+HTTPD), BLE, console - in which case the handler invocation is automatically taken care of on the device side (see Transport Examples below for code snippets).

Note that the client still needs to establish session (only for ProtoComm_security1) by performing the two way handshake. See Unified Provisioning for more details about the secure handshake logic.

**Transport Example (SoftAP + HTTP) with Security 1**

For complete example see provisioning/legacy/softap_prov

```c
/* Endpoint handler to be registered with ProtoComm. */

type_t echo_req_handler (uint32_t session_id,
 const uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen,
 uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen,
 void *priv_data)
{
  /* Session ID may be used for persistence */
  printf("Session ID : %d", session_id);

  /* Echo back the received data */
  *outlen = inlen; /* Output data length updated */
  *outbuf = malloc(inlen); /* This will be deallocated outside */
  memcpy(*outbuf, inbuf, inlen);

  /* Private data that was passed at the time of endpoint creation */
  uint32_t *priv = (uint32_t *)priv_data;
  if (priv) {
    printf("Private data : %d", *priv);
  }

  return ESP_OK;
}

/* Example function for launching a ProtoComm instance over HTTP */
protoComm_t *start_pc(const char *pop_string)
{
  protoComm_t *pc = protoComm_new();

  /* Config for protoCommHttpd_start() */
  protoCommHttpd_config_t pc_config = {
    .data = {
      .config = PROTOCOL_HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG()
    }
  }

  /* Start protoComm server on top of HTTP */
  protoCommHttpd_start(pc, &pc_config);

  /* Create Proof of Possession object from pop_string. It must be valid */
  /* throughout the scope of protoComm endpoint. This need not be */
  /* static, */
  /* ie. could be dynamically allocated and freed at the time of */
  /* removal */
  const static protoComm_security_pop_t pop_obj = {
    .data = (const uint8_t *)strdup(pop_string),
    .len = strlen(pop_string)
  }
```

(下页继续)
Chapter 2. API 参考

Transport Example (BLE) with Security 0

For complete example see provisioning/legacy/ble_prov

```c
/* Example function for launching a secure protocomm instance over BLE */
protocomm_t *start_pc()
{
    protocomm_t *pc = protocomm_new();

    /* Endpoint UUIDs */
    protocomm_ble_name_uuid_t nu_lookup_table[] = {
       {"security_endpoint", 0xFF51},
       {"echo_req_endpoint", 0xFF52}
    };
```

(续下页)
/* Config for protocomm_ble_start() */
protocomm_ble_config_t config = {
    .service_uuid = {
        /* LSB <---------------------------------------
         * ---------------------------------------> MSB */
        0xfb, 0x34, 0x9b, 0x5f, 0x80, 0x00, 0x80, 0x00, 0x10, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0x00, 0x00,
    },
    .nu_lookup_count = sizeof(nu_lookup_table)/sizeof(nu_lookup_table[0]),
    .nu_lookup = nu_lookup_table
};

/* Start protocomm layer on top of BLE */
protocomm_ble_start(pc, &config);

/* For protocomm_security0, Proof of Possession is not used, and can be kept NULL */
protocomm_set_security(pc, "security_endpoint", &protocomm_security0, NULL);
protocomm_add_endpoint(pc, "echo_req_endpoint", echo_req_handler, NULL);
return pc;

/* Example function for stopping a protocomm instance */
void stop_pc(protocomm_t *pc)
{
    protocomm_remove_endpoint(pc, "echo_req_endpoint");
    protocomm_unset_security(pc, "security_endpoint");
    /* Stop BLE protocomm service */
    protocomm_ble_stop(pc);
    protocomm_delete(pc);
}

API Reference

Header File

- components/protocomm/include/common/protocomm.h

Functions

protocomm_t *protocomm_new (void)
Create a new protocomm instance.

This API will return a new dynamically allocated protocomm instance with all elements of the protocomm_t structure initialized to NULL.

Return

- protocomm_t*: On success
- NULL: No memory for allocating new instance

void protocomm_delete (protocomm_t *pc)
Delete a protocomm instance.

This API will deallocate a protocomm instance that was created using protocomm_new().

Parameters
**Chapter 2. API 参考**

- [in] `pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance to be deleted

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_add_endpoint (protocomm_t *pc, const char *ep_name, proto-
comm_reg_handler_t h, void *priv_data)
```

Add endpoint request handler for a protocomm instance.

This API will bind an endpoint handler function to the specified endpoint name, along with any private data that needs to be pass to the handler at the time of call.

**Note**
- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.
- This function internally calls the registered add_endpoint() function of the selected transport which is a member of the protocomm_t instance structure.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Error adding endpoint / Endpoint with this name already exists
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating endpoint resource
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null instance/name/handler arguments

**Parameters**
- [in] `pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- [in] `ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string
- [in] `h`: Endpoint handler function
- [in] `priv_data`: Pointer to private data to be passed as a parameter to the handler function on call. Pass NULL if not needed.

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_remove_endpoint (protocomm_t *pc, const char *ep_name)
```

Remove endpoint request handler for a protocomm instance.

This API will remove a registered endpoint handler identified by an endpoint name.

**Note**
- This function internally calls the registered remove_endpoint() function which is a member of the protocomm_t instance structure.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Endpoint with specified name doesn’t exist
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null instance/name arguments

**Parameters**
- [in] `pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- [in] `ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_open_session (protocomm_t *pc, uint32_t session_id)
```

Allocates internal resources for new transport session.

**Note**
- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Request handled successfully
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating internal resource
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null instance/name arguments

**Parameters**
- [in] `pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- [in] `session_id`: Unique ID for a communication session

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_close_session (protocomm_t *pc, uint32_t session_id)
```

Frees internal resources used by a transport session.

**Note**
- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Request handled successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null instance/name arguments

**Parameters**
### Chapter 2. API

- **[in]** pc: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- **[in]** session_id: Unique ID for a communication session

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_req_handle (protocomm_t *pc, const char *ep_name, uint32_t session_id, const uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen)
```

Calls the registered handler of an endpoint session for processing incoming data and generating the response.

**Note**
- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.
- Resulting output buffer must be deallocated by the caller.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Request handled successfully
- ESP_FAIL: Internal error in execution of registered handler
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Error allocating internal resource
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Endpoint with specified name doesn’t exist
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null instance/name arguments

**Parameters**
- **[in]** pc: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- **[in]** ep_name: Endpoint identifier(name) string
- **[in]** session_id: Unique ID for a communication session
- **[in]** inbuf: Input buffer contains input request data which is to be processed by the registered handler
- **[in]** inlen: Length of the input buffer
- **[out]** outbuf: Pointer to internally allocated output buffer, where the resulting response data output from the registered handler is to be stored
- **[out]** outlen: Buffer length of the allocated output buffer

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_set_security (protocomm_t *pc, const char *ep_name, const protocomm_security_t *sec, const protocomm_security_pop_t *pop)
```

Add endpoint security for a protocomm instance.

This API will bind a security session establisher to the specified endpoint name, along with any proof of possession that may be required for authenticating a session client.

**Note**
- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.
- The choice of security can be any `protocomm_security_t` instance. Choices `protocomm_security0` and `protocomm_security1` are readily available.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Error adding endpoint / Endpoint with this name already exists
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Security endpoint already set
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Error allocating endpoint resource
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null instance/name/handler arguments

**Parameters**
- **[in]** pc: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- **[in]** ep_name: Endpoint identifier(name) string
- **[in]** sec: Pointer to endpoint security instance
- **[in]** pop: Pointer to proof of possession for authenticating a client

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_unset_security (protocomm_t *pc, const char *ep_name)
```

Remove endpoint security for a protocomm instance.

This API will remove a registered security endpoint identified by an endpoint name.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Error adding endpoint / Endpoint with this name already exists
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Endpoint with specified name doesn’t exist
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null instance/name arguments

**Parameters**
Chapter 2. API

**protocomm_set_version**

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_set_version(protocomm_t *pc, const char *ep_name, const char *version)
```

Set endpoint for version verification.

This API can be used for setting an application specific protocol version which can be verified by clients through the endpoint.

**Note**

- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using **protocomm_new()**.

**Parameters**

- [in] `pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- [in] `ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string
- [in] `version`: Version identifier(name) string

**Return**

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Error adding endpoint / Endpoint with this name already exists
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Version endpoint already set
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating endpoint resource
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name/handler arguments

**protocomm_unset_version**

```c
esp_err_t protocomm_unset_version(protocomm_t *pc, const char *ep_name)
```

Remove version verification endpoint from a protocomm instance.

This API will remove a registered version endpoint identified by an endpoint name.

**Return**

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Endpoint with specified name doesn’t exist
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null instance/name arguments

**Parameters**

- [in] `pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- [in] `ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef esp_err_t (protocomm_req_handler_t)(uint32_t session_id, const uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen, void *priv_data)
```

Function prototype for protocomm endpoint handler.

```c
typedef struct protocomm protocomm_t
```

This structure corresponds to a unique instance of protocomm returned when the API **protocomm_new()** is called. The remaining Protocomm APIs require this object as the first parameter.

**Note** Structure of the protocomm object is kept private

**Header File**

- components/protocomm/include/security/protocomm_security.h

**Structures**

```c
struct protocomm_security_pop
```

Proof Of Possession for authenticating a secure session.

**Public Members**

```c
const uint8_t *data
```

Pointer to buffer containing the proof of possession data
**Chapter 2. API 参考**

```c
uint16_t len
```

Length (in bytes) of the proof of possession data

```c
struct protocomm_security
```

Protocomm security object structure.

The member functions are used for implementing secure protocomm sessions.

**Note** This structure should not have any dynamic members to allow re-entrancy

### Public Members

```c
int ver
```

Unique version number of security implementation

```c
esp_err_t (*init)(protocomm_security_handle_t *handle)
```

Function for initializing/allocating security infrastructure

```c
esp_err_t (*cleanup)(protocomm_security_handle_t handle)
```

Function for deallocating security infrastructure

```c
esp_err_t (*new_transport_session)(protocomm_security_handle_t handle, uint32_t session_id)
```

Starts new secure transport session with specified ID

```c
esp_err_t (*close_transport_session)(protocomm_security_handle_t handle, uint32_t session_id)
```

Closes a secure transport session with specified ID

```c
esp_err_t (*security_req_handler)(protocomm_security_handle_t handle, const protocomm_security_pop_t *pop, uint32_t session_id, const uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen, void *priv_data)
```

Handler function for authenticating connection request and establishing secure session

```c
esp_err_t (*encrypt)(protocomm_security_handle_t handle, uint32_t session_id, const uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t *outbuf, ssize_t *outlen)
```

Function which implements the encryption algorithm

```c
esp_err_t (*decrypt)(protocomm_security_handle_t handle, uint32_t session_id, const uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t *outbuf, ssize_t *outlen)
```

Function which implements the decryption algorithm

### Type Definitions

```c
typedef struct protocomm_security_pop protocomm_security_pop_t
```

Proof Of Possession for authenticating a secure session.

```c
typedef void *protocomm_security_handle_t
```

Protocomm security object structure.

The member functions are used for implementing secure protocomm sessions.

**Note** This structure should not have any dynamic members to allow re-entrancy

### Header File

- components/protocomm/include/security/protocomm_security0.h

### Header File

- components/protocomm/include/security/protocomm_security1.h
### Header File

- components/protocomm/include/transports/protocomm_httpd.h

### Functions

**esp_err_t protocomm_httpd_start(protocomm_t *pc, const protocomm_httpd_config_t *config)**

Start HTTPD protocomm transport.

This API internally creates a framework to allow endpoint registration and security configuration for the protocomm.

**Note** This is a singleton. ie. Protocomm can have multiple instances, but only one instance can be bound to an HTTP transport layer.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Transport layer bound to another protocomm instance
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Transport layer already bound to this protocomm instance
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Memory allocation for server resource failed
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_*: HTTP server error on start

**Parameters**

- [in] pc: Protocomm instance pointer obtained from protocomm_new()
- [in] config: Pointer to config structure for initializing HTTP server

**esp_err_t protocomm_httpd_stop(protocomm_t *pc)**

Stop HTTPD protocomm transport.

This API cleans up the HTTPD transport protocomm and frees all the handlers registered with the protocomm.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null / incorrect protocomm instance pointer

**Parameters**

- [in] pc: Same protocomm instance that was passed to protocomm_httpd_start()

### Unions

**union protocomm_httpd_config_data_t**

- include <protocomm_httpd.h> Protocomm HTTPD Configuration Data

### Public Members

**void *handle**

HTTP Server Handle, if ext_handle_provided is set to true

**protocomm_http_server_config_t config**

HTTP Server Configuration, if a server is not already active

### Structures

**struct protocomm_http_server_config_t**

Config parameters for protocomm HTTP server.

### Public Members

**uint16_t port**

Port on which the HTTP server will listen

**size_t stack_size**

Stack size of server task, adjusted depending upon stack usage of endpoint handler
unsigned task_priority
Priority of server task

struct protocomm_httpd_config_t
Config parameters for protocomm HTTP server.

Public Members

bool ext_handle_provided
Flag to indicate of an external HTTP Server Handle has been provided. In such as case, protocomm will
use the same HTTP Server and not start a new one internally.

protocomm_httpd_config_data_t data
Protocomm HTTPD Configuration Data

Macros

PROTOCOMM_HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG()

Header File

- components/protocomm/include/transports/protocomm_ble.h

Functions

esp_err_t protocomm_ble_start (protocomm_t *pc, const protocomm_ble_config_t *config)
Start Bluetooth Low Energy based transport layer for provisioning.

Initialize and start required BLE service for provisioning. This includes the initialization for characteristics/service for BLE.

Return
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Simple BLE start error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating memory for internal resources
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Error in ble config
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

Parameters
- [in] pc: Protocomm instance pointer obtained from protocomm_new()
- [in] config: Pointer to config structure for initializing BLE

esp_err_t protocomm_ble_stop (protocomm_t *pc)
Stop Bluetooth Low Energy based transport layer for provisioning.

Stops service/task responsible for BLE based interactions for provisioning

Note You might want to optionally reclaim memory from Bluetooth. Refer to the documentation of
esp_bt_mem_release in that case.

Return
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Simple BLE stop error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null / incorrect protocomm instance

Parameters
- [in] pc: Same protocomm instance that was passed to protocomm_ble_start()

Structures

struct name_uuid
This structure maps handler required by protocomm layer to UUIDs which are used to uniquely identify BLE
characteristics from a smartphone or a similar client device.
Public Members

```c
const char *name
  Name of the handler, which is passed to protocomm layer
```

```c
uint16_t uuid
  UUID to be assigned to the BLE characteristic which is mapped to the handler
```

```c
struct protocomm_ble_config
  Config parameters for protocomm BLE service.
```

Public Members

```c
char device_name[MAX_BLE_DEVNAME_LEN]
  BLE device name being broadcast at the time of provisioning
```

```c
uint8_t service_uuid[BLE_UUID128_VAL_LENGTH]
  128 bit UUID of the provisioning service
```

```c
uint8_t *manufacturer_data
  BLE device manufacturer data pointer in advertisement
```

```c
ssize_t manufacturer_data_len
  BLE device manufacturer data length in advertisement
```

```c
ssize_t nu_lookup_count
  Number of entries in the Name-UUID lookup table
```

```c
protocomm_ble_name_uuid_t *nu_lookup
  Pointer to the Name-UUID lookup table
```

Macros

```c
MAX_BLE_DEVNAME_LEN
  BLE device name cannot be larger than this value 31 bytes (max scan response size) - 1 byte (length) - 1 byte (type) = 29 bytes
```

```c
BLE_UUID128_VAL_LENGTH
```

```c
MAX_BLE_MANUFACTURER_DATA_LEN
  Theoretically, the limit for max manufacturer length remains same as BLE device name i.e. 31 bytes (max scan response size) - 1 byte (length) - 1 byte (type) = 29 bytes However, manufacturer data goes along with BLE device name in scan response. So, it is important to understand the actual length should be smaller than (29 - (BLE device name length) - 2).
```

Type Definitions

```c
typedef struct name_uuid protocomm_ble_name_uuid_t
  This structure maps handler required by protocomm layer to UUIDs which are used to uniquely identify BLE characteristics from a smartphone or a similar client device.
```

```c
typedef struct protocomm_ble_config protocomm_ble_config_t
  Config parameters for protocomm BLE service.
```

2.5.3 Wi-Fi Provisioning

Overview

This component provides APIs that control Wi-Fi provisioning service for receiving and configuring Wi-Fi credentials over SoftAP or BLE transport via secure Protocol Communication (protocomm) sessions. The set of wifi_prov_mgr_ APIs help in quickly implementing a provisioning service having necessary features with minimal amount of code and sufficient flexibility.
**Initialization** *`wifi_prov_mgr_init()`* is called to configure and initialize the provisioning manager and thus this must be called prior to invoking any other *`wifi_prov_mgr_`* APIs. Note that the manager relies on other components of IDF, namely NVS, TCP/IP, Event Loop and Wi-Fi (and optionally mDNS), hence these must be initialized beforehand. The manager can be de-initialized at any moment by making a call to *`wifi_prov_mgr_deinit()`*.

```c
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t config = {
  .scheme = wifi_prov_scheme_ble,
  .scheme_event_handler = WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM
};
ESP_ERROR_CHECK( wifi_prov_mgr_init(config) );
```

The configuration structure *`wifi_prov_mgr_config_t`* has a few fields to specify the behavior desired of the manager:

- **`scheme`**: This is used to specify the provisioning scheme. Each scheme corresponds to one of the modes of transport supported by protocomm. Hence, we have three options:
  - *`wifi_prov_scheme_ble`*: BLE transport and GATT Server for handling provisioning commands
  - *`wifi_prov_scheme_softap`*: Wi-Fi SoftAP transport and HTTP Server for handling provisioning commands
  - *`wifi_prov_scheme_console`*: Serial transport and console for handling provisioning commands

- **`scheme_event_handler`**: An event handler defined along with scheme. Choosing appropriate scheme specific event handler allows the manager to take care of certain matters automatically. Presently this is not used for either SoftAP or Console based provisioning, but is very convenient for BLE. To understand how, we must recall that Bluetooth requires quite some amount of memory to function and once provisioning is finished, the main application may want to reclaim back this memory (or part of it, if it needs to use either BLE or classic BT). Also, upon every future reboot of a provisioned device, this reclamation of memory needs to be performed again. To reduce this complication in using *`wifi_prov_scheme_ble`*, the scheme specific handlers have been defined, and depending upon the chosen handler, the BLE / classic BT / BTDM memory will be freed automatically when the provisioning manager is de-initialized. The available options are:
  - *`WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM`*: Free both classic BT and BLE (BTDM) memory. Used when main application doesn’t require Bluetooth at all.
  - *`WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BLE`*: Free only BLE memory. Used when main application requires classic BT.
  - *`WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BT`*: Free only classic BT. Used when main application requires BLE. In this case freeing happens right when the manager is initialized.
  - *`WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE`*: Don’t use any scheme specific handler. Used when provisioning scheme is not BLE (i.e. SoftAP or Console), or when main application wants to handle the memory reclaiming on its own, or needs both BLE and classic BT to function.

- **`app_event_handler`** (Deprecated): It is now recommended to catch `WIFI_PROV_EVENT`’s that are emitted to the default event loop handler. See definition of ``wifi_prov_cb_event_t`* for the list of events that are generated by the provisioning service. Here is an excerpt showing some of the provisioning events:

```c
static void event_handler(void* arg, esp_event_base_t event_base,
                         int event_id, void* event_data) {      
  if (event_base == WIFI_PROV_EVENT) {
    switch (event_id) {
      case WIFI_PROV_START:
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Provisioning started");
        break;
      case WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV:
        wifi_sta_config_t *wifi_sta_cfg = (wifi_sta_config_t*)event_data;
```

(下页继续)
The manager can be de-initialized at any moment by making a call to `wifi_prov_mgr_deinit()`.

**Check Provisioning State** Whether device is provisioned or not can be checked at runtime by calling `wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned()`. This internally checks if the Wi-Fi credentials are stored in NVS.

Note that presently manager does not have its own NVS namespace for storage of Wi-Fi credentials, instead it relies on the `esp_wifi_` APIs to set and get the credentials stored in NVS from the default location.

If provisioning state needs to be reset, any of the following approaches may be taken:

- the associated part of NVS partition has to be erased manually
- main application must implement some logic to call `esp_wifi_` APIs for erasing the credentials at runtime
- main application must implement some logic to force start the provisioning irrespective of the provisioning state

```c
bool provisioned = false;
ESP_ERROR_CHECK( wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned(&provisioned) );
```

**Start Provisioning Service** At the time of starting provisioning we need to specify a service name and the corresponding key. These translate to:

- Wi-Fi SoftAP SSID and passphrase, respectively, when scheme is `wifi_prov_scheme_softap`
- BLE Device name (service key is ignored) when scheme is `wifi_prov_scheme_ble`

Also, since internally the manager uses `protocomm`, we have the option of choosing one of the security features provided by it:

- Security 1 is secure communication which consists of a prior handshake involving X25519 key exchange along with authentication using a proof of possession (pop), followed by AES-CTR for encryption/decryption of subsequent messages
Security 0 is simply plain text communication. In this case the pop is simply ignored.

See Provisioning for details about the security features.

```c
const char *service_name = "my_device";
const char *service_key = "password";
wifi_prov_security_t security = WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_1;
const char *pop = "abcd1234";
ESP_ERROR_CHECK( wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(security, pop, service_name, service_key) );
```

The provisioning service will automatically finish only if it receives valid Wi-Fi AP credentials followed by successfully connection of device to the AP (IP obtained). Regardless of that, the provisioning service can be stopped at any moment by making a call to `wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning()`.

**Waiting For Completion** Typically, the main application will wait for the provisioning to finish, then de-initialize the manager to free up resources and finally start executing its own logic.

There are two ways for making this possible. The simpler way is to use a blocking call to `wifi_prov_mgr_wait()`.

```c
// Start provisioning service
ESP_ERROR_CHECK( wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(security, pop, service_name, service_key) );
// Wait for service to complete
wifi_prov_mgr_wait();
// Finally de-initialize the manager
wifi_prov_mgr_deinit();
```

The other way is to use the default event loop handler to catch `WIFI_PROV_EVENT`’s and call `wifi_prov_mgr_deinit()` when event ID is `WIFI_PROV_END`:

```c
static void event_handler(void* arg, esp_event_base_t event_base, int event_id, void* event_data)
{
    if (event_base == WIFI_PROV_EVENT && event_id == WIFI_PROV_END) {
        /* De-initialize manager once provisioning is finished */
        wifi_prov_mgr_deinit();
    }
}
```

**User Side Implementation** When the service is started, the device to be provisioned is identified by the advertised service name which, depending upon the selected transport, is either the BLE device name or the SoftAP SSID.

When using SoftAP transport, for allowing service discovery, mDNS must be initialized before starting provisioning. In this case the hostname set by the main application is used, and the service type is internally set to `_esp_wifi_prov`.

When using BLE transport, a custom 128 bit UUID should be set using `wifi_prov_scheme_ble_set_service_uuid()`. This UUID will be included in the BLE advertisement.
and will correspond to the primary GATT service that provides provisioning endpoints as GATT characteristics. Each GATT characteristic will be formed using the primary service UUID as base, with different auto assigned 12th and 13th bytes (assume counting starts from 0th byte). Since, an endpoint characteristic UUID is auto assigned, it shouldn’t be used to identify the endpoint. Instead, client side applications should identify the endpoints by reading the User Characteristic Description (0x2901) descriptor for each characteristic, which contains the endpoint name of the characteristic. For example, if the service UUID is set to 55cc035e-fb27-4f80-be02-3c60828b7451, each endpoint characteristic will be assigned a UUID like 55cc____-fb27-4f80-be02-3c60828b7451, with unique values at the 12th and 13th bytes.

Once connected to the device, the provisioning related protocomm endpoints can be identified as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint Name (BLE + GATT Server)</th>
<th>URI (SoftAP + HTTP Server + mDNS)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prov-session</td>
<td>http://&lt;mdns-hostname&gt;.local/prov-session</td>
<td>Security endpoint used for session establishment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prov-scan</td>
<td><a href="http://wifi-prov.local/prov-scan">http://wifi-prov.local/prov-scan</a></td>
<td>Endpoint used for starting Wi-Fi scan and receiving scan results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prov-config</td>
<td>http://&lt;mdns-hostname&gt;.local/prov-config</td>
<td>Endpoint used for configuring Wi-Fi credentials on device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proto-ver</td>
<td>http://&lt;mdns-hostname&gt;.local/proto-ver</td>
<td>Endpoint for retrieving version info</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Immediately after connecting, the client application may fetch the version/capabilities information from the proto-ver endpoint. All communications to this endpoint are un-encrypted, hence necessary information (that may be relevant for deciding compatibility) can be retrieved before establishing a secure session. The response is in JSON format and looks like:

```json
```

Here label `prov` provides provisioning service version (`ver`) and capabilities (`cap`). For now, only `no_pop` capability is supported, which indicates that the service doesn’t require proof of possession for authentication. Any application related version/capabilities will be given by other labels (like `my_app` in this example). These additional fields are set using `wifi_prov_mgr_set_app_info()`.

User side applications need to implement the signature handshaking required for establishing and authenticating secure protocomm sessions as per the security scheme configured for use (this is not needed when manager is configured to use protocomm security 0).

See Unified Provisioning for more details about the secure handshake and encryption used. Applications must use the `.proto` files found under `protocomm/proto`, which define the Protobuf message structures supported by `prov-session` endpoint.

Once a session is established, Wi-Fi credentials are configured using the following set of `wifi_config` commands, serialized as Protobuf messages (the corresponding `.proto` files can be found under `wifi_provisioning/proto`):

- **get_status** - For querying the Wi-Fi connection status. The device will respond with a status which will be one of connecting/connected/disconnected. If status is disconnected, a disconnection reason will also be included in the status response.
- **set_config** - For setting the Wi-Fi connection credentials
- **apply_config** - For applying the credentials saved during `set_config` and start the Wi-Fi station

After session establishment, client can also request Wi-Fi scan results from the device. The results returned is a list of AP SSIDs, sorted in descending order of signal strength. This allows client applications to display APs nearby to the device at the time of provisioning, and users can select one of the SSIDs and provide the password which is then sent using the `wifi_config` commands described above. The `wifi_scan` endpoint supports the following protobuf commands:

- **scan_start** - For starting Wi-Fi scan with various options:
  - **blocking** (input) - If true, the command returns only when the scanning is finished
  - **passive** (input) - If true scan is started in passive mode (this may be slower) instead of active mode

Espressif Systems 1077 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback
- **group_channels (input)** - This specifies whether to scan all channels in one go (when zero) or perform scanning of channels in groups, with 120ms delay between scanning of consecutive groups, and the value of this parameter sets the number of channels in each group. This is useful when transport mode is SoftAP, where scanning all channels in one go may not give the Wi-Fi driver enough time to send out beacons, and hence may cause disconnection with any connected stations. When scanning in groups, the manager will wait for at least 120ms after completing scan on a group of channels, and thus allow the driver to send out the beacons. For example, given that the total number of Wi-Fi channels is 14, then setting group_channels to 4, will create 5 groups, with each group having 3 channels, except the last one which will have $14 \% 3 = 2$ channels. So, when scan is started, the first 3 channels will be scanned, followed by a 120ms delay, and then the next 3 channels, and so on, until all the 14 channels have been scanned. One may need to adjust this parameter as having only few channels in a group may slow down the overall scan time, while having too many may again cause disconnection. Usually a value of 4 should work for most cases. Note that for any other mode of transport, e.g. BLE, this can be safely set to 0, and hence achieve the fastest overall scanning time.

- **period_ms (input)** - Scan parameter specifying how long to wait on each channel

  * **scan_status** - Gives the status of scanning process:
    - **scan_finished** (output) - When scan has finished this returns true
    - **result_count** (output) - This gives the total number of results obtained till now. If scan is yet happening this number will keep on updating

  * **scan_result** - For fetching scan results. This can be called even if scan is still on going
    - **start_index** (input) - Starting index from where to fetch the entries from the results list
    - **count** (input) - Number of entries to fetch from the starting index
    - **entries** (output) - List of entries returned. Each entry consists of ssid, channel and rssi information

### Additional Endpoints

In case users want to have some additional protocomm endpoints customized to their requirements, this is done in two steps. First is creation of an endpoint with a specific name, and the second step is the registration of a handler for this endpoint. See protocomm for the function signature of an endpoint handler. A custom endpoint must be created after initialization and before starting the provisioning service. Whereas, the protocomm handler is registered for this endpoint only after starting the provisioning service.

```c
wifi_prov_mgr_init(config);
wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_create("custom-endpoint");
wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(security, pop, service_name, service_key);
wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_register("custom-endpoint", custom_ep_handler,
--custom_ep_data);
```

When the provisioning service stops, the endpoint is unregistered automatically.

One can also choose to call `wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_unregister()` to manually deactivate an endpoint at runtime. This can also be used to deactivate the internal endpoints used by the provisioning service.

### When / How To Stop Provisioning Service?

The default behavior is that once the device successfully connects using the Wi-Fi credentials set by the `apply_config` command, the provisioning service will be stopped (and BLE / SoftAP turned off) automatically after responding to the next `get_status` command. If `get_status` command is not received by the device, the service will be stopped after a 30s timeout.

On the other hand, if device was not able to connect using the provided Wi-Fi credentials, due to incorrect SSID / passphrase, the service will keep running, and `get_status` will keep responding with disconnected status and reason for disconnection. Any further attempts to provide another set of Wi-Fi credentials, will be rejected. These credentials will be preserved, unless the provisioning service is force started, or NVS erased.

If this default behavior is not desired, it can be disabled by calling `wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop()`. Now the provisioning service will only be stopped after an explicit call to `wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning()`, which returns immediately after scheduling a task for stopping the service. The service stops after a certain delay and WIFI_PROV_END event gets emitted. This delay is specified by the argument to `wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop()`.

The customized behavior is useful for applications which want the provisioning service to be stopped some
time after the Wi-Fi connection is successfully established. For example, if the application requires the de-
vice to connect to some cloud service and obtain another set of credentials, and exchange this credentials
over a custom protocomm endpoint, then after successfully doing so stop the provisioning service by calling
\texttt{wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning()} inside the protocomm handler itself. The right amount of de-
lay ensures that the transport resources are freed only after the response from the protocomm handler reaches the
client side application.

**Application Examples**

For complete example implementation see \texttt{provisioning/wifi_prov_mgr}

**Provisioning Tools**

Provisioning applications are available for various platforms, along with source code:

- **Android:**
  - BLE Provisioning app on Play Store.
  - SoftAP Provisioning app on Play Store.
  - Source code on GitHub: \texttt{esp-idf-provisioning-android}.

- **iOS:**
  - BLE Provisioning app on app store.
  - SoftAP Provisioning app on app Store.
  - Source code on GitHub: \texttt{esp-idf-provisioning-ios}.

- **Linux/MacOS/Windows:** tools/\texttt{esp_prov} (a python based command line tool for provisioning)

The phone applications offer simple UI and thus more user centric, while the command line application is useful as
a debugging tool for developers.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/manager.h

**Functions**

\[
\texttt{esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_init(wifi_prov_mgr_config_t config)}
\]

Initialize provisioning manager instance.

Configures the manager and allocates internal resources

Configuration specifies the provisioning scheme (transport) and event handlers

Event WIFI_PROV_INIT is emitted right after initialization is complete

\textbf{Return}

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Fail

\textbf{Parameters}

- \texttt{[in]} \texttt{config}: Configuration structure

\[
\texttt{void wifi_prov_mgr_deinit(void)}
\]

Stop provisioning (if running) and release resource used by the manager.

Event WIFI_PROV_DEINIT is emitted right after de-initialization is finished

If provisioning service is still active when this API is called, it first stops the service, hence emitting
WIFI_PROV_END, and then performs the de-initialization

\[
\texttt{esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned(bool *provisioned)}
\]

Checks if device is provisioned.

This checks if Wi-Fi credentials are present on the NVS
The Wi-Fi credentials are assumed to be kept in the same NVS namespace as used by esp_wifi component.

If one were to call esp_wifi_set_config() directly instead of going through the provisioning process, this function will still yield true (i.e. device will be found to be provisioned).

**Note** Calling wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning() automatically resets the provision state, irrespective of what the state was prior to making the call.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Retrieved provision state successfully
- ESP_FAIL: Wi-Fi not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null argument supplied
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Manager not initialized

**Parameters**
- [out] provisioned: True if provisioned, else false

```c
esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(wifi_prov_security_t security, const char *pop, const char *service_name, const char *service_key)
```

Start provisioning service.

This starts the provisioning service according to the scheme configured at the time of initialization. For scheme:

- wifi_prov_scheme_ble : This starts protocomm_ble, which internally initializes BLE transport and starts GATT server for handling provisioning requests
- wifi_prov_scheme_softap : This activates SoftAP mode of Wi-Fi and starts protocomm_httpd, which internally starts an HTTP server for handling provisioning requests (If mDNS is active it also starts advertising service with type _esp_wifi_prov._tcp)

Event WIFI_PROV_START is emitted right after provisioning starts without failure.

**Note** This API will start provisioning service even if device is found to be already provisioned, i.e. wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned() yields true.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Provisioning started successfully
- ESP_FAIL: Failed to start provisioning service
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Provisioning manager not initialized or already started

**Parameters**
- [in] security: Specify which protocomm security scheme to use:
  - WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_0: For no security
  - WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_1: x25519 secure handshake for session establishment followed by AES-CTR encryption of provisioning messages
- [in] pop: Pointer to proof of possession string (NULL if not needed). This is relevant only for protocomm security 1, in which case it is used for authenticating secure session
- [in] service_name: Unique name of the service. This translates to:
  - Wi-Fi SSID when provisioning mode is softAP
  - Device name when provisioning mode is BLE
- [in] service_key: Key required by client to access the service (NULL if not needed). This translates to:
  - Wi-Fi password when provisioning mode is softAP
  - Ignored when provisioning mode is BLE

```c
void wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning(void)
```

Stop provisioning service.

If provisioning service is active, this API will initiate a process to stop the service and return. Once the service actually stops, the event WIFI_PROV_END will be emitted.

If wifi_prov_mgr_deinit() is called without calling this API first, it will automatically stop the provisioning service and emit the WIFI_PROV_END, followed by WIFI_PROV_DEINIT, before returning.

This API will generally be used along with wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop() in the scenario when the main application has registered its own endpoints, and wishes that the provisioning service is stopped only when some protocomm command from the client side application is received.
Calling this API inside an endpoint handler, with sufficient cleanup_delay, will allow the response / acknowledgment to be sent successfully before the underlying protocomm service is stopped.

Cleanup_delay is set when calling wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop(). If not specified, it defaults to 1000ms.

For straightforward cases, using this API is usually not necessary as provisioning is stopped automatically once WIFI_PROV_CRED_SUCCESS is emitted. Stopping is delayed (maximum 30 seconds) thus allowing the client side application to query for Wi-Fi state, i.e. after receiving the first query and sending Wi-Fi state connected response the service is stopped immediately.

```c
void wifi_prov_mgr_wait ( void )
```

Wait for provisioning service to finish.

Calling this API will block until provisioning service is stopped i.e. till event WIFI_PROV_END is emitted.

This will not block if provisioning is not started or not initialized.

```c
esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop ( uint32_t cleanup_delay )
```

Disable auto stopping of provisioning service upon completion.

By default, once provisioning is complete, the provisioning service is automatically stopped, and all endpoints (along with those registered by main application) are deactivated.

This API is useful in the case when main application wishes to close provisioning service only after it receives some protocomm command from the client side app. For example, after connecting to Wi-Fi, the device may want to connect to the cloud, and only once that is successfully, the device is said to be fully configured. But, then it is upto the main application to explicitly call wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning() later when the device is fully configured and the provisioning service is no longer required.

Note: This must be called before executing wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning()

Return:

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Manager not initialized or provisioning service already started

Parameters:

- [in] cleanup_delay: Sets the delay after which the actual cleanup of transport related resources is done after a call to wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning() returns. Minimum allowed value is 100ms. If not specified, this will default to 1000ms.

```c
esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_set_app_info ( const char *label, const char *version, const char **capabilities, size_t total_capabilities )
```

Set application version and capabilities in the JSON data returned by proto-ver endpoint.

This function can be called multiple times, to specify information about the various application specific services running on the device, identified by unique labels.

The provisioning service itself registers an entry in the JSON data, by the label “prov”, containing only provisioning service version and capabilities. Application services should use a label other than “prov” so as not to overwrite this.

Note: This must be called before executing wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning()

Return:

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Manager not initialized or provisioning service already started
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Failed to allocate memory for version string
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Null argument

Parameters:

- [in] label: String indicating the application name.
- [in] version: String indicating the application version. There is no constraint on format.
- [in] capabilities: Array of strings with capabilities. These could be used by the client side app to know the application registered endpoint capabilities
- [in] total_capabilities: Size of capabilities array

```c
esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_create ( const char *ep_name )
```

Create an additional endpoint and allocate internal resources for it.
This API is to be called by the application if it wants to create an additional endpoint. All additional endpoints will be assigned UUIDs starting from 0xFF54 and so on in the order of execution.

protocomm handler for the created endpoint is to be registered later using wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_register() after provisioning has started.

Note This API can only be called BEFORE provisioning is started
Note Additional endpoints can be used for configuring client provided parameters other than Wi-Fi credentials, that are necessary for the main application and hence must be set prior to starting the application
Note After session establishment, the additional endpoints must be targeted first by the client side application before sending Wi-Fi configuration, because once Wi-Fi configuration finishes the provisioning service is stopped and hence all endpoints are unregistered

Return
• ESP_OK : Success
• ESP_FAIL : Failure

Parameters
• [in] ep_name: unique name of the endpoint

```
esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_register(const char *ep_name, protocomm_req_handler_t handler, void *user_ctx)
```

Register a handler for the previously created endpoint.

This API can be called by the application to register a protocomm handler to any endpoint that was created using wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_create().

Note This API can only be called AFTER provisioning has started
Note Additional endpoints can be used for configuring client provided parameters other than Wi-Fi credentials, that are necessary for the main application and hence must be set prior to starting the application
Note After session establishment, the additional endpoints must be targeted first by the client side application before sending Wi-Fi configuration, because once Wi-Fi configuration finishes the provisioning service is stopped and hence all endpoints are unregistered

Return
• ESP_OK : Success
• ESP_FAIL : Failure

Parameters
• [in] ep_name: Name of the endpoint
• [in] handler: Endpoint handler function
• [in] user_ctx: User data

```
void wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_unregister(const char *ep_name)
```

Unregister the handler for an endpoint.

This API can be called if the application wants to selectively unregister the handler of an endpoint while the provisioning is still in progress.

All the endpoint handlers are unregistered automatically when the provisioning stops.

Parameters
• [in] ep_name: Name of the endpoint

```
esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_event_handler(void *ctx, system_event_t *event)
```

Event handler for provisioning manager.

This is called from the main event handler and controls the provisioning manager’s internal state machine depending on incoming Wi-Fi events

Note : This function is DEPRECATED, because events are now handled internally using the event loop library, esp_event. Calling this will do nothing and simply return ESP_OK.

Return
• ESP_OK : Event handled successfully

Parameters
• [in] ctx: Event context data
• [in] event: Event info
**esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_get_wifi_state (wifi_prov_sta_state_t *state)**

Get state of Wi-Fi Station during provisioning.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Successfully retrieved Wi-Fi state
- ESP_FAIL : Provisioning app not running

**Parameters**
- [out] state: Pointer to wifi_prov_sta_state_t variable to be filled

**esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_get_wifi_disconnect_reason (wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t *reason)**

Get reason code in case of Wi-Fi station disconnection during provisioning.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Successfully retrieved Wi-Fi disconnect reason
- ESP_FAIL : Provisioning app not running

**Parameters**
- [out] reason: Pointer to wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t variable to be filled

**esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_configure_sta (wifi_config_t *wifi_cfg)**

Runs Wi-Fi as Station with the supplied configuration.

Configures the Wi-Fi station mode to connect to the AP with SSID and password specified in config structure and sets Wi-Fi to run as station.

This is automatically called by provisioning service upon receiving new credentials.

If credentials are to be supplied to the manager via a different mode other than through protocol, then this API needs to be called.

Event WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV is emitted after credentials have been applied and Wi-Fi station started

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Wi-Fi configured and started successfully
- ESP_FAIL : Failed to set configuration

**Parameters**
- [in] wifi_cfg: Pointer to Wi-Fi configuration structure

**esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_reset_provisioning (void)**

Reset Wi-Fi provisioning config.

Calling this API will restore WiFi stack persistent settings to default values.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Reset provisioning config successfully
- ESP_FAIL : Failed to reset provisioning config

**esp_err_t wifi_prov_mgr_reset_sm_state_on_failure (void)**

Reset internal state machine and clear provisioned credentials.

This API can be used to restart provisioning in case invalid credentials are entered.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Reset provisioning state machine successfully
- ESP_FAIL : Failed to reset provisioning state machine
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Manager not initialized

**Structures**

**struct wifi_prov_event_handler_t**

Event handler that is used by the manager while provisioning service is active.
Public Members

`wifi_prov_cb_func_t event_cb`
Callback function to be executed on provisioning events

`void *user_data`
User context data to pass as parameter to callback function

`struct wifi_prov_scheme`
Structure for specifying the provisioning scheme to be followed by the manager.

**Note** Ready to use schemes are available:
- `wifi_prov_scheme_ble`: for provisioning over BLE transport + GATT server
- `wifi_prov_scheme_softap`: for provisioning over SoftAP transport + HTTP server + mDNS (optional)
- `wifi_prov_scheme_console`: for provisioning over Serial UART transport + Console (for debugging)

Public Members

`esp_err_t (*prov_start)(protocomm_t *pc, void *config)`
Function which is to be called by the manager when it is to start the provisioning service associated with a protocomm instance and a scheme specific configuration

`esp_err_t (*prov_stop)(protocomm_t *pc)`
Function which is to be called by the manager to stop the provisioning service previously associated with a protocomm instance

`void (*new_config)(void)`
Function which is to be called by the manager to generate a new configuration for the provisioning service, that is to be passed to `prov_start()`

`void (*delete_config)(void *config)`
Function which is to be called by the manager to delete a configuration generated using `new_config()`

`esp_err_t (*set_config_service)(void *config, const char *service_name, const char *service_key)`
Function which is to be called by the manager to set the service name and key values in the configuration structure

`esp_err_t (*set_config_endpoint)(void *config, const char *endpoint_name, uint16_t uuid)`
Function which is to be called by the manager to set a protocomm endpoint with an identifying name and UUID in the configuration structure

`wifi_mode_t wifi_mode`
Sets mode of operation of Wi-Fi during provisioning This is set to :
- `WIFI_MODE_APSTA` for SoftAP transport
- `WIFI_MODE_STA` for BLE transport

`struct wifi_prov_mgr_config_t`
Structure for specifying the manager configuration.

Public Members

`wifi_prov_scheme_t scheme`
Provisioning scheme to use. Following schemes are already available:
- `wifi_prov_scheme_ble`: for provisioning over BLE transport + GATT server
- `wifi_prov_scheme_softap`: for provisioning over SoftAP transport + HTTP server + mDNS (optional)
- `wifi_prov_scheme_console`: for provisioning over Serial UART transport + Console (for debugging)

`wifi_prov_event_handler_t scheme_event_handler`
Event handler required by the scheme for incorporating scheme specific behavior while provisioning manager is running. Various options may be provided by the scheme for setting this
field. Use WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE when not used. When using scheme wifi_prov_scheme_ble, the following options are available:

- WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM
- WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BLE
- WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BT

`wifi_prov_event_handler_t app_event_handler`

Event handler that can be set for the purpose of incorporating application specific behavior. Use WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE when not used.

Macros

WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE

Event handler can be set to none if not used.

Type Definitions

typedef void (*wifi_prov_cb_func_t)(void *user_data, wifi_prov_cb_event_t event, void *event_data)

typedef struct wifi_prov_scheme wifi_prov_scheme_t

Structure for specifying the provisioning scheme to be followed by the manager.

Note Ready to use schemes are available:

- wifi_prov_scheme_ble: for provisioning over BLE transport + GATT server
- wifi_prov_scheme_softap: for provisioning over SoftAP transport + HTTP server
- wifi_prov_scheme_console: for provisioning over Serial UART transport + Console (for debugging)

typedef enum wifi_prov_security wifi_prov_security_t

Security modes supported by the Provisioning Manager.

These are same as the security modes provided by protocomm

Enumerations

enum wifi_prov_cb_event_t

Events generated by manager.

These events are generated in order of declaration and, for the stretch of time between initialization and de-initialization of the manager, each event is signaled only once

Values:

WIFI_PROV_INIT

Emitted when the manager is initialized

WIFI_PROV_START

Indicates that provisioning has started

WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV

Emitted when Wi-Fi AP credentials are received via protocomm endpoint wifi_config. The event data in this case is a pointer to the corresponding wifi_sta_config_t structure

WIFI_PROV_CRED_FAIL

Emitted when device fails to connect to the AP of which the credentials were received earlier on event WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV. The event data in this case is a pointer to the disconnection reason code with type wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t

WIFI_PROV_CRED_SUCCESS

Emitted when device successfully connects to the AP of which the credentials were received earlier on event WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV

WIFI_PROV_END

Signals that provisioning service has stopped
**WIFI_PROV_DEINIT**
Signals that manager has been de-initialized

**enum wifi_prov_security**
Security modes supported by the Provisioning Manager.
These are same as the security modes provided by protocomm

*Values:*

**WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_0** = 0
No security (plain-text communication)

**WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_1**
This secure communication mode consists of X25519 key exchange
- proof of possession (pop) based authentication
- AES-CTR encryption

**Header File**
- components/wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/scheme_ble.h

**Functions**

```c
void wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_btdm(void *user_data, wifi_prov_cb_event_t event, void *event_data)
void wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_ble(void *user_data, wifi_prov_cb_event_t event, void *event_data)
void wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_bt(void *user_data, wifi_prov_cb_event_t event, void *event_data)
```

**esp_err_t wifi_prov_scheme_ble_set_service_uuid (uint8_t *uuid128)**
Set the 128 bit GATT service UUID used for provisioning.
This API is used to override the default 128 bit provisioning service UUID, which is 0000ffff-0000-1000-8000-00805f9b34fb.
This must be called before starting provisioning, i.e. before making a call to wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(), otherwise the default UUID will be used.

**Note** The data being pointed to by the argument must be valid at least till provisioning is started. Upon start, the manager will store an internal copy of this UUID, and this data can be freed or invalidated afterwards.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null argument

**Parameters**
- [in] uuid128: A custom 128 bit UUID

**esp_err_t wifi_prov_scheme_ble_set_mfg_data (uint8_t *mfg_data, ssize_t mfg_data_len)**
Set manufacturer specific data in scan response.
This must be called before starting provisioning, i.e. before making a call to wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning().

**Note** It is important to understand that length of custom manufacturer data should be within limits. The manufacturer data goes into scan response along with BLE device name. By default, BLE device name length is of 11 Bytes, however it can vary as per application use case. So, one has to honour the scan response data size limits i.e. (mfg_data_len + 2) < 31 - (device_name_length + 2 ). If the mfg_data length exceeds this limit, the length will be truncated.

**Return**
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null argument

**Parameters**
- [in] mfg_data: Custom manufacturer data
• [in] mfg_data_len: Manufacturer data length

**Macros**

- `WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM`
- `WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BLE`
- `WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BT`

**Header File**

- `components/wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/scheme_softap.h`

**Functions**

```c
void wifi_prov_scheme_softap_set_httpd_handle (void *handle)
```

Provide HTTPD Server handle externally.

Useful in cases wherein applications need the webserver for some different operations, and do not want the wifi provisioning component to start/stop a new instance.

**Note** This API should be called before `wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning()`

**Parameters**

- [in] handle: Handle to HTTPD server instance

**Header File**

- `components/wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/scheme_console.h`

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t wifi_prov_config_data_handler (uint32_t session_id, const uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen, void *priv_data)
```

Handler for receiving and responding to requests from master.

This is to be registered as the `wifi_config` endpoint handler (protocomm `protocomm_req_handler_t`) using `protocomm_add_endpoint()`

**Structures**

```c
struct wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t
```

WiFi STA connected status information.

**Public Members**

- `char ip_addr[IP4ADDR_STRLEN_MAX]`
  IP Address received by station
- `char bssid[6]`
  BSSID of the AP to which connection was established
- `char ssid[33]`
  SSID of the to which connection was established
- `uint8_t channel`
  Channel of the AP
uint8_t auth_mode
   Authorization mode of the AP

struct wifi_prov_config_get_data_t
   WiFi status data to be sent in response to get_status request from master.

Public Members

wifi_prov_sta_state_t wifi_state
   WiFi state of the station

wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t fail_reason
   Reason for disconnection (valid only when wifi_state is WIFI_STATION_DISCONNECTED)

wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t conn_info
   Connection information (valid only when wifi_state is WIFI_STATION_CONNECTED)

struct wifi_prov_config_set_data_t
   WiFi config data received by slave during set_config request from master.

Public Members

char ssid[33]
   SSID of the AP to which the slave is to be connected

char password[64]
   Password of the AP

char bssid[6]
   BSSID of the AP

uint8_t channel
   Channel of the AP

struct wifi_prov_config_handlers
   Internal handlers for receiving and responding to protocomm requests from master.

This is to be passed as priv_data for protocomm request handler (refer to wifi_prov_config_data_handler()) when calling protocomm_add_endpoint().

Public Members

esp_err_t (*get_status_handler)(wifi_prov_config_get_data_t *resp_data, wifi_prov_ctx_t **ctx)
   Handler function called when connection status of the slave (in WiFi station mode) is requested

esp_err_t (*set_config_handler)(const wifi_prov_config_set_data_t *req_data, wifi_prov_ctx_t **ctx)
   Handler function called when WiFi connection configuration (e.g. AP SSID, password, etc.) of the slave (in WiFi station mode) is to be set to user provided values

esp_err_t (*apply_config_handler)(wifi_prov_ctx_t **ctx)
   Handler function for applying the configuration that was set in set_config_handler. After applying the station may get connected to the AP or may fail to connect. The slave must be ready to convey the updated connection status information when get_status_handler is invoked again by the master.

wifi_prov_ctx_t *ctx
   Context pointer to be passed to above handler functions upon invocation
Chapter 2. API

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef struct wifi_prov_ctx wifi_prov_ctx_t
Type of context data passed to each get/set/apply handler function set in wifi_prov_config_handlers structure.
```

This is passed as an opaque pointer, thereby allowing it be defined later in application code as per requirements.

```c
typedef struct wifi_prov_config_handlers wifi_prov_config_handlers_t
Internal handlers for receiving and responding to protocomm requests from master.
```

This is to be passed as priv_data for protocomm request handler (refer to wifi_prov_config_data_handler()) when calling protocomm_add_endpoint().

**Enumerations**

```c
enum wifi_prov_sta_state_t
WiFi STA status for conveying back to the provisioning master.
```

Values:

- `WIFI_PROV_STA_CONNECTING`
- `WIFI_PROV_STA_CONNECTED`
- `WIFI_PROV_STA_DISCONNECTED`

```c
enum wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t
WiFi STA connection fail reason.
```

Values:

- `WIFI_PROV_STA_AUTH_ERROR`
- `WIFI_PROV_STA_AP_NOT_FOUND`

本部分的 API 示例代码存放在 ESP-IDF 示例项目的 provisioning 目录下。

## 2.6 存储 API

### 2.6.1 FAT 文件系统

ESP-IDF 使用 FatFs 库来实现 FAT 文件系统。FatFs 库位于 fatfs 组件中，您可以直接使用，也可以借助 C 标准库和 POSIX API 通过 VFS（虚拟文件系统）使用 FatFs 库的大多数功能。

此外，我们对 FatFs 库进行了扩展，新增了支持可插拔磁盘 I/O 调度层，从而允许在运行时将 FatFs 驱动映射到物理磁盘。

**FatFs 与 VFS 配合使用**

头文件 fatfs/vfs/esp_vfs_fat.h 定义了连接 FatFs 和 VFS 的函数。

函数 `esp_vfs_fat_register()` 分配一个 FATFS 结构，并在 VFS 中注册特定路径前缀。如果文件路径以此前缀开头，则对此文件的后续操作将转至 FatFs API。函数 `esp_vfs_fat_unregister()` 删除在 VFS 中的注册，并释放 FATFS 结构。

多数应用程序在使用 `esp_vfs_fat_` 函数时，采用如下步骤：

1. 调用 `esp_vfs_fat_register()`，指定:
   - 挂载文件系统的路径前缀（例如，"/sdcard" 或 "/spiflash"
   - FatFs 驱动编号
   - 一个用于接收指向 FATFS 结构指针的变量
2. 调用 `ff_diskio_register()` 为步骤 1 中的驱动编号注册磁盘 I/O 驱动；
3. 调用 FatFs 函数 `f_mount`，随后调用 `f_fdisk` 或 `f_mkfs`，并使用与传递到 `esp_vfs_fat_register()` 相同的驱动编号挂载文件系统，请参考 FatFs 文档，查看更多信息；
4. 调用 C 标准库和 POSIX API 对路径中带有步骤 1 中所述前缀的文件（例如，"/sdcard/hello.txt"）执行打开、读取、写入、删除、复制等操作。文件系统默认使用 8.3 文件名格式（SFN）。若您需要使用长文件名（LFN），启用 CONFIG_FATFS_LONG_FILENAMES 选项。请参考 here，查看更多信息；
5. 您可以选择启用 CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK 选项，使用 POSIX lseek 来快速执行。快速查找不适用于编辑模式下的文件，所以，使用快速查找时，应在只读模式下打开（或者关闭然后重新打开）文件；
6. 您也可以选择直接调用 FatFs 库函数，但需要使用没有 VFS 前缀的路径（例如，"/hello.txt"）；
7. 关闭所有打开的文件；
8. 调用 FatFs 函数 f_mount 并使用 NULL FATFS* 参数，为与上述编号相同的驱动卸载文件系统；
9. 调用 FatFs 函数 ff_diskio_register() 并使用 NULL ff_diskio_impl_t* 参数和相同的驱动编号，来释放注册的磁盘 I/O 驱动。
10. 调用 esp_vfs_fat_unregister_path() 并使用文件系统挂载的路径将 FatFs 从 VFS 中移除，并释放步骤 1 中分配的 FATFS 结构。

便捷函数 esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount，esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount，和 esp_vfs_fat_sdmmcUnmount 对上述步骤进行了封装，并加入了对 SD 卡初始化的处理。我们将在下一章节详细介绍这两个函数。

esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_register(const char *base_path, const char *fat_drive, size_t max_files, FATFS **out_fs)

Register FATFS with VFS component.

This function registers given FAT drive in VFS, at the specified base path. If only one drive is used, fat_drive argument can be an empty string. Refer to FATFS library documentation on how to specify FAT drive. This function also allocates FATFS structure which should be used for f_mount call.

Note This function doesn’t mount the drive into FATFS, it just connects POSIX and C standard library IO function with FATFS. You need to mount desired drive into FATFS separately.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_register was already called
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if not enough memory or too many VFSes already registered

Parameters
- base_path: path prefix where FATFS should be registered
- fat_drive: FATFS drive specification; if only one drive is used, can be an empty string
- max_files: maximum number of files which can be open at the same time
- [out] out_fs: pointer to FATFS structure which can be used for FATFS f_mount call is returned via this argument.

esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_unregister_path(const char *base_path)

Un-register FATFS from VFS.

Note FATFS structure returned by esp_vfs_fat_register is destroyed after this call. Make sure to call f_mount function to unmount it before calling esp_vfs_fat_unregister_ctx. Difference between this function and the one above is that this one will release the correct drive, while the one above will release the last registered one

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if FATFS is not registered in VFS

Parameters
- base_path: path prefix where FATFS is registered. This is the same used when esp_vfs_fat_register was called

FatFs 与 VFS 和 SD 卡配合使用

头文件 fatfs/vfs/esp_vfs_fat.h 定义了两个便捷函数 esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount() 和 esp_vfs_fat_sdmmcUnmount()。这两个函数分别执行上一章节的步骤 1-3 和步骤 7-9，并初始化 SD 卡，但仅提供有限的错误处理功能。我们鼓励开发人员查看源代码并将更多高级功能集成到产品应用中。
Chapter 2. API

### esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_unmount()

用于卸载文件系统并释放从esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount()函数获取的资源。

```c
esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_unmount()
{ }
```

### esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount()

Convenience function to get FAT filesystem on SD card registered in VFS.

This is an all-in-one function which does the following:

- initializes SDMMC driver or SPI driver with configuration in host_config
- initializes SD card with configuration in slot_config
- mounts FAT partition on SD card using FATFS library, with configuration in mount_config
- registers FATFS library with VFS, with prefix given by base_prefix variable

This function is intended to make example code more compact. For real world applications, developers should implement the logic of probing SD card, locating and mounting partition, and registering FATFS in VFS, with proper error checking and handling of exceptional conditions.

**Note** Use this API to mount a card through SDSPI is deprecated. Please call esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount() instead for that case.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount was already called
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory cannot be allocated
- ESP_FAIL if partition cannot be mounted
- other error codes from SDMMC or SPI drivers, SDMMC protocol, or FATFS drivers

**Parameters**
- base_path: path where partition should be registered (e.g. “/sdcard”)
- host_config: Pointer to structure describing SDMMC host. When using SDMMC peripheral, this structure can be initialized using SDMMC_HOST_DEFAULT() macro. When using SPI peripheral, this structure can be initialized using SDSPI_HOST_DEFAULT() macro.
- slot_config: Pointer to structure with slot configuration. For SDMMC peripheral, pass a pointer to sdmmc_slot_config_t structure initialized using SDMMC_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT(). (Deprecated) For SPI peripheral, pass a pointer to sdspi_slot_config_t structure initialized using SD-SPI SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT().
- mount_config: pointer to structure with extra parameters for mounting FATFS
- [out] out_card: if not NULL, pointer to the card information structure will be returned via this argument

```c
esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount()
{ }
```

Convenience function to get FAT filesystem on SD card registered in VFS.

This is an all-in-one function which does the following:

- initializes an SPI Master device based on the SPI Master driver with configuration in slot_config, and attach it to an initialized SPI bus.
- initializes SD card with configuration in host_config_input
- mounts FAT partition on SD card using FATFS library, with configuration in mount_config
- registers FATFS library with VFS, with prefix given by base_prefix variable

This function is intended to make example code more compact. For real world applications, developers should implement the logic of probing SD card, locating and mounting partition, and registering FATFS in VFS, with proper error checking and handling of exceptional conditions.

**Note** This function try to attach the new SD SPI device to the bus specified in host_config. Make sure the SPI bus specified in host_config->slot have been initialized by spi_bus_initialize() before.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount was already called
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory cannot be allocated
• ESP_FAIL if partition can not be mounted
• other error codes from SDMMC or SPI drivers, SDMMC protocol, or FATFS drivers

Parameters
• base_path: path where partition should be registered (e.g. “/sdcard”)
• host_config_input: Pointer to structure describing SDMMC host. This structure can be initialized using SDSPI_HOST_DEFAULT() macro.
• slot_config: Pointer to structure with slot configuration. For SPI peripheral, pass a pointer to sdspi_device_config_t structure initialized using SDSPI_DEVICE_CONFIG_DEFAULT().
• mount_config: Pointer to structure with extra parameters for mounting FATFS
• [out] out_card: If not NULL, pointer to the card information structure will be returned via this argument. It is suggested to hold this handle and use it to unmount the card later if needed. Otherwise it’s not suggested to use more than one card at the same time and unmount one of them in your application.

struct esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t
Configuration arguments for esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount and esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount functions.

Public Members

bool format_if_mount_failed
If FAT partition can not be mounted, and this parameter is true, create partition table and format the filesystem.

int max_files
Max number of open files.

size_t allocation_unit_size
If format_if_mount_failed is set, and mount fails, format the card with given allocation unit size. Must be a power of 2, between sector size and 128 * sector size. For SD cards, sector size is always 512 bytes. For wear levelling, sector size is determined by CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_SIZE option.

Using larger allocation unit size will result in higher read/write performance and higher overhead when storing small files.

Setting this field to 0 will result in allocation unit set to the sector size.

esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_sdcardUnmount(const char *base_path, sdmmc_card_t*card)
Unmount an SD card from the FAT filesystem and release resources acquired using esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount() or esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount()

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the card argument is unregistered
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount hasn’t been called

FatFs 与 VFS 配合使用（只读模式下）
头文件 fatfs/vfs/esp_vfs_fat.h 也定义了两个便捷函数esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount()和esp_vfs_fat_rawflashUnmount()。上述两个函数分别对 FAT 只读分区执行步骤 1-3 和步骤 7-9。有些数据分区仅在工厂配置时写入一次，之后在整个生命周期内都不会再有任何改动。利用上述两个函数处理这种数据分区非常方便。

esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount(const char *base_path, const char *partition_label,
const esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t *mount_config)
Convenience function to initialize read-only FAT filesystem and register it in VFS.

This is an all-in-one function which does the following:
• finds the partition with defined partition_label. Partition label should be configured in the partition table.
• mounts FAT partition using FATFS library
* registers FATFS library with VFS, with prefix given by base_prefix variable

**Note** Wear levelling is not used when FAT is mounted in read-only mode using this function.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if the partition table does not contain FATFS partition with given label
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount was already called for the same partition
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory cannot be allocated
- ESP_FAIL if partition cannot be mounted
- other error codes from SPI flash driver, or FATFS drivers

**Parameters**
- base_path: path where FATFS partition should be mounted (e.g. “/spiflash”)
- partition_label: label of the partition which should be used
- mount_config: pointer to structure with extra parameters for mounting FATFS

```
esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_rawflashUnmount(const char *base_path, const char *partition_label)
```

Unmount FAT filesystem and release resources acquired using esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount hasn’t been called

**Parameters**
- base_path: path where partition should be registered (e.g. “/spiflash”)
- partition_label: label of partition to be unmounted

---

**FatFs 磁盘 I/O 层**

我们对 FatFs API 函数进行了扩展，实现了运行期间注册磁盘 I/O 驱动。

上述 API 为 SD/MMC 卡提供了磁盘 I/O 函数实现方式，可使用 `ff_diskio_register_sdmmc()` 函数注册指定的 FatFs 驱动编号。

```
void ff_diskio_register (BYTE pdrv, const ff_diskio_impl_t *discio_impl)
```

Register or unregister diskio driver for given drive number.

When FATFS library calls one of disk_xxx functions for driver number pdrv, corresponding function in discio_impl for given pdrv will be called.

**Parameters**
- pdrv: drive number
- discio_impl: pointer to `ff_diskio_impl_t` structure with diskio functions or NULL to unregister and free previously registered drive

```
struct ff_diskio_impl_t
```

Structure of pointers to disk IO driver functions.

See FatFs documentation for details about these functions

**Public Members**

- DSTATUS (*init)(unsigned char pdrv)
  - disk initialization function
- DSTATUS (*status)(unsigned char pdrv)
  - disk status check function
- DRESULT (*read)(unsigned char pdrv, unsigned char *buff, uint32_t sector, unsigned count)
  - sector read function
Chapter 2. API

DRESULT(*write)(unsigned char pdrv, const unsigned char *buff, uint32_t sector, unsigned count);

sector write function

DRESULT(*ioctl)(unsigned char pdrv, unsigned char cmd, void *buff)

function to get info about disk and do some misc operations

void ff_diskio_register_sdmmc(unsigned char pdrv, sdmmc_card_t *card)

Register SD/MMC diskio driver

Parameters
- pdrv: drive number
- card: pointer to sdmmc_card_t structure describing a card; card should be initialized before calling I f_mount.

esp_err_t ff_diskio_register_wl_partition(unsigned char pdrv, wl_handle_t flash_handle)

Register spi flash partition

Parameters
- pdrv: drive number
- flash_handle: handle of the wear levelling partition.

esp_err_t ff_diskio_register_raw_partition(unsigned char pdrv, const esp_partition_t *part_handle)

Register spi flash partition

Parameters
- pdrv: drive number
- part_handle: pointer to raw flash partition.

2.6.2 量产程序

介绍

这一程序主要用于量产时为每一设备创建工厂NVS（非易失性存储器）分区镜像。NVS 分区镜像由 CSV（逗号分隔值）文件生成，文件中包含了用户提供的配置项及配置值。

注意，该程序仅创建用于量产的二进制镜像。您需要使用以下工具将镜像烧录到设备上：
- esptool.py
- Flash 下载工具（仅适用于 Windows）。下载后解压，然后按照 doc 文件夹中的说明操作。
- 使用定制的生产工具直接烧录程序

准备工作

该程序依赖于 esp-idf 的 NVS 分区程序

- 操作系统要求:
  - Linux、MacOS 或 Windows（标准版）
- 安装依赖包:
  - Python

注释:

使用该程序之前，请确保:
- Python 路径已添加到 PATH 环境变量中;
- 已经安装 requirement.txt 中的软件包。requirement.txt 在 esp-idf 根目录下。
Chapter 2. API 参考

具体流程

CSV 配置文件

CSV 配置文件中包含设备待烧录的配置信息，定义了待烧录的配置项。
配置文件中数据格式如下（REPEAT 标签可选）:

```yaml
name1,namespace,       # 第一个条目应该为 "namespace" 类型
key1,type1,encoding1
key2,type2,encoding2,REPEAT
name2,namespace,
key3,type3,encoding3
key4,type4,encoding4
```

注解：文件第一行应始终为 namespace 条目。

每行应包含三个参数：key, type 和 encoding，并以逗号分隔。如果有 REPEAT 标签，则主 CSV 文件中所有设备此键值均相同。
有关各个参数的详细说明，请参阅 NVS 分区生成程序的 README 文件。

CSV 配置文件示例如下:

```yaml
app,namespace,
firmware_key,data,hex2bin
serial_no,data,string,REPEAT
device_no,data,i32
```

注解：
请确保:
- 逗号 ‘,’ 前后无空格；
- CSV 文件每行末尾无空格。

主 CSV 文件

主 CSV 文件中包含设备待烧录的详细信息，文件中每行均对应一个设备实体。

主 CSV 文件的数据格式如下:

```yaml
key1,key2,key3,....
value1,value2,value3,....
```

注解：文件中键 (key) 名应始终置于文件首行。从配置文件中获取的键，在此文件中的排列顺序应与其在配置文件中的排列顺序相同。主 CSV 文件同时可以包含其它列（键），这些列将被视为元数据，而不会编译进最终二进制文件。
Chapter 2. API 参考

每行应包含相应键的键值 (value)，并用逗号隔开。如果某键带有 REPEAT 标签，则仅需在第二行（即第一个条目）输入对应的值，后面其他行为空。

参数描述如下：

value Data value

value 是与键对应的键值。

主 CSV 文件示例如下：

```
id,firmware_key,serial_no,device_no
1,1a2b3c4d5e6faabb,A1,101
2,1a2b3c4d5e6fccdd,,102
3,1a2b3c4d5e6fee,,103
```

注解：如果出现 REPEAT 标签，则会在相同目录下生成一个新的主 CSV 文件用于主输入文件，并在每行为带有 REPEAT 标签的键插入键值。

量产程序还会创建中间 CSV 文件，NVS 分区程序将使用此 CSV 文件作为输入，然后生成二进制文件。中间 CSV 文件的格式如下：

```
key,type,encoding,value
key,namespace,,
key1,type1,encoding1,value1
key2,type2,encoding2,value2
```

此步骤将为每一设备生成一个中间 CSV 文件。

运行量产程序

使用方法：

```
python mfg_gen.py [-h] {generate,generate-key} ...
```

可选参数：

```
序号 参数 描述
1 -h, --help 显示帮助信息并退出
```

命令：

运行 mfg_gen.py {command} -h 查看更多帮助信息

```
序号 参数 描述
1 generate 生成 NVS 分区
2 generate-key 生成加密密钥
```

为每个设备生成工厂镜像（默认）

使用方法：

```
python mfg_gen.py generate [-h] [--fileid FILEID] [--version {1,2}] [--keygen]
    [--keyfile KEYFILE] [--inputkey INPUTKEY]
    [--outdir OUTDIR]
    conf values prefix size
```
位置参数:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conf</td>
<td>待解析的 CSV 配置文件路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>values</td>
<td>待解析的主 CSV 文件路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>每个输出文件名前缀的唯一名称</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>NVS 分区大小（以字节为单位，且为 4096 的整数倍）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

可选参数:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-h, --help</td>
<td>显示帮助信息并退出</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--fileid FILEID</td>
<td>每个文件名后缀的唯一文件标识符（主 CSV 文件中的任意键），默认为数值 1、2、3…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--version [1,2]</td>
<td>• 设置多页 Blob 版本。 • 1 - 禁用多页 Blob； • 2 - 启用多页 Blob； • 默认版本：版本 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--keygen</td>
<td>生成 NVS 分区加密密钥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--inputkey INPUTKEY</td>
<td>内含 NVS 分区加密密钥的文件</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--outdir OUTDIR</td>
<td>输出目录，用于存储创建的文件（默认当前目录）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

请运行以下命令为每个设备生成工厂镜像，量产程序同时提供了一个 CSV 示例文件:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate samples/sample_config.csv samples/sample_values_--singlepage_blob.csv Sample 0x3000
```

主要 CSV 文件应在 file 类型下设置一个相对路径，相对于运行该程序的当前目录。

为每个设备生成工厂加密镜像

运行以下命令为每一设备生成工厂加密镜像，量产程序同时提供了一个 CSV 示例文件。

- 通过量产程序生成加密密钥来进行加密:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate samples/sample_config.csv samples/sample_values_--singlepage_blob.csv Sample 0x3000 --keygen
```

注解：创建的加密密钥格式为 <outdir>/keys/keys-<prefix>-<fileid>.bin。加密密钥存储于新建文件的 keys/ 目录下，与 NVS 密钥分区结构兼容。更多信息请参见NVS 密钥分区。

- 提供加密密钥用作二进制输入文件来进行加密:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate samples/sample_config.csv samples/sample_values_--singlepage_blob.csv Sample 0x3000 --keyfile keys/sample_keys.bin
```

仅生成加密密钥

使用方法:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate-key [-h] [--keyfile KEYFILE] [--outdir OUTDIR]
```

可选参数：+

```
+ -h, --help | 显示帮助信息并退出 |
+ --keyfile KEYFILE | 加密密钥文件的输出路径 |
+ --outdir OUTDIR | 输出目录，用于存储创建的文件（默认当前目录） |
```

Espressif Systems 1097 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback
运行以下命令仅生成加密密钥:
```
python mfg_gen.py generate-key
```

**注解:** 创建的加密密钥格式为 `<outdir>/keys/keys-<timestamp>.bin`。时间戳格式为：`%m-%d_%H-%M`。如需自定义目标文件名，请使用 `keyfile` 参数。

生成的加密密钥二进制文件还可以用于为每个设备的工厂镜像加密。

`fileid` 参数的默认值为 1、2、3… 与主 CSV 文件中的行一一对应，内含设备配置值。

运行量产程序时，将在指定的 `outdir` 目录下创建以下文件夹：

- `bin`/ 存储生成的二进制文件
- `csv`/ 存储生成的中间 CSV 文件
- `keys`/ 存储加密密钥（创建工厂加密密钥时会用到）

### 2.6.3 非易失性存储库

**简介**

非易失性存储 (NVS) 库主要用于在 flash 中存储键值格式的数据。本文档将详细介绍 NVS 常用的一些概念。

**底层存储** NVS 库通过调用 `esp_partition` API 使用主 flash 的部分空间，包括 data 类型和 nvs 子类型的所有分区。应用程序可调用 `nvs_open()` API 选择使用带有 nvs 标签的分区，也可以通过调用 `nvs_open_from_partition()` API 选择使用指定名称的任意分区。

NVS 库后续版本可能会增加其他存储器后端，来将数据保存至其他 flash 芯片（SPI 或 I2C 接口）、RTC 或 FRAM 中。

**注解:** 如果 NVS 分区被截断（例如，更改分区表布局时），则应擦除分区内容。可以使用 ESP-IDF 构建系统中的 `idf.py erase-flash` 命令擦除 flash 上的所有内容。

**注解:** NVS 最适合存储一些较小的数据，而非字符串或二进制大对象 (BLOB) 等较大的数据。如需存储较大的 BLOB 或者字符串，请考虑使用基于磨损均衡的 FAT 文件系统。

**键值对** NVS 的操作对象为键值对，其中键是 ASCII 字符串，当前支持的最大键长为 15 个字符。值可以为以下几种类型：

- 整 数 型: `uint8_t, int8_t, uint16_t, int16_t, uint32_t, int32_t, uint64_t` 和 `int64_t`;
- 以 `'0'` 结尾的字符串;
- 可变长度的二进制数据 (BLOB)

**注解:** 字符串值当前上限为 4000 字节，其中包括空终止符。BLOB 值上限为 508,000 字节或分区大小的 97.6%，减去 4000 字节，以较低值为准。

后续可能会增加对 `float` 和 `double` 等其他类型数据的支持。

键必须唯一。为现有的键写入新的值可能产生如下结果：

- 如果新旧值数据类型相同，则更新值；
- 如果新旧值数据类型不同，则返回错误。
读取时也会执行数据类型检查。如果读取操作的数据类型与该值的数据类型不匹配，则返回错误。

命名空间 为了减少不同组件之间命名的潜在冲突，NVS 将每个键值对分配给一个命名空间。命名空间的命名规则遵循键名的命名规则：例如，最多可占 15 个字符。命名空间的名称在调用 nvs_open() 或 nvs_open_from_partition 中指定，调用后将返回一个不透明句柄，用于后续调用 nvs_get_*、nvs_set_* 和 nvs_commit 函数。这样，一个句柄关联一个命名空间，键名便不会与其他命名空间中相同键名冲突。请注意，不同 NVS 分区内具有相同名称的命名空间将被视为不同的命名空间。

NVS 迭代器 迭代器允许根据指定的分区名称、命名空间和数据类型轮询 NVS 中存储的键值对。

您可以使用以下函数，执行相关操作：

- nvs_entry_find：返回一个不透明句柄，用于后续调用 nvs_entry_next 和 nvs_entry_info 函数；
- nvs_entry_next：返回指向下一个键值对的迭代器；
- nvs_entry_info：返回每个键值对的信息。

如果未找到符合标准的键值对，则 nvs_entry_find 和 nvs_entry_next 将返回 NULL，此时不必释放迭代器。若不再需要迭代器，可使用 nvs_release_iterator 释放迭代器。

安全性、篡改性及鲁棒性 NVS 与 ESP32 flash 加密系统不直接兼容。但如果 NVS 加密与 ESP32 flash 加密一起使用时，数据仍可以加密形式存储。详情请参阅 NVS 加密。

如果未启用 NVS 加密，任何对 flash 芯片有物理访问权限的用户都可修改、删除或添加键值对。NVS 加密启用后，如果不知道相应的 NVS 加密密钥，则无法修改或添加键值对并将其识别为有效键值对。但是，针对错误操作没有相应的防篡改功能。

当 flash 处于不一致状态时，NVS 库会尝试恢复。在任何时间点关闭设备电源，然后重新打开电源，不会导致数据丢失；但如果关闭设备电源时正在写入新的键值对，这一键值对可能会丢失。该库还应当能对 flash 中的任意数据进行正确初始化。

NVS 加密

NVS 分区内存储的数据可使用 AES-XTS 进行加密，类似于 IEEE P1619 磁盘加密标准中提到的加密方式。为了实现加密，每个条目被均视为一个扇区，并将条目相对地址（相对于分区开头）传递给加密算法，用作扇区号。可通过 CONFIG_NVSS_ENCRYPTION 启用 NVS 加密。NVS 加密所需的密钥存储于其他分区，并进行了 flash 加密。因此，在使用 NVS 加密前应先启用 flash 加密。

启用 Flash 加密时，默认启用 NVS 加密。这是因为 Wi-Fi 驱动在默认的 NVS 分区内存储了凭证（如 SSID 和口令）。启用平台级加密后，仍需将它们作为默认选项进行加密。

使用 NVS 加密，分区表必须包含 NVS 密钥分区。在分区表选中 menuconfig->Partition Table 下，为 NVS 加密提供了两个包含 NVS 密钥分区的分区表。您可以通过工程配置菜单（idf.py menuconfig）进行选择。请参考 security/flash_encryption 中的例子，了解如何配置和使用 NVS 加密功能。

NVS 密钥分区

应用程序如果想使用 NVS 加密，则需要编译进一个类型为 data，子类型为 key 的密钥分区。该分区应标记为加密且最小为 4096 字节。如需了解更多详细信息，请参考分区表。在分区表选中 menuconfig->Partition Table 下提供了两个包含 NVS 密钥分区的额外分区表，可以直接用于 NVS 加密。这些分区的具体结构见下表：

```
| +---------------------------------------------+          |
| +---------------------------------------------+          |
| XTS encryption key (32)                     |          |
| +---------------------------------------------+          |
| XTS tweak key (32)                           |          |
| +---------------------------------------------+          |
| CRC32 (4)                                    |          |
```
可以通过以下两种方式生成NVS密钥分区中的XTS加密密钥：

1. 在ESP芯片上生成密钥：
   启用NVS加密时，可用nvs_flash_init() API函数来初始化加密的默认NVS分区。在内部生成ESP芯片上的XTS加密密钥。在找到NVS密钥分区后，API函数调用nvs_flash/include/nvs.flash.h提供的nvs_flash_generate_keys()函数，自动生成并存储该分区中的NVS密钥。只有当各自的密钥分区为空时，才会生成并存储新的密钥。可以借助nvs_flash_secure_init_partition()函数来初始化一个特定的加密NVS分区。API函数nvs_flash_secure_init()和nvs_flash_secure_init_partition()不在内部产生密钥。当这些API函数用于初始化加密的NVS分区时，可以在启动时调用nvs_flash.h提供的nvs_flash_generate_keys()函数生成密钥，以加密的形式把密钥写到密钥分区上。

2. 使用预先生成的密钥分区：
   若NVS密钥分区中的密钥不是由应用程序生成，则需要使用预先生成的密钥分区。可以使用NVS分区生成工具生成包含XTS加密密钥的NVS密钥分区。用户可以借助以下两个命令，将预先生成的密钥分区储存在flash上：
   i) 建立并烧录分区表
      ```
      idf.py partition_table partition_table-flash
      ```
   ii) 调用parttool.py，将密钥存放在flash上的NVS密钥分区中。有关分区表<apidguides/partition-tables>的分区工具部分。

由于分区已标记为加密，而且启用了Flash加密，引导程序在首次启动时将使用flash加密对密钥分区进行加密。

应用程序可以使用不同的密钥对不同的NVS分区进行加密，这样就会需要多个加密密钥分区。应用程序应为加解密操作提供正确的密钥或密钥分区。

加密读取/写入 nvs_get_*和nvs_set_*等API函数同样可以对NVS加密分区执行读写操作。

加密默认的NVS分区：无需额外步骤即可启用默认NVS分区的加密。启用CONFIG_NVSENCRIPTION时，nvs_flash_init() API函数会在内部使用找到的第一个NVS密钥分区执行额外步骤，以启用默认NVS分区的加密（详情请参考API文档）。另外，nvs_flash_secure_init() API函数也可以用来启用默认NVS分区的加密。

加密一个自定义的NVS分区：使用nvs_flash_secure_init_partition() API函数启用自定义NVS分区的加密，而非nvs_flash_secure_init_partition()。

使用nvs_flash_secure_init()和nvs_flash_secure_init_partition() API函数时，应用程序需在加密状态下执行NVS读写操作，应遵循以下步骤：
1. 使用esp_partition_find API查找密钥分区和NVS数据库分区；
2. 使用nvs_flash_read_security_cfg或nvs_flash_generate_keys API填充nvs_sec_cfg.t结构；
3. 使用nvs_flash_secure_init或nvs_flash_secure_init_partition API初始化NVS flash分区；
4. 使用nvs_open或nvs_open_from_partition API打开命名空间；
5. 使用nvs_get_*或nvs_set_* API执行NVS读取/写入操作；
6. 使用nvs_flash_deinit API释放已初始化的NVS分区。

NVS分区生成程序

NVS分区生成程序帮助生成NVS分区二进制文件，可使用烧录程序将二进制文件单独烧录至特定分区。烧录至分区上的键值对由CSV文件提供，详情请参考NVS分区生成程序。
应用示例

ESP-IDF storage 目录下提供了数个代码示例:

storage/nvs_rw_value

演示如何读取及写入 NVS 单个整数值。

此示例中的值表示 ESP32 模组重启次数。NVS 中数据不会因为模组重启而丢失，因此只有将
这一值存储于 NVS 中，才能起到重启次数计数器的作用。

该示例也演示了如何检测读取/写入操作是否成功，以及某个特定值是否在 NVS 中尚未初始化。
诊断程序以纯文本形式提供，帮助您追踪程序流程，及时发现问题。

storage/nvs_rw_blob

演示如何读取及写入 NVS 单个整数值和 Blob（二进制大对象），并在 NVS 中存储这一数值，
即便 ESP32 模组重启也不会消失。

- value - 记录 ESP32 模组软重启次数和硬重启次数。
- blob - 内含记录模组运行次数的表格。此表格将被从 NVS 读取至动态分配的 RAM 上。
每次手动软重启后，该表格内运行次数即增加一次，新加的运行次数被写入 NVS。下拉
GPIO0 即可手动软重启。

该示例也演示了如何执行诊断程序以检测读取/写入操作是否成功。

storage/nvs_rw_value_cxx

这个例子与 storage/nvs_rw_value 完全一样，只是使用了 C++ 的 NVS 处理类。

内部实现

键值对日志 NVS 按顺序存储键值对，新的键值对添加在最后。因此，如需更新某一键值对，实际是在
day志最后增加一对新的键值对，同时将旧的键值对标记为已删除。

页面和条目 NVS 库在其操作中主要使用两个实体：页面和条目。页面是一个逻辑结构，用于存储部分
的整体日志。逻辑页面对应 flash 的一个物理扇区，正在使用的页面具有与之相关联的序列号。序列号
赋予了页面顺序，较高的序列号对应较晚创建的页面。页面有以下几种状态:

空或未初始化 页面对应的 flash 扇区为空白状态（所有字节均为 0xff）。此时，页面未存储任何数据且
没有关联的序列号。

活跃状态 此时 flash 已完成初始化，页头部写入 flash，页面已具备有效序列号。页面中存在一些空条目，
可写入数据。任意时刻，至多有一个页面处于活跃状态。

写满状态 Flash 已写满键值对，状态不再改变。用户无法向写满状态下的页面写入新键值对，但仍可将
一些键值对标记为已删除。

读除状态 未删除的键值对将移至其他页面，以便删除当前页面。这一状态仅为暂时性状态，即 API 调用
返回时，页面应脱离这一状态。如果设备突然断电，下次开机时，设备将继续把未删除的键值对移
至其他页面，并继续删除当前页面。

损坏状态 页头部包含无效数据，无法进一步解析该页面中的数据，因此之前写入该页面的所有条目均无
法访问。相应的 flash 扇区并不会被立即删除，而是与其他处于未初始化状态的扇区一起等待后续
使用。这一状态可能对调试有用。

Flash 扇区映射至逻辑页面并没有特定的顺序，NVS 库会检查存储在 flash 扇区的页面序列号，并根据序
列号组织页面。
页面结构 当前，我们假设 flash 块区大小为 4096 字节，并且 ESP32 flash 加密硬件在 32 字节块上运行。未来有可能引入一些编译时可配置项（可通过 menuconfig 进行配置），以适配具有不同扇区大小的 flash 芯片。但目前尚不清楚 SPI flash 驱动和 SPI flash cache 之类的系统组件是否支持其他扇区大小。

页面由头部、条目状态位图和条目三部分组成。为了实现与 ESP32 flash 加密功能兼容，条目大小设置为 32 字节。如果键值为整数型，条目则保存一个键值对；如果键值为字符串或 BLOB 类型，则条目仅保存一个键值对的部分内容（更多信息详见条目结构描述）。

页面结构如下图所示，括号内数字表示该部分的大小（以字节为单位）。

头部和条目状态位图写入 flash 时不加密。如果启用了 ESP32 flash 加密功能，则条目写入 flash 时将会加密。

通过将 0 写入某些位可以定义页面状态值，表示状态改变。因此，如果需要变更页面状态，并不一定要擦除页面，除非要将其变更为 擦除状态。

头部中的 version 字段反映了所用的 NVS 格式版本。为实现向后兼容，版本升级从 0xff 开始依次递减（例如，version-1 为 0x01，version-2 为 0x02，以此类推）。

头部中 CRC32 值是由不包含状态值的条目计算所得（4 到 28 字节）。当前未使用的条目用 0xff 字节填充。

条目结构和条目状态位图的详细信息见下文描述。

条目和条目状态位图 每个条目可处于以下三种状态之一，每个状态在条目状态位图中用两位表示，位图中的最后四位（256 - 2 * 126）未使用。

空 (2’b11) 条目还未写入任何内容，处于未初始化状态（全部字节为 0xff）。
写入 (2’b10) 一个键值对（或跨多个条目的键值对的部分内容）已写入条目中。
擦除 (2’b00) 条目中的键值对已丢失，条目内容不再解析。

条目结构 如果键值类型为基础类型，即 1 - 8 个字节长度的整数型，条目将保存一个键值对；如果键值类型为字符串或 BLOB 类型，条目将保存整个键值对的部分内容。另外，如果键值为字符串类型且跨多个条目，则键值所跨的所有条目均保存在同一页面。BLOB 则可以切分为多个块，实现跨多个页面。
BLOB 索引是一个附加的固定长度元数据条目，用于追踪 BLOB 块。目前条目仍支持早期 BLOB 格式（可读取可修改），但这些 BLOB 一经修改，即以新格式储存至条目。
条目结构中各个字段含义如下：

**命名空间 (NS, Namespace)** 该条目的命名空间索引。详细信息参见命名空间实现章节。

**类型 (Type)** 一个字节表示的值的数据类型。nvs_flash/include/nvs_handle.hpp 下的 ItemTyp 数举了可能的类型。

**跨度 (Span)** 该键值对所用的条目数量。如果键值为整数型，条目数量即为 1。如果键值为字符串或 BLOB，则条目数量取决于值的长度。

**块索引 (ChunkIndex)** 用于存储 BLOB 类型数据块的索引。如果键值为其他数据类型，则此处索引应写入 0xff。

**CRC32** 对条目下所有字段进行校验后，所得的校验和。CRC32 字段不计算在内。

**键 (Key)** 即以零结尾的 ASCII 字符串，字符串最长为 15 字节，不包含最后一个字符的零终止符。

**数据 (Data)** 如果键值类型为整数型，则数据字段仅包含键值。如果键值小于八个字节，则使用 0xff 填充未使用的部分（右侧）。

如果键值类型为 BLOB 索引条目，则该字段的八个字节将保存以下数据块信息：

- **块大小** 整个 BLOB 数据的大小（以字节为单位）。该字段仅用于 BLOB 索引类型条目。
- **ChunkCount** 存储过程中 BLOB 分成的数据块总量。该字段仅用于 BLOB 索引类型条目。
- **ChunkStart** BLOB 第一个数据块的块索引，后续数据块索引依次递增，步长为 1。该字段仅用于 BLOB 索引类型条目。

如果键值类型为字符串或 BLOB 数据块，数据字段的这八个字节将保存该键值的一些附加信息，如下所示：

- **数据大小** 实际数据的大小（以字节为单位）。如果键值类型为字符串，则该字段也应将零终止符包含在内。此字段仅用于字符串和 BLOB 类型条目。
- **CRC32** 数据所有字节的校验和。该字段仅用于字符串和 BLOB 类型条目。

可变长度值（字符串和 BLOB）写入后续条目，每个条目 32 字节。第一个条目的 Span 字段将指明使用了多少条目。

**命名空间** 如上所述，每个键值对属于一个命名空间。命名空间标识符 (字符串) 也作为键值对的键，存储在索引为 0 的命名空间中。与这些键对应的值就是这些命名空间的索引。
条目哈希列表 为了减少对 flash 执行的读操作次数，Page 类对象均设有一个列表，包含一对数据：条目索引和条目哈希值。该列表可大大提高检索速度，而无需迭代所有条目并逐个从 flash 中读取。

Page::findItem 首先从哈希列表中检索条目哈希值，如果条目存在，则在页面内给出条目索引。由于哈希冲突，在哈希列表中检索条目哈希值可能会得到不同的条目，对 flash 中条目再次迭代可解决这一冲突。

哈希列表中每个节点均包含一个 24 位哈希值和 8 位条目索引。哈希值根据条目命名空间、键名和块索引由 CRC32 计算所得，计算结果保留 24 位。为减少将 32 位条目存储在链表中的开销，链表采用了数组的双向链表。每个数组占用 128 个字节，包含 29 个条目、两个链表指针和一个 32 位计数字段。因此，每页额外需要的 RAM 最少为 128 字节，最多为 640 字节。

API 参考

Header File
- components/nvs_flash/include/nvs_flash.h

Functions

esp_err_t nvs_flash_init (void)
Initialize the default NVS partition.

This API initialises the default NVS partition. The default NVS partition is the one that is labeled “nvs” in the partition table.

When “NVS_ENCRYPTION” is enabled in the menuconfig, this API enables the NVS encryption for the default NVS partition as follows

1. Read security configurations from the first NVS key partition listed in the partition table. (NVS key partition is any “data” type partition which has the subtype value set to “nvs_keys”)
2. If the NVS key partition obtained in the previous step is empty, generate and store new keys in that NVS key partition.
3. Internally call “nvs_flash_secure_init()” with the security configurations obtained/generated in the previous steps.

Post initialization NVS read/write APIs remain the same irrespective of NVS encryption.

Return
- ESP_OK if storage was successfully initialized.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if no partition with label “nvs” is found in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver
- error codes from nvs_flash_read_security_cfg API (when “NVS_ENCRYPTION” is enabled).
- error codes from nvs_flash_generate_keys API (when “NVS_ENCRYPTION” is enabled).
- error codes from nvs_flash_secure_init_partition API (when “NVS_ENCRYPTION” is enabled).

esp_err_t nvs_flash_init_partition (const char *partition_label)
Initialize NVS flash storage for the specified partition.

Return
- ESP_OK if storage was successfully initialized.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if specified partition is not found in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures

Espressif Systems 1104 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
• one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

Parameters
• [in] partition_label: Label of the partition. Must be no longer than 16 characters.

```
extp_err_t nvs_flash_init_partition_ptr(const esp_partition_t *partition)
```
Initialize NVS flash storage for the partition specified by partition pointer.

Return
• ESP_OK if storage was successfully initialized
• ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG in case partition is NULL
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
• one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

Parameters
• [in] partition: pointer to a partition obtained by the ESP partition API.

```
extp_err_t nvs_flash_deinit(void)
```
Deinitialize NVS storage for the default NVS partition.

Default NVS partition is the partition with “nvs” label in the partition table.

Return
• ESP_OK on success (storage was deinitialized)
• ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage was not initialized prior to this call

```
extp_err_t nvs_flash_deinit_partition(const char *partition_label)
```
Deinitialize NVS storage for the given NVS partition.

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage for given partition was not initialized prior to this call

Parameters
• [in] partition_label: Label of the partition

```
extp_err_t nvs_flash_erase(void)
```
Erase the default NVS partition.

Erases all contents of the default NVS partition (one with label “nvs”).

Note If the partition is initialized, this function first de-initializes it. Afterwards, the partition has to be initialized again to be used.

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no NVS partition labeled “nvs” in the partition table
• different error in case de-initialization fails (shouldn’t happen)

```
extp_err_t nvs_flash_erase_partition(const char *part_name)
```
Erase specified NVS partition.

Erase all content of a specified NVS partition

Note If the partition is initialized, this function first de-initializes it. Afterwards, the partition has to be initialized again to be used.

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no NVS partition with the specified name in the partition table
• different error in case de-initialization fails (shouldn’t happen)

Parameters
• [in] part_name: Name (label) of the partition which should be erased

```
extp_err_t nvs_flash_erase_partition_ptr(const esp_partition_t *partition)
```
Erase custom partition.

Erase all content of specified custom partition.
**Chapter 2. API**

**Note** If the partition is initialized, this function first de-initializes it. Afterwards, the partition has to be initialized again to be used.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no partition with the specified parameters in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG in case partition is NULL
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

**Parameters**
- [in] partition: pointer to a partition obtained by the ESP partition API.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_flash_secure_init(nvs_sec_cfg_t *cfg)
```

Initialize the default NVS partition.

This API initializes the default NVS partition. The default NVS partition is the one that is labeled “nvs” in the partition table.

**Return**
- ESP_OK if storage has been initialized successfully.
- ESP_ERR_NVSD_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if no partition with label “nvs” is found in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

**Parameters**
- [in] cfg: Security configuration (keys) to be used for NVS encryption/decryption. If cfg is NULL, no encryption is used.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_flash_secure_init_partition(const char* partition_label, nvs_sec_cfg_t *cfg)
```

Initialize NVS flash storage for the specified partition.

**Return**
- ESP_OK if storage has been initialized successfully.
- ESP_ERR_NVSD_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if specified partition is not found in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

**Parameters**
- [in] partition_label: Label of the partition. Note that internally, a reference to passed value is kept and it should be accessible for future operations
- [in] cfg: Security configuration (keys) to be used for NVS encryption/decryption. If cfg is NULL, no encryption/decryption is used.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_flash_generate_keys(const esp_partition_t *partition, nvs_sec_cfg_t *cfg)
```

Generate and store NVS keys in the provided esp partition.

**Return** -ESP_OK, if cfg was read successfully; -ESP_INVALID_ARG, if partition or cfg; -or error codes from esp_partition_write/erase APIs.

**Parameters**
- [in] partition: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- [out] cfg: Pointer to nvs security configuration structure. Pointer must be non-NULL. Generated keys will be populated in this structure.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_flash_read_security_cfg(const esp_partition_t *partition, nvs_sec_cfg_t *cfg)
```

Read NVS security configuration from a partition.

**Note** Provided partition is assumed to be marked ‘encrypted’.

**Return** -ESP_OK, if cfg was read successfully; -ESP_INVALID_ARG, if partition or cfg; -ESP_ERR_NVSD_KEYS_NOT_INITIALIZED, if the partition is not yet written with keys. -ESP_ERR_NVSD_CORRUPT_KEY_PART, if the partition containing keys is found to be corrupt -or error codes from esp_partition_read API.

**Parameters**
- [in] partition: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- [out] cfg: Pointer to nvs security configuration structure. Pointer must be non-NULL. Generated keys will be populated in this structure.
• [in] partition: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
• [out] cfg: Pointer to nvs security configuration structure. Pointer must be non-NULL.

Structures

struct nvs_sec_cfg_t
  Key for encryption and decryption.

  Public Members

  uint8_t *eky[NVS_KEY_SIZE]
    XTS encryption and decryption key

  uint8_t *tky[NVS_KEY_SIZE]
    XTS tweak key

Macros

NVS_KEY_SIZE

Header File

  • components/nvs_flash/include/nvs.h

Functions

esp_err_t nvs_set_i8 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, int8_t value)
  set int8_t value for given key

  Return

  • ESP_OK if value was set successfully
  • ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
  • ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if storage handle was opened as read only
  • ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn’t satisfy constraints
  • ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE if there is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value
  • ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED if the value wasn’t updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn’t fail again.

  Parameters

  • [in] handle: Handle obtained from nvs_open function. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.
  • [in] key: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn’t be empty.
  • [in] value: The value to set.

esp_err_t nvs_set_u8 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, uint8_t value)
  set uint8_t value for given key

  This function is the same as nvs_set_i8 except for the data type.

esp_err_t nvs_set_i16 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, int16_t value)
  set int16_t value for given key

  This function is the same as nvs_set_i8 except for the data type.
```
esp_err_t nvs_set_u16 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, uint16_t value)
set uint16_t value for given key

This function is the same as nvs_set_i8 except for the data type.

esp_err_t nvs_set_i32 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, int32_t value)
set int32_t value for given key

This function is the same as nvs_set_i8 except for the data type.

esp_err_t nvs_set_u32 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, uint32_t value)
set uint32_t value for given key

This function is the same as nvs_set_i8 except for the data type.

esp_err_t nvs_set_i64 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, int64_t value)
set int64_t value for given key

This function is the same as nvs_set_i8 except for the data type.

esp_err_t nvs_set_str (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, const char *value)
set string for given key

Set value for the key, given its name. Note that the actual storage will not be updated until nvs_commit is called.

Return
- ESP_OK if value was set successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if storage handle was opened as read only
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn’t satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE if there is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value
- ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED if the value wasn’t updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn’t fail again.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG if the string value is too long

Parameters
- [in] handle: Handle obtained from nvs_open function. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.
- [in] key: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn’t be empty.
- [in] value: The value to set. For strings, the maximum length (including null character) is 4000 bytes, if there is one complete page free for writing. This decreases, however, if the free space is fragmented.

esp_err_t nvs_get_i8 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char *key, int8_t *out_value)
get int8_t value for given key

These functions retrieve value for the key, given its name. If key does not exist, or the requested variable type doesn’t match the type which was used when setting a value, an error is returned.

In case of any error, out_value is not modified.

out_value has to be a pointer to an already allocated variable of the given type.

// Example of using nvs_get_i32:
int32_t max_buffer_size = 4096; // default value
esp_err_t err = nvs_get_i32(my_handle, "max_buffer_size", &max_buffer_size);
assert(err == ESP_OK || err == ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND);
```
// if ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND was returned, max_buffer_size will still
// have its default value.

Return

• ESP_OK if the value was retrieved successfully
• ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND if the requested key doesn’t exist
• ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
• ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn’t satisfy constraints
• ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_LENGTH if length is not sufficient to store data

Parameters

• [in] handle: Handle obtained from nvs_open function.
• [in] key: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn’t be empty.
• out_value: Pointer to the output value. May be NULL for nvs_get_str and nvs_get_blob, in this case required length will be returned in length argument.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_get_u8 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, uint8_t* out_value)
get uint8_t value for given key
```

This function is the same as nvs_get_i8 except for the data type.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_get_i16 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, int16_t* out_value)
get int16_t value for given key
```

This function is the same as nvs_get_i8 except for the data type.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_get_u16 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, uint16_t* out_value)
get uint16_t value for given key
```

This function is the same as nvs_get_i8 except for the data type.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_get_i32 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, int32_t* out_value)
get int32_t value for given key
```

This function is the same as nvs_get_i8 except for the data type.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_get_u32 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, uint32_t* out_value)
get uint32_t value for given key
```

This function is the same as nvs_get_i8 except for the data type.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_get_i64 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, int64_t* out_value)
get int64_t value for given key
```

This function is the same as nvs_get_i8 except for the data type.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_get_u64 (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, uint64_t* out_value)
get uint64_t value for given key
```

This function is the same as nvs_get_i8 except for the data type.

```c
esp_err_t nvs_get_str (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, char *out_value, size_t *length)
get string value for given key
```

These functions retrieve the data of an entry, given its key. If key does not exist, or the requested variable type doesn’t match the type which was used when setting a value, an error is returned.

In case of any error, out_value is not modified.

All functions expect out_value to be a pointer to an already allocated variable of the given type.

nvs_get_str and nvs_get_blob functions support WinAPI-style length queries. To get the size necessary to store the value, call nvs_get_str or nvs_get_blob with zero out_value and non-zero pointer to length. Variable pointed to by length argument will be set to the required length. For nvs_get_str, this length includes the zero terminator. When calling nvs_get_str and nvs_get_blob with non-zero out_value, length has to be non-zero and
has to point to the length available in \texttt{out\_value}. It is suggested that \texttt{nvs\_get/set\_str} is used for zero-terminated \texttt{C} strings, and \texttt{nvs\_get/set\_blob} used for arbitrary data structures.

```c
// Example (without error checking) of using \texttt{nvs\_get\_str} to get a string into a dynamic array:
size_t required_size;
nvs\_get\_str(my\_handle, "server\_name", NULL, \&required_size);
char* server\_name = malloc(required\_size);
nvs\_get\_str(my\_handle, "server\_name", server\_name, \&required\_size);

// Example (without error checking) of using \texttt{nvs\_get\_blob} to get a binary data into a static array:
uint8_t mac\_addr[6];
size_t size = sizeof(mac\_addr);
nvs\_get\_blob(my\_handle, "dst\_mac\_addr", mac\_addr, \&size);
```

Return

- ESP\_OK if the value was retrieved successfully
- ESP\_ERR\_NVS\_NOT\_FOUND if the requested key doesn’t exist
- ESP\_ERR\_NVS\_INVALID\_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP\_ERR\_NVS\_INVALID\_NAME if key name doesn’t satisfy constraints
- ESP\_ERR\_NVS\_INVALID\_LENGTH if length is not sufficient to store data

Parameters

- \texttt{\[in\]} handle: Handle obtained from \texttt{nvs\_open} function.
- \texttt{\[in\]} key: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS\_KEY\_NAME\_MAX\_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn’t be empty.
- \texttt{\[out\]} out\_value: Pointer to the output value. May be NULL for \texttt{nvs\_get\_str} and \texttt{nvs\_get\_blob}, in this case required length will be returned in length argument.
- \texttt{\[inout\]} length: A non-zero pointer to the variable holding the length of \texttt{out\_value}. In case out\_value a zero, will be set to the length required to hold the value. In case out\_value is not zero, will be set to the actual length of the value written. For \texttt{nvs\_get\_str} this includes zero terminator.

```c
esp\_err\_t nvs\_get\_blob(nvs\_handle\_t handle, const char* key, void* out\_value, size\_t*\ length)
get\ blob\ value\ for\ given\ key
```

This function behaves the same as \texttt{nvs\_get\_str}, except for the data type.

```c
esp\_err\_t nvs\_open(const char* name, nvs\_open\_mode\_t\ open\_mode, nvs\_handle\_t*\ out\_handle)
Open\ non\-volatile\ storage\ with\ a\ given\ namespace\ from\ the\ default\ NVS\ partition.
```

Multiple internal ESP-\textsc{idf} and third party application modules can store their key-value pairs in the NVS module. In order to reduce possible conflicts on key names, each module can use its own namespace. The default NVS partition is the one that is labelled “nvs” in the partition table.

Return

- ESP\_OK if storage handle was opened successfully
- ESP\_ERR\_NVS\_NOT\_INITIALIZED if the storage driver is not initialized
- ESP\_ERR\_NVS\_PART\_NOT\_FOUND if the partition with label “nvs” is not found
- ESP\_ERR\_NVS\_PART\_NOT\_FOUND id namespace doesn’t exist yet and mode is NVS\_READONLY
- ESP\_ERR\_NVS\_INVALID\_NAME if namespace name doesn’t satisfy constraints
- ESP\_ERR\_NO\_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

Parameters

- \texttt{\[in\]} name: Namespace name. Maximal length is (NVS\_KEY\_NAME\_MAX\_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn’t be empty.
- \texttt{\[in\]} open\_mode: NVS\_READWRITE or NVS\_READONLY. If NVS\_READONLY, will open a handle for reading only. All write requests will be rejected for this handle.
- \texttt{\[out\]} out\_handle: If successful (return code is zero), handle will be returned in this argument.

```c
esp\_err\_t nvs\_open\_from\_partition(const char* part\_name, const char* name, 
nvs\_open\_mode\_t\ open\_mode, nvs\_handle\_t*\ out\_handle)
Open\ non\-volatile\ storage\ with\ a\ given\ namespace\ from\ specified\ partition.
```
The behaviour is same as nvs_open() API. However this API can operate on a specified NVS partition instead of default NVS partition. Note that the specified partition must be registered with NVS using nvs_flash_init_partition() API.

Return

- ESP_OK if storage handle was opened successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage driver is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND if the partition with specified name is not found
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND if namespace doesn’t exist yet and mode is NVS_READONLY
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if namespace name doesn’t satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

Parameters

- [in] part_name: Label (name) of the partition of interest for object read/write/erase
- [in] name: Namespace name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn’t be empty.
- [in] open_mode: NVS_READWRITE or NVS_READONLY. If NVS_READONLY, will open a handle for reading only. All write requests will be rejected for this handle.
- [out] out_handle: If successful (return code is zero), handle will be returned in this argument.

```
esp_err_t nvs_set_blob (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key, const void* value, size_t length)
```

set variable length binary value for given key

This family of functions set value for the key, given its name. Note that actual storage will not be updated until nvs_commit function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK if value was set successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if storage handle was opened as read only
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn’t satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE if there is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value
- ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED if the value wasn’t updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn’t fail again.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG if the value is too long

Parameters

- [in] handle: Handle obtained from nvs_open function. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.
- [in] key: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn’t be empty.
- [in] value: The value to set.
- [in] length: length of binary value to set, in bytes; Maximum length is 508000 bytes or (97.6% of the partition size - 4000) bytes whichever is lower.

```
esp_err_t nvs_erase_key (nvs_handle_t handle, const char* key)
```

Erase key-value pair with given key name.

Note that actual storage may not be updated until nvs_commit function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK if erase operation was successful
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if handle was opened as read only
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND if the requested key doesn’t exist
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

Parameters

- [in] handle: Storage handle obtained with nvs_open. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.
- [in] key: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn’t be empty.
**esp_err_t nvs_erase_all (nvs_handle_t handle)**

Erase all key-value pairs in a namespace.

Note that actual storage may not be updated until nvs_commit function is called.

**Return**
- ESP_OK if erase operation was successful
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if handle was opened as read only
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

**Parameters**
- [in] handle: Storage handle obtained with nvs_open. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.

**esp_err_t nvs_commit (nvs_handle_t handle)**

Write any pending changes to non-volatile storage.

After setting any values, nvs_commit() must be called to ensure changes are written to non-volatile storage. Individual implementations may write to storage at other times, but this is not guaranteed.

**Return**
- ESP_OK if the changes have been written successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

**Parameters**
- [in] handle: Storage handle obtained with nvs_open. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.

**void nvs_close (nvs_handle_t handle)**

Close the storage handle and free any allocated resources.

This function should be called for each handle opened with nvs_open once the handle is not in use any more. Closing the handle may not automatically write the changes to nonvolatile storage. This has to be done explicitly using nvs_commit function. Once this function is called on a handle, the handle should no longer be used.

**Parameters**
- [in] handle: Storage handle to close

**esp_err_t nvs_get_stats (const char *part_name, nvs_stats_t *nvs_stats)**

Fill structure nvs_stats_t. It provides info about used memory the partition.

This function calculates to runtime the number of used entries, free entries, total entries, and amount namespace in partition.

```c
// Example of nvs_get_stats() to get the number of used entries and free...
const char *part_name = "some_partition";
nvs_stats_t nvs_stats;
nvs_get_stats(NULL, &nvs_stats);
printf("Count: UsedEntries = (%d), FreeEntries = (%d), AllEntries = (%d)\n",
       nvs_stats.used_entries, nvs_stats.free_entries, nvs_stats.total_entries);
```

**Return**
- ESP_OK if the changes have been written successfully. Return param nvs_stats will be filled.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND if the partition with label “name” is not found. Return param nvs_stats will be filled 0.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage driver is not initialized. Return param nvs_stats will be filled 0.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if nvs_stats equal to NULL.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if there is page with the status of INVALID. Return param nvs_stats will be filled not with correct values because not all pages will be counted. Counting will be interrupted at the first INVALID page.

**Parameters**
• [in] part_name: Partition name NVS in the partition table. If pass a NULL than will use NVS_DEFAULT_PART_NAME ("nvs").
• [out] nvs_stats: Returns filled structure nvs_states_t. It provides info about used memory the partition.

**esp_err_t nvs_get_used_entry_count (nvs_handle_t handle, size_t *used_entries)**

Calculate all entries in a namespace.

An entry represents the smallest storage unit in NVS. Strings and blobs may occupy more than one entry. Note that to find out the total number of entries occupied by the namespace, add one to the returned value used_entries (if err is equal to ESP_OK). Because the name space entry takes one entry.

```c
// Example of nvs_get_used_entry_count() to get amount of all key-value pairs...--in one namespace:
   nvs_handle_t handle;
   nvs_open("namespace1", NVS_READWRITE, &handle);
   ...
   size_t used_entries;
   size_t total_entries_namespace;
   if(nvs_get_used_entry_count(handle, &used_entries) == ESP_OK){
       // the total number of entries occupied by the namespace
       total_entries_namespace = used_entries + 1;
   }
```

**Return**

- ESP_OK if the changes have been written successfully. Return param used_entries will be filled valid value.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage driver is not initialized. Return param used_entries will be filled 0.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL. Return param used_entries will be filled 0.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if used_entries equal to NULL.
- Other error codes from the underlying storage driver. Return param used_entries will be filled 0.

**Parameters**

- [in] handle: Handle obtained from nvs_open function.
- [out] used_entries: Returns amount of used entries from a namespace.

**nvs_iterator_t nvs_entry_find(const char *part_name, const char *namespace_name, nvs_type_t type)**

Create an iterator to enumerate NVS entries based on one or more parameters.

```c
// Example of listing all the key-value pairs of any type under specified...
--partition and namespace
   nvs_iterator_t it = nvs_entry_find(partition, namespace, NVS_TYPE_ANY);
   while (it != NULL) {
       nvs_entry_info_t info;
       nvs_entry_info(it, &info);
       it = nvs_entry_next(it);
       printf("key '%s', type '%d' \n", info.key, info.type);
   }
// Note: no need to release iterator obtained from nvs_entry_find function when
--other
// element for specified criteria was found.
```

**Return** Iterator used to enumerate all the entries found, or NULL if no entry satisfying criteria was found.

Iterator obtained through this function has to be released using nvs_release_iterator when not used any more.

**Parameters**

- [in] part_name: Partition name
- [in] namespace_name: Set this value if looking for entries with a specific namespace. Pass
Chapter 2. API

**nvs_iterator_t nvs_entry_next (nvs_iterator_t iterator)**

Returns next item matching the iterator criteria, NULL if no such item exists.

Note that any copies of the iterator will be invalid after this call.

**Return** NULL if no entry was found, valid nvs_iterator_t otherwise.

**Parameters**

- [in] iterator: Iterator obtained from nvs_entry_find function. Must be non-NULL.

**void nvs_entry_info (nvs_iterator_t iterator, nvs_entry_info_t *out_info)**

Fills nvs_entry_info_t structure with information about entry pointed to by the iterator.

**Parameters**

- [in] iterator: Iterator obtained from nvs_entry_find or nvs_entry_next function. Must be non-NULL.
- [out] out_info: Structure to which entry information is copied.

**void nvs_release_iterator (nvs_iterator_t iterator)**

Release iterator.

**Parameters**

- [in] iterator: Release iterator obtained from nvs_entry_find function. NULL argument is allowed.

**Structures**

**struct nvs_entry_info_t**

Information about entry obtained from nvs_entry_info function

**Public Members**

- char namespace_name[16]
  Namespace to which key-value belong
- char key[16]
  Key of stored key-value pair
- nvs_type_t type
  Type of stored key-value pair

**struct nvs_stats_t**

Note Info about storage space NVS.

**Public Members**

- size_t used_entries
  Amount of used entries.
- size_t free_entries
  Amount of free entries.
- size_t total_entries
  Amount all available entries.
- size_t namespace_count
  Amount name space.
Macros

**ESP_ERR_NVS_BASE**
Starting number of error codes

**ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED**
The storage driver is not initialized

**ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND**
Id namespace doesn’t exist yet and mode is NVS_READONLY

**ESP_ERR_NVS_TYPE_MISMATCH**
The type of set or get operation doesn’t match the type of value stored in NVS

**ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY**
Storage handle was opened as read only

**ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE**
There is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value

**ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME**
Namespace name doesn’t satisfy constraints

**ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE**
Handle has been closed or is NULL.

**ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED**
The value wasn’t updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn’t fail again.

**ESP_ERR_NVS_KEY_TOO_LONG**
Key name is too long

**ESP_ERR_NVS_PAGE_FULL**
Internal error; never returned by nvs API functions

**ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_STATE**
NVS is in an inconsistent state due to a previous error. Call nvs_flash_init and nvs_open again, then retry.

**ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_LENGTH**
String or blob length is not sufficient to store data

**ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES**
NVS partition doesn’t contain any empty pages. This may happen if NVS partition was truncated. Erase the whole partition and call nvs_flash_init again.

**ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG**
String or blob length is longer than supported by the implementation

**ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND**
Partition with specified name is not found in the partition table

**ESP_ERR_NVS_NEW_VERSION_FOUND**
NVS partition contains data in new format and cannot be recognized by this version of code

**ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_ENCR_FAILED**
XTS encryption failed while writing NVS entry

**ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_DECR_FAILED**
XTS decryption failed while reading NVS entry

**ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_FAILED**
XTS configuration setting failed

**ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_NOT_FOUND**
XTS configuration not found

**ESP_ERR_NVS_ENCR_NOT_SUPPORTED**
NVS encryption is not supported in this version
Chapter 2. API 參考

ESP_ERR_NVS_KEYS_NOT_INITIALIZED
NVS key partition is uninitialized

ESP_ERR_NVS_CORRUPT_KEY_PART
NVS key partition is corrupt

ESP_ERR_NVS_WRONG_ENCRYPTION
NVS partition is marked as encrypted with generic flash encryption. This is forbidden since the NVS encryption works differently.

ESP_ERR_NVS_CONTENT_DIFFERS
Internal error; never returned by nvs API functions. NVS key is different in comparison

NVS_DEFAULT_PART_NAME
Default partition name of the NVS partition in the partition table

NVS_PART_NAME_MAX_SIZE
Maximum length of partition name (excluding null terminator)

NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE
Maximal length of NVS key name (including null terminator)

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef uint32_t nvs_handle_t
Opaque pointer type representing non-volatile storage handle

typedef nvs_handle_t nvs_handle

typedef nvs_open_mode_t nvs_open_mode

typedef struct nvsOpaque_iterator_t*nvs_iterator_t
Opaque pointer type representing iterator to nvs entries
```

**Enumerations**

```c
enum nvs_open_mode_t
Mode of opening the non-volatile storage.

Values:

NVS_READONLY
Read only

NVS_READWRITE
Read and write

enum nvs_type_t
Types of variables.

Values:

NVS_TYPE_U8 = 0x01
Type uint8_t

NVS_TYPE_I8 = 0x11
Type int8_t

NVS_TYPE_U16 = 0x02
Type uint16_t

NVS_TYPE_I16 = 0x12
Type int16_t

NVS_TYPE_U32 = 0x04
Type uint32_t

NVS_TYPE_I32 = 0x14
Type int32_t
```

Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 2. API 参考

NVS_TYPE_U64 = 0x08
Type uint64_t
NVS_TYPE_I64 = 0x18
Type int64_t
NVS_TYPE_STR = 0x21
Type string
NVS_TYPE_BLOB = 0x42
Type blob
NVS_TYPE_ANY = 0xff
Must be last

2.6.4 NVS 分区生成程序

介绍

NVS 分区生成程序 (nvs_flash/nvs_partition_generator/nvs_partition_gen.py) 根据 CSV 文件中的键值对生成二进制文件。该二进制文件与非易失性存储器 (NVS) 中定义的 NVS 结构兼容。NVS 分区生成程序适合用于生成二进制数据 (Blob)，其中包括设备生产时可从外部烧录的 ODM/OEM 数据。这也使得生产制造商在使用同一个固件的基础上，通过自定义参数，如序列号等，为每个设备生成不同配置。

准备工作

在加密模式下使用该程序，需安装下列软件包：

* cryptography package

根目录下的 requirements.txt 包含必需 python 包，请预先安装。

CSV 文件格式

.csv 文件每行需包含四个参数，以逗号隔开。具体参数描述见下表:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>序号</th>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
<th>说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Key</td>
<td>主键，应用程序可通过查询此键来获取数据。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>支持 file, data 和 namespace。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Encoding</td>
<td>支持 u8, i8, u16, i32, string, hex2bin, base64 和 binary。决定二进制 bin 文件中 value 被编码成的类型。string 和 binary 编码的区别在于，string 数据以 NULL 字符结尾，binary 数据则不是。</td>
<td>file 类型当前仅支持 hex2bin, base64, string 和 binary 编码。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Data value</td>
<td>namespace 字段的 encoding 和 value 字节为固定值，不可设置。这些单元格中的所有值都不可设置。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解：CSV 文件的第一行应为列标题，不可设置。

此类 CSV 文件的 Dump 示例如下：

Espressif Systems 1117 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 2. API 参考

```
key, type, encoding, value  <--- 列标题
namespace_name, namespace,  <--- 第一个条目为 "namespace"
key1, data, u8, 1
key2, file, string, /path/to/file
```

注解:

请确保：
- 逗号 ‘,’ 前后无空格;
- CSV 文件每行末尾无空格。

**NVS 条目和命名空间 (namespace)**

如 CSV 文件中出现命名空间条目，后续条目均会被视为该命名空间的一部分，直至找到下一个命名空间条目。找到新命名空间条目后，后续所有条目都会被视为新命名空间的一部分。

注解：CSV 文件中第一个条目应始终为 namespace。

**支持多页 Blob**

默认情况下，二进制 Blob 可跨多页，格式参考条目结构 章节。如需使用旧版格式，可在程序中禁用该功能。

**支持加密**

NVS 分区生成程序还可使用 AES-XTS 加密生成二进制加密文件。更多信息详见NVS 加密。

**支持解密**

如果 NVS 二进制文件采用了 AES-XTS 加密，该程序还可对此类文件进行解密。更多信息详见NVS 加密。

**运行程序**

使用方法：

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py [-h] (generate, generate-key, encrypt, decrypt) ...
```

可选参数：

```
序号 参数  描述
1  -h, --help 显示帮助信息并退出
```

命令：

运行 nvs_partition_gen.py {command} -h 查看更多帮助信息

```
序号 参数  描述
1  generate 生成 NVS 分区
2  generate-key 生成加密密钥
3  encrypt 加密 NVS 分区
4  decrypt 解密 NVS 分区
```
生成 NVS 分区（默认模式）

使用方法:

```bash
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate [-h] [--version {1,2}] [--outdir OUTDIR]
  input output size
```

位置参数:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>input</code></td>
<td>待解析的 CSV 文件路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>output</code></td>
<td>NVS 二进制文件的输出路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>size</code></td>
<td>NVS 分区大小（以字节为单位，且为 4096 的整数倍）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

可选参数:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>-h, --help</code></td>
<td>显示帮助信息并退出</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `--version {1,2}` | \+ 设置多页 Blob 版本。  
\+ 版本 1: 禁用多页 Blob;  
\+ 版本 2: 启用多页 Blob;  
\+ 默认版本: 版本 2。 |
| `--outdir OUTDIR` | 输出目录，用于存储创建的文件。（默认当前目录） |

运行如下命令创建 NVS 分区，该程序同时会提供 CSV 示例文件:

```bash
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample.bin 0x3000
```

仅生成加密密钥

使用方法:

```bash
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate-key [-h] [--keyfile KEYFILE] [--outdir OUTDIR]
```

可选参数:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>-h, --help</code></td>
<td>显示帮助信息并退出</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--keyfile KEYFILE</code></td>
<td>加密密钥文件的输出路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--outdir OUTDIR</code></td>
<td>输出目录，用于存储创建的文件。（默认当前目录）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

运行以下命令仅生成加密密钥:

```bash
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate-key
```

生成 NVS 加密分区 使用方法:

```bash
python nvs_partition_gen.py encrypt [-h] [--version {1,2}] [--keygen] [--keyfile KEYFILE] [--inputkey INPUTKEY] [--outdir OUTDIR]
  input output size
```
位置参数:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>input</td>
<td>待解析 CSV 文件的路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>output</td>
<td>NVS 二进制文件的输出路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>NVS 分区大小（以字节为单位，且为 4096 的整数倍）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

可选参数:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-h, --help</td>
<td>显示帮助信息并退出</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-version [1,2]</td>
<td>- 版本多页 Blob 版本。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 版本 1：禁用多页 Blob；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 版本 2：启用多页 Blob；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 默认版本：版本 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-keygen</td>
<td>生成 NVS 分区加密密钥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-keyfile KEYFILE</td>
<td>密钥文件的输出路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-inputkey INPUTKEY</td>
<td>内含 NVS 分区加密密钥的文件</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-outdir OUTDIR</td>
<td>输出目录，用于存储创建的文件（默认当前目录）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

运行以下命令加密 NVS 分区，该程序同时会提供一个 CSV 示例文件。

- 通过 NVS 分区生成程序生成加密密钥来加密:
  ```
  python nvs_partition_gen.py encrypt sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample_encr.bin--0x3000--keygen
  ```

注解：创建的加密密钥格式为 <outdir>/keys/keys-<timestamp>.bin。

- 通过 NVS 分区生成程序生成加密密钥，并将密钥存储于自定义的文件中:
  ```
  python nvs_partition_gen.py encrypt sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample_encr.bin--0x3000--keygen--keyfile sample_keys.bin
  ```

注解：创建的加密密钥格式为 <outdir>/keys/keys-<timestamp>.bin。

注解：加密密钥存储于新建文件的 keys/ 目录下，与 NVS 密钥分区结构兼容。更多信息请参考 NVS 密钥分区。

- 将加密密钥用作二进制输入文件来进行加密:
  ```
  python nvs_partition_gen.py encrypt sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample_encr.bin--0x3000--inputkey sample_keys.bin
  ```

解密 NVS 分区 使用方法:

``` python nvs_partition_gen.py decrypt [-h] [--outdir OUTDIR] input key output ```

位置参数:
## 可选参数

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>参数</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>input</td>
<td>待解析的 NVS 加密分区文件路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>含有解密密钥的文件路径</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>output</td>
<td>已解密的二进制文件输出路径</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

运行以下命令解密已加密的 NVS 分区:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py decrypt sample_encr.bin sample_keys.bin sample_decr.bin
```

您可以自定义格式版本号:
- 版本 1：禁用多页 Blob
- 版本 2：启用多页 Blob

**版本 1：禁用多页 Blob** 如需禁用多页 Blob，请按照如下命令将版本参数设置为 1，以此格式运行分区生成程序，该程序同时会提供一个 CSV 示例文件:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample.bin 0x3000 --version 1
```

**版本 2：启用多页 Blob** 如需启用多页 Blob，请按照如下命令将版本参数设置为 2，以此格式运行分区生成程序，该程序同时会提供一个 CSV 示例文件:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate sample_multipage_blob.csv sample.bin 0x4000 --version 2
```

**注解**: NVS 分区最小为 0x3000 字节。

**注解**: 将二进制文件烧录至设备时，请确保与应用的 sdkconfig 设置一致。

### 说明

- 分区生成程序不会对重复键进行检查，而将数据同时写入这两个重复键中。请注意不要使用同名的键；
- 新页面创建后，前一页的空白处不会再写入数据。CSV 文件中的字段须按次序排列以优化内存；
- 暂不支持 64 位数据类型。

### 2.6.5 SD/SDIO/MMC 驱动程序

#### 概述

SD/SDIO/MMC 驱动是一种基于 SDMMC 和 SD SPI 主机驱动的协议级驱动程序，目前已支持 SD 存储器、SDIO 卡和 eMMC 芯片。

SDMMC 主机驱动和 SD SPI 主机驱动（driver/include/driver/sdmmc_host.h 和 driver/include/driver/sdspi_host.h）为以下功能提供 API:
Chapter 2. API 参考

- 发送命令至从设备
- 接收和发送数据
- 处理解析错误

初始化函数及配置函数:
- 如需初始化和配置 SDMMC 主机，请参阅 SDMMC 主机 API
- 如需初始化和配置 SD SPI 主机，请参阅 SD SPI 主机 API

本文档中所述的 SDMMC 协议层仅处理 SD 协议相关事项，例如卡初始化和数据传输命令。

协议层通过 sdmmc_host_t 结构体和主机协同工作，该结构体包含指向主机各类函数的指针。

应用示例

ESP-IDF storage/sd_card 目录下提供了 SDMMC 驱动与 FatFs 库组合使用的示例，演示了先初始化卡，然后使用 POSIX 和 C 库 API 向卡写入数据。请参考示例目录下 README.md 文件，查看更多详细信息。

复合卡（存储 + IO）该驱动程序不支持 SD 复合卡，复合卡会被视为 IO 卡。

线程安全 多数应用程序仅需在一个任务中使用协议层。因此，协议层在 sdmmc_card_t 结构体或在访问 SDMMC 或 SD SPI 主机驱动程序时便不会任何类型的锁。这种锁通常在较高级层实现，例如文件系统驱动程序。

协议层 API

协议层具备 sdmmc_host_t 结构体。此结构体描述了 SD/MMC 主机驱动，列出了其功能，并提供指向驱动程序函数的指针。协议层将卡信息结构于 sdmmc_card_t 结构体中，向 SD/MMC 主机发送命令时，协议层调用时需要一个 sdmmc_card_t 结构体来描述命令、参数、预期返回值和需传输的数据（如有）。

用于 SD 存储卡的 API

1. 初始话主机遇时需调用主机驱动函数，例如 sdmmc_host_init() 和 sdmmc_host_init_slot();
2. 初始化卡，请调用 sdmmc_card_init()，并将参数 host（主机驱动信息）和参数 card（指向 sdmmc_card_t 结构体的指针）传递给此函数。函数运行结束后，将会向 sdmmc_card_t 结构体填充此卡的信息；
3. 读卡或写入卡的区域，请分别调用 sdmmc_read_sectors() 和 sdmmc_write_sectors()，并将参数 card（指向卡信息结构的指针）传递给函数；
4. 如果不再使用该卡，请调用主机驱动函数，例如 sdmmc_host_deinit()，以禁止主机外设，并释放驱动程序分配的资源。

用于 eMMC 芯片的 API 从协议层的角度而言，eMMC 存储芯片与 SD 存储卡相同。尽管 eMMC 是芯片，不具备卡的外形，但协议层协议相似 (sdmmc_card_t, sdmmc_card_init)，用于 SD 卡的一些概念同样适用于 eMMC 芯片。注意，eMMC 芯片不可通过 SPI 使用，因此它与 SD API 主机驱动不兼容。

如需初始化 eMMC 内存并执行读/写操作，请参照上一章节 SD 卡操作步骤。

用于 SDIO 卡的 API SDIO 卡初始化和检测过程与 SD 存储卡相同，唯一的区别是 SDIO 模式下数据传输命令不同。

在卡初始化和检测（通过运行 sdmmc_card_init()）期间，驱动仅配置 IO 卡如下寄存器:

1. I/O 中止 (0x06) 寄存器：在该寄存器中设置 RES 位可重置卡的 IO 部分;
2. 总线接口控制 (0x07) 寄存器：如果主机和插槽配置中启用 4 线模式，则驱动程序会尝试在该寄存器中设置总线宽度字段。如果字段设置成功，则从机支持 4 线模式，主机也切换至 4 线模式;
3. 高速 (0x13) 寄存器：如果主机配置中启用高速模式，则会在该寄存器中设置 HS 位。

Espressif Systems 1122 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
注意，驱动程序不会在 (1) I/O 使能寄存器和 Int 使能寄存器，及 (2) I/O 块大小中，设置任何位。应用程
序可通过调用 `sdmmc_io_write_byte()` 来设置相关位。

如需设置卡配置或传输数据，请根据您的具体情况选择下表中的函数：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Read Function</th>
<th>Write Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Read and write a single byte using IO_RW_DIRECT (CMD52)</td>
<td><code>sdmmc_io_read_byte()</code></td>
<td><code>sdmmc_io_write_byte()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read and write multiple bytes using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53) in byte mode</td>
<td><code>sdmmc_io_read_byte()</code></td>
<td><code>sdmmc_io_write_bytes()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read and write blocks of data using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53) in block mode</td>
<td><code>sdmmc_io_read_blocks()</code></td>
<td><code>sdmmc_io_write_blocks()</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

使用 `sdmmc_io_enable_int()` 函数，应用程序可启用 SDIO 中断。在单线模式下使用 SDIO 时，还需
要连接 D1 线来启用 SDIO 中断。

如果您需要应用程序保持等待直至发生 SDIO 中断，请使用 `sdmmc_io_wait_int()` 函数。

如果您需要与 ESP32 的 SDIO 从设备通信，请使用 ESSL 组件（ESP 串行从设备链接）。请参阅 `ESP Serial Slave Link` 和 example `peripherals/sdio/host`

### API 参考

### Header File

- `components/sdmmc/include/sdmmc_cmd.h`

### Functions

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_card_init(const sdmmc_host_t *host, sdmmc_card_t *out_card)
```

- **Probe and initialize SD/MMC card using given host**

  **Note** Only SD cards (SDSC and SDHC/SDXC) are supported now. Support for MMC/eMMC cards will be
  added later.

  **Return**

  - ESP_OK on success
  - One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

  **Parameters**

  - `host`: pointer to structure defining host controller
  - `out_card`: pointer to structure which will receive information about the card when the function
    completes

```c
void sdmmc_card_print_info(FILE *stream, const sdmmc_card_t *card)
```

- **Print information about the card to a stream.**

  **Parameters**

  - `stream`: stream obtained using fopen or fdopen
  - `card`: card information structure initialized using sdmmc_card_init

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_get_status(sdmmc_card_t *card)
```

- **Get status of SD/MMC card**

  **Return**

  - ESP_OK on success
  - One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

  **Parameters**

  - `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_write_sectors(sdmmc_card_t *card, const void *src, size_t start_sector, size_t sector_count)
```

- **Write given number of sectors to SD/MMC card**

  **Return**
Chapter 2. API

ESP_OK on success
One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

**Parameters**
- **card**: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- **dst**: pointer to data buffer to read data from; data size must be equal to sector_count * card-
  >csd.sector_size
- **start_sector**: sector where to start writing
- **sector_count**: number of sectors to write

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_read_sectors (sdmmc_card_t *card, void *dst, size_t start_sector, size_t sector_count)
```

Read given number of sectors from the SD/MMC card

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

**Parameters**
- **card**: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- **dst**: pointer to data buffer to write into; buffer size must be at least sector_count * card-
  >csd.sector_size
- **start_sector**: sector where to start reading
- **sector_count**: number of sectors to read

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_io_read_byte (sdmmc_card_t *card, uint32_t function, uint32_t reg, uint8_t *out_byte)
```

Read one byte from an SDIO card using IO_RW_DIRECT (CMD52)

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

**Parameters**
- **card**: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- **function**: IO function number
- **reg**: byte address within IO function
- **[out] out_byte**: output, receives the value read from the card

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_io_write_byte (sdmmc_card_t *card, uint32_t function, uint32_t reg, uint8_t in_byte, uint8_t *out_byte)
```

Write one byte to an SDIO card using IO_RW_DIRECT (CMD52)

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

**Parameters**
- **card**: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- **function**: IO function number
- **reg**: byte address within IO function
- **in_byte**: value to be written
- **[out] out_byte**: if not NULL, receives new byte value read from the card (read-after-write).

```c
esp_err_t sdmmc_io_read_bytes (sdmmc_card_t *card, uint32_t function, uint32_t addr, void *dst, size_t size)
```

Read multiple bytes from an SDIO card using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53)

This function performs read operation using CMD53 in byte mode. For block mode, see sd-
mmc_io_read_blocks.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size exceeds 512 bytes
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

**Parameters**
- **card**: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
Chapter 2. API

- function: IO function number
- addr: byte address within IO function where reading starts
- dst: buffer which receives the data read from card
- size: number of bytes to read

\[
\text{esp_err_t } \text{sdmmc_io_write_bytes}(\text{sdmmc_card_t} *\text{card}, \text{uint32_t} \text{function}, \text{uint32_t} \text{addr}, \text{const void *} \text{src}, \text{size_t} \text{size})
\]

Write multiple bytes to an SDIO card using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53)

This function performs write operation using CMD53 in byte mode. For block mode, see sdmmc_io_write_blocks.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size exceeds 512 bytes
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters
- \text{card}: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- \text{function}: IO function number
- \text{addr}: byte address within IO function where writing starts
- \text{src}: data to be written
- \text{size}: number of bytes to write

\[
\text{esp_err_t } \text{sdmmc_io_read_blocks}(\text{sdmmc_card_t} *\text{card}, \text{uint32_t} \text{function}, \text{uint32_t} \text{addr}, \text{void *} \text{dst}, \text{size_t} \text{size})
\]

Read blocks of data from an SDIO card using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53)

This function performs read operation using CMD53 in block mode. For byte mode, see sdmmc_io_read_bytes.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size is not divisible by 512 bytes
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters
- \text{card}: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- \text{function}: IO function number
- \text{addr}: byte address within IO function where writing starts
- \text{dst}: buffer which receives the data read from card
- \text{size}: number of bytes to read, must be divisible by the card block size.

\[
\text{esp_err_t } \text{sdmmc_io_write_blocks}(\text{sdmmc_card_t} *\text{card}, \text{uint32_t} \text{function}, \text{uint32_t} \text{addr}, \text{const void *} \text{src}, \text{size_t} \text{size})
\]

Write blocks of data to an SDIO card using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53)

This function performs write operation using CMD53 in block mode. For byte mode, see sdmmc_io_write_bytes.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size is not divisible by 512 bytes
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters
- \text{card}: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- \text{function}: IO function number
- \text{addr}: byte address within IO function where writing starts
- \text{src}: data to be written
- \text{size}: number of bytes to read, must be divisible by the card block size.

\[
\text{esp_err_t } \text{sdmmc_io_enable_int}(\text{sdmmc_card_t} *\text{card})
\]

Enable SDIO interrupt in the SDMMC host

Return
- ESP_OK on success
Chapter 2. API

ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the host controller does not support IO interrupts

Parameters
- card: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init

esp_err_t sdmmc_io_wait_int (sdmmc_card_t *card, TickType_t timeout_ticks)

Block until an SDIO interrupt is received

Return
- ESP_OK if the interrupt is received
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the host controller does not support IO interrupts
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the interrupt does not happen in timeout_ticks

Parameters
- card: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- timeout_ticks: time to wait for the interrupt, in RTOS ticks

esp_err_t sdmmc_io_get_cis_data (sdmmc_card_t *card, uint8_t *out_buffer, size_t buffer_size, size_t *inout_cis_size)

Get the data of CIS region of a SDIO card.

You may provide a buffer not sufficient to store all the CIS data. In this case, this functions store as much data into your buffer as possible. Also, this function will try to get and return the size required for you.

Return
- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE: if the card does not (correctly) support CIS.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: CIS_CODE_END found, but buffer_size is less than required size, which is stored in the inout_cis_size then.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: if the CIS_CODE_END not found. Increase input value of inout_cis_size or set it to 0, if you still want to search for the end; output value of inout_cis_size is invalid in this case.
- and other error code return from sdmmc_io_read_bytes

Parameters
- card: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- out_buffer: Output buffer of the CIS data
- buffer_size: Size of the buffer.
- inout_cis_size: Mandatory, pointer to a size, input and output.
  - input: Limitation of maximum searching range, should be 0 or larger than buffer_size. The function searches for CIS_CODE_END until this range. Set to 0 to search infinitely.
  - output: The size required to store all the CIS data, if CIS_CODE_END is found.

esp_err_t sdmmc_io_print_cis_info (uint8_t *buffer, size_t buffer_size, FILE *fp)

Parse and print the CIS information of a SDIO card.

Note Not all the CIS codes and all kinds of tuples are supported. If you see some unresolved code, you can add the parsing of these code in sdmmc_io.c and contribute to the IDF through the Github repository.

Header File
- components/driver/include/driver/sdmmc_types.h
Chapter 2. API 参考

**Structures**

```c
struct sdmmc_csd_t
    Decoded values from SD card Card Specific Data register

    **Public Members**

    int csd_ver
        CSD structure format

    int mmc_ver
        MMC version (for CID format)

    int capacity
        total number of sectors

    int sector_size
        sector size in bytes

    int read_block_len
        block length for reads

    int card_command_class
        Card Command Class for SD

    int tr_speed
        Max transfer speed
```

```c
struct sdmmc_cid_t
    Decoded values from SD card IDentification register

    **Public Members**

    int mfg_id
        manufacturer identification number

    int oem_id
        OEM/product identification number

    char name[8]
        product name (MMC v1 has the longest)

    int revision
        product revision

    int serial
        product serial number

    int date
        manufacturing date
```

```c
struct sdmmc_scr_t
    Decoded values from SD Configuration Register

    **Public Members**

    int sd_spec
        SD Physical layer specification version, reported by card

    int bus_width
        bus widths supported by card: BIT(0) — 1-bit bus, BIT(2) — 4-bit bus
```

```c
struct sdmmc_ext_csd_t
    Decoded values of Extended Card Specific Data
```
Public Members

uint8_t power_class
Power class used by the card

struct sdmmc_switch_func_rsp_t
SD SWITCH_FUNC response buffer

Public Members

uint32_t data[512 / 8 / sizeof(uint32_t)]
response data

struct sdmmc_command_t
SD/MMC command information

Public Members

uint32_t opcode
SD or MMC command index

uint32_t arg
SD/MMC command argument

sdmmc_response_t response
response buffer

void *data
buffer to send or read into

size_t datalen
length of data buffer

size_t blklen
block length

int flags
see below

esp_err_t error
error returned from transfer

int timeout_ms
response timeout, in milliseconds

struct sdmmc_host_t
SD/MMC Host description

This structure defines properties of SD/MMC host and functions of SD/MMC host which can be used by upper layers.

Public Members

uint32_t flags
flags defining host properties

int slot
slot number, to be passed to host functions

int max_freq_khz
max frequency supported by the host
float io_voltage
I/O voltage used by the controller (voltage switching is not supported)

esp_err_t(*init) (void)
Host function to initialize the driver

esp_err_t(*set_bus_width) (int slot, size_t width)
host function to set bus width

size_t(*get_bus_width) (int slot)
host function to get bus width

esp_err_t(*set_bus_ddr_mode) (int slot, bool ddr_enable)
host function to set DDR mode

esp_err_t(*set_card_clk) (int slot, uint32_t freq_khz)
host function to set card clock frequency

esp_err_t(*do_transaction) (int slot, sdmmc_command_t *cmdinfo)
host function to do a transaction

esp_err_t(*deinit) (void)
host function to deinitialize the driver

esp_err_t(*deinit_p) (int slot)
host function to deinitialize the driver, called with the slot

esp_err_t(*io_int_enable) (int slot)
Host function to enable SDIO interrupt line

esp_err_t(*io_int_wait) (int slot, TickType_t timeout_ticks)
Host function to wait for SDIO interrupt line to be active

int command_timeout_ms
timeout, in milliseconds, of a single command. Set to 0 to use the default value.

struct sdmmc_card_t
SD/MMC card information structure

Public Members

sdmmc_host_t host
Host with which the card is associated

uint32_t ocr
OCR (Operation Conditions Register) value

sdmmc_cid_t cid
decoded CID (Card IDentification) register value

sdmmc_response_t raw_cid
raw CID of MMC card to be decoded after the CSD is fetched in the data transfer mode

sdmmc_csd_t csd
decoded CSD (Card-Specific Data) register value

sdmmc_scr_t scr
decoded SCR (SD card Configuration Register) value

sdmmc_ext_csd_t ext_csd
decoded EXT_CSD (Extended Card Specific Data) register value

uint16_t rca
RCA (Relative Card Address)

uint16_t max_freq_khz
Maximum frequency, in kHz, supported by the card
Chapter 2. API

uint32_t is_mem : 1
    Bit indicates if the card is a memory card

uint32_t is_sdio : 1
    Bit indicates if the card is an IO card

uint32_t ismmc : 1
    Bit indicates if the card is MMC

uint32_t num_io_functions : 3
    If is_sdio is 1, contains the number of IO functions on the card

uint32_t log_bus_width : 2
    log2(bus width supported by card)

uint32_t is_ddr : 1
    Card supports DDR mode

uint32_t reserved : 23
    Reserved for future expansion

**Macros**

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_1BIT
    host supports 1-line SD and MMC protocol

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_4BIT
    host supports 4-line SD and MMC protocol

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_8BIT
    host supports 8-line MMC protocol

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_SPI
    host supports SPI protocol

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_DDR
    host supports DDR mode for SD/MMC

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_DEINIT_ARG
    host deinit function called with the slot argument

SDMMC_FREQ_DEFAULT
    SD/MMC Default speed (limited by clock divider)

SDMMC_FREQ_HIGHSPEED
    SD High speed (limited by clock divider)

SDMMC_FREQ_PROBING
    SD/MMC probing speed

SDMMC_FREQ_52M
    MMC 52MHz speed

SDMMC_FREQ_26M
    MMC 26MHz speed

**Type Definitions**

typedef uint32_t sdmmc_response_t[4]
    SD/MMC command response buffer

2.6.6 SPI Flash API
### 概述

`Spi_flash` 组件提供外部 flash 数据读取、写入、擦除和内存映射相关的 API 函数，同时也提供了更高层级的，面向分区的 API 函数（定义在分区表 中）。

与 ESP-IDF V4.0 之前的 API 不同，这一版 `esp_flash_*` API 功能并不局限于主 SPI Flash 芯片（即运行程序的 SPI Flash 芯片）。使用不同的芯片指针，您可以访问连接到 SPI0/1 或 SPI2 总线的外部 flash 芯片。

#### 注解：
大多数 `esp_flash_*` API 使用 SPI1、SPI2 等外设而非通过 SPI0 上的 cache。这使得它们不仅能访问主 flash，也能访问外部 flash。

而由于 cache 的限制，所有经过 cache 的档案都只能对主 flash 进行。这些操作的地址同样受到 cache 能力的限制。Cache 无法访问外部 flash 或者高于它能力的地址段。这些 cache 操作包括：mmap，加密读写，执行代码或者访问在 flash 中的变量。

#### 注解：
ESP-IDF V4.0 之后的 flash API 不再是原子的。因此，如果 flash 操作地址有重叠，且写操作与读操作同时执行，该操作可能会改变一部分写入之前的数据和一部分写入之后的数据。

**Kconfig** 选项 `CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL` 可将 `spi_flash_*` 函数切换至 ESP-IDF V4.0 之前的实现。但是，如果同时使用新旧 API，代码量可能会增多。

即便未启用 `CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL`，加密读取和加密写入操作也均使用旧实现。因此，仅有主 flash 芯片支持加密操作。外接（经 SPI1 使用其他不同类型访问，或经其它 SPI 总线访问）的 flash 芯片则不支持加密操作。也仅有主 flash 支持从 cache 当中读取，因为这是由硬件决定的。

### Flash 特性支持情况

不同厂家的 flash 特性有不同的操作方式，因此需要特殊的驱动支持。当前驱动支持大多数厂家 Flash 24 位地址范围内的快速/慢速读，以及二线模式 (DIO/DOUT)，因为他们不需要任何厂家的自定义命令。

当前驱动支持以下厂家/型号的 flash 的四线模式 (QIO/QOUT):

1. ISSI
2. GD
3. MXIC
4. FM
5. Winbond
6. XMC
7. BOYA

当前驱动支持以下厂家/型号的 flash 的 32 位地址范围的访问:

1. W25Q256
2. GD25Q256

如果有需要，也可以自定义 flash 芯片驱动，参见 **Overriding Default Chip Drivers**

### 警告：
Customizing SPI Flash Chip Drivers is considered an “expert” feature. Users should only do so at their own risk. (See the notes below)

**Overriding Default Chip Drivers**

During the SPI Flash driver’s initialization (i.e., `esp_flash_init()`), there is a chip detection step during which the driver will iterate through a Default Chip Driver List and determine which chip driver can properly support the currently connected flash chip. The Default Chip Drivers are provided by the IDF, thus are updated in together with each IDF version. However IDF also allows users to customize their own chip drivers.

Users should note the following when customizing chip drivers:
1. You may need to rely on some non-public IDF functions, which have slight possibility to change between IDF versions. On the one hand, these changes may be useful bug fixes for your driver, on the other hand, they may also be breaking changes (i.e., breaks your code).
2. Some IDF bug fixes to other chip drivers will not be automatically applied to your own custom chip drivers.
3. If the protection of flash is not handled properly, there may be some random reliability issues.
4. If you update to a newer IDF version that has support for more chips, you will have to manually add those new chip drivers into your custom chip driver list. Otherwise the driver will only search for the drivers in custom list you provided.

Steps For Creating Custom Chip Drivers and Overriding the IDF Default Driver List

1. Enable the `CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_OVERRIDE_CHIP_DRIVER_LIST` config option. This will prevent compilation and linking of the Default Chip Driver List (`default_registered_chips`) provided by IDF. Instead, the linker will search for the structure of the same name (`default_registered_chips`) that must be provided by the user.
2. Add a new component in your project, e.g. `custom_chip_driver`.
3. Copy the necessary chip driver files from the `spi_flash` component in IDF. This may include:
   * `spi_flash_chip_drivers.c` (to provide the `default_registered_chips` structure)
   * Any of the `spi_flash_chip_*.c` files that matches your own flash model best
   * `CMakeLists.txt` and `linker.lf` files

Modify the files above properly.

### 注解:

* When writing your own flash chip driver, you can set your flash chip capabilities through `spi_flash_chip_***/(vendor)_get_caps` and points the function pointer `get_chip_caps` for protection to the `spi_flash_chip_***/get_caps` function. The steps are as follows.
  1. Please check whether your flash chip have the capabilities listed in `spi_flash_caps_t` by checking the flash datasheet.
  2. Write a function named `spi_flash_chip_***/(vendor)_get_caps`. Take the example below as a reference. (if the flash support suspend and read unique id).
  3. Points the the pointer `get_chip_caps` (in `spi_flash_chip_t`) to the function mentioned above.

```
spi_flash_caps_t spi_flash_chip_***/(vendor)_get_caps(esp_flash_t *chip)
{
    spi_flash_caps_t caps_flags = 0;
    // 32-bit-address flash is not supported
    flash-suspend is supported
    caps_flags |= SPI_FLASH_CHIP_CAP_SUSPEND;
    // flash read unique id.
    caps_flags |= SPI_FLASH_CHIP_CAP_UNIQUE_ID;
    return caps_flags;
}
```

```
const spi_flash_chip_t esp_flash_chip_eon = {
    // Other function pointers
    .get_chip_caps = spi_flash_chip_eon_get_caps,
};
```

* You also can see how to implement this in the example `storage/custom_flash_driver`.

4. Add linking dependency from `spi_flash` component to the new `custom_chip_driver` component, by adding the following lines after the `idf_component_register`, in the `CMakeLists.txt` file of the `custom_chip_driver` component:

```
idf_component_get_property(spi_flash_lib spi_flash COMPONENT_LIB)
set_property(TARGET $<TARGET>$ APPEND PROPERTY INTERFACE_LIBRARIES $<COMPONENT_LIB>))
```

5. The `linker.lf` is used to put every chip driver that you are going to use whilst cache is disabled into internal RAM. See [链接器脚本生成机制](#) for more details. Make sure this file covers all the source files that you add.
6. Build your project, and you will see the new flash driver is used.
### 初始化 Flash 设备

在使用 esp_flash_* API 之前，您需要在 SPI 总线上初始化芯片。

1. 调用 `spi_bus_initialize()` 初始化 SPI 总线，此函数将初始化总线上设备间共享的资源，如 I/O、DMA 及中断等。
2. 调用 `spi_bus_add_flash_device()` 将 flash 设备连接到总线上，然后分配内存，填充 esp_flash_t 结构体，同时初始化 CS I/O。
3. 调用 `esp_flash_init()` 与芯片进行通信。后续操作会依据芯片类型不同而有差异。

注: 当前，多个 flash 芯片可连接到同一总线。但尚不支持在同一个 SPI 总线上使用 esp_flash_* 和 spi_device_* 设备。

### SPI Flash 访问 API

如下所示为处理 flash 中数据的函数集：

- `esp_flash_read()`: 将数据从 flash 读取到 RAM；
- `esp_flash_write()`: 将数据从 RAM 写入到 flash；
- `esp_flash_erase_region()`: 擦除 flash 中指定区域的数据；
- `esp_flash_erase_chip()`: 擦除整个 flash；
- `esp_flash_get_chip_size()`: 返回 menuconfig 中设置的 flash 芯片容量 (以字节为单位)。

一般来说，请尽量避免对主 SPI flash 芯片直接使用原始 SPI flash 函数，如需对主 SPI flash 芯片进行操作，请使用分区专用函数。

### SPI Flash 容量

SPI flash 容量存储于引导程序映像头部（烧录偏移量为 0x1000）的一个字段。

默认情况下，引导程序写入 flash 时，esptool.py 将引导程序写入 flash 时，会自动检测 SPI flash 容量，同时使用正确容量更新引导程序的头部。您也可以在工程配置中设置 CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE，生成指定的 flash 容量。

如需在运行时覆盖已配置的 flash 容量，请配置 g_rom_flashchip 结构中的 chip_size。esp_flash_* 函数使用此容量（于软件和 ROM 中）进行边界检查。

### SPI1 Flash 并发约束

#### SPI1 Flash 并发约束

指令/数据 cache (用以执行固件) 与 SPI1 外设 (由像 SPI Flash 驱动一样的驱动程序控制) 共享 SPI0/1 总线。因此，对 SPI1 外设的操作会对整个系统造成显著的影响。这类操作包括调用 SPI Flash API 或者其他 SPI1 总线上的驱动，任何 flash 操作 (如读取、写入、擦除) 或者其他用户定义的 SPI 操作，无论是对主 flash 或者其他各类的 SPI 从机。

在 ESP32 上，flash 读取/写入/擦除时 cache 必须被禁用。

#### 当 cache 被禁用时

这意味着当 flash 操作发生时，所有的 CPU 都只能执行 IRAM 中的代码。而且必须从 DRAM 中读取数据。如果您使用本文档中 API 函数，上述限制将自动生效且透明 (无需您额外关注)，但这些限制可能会影响系统中的其他任务的性能。

除 SPI0/1 以外的 SPI 总线上的其它 flash 芯片则不受这种限制。

请参阅应用程序内存分布，查看 IRAM、DRAM 和 flash cache 的区别。
为避免意外读取 flash cache，一个 CPU 在启动 flash 写入或擦除操作时，另一个 CPU 将阻塞，并且在 flash 操作完成前，所有 CPU 上，所有的非 IRAM 安全的中断都会被禁用。
另请参阅 OS 函数 和 SPI Bus Lock。

**IRAM 安全中断处理程序** 如果您需要在 flash 操作期间运行中断处理程序（比如低延迟操作），请在注册中断处理程序 时设置 ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM。
请确保中断处理程序访问的所有数据和函数（包括其调用的数据和函数）都存储在 IRAM 或 DRAM 中。有两种方法可供使用：

### 使用属性宏
为函数添加 IRAM_ATTR 属性：

```c
#include "esp_attr.h"

void IRAM_ATTR gpio_isr_handler(void* arg)
{
    // ...
}
```

为常量添加 DRAM_ATTR 和 DRAM_STR 属性：

```c
void IRAM_ATTR gpio_isr_handler(void* arg)
{
    const static DRAM_ATTR uint8_t INDEX_DATA[] = { 45, 33, 12, 0 };
    const static char* MSG = DRAM_STR("I am a string stored in RAM");
}
```

辨别哪些数据应标记为 DRAM_ATTR 可能会比较困难，除非明确标记为 DRAM_ATTR，否则编译器依然可能将某些变量或表达式当做常量（即便没有 const 标记），并将其放入 flash。

### 使用链接脚本
参见链接器脚本生成机制。

如果函数或符号未被正确放入 IRAM/DRAM 中，当中断处理程序在 flash 操作期间从 flash cache 中读取数据，则会产生非法指令异常（这是因为代码未被正确放入 IRAM）或读取垃圾数据（这是因为常数未被正确放入 DRAM），而导致崩溃。

注意：指令/数据 cache（用以执行固件）与 SPI1 外设（由像 SPI flash 驱动一样的驱动程序控制）共享 SPI0/1 总线。因此，在 SPI1 总线上调用 SPI Flash API（包括访问主 flash）会对整个系统造成显著的影响。更多细节，请参见 SPII Flash 开发文档。

### 分区表 API

ESP-IDF 工程使用分区表保存 SPI flash 各区信息，包括引导程序、各种应用程序二进制文件、数据及文件系统等。请参考 [here](#) 查看详细信息。

该组件在 esp_partition.h 中声明了一些 API 函数，用以枚举在分区表中找到的分区，并对这些分区执行操作：

- `esp_partition_find()`：在分区表中查找特定类型的条目，返回一个不透明迭代器；
- `esp_partition_get()`：返回一个结构，描述给定迭代器的分区；
- `esp_partition_next()`：将迭代器移至下一个找到的分区；
- `esp_partition_iterator_release()`：释放 `esp_partition_find` 中返回的迭代器；
- `esp_partition_find_first()`：返回描述 `esp_partition_find` 中找到的第一个分区的结构；
- `esp_partition_read()`、`esp_partition_write()` 和 `esp_partition_erase_range()` 等同于 `spi_flash_read()`、`spi_flash_write()` 和 `spi_flash_erase_range()`，但在分区边界内执行。
SPI Flash 加密

您可以对 SPI flash 内容进行加密，并在硬件层对其进行透明解密。请参阅 Flash 加密文档，查看详细信息。

内存映射 API

ESP32 内存硬件可以将 flash 部分区域映射到指令地址空间和数据地址空间，此映射仅用于读操作。不能通过写入 flash 映射的存储区域来改变 flash 中的内容。

Flash 在 64 KB 页进行映射。内存映射硬件既可将 flash 映射到数据地址空间，也能映射到指令地址空间。请查看技术参考手册，了解内存映射硬件的详细信息及有关限制。

请注意，有些页被用于将应用程序映射到内存中，因此实际可用的页会少于硬件提供的总数。

启用 Flash 加密时，使用内存映射区域从 flash 读取数据是解密 flash 的唯一方法，解密需在硬件层进行。

内存映射 API 在 esp_spi_flash.h 和 esp_partition.h 中声明：

- spi_flash_mmap(): 将 flash 物理地址区域映射到 CPU 指令空间或数据空间;
- spi_flash_munmap(): 取消上述区域的映射;
- esp_partition_mmap(): 将分区的一部分映射至 CPU 指令空间或数据空间;
- spi_flash_mmap() 和 esp_partition_mmap() 的区别如下：
  - spi_flash_mmap(): 需要给定一个 64 KB 对齐的物理地址;
  - esp_partition_mmap(): 给定分区内的任意偏移量即可，此函数根据需要将返回的指针调整至指向映射内存。

内存映射以页为单位，即使传递给 esp_partition_mmap 的是一个分区，分区外的数据也是也可以被读取到的，不会受到分区边界的影响。

注解：由于 mmap 是由 cache 支持的，因此，mmap 也仅能用在主 flash 上。

SPI Flash 实现

esp_flash_t 结构包含芯片数据和该 API 的三个重要部分：

1. 主机驱动，为访问芯片提供硬件支持；
2. 芯片驱动，为不同芯片提供兼容性服务；
3. OS 函数，在不同阶段（一级或二级 Boot 或者应用程序阶段）为部分 OS 函数（如锁、延迟）提供支持。

主机驱动 主机驱动依赖 hal/include/hal 文件夹下 spi_flash_types.h 定义的 spi_flash_host_driver_t 接口。该接口提供了一些常用的函数，用于与芯片通信。

在 SPI HAL 文件中，有些函数是基于现有的 ESP32 memory-spi 来实现的。但是，由于 ESP32 的速度限制，HAL 层无法提供某些读命令的高速实现（所以这些命令根本不在 HAL 的文件中被实现）。memspi_host_driver.h 和 .c 文件使用 HAL 提供的 common_command 函数实现上述读命令的高速版本，并将所有它实现的以及 HAL 函数封装为 spi_flash_host_driver_t 供上层调用。

您甚至可以仅通过 GPIO 来实现自己的主机驱动。只要实现了 spi_flash_host_driver_t 中所有函数，不管底层硬件是什么，esp_flash API 都可以访问 flash。
芯片驱动

芯片驱动在 spi_flash_chip_driver.h 中进行定义，并将主机驱动提供的基本函数进行封装以供 API 层使用。

有些操作需在执行前先发送命令，或在执行后读取状态。因此有些芯片需要不同的命令或值以及通信方式。

generic chip 芯片代表了常见的 flash 芯片。其他芯片驱动可以在此通用芯片的基础上进行开发。

芯片驱动依赖主机驱动。

**OS 函数**

OS 函数层目前提供访问锁和延迟的方法。

锁（见 SPI Bus Lock）用于解决同一 SPI 总线上的设备访问和 SPI Flash 芯片访问之间的冲突。例如：

1. 经 SPI 总线访问 flash 芯片时，应当禁用 cache（平时用于取代码和 PSRAM 数据）。
2. 经其他总线访问 flash 芯片时，应当禁用 flash 上 SPI 主驱动器注册的 ISR 以避免冲突。
3. SPI 主驱动器上某些没有 CS 线或者 CS 线受软件（如 SDSPI）控制的设备需要在一段时间内独占总线。

延时则用于某些长时操作，需要主机处于等待状态或执行轮询。

顶层 API 将芯片驱动和 OS 函数封装成一个完整的组件，并提供参数检查。

另请参考

- 分区表
- OTA API 提供了高层 API 用于更新存储在 flash 中的 app 固件。
- NVS API 提供了结构化 API 用于存储 SPI flash 中的碎片数据。

实现细节

必须确保操作期间，两个 CPU 均未从 flash 运行代码，实现细节如下：

- 单核模式下，SDK 在执行 flash 操作前将禁用中断或调度算法。双核模式下，实现细节较为复杂，SDK 需确保两个 CPU 均未运行 flash 代码。

如果有 SPI flash API 在 CPU A（PRO 或 APP）上应用，它使用 esp_ipc_call API 在 CPU B 上运行 spi_flash_op_block_func 函数。esp_ipc_call API 在 CPU B 上唤醒一个优先级任务，即运行 spi_flash_op_block_func 函数。运行该函数将禁用 CPU B 上的 cache，并使用 s_flash_op_can_start 信号来标志 cache 已禁用。然后，CPU A 上的任务也会禁用 cache 并继续执行 flash 操作。

执行 flash 操作时，CPU A 和 CPU B 仍然可以执行中断操作。默认中断代码均存储于 RAM 中，如果新添加了中断分配 API，则应添加一个标志位以请求在 flash 操作期间禁用该新分配的中断。

Flash 操作完成后，CPU A 上的函数将设置另一标志位，即 s_flash_op_complete，用以通知 CPU B 上的任务可以重新启用 cache 并释放 CPU。接着，CPU A 上的函数也重新启用 cache，并将控制权返还给调用者。

另外，所有 API 函数均受互斥量 s_flash_op_mutex 保护。

在单核环境中，（启用 CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE），您需要禁用上述两个 cache 以防发生 CPU 间通信。

**SPI Flash API 参考**

**Header File**

- components/spi_flash/include/esp_flash_spi_init.h
Functions

```c
esp_err_t spi_bus_add_flash_device(esp_flash_t **out_chip, const esp_flash_spi_device_config_t *config)
```

Add a SPI Flash device onto the SPI bus.

The bus should be already initialized by `spi_bus_initialization`.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: `out_chip` is NULL, or some field in the config is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: failed to allocate memory for the chip structures.
- ESP_OK: success.

Parameters

- `out_chip`: Pointer to hold the initialized chip.
- `config`: Configuration of the chips to initialize.

```c
esp_err_t spi_bus_remove_flash_device(esp_flash_t *chip)
```

Remove a SPI Flash device from the SPI bus.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The chip is invalid.
- ESP_OK: success.

Parameters

- `chip`: The flash device to remove.

Structures

```c
struct esp_flash_spi_device_config_t
```

Configurations for the SPI Flash to init.

Public Members

- `host_id` of `spi_host_device_t`
  - Bus to use.
- `cs_io_num` of `int`
  - GPIO pin to output the CS signal.
- `io_mode` of `esp_flash_io_mode_t`
  - IO mode to read from the Flash.
- `speed` of `esp_flash_speed_t`
  - Speed of the Flash clock.
- `input_delay_ns` of `int`
  - Input delay of the data pins, in ns. Set to 0 if unknown.
- `cs_id`
  - CS line ID, ignored when not `host_id` is not SPI1_HOST, or `CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SHARE_SPI1_BUS` is enabled. In this case, the CS line used is automatically assigned by the SPI bus lock.

Header File

- `components/spi_flash/include/esp_flash.h`

Functions

```c
esp_err_t esp_flash_init(esp_flash_t *chip)
```

Initialise SPI flash chip interface.

This function must be called before any other API functions are called for this chip.

Note: Only the `host` and `read_mode` fields of the chip structure must be initialised before this function is called. Other fields may be auto-detected if left set to zero or NULL.
Note If the chip->drv pointer is NULL, chip_driv will be auto-detected based on its manufacturer & product IDs. See esp_flash_registered_flash_drivers pointer for details of this process.

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if initialisation fails.

Parameters
- chip: Pointer to SPI flash chip to use. If NULL, esp_flash_default_chip is substituted.

bool esp_flash_chip_driver_initialized(const esp_flash_t *chip)

Check if appropriate chip driver is set.

Return true if set, otherwise false.

Parameters
- chip: Pointer to SPI flash chip to use. If NULL, esp_flash_default_chip is substituted.

esp_err_t esp_flash_read_id(esp_flash_t *chip, uint32_t *out_id)

Read flash ID via the common “RDID” SPI flash command.

ID is a 24-bit value. Lower 16 bits of ‘id’ are the chip ID, upper 8 bits are the manufacturer ID.

Parameters
- chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- [out] out_id: Pointer to receive ID value.

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

esp_err_t esp_flash_get_size(esp_flash_t *chip, uint32_t *out_size)

Detect flash size based on flash ID.

Note Most flash chips use a common format for flash ID, where the lower 4 bits specify the size as a power of 2. If the manufacturer doesn’t follow this convention, the size may be incorrectly detected.

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters
- chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- [out] out_size: Detected size in bytes.

esp_err_t esp_flash_read_unique_chip_id(esp_flash_t *chip, uint64_t *out_id)

Read flash unique ID via the common “RDUID” SPI flash command.

ID is a 64-bit value.

Parameters
- chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- [out] out_id: Pointer to receive unique ID value.

Return
- ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the chip doesn’t support read id.

esp_err_t esp_flash_erase_chip(esp_flash_t *chip)

Erase flash chip contents.

Return
- ESP_OK on success,
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the chip is not able to perform the operation. This is indicated by WREN = 1 after the command is sent.
- Other flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters
- chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()

esp_err_t esp_flash_erase_region(esp_flash_t *chip, uint32_t start, uint32_t len)

Erase a region of the flash chip.

Sector size is specified in chip->drv->sector_size field (typically 4096 bytes.) ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG will be returned if the start & length are not a multiple of this size.

Parameters
- chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- start: Address to start erasing flash. Must be sector aligned.
Chapter 2. API

• len: Length of region to erase. Must also be sector aligned.

Erase is performed using block (multi-sector) erases where possible (block size is specified in chip->drv->block_erase_size field, typically 65536 bytes). Remaining sectors are erased using individual sector erase commands.

Return
• ESP_OK on success.
• ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the chip is not able to perform the operation. This is indicated by WREN = 1 after the command is sent.
• Other flash error code if operation failed.

`esp_err_t esp_flash_get_chip_write_protect(esp_flash_t *chip, bool *write_protected)`

Read if the entire chip is write protected.

Note A correct result for this flag depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the ‘chip->drv’ field).

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters
• chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
• [out] write_protected: Pointer to boolean, set to the value of the write protect flag.

`esp_err_t esp_flash_set_chip_write_protect(esp_flash_t *chip, bool write_protect)`

Set write protection for the SPI flash chip.

Some SPI flash chips may require a power cycle before write protect status can be cleared. Otherwise, write protection can be removed via a follow-up call to this function.

Note Correct behaviour of this function depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the ‘chip->drv’ field).

Parameters
• chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
• write_protect: Boolean value for the write protect flag

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

`esp_err_t esp_flash_get_protectable_regions(const esp_flash_t *chip, const esp_flash_region_t **out_regions, uint32_t *out_num_regions)`

Read the list of individually protectable regions of this SPI flash chip.

Note Correct behaviour of this function depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the ‘chip->drv’ field).

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters
• chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
• [out] out_regions: Pointer to receive a pointer to the array of protectable regions of the chip.
• [out] out_num_regions: Pointer to an integer receiving the count of protectable regions in the array returned in ‘regions’.

`esp_err_t esp_flash_get_protected_region(esp_flash_t *chip, const esp_flash_region_t *region, bool *out_protected)`

Detect if a region of the SPI flash chip is protected.

Note It is possible for this result to be false and write operations to still fail, if protection is enabled for the entire chip.

Note Correct behaviour of this function depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the ‘chip->drv’ field).

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters
• chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
• region: Pointer to a struct describing a protected region. This must match one of the regions returned from esp_flash_get_protectable_regions(⋯).
Chapter 2. API

• [out] out_protected: Pointer to a flag which is set based on the protected status for this region.

```c
esp_err_t esp_flash_set_protected_region(esp_flash_t *chip, const esp_flash_region_t *region, bool protect)
```

Update the protected status for a region of the SPI flash chip.

**Note** It is possible for the region protection flag to be cleared and write operations to still fail, if protection is enabled for the entire chip.

**Note** Correct behaviour of this function depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the ‘chip->drv’ field).

**Return** ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

**Parameters**

- chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- region: Pointer to a struct describing a protected region. This must match one of the regions returned from esp_flash_get_protectable_regions(…).
- protect: Write protection flag to set.

```c
esp_err_t esp_flash_read(esp_flash_t *chip, void *buffer, uint32_t address, uint32_t length)
```

Read data from the SPI flash chip.

There are no alignment constraints on buffer, address or length.

**Parameters**

- chip: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- buffer: Pointer to a buffer where the data will be read. To get better performance, this should be in the DRAM and word aligned.
- address: Address on flash to read from. Must be less than chip->size field.
- length: Length (in bytes) of data to read.

**Note** If on-chip flash encryption is used, this function returns raw (ie encrypted) data. Use the flash cache to transparently decrypt data.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Buffer is in external PSRAM which cannot be concurrently accessed, and a temporary internal buffer could not be allocated.
- or a flash error code if operation failed.

```c
esp_err_t esp_flash_write_encrypted(esp_flash_t *chip, uint32_t address, const void *buffer, uint32_t length)
```

Encrypted and write data to the SPI flash chip using on-chip hardware flash encryption.

**Note** Both address & length must be 16 byte aligned, as this is the encryption block size

**Return**

- ESP_OK: on success
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: encrypted write not supported for this chip.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Either the address, buffer or length is invalid.
- or other flash error code from spi_flash_write_encrypted().

**Parameters**

- **chip**: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must be NULL (the main flash chip). For other chips, encrypted write is not supported.
- **address**: Address on flash to write to. 16 byte aligned. Must be previously erased (SPI NOR flash can only write bits 1->0).
- **buffer**: Pointer to a buffer with the data to write.
- **length**: Length (in bytes) of data to write. 16 byte aligned.

```c
esp_err_t esp_flash_write_encrypted(esp_flash_t *chip, uint32_t address, void *buffer, uint32_t length)
```

Read and decrypt data from the SPI flash chip using on-chip hardware flash encryption.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: encrypted write not supported for this chip.
- or other flash error code from spi_flash_write_encrypted().

**Parameters**

- **chip**: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must be NULL (the main flash chip). For other chips, encrypted read is not supported.
- **address**: Address on flash to read from.
- **out_buffer**: Pointer to a buffer for the data to read to.
- **length**: Length (in bytes) of data to read.

```c
static bool esp_flash_is_quad_mode(const esp_flash_t *chip)
```

Returns true if chip is configured for Quad I/O or Quad Fast Read.

**Return**

- true if flash works in quad mode, otherwise false

**Parameters**

- **chip**: Pointer to SPI flash chip to use. If NULL, esp_flash_default_chip is substituted.

**Structures**

```c
struct esp_flash_region_t
```

Structure for describing a region of flash.

**Public Members**

- **uint32_t offset**: Start address of this region.
- **uint32_t size**: Size of the region.

```c
struct esp_flash_os_functions_t
```

OS-level integration hooks for accessing flash chips inside a running OS.

It’s in the public header because some instances should be allocated statically in the startup code. May be updated according to hardware version and new flash chip feature requirements, shouldn’t be treated as public API.

For advanced developers, you may replace some of them with your implementations at your own risk.

**Public Members**

```c
esp_err_t (*start)(void *arg)
```

Called before commencing any flash operation. Does not need to be recursive (ie is called at most once for each call to ‘end’).
esp_err_t (*end) (void *arg)
   Called after completing any flash operation.

esp_err_t (*region_protected) (void *arg, size_t start_addr, size_t size)
   Called before any erase/write operations to check whether the region is limited by the OS

esp_err_t (*delay_us) (void *arg, uint32_t us)
   Delay for at least ‘us’ microseconds. Called in between ‘start’ and ‘end’.

void (*get_temp_buffer) (void *arg, size_t request_size, size_t *out_size)
   Called for get temp buffer when buffer from application cannot be directly read into/write from.

void (*release_temp_buffer) (void *arg, void *temp_buf)
   Called for release temp buffer.

esp_err_t (*check_yield) (void *arg, uint32_t chip_status, uint32_t *out_request)
   Yield to other tasks. Called during erase operations.
   Return ESP_OK means yield needs to be called (got an event to handle), while ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT means skip yield.

esp_err_t (*yield) (void *arg, uint32_t *out_status)
   Yield to other tasks. Called during erase operations.

int64_t (*get_system_time) (void *arg)
   Called for get system time.

struct esp_flash_t
   Structure to describe a SPI flash chip connected to the system.

   Structure must be initialized before use (passed to esp_flash_init()). It’s in the public header because some instances should be allocated statically in the startup code. May be updated according to hardware version and new flash chip feature requirements, shouldn’t be treated as public API.

   For advanced developers, you may replace some of them with your implementations at your own risk.

Public Members

spi_flash_host_inst_t *host
   Pointer to hardware-specific “host_driver” structure. Must be initialized before used.

const spi_flash_chip_t *chip_drv
   Pointer to chip-model-specific “adapter” structure. If NULL, will be detected during initialisation.

const esp_flash_os_functions_t *os_func
   Pointer to os-specific hook structure. Call esp_flash_init_os_functions() to setup this field, after the host is properly initialized.

void *os_func_data
   Pointer to argument for os-specific hooks. Left NULL and will be initialized with os_func.

esp_flash_io_mode_t read_mode
   Configured SPI flash read mode. Set before esp_flash_init is called.

uint32_t size
   Size of SPI flash in bytes. If 0, size will be detected during initialisation.

uint32_t chip_id
   Detected chip id.

uint32_t busy : 1
   This flag is used to verify chip’s status.

uint32_t reserved_flags : 31
   reserved.
Macros

SPI_FLASH_YIELD_REQ_YIELD
SPI_FLASH_YIELD_REQ_SUSPEND
SPI_FLASH_YIELD_STA_RESUME

Type Definitions

typedef struct spi_flash_chip_t spi_flash_chip_t
typedef struct esp_flash_t esp_flash_t

Header File

- components/hal/include/hal/spi_flash_types.h

Structures

struct spi_flash_trans_t
Definition of a common transaction. Also holds the return value.

Public Members

uint8_t reserved
Reserved, must be 0.

uint8_t mosi_len
Output data length, in bytes.

uint8_t miso_len
Input data length, in bytes.

uint8_t address_bitlen
Length of address in bits, set to 0 if command does not need an address.

uint32_t address
Address to perform operation on.

const uint8_t *mosi_data
Output data to salve.

uint8_t *miso_data
[out] Input data from slave, little endian

uint32_t flags
Flags for this transaction. Set to 0 for now.

uint16_t command
Command to send.

uint8_t dummy_bitlen
Basic dummy bits to use.

uint32_t io_mode
Flash working mode when SPI_FLASH_IGNORE_BASEIO is specified.

struct spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf
Configuration structure for the flash chip suspend feature.

Public Members

uint32_t sus_mask
SUS/SUS1/SUS2 bit in flash register.
uint32_t cmd_rdsr : 8  
Read flash status register(2) command.

uint32_t sus_cmd : 8  
Flash suspend command.

uint32_t res_cmd : 8  
Flash resume command.

uint32_t reserved : 8  
Reserved, set to 0.

struct spi_flash_encryption_t  
Structure for flash encryption operations.

**Public Members**

void (*flash_encryption_enable) (void)  
Enable the flash encryption.

void (*flash_encryption_disable) (void)  
Disable the flash encryption.

void (*flash_encryption_data_prepare) (uint32_t address, const uint32_t *buffer, uint32_t size)  
Prepare flash encryption before operation.

*Note*  
address and buffer must be 8-word aligned.

**Parameters**

- address: The destination address in flash for the write operation.
- buffer: Data for programming
- size: Size to program.

void (*flash_encryption_done) (void)  
Flash data encryption operation is done.

void (*flash_encryption_destroy) (void)  
Destroy encrypted result

bool (*flash_encryption_check) (uint32_t address, uint32_t length)  
Check if is qualified to encrypt the buffer

**Parameters**

- address: the address of written flash partition.
- length: Buffer size.

struct spi_flash_host_inst_t  
SPI Flash Host driver instance

**Public Members**

const struct spi_flash_host_driver_s *driver  
Pointer to the implementation function table.

struct spi_flash_host_driver_s  
Host driver configuration and context structure.

**Public Members**

esp_err_t (*dev_config) (spi_flash_host_inst_t *host)  
Configure the device-related register before transactions. This saves some time to re-configure those registers when we send continuously
esp_err_t (*common_command)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, spi_flash_trans_t *t)
Send an user-defined spi transaction to the device.

esp_err_t (*read_id)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, uint32_t *id)
Read flash ID.

void (*erase_chip)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host)
Erase whole flash chip.

void (*erase_sector)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, uint32_t start_address)
Erase a specific sector by its start address.

void (*erase_block)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, uint32_t start_address)
Erase a specific block by its start address.

esp_err_t (*read_status)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, uint8_t *out_sr)
Read the status of the flash chip.

esp_err_t (*set_write_protect)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, bool wp)
Disable write protection.

void (*program_page)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, const void *buffer, uint32_t address, uint32_t length)
Program a page of the flash. Check max_write_bytes for the maximum allowed writing length.

bool (*supports_direct_write)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, const void *p)
Check whether given buffer can be directly used to write

int (*write_data_slicer)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, uint32_t address, uint32_t len, uint32_t *align_addr, uint32_t page_size)
Slicer for write data. The program_page should be called iteratively with the return value of this function.

Return Length that can be actually written in one program_page call

Parameters
• address: Beginning flash address to write
• len: Length request to write
• align_addr: Output of the aligned address to write to
• page_size: Physical page size of the flash chip

esp_err_t (*read)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, void *buffer, uint32_t address, uint32_t read_len)
Read data from the flash. Check max_read_bytes for the maximum allowed reading length.

bool (*supports_direct_read)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, const void *p)
Check whether given buffer can be directly used to read

int (*read_data_slicer)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, uint32_t address, uint32_t len, uint32_t *align_addr, uint32_t page_size)
Slicer for read data. The read should be called iteratively with the return value of this function.

Return Length that can be actually read in one read call

Parameters
• address: Beginning flash address to read
• len: Length request to read
• align_addr: Output of the aligned address to read
• page_size: Physical page size of the flash chip

uint32_t (*host_status)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host)
Check the host status, 0:busy, 1:idle, 2:suspended.

esp_err_t (*configure_host_io_mode)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, uint32_t command, uint32_t addr_bitlen, int dummy_bitlen_base, esp_flash_io_mode_t io_mode)
Configure the host to work at different read mode. Responsible to compensate the timing and set IO mode.
void (*poll_cmd_done)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host)
Internal use, poll the HW until the last operation is done.

esp_err_t (*flush_cache)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, uint32_t addr, uint32_t size)
For some host (SPI1), they are shared with a cache. When the data is modified, the cache needs to be
flushed. Left NULL if not supported.

void (*check_suspend)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host)
Suspend check erase/program operation, reserved for ESP32-C3 and ESP32-S3 spi flash ROM IMPL.

void (*resume)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host)
Resume flash from suspend manually

void (*suspend)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host)
Set flash in suspend status manually

esp_err_t (*sus_setup)(spi_flash_host_inst_t *host, const spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf *sus_conf)
Suspend feature setup for setting cmd and status register mask.

Macros
SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_CMD16
Send command of 16 bits.

SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_IGNORE_BASEIO
Not applying the basic io mode configuration for this transaction.

SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_BYTE_SWAP
Used for DTR mode, to swap the bytes of a pair of rising/falling edge.

ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MIN
Lowest speed supported by the driver, currently 5 MHz.

SPI_FLASH_CONFIG_CONF_BITS
OR the io_mode with this mask, to enable the dummy output feature or replace the first several dummy bits
into address to meet the requirements of conf bits. (Used in DIO/QIO/OIO mode)

SPI_FLASH_OPI_FLAG
A flag for flash work in opi mode, the io mode below are opi, above are SPI/QSPI mode. DO NOT use this
value in any API.

SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_MIN
Slowest io mode supported by ESP32, currently SlowRd.

Type Definitions
typedef struct spi_flash_host_driver_s spi_flash_host_driver_t

Enumerations
enum esp_flash_speed_t
SPI flash clock speed values, always refer to them by the enum rather than the actual value (more speed may
be appended into the list).
A strategy to select the maximum allowed speed is to enumerate from the ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MAX-1 or
highest frequency supported by your flash, and decrease the speed until the probing success.

Values:

ESP_FLASH_5MHZ = 0
The flash runs under 5MHz.

ESP_FLASH_10MHZ
The flash runs under 10MHz.

ESP_FLASH_20MHZ
The flash runs under 20MHz.
ESP_FLASH_26MHZ
The flash runs under 26MHz.

ESP_FLASH_40MHZ
The flash runs under 40MHz.

ESP_FLASH_80MHZ
The flash runs under 80MHz.

ESP_FLASH_120MHZ
The flash runs under 120MHz. 120MHZ can only be used by main flash after timing tuning in system. Do not use this directly in any API.

ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MAX
The maximum frequency supported by the host is ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MAX-1.

enum esp_flash_io_mode_t
Mode used for reading from SPI flash.

Values:

SPI_FLASH_SLOWRD = 0
Data read using single I/O, some limits on speed.

SPI_FLASH_FASTRD
Data read using single I/O, no limit on speed.

SPI_FLASH_DOUT
Data read using dual I/O.

SPI_FLASH_DIO
Both address & data transferred using dual I/O.

SPI_FLASH_QOUT
Data read using quad I/O.

SPI_FLASH_QIO
Both address & data transferred using quad I/O.

SPI_FLASH_OPI_STR = SPI_FLASH_OPI_FLAG
Only support on OPI flash, flash read and write under STR mode.

SPI_FLASH_OPI_DTR
Only support on OPI flash, flash read and write under DTR mode.

SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_MAX
The fastest io mode supported by the host is ESP_FLASH_READ_MODE_MAX-1.

Header File

- components/spi_flash/include/esp_partition.h

Functions

esp_partition_iterator_t esp_partition_find(esp_partition_type_t type, esp_partition_subtype_t subtype, const char *label)
Find partition based on one or more parameters.

Return
Iterator which can be used to enumerate all the partitions found, or NULL if no partitions were found.

Iterator obtained through this function has to be released using esp_partition_iterator_release when not used any more.

Parameters
- type: Partition type, one of esp_partition_type_t values or an 8-bit unsigned integer. To find all partitions, no matter the type, use ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_ANY, and set subtype argument to ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_ANY.
• **subtype**: Partition subtype, one of `esp_partition_subtype_t` values or an 8-bit unsigned integer. To find all partitions of given type, use `ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_ANY`.

• **label**: (optional) Partition label. Set this value if looking for partition with a specific name. Pass NULL otherwise.

```c
const esp_partition_t *esp_partition_find_first(esp_partition_type_t type, esp_partition_subtype_t subtype, const char *label)
```

Find first partition based on one or more parameters.

**Return** pointer to `esp_partition_t` structure, or NULL if no partition is found. This pointer is valid for the lifetime of the application.

**Parameters**
- **type**: Partition type, one of `esp_partition_type_t` values or an 8-bit unsigned integer. To find all partitions, no matter the type, use `ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_ANY`, and set subtype argument to `ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_ANY`.
- **subtype**: Partition subtype, one of `esp_partition_subtype_t` values or an 8-bit unsigned integer. To find all partitions of given type, use `ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_ANY`.
- **label**: (optional) Partition label. Set this value if looking for partition with a specific name. Pass NULL otherwise.

```c
const esp_partition_t *esp_partition_get(esp_partition_iterator_t iterator)
```

Get `esp_partition_t` structure for given partition.

**Return** pointer to `esp_partition_t` structure. This pointer is valid for the lifetime of the application.

**Parameters**
- **iterator**: Iterator obtained using `esp_partition_find`. Must be non-NULL.

```c
esp_partition_iterator_t esp_partition_next(esp_partition_iterator_t iterator)
```

Move partition iterator to the next partition found.

Any copies of the iterator will be invalid after this call.

**Return** NULL if no partition was found, valid `esp_partition_iterator_t` otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **iterator**: Iterator obtained using `esp_partition_find`. Must be non-NULL.

```c
void esp_partition_iterator_release(esp_partition_iterator_t iterator)
```

Release partition iterator.

**Parameters**
- **iterator**: Iterator obtained using `esp_partition_find`. The iterator is allowed to be NULL, so it is not necessary to check its value before calling this function.

```c
const esp_partition_t *esp_partition_verify(const esp_partition_t *partition)
```

Verify partition data.

Given a pointer to partition data, verify this partition exists in the partition table (all fields match.)

This function is also useful to take partition data which may be in a RAM buffer and convert it to a pointer to the permanent partition data stored in flash.

Pointers returned from this function can be compared directly to the address of any pointer returned from `esp_partition_get()`, as a test for equality.

**Return**
- If partition not found, returns NULL.
- If found, returns a pointer to the `esp_partition_t` structure in flash. This pointer is always valid for the lifetime of the application.

**Parameters**
- **partition**: Pointer to partition data to verify. Must be non-NULL. All fields of this structure must match the partition table entry in flash for this function to return a successful match.

```c
esp_err_t esp_partition_read(const esp_partition_t *partition, size_t src_offset, void *dst, size_t size)
```

Read data from the partition.
Partitions marked with an encryption flag will automatically be read and decrypted via a cache mapping.

**Return** ESP_OK, if data was read successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if src_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if read would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**
- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `dst`: Pointer to the buffer where data should be stored. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least `size` bytes long.
- `src_offset`: Address of the data to be read, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `size`: Size of data to be read, in bytes.

```c
esp_err_t esp_partition_write(const esp_partition_t *partition, size_t dst_offset, const void *src, size_t size)
```

Write data to the partition.

Before writing data to flash, corresponding region of flash needs to be erased. This can be done using esp_partition_erase_range function.

Partitions marked with an encryption flag will automatically be written via the spi_flash_write_encrypted() function. If writing to an encrypted partition, all write offsets and lengths must be multiples of 16 bytes. See the spi_flash_write_encrypted() function for more details. Unencrypted partitions do not have this restriction.

**Note** Prior to writing to flash memory, make sure it has been erased with esp_partition_erase_range call.

**Return** ESP_OK, if data was written successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if dst_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if write would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**
- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `dst_offset`: Address where the data should be written, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `src`: Pointer to the source buffer. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least `size` bytes long.
- `size`: Size of data to be written, in bytes.

```c
esp_err_t esp_partition_write_raw(const esp_partition_t *partition, size_t dst_offset, const void *src, size_t size)
```

Write data to the partition without any transformation/encryption.

Before writing data to flash, corresponding region of flash needs to be erased. This can be done using esp_partition_erase_range function.

**Note** This function is essentially the same as esp_partition_write() above. It just never encrypts data but writes it as is.

**Return** ESP_OK, if data was written successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if src_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if read would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**
- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `src_offset`: Address of the data to be read, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `size`: Size of data to be read, in bytes.

```c
esp_err_t esp_partition_read_raw(const esp_partition_t *partition, size_t src_offset, void *dst, size_t size)
```

Read data from the partition without any transformation/decryption.

**Note** This function is essentially the same as esp_partition_read() above. It just never decrypts data but returns it as is.

**Return** ESP_OK, if data was read successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if src_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if read would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**
- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `dst_offset`: Address where the data should be written, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `src`: Pointer to the source buffer. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least `size` bytes long.
- `size`: Size of data to be written, in bytes.

```c
esp_err_t esp_partition_write_raw(const esp_partition_t *partition, size_t dst_offset, const void *src, size_t size)
```

Write data to the partition without any transformation/encryption.

Before writing data to flash, corresponding region of flash needs to be erased. This can be done using esp_partition_erase_range function.

**Note** This function is essentially the same as esp_partition_write() above. It just never encrypts data but writes it as is.

**Note** Prior to writing to flash memory, make sure it has been erased with esp_partition_erase_range call.
Return ESP_OK, if data was written successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if dst_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if write would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of the error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- partition: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- dst_offset: Address where the data should be written, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- src: Pointer to the source buffer. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least ‘size’ bytes long.
- size: Size of data to be written, in bytes.

\[ \text{esp_err_t} \ \text{esp_partition_write_range}(\text{const esp_partition_t *} \text{partition}, \text{size_t offset, size_t size}) \]

Erase part of the partition.

Return ESP_OK, if the range was erased successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if iterator or dst are NULL; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if erase would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- partition: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- offset: Offset from the beginning of partition where erase operation should start. Must be aligned to 4 kilobytes.
- size: Size of the range which should be erased, in bytes. Must be divisible by 4 kilobytes.

\[ \text{esp_err_t} \ \text{esp_partition_mmap}(\text{const esp_partition_t *} \text{partition, size_t offset, size_t size}, \text{spi_flash_mmap_memory_t memory, const void **out_ptr, spi_flash_mmap_handle_t*out_handle}) \]

Configure MMU to map partition into data memory.

Unlike spi_flash_mmap function, which requires a 64kB aligned base address, this function doesn’t impose such a requirement. If offset results in a flash address which is not aligned to 64kB boundary, address will be rounded to the lower 64kB boundary, so that mapped region includes requested range. Pointer returned via out_ptr argument will be adjusted to point to the requested offset (not necessarily to the beginning of mmap-ed region).

To release mapped memory, pass handle returned via out_handle argument to spi_flash_munmap function.

Return ESP_OK, if successful

Parameters

- partition: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- offset: Offset from the beginning of partition where mapping should start.
- size: Size of the area to be mapped.
- memory: Memory space where the region should be mapped
- out_ptr: Output, pointer to the mapped memory region
- out_handle: Output, handle which should be used for spi_flash_munmap call

\[ \text{esp_err_t} \ \text{esp_partition_get_sha256}(\text{const esp_partition_t *} \text{partition, uint8_t *sha_256}) \]

Get SHA-256 digest for required partition.

For apps with SHA-256 appended to the app image, the result is the appended SHA-256 value for the app image content. The hash is verified before returning, if app content is invalid then the function returns ESP_ERR_IMAGE_INVALID. For apps without SHA-256 appended to the image, the result is the SHA-256 of all bytes in the app image. For other partition types, the result is the SHA-256 of the entire partition.

Return

- ESP_OK: In case of successful operation.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The size was 0 or the sha_256 was NULL.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for sha256 operation.
- ESP_ERR_IMAGE_INVALID: App partition doesn’t contain a valid app image.
- ESP_FAIL: An allocation error occurred.

Parameters
• [in] partition: Pointer to info for partition containing app or data. (fields: address, size and type, are required to be filled).
• [out] sha_256: Returned SHA-256 digest for a given partition.

bool esp_partition_check_identity(const esp_partition_t *partition_1, const esp_partition_t *partition_2)

Check for the identity of two partitions by SHA-256 digest.

Return
• True: In case of the two firmware is equal.
• False: Otherwise

Parameters
• [in] partition_1: Pointer to info for partition 1 containing app or data. (fields: address, size and type, are required to be filled).
• [in] partition_2: Pointer to info for partition 2 containing app or data. (fields: address, size and type, are required to be filled).

esp_err_t esp_partition_register_external(esp_flash_t *flash_chip, size_t offset, size_t size, const char *label, esp_partition_type_t type, esp_partition_subtype_t subtype, const esp_partition_t **out_partition)

Register a partition on an external flash chip.

This API allows designating certain areas of external flash chips (identified by the esp_flash_t structure) as partitions. This allows using them with components which access SPI flash through the esp_partition API.

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL is enabled
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory allocation has failed
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the new partition overlaps another partition on the same flash chip
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if the partition doesn’t fit into the flash chip size

Parameters
• flash_chip: Pointer to the structure identifying the flash chip
• offset: Address in bytes, where the partition starts
• size: Size of the partition in bytes
• label: Partition name
• type: One of the partition types (ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_*), or an integer. Note that applications can not be booted from external flash chips, so using ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_APP is not supported.
• subtype: One of the partition subtypes (ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_*), or an integer.
• [out] out_partition: Output, if non-NULL, receives the pointer to the resulting esp_partition_t structure

esp_err_t esp_partition_deregister_external(const esp_partition_t *partition)

Deregister the partition previously registered using esp_partition_register_external.

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if the partition pointer is not found
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the partition comes from the partition table
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the partition was not registered using esp_partition_register_external function.

Parameters
• partition: pointer to the partition structure obtained from esp_partition_register_external.

Structures

struct esp_partition_t
partition information structure

This is not the format in flash, that format is esp_partition_info_t.
However, this is the format used by this API.

**Public Members**

```c
esp_flash_t *flash_chip
    SPI flash chip on which the partition resides

datatype_type_t type
    partition type (app/data)

datatype_subtype_t subtype
    partition subtype

uint32_t address
    starting address of the partition in flash

uint32_t size
    size of the partition, in bytes

cchar [17] label
    partition label, zero-terminated ASCII string

bool encrypted
    flag is set to true if partition is encrypted
```

**Macros**

```c
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_OTA (i)
    Convenience macro to get esp_partition_subtype_t value for the i-th OTA partition.
```

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef struct esp_partition_iterator_opaque_ *esp_partition_iterator_t
    Opaque partition iterator type.
```

**Enumerations**

```c
enum esp_partition_type_t
    Partition type.

Note: Partition types with integer value 0x00-0x3F are reserved for partition types defined by ESP-IDF. Any other integer value 0x40-0xFE can be used by individual applications, without restriction.

Values:

ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_APP = 0x00
    Application partition type.

ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_DATA = 0x01
    Data partition type.

ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_ANY = 0xff
    Used to search for partitions with any type.
```

```c
enum esp_partition_subtype_t
    Partition subtype.

Application-defined partition types (0x40-0xFE) can set any numeric subtype value.

Note: These ESP-IDF-defined partition subtypes apply to partitions of type ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_APP and ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_DATA.

Values:

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY = 0x00
    Factory application partition.
```
Chapter 2. API 参考

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN = 0x10
Base for OTA partition subtypes.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_0 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 0
OTA partition 0.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_1 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 1
OTA partition 1.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_2 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 2
OTA partition 2.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_3 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 3
OTA partition 3.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_4 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 4
OTA partition 4.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_5 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 5
OTA partition 5.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_6 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 6
OTA partition 6.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_7 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 7
OTA partition 7.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_8 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 8
OTA partition 8.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_9 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 9
OTA partition 9.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_10 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 10
OTA partition 10.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_11 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 11
OTA partition 11.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_12 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 12
OTA partition 12.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_13 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 13
OTA partition 13.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_14 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 14
OTA partition 14.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_15 = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 15
OTA partition 15.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MAX = ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN + 16
Max subtype of OTA partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_TEST = 0x20
Test application partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_OTA = 0x00
OTA selection partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_PHY = 0x01
PHY init data partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_NVS = 0x02
NVS partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_COREDUMP = 0x03
COREDUMP partition.
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_NVS_KEYS = 0x04
Partition for NVS keys.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_EFUSE_EM = 0x05
Partition for emulate eFuse bits.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_UNDEFINED = 0x06
Undefined (or unspecified) data partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_ESPHTTPD = 0x80
ESPHTTPD partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_FAT = 0x81
FAT partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_SPIFFS = 0x82
SPIFFS partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_ANY = 0xff
Used to search for partitions with any subtype.

Flash 加密 API 参考

Header File

- components/bootloader_support/include/esp_flash_encrypt.h

Functions

static bool esp_flash_encryption_enabled (void)
Is flash encryption currently enabled in hardware?

Return true if flash encryption is enabled.

esp_err_t esp_flash_encrypt_check_and_update (void)
Encrypt-in-place a block of flash sectors.

Note This function resets RTC_WDT between operations with sectors.

Return ESP_OK if all operations succeeded, ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL if SPI flash fails, ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT if flash times out.

Parameters

- src_addr: Source offset in flash. Should be multiple of 4096 bytes.
- data_length: Length of data to encrypt in bytes. Will be rounded up to next multiple of 4096 bytes.

void esp_flash_write_protect_crypt_cnt (void)
Write protect FLASH_CRYPT_CNT.

Intended to be called as a part of boot process if flash encryption is enabled but secure boot is not used. This should protect against serial re-flashing of an unauthorised code in absence of secure boot.

Note On ESP32 V3 only, write protecting FLASH_CRYPT_CNT will also prevent disabling UART Download Mode. If both are wanted, call esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode() before calling this function.

esp_flash_enc_mode_t esp_get_flash_encryption_mode (void)
Return the flash encryption mode.

The API is called during boot process but can also be called by application to check the current flash encryption mode of ESP32

Return
void esp_flash_encryption_init_checks (void)
Check the flash encryption mode during startup.

Verifies the flash encryption config during startup:

Note This function is called automatically during app startup, it doesn’t need to be called from the app.
- Correct any insecure flash encryption settings if hardware Secure Boot is enabled.
- Log warnings if the efuse config doesn’t match the project config in any way

esp_err_t esp_flash_encryption_enable_secure_features (void)
Set all secure eFuse features related to flash encryption.
Return • ESP_OK - Successfully

void esp_flash_encryption_set_release_mode (void)
Switches Flash Encryption from “Development” to “Release”.
If already in “Release” mode, the function will do nothing. If flash encryption efuse is not enabled yet then abort. It burns:
- ” disable encrypt in dl mode”
- set FLASH_CRYPT_CNT efuse to max

Enumerations
enum esp_flash_enc_mode_t
Values:
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_DISABLED
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_DEVELOPMENT
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_RELEASE

2.6.7 SPIFFS 文件系统

概述
SPIFFS 是一个用于 SPI NOR flash 设备的嵌入式文件系统，支持磨损均衡。文件系统一致性检查等功能。

说明
- 目前，SPIFFS 尚不支持目录，但可以生成扁平结构。如果 SPIFFS 挂载在 /spiffs 下，可 /spiffs/
tmp/myfile.txt 路径下创建一个文件则会在 SPIFFS 中生成一个名为 /tmp/myfile.txt 的文
件，而不是在 /spiffs/tmp 下生成名为 myfile.txt 的文件；
- SPIFFS 并非实时找，每次写操作耗时不等；
- 目前，SPIFFS 尚不支持检测或处理已损坏的块。
- SPIFFS 只能稳定地使用约 75% 的指定分区容量。
- 当文件系统空间不足时，垃圾收集器会尝试多次扫描文件系统来寻找可用空间。根据所需空间的
不同，写操作会被调用多次，每次函数调用将花费几秒。同一操作可能会花费不同时长的问题缘
于 SPIFFS 的设计，且已在官方的 SPIFFS github 仓库 或是 <https://github.com/espressif/esp-idf/issues/
1737> 中被多次报告。这个问题可以通过 SPIFFS 配置部分缓解。
- 被删除文件通常不会被完全清除，会在文件系统中遗留下无法使用的部分。

工具
spiffsgen.py  spiffsgen.py:

python spiffsgen.py <image_size> <base_dir> <output_file>
参数（必选）说明如下：

- image_size：分区大小，用于烧录生成的 SPIFFS 镜像；
- base_dir：创建 SPIFFS 镜像的目录；
- output_file：SPIFFS 镜像输出文件。

其他参数（可选）也参与控制镜像的生成，用户可以运行以下帮助命令，查看这些参数的具体信息：

```
python spiffsgen.py --help
```

上述可选参数对应 SPIFFS 构建配置选项。若想顺利生成可用的镜像，请确保使用的参数或配置与构建SPIFFS 时所用的参数或配置相同，运行帮助命令将显示所对应的 SPIFFS 构建配置。如未指定参数，将使用帮助信息中的默认值。

镜像生成后，用户可以使用 esptool.py 或 parttool.py 烧录镜像。

用户可以在命令行开开发环境中调用 spiffsgen.py，也可以直接从构建系统调用 spiffs_create_partition_image 来使用 spiffsgen.py，例如：

```
spiffs_create_partition_image(<partition> <base_dir> [FLASH_IN_PROJECT] [DEPENDS... __dep dep dep dep ...])
```

在构建系统中使用 spiffsgen.py 更为方便，构建配置会自动传递给 spiffsgen.py 工具，确保生成的镜像可用于构建。比如，单独调用 spiffsgen.py 时需要用到 image_size 参数，但在构建系统中调用 spiffs_create_partition_image 时，仅需要 partition 参数。镜像大小将直接从工程分区表中获取。

使用 spiffs_create_partition_image，必须从组件 CMakeLists.txt 文件调用。

用户也可以指定 FLASH_IN_PROJECT，然后使用 idf.py flash 将镜像与应用程序二进制文件、分区表等一起自动烧录至设备，例如：

```
spiffs_create_partition_image(my_spiffs_partition my_folder FLASH_IN_PROJECT)
```

不指定 FLASH_IN_PROJECT/SPIFFS_IMAGE_FLASH_INPROJECT 也可以生成镜像，但须使用 esptool.py、parttool.py 或自定义构建系统手动烧录。

有时基本目录中的内容是在构建时生成的，用户可以使用 DEPENDS/SPIFFS_IMAGE_DEPENDS 指定目标，因此可以在生成镜像之前执行此目标：

```
add_custom_target(dep COMMAND ...)
spiffs_create_partition_image(my_spiffs_partition my_folder DEPENDS dep)
```

请参考 storage/spiffsgen，查看示例。

**mkspiffs** 用户也可以使用 mkspiffs 工具创建 SPIFFS 分区镜像，与 spiffsgen.py 相似，mkspiffs 也可以用于从指定文件夹中生成镜像，然后使用 esptool.py 烧录镜像。

该工具需要获取以下参数：

- Block Size：4096（SPI flash 标准）
- Page Size：256（SPI flash 标准）
- Image Size：分区大小（以字节为单位，可从分区表中获取）
- Partition Offset：分区起始地址（可从分区表中获取）

运行以下命令，将文件夹打包成 1 MB 大小的镜像：

```
mkspiffs -c [src_folder] -b 4096 -p 256 -s 0x100000 spiffs.bin
```

运行以下命令，将镜像烧录到 ESP32（偏移量：0x110000）：

```
python esptool.py --chip esp32 --port [port] --baud [baud] write_flash -z 0x110000_\n--spiffs.bin
```
选择合适的 SPIFFS 工具

上面介绍的两款 SPIFFS 工具功能相似，需根据实际情况，选择合适的一款。

以下情况优先选用 spiffsgen.py 工具：

1. 仅需在构建时简单生成 SPIFFS 镜像，请选择使用 spiffsgen.py，因为 spiffsgen.py 可以直接在构建系统中使用函数或命令生成 SPIFFS 镜像。
2. 主机没有可用的 C/C+ 编译器时，可以选择使用 spiffsgen.py 工具，因为 spiffsgen.py 不需要编译。

以下情况优先选用 mkspiffs 工具：

1. 如果用户除了需要生成镜像外，还需要拆包 SPIFFS 镜像，请选择使用 mkspiffs 工具，因为 spiffsgen.py 目前尚不支持此功能。
2. 如果用户当前环境中 Python 解释器不可用，但主机编译器可用，或者有预编译的 mkspiffs 二进制文件，此时请选择使用 mkspiffs 工具。但是，mkspiffs 本身没有集成到构建系统，用户必须自己完成以下工作：在构建期间编译 mkspiffs（如果未使用预编译的二进制文件），为输出文件创建构建规则或目标，将适当的参数传递给工具等。

另请参阅

- 分区表

应用示例

storage/spiffs 目录下提供了 SPIFFS 应用示例。该示例初始化并挂载了一个 SPIFFS 分区，然后使用 POSIX 和 C 库 API 写入和读取数据。请参考 example 目录下的 README.md 文件，获取详细信息。

高级 API 参考

Header File

- components/spiffs/include/esp_spiffs.h

Functions

**esp_err_t esp_vfs_spiffs_register(const esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t *conf)**

Register and mount SPIFFS to VFS with given path prefix.

**Return**

- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if objects could not be allocated
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already mounted or partition is encrypted
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if partition for SPIFFS was not found
- ESP_FAIL if mount or format fails

**Parameters**

- conf: Pointer to esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t configuration structure

**esp_err_t esp_vfs_spiffs_unregister(const char *partition_label)**

Unregister and unmount SPIFFS from VFS

**Return**

- ESP_OK if successful
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE already unregistered

**Parameters**

- partition_label: Same label as passed to esp_vfs_spiffs_register.

**bool esp_spiffs_mounted(const char *partition_label)**

Check if SPIFFS is mounted

**Return**

- true if mounted
- false if not mounted
Parameters
  * partition_label: Optional, label of the partition to check. If not specified, first partition with subtype=spiffs is used.

```c
esp_err_t esp_spiffs_format(const char *partition_label)
```
Format the SPIFFS partition

Return
  * ESP_OK if successful
  * ESP_FAIL on error

Parameters
  * partition_label: Same label as passed to esp_vfs_spiffs_register.

```c
esp_err_t esp_spiffs_info(const char *partition_label, size_t *total_bytes, size_t *used_bytes)
```
Get information for SPIFFS

Return
  * ESP_OK if success
  * ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not mounted

Parameters
  * partition_label: Same label as passed to esp_vfs_spiffs_register
  * [out] total_bytes: Size of the file system
  * [out] used_bytes: Current used bytes in the file system

Structures
```c
struct esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t
```
Configuration structure for esp_vfs_spiffs_register.

Public Members
```c
const char *base_path
```
File path prefix associated with the filesystem.

```c
const char *partition_label
```
Optional, label of SPIFFS partition to use. If set to NULL, first partition with subtype=spiffs will be used.

```c
size_t max_files
```
Maximum files that could be open at the same time.

```c
bool format_if_mount_failed
```
If true, it will format the file system if it fails to mount.

### 2.6.8 虚拟文件系统组件

**概述**

虚拟文件系统 (VFS) 组件可为一些驱动提供一个统一接口。有了该接口，用户可像操作普通文件一样操作虚拟文件。这类驱动程序可以是 FAT、SPIFFS 等真实文件系统，也可以是与文件类接口的设备驱动程序。

VFS 组件支持 C 库函数（如 fopen 和 fprintf 等）与文件系统 (FS) 驱动程序协同工作。在高层级，每个 FS 驱动程序均与某些路径前缀相关联。当一个 C 库函数需要打开文件时，VFS 组件将搜索与该文件所在文件路径相关联的 FS 驱动程序，并将调用传递给该驱动程序。针对该文件的读取、写入等其他操作的调用也将传递给该驱动程序。

例如，您可以使用 /fat 前缀注册 FAT 文件系统驱动，之后即可调用 fopen("/fat/file.txt", "w")。之后，VFS 将调用 FAT 驱动的 open 函数，并将参数 /file.txt 和合适的打开模式传递给 open 函数；后续对返回的 FILE* 数据流调用 C 库函数也同样会传递给 FAT 驱动。
注册 FS 驱动程序

如需注册 FS 驱动程序，首先要定义一个 esp_vfs_t 结构体实例，并用指向 FS API 的函数指针填充它。

```c
esp_vfs_t myfs = {
    .flags = ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT,
    .write = &myfs_write,
    .open = &myfs_open,
    .fstat = &myfs_fstat,
    .close = &myfs_close,
    .read = &myfs_read,
};
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_vfs_register("/data", &myfs, NULL));
```

在上述代码中需要用到 read, write 或 read_p, write_p，具体使用哪组函数由 FS 驱动程序 API 的声明方式决定。

示例 1：声明 API 函数时不带额外的上下文指针参数，即 FS 驱动程序为单例模式，此时使用 write

```c
ssize_t myfs_write(int fd, const void *data, size_t size);
// In definition of esp_vfs_t:
    .flags = ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT,
    .write = &myfs_write,
// ... other members initialized
// When registering FS, context pointer (third argument) is NULL:
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_vfs_register("/data", &myfs, NULL));
```

示例 2：声明 API 函数时需要一个额外的上下文指针作为参数，即可支持多个 FS 驱动程序实例，此时使用 write_p

```c
ssize_t myfs_write(myfs_t* fs, int fd, const void *data, size_t size);
// In definition of esp_vfs_t:
    .flags = ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR,
    .write_p = &myfs_write,
// ... other members initialized
// When registering FS, pass the FS context pointer into the third argument
// (hypothetical myfs_mount function is used for illustrative purposes)
myfs_t* myfs_inst1 = myfs_mount(partition1->offset, partition1->size);
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_vfs_register("/data", &myfs, NULL));

myfs_t* myfs_inst2 = myfs_mount(partition2->offset, partition2->size);
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_vfs_register("/data", &myfs, NULL));
```

同步输入/输出多路复用 如需通过 select() 使用同步输入/输出多路复用，首先需要把 start_select() 和 end_select() 注册到 VFS，如下所示:

```c
// In definition of esp_vfs_t:
    .start_select = &uart_start_select,
    .end_select = &uart_end_select,
// ... other members initialized
```

调用 start_select() 设置环境，用以检测某一 VFS 文件描述符的读取/写入/错误条件。调用 end_select() 终止、析构或释放 start_select() 设置的资源。请在 vfs/vfs_uart.c 中查看 UART 外设参考实现，esp_vfs_dev_uart_register()、uart_start_select() 和 uart_end_select() 函数。
请参考以下示例，查看如何使用 VFS 文件描述符调用 `select()`:

- `peripherals/uart/uart_select`
- `system/select`

如果 `select()` 用于套接字文件描述符，您可以启用 `CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT` 选项来减少代码量，提高性能。

路径

已注册的 FS 驱动程序均有一个路径前缀与之关联，此路径前缀即为分区的挂载点。

如果挂载点中嵌套了其他挂载点，则在打开文件时使用具有最长匹配路径前缀的挂载点。例如，假设以下文件系统已在 VFS 中注册:

- 在 `data` 下注册 FS 驱动程序 1
- 在 `data/static` 下注册 FS 驱动程序 2

那么:

- 打开 `/data/log.txt` 会调用驱动程序 FS 1;
- 打开 `/data/static/index.html` 会调用 FS 驱动程序 2;
- 即使 FS 驱动程序 2 中没有 `/index.html`，也不会在 FS 驱动程序 1 中查找 `/static/index.html`。

挂载点名称必须以路径分隔符 (`/`) 开头，且分隔符后至少包含一个字符。但在以下情况中，VFS 同样支持空的挂载点名称：
1. 应用程序需要提供一个“下使用的文件系统”；
2. 应用程序需要同时覆盖 VFS 功能。如果没有与路径匹配的前缀，就会使用到这种文件系统。

VFS 不会对路径中的点 (`.`) 进行特殊处理，也不会将 `..` 视为相对目录的引用。在上述示例中，使用 `/data/static/.../log.txt` 路径不会调用 FS 驱动程序 1 打开 `/log.txt`。特定的 FS 驱动程序（如 FATFS）可能以不同的方式处理文件名中的点。

执行打开文件操作时，FS 驱动程序仅得到文件的相对路径（挂载点前缀已经被去除）:

1. 以 `/data` 为路径前缀注解 mysfs 驱动;
2. 应用程序调用 fopen("/data/config.json", ..);
3. mysfs 调用 myfs_open("/config.json", ..);
4. mysfs 驱动打开 `/config.json` 文件。

VFS 对文件路径长度没有限制，但文件系统路径前缀受 ESP_VFS_PATH_MAX 限制。即路径前缀上限为 ESP_VFS_PATH_MAX。各个文件系统驱动则可能会对自已的文件名长度设置一些限制。

文件描述符

文件描述符是一组很小的正整数，从 0 到 FD_SETSIZE - 1。FD_SETSIZE 在 `newlib/sys/types.h` 中定义。最大文件描述符由 `CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_SOCKETS` 定义，且为套接字保留。VFS 中包含一个名为 `s_fd_table` 的查找表，用于将全局文件描述符映射至 `s_vfs` 数组中注册的 VFS 驱动索引。

标准 IO 流 (stdin, stdout, stderr)

如果 `menuconfig` 中 UART for console output 选项没有设置为 None，则 stdin, stdout 和 stderr 将默认从 UART 读取或写入。UART0 或 UART1 可用作标准 IO。默认情况下，UART0 使用 115200 波特率，TX 管脚为 GPIO1，RX 管脚为 GPIO3。您可以在 `menuconfig` 中更改上述参数。

对 stdout 或 stderr 执行写入操作将会向 UART 发送 FIFO 发送字符，对 stdin 执行读取操作则会从 UART 接收 FIFO 中取出字符。

默认情况下，VFS 使用简单的函数对 UART 进行读写操作。在所有数据放进 UART FIFO 之前，写操作将处于 busy-wait 状态。读操作处于非阻塞状态，仅返回 FIFO 中已有数据。由于读操作为非阻塞，高层级 C 库函数调用（如 `fscanf("%d\n", &var);`）可能获取不到所需结果。
如果应用程序使用 UART 驱动，则可以调用 esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_driver 函数来指导 VFS 使用
驱动中断、读写阻塞功能等。您也可以调用 esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_nonblocking 来恢复非阻塞
函数。

VFS 还为输入和输出提供换行符转换功能（可选）。多数应用程序在程序内部发送或接收以
LF（‘n’）结尾的行，但不同的终端程序可能需要不同的换行符，比如 CR 或 CRLF。应
用程序可以通过 menuconfig 或者调用 esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_rx_line_endings 和
esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_tx_line_endings 为输入输出配置换行符。

标准流和 FreeRTOS 任务 stdin、stdout 和 stderr 的 FILE 对象在所有 FreeRTOS 任务之间共享，
指向这些对象的指针分别存储在每个任务的 struct __reent 中。

预处理器把如下代码：

```c
fprintf(stderr, "42\n");
```

解释为：

```c
fprintf(__getreent()->stderr, "42\n");
```

其中 __getreent() 函数为每个任务返回一个指向 struct __reent 的指针。每个任务的 TCB 均拥
有一个 struct __reent 结构体，任务初始化后，struct __reent 结构体中的 __stdin、__stdout 和
__stderr 将会被赋予 __GLOBAL_REENT 中 __stdin、__stdout 和 __stderr 的值，__GLOBAL_REENT 即
为 FreeRTOS 启动之前所用结构体。

这样设计带来的结果是：
- 允许重定向给定任务的 stdin，stdout 和 stderr，而不影响其他任务，例如通过 stdin =
  fopen("/dev/uart/1", "r");
- 但使用 fclose 关闭默认 stdin，stdout 或 stderr 将同时关闭相应的 FILE 流对象，因此会影
  响其他任务；
- 如需更改新任务的默认 stdin，stdout 和 stderr 流，请在创建新任务之前修改
  __GLOBAL_REENT->__stdin(__stdout，__stderr)。

应用示例

指南（未完成）

API 参考

Header File

- components/vfs/include/esp_vfs.h

Functions

- ssize_t esp_vfs_write(struct __reent *, int fd, const void *data, size_t size)
  这些函数是用于在 newlib syscall 表的。它们将被 newlib 调用。当 newlib 需要使用
  该 syscall 时。
- off_t esp_vfs_lseek(struct __reent *, int fd, off_t size, int mode)
- ssize_t esp_vfs_read(struct __reent *, int fd, void *dst, size_t size)
- int esp_vfs_open(struct __reent *, const char *path, int flags, int mode)
- int esp_vfs_close(struct __reent *, int fd)
- int esp_vfs_fstat(struct __reent *, int fd, struct stat *st)
- int esp_vfs_stat(struct __reent *, const char *path, struct stat *st)
- int esp_vfs_link(struct __reent *, const char *n1, const char *n2)
esp_err_t esp_vfs_unregister(char *base_path)
Unregister a virtual filesystem for given path prefix
Return ESP_OK if successful, ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if VFS for given prefix hasn’t been registered
Parameters
• base_path: file prefix previously used in esp_vfs_register call

esp_err_t esp_vfs_unregister_with_id(esp_vfs_id_t vfs_id)
Unregister a virtual filesystem with the given index
Return ESP_OK if successful, ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if VFS for the given index hasn’t been registered
Parameters
• vfs_id: The VFS ID returned by esp_vfs_register_with_id
esp_err_t esp_vfs_register_fd(esp_vfs_id_t vfs_id, int *fd)
Special function for registering another file descriptor for a VFS registered by esp_vfs_register_with_id.

Return ESP_OK if the registration is successful, ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if too many file descriptors are registered, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the arguments are incorrect.

Parameters
- vfs_id: VFS identificator returned by esp_vfs_register_with_id.
- fd: The registered file descriptor will be written to this address.

esp_err_t esp_vfs_register_fd_with_local_fd(esp_vfs_id_t vfs_id, int local_fd, bool permanent, int *fd)
Special function for registering another file descriptor with given local_fd for a VFS registered by esp_vfs_register_with_id.

Return ESP_OK if the registration is successful, ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if too many file descriptors are registered, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the arguments are incorrect.

Parameters
- vfs_id: VFS identificator returned by esp_vfs_register_with_id.
- local_fd: The fd in the local vfs. Passing -1 will set the local_fd as the (*fd) value.
- permanent: Whether the fd should be treated as permanent (not removed after close())
- fd: The registered file descriptor will be written to this address.

esp_err_t esp_vfs_unregister_fd(esp_vfs_id_t vfs_id, int fd)
Special function for unregistering a file descriptor belonging to a VFS registered by esp_vfs_register_with_id.

Return ESP_OK if the registration is successful, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the arguments are incorrect.

Parameters
- vfs_id: VFS identificator returned by esp_vfs_register_with_id.
- fd: File descriptor which should be unregistered.

int esp_vfs_select(int nfds, fd_set *readfds, fd_set *writefds, fd_set *errorfds, struct timeval *timeout)
Synchronous I/O multiplexing which implements the functionality of POSIX select() for VFS.

Return The number of descriptors set in the descriptor sets, or -1 when an error (specified by errno) have occurred.

Parameters
- nfds: Specifies the range of descriptors which should be checked. The first nfds descriptors will be checked in each set.
- readfds: If not NULL, then points to a descriptor set that on input specifies which descriptors should be checked for being ready to read, and on output indicates which descriptors are ready to read.
- writefds: If not NULL, then points to a descriptor set that on input specifies which descriptors should be checked for being ready to write, and on output indicates which descriptors are ready to write.
- errorfds: If not NULL, then points to a descriptor set that on input specifies which descriptors should be checked for error conditions, and on output indicates which descriptors have error conditions.
- timeout: If not NULL, then points to timeval structure which specifies the time period after which the functions should time-out and return. If it is NULL, then the function will not time-out. Note that the timeout period is rounded up to the system tick and incremented by one.

void esp_vfs_select_triggered(esp_vfs_select_sem_t sem)
Notification from a VFS driver about a read/write/error condition.

This function is called when the VFS driver detects a read/write/error condition as it was requested by the previous call to start_select.

Parameters
- sem: semaphore structure which was passed to the driver by the start_select call

void esp_vfs_select_triggered_isr(esp_vfs_select_sem_t sem, BaseType_t *woken)
Notification from a VFS driver about a read/write/error condition (ISR version)
This function is called when the VFS driver detects a read/write/error condition as it was requested by the previous call to start_select.

**Parameters**
- `sem`: semaphore structure which was passed to the driver by the start_select call
- `woken`: is set to pdTRUE if the function wakes up a task with higher priority

```c
ssize_t esp_vfs_pread(int fd, void *dst, size_t size, off_t offset)
```

Implements the VFS layer of POSIX `pread()`

**Return** A positive return value indicates the number of bytes read. -1 is return on failure and errno is set accordingly.

**Parameters**
- `fd`: File descriptor used for read
- `dst`: Pointer to the buffer where the output will be written
- `size`: Number of bytes to be read
- `offset`: Starting offset of the read

```c
ssize_t esp_vfs_pwrite(int fd, const void *src, size_t size, off_t offset)
```

Implements the VFS layer of POSIX `pwrite()`

**Return** A positive return value indicates the number of bytes written. -1 is return on failure and errno is set accordingly.

**Parameters**
- `fd`: File descriptor used for write
- `src`: Pointer to the buffer from where the output will be read
- `size`: Number of bytes to write
- `offset`: Starting offset of the write

**Structures**

```c
struct esp_vfs_select_sem_t
```

VFS semaphore type for `select()`

**Public Members**

```c
bool is_sem_local
```

`type of “sem” is SemaphoreHandle_t when true, defined by socket driver otherwise`

```c
void *sem
```

semaphore instance

```c
struct esp_vfs_t
```

VFS definition structure.

This structure should be filled with pointers to corresponding FS driver functions.

VFS component will translate all FDs so that the filesystem implementation sees them starting at zero. The caller sees a global FD which is prefixed with an pre-filesystem-implementation.

Some FS implementations expect some state (e.g. pointer to some structure) to be passed in as a first argument. For these implementations, populate the members of this structure which have _p suffix, set flags member to `ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR` and provide the context pointer to `esp_vfs_register` function. If the implementation doesn’t use this extra argument, populate the members without _p suffix and set flags member to `ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT`.

If the FS driver doesn’t provide some of the functions, set corresponding members to NULL.

**Public Members**

```c
int flags
```

`ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR` or `ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT`
**Chapter 2. API 参考**

ssize_t (*write_p)(void *p, int fd, const void *data, size_t size)
  Write with context pointer

ssize_t (*write)(int fd, const void *data, size_t size)
  Write without context pointer

off_t (*lseek_p)(void *p, int fd, off_t size, int mode)
  Seek with context pointer

off_t (*lseek)(int fd, off_t size, int mode)
  Seek without context pointer

ssize_t (*read_p)(void *ctx, int fd, void *dst, size_t size)
  Read with context pointer

ssize_t (*read)(int fd, void *dst, size_t size)
  Read without context pointer

ssize_t (*pread_p)(void *ctx, int fd, void *dst, size_t size, off_t offset)
  pread with context pointer

ssize_t (*pread)(int fd, void *dst, size_t size, off_t offset)
  pread without context pointer

ssize_t (*pwrite_p)(void *ctx, int fd, const void *src, size_t size, off_t offset)
  pwrite with context pointer

ssize_t (*pwrite)(int fd, const void *src, size_t size, off_t offset)
  pwrite without context pointer

int (*open_p)(void *ctx, const char *path, int flags, int mode)
  open with context pointer

int (*open)(const char *path, int flags, int mode)
  open without context pointer

int (*close_p)(void *ctx, int fd)
  close with context pointer

int (*close)(int fd)
  close without context pointer

int (*fstat_p)(void *ctx, int fd, struct stat *st)
  fstat with context pointer

int (*fstat)(int fd, struct stat *st)
  fstat without context pointer

int (*stat_p)(void *ctx, const char *path, struct stat *st)
  stat with context pointer

int (*stat)(const char *path, struct stat *st)
  stat without context pointer

int (*link_p)(void *ctx, const char *n1, const char *n2)
  link with context pointer

int (*link)(const char *n1, const char *n2)
  link without context pointer

int (*unlink_p)(void *ctx, const char *path)
  unlink with context pointer

int (*unlink)(const char *path)
  unlink without context pointer

int (*rename_p)(void *ctx, const char *src, const char *dst)
  rename with context pointer

Submit Document Feedback

Espressif Systems 1165 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
int (*rename)(const char *src, const char *dst)
rename without context pointer

DIR *(*opendir_p)(void *ctx, const char *name)
opendir with context pointer

DIR *(*opendir)(const char *name)
opendir without context pointer

struct dirent *(*readdir_p)(void *ctx, DIR *pdir)
readdir with context pointer

struct dirent *(*readdir)(DIR *pdir)
readdir without context pointer

int (*readdir_r_p)(void *ctx, DIR *pdir, struct dirent *entry, struct dirent **out_dirent)
readdir_r with context pointer

int (*readdir_r)(DIR *pdir, struct dirent *entry, struct dirent **out_dirent)
readdir_r without context pointer

long (*telldir_p)(void *ctx, DIR *pdir)
telldir with context pointer

long (*telldir)(DIR *pdir)
telldir without context pointer

void (*seekdir_p)(void *ctx, DIR *pdir, long offset)
seekdir with context pointer

void (*seekdir)(DIR *pdir, long offset)
seekdir without context pointer

int (*closedir_p)(void *ctx, DIR *pdir)
closedir with context pointer

int (*closedir)(DIR *pdir)
closedir without context pointer

int (*mkdir_p)(void *ctx, const char *name, mode_t mode)
mkdir with context pointer

int (*mkdir)(const char *name, mode_t mode)
mkdir without context pointer

int (*rmkdir_p)(void *ctx, const char *name)
rmkdir with context pointer

int (*rmkdir)(const char *name)
rmkdir without context pointer

int (*fctl_p)(void *ctx, int fd, int cmd, int arg)
fctl with context pointer

int (*fctl)(int fd, int cmd, int arg)
fctl without context pointer

int (*ioctl_p)(void *ctx, int fd, int cmd, va_list args)
ioctl with context pointer

int (*ioctl)(int fd, int cmd, va_list args)
ioctl without context pointer

int (*fsync_p)(void *ctx, int fd)
fsync with context pointer

int (*fsync)(int fd)
fsync without context pointer
int (*access_p) (void *ctx, const char *path, int amode)
   access with context pointer

int (*access) (const char *path, int amode)
   access without context pointer

int (*truncate_p) (void *ctx, const char *path, off_t length)
   truncate with context pointer

int (*truncate) (const char *path, off_t length)
   truncate without context pointer

int (*utime_p) (void *ctx, const char *path, const struct utimbuf *times)
   utime with context pointer

int (*utime) (const char *path, const struct utimbuf *times)
   utime without context pointer

int (*tcsetattr_p) (void *ctx, int fd, int optional_actions, const struct termios *p)
   tcsetattr with context pointer

int (*tcsetattr) (int fd, int optional_actions, const struct termios *p)
   tcsetattr without context pointer

int (*tcgetattr_p) (void *ctx, int fd, const struct termios *p)
   tcgetattr with context pointer

int (*tcgetattr) (int fd, const struct termios *p)
   tcgetattr without context pointer

int (*tcdrain_p) (void *ctx, int fd)
   tcdrain with context pointer

int (*tcdrain) (int fd)
   tcdrain without context pointer

int (*tcflush_p) (void *ctx, int fd, int select)
   tcflush with context pointer

int (*tcflush) (int fd, int select)
   tcflush without context pointer

int (*tcflow_p) (void *ctx, int fd, int action)
   tcflow with context pointer

int (*tcflow) (int fd, int action)
   tcflow without context pointer

pid_t (*tcgetsid_p) (void *ctx, int fd)
   tcgetsid with context pointer

pid_t (*tcgetsid) (int fd)
   tcgetsid without context pointer

int (*tcsendbreak_p) (void *ctx, int fd, int duration)
   tcsendbreak with context pointer

int (*tcsendbreak) (int fd, int duration)
   tcsendbreak without context pointer

esp_err_t (*start_select) (int nfds, fd_set *readfds, fd_set *writefds, fd_set *exceptfds,
                           esp_vfs_select_sem *sem, void **end_select_args)
   start_select is called for setting up synchronous I/O multiplexing of the desired file descriptors in
   the given VFS

int (*socket_select) (int nfds, fd_set *readfds, fd_set *writefds, fd_set *errorfds, struct timeval *timeout)
   socket select function for socket FDs with the functionality of POSIX select(); this should be set only for
   the socket VFS
void (*stop_socket_select)(void *sem)
called by VFS to interrupt the socket_select call when select is activated from a non-socket VFS driver;
set only for the socket driver

void (*stop_socket_select_isr)(void *sem, BaseType_t *woken)
stop_socket_select which can be called from ISR; set only for the socket driver

void *(*get_socket_select_semaphore)(void)
end_select is called to stop the I/O multiplexing and deinitialize the environment created by start_select
for the given VFS

esp_err_t (*end_select)(void *end_select_args)
get_socket_select_semaphore returns semaphore allocated in the socket driver; set only for the socket
driver

Macros

MAX_FDS
Maximum number of (global) file descriptors.

ESP_VFS_PATH_MAX
Maximum length of path prefix (not including zero terminator)

ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT
Default value of flags member in esp_vfs_t structure.

ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR
Flag which indicates that FS needs extra context pointer in syscalls.

Type Definitions
typedef int esp_vfs_id_t

Header File

• components/vfs/include/esp_vfs_dev.h

Functions

void esp_vfs_dev_uart_register (void)
add /dev/uart virtual filesystem driver

This function is called from startup code to enable serial output

void esp_vfs_dev_uart_set_rx_line_endings(esp_line_endings_t mode)
Set the line endings expected to be received on UART.

This specifies the conversion between line endings received on UART and newlines (‘
’, LF) passed into
stdin:

• ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CRLF: convert CRLF to LF
• ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CR: convert CR to LF
• ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_LF: no modification

Note this function is not thread safe w.r.t. reading from UART

Parameters
• mode: line endings expected on UART

void esp_vfs_dev_uart_set_tx_line_endings (esp_line_endings_t mode)
Set the line endings to sent to UART.

This specifies the conversion between newlines (‘
’, LF) on stdout and line endings sent over UART:

• ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CRLF: convert LF to CRLF
• ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CR: convert LF to CR
• ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_LF: no modification
**Chapter 2. API**

### Note

This function is not thread safe w.r.t. writing to UART

**Parameters**

- **mode**: line endings to send to UART

```c
int esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_rx_line_endings(int uart_num, esp_line_endings_t mode)
```

Set the line endings expected to be received on specified UART.

This specifies the conversion between line endings received on UART and newlines (‘
’, LF) passed into stdin:

- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CRLF: convert CRLF to LF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CR: convert CR to LF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_LF: no modification

**Note** this function is not thread safe w.r.t. reading from UART

**Return** 0 if succeeded, or -1 when an error (specified by errno) have occurred.

**Parameters**

- **uart_num**: the UART number
- **mode**: line endings to send to UART

### int esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_tx_line_endings

Set the line endings to sent to specified UART.

This specifies the conversion between newlines (‘
’, LF) on stdout and line endings sent over UART:

- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CRLF: convert LF to CRLF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CR: convert LF to CR
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_LF: no modification

**Note** this function is not thread safe w.r.t. writing to UART

**Return** 0 if succeeded, or -1 when an error (specified by errno) have occurred.

**Parameters**

- **uart_num**: the UART number
- **mode**: line endings to send to UART

### void esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_nonblocking

set VFS to use simple functions for reading and writing UART Read is non-blocking, write is busy waiting until TX FIFO has enough space. These functions are used by default.

**Parameters**

- **uart_num**: UART peripheral number

### void esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_driver

set VFS to use UART driver for reading and writing

**Note** application must configure UART driver before calling these functions With these functions, read and write are blocking and interrupt-driven.

**Parameters**

- **uart_num**: UART peripheral number

### void esp_vfs_usb_serial_jtag_use_driver

set VFS to use USB-Serial-JTAG driver for reading and writing

**Note** application must configure USB-Serial-JTAG driver before calling these functions With these functions, read and write are blocking and interrupt-driven.

### void esp_vfs_usb_serial_jtag_use_nonblocking

set VFS to use simple functions for reading and writing UART Read is non-blocking, write is busy waiting until TX FIFO has enough space. These functions are used by default.

**2.6.9 磨損均衡 API**
概述

ESP32 所使用的 flash，特别是 SPI flash 多数具备扇区结构，且每个扇区仅允许有限次数的擦除/修改操作。为了避免过度使用某一扇区，乐鑫提供了磨损均衡组件，无需用户介入即可帮助用户均衡各个扇区之间的磨损。

磨损均衡组件包含了通过分区组件对外部 SPI flash 进行数据读取、写入、擦除和存储器映射相关的 API 函数。磨损均衡组件还具有软件上更高级别的 API 函数，与 FAT 文件系统 协同工作。

磨损均衡组件与 FAT 文件系统组件共用 FAT 文件系统的扇区。扇区大小为 4096 字节，是标准 flash 扇区的大小。在这种模式下，磨损均衡组件性能达到最佳，但需要在 RAM 中占用更多内存。

为了节省内存，磨损均衡组件还提供了另外两种模式，均使用 512 字节大小的扇区：

- **性能模式**：将数据保存在 RAM 中，擦除扇区，然后将数据存储回 flash。如果设备在扇区擦写过程中突然断电，则整个扇区（4096 字节）数据将全部丢失。
- **安全模式**：数据先保存在 flash 中空余扇区，擦除扇区后，数据即存储回去。如果设备断电，上电后可立即恢复数据。

设备默认设置如下：

- 定义扇区大小为 512 字节
- 默认使用性能模式

您可以使用配置菜单更改设置。

磨损均衡组件不会将数据缓存在 RAM 中。写入和擦除函数直接修改 flash，函数返回后，flash 即完成修改。

磨损均衡访问 API

处理 flash 数据常用的 API 如下所示：

- `wl_mount` - 为指定分区挂载并初始化磨损均衡模块
- `wlUnmount` - 卸载分区并释放磨损均衡模块
- `wl_erase_range` - 擦除 flash 中指定的地址范围
- `wl_write` - 将数据写入分区
- `wl_read` - 从分区读取数据
- `wl_size` - 返回可用内存的大小（以字节为单位）
- `wl_sector_size` - 返回一个扇区的大小

请尽量避免直接使用原始磨损均衡函数，建议您使用文件系统特定的函数。

内存大小

内存大小是根据分区参数在磨损均衡模块中计算所得。由于模块使用 flash 部分扇区存储内部数据，因此计算所得内存大小有少许偏差。

另请参阅

- FAT 文件系统
- 分区表

应用示例

`storage/wear_levelling` 中提供了一款磨损均衡驱动与 FatFs 库结合使用的示例。该示例初始化磨损均衡驱动，挂载 FAT 文件系统分区，并使用 POSIX（可移植操作系统接口）和 C 库 API 从中写入和读取数据。如需了解更多信息，请参考 `storage/wear_levelling/README.md`。
## Chapter 2. API 参考

### 头文件

- fatfs/vfs/esp_vfs_fat.h

### 函数

```
esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount(const char *base_path, const char *partition_label,
                                     const esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t *mount_config,
                                     wl_handle_t *wl_handle)
```

Convenience function to initialize FAT filesystem in SPI flash and register it in VFS.

This is an all-in-one function which does the following:

- finds the partition with defined partition_label. Partition label should be configured in the partition table.
- initializes flash wear levelling library on top of the given partition
- mounts FAT partition using FATFS library on top of flash wear levelling library
- registers FATFS library with VFS, with prefix given by base_prefix variable

This function is intended to make example code more compact.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if the partition table does not contain FATFS partition with given label
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount was already called
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory cannot be allocated
- ESP_FAIL if partition cannot be mounted
- other error codes from wear levelling library, SPI flash driver, or FATFS drivers

**Parameters**

- **base_path**: path where FATFS partition should be mounted (e.g. "/spiflash"
- **partition_label**: label of the partition which should be used
- **mount_config**: pointer to structure with extra parameters for mounting FATFS
- **[out] wl_handle**: wear levelling driver handle

```
struct esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t
```

Configuration arguments for esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount and esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount functions.

### Public Members

#### bool format_if_mount_failed

If FAT partition can not be mounted, and this parameter is true, create partition table and format the filesystem.

#### int max_files

Max number of open files.

#### size_t allocation_unit_size

If format_if_mount_failed is set, and mount fails, format the card with given allocation unit size. Must be a power of 2, between sector size and 128 \* sector size. For SD cards, sector size is always 512 bytes. For wear levelling, sector size is determined by CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_SIZE option.

Using larger allocation unit size will result in higher read/write performance and higher overhead when storing small files.

Setting this field to 0 will result in allocation unit set to the sector size.

```
esp_err_t esp_vfs_fat_spiflashUnmount(const char *base_path, wl_handle_t *wl_handle)
```

Unmount FAT filesystem and release resources acquired using esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount hasn’t been called

**Parameters**
Chapter 2. API 参考

- base_path: path where partition should be registered (e.g. “/spiflash”)
- wl_handle: wear levelling driver handle returned by esp_vfs_atSPIflash_mount

### 中层 API 参考

#### Header File

- components/wear_levelling/include/wear_levelling.h

#### Functions

**esp_err_t wl_mount(const esp_partition_t *partition, wl_handle_t *out_handle)**

Mount WL for defined partition.

**Return**

- ESP_OK, if the allocation was successfully;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if WL allocation was unsuccessful;
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM, if there was no memory to allocate WL components;

**Parameters**

- partition: that will be used for access
- out_handle: handle of the WL instance

**esp_err_t wl_unmount(wl_handle_t handle)**

Unmount WL for defined partition.

**Return**

- ESP_OK, if the operation completed successfully;
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**

- handle: WL partition handle

**esp_err_t wl_erase_range(wl_handle_t handle, size_t start_addr, size_t size)**

Erase part of the WL storage.

**Return**

- ESP_OK, if the range was erased successfully;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if iterator or dst are NULL;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if erase would go out of bounds of the partition;
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**

- handle: WL handle that are related to the partition
- start_addr: Address where erase operation should start. Must be aligned to the result of function
  `wl_sector_size(...)`.
- size: Size of the range which should be erased, in bytes. Must be divisible by result of function
  `wl_sector_size(...)`.

**esp_err_t wl_write(wl_handle_t handle, size_t dest_addr, const void *src, size_t size)**

Write data to the WL storage.

Before writing data to flash, corresponding region of flash needs to be erased. This can be done using
wl_erase_range function.

**Note** Prior to writing to WL storage, make sure it has been erased with wl_erase_range call.

**Return**

- ESP_OK, if data was written successfully;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if dst_offset exceeds partition size;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if write would go out of bounds of the partition;
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**

- handle: WL handle that are related to the partition
- dest_addr: Address where the data should be written, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- src: Pointer to the source buffer. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least ‘size’ bytes long.
Chapter 2. API

• size: Size of data to be written, in bytes.

```c
esp_err_t wl_read (wl_handle_t handle, size_t src_addr, void *dest, size_t size)
```
Read data from the WL storage.

**Return**
- ESP_OK, if data was read successfully;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if src_offset exceeds partition size;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if read would go out of bounds of the partition;
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**
- handle: WL module instance that was initialized before
- dest: Pointer to the buffer where data should be stored. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least `size` bytes long.
- src_addr: Address of the data to be read, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- size: Size of data to be read, in bytes.

```c
size_t wl_size (wl_handle_t handle)
```
Get size of the WL storage.

**Return** usable size, in bytes

**Parameters**
- handle: WL module handle that was initialized before

```c
size_t wl_sector_size (wl_handle_t handle)
```
Get sector size of the WL instance.

**Return** sector size, in bytes

**Parameters**
- handle: WL module handle that was initialized before

### Macros

```c
WL_INVALID_HANDLE
```

### Type Definitions

```c
typedef int32_t wl_handle_t
```

wear levelling handle

此部分 API 代码示例详见 ESP-IDF 项下 storage 目录。

2.7 System API

#### 2.7.1 App Image Format

An application image consists of the following structures:

1. The `esp_image_header_t` structure describes the mode of SPI flash and the count of memory segments.
2. The `esp_image_segment_header_t` structure describes each segment, its length, and its location in ESP32’s memory, followed by the data with a length of `data_len`. The data offset for each segment in the image is calculated in the following way:

   - offset for 0 Segment = sizeof(`esp_image_header_t`) + sizeof(`esp_image_segment_header_t`).
   - offset for 1 Segment = offset for 0 Segment + length of 0 Segment + sizeof(`esp_image_segment_header_t`).
   - offset for 2 Segment = offset for 1 Segment + length of 1 Segment + sizeof(`esp_image_segment_header_t`).
   - ...

The count of each segment is defined in the `segment_count` field that is stored in `esp_image_header_t`. The count cannot be more than `ESP_IMAGE_MAX_SEGMENTS`. 

Submit Document Feedback
To get the list of your image segments, please run the following command:

```
esptool.py --chip esp32 image_info build/app.bin
```

You can also see the information on segments in the IDF logs while your application is booting:

```
I (443) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f400000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (489) esp_image: segment 1: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (530) esp_image: segment 2: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (571) esp_image: segment 3: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (612) esp_image: segment 4: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (654) esp_image: segment 5: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (695) esp_image: segment 6: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (737) esp_image: segment 7: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (847) esp_image: segment 8: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (888) esp_image: segment 9: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (929) esp_image: segment 10: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (971) esp_image: segment 11: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
I (1012) esp_image: segment 12: paddr=0x00000000 vaddr=0x3f380000 size=0x13ce0 ...
```

For more details on the type of memory segments and their address ranges, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > System and Memory > Embedded Memory [PDF].

3. The image has a single checksum byte after the last segment. This byte is written on a sixteen byte padded boundary, so the application image might need padding.

4. If the hash appened field from esp_image_header_t is set then a SHA256 checksum will be appended. The value of SHA256 is calculated on the range from the first byte and up to this field. The length of this field is 32 bytes.

5. If the options CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_SCHEME is set to ECDSA then the application image will have additional 68 bytes for an ECDSA signature, which includes:
• version word (4 bytes),
• signature data (64 bytes).

Application Description

The DROM segment starts with the `esp_app_desc_t` structure which carries specific fields describing the application:

• `magic_word` - the magic word for the `esp_app_desc` structure.
• `secure_version` - see Anti-rollback.
• `version` - see App version.
• `project_name` is filled from PROJECT_NAME.
• `time` and `date` - compile time and date.
• `idf_ver` - version of ESP-IDF.
• `app_elf_sha256` - contains sha256 for the elf application file.

* - The maximum length is 32 characters, including null-termination character. For example, if the length of PROJECT_NAME exceeds 32 characters, the excess characters will be disregarded.

This structure is useful for identification of images uploaded OTA because it has a fixed offset = sizeof(`esp_image_header_t`) + sizeof(`esp_image_segment_header_t`). As soon as a device receives the first fragment containing this structure, it has all the information to determine whether the update should be continued or not.

Adding a Custom Structure to an Application

Users also have the opportunity to have similar structure with a fixed offset relative to the beginning of the image. The following pattern can be used to add a custom structure to your image:

```
const __attribute__((section("rodata_custom_desc"))) esp_custom_app_desc_t custom_app_desc = { ... }
```

Offset for custom structure is sizeof(`esp_image_header_t`) + sizeof(`esp_image_segment_header_t`) + sizeof(`esp_app_desc_t`).

To guarantee that the custom structure is located in the image even if it is not used, you need to add `target_link_libraries(${COMPONENT_TARGET} "-u custom_app_desc")` into CMakeLists.txt.

API Reference

Header File

• `components/bootloader_support/include/esp_app_format.h`

Structures

`struct esp_image_header_t`

Main header of binary image.

**Public Members**

`uint8_t magic`

`Magic word ESP_IMAGE_HEADER_MAGIC`

`uint8_t segment_count`

`Count of memory segments`
uint8_t spi_mode
    flash read mode (esp_image_spi_mode_t as uint8_t)

uint8_t spi_speed : 4
    flash frequency (esp_image_spi_freq_t as uint8_t)

uint8_t spi_size : 4
    flash chip size (esp_image_flash_size_t as uint8_t)

uint32_t entry_addr
    Entry address

uint8_t wp_pin
    WP pin when SPI pins set via efuse (read by ROM bootloader, the IDF bootloader uses software to configure the WP pin and sets this field to 0xEE=disabled)

uint8_t spi_pin_drv[3]
    Drive settings for the SPI flash pins (read by ROM bootloader)

esp_chip_id_t chip_id
    Chip identification number

uint8_t min_chip_rev
    Minimum chip revision supported by image

uint8_t reserved[8]
    Reserved bytes in additional header space, currently unused

uint8_t hash_appended
    If 1, a SHA256 digest “simple hash” (of the entire image) is appended after the checksum. Included in image length. This digest is separate to secure boot and only used for detecting corruption. For secure boot signed images, the signature is appended after this (and the simple hash is included in the signed data).

struct esp_image_segment_header_t
    Header of binary image segment.

Public Members

uint32_t load_addr
    Address of segment

uint32_t data_len
    Length of data

struct esp_app_desc_t
    Description about application.

Public Members

uint32_t magic_word
    Magic word ESP_APP_DESC_MAGIC_WORD

uint32_t secure_version
    Secure version

uint32_t reserv1[2]
    reserv1

char version[32]
    Application version

char project_name[32]
    Project name
Chapter 2. API 参考

char time[16]
Compile time

char date[16]
Compile date

char idf_ver[32]
Version IDF

uint8_t app_elf_sha256[32]
sha256 of elf file

uint32_t reserv2[20]
reserv2

Macros

ESP_IMAGE_HEADER_MAGIC
The magic word for the esp_image_header_t structure.

ESP_IMAGE_MAX_SEGMENTS
Max count of segments in the image.

ESP_APP_DESC_MAGIC_WORD
The magic word for the esp_app_desc structure that is in DROM.

Enumerations

enum esp_chip_id_t
ESP chip ID.

Values:

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32 = 0x0000
chip ID: ESP32

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32S2 = 0x0002
chip ID: ESP32-S2

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32C3 = 0x0005
chip ID: ESP32-C3

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32S3 = 0x0009
chip ID: ESP32-S3

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32H2 = 0x000A
chip ID: ESP32-H2

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP8684 = 0x000C
chip ID: ESP32-8684

ESP_CHIP_ID_INVALID = 0xFFFF
Invalid chip ID (we defined it to make sure the esp_chip_id_t is 2 bytes size)

enum esp_image_spi_mode_t
SPI flash mode, used in esp_image_header_t.

Values:

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_QIO
SPI mode QIO

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_QOUT
SPI mode QOUT

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_DIO
SPI mode DIO

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_DOUT
SPI mode DOUT
Chapter 2. API

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_FAST_READ
SPI mode FAST_READ

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_SLOW_READ
SPI mode SLOW_READ

enum esp_image_spi_freq_t
SPI flash clock frequency.

Values:

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_40M
SPI clock frequency 40 MHz

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_26M
SPI clock frequency 26 MHz

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_20M
SPI clock frequency 20 MHz

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_80M = 0xF
SPI clock frequency 80 MHz

enum esp_image_flash_size_t
Supported SPI flash sizes.

Values:

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_1MB = 0
SPI flash size 1 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_2MB
SPI flash size 2 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_4MB
SPI flash size 4 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_8MB
SPI flash size 8 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_16MB
SPI flash size 16 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_MAX
SPI flash size MAX

2.7.2 Application Level Tracing

Overview

IDF provides a useful feature for program behavior analysis called Application Level Tracing. The feature can be enabled in menuconfig and allows transfer of arbitrary data between the host and ESP32 via JTAG interface with minimal overhead on program execution. Developers can use this library to send application specific state of execution to the host and receive commands or other type of info in the opposite direction at runtime. The main use cases of this library are:

1. Collecting application specific data, see 特定应用程序的跟踪
2. Lightweight logging to the host, see 记录日志到主机
3. System behaviour analysis, see 基于 SEGGER SystemView 的系统行为分析

API Reference

Header File

- components/app_trace/include/esp_app_trace.h
Chapter 2. API

Functions

\texttt{esp\_err\_t \textbf{esp\_apptrace\_init} (void)}

Initializes application tracing module.

\textbf{Note} Should be called before any \texttt{esp\_apptrace\_xxx} call.

\textbf{Return} ESP\_OK on success, otherwise see \texttt{esp\_err\_t}

\texttt{void \textbf{esp\_apptrace\_down\_buffer\_config} (uint8\_t \*buf, uint32\_t size)}

Configures down buffer.

\textbf{Note} Needs to be called before initiating any data transfer using \texttt{esp\_apptrace\_buffer\_get} and \texttt{esp\_apptrace\_write}. This function does not protect internal data by lock.

\textbf{Parameters}

- \texttt{buf}: Address of buffer to use for down channel (host to target) data.
- \texttt{size}: Size of the buffer.

\texttt{uint8\_t \*\textbf{esp\_apptrace\_buffer\_get} (esp\_apptrace\_dest\_t dest, uint32\_t size, uint32\_t tmo)}

Allocates buffer for trace data. Once the data in the buffer is ready to be sent, \texttt{esp\_apptrace\_buffer\_put} must be called to indicate it.

\textbf{Return} non-NULL on success, otherwise NULL.

\textbf{Parameters}

- \texttt{dest}: Indicates HW interface to send data.
- \texttt{size}: Size of data to write to trace buffer.
- \texttt{tmo}: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP\_APPTRACE\_TMO\_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

\texttt{esp\_err\_t \textbf{esp\_apptrace\_buffer\_put} (esp\_apptrace\_dest\_t dest, uint8\_t \*ptr, uint32\_t tmo)}

Indicates that the data in the buffer is ready to be sent. This function is a counterpart of and must be preceded by \texttt{esp\_apptrace\_buffer\_get}.

\textbf{Return} ESP\_OK on success, otherwise see \texttt{esp\_err\_t}

\textbf{Parameters}

- \texttt{dest}: Indicates HW interface to send data. Should be identical to the same parameter in call to \texttt{esp\_apptrace\_buffer\_get}.
- \texttt{ptr}: Address of trace buffer to release. Should be the value returned by call to \texttt{esp\_apptrace\_buffer\_get}.
- \texttt{tmo}: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP\_APPTRACE\_TMO\_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

\texttt{esp\_err\_t \textbf{esp\_apptrace\_write} (esp\_apptrace\_dest\_t dest, \textbf{const} void \*data, uint32\_t size, uint32\_t tmo)}

Writes data to trace buffer.

\textbf{Return} ESP\_OK on success, otherwise see \texttt{esp\_err\_t}

\textbf{Parameters}

- \texttt{dest}: Indicates HW interface to send data.
- \texttt{data}: Address of data to write to trace buffer.
- \texttt{size}: Size of data to write to trace buffer.
- \texttt{tmo}: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP\_APPTRACE\_TMO\_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

\texttt{int \textbf{esp\_apptrace\_vprintf\_to} (esp\_apptrace\_dest\_t dest, uint32\_t tmo, \textbf{const} char \*fmt, va\_list ap)}

\texttt{vprintf-like function to send log messages to host via specified HW interface.}

\textbf{Return} Number of bytes written.

\textbf{Parameters}

- \texttt{dest}: Indicates HW interface to send data.
- \texttt{tmo}: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP\_APPTRACE\_TMO\_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.
- \texttt{fmt}: Address of format string.
- \texttt{ap}: List of arguments.

\texttt{int \textbf{esp\_apptrace\_vprintf} (\textbf{const} char \*fmt, va\_list ap)}

\texttt{vprintf-like function to send log messages to host.}

\textbf{Return} Number of bytes written.

\textbf{Parameters}

- \texttt{fmt}: Address of format string.
Chapter 2. API

eap: List of arguments.

\textbf{esp_err_t esp_apprace_flush (esp_apptrace_dest_t dest, uint32_t tmo)}
Flushes remaining data in trace buffer to host.

\textbf{Return} ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

\textbf{Parameters}
- dest: Indicates HW interface to flush data on.
- tmo: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

\textbf{esp_err_t esp_apprace_flush_nolock (esp_apptrace_dest_t dest, uint32_t min_sz, uint32_t tmo)}
Flushes remaining data in trace buffer to host without locking internal data. This is a special version of esp_apprace_flush which should be called from panic handler.

\textbf{Return} ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

\textbf{Parameters}
- dest: Indicates HW interface to flush data on.
- min_sz: Threshold for flushing data. If current filling level is above this value, data will be flushed.
- TRAX destinations only.
- tmo: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

\textbf{esp_err_t esp_apprace_read (esp_apptrace_dest_t dest, void *data, uint32_t *size, uint32_t tmo)}
Reads host data from trace buffer.

\textbf{Return} ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

\textbf{Parameters}
- dest: Indicates HW interface to read the data on.
- data: Address of buffer to put data from trace buffer.
- size: Pointer to store size of read data. Before call to this function pointed memory must hold requested size of data.
- tmo: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

\textbf{uint8_t *esp_apprace_down_buffer_get (esp_apptrace_dest_t dest, uint32_t *size, uint32_t tmo)}
Retrieves incoming data buffer if any. Once data in the buffer is processed, esp_apprace_down_buffer_put must be called to indicate it.

\textbf{Return} non-NULL on success, otherwise NULL.

\textbf{Parameters}
- dest: Indicates HW interface to receive data.
- size: Address to store size of available data in down buffer. Must be initialized with requested value.
- tmo: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

\textbf{esp_err_t esp_apprace_down_buffer_put (esp_apptrace_dest_t dest, uint8_t *ptr, uint32_t tmo)}
Indicates that the data in the down buffer is processed. This function is a counterpart of and must be preceded by esp_apprace_down_buffer_get.

\textbf{Return} ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

\textbf{Parameters}
- dest: Indicates HW interface to receive data. Should be identical to the same parameter in call to esp_apprace_down_buffer_get.
- ptr: Address of trace buffer to release. Should be the value returned by call to esp_apprace_down_buffer_get.
- tmo: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

\textbf{bool esp_apprace_host_is_connected (esp_apptrace_dest_t dest)}
Checks whether host is connected.

\textbf{Return} true if host is connected, otherwise false

\textbf{Parameters}
- dest: Indicates HW interface to use.

\textbf{void *esp_apprace_fopen (esp_apptrace_dest_t dest, const char *path, const char *mode)}
Opens file on host. This function has the same semantic as ‘fopen’ except for the first argument.
Return  non zero file handle on success, otherwise 0

Parameters
• dest: Indicates HW interface to use.
• path: Path to file.
• mode: Mode string. See fopen for details.

int esp_aptrace_fclose (esp_aptrace_dest_t dest, void *stream)
Closes file on host. This function has the same semantic as ‘fclose’ except for the first argument.

Return  Zero on success, otherwise non-zero. See fclose for details.

Parameters
• dest: Indicates HW interface to use.
• stream: File handle returned by esp_aptrace_fopen.

size_t esp_aptrace_fwrite (esp_aptrace_dest_t dest, const void *ptr, size_t size, size_t nmemb, void *stream)
Writes to file on host. This function has the same semantic as ‘fwrite’ except for the first argument.

Return  Number of written items. See fwrite for details.

Parameters
• dest: Indicates HW interface to use.
• ptr: Address of data to write.
• size: Size of an item.
• nmemb: Number of items to write.
• stream: File handle returned by esp_aptrace_fopen.

size_t esp_aptrace_fread (esp_aptrace_dest_t dest, void *ptr, size_t size, size_t nmemb, void *stream)
Read file on host. This function has the same semantic as ‘fread’ except for the first argument.

Return  Number of read items. See fread for details.

Parameters
• dest: Indicates HW interface to use.
• ptr: Address to store read data.
• size: Size of an item.
• nmemb: Number of items to read.
• stream: File handle returned by esp_aptrace_fopen.

int esp_aptrace_fseek (esp_aptrace_dest_t dest, void *stream, long offset, int whence)
Set position indicator in file on host. This function has the same semantic as ‘fseek’ except for the first argument.

Return  Zero on success, otherwise non-zero. See fseek for details.

Parameters
• dest: Indicates HW interface to use.
• stream: File handle returned by esp_aptrace_fopen.
• offset: Offset. See fseek for details.
• whence: Position in file. See fseek for details.

int esp_aptrace_ftell (esp_aptrace_dest_t dest, void *stream)
Get current position indicator for file on host. This function has the same semantic as ‘ftell’ except for the first argument.

Return  Current position in file. See ftell for details.

Parameters
• dest: Indicates HW interface to use.
• stream: File handle returned by esp_aptrace_fopen.

int esp_aptrace_fstop (esp_aptrace_dest_t dest)
Indicates to the host that all file operations are complete. This function should be called after all file operations are finished and indicate to the host that it can perform cleanup operations (close open files etc.).

Return  ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

Parameters
• dest: Indicates HW interface to use.
void esp_gcov_dump (void)
    Triggers gcov info dump. This function waits for the host to connect to target before dumping data.

Enumerations

enum esp_apptrace_dest_t
    Application trace data destinations bits.
    Values:
    ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_JTAG = 1
        JTAG destination.
    ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX = ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_JTAG
        xxx_TRAX name is obsolete, use more common xxx_JTAG
    ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_UART0
        UART0 destination.
    ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_MAX = ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_UART0
    ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_NUM

Header File

• components/app_trace/include/esp_sysview_trace.h

Functions

static esp_err_t esp_sysview_flush (uint32_t tmo)
    Flushes remaining data in SystemView trace buffer to host.
    Return ESP_OK.
    Parameters
        • tmo: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

int esp_sysview_vprintf (const char *format, va_list args)
    vprintf-like function to sent log messages to the host.
    Return Number of bytes written.
    Parameters
        • format: Address of format string.
        • args: List of arguments.

esp_err_t esp_sysview_heap_trace_start (uint32_t tmo)
    Starts SystemView heap tracing.
    Return ESP_OK on success, ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if operation has been timed out.
    Parameters
        • tmo: Timeout (in us) to wait for the host to be connected. Use -1 to wait forever.

esp_err_t esp_sysview_heap_trace_stop (void)
    Stops SystemView heap tracing.
    Return ESP_OK.

void esp_sysview_heap_trace_alloc (void *addr, uint32_t size, const void *callers)
    Sends heap allocation event to the host.
    Parameters
        • addr: Address of allocated block.
        • size: Size of allocated block.
        • callers: Pointer to array with callstack addresses. Array size must be CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH.

void esp_sysview_heap_trace_free (void *addr, const void *callers)
    Sends heap de-allocation event to the host.
### 2.7.3 控制台终端

ESP-IDF 提供了 `console` 组件，它包含了开发基于串口的交互式控制终端所需要的所有模块，主要支持以下功能：

- 行编辑：由 `linenoise` 库具体实现，它支持处理退格键和方向键，支持回看命令的历史记录，支持命令的自动补全和参数提示。
- 将命令行拆分为参数列表。
- 参数解析，由 `argtable3` 库具体实现，该库提供解析 GNU 样式命令行参数的 API。
- 用于注册和调动命令的函数。
- 帮助创建 REPL (Read-Evaluate-Print-Loop) 环境的函数。

**注释**：这些功能模块可以一起使用也可以独立使用，例如仅使用行编辑和命令注册的功能，然后使用 `getopt` 函数或者自定义的函数来实现参数解析。而不直接使用 `argtable3` 库。同样地，还可以使用更简单的命令输入方法（比如 `fgets` 函数）和其他用于命令分割和参数解析的方法。

#### 行编辑

行编辑功能允许用户通过按键输入来编辑命令，使用退格键删除符号，使用左/右键在命令中移动光标，使用上/下键导航到之前输入的命令，使用制表键（“Tab”）来自动补全命令。

**注释**：此功能依赖于终端应用程序对 ANSI 转义符的支持。因此，显示原始 UART 数据的串口监视器不能与行编辑库一同使用。如果运行 `system/console` 示例程序的时候看到的输出结果显示在 `6n` 或者类似的转义字符而不是命令行提示符 `esp>` 时，就表明当前的串口监视器不支持 ANSI 转义字符。已知可用的串口监视器有 GNU `screen`, `minicom` 和 `idf_monitor.py`（可以通过在项目目录下执行 ```idf.py monitor```来调用）。

前往这里可以查看 `linenoise` 库提供的所有函数的描述。

#### 配置

`Linenoise` 库不需要显式地初始化，但是在调用行编辑函数之前，可能需要对某些配置的默认值稍作修改。

- `linenoiseClearScreen()`
  - 使用转义字符清除终端屏幕，并将光标定位在左上角。

- `linenoiseSetMultiLine()`
  - 在单行和多行编辑模式之间进行切换。单行模式下，如果命令的长度超过终端的宽度，会在行内滚动命令文本以显示文本的结尾。在这种情况下，文本的开头部分会被隐藏。单行模式在每次按下按键时发送给屏幕刷新的数据比较少，与多行模式相比更不容易发生故障。另一方面，在单行模式下编辑命令和复制命令将变得更加困难。默认情况下开启的是单行模式。

- `linenoiseAllowEmpty()`
  - 设置 `linenoise` 库收到的解析行为。设置为 `true` 时返回长度为零的字符串 `""`，设置为 `false` 时返回 `NULL`。默认情况下，将返回长度为零的字符串。

- `linenoiseSetMaxLineLen()`
  - 设置 `linenoise` 库中每行的最大长度。默认长度为 `4096`。如果需要优化 RAM 内存的使用，则可以通过这个函数设置一个小于默认 `4 KB` 的值来实现。
主循环 linenoise()
在大多数情况下，控制台应用程序都会具有相同的工作形式——在某个循环中不断读取输入的内容。然后解析再处理。linenoise() 是专门用来获取用户按键输入的函数。当按回车键被按下后便会返回完整的一行内容。因此可以用它来完成前面循环中的“读取”任务。

linenoiseFree()
必须调用此函数才能释放从 linenoise() 函数获取的命令行缓冲区。

提示和补全 linenoiseSetCompletionCallback()
当用户按下制表键时，linenoise 会用 补全回调函数，该回调函数会检查当前已经输入的内容，然后调用 linenoiseAddCompletion() 函数来提供所有可能的补全后的命令列表。启用补全功能，需要事先调用 linenoiseSetCompletionCallback() 函数来注册补全回调函数。

console 组件提供了一个现成的函数来为注册的命令提供补全功能 esp_console_get_completion()（见下文）。

linenoiseAddCompletion()
补全回调函数会通过调用此函数来通知 linenoise 库当前键入命令所有可能的补全结果。

linenoiseSetHintsCallback()
每当用户的输入改变时，linenoise 就会调用此回调函数，检查到目前为止输入的命令行内容，然后提供带有提示信息的字符串（例如命令参数列表），然后会在同一行上用不同的颜色显示出该文本。

linenoiseSetFreeHintsCallback()
如果提示回调函数返回的提示字符串是动态分配的或者需要以其它方式回收，就需要使用 linenoiseSetFreeHintsCallback() 注册具体的清理函数。

历史记录 linenoiseHistorySetMaxLen()
该函数用于设置要在内存中的最近输入命令的数量。用户通过使用向上/向下箭头来导航历史记录。

linenoiseHistoryAdd()
Linenoise 不会自动向历史记录中添加命令，应用程序需要调用此函数来将命令字符串添加到历史记录中。

linenoiseHistorySave()
该函数将命令的历史记录从 RAM 中保存为文本文件，例如保存到 SD 卡或者 Flash 的文件系统中。

linenoiseHistoryLoad()
与 linenoiseHistorySave 相对应，从文件中加载历史记录。

linenoiseHistoryFree()
释放用于存储命令历史记录的内存。当使用完 linenoise 库后需要调用此函数。

将命令行拆分成参数列表
console 组件提供 esp_console_split_argv() 函数来将命令行字符串拆分为参数列表。该函数会返回参数的数量 (argc) 和一个指针数组，该指针数组可以作为 argv 参数传递给任何接受 argc, argv 格式参数的函数。

根据以下规则来将命令行拆分成参数列表：
- 参数由空格分隔


• 如果参数本身需要使用空格，可以使用 `\` (反斜杠) 对它们进行转义
• 其它能被识别的转义字符有 `\"` (显示双引号)和 `\` (显示反斜杠本身)
• 可以使用双引号来引用参数，引号只可能出现在参数的开头和结尾。参数中的引号必须如上述进行转义。参数周围的引号会被 `esp_console_split_argv()` 函数删除

示例:

- `abc def 1 20 .3` → `[abc, def, 1, 20, .3]`
- `abc "123 456" def` → `[abc, 123 456, def]`
- `\`a\ b\"c\"` → `[a b"c"]`

参数解析

对于参数解析，console 组件使用 argtable3 库。有关 argtable3 的介绍请查看 教程 或者 Github 仓库中的示例代码。

命令的注册与调度

console 组件包含了一些工具函数，用来注册命令，将用户输入的命令和已经注册的命令进行匹配，使用命令行输入的参数调用命令。

应用 首先 调用 `esp_console_init()` 来初始化命令 注册 模块。 然后 调用 `esp_console_cmd_register()` 函数注册命令处理器。

对于每个命令，应用程序需要提供以下信息（需要以 `esp_console_cmd_t` 结构体的形式给出）：

- 命令名字 (不含空格的字符串)
- 帮助文档，解释该命令的用途
- 可选的提示文本，列出命令的参数。如果应用程序使用 Argtable3 库来解析参数，则可以通过提供指向 argtable 参数定义结构体的指针来自动生成提示文本
- 命令处理函数

命令注册模块还提供了其它函数：

- `esp_console_run()`
  该函数接受命令行字符串，使用 `esp_console_split_argv()` 函数将其拆分为 argv/argv 形式的参数列表，在已经注册的命令列表中查找命令，如果找到，则执行其对应的处理程序。

- `esp_console_register_help_command()`
  将 help 命令添加到已注册命令列表中，此命令将会以列表的方式打印所有注册的命令及其参数和帮助文本。

- `esp_console_get_completion()`
  与 linenoise 库中的 linenoiseSetCompletionCallback() 一同使用的回调函数，根据已经注册的命令列表为 linenoise 提供补全功能。

- `esp_console_register_help_command()`
  与 linenoise 库中 linenoiseSetHintsCallback() 一同使用的回调函数，为 linenoise 提供已经注册的命令的参数提示功能。

初始化 REPL 环境

除了上述的各种函数，console 组件还提供了一些 API 来帮助创建一个基本的 REPL 环境。

在一个典型的 console 应用中，你只需要调用 `esp_console_new_repl_uart()`，它会为你初始化好构建在 UART 基础上的 REPL 环境，其中包括安装 UART 驱动，基本的 console 配置，创建一个新的线程来执行 REPL 任务，注册一些基本的命令（比如 help 命令）。

之后你可以使用 `esp_console_cmd_register()` 来注册其它命令。REPL 环境在初始化后需要再调用 `esp_console_start_repl()` 函数才能开始运行。
应用程序示例

system/console 目录下提供了 console 组件的示例应用程序，展示了具体的使用方法。该示例介绍了如何初始化 UART 和 VFS 的功能，设置 linenoise 库。从 UART 中读取命令并加以处理，然后将历史命令存储到 Flash 中。更多信息，请参阅示例代码目录中的 README.md 文件。

此外，ESP-IDF 还提供了众多基于 console 组件的示例程序，它们可以辅助应用程序的开发。例如，peripherals/uart/i2c_tools，wifi/perf 等等。

API 参考

Header File

- components/console/esp_console.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t esp_console_init(const esp_console_config_t *config)
```
initialize console module

**Note**  Call this once before using other console module features

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the configuration is invalid

**Parameters**

- config: console configuration

```c
esp_err_t esp_console_deinit(void)
```
de-initialize console module

**Note**  Call this once when done using console module functions

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not initialized yet

```c
esp_err_t esp_console_cmd_register(const esp_console_cmd_t *cmd)
```
Register console command.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if command description includes invalid arguments

**Parameters**

- cmd: pointer to the command description; can point to a temporary value

```c
esp_err_t esp_console_run(const char *cmdline, int *cmd_ret)
```
Run command line.

**Return**

- ESP_OK, if command was run
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if the command line is empty, or only contained whitespace
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND, if command with given name wasn’t registered
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE, if esp_console_init wasn’t called

**Parameters**

- cmdline: command line (command name followed by a number of arguments)
- [out] cmd_ret: return code from the command (set if command was run)

```c
size_t esp_console_split_argv(char *line, char **argv, size_t argv_size)
```
Split command line into arguments in place.
- This function finds whitespace-separated arguments in the given input line.
- 'abc def 1 20 .3' -> ['abc', 'def', '1', '20', '.3 ']
- Argument which include spaces may be surrounded with quotes. In this case spaces are preserved and quotes are stripped.
- 'abc "123 456" def' -> ['abc', '123 456', 'def ']
- Escape sequences may be used to produce backslash, double quote, and space:
- 'a\ b\c"' -> ['a b\c" ']

**Note**  Pointers to at most argv_size - 1 arguments are returned in argv array. The pointer after the last one (i.e. argv[argc]) is set to NULL.

**Return**  number of arguments found (argc)

**Parameters**
- line: pointer to buffer to parse; it is modified in place
- argv: array where the pointers to arguments are written
- argv_size: number of elements in argv_array (max. number of arguments)

```c
void esp_console_get_completion(const char *buf, linenoiseCompletions *lc)
```

Callback which provides command completion for linenoise library.

When using linenoise for line editing, command completion support can be enabled like this:

```c
linenoiseSetCompletionCallback(&.esp_console_get_completion);
```

**Parameters**
- buf: the string typed by the user
- lc: linenoiseCompletions to be filled in

```c
const char *esp_console_get_hint(const char *buf, int *color, int *bold)
```

Callback which provides command hints for linenoise library.

When using linenoise for line editing, hints support can be enabled as follows:

```c
linenoiseSetHintsCallback((linenoiseHintsCallback *)&esp_console_get_hint);
```

The extra cast is needed because linenoiseHintsCallback is defined as returning a char* instead of const char*.

**Return**  string containing the hint text. This string is persistent and should not be freed (i.e. linenoiseSetFreeHintsCallback should not be used).

**Parameters**
- buf: line typed by the user
- [out] color: ANSI color code to be used when displaying the hint
- [out] bold: set to 1 if hint has to be displayed in bold

```c
esp_err_t esp_console_register_help_command(void)
```

Register a ‘help’ command.

Default ‘help’ command prints the list of registered commands along with hints and help strings.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE, if esp_console_init wasn’t called

```c
esp_err_t esp_console_new_repl_uart(const esp_console_dev_uart_config_t *dev_config, const esp_console_repl_config_t *repl_config, esp_console_repl_t **ret_repl)
```

Establish a console REPL environment over UART driver.

**Note**  This is an all-in-one function to establish the environment needed for REPL, includes:
- Install the UART driver on the console UART (8n1, 115200, REF_TICK clock source)
- Configures the stdin/stdout to go through the UART driver
Chapter 2. API

- Initializes linenoise
- Spawn new thread to run REPL in the background

**Attention** This function is meant to be used in the examples to make the code more compact. Applications which use console functionality should be based on the underlying linenoise and esp_console functions.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- [in] dev_config: UART device configuration
- [in] repl_config: REPL configuration
- [out] ret_repl: return REPL handle after initialization succeed, return NULL otherwise

```c
esp_err_t esp_console_new_repl_usb_cdc(const esp_console_dev_usb_cdc_config_t *dev_config, const esp_console_repl_config_t *repl_config, esp_console_repl_t **ret_repl)
```

Establish a console REPL environment over USB CDC.

**Note** This is a all-in-one function to establish the environment needed for REPL, includes:
- Initializes linenoise
- Spawn new thread to run REPL in the background

**Attention** This function is meant to be used in the examples to make the code more compact. Applications which use console functionality should be based on the underlying linenoise and esp_console functions.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

**Parameters**
- [in] dev_config: USB CDC configuration
- [in] repl_config: REPL configuration
- [out] ret_repl: return REPL handle after initialization succeed, return NULL otherwise

```c
esp_err_t esp_console_start_repl(esp_console_repl_t *repl)
```

Start REPL environment.

**Note** Once the REPL gets started, it won’t be stopped until the user calls repl->del(repl) to destroy the REPL environment.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE, if repl has started already

**Parameters**
- [in] repl: REPL handle returned from esp_console_new_repl_xxx

**Structures**

```c
struct esp_console_config_t
Parameters for console initialization.
```

**Public Members**

```c
size_t max_cmdline_length
length of command line buffer, in bytes
```

```c
size_t max_cmdline_args
maximum number of command line arguments to parse
```

```c
int hint_color
ASCII color code of hint text.
```

```c
int hint_bold
Set to 1 to print hint text in bold.
```

```c
struct esp_console_repl_config_t
Parameters for console REPL (Read Eval Print Loop)
```
Public Members

`uint32_t max_history_len`
maximum length for the history

`const char* history_save_path`
file path used to save history commands, set to NULL won’t save to file system

`uint32_t task_stack_size`
repl task stack size

`uint32_t task_priority`
repl task priority

`const char* prompt`
prompt (NULL represents default: “esp> “)

`size_t max_cmdline_length`
maximum length of a command line. If 0, default value will be used

`struct esp_console_dev_uart_config_t`
Parameters for console device: UART.

Public Members

`int channel`
UART channel number (count from zero)

`int baud_rate`
Communication baud rate.

`int tx_gpio_num`
GPIO number for TX path, -1 means using default one.

`int rx_gpio_num`
GPIO number for RX path, -1 means using default one.

`struct esp_console_dev_usb_cdc_config_t`
Parameters for console device: USB CDC.

Note It’s an empty structure for now, reserved for future

`struct esp_console_cmd_t`
Console command description.

Public Members

`const char* command`
Command name. Must not be NULL, must not contain spaces. The pointer must be valid until the call to esp_console_deinit.

`const char* help`
Help text for the command, shown by help command. If set, the pointer must be valid until the call to esp_console_deinit. If not set, the command will not be listed in ‘help’ output.

`const char* hint`
Hint text, usually lists possible arguments. If set to NULL, and ‘argtable’ field is non-NULL, hint will be generated automatically

`esp_console_cmd_func_t func`
Pointer to a function which implements the command.
void *argtable
Array or structure of pointers to arg_xxx structures, may be NULL. Used to generate hint text if ‘hint’ is set to NULL. Array/structure which this field points to must end with an arg_end. Only used for the duration of esp_console_cmd_register call.

struct esp_console_repl_s
Console REPL base structure.

Public Members

esp_err_t (*del)(esp_console_repl_t *repl)
Delete console REPL environment.

Return
• ESP_OK on success
• ESP_FAIL on errors

Parameters
• [in] repl: REPL handle returned from esp_console_new_repl_xxx

Macros

ESP_CONSOLE_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
Default console configuration value.

ESP_CONSOLE_REPL_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
Default console repl configuration value.

ESP_CONSOLE_DEV_UART_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

ESP_CONSOLE_DEV_CDC_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

typedef struct linenoiseCompletions linenoiseCompletions
typedef int (*esp_console_cmd_func_t)(int argc, char **argv)
Console command main function.

Return console command return code, 0 indicates “success”

Parameters
• argc: number of arguments
• argv: array with argc entries, each pointing to a zero-terminated string argument

typedef struct esp_console_repl_s esp_console_repl_t
Type defined for console REPL.

2.7.4 eFuse Manager

Introduction

The eFuse Manager library is designed to structure access to eFuse bits and make using these easy. This library operates eFuse bits by a structure name which is assigned in eFuse table. This section introduces some concepts used by eFuse Manager.

Hardware description

The ESP32 has a number of eFuses which can store system and user parameters. Each eFuse is a one-bit field which can be programmed to 1 after which it cannot be reverted back to 0. Some of system parameters are using these eFuse bits directly by hardware modules and have special place (for example EFUSE_BLK0).

For more details, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > eFuse Controller (eFuse) [PDF]. Some eFuse bits are available for user applications.
ESP32 has 4 eFuse blocks each of the size of 256 bits (not all bits are available):

- **EFUSE_BLK0** is used entirely for system purposes;
- **EFUSE_BLK1** is used for flash encrypt key. If not using that Flash Encryption feature, they can be used for another purpose;
- **EFUSE_BLK2** is used for security boot key. If not using that Secure Boot feature, they can be used for another purpose;
- **EFUSE_BLK3** can be partially reserved for the custom MAC address, or used entirely for user application. Note that some bits are already used in IDF.

Each block is divided into 8 32-bits registers.

**eFuse Manager component**

The component has API functions for reading and writing fields. Access to the fields is carried out through the structures that describe the location of the eFuse bits in the blocks. The component provides the ability to form fields of any length and from any number of individual bits. The description of the fields is made in a CSV file in a table form. To generate from a tabular form (CSV file) in the C-source use the tool *efuse_table_gen.py*. The tool checks the CSV file for uniqueness of field names and bit intersection, in case of using a custom file from the user’s project directory, the utility will check with the *common* CSV file.

**CSV files:**

- **common** (*esp_efuse_table.csv*) - contains eFuse fields which are used inside the IDF. C-source generation should be done manually when changing this file (run command `idf.py efuse-common-table`). Note that changes in this file can lead to incorrect operation.
- **custom** (optional and can be enabled by `CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE`) contains eFuse fields that are used by the user in their application. C-source generation should be done manually when changing this file and running `idf.py efuse-custom-table`.

**Description CSV file**

The CSV file contains a description of the eFuse fields. In the simple case, one field has one line of description. Table header:

```markdown
# field_name, efuse_block(EFUSE_BLK0..EFUSE_BLK3), bit_start(0..255), bit_count(1..256), comment
```

Individual params in CSV file the following meanings:

**field_name** Name of field. The prefix `ESP_EFUSE_` will be added to the name, and this field name will be available in the code. This name will be used to access the fields. The name must be unique for all fields. If the line has an empty name, then this line is combined with the previous field. This allows you to set an arbitrary order of bits in the field, and expand the field as well (see `MAC_FACTORY` field in the common table). The `field_name` supports structured format using . to show that the field belongs to another field (see `WR_DIS` and `RD_DIS` in the common table).

**efuse_block** Block number. It determines where the eFuse bits will be placed for this field. Available `EFUSE_BLK0..EFUSE_BLK3`.

**bit_start** Start bit number (0..255). The bit_start field can be omitted. In this case, it will be set to `bit_start + bit_count` from the previous record, if it has the same efuse_block. Otherwise (if efuse_block is different, or this is the first entry), an error will be generated.

**bit_count** The number of bits to use in this field (1..-). This parameter can not be omitted. This field also may be `MAX_BLK_LEN` in this case, the field length will have the maximum block length, taking into account the coding scheme (applicable for `ESP_EFUSE_SECURE_BOOT_KEY` and `ESP_EFUSE_ENCRYPT_FLASH_KEY` fields). The value `MAX_BLK_LEN` depends on `CONFIG_EFUSE_CODE_SCHEME_SELECTOR`, will be replaced with “None” - 256, “3/4” - 192, “REPEAT” - 128.

**comment** This param is using for comment field, it also move to C-header file. The comment field can be omitted.
Chapter 2. API

If a non-sequential bit order is required to describe a field, then the field description in the following lines should be continued without specifying a name, this will indicate that it belongs to one field. For example two fields MAC_FACTORY and MAC_FACTORY_CRC:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th># Factory MAC address #</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAC_FACTORY, EFUSE_BLK0, 72, 8, Factory MAC addr [0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>, EFUSE_BLK0, 64, 8, Factory MAC addr [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>, EFUSE_BLK0, 56, 8, Factory MAC addr [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>, EFUSE_BLK0, 48, 8, Factory MAC addr [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>, EFUSE_BLK0, 40, 8, Factory MAC addr [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>, EFUSE_BLK0, 32, 8, Factory MAC addr [5]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC_FACTORY_CRC, EFUSE_BLK0, 80, 8, CRC8 for factory MAC address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This field will available in code as ESP_EFUSE_MAC_FACTORY and ESP_EFUSE_MAC_FACTORY_CRC.

Structured efuse fields

| WR_DIS, EFUSE_BLK0, 0, 32, Write protection |
| WR_DIS.RD_DIS, EFUSE_BLK0, 0, 1, Write protection for... |
| WR_DIS.FIELD_1, EFUSE_BLK0, 1, 1, Write protection for... |
| WR_DIS.FIELD_2, EFUSE_BLK0, 2, 4, Write protection for... |
| WR_DIS.FIELD_2.B1, EFUSE_BLK0, 2, 2, Write protection for... |
| WR_DIS.FIELD_2.B2, EFUSE_BLK0, 4, 2, Write protection for... |
| WR_DIS.FIELD_3, EFUSE_BLK0, 5, 1, Write protection for... |
| WR_DIS.FIELD_3.ALIAS, EFUSE_BLK0, 5, 1, Write protection for... |
| WR_DIS.FIELD_4, EFUSE_BLK0, 7, 1, Write protection for... |

The structured eFuse field looks like WR_DIS.RD_DIS where the dot points that this field belongs to the parent field - WR_DIS and can not be out of the parent’s range.

It is possible to use some levels of structured fields as WR_DIS.FIELD_2.B1 and B2. These fields should not be crossed each other and should be in the range of two fields: WR_DIS and WR_DIS.FIELD_2.

It is possible to create aliases for fields with the same range, see WR_DIS.FIELD_3 and WR_DIS.FIELD_3.ALIAS.

The IDF names for structured eFuse fields should be unique. The efuse_table_gen tool will generate the final names where the dot will be replaced by _. The names for using in IDF are ESP_EFUSE_WR_DIS, ESP_EFUSE_WR_DIS_RD_DIS, ESP_EFUSE_WR_DIS_FIELD_2_B1, etc.

efuse_table_gen.py tool

The tool is designed to generate C-source files from CSV file and validate fields. First of all, the check is carried out on the uniqueness of the names and overlaps of the field bits. If an additional custom file is used, it will be checked with the existing common file (esp_efuse_table.csv). In case of errors, a message will be displayed and the string that caused the error. C-source files contain structures of type esp_efuse_desc_t.

To generate a common files, use the following command idf.py efuse-common-table or:

```
cd $IDF_PATH/components/efuse/.
efuse_table_gen.py esp32/esp_efuse_table.csv
```
Chapter 2. API 参考

After generation in the folder $IDF_PATH/components/efuse.esp32 create:

- `esp_efuse_table.c` file.
- In include folder `esp_efuse_table.h` file.

To generate a custom files, use the following command `idf.py efuse-custom-table` or:

```
cd $IDF_PATH/components/efuse/
../efuse_table_gen.py esp32/esp_efuse_table.csv PROJECT_PATH/main/esp_efuse_custom_table.csv
```

After generation in the folder PROJECT_PATH/main create:

- `esp_efuse_custom_table.c` file.
- In include folder `esp_efuse_custom_table.h` file.

To use the generated fields, you need to include two files:

```
#include "esp_efuse.h"
#include "esp_efuse_table.h" or "esp_efuse_custom_table.h"
```

**Supported coding scheme**

eFuse have three coding schemes:

- **None** (value 0).
- **3/4** (value 1).
- **Repeat** (value 2).

The coding scheme affects only EFUSE_BLK1, EFUSE_BLK2 and EFUSE_BLK3 blocks. EUSE_BLK0 block always has a coding scheme None. Coding changes the number of bits that can be written into a block, the block length is constant 256, some of these bits are used for encoding and not available for the user.

When using a coding scheme, the length of the payload that can be written is limited (for more details 20.3.1.3 System Parameter coding_scheme):

- None 256 bits.
- 3/4 192 bits.
- Repeat 128 bits.

You can find out the coding scheme of your chip:

- run a `espefuse.py -p PORT summary` command.
- from esptool utility logs (during flashing).
- calling the function in the code `esp_efuse_get_coding_scheme()` for the EFUSE_BLK3 block.

eFuse tables must always comply with the coding scheme in the chip. There is an `CONFIG_EFUSE_CODE_SCHEME_SELECTOR` option to select the coding type for tables in a Kconfig. When generating source files, if your tables do not follow the coding scheme, an error message will be displayed. Adjust the length or offset fields. If your program was compiled with None encoding and 3/4 is used in the chip, then the ESP_ERR_CODING error may occur when calling the eFuse API (the field is outside the block boundaries). If the field matches the new block boundaries, then the API will work without errors.

Also, 3/4 coding scheme imposes restrictions on writing bits belonging to one coding unit. The whole block with a length of 256 bits is divided into 4 coding units, and in each coding unit there are 6 bytes of useful data and 2 service bytes. These 2 service bytes contain the checksum of the previous 6 data bytes.

It turns out that only one field can be written into one coding unit. Repeated rewriting in one coding unit is prohibited. But if the record was made in advance or through a `esp_efuse_write_block()` function, then reading the fields belonging to one coding unit is possible.

In case 3/4 coding scheme, the writing process is divided into the coding units and we can not use the usual mode of writing some fields. We can prepare all the data for writing and burn it in one time. You can also use this mode for None coding scheme but it is not necessary. It is important for 3/4 coding scheme. The batch writing mode blocks `esp_efuse_read_...` operations.
After changing the coding scheme, run `efuse_common_table` and `efuse_custom_table` commands to check the tables of the new coding scheme.

To write some fields into one block, or different blocks in one time, you need to use the batch writing mode. Firstly set this mode through `esp_efuse_batch_write_begin()` function then write some fields as usual using the `esp_efuse_write...` functions. At the end to burn them, call the `esp_efuse_batch_write_commit()` function. It burns prepared data to the eFuse blocks and disables the batch recording mode.

**eFuse API**

Access to the fields is via a pointer to the description structure. API functions have some basic operation:

- `esp_efuse_read_field_blob()` - returns an array of read eFuse bits.
- `esp_efuse_read_field_cnt()` - returns the number of bits programmed as “1”.
- `esp_efuse_write_field_blob()` - writes an array.
- `esp_efuse_write_field_cnt()` - writes a required count of bits as “1”.
- `esp_efuse_get_field_size()` - returns the number of bits by the field name.
- `esp_efuse_read_reg()` - returns value of eFuse register.
- `esp_efuse_write_reg()` - writes value to eFuse register.
- `esp_efuse_get_coding_scheme()` - returns eFuse coding scheme for blocks.
- `esp_efuse_read_block()` - reads key to eFuse block starting at the offset and the required size.
- `esp_efuse_write_block()` - writes key to eFuse block starting at the offset and the required size.
- `esp_efuse_batch_write_begin()` - set the batch mode of writing fields.
- `esp_efuse_batch_write_commit()` - writes all prepared data for batch writing mode and reset the batch writing mode.
- `esp_efuse_batch_write_cancel()` - reset the batch writing mode and prepared data.
- `esp_efuse_get_key_dis_read()` - Returns a read protection for the key block.
- `esp_efuse_set_key_dis_read()` - Sets a read protection for the key block.
- `esp_efuse_get_key_dis_write()` - Returns a write protection for the key block.
- `esp_efuse_set_key_dis_write()` - Sets a write protection for the key block.
- `esp_efuse_get_key_purpose()` - Returns the current purpose set for an eFuse key block.
- `esp_efuse_write_key()` - Programs a block of key data to an eFuse block
- `esp_efuse_write_keys()` - Programs keys to unused eFuse blocks
- `esp_efuse_find_purpose()` - Finds a key block with the particular purpose set.
- `esp_efuse_get_keypurpose_dis_write()` - Returns a write protection of the key purpose field for an eFuse key block (for esp32 always true).
- `esp_efuse_key_block_unused()` - Returns true if the key block is unused, false otherwise.

For frequently used fields, special functions are made, like this `esp_efuse_get_chip_ver()`, `esp_efuse_get_pkg_ver()`.

**How to add a new field**

1. Find a free bits for field. Show `esp_efuse_table.csv` file or run `idf.py` `show-efuse-table` or the next command:

```
$ ./efuse_table_gen.py esp32/esp_efuse_table.csv --info
```

```
eFuse coding scheme: NONE
#    field_name     efuse_block bit_start bit_count
1    WR_DIS_FLASH_CRYPT_CNT  EFUSE_BLK0 2   1
2    WR_DIS_BLK1           EFUSE_BLK0 7   1
3    WR_DIS_BLK2           EFUSE_BLK0 8   1
4    WR_DIS_BLK3           EFUSE_BLK0 9   1
5    RD_DIS_BLK1           EFUSE_BLK0 16  1
6    RD_DIS_BLK2           EFUSE_BLK0 17  1
7    RD_DIS_BLK3           EFUSE_BLK0 18  1
8    FLASH_CRYPT_CNT      EFUSE_BLK0 20  7

(下頁續続)
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>EFUSE_Block</th>
<th>Bit Start</th>
<th>Bit Count</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>MAC_FACTORY</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>MAC_FACTORY</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>MAC_FACTORY</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MAC_FACTORY</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>MAC_FACTORY</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>MAC_FACTORY</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>MAC_FACTORY_CRC</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>CHIP_VER_DIS_APP_CPU</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>CHIP_VER_DIS_BT</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>CHIP_VER_PKG</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>CHIP_CPU_FREQ_LOW</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>CHIP_CPU_FREQ_RATED</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>CHIP_VER_REV1</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>ADC_VREF_AND_SDI0_DREF</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>XPD_SDI0_REG</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>SDIO_TIEH</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>SDIO_FORCE</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>ENCRYPT_CONFIG</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>CONSOLE_DEBUG_DISABLE</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>ABS_DONE_0</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>DISABLE_JTAG</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>DISABLE_DL_CACHE</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK0</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>ENCRYPT_FLASH_KEY</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>256</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>SECURE_BOOT_KEY</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>256</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>MAC_CUSTOM_CRC</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>MAC_CUSTOM</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>ADC1_TP_LOW</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK3</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>ADC1_TP_HIGH</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK3</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>ADC2_TP_LOW</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK3</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>ADC2_TP_HIGH</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK3</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>SECURE_VERSION</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK3</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>MAC_CUSTOM_VER</td>
<td>EFUSE_BLK3</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Used bits in eFuse table:

EFUSE_BLK0
[2 2] [7 9] [16 18] [20 27] [32 87] [96 97] [105 109] [111 111] [136 144] [188_191] [194 194] [196 196] [198 201]

EFUSE_BLK1
[0 255]

EFUSE_BLK2
[0 255]

EFUSE_BLK3
[0 55] [96 159] [184 191]

Note: Not printed ranges are free for using. (bits in EFUSE_BLK0 are reserved for Espressif).

Parsing eFuse CSV input file $IDF_PATH/components/efuse/esp32/esp_efuse_table.csv.

Verifying eFuse table...

The number of bits not included in square brackets is free (bits in EFUSE_BLK0 are reserved for Espressif). All fields are checked for overlapping.

1. Fill all line for field: field_name, efuse_block, bit_start, bit_count, comment.
2. Run a show_efuse_table command to check eFuse table. To generate source files run efuse_common_table or efuse_custom_table command.
Debug eFuse & Unit tests

**Virtual eFuses** The Kconfig option `CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL` will virtualize eFuse values inside the eFuse Manager, so writes are emulated and no eFuse values are permanently changed. This can be useful for debugging app and unit tests. During startup, the eFuses are copied to RAM. All eFuse operations (read and write) are performed with RAM instead of the real eFuse registers.

In addition to the `CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL` option there is `CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL_KEEP_IN_FLASH` option that adds a feature to keep eFuses in flash memory. To use this mode the partition_table should have the `efuse` partition. partition.csv: "efuse_em, data, efuse, , 0x2000,". During startup, the eFuses are copied from flash or, in case if flash is empty, from real eFuse to RAM and then update flash. This option allows keeping eFuses after reboots (possible to test secure_boot and flash_encryption features with this option).

**espefuse.py** esptool includes a useful tool for reading/writing ESP32 eFuse bits - `espefuse.py`.

```
espefuse.py -p PORT summary
Connecting........__
Detecting chip type... ESP32
espefuse.py v3.1-dev
EFUSE_NAME (Block) Description = [Meaningful, ! Value] [Readable/Writeable] (Hex Value)
---------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calibration fuses:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BLK3_PART_RESERVE (BLOCK0):</td>
<td>BLOCK3 partially served for ADC..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--calibration data = True R/W (0b1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_VREF (BLOCK0): Voltage reference calibration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- = 1114 R/W (0b00010)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC1_TP_LOW (BLOCK3): ADC1 150mV reading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- = 346 R/W (0b0010001)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC1_TP_HIGH (BLOCK3): ADC1 850mV reading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- = 3285 R/W (0b000000101)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC2_TP_LOW (BLOCK3): ADC2 150mV reading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- = 449 R/W (0b0000111)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC2_TP_HIGH (BLOCK3): ADC2 850mV reading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- = 3362 R/W (0b111110101)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Config fuses:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XPD_SDIO_FORCE (BLOCK0):</td>
<td>Ignore MTDI pin (GPIO12) for VDD_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--SDIO on reset = False R/W (0b0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPD_SDIO_REG (BLOCK0):</td>
<td>If XPD_SDIO_FORCE, enable VDD_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--SDIO reg on reset = False R/W (0b0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPD_SDIO_TIEH (BLOCK0):</td>
<td>If XPD_SDIO_FORCE &amp; XPD_SDIO_REG_</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- = 1.8V R/W (0b0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLK8M_FREQ (BLOCK0): 8MHz clock freq override</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- = 53 R/W (0x35)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI_PAD_CONFIG_CLK (BLOCK0): Override SD_CLK pad (GPIO6/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--SPICLK) = 0 R/W (0b00000)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI_PAD_CONFIG_Q (BLOCK0): Override SD_DATA_0 pad (GPIO7/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--SPIQ) = 0 R/W (0b00000)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI_PAD_CONFIG_D (BLOCK0): Override SD_DATA_1 pad (GPIO8/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--SPID) = 0 R/W (0b00000)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI_PAD_CONFIG_HD (BLOCK0): Override SD_DATA_2 pad (GPIO9/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--SPIH) = 0 R/W (0b00000)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI_PAD_CONFIG_CS0 (BLOCK0): Override SD_CMD pad (GPIO11/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--SPICS0) = 0 R/W (0b00000)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE_SDIO_HOST (BLOCK0): Disable SDIO host</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- = False R/W (0b0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Efuse fuses:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

```

(下頁續續)
### Chapter 2. API 参考

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Register Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>WR_DIS (BLOCK0):</strong></td>
<td>Efuse write disable mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 R/W (0x0000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RD_DIS (BLOCK0):</strong></td>
<td>Efuse read disable mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 R/W (0x00)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CODING_SCHEME (BLOCK0):</strong></td>
<td>Efuse variable block length scheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3/4 (BLK1-3 len=192 bits) R/W (0b01)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>KEY_STATUS (BLOCK0):</strong></td>
<td>Usage of efuse block 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(reserved) = False R/W (0b0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Identity fuses:**
- **MAC (BLOCK0):** Factory MAC Address
  - 84:0d:8e:18:8e:44 (CRC Oxad OK) R/W
- **MAC_CRC (BLOCK0):** CRC8 for factory MAC address
  - 173 R/W (0xad)
- **CHIP_VER_REV1 (BLOCK0):** Silicon Revision 1
  - True R/W (0b1)
- **CHIP_VER_REV2 (BLOCK0):** Silicon Revision 2
  - False R/W (0b0)
- **CHIP_VERSION (BLOCK0):** Reserved for future chip versions
  - 2 R/W (0b10)
- **CHIP_PACKAGE (BLOCK0):** Chip package identifier
  - 0 R/W (0b000)
- **MAC_VERSION (BLOCK3):** Version of the MAC field
  - 0 R/W (0x00)

**Security fuses:**
- **FLASH_CRYPT_CNT (BLOCK0):** Flash encryption mode counter
  - 0 R/W (0b00000000)
- **UART_DOWNLOAD_DIS (BLOCK0):** Disable UART download mode
  - (ESP32 rev3 only) = False R/W (0b0)
- **FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG (BLOCK0):** Flash encryption config (key tweak bits)
  - 0 R/W (0x0)
- **CONSOLE_DEBUG_DISABLE (BLOCK0):** Disable ROM BASIC interpreter
  - False R/W (0b1)
- **ABS_DONE_0 (BLOCK0):** Secure boot V1 is enabled for bootloader image
  - False R/W (0b0)
- **ABS_DONE_1 (BLOCK0):** Secure boot V2 is enabled for bootloader image
  - False R/W (0b0)
- **JTAG_DISABLE (BLOCK0):** Disable JTAG
  - False R/W (0b0)
- **DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT (BLOCK0):** Disable flash encryption in UART
  - False R/W (0b0)
- **DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT (BLOCK0):** Disable flash decryption in UART
  - False R/W (0b0)
- **DISABLE_DL_CACHE (BLOCK0):** Disable flash cache in UART
  - False R/W (0b0)
- **BLOCK1 (BLOCK1):** Flash encryption key
  - 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W
- **BLOCK2 (BLOCK2):** Secure boot key
  - 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W
- **BLOCK3 (BLOCK3):** Variable Block 3
  - 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 91 02 87 fa 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W

Flash voltage (VDD_SDIO) determined by GPIO12 on reset (High for 1.8V, Low/NC for 3.3V).

To get a dump for all eFuse registers.
```
espesefuse.py -p PORT dump
Connecting...........
Detecting chip type... ESP32
BLOCK0 ( ) [0 ] read_regs: 00000000 8e188e44
....00ad840d 0000e000 00000235 00000000 00000000
BLOCK1 (flash_encryption) [1 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000
....00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK2 (secure_boot_v1 s) [2 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000
....00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK3 ( ) [3 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000
....00000000 fa870291 00000000 00000000
espefuse.py v3.1-dev
```

### Header File

- components/efuse/include/esp_efuse.h

### Functions

**esp_err_t esp_efuse_read_field_blob(const esp_efuse_desc_t *field[], void *dst, size_t dst_size_bits)**

Reads bits from EFUSE field and writes it into an array.

The number of read bits will be limited to the minimum value from the description of the bits in “field” structure or “dst_size_bits” required size. Use “esp_efuse_get_field_size()” function to determine the length of the field.

**Note** Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.

**Parameters**

- [in] field: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.
- [out] dst: A pointer to array that will contain the result of reading.
- [in] dst_size_bits: The number of bits required to read. If the requested number of bits is greater than the field, the number will be limited to the field size.

**bool esp_efuse_read_field_bit(const esp_efuse_desc_t *field[])**

Read a single bit eFuse field as a boolean value.

**Note** The value must exist and must be a single bit wide. If there is any possibility of an error in the provided arguments, call esp_efuse_read_field_blob() and check the returned value instead.

**Note** If assertions are enabled and the parameter is invalid, execution will abort

**Note** Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

**Return**

- true: The field parameter is valid and the bit is set.
- false: The bit is not set, or the parameter is invalid and assertions are disabled.

**Parameters**

- [in] field: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.

**esp_err_t esp_efuse_read_field_cnt(const esp_efuse_desc_t *field[], size_t* out_cnt)**

Reads bits from EFUSE field and returns number of bits programmed as “1”.

If the bits are set not sequentially, they will still be counted.

**Note** Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.

**Parameters**

- [in] field: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.
Chapter 2. API

• [out] out_cnt: A pointer that will contain the number of programmed as “1” bits.

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_write_field_blob(const esp_efuse_desc_t *field[], const void *src, size_t src_size_bits)
```

Writes array to EFUSE field.

The number of write bits will be limited to the minimum value from the description of the bits in “field” structure or “src_size_bits” required size. Use “esp_efuse_get_field_size()” function to determine the length of the field. After the function is completed, the writing registers are cleared.

Return

• ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
• ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
• ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters

• [in] field: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.
• [in] src: A pointer to array that contains the data for writing.
• [in] src_size_bits: The number of bits required to write.

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_write_field_cnt(const esp_efuse_desc_t *field[], size_t cnt)
```

Writes a required count of bits as “1” to EFUSE field.

If there are no free bits in the field to set the required number of bits to “1”, ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL error is returned, the field will not be partially recorded. After the function is completed, the writing registers are cleared.

Return

• ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
• ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL: Not all requested cnt bits is set.

Parameters

• [in] field: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.
• [in] cnt: Required number of programmed as “1” bits.

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_write_field_bit(const esp_efuse_desc_t *field[])
```

Write a single bit eFuse field to 1.

For use with eFuse fields that are a single bit. This function will write the bit to value 1 if it is not already set, or does nothing if the bit is already set.

This is equivalent to calling esp_efuse_write_field_cnt() with the cnt parameter equal to 1, except that it will return ESP_OK if the field is already set to 1.

Return

• ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed, or the bit was already set to value 1.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments, including if the efuse field is not 1 bit wide.

Parameters

• [in] field: Pointer to the structure describing the efuse field.

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_set_write_protect(esp_efuse_block_t blk)
```

Sets a write protection for the whole block.

After that, it is impossible to write to this block. The write protection does not apply to block 0.

Return

• ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
• ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL: Not all requested cnt bits is set.
• ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: The block does not support this command.

Parameters

• [in] blk: Block number of eFuse. (EFUSE_BLK1, EFUSE_BLK2 and EFUSE_BLK3)
**esp_err_t esp_efuse_set_read_protect**(esp_efuse_block_t blk)

Sets a read protection for the whole block.

After that, it is impossible to read from this block. The read protection does not apply to block 0.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL: Not all requested cnt bits is set.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: The block does not support this command.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** blk: Block number of eFuse. (EFUSE_BLK1, EFUSE_BLK2 and EFUSE_BLK3)

**int esp_efuse_get_field_size**(const esp_efuse_desc_t *field[])

Returns the number of bits used by field.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** field: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of eFuse.

**uint32_t esp_efuse_read_reg**(esp_efuse_block_t blk, unsigned int num_reg)

Returns value of eFuse register.

This is a thread-safe implementation. Example: EFUSE_BLK2_RDATA3_REG where (blk=2, num_reg=3)

**Note** Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

**Return** Value of register

**Parameters**
- **[in]** blk: Block number of eFuse.
- **[in]** num_reg: The register number in the block.

**esp_err_t esp_efuse_write_reg**(esp_efuse_block_t blk, unsigned int num_reg, uint32_t val)

Write value to eFuse register.

Apply a coding scheme if necessary. This is a thread-safe implementation. Example: EFUSE_BLK3_WDATA0_REG where (blk=3, num_reg=0)

**Return**
- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** blk: Block number of eFuse.
- **[in]** num_reg: The register number in the block.
- **[in]** val: Value to write.

**esp_efuse_coding_scheme_t esp_efuse_get_coding_scheme**(esp_efuse_block_t blk)

Return eFuse coding scheme for blocks.

Note: The coding scheme is applicable only to 1, 2 and 3 blocks. For 0 block, the coding scheme is always NONE.

**Return** Return eFuse coding scheme for blocks

**Parameters**
- **[in]** blk: Block number of eFuse.

**esp_err_t esp_efuse_read_block**(esp_efuse_block_t blk, void *dst_key, size_t offset_in_bits, size_t size_bits)

Read key to eFuse block starting at the offset and the required size.

**Note** Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

**Parameters**
Chapter 2. API

- **[in] blk**: Block number of eFuse.
- **[in] dst_key**: A pointer to array that will contain the result of reading.
- **[in] offset_in_bits**: Start bit in block.
- **[in] size_bits**: The number of bits required to read.

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_write_block(esp_efuse_block_t blk, const void *src_key, size_t offset_in_bits, size_t size_bits)
```

Write key to eFuse block starting at the offset and the required size.

**Return**
- **ESP_OK**: The operation was successfully completed.
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG**: Error in the passed arguments.
- **ESP_ERR_CODING**: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.
- **ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG**: Error repeated programming of programmed bits

**Parameters**
- **[in] blk**: Block number of eFuse.
- **[in] src_key**: A pointer to array that contains the key for writing.
- **[in] offset_in_bits**: Start bit in block.
- **[in] size_bits**: The number of bits required to write.

```c
uint8_t esp_efuse_get_chip_ver(void)
```

Returns chip version from eFuse.

**Return** chip version

```c
uint32_t esp_efuse_get_pkg_ver(void)
```

Returns chip package from eFuse.

**Return** chip package

```c
void esp_efuse_reset(void)
```

Reset eFuse write registers.

Efuse write registers are written to zero, to negate any changes that have been staged here.

**Note** This function is not threadsafe, if calling code updates eFuse values from multiple tasks then this is caller’s responsibility to serialise.

```c
void esp_efuse_disable_basic_rom_console(void)
```

Disable BASIC ROM Console via eFuse.

By default, if booting from flash fails the ESP32 will boot a BASIC console in ROM.

Call this function (from bootloader or app) to permanently disable the console on this chip.

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode(void)
```

Disable ROM Download Mode via eFuse.

Permanently disables the ROM Download Mode feature. Once disabled, if the SoC is booted with strapping pins set for ROM Download Mode then an error is printed instead.

**Note** Not all SoCs support this option. An error will be returned if called on an ESP32 with a silicon revision lower than 3, as these revisions do not support this option.

**Note** If ROM Download Mode is already disabled, this function does nothing and returns success.

**Return**
- **ESP_OK** If the eFuse was successfully burned, or had already been burned.
- **ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED** (ESP32 only) This SoC is not capable of disabling UART download mode
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE** (ESP32 only) This eFuse is write protected and cannot be written

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_set_rom_log_scheme(esp_effuse_log_scheme_t log_scheme)
```

Set boot ROM log scheme via eFuse.

**Note** By default, the boot ROM will always print to console. This API can be called to set the log scheme only once per chip, once the value is changed from the default it can’t be changed again.

**Return**
- **ESP_OK** If the eFuse was successfully burned, or had already been burned.
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED (ESP32 only) This SoC is not capable of setting ROM log scheme
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE This eFuse is write protected or has been burned already

Parameters
- log_scheme: Supported ROM log scheme

`uint32_t esp_efuse_read_secure_version (void)`
Return secure_version from efuse field.

Return Secure version from efuse field

bool `esp_efuse_check_secure_version (uint32_t secure_version)`
Check secure_version from app and secure_version and from efuse field.

Return
- True: If version of app is equal or more then secure_version from efuse.

Parameters
- secure_version: Secure version from app.

`esp_err_t esp_efuse_update_secure_version (uint32_t secure_version)`
Write efuse field by secure_version value.
Update the secure_version value is available if the coding scheme is None. Note: Do not use this function in your applications. This function is called as part of the other API.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_FAIL: secure_version of app cannot be set to efuse field.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Anti rollback is not supported with the 3/4 and Repeat coding scheme.

Parameters
- [in] secure_version: Secure version from app.

`esp_err_t esp_efuse_batch_write_begin (void)`
Set the batch mode of writing fields.

This mode allows you to write the fields in the batch mode when need to burn several efuses at one time. To enable batch mode call begin() then perform as usual the necessary operations read and write and at the end call commit() to actually burn all written efuses. The batch mode can be used nested. The commit will be done by the last commit() function. The number of begin() functions should be equal to the number of commit() functions.

Note: If batch mode is enabled by the first task, at this time the second task cannot write/read efuses. The second task will wait for the first task to complete the batch operation.

Note Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

```c
// Example of using the batch writing mode.

// set the batch writing mode
esp_efuse_batch_write_begin();

// use any writing functions as usual
esp_efuse_write_field_blob(ESP_EFUSE_...);
esp_efuse_write_field_cnt(ESP_EFUSE_...);
esp_efuse_set_write_protect(EFUSE_BLKx);
esp_efuse_write_reg(EFUSE_BLKx, ...);
esp_efuse_write_block(EFUSE_BLKx, ...);
esp_efuse_write((ESP_EFUSE_1, 3)); // ESP_EFUSE_1 == 1, here we write a new --value = 3. The changes will be burn by the commit() function.
esp_efuse_read...(ESP_EFUSE_1); // this function returns ESP_EFUSE_1 == 1. --because uncommitted changes are not readable, it will be available only... --after commit.
...
```
Esperrif_batch_write APIs can be called recursively.

```c
esp_efuse_batch_write_begin();
esp_efuse_set_write_protect(EFUSE_BLKx);
esp_efuse_batch_write_commit();  // the burn will be skipped here, it will be done in the last commit() .
...

// Write all of these fields to the efuse registers
esp_efuse_batch_write_commit();
esp_efuse_read...(ESP_EFUSE_1);  // this function returns ESP_EFUSE_1 == 3.
```

Return
- ESP_OK: Successful.

```c
typedef esp_err_t esp_efuse_batch_write_cancel (void)
```
Reset the batch mode of writing fields.

It will reset the batch writing mode and any written changes.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: The batch mode was not set.

```c
typedef esp_err_t esp_efuse_batch_write_commit (void)
```
Writes all prepared data for the batch mode.

Must be called to ensure changes are written to the efuse registers. After this the batch writing mode will be reset.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: The deferred writing mode was not set.

```c
bool esp_efuse_block_is_empty (esp_efuse_block_t block)
```
Checks that the given block is empty.

Return
- True: The block is empty.
- False: The block is not empty or was an error.

```c
bool esp_efuse_get_key_dis_read (esp_efuse_block_t block)
```
Returns a read protection for the key block.

Return True: The key block is read protected False: The key block is readable.

Parameters
- [in] block: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

```c
typedef esp_err_t esp_efuse_set_key_dis_read (esp_efuse_block_t block)
```
Sets a read protection for the key block.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters
- [in] block: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

```c
bool esp_efuse_get_key_dis_write (esp_efuse_block_t block)
```
Returns a write protection for the key block.

Return True: The key block is write protected False: The key block is writeable.

Parameters
- [in] block: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX
**Chapter 2. API**

- **[in] block**: A key block in the range `EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX`

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_set_key_dis_write(esp_efuse_block_t block)
```
Sets a write protection for the key block.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

**Parameters**
- **[in] block**: A key block in the range `EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX`

```c
bool esp_efuse_key_block_unused(esp_efuse_block_t block)
```
Returns true if the key block is unused, false otherwise.

An unused key block is all zero content, not read or write protected, and has purpose 0 (ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_USER)

**Return**
- True if key block is unused,
- False if key block is used or the specified block index is not a key block.

**Parameters**
- **block**: key block to check.

```c
bool esp_efuse_find_purpose(esp_efuse_purpose_t purpose, esp_efuse_block_t* block)
```
Find a key block with the particular purpose set.

**Return**
- True: If found,
- False: If not found (value at block pointer is unchanged).

**Parameters**
- **[in] purpose**: Purpose to search for.
- **[out] block**: Pointer in the range `EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX` which will be set to the key block if found. Can be NULL, if only need to test the key block exists.

```c
bool esp_efuse_get_keypurpose_dis_write(esp_efuse_block_t block)
```
Returns a write protection of the key purpose field for an efuse key block.

**Note** For ESP32: no keypurpose, it returns always True.

**Return** True: The key purpose is write protected. False: The key purpose is writeable.

**Parameters**
- **[in] block**: A key block in the range `EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX`

```c
esp_efuse_purpose_t esp_efuse_get_key_purpose(esp_efuse_block_t block)
```
Returns the current purpose set for an efuse key block.

**Return**
- Value: If Successful, it returns the value of the purpose related to the given key block.
- ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_MAX: Otherwise.

**Parameters**
- **[in] block**: A key block in the range `EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX`

```c
esp_err_t esp_efuse_write_key(esp_efuse_block_t block, esp_efuse_purpose_t purpose, const void* key, size_t key_size_bytes)
```
Program a block of key data to an efuse block.

The burn of a key, protection bits, and a purpose happens in batch mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error in efuses state, unused block not found.
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

**Parameters**
- **[in] block**: Block to read purpose for. Must be in range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0 to EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX. Key block must be unused (esp_efuse_key_block_unused).
- **[in] purpose**: Purpose to set for this key. Purpose must be already unset.
- **[in] key**: Pointer to data to write.
- **[in] key_size_bytes**: Bytes length of data to write.

`esp_err_t esp_efuse_write_keys(const esp_efuse_purpose_t purposes[], uint8_t keys[][32], unsigned number_of_keys)`

Program keys to unused efuse blocks.

The burn of keys, protection bits, and purposes happens in batch mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error in efuses state, unused block not found.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_ENOUGH_UNUSED_KEY_BLOCKS: Error not enough unused key blocks available.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

**Parameters**
- **[in] purposes**: Array of purposes (purpose[number_of_keys]).
- **[in] keys**: Array of keys (uint8_t keys[number_of_keys][32]). Each key is 32 bytes long.
- **[in] number_of_keys**: The number of keys to write (up to 6 keys).

**Structures**

`struct esp_efuse_desc_t`  
Type definition for an efuse field.

**Public Members**

`esp_efuse_block_t esp_efuse_block: 8`
Block of efuse

`uint8_t bit_start`
Start bit [0..255]

`uint16_t bit_count`
Length of bit field [1..-]

**Macros**

`ESP_ERR_EFUSE`  
Base error code for efuse api.

`ESP_OK_EFUSE_CNT`  
OK the required number of bits is set.

`ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL`  
Error field is full.

`ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG`  
Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.

`ESP_ERR_CODING`  
Error while a encoding operation.
Chapter 2. API

ESP_ERR_NOT_ENOUGH_UNUSED_KEY_BLOCKS
Error not enough unused key blocks available

ESP_ERR_DAMAGED_READING
Error. Burn or reset was done during a reading operation leads to damage read data. This error is internal to
the efuse component and not returned by any public API.

Enumerations

enum esp_efuse_rom_log_scheme_t
Type definition for ROM log scheme.

Values:

ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_ON
Always enable ROM logging

ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_LOW
ROM logging is enabled when specific GPIO level is low during start up

ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_HIGH
ROM logging is enabled when specific GPIO level is high during start up

ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_OFF
Disable ROM logging permanently

2.7.5 Error Codes and Helper Functions

This section lists definitions of common ESP-IDF error codes and several helper functions related to error handling.

For general information about error codes in ESP-IDF, see Error Handling.

For the full list of error codes defined in ESP-IDF, see Error Code Reference.

API Reference

Header File

• components/esp_common/include/esp_err.h

Functions

const char *esp_err_to_name (esp_err_t code)
Returns string for esp_err_t error codes.

This function finds the error code in a pre-generated lookup-table and returns its string representation.

The function is generated by the Python script tools/gen_esp_err_to_name.py which should be run each time
an esp_err_t error is modified, created or removed from the IDF project.

Return string error message

Parameters

• code: esp_err_t error code

const char *esp_err_to_name_r (esp_err_t code, char *buf, size_t buflen)
Returns string for esp_err_t and system error codes.

This function finds the error code in a pre-generated lookup-table of esp_err_t errors and returns its string
representation. If the error code is not found then it is attempted to be found among system errors.

The function is generated by the Python script tools/gen_esp_err_to_name.py which should be run each time
an esp_err_t error is modified, created or removed from the IDF project.

Return buf containing the string error message

Parameters
Chapter 2. API 参考

- **code**: esp_err_t error code
- **[out] buf**: buffer where the error message should be written
- **buflen**: Size of buffer buf. At most buflen bytes are written into the buf buffer (including the terminating null byte).

**Macros**

- **ESP_OK**
  - esp_err_t value indicating success (no error)
- **ESP_FAIL**
  - Generic esp_err_t code indicating failure
- **ESP_ERR_NO_MEM**
  - Out of memory
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG**
  - Invalid argument
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE**
  - Invalid state
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE**
  - Invalid size
- **ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND**
  - Requested resource not found
- **ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED**
  - Operation or feature not supported
- **ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT**
  - Operation timed out
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE**
  - Received response was invalid
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC**
  - CRC or checksum was invalid
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_VERSION**
  - Version was invalid
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_MAC**
  - MAC address was invalid
- **ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED**
  - There are items remained to retrieve
- **ESP_ERR_WIFI_BASE**
  - Starting number of WiFi error codes
- **ESP_ERR_MESH_BASE**
  - Starting number of MESH error codes
- **ESP_ERR_FLASH_BASE**
  - Starting number of flash error codes
- **ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_BASE**
  - Starting number of HW cryptography module error codes
- **ESP_ERROR_CHECK**(x)
  - Macro which can be used to check the error code, and terminate the program in case the code is not ESP_OK. Prints the error code, error location, and the failed statement to serial output.
  - Disabled if assertions are disabled.
ESP_ERROR_CHECK WITHOUT_ABORT(x)

Macro which can be used to check the error code. Prints the error code, error location, and the failed statement to serial output. In comparison with ESP_ERROR_CHECK(), this prints the same error message but isn’t terminating the program.

Type Definitions

typedef int esp_err_t

2.7.6 ESP HTTPS OTA

Overview

esp_https_ota provides simplified APIs to perform firmware upgrades over HTTPS. It’s an abstraction layer over existing OTA APIs.

Application Example

def do_firmware_upgrade()
{
    esp_http_client_config_t config = {
        .url = CONFIG_FIRMWARE_UPGRADE_URL,
        .cert_pem = (char *)server_cert_pem_start,
    };
    esp_err_t ret = esp_https_ota(&config);
    if (ret == ESP_OK) {
        esp_restart();
    } else {
        return ESP_FAIL;
    }
    return ESP_OK;
}

Partial Image Download over HTTPS

To use partial image download feature, enable partial_http_download configuration in esp_https_ota_config_t. When this configuration is enabled, firmware image will be downloaded in multiple HTTP requests of specified size. Maximum content length of each request can be specified by setting max_http_request_size to required value.

This option is useful while fetching image from a service like AWS S3, where mbedTLS Rx buffer size (CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_IN_CONTENT_LEN) can be set to lower value which is not possible without enabling this configuration.

Default value of mbedTLS Rx buffer size is set to 16K. By using partial_http_download with max_http_request_size of 4K, size of mbedTLS Rx buffer can be reduced to 4K. With this configuration, memory saving of around 12K is expected.

Signature Verification

For additional security, signature of OTA firmware images can be verified. For that, refer...
Chapter 2. API 参考

API Reference

Header File

- components/esp_https_ota/include/esp_https_ota.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t esp_https_ota(const esp_http_client_config_t *config)
```

HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade.

This function allocates HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade context, establishes HTTPS connection, reads image data from HTTP stream and writes it to OTA partition and finishes HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade operation. This API supports URL redirection, but if CA cert of URLs differ then it should be appended to `cert_pem` member of `config`.

**Note** This API handles the entire OTA operation, so if this API is being used then no other APIs from `esp_https_ota` component should be called. If more information and control is needed during the HTTPS OTA process, then one can use `esp_https_ota_begin` and subsequent APIs. If this API returns successfully, `esp_restart()` must be called to boot from the new firmware image.

**Return**

- `ESP_OK`: OTA data updated, next reboot will use specified partition.
- `ESP_FAIL`: For generic failure.
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG`: Invalid argument
- `ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED`: Invalid app image
- `ESP_ERR_NO_MEM`: Cannot allocate memory for OTA operation.
- `ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT` or `ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL`: Flash write failed.
- For other return codes, refer OTA documentation in esp-idf’s app_update component.

**Parameters**

- `[in]` `config`: pointer to `esp_http_client_config_t` structure.

```c
esp_err_t esp_https_ota_begin(esp_https_ota_config_t *ota_config, esp_https_ota_handle_t *handle)
```

Start HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade.

This function initializes ESP HTTPS OTA context and establishes HTTPS connection. This function must be invoked first. If this function returns successfully, then `esp_https_ota_perform` should be called to continue with the OTA process and there should be a call to `esp_https_ota_finish` on completion of OTA operation or on failure in subsequent operations. This API supports URL redirection, but if CA cert of URLs differ then it should be appended to `cert_pem` member of `http_config`, which is a part of `ota_config`. In case of error, this API explicitly sets `handle` to NULL.

**Note** This API is blocking, so setting `is_async` member of `http_config` structure will result in an error.

**Return**

- `ESP_OK`: HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade context initialised and HTTPS connection established
- `ESP_FAIL`: For generic failure.
- `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG`: Invalid argument (missing/incorrect config, certificate, etc.)
- For other return codes, refer documentation in app_update component and esp_http_client component in esp-idf.

**Parameters**

- `[in]` `ota_config`: pointer to `esp_https_ota_config_t` structure
- `[out]` `handle`: pointer to an allocated data of type `esp_https_ota_handle_t` which will be initialised in this function

```c
esp_err_t esp_https_ota_perform(esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle)
```

Read image data from HTTP stream and write it to OTA partition.

This function reads image data from HTTP stream and writes it to OTA partition. This function must be called only if `esp_https_ota_begin()` returns successfully. This function must be called in a loop since it returns after every HTTP read operation thus giving you the flexibility to stop OTA operation midway.

**Return**

- `ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_IN_PROGRESS`: OTA update is in progress, call this API again to continue.
Chapter 2. API

• ESP_OK: OTA update was successful
• ESP_FAIL: OTA update failed
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument
• ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: Invalid app image
• ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for OTA operation.
• ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.
• For other return codes, refer OTA documentation in esp-idf’s app_update component.

Parameters
• [in] https_ota_handle: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

bool esp_https_ota_is_complete_data_received (esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle)

Checks if complete data was received or not.

Note This API can be called just before esp_https_ota_finish() to validate if the complete image was indeed received.

Return
• false
• true

Parameters
• [in] https_ota_handle: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

esp_err_t esp_https_ota_finish (esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle)

Clean-up HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade and close HTTPS connection.

This function closes the HTTP connection and frees the ESP HTTPS OTA context. This function switches the boot partition to the OTA partition containing the new firmware image.

Note If this API returns successfully, esp_restart() must be called to boot from the new firmware image esp_https_ota_finish should not be called after calling esp_https_ota_abort

Return
• ESP_OK: Clean-up successful
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument
• ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: Invalid app image

Parameters
• [in] https_ota_handle: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

esp_err_t esp_https_ota_abort (esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle)

Clean-up HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade and close HTTPS connection.

This function closes the HTTP connection and frees the ESP HTTPS OTA context.

Note esp_https_ota_abort should not be called after calling esp_https_ota_finish

Return
• ESP_OK: Clean-up successful
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Invalid ESP HTTPS OTA state
• ESP_FAIL: OTA not started
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: OTA handle not found
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument

Parameters
• [in] https_ota_handle: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

esp_err_t esp_https_ota_get_img_desc (esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle, esp_app_desc_t *new_app_info)

Reads app description from image header. The app description provides information like the “Firmware version” of the image.

Note This API can be called only after esp_https_ota_begin() and before esp_https_ota_perform(). Calling this API is not mandatory.

Return
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid arguments
• ESP_FAIL: Failed to read image descriptor
• ESP_OK: Successfully read image descriptor
Parameters
• [in] https_ota_handle: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure
• [out] new_app_info: pointer to an allocated esp_app_desc_t structure

`int esp_https_ota_get_image_len_read(esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle)`
This function returns OTA image data read so far.

**Note** This API should be called only if `esp_https_ota_perform()` has been called at least once or if `esp_https_ota_get_img_desc` has been called before.

**Return**
• -1 On failure
• total bytes read so far

**Parameters**
• [in] https_ota_handle: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

`int esp_https_ota_get_image_size(esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle)`
This function returns OTA image total size.

**Note** This API should be called after `esp_https_ota_begin()` has been already called. This can be used to create some sort of progress indication (in combination with `esp_https_ota_get_image_len_read()`)

**Return**
• -1 On failure or chunked encoding
• total bytes of image

**Parameters**
• [in] https_ota_handle: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

Structures
`struct esp_https_ota_config_t`
ESP HTTPS OTA configuration.

**Public Members**

`const esp_http_client_config_t *http_config`
ESP HTTP client configuration

`http_client_init_cb_t http_client_init_cb`
Callback after ESP HTTP client is初始化

`bool bulk_flash_erase`
Erase entire flash partition during initialization. By default flash partition is erased during write operation and in chunk of 4K sector size

`bool partial_http_download`
Enable Firmware image to be downloaded over multiple HTTP requests

`int max_http_request_size`
Maximum request size for partial HTTP download

 Macros
`ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_BASE`
`ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_IN_PROGRESS`

**Type Definitions**
`typedef void *esp_https_ota_handle_t`
`typedef esp_err_t (*http_client_init_cb_t)(esp_http_client_handle_t)`
2.7.7 POSIX Threads Support

Overview

ESP-IDF is based on FreeRTOS but offers a range of POSIX-compatible APIs that allow easy porting of third party code. This includes support for common parts of the POSIX Threads “pthreads” API.

POSIX Threads are implemented in ESP-IDF as wrappers around equivalent FreeRTOS features. The runtime memory or performance overhead of using the pthreads API is quite low, but not every feature available in either pthreads or FreeRTOS is available via the ESP-IDF pthreads support.

Pthreads can be used in ESP-IDF by including standard `pthread.h` header, which is included in the toolchain libc. An additional ESP-IDF specific header, `esp_pthread.h`, provides additional non-POSIX APIs for using some ESP-IDF features with pthreads.

C++ Standard Library implementations for `std::thread`, `std::mutex`, `std::condition_variable`, etc. are implemented using pthreads (via GCC libstdc++). Therefore, restrictions mentioned here also apply to the equivalent C++ standard library functionality.

RTOS Integration

Unlike many operating systems using POSIX Threads, ESP-IDF is a real-time operating system with a real-time scheduler. This means that a thread will only stop running if a higher priority task is ready to run, the thread blocks on an OS synchronization structure like a mutex, or the thread calls any of the functions `sleep`, `vTaskDelay()`, or `usleep`.

By default, all POSIX Threads have the same RTOS priority, but it is possible to change this by calling a custom API.

Standard features

The following standard APIs are implemented in ESP-IDF.

Refer to standard POSIX Threads documentation, or `pthread.h`, for details about the standard arguments and behaviour of each function. Differences or limitations compared to the standard APIs are noted below.

Thread APIs

- `pthread_create()` - The `attr` argument is supported for setting stack size and detach state only. Other attribute fields are ignored. Unlike FreeRTOS task functions, the `start_routine` function is allowed to return. A “detached” type thread is automatically deleted if the function returns. The default “joinable” type thread will be suspended until `pthread_join()` is called on it.
- `pthread_join()`
- `pthread_detach()`
- `pthread_exit()`
- `sched_yield()`
- `pthread_self()` - An assert will fail if this function is called from a FreeRTOS task which is not a thread.
- `pthread_equal()`

Thread Attributes

- `pthread_attr_init()`
- `pthread_attr_destroy()` - This function doesn’t need to free any resources and instead resets the `attr` structure to defaults (implementation is same as `pthread_attr_init()`).
Chapter 2. API

- pthread_attr_getstacksize() / pthread_attr_setstacksize()
- pthread_attr_getdetachstate() / pthread_attr_setdetachstate()

**Ones**

- pthread_once()

Static initializer constant PTHREAD_ONCE_INIT is supported.

注解：This function can be called from tasks created using either pthread or FreeRTOS APIs

**Mutexes**

POSIX Mutexes are implemented as FreeRTOS Mutex Semaphores (normal type for “fast” or “error check” mutexes, and Recursive type for “recursive” mutexes). This means that they have the same priority inheritance behaviour as mutexes created with xSemaphoreCreateMutex().

- pthread_mutex_init()
- pthread_mutex_destroy()
- pthread_mutex_lock()
- pthread_mutex_timedlock()
- pthread_mutex_trylock()
- pthread_mutex_unlock()
- pthread_mutexattr_init()
- pthread_mutexattr_destroy()
- pthread_mutexattr_gettype() / pthread_mutexattr_settype()

Static initializer constant PTHREAD_MUTEX_INITIALIZER is supported, but the non-standard static initializer constants for other mutex types are not supported.

注解：These functions can be called from tasks created using either pthread or FreeRTOS APIs

**Condition Variables**

- pthread_cond_init() - The attr argument is not implemented and is ignored.
- pthread_cond_destroy()
- pthread_cond_signal()
- pthread_cond_broadcast()
- pthread_cond_wait()
- pthread_cond_timedwait()

Static initializer constant PTHREAD_COND_INITIALIZER is supported.

- The resolution of pthread_cond_timedwait() timeouts is the RTOS tick period (see CONFIG_FREERTOS_HZ). Timeouts may be delayed up to one tick period after the requested timeout.

注解：These functions can be called from tasks created using either pthread or FreeRTOS APIs

**Read/Write Locks**

- pthread_rwlock_init() - The attr argument is not implemented and is ignored.
- pthread_rwlock_destroy()
- pthread_rwlock_rdlock()
- pthread_rwlock_wrlock()
- pthread_rwlock_unlock()
Chapter 2. API 参考

Static initializer constant PTHREAD_RWLOCK_INITIALIZER is supported.

注解：These functions can be called from tasks created using either pthread or FreeRTOS APIs

### Thread-Specific Data

- `pthread_key_create()` - The destr_function argument is supported and will be called if a thread function exits normally, calls `pthread_exit()`, or if the underlying task is deleted directly using the FreeRTOS function `vTaskDelete()`.
- `pthread_key_delete()`
- `pthread_setspecific()` / `pthread_getspecific()`

注解：These functions can be called from tasks created using either pthread or FreeRTOS APIs

注解：There are other options for thread local storage in ESP-IDF, including options with higher performance. See *Thread Local Storage*.

### Not Implemented

The `pthread.h` header is a standard header and includes additional APIs and features which are not implemented in ESP-IDF. These include:

- `pthread_cancel()` returns `ENOSYS` if called.
- `pthread_condattr_init()` returns `ENOSYS` if called.

Other POSIX Threads functions (not listed here) are not implemented and will produce either a compiler or a linker error if referenced from an ESP-IDF application. If you identify a useful API that you would like to see implemented in ESP-IDF, please open a feature request on GitHub <https://github.com/espressif/esp-idf/issues> with the details.

### ESP-IDF Extensions

The API `esp_pthread_set_cfg()` defined in the `esp_pthreads.h` header offers custom extensions to control how subsequent calls to `pthread_create()` will behave. Currently, the following configuration can be set:

- Default stack size of new threads, if not specified when calling `pthread_create()` (overrides `CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT`).
- RTOS priority of new threads (overrides `CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT`).
- Core affinity / core pinning of new threads (overrides `CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT`).
- FreeRTOS task name for new threads (overrides `CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT`).

This configuration is scoped to the calling thread (or FreeRTOS task), meaning that `esp_pthread_set_cfg()` can be called independently in different threads or tasks. If the `inherit_cfg` flag is set in the current configuration then any new thread created will inherit the creator’s configuration (if that thread calls `pthread_create()` recursively), otherwise the new thread will have the default configuration.

### Examples

- `system/pthread` demonstrates using the pthreads API to create threads
- `cxx/pthread` demonstrates using C++ Standard Library functions with threads
Chapter 2. API 参考

API Reference

Header File

- components/pthread/include/esp_pthread.h

Functions

```c
esp_pthread_cfg_t esp_pthread_get_default_config (void)
```

Creates a default pthread configuration based on the values set via menuconfig.

**Return** A default configuration structure.

```c
esp_err_t esp_pthread_set_cfg (const esp_pthread_cfg_t *cfg)
```

Configure parameters for creating pthread.

This API allows you to configure how the subsequent pthread_create() call will behave. This call can be used to setup configuration parameters like stack size, priority, configuration inheritance etc.

If the ‘inherit’ flag in the configuration structure is enabled, then the same configuration is also inherited in the thread subtree.

**Note** Passing non-NULL attributes to pthread_create() will override the stack_size parameter set using this API

**Return**
- ESP_OK if configuration was successfully set
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if stack_size is less than PTHREAD_STACK_MIN

**Parameters**
- `cfg`: The pthread config parameters

```c
esp_err_t esp_pthread_get_cfg (esp_pthread_cfg_t *p)
```

Get current pthread creation configuration.

This will retrieve the current configuration that will be used for creating threads.

**Return**
- ESP_OK if the configuration was available
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if a configuration wasn’t previously set

**Parameters**
- `p`: Pointer to the pthread config structure that will be updated with the currently configured parameters

```c
esp_err_t esp_pthread_init (void)
```

Initialize pthread library.

Structures

```c
struct esp_pthread_cfg_t
```

pthread configuration structure that influences pthread creation

**Public Members**

```c
size_t stack_size
```

The stack size of the pthread.

```c
size_t prio
```

The thread’s priority.

```c
bool inherit_cfg
```

Inherit this configuration further.

```c
const char *thread_name
```

The thread name.
int pin_to_core
    The core id to pin the thread to. Has the same value range as xCoreId argument of xTaskCreatePinnedToCore.

Macros
PTHREAD_STACK_MIN

2.7.8 Event Loop Library

Overview

The event loop library allows components to declare events to which other components can register handlers – code which will execute when those events occur. This allows loosely coupled components to attach desired behavior to changes in state of other components without application involvement. For instance, a high level connection handling library may subscribe to events produced by the Wi-Fi subsystem directly and act on those events. This also simplifies event processing by serializing and deferring code execution to another context.

Using esp_event APIs

There are two objects of concern for users of this library: events and event loops.

Events are occurrences of note. For example, for Wi-Fi, a successful connection to the access point may be an event. Events are referenced using a two part identifier which are discussed more here. Event loops are the vehicle by which events get posted by event sources and handled by event handler functions. These two appear prominently in the event loop library APIs.

Using this library roughly entails the following flow:

1. A user defines a function that should run when an event is posted to a loop. This function is referred to as the event handler. It should have the same signature as esp_event_handler_t.
2. An event loop is created using esp_event_loop_create(), which outputs a handle to the loop of type esp_event_loop_handle_t. Event loops created using this API are referred to as user event loops. There is, however, a special type of event loop called the default event loop which are discussed here. Components register event handlers to the loop using esp_event_handler_register_with(). Handlers can be registered with multiple loops, more on that here.
3. Event sources post an event to the loop using esp_event_post_to().
4. Components wanting to remove their handlers from being called can do so by unregistering from the loop using esp_event_handler_unregister_with().
5. Event loops which are no longer needed can be deleted using esp_event_loop_delete().

In code, the flow above may look like as follows:

```c
// 1. Define the event handler
void run_on_event(void* handler_arg, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t id, void* event_data) {
    // Event handler logic
}

void app_main() {
    // 2. A configuration structure of type esp_event_loop_args_t is needed to
    // specify the properties of the loop to be
    // created. A handle of type esp_event_loop_handle_t is obtained, which is
    // needed by the other APIs to reference the loop
    // to perform their operations on.
    esp_event_loop_args_t loop_args = {
        .queue_size = ...,;
```
### Declaring and defining events

As mentioned previously, events consist of two-part identifiers: the event base and the event ID. The event base identifies an independent group of events; the event ID identifies the event within that group. Think of the event base and event ID as a person’s last name and first name, respectively. A last name identifies a family, and the first name identifies a person within that family.

The event loop library provides macros to declare and define the event base easily.

#### Event base declaration:

```
ESP_EVENT_DECLARE_BASE(EVENT_BASE)
```

#### Event base definition:

```
ESP_EVENT_DEFINE_BASE(EVENT_BASE)
```

注解：在IDF中，系统事件的基标识符为大写，并且后缀为EVENT。例如，Wi-Fi事件的基标识符为WIFI_EVENT，以太网事件基标识符为ETHERNET_EVENT。
and so on. The purpose is to have event bases look like constants (although they are global variables considering the definitions of macros `ESP_EVENT_DECLARE_BASE` and `ESP_EVENT_DEFINE_BASE`).

For event ID’s, declaring them as enumerations is recommended. Once again, for visibility, these are typically placed in public header files.

Event ID:

```c
enum {
    EVENT_ID_1,
    EVENT_ID_2,
    EVENT_ID_3,
    ...
}
```

**Default Event Loop**

The default event loop is a special type of loop used for system events (Wi-Fi events, for example). The handle for this loop is hidden from the user. The creation, deletion, handler registration/unregistration and posting of events is done through a variant of the APIs for user event loops. The table below enumerates those variants, and the user event loop equivalent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Event Loops</th>
<th>Default Event Loops</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>esp_event_loop_create()</code></td>
<td><code>esp_event_loop_create_default()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>esp_event_loop_delete()</code></td>
<td><code>esp_event_loop_delete_default()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>esp_event_handler_register_with()</code></td>
<td><code>esp_event_handler_register()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>esp_event_handler_unregister_with()</code></td>
<td><code>esp_event_handler_unregister()</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>esp_event_post_to()</code></td>
<td><code>esp_event_post()</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you compare the signatures for both, they are mostly similar except for the lack of loop handle specification for the default event loop APIs.

Other than the API difference and the special designation to which system events are posted to, there is no difference to how default event loops and user event loops behave. It is even possible for users to post their own events to the default event loop, should the user opt to not create their own loops to save memory.

**Notes on Handler Registration**

It is possible to register a single handler to multiple events individually, i.e. using multiple calls to `esp_event_handler_register_with()`. For those multiple calls, the specific event base and event ID can be specified with which the handler should execute.

However, in some cases it is desirable for a handler to execute on (1) all events that get posted to a loop or (2) all events of a particular base identifier. This is possible using the special event base identifier `ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE` and special event ID `ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID`. These special identifiers may be passed as the event base and event ID arguments for `esp_event_handler_register_with()`.

Therefore, the valid arguments to `esp_event_handler_register_with()` are:

1. `<event base>, <event ID>` - handler executes when the event with base `<event base>` and event ID `<event ID>` gets posted to the loop
2. `<event base>, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID` - handler executes when any event with base `<event base>` gets posted to the loop
3. `ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID` - handler executes when any event gets posted to the loop

As an example, suppose the following handler registrations were performed:
If the hypothetical event `MY_EVENT_BASE`, `MY_EVENT_ID` is posted, all three handlers `run_on_event_1`, `run_on_event_2`, and `run_on_event_3` would execute.

If the hypothetical event `MY_EVENT_BASE`, `MY_OTHER_EVENT_ID` is posted, only `run_on_event_2` and `run_on_event_3` would execute.

If the hypothetical event `MY_OTHER_EVENT_BASE`, `MY_OTHER_EVENT_ID` is posted, only `run_on_event_3` would execute.

**Handler Registration and Handler Dispatch Order**

The general rule is that for handlers that match a certain posted event during dispatch, those which are registered first also get executed first. The user can then control which handlers get executed first by registering them before other handlers, provided that all registrations are performed using a single task. If the user plans to take advantage of this behavior, caution must be exercised if there are multiple tasks registering handlers. While the ‘first registered, first executed’ behavior still holds true, the task which gets executed first will also get their handlers registered first. Handlers registered one after the other by a single task will still be dispatched in the order relative to each other, but if that task gets pre-empted in between registration by another task which also registers handlers; then during dispatch those handlers will also get executed in between.

**Event loop profiling**

A configuration option `CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING` can be enabled in order to activate statistics collection for all event loops created. The function `esp_event_dump()` can be used to output the collected statistics to a file stream. More details on the information included in the dump can be found in the `esp_event_dump()` API Reference.

**Application Example**

Examples on using the `esp_event` library can be found in `system/esp_event`. The examples cover event declaration, loop creation, handler registration and unregistration and event posting.

Other examples which also adopt `esp_event` library:

- NMEA Parser, which will decode the statements received from GPS.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- `components/esp_event/include/esp_event.h`

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_loop_create(esp_event_loop_args_t *event_loop,
                                esp_event_loop_handle_t *event_loop)
```

Create a new event loop.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: event_loop_args or event_loop was NULL
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for event loops list
- ESP_FAIL: Failed to create task loop
**Parameters**

- **{in} event_loop_args**: configuration structure for the event loop to create
- **{out} event_loop**: handle to the created event loop

**esp_err_t esp_event_loop_delete**(esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop)

Delete an existing event loop.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**

- **{in} event_loop**: event loop to delete, must not be NULL

**esp_err_t esp_event_loop_create_default**(void)

Create default event loop.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for event loops list
- ESP_FAIL: Failed to create task loop
- Others: Fail

**esp_err_t esp_event_loop_delete_default**(void)

Delete the default event loop.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- Others: Fail

**esp_err_t esp_event_loop_run**(esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop, TickType_t ticks_to_run)

Dispatch events posted to an event loop.

This function is used to dispatch events posted to a loop with no dedicated task, i.e. task name was set to NULL in event_loop_args argument during loop creation. This function includes an argument to limit the amount of time it runs, returning control to the caller when that time expires (or some time afterwards). There is no guarantee that a call to this function will exit at exactly the time of expiry. There is also no guarantee that events have been dispatched during the call, as the function might have spent all the allotted time waiting on the event queue. Once an event has been dequeued, however, it is guaranteed to be dispatched. This guarantee contributes to not being able to exit exactly at time of expiry as (1) blocking on internal mutexes is necessary for dispatching the dequeued event, and (2) during dispatch of the dequeued event there is no way to control the time occupied by handler code execution. The guaranteed time of exit is therefore the allotted time + amount of time required to dispatch the last dequeued event.

In cases where waiting on the queue times out, ESP_OK is returned and not ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT, since it is normal behavior.

**Note**

encountering an unknown event that has been posted to the loop will only generate a warning, not an error.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**

- **{in} event_loop**: event loop to dispatch posted events from, must not be NULL
- **{in} ticks_to_run**: number of ticks to run the loop

**esp_err_t esp_event_handler_register**(esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, esp_event_handler_t event_handler, void *event_handler_arg)

Register an event handler to the system event loop (legacy).

This function can be used to register a handler for either: (1) specific events, (2) all events of a certain event base, or (3) all events known by the system event loop.
**Chapter 2. API**

**Note** This function is obsolete and will be deprecated soon, please use `esp_event_handler_instance_register()` instead.

- specific events: specify exact `event_base` and `event_id`
- all events of a certain base: specify exact `event_base` and use `ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID` as the `event_id`
- all events known by the loop: use `ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE` for `event_base` and `ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID` as the `event_id`

Registering multiple handlers to events is possible. Registering a single handler to multiple events is also possible. However, registering the same handler to the same event multiple times would cause the previous registrations to be overwritten.

**Note** the event loop library does not maintain a copy of `event_handler_arg`, therefore the user should ensure that `event_handler_arg` still points to a valid location by the time the handler gets called.

**Return**

- **ESP_OK**: Success
- **ESP_ERR_NO_MEM**: Cannot allocate memory for the handler
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG**: Invalid combination of `event_base` and `event_id`
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `event_base`: the base ID of the event to register the handler for
- **[in]** `event_id`: the ID of the event to register the handler for
- **[in]** `event_handler`: the handler function which gets called when the event is dispatched
- **[in]** `event_handler_arg`: data, aside from event data, that is passed to the handler when it is called

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_handler_register_with(esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop, esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, esp_event_handler_t event_handler, void *event_handler_arg)
```

Register an event handler to a specific loop (legacy).

This function behaves in the same manner as `esp_event_handler_register`, except the additional specification of the event loop to register the handler to.

**Note** This function is obsolete and will be deprecated soon, please use `esp_event_handler_instance_register_with()` instead.

**Note** the event loop library does not maintain a copy of `event_handler_arg`, therefore the user should ensure that `event_handler_arg` still points to a valid location by the time the handler gets called.

**Return**

- **ESP_OK**: Success
- **ESP_ERR_NO_MEM**: Cannot allocate memory for the handler
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG**: Invalid combination of `event_base` and `event_id`
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `event_loop`: the event loop to register this handler function to, must not be NULL
- **[in]** `event_base`: the base ID of the event to register the handler for
- **[in]** `event_id`: the ID of the event to register the handler for
- **[in]** `event_handler`: the handler function which gets called when the event is dispatched
- **[in]** `event_handler_arg`: data, aside from event data, that is passed to the handler when it is called

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_handler_instance_register_with(esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop, esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, esp_event_handler_t event_handler, void *event_handler_arg, esp_event_handler_instance_t *instance)
```

Register an instance of event handler to a specific loop.

This function can be used to register a handler for either: (1) specific events, (2) all events of a certain event...
base, or (3) all events known by the system event loop.

- specific events: specify exact event_base and event_id
- all events of a certain base: specify exact event_base and use ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id
- all events known by the loop: use ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE for event_base and ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id

Besides the error, the function returns an instance object as output parameter to identify each registration. This is necessary to remove (unregister) the registration before the event loop is deleted.

Registering multiple handlers to events, registering a single handler to multiple events as well as registering the same handler to the same event multiple times is possible. Each registration yields a distinct instance object which identifies it over the registration lifetime.

**Note** the event loop library does not maintain a copy of event_handler_arg, therefore the user should ensure that event_handler_arg still points to a valid location by the time the handler gets called

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID or instance is NULL
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**
- **[in]** event_loop: the event loop to register this handler function to, must not be NULL
- **[in]** event_base: the base ID of the event to register the handler for
- **[in]** event_id: the ID of the event to register the handler for
- **[in]** event_handler: the handler function which gets called when the event is dispatched
- **[in]** event_handler_arg: data, aside from event data, that is passed to the handler when it is called
- **[out]** instance: An event handler instance object related to the registered event handler and data, can be NULL. This needs to be kept if the specific callback instance should be unregistered before deleting the whole event loop. Registering the same event handler multiple times is possible and yields distinct instance objects. The data can be the same for all registrations. If no unregistration is needed, but the handler should be deleted when the event loop is deleted, instance can be NULL.

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_handler_instance_register(esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, esp_event_handler_t event_handler, void *event_handler_arg, esp_event_handler_instance_t *instance)
```

Register an instance of event handler to the default loop.

This function does the same as esp_event_handler_instance_register_with, except that it registers the handler to the default event loop.

**Note** the event loop library does not maintain a copy of event_handler_arg, therefore the user should ensure that event_handler_arg still points to a valid location by the time the handler gets called

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID or instance is NULL
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**
- **[in]** event_base: the base ID of the event to register the handler for
- **[in]** event_id: the ID of the event to register the handler for
- **[in]** event_handler: the handler function which gets called when the event is dispatched
- **[in]** event_handler_arg: data, aside from event data, that is passed to the handler when it is called
- **[out]** instance: An event handler instance object related to the registered event handler and data, can be NULL. This needs to be kept if the specific callback instance should be unregistered before deleting the whole event loop. Registering the same event handler multiple times is possible and yields distinct instance objects. The data can be the same for all registrations. If no unregistration is needed, but the handler should be deleted when the event loop is deleted, instance can be NULL.
**esp_err_t** `esp_event_handler_unregister` (esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, esp_event_handler_t event_handler)

Unregisters a handler with the system event loop (legacy).

Unregisters a handler, so it will no longer be called during dispatch. Handlers can be unregistered for any combination of event_base and event_id which were previously registered. To unregister a handler, the event_base and event_id arguments must match exactly the arguments passed to `esp_event_handler_register()` when that handler was registered. Passing ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE and/or ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID will only unregister handlers that were registered with the same wildcard arguments.

**Note** This function is obsolete and will be deprecated soon, please use `esp_event_handler_instance_unregister()` instead.

**Note** When using ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID, handlers registered to specific event IDs using the same base will not be unregistered. When using ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE, events registered to specific bases will also not be unregistered. This avoids accidental unregistration of handlers registered by other users or components.

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**
- **[in]** event_base: the base of the event with which to unregister the handler
- **[in]** event_id: the ID of the event with which to unregister the handler
- **[in]** event_handler: the handler to unregister

**esp_err_t** `esp_event_handler_unregister_with` (esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop, esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, esp_event_handler_t event_handler)

Unregisters a handler from a specific event loop (legacy).

This function behaves in the same manner as `esp_event_handler_unregister`, except the additional specification of the event loop to unregister the handler with.

**Note** This function is obsolete and will be deprecated soon, please use `esp_event_handler_instance_unregister_with()` instead.

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**
- **[in]** event_loop: the event loop with which to unregister this handler function, must not be NULL
- **[in]** event_base: the base of the event with which to unregister the handler
- **[in]** event_id: the ID of the event with which to unregister the handler
- **[in]** event_handler: the handler to unregister

**esp_err_t** `esp_event_handler_instance_unregister_with` (esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop, esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, esp_event_handler_instance_t instance)

Unregisters a handler instance from a specific event loop.

Unregisters a handler instance, so it will no longer be called during dispatch. Handler instances can be unregistered for any combination of event_base and event_id which were previously registered. To unregister a handler instance, the event_base and event_id arguments must match exactly the arguments passed to `esp_event_handler_instance_register()` when that handler instance was registered. Passing ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE and/or ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID will only unregister handler instances that were registered with the same wildcard arguments.

**Note** When using ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID, handlers registered to specific event IDs using the same base will not be unregistered. When using ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE, events registered to specific bases will
also not be unregistered. This avoids accidental unregistration of handlers registered by other users or components.

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID
- Others: Fail

Parameters
- [in] event_loop: the event loop with which to unregister this handler function, must not be NULL
- [in] event_base: the base of the event with which to unregister the handler
- [in] event_id: the ID of the event with which to unregister the handler
- [in] instance: the instance object of the registration to be unregistered

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_handler_instance_unregister(esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, esp_event_handler_instance_t instance)
```

Unregister a handler from the system event loop.

This function does the same as esp_event_handler_instance_unregister_with, except that it unregisters the handler instance from the default event loop.

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID
- Others: Fail

Parameters
- [in] event_base: the base of the event with which to unregister the handler
- [in] event_id: the ID of the event with which to unregister the handler
- [in] instance: the instance object of the registration to be unregistered

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_post(esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data, size_t event_data_size, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Posts an event to the system default event loop. The event loop library keeps a copy of event_data and manages the copy’s lifetime automatically (allocation + deletion); this ensures that the data the handler receives is always valid.

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Time to wait for event queue to unblock expired, queue full when posting from ISR
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID
- Others: Fail

Parameters
- [in] event_base: the event base that identifies the event
- [in] event_id: the event ID that identifies the event
- [in] event_data: the data, specific to the event occurrence, that gets passed to the handler
- [in] event_data_size: the size of the event data
- [in] ticks_to_wait: number of ticks to block on a full event queue

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_post_to(esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop, esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data, size_t event_data_size, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
```

Posts an event to the specified event loop. The event loop library keeps a copy of event_data and manages the copy’s lifetime automatically (allocation + deletion); this ensures that the data the handler receives is always valid.

This function behaves in the same manner as esp_event_post_to, except the additional specification of the event loop to post the event to.

Return
- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Time to wait for event queue to unblock expired, queue full when posting from ISR
-- Chapter 2. API

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `event_loop`: the event loop to post to, must not be NULL
- **[in]** `event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
- **[in]** `event_id`: the event ID that identifies the event
- **[in]** `event_data`: the data, specific to the event occurrence, that gets passed to the handler
- **[in]** `event_data_size`: the size of the event data
- **[in]** `ticks_to_wait`: number of ticks to block on a full event queue

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_isr_post(esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data, size_t event_data_size, BaseType_t *task_unblocked)
```

Special variant of `esp_event_post` for posting events from interrupt handlers.

**Note** this function is only available when `CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR` is enabled.

**Note** when this function is called from an interrupt handler placed in IRAM, this function should be placed in IRAM as well by enabling `CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR`.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Event queue for the default event loop full
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID, data size of more than 4 bytes
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
- **[in]** `event_id`: the event ID that identifies the event
- **[in]** `event_data`: the data, specific to the event occurrence, that gets passed to the handler
- **[in]** `event_data_size`: the size of the event data; max is 4 bytes
- **[out]** `task_unblocked`: an optional parameter (can be NULL) which indicates that an event task with higher priority than currently running task has been unblocked by the posted event; a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is existed.

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_isr_post_to(esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop, esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data, size_t event_data_size, BaseType_t *task_unblocked)
```

Special variant of `esp_event_post_to` for posting events from interrupt handlers.

**Note** this function is only available when `CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR` is enabled.

**Note** when this function is called from an interrupt handler placed in IRAM, this function should be placed in IRAM as well by enabling `CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR`.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Event queue for the loop full
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event ID, data size of more than 4 bytes
- Others: Fail

**Parameters**

- **[in]** `event_loop`: the event loop to post to, must not be NULL
- **[in]** `event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
- **[in]** `event_id`: the event ID that identifies the event
- **[in]** `event_data`: the data, specific to the event occurrence, that gets passed to the handler
- **[in]** `event_data_size`: the size of the event data
- **[out]** `task_unblocked`: an optional parameter (can be NULL) which indicates that an event task with higher priority than currently running task has been unblocked by the posted event; a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is existed.

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_dump(FILE *file)
```

Dumps statistics of all event loops.

Dumps event loop info in the format:
event loop
  handler
  handler...

where:

  event loop
    format: address, name rx:total_received dr:total_dropped
    where:
      address - memory address of the event loop
      name - name of the event loop, 'none' if no dedicated task
      total_received - number of successfully posted events
      total_dropped - number of events unsuccessfully posted due to queue...

  handler
    format: address ev:base, id inv:total_invoked run:total_runtime
    where:
      address - address of the handler function
      base, id - the event specified by event base and ID this handler...

    total_invoked - number of times this handler has been invoked
    total_runtime - total amount of time used for invoking this handler

Note: this function is a noop when CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING is disabled

Return

  - ESP_OK: Success
  - ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for event loop list
  - Others: Fail

Parameters

  - [in] file: the file stream to output to

Structures

struct esp_event_loop_args_t
  Configuration for creating event loops.

Public Members

  int32_t queue_size
    size of the event loop queue

  const char *task_name
    name of the event loop task; if NULL, a dedicated task is not created for event loop

  UBaseType_t task_priority
    priority of the event loop task, ignored if task name is NULL

  uint32_t task_stack_size
    stack size of the event loop task, ignored if task name is NULL

  BaseType_t task_core_id
    core to which the event loop task is pinned to, ignored if task name is NULL

Header File
Chapter 2. API参考

- components/esp_event/include/esp_event_base.h

### Macros

- `ESP_EVENT_DECLARE_BASE(id)`
- `ESP_EVENT_DEFINE_BASE(id)`
- `ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE`
  - register handler for any event base
- `ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID`
  - register handler for any event id

### Type Definitions

- **typedef const char** `esp_event_base_t`
  - unique pointer to a subsystem that exposes events
- **typedef void** `esp_event_loop_handle_t`
  - a number that identifies an event with respect to a base
- **typedef void** (*`esp_event_handler_t`) `(void *event_handler_arg, esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data)`
  - function called when an event is posted to the queue
- **typedef void** (*`esp_event_handler_instance_t`) `context identifying an instance of a registered event handler`

### Related Documents

- Legacy event loop

### API Reference

#### Header File

- components/esp_event/include/esp_event_legacy.h

#### Functions

- **esp_err_t** `esp_event_send(system_event_t *event)`
  - Send an event to event task.
  - Other task/modules, such as the tcpip_adapter, can call this API to send an event to event task
  - **Note** This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h
  - **Return** ESP_OK : succeed
  - **Return** others : fail
  - **Parameters**
    - `event`: Event to send
- **esp_err_t** `esp_event_send_internal(esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data, size_t event_data_size, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)`
  - Send an event to event task.
  - Other task/modules, such as the tcpip_adapter, can call this API to send an event to event task
  - **Note** This API is used by Wi-Fi Driver only.
  - **Return** ESP_OK : succeed
  - **Return** others : fail
  - **Parameters**
    - `[in] event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
• [in] event_id: the event ID that identifies the event
• [in] event_data: the data, specific to the event occurrence, that gets passed to the handler
• [in] event_data_size: the size of the event data
• [in] ticks_to_wait: number of ticks to block on a full event queue

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_process_default(system_event_t *event)
```
Default event handler for system events.

This function performs default handling of system events. When using esp_event_loop APIs, it is called automatically before invoking the user-provided callback function.

**Note** This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h Applications which implement a custom event loop must call this function as part of event processing.

**Return** ESP_OK if an event was handled successfully

**Parameters**

- `event`: pointer to event to be handled

```c
void esp_event_set_default_eth_handlers(void)
```
Install default event handlers for Ethernet interface.

**Note** This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

```c
void esp_event_set_default_wifi_handlers(void)
```
Install default event handlers for Wi-Fi interfaces (station and AP)

**Note** This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

```c
esp_err_t esp_event_loop_init(system_event_cb_t cb, void *ctx)
```
Initialize event loop.

Create the event handler and task

**Note** This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

**Return**

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

**Parameters**

- `cb`: application specified event callback, it can be modified by call esp_event_set_cb
- `ctx`: reserved for user

```c
system_event_cb_t esp_event_loop_set_cb(system_event_cb_t cb, void *ctx)
```
Set application specified event callback function.

**Note** This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

**Attention** 1. If cb is NULL, means application don’t need to handle If cb is not NULL, it will be call when an event is received, after the default event callback is completed

**Return** old callback

**Parameters**

- `cb`: application callback function
- `ctx`: argument to be passed to callback

**Unions**

```c
union system_event_info_t

#include <esp_event_legacy.h> Union of all possible system_event argument structures
```

**Public Members**

```c
system_event_sta_connected_t connected
```
ESP32 station connected to AP

```c
system_event_sta_disconnected_t disconnected
```
ESP32 station disconnected to AP
Chapter 2. API参考

system_event_sta_scan_done_t **scan_done**
ESP32 station scan (APs) done

system_event_sta_authmode_change_t **auth_change**
the auth mode of AP ESP32 station connected to changed

system_event_sta_got_ip_t **got_ip**
ESP32 station got IP, first time got IP or when IP is changed

system_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t **sta_er_pin**
ESP32 station WPS enrollee mode PIN code received

system_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t **sta_er_fail_reason**
ESP32 station WPS enrollee mode failed reason code received

system_event_sta_wps_er_success_t **sta_er_success**
ESP32 station WPS enrollee success

system_event_ap_staconnected_t **sta_connected**
a station connected to ESP32 soft-AP

system_event_ap_stadisconnected_t **sta_disconnected**
a station disconnected to ESP32 soft-AP

system_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t **ap_probereqrecv**
ESP32 soft-AP receive probe request packet

system_event_ftm_report_t **ftm_report**
Report of FTM procedure

system_event_ap_staipassigned_t **ap_stapass**
ESP32 soft-AP assign an IP to the station

system_event_got_ip6_t **got_ip6**
ESP32 station or ap or ethernet ipv6 addr state change to preferred

**Structures**

**struct system_event_t**
Event, as a tagged enum

**Public Members**

system_event_id_t **event_id**
event ID

system_event_info_t **event_info**
event information

**Macros**

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STA_GOT_IP6

**Type Definitions**

typedef wifi_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t **system_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED event

typedef wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t **system_event_sta_scan_done_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_SCAN_DONE event

typedef wifi_event_sta_connected_t **system_event_sta_connected_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED event

typedef wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t **system_event_sta_disconnected_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED event
typedef wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t system_event_sta_authmode_change_t
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE event

typedef wifi_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t system_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN event

typedef wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t system_event_sta_wps_er_success_t
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN event

typedef wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t system_event_ap_staconnected_t
Argument structure of event

typedef wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t system_event_ap_stadisconnected_t
Argument structure of event

typedef wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t system_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t
Argument structure of event

typedef wifi_event_ftm_report_t system_event_ftm_report_t
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_FTM_REPORT event

typedef ip_event_ap_staipassigned_t system_event_ap_staipassigned_t
Argument structure of event

typedef ip_event_got_ip_t system_event_got_ip_t
Argument structure of event

typedef ip_event_got_ip6_t system_event_got_ip6_t
Argument structure of event

typedef esp_err_t (*system_event_handler_t)(esp_event_base_t event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data, size_t event_data_size, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)
Event handler function type

typedef esp_err_t (*system_event_cb_t)(void *ctx, system_event_t *event)
Application specified event callback function.

Note  This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h
Return
• ESP_OK: succeed
• others: fail
Parameters
• ctx: reserved for user
• event: event type defined in this file

Enumerations
enum system_event_id_t
System event types enumeration

Values:
SYSTEM_EVENT_WIFI_READY = 0
ESP32 Wi-Fi ready

SYSTEM_EVENT_SCAN_DONE
ESP32 finish scanning AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_START
ESP32 station start

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_STOP
ESP32 station stop

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED
ESP32 station connected to AP
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED
ESP32 station disconnected from AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE
the auth mode of AP connected by ESP32 station changed

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP
ESP32 station got IP from connected AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP
ESP32 station lost IP and the IP is reset to 0

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW
ESP32 station connected BSS rssi goes below threshold

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS
ESP32 station wps succeeds in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED
ESP32 station wps fails in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT
ESP32 station wps timeout in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN
ESP32 station wps pin code in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PBC_OVERLAP
ESP32 station wps overlap in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_START
ESP32 soft-AP start

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STOP
ESP32 soft-AP stop

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED
a station connected to ESP32 soft-AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED
a station disconnected from ESP32 soft-AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STAIPASSIGNED
ESP32 soft-AP assign an IP to a connected station

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED
Receive probe request packet in soft-AP interface

SYSTEM_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS
Receive status of Action frame transmitted

SYSTEM_EVENT_ROC_DONE
Indicates the completion of Remain-on-Channel operation status

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_BEACON_TIMEOUT
ESP32 station beacon timeout

SYSTEM_EVENT_FTM_REPORT
Receive report of FTM procedure

SYSTEM_EVENT_GOT_IP6
ESP32 station or ap or ethernet interface v6IP addr is preferred

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_START
ESP32 ethernet start

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_STOP
ESP32 ethernet stop
Chapter 2. API

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_CONNECTED
ESP32 ethernet phy link up

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_DISCONNECTED
ESP32 ethernet phy link down

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP
ESP32 ethernet got IP from connected AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_LOST_IP
ESP32 ethernet lost IP and the IP is reset to 0

SYSTEM_EVENT_MAX
Number of members in this enum

2.7.9 FreeRTOS

Overview

This section contains documentation of FreeRTOS types, functions, and macros. It is automatically generated from FreeRTOS header files.

Note: ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is based on the Xtensa port of FreeRTOS v10.4.3

For more information about FreeRTOS features specific to ESP-IDF, see ESP-IDF FreeRTOS SMP Changes and ESP-IDF FreeRTOS Additions.

Task API

Header File

- components/freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/include/freertos/task.h

Functions

BaseType_t xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(TaskFunction_t pvTaskCode, const char *const pcName, const uint32_t usStackDepth, void *const pvParameters, UBaseType_t uxPriority, TaskHandle_t *const pvCreatedTask, const BaseType_t xCoreID)

Create a new task with a specified affinity.

This function is similar to xTaskCreate, but allows setting task affinity in SMP system.

Return pdPASS if the task was successfully created and added to a ready list, otherwise an error code defined in the file projdefs.h

Parameters

- pvTaskCode: Pointer to the task entry function. Tasks must be implemented to never return (i.e. continuous loop), or should be terminated using vTaskDelete function.
- pcName: A descriptive name for the task. This is mainly used to facilitate debugging. Max length defined by configMAX_TASK_NAME_LEN - default is 16.
- usStackDepth: The size of the task stack specified as the number of bytes. Note that this differs from vanilla FreeRTOS.
- pvParameters: Pointer that will be used as the parameter for the task being created.
- uxPriority: The priority at which the task should run. Systems that include MPU support can optionally create tasks in a privileged (system) mode by setting bit portPRIVILEGE_BIT of the priority parameter. For example, to create a privileged task at priority 2 the uxPriority parameter should be set to (2 | portPRIVILEGE_BIT).
- pvCreatedTask: Used to pass back a handle by which the created task can be referenced.
• **xCoreID**: If the value is tskNO_AFFINITY, the created task is not pinned to any CPU, and the scheduler can run it on any core available. Values 0 or 1 indicate the index number of the CPU which the task should be pinned to. Specifying values larger than (portNUM_PROCESSORS - 1) will cause the function to fail.

```c
static BaseType_t xTaskCreate( TaskFunction_t pvTaskCode, const char *pcName, const uint32_t usStackDepth, void *pvParameters, UBaseType_t uxPriority, TaskHandle_t *pxCreatedTask)
```

Create a new task and add it to the list of tasks that are ready to run.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, tasks use two blocks of memory. The first block is used to hold the task’s data structures. The second block is used by the task as its stack. If a task is created using `xTaskCreate()` then both blocks of memory are automatically dynamically allocated inside the `xTaskCreate()` function. (see [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html)). If a task is created using `xTaskCreateStatic()` then the application writer must provide the required memory. `xTaskCreateStatic()` therefore allows a task to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

See `xTaskCreateStatic()` for a version that does not use any dynamic memory allocation.

`xTaskCreate()` can only be used to create a task that has unrestricted access to the entire microcontroller memory map. Systems that include MPU support can alternatively create an MPU constrained task using `xTaskCreateRestricted()`.

**Example usage:**

```c
// Task to be created.
void vTaskCode( void *pvParameters )
{
    for( ;; )
    {
        // Task code goes here.
    }
}

// Function that creates a task.
void vOtherFunction( void )
{
    static uint8_t ucParameterToPass;
    TaskHandle_t xHandle = NULL;

    // Create the task, storing the handle. Note that the passed parameter...
    ucParameterToPass
    // must exist for the lifetime of the task, so in this case is declared...
    // static. If it was just an
    // an automatic stack variable it might no longer exist, or at least have...
    // been corrupted, by the time
    // the new task attempts to access it.
    xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, &ucParameterToPass, tskIDLE_
    // PRIORITY, &xHandle );
    configASSERT( xHandle );

    // Use the handle to delete the task.
    if( xHandle != NULL )
    {
        vTaskDelete( xHandle );
    }
}
```

**Return** `pdPASS` if the task was successfully created and added to a ready list, otherwise an error code defined in the file `projdefs.h`

**Note** If program uses thread local variables (ones specified with “__thread” keyword) then storage for them will be allocated on the task’s stack.

**Parameters**

- **pvTaskCode**: Pointer to the task entry function. Tasks must be implemented to never return (i.e.
continuous loop), or should be terminated using vTaskDelete function.

- **pcName**: A descriptive name for the task. This is mainly used to facilitate debugging. Max length defined by configMAX_TASK_NAME_LEN - default is 16.
- **ulStackDepth**: The size of the task stack specified as the number of bytes. Note that this differs from vanilla FreeRTOS.
- **pvParameters**: Pointer that will be used as the parameter for the task being created.
- **uxPriority**: The priority at which the task should run. Systems that include MPU support can optionally create tasks in a privileged (system) mode by setting bit portPRIVILEGE_BIT of the priority parameter. For example, to create a privileged task at priority 2 the uxPriority parameter should be set to (2 | portPRIVILEGE_BIT).
- **pvCreatedTask**: Used to pass back a handle by which the created task can be referenced.

```c
static TaskHandle_t xTaskCreateStaticPinnedToCore(TaskFunction_t pvTaskCode, const char *const pcName, const uint32_t ulStackDepth, void *const pvParameters, UBaseType_t uxPriority, StackType_t *const pxStackBuffer, StaticTask_t *const pxTaskBuffer, const BaseType_t xCoreID)
```

Create a new task with a specified affinity.

This function is similar to xTaskCreateStatic, but allows specifying task affinity in an SMP system.

**Return** If neither pxStackBuffer or pxTaskBuffer are NULL, then the task will be created and pdPASS is returned. If either pxStackBuffer or pxTaskBuffer are NULL then the task will not be created and errCOULD_NOT_ALLOCATE_REQUIRED_MEMORY is returned.

**Parameters**

- **pvTaskCode**: Pointer to the task entry function. Tasks must be implemented to never return (i.e. continuous loop), or should be terminated using vTaskDelete function.
- **pcName**: A descriptive name for the task. This is mainly used to facilitate debugging. The maximum length of the string is defined by configMAX_TASK_NAME_LEN in FreeRTOSConfig.h.
- **ulStackDepth**: The size of the task stack specified as the number of bytes. Note that this differs from vanilla FreeRTOS.
- **pvParameters**: Pointer that will be used as the parameter for the task being created.
- **uxPriority**: The priority at which the task will run.
- **pxStackBuffer**: Must point to a StackType_t array that has at least ulStackDepth indexes - the array will then be used as the task’s stack, removing the need for the stack to be allocated dynamically.
- **pxTaskBuffer**: Must point to a variable of type StaticTask_t, which will then be used to hold the task’s data structures, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.
- **xCoreID**: If the value is tskNO_AFFINITY, the created task is not pinned to any CPU, and the scheduler can run it on any core available. Values 0 or 1 indicate the index number of the CPU which the task should be pinned to. Specifying values larger than (portNUM_PROCESSORS - 1) will cause the function to fail.

```c
static TaskHandle_t xTaskCreateStatic(TaskFunction_t pvTaskCode, const char *const pcName, const uint32_t ulStackDepth, void *const pvParameters, UBaseType_t uxPriority, StackType_t *const pxStackBuffer, StaticTask_t *const pxTaskBuffer)
```

Create a new task and add it to the list of tasks that are ready to run.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, tasks use two blocks of memory. The first block is used to hold the task’s data structures. The second block is used by the task as its stack. If a task is created using xTaskCreate() then both blocks of memory are automatically dynamically allocated inside the xTaskCreate() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a task is created using xTaskCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the required memory. xTaskCreateStatic() therefore allows a task to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

**Example usage:**
// Dimensions the buffer that the task being created will use as its stack. 
// NOTE: This is the number of bytes the stack will hold, not the number of 
// words as found in vanilla FreeRTOS.
#define STACK_SIZE 200

// Structure that will hold the TCB of the task being created. 
StaticTask_t xTaskBuffer;

// Buffer that the task being created will use as its stack. Note this is 
// an array of StackType_t variables. The size of StackType_t is dependent on 
// the RTOS port. 
StackType_t xStack[ STACK_SIZE ];

// Function that implements the task being created. 
void vTaskCode( void * pvParameters )
{
    // The parameter value is expected to be 1 as 1 is passed in the 
    // pvParameters value in the call to xTaskCreateStatic().
    configASSERT( ( uint32_t ) pvParameters == 1UL );

    for( ;; )
    {
        // Task code goes here.
    }
}

// Function that creates a task. 
void vOtherFunction( void )
{
    TaskHandle_t xHandle = NULL;

    // Create the task without using any dynamic memory allocation. 
    xHandle = xTaskCreateStatic{
        vTaskCode, // Function that implements the task. 
        "NAME", // Text name for the task. 
        STACK_SIZE, // Stack size in bytes, not words. 
        ( void * ) 1, // Parameter passed into the task. 
        tskIDLE_PRIORITY, // Priority at which the task is created. 
        &xStack, // Array to use as the task's stack. 
        &xTaskBuffer ); // Variable to hold the task's data_
            ...

    if( pxStackBuffer and pxTaskBuffer were not NULL, so the task will have 
    // been created, and xHandle will be the task's handle. Use the handle 
    // to suspend the task. 
    vTaskSuspend( xHandle );
}

Return If neither pxStackBuffer or pxTaskBuffer are NULL, then the task will be created and pdPASS is returned. If either pxStackBuffer or pxTaskBuffer are NULL then the task will not be created and errCOULD_NOT_ALLOCATE_REQUIRED_MEMORY is returned.

Note If program uses thread local variables (ones specified with "__thread" keyword) then storage for them will be allocated on the task’s stack.

Parameters
  • pvTaskCode: Pointer to the task entry function. Tasks must be implemented to never return (i.e. continuous loop), or should be terminated using vTaskDelete function.
  • pcName: A descriptive name for the task. This is mainly used to facilitate debugging. The maximum length of the string is defined by configMAX_TASK_NAME_LEN in FreeRTOSConfig.h.
  • ulStackDepth: The size of the task stack specified as the number of bytes. Note that this differs from vanilla FreeRTOS.
  • pvParameters: Pointer that will be used as the parameter for the task being created.
• **uxPriority**: The priority at which the task will run.
• **pxStackBuffer**: Must point to a StackType_t array that has at least ulStackDepth indexes - the array will then be used as the task’s stack, removing the need for the stack to be allocated dynamically.
• **pxTaskBuffer**: Must point to a variable of type StaticTask_t, which will then be used to hold the task’s data structures, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

```c
void vTaskAllocateMPURegions(TaskHandle_t xTask, const MemoryRegion_t *const pxRegions)
```

Only available when configSUPPORT_DYNAMIC_ALLOCATION is set to 1.

Create a new task and add it to the list of tasks that are ready to run. The function parameters define the memory regions and associated access permissions allocated to the task.

See `vTaskCreateRestrictedStatic()` for a version that does not use any dynamic memory allocation.

Return `pdPASS` if the task was successfully created and added to a ready list, otherwise an error code defined in the file projdefs.h

**Parameters**

- **pxTaskDefinition**: Pointer to a structure that contains a member for each of the normal `xTaskCreate()` parameters (see the `xTaskCreate()` API documentation) plus an optional stack buffer and the memory region definitions.
- **pxCreatedTask**: Used to pass back a handle by which the created task can be referenced.

Example usage:

```c
// Create an TaskParameters_t structure that defines the task to be created.
static const TaskParameters_t xCheckTaskParameters =
{
    vATask,    // pvTaskCode - the function that implements the task.
    "ATask",  // pcName - just a text name for the task to assist debugging.
    100,      // usStackDepth - the stack size DEFINED IN WORDS.
    NULL,     // pvParameters - passed into the task function as the function parameters.
    // parameters.
    (UL | portPRIVILEGE_BIT ), // uxPriority - task priority, set the portPRIVILEGE_BIT if the task should run in a privileged state.
    cStackBuffer, // puxStackBuffer - the buffer to be used as the task stack.

    // xRegions - Allocate up to three separate memory regions for access by the task, with appropriate access permissions. Different processors have different memory alignment requirements - refer to the FreeRTOS documentation
    // for full information.
    { Base address Length Parameters
        { cReadWriteArray, 32, portMPU_REGION_READ_WRITE },
        { cReadOnlyArray, 32, portMPU_REGION_READ_ONLY },
        { cPrivilegedOnlyAccessArray, 128, portMPU_REGION_PRIVILEGED_READ_WRITE }
    }
};

int main( void )
{
    TaskHandle_t xHandle;

    // Create a task from the const structure defined above. The task handle is requested (the second parameter is not NULL) but in this case just for demonstration purposes as its not actually used.
    xTaskCreateRestricted( &xRegTest1Parameters, &xHandle );
}
Start the scheduler.

vTaskStartScheduler();

Will only get here if there was insufficient memory to create the idle
// and/or timer task.
for( ;; );
}

Only available when configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION is set to 1.

xTaskCreateRestrictedStatic() should only be used in systems that include an MPU implementation.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, tasks use two blocks of memory. The first block is used to hold the task’s data structures. The second block is used by the task as its stack. If a task is created using xTaskCreateRestricted() then the stack is provided by the application writer, and the memory used to hold the task’s data structure is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xTaskCreateRestricted() function. If a task is created using xTaskCreateRestrictedStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory used to hold the task’s data structures too. xTaskCreateRestrictedStatic() therefore allows a memory protected task to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

return pdPASS if the task was successfully created and added to a ready list, otherwise an error code defined in the file projdefs.h

Parameters

• pxTaskDefinition: Pointer to a structure that contains a member for each of the normal xTaskCreate() parameters (see the xTaskCreate() API documentation) plus an optional stack buffer and the memory region definitions. If configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION is set to 1 the structure contains an additional member, which is used to point to a variable of type StaticTask_t - which is then used to hold the task’s data structure.
• pxCreatedTask: Used to pass back a handle by which the created task can be referenced.

Example usage:

// The StaticTask_t variable is only included in the structure when
// configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION is set to 1. The PRIVILEGED_DATA macro can
// be used to force the variable into the RTOS kernel's privileged data area.
static PRIVILEGED_DATA StaticTask_t xTaskBuffer;
static const TaskParameters_t xCheckTaskParameters =
{
  vATask, // pvTaskCode - the function that implements the task.
  "ATask", // pcName - just a text name for the task to assist debugging.
  100, // usStackDepth - the stack size DEFINED IN BYTES.
  NULL, // pvParameters - passed into the task function as the function...
  ...parameters.
  { 1UL | portPRIVILEGE_BIT },// uxPriority - task priority, set the...
  ...portPRIVILEGE_BIT if the task should run in a privileged state.
  cStackBuffer, // puxStackBuffer - the buffer to be used as the task stack.

  // xRegions - Allocate up to three separate memory regions for access by
  // the task, with appropriate access permissions. Different processors have
  // different memory alignment requirements - refer to the FreeRTOS...
  ...documentation
  // for full information.
  {
    // Base address Length Parameters
    { cReadWriteArray, 32, portMPU_REGION_READ_WRITE },
    { cReadOnlyArray, 32, portMPU_REGION_READ_ONLY },
    { cPrivilegedOnlyAccessArray, 128, portMPU_REGION_PRIVILEGED_READ_
      ...WRITE }
  }
}

Espressif Systems 1237 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Memory regions are assigned to a restricted task when the task is created by a call to xTaskCreateRestricted(). These regions can be redefined using vTaskAllocateMPURegions().

Example usage:

```c
// Define an array of MemoryRegion_t structures that configures an MPU region
// allowing read/write access for 1024 bytes starting at the beginning of the
// ucOneKByte array. The other two of the maximum 3 definable regions are
// unused so set to zero.
static const MemoryRegion_t xAltRegions[portNUM_CONFIGURABLE_REGIONS] =
    {{ ucOneKByte, 1024, portMPU_REGION_READ_WRITE },
     { 0, 0, 0 },
     { 0, 0, 0 }};

void vATask(void *pvParameters)
{
    // This task was created such that it has access to certain regions of
    // memory as defined by the MPU configuration. At some point it is
    // desired that these MPU regions are replaced with that defined in the
    // xAltRegions const struct above. Use a call to vTaskAllocateMPURegions()
    // for this purpose. NULL is used as the task handle to indicate that this
    // function should modify the MPU regions of the calling task.
    vTaskAllocateMPURegions(NULL, xAltRegions);

    // Now the task can continue its function, but from this point on can only
    // access its stack and the ucOneKByte array (unless any other statically
    // defined or shared regions have been declared elsewhere).
}
```

**Parameters**

- `xTask`: The handle of the task being updated.
- `pxRegions`: A pointer to an MemoryRegion_t structure that contains the new memory region definitions.

void `vTaskDelete(TaskHandle_t xTaskToDelete)`

INCLUDE_vTaskDelete must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Remove a task from the RTOS real time kernel’s management. The task being deleted will be removed from
all ready, blocked, suspended and event lists.

NOTE: The idle task is responsible for freeing the kernel allocated memory from tasks that have been deleted. It is therefore important that the idle task is not starved of microcontroller processing time if your application makes any calls to vTaskDelete(). Memory allocated by the task code is not automatically freed, and should be freed before the task is deleted.

See the demo application file death.c for sample code that utilises vTaskDelete().

Example usage:

```c
void vOtherFunction( void )
{
    TaskHandle_t xHandle;

    // Create the task, storing the handle.
    xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle);

    // Use the handle to delete the task.
    vTaskDelete( xHandle );
}
```

**Parameters**

- `xTaskToDelete`: The handle of the task to be deleted. Passing NULL will cause the calling task to be deleted.

**void vTaskDelay(const TickType_t xTicksToDelay)**

Delay a task for a given number of ticks. The actual time that the task remains blocked depends on the tick rate. The constant `portTICK_PERIOD_MS` can be used to calculate real time from the tick rate - with the resolution of one tick period.

INCLUDE `vTaskDelay` must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

vTaskDelay() specifies a time at which the task wishes to unblock relative to the time at which vTaskDelay() is called. For example, specifying a block period of 100 ticks will cause the task to unblock 100 ticks after vTaskDelay() is called. vTaskDelay() does not therefore provide a good method of controlling the frequency of a periodic task as the path taken through the code, as well as other task and interrupt activity, will effect the frequency at which vTaskDelay() gets called and therefore the time at which the task next executes. See `xTaskDelayUntil()` for an alternative API function designed to facilitate fixed frequency execution. It does this by specifying an absolute time (rather than a relative time) at which the calling task should unblock.

Example usage:

```c
void vTaskFunction( void *pvParameters )
{
    // Block for 500ms.
    const TickType_t xDelay = 500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS;
    for( ;; )
    {
        // Simply toggle the LED every 500ms, blocking between each toggle.
        vToggleLED();
        vTaskDelay( xDelay );
    }
}
```

**Parameters**

- `xTicksToDelay`: The amount of time, in tick periods, that the calling task should block.

**BaseType_t xTaskDelayUntil(TickType_t *const pxPreviousWakeTime, const TickType_t xTimeIncrement)**

INCLUDE `xTaskDelayUntil` must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.
Delay a task until a specified time. This function can be used by periodic tasks to ensure a constant execution frequency.

This function differs from vTaskDelay() in one important aspect: vTaskDelay() will cause a task to block for the specified number of ticks from the time vTaskDelay() is called. It is therefore difficult to use vTaskDelay() by itself to generate a fixed execution frequency as the time between a task starting to execute and that task calling vTaskDelay() may not be fixed [the task may take a different path through the code between calls, or may get interrupted or preempted a different number of times each time it executes].

Whereas vTaskDelay() specifies a wake time relative to the time at which the function is called, xTaskDelayUntil() specifies the absolute (exact) time at which it wishes to unblock.

The macro pdMS_TO_TICKS() can be used to calculate the number of ticks from a time specified in milliseconds with a resolution of one tick period.

Example usage:

```c
// Perform an action every 10 ticks.
void vTaskFunction( void * pvParameters )
{
  TickType_t xLastWakeTime;
  const TickType_t xFrequency = 10;
  BaseType_t xWasDelayed;

  // Initialise the xLastWakeTime variable with the current time.
  xLastWakeTime = xTaskGetTickCount();
  for( ;; )
  {
    // Wait for the next cycle.
    xWasDelayed = xTaskDelayUntil( &xLastWakeTime, xFrequency );
    // Perform action here. xWasDelayed value can be used to determine
    // whether a deadline was missed if the code here took too long.
  }
}
```

Return Value which can be used to check whether the task was actually delayed. Will be pdTRUE if the task way delayed and pdFALSE otherwise. A task will not be delayed if the next expected wake time is in the past.

Parameters

- **pxPreviousWakeTime**: Pointer to a variable that holds the time at which the task was last unblocked. The variable must be initialised with the current time prior to its first use (see the example below). Following this the variable is automatically updated within xTaskDelayUntil().
- **xTimeIncrement**: The cycle time period. The task will be unblocked at time *pxPreviousWakeTime + xTimeIncrement*. Calling xTaskDelayUntil with the same xTimeIncrement parameter value will cause the task to execute with a fixed interface period.

BaseType_t xTaskAbortDelay( TaskHandle_t xTask )

INCLUDE_xTaskAbortDelay must be defined as 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this function to be available.

A task will enter the Blocked state when it is waiting for an event. The event it is waiting for can be a temporal event (waiting for a time), such as when vTaskDelay() is called, or an event on an object, such as when xQueueReceive() or ulTaskNotifyTake() is called. If the handle of a task that is in the Blocked state is used in a call to xTaskAbortDelay() then the task will leave the Blocked state, and return from whichever function called placed the task into the Blocked state.

There is no ‘FromISR’ version of this function as an interrupt would need to know which object a task was blocked on in order to know which actions to take. For example, if the task was blocked on a queue the interrupt handler would then need to know if the queue was locked.

Return If the task referenced by xTask was not in the Blocked state then pdFAIL is returned. Otherwise pdPASS is returned.

Parameters

- **xTask**: The handle of the task to remove from the Blocked state.
Chapter 2. API

**UBaseType_t uxTaskPriorityGet(const TaskHandle_t xTask)**

INCLUDE uxTaskPriorityGet must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Obtain the priority of any task.

Example usage:

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
    TaskHandle_t xHandle;

    // Create a task, storing the handle.
    xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle);

    // ...

    // Use the handle to obtain the priority of the created task.
    // It was created with tskIDLE_PRIORITY, but may have changed // it itself.
    if( uxTaskPriorityGet( xHandle ) != tskIDLE_PRIORITY )
    {
        // The task has changed it's priority.
    }
    // ...

    // Is our priority higher than the created task?
    if( uxTaskPriorityGet( xHandle ) < uxTaskPriorityGet( NULL ) )
    {
        // Our priority (obtained using NULL handle) is higher.
    }
}
```

Return  The priority of xTask.
Parameters
- xTask: Handle of the task to be queried. Passing a NULL handle results in the priority of the calling task being returned.

**UBaseType_t uxTaskPriorityGetFromISR(const TaskHandle_t xTask)**

A version of uxTaskPriorityGet() that can be used from an ISR.

**eTaskState eTaskGetState(TaskHandle_t xTask)**

INCLUDE_eTaskGetState must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Obtain the state of any task. States are encoded by the eTaskState enumerated type.

Return  The state of xTask at the time the function was called. Note the state of the task might change between the function being called, and the functions return value being tested by the calling task.

Parameters
- xTask: Handle of the task to be queried.

**void vTaskGetInfo(TaskHandle_t xTask, TaskStatus_t *pxTaskStatus, BaseType_t xGetFreeStackSpace, eTaskState eState)**

configUSE_TRACE_FACILITY must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Populates a TaskStatus_t structure with information about a task.

Example usage:

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
```

(下页继续)
TaskHandle_t xHandle;
TaskStatus_t xTaskDetails;

// Obtain the handle of a task from its name.
xHandle = xTaskGetHandle("Task_Name");

// Check the handle is not NULL.
configASSERT(xHandle);

// Use the handle to obtain further information about the task.
vTaskGetInfo(xHandle,
    &xTaskDetails,
    pdTRUE, // Include the high water mark in xTaskDetails.
    eInvalid); // Include the task state in xTaskDetails.
}

Parameters

- **xTask**: Handle of the task being queried. If xTask is NULL then information will be returned about the calling task.
- **pxTaskStatus**: A pointer to the TaskStatus_t structure that will be filled with information about the task referenced by the handle passed using the xTask parameter.
- **xGetFreeStackSpace**: The TaskStatus_t structure contains a member to report the stack high water mark of the task being queried. Calculating the stack high water mark takes a relatively long time, and can make the system temporarily unresponsive - so the xGetFreeStackSpace parameter is provided to allow the high water mark checking to be skipped. The high watermark value will only be written to the TaskStatus_t structure if xGetFreeStackSpace is not set to pdFALSE;
- **eState**: The TaskStatus_t structure contains a member to report the state of the task being queried. Obtaining the task state is not as fast as a simple assignment - so the eState parameter is provided to allow the state information to be omitted from the TaskStatus_t structure. To obtain state information then set eState to eInvalid - otherwise the value passed in eState will be reported as the task state in the TaskStatus_t structure.

void **vTaskPrioritySet** (TaskHandle_t xTask, UBaseType_t uxNewPriority)

INCLUDE_vTaskPrioritySet must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Set the priority of any task.

A context switch will occur before the function returns if the priority being set is higher than the currently executing task.

Example usage:

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
    TaskHandle_t xHandle;

    // Create a task, storing the handle.
xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle_--);

    // ...

    // Use the handle to raise the priority of the created task.
vTaskPrioritySet( xHandle, tskIDLE_PRIORITY + 1 );

    // ...

    // Use a NULL handle to raise our priority to the same value.
vTaskPrioritySet( NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY + 1 );
}
```
Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle to the task for which the priority is being set. Passing a NULL handle results in the priority of the calling task being set.
- `uxNewPriority`: The priority to which the task will be set.

```c
void vTaskSuspend (TaskHandle_t xTaskToSuspend)
```

INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Suspend any task. When suspended a task will never get any microcontroller processing time, no matter what its priority.

Calls to `vTaskSuspend` are not accumulative - i.e. calling `vTaskSuspend()` twice on the same task still only requires one call to `vTaskResume()` to ready the suspended task.

Example usage:

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
    TaskHandle_t xHandle;

    // Create a task, storing the handle.
    xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle);

    // ...

    // Use the handle to suspend the created task.
    vTaskSuspend( xHandle );

    // ...

    // The created task will not run during this period, unless
    // another task calls vTaskResume( xHandle ).

    // ...

    // Suspend ourselves.
    vTaskSuspend( NULL );

    // We cannot get here unless another task calls vTaskResume
    // with our handle as the parameter.
}
```

Parameters

- `xTaskToSuspend`: Handle to the task being suspended. Passing a NULL handle will cause the calling task to be suspended.

```c
void vTaskResume (TaskHandle_t xTaskToResume)
```

INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Resumes a suspended task.

A task that has been suspended by one or more calls to `vTaskSuspend()` will be made available for running again by a single call to `vTaskResume()`.

Example usage:

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
    TaskHandle_t xHandle;
```

(下頁続き)
Chapter 2. API

Create a task, storing the handle.

```c
xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle );
```

// ... 

Use the handle to suspend the created task.

```c
vTaskSuspend( xHandle );
```

// ... 

The created task will not run during this period, unless another task calls vTaskResume( xHandle ).

//... 

Resume the suspended task ourselves.

```c
vTaskResume( xHandle );
```

// The created task will once again get microcontroller processing time in accordance with its priority within the system.

### Parameters

- **xTaskToResume**: Handle to the task being readied.

**BaseType_t xTaskResumeFromISR** *(TaskHandle_t xTaskToResume)*

INCLUDE_xTaskResumeFromISR must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

An implementation of vTaskResume() that can be called from within an ISR.

A task that has been suspended by one or more calls to vTaskSuspend () will be made available for running again by a single call to xTaskResumeFromISR ()

xTaskResumeFromISR() should not be used to synchronise a task with an interrupt if there is a chance that the interrupt could arrive prior to the task being suspended - as this can lead to interrupts being missed. Use of a semaphore as a synchronisation mechanism would avoid this eventuality.

### Return

pdTRUE if resuming the task should result in a context switch, otherwise pdFALSE. This is used by the ISR to determine if a context switch may be required following the ISR.

**Parameters**

- **xTaskToResume**: Handle to the task being readied.

**void vTaskStartScheduler** *(void)*

Starts the real time kernel tick processing. After calling the kernel has control over which tasks are executed and when.

**NOTE**: In ESP-IDF the scheduler is started automatically during application startup, vTaskStartScheduler() should not be called from ESP-IDF applications.

See the demo application file main.c for an example of creating tasks and starting the kernel.

**Example usage:**

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
    // Create at least one task before starting the kernel.
    xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, NULL );

    // Start the real time kernel with preemption.
    vTaskStartScheduler();
}
```
void vTaskEndScheduler (void)
NOTE: At the time of writing only the x86 real mode port, which runs on a PC in place of DOS, implements
this function.

Stops the real time kernel tick. All created tasks will be automatically deleted and multitasking (either pre-
emptive or cooperative) will stop. Execution then resumes from the point where vTaskStartScheduler () was
called, as if vTaskStartScheduler () had just returned.

See the demo application file main. c in the demo/PC directory for an example that uses vTaskEndScheduler ()
.

vTaskEndScheduler () requires an exit function to be defined within the portable layer (see vPortEndScheduler
() in port. c for the PC port). This performs hardware specific operations such as stopping the kernel tick.

vTaskEndScheduler () will cause all of the resources allocated by the kernel to be freed - but will not free
resources allocated by application tasks.

Example usage:

```c
void vTaskCode( void *pvParameters )
{
    for ( ;; )
    {
        // Task code goes here.
        // At some point we want to end the real time kernel processing
        // so call ...
        vTaskEndScheduler ();
    }
}
```

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
    // Create at least one task before starting the kernel.
    xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, NULL );
    // Start the real time kernel with preemption.
    vTaskStartScheduler ();
    // Will only get here when the vTaskCode () task has called
    // vTaskEndScheduler (). When we get here we are back to single task
    // execution.
}
```

void vTaskSuspendAll (void)
Suspends the scheduler without disabling interrupts. Context switches will not occur while the scheduler is
suspended.

After calling vTaskSuspendAll () the calling task will continue to execute without risk of being swapped out
until a call to xTaskResumeAll () has been made.

API functions that have the potential to cause a context switch (for example, vTaskDelayUntil(), xQueueSend(),
etc.) must not be called while the scheduler is suspended.

Example usage:

```c
void vTask1( void *pvParameters )
{
    for ( ;; )
```
BaseType_t xTaskResumeAll (void)
Resumes scheduler activity after it was suspended by a call to vTaskSuspendAll().
xTaskResumeAll() only resumes the scheduler. It does not unsuspend tasks that were previously suspended by a call to vTaskSuspend().

Example usage:

```c
void vTask1( void * pvParameters )
{
    for( ;; )
    {
        // Task code goes here.
        // ...
        // At some point the task wants to perform a long operation during
        // which it does not want to get swapped out. It cannot use
        // taskENTER_CRITICAL ()/taskEXIT_CRITICAL () as the length of the
        // operation may cause interrupts to be missed - including the
        // ticks.
        // Prevent the real time kernel swapping out the task.
        vTaskSuspendAll ();
        // Perform the operation here. There is no need to use critical
        // sections as we have all the microcontroller processing time.
        // During this time interrupts will still operate and the real
        // time kernel tick count will be maintained.
        // ...
        // The operation is complete. Restart the kernel.
        xTaskResumeAll ();
    }
}
```
Return If resuming the scheduler caused a context switch then pdTRUE is returned, otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

TickType_t xTaskGetTickCount (void)

Return The count of ticks since vTaskStartScheduler was called.

TickType_t xTaskGetTickCountFromISR (void)

This is a version of xTaskGetTickCount() that is safe to be called from an ISR - provided that TickType_t is the natural word size of the microcontroller being used or interrupt nesting is either not supported or not being used.

Return The count of ticks since vTaskStartScheduler was called.

UBaseType_t uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks (void)

Return The number of tasks that the real time kernel is currently managing. This includes all ready, blocked and suspended tasks. A task that has been deleted but not yet freed by the idle task will also be included in the count.

char *pcTaskGetName (TaskHandle_t xTaskToQuery)

Return The text (human readable) name of the task referenced by the handle xTaskToQuery. A task can query its own name by either passing in its own handle, or by setting xTaskToQuery to NULL.

TaskHandle_t xTaskGetHandle (const char *pcNameToQuery)

NOTE: This function takes a relatively long time to complete and should be used sparingly.

Return The handle of the task that has the human readable name pcNameToQuery. NULL is returned if no matching name is found. INCLUDE_xTaskGetHandle must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for pcTaskGetHandle() to be available.

UBaseType_t uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark (TaskHandle_t xTask)

Returns the high water mark of the stack associated with xTask.

INCLUDE_uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this function to be available.

Returns the high water mark of the stack associated with xTask. That is, the minimum free stack space there has been (in bytes not words, unlike vanilla FreeRTOS) since the task started. The smaller the returned number the closer the task has come to overflowing its stack.

uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark() and uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2() are the same except for their return type. Using configSTACK_DEPTH_TYPE allows the user to determine the return type. It gets around the problem of the value overflowing on 8-bit types without breaking backward compatibility for applications that expect an 8-bit return type.

Return The smallest amount of free stack space there has been (in bytes not words, unlike vanilla FreeRTOS) since the task referenced by xTask was created.

Parameters

• xTask: Handle of the task associated with the stack to be checked. Set xTask to NULL to check the stack of the calling task.

configSTACK_DEPTH_TYPE uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2 (TaskHandle_t xTask)

Returns the start of the stack associated with xTask.

INCLUDE_uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2 must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this function to be available.
Returns the high water mark of the stack associated with xTask. That is, the minimum free stack space there has been (in words, so on a 32 bit machine a value of 1 means 4 bytes) since the task started. The smaller the returned number the closer the task has come to overflowing its stack.

uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark() and uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2() are the same except for their return type. Using configSTACK_DEPTH_TYPE allows the user to determine the return type. It gets around the problem of the value overflowing on 8-bit types without breaking backward compatibility for applications that expect an 8-bit return type.

Return  The smallest amount of free stack space there has been (in words, so actual spaces on the stack rather than bytes) since the task referenced by xTask was created.

Parameters

• xTask: Handle of the task associated with the stack to be checked. Set xTask to NULL to check
  the stack of the calling task.

uint8_t *pxTaskGetStackStart (TaskHandle_t xTask)
Returns the start of the stack associated with xTask.

INCLUDE_pxTaskGetStackStart must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this function to be available.

Returns the lowest stack memory address, regardless of whether the stack grows up or down.

Return  A pointer to the start of the stack.

Parameters

• xTask: Handle of the task associated with the stack returned. Set xTask to NULL to return the
  stack of the calling task.

void vTaskSetApplicationTaskTag (TaskHandle_t xTask, TaskHookFunction_t pxHookFunction)
Sets pxHookFunction to be the task hook function used by the task xTask.

Parameters

• xTask: Handle of the task to set the hook function for. Passing xTask as NULL has the effect of
  setting the calling tasks hook function.

• pxHookFunction: Pointer to the hook function.

TaskHookFunction_t xTaskGetApplicationTaskTag (TaskHandle_t xTask)
Returns the pxHookFunction value assigned to the task xTask. Do not call from an interrupt service routine -
call xTaskGetApplicationTaskTagFromISR() instead.

 TaskHookFunction_t xTaskGetApplicationTaskTagFromISR (TaskHandle_t xTask)
Returns the pxHookFunction value assigned to the task xTask. Can be called from an interrupt service routine.

void vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer (TaskHandle_t xTaskToSet, BaseType_t xIndex, void *pvValue)
Set local storage pointer specific to the given task.

Each task contains an array of pointers that is dimensioned by the configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. The kernel does not use the pointers itself, so the application writer can use the pointers for any purpose they wish.

Parameters

• xTaskToSet: Task to set thread local storage pointer for

• xIndex: The index of the pointer to set, from 0 to configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS - 1.

• pvValue: Pointer value to set.

void *pvTaskGetThreadLocalStoragePointer (TaskHandle_t xTaskToQuery, BaseType_t xIndex)
Get local storage pointer specific to the given task.

Each task contains an array of pointers that is dimensioned by the configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. The kernel does not use the pointers itself, so the application writer can use the pointers for any purpose they wish.

Return  Pointer value

Parameters
• `xTaskToQuery`: Task to get thread local storage pointer for
• `xIndex`: The index of the pointer to get, from 0 to configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS - 1.

```c
void vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback (TaskHandle_t xTaskToSet, BaseType_t xIndex, void *pvValue, TlsDeleteCallbackFunction_t pvDelCallback)
```

Set local storage pointer and deletion callback.

Each task contains an array of pointers that is dimensioned by the configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. The kernel does not use the pointers itself, so the application writer can use the pointers for any purpose they wish.

Local storage pointers set for a task can reference dynamically allocated resources. This function is similar to vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer, but provides a way to release these resources when the task gets deleted. For each pointer, a callback function can be set. This function will be called when task is deleted, with the local storage pointer index and value as arguments.

**Parameters**
• `xTaskToSet`: Task to set thread local storage pointer for
• `xIndex`: The index of the pointer to set, from 0 to configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS - 1.
• `pvValue`: Pointer value to set.
• `pvDelCallback`: Function to call to dispose of the local storage pointer when the task is deleted.

```c
void vApplicationGetIdleTaskMemory (StaticTask_t **ppxIdleTaskTCBBuffer, StackType_t **ppxIdleTaskStackBuffer, uint32_t *pulIdleTaskStackSize)
```

This function is used to provide a statically allocated block of memory to FreeRTOS to hold the Idle Task TCB. This function is required when configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION is set. For more information see this URI: https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00110.html#configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION

**Parameters**
• `ppxIdleTaskTCBBuffer`: A handle to a statically allocated TCB buffer
• `ppxIdleTaskStackBuffer`: A handle to a statically allocated Stack buffer for the idle task
• `pulIdleTaskStackSize`: A pointer to the number of elements that will fit in the allocated stack buffer

```c
BaseType_t xTaskCallApplicationTaskHook (TaskHandle_t xTask, void *pvParameter)
```

Calls the hook function associated with `xTask`. Passing `xTask` as NULL has the effect of calling the Running tasks (the calling task) hook function.

**Parameters**
• `xTask`: Handle of the task to call the hook for.
• `pvParameter`: Parameter passed to the hook function for the task to interpret as it wants. The return value is the value returned by the task hook function registered by the user.

```c
TaskHandle_t xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle (void)
```

`xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle()` is only available if INCLUDE_xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h.

Simply returns the handle of the idle task. It is not valid to call `xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle()` before the scheduler has been started.

```c
UBaseType_t uxTaskGetSystemState (TaskStatus_t *const pxTaskStatusArray, const UBaseType_t uxArraySize, uint32_t *const pulTotalRunTime)
```

configUSE_TRACE_FACILITY must be defined as 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for `uxTaskGetSystemState()` to be available.

`uxTaskGetSystemState()` populates an `TaskStatus_t` structure for each task in the system. `TaskStatus_t` structures contain, among other things, members for the task handle, task name, task priority, task state, and total amount of run time consumed by the task. See the `TaskStatus_t` structure definition in this file for the full member list.
NOTE: This function is intended for debugging use only as its use results in the scheduler remaining suspended for an extended period.

Example usage:

```c
// This example demonstrates how a human readable table of run time stats
// information is generated from raw data provided by uxTaskGetSystemState().
// The human readable table is written to pcWriteBuffer.
void vTaskGetRunTimeStats( char *pcWriteBuffer )
{
    TaskStatus_t *pxTaskStatusArray;
    volatile UBaseType_t uxArraySize, x;
    uint32_t ulTotalRunTime, ulStatsAsPercentage;

    // Make sure the write buffer does not contain a string.
    *pcWriteBuffer = 0x00;

    // Take a snapshot of the number of tasks in case it changes while this
    // function is executing.
    uxArraySize = uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks();

    // Allocate a TaskStatus_t structure for each task. An array could be
    // allocated statically at compile time.
    pxTaskStatusArray = pvPortMalloc( uxArraySize * sizeof( TaskStatus_t ) );

    if( pxTaskStatusArray != NULL )
    {
        // Generate raw status information about each task.
        uxArraySize = uxTaskGetSystemState( pxTaskStatusArray, uxArraySize, &
                                             ulTotalRunTime );

        // For percentage calculations.
        ulTotalRunTime /= 100UL;

        // Avoid divide by zero errors.
        if( ulTotalRunTime > 0 )
        {
            // For each populated position in the pxTaskStatusArray array,
            // format the raw data as human readable ASCII data
            for( x = 0; x < uxArraySize; x++ )
            {
                // What percentage of the total run time has the task used?
                // This will always be rounded down to the nearest integer.
                // ulTotalRunTimeDiv100 has already been divided by 100.
                ulStatsAsPercentage = pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].ulRunTimeCounter
                                      / ulTotalRunTime;

                if( ulStatsAsPercentage > 0UL )
                {
                    sprintf( pcWriteBuffer, "%s\t\t%lu\t\t%lu\%
",     
                      pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].pcTaskName, pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].ulRunTimeCounter,
                      ulStatsAsPercentage );
                }
                else
                {
                    // If the percentage is zero here then the task has
                    // consumed less than 1% of the total run time.
                    sprintf( pcWriteBuffer, "%s\t\t%lu\t\t<1\%
",     
                      pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].pcTaskName, pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].ulRunTimeCounter );
                }

                pcWriteBuffer += strlen( ( char * ) pcWriteBuffer );
            }
        }
    }
}
```
// The array is no longer needed, free the memory it consumes.
vPortFree( pxTaskStatusArray );

Return  The number of TaskStatus_t structures that were populated by uxTaskGetSystemState(). This should equal the number returned by the uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks() API function, but will be zero if the value passed in the uxArraySize parameter was too small.

Parameters
- pxTaskStatusArray: A pointer to an array of TaskStatus_t structures. The array must contain at least one TaskStatus_t structure for each task that is under the control of the RTOS. The number of tasks under the control of the RTOS can be determined using the uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks() API function.
- uxArraySize: The size of the array pointed to by the pxTaskStatusArray parameter. The size is specified as the number of indexes in the array, or the number of TaskStatus_t structures contained in the array, not by the number of bytes in the array.
- pulTotalRunTime: If configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h then *pulTotalRunTime is set by uxTaskGetSystemState() to the total run time (as defined by the run time stats clock, see https://www.FreeRTOS.org/rtos-run-time-stats.html) since the target booted. pulTotalRunTime can be set to NULL to omit the total run time information.

void vTaskList (char *pcWriteBuffer)
List all the current tasks.

configUSE_TRACE_FACILITY and configUSE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS must both be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section of the FreeRTOS.org website for more information.

NOTE 1: This function will disable interrupts for its duration. It is not intended for normal application runtime use but as a debug aid.

Lists all the current tasks, along with their current state and stack usage high water mark.

Tasks are reported as blocked (‘B’), ready (‘R’), deleted (‘D’) or suspended (‘S’).

PLEASE NOTE:
This function is provided for convenience only, and is used by many of the demo applications. Do not consider it to be part of the scheduler.

vTaskList() calls uxTaskGetSystemState(), then formats part of the uxTaskGetSystemState() output into a human readable table that displays task names, states and stack usage.

vTaskList() has a dependency on the snprintf() C library function that might bloat the code size, use a lot of stack, and provide different results on different platforms. An alternative, tiny, third party, and limited functionality implementation of snprintf() is provided in many of the FreeRTOS/Demo sub-directories in a file called printf-stdarg.c (note printf-stdarg.c does not provide a full snprintf() implementation!).

It is recommended that production systems call uxTaskGetSystemState() directly to get access to raw stats data, rather than indirectly through a call to vTaskList().

Parameters
- pcWriteBuffer: A buffer into which the above mentioned details will be written, in ASCII form. This buffer is assumed to be large enough to contain the generated report. Approximately 40 bytes per task should be sufficient.

void vTaskGetRunTimeStats (char *pcWriteBuffer)
Get the state of running tasks as a string

configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS and configUSE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS must both be defined as 1 for this function to be available. The application must also then provide definitions for portCONFIGURE_TIMER FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() and portGET_RUN_TIME_COUNTER_VALUE()
to configure a peripheral timer/counter and return the timers current count value respectively. The counter should be at least 10 times the frequency of the tick count.

NOTE 1: This function will disable interrupts for its duration. It is not intended for normal application runtime use but as a debug aid.

Setting configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS to 1 will result in a total accumulated execution time being stored for each task. The resolution of the accumulated time value depends on the frequency of the timer configured by the portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() macro. Calling vTaskGetRuntimeStats() writes the total execution time of each task into a buffer, both as an absolute count value and as a percentage of the total system execution time.

NOTE 2:
This function is provided for convenience only, and is used by many of the demo applications. Do not consider it to be part of the scheduler.

vTaskGetRuntimeStats() calls uxTaskGetSystemState(), then formats part of the uxTaskGetSystemState() output into a human readable table that displays the amount of time each task has spent in the Running state in both absolute and percentage terms.

vTaskGetRuntimeStats() has a dependency on the sprintf() C library function that might bloat the code size, use a lot of stack, and provide different results on different platforms. An alternative, tiny, third party, and limited functionality implementation of sprintf() is provided in many of the FreeRTOS/Demo sub-directories in a file called printf-stdarg.c (note printf-stdarg.c does not provide a full sprintf() implementation!).

It is recommended that production systems call uxTaskGetSystemState() directly to get access to raw stats data, rather than indirectly through a call to vTaskGetRuntimeStats().

Parameters
- pcWriteBuffer: A buffer into which the execution times will be written, in ASCII form. This buffer is assumed to be large enough to contain the generated report. Approximately 40 bytes per task should be sufficient.

uint32_t ulTaskGetIdleRunTimeCounter(void)

configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS and configUSE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS must both be defined as 1 for this function to be available. The application must also then provide definitions for portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() and portGET_RUN_TIME_COUNTER_VALUE() to configure a peripheral timer/counter and return the timers current count value respectively. The counter should be at least 10 times the frequency of the tick count.

Setting configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS to 1 will result in a total accumulated execution time being stored for each task. The resolution of the accumulated time value depends on the frequency of the timer configured by the portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() macro. While uxTaskGetSystemState() and vTaskGetRuntimeStats() writes the total execution time of each task into a buffer, ulTaskGetIdleRunTimeCounter() returns the total execution time of just the idle task.

Return
The total run time of the idle task. This is the amount of time the idle task has actually been executing. The unit of time is dependent on the frequency configured using the portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() and portGET_RUN_TIME_COUNTER_VALUE() macros.

BaseType_t xTaskGenericNotify(TaskHandle_t xTaskToNotify, UBaseType_t uxIndexToNotify, uint32_t ulValue, eNotifyAction eAction, uint32_t *pulPreviousNotificationValue)


configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for these functions to be available.

Sends a direct to task notification to a task, with an optional value and action.

Each task has a private array of “notification values” (or “notifications”), each of which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t). The constant configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES sets the number of indexes in the array, and (for backward compatibility) defaults to 1 if left undefined. Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 there was only one notification value per task.
Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment one of the task’s notification values. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

A task can use xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification to be pending, or ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification value to have a non-zero value. The task does not consume any CPU time while it is in the Blocked state.

A notification sent to a task will remain pending until it is cleared by the task calling xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() or ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() (or their un-indexed equivalents). If the task was already in the Blocked state to wait for a notification when the notification arrives then the task will automatically be removed from the Blocked state (unblocked) and the notification cleared.

NOTE Each notification within the array operates independently - a task can only block on one notification within the array at a time and will not be unblocked by a notification sent to any other array index.

Backward compatibility information: Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 each task had a single “notification value”, and all task notification API functions operated on that value. Replacing the single notification value with an array of notification values necessitated a new set of API functions that could address specific notifications within the array. xTaskNotify() is the original API function, and remains backward compatible by always operating on the notification value at index 0 in the array. Calling xTaskNotify() is equivalent to calling xTaskNotifyIndexed() with the uxIndexToNotify parameter set to 0.

eSetBits - The target notification value is bitwise ORed with ulValue. xTaskNotifyIndexed() always returns pdPASS in this case.

Parameters

- xTaskToNotify: The handle of the task being notified. The handle to a task can be returned from the xTaskCreate() API function used to create the task, and the handle of the currently running task can be obtained by calling xTaskGetCurrentTaskHandle().
- uxIndexToNotify: The index within the target task’s array of notification values to which the notification is to be sent. uxIndexToNotify must be less than config-TASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES. xTaskNotify() does not have this parameter and always sends notifications to index 0.
- ulValue: Data that can be sent with the notification. How the data is used depends on the value of the eAction parameter.
- eAction: Specifies how the notification updates the task’s notification value, if at all. Valid values for eAction are as follows:

  - eIncrement - The target notification value is incremented. ulValue is not used and xTaskNotifyIndexed() always returns pdPASS in this case.
  - eSetValueWithOverwrite - The target notification value is set to the value of ulValue, even if the task being notified had not yet processed the previous notification at the same array index (the task already had a notification pending at that index). xTaskNotifyIndexed() always returns pdPASS in this case.
  - eSetValueWithoutOverwrite - If the task being notified did not already have a notification pending at the same array index then the target notification value is set to ulValue and xTaskNotifyIndexed() will return pdPASS. If the task being notified already had a notification pending at the same array index then no action is performed and pdFAIL is returned.
  - eNoAction - The task receives a notification at the specified array index without the notification value at that index being updated. ulValue is not used and xTaskNotifyIndexed() always returns pdPASS in this case.
  - pvPreviousNotificationValue - Can be used to pass out the subject task’s notification value before any bits are modified by the notify function.

Return Dependent on the value of eAction. See the description of the eAction parameter.
**Chapter 2. API**

BaseType_t xTaskGenericNotifyFromISR(TaskHandle_t xTaskToNotify, UBaseType_t uxIndexToNotify, uint32_t ulValue, eNotifyAction eAction, uint32_t *pulPreviousNotificationValue, BaseType_t *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)


configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for these functions to be available.

A version of xTaskNotifyIndexed() that can be used from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Each task has a private array of “notification values” (or ‘notifications’), each of which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t). The constant configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES sets the number of indexes in the array, and (for backward compatibility) defaults to 1 if left undefined. Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 there was only one notification value per task.

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment one of the task’s notification values. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or to be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

A task can use xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification to be pending, or ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification value to have a non-zero value. The task does not consume any CPU time while it is in the Blocked state.

A notification sent to a task will remain pending until it is cleared by the task calling xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() or ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() (or their un-indexed equivalents). If the task was already in the Blocked state to wait for a notification when the notification arrives then the task will automatically be removed from the Blocked state (unblocked) and the notification cleared.

**NOTE** Each notification within the array operates independently - a task can only block on one notification within the array at a time and will not be unblocked by a notification sent to any other array index.

Backward compatibility information: Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 each task had a single “notification value”, and all task notification API functions operated on that value. Replacing the single notification value with an array of notification values necessitated a new set of API functions that could address specific notifications within the array. xTaskNotifyFromISR() is the original API function, and remains backward compatible by always operating on the notification value at index 0 within the array. Calling xTaskNotifyFromISR() is equivalent to calling xTaskNotifyIndexedFromISR() with the uxIndexToNotify parameter set to 0.

eSetBits - The task’s notification value is bitwise ORed with ulValue. xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

**Parameters**

- **uxIndexToNotify**: The index within the target task’s array of notification values to which the notification is to be sent. uxIndexToNotify must be less than configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES. xTaskNotifyFromISR() does not have this parameter and always sends notifications to index 0.
- **xTaskToNotify**: The handle of the task being notified. The handle to a task can be returned from the xTaskCreate() API function used to create the task, and the handle of the currently running task can be obtained by calling xTaskGetCurrentTaskHandle().
- **ulValue**: Data that can be sent with the notification. How the data is used depends on the value of the eAction parameter.
- **eAction**: Specifies how the notification updates the task’s notification value, if at all. Valid values for eAction are as follows:

  - **eIncrement**: The task’s notification value is incremented. ulValue is not used and xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.
  - **eSetValueWithOverwrite**: The task’s notification value is set to the value of ulValue, even if the task being notified had not yet processed the previous notification (the task already had a notification pending). xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.
eSetValueWithoutOverwrite - If the task being notified did not already have a notification pending then the task’s notification value is set to ulValue and xTaskNotify() will return pdPASS. If the task being notified already had a notification pending then no action is performed and pdFAIL is returned.

eNoAction - The task receives a notification without its notification value being updated. ulValue is not used and xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

Return Dependent on the value of eAction. See the description of the eAction parameter.

Parameters

• pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: xTaskNotifyFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending the notification caused the task to which the notification was sent to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xTaskNotifyFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited. How a context switch is requested from an ISR is dependent on the port - see the documentation page for the port in use.

BaseType_t xTaskGenericNotifyWait (UBaseType_t uxIndexToWaitOn, uint32_t ulBitsToClearOnEntry, uint32_t ulBitsToClearOnExit, uint32_t* pulNotificationValue, TickType_t xTicksToWait)

Waits for a direct to task notification to be pending at a given index within an array of direct to task notifications.


configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for this function to be available.

Each task has a private array of “notification values” (or ‘notifications’), each of which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t). The constant configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES sets the number of indexes in the array, and (for backward compatibility) defaults to 1 if left undefined. Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 there was only one notification value per task.

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment one of the task’s notification values. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

A notification sent to a task will remain pending until it is cleared by the task calling xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() or ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() (or their un-indexed equivalents). If the task was already in the Blocked state to wait for a notification when the notification arrives then the task will automatically be removed from the Blocked state (unblocked) and the notification cleared.

A task can use xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification to be pending, or ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification value to have a non-zero value. The task does not consume any CPU time while it is in the Blocked state.

NOTE Each notification within the array operates independently - a task can only block on one notification within the array at a time and will not be unblocked by a notification sent to any other array index.

Backward compatibility information: Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 each task had a single “notification value”, and all task notification API functions operated on that value. Replacing the single notification value with an array of notification values necessitated a new set of API functions that could address specific notifications within the array. xTaskNotifyWait() is the original API function, and remains backward compatible by always operating on the notification value at index 0 in the array. Calling xTaskNotifyWait() is equivalent to calling xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() with the uxIndexToWaitOn parameter set to 0.

Return If a notification was received (including notifications that were already pending when xTaskNotifyWait was called) then pdPASS is returned. Otherwise pdFAIL is returned.

Parameters

• uxIndexToWaitOn: The index within the calling task’s array of notification values on which the calling task will wait for a notification to be received. uxIndexToWaitOn must be less than configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES. xTaskNotifyWait() does not have this parameter and always waits for notifications on index 0.
• **ulBitsToClearOnEntry**: Bits that are set in ulBitsToClearOnEntry value will be cleared in the calling task’s notification value before the task checks to see if any notifications are pending, and optionally blocks if no notifications are pending. Setting ulBitsToClearOnEntry to ULONG_MAX (if limits.h is included) or 0xffffffffUL (if limits.h is not included) will have the effect of resetting the task’s notification value to 0. Setting ulBitsToClearOnEntry to 0 will leave the task’s notification value unchanged.

• **ulBitsToClearOnExit**: If a notification is pending or received before the calling task exits the xTaskNotifyWait() function then the task’s notification value (see the xTaskNotify() API function) is passed out using the pulNotificationValue parameter. Then any bits that are set in ulBitsToClearOnExit will be cleared in the task’s notification value (note *pulNotificationValue is set before any bits are cleared). Setting ulBitsToClearOnExit to ULONG_MAX (if limits.h is included) or 0xffffffffUL (if limits.h is not included) will have the effect of resetting the task’s notification value to 0 before the function exits. Setting ulBitsToClearOnExit to 0 will leave the task’s notification value unchanged when the function exits (in which case the value passed out in pulNotificationValue will match the task’s notification value).

• **pulNotificationValue**: Used to pass the task’s notification value out of the function. Note the value passed out will not be effected by the clearing of any bits caused by ulBitsToClearOnExit being non-zero.

• **xTicksToWait**: The maximum amount of time that the task should wait in the Blocked state for a notification to be received, should a notification not already be pending when xTaskNotifyWait() was called. The task will not consume any processing time while it is in the Blocked state. This is specified in kernel ticks, the macro pdMS_TO_TICKS( value_in_ms ) can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds to a time specified in ticks.

```c
void vTaskGenericNotifyGiveFromISR( TaskHandle_t xTaskToNotify, UBaseType_t uxIndexToNotify, BaseType_t* pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken )
```

A version of xTaskNotifyGiveIndexed() that can be called from an interrupt service routine (ISR).


**NOTE** Each notification within the array operates independently - a task can only block on one notification within the array at a time and will not be unblocked by a notification sent to any other array index.

Backward compatibility information: Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 each task had a single “notification value”, and all task notification API functions operated on that value. Replacing the single notification value with an array of notification values necessitated a new set of API functions that could address specific notifications within the array. xTaskNotifyFromISR() is the original API function, and remains backward compatible by always operating on the notification value at index 0 within the array. Calling xTaskNotifyGiveFromISR() is equivalent to calling xTaskNotifyGiveIndexedFromISR() with the uxIndexToNotify parameter set to 0.
Parameters

- xTaskToNotify: The handle of the task being notified. The handle to a task can be returned from the xTaskCreate() API function used to create the task, and the handle of the currently running task can be obtained by calling xTaskGetCurrentTaskHandle().
- uxIndexToNotify: The index within the target task’s array of notification values to which the notification is to be sent. uxIndexToNotify must be less than configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES. xTaskNotifyGiveFromISR() does not have this parameter and always sends notifications to index 0.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending the notification caused the task to which the notification was sent to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited. How a context switch is requested from an ISR is dependent on the port - see the documentation page for the port in use.

uint32_t ulTaskGenericNotifyTake (UBaseType_t uxIndexToWaitOn, BaseType_t xClearCountOnExit, TickType_t xTicksToWait)

Waits for a direct to task notification on a particular index in the calling task’s notification array in a manner similar to taking a counting semaphore.


configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for this function to be available.

Each task has a private array of “notification values” (or ‘notifications’), each of which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t). The constant configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES sets the number of indexes in the array, and (for backward compatibility) defaults to 1 if left undefined. Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 there was only one notification value per task.

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment one of the task’s notification values. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() is intended for use when a task notification is used as a faster and lighter weight binary or counting semaphore alternative. Actual FreeRTOS semaphores are taken using the xSemaphoreTake() API function, the equivalent action that instead uses a task notification is ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed().

When a task is using its notification value as a binary or counting semaphore other tasks should send notifications to it using the xTaskNotifyGiveIndexed() macro, or xTaskNotifyIndex() function with the eAction parameter set to eIncrement.

ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() can either clear the task’s notification value at the array index specified by the uxIndexToWaitOn parameter to zero on exit, in which case the notification value acts like a binary semaphore, or decrement the notification value on exit, in which case the notification value acts like a counting semaphore.

A task can use ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() to [optionally] block to wait for the task’s notification value to be non-zero. The task does not consume any CPU time while it is in the Blocked state.

Where as xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() will return when a notification is pending, ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() will return when the task’s notification value is not zero.

**NOTE** Each notification within the array operates independently - a task can only block on one notification within the array at a time and will not be unblocked by a notification sent to any other array index.

Backward compatibility information: Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 each task had a single “notification value”, and all task notification API functions operated on that value. Replacing the single notification value with an array of notification values necessitated a new set of API functions that could address specific notifications within the array. ulTaskNotifyTake() is the original API function, and remains backward compatible by always operating on the notification value at index 0 in the array. Calling ulTaskNotifyTake() is equivalent to calling ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed() with the uxIndexToWaitOn parameter set to 0.
Return The task’s notification count before it is either cleared to zero or decremented (see the xClearCountOnExit parameter).

Parameters

• uxIndexToWaitOn: The index within the calling task’s array of notification values on which the calling task will wait for a notification to be non-zero. uxIndexToWaitOn must be less than configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES. xTaskNotifyTake() does not have this parameter and always waits for notifications on index 0.

• xClearCountOnExit: if xClearCountOnExit is pdFALSE then the task’s notification value is decremented when the function exits. In this way the notification value acts like a counting semaphore. If xClearCountOnExit is not pdFALSE then the task’s notification value is cleared to zero when the function exits. In this way the notification value acts like a binary semaphore.

• xTicksToWait: The maximum amount of time that the task should wait in the Blocked state for the task’s notification value to be greater than zero, should the count not already be greater than zero when ulTaskNotifyTake() was called. The task will not consume any processing time while it is in the Blocked state. This is specified in kernel ticks, the macro pdMS_TO_TICKS(value_in_ms) can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds to a time specified in ticks.

BaseType_t xTaskGenericNotifyStateClear(TaskHandle_t xTask, UBaseType_t uxIndexToClear)

configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for these functions to be available.

Each task has a private array of “notification values” (or “notifications”), each of which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t). The constant configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES sets the number of indexes in the array, and (for backward compatibility) defaults to 1 if left undefined. Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 there was only one notification value per task.

If a notification is sent to an index within the array of notifications then the notification at that index is said to be ‘pending’ until it is read or explicitly cleared by the receiving task. xTaskNotifyStateClearIndexed() is the function that clears a pending notification without reading the notification value. The notification value at the same array index is not altered. Set xTask to NULL to clear the notification state of the calling task.

Backward compatibility information: Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 each task had a single “notification value”, and all task notification API functions operated on that value. Replacing the single notification value with an array of notification values necessitated a new set of API functions that could address specific notifications within the array. xTaskNotifyStateClear() is the original API function, and remains backward compatible by always operating on the notification value at index 0 within the array. Calling xTaskNotifyStateClear() is equivalent to calling xTaskNotifyStateClearIndexed() with the uxIndexToNotify parameter set to 0.

Return pdTRUE if the task’s notification state was set to eNotWaitingNotification, otherwise pdFALSE.

Parameters

• xTask: The handle of the RTOS task that will have a notification state cleared. Set xTask to NULL to clear a notification state in the calling task. To obtain a task’s handle create the task using xTaskCreate() and make use of the pxCreatedTask parameter, or create the task using xTaskCreateStatic() and store the returned value, or use the task’s name in a call to xTaskGetHandle().

• uxIndexToClear: The index within the target task’s array of notification values to act upon. For example, setting uxIndexToClear to 1 will clear the state of the notification at index 1 within the array. uxIndexToClear must be less than configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES. ulTaskNotifyStateClear() does not have this parameter and always acts on the notification at index 0.

uint32_t ulTaskGenericNotifyValueClear(TaskHandle_t xTask, UBaseType_t uxIndexToClear, uint32_t ulBitsToClear)

configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for these functions to be available.

Each task has a private array of “notification values” (or “notifications”), each of which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t). The constant configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES sets the number of indexes in the array, and (for backward compatibility) defaults to 1 if left undefined. Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 there was only one notification value per task.
ulTaskNotifyValueClearIndexed() clears the bits specified by the ulBitsToClear bit mask in the notification value at array index uxIndexToClear of the task referenced by xTask.

Backward compatibility information: Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 each task had a single “notification value”, and all task notification API functions operated on that value. Replacing the single notification value with an array of notification values necessitated a new set of API functions that could address specific notifications within the array. ulTaskNotifyValueClear() is the original API function, and remains backward compatible by always operating on the notification value at index 0 within the array. Calling ulTaskNotifyValueClearIndexed() is equivalent to calling ulTaskNotifyValueClearIndexed() with the uxIndexToClear parameter set to 0.

Return The value of the target task’s notification value before the bits specified by ulBitsToClear were cleared.

Parameters
- xTask: The handle of the RTOS task that will have bits in one of its notification values cleared. Set xTask to NULL to clear bits in a notification value of the calling task. To obtain a task’s handle create the task using xTaskCreate() and make use of the pxCreatedTask parameter, or create the task using xTaskCreateStatic() and store the returned value, or use the task’s name in a call to xTaskGetHandle().
- uxIndexToClear: The index within the target task’s array of notification values in which to clear the bits. uxIndexToClear must be less than configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES. ulTaskNotifyValueClear() does not have this parameter and always clears bits in the notification value at index 0.
- ulBitsToClear: Bit mask of the bits to clear in the notification value of xTask. Set a bit to 1 to clear the corresponding bits in the task’s notification value. Set ulBitsToClear to 0xffffffff (UINT_MAX on 32-bit architectures) to clear the notification value to 0. Set ulBitsToClear to 0 to query the task’s notification value without clearing any bits.

```c
void vTaskSetTimeOutState (TimeOut_t *const pxTimeOut)
```

Determines if pxTicksToWait ticks has passed since a time was captured using a call to vTaskSetTimeOutState(). The captured time includes the tick count and the number of times the tick count has overflowed.

Example Usage:

```c
// Driver library function used to receive uxWantedBytes from an Rx buffer
// that is filled by a UART interrupt. If there are not enough bytes in the
// Rx buffer then the task enters the Blocked state until it is notified that
// more data has been placed into the buffer. If there is still not enough
// data then the task re-enters the Blocked state, and xTaskCheckForTimeOut()
// is used to re-calculate the Block time to ensure the total amount of time
// spent in the Blocked state does not exceed MAX_TIME_TO_WAIT. This
// continues until either the buffer contains at least uxWantedBytes bytes,
// or the total amount of time spent in the Blocked state reaches
// MAX_TIME_TO_WAIT – at which point the task reads however many bytes are
// available up to a maximum of uxWantedBytes.

size_t xUART_Receive( uint8_t *pucBuffer, size_t uxWantedBytes )
{
    size_t uxReceived = 0;
    TickType_t xTicksToWait = MAX_TIME_TO_WAIT;
    TimeOut_t xTimeOut;

    // Initialize xTimeOut. This records the time at which this function
    // was entered.
    vTaskSetTimeOutState( &xTimeOut );

    // Loop until the buffer contains the wanted number of bytes, or a
    // timeout occurs.
    while( UART_bytes_in_rx_buffer( pxUARTInstance ) < uxWantedBytes )
    {
```
// The buffer didn't contain enough data so this task is going to
// enter the Blocked state. Adjusting xTicksToWait to account for
// any time that has been spent in the Blocked state within this
// function so far to ensure the total amount of time spent in the
// Blocked state does not exceed MAX_TIME_TO_WAIT.
if( xTaskCheckForTimeOut( &xTimeOut, &xTicksToWait ) != pdFALSE )
{
    //Timed out before the wanted number of bytes were available,
    // exit the loop.
    break;
}

// Wait for a maximum of xTicksToWait ticks to be notified that the
// receive interrupt has placed more data into the buffer.
ulTaskNotifyTake( pdTRUE, xTicksToWait );

// Attempt to read uxWantedBytes from the receive buffer into pucBuffer.
// The actual number of bytes read (which might be less than
// uxWantedBytes) is returned.
uxReceived = UART_read_from_receive_buffer( pxUARTInstance,
                                          pucBuffer,
                                          uxWantedBytes );

return uxReceived;

Return If timeout has occurred, pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned and pxTicksToWait
is updated to reflect the number of remaining ticks.
See [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/xTaskCheckForTimeOut.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/xTaskCheckForTimeOut.html)

Parameters
• pxTimeOut: The time status as captured previously using vTaskSetTimeOutState. If the timeout
  has not yet occurred, it is updated to reflect the current time status.
• pxTicksToWait: The number of ticks to check for timeout i.e. if pxTicksToWait ticks have
  passed since pxTimeOut was last updated (either by vTaskSetTimeOutState() or xTaskCheckFor-
  TimeOut()), the timeout has occurred. If the timeout has not occurred, pxTicksToWait is updated
  to reflect the number of remaining ticks.

BaseType_t xTaskCatchUpTicks (TickType_t xTicksToCatchUp)

Macros
  tskKERNEL_VERSION_NUMBER
  tskKERNEL_VERSION_MAJOR
  tskKERNEL_VERSION_MINOR
  tskKERNEL_VERSION_BUILD
  tskMPU_REGION_READ_ONLY
  tskMPU_REGION_READ_WRITE
  tskMPU_REGION_EXECUTE_NEVER
  tskMPU_REGION_NORMAL_MEMORY
  tskMPU_REGION_DEVICE_MEMORY
  tskDEFAULT_INDEX_TO_NOTIFY
  tskNO_AFFINITY
  tskIDLE_PRIORITY

  Defines the priority used by the idle task. This must not be modified.
taskYIELD()  
Macro for forcing a context switch.

taskENTER_CRITICAL()  
Macro to mark the start of a critical code region. Preemptive context switches cannot occur when in a critical region.

Note This may alter the stack (depending on the portable implementation) so must be used with care!

taskENTER_CRITICAL_FROM_ISR()  

taskENTER_CRITICAL_ISR()  

Note This may alter the stack (depending on the portable implementation) so must be used with care!

taskEXIT_CRITICAL()  
Macro to mark the end of a critical code region. Preemptive context switches cannot occur when in a critical region.

Note This may alter the stack (depending on the portable implementation) so must be used with care!

taskEXIT_CRITICAL_FROM_ISR()  

taskEXIT_CRITICAL_ISR()  

Note This may alter the stack (depending on the portable implementation) so must be used with care!

taskDISABLE_INTERRUPTS()  
Macro to disable all maskable interrupts.

taskENABLE_INTERRUPTS()  
Macro to enable microcontroller interrupts.

taskSCHEDULER_SUSPENDED  
taskSCHEDULER_NOT_STARTED  
taskSCHEDULER_RUNNING  
vTaskDelayUntil (pxPreviousWakeTime, xTimeIncrement)  

xTaskNotify (xTaskToNotify, ulValue, eAction)  
xTaskNotifyIndexed (xTaskToNotify, uxIndexToNotify, ulValue, eAction)  
xTaskNotifyAndQuery (xTaskToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pulPreviousNotifyValue)  

xTaskNotifyAndQueryIndexed() performs the same operation as xTaskNotifyIndexed() with the addition that it also returns the subject task’s prior notification value (the notification value at the time the function is called rather than when the function returns) in the additional pulPreviousNotifyValue parameter.

xTaskNotifyAndQuery() performs the same operation as xTaskNotify() with the addition that it also returns the subject task’s prior notification value (the notification value as it was at the time the function is called, rather than when the function returns) in the additional pulPreviousNotifyValue parameter.

xTaskNotifyAndQueryIndexed (xTaskToNotify, uxIndexToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pulPreviousNotifyValue)  
xTaskNotifyFromISR (xTaskToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)  
xTaskNotifyIndexedFromISR (xTaskToNotify, uxIndexToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)  
xTaskNotifyAndQueryIndexedFromISR (xTaskToNotify, uxIndexToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pulPreviousNotificationValue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)  

xTaskNotifyAndQueryIndexedFromISR() performs the same operation as xTaskNotifyIndexedFromISR() with the addition that it also returns the subject task’s prior notification value (the notification value at the time the function is called rather than at the time the function returns) in the additional pulPreviousNotifyValue parameter.
xTaskNotifyAndQueryFromISR() performs the same operation as xTaskNotifyFromISR() with the addition that it also returns the subject task’s prior notification value (the notification value at the time the function is called rather than at the time the function returns) in the additional pulPreviousNotificationValue parameter.

xTaskNotifyAndQueryFromISR (xTaskToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pulPreviousNotificationValue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

xTaskNotifyWait (ulBitsToClearOnEntry, ulBitsToClearOnExit, pulNotificationValue, xTicksToWait)

xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed (uxIndexToWaitOn, ulBitsToClearOnEntry, ulBitsToClearOnExit, pulNotificationValue, xTicksToWait)

xTaskNotifyGive (xTaskToNotify)

Sends a direct to task notification to a particular index in the target task’s notification array in a manner similar to giving a counting semaphore.


configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for these macros to be available.

Each task has a private array of “notification values” (or ‘notifications’), each of which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t). The constant configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES sets the number of indexes in the array, and (for backward compatibility) defaults to 1 if left undefined. Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 there was only one notification value per task.

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment one of the task’s notification values. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

xTaskNotifyGiveIndexed() is a helper macro intended for use when task notifications are used as light weight and faster binary or counting semaphore equivalents. Actual FreeRTOS semaphores are given using the xSemaphoreGive() API function, the equivalent action that instead uses a task notification is xTaskNotifyGive().

When task notifications are being used as a binary or counting semaphore equivalent then the task being notified should wait for the notification using the ulTaskNotificationTakeIndexed() API function rather than the xTaskNotifyWaitIndexed() API function.

NOTE Each notification within the array operates independently - a task can only block on one notification within the array at a time and will not be unblocked by a notification sent to any other array index.

Backward compatibility information: Prior to FreeRTOS V10.4.0 each task had a single “notification value”, and all task notification API functions operated on that value. Replacing the single notification value with an array of notification values necessitated a new set of API functions that could address specific notifications within the array. xTaskNotifyGive() is the original API function, and remains backward compatible by always operating on the notification value at index 0 in the array. Calling xTaskNotifyGive() is equivalent to calling xTaskNotifyGiveIndexed() with the uxIndexToNotify parameter set to 0.

Return xTaskNotifyGive() is a macro that calls xTaskNotify() with the eAction parameter set to eIncrement - so pdPASS is always returned.

Parameters

• xTaskToNotify: The handle of the task being notified. The handle to a task can be returned from the xTaskCreate() API function used to create the task, and the handle of the currently running task can be obtained by calling xTaskGetCurrentTaskHandle().

• uxIndexToNotify: The index within the target task’s array of notification values to which the notification is to be sent. uxIndexToNotify must be less than configTASK_NOTIFICATION_ARRAY_ENTRIES. xTaskNotifyGive() does not have this parameter and always sends notifications to index 0.

xTaskNotifyGiveIndexed (xTaskToNotify, uxIndexToNotify)

vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR (xTaskToNotify, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)
vTaskNotifyGiveIndexedFromISR(xTaskToNotify, uxIndexToNotify, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

ulTaskNotifyTake(xClearCountOnExit, xTicksToWait)

ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed(uxIndexToWaitOn, xClearCountOnExit, xTicksToWait)

xTaskNotifyStateClear(xTask)

xTaskNotifyStateClearIndexed(xTask, uxIndexToClear)

ulTaskNotifyValueClear(xTask, ulBitsToClear)

ulTaskNotifyValueClearIndexed(xTask, uxIndexToClear, ulBitsToClear)

Type Definitions

typedef struct tskTaskControlBlock *TaskHandle_t
typedef BaseType_t(* TaskHookFunction_t)(void *)

Defines the prototype to which the application task hook function must conform.

typedef void(* TlsDeleteCallbackFunction_t)(int, void *)

Prototype of local storage pointer deletion callback.

Enumerations

enum eTaskState
    Task states returned by eTaskGetState.

    Values:
    eRunning = 0
    eReady
    eBlocked
    eSuspended
    eDeleted
    eInvalid

enum eNotifyAction
    Values:
    eNoAction = 0
    eSetBits
    eIncrement
    eSetValueWithOverwrite
    eSetValueWithoutOverwrite

enum eSleepModeStatus
    Possible return values for eTaskConfirmSleepModeStatus().

    Values:
    eAbortSleep = 0
    eStandardSleep
    eNoTasksWaitingTimeout

Queue API

Header File

- components/freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/include/freertos/queue.h
**Functions**

` BaseType_t xQueueGenericSend( QueueHandle_t xQueue, const void* const pvItemToQueue, TickType_t xTicksToWait, const BaseType_t xCopyPosition )`

It is preferred that the macros `xQueueSend()`, `xQueueSendToFront()` and `xQueueSendToBack()` are used in place of calling this function directly.

Post an item on a queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference. This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See `xQueueSendFromISR()` for an alternative which may be used in an ISR.

**Example usage:**

```c
struct AMessage {
    char ucMessageID;
    char ucData[20];
} xMessage;
uint32_t ulVar = 10UL;

void vATask( void *pvParameters ) {
    QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;
    struct AMessage *pxMessage;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
    xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
    // These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
    xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

    if( xQueue1 != 0 ) {
        // Send an uint32_t.
        // Wait for 10 ticks for space to become available if necessary.
        if( xQueueGenericSend( xQueue1, ( void* ) &ulVar, ( TickType_t ) 10, xqueueSEND_TO_BACK ) != pdPASS )
            // Failed to post the message, even after 10 ticks.
    }

    if( xQueue2 != 0 ) {
        // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object. Don't block if the queue is already full.
        pxMessage = &xMessage;
        xQueueGenericSend( xQueue2, ( void* ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0, xqueueSEND_TO_BACK );
    }

    // ... Rest of task code.
}
```

**Return** pdTRUE if the item was successfully posted, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

**Parameters**

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for space to become available.
available on the queue, should it already be full. The call will return immediately if this is set to 0 and the queue is full. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant \texttt{portTICK_PERIOD_MS} should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

- \texttt{xCopyPosition}: Can take the value \texttt{queue\_SEND\_TO\_BACK} to place the item at the back of the queue, or \texttt{queue\_SEND\_TO\_FRONT} to place the item at the front of the queue (for high priority messages).

\begin{verbatim}
BaseType_t xQueuePeek ( QueueHandle_t xQueue, void *pvBuffer, TickType_t xTicksToWait )
\end{verbatim}

Receive an item from a queue without removing the item from the queue. The item is received by copy so a buffer of adequate size must be provided. The number of bytes copied into the buffer was defined when the queue was created.

Successfully received items remain on the queue so will be returned again by the next call, or a call to \texttt{xQueueReceive()}. This macro must not be used in an interrupt service routine. See \texttt{xQueuePeekFromISR()} for an alternative that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

```c
struct AMessage
{
    char ucMessageID;
    char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

QueueHandle_t xQueue;

// Task to create a queue and post a value.
void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
    struct AMessage *pxMessage;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
    // These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
    xQueue = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

    if( xQueue == 0 )
    {
        // Failed to create the queue.
    }
    // ...

    // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object. Don't block if the
    // queue is already full.
    pxMessage = &xMessage;
    xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );

    // ... Rest of task code.
}

// Task to peek the data from the queue.
void vADifferentTask( void *pvParameters )
{
    struct AMessage *pxRxedMessage;

    if( xQueue != 0 )
    {
        // Peek a message on the created queue. Block for 10 ticks if a
        // message is not immediately available.
        if( xQueuePeek( xQueue, &pxRxedMessage, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) )
        {
            // pcRxedMessage now points to the struct AMessage variable posted
            // by vATask, but the item still remains on the queue.
        }
    }
```

(下页继续)
Return pdTRUE if an item was successfully received from the queue, otherwise pdFALSE.

Parameters
- xQueue: The handle to the queue from which the item is to be received.
- pvBuffer: Pointer to the buffer into which the received item will be copied.
- xTicksToWait: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for an item to receive should the queue be empty at the time of the call. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required. xQueuePeek() will return immediately if xTicksToWait is 0 and the queue is empty.

BaseType_t xQueuePeekFromISR(QueueHandle_t xQueue, void *const pvBuffer)

A version of xQueuePeek() that can be called from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Receive an item from a queue without removing the item from the queue. The item is received by copy so a buffer of adequate size must be provided. The number of bytes copied into the buffer was defined when the queue was created.

Successfully received items remain on the queue so will be returned again by the next call, or a call to xQueueReceive().

Return pdTRUE if an item was successfully received from the queue, otherwise pdFALSE.

Parameters
- xQueue: The handle to the queue from which the item is to be received.
- pvBuffer: Pointer to the buffer into which the received item will be copied.

BaseType_t xQueueReceive(QueueHandle_t xQueue, void *const pvBuffer, TickType_t xTicksToWait)

Receive an item from a queue. The item is received by copy so a buffer of adequate size must be provided. The number of bytes copied into the buffer was defined when the queue was created.

Successfully received items are removed from the queue.

This function must not be used in an interrupt service routine. See xQueueReceiveFromISR for an alternative that can.

Example usage:

```c
struct AMessage
{
    char ucMessageID;
    char ucData[20];
} xMessage;

QueueHandle_t xQueue;

// Task to create a queue and post a value.
void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
    struct AMessage *pxMessage;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
    // These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
    xQueue = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );
    if( xQueue == 0 )
    {
        // Failed to create the queue.
    }
```
// Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object. Don't block if the queue is already full.
pxMessage = & xMessage;
xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );

// ... Rest of task code.

// Task to receive from the queue.
void vADifferentTask( void * pvParameters )
{
    struct AMessage *pxRxedMessage;

    if( xQueue != 0 )
    {
        // Receive a message on the created queue. Block for 10 ticks if a message is not immediately available.
        if( xQueueReceive( xQueue, & ( pxRxedMessage ), ( TickType_t ) 10 ) )
        {
            // pcRxedMessage now points to the struct AMessage variable posted by vATask.
        }
    }

    // ... Rest of task code.
}

Return pdTRUE if an item was successfully received from the queue, otherwise pdFALSE.

Parameters
• xQueue: The handle to the queue from which the item is to be received.
• pvBuffer: Pointer to the buffer into which the received item will be copied.
• xTicksToWait: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for an item to receive should the queue be empty at the time of the call. xQueueReceive() will return immediately if xTicksToWait is zero and the queue is empty. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

UBaseType_t uxQueueMessagesWaiting( const QueueHandle_t xQueue )
Return the number of messages stored in a queue.

Return The number of messages available in the queue.

Parameters
• xQueue: A handle to the queue being queried.

UBaseType_t uxQueueSpacesAvailable (const QueueHandle_t xQueue)
Return the number of free spaces available in a queue. This is equal to the number of items that can be sent to the queue before the queue becomes full if no items are removed.

Return The number of spaces available in the queue.

Parameters
• xQueue: A handle to the queue being queried.

void vQueueDelete (QueueHandle_t xQueue)
Delete a queue - freeing all the memory allocated for storing of items placed on the queue.

Parameters
• xQueue: A handle to the queue to be deleted.

BaseType_t xQueueGenericSendFromISR(QueueHandle_t xQueue, const void * const pvItemToQueue, BaseType_t * const pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken, const BaseType_t xCopyPosition)
It is preferred that the macros xQueueSendFromISR(), xQueueSendToFrontFromISR() and xQueueSendTo-
BackFromISR() be used in place of calling this function directly. xQueueGiveFromISR() is an equivalent for use by semaphores that don’t actually copy any data.

Post an item on a queue. It is safe to use this function from within an interrupt service routine.

Items are queued by copy not reference so it is preferable to only queue small items, especially when called from an ISR. In most cases it would be preferable to store a pointer to the item being queued.

Example usage for buffered IO (where the ISR can obtain more than one value per call):

```c
void vBufferISR( void )
{
    char cIn;
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWokenByPost;

    // We have not woken a task at the start of the ISR.
    xHigherPriorityTaskWokenByPost = pdFALSE;

    // Loop until the buffer is empty.
    do
    {
        // Obtain a byte from the buffer.
        cIn = portINPUT_BYTE( RX_REGISTER_ADDRESS );

        // Post each byte.
        xQueueGenericSendFromISR( xRxQueue, &cIn, &xHigherPriorityTaskWokenByPost, queueSEND_TO_BACK );
    } while( portINPUT_BYTE( BUFFER_COUNT ) );

    // Now the buffer is empty we can switch context if necessary. Note that the
    // name of the yield function required is port specific.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWokenByPost )
    {
        taskYIELD_YIELD_FROM_ISR();
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the data was successfully sent to the queue, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters
- xQueue: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- pvItemToQueue: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- [out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: xQueueGenericSendFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueGenericSendFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.
- xCopyPosition: Can take the value queueSEND_TO_BACK to place the item at the back of the queue, or queueSEND_TO_FRONT to place the item at the front of the queue (for high priority messages).

BaseType_t xQueueGiveFromISR( QueueHandle_t xQueue, BaseType_t *const pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken )

BaseType_t xQueueReceiveFromISR( QueueHandle_t xQueue, void *const pvBuffer, BaseType_t *const pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken )

Receive an item from a queue. It is safe to use this function from within an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:
```c
QueueHandle_t xQueue;

// Function to create a queue and post some values.
```
Chapter 2. API

```c
void vAFunction( void *pvParameters )
{
    char cValueToPost;
    const TickType_t xTicksToWait = ( TickType_t )0xff;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 characters.
    xQueue = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( char ) );
    if( xQueue == 0 )
    {
        // Failed to create the queue.
    }

    // ... Post some characters that will be used within an ISR. If the queue
    // is full then this task will block for xTicksToWait ticks.
    cValueToPost = 'a';
    xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &cValueToPost, xTicksToWait );
    cValueToPost = 'b';
    xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &cValueToPost, xTicksToWait );

    // ... keep posting characters ... this task may block when the queue
    // becomes full.
    cValueToPost = 'c';
    xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &cValueToPost, xTicksToWait );
}

// ISR that outputs all the characters received on the queue.
void vISR_Routine( void )
{
    BaseType_t xTaskWokenByReceive = pdFALSE;
    char cRxedChar;

    while( xQueueReceiveFromISR( xQueue, ( void * ) &cRxedChar, &
                                 xTaskWokenByReceive) )
    {
        // A character was received. Output the character now.
        vOutputCharacter( cRxedChar );

        // If removing the character from the queue woke the task that was
        // posting onto the queue xTaskWokenByReceive will have been set to
        // pdTRUE. No matter how many times this loop iterates only one
        // task will be woken.
    }

    if( cTaskWokenByPost != ( char ) pdFALSE;
    {               
        taskYIELD ();
    }
}
```

**Return** pdTRUE if an item was successfully received from the queue, otherwise pdFALSE.

**Parameters**
- xQueue: The handle to the queue from which the item is to be received.
- pvBuffer: Pointer to the buffer into which the received item will be copied.
- [out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: A task may be blocked waiting for space to become available on the queue. If xQueueReceiveFromISR causes such a task to unblock *pxTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE, otherwise *pxTaskWoken will remain unchanged.

```c
BaseType_t xQueueIsQueueEmptyFromISR( const QueueHandle_t xQueue )
```
BaseType_t xQueueIsQueueFullFromISR(const QueueHandle_t xQueue)

UBaseType_t uxQueueMessagesWaitingFromISR(const QueueHandle_t xQueue)

void vQueueAddToRegistry(QueueHandle_t xQueue, const char* pcQueueName)

The registry is provided as a means for kernel aware debuggers to locate queues, semaphores and mutexes. Call vQueueAddToRegistry() to add a queue, semaphore or mutex handle to the registry if you want the handle to be available to a kernel aware debugger. If you are not using a kernel aware debugger then this function can be ignored.

configQUEUE_REGISTRY_SIZE defines the maximum number of handles the registry can hold. configQUEUE_REGISTRY_SIZE must be greater than 0 within FreeRTOSConfig.h for the registry to be available. Its value does not effect the number of queues, semaphores and mutexes that can be created - just the number that the registry can hold.

Parameters

• xQueue: The handle of the queue being added to the registry. This is the handle returned by a call to xQueueCreate(). Semaphore and mutex handles can also be passed in here.

• pcQueueName: The name to be associated with the handle. This is the name that the kernel aware debugger will display. The queue registry only stores a pointer to the string - so the string must be persistent (global or preferably in ROM/Flash), not on the stack.

void vQueueUnregisterQueue(QueueHandle_t xQueue)

The registry is provided as a means for kernel aware debuggers to locate queues, semaphores and mutexes. Call vQueueUnregisterQueue() to remove the queue, semaphore or mutex from the registry. If you are not using a kernel aware debugger then this function can be ignored.

Parameters

• xQueue: The handle of the queue being removed from the registry.

const char* pcQueueGetName(QueueHandle_t xQueue)

The queueregistryisprovidedasameansforkernelawaredebuggerstolocatequeues,semaphoresandmutexes. Call pcQueueGetName() to look up and return the name of a queue in the queue registry from the queue’s handle.

Return If the queue is in the registry then a pointer to the name of the queue is returned. If the queue is not in the registry then NULL is returned.

Parameters

• xQueue: The handle of the queue the name of which will be returned.

QueueHandle_t xQueueGenericCreate(const UBaseType_t uxQueueLength, const UBaseType_t uxItemSize, const uint8_t ucQueueType)

Generic version of the function used to create a queue using dynamic memory allocation. This is called by other functions and macros that create other RTOS objects that use the queue structure as their base.

QueueHandle_t xQueueGenericCreateStatic(const UBaseType_t uxQueueLength, const UBaseType_t uxItemSize, uint8_t *pucQueueStorage, StaticQueue_t *pxStaticQueue, const uint8_t ucQueueType)

Generic version of the function used to create a queue using dynamic memory allocation. This is called by other functions and macros that create other RTOS objects that use the queue structure as their base.

QueueSetHandle_t xQueueCreateSet(const UBaseType_t uxEventQueueLength)

Queue sets provide a mechanism to allow a task to block (pend) on a read operation from multiple queues or semaphores simultaneously.

See FreeRTOS/Source/Demo/Common/Minimal/QueueSet.c for an example using this function.

A queue set must be explicitly created using a call to xQueueCreateSet() before it can be used. Once created, standard FreeRTOS queues and semaphores can be added to the set using calls to xQueueAddToSet(). xQueueSelectFromSet() is then used to determine which, if any, of the queues or semaphores contained in the set is in a state where a queue read or semaphore take operation would be successful.
Chapter 2. API

Note 1: See the documentation on https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-queue-sets.html for reasons why queue sets are very rarely needed in practice as there are simpler methods of blocking on multiple objects.

Note 2: Blocking on a queue set that contains a mutex will not cause the mutex holder to inherit the priority of the blocked task.

Note 3: An additional 4 bytes of RAM is required for each space in a every queue added to a queue set. Therefore counting semaphores that have a high maximum count value should not be added to a queue set.

Note 4: A receive (in the case of a queue) or take (in the case of a semaphore) operation must not be performed on a member of a queue set unless a call to xQueueSelectFromSet() has first returned a handle to that set member.

Return If the queue set is created successfully then a handle to the created queue set is returned. Otherwise NULL is returned.

Parameters
  - uxEventQueueLength: Queue sets store events that occur on the queues and semaphores contained in the set. uxEventQueueLength specifies the maximum number of events that can be queued at once. To be absolutely certain that events are not lost uxEventQueueLength should be set to the total sum of the length of the queues added to the set, where binary semaphores and mutexes have a length of 1, and counting semaphores have a length set by their maximum count value. Examples:
    - If a queue set is to hold a queue of length 5, another queue of length 12, and a binary semaphore, then uxEventQueueLength should be set to (5 + 12 + 1), or 18.
    - If a queue set is to hold three binary semaphores then uxEventQueueLength should be set to (1 + 1 + 1), or 3.
    - If a queue set is to hold a counting semaphore that has a maximum count of 5, and a counting semaphore that has a maximum count of 3, then uxEventQueueLength should be set to (5 + 3), or 8.

BaseType_t xQueueAddToSet (QueueSetMemberHandle_t xQueueOrSemaphore, QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet)

Adds a queue or semaphore to a queue set that was previously created by a call to xQueueCreateSet().

See FreeRTOS/Source/Demo/Common/Minimal/QueueSet.c for an example using this function.

Note 1: A receive (in the case of a queue) or take (in the case of a semaphore) operation must not be performed on a member of a queue set unless a call to xQueueSelectFromSet() has first returned a handle to that set member.

Return If the queue or semaphore was successfully added to the queue set then pdPASS is returned. If the queue could not be successfully added to the queue set because it is already a member of a different queue set then pdFAIL is returned.

Parameters
  - xQueueOrSemaphore: The handle of the queue or semaphore being added to the queue set (cast to an QueueSetMemberHandle_t type).
  - xQueueSet: The handle of the queue set to which the queue or semaphore is being added.

BaseType_t xQueueRemoveFromSet (QueueSetMemberHandle_t xQueueOrSemaphore, QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet)

Removes a queue or semaphore from a queue set. A queue or semaphore can only be removed from a set if the queue or semaphore is empty.

See FreeRTOS/Source/Demo/Common/Minimal/QueueSet.c for an example using this function.

Return If the queue or semaphore was successfully removed from the queue set then pdPASS is returned. If the queue was not in the queue set, or the queue (or semaphore) was not empty, then pdFAIL is returned.

Parameters
  - xQueueOrSemaphore: The handle of the queue or semaphore being removed from the queue set (cast to an QueueSetMemberHandle_t type).
  - xQueueSet: The handle of the queue set in which the queue or semaphore is included.

QueueSetMemberHandle_t xQueueSelectFromSet (QueueHandle_t xQueueSet, const TickType_t xTicksToWait)

xQueueSelectFromSet() selects from the members of a queue set a queue or semaphore that either contains data (in the case of a queue) or is available to take (in the case of a semaphore). xQueueSelectFromSet()
effectively allows a task to block (pend) on a read operation on all the queues and semaphores in a queue set simultaneously.

See FreeRTOS/Source/Demo/Common/Minimal/QueueSet.c for an example using this function.

Note 1: See the documentation on https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-queue-sets.html for reasons why queue sets are very rarely needed in practice as there are simpler methods of blocking on multiple objects.

Note 2: Blocking on a queue set that contains a mutex will not cause the mutex holder to inherit the priority of the blocked task.

Note 3: A receive (in the case of a queue) or take (in the case of a semaphore) operation must not be performed on a member of a queue set unless a call to xQueueSelectFromSet() has first returned a handle to that set member.

Return  xQueueSelectFromSet() will return the handle of a queue (cast to a QueueSetMemberHandle_t type) contained in the queue set that contains data, or the handle of a semaphore (cast to a QueueSetMemberHandle_t type) contained in the queue set that is available, or NULL if no such queue or semaphore exists before before the specified block time expires.

Parameters
- **xQueueSet**: The queue set on which the task will (potentially) block.
- **xTicksToWait**: The maximum time, in ticks, that the calling task will remain in the Blocked state (with other tasks executing) to wait for a member of the queue set to be ready for a successful queue read or semaphore take operation.

**QueueSetMemberHandle_t xQueueSelectFromSetFromISR (QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet)**

A version of xQueueSelectFromSet() that can be used from an ISR.

**Macros**

**xQueueCreate (uxQueueLength, uxItemSize)**

Creates a new queue instance, and returns a handle by which the new queue can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, queues use two blocks of memory. The first block is used to hold the queue’s data structures. The second block is used to hold items placed into the queue. If a queue is created using xQueueCreate() then both blocks of memory are automatically dynamically allocated inside the xQueueCreate() function. (see https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a0111.html). If a queue is created using xQueueCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the queue. xQueueCreateStatic() therefore allows a queue to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.


Example usage:

```c
struct AMessage
{
    char ucMessageID;
    char ucData[ 20 ];
};

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
    QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
    xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );
    if( xQueue1 == 0 )
    {
        // Queue was not created and must not be used.
    }

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
    // These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
    xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );
}```
if( xQueue2 == 0 )
{
    // Queue was **not** created and must **not** be used.
}
// ... Rest of task code.

**Return** If the queue is successfully create then a handle to the newly created queue is returned. If the queue cannot be created then 0 is returned.

**Parameters**
- **uxQueueLength**: The maximum number of items that the queue can contain.
- **uxItemSize**: The number of bytes each item in the queue will require. Items are queued by copy, not by reference, so this is the number of bytes that will be copied for each posted item. Each item on the queue must be the same size.

**xQueueCreateStatic** (uxQueueLength, uxItemSize, pucQueueStorage, pxQueueBuffer)

Creates a new queue instance, and returns a handle by which the new queue can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, queues use two blocks of memory. The first block is used to hold the queue’s data structures. The second block is used to hold items placed into the queue. If a queue is created using xQueueCreate() then both blocks of memory are automatically dynamically allocated inside the xQueueCreate() function. (see [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html)). If a queue is created using xQueueCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the queue. xQueueCreateStatic() therefore allows a queue to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.


**Example usage:**

```c
struct AMessage
{
    char ucMessageID;
    char ucData[ 20 ];
};

#define QUEUE_LENGTH 10
#define ITEM_SIZE sizeof( uint32_t )

// xQueueBuffer will hold the queue structure.
StaticQueue_t xQueueBuffer;

// ucQueueStorage will hold the items posted to the queue. Must be at least
// [(queue length) * (queue item size)] bytes long.
uint8_t ucQueueStorage[ QUEUE_LENGTH * ITEM_SIZE ];

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
    QueueHandle_t xQueue1;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
    xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( QUEUE_LENGTH, // The number of items the queue can
                           ITEM_SIZE, // The size of each item in the queue
                           & ucQueueStorage[ 0 ] ), // The buffer that will...

               // hold the items in the queue.
                      &xQueueBuffer ); // The buffer that will hold the...

             // queue structure.

    // The queue **is** guaranteed to be created successfully **as** no dynamic memory
    // allocation **is** used. Therefore xQueue1 **is** now a handle to a valid queue.
```
Return If the queue is created then a handle to the created queue is returned. If pxQueueBuffer is NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- **uxQueueLength**: The maximum number of items that the queue can contain.
- **uxItemSize**: The number of bytes each item in the queue will require. Items are queued by copy, not by reference, so this is the number of bytes that will be copied for each posted item. Each item on the queue must be the same size.
- **pucQueueStorage**: If uxItemSize is not zero then pucQueueStorageBuffer must point to a uint8_t array that is at least large enough to hold the maximum number of items that can be in the queue at any one time - which is (uxQueueLength * uxItemsSize) bytes. If uxItemSize is zero then pucQueueStorageBuffer can be NULL.
- **pxQueueBuffer**: Must point to a variable of type StaticQueue_t, which will be used to hold the queue’s data structure.

**xQueueSendToFront** (xQueue, pvItemToQueue, xTicksToWait)

Post an item to the front of a queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference. This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See xQueueSendFromISR () for an alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```c
struct AMessage 
{ 
    char ucMessageID;
    char ucData[20];
} xMessage;

uint32_t ulVar = 10UL;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;
    struct AMessage * pxMessage;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
    xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
    // These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
    xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

    // ...
    if( xQueue1 != 0 )
    {
        // Send an uint32_t. Wait for 10 ticks for space to become available if necessary.
        if( xQueueSendToFront( xQueue1, ( void * ) &ulVar, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) != pdPASS )
        {
            // Failed to post the message, even after 10 ticks.
        }
    }

    if( xQueue2 != 0 )
    {
        // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object. Don't block if the
```
// queue is already full.
pxMessage = & xMessage;
xQueueSendToFront( xQueue2, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );
}
// ... Rest of task code.

Return pdTRUE if the item was successfully posted, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- xQueue: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- pvItemToQueue: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- xTicksToWait: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for space to become available on the queue, should it already be full. The call will return immediately if this is set to 0 and the queue is full. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

xQueueSendToBack(xQueue, pvItemToQueue, xTicksToWait)

This is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSend().

Post an item to the back of a queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference. This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See xQueueSendFromISR () for an alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```c
struct AMessage
{
    char ucMessageID;
    char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

uint32_t ulVar = 10UL;

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
    QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;
    struct AMessage *pxMessage;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
    xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
    // These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
    xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

    // ...
    if( xQueue1 != 0 )
    {
        // Send an uint32_t. Wait for 10 ticks for space to become available if necessary.
        if( xQueueSendToBack( xQueue1, ( void * ) &ulVar, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) != pdPASS )
        {
            // Failed to post the message, even after 10 ticks.
        }
    }
```
if( xQueue2 != 0 )
{
   // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object. Don't block if the
   // queue is already full.
   pxMessage = & xMessage;
   xQueueSendToBack( xQueue2, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );
}
// ... Rest of task code.

Return pdTRUE if the item was successfully posted, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- xQueue: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- pvItemToQueue: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items
  the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from
  pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- xTicksToWait: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for space to become
  available on the queue, should it already be full. The call will return immediately if this is set to 0
  and the queue is full. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS
  should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

xQueueSend(xQueue, pvItemToQueue, xTicksToWait)

This is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSend(). It is included for backward compatibility with versions of
FreeRTOS.org that did not include the xQueueSendToFront() and xQueueSendToBack() macros. It is equivalent to xQueueSendToBack().

Post an item on a queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference. This function must not be called from
an interrupt service routine. See xQueueSendFromISR() for an alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```c
struct AMessage
{
    char ucMessageID;
    char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

uint32_t ulVar = 10UL;

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
    QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;
    struct AMessage *pxMessage;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
    xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
    // These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
    xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

    // ...

    if( xQueue1 != 0 )
    {
        // Send an uint32_t. Wait for 10 ticks for space to become
        // available if necessary.
        if( xQueueSend( xQueue1, ( void * ) &ulVar, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) != pdPASS )
        {
            // Error handling...
        }
    }

    if( xQueue2 != 0 )
    {
        // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object. Don't block if the
        // queue is already full.
        pxMessage = & xMessage;
        xQueueSendToBack( xQueue2, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );
    }
```
Failed to post the message, even after 10 ticks.

```c
if( xQueue2 != 0 )
{
    // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object. Don't block if the
    // queue is already full.
    pxMessage = &xMessage;
    xQueueSend( xQueue2, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );
}
```

Return: pdTRUE if the item was successfully posted, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters:
- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items
  the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from
  `pvItemToQueue` into the queue storage area.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for space to become
  available on the queue, should it already be full. The call will return immediately if this is set to 0
  and the queue is full. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS
  should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

`xQueueOverwrite(xQueue, pvItemToQueue)`

Only for use with queues that have a length of one - so the queue is either empty or full.

Post an item on a queue. If the queue is already full then overwrite the value held in the queue. The item is
queued by copy, not by reference.

This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See `xQueueOverwriteFromISR()` for an
alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```c
void vFunction( void *pvParameters )
{
    QueueHandle_t xQueue;
    uint32_t ulVarToSend, ulValReceived;

    // Create a queue to hold one uint32_t value. It is strongly
    // recommended *not* to use xQueueOverwrite() on queues that can
    // contain more than one value, and doing so will trigger an assertion
    // if configASSERT() is defined.
    xQueue = xQueueCreate( 1, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

    // Write the value 10 to the queue using xQueueOverwrite().
    ulVarToSend = 10;
    xQueueOverwrite( xQueue, &ulVarToSend );

    // Peeking the queue should now return 10, but leave the value 10 in
    // the queue. A block time of zero is used as it is known that the
    // queue holds a value.
    ulValReceived = 0;
    xQueuePeek( xQueue, &ulValReceived, 0 );

    if( ulValReceived != 10 )
    {
        // Error unless the item was removed by a different task.
    }
}
```
Return  
xQueueOverwrite() is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSend(), and therefore has the same return values as xQueueSendToFront(). However, pdPASS is the only value that can be returned because xQueueOverwrite() will write to the queue even when the queue is already full.

Parameters

• xQueue: The handle of the queue to which the data is being sent.
• pvItemToQueue: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.

Examples usage for buffered IO (where the ISR can obtain more than one value per call):

```c
void vBufferISR( void )
{
    char cIn;
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;

    // We have not woken a task at the start of the ISR.
    xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

    // Loop until the buffer is empty.
    do {
        // Obtain a byte from the buffer.
        cIn = portINPUT_BYTE( RX_REGISTER_ADDRESS );

        // Post the byte.
        xQueueSendToFrontFromISR( xRxQueue, &cIn, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
    } while ( portINPUT_BYTE( BUFFER_COUNT ) );

    // Now the buffer is empty we can switch context if necessary.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken )
    {
```

(续上页)
Return  pdTRUE if the data was successfully sent to the queue, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- xQueue: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- pvItemToQueue: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- [out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: xQueueSendToFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueSendToFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

xQueueSendToBackFromISR (xQueue, pvItemToQueue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

This is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSendFromISR().

Post an item to the back of a queue. It is safe to use this macro from within an interrupt service routine.

Items are queued by copy not reference so it is preferable to only queue small items, especially when called from an ISR. In most cases it would be preferable to store a pointer to the item being queued.

Example usage for buffered IO (where the ISR can obtain more than one value per call):

```c
void vBufferISR( void )
{
  char cIn;
  BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;

  // We have not woken a task at the start of the ISR.
  xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

  // Loop until the buffer is empty.
  do
  {
    // Obtain a byte from the buffer.
    cIn = portINPUT_BYTE( RX_REGISTER_ADDRESS );

    // Post the byte.
    xQueueSendToBackFromISR( xRxQueue, &cIn, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
  } while( portINPUT_BYTE( BUFFER_COUNT ) );

  // Now the buffer is empty we can switch context if necessary.
  if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken )
  {
    portYIELD_FROM_ISR ( );
  }
}
```

Return  pdTRUE if the data was successfully sent to the queue, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- xQueue: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- pvItemToQueue: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- [out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: xQueueSendToBackFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueSendToBackFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.
**xQueueOverwriteFromISR** (xQueue, pvItemToQueue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

A version of xQueueOverwrite() that can be used in an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Only for use with queues that can hold a single item - so the queue is either empty or full.

Post an item on a queue. If the queue is already full then overwrite the value held in the queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference.

Example usage:

```c
QueueHandle_t xQueue;

void vFunction( void *pvParameters )
{
    // Create a queue to hold one uint32_t value. It is strongly
    // recommended 'not' to use xQueueOverwriteFromISR() on queues that can
    // contain more than one value, and doing so will trigger an assertion
    // if configASSERT() is defined.
    xQueue = xQueueCreate( 1, sizeof( uint32_t ) );
}

void vAnInterruptHandler( void )
{
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken must be set to pdFALSE before it is used.
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
    uint32_t ulVarToSend, ulValReceived;

    // Write the value 10 to the queue using xQueueOverwriteFromISR().
    xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
    ulVarToSend = 10;
    xQueueOverwriteFromISR( xQueue, &ulVarToSend, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

    // The queue is full, but calling xQueueOverwriteFromISR() again will still
    // pass because the value held in the queue will be overwritten with the
    // new value.
    ulVarToSend = 100;
    xQueueOverwriteFromISR( xQueue, &ulVarToSend, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

    // Reading from the queue will now return 100.
    // ...
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken == pdTRUE )
    {
        // Writing to the queue caused a task to unblock and the unblocked task
        // has a priority higher than or equal to the priority of the currently
        // executing task (the task this interrupt interrupted). Perform a...
        // context
        // switch so this interrupt returns directly to the unblocked task.
        portYIELD_FROM_ISR(); // or portEND_SWITCHING_ISR() depending on the port.
    }
}
```

**Return**

xQueueOverwriteFromISR() is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSendFromISR(), and therefore has the same return values as xQueueSendToFrontFromISR(). However, pdPASS is the only value that can be returned because xQueueOverwriteFromISR() will write to the queue even when the queue is already full.

**Parameters**

- **xQueue**: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- **pvItemToQueue**: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- **[out]** pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: xQueueOverwriteFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked
task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueOverwriteFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

\textbf{xQueueSendFromISR} (\texttt{xQueue, pvItemToQueue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken})

This is a macro that calls \texttt{xQueueGenericSendFromISR()}. It is included for backward compatibility with versions of FreeRTOS.org that did not include the \texttt{xQueueSendToBackFromISR()} and \texttt{xQueueSendToFrontFromISR()} macros.

Post an item to the back of a queue. It is safe to use this function from within an interrupt service routine.

Items are queued by copy not reference so it is preferable to only queue small items, especially when called from an ISR. In most cases it would be preferable to store a pointer to the item being queued.

Example usage for buffered IO (where the ISR can obtain more than one value per call):

```c
void vBufferISR( void )
{
    char cIn;
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;

    // We have not woken a task at the start of the ISR.
    xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

    // Loop until the buffer \textit{is} empty.
    do
    {
        // Obtain a byte from the buffer.
        cIn = portINPUT_BYTE( RX_REGISTER_ADDRESS );

        // Post the byte.
        xQueueSendFromISR( xRxQueue, &cIn, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
    } while( portINPUT_BYTE( BUFFER_COUNT ) );

    // Now the buffer \textit{is} empty we can switch context \textbf{if} necessary.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken )
    {
        // Actual macro used here \textit{is} port specific.
        portYIELD_FROM_ISR();
    }
}
```

\textbf{Return} pdTRUE if the data was successfully sent to the queue, otherwise err\textbf{QUEUE FULL}.

\textbf{Parameters}
- \texttt{xQueue}: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- \texttt{pvItemToQueue}: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from \texttt{pvItemToQueue} into the queue storage area.
- [out] \texttt{pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken}: \texttt{xQueueSendFromISR()} will set \texttt{*pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken} to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If \texttt{xQueueSendFromISR()} sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

\textbf{xQueueReset} (\texttt{xQueue})

Reset a queue back to its original empty state. The return value is now obsolete and is always set to pdPASS.

\textbf{Type Definitions}
\texttt{typedef struct QueueDefinition *QueueHandle_t}
\texttt{typedef struct QueueDefinition *QueueSetHandle_t}

Type by which queue sets are referenced. For example, a call to \texttt{xQueueCreateSet()} returns an \texttt{xQueueSet} variable that can then be used as a parameter to \texttt{xQueueSelectFromSet()}, \texttt{xQueueAddToSet()}, etc.
typedef struct QueueDefinition *QueueSetMemberHandle_t

Queue sets can contain both queues and semaphores, so the QueueSetMemberHandle_t is defined as a type to be used where a parameter or return value can be either an QueueHandle_t or an SemaphoreHandle_t.

Semaphore API

Header File

• components/freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/include/freertos/semphr.h

Macros

semBINARY_SEMAPHORE_QUEUE_LENGTH
semSEMAPHORE_QUEUE_ITEM_LENGTH
semGIVE_BLOCK_TIME

vSemaphoreCreateBinary(xSemaphore)

xSemaphoreCreateBinary()

Creates a new binary semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new semaphore can be referenced.

In many usage scenarios it is faster and more memory efficient to use a direct to task notification in place of a binary semaphore! [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html)

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, binary semaphores use a block of memory, in which the semaphore structure is stored. If a binary semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateBinary() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateBinary() function. (see [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html)). If a binary semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory. xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic() therefore allows a binary semaphore to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

The old vSemaphoreCreateBinary() macro is now deprecated in favour of this xSemaphoreCreateBinary() function. Note that binary semaphores created using the vSemaphoreCreateBinary() macro are created in a state such that the first call to ‘take’ the semaphore would pass, whereas binary semaphores created using xSemaphoreCreateBinary() are created in a state such that the the semaphore must first be ‘given’ before it can be ‘taken’.

This type of semaphore can be used for pure synchronisation between tasks or between an interrupt and a task. The semaphore need not be given back once obtained, so on task/interrupt can continuously ‘give’ the semaphore while another continuously ‘takes’ the semaphore. For this reason this type of semaphore does not use a priority inheritance mechanism. For an alternative that does use priority inheritance see xSemaphoreCreateMutex().

Example usage:

```c
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to vSemaphoreCreateBinary().
    // This is a macro so pass the variable in directly.
    xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateBinary();

    if( xSemaphore != NULL )
    {
        // The semaphore was created successfully.
        // The semaphore can now be used.
    }
}
```

Return Handle to the created semaphore, or NULL if the memory required to hold the semaphore’s data structures could not be allocated.
**xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic**( `pxStaticSemaphore` )

Creates a new binary semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new semaphore can be referenced.

**NOTE:** In many usage scenarios it is faster and more memory efficient to use a direct to task notification in place of a binary semaphore! [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html)

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, binary semaphores use a block of memory, in which the semaphore structure is stored. If a binary semaphore is created using `xSemaphoreCreateBinary()` then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the `xSemaphoreCreateBinary()` function. (see [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html)). If a binary semaphore is created using `xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic()` then the application writer must provide the memory. `xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic()` therefore allows a binary semaphore to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

This type of semaphore can be used for pure synchronisation between tasks or between an interrupt and a task. The semaphore need not be given back once obtained, so one task/interrupt can continuously ‘give’ the semaphore while another continuously ‘takes’ the semaphore. For this reason this type of semaphore does not use a priority inheritance mechanism. For an alternative that does use priority inheritance see `xSemaphoreCreateMutex()`.

Example usage:

```c
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;
StaticSemaphore_t xSemaphoreBuffer;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to xSemaphoreCreateBinary() or
    // xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic().
    // The semaphore's data structures will be placed in the xSemaphoreBuffer
    // variable, the address of which is passed into the function. The
    // function's parameter is not NULL, so the function will not attempt any
    // dynamic memory allocation, and therefore the function will not return
    // return NULL.
    xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic( &xSemaphoreBuffer );

    // Rest of task code goes here.
}
```

**Return** If the semaphore is created then a handle to the created semaphore is returned. If `pxSemaphoreBuffer` is NULL then NULL is returned.

**Parameters**

- `pxStaticSemaphore`: Must point to a variable of type `StaticSemaphore_t`, which will then be used to hold the semaphore’s data structure, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

**xSemaphoreTake**( `xSemaphore`, `xBlockTime` )

Macro to obtain a semaphore. The semaphore must have previously been created with a call to `xSemaphoreCreateBinary()`, `xSemaphoreCreateMutex()` or `xSemaphoreCreateCounting()`.

**param xSemaphore** A handle to the semaphore being taken - obtained when the semaphore was created.

**param xBlockTime** The time in ticks to wait for the semaphore to become available. The macro `portTICK_PERIOD_MS` can be used to convert this to a real time. A block time of zero can be used to poll the semaphore. A block time of `portMAX_DELAY` can be used to block indefinitely (provided `INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend` is set to 1 in `FreeRTOSConfig.h`).

Example usage:

```c
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

// A task that creates a semaphore.
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
```

(下页继续)
Create the semaphore to guard a shared resource.
vSemaphoreCreateBinary( xSemaphore );

A task that uses the semaphore.
void vAnotherTask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // ... Do other things.
    if( xSemaphore != NULL )
    {
        // See if we can obtain the semaphore. If the semaphore is not available
        // wait 10 ticks to see if it becomes free.
        if( xSemaphoreTake( xSemaphore, ( TickType_t )10 ) == pdTRUE )
        {
            // We were able to obtain the semaphore and can now access the
            // shared resource.
            // ...
            // We have finished accessing the shared resource. Release the
            // semaphore.
            xSemaphoreGive( xSemaphore );
        }
        else
        {
            // We could not obtain the semaphore and can therefore not access
            // the shared resource safely.
        }
    }
}

Return  pdTRUE if the semaphore was obtained. pdFALSE if xBlockTime expired without the semaphore
becoming available.

xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, xBlockTime )
Macro to recursively obtain, or ‘take’, a mutex type semaphore. The mutex must have previously been
created using a call to xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();
configUSE_RECURSIVE_MUTEXES must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this macro to be available.
This macro must not be used on mutexes created using xSemaphoreCreateMutex().
A mutex used recursively can be ‘taken’ repeatedly by the owner. The mutex doesn’t become available
again until the owner has called xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() for each successful ‘take’ request. For example,
if a task successfully ‘takes’ the same mutex 5 times then the mutex will not be available to any other task
until it has also ‘given’ the mutex back exactly five times.

Example usage:

SemaphoreHandle_t xMutex = NULL;

// A task that creates a mutex.
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // Create the mutex to guard a shared resource.
    xMutex = xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();
}

// A task that uses the mutex.
void vAnotherTask( void * pvParameters )
{
// ... Do other things.

if( xMutex != NULL )
{
    // See if we can obtain the mutex. If the mutex is not available
    // wait 10 ticks to see if it becomes free.
    if( xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xSemaphore, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) == pdTRUE )
    {
        // We were able to obtain the mutex and can now access the
        // shared resource.
        
        // ... For some reason due to the nature of the code further calls to
        // xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() are made on the same mutex. In real
        // code these would not be just sequential calls as this would make
        // no sense. Instead the calls are likely to be buried inside
        // a more complex call structure.
        xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 );
        xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 );

        // The mutex has now been 'taken' three times, so will not be
        // available to another task until it has also been given back
        // three times. Again it is unlikely that real code would have
        // these calls sequentially, but instead buried in a more complex
        // call structure. This is just for illustrative purposes.
        xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );
        xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );
        xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );

        // Now the mutex can be taken by other tasks.
    } else
    {
        // We could not obtain the mutex and can therefore not access
        // the shared resource safely.
    }
}

Return  pdTRUE if the semaphore was obtained. pdFALSE if xBlockTime expired without the semaphore
becoming available.

Parameters
- xMutex: A handle to the mutex being obtained. This is the handle returned by xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();
- xBlockTime: The time in ticks to wait for the semaphore to become available. The macro
  portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert this to a real time. A block time of zero can be used
  to poll the semaphore. If the task already owns the semaphore then xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() will
  return immediately no matter what the value of xBlockTime.

xSemaphoreGive( xSemaphore )
Macro to release a semaphore. The semaphore must have previously been created with a call to
xSemaphoreCreateBinary(), xSemaphoreCreateMutex() or xSemaphoreCreateCounting(), and obtained using
xSemaphoreTake().

This macro must not be used from an ISR. See xSemaphoreGiveFromISR () for an alternative which can be
used from an ISR.

This macro must also not be used on semaphores created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex().

Example usage:
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // Create the semaphore to guard a shared resource.
    vSemaphoreCreateBinary( xSemaphore );

    if( xSemaphore != NULL )
    {
        if( xSemaphoreGive( xSemaphore ) != pdTRUE )
        {
            // We would expect this call to fail because we cannot give
            // a semaphore without first "taking" it!
        }

        // Obtain the semaphore - don't block if the semaphore is not
        // immediately available.
        if( xSemaphoreTake( xSemaphore, ( TickType_t ) 0 ) )
        {
            // We now have the semaphore and can access the shared resource.
            // ...

            // We have finished accessing the shared resource so can free the
            // semaphore.
            if( xSemaphoreGive( xSemaphore ) != pdTRUE )
            {
                // We would not expect this call to fail because we must have
                // obtained the semaphore to get here.
            }
        }
    }
}

Return pdTRUE if the semaphore was released. pdFALSE if an error occurred. Semaphores are implemented using queues. An error can occur if there is no space on the queue to post a message - indicating that the semaphore was not first obtained correctly.

Parameters
• xSemaphore: A handle to the semaphore being released. This is the handle returned when the semaphore was created.

xSemaphoreGiveRecursive(xMutex)
Macro to recursively release, or ‘give’, a mutex type semaphore. The mutex must have previously been created using a call to xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();

configUSE_RECURSIVE_MUTEXES must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this macro to be available.

This macro must not be used on mutexes created using xSemaphoreCreateMutex().

A mutex used recursively can be ‘taken’ repeatedly by the owner. The mutex doesn’t become available again until the owner has called xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() for each successful ‘take’ request. For example, if a task successfully ‘takes’ the same mutex 5 times then the mutex will not be available to any other task until it has also ‘given’ the mutex back exactly five times.

Example usage:

SemaphoreHandle_t xMutex = NULL;

// A task that creates a mutex.
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // Create the mutex to guard a shared resource.
    xMutex = xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();
A task that uses the mutex.

```c
void vAnotherTask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // ... Do other things.

    if( xMutex != NULL )
    {
        // See if we can obtain the mutex. If the mutex is not available
        // wait 10 ticks to see if it becomes free.
        if( xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) == pdTRUE )
        {
            // We were able to obtain the mutex and can now access the
            // shared resource.

            // ... For some reason due to the nature of the code further calls to
            // xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() are made on the same mutex. In real
            // code these would not be just sequential calls as this would make
            // no sense. Instead the calls are likely to be buried inside
            // a more complex call structure.
            xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 );
            xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 );

            // The mutex has now been 'taken' three times, so will not be
            // available to another task until it has also been given back
            // three times. Again it is unlikely that real code would have
            // these calls sequentially, it would be more likely that the calls
            // to xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() would be called as a call stack
            // unwound. This is just for demonstrative purposes.
            xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );
            xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );
            xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );

            // Now the mutex can be taken by other tasks.
        }
        else
        {
            // We could not obtain the mutex and can therefore not access
            // the shared resource safely.
        }
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the semaphore was given.

Parameters

- xMutex: A handle to the mutex being released, or ‘given’. This is the handle returned by
  xSemaphoreCreateMutex();

**xSemaphoreGiveFromISR(xSemaphore, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)**

Macro to release a semaphore. The semaphore must have previously been created with a call to
xSemaphoreCreateBinary() or xSemaphoreCreateCounting().

Mutex type semaphores (those created using a call to xSemaphoreCreateMutex()) must not be used with this macro.

This macro can be used from an ISR.

Example usage:
```c
#define LONG_TIME 0xffff
#define TICKS_TO_WAIT 10
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

// Repetitive task.
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    for(;;)
    {
        // We want this task to run every 10 ticks of a timer. The semaphore
        // was created before this task was started.
        // Block waiting for the semaphore to become available.
        if( xSemaphoreTake( xSemaphore, LONG_TIME ) == pdTRUE )
        {
            // It is time to execute.
            // ...

            // We have finished our task. Return to the top of the loop where
            // we will block on the semaphore until it is time to execute
            // again. Note when using the semaphore for synchronisation with an
            // ISR in this manner there is no need to 'give' the semaphore back.
        }
    }
}

// Timer ISR
void vTimerISR( void * pvParameters )
{
    static uint8_t ucLocalTickCount = 0;
    static BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;

    // A timer tick has occurred.
    // ... Do other time functions.

    // Is it time for vATask () to run?
    xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
    ucLocalTickCount++;
    if( ucLocalTickCount >= TICKS_TO_WAIT )
    {
        // Unblock the task by releasing the semaphore.
        xSemaphoreGiveFromISR( xSemaphore, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

        // Reset the count so we release the semaphore again in 10 ticks time.
        ucLocalTickCount = 0;
    }

    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE )
    {
        // We can force a context switch here. Context switching from an
        // ISR uses port specific syntax. Check the demo task for your port
        // to find the syntax required.
    }
}
```

**Return** pdTRUE if the semaphore was successfully given, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

**Parameters**
- xSemaphore: A handle to the semaphore being released. This is the handle returned when the semaphore was created.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: xSemaphoreGiveFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*.
TaskWoken to pdTRUE if giving the semaphore caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xSemaphoreGiveFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

**xSemaphoreTakeFromISR** (xSemaphore, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

*Macro* to take a semaphore from an ISR. The semaphore must have previously been created with a call to xSemaphoreCreateBinary() or xSemaphoreCreateCounting().

Mutex type semaphores (those created using a call to xSemaphoreCreateMutex()) must not be used with this macro.

This macro can be used from an ISR, however taking a semaphore from an ISR is not a common operation. It is likely to only be useful when taking a counting semaphore when an interrupt is obtaining an object from a resource pool (when the semaphore count indicates the number of resources available).

**Return** pdTRUE if the semaphore was successfully taken, otherwise pdFALSE

**Parameters**
- **xSemaphore**: A handle to the semaphore being taken. This is the handle returned when the semaphore was created.
- **[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken**: xSemaphoreTakeFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if taking the semaphore caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xSemaphoreTakeFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

**xSemaphoreCreateMutex** ()

Creates a new mutex type semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new mutex can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, mutex semaphores use a block of memory, in which the mutex structure is stored. If a mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateMutex() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateMutex() function. (see [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html)). If a mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() then the application writer must provided the memory. xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() therefore allows a mutex to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Mutexes created using this function can be accessed using the xSemaphoreTake() and xSemaphoreGive() macros. The xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() and xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() macros must not be used.

This type of semaphore uses a priority inheritance mechanism so a task ‘taking’ a semaphore MUST ALWAYS ‘give’ the semaphore back once the semaphore it is no longer required.

Mutex type semaphores cannot be used from within interrupt service routines.

See xSemaphoreCreateBinary() for an alternative implementation that can be used for pure synchronisation (where one task or interrupt always ‘gives’ the semaphore and another always ‘takes’ the semaphore) and from within interrupt service routines.

**Example usage:**

```c
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to xSemaphoreCreateMutex().
    // This is a macro so pass the variable in directly.
    xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateMutex();

    if( xSemaphore != NULL )
    {
        // The semaphore was created successfully.
        // The semaphore can now be used.
    }
}
```

**Return** If the mutex was successfully created then a handle to the created semaphore is returned. If there was not enough heap to allocate the mutex data structures then NULL is returned.
**xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic**(pxMutexBuffer)

Creates a new mutex type semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new mutex can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, mutex semaphores use a block of memory, in which the mutex structure is stored. If a mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateMutex() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateMutex() function. (see [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html)). If a mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() then the application writer must provided the memory. xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() therefore allows a mutex to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Mutexes created using this function can be accessed using the xSemaphoreTake() and xSemaphoreGive() macros. The xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() and xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() macros must not be used.

This type of semaphore uses a priority inheritance mechanism so a task ‘taking’ a semaphore MUST ALWAYS ‘give’ the semaphore back once the semaphore it is no longer required.

Mutex type semaphores cannot be used from within interrupt service routines.

See xSemaphoreCreateBinary() for an alternative implementation that can be used for pure synchronisation (where one task or interrupt always ‘gives’ the semaphore and another always ‘takes’ the semaphore) and from within interrupt service routines.

**Example usage:**

```c
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;
StaticSemaphore_t xMutexBuffer;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // A mutex cannot be used before it has been created. xMutexBuffer is
    // into xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() so no dynamic memory allocation is
    // attempted.
    xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic( &xMutexBuffer );
    // As no dynamic memory allocation was performed, xSemaphore cannot be NULL,
    // so there is no need to check it.
}
```

**Return** If the mutex was successfully created then a handle to the created mutex is returned. If pxMutexBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

**Parameters**

• pxMutexBuffer: Must point to a variable of type StaticSemaphore_t, which will be used to hold the mutex’s data structure, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

**xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex()**

Creates a new recursive mutex type semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new recursive mutex can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, recursive mutexes use a block of memory, in which the mutex structure is stored. If a recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex() function. (see [http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html](http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html)). If a recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the mutex. xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic() therefore allows a recursive mutex to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Mutexes created using this macro can be accessed using the xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() and xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() macros. The xSemaphoreTake() and xSemaphoreGive() macros must not be used.

A mutex used recursively can be ‘taken’ repeatedly by the owner. The mutex doesn’t become available again until the owner has called xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() for each successful ‘take’ request. For example, if a task successfully ‘takes’ the same mutex 5 times then the mutex will not be available to any other task until it has also ‘given’ the mutex back exactly five times.
This type of semaphore uses a priority inheritance mechanism so a task ‘taking’ a semaphore MUST ALWAYS ‘give’ the semaphore back once the semaphore it is no longer required.

Mutex type semaphores cannot be used from within interrupt service routines.

See vSemaphoreCreateBinary() for an alternative implementation that can be used for pure synchronisation (where one task or interrupt always ‘gives’ the semaphore and another always ‘takes’ the semaphore) and from within interrupt service routines.

Example usage:

```c
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to xSemaphoreCreateMutex().
    // This is a macro so pass the variable in directly.
    xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();

    if( xSemaphore != NULL )
    {
        // The semaphore was created successfully.
        // The semaphore can now be used.
    }
}
```

**Return** xSemaphore Handle to the created mutex semaphore. Should be of type SemaphoreHandle_t.

*xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic*(pxStaticSemaphore)

Creates a new recursive mutex type semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new recursive mutex can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, recursive mutexes use a block of memory, in which the mutex structure is stored. If a recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex() function. (see https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html). If a recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the mutex. xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic() therefore allows a recursive mutex to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Mutexes created using this macro can be accessed using the xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() and xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() macros. The xSemaphoreTake() and xSemaphoreGive() macros must not be used.

A mutex used recursively can be ‘taken’ repeatedly by the owner. The mutex doesn’t become available again until the owner has called xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() for each successful ‘take’ request. For example, if a task successfully ‘takes’ the same mutex 5 times then the mutex will not be available to any other task until it has also ‘given’ the mutex back exactly five times.

This type of semaphore uses a priority inheritance mechanism so a task ‘taking’ a semaphore MUST ALWAYS ‘give’ the semaphore back once the semaphore it is no longer required.

Mutex type semaphores cannot be used from within interrupt service routines.

See xSemaphoreCreateBinary() for an alternative implementation that can be used for pure synchronisation (where one task or interrupt always ‘gives’ the semaphore and another always ‘takes’ the semaphore) and from within interrupt service routines.

Example usage:

```c
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;
StaticSemaphore_t xMutexBuffer;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // A recursive semaphore cannot be used before it is created. Here a
```
Chapter 2. API

recursive mutex is created using `xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic()`. The address of `xMutexBuffer` is passed into the function, and will hold the mutexes data structures - so no dynamic memory allocation will be attempted.

```c
xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic( xMutexBuffer );
```

As no dynamic memory allocation was performed, `xSemaphore` cannot be NULL, so there is no need to check it.

Return If the recursive mutex was successfully created then a handle to the created recursive mutex is returned. If `pxMutexBuffer` was NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `pxStaticSemaphore`: Must point to a variable of type `StaticSemaphore_t`, which will then be used to hold the recursive mutex’s data structure, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

`xSemaphoreCreateCounting`(uxMaxCount, uxInitialCount)

Creates a new counting semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new counting semaphore can be referenced.

In many usage scenarios it is faster and more memory efficient to use a direct to task notification in place of a counting semaphore! [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html)

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, counting semaphores use a block of memory, in which the counting semaphore structure is stored. If a counting semaphore is created using `xSemaphoreCreateCounting()` then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the `xSemaphoreCreateCounting()` function. (see [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html)). If a counting semaphore is created using `xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic()` then the application writer can instead optionally provide the memory that will get used by the counting semaphore. `xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic()` therefore allows a counting semaphore to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Counting semaphores are typically used for two things:

1) Counting events.

In this usage scenario an event handler will ‘give’ a semaphore each time an event occurs (incrementing the semaphore count value), and a handler task will ‘take’ a semaphore each time it processes an event (decrementing the semaphore count value). The count value is therefore the difference between the number of events that have occurred and the number that have been processed. In this case it is desirable for the initial count value to be zero.

2) Resource management.

In this usage scenario the count value indicates the number of resources available. To obtain control of a resource a task must first obtain a semaphore - decrementing the semaphore count value. When the count value reaches zero there are no free resources. When a task finishes with the resource it ‘gives’ the semaphore back - incrementing the semaphore count value. In this case it is desirable for the initial count value to be equal to the maximum count value, indicating that all resources are free.

Example usage:

```c
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

    // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to xSemaphoreCreateCounting().
    // The max value to which the semaphore can count should be 10, and the initial value assigned to the count should be 0.
    xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateCounting( 10, 0 );
```

Espressif Systems 1292
Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
if ( xSemaphore != NULL )
{
    // The semaphore was created successfully.
    // The semaphore can now be used.
}

Return Handle to the created semaphore. Null if the semaphore could not be created.

Parameters

• uxMaxCount: The maximum count value that can be reached. When the semaphore reaches this value it can no longer be ‘given’.
• uxInitialCount: The count value assigned to the semaphore when it is created.

xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic(uxMaxCount, uxInitialCount, pxSemaphoreBuffer)

Creates a new counting semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new counting semaphore can be referenced.

In many usage scenarios it is faster and more memory efficient to use a direct to task notification in place of a counting semaphore! https://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, counting semaphores use a block of memory, in which the counting semaphore structure is stored. If a counting semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateCounting() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateCounting() function. (see https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html). If a counting semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory. xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic() therefore allows a counting semaphore to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Counting semaphores are typically used for two things:

1) Counting events.

In this usage scenario an event handler will ‘give’ a semaphore each time an event occurs (incrementing the semaphore count value), and a handler task will ‘take’ a semaphore each time it processes an event (decrementing the semaphore count value). The count value is therefore the difference between the number of events that have occurred and the number that have been processed. In this case it is desirable for the initial count value to be zero.

2) Resource management.

In this usage scenario the count value indicates the number of resources available. To obtain control of a resource a task must first obtain a semaphore - decrementing the semaphore count value. When the count value reaches zero there are no free resources. When a task finishes with the resource it ‘gives’ the semaphore back - incrementing the semaphore count value. In this case it is desirable for the initial count value to be equal to the maximum count value, indicating that all resources are free.

Example usage:

SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;
StaticSemaphore_t xSemaphoreBuffer;
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

    // Counting semaphore cannot be used before they have been created. Create
    // a counting semaphore using xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic(). The max
    // value to which the semaphore can count is 10, and the initial value
    // assigned to the count will be 0. The address of xSemaphoreBuffer is
    // passed in and will be used to hold the semaphore structure, so no dynamic
    // memory allocation will be used.
}
xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateCounting( 10, 0, &xSemaphoreBuffer );

// No memory allocation was attempted so xSemaphore cannot be NULL, so there
// is no need to check its value.
}

**Return** If the counting semaphore was successfully created then a handle to the created counting semaphore is returned. If pxSemaphoreBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

**Parameters**
- **uxMaxCount**: The maximum count value that can be reached. When the semaphore reaches this value it can no longer be ‘given’.
- **uxInitialCount**: The count value assigned to the semaphore when it is created.
- **pxSemaphoreBuffer**: Must point to a variable of type StaticSemaphore_t, which will then be used to hold the semaphore’s data structure, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

**vSemaphoreDelete** (xSemaphore)
Delete a semaphore. This function must be used with care. For example, do not delete a mutex type semaphore if the mutex is held by a task.

**Parameters**
- **xSemaphore**: A handle to the semaphore to be deleted.

**xSemaphoreGetMutexHolder** (xSemaphore)
If xMutex is indeed a mutex type semaphore, return the current mutex holder. If xMutex is not a mutex type semaphore, or the mutex is available (not held by a task), return NULL.

Note: This is a good way of determining if the calling task is the mutex holder, but not a good way of determining the identity of the mutex holder as the holder may change between the function exiting and the returned value being tested.

**xSemaphoreGetMutexHolderFromISR** (xSemaphore)
If xMutex is indeed a mutex type semaphore, return the current mutex holder. If xMutex is not a mutex type semaphore, or the mutex is available (not held by a task), return NULL.

**uxSemaphoreGetCount** (xSemaphore)
If the semaphore is a counting semaphore then uxSemaphoreGetCount() returns its current count value. If the semaphore is a binary semaphore then uxSemaphoreGetCount() returns 1 if the semaphore is available, and 0 if the semaphore is not available.

**Type Definitions**

typedef QueueHandle_t SemaphoreHandle_t

**Timer API**

**Header File**
- components/freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/include/freertos/timers.h

**Functions**

```c
TimerHandle_t xTimerCreate( const char *const pcTimerName, const TickType_t xTimerPeriodInTicks, const UBaseType_t uxAutoReload, void *const pvTimerID, TimerCallbackFunction_t pxCallbackFunction )
```

TimerHandle_t xTimerCreate( const char *const pcTimerName, TickType_t xTimerPeriodInTicks, UBaseType_t uxAutoReload, void * pvTimerID, TimerCallbackFunction_t pxCallbackFunction );

Creates a new software timer instance, and returns a handle by which the created software timer can be referenced.
Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, software timers use a block of memory, in which the timer data structure is stored. If a software timer is created using xTimerCreate() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xTimerCreate() function. (see https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html). If a software timer is created using xTimerCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the software timer. xTimerCreateStatic() therefore allows a software timer to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Timers are created in the dormant state. The xTimerStart(), xTimerReset(), xTimerStartFromISR(), xTimerResetFromISR(), xTimerChangePeriod() and xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() API functions can all be used to transition a timer into the active state.

Example usage:

```c
#define NUM_TIMERS 5

// An array to hold handles to the created timers.
TimerHandle_t xTimers[NUM_TIMERS];

// An array to hold a count of the number of times each timer expires.
int32_t lExpireCounters[NUM_TIMERS] = { 0 };

// Define a callback function that will be used by multiple timer instances.
// The callback function does nothing but count the number of times the
// associated timer expires, and stop the timer once the timer has expired
// 10 times.
void vTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t pxTimer )
{
    int32_t lArrayIndex;
    const int32_t xMaxExpiryCountBeforeStopping = 10;

    // Optionally do something if the pxTimer parameter is NULL.
    configASSERT( pxTimer );

    // Which timer expired?
    lArrayIndex = ( int32_t ) pvTimerGetTimerID( pxTimer );

    // Increment the number of times that pxTimer has expired.
    lExpireCounters[ lArrayIndex ] += 1;

    // If the timer has expired 10 times then stop it from running.
    if( lExpireCounters[ lArrayIndex ] == xMaxExpiryCountBeforeStopping )
    {
        // Do not use a block time if calling a timer API function from a
        // timer callback function, as doing so could cause a deadlock!
        xTimerStop( pxTimer, 0 );
    }
}

void main( void )
{
    int32_t x;

    // Create then start some timers. Starting the timers before the...
    // scheduler
    // has been started means the timers will start running immediately that
    // the scheduler starts.
    for( x = 0; x < NUM_TIMERS; x++ )
    {
        xTimers[ x ] = xTimerCreate( 100 * x, // The timer period...
                                    pdTRUE, // auto-reload themselves when they expire.
                                    "Timer", // Just a text name, not used by the kernel.
                                    xTimers, // in ticks.
                                    xMaxExpiryCountBeforeStopping, // Do not use a block time if calling a timer API function from a
                                    );
    }
    // scheduler
    // has been started means the timers will start running immediately that
    // the scheduler starts.
    for( x = 0; x < NUM_TIMERS; x++ )
    {
        xTimers[ x ] = xTimerCreate( 100 * x, // The timer period...
                                    pdTRUE, // auto-reload themselves when they expire.
                                    "Timer", // Just a text name, not used by the kernel.
                                    xTimers, // in ticks.
                                    xMaxExpiryCountBeforeStopping, // Do not use a block time if calling a timer API function from a
                                    );
    }
```

(下页続き)
Return If the timer is successfully created then a handle to the newly created timer is returned. If the timer cannot be created (because either there is insufficient FreeRTOS heap remaining to allocate the timer structures, or the timer period was set to 0) then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- **pcTimerName**: A text name that is assigned to the timer. This is done purely to assist debugging. The kernel itself only ever references a timer by its handle, and never by its name.
- **xTimerPeriodInTicks**: The timer period. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert a time that has been specified in milliseconds. For example, if the timer must expire after 100 ticks, then xTimerPeriodInTicks should be set to 100. Alternatively, if the timer must expire after 500ms, then xPeriod can be set to (500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS) provided configTICK_RATE_HZ is less than or equal to 1000. Time timerperiodmust be greater than 0.
- **uxAutoReload**: If uxAutoReload is set to pdTRUE then the timer will expire repeatedly with a frequency set by the xTimerPeriodInTicks parameter. If uxAutoReload is set to pdFALSE then the timer will be a one-shot timer and enter the dormant state after it expires.
- **pvTimerID**: An identifier that is assigned to the timer being created. Typically this would be used in the timer callback function to identify which timer expired when the same callback function is assigned to more than one timer.
- **pxCallbackFunction**: The function to call when the timer expires. Callback functions must have the prototype defined by TimerCallbackFunction_t, which is “void vCallbackFunction( TimerHandle_t xTimer );”.

(continued)
TimerHandle_t xTimerCreateStatic(const char * const pcTimerName, const TickType_t xTimerPeriodInTicks, const UBaseType_t uxAutoReload, void * const pvTimerID, TimerCallbackFunction_t pxCallbackFunction, StaticTimer_t *pxTimerBuffer);

Creates a new software timer instance, and returns a handle by which the created software timer can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, software timers use a block of memory, in which the timer data structure is stored. If a software timer is created using xTimerCreate() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xTimerCreate() function. (see [https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html](https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html)). If a software timer is created using xTimerCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the software timer. xTimerCreateStatic() therefore allows a software timer to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Timers are created in the dormant state. The xTimerStart(), xTimerReset(), xTimerStartFromISR(), xTimerResetFromISR(), xTimerChangePeriod() and xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() API functions can all be used to transition a timer into the active state.

Example usage:

```c
// The buffer used to hold the software timer's data structure.
static StaticTimer_t xTimerBuffer;

// A variable that will be incremented by the software timer's callback function.
UBaseType_t uxVariableToIncrement = 0;

// A software timer callback function that increments a variable passed to it when the software timer was created. After the 5th increment the callback function stops the software timer.
static void prvTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t xExpiredTimer )
{
    UBaseType_t *puxVariableToIncrement;
    BaseType_t xReturned;

    // Obtain the address of the variable to increment from the timer ID.
    puxVariableToIncrement = ( UBaseType_t * ) pvTimerGetTimerID(xExpiredTimer);

    // Increment the variable to show the timer callback has executed.
    (*puxVariableToIncrement)++;

    // If this callback has executed the required number of times, stop the timer.
    if( *puxVariableToIncrement == 5 )
    {
        // This is called from a timer callback so must not block.
        xTimerStop( xExpiredTimer, staticDONT_BLOCK );
    }

    void main( void )
    {
        // Create the software time. xTimerCreateStatic() has an extra parameter
        // than the normal xTimerCreate() API function. The parameter is a
        // pointer to the StaticTimer_t structure that will hold the software timer
    }
```

(下页続き)
Chapter 2. API

void xTimerCreateStatic(const char *pcTimerName, uint32_t xTimerPeriod, pdFunc_t prvTimerCallback, StaticTimer_t *pxTimerBuffer);

Return If the timer is created then a handle to the created timer is returned. If pxTimerBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- pcTimerName: A text name that is assigned to the timer. This is done purely to assist debugging. The kernel itself only ever references a timer by its handle, and never by its name.

- xTimerPeriodInTicks: The timer period. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert a time that has been specified in milliseconds. For example, if the timer must expire after 100 ticks, then xTimerPeriodInTicks should be set to 100. Alternatively, if the timer must expire after 500ms, then xPeriod can be set to (500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS) provided configTICK_RATE_HZ is less than or equal to 1000. The timer period must be greater than 0.

- uxAutoReload: If uxAutoReload is set to pdTRUE then the timer will expire repeatedly with a frequency set by the xTimerPeriodInTicks parameter. If uxAutoReload is set to pdFALSE then the timer will be a one-shot timer and enter the dormant state after it expires.

- pvTimerID: An identifier that is assigned to the timer being created. Typically this would be used in the timer callback function to identify which timer expired when the same callback function is assigned to more than one timer.

- pxCallbackFunction: The function to call when the timer expires. Callback functions must have the prototype defined by TimerCallbackFunction_t, which is "void vCallbackFunction(TimerHandle_t xTimer);".

- pxTimerBuffer: Must point to a variable of type StaticTimer_t, which will be then be used to hold the software timer’s data structures, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.
Returns the ID assigned to the timer.

IDs are assigned to timers using the pvTimerID parameter of the call to xTimerCreated() that was used to create the timer, and by calling the vTimerSetTimerID() API function.

If the same callback function is assigned to multiple timers then the timer ID can be used as time specific (timer local) storage.

Example usage:

Return  The ID assigned to the timer being queried.

Parameters
- xTimer: The timer being queried.

See the xTimerCreate() API function example usage scenario.

void vTimerSetTimerID(TimerHandle_t xTimer, void* pvNewID);

Sets the ID assigned to the timer.

IDs are assigned to timers using the pvTimerID parameter of the call to xTimerCreated() that was used to create the timer.

If the same callback function is assigned to multiple timers then the timer ID can be used as time specific (timer local) storage.

Example usage:

Parameters
- xTimer: The timer being updated.
- pvNewID: The ID to assign to the timer.

See the xTimerCreate() API function example usage scenario.

BaseType_t xTimerIsTimerActive(TimerHandle_t xTimer);

Queries a timer to see if it is active or dormant.

A timer will be dormant if: 1) It has been created but not started, or 2) It is an expired one-shot timer that has not been restarted.

Timers are created in the dormant state. The xTimerStart(), xTimerReset(), xTimerStartFromISR(), xTimerResetFromISR(), xTimerChangePeriod() and xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() API functions can all be used to transition a timer into the active state.

Example usage:

    * // This function assumes xTimer has already been created.
    * void vAFunction( TimerHandle_t xTimer )
    * {
    *     if( xTimerIsTimerActive( xTimer ) != pdFALSE ) // or more simply and
    *     // equivalently "if( xTimerIsTimerActive( xTimer ) )"
    *     {
    *         // xTimer is active, do something.
    *     }
    *     else
    *     {
    *         // xTimer is not active, do something else.
    *     } else {
    *     }
    *

Return  pdFALSE will be returned if the timer is dormant. A value other than pdFALSE will be returned if the timer is active.

Parameters
- xTimer: The timer being queried.
### Chapter 2. API 参考

**TaskHandle_t xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle (void)**

xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle() is only available if INCLUDE_xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h.

Simply returns the handle of the timer service/daemon task. It it not valid to call xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle() before the scheduler has been started.

**BaseType_t xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR (PendedFunction_t xFunctionToPend, void *pvParameter1, uint32_t ulParameter2, BaseType_t* pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)**

xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR( PendedFunction_t xFunctionToPend, void *pvParameter1, uint32_t ulParameter2, BaseType_t *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

Used from application interrupt service routines to defer the execution of a function to the RTOS daemon task (the timer service task, hence this function is implemented in timers.c and is prefixed with ‘Timer’).

Ideally an interrupt service routine (ISR) is kept as short as possible, but sometimes an ISR either has a lot of processing to do, or needs to perform processing that is not deterministic. In these cases xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR() can be used to defer processing of a function to the RTOS daemon task.

A mechanism is provided that allows the interrupt to return directly to the task that will subsequently execute the pended callback function. This allows the callback function to execute contiguously in time with the interrupt - just as if the callback had executed in the interrupt itself.

Example usage:

```c
* // The callback function that will execute in the context of the daemon...
* xInterfaceToService;
* // Note callback functions must all use this same prototype.
* void vProcessInterface( void *pvParameter1, uint32_t ulParameter2 )
* {
*   BaseType_t xInterfaceToService;
*   // The interface that requires servicing is passed in the second
*   // parameter. The first parameter is not used in this case.
*   xInterfaceToService = ( BaseType_t ) ulParameter2;
*   // ...Perform the processing here...
* }
* // An ISR that receives data packets from multiple interfaces
* void vAnISR( void )
* {
*   BaseType_t xInterfaceToService, xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;
*   // Query the hardware to determine which interface needs processing.
*   xInterfaceToService = prvCheckInterfaces();
*   // The actual processing is to be deferred to a task. Request the
*   // vProcessInterface() callback function is executed, passing in the
*   // number of the interface that needs processing. The interface to
*   // service is passed in the second parameter. The first parameter is
*   // not used in this case.
*   xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
*   xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR( vProcessInterface, NULL, ( uint32_t )
*   --xInterfaceToService, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
*   // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken is now set to pdTRUE then a context
*   // switch should be requested. The macro used is port specific and will
*   // be either portYIELD_FROM_ISR() or portEND_SWITCHING_ISR() - refer to
*   // the documentation page for the port being used.
*   portYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
*```

(下頁続き)
Return pdPASS is returned if the message was successfully sent to the timer daemon task, otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters
- xFunctionToPend: The function to execute from the timer service/daemon task. The function must conform to the PendedFunction_t prototype.
- pvParameter1: The value of the callback function’s first parameter. The parameter has a void * type to allow it to be used to pass any type. For example, unsigned longs can be cast to a void *, or the void * can be used to point to a structure.
- ulParameter2: The value of the callback function’s second parameter.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: As mentioned above, calling this function will result in a message being sent to the timer daemon task. If the priority of the timer daemon task (which is set using configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY in FreeRTOSConfig.h) is higher than the priority of the currently running task (the task the interrupt interrupted) then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will be set to pdTRUE within xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR(), indicating that a context switch should be requested before the interrupt exits. For that reason *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken must be initialised to pdFALSE. See the example code below.

BaseType_t xTimerPendFunctionCall( PendedFunction_t xFunctionToPend, void *pvParameter1, uint32_t ulParameter2, TickType_t xTicksToWait );

Used to defer the execution of a function to the RTOS daemon task (the timer service task, hence this function is implemented in timers.c and is prefixed with ‘Timer’).

Return pdPASS is returned if the message was successfully sent to the timer daemon task, otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters
- xFunctionToPend: The function to execute from the timer service/daemon task. The function must conform to the PendedFunction_t prototype.
- pvParameter1: The value of the callback function’s first parameter. The parameter has a void * type to allow it to be used to pass any type. For example, unsigned longs can be cast to a void *, or the void * can be used to point to a structure.
- ulParameter2: The value of the callback function’s second parameter.
- xTicksToWait: Calling this function will result in a message being sent to the timer daemon task on a queue. xTicksToWait is the amount of time the calling task should remain in the Blocked state (so not using any processing time) for space to become available on the timer queue if the queue is found to be full.

const char *pcTimerGetName(TimerHandle_t xTimer);

Returns the name that was assigned to a timer when the timer was created.

Return The name assigned to the timer specified by the xTimer parameter.

Parameters
- xTimer: The handle of the timer being queried.

void vTimerSetReloadMode( TimerHandle_t xTimer, const UBaseType_t uxAutoReload );

Updates a timer to be either an auto-reload timer, in which case the timer automatically resets itself each time it expires, or a one-shot timer, in which case the timer will only expire once unless it is manually restarted.

Parameters
- xTimer: The handle of the timer being updated.
- uxAutoReload: If uxAutoReload is set to pdTRUE then the timer will expire repeatedly with a frequency set by the timer’s period (see the xTimerPeriodInTicks parameter of the xTimerCreate())
API function). If uxAutoReload is set to pdFALSE then the timer will be a one-shot timer and enter the dormant state after it expires.

```c
UBaseType_t uxTimerGetReloadMode(TimerHandle_t xTimer);
```

Queries a timer to determine if it is an auto-reload timer, in which case the timer automatically resets itself each time it expires, or a one-shot timer, in which case the timer will only expire once unless it is manually restarted.

**Return** If the timer is an auto-reload timer then pdTRUE is returned, otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

**Parameters**
- xTimer: The handle of the timer being queried.

```c
TickType_t xTimerGetPeriod(TimerHandle_t xTimer);
```

Returns the period of a timer.

**Return** The period of the timer in ticks.

**Parameters**
- xTimer: The handle of the timer being queried.

```c
TickType_t xTimerGetExpiryTime(TimerHandle_t xTimer);
```

Returns the time in ticks at which the timer will expire. If this is less than the current tick count then the expiry time has overflowed from the current time.

**Return** If the timer is running then the time in ticks at which the timer will next expire is returned. If the timer is not running then the return value is undefined.

**Parameters**
- xTimer: The handle of the timer being queried.

```c
void vApplicationGetTimerTaskMemory(StaticTask_t **ppxTimerTaskTCBBuffer, StackType_t **ppxTimerTaskStackBuffer, uint32_t *pulTimerTaskStackSize);
```

This function is used to provide a statically allocated block of memory to FreeRTOS to hold the Timer Task TCB. This function is required when configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION is set. For more information see this URI: https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00110.html#configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION

**Parameters**
- ppxTimerTaskTCBBuffer: A handle to a statically allocated TCB buffer
- ppxTimerTaskStackBuffer: A handle to a statically allocated Stack buffer for this idle task
- pulTimerTaskStackSize: A pointer to the number of elements that will fit in the allocated stack buffer

**Macros**
- `tmrCOMMAND_EXECUTE_CALLBACK_FROM_ISR`
- `tmrCOMMAND_EXECUTE_CALLBACK`
- `tmrCOMMAND_START_DONT_TRACE`
- `tmrCOMMAND_START`
- `tmrCOMMAND_RESET`
- `tmrCOMMAND_STOP`
- `tmrCOMMAND_CHANGE_PERIOD`
- `tmrCOMMAND_DELETE`
- `tmrFIRST_FROM_ISR_COMMAND`
- `tmrCOMMAND_START_FROM_ISR`
- `tmrCOMMAND_RESET_FROM_ISR`
Chapter 2. API

tmrCOMMAND_STOP_FROM_ISR

tmrCOMMAND_CHANGE_PERIOD_FROM_ISR

xTimerStart (xTimer, xTicksToWait)

BaseType_t xTimerStart(TimerHandle_t xTimer, TickType_t xTicksToWait);

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH configuration constant.

xTimerStart() starts a timer that was previously created using the xTimerCreate() API function. If the timer had already been started and was already in the active state, then xTimerStart() has equivalent functionality to the xTimerReset() API function.

Starting a timer ensures the timer is in the active state. If the timer is not stopped, deleted, or reset in the mean time, the callback function associated with the timer will get called ‘n’ ticks after xTimerStart() was called, where ‘n’ is the timers defined period.

It is valid to call xTimerStart() before the scheduler has been started, but when this is done the timer will not actually start until the scheduler is started, and the timers expiry time will be relative to when the scheduler is started, not relative to when xTimerStart() was called.

The configUSE_TIMERS configuration constant must be set to 1 for xTimerStart() to be available.

Example usage:

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the start command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system, although the timers expiry time is relative to when xTimerStart() is actually called. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

• xTimer: The handle of the timer being started/restarted.
• xTicksToWait: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the start command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when xTimerStart() was called. xTicksToWait is ignored if xTimerStart() is called before the scheduler is started.

See the xTimerCreate() API function example usage scenario.

xTimerStop (xTimer, xTicksToWait)

BaseType_t xTimerStop(TimerHandle_t xTimer, TickType_t xTicksToWait);

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH configuration constant.

xTimerStop() stops a timer that was previously started using either of the The xTimerStart(), xTimerReset(), xTimerStartFromISR(), xTimerResetFromISR(), xTimerChangePeriod() or xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() API functions.

Stopping a timer ensures the timer is not in the active state.

The configUSE_TIMERS configuration constant must be set to 1 for xTimerStop() to be available.

Example usage:

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the stop command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters
• **xTimer**: The handle of the timer being stopped.
• **xTicksToWait**: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the stop command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when xTimerStop() was called. xTicksToWait is ignored if xTimerStop() is called before the scheduler is started.

See the xTimerCreate() API function example usage scenario.

**xTimerChangePeriod**

```
BaseType_t xTimerChangePeriod( TimerHandle_t xTimer, TickType_t xNewPeriod, TickType_t xTicksToWait);
```

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH configuration constant.

xTimerChangePeriod() changes the period of a timer that was previously created using the xTimerCreate() API function.

xTimerChangePeriod() can be called to change the period of an active or dormant state timer.

The configUSE_TIMERS configuration constant must be set to 1 for xTimerChangePeriod() to be available.

**Example usage:**

```
// This function assumes xTimer has already been created. If the timer is
// referenced by xTimer is already active when it is called, then the timer
// is deleted. If the timer referenced by xTimer is not active when it is
// called, then the period of the timer is set to 500ms and the timer is
// started.
void vAPFunction( TimerHandle_t xTimer )
{
    if( !xTimerIsTimerActive( xTimer ) ) // or more simply and
    {
        // xTimer is already active - delete it.
        xTimerDelete( xTimer );
    }
    else
    {
        // xTimer is not active, change its period to 500ms. This will also
        // cause the timer to start. Block for a maximum of 100 ticks if the
        // change period command cannot immediately be sent to the timer
        // command queue.
        if( xTimerChangePeriod( xTimer, 500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS, 100 ) == pdPASS )
        {
            // The command was successfully sent.
        }
        else
        {
            // The command could not be sent, even after waiting for 100
            // ticks to pass. Take appropriate action here.
        }
    }
}
```

**Return**  pdFAIL will be returned if the change period command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.
Parameters

- **xTimer**: The handle of the timer that is having its period changed.
- **xNewPeriod**: The new period for **xTimer**. Timer periods are specified in tick periods, so the constant **portTICK_PERIOD_MS** can be used to convert a time that has been specified in milliseconds. For example, if the timer must expire after 100 ticks, then **xNewPeriod** should be set to 100. Alternatively, if the timer must expire after 500ms, then **xNewPeriod** can be set to \( \frac{500}{\text{configTICK_RATE_HZ}} \) provided **configTICK_RATE_HZ** is less than or equal to 1000.
- **xTicksToWait**: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the change period command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when **xTimerChangePeriod()** was called. **xTicksToWait** is ignored if **xTimerChangePeriod()** is called before the scheduler is started.

**xTimerDelete** (**xTimer**, **xTicksToWait**)  
`BaseType_t xTimerDelete( TimerHandle_t xTimer, TickType_t xTicksToWait );`

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the **configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH** configuration constant.

**xTimerDelete()** deletes a timer that was previously created using the **xTimerCreate()** API function.

The **configUSE_TIMERS** configuration constant must be set to 1 for **xTimerDelete()** to be available.

Example usage:

**Return**  
**pdFAIL** will be returned if the delete command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after **xTicksToWait** ticks had passed. **pdPASS** will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the **configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY** configuration constant.

**Parameters**

- **xTimer**: The handle of the timer being deleted.
- **xTicksToWait**: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the delete command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when **xTimerDelete()** was called. **xTicksToWait** is ignored if **xTimerDelete()** is called before the scheduler is started.

See the **xTimerChangePeriod()** API function example usage scenario.

**xTimerReset** (**xTimer**, **xTicksToWait**)  
`BaseType_t xTimerReset( TimerHandle_t xTimer, TickType_t xTicksToWait );`

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the **configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH** configuration constant.

**xTimerReset()** re-starts a timer that was previously created using the **xTimerCreate()** API function. If the timer had already been started and was already in the active state, then **xTimerReset()** will cause the timer to re-evaluate its expiry time so that it is relative to when **xTimerReset()** was called. If the timer was in the dormant state then **xTimerReset()** has equivalent functionality to the **xTimerStart()** API function.

Resetting a timer ensures the timer is in the active state. If the timer is not stopped, deleted, or reset in the mean time, the callback function associated with the timer will get called ‘n’ ticks after **xTimerReset()** was called, where ‘n’ is the timers defined period.

It is valid to call **xTimerReset()** before the scheduler has been started, but when this is done the timer will not actually start until the scheduler is started, and the timers expiry time will be relative to when the scheduler is started, not relative to when **xTimerReset()** was called.

The **configUSE_TIMERS** configuration constant must be set to 1 for **xTimerReset()** to be available.

Example usage:
* When a key **is** pressed, an LCD back-light **is** switched on. If 5 seconds...
* **pass**
* When a key is pressed, an LCD back-light is switched on. If 5 seconds...
* **/**
* this case, the timer is a one-shot timer.
* **/
* TimerHandle_t xBacklightTimer = NULL;
* **/
* The callback function assigned to the one-shot timer. In this case the **/
* parameter is not used.
* void vBacklightTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t pxTimer )
* {**/
* // The timer expired, therefore 5 seconds must have passed since a key**/
* // was pressed. Switch off the LCD back-light.
* vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_OFF );
* }
* **/
* The key press event handler.
* void vKeyPressEventHandler( char cKey )
* {**/
* // Ensure the LCD back-light is on, then reset the timer that is**/
* // responsible for turning the back-light off after 5 seconds of**/
* // key inactivity. Wait 10 ticks for the command to be successfully sent**/
* // if it cannot be sent immediately.
* vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_ON );
* if( xTimerReset( xBacklightTimer, 100 ) != pdPASS )
* {**/
* // The reset command was not executed successfully. Take appropriate**/
* // action here.
* }
* **/
* // Perform the rest of the key processing here.
* }
* void main( void )
* {**/
* int32_t x;
* *
* // Create then start the one-shot timer that is responsible for turning**/
* // the back-light off if no keys are pressed within a 5 second period.
* xBacklightTimer = xTimerCreate( "BacklightTimer", **/
* /* Just a text name, not used by the kernel. */ **/
* 5000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS), // The **/
* timer period in ticks. **/
* pdFALSE, // The timer...
* 0, // The id is...
* not used by the callback so can take any value. **/
* vBacklightTimerCallback // The...
* callback function that switches the LCD back-light off. **/
* );
* *
* if( xBacklightTimer == NULL )
* {**/
* // The timer was not created.
* }
* else
* {**/
* // Start the timer. No block time is specified, and even if one was**/
* // it would be ignored because the scheduler has not yet been**/
* // started.
* if( xTimerStart( xBacklightTimer, 0 ) != pdPASS )
* {**/
The timer could not be set into the Active state.

Starting the scheduler will start the timer running as it has already been set into the active state.

vTaskStartScheduler();

Should not reach here.

for (;;) ;

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the reset command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system, although the timers expiry time is relative to when xTimerStart() is actually called. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters
- xTimer: The handle of the timer being reset/started/restarted.
- xTicksToWait: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the reset command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when xTimerReset() was called. xTicksToWait is ignored if xTimerReset() is called before the scheduler is started.

xTimerStartFromISR (xTimer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

BaseType_t xTimerStartFromISR( TimerHandle_t xTimer, BaseType_t *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

A version of xTimerStart() that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

void vBacklightTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t pxTimer )
{
    // The timer expired, therefore 5 seconds must have passed since a key was pressed. Switch off the LCD back-light.
    vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_OFF );
}

void vKeyPressEventInterruptHandler( void )
{
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
    // Ensure the LCD back-light is on, then restart the timer that is responsible for turning the back-light off after 5 seconds of key inactivity. This is an interrupt service routine so can only
* call FreeRTOS API functions that end in "FromISR".
* ```
* vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_ON );
* ```
* xTimerStartFromISR() or xTimerResetFromISR() could be called here
* ```
* as both cause the timer to re-calculate its expiry time.
* ```
* ```
* xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was initialised to pdFALSE when it was declared (in this function).
* ```
* if( xTimerStartFromISR( xBacklightTimer, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken ) != pdPASS )
* {
*     // The start command was not executed successfully. Take appropriate action here.
* }
* ```
* ```
* Perform the rest of the key processing here.
* ```
* ```
* if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE )
* {
*     // Call the interrupt safe yield function here (actual function depends on the FreeRTOS port being used).
* }
* ```
* Return pdFAIL will be returned if the start command could not be sent to the timer command queue. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system, although the timers expiry time is relative to when xTimerStartFromISR() is actually called. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters
- xTimer: The handle of the timer being started/restarted.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: The timer service/daemon task spends most of its time in the Blocked state, waiting for messages to arrive on the timer command queue. Calling xTimerStartFromISR() writes a message to the timer command queue, so has the potential to transition the timer service/daemon task out of the Blocked state. If calling xTimerStartFromISR() causes the timer service/daemon task to leave the Blocked state, and the timer service/daemon task has a priority equal to or greater than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE internally within the xTimerStartFromISR() function. If xTimerStartFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be performed before the interrupt exits.

**xTimerStopFromISR**(xTimer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)
```
BaseType_t xTimerStopFromISR( TimerHandle_t xTimer, BaseType_t *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
```
A version of xTimerStop() that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:
```
* // This scenario assumes xTimer has already been created and started. When an interrupt occurs, the timer should be simply stopped.
* ```
* ```
* // The interrupt service routine that stops the timer.
* ```
* ```
* void vAnExampleInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
* {
*     BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
* ```
* ```
The interrupt has occurred - simply stop the timer.

If higherPriorityTaskWoken equals 0, then a context switch

from inside an ISR varies from port to port, and from compiler to compiler. Inspect the demos for the port you are using to find the actual syntax required.

if (higherPriorityTaskWoken != 0)
{
    // Call the interrupt safe yield function here (actual function depends on the FreeRTOS port being used).
}

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the stop command could not be sent to the timer command queue. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

xTimer: The handle of the timer being stopped.
pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: The timer service/daemon task spends most of its time in the Blocked state, waiting for messages to arrive on the timer command queue. Calling xTimerStopFromISR() writes a message to the timer command queue, so has the potential to transition the timer service/daemon task out of the Blocked state. If calling xTimerStopFromISR() causes the timer service/daemon task to leave the Blocked state, and the timer service/daemon task has a priority equal to or greater than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then "pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to 0 internally within the xTimerStopFromISR() function. If xTimerStopFromISR() sets this value to 0 then a context switch should be performed before the interrupt exits.

xTimerChangePeriodFromISR(xTimer, xNewPeriod, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

BaseType_t xTimerChangePeriodFromISR( TimerHandle_t xTimer, TickType_t xNewPeriod, BaseType_t *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

A version of xTimerChangePeriod() that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

* // This scenario assumes xTimer has already been created and started. When an interrupt occurs, the period of xTimer should be changed to 500ms.
* // The interrupt service routine that changes the period of xTimer.
* void vAnExampleInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
* {
*     BaseType_t higherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
*     // The interrupt has occurred - change the period of xTimer to 500ms.
*     // higherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdFALSE where it was defined
*     // (within this function). As this is an interrupt service routine, only FreeRTOS API functions that end in "FromISR" can be used.
* }
if ( xTimerChangePeriodFromISR( xTimer, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken ) != pdPASS ) {
    // The command to change the timers period was <i>not</i> executed
    // successfully. Take appropriate action here.
}

if ( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken equals pdTRUE, then a context switch
* should be performed. The syntax required to perform a context switch
* from inside an ISR varies from port to port, and from compiler to
* compiler. Inspect the demos for the port you are using to find the
* actual syntax required.
* if ( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE ) {
    // Call the interrupt safe <i>yield</i> function here (actual function
    // depends on the FreeRTOS port being used).
* }

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the command to change the timers period could not be sent to the timer command queue. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the config-TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters
- xTimer: The handle of the timer that is having its period changed.
- xNewPeriod: The new period for xTimer. Timer periods are specified in tick periods, so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert a time that has been specified in milliseconds. For example, if the timer must expire after 100 ticks, then xNewPeriod should be set to 100. Alternatively, if the timer must expire after 500ms, then xNewPeriod can be set to (500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS) provided configTICK_RATE_HZ is less than or equal to 1000.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: The timer service/daemon task spends most of its time in the Blocked state, waiting for messages to arrive on the timer command queue. Calling xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() writes a message to the timer command queue, so has the potential to transition the timer service/ daemon task out of the Blocked state. If calling xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() causes the timer service/daemon task to leave the Blocked state, and the timer service/daemon task has a priority equal to or greater than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE internally within the xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() function. If xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be performed before the interrupt exits.

xTimerResetFromISR (xTimer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)
BaseType_t xTimerResetFromISR( TimerHandle_t xTimer, BaseType_t *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

A version of xTimerReset() that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

* // This scenario assumes xBacklightTimer has already been created. When a
* // key <i>is</i> pressed, an LCD back-light <i>is</i> switched on. If 5 seconds <i>pass</i>
* // without a key being pressed, then the LCD back-light <i>is</i> switched off. In
* // this case, the timer <i>is</i> a one-shot timer, <i>and</i> unlike the example given <i>for</i>
* // the xTimerReset() function, the key press event handler <i>is</i> an interrupt
* // service routine.
* // The callback function assigned to the one-shot timer. In this case the
* // parameter <i>is not</i> used.
* void vBacklightTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t pxTimer )
* {
The timer expired, therefore 5 seconds must have passed since a key was pressed. Switch off the LCD back-light.

```c
vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_OFF );
```

The key press interrupt service routine.

```c
void vKeyPressEventInterruptHandler( void )
{
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

    // Ensure the LCD back-light is on, then reset the timer that is responsible for turning the back-light off after 5 seconds of key inactivity. This is an interrupt service routine so can only call FreeRTOS API functions that end in "FromISR".
    vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_ON );

    // xTimerStartFromISR() or xTimerResetFromISR() could be called here as both cause the timer to re-calculate its expiry time.
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was initialised to pdFALSE when it was declared (in this function).
    if( xTimerResetFromISR( xBacklightTimer, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken ) != pdPASS )
    {
        // The reset command was not executed successfully. Take appropriate action here.
    }

    // Perform the rest of the key processing here.
    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken equals pdTRUE, then a context switch should be performed. The syntax required to perform a context switch from inside an ISR varies from port to port, and from compiler to compiler. Inspect the demos for the port you are using to find the actual syntax required.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE )
    {
        // Call the interrupt safe yield function here (actual function depends on the FreeRTOS port being used).
    }
}
```

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the reset command could not be sent to the timer command queue. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system, although the timers expiry time is relative to when xTimerResetFromISR() is actually called. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters
- xTimer: The handle of the timer that is to be started, reset, or restarted.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: The timer service/daemon task spends most of its time in the Blocked state, waiting for messages to arrive on the timer command queue. Calling xTimerResetFromISR() writes a message to the timer command queue, so has the potential to transition the timer service/daemon task out of the Blocked state. If calling xTimerResetFromISR() causes the timer service/daemon task to leave the Blocked state, and the timer service/daemon task has a priority equal to or greater than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then "pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE internally within the xTimerResetFromISR() function. If xTimerResetFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be performed before the interrupt exits.
Type Definitions

typedef struct tmrTimerControl *TimerHandle_t
typedef void (*TimerCallbackFunction_t)(TimerHandle_t xTimer)
typedef void (*PendedFunction_t)(void *, uint32_t)

Event Group API

Header File

- components/freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/include/freertos/event_groups.h

Functions

EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroupCreate (void)
Create a new event group.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, event groups use a [small] block of memory, in which the event group’s structure is stored. If an event groups is created using xEventGroupCreate() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xEventGroupCreate() function. (see https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html). If an event group is created using xEventGroupCreateStatic() then the application writer must instead provide the memory that will get used by the event group. xEventGroupCreateStatic() therefore allows an event group to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Although event groups are not related to ticks, for internal implementation reasons the number of bits available for use in an event group is dependent on the configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. If configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS is 1 then each event group contains 8 usable bits (bit 0 to bit 7). If configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS is set to 0 then each event group has 24 usable bits (bit 0 to bit 23). The EventBits_t type is used to store event bits within an event group.

Example usage:

```c
// Declare a variable to hold the created event group.
EventGroupHandle_t xCreatedEventGroup;

// Attempt to create the event group.
xCreatedEventGroup = xEventGroupCreate();

// Was the event group created successfully?
if( xCreatedEventGroup == NULL )
{
    // The event group was not created because there was insufficient
    // FreeRTOS heap available.
}
else
{
    // The event group was created.
}
```

Return If the event group was created then a handle to the event group is returned. If there was insufficient FreeRTOS heap available to create the event group then NULL is returned. See https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html

EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroupCreateStatic (StaticEventGroup_t *pxEventGroupBuffer)
Create a new event group.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, event groups use a [small] block of memory, in which the event group’s structure is stored. If an event groups is created using xEventGroupCreate() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xEventGroupCreate() function. (see https://www.FreeRTOS.org/a00111.html). If an event group is created using xEventGroupCreateStatic() then the application writer must instead provide the memory that will get used by the event group. xEventGroupCreateStatic() therefore allows an event group to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.
Although event groups are not related to ticks, for internal implementation reasons the number of bits available for use in an event group is dependent on the configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. If configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS is 1 then each event group contains 8 usable bits (bit 0 to bit 7). If configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS is set to 0 then each event group has 24 usable bits (bit 0 to bit 23). The EventBits_t type is used to store event bits within an event group.

Example usage:

```c
// StaticEventGroup_t is a publicly accessible structure that has the same
// size and alignment requirements as the real event group structure. It is
// provided as a mechanism for applications to know the size of the event
// group (which is dependent on the architecture and configuration file
// settings) without breaking the strict data hiding policy by exposing the
// real event group internals. This StaticEventGroup_t variable is passed
// into the xSemaphoreCreateEventGroupStatic() function and is used to store
// the event group’s data structures
StaticEventGroup_t xEventGroupBuffer;

// Create the event group without dynamically allocating any memory.
xEventGroup = xEventGroupCreateStatic( &xEventGroupBuffer );
```

Return If the event group was created then a handle to the event group is returned. If pxEventGroupBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters
- `pxEventGroupBuffer`: pxEventGroupBuffer must point to a variable of type StaticEventGroup_t, which will be then be used to hold the event group’s data structures, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

`EventBits_t xEventGroupWaitBits( EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup, const EventBits_t uxBitsToWaitFor, const BaseType_txClearOnExit, const BaseType_t xWaitForAllBits, TickType_t xTicksToWait )`

[Potentially] block to wait for one or more bits to be set within a previously created event group.

This function cannot be called from an interrupt.

Example usage:

```c
#define BIT_0 ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4 ( 1 << 4 )

void aFunction( EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup )
{
    EventBits_t uxBits;
    const TickType_t xTicksToWait = 100 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS;

    // Wait a maximum of 100ms for either bit 0 or bit 4 to be set within
    // the event group. Clear the bits before exiting.
    uxBits = xEventGroupWaitBits( xEventGroup, // The event group being tested.
                                 BIT_0 | BIT_4, // The bits within the event group to wait_
                                 --for.
                                 pdTRUE, // BIT_0 and BIT_4 should be cleared before_
                                 --returning.
                                 pdFALSE, // Don’t wait for both bits, either bit will_
                                 --do.
                                 xTicksToWait ); // Wait a maximum of 100ms for either bit to_
                                 --be set.

    if( ( uxBits & ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) ) == ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) )
    {
        // xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because both bits were set.
    }
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_0 ) != 0 )
```
Return  The value of the event group at the time either the bits being waited for became set, or the block time expired. Test the return value to know which bits were set. If xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because its timeout expired then not all the bits being waited for will be set. If xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because the bits it was waiting for were set then the returned value is the event group value before any bits were automatically cleared in the case that xClearOnExit parameter was set to pdTRUE.

Parameters

- xEventGroup: The event group in which the bits are being tested. The event group must have previously been created using a call to xEventGroupCreate().
- uxBitsToWaitFor: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to test inside the event group. For example, to wait for bit 0 and/or bit 2 set uxBitsToWaitFor to 0x05. To wait for bits 0 and/or bit 1 and/or bit 2 set uxBitsToWaitFor to 0x07. Etc.
- xClearOnExit: If xClearOnExit is set to pdTRUE then any bits within uxBitsToWaitFor that are set within the event group will be cleared before xEventGroupWaitBits() returns if the wait condition was met (if the function returns for a reason other than a timeout). If xClearOnExit is set to pdFALSE then the bits set in the event group are not altered when the call to xEventGroupWaitBits() returns.
- xWaitForAllBits: If xWaitForAllBits is set to pdTRUE then xEventGroupWaitBits() will return when either all the bits in uxBitsToWaitFor are set or the specified block time expires. If xWaitForAllBits is set to pdFALSE then xEventGroupWaitBits() will return when any one of the bits set in uxBitsToWaitFor is set or the specified block time expires. The block time is specified by the xTicksToWait parameter.
- xTicksToWait: The maximum amount of time (specified in ‘ticks’) to wait for one/all (depending on the xWaitForAllBits value) of the bits specified by uxBitsToWaitFor to become set.

Example usage:

```c
#define BIT_0 ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4 ( 1 << 4 )

void aFunction( EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup )
{
    EventBits_t uxBits;

    // Clear bit 0 and bit 4 in xEventGroup.
    uxBits = xEventGroupClearBits( xEventGroup, BIT_0 | BIT_4 );

    if( uxBits & ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) != ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) )
    {
        // Both bit 0 and bit 4 were set before xEventGroupClearBits() was called. Both will now be clear (not set).
    }
}
```

EventBits_t xEventGroupClearBits( EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup, const EventBits_t uxBitsToClear )

Clear bits within an event group. This function cannot be called from an interrupt.
else if( ( uxBits & BIT_0 ) != 0 )
{
    // Bit 0 was set before xEventGroupClearBits() was called. It will
    // now be clear.
}
else if( ( uxBits & BIT_4 ) != 0 )
{
    // Bit 4 was set before xEventGroupClearBits() was called. It will
    // now be clear.
}
else
{
    // Neither bit 0 nor bit 4 were set in the first place.
}

Return The value of the event group before the specified bits were cleared.

Parameters

- xEventGroup: The event group in which the bits are to be cleared.
- uxBitsToClear: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to clear in the event group. For example, to clear bit 3 only, set uxBitsToClear to 0x08. To clear bit 3 and bit 0 set uxBitsToClear to 0x09.

EventBits_t xEventGroupSetBits(EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup, const EventBits_t uxBitsToSet)

Set bits within an event group. This function cannot be called from an interrupt. xEventGroupSetBits-FromISR() is a version that can be called from an interrupt.

Setting bits in an event group will automatically unblock tasks that are blocked waiting for the bits.

Example usage:

```c
#define BIT_0 ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4 ( 1 << 4 )

void aFunction( EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup )
{
    EventBits_t uxBits;

    // Set bit 0 and bit 4 in xEventGroup.
    uxBits = xEventGroupSetBits( xEventGroup, // The event group being updated.
                                BIT_0 | BIT_4 ); // The bits being set.

    if( ( uxBits & ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) ) == ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) )
    {
        // Both bit 0 and bit 4 remained set when the function returned.
    }
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_0 ) != 0 )
    {
        // Bit 0 remained set when the function returned, but bit 4 was
        // cleared. It might be that bit 4 was cleared automatically as a
        // task that was waiting for bit 4 was removed from the Blocked
        // state.
    }
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_4 ) != 0 )
    {
        // Bit 4 remained set when the function returned, but bit 0 was
        // cleared. It might be that bit 0 was cleared automatically as a
        // task that was waiting for bit 0 was removed from the Blocked
        // state.
    }

```
Return The value of the event group at the time the call to xEventGroupSetBits() returns. There are two reasons why the returned value might have the bits specified by the uxBitsToSet parameter cleared. First, if setting a bit results in a task that was waiting for the bit leaving the blocked state then it is possible the bit will be cleared automatically (see the xClearBitOnExit parameter of xEventGroupWaitBits()). Second, any unblocked (or otherwise Ready state) task that has a priority above that of the task that called xEventGroupSetBits() will execute and may change the event group value before the call to xEventGroupSetBits() returns.

Parameters
- xEventGroup: The event group in which the bits are to be set.
- uxBitsToSet: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to set. For example, to set bit 3 only, set uxBitsToSet to 0x08. To set bit 3 and bit 0 set uxBitsToSet to 0x09.

`EventBits_t xEventGroupSync(EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup, const EventBits_t uxBitsToSet, const EventBits_t uxBitsToWaitFor, TickType_t xTicksToWait)`

Atomically set bits within an event group, then wait for a combination of bits to be set within the same event group. This functionality is typically used to synchronise multiple tasks, where each task has to wait for the other tasks to reach a synchronisation point before proceeding.

This function cannot be used from an interrupt.

The function will return before its block time expires if the bits specified by the uxBitsToWait parameter are set, or become set within that time. In this case all the bits specified by uxBitsToWait will be automatically cleared before the function returns.

Example usage:

```c
// Bits used by the three tasks.
#define TASK_0_BIT   ( 1 << 0 )
#define TASK_1_BIT   ( 1 << 1 )
#define TASK_2_BIT   ( 1 << 2 )
#define ALL_SYNC_BITS ( TASK_0_BIT | TASK_1_BIT | TASK_2_BIT )

// Use an event group to synchronise three tasks. It is assumed this event
// group has already been created elsewhere.
EventGroupHandle_t xEventBits;

void vTask0( void *pvParameters )
{
EventBits_t uxReturn;
TickType_t xTicksToWait = 100 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS;

for( ;; )
{
    // Perform task functionality here.

    // Set bit 0 in the event flag to note this task has reached the
    // sync point. The other two tasks will set the other two bits defined
    // by ALL_SYNC_BITS. All three tasks have reached the synchronisation
    // point when all the ALL_SYNC_BITS are set. Wait a maximum of 100ms
    // for this to happen.
    uxReturn = xEventGroupSync( xEventBits, TASK_0_BIT, ALL_SYNC_BITS,
                                  xTicksToWait );
```
if ( uxReturn & ALL_SYNC_BITS ) == ALL_SYNC_BITS
{
    // All three tasks reached the synchronisation point before the call
    // to xEventGroupSync() timed out.
}
}

void vTask1( void *pvParameters )
{
    for( ;; )
    {
        // Perform task functionality here.

        // Set bit 1 in the event flag to note this task has reached the
        // synchronisation point. The other two tasks will set the other two
        // bits defined by ALL_SYNC_BITS. All three tasks have reached the
        // synchronisation point when all the ALL_SYNC_BITS are set. Wait
        // indefinitely for this to happen.
        xEventGroupSync( xEventBits, TASK_1_BIT, ALL_SYNC_BITS, portMAX_DELAY );

        // xEventGroupSync() was called with an indefinite block time, so
        // this task will only reach here if the synchronisation was made by all
        // three tasks, so there is no need to test the return value.
    }
}

void vTask2( void *pvParameters )
{
    for( ;; )
    {
        // Perform task functionality here.

        // Set bit 2 in the event flag to note this task has reached the
        // synchronisation point. The other two tasks will set the other two
        // bits defined by ALL_SYNC_BITS. All three tasks have reached the
        // synchronisation point when all the ALL_SYNC_BITS are set. Wait
        // indefinitely for this to happen.
        xEventGroupSync( xEventBits, TASK_2_BIT, ALL_SYNC_BITS, portMAX_DELAY );

        // xEventGroupSync() was called with an indefinite block time, so
        // this task will only reach here if the synchronisation was made by all
        // three tasks, so there is no need to test the return value.
    }
}

Return The value of the event group at the time either the bits being waited for became set, or the block time
expired. Test the return value to know which bits were set. If xEventGroupSync() returned because its
timeout expired then not all the bits being waited for will be set. If xEventGroupSync() returned because
all the bits it was waiting for were set then the returned value is the event group value before any bits were
automatically cleared.

Parameters

- xEventGroup: The event group in which the bits are being tested. The event group must have
  previously been created using a call to xEventGroupCreate().
- uxBitsToSet: The bits to set in the event group before determining if, and possibly waiting for,
  all the bits specified by the uxBitsToWait parameter are set.
- uxBitsToWaitFor: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to test inside the event group.
  For example, to wait for bit 0 and bit 2 set uxBitsToWaitFor to 0x05. To wait for bits 0 and bit 1
  and bit 2 set uxBitsToWaitFor to 0x07. Etc.
- xTicksToWait: The maximum amount of time (specified in ‘ticks’) to wait for all of the bits...
specified by uxBitsToWaitFor to become set.

**EventBits_t xEventGroupGetBitsFromISR (EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup)**

A version of xEventGroupGetBits() that can be called from an ISR.

**Return** The event group bits at the time xEventGroupGetBitsFromISR() was called.

**Parameters**
- xEventGroup: The event group being queried.

**void vEventGroupDelete (EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup)**

Delete an event group that was previously created by a call to xEventGroupCreate(). Tasks that are blocked on the event group will be unblocked and obtain 0 as the event group’s value.

**Parameters**
- xEventGroup: The event group being deleted.

**Macros**

**xEventGroupClearBitsFromISR (xEventGroup, uxBitsToClear)**

A version of xEventGroupClearBits() that can be called from an interrupt.

Setting bits in an event group is not a deterministic operation because there are an unknown number of tasks that may be waiting for the bit or bits being set. FreeRTOS does not allow nondeterministic operations to be performed while interrupts are disabled, so protects event groups that are accessed from tasks by suspending the scheduler rather than disabling interrupts. As a result event groups cannot be accessed directly from an interrupt service routine. Therefore xEventGroupClearBitsFromISR() sends a message to the timer task to have the clear operation performed in the context of the timer task.

**Example usage:**

```c
#define BIT_0 ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4 ( 1 << 4 )

// An event group which it is assumed has already been created by a call to
// xEventGroupCreate().
EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup;

void anInterruptHandler( void )
{
    // Clear bit 0 and bit 4 in xEventGroup.
    xResult = xEventGroupClearBitsFromISR(
        xEventGroup, // The event group being updated.
        BIT_0 | BIT_4 ); // The bits being set.

    if( xResult == pdPASS )
    {
        // The message was posted successfully.
    }
}
```

**Return** If the request to execute the function was posted successfully then pdPASS is returned, otherwise pdFALSE is returned. pdFALSE will be returned if the timer service queue was full.

**Parameters**
- xEventGroup: The event group in which the bits are to be cleared.
- uxBitsToClear: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to clear. For example, to clear bit 3 only, set uxBitsToClear to 0x08. To clear bit 3 and bit 0 set uxBitsToClear to 0x09.

**xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR (xEventGroup, uxBitsToSet, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)**

A version of xEventGroupSetBits() that can be called from an interrupt.

Setting bits in an event group is not a deterministic operation because there are an unknown number of tasks that may be waiting for the bit or bits being set. FreeRTOS does not allow nondeterministic operations to be performed in interrupts or from critical sections. Therefore xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR() sends a message to the timer task to have the set operation performed in the context of the timer task - where a scheduler lock is used in place of a critical section.
Example usage:

```c
#define BIT_0 ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4 ( 1 << 4 )

// An event group which it is assumed has already been created by a call to
// xEventGroupCreate().
EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup;

void anInterruptHandler( void )
{
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken, xResult;
    
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken must be initialised to pdFALSE.
    xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
    
    // Set bit 0 and bit 4 in xEventGroup.
    xResult = xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR(
        xEventGroup,  // The event group being updated.
        BIT_0 | BIT_4 // The bits being set.
        &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
    
    // Was the message posted successfully?
    if( xResult == pdPASS )
    {
        // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken is now set to pdTRUE then a context
        // switch should be requested. The macro used is port specific and
        // will be either portYIELD_FROM_ISR() or portEND_SWITCHING_ISR() -
        // refer to the documentation page for the port being used.
        portYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
    }
}
```

**Return** If the request to execute the function was posted successfully then pdPASS is returned, otherwise pdFALSE is returned. pdFALSE will be returned if the timer service queue was full.

**Parameters**
- `xEventGroup`: The event group in which the bits are to be set.
- `uxBitsToSet`: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to set. For example, to set bit 3 only, set `uxBitsToSet` to 0x08. To set bit 3 and bit 0 set `uxBitsToSet` to 0x09.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: As mentioned above, calling this function will result in a message being sent to the timer daemon task. If the priority of the timer daemon task is higher than the priority of the currently running task (the task the interrupt interrupted) then `*pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken` will be set to pdTRUE by `xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR()`, indicating that a context switch should be requested before the interrupt exits. For that reason `*pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken` must be initialised to pdFALSE. See the example code below.

**xEventGroupGetBits** *(xEventGroup)*

Returns the current value of the bits in an event group. This function cannot be used from an interrupt.

**Return** The event group bits at the time `xEventGroupGetBits()` was called.

**Parameters**
- `xEventGroup`: The event group being queried.

**Type Definitions**
```c
typedef struct EventGroupDef_t *EventGroupHandle_t
typedef TickType_t EventBits_t
```

**Stream Buffer API**

**Header File**
Functions

\[ \text{xStreamBufferSend}(\text{StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer, const void *pvTxData, size_t xDataLengthBytes, TickType_t xTicksToWait}) \]

Sends bytes to a stream buffer. The bytes are copied into the stream buffer.

***NOTE***: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xStreamBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xStreamBufferReceive()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xStreamBufferSend() to write to a stream buffer from a task. Use xStreamBufferSendFromISR() to write to a stream buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```c
void vAFunction( StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer )
{
    size_t xBytesSent;
    uint8_t ucArrayToSend[] = { 0, 1, 2, 3 };
    char *pcStringToSend = "String to send";
    const TickType_t x100ms = pdMS_TO_TICKS( 100 );

    // Send an array to the stream buffer, blocking for a maximum of 100ms to
    // wait for enough space to be available in the stream buffer.
    xBytesSent = xStreamBufferSend( xStreamBuffer, ( void * ) ucArrayToSend,
        sizeof( ucArrayToSend ), x100ms );
    if( xBytesSent != sizeof( ucArrayToSend ) )
    {
        // The call to xStreamBufferSend() times out before there was enough
        // space in the buffer for the data to be written, but it did
        // successfully write xBytesSent bytes.
    }

    // Send the string to the stream buffer. Return immediately if there is not
    // enough space in the buffer.
    xBytesSent = xStreamBufferSend( xStreamBuffer, ( void * ) pcStringToSend,
        strlen( pcStringToSend ), 0 );
    if( xBytesSent != strlen( pcStringToSend ) )
    {
        // The entire string could not be added to the stream buffer because
        // there was not enough free space in the buffer, but xBytesSent bytes
        // were sent. Could try again to send the remaining bytes.
    }
}
```

Return  The number of bytes written to the stream buffer. If a task times out before it can write all xDataLengthBytes into the buffer it will still write as many bytes as possible.

Parameters

- xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer to which a stream is being sent.
- pvTxData: A pointer to the buffer that holds the bytes to be copied into the stream buffer.
- xDataLengthBytes: The maximum number of bytes to copy from pvTxData into the stream buffer.
Chapter 2. API

- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should remain in the Blocked state to wait for enough space to become available in the stream buffer, should the stream buffer contain too little space to hold the another `xDataLengthBytes` bytes. The block time is specified in tick periods, so the absolute time it represents is dependent on the tick frequency. The macro `pdMS_TO_TICKS()` can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds into a time specified in ticks. Setting `xTicksToWait` to `portMAX_DELAY` will cause the task to wait indefinitely (without timing out), provided `INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend` is set to 1 in `FreeRTOSConfig.h`. If a task times out before it can write all `xDataLengthBytes` into the buffer it will still write as many bytes as possible. A task does not use any CPU time when it is in the blocked state.

```c
size_t xStreamBufferSendFromISR( StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer, const void *pvTxData,
    size_t xDataLengthBytes, BaseType_t *const pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)
```

Interrupt safe version of the API function that sends a stream of bytes to the stream buffer.

***NOTE***: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as `xStreamBufferSend()`) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as `xStreamBufferReceive()`) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use `xStreamBufferSend()` to write to a stream buffer from a task. Use `xStreamBufferSendFromISR()` to write to a stream buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```c
// A stream buffer that has already been created.
StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer;

void vAnInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
    size_t xBytesSent;
    char *pcStringToSend = "String to send";
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE; // Initialised to pdFALSE.

    // Attempt to send the string to the stream buffer.
    xBytesSent = xStreamBufferSendFromISR( xStreamBuffer,
        ( void * ) pcStringToSend,
        strlen( pcStringToSend ),
        &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

    if( xBytesSent != strlen( pcStringToSend ) )
    {
        // There was not enough free space in the stream buffer for the entire
        // string to be written, ut xBytesSent bytes were written.
    }

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdTRUE inside
    // xStreamBufferSendFromISR() then a task that has a priority above the
    // priority of the currently executing task was unblocked and a context
    // switch should be performed to ensure the ISR returns to the unblocked
    // task. In most FreeRTOS ports this is done by simply passing
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken into taskYIELD_FROM_ISR(), which will test the
    // variables value, and perform the context switch if necessary. Check the
    // documentation for the port in use for port specific instructions.
    taskYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
}
```

**Return** The number of bytes actually written to the stream buffer, which will be less than `xDataLengthBytes` if the stream buffer didn’t have enough free space for all the bytes to be written.
### Parameters
- **xStreamBuffer**: The handle of the stream buffer to which a stream is being sent.
- **pvTxData**: A pointer to the data that is to be copied into the stream buffer.
- **xDataLengthBytes**: The maximum number of bytes to copy from pvTxData into the stream buffer.
- **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken**: It is possible that a stream buffer will have a task blocked on it waiting for data. Calling `xStreamBufferSendFromISR()` can make data available, and so cause a task that was waiting for data to leave the Blocked state. If calling `xStreamBufferSendFromISR()` causes a task to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then, internally, `xStreamBufferSendFromISR()` will set `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken` to `pdTRUE`. If `xStreamBufferSendFromISR()` sets this value to `pdTRUE`, then normally a context switch should be performed before the interrupt is exited. This will ensure that the interrupt returns directly to the highest priority Ready state task. `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken` should be set to `pdFALSE` before it is passed into the function. See the example code below for an example.

```c
size_t xStreamBufferReceive(StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer, void *pvRxData, size_t xBufferLengthBytes, TickType_t xTicksToWait)
```

Receives bytes from a stream buffer.

***NOTE***: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as `xStreamBufferSend()`) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as `xStreamBufferReceive()`) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use `xStreamBufferReceive()` to read from a stream buffer from a task. Use `xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR()` to read from a stream buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

**Example use:**

```c
void vAFunction( StreamBuffer_t xStreamBuffer )
{
    uint8_t ucRxData[20];
    size_t xReceivedBytes;
    const TickType_t xBlockTime = pdMS_TO_TICKS(20);

    // Receive up to another sizeof( ucRxData ) bytes from the stream buffer.
    // Wait in the Blocked state (so not using any CPU processing time) for a
    // maximum of 100ms for the full sizeof( ucRxData ) number of bytes to be
    // available.
    xReceivedBytes = xStreamBufferReceive( xStreamBuffer,
            ( void * ) ucRxData,
            sizeof( ucRxData ),
            xBlockTime );

    if( xReceivedBytes > 0 )
    {
        // A ucRxData contains another xRecievedBytes bytes of data, which can
        // be processed here....
    }
}
```

**Return** The number of bytes actually read from the stream buffer, which will be less than `xBufferLengthBytes` if the call to `xStreamBufferReceive()` timed out before `xBufferLengthBytes` were available.

**Parameters**
- **xStreamBuffer**: The handle of the stream buffer from which bytes are to be received.
- **pvRxData**: A pointer to the buffer into which the received bytes will be copied.
Chapter 2. API

- **xBufferLengthBytes**: The length of the buffer pointed to by the pvRxData parameter. This sets the maximum number of bytes to receive in one call. xStreamBufferReceive will return as many bytes as possible up to a maximum set by xBufferLengthBytes.

- **xTicksToWait**: The maximum amount of time the task should remain in the Blocked state to wait for data to become available if the stream buffer is empty. xStreamBufferReceive() will return immediately if xTicksToWait is zero. The block time is specified in tick periods, so the absolute time it represents is dependent on the tick frequency. The macro pdMS_TO_TICKS() can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds into a time specified in ticks. Setting xTicksToWait to portMAX_DELAY will cause the task to wait indefinitely (without timing out), provided INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h. A task does not use any CPU time when it is in the Blocked state.

```
size_t xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR(StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer, void *pvRxData, size_t xBufferLengthBytes, BaseType_t *const pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)
```

An interrupt safe version of the API function that receives bytes from a stream buffer.

Use xStreamBufferReceive() to read bytes from a stream buffer from a task. Use xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() to read bytes from a stream buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```c
// A stream buffer that has already been created.
StreamBuffer_t xStreamBuffer;

void vAnInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
    uint8_t ucRxData[ 20 ];
    size_t xReceivedBytes;
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE; // Initialised to pdFALSE.

    // Receive the next stream from the stream buffer.
    xReceivedBytes = xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR( xStreamBuffer,
                                                 ( void * ) ucRxData,
                                                 sizeof( ucRxData ),
                                                 &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

    if( xReceivedBytes > 0 )
    {
        // ucRxData contains xReceivedBytes read from the stream buffer.
        // Process the stream here....
    }

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdTRUE inside
    // xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() then a task that has a priority above the
    // priority of the currently executing task was unblocked and a context
    // switch should be performed to ensure the ISR returns to the unblocked
    // task. In most FreeRTOS ports this is done by simply passing
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken into taskYIELD_FROM_ISR(), which will test the
    // variables value, and perform the context switch if necessary. Check the
    // documentation for the port in use for port specific instructions.
    taskYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
}
```

**Return**  The number of bytes read from the stream buffer, if any.

**Parameters**

- **xStreamBuffer**: The handle of the stream buffer from which a stream is being received.
- **pvRxData**: A pointer to the buffer into which the received bytes are copied.
- **xBufferLengthBytes**: The length of the buffer pointed to by the pvRxData parameter. This sets the maximum number of bytes to receive in one call. xStreamBufferReceive will return as many bytes as possible up to a maximum set by xBufferLengthBytes.
- **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken**: It is possible that a stream buffer will have a task blocked on it waiting for space to become available. Calling xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() can make
space available, and so cause a task that is waiting for space to leave the Blocked state. If calling xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() causes a task to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then, internally, xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE. If xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE, then normally a context switch should be performed before the interrupt is exited. That will ensure the interrupt returns directly to the highest priority Ready state task. *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be set to pdFALSE before it is passed into the function. See the code example below for an example.

void vStreamBufferDelete (StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer)

  Deletes a stream buffer that was previously created using a call to xStreamBufferCreate() or xStreamBufferCreateStatic(). If the stream buffer was created using dynamic memory (that is, by xStreamBufferCreate()), then the allocated memory is freed.

  A stream buffer handle must not be used after the stream buffer has been deleted.

  Parameters
  • xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer to be deleted.

BaseType_t xStreamBufferIsFull (StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer)

  Queries a stream buffer to see if it is full. A stream buffer is full if it does not have any free space, and therefore cannot accept any more data.

  Return If the stream buffer is full then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

  Parameters
  • xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer being queried.

BaseType_t xStreamBufferIsEmpty (StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer)

  Queries a stream buffer to see if it is empty. A stream buffer is empty if it does not contain any data.

  Return If the stream buffer is empty then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

  Parameters
  • xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer being queried.

BaseType_t xStreamBufferReset (StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer)

  Resets a stream buffer to its initial, empty, state. Any data that was in the stream buffer is discarded. A stream buffer can only be reset if there are no tasks blocked waiting to either send to or receive from the stream buffer.

  Return If the stream buffer is reset then pdPASS is returned. If there was a task blocked waiting to send to or read from the stream buffer then the stream buffer is not reset and pdFAIL is returned.

  Parameters
  • xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer being reset.

d size_t xStreamBufferSpacesAvailable (StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer)

  Queries a stream buffer to see how much free space it contains, which is equal to the amount of data that can be sent to the stream buffer before it is full.

  Return The number of bytes that can be written to the stream buffer before the stream buffer would be full.

  Parameters
  • xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer being queried.

d size_t xStreamBufferBytesAvailable (StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer)

  Queries a stream buffer to see how much data it contains, which is equal to the number of bytes that can be read from the stream buffer before the stream buffer would be empty.

  Return The number of bytes that can be read from the stream buffer before the stream buffer would be empty.

  Parameters
  • xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer being queried.

BaseType_t xStreamBufferSetTriggerLevel (StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer, size_t xTriggerLevel)

  A stream buffer’s trigger level is the number of bytes that must be in the stream buffer before a task that is blocked on the stream buffer to wait for data is moved out of the blocked state. For example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 1 then the task will be unblocked when a single byte is written to the buffer or the task’s block time expires. As another example, if a task is blocked on a
read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 10 then the task will not be unblocked until the stream buffer contains at least 10 bytes or the task’s block time expires. If a reading task’s block time expires before the trigger level is reached then the task will still receive however many bytes are actually available. Setting a trigger level of 0 will result in a trigger level of 1 being used. It is not valid to specify a trigger level that is greater than the buffer size.

A trigger level is set when the stream buffer is created, and can be modified using xStreamBufferSetTriggerLevel().

**Return** If xTriggerLevel was less than or equal to the stream buffer’s length then the trigger level will be updated and pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

**Parameters**
- xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer being updated.
- xTriggerLevel: The new trigger level for the stream buffer.

BaseType_t xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR(StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer, BaseType_t* pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

For advanced users only.

The sbSEND_COMPLETED() macro is called from within the FreeRTOS APIs when data is sent to a message buffer or stream buffer. If there was a task that was blocked on the message or stream buffer waiting for data to arrive then the sbSEND_COMPLETED() macro sends a notification to the task to remove it from the Blocked state. xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR() does the same thing. It is provided to enable application writers to implement their own version of sbSEND_COMPLETED(), and MUST NOT BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME.

See the example implemented in FreeRTOS/Demo/Minimal/MessageBufferAMP.c for additional information.

**Return** If a task was removed from the Blocked state then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

**Parameters**
- xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer to which data was written.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be initialised to pdFALSE before it is passed into xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR(). If calling xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR() removes a task from the Blocked state, and the task has a priority above the priority of the currently running task, then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE indicating that a context switch should be performed before exiting the ISR.

BaseType_t xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR(StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer, BaseType_t *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

For advanced users only.

The sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED() macro is called from within the FreeRTOS APIs when data is read out of a message buffer or stream buffer. If there was a task that was blocked on the message or stream buffer waiting for data to arrive then the sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED() macro sends a notification to the task to remove it from the Blocked state. xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR() does the same thing. It is provided to enable application writers to implement their own version of sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED(), and MUST NOT BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME.

See the example implemented in FreeRTOS/Demo/Minimal/MessageBufferAMP.c for additional information.

**Return** If a task was removed from the Blocked state then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

**Parameters**
- xStreamBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer from which data was read.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be initialised to pdFALSE before it is passed into xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR(). If calling xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR() removes a task from the Blocked state, and the task has a priority above the priority of the currently running task, then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE indicating that a context switch should be performed before exiting the ISR.

**Macros**
Chapter 2. API

**xStreamBufferCreate** (xBufferSizeBytes, xTriggerLevelBytes)

Creates a new stream buffer using dynamically allocated memory. See xStreamBufferCreateStatic() for a version that uses statically allocated memory (memory that is allocated at compile time).

configSUPPORT_DYNAMIC_ALLOCATION must be set to 1 or left undefined in FreeRTOSConfig.h for xStreamBufferCreate() to be available.

Example use:

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
    StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer;
    const size_t xStreamBufferSizeBytes = 100, xTriggerLevel = 10;

    // Create a stream buffer that can hold 100 bytes. The memory used to hold
    // both the stream buffer structure and the data in the stream buffer is
    // allocated dynamically.
    xStreamBuffer = xStreamBufferCreate( xStreamBufferSizeBytes, xTriggerLevel );

    if( xStreamBuffer == NULL )
    {
        // There was not enough heap memory space available to create the
        // stream buffer.
    }
    else
    {
        // The stream buffer was created successfully and can now be used.
    }
}
```

**Return** If NULL is returned, then the stream buffer cannot be created because there is insufficient heap memory available for FreeRTOS to allocate the stream buffer data structures and storage area. A non-NULL value being returned indicates that the stream buffer has been created successfully - the returned value should be stored as the handle to the created stream buffer.

**Parameters**

- **xBufferSizeBytes**: The total number of bytes the stream buffer will be able to hold at any one time.
- **xTriggerLevelBytes**: The number of bytes that must be in the stream buffer before a task that is blocked on the stream buffer to wait for data is moved out of the blocked state. For example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 1 then the task will be unblocked when a single byte is written to the buffer or the task’s block time expires. As another example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 10 then the task will not be unblocked until the stream buffer contains at least 10 bytes or the task’s block time expires. If a reading task’s block time expires before the trigger level is reached then the task will still receive however many bytes are actually available. Setting a trigger level of 0 will result in a trigger level of 1 being used. It is not valid to specify a trigger level that is greater than the buffer size.

**xStreamBufferCreateStatic** (xBufferSizeBytes, xTriggerLevelBytes, pucStreamBufferStorageArea, pxStaticStreamBuffer)

Creates a new stream buffer using statically allocated memory. See xStreamBufferCreate() for a version that uses dynamically allocated memory.

configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for xStreamBufferCreateStatic() to be available.

Example use:

```c
// Used to dimension the array used to hold the streams. The available space
// will actually be one less than this, so 999.
#define STORAGE_SIZE_BYTES 1000

// Defines the memory that will actually hold the streams within the stream
```
void MyFunction( void )
{
    StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer;
    const size_t xTriggerLevel = 1;

    xStreamBuffer = xStreamBufferCreateStatic( sizeof( ucBufferStorage ),
                                              xTriggerLevel,
                                              ucBufferStorage,
                                              &xStreamBufferStruct );

    // As neither the pucStreamBufferStorageArea or pxStaticStreamBuffer
    // parameters were NULL, xStreamBuffer will not be NULL, and can be used to
    // reference the created stream buffer in other stream buffer API calls.
    // Other code that uses the stream buffer can go here.
}

Return If the stream buffer is created successfully then a handle to the created stream buffer is returned. If
either pucStreamBufferStorageArea or pxStaticstreamBuffer are NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters
- xBufferSizeBytes: The size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by the pucStreamBufferStor-
ageArea parameter.
- xTriggerLevelBytes: The number of bytes that must be in the stream buffer before a task
  that is blocked on the stream buffer to wait for data is moved out of the blocked state. For example,
  if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 1 then the task
  will be unblocked when a single byte is written to the buffer or the task’s block time expires. As
  another example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of
  10 then the task will not be unblocked until the stream buffer contains at least 10 bytes or the task’s
  block time expires. If a reading task’s block time expires before the trigger level is reached then
  the task will still receive however many bytes are actually available. Setting a trigger level of 0 will
  result in a trigger level of 1 being used. It is not valid to specify a trigger level that is greater than
  the buffer size.
- pucStreamBufferStorageArea: Must point to a uint8_t array that is at least xBufferSize-
  Bytes + 1 big. This is the array to which streams are copied when they are written to the stream
  buffer.
- pxStaticStreamBuffer: Must point to a variable of type StaticStreamBuffer_t, which will
  be used to hold the stream buffer’s data structure.

Type Definitions
typedef struct StreamBufferDef_t* StreamBufferHandle_t

Message Buffer API

Header File
- components/freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/include/freertos/message_buffer.h

Macros
xMessageBufferCreate(xBufferSizeBytes)
    Creates a new message buffer using dynamically allocated memory. See xMessageBufferCreateStatic() for a
    version that uses statically allocated memory (memory that is allocated at compile time).
configSUPPORT_DYNAMIC_ALLOCATION must be set to 1 or left undefined in FreeRTOSConfig.h for xMessageBufferCreate() to be available.

Example use:

```c
void vAFunction( void )
{
    MessageBufferHandle_t xMessageBuffer;
    const size_t xMessageBufferSizeBytes = 100;

    // Create a message buffer that can hold 100 bytes. The memory used to hold
    // both the message buffer structure and the messages themselves is allocated
    // dynamically. Each message added to the buffer consumes an additional 4
    // bytes which are used to hold the length of the message.
    xMessageBuffer = xMessageBufferCreate( xMessageBufferSizeBytes );

    if( xMessageBuffer == NULL )
    {
        // There was not enough heap memory space available to create the
        // message buffer.
    }
    else
    {
        // The message buffer was created successfully and can now be used.
    }
}
```

**Return** If NULL is returned, then the message buffer cannot be created because there is insufficient heap memory available for FreeRTOS to allocate the message buffer data structures and storage area. A non-NULL value being returned indicates that the message buffer has been created successfully - the returned value should be stored as the handle to the created message buffer.

**Parameters**
- `xBufferSizeBytes`: The total number of bytes (not messages) the message buffer will be able to hold at any one time. When a message is written to the buffer, an additional sizeof(size_t) bytes are also written to store the message’s length. sizeof(size_t) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so on most 32-bit architectures a 10 byte message will take up 14 bytes of message buffer space.

**xMessageBufferCreateStatic** (`xBufferSizeBytes, pucMessageBufferStorageArea, pxStaticMessageBuffer`) Creates a new message buffer using statically allocated memory. See xMessageBufferCreate() for a version that uses dynamically allocated memory.

Example use:

```c
#define STORAGE_SIZE_BYTES 1000

// Used to dimension the array used to hold the messages. The available space
// will actually be one less than this, so 999.
#define STORAGE_SIZE_BYTES 1000

// Defines the memory that will actually hold the messages within the message
// buffer.
static uint8_t ucStorageBuffer[ STORAGE_SIZE_BYTES ];

// The variable used to hold the message buffer structure.
StaticMessageBuffer_t xMessageBufferStruct;

void MyFunction( void )
{
    MessageBufferHandle_t xMessageBuffer;

    xMessageBuffer = xMessageBufferCreateStatic( sizeof( ucBufferStorage ),
                                                ucBufferStorage,
                                                &xMessageBufferStruct );
```

(下頁續接)
As neither the pucMessageBufferStorageArea or pxStaticMessageBuffer parameters were NULL, xMessageBuffer will not be NULL, and can be used to reference the created message buffer in other message buffer API calls.

// Other code that uses the message buffer can go here.

Return If the message buffer is created successfully then a handle to the created message buffer is returned. If either pucMessageBufferStorageArea or pxStaticMessageBuffer are NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- **xBufferSizeBytes**: The size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by the pucMessageBufferStorageArea parameter. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional sizeof( size_t ) bytes are also written to store the message’s length. sizeof( size_t ) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so on most 32-bit architecture a 10 byte message will take up 14 bytes of message buffer space. The maximum number of bytes that can be stored in the message buffer is actually (xBufferSizeBytes - 1).
- **pucMessageBufferStorageArea**: Must point to a uint8_t array that is at least xBufferSizeBytes + 1 big. This is the array to which messages are copied when they are written to the message buffer.
- **pxStaticMessageBuffer**: Must point to a variable of type StaticMessageBuffer_t, which will be used to hold the message buffer’s data structure.

### xMessageBufferSend(xMessageBuffer, pvTxData, xDataLengthBytes, xTicksToWait)

Sends a discrete message to the message buffer. The message can be any length that fits within the buffer’s free space, and is copied into the buffer.

***NOTE***: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xMessageBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xMessageBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xMessageBufferSend() to write to a message buffer from a task. Use xMessageBufferSendFromISR() to write to a message buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```c
void vAFunction( MessageBufferHandle_t xMessageBuffer )
{
    size_t xBytesSent;
    uint8_t ucArrayToSend[] = { 0, 1, 2, 3 };
    char *pcStringToSend = "String to send";
    const TickType_t x100ms = pdMS_TO_TICKS( 100 );

    // Send an array to the message buffer, blocking for a maximum of 100ms to wait for enough space to be available in the message buffer.
    xBytesSent = xMessageBufferSend( xMessageBuffer, ( void * ) ucArrayToSend, sizeof( ucArrayToSend ), x100ms );

    if( xBytesSent != sizeof( ucArrayToSend ) )
    {
        // The call to xMessageBufferSend() times out before there was enough space in the buffer for the data to be written.
    }

    // Send the string to the message buffer. Return immediately if there is
```
Return The number of bytes written to the message buffer. If the call to xMessageBufferSend() times out before there was enough space to write the message into the message buffer then zero is returned. If the call did not time out then xDataLengthBytes is returned.

Parameters
- **xMessageBuffer**: The handle of the message buffer to which a message is being sent.
- **pvTxData**: A pointer to the message that is to be copied into the message buffer.
- **xDataLengthBytes**: The length of the message. That is, the number of bytes to copy from pvTxData into the message buffer. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional sizeof(size_t) bytes are also written to store the message’s length. sizeof(size_t) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so on most 32-bit architecture setting xDataLengthBytes to 20 will reduce the free space in the message buffer by 24 bytes (20 bytes of message data and 4 bytes to hold the message length).
- **xTicksToWait**: The maximum amount of time the calling task should remain in the Blocked state to wait for enough space to become available in the message buffer, should the message buffer have insufficient space when xMessageBufferSend() is called. The calling task will never block if xTicksToWait is zero. The block time is specified in tick periods, so the absolute time it represents is dependent on the tick frequency. The macro pdMS_TO_TICKS() can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds into a time specified in ticks. Setting xTicksToWait to portMAX_DELAY will cause the task to wait indefinitely (without timing out), provided INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h. Tasks do not use any CPU time when they are in the Blocked state.

xMessageBufferSendFromISR(xMessageBuffer, pvTxData, xDataLengthBytes, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

Interrupt safe version of the API function that sends a discrete message to the message buffer. The message can be any length that fits within the buffer’s free space, and is copied into the buffer.

***NOTE***: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xMessageBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xMessageBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xMessageBufferSend() to write to a message buffer from a task. Use xMessageBufferSendFromISR() to write to a message buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```c
// A message buffer that has already been created.
MessageBufferHandle_t xMessageBuffer;

void vAnInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
    size_t xBytesSent;
    char *pcStringToSend = "String to send";
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE; // Initialised to pdFALSE.
```
// Attempt to send the string to the message buffer.
// xBytesSent = xMessageBufferSendFromISR( xMessageBuffer,
//     ( void * ) pcStringToSend,
//     strlen( pcStringToSend ),
//     &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

if( xBytesSent != strlen( pcStringToSend ) )
{
    // The string could not be added to the message buffer because there was
    // not enough free space in the buffer.
}

// If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdTRUE inside
// xMessageBufferSendFromISR() then a task that has a priority above the
// priority of the currently executing task was unblocked and a context
// switch should be performed to ensure the ISR returns to the unblocked
// task. In most FreeRTOS ports this is done by simply passing
// xHigherPriorityTaskWoken into portYIELD_FROM_ISR(), which will test the
// variables value, and perform the context switch if necessary. Check the
// documentation for the port in use for port specific instructions.
portYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

Return The number of bytes actually written to the message buffer. If the message buffer didn’t have enough
free space for the message to be stored then 0 is returned, otherwise xDataLengthBytes is returned.

Parameters

- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the message buffer to which a message is being sent.
- pvTxData: A pointer to the message that is to be copied into the message buffer.
- xDataLengthBytes: The length of the message. That is, the number of bytes to copy from
  pvTxData into the message buffer. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional
  sizeof( size_t ) bytes are also written to store the message’s length. sizeof( size_t ) is typically 4
  bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so on most 32-bit architecture setting xDataLengthBytes to 20 will
  reduce the free space in the message buffer by 24 bytes (20 bytes of message data and 4 bytes to
  be hold the message length).
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: It is possible that a message buffer will have a task blocked
  on it waiting for data. Calling xMessageBufferSendFromISR() can make data available, and so cause
  a task that was waiting for data to leave the Blocked state. If calling xMessageBufferSendFromISR()
  causes a task to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently
  executing task (the task that was interrupted), then, internally, xMessageBufferSendFromISR() will
  set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE. If xMessageBufferSendFromISR() sets this value to
  pdTRUE, then normally a context switch should be performed before the interrupt is exited. This
  will ensure that the interrupt returns directly to the highest priority Ready state task. *pxHigher-
  PriorityTaskWoken should be set to pdFALSE before it is passed into the function. See the code
  example below for an example.

xMessageBufferReceive (xMessageBuffer, pvRxData, xBufferSizeBytes, xTicksToWait)
Receives a discrete message from a message buffer. Messages can be of variable length and are copied out of
the buffer.

***NOTE***: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message
buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task
or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the
buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other
FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to
be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as
xMessageBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be
multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as
xMessageBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.
Use `xMessageBufferReceive()` to read from a message buffer from a task. Use `xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR()` to read from a message buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```c
void vAFunction( MessageBuffer_t xMessageBuffer )
{
    uint8_t ucRxData[ 20 ];
    size_t xReceivedBytes;
    const TickType_t xBlockTime = pdMS_TO_TICKS( 20 );

    // Receive the next message from the message buffer. Wait in the Blocked
    // state (so not using any CPU processing time) for a maximum of 100ms for
    // a message to become available.
    xReceivedBytes = xMessageBufferReceive( xMessageBuffer,
                                           ( void * ) ucRxData,
                                           sizeof( ucRxData ),
                                           xBlockTime );

    if( xReceivedBytes > 0 )
    {
        // A ucRxData contains a message that is xReceivedBytes long. Process
        // the message here....
    }
}
```

**Return** The length, in bytes, of the message read from the message buffer, if any. If `xMessageBufferReceive()` times out before a message became available then zero is returned. If the length of the message is greater than `xBufferLengthBytes` then the message will be left in the message buffer and zero is returned.

**Parameters**
- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer from which a message is being received.
- `pvRxData`: A pointer to the buffer into which the received message is to be copied.
- `xBufferLengthBytes`: The length of the buffer pointed to by the `pvRxData` parameter. This sets the maximum length of the message that can be received. If `xBufferLengthBytes` is too small to hold the next message then the message will be left in the message buffer and 0 will be returned.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should remain in the Blocked state to wait for a message, should the message buffer be empty. `xMessageBufferReceive()` will return immediately if `xTicksToWait` is zero and the message buffer is empty. The block time is specified in tick periods, so the absolute time it represents is dependent on the tick frequency. The macro `pdMS_TO_TICKS()` can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds into a time specified in ticks. Setting `xTicksToWait` to `portMAX_DELAY` will cause the task to wait indefinitely (without timing out), provided `INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend` is set to 1 in `FreeRTOSConfig.h`. Tasks do not use any CPU time when they are in the Blocked state.

`xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR` (**xMessageBuffer**, `pvRxData`, `xBufferLengthBytes`, `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`)

An interrupt safe version of the API function that receives a discrete message from a message buffer. Messages can be of variable length and are copied out of the buffer.

***NOTE***: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as `xMessageBufferSend()` inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as `xMessageBufferRead()` inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use `xMessageBufferReceive()` to read from a message buffer from a task. Use `xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR()` to read from a message buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:
// A message buffer that has already been created.
MessageBuffer_t xMessageBuffer;

void vAnInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
    uint8_t ucRxData[20];
    size_t xReceivedBytes;
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE; // Initialised to pdFALSE.

    // Receive the next message from the message buffer.
    xReceivedBytes = xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR( xMessageBuffer,
        { void * } ucRxData,
        sizeof( ucRxData ),
        &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken);

    if( xReceivedBytes > 0 )
    {
        // A ucRxData contains a message that is xReceivedBytes long. Process
        // the message here....
    }

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdTRUE inside
    // xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() then a task that has a priority above the
    // priority of the currently executing task was unblocked and a context
    // switch should be performed to ensure the ISR returns to the unblocked
    // task. In most FreeRTOS ports this is done by simply passing
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken into portYIELD_FROM_ISR(), which will test the
    // variables value, and perform the context switch if necessary. Check the
    // documentation for the port in use for port specific instructions.
    portYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
}

Return  The length, in bytes, of the message read from the message buffer, if any.

Parameters

- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the message buffer from which a message is being received.
- pvRxData: A pointer to the buffer into which the received message is to be copied.
- xBufferLengthBytes: The length of the buffer pointed to by the pvRxData parameter. This
  sets the maximum length of the message that can be received. If xBufferLengthBytes is too small
  to hold the next message then the message will be left in the message buffer and 0 will be returned.
- pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: It is possible that a message buffer will have a task blocked
  on it waiting for space to become available. Calling xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() can make
  space available, and so cause a task that is waiting for space to leave the Blocked state. If calling
  xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() causes a task to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked
  task has a priority higher than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then,
  internally, xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE.
  If xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE, then normally a context switch
  should be performed before the interrupt is exited. That will ensure the interrupt returns directly
  to the highest priority Ready state task. *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be set to pdFALSE
  before it is passed into the function. See the code example below for an example.

vMessageBufferDelete(xMessageBuffer)

Deletes a message buffer that was previously created using a call to xMessageBufferCreate() or xMessage-
BufferCreateStatic(). If the message buffer was created using dynamic memory (that is, by xMessageBuffer-
Create()), then the allocated memory is freed.

A message buffer handle must not be used after the message buffer has been deleted.

Parameters

- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the message buffer to be deleted.

xMessageBufferIsFull(xMessageBuffer)

Tests to see if a message buffer is full. A message buffer is full if it cannot accept any more messages, of any
size, until space is made available by a message being removed from the message buffer.

**Return** If the message buffer referenced by xMessageBuffer is full then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

**Parameters**
- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the message buffer being queried.

**xMessageBufferIsEmpty** (xMessageBuffer)
Tests to see if a message buffer is empty (does not contain any messages).

**Return** If the message buffer referenced by xMessageBuffer is empty then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

**Parameters**
- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the message buffer being queried.

**xMessageBufferReset** (xMessageBuffer)
Resets a message buffer to its initial empty state, discarding any message it contained.

A message buffer can only be reset if there are no tasks blocked on it.

**Return** If the message buffer was reset then pdPASS is returned. If the message buffer could not be reset because either there was a task blocked on the message queue to wait for space to become available, or to wait for a a message to be available, then pdFAIL is returned.

**Parameters**
- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the message buffer being reset.

**xMessageBufferSpaceAvailable** (xMessageBuffer)
Returns the number of bytes of free space in the message buffer.

**Return** The number of bytes that can be written to the message buffer before the message buffer would be full. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional sizeof( size_t ) bytes are also written to store the message’s length. sizeof( size_t ) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so if xMessageBufferSpacesAvailable() returns 10, then the size of the largest message that can be written to the message buffer is 6 bytes.

**Parameters**
- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the message buffer being queried.

**xMessageBufferSpacesAvailable** (xMessageBuffer)
**xMessageBufferNextLengthBytes** (xMessageBuffer)
Returns the length (in bytes) of the next message in a message buffer. Useful if xMessageBufferReceive() returned 0 because the size of the buffer passed into xMessageBufferReceive() was too small to hold the next message.

**Return** The length (in bytes) of the next message in the message buffer, or 0 if the message buffer is empty.

**Parameters**
- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the message buffer being queried.

**xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR** (xMessageBuffer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)
For advanced users only.

The sbSEND_COMPLETED() macro is called from within the FreeRTOS APIs when data is sent to a message buffer or stream buffer. If there was a task that was blocked on the message or stream buffer waiting for data to arrive then the sbSEND_COMPLETED() macro sends a notification to the task to remove it from the Blocked state. xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR() does the same thing. It is provided to enable application writers to implement their own version of sbSEND_COMPLETED(), and MUST NOT BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME.

See the example implemented in FreeRTOS/Demo/Minimal/MessageBufferAMP.c for additional information.

**Return** If a task was removed from the Blocked state then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

**Parameters**
- xMessageBuffer: The handle of the stream buffer to which data was written.
pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be initialised to pdFALSE before it is passed into xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR(). If calling xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR() removes a task from the Blocked state, and the task has a priority above the priority of the currently running task, then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE indicating that a context switch should be performed before exiting the ISR.

**xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR** (xMessageBuffer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

For advanced users only.

The sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED() macro is called from within the FreeRTOS APIs when data is read out of a message buffer or stream buffer. If there was a task that was blocked on the message or stream buffer waiting for data to arrive then the sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED() macro sends a notification to the task to remove it from the Blocked state. xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR() does the same thing. It is provided to enable application writers to implement their own version of sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED(), and MUST NOT BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME.

See the example implemented in FreeRTOS/Demo/Minimal/MessageBufferAMP.c for additional information.

**Return** If a task was removed from the Blocked state then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

**Parameters**

- **xMessageBuffer**: The handle of the stream buffer from which data was read.
- **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken**: *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be initialised to pdFALSE before it is passed into xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR(). If calling xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR() removes a task from the Blocked state, and the task has a priority above the priority of the currently running task, then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE indicating that a context switch should be performed before exiting the ISR.

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef void *MessageBufferHandle_t
```

Type by which message buffers are referenced. For example, a call to xMessageBufferCreate() returns a MessageBufferHandle_t variable that can then be used as a parameter to xMessageBufferSend(), xMessageBufferReceive(), etc.

### 2.7.10 FreeRTOS Additions

**Overview**

ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is based on the Xtensa port of FreeRTOS v10.4.3 with significant modifications for SMP compatibility (see [ESP-IDF FreeRTOS SMP Changes](#)). However, various features specific to ESP-IDF FreeRTOS have been added. The features are as follows:

**Ring Buffers**: Ring buffers were added to provide a form of buffer that could accept entries of arbitrary lengths.

**Hooks**: ESP-IDF FreeRTOS hooks provides support for registering extra Idle and Tick hooks at run time. Moreover, the hooks can be asymmetric amongst both CPUs.

**Component Specific Properties**: Currently added only one component specific property `ORIG_INCLUDE_PATH`.

**Ring Buffers**

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS ring buffer is a strictly FIFO buffer that supports arbitrarily sized items. Ring buffers are a more memory efficient alternative to FreeRTOS queues in situations where the size of items is variable. The capacity of a ring buffer is not measured by the number of items it can store, but rather by the amount of memory used for storing items. The ring buffer provides API to send an item, or to allocate space for an item in the ring buffer to be filled manually by the user. For efficiency reasons, **items are always retrieved from the ring buffer by reference**. As a result, all retrieved items must also be returned to the ring buffer by using `vRingbufferReturnItem()` or `vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR()`, in order for them to be removed from the ring buffer completely. The ring buffers are split into the three following types:
No-Split buffers will guarantee that an item is stored in contiguous memory and will not attempt to split an item under any circumstances. Use No-Split buffers when items must occupy contiguous memory. Only this buffer type allows you to get the data item address and write to the item by yourself. Refer the documentation of the functions `xRingbufferSendAcquire()` and `xRingbufferSendComplete()` for more details.

Allow-Split buffers will allow an item to be split in two parts when wrapping around the end of the buffer if there is enough space at the tail and the head of the buffer combined to store the item. Allow-Split buffers are more memory efficient than No-Split buffers but can return an item in two parts when retrieving.

Byte buffers do not store data as separate items. All data is stored as a sequence of bytes, and any number of bytes can be sent or retrieved each time. Use byte buffers when separate items do not need to be maintained (e.g. a byte stream).

注解：No-Split buffers and Allow-Split buffers will always store items at 32-bit aligned addresses. Therefore, when retrieving an item, the item pointer is guaranteed to be 32-bit aligned. This is useful especially when you need to send some data to the DMA.

注解：Each item stored in No-Split or Allow-Split buffers will **require an additional 8 bytes for a header**. Item sizes will also be rounded up to a 32-bit aligned size (multiple of 4 bytes), however the true item size is recorded within the header. The sizes of No-Split and Allow-Split buffers will also be rounded up when created.

Usage

The following example demonstrates the usage of `xRingbufferCreate()` and `xRingbufferSend()` to create a ring buffer and then send an item to it.

```c
#include "freertos/ringbuf.h"
static char tx_item[] = "test_item";
...

//Create ring buffer
RingbufHandle_t buf_handle;
buf_handle = xRingbufferCreate(1028, RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT);
if (buf_handle == NULL) {
    printf("Failed to create ring buffer\n");
}

//Send an item
UBaseType_t res = xRingbufferSend(buf_handle, tx_item, sizeof(tx_item), pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));
if (res != pdTRUE) {
    printf("Failed to send item\n");
}
```

The following example demonstrates the usage of `xRingbufferSendAcquire()` and `xRingbufferSendComplete()` instead of `xRingbufferSend()` to acquire memory on the ring buffer (of type RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT) and then send an item to it. This adds one more step, but allows getting the address of the memory to write to, and writing to the memory yourself.

```c
#include "freertos/ringbuf.h"
#include "soc/lldesc.h"

typedef struct {
    lldesc_t dma_desc;
    uint8_t buf[1];
} dma_item_t;

#define DMA_ITEM_SIZE(N) (sizeof(lldesc_t)+((N)+3)&(~3))
```
... //Retrieve space for DMA descriptor and corresponding data buffer //This has to be done with SendAcquire, or the address may be different when we copy
dma_item_t item;
UBaseType_t res = xRingbufferSendAcquire(buf_handle,
    &item, DMA_ITEM_SIZE(buffer_size), pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));
if (res != pdTRUE) {
    printf("Failed to acquire memory for item\n");
} item->dma_desc = (lldesc_t) {
    .size = buffer_size,
    .length = buffer_size,
    .eof = 0,
    .owner = 1,
    .buf = &item->buf,
}; //Actually send to the ring buffer for consumer to use
res = xRingbufferSendComplete(buf_handle, &item);
if (res != pdTRUE) {
    printf("Failed to send item\n");
}

The following example demonstrates retrieving and returning an item from a No-Split ring buffer using xRingbufferReceive() and vRingbufferReturnItem()

... //Receive an item from no-split ring buffer
size_t item_size;
char *item = (char *)xRingbufferReceive(buf_handle, &item_size, pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));

//Check received item
if (item != NULL) {
    //Print item
    for (int i = 0; i < item_size; i++) {
        printf("%c", item[i]);
    }
    printf("\n");
    //Return Item
    vRingbufferReturnItem(buf_handle, (void *)item);
} else {
    //Failed to receive item
    printf("Failed to receive item\n");
}

The following example demonstrates retrieving and returning an item from an Allow-Split ring buffer using xRingbufferReceiveSplit() and vRingbufferReturnItem()

... //Receive an item from allow-split ring buffer
size_t item_size1, item_size2;
char *item1, *item2;
BaseType_t ret = xRingbufferReceiveSplit(buf_handle, (void **)item1, (void **)item2, &item_size1, &item_size2, pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));

//Check received item
if (ret == pdTRUE && item1 != NULL) {
    for (int i = 0; i < item_size1; i++) {
        printf("%c", item1[i]);
    }
    vRingbufferReturnItem(buf_handle, (void *)item1);
    //Check if item was split
    if (item2 != NULL) {
        for (int i = 0; i < item_size2; i++) {
            printf("%c", item2[i]);
        }
        vRingbufferReturnItem(buf_handle, (void *)item2);
    }
    printf("\n");
} else {
    //Failed to receive item
    printf("Failed to receive item\n");
}

The following example demonstrates retrieving and returning an item from a byte buffer using `xRingbufferReceiveUpTo()` and `vRingbufferReturnItem()`...
Chapter 2. API 参考

29: Sending items to No-Split or Allow-Split ring buffers

Byte buffers treat data as a sequence of bytes and does not incur any overhead (no headers). As a result, all data sent to a byte buffer is merged into a single item.

Referring to the diagram above, the 18, 3, and 27 byte items are sequentially written to the byte buffer and merged into a single item of 48 bytes.

Using SendAcquire and SendComplete Items in No-Split buffers are acquired (by SendAcquire) in strict FIFO order and must be sent to the buffer by SendComplete for the data to be accessible by the consumer. Multiple items can be sent or acquired without calling SendComplete, and the items do not necessarily need to be completed in the order they were acquired. However, the receiving of data items must occur in FIFO order, therefore not calling SendComplete for the earliest acquired item will prevent the subsequent items from being received.

The following diagrams illustrate what will happen when SendAcquire and SendComplete don’t happen in the same order. At the beginning, there is already a data item of 16 bytes sent to the ring buffer. Then SendAcquire is called to acquire space of 20, 8, 24 bytes on the ring buffer.

30: Sending items to byte buffers

After that, we fill (use) the buffers, and send them to the ring buffer by SendComplete in the order of 8, 24, 20. When 8 bytes and 24 bytes data are sent, the consumer still can only get the 16 bytes data item. Hence, if SendComplete is not called for the 20 bytes, it will not be available, nor will the data items following the 20 bytes item.

When the 20 bytes item is finally completed, all the 3 data items can be received now, in the order of 20, 8, 24 bytes,
right after the 16 bytes item existing in the buffer at the beginning.

Allow-Split buffers and byte buffers do not allow using `SendAcquire` or `SendComplete` since acquired buffers are required to be complete (not wrapped).

**Wrap around** The following diagrams illustrate the differences between No-Split, Allow-Split, and byte buffers when a sent item requires a wrap around. The diagrams assume a buffer of **128 bytes** with **56 bytes of free space** that **wraps around** and a sent item of **28 bytes**.

No-Split buffers will **only store an item in continuous free space and will not split an item under any circumstances**. When the free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to completely store the item and its header, the free space at the tail will be **marked as dummy data**. The buffer will then wrap around and store the item in the free space at the head of the buffer.

Referring to the diagram above, the 16 bytes of free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to store the 28 byte item. Therefore, the 16 bytes is marked as dummy data and the item is written to the free space at the head of the buffer instead.

Allow-Split buffers will attempt to **split the item into two parts** when the free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to store the item data and its header. Both parts of the split item will have their own headers (therefore incurring an extra 8 bytes of overhead).

Referring to the diagram above, the 16 bytes of free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to store the 28 byte item. Therefore, the item is split into two parts (8 and 20 bytes) and written as two parts to the buffer.

**Byte buffers** will **store as much data as possible into the free space at the tail of buffer**. The remaining data will then be stored in the free space at the head of the buffer. No overhead is incurred when wrapping around in byte buffers.

Referring to the diagram above, the 16 bytes of free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to completely store the 28 bytes of data. Therefore, the 16 bytes of free space is filled with data, and the remaining 12 bytes are written to the free space at the head of the buffer. The buffer now contains data in two separate continuous parts, and each continuous part will be treated as a separate item by the byte buffer.
Retrieving/Returning. The following diagrams illustrate the differences between No-Split and Allow-Split buffers as compared to byte buffers in retrieving and returning data.

Items in No-Split buffers and Allow-Split buffers are retrieved in strict FIFO order and must be returned for the occupied space to be freed. Multiple items can be retrieved before returning, and the items do not necessarily need to be returned in the order they were retrieved. However, the freeing of space must occur in FIFO order, therefore not returning the earliest retrieved item will prevent the space of subsequent items from being freed.

Referring to the diagram above, the 16, 20, and 8 byte items are retrieved in FIFO order. However, the items are not returned in the order they were retrieved. First, the 20 byte item is returned followed by the 8 byte and the 16 byte items. The space is not freed until the first item, i.e., the 16 byte item is returned.

Byte buffers do not allow multiple retrievals before returning (every retrieval must be followed by a return before another retrieval is permitted). When using `xRingbufferReceive()` or `xRingbufferReceiveFromISR()`, all continuous stored data will be retrieved. `xRingbufferReceiveUpTo()` or `xRingbufferReceiveUpToFromISR()` can be used to restrict the maximum number of bytes retrieved. Since every retrieval must be followed by a return, the space will be freed as soon as the data is returned.
Referring to the diagram above, the 38 bytes of continuous stored data at the tail of the buffer is retrieved, returned, and freed. The next call to \textit{xRingbufferReceive()} or \textit{xRingbufferReceiveFromISR()} then wraps around and does the same to the 30 bytes of continuous stored data at the head of the buffer.

**Ring Buffers with Queue Sets**  Ring buffers can be added to FreeRTOS queue sets using \textit{xRingbufferAddToQueueSetRead()} such that every time a ring buffer receives an item or data, the queue set is notified. Once added to a queue set, every attempt to retrieve an item from a ring buffer should be preceded by a call to \textit{xQueueSelectFromSet()}. To check whether the selected queue set member is the ring buffer, call \textit{xRingbufferCanRead()}.

The following example demonstrates queue set usage with ring buffers.

```c
#include "freertos/queue.h"
#include "freertos/ringbuf.h"
...

//Create ring buffer and queue set
RingbufHandle_t buf_handle = xRingbufferCreate(1028, RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT);
QueueSetHandle_t queue_set = xQueueCreateSet(3);

//Add ring buffer to queue set
if (xRingbufferAddToQueueSetRead(buf_handle, queue_set) != pdTRUE) {
    printf("Failed to add to queue set\n");
}
...

//Block on queue set
xQueueSetMemberHandle member = xQueueSelectFromSet(queue_set, pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));

//Check if member is ring buffer
if (member != NULL &\& xRingbufferCanRead(buf_handle, member) == pdTRUE) {
    //Member is ring buffer, receive item from ring buffer
    size_t item_size;
    char *item = (char *)xRingbufferReceive(buf_handle, &item_size, 0);
    //Handle item
    ...
} else {
    ...
}
```

**Ring Buffers with Static Allocation**  The \textit{xRingbufferCreateStatic()} can be used to create ring buffers with specific memory requirements (such as a ring buffer being allocated in external RAM). All blocks of memory used by a ring buffer must be manually allocated beforehand then passed to the \textit{xRingbufferCreateStatic()} to be initialized as a ring buffer. These blocks include the following:

- The ring buffer’s data structure of type \textit{StaticRingbuffer_t}
- The ring buffer’s storage area of size \textit{xBufferSize}. Note that \textit{xBufferSize} must be 32-bit aligned for No-Split and Allow-Split buffers.

The manner in which these blocks are allocated will depend on the users requirements (e.g. all blocks being statically declared, or dynamically allocated with specific capabilities such as external RAM).

注解：  当删除一个通过 \textit{xRingbufferCreateStatic()} 创建的环缓冲器时，函数 \textit{vRingbufferDelete()} 不会释放任何内存块。这必须由用户在删除环缓冲器之后手动完成。
bufferDelete() is called.

The code snippet below demonstrates a ring buffer being allocated entirely in external RAM.

```c
#include "freertos/ringbuf.h"
#include "freertos/semphr.h"
#include "esp_heap_caps.h"
#define BUFFER_SIZE 400    //32-bit aligned size
#define BUFFER_TYPE RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT
...
//Allocate ring buffer data structure and storage area into external RAM
StaticRingbuffer_t *buffer_struct = (StaticRingbuffer_t *)heap_caps_malloc(sizeof(StaticRingbuffer_t), MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM);
uint8_t *buffer_storage = (uint8_t *)heap_caps_malloc(sizeof(uint8_t)*BUFFER_SIZE, MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM);
//Create a ring buffer with manually allocated memory
RingbufHandle_t handle = xRingbufferCreateStatic(BUFFER_SIZE, BUFFER_TYPE, buffer_structure, buffer_storage);
...
//Delete the ring buffer after used
vRingbufferDelete(handle);
//Manually free all blocks of memory
free(buffer_struct);
free(buffer_storage);
```

**Ring Buffer API Reference**

**Note:** Ideally, ring buffers can be used with multiple tasks in an SMP fashion where the **highest priority task will always be serviced first.** However due to the usage of binary semaphores in the ring buffer’s underlying implementation, priority inversion may occur under very specific circumstances.

The ring buffer governs sending by a binary semaphore which is given whenever space is freed on the ring buffer. The highest priority task waiting to send will repeatedly take the semaphore until sufficient free space becomes available or until it times out. Ideally this should prevent any lower priority tasks from being serviced as the semaphore should always be given to the highest priority task.

However, in between iterations of acquiring the semaphore, there is a gap in the critical section which may permit another task (on the other core or with an even higher priority) to free some space on the ring buffer and as a result give the semaphore. Therefore, the semaphore will be given before the highest priority task can re-acquire the semaphore. This will result in the semaphore being acquired by the second-highest priority task waiting to send, hence causing priority inversion.

This side effect will not affect ring buffer performance drastically given if the number of tasks using the ring buffer simultaneously is low, and the ring buffer is not operating near maximum capacity.

**Header File**

- components/esp_ringbuf/include/freertos/ringbuf.h

**Functions**
**RingbufHandle_t **`xRingbufferCreate`(size_t `xBufferSize`, RingbufferType_t `xBufType`)  
Create a ring buffer.  

**Note** xBufferSize of no-split/allow-split buffers will be rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size.  
**Return** A handle to the created ring buffer, or NULL in case of error.  

**Parameters**  
- **[in]** `xBufferSize`: Size of the buffer in bytes. Note that items require space for a header in no-split/allow-split buffers  
- **[in]** `xBufType`: Type of ring buffer, see documentation.

`RingbufHandle_t **xRingbufferCreateNoSplit`(size_t `xItemSize`, size_t `xItemNum`)  
Create a ring buffer of type RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT for a fixed item_size.  

This API is similar to `xRingbufferCreate()`, but it will internally allocate additional space for the headers.  
**Return** A RingbufHandle_t handle to the created ring buffer, or NULL in case of error.  

**Parameters**  
- **[in]** `xItemSize`: Size of each item to be put into the ring buffer  
- **[in]** `xItemNum`: Maximum number of items the buffer needs to hold simultaneously

`RingbufHandle_t **xRingbufferCreateStatic`(size_t `xBufferSize`, RingbufferType_t `xBufType`, uint8_t * `pucRingbufferStorage`, StaticRingbuffer_t * `pxStaticRingbuffer`)  
Create a ring buffer but manually provide the required memory.  

**Note** xBufferSize of no-split/allow-split buffers MUST be 32-bit aligned.  
**Return** A handle to the created ring buffer  

**Parameters**  
- **[in]** `xBufferSize`: Size of the buffer in bytes.  
- **[in]** `xBufType`: Type of ring buffer, see documentation  
- **[in]** `pucRingbufferStorage`: Pointer to the ring buffer’s storage area. Storage area must have the same size as specified by xBufferSize  
- **[in]** `pxStaticRingbuffer`: Pointed to a struct of type StaticRingbuffer_t which will be used to hold the ring buffer’s data structure

**BaseType_t **`xRingbufferSend`(RingbufHandle_t `xRingbuffer`, const void * `pvItem`, size_t `xItemSize`, TickType_t `xTicksToWait`)  
Insert an item into the ring buffer.  

Attempt to insert an item into the ring buffer. This function will block until enough free space is available or until it times out.  

**Note** For no-split/allow-split ring buffers, the actual size of memory that the item will occupy will be rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size. This is done to ensure all items are always stored in 32-bit aligned fashion.  
**Return**  
- **pdTRUE** if succeeded  
- **pdFALSE** on time-out or when the data is larger than the maximum permissible size of the buffer

**Parameters**  
- **[in]** `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to insert the item into  
- **[in]** `pvItem`: Pointer to data to insert. NULL is allowed if xItemSize is 0.  
- **[in]** `xItemSize`: Size of data to insert.  
- **[in]** `xTicksToWait`: Ticks to wait for room in the ring buffer.

**BaseType_t **`xRingbufferSendFromISR`(RingbufHandle_t `xRingbuffer`, const void * `pvItem`, size_t `xItemSize`, BaseType_t * `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`)  
Insert an item into the ring buffer in an ISR.  

Attempt to insert an item into the ring buffer from an ISR. This function will return immediately if there is insufficient free space in the buffer.  

**Note** For no-split/allow-split ring buffers, the actual size of memory that the item will occupy will be rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size. This is done to ensure all items are always stored in 32-bit aligned fashion.  
**Return**
• pdTRUE if succeeded
• pdFALSE when the ring buffer does not have space.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** xRingbuffer: Ring buffer to insert the item into
- **[in]** pvItem: Pointer to data to insert. NULL is allowed if xItemSize is 0.
- **[in]** xItemSize: Size of data to insert.
- **[out]** pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken: Value pointed to will be set to pdTRUE if the function woke up a higher priority task.

```
BaseType_t xRingbufferSendAcquire(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, void **ppvItem, size_t xItemSize, TickType_t xTicksToWait)
```

Acquire memory from the ring buffer to be written to by an external source and to be sent later.

Attempt to allocate buffer for an item to be sent into the ring buffer. This function will block until enough free space is available or until it times out.

The item, as well as the following items SendAcquire or Send after it, will not be able to be read from the ring buffer until this item is actually sent into the ring buffer.

**Note** Only applicable for no-split ring buffers now, the actual size of memory that the item will occupy will be rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size. This is done to ensure all items are always stored in 32-bit aligned fashion.

**Return**

- pdTRUE if succeeded
- pdFALSE on time-out or when the data is larger than the maximum permissible size of the buffer

**Parameters**

- **[in]** xRingbuffer: Ring buffer to allocate the memory
- **[out]** ppvItem: Double pointer to memory acquired (set to NULL if no memory were retrieved)
- **[in]** xItemSize: Size of item to acquire.
- **[in]** xTicksToWait: Ticks to wait for room in the ring buffer.

```
BaseType_t xRingbufferSendComplete(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, void *pvItem)
```

Actually send an item into the ring buffer allocated before by xRingbufferSendAcquire.

**Note** Only applicable for no-split ring buffers. Only call for items allocated by xRingbufferSendAcquire.

**Return**

- pdTRUE if succeeded
- pdFALSE if fail for some reason.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** xRingbuffer: Ring buffer to insert the item into
- **[in]** pvItem: Pointer to item in allocated memory to insert.

```
void *xRingbufferReceive(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, size_t *pxItemSize, TickType_t xTicksToWait)
```

Retrieve an item from the ring buffer.

Attempt to retrieve an item from the ring buffer. This function will block until an item is available or until it times out.

**Note** A call to vRingbufferReturnItem() is required after this to free the item retrieved.

**Return**

- Pointer to the retrieved item on success; *pxItemSize filled with the length of the item.
- NULL on timeout, *pxItemSize is untouched in that case.

**Parameters**

- **[in]** xRingbuffer: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- **[out]** pxItemSize: Pointer to a variable to which the size of the retrieved item will be written.
- **[in]** xTicksToWait: Ticks to wait for items in the ring buffer.

```
void *xRingbufferReceiveFromISR(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, size_t *pxItemSize)
```

Retrieve an item from the ring buffer in an ISR.
Attempt to retrieve an item from the ring buffer. This function returns immediately if there are no items available for retrieval.

**Note** A call to `vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR()` is required after this to free the item retrieved.

**Note** Byte buffers do not allow multiple retrievals before returning an item.

**Note** Two calls to `RingbufferReceiveFromISR()` are required if the bytes wrap around the end of the ring buffer.

**Return**
- Pointer to the retrieved item on success; *pxItemSize filled with the length of the item.
- NULL when the ring buffer is empty, *pxItemSize is untouched in that case.

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out]` `pxItemSize`: Pointer to a variable to which the size of the retrieved item will be written.

```c
BaseType_t xRingbufferReceiveSplit (RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, void **ppvHeadItem, void **ppvTailItem, size_t *pxHeadItemSize, size_t *pxTailItemSize, TickType_t xTicksToWait)
```

Retrieve a split item from an allow-split ring buffer.

Attempt to retrieve a split item from an allow-split ring buffer. If the item is not split, only a single item is retrieved. If the item is split, both parts will be retrieved. This function will block until an item is available or until it times out.

**Note** Call(s) to `vRingbufferReturnItem()` is required after this to free up the item(s) retrieved.

**Note** This function should only be called on allow-split buffers.

**Return**
- `pdTRUE` if an item (split or unsplit) was retrieved
- `pdFALSE` when no item was retrieved

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out]` `ppvHeadItem`: Double pointer to first part (set to NULL if no items were retrieved)
- `[out]` `ppvTailItem`: Double pointer to second part (set to NULL if item is not split)
- `[out]` `pxHeadItemSize`: Pointer to size of first part (unmodified if no items were retrieved)
- `[out]` `pxTailItemSize`: Pointer to size of second part (unmodified if item is not split)
- `[in]` `xTicksToWait`: Ticks to wait for items in the ring buffer.

```c
BaseType_t xRingbufferReceiveSplitFromISR (RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, void **ppvHeadItem, void **ppvTailItem, size_t *pxHeadItemSize, size_t *pxTailItemSize)
```

Retrieve a split item from an allow-split ring buffer in an ISR.

Attempt to retrieve a split item from an allow-split ring buffer. If the item is not split, only a single item is retrieved. If the item is split, both parts will be retrieved. This function returns immediately if there are no items available for retrieval.

**Note** Calls to `vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR()` is required after this to free up the item(s) retrieved.

**Note** This function should only be called on allow-split buffers.

**Return**
- `pdTRUE` if an item (split or unsplit) was retrieved
- `pdFALSE` when no item was retrieved

**Parameters**
- `[in]` `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out]` `ppvHeadItem`: Double pointer to first part (set to NULL if no items were retrieved)
- `[out]` `ppvTailItem`: Double pointer to second part (set to NULL if item is not split)
- `[out]` `pxHeadItemSize`: Pointer to size of first part (unmodified if no items were retrieved)
- `[out]` `pxTailItemSize`: Pointer to size of second part (unmodified if item is not split)

```c
void *xRingbufferReceiveUpTo (RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, size_t *pxItemSize, TickType_t xTicksToWait, size_t xMaxSize)
```

Retrieve bytes from a byte buffer, specifying the maximum amount of bytes to retrieve.

Attempt to retrieve data from a byte buffer whilst specifying a maximum number of bytes to retrieve. This function will block until there is data available for retrieval or until it times out.
A call to `vRingbufferReturnItem()` is required after this to free up the data retrieved.

This function should only be called on byte buffers.

Two calls to `RingbufferReceiveUpTo()` are required if the bytes wrap around the end of the ring buffer.

Parameters
- `[in]` `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out]` `pxItemSize`: Pointer to a variable to which the size of the retrieved item will be written.
- `[in]` `xMaxSize`: Maximum number of bytes to return.

Retrieve bytes from a byte buffer, specifying the maximum amount of bytes to retrieve. Call this from an ISR.

If a split item is retrieved, both parts should be returned by calling this function twice.

Parameters
- `[in]` `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer the item was retrieved from
- `[in]` `pvItem`: Item that was received earlier

Return a previously-retrieved item to the ring buffer from an ISR.

Parameters
- `[in]` `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer the item was retrieved from
- `[in]` `pvItem`: Item that was received earlier
- `[out]` `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: Value pointed to will be set to pdTRUE if the function woke up a higher priority task.

Delete a ring buffer.

Parameters
- `[in]` `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to delete

Get maximum size of an item that can be placed in the ring buffer.

This function returns the maximum size an item can have if it was placed in an empty ring buffer.

Note The max item size for a no-split buffer is limited to `((buffer_size/2)-header_size)`. This limit is imposed
so that an item of max item size can always be sent to an empty no-split buffer regardless of the internal positions of the buffer’s read/write/free pointers.

**Return** Maximum size, in bytes, of an item that can be placed in a ring buffer.

**Parameters**

- [in] `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to query

```c
size_t xRingbufferGetCurFreeSize(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer)
```

Get current free size available for an item/data in the buffer.

This gives the real time free space available for an item/data in the ring buffer. This represents the maximum size an item/data can have if it was currently sent to the ring buffer.

**Warning** This API is not thread safe. So, if multiple threads are accessing the same ring buffer, it is the application’s responsibility to ensure atomic access to this API and the subsequent Send

**Note** An empty no-split buffer has a max current free size for an item that is limited to `((buffer_size/2)-header_size)`. See API reference for `xRingbufferGetMaxItemSize()`.

**Return** Current free size, in bytes, available for an entry

**Parameters**

- [in] `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to query

```c
BaseType_t xRingbufferAddToQueueSetRead(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet)
```

Add the ring buffer’s read semaphore to a queue set.

The ring buffer’s read semaphore indicates that data has been written to the ring buffer. This function adds the ring buffer’s read semaphore to a queue set.

**Return**

- pdTRUE on success, pdFALSE otherwise

**Parameters**

- [in] `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to add to the queue set
- [in] `xQueueSet`: Queue set to add the ring buffer’s read semaphore to

```c
BaseType_t xRingbufferCanRead(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, QueueSetMemberHandle_t xMember)
```

Check if the selected queue set member is the ring buffer’s read semaphore.

This API checks if queue set member returned from `xQueueSelectFromSet()` is the read semaphore of this ring buffer. If so, this indicates the ring buffer has items waiting to be retrieved.

**Return**

- pdTRUE when semaphore belongs to ring buffer
- pdFALSE otherwise.

**Parameters**

- [in] `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer which should be checked
- [in] `xMember`: Member returned from `xQueueSelectFromSet`

```c
BaseType_t xRingbufferRemoveFromQueueSetRead(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet)
```

Remove the ring buffer’s read semaphore from a queue set.

This specifically removes a ring buffer’s read semaphore from a queue set. The read semaphore is used to indicate when data has been written to the ring buffer.

**Return**

- pdTRUE on success
- pdFALSE otherwise

**Parameters**

- [in] `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to remove from the queue set
- [in] `xQueueSet`: Queue set to remove the ring buffer’s read semaphore from

```c
void vRingbufferGetInfo(RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer, BaseType_t *uxFree, BaseType_t *uxRead, BaseType_t *uxWrite, BaseType_t *uxAcquire, BaseType_t *uxItemsWaiting)
```

Get information about ring buffer status.
Get information of a ring buffer’s current status such as free/read/write/acquire pointer positions, and number of items waiting to be retrieved. Arguments can be set to NULL if they are not required.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** xRingbuffer: Ring buffer to remove from the queue set
- **[out]** uxFree: Pointer use to store free pointer position
- **[out]** uxRead: Pointer use to store read pointer position
- **[out]** uxWrite: Pointer use to store write pointer position
- **[out]** uxAcquire: Pointer use to store acquire pointer position
- **[out]** uxItemsWaiting: Pointer use to store number of items (bytes for byte buffer) waiting to be retrieved

```c
void xRingbufferPrintInfo (RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer)
```

Debugging function to print the internal pointers in the ring buffer.

**Parameters**
- xRingbuffer: Ring buffer to show

**Structures**
- **struct xSTATIC_RINGBUFFER**
  Struct that is equivalent in size to the ring buffer’s data structure.
  The contents of this struct are not meant to be used directly. This structure is meant to be used when creating a statically allocated ring buffer where this struct is of the exact size required to store a ring buffer’s control data structure.

**Type Definitions**
- **typedef void* RingbufHandle_t**
  Type by which ring buffers are referenced. For example, a call to xRingbufferCreate() returns a RingbufHandle_t variable that can then be used as a parameter to xRingbufferSend(), xRingbufferReceive(), etc.

- **typedef struct xSTATIC_RINGBUFFER StaticRingbuffer_t**
  Struct that is equivalent in size to the ring buffer’s data structure.
  The contents of this struct are not meant to be used directly. This structure is meant to be used when creating a statically allocated ring buffer where this struct is of the exact size required to store a ring buffer’s control data structure.

**Enumerations**
- **enum RingbufferType_t**
  Values:
  - **RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT** = 0
    No-split buffers will only store an item in contiguous memory and will never split an item. Each item requires an 8 byte overhead for a header and will always internally occupy a 32-bit aligned size of space.
  - **RINGBUF_TYPE_ALLOW_SPLIT**
    Allow-split buffers will split an item into two parts if necessary in order to store it. Each item requires an 8 byte overhead for a header, splitting incurs an extra header. Each item will always internally occupy a 32-bit aligned size of space.
  - **RINGBUF_TYPE_BYTEBUF**
    Byte buffers store data as a sequence of bytes and do not maintain separate items, therefore byte buffers have no overhead. All data is stored as a sequence of byte and any number of bytes can be sent or retrieved each time.
  - **RINGBUF_TYPE_MAX**
Hooks

FreeRTOS consists of Idle Hooks and Tick Hooks which allow for application specific functionality to be added to the Idle Task and Tick Interrupt. ESP-IDF provides its own Idle and Tick Hook API in addition to the hooks provided by vanilla FreeRTOS. ESP-IDF hooks have the added benefit of being run time configurable and asymmetrical.

Vanilla FreeRTOS Hooks  Idle and Tick Hooks in vanilla FreeRTOS are implemented by the user defining the functions `vApplicationIdleHook()` and `vApplicationTickHook()` respectively somewhere in the application. Vanilla FreeRTOS will run the user defined Idle Hook and Tick Hook on every iteration of the Idle Task and Tick Interrupt respectively.

Vanilla FreeRTOS hooks are referred to as Legacy Hooks in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. To enable legacy hooks, `CONFIG_FREERTOS_LEGACY_HOOKS` should be enabled in the project configuration menu.

Due to vanilla FreeRTOS being designed for single core, `vApplicationIdleHook()` and `vApplicationTickHook()` can only be defined once. However, the ESP32 is dual-core in nature, therefore same Idle Hook and Tick Hook are used for both cores (in other words, the hooks are symmetrical for both cores).

ESP-IDF Idle and Tick Hooks  For some use-cases it may be necessary for the Idle Tasks or Tick Interrupts to execute multiple hooks that are configurable at run time. Furthermore, due to the dual-core nature of the ESP32, it may be necessary for some applications to have separate hooks for each core.

Therefore, ESP-IDF provides its own hooks API in addition to the legacy hooks provided by vanilla FreeRTOS.

The ESP-IDF tick and idle hooks are registered at run time. Each tick hook and idle hook must be registered to a specific CPU. When the idle task runs or a tick interrupt occurs on a particular CPU, the CPU will run each of its registered idle hook and tick hook in turn.

Note: Tick interrupt stays active whilst cache is disabled and hence `vApplicationTickHook()` (legacy case) or ESP-IDF tick hooks must be placed in internal RAM. Please refer to the SPI flash API documentation for more details.

Hooks API Reference

Header File

- components/esp_system/include/esp_freertos_hooks.h

Functions

```c
esp_err_t esp_register_freertos_idle_hook_for_cpu(esp_freertos_idle_cb_t new_idle_cb, UBaseType_t cpuid)
```

Register a callback to be called from the specified core’s idle hook. The callback should return true if it should be called by the idle hook once per interrupt (or FreeRTOS tick), and return false if it should be called repeatedly as fast as possible by the idle hook.

Warning  Idle callbacks MUST NOT, UNDER ANY CIRCUMSTANCES, CALL A FUNCTION THAT MIGHT BLOCK.

Return

- ESP_OK: Callback registered to the specified core’s idle hook
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: No more space on the specified core’s idle hook to register callback
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: cpuid is invalid

Parameters

- [in] new_idle_cb: Callback to be called
- [in] cpuid: id of the core
**esp_err_t esp_register_freertos_idle_hook (esp_freertos_idle_cb_t new_idle_cb)**

Register a callback to the idle hook of the core that calls this function. The callback should return true if it should be called by the idle hook once per interrupt (or FreeRTOS tick), and return false if it should be called repeatedly as fast as possible by the idle hook.

**Warning** Idle callbacks MUST NOT, UNDER ANY CIRCUMSTANCES, CALL A FUNCTION THAT MIGHT BLOCK.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Callback registered to the calling core’s idle hook
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: No more space on the calling core’s idle hook to register callback

**Parameters**
- [in] new_idle_cb: Callback to be called

**esp_err_t esp_register_freertos_tick_hook_for_cpu (esp_freertos_tick_cb_t new_tick_cb, UBaseType_t cpuid)**

Register a callback to be called from the specified core’s tick hook.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Callback registered to specified core’s tick hook
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: No more space on the specified core’s tick hook to register the callback
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: cpuid is invalid

**Parameters**
- [in] new_tick_cb: Callback to be called
- [in] cpuid: id of the core

**esp_err_t esp_register_freertos_tick_hook (esp_freertos_tick_cb_t new_tick_cb)**

Register a callback to be called from the calling core’s tick hook.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Callback registered to the calling core’s tick hook
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: No more space on the calling core’s tick hook to register the callback

**Parameters**
- [in] new_tick_cb: Callback to be called

**void esp_deregister_freertos_idle_hook_for_cpu (esp_freertos_idle_cb_t old_idle_cb, UBaseType_t cpuid)**

Unregister an idle callback from the idle hook of the specified core.

**Parameters**
- [in] old_idle_cb: Callback to be unregistered
- [in] cpuid: id of the core

**void esp_deregister_freertos_idle_hook (esp_freertos_idle_cb_t old_idle_cb)**

Unregister an idle callback. If the idle callback is registered to the idle hooks of both cores, the idle hook will be unregistered from both cores.

**Parameters**
- [in] old_idle_cb: Callback to be unregistered

**void esp_deregister_freertos_tick_hook_for_cpu (esp_freertos_tick_cb_t old_tick_cb, UBaseType_t cpuid)**

Unregister a tick callback from the tick hook of the specified core.

**Parameters**
- [in] old_tick_cb: Callback to be unregistered
- [in] cpuid: id of the core

**void esp_deregister_freertos_tick_hook (esp_freertos_tick_cb_t old_tick_cb)**

Unregister a tick callback. If the tick callback is registered to the tick hooks of both cores, the tick hook will be unregistered from both cores.

**Parameters**
- [in] old_tick_cb: Callback to be unregistered
Type Definitions

typedef bool (*esp_freertos_idle_cb_t)(void)
typedef void (*esp_freertos_tick_cb_t)(void)

Component Specific Properties

Besides standard component variables that are available with basic cmake build properties, FreeRTOS component also provides arguments (only one so far) for simpler integration with other modules:

- `ORIG_INCLUDE_PATH` - contains an absolute path to freertos root include folder. Thus instead of `#include "freertos/FreeRTOS.h"` you can refer to headers directly: `#include "FreeRTOS.h"`.

2.7.11 Heap Memory Allocation

Stack and Heap

ESP-IDF applications use the common computer architecture patterns of stack (dynamic memory allocated by program control flow) and heap (dynamic memory allocated by function calls), as well as statically allocated memory (allocated at compile time).

Because ESP-IDF is a multi-threaded RTOS environment, each RTOS task has its own stack. By default, each of these stacks is allocated from the heap when the task is created. (See `xTaskCreateStatic()` for the alternative where stacks are statically allocated.)

Because ESP32 uses multiple types of RAM, it also contains multiple heaps with different capabilities. A capabilities-based memory allocator allows apps to make heap allocations for different purposes.

For most purposes, the standard libc `malloc()` and `free()` functions can be used for heap allocation without any special consideration.

However, in order to fully make use of all of the memory types and their characteristics, ESP-IDF also has a capabilities-based heap memory allocator. If you want to have memory with certain properties (for example, DMA-Capable Memory or executable-memory), you can create an OR-mask of the required capabilities and pass that to `heap_caps_malloc()`.

Memory Capabilities

The ESP32 contains multiple types of RAM:

- DRAM (Data RAM) is memory used to hold data. This is the most common kind of memory accessed as heap.
- IRAM (Instruction RAM) usually holds executable data only. If accessed as generic memory, all accesses must be 32-bit aligned.
- D/IRAM is RAM which can be used as either Instruction or Data RAM.

For more details on these internal memory types, see 应用程序的内存布局.

It’s also possible to connect external SPI RAM to the ESP32 - external RAM can be integrated into the ESP32’s memory map using the flash cache, and accessed similarly to DRAM.

DRAM uses capability `MALLOC_CAP_8BIT` (accessible in single byte reads and writes). When calling `malloc()`, the ESP-IDF `malloc()` implementation internally calls `heap_caps_malloc(size, MALLOC_CAP_8BIT)` in order to allocate DRAM that is byte-addressable. To test the free DRAM heap size at runtime, call `cpp:func:heap_caps_get_free_size(MALLOC_CAP_8BIT)`.

Because `malloc` uses the capabilities-based allocation system, memory allocated using `heap_caps_malloc()` can be freed by calling the standard `free()` function.
Available Heap

**DRAM** At startup, the DRAM heap contains all data memory which is not statically allocated by the app. Reducing statically allocated buffers will increase the amount of available free heap.

To find the amount of statically allocated memory, use the `idf.py size` command.

| (252) heap_init: Initializing. RAM available for dynamic allocation: |
| (259) heap_init: At 3FFAE6E0 len 00001920 (6 KiB): DRAM |
| (265) heap_init: At 3FFB2EC8 len 0002D138 (180 KiB): DRAM |
| (272) heap_init: At 3FFE0440 len 00003AE0 (14 KiB): D/IRAM |
| (278) heap_init: At 3FFE4350 len 0001BCB0 (111 KiB): D/IRAM |
| (284) heap_init: At 4008944C len 00016BB4 (90 KiB): IRAM |

Finding available heap  See *Heap Information*.

**Special Capabilities**

**DMA-Capable Memory** Use the `MALLOC_CAP_DMA` flag to allocate memory which is suitable for use with hardware DMA engines (for example SPI and I2S). This capability flag excludes any external PSRAM.

**32-Bit Accessible Memory** If a certain memory structure is only addressed in 32-bit units, for example an array of ints or pointers, it can be useful to allocate it with the `MALLOC_CAP_32BIT` flag. This also allows the allocator to give out IRAM memory; something which it can’t do for a normal malloc() call. This can help to use all the available memory in the ESP32.

Memory allocated with `MALLOC_CAP_32BIT` can only be accessed via 32-bit reads and writes, any other type of access will generate a fatal LoadStoreError exception.

**External SPI Memory** When *external RAM* is enabled, external SPI RAM under 4MiB in size can be allocated using standard malloc calls, or via `heap_caps_malloc(MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM)`, depending on configuration. See *配置外 RAM* for more details.

To use the region above the 4MiB limit, you can use the `himem API`.
API Reference - Heap Allocation

Header File

- components/heap/include/esp_heap_caps.h

Functions

**esp_err_t heap_caps_register_failed_alloc_callback (esp_alloc_failed_hook_t callback)**

- registers a callback function to be invoked if a memory allocation operation fails
- Return ESP_OK if callback was registered.
- Parameters
  - callback: caller defined callback to be invoked

**void *heap_caps_malloc (size_t size, uint32_t caps)**

- Allocate a chunk of memory which has the given capabilities.
- Equivalent semantics to libc malloc(), for capability-aware memory.
- In IDF, malloc(p) is equivalent to heap_caps_malloc(p, MALLOC_CAP_8BIT).
- Return A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure
- Parameters
  - size: Size, in bytes, of the amount of memory to allocate
  - caps: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory to be returned

**void heap_caps_free (void *ptr)**

- Free memory previously allocated via heap_caps_malloc() or heap_caps_realloc().
- Equivalent semantics to libc free(), for capability-aware memory.
- In IDF, free(p) is equivalent to heap_caps_free(p).
- Parameters
  - ptr: Pointer to memory previously returned from heap_caps_malloc() or heap_caps_realloc(). Can be NULL.

**void *heap_caps_realloc (void *ptr, size_t size, uint32_t caps)**

- Reallocation previously allocated via heap_caps_malloc() or heap_caps_realloc().
- Equivalent semantics to libc realloc(), for capability-aware memory.
- In IDF, realloc(p, s) is equivalent to heap_caps_realloc(p, s, MALLOC_CAP_8BIT).
- ‘caps’ parameter can be different to the capabilities that any original ‘ptr’ was allocated with. In this way, realloc can be used to “move” a buffer if necessary to ensure it meets a new set of capabilities.
- Return Pointer to a new buffer of size ‘size’ with capabilities ‘caps’, or NULL if allocation failed.
- Parameters
  - ptr: Pointer to previously allocated memory, or NULL for a new allocation.
  - size: Size of the new buffer requested, or 0 to free the buffer.
  - caps: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory desired for the new allocation.

**void *heap_caps_aligned_alloc (size_t alignment, size_t size, uint32_t caps)**

- Allocate an aligned chunk of memory which has the given capabilities.
- Equivalent semantics to libc aligned_alloc(), for capability-aware memory.
- Return A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure
- Parameters
  - alignment: How the pointer received needs to be aligned must be a power of two
  - size: Size, in bytes, of the amount of memory to allocate
  - caps: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory to be returned

**void heap_caps_aligned_free (void *ptr)**

- Used to deallocate memory previously allocated with heap_caps_aligned_alloc.
Note  This function is deprecated, please consider using heap_caps_free() instead

Parameters
  • ptr: Pointer to the memory allocated

void *heap_caps_aligned_calloc (size_t alignment, size_t n, size_t size, uint32_t caps)
Allocate an aligned chunk of memory which has the given capabilities. The initialized value in the memory is set to zero.

Return  A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

Parameters
  • alignment: How the pointer received needs to be aligned must be a power of two
  • n: Number of continuing chunks of memory to allocate
  • size: Size, in bytes, of a chunk of memory to allocate
  • caps: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory to be returned

void *heap_caps_calloc (size_t n, size_t size, uint32_t caps)
Allocate a chunk of memory which has the given capabilities. The initialized value in the memory is set to zero.

Equivalent semantics to libc alloc(), for capability-aware memory.

In IDF, calloc(p) is equivalent to heap_caps_calloc(p, MALLOC_CAP_8BIT).

Return  A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

Parameters
  • n: Number of continuing chunks of memory to allocate
  • size: Size, in bytes, of a chunk of memory to allocate
  • caps: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory to be returned

size_t heap_caps_get_total_size (uint32_t caps)
Get the total size of all the regions that have the given capabilities.

This function takes all regions capable of having the given capabilities allocated in them and adds up the total space they have.

Return  total size in bytes

Parameters
  • caps: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

size_t heap_caps_get_free_size (uint32_t caps)
Get the total free size of all the regions that have the given capabilities.

This function takes all regions capable of having the given capabilities allocated in them and adds up the free space they have.

Note  Note that because of heap fragmentation it is probably not possible to allocate a single block of memory of this size. Use heap_caps_get_largest_free_block() for this purpose.

Return  Amount of free bytes in the regions

Parameters
  • caps: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

size_t heap_caps_get_minimum_free_size (uint32_t caps)
Get the total minimum free memory of all regions with the given capabilities.

This adds all the low watermarks of the regions capable of delivering the memory with the given capabilities.

Note  Note the result may be less than the global all-time minimum available heap of this kind, as “low watermarks” are tracked per-region. Individual regions’ heaps may have reached their “low watermarks” at different points in time. However, this result still gives a “worst case” indication for all-time minimum free heap.

Return  Amount of free bytes in the regions

Parameters
  • caps: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

size_t heap_caps_get_largest_free_block (uint32_t caps)
Get the largest free block of memory able to be allocated with the given capabilities.
Chapter 2. API

Returns the largest value of \( s \) for which `heap_caps_malloc(s, caps)` will succeed.

**Return** Size of the largest free block in bytes.

**Parameters**
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of `MALLOC_CAP_*` flags indicating the type of memory

```c
void heap_caps_get_info ( multi_heap_info_t *info, uint32_t caps )
```

Get heap info for all regions with the given capabilities.

Calls `multi_heap_info()` on all heaps which share the given capabilities. The information returned is an aggregate across all matching heaps. The meanings of fields are the same as defined for `multi_heap_info_t`, except that `minimum_free_bytes` has the same caveats described in `heap_caps_get_minimum_free_size()`.

**Parameters**
- `info`: Pointer to a structure which will be filled with relevant heap metadata.
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of `MALLOC_CAP_*` flags indicating the type of memory

```c
void heap_caps_print_heap_info ( uint32_t caps )
```

Print a summary of all memory with the given capabilities.

Calls `multi_heap_info` on all heaps which share the given capabilities, and prints a two-line summary for each, then a total summary.

**Parameters**
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of `MALLOC_CAP_*` flags indicating the type of memory

```c
bool heap_caps_check_integrity_all ( bool print_errors )
```

Check integrity of all heap memory in the system.

Calls `multi_heap_check` on all heaps. Optionally print errors if heaps are corrupt.

Calling this function is equivalent to calling `heap_caps_check_integrity` with the `caps` argument set to `MALLOC_CAP_INVALID`.

**Return** True if all heaps are valid, False if at least one heap is corrupt.

**Parameters**
- `print_errors`: Print specific errors if heap corruption is found.

```c
bool heap_caps_check_integrity ( uint32_t caps, bool print_errors )
```

Check integrity of all heaps with the given capabilities.

Calls `multi_heap_check` on all heaps which share the given capabilities. Optionally print errors if the heaps are corrupt.

See also `heap_caps_check_integrity_all` to check all heap memory in the system and `heap_caps_check_integrity_addr` to check memory around a single address.

**Return** True if all heaps are valid, False if at least one heap is corrupt.

**Parameters**
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of `MALLOC_CAP_*` flags indicating the type of memory
- `print_errors`: Print specific errors if heap corruption is found.

```c
bool heap_caps_check_integrity_addr ( uintptr_t addr, bool print_errors )
```

Check integrity of heap memory around a given address.

This function can be used to check the integrity of a single region of heap memory, which contains the given address.

This can be useful if debugging heap integrity for corruption at a known address, as it has a lower overhead than checking all heap regions. Note that if the corrupt address moves around between runs (due to timing or other factors) then this approach won’t work, and you should call `heap_caps_check_integrity` or `heap_caps_check_integrity_all` instead.

**Note** The entire heap region around the address is checked, not only the adjacent heap blocks.

**Return** True if the heap containing the specified address is valid, False if at least one heap is corrupt or the address doesn’t belong to a heap region.

**Parameters**
- `addr`: Address in memory. Check for corruption in region containing this address.
• **print_errors**: Print specific errors if heap corruption is found.

```c
void heap_caps_malloc_extmem_enable(size_t limit)
```

Enable malloc() in external memory and set limit below which malloc() attempts are placed in internal memory.

When external memory is in use, the allocation strategy is to initially try to satisfy smaller allocation requests with internal memory and larger requests with external memory. This sets the limit between the two, as well as generally enabling allocation in external memory.

**Parameters**

- `limit`: Limit, in bytes.

```c
void* heap_caps_malloc_prefer(size_t size, size_t num, ...)
```

Allocate a chunk of memory as preference in decreasing order.

**Attention** The variable parameters are bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory. This API prefers to allocate memory with the first parameter. If failed, allocate memory with the next parameter. It will try in this order until allocating a chunk of memory successfully or fail to allocate memories with any of the parameters.

**Return** A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

**Parameters**

- `size`: Size, in bytes, of the amount of memory to allocate
- `num`: Number of variable parameters

```c
void* heap_caps_realloc_prefer(void* ptr, size_t size, size_t num, ...)
```

Reallocate a chunk of memory as preference in decreasing order.

**Return** Point to a new buffer of size ‘size’, or NULL if allocation failed.

**Parameters**

- `ptr`: Pointer to previously allocated memory, or NULL for a new allocation.
- `size`: Size of the new buffer requested, or 0 to free the buffer.
- `num`: Number of variable parameters

```c
void* heap_capscalloc_prefer(size_t n, size_t size, size_t num, ...)
```

Allocate a chunk of memory as preference in decreasing order.

**Return** A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

**Parameters**

- `n`: Number of continuing chunks of memory to allocate
- `size`: Size, in bytes, of a chunk of memory to allocate
- `num`: Number of variable parameters

```c
void heap_caps_dump(uint32_t caps)
```

Dump the full structure of all heaps with matching capabilities.

Prints a large amount of output to serial (because of locking limitations, the output bypasses stdout/stderr). For each (variable sized) block in each matching heap, the following output is printed on a single line:

- Block address (the data buffer returned by malloc is 4 bytes after this if heap debugging is set to Basic, or 8 bytes otherwise).
- Data size (the data size may be larger than the size requested by malloc, either due to heap fragmentation or because of heap debugging level).
- Address of next block in the heap.
- If the block is free, the address of the next free block is also printed.

**Parameters**

- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

```c
void heap_caps_dump_all(void)
```

Dump the full structure of all heaps.

Covers all registered heaps. Prints a large amount of output to serial.

Output is the same as for heap_caps_dump.

```c
size_t heap_caps_get_allocated_size(void* ptr)
```

Return the size that a particular pointer was allocated with.
**Note** The app will crash with an assertion failure if the pointer is not valid.

**Return** Size of the memory allocated at this block.

**Parameters**
- `ptr`: Pointer to currently allocated heap memory. Must be a pointer value previously returned by `heap_caps_malloc`, `malloc`, `calloc`, etc. and not yet freed.

**Macros**

`MALLOC_CAP_EXEC`
- Flags to indicate the capabilities of the various memory systems.
- Memory must be able to run executable code

`MALLOC_CAP_32BIT`
- Memory must allow for aligned 32-bit data accesses.

`MALLOC_CAP_8BIT`
- Memory must allow for 8/16/…-bit data accesses.

`MALLOC_CAP_DMA`
- Memory must be able to be accessed by DMA.

`MALLOC_CAP_PID2`
- Memory must be mapped to PID2 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

`MALLOC_CAP_PID3`
- Memory must be mapped to PID3 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

`MALLOC_CAP_PID4`
- Memory must be mapped to PID4 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

`MALLOC_CAP_PID5`
- Memory must be mapped to PID5 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

`MALLOC_CAP_PID6`
- Memory must be mapped to PID6 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

`MALLOC_CAP_PID7`
- Memory must be mapped to PID7 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

`MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM`
- Memory must be in SPI RAM.

`MALLOC_CAP_INTERNAL`
- Memory must be internal; specifically it should not disappear when flash/spiram cache is switched off.

`MALLOC_CAP_DEFAULT`
- Memory can be returned in a non-capability-specific memory allocation (e.g. `malloc()`, `calloc()`) call.

`MALLOC_CAP_IRAM_8BIT`
- Memory must be in IRAM and allow unaligned access.

`MALLOC_CAP_RETENTION`

`MALLOC_CAP_RTCRAM`
- Memory must be in RTC fast memory.

`MALLOC_CAP_INVALID`
- Memory can’t be used / list end marker.

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef void (*esp_alloc_failed_hook_t)(size_t size, uint32_t caps, const char *function_name)
```
- Callback called when an allocation operation fails, if registered.

**Parameters**
- `size`: in bytes of failed allocation
Thread Safety  Heap functions are thread safe, meaning they can be called from different tasks simultaneously without any limitations.

It is technically possible to call malloc, free, and related functions from interrupt handler (ISR) context. However this is not recommended, as heap function calls may delay other interrupts. It is strongly recommended to refactor applications so that any buffers used by an ISR are pre-allocated outside of the ISR. Support for calling heap functions from ISRs may be removed in a future update.

Heap Tracing & Debugging

The following features are documented on the Heap Memory Debugging page:

- Heap Information (free space, etc.)
- Heap Corruption Detection
- Heap Tracing (memory leak detection, monitoring, etc.)

API Reference - Initialisation

Header File

- components/heap/include/esp_heap_caps_init.h

Functions

void heap_caps_init (void)
Initialize the capability-aware heap allocator.

This is called once in the IDF startup code. Do not call it at other times.

void heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps (void)
Enable heap(s) in memory regions where the startup stacks are located.

On startup, the pro/app CPUs have a certain memory region they use as stack, so we cannot do allocations in the regions these stack frames are. When FreeRTOS is completely started, they do not use that memory anymore and heap(s) there can be enabled.

esp_err_t heap_caps_add_region (intptr_t start, intptr_t end)
Add a region of memory to the collection of heaps at runtime.

Most memory regions are defined in soc_memory_layout.c for the SoC, and are registered via heap_caps_init(). Some regions can’t be used immediately and are later enabled via heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps().

Call this function to add a region of memory to the heap at some later time.

This function does not consider any of the “reserved” regions or other data in soc_memory_layout, caller needs to consider this themselves.

All memory within the region specified by start & end parameters must be otherwise unused.

The capabilities of the newly registered memory will be determined by the start address, as looked up in the regions specified in soc_memory_layout.c.

Use heap_caps_add_region_with_caps() to register a region with custom capabilities.

Return ESP_OK on success, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if a parameter is invalid, ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if the specified start address doesn’t reside in a known region, or any error returned by heap_caps_add_region_with_caps().

Parameters

- start: Start address of new region.
- end: End address of new region.
**esp_err_t heap_caps_add_region_with_caps (const uint32_t caps[], intptr_t start, intptr_t end)**

Add a region of memory to the collection of heaps at runtime, with custom capabilities.

Similar to heap_caps_add_region(), only custom memory capabilities are specified by the caller.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if a parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if no memory to register new heap.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if the memory region is too small to fit a heap
- ESP_FAIL if region overlaps the start and/or end of an existing region

**Parameters**
- caps: Ordered array of capability masks for the new region, in order of priority. Must have length SOC_MEMORY_TYPE_NO_PRIOS. Does not need to remain valid after the call returns.
- start: Start address of new region.
- end: End address of new region.

**Implementation Notes**

Knowledge about the regions of memory in the chip comes from the “soc” component, which contains memory layout information for the chip, and the different capabilities of each region. Each region’s capabilities are prioritised, so that (for example) dedicated DRAM and IRAM regions will be used for allocations ahead of the more versatile D/IRAM regions.

Each contiguous region of memory contains its own memory heap. The heaps are created using the multi_heap functionality. multi_heap allows any contiguous region of memory to be used as a heap.

The heap capabilities allocator uses knowledge of the memory regions to initialize each individual heap. Allocation functions in the heap capabilities API will find the most appropriate heap for the allocation (based on desired capabilities, available space, and preferences for each region’s use) and then calling multi_heap_malloc() or multi_heap_calloc() for the heap situated in that particular region.

Calling free() involves finding the particular heap corresponding to the freed address, and then calling multi_heap_free() on that particular multi_heap instance.

**API Reference - Multi Heap API**

(Note: The multi heap API is used internally by the heap capabilities allocator. Most IDF programs will never need to call this API directly.)

**Header File**
- components/heap/include/multi_heap.h

**Functions**

void *multi_heap_aligned_alloc (multi_heap_handle_t heap, size_t size, size_t alignment)

allocate a chunk of memory with specific alignment

**Return** pointer to the memory allocated, NULL on failure

**Parameters**
- heap: Handle to a registered heap.
- size: size in bytes of memory chunk
- alignment: how the memory must be aligned

void *multi_heap_malloc (multi_heap_handle_t heap, size_t size)

malloc() a buffer in a given heap

Semantics are the same as standard malloc(), only the returned buffer will be allocated in the specified heap.

**Return** Pointer to new memory, or NULL if allocation fails.

**Parameters**
• heap: Handle to a registered heap.
• size: Size of desired buffer.

void **multi_heap_aligned_free** (multi_heap_handle_t heap, void *p)

def() a buffer aligned in a given heap.

**Note** This function is deprecated, consider using multi_heap_free() instead

**Parameters**
• heap: Handle to a registered heap.
• p: NULL, or a pointer previously returned from multi_heap_aligned_alloc() for the same heap.

void **multi_heap_free** (multi_heap_handle_t heap, void *p)

def() a buffer in a given heap.

Semantics are the same as standard free(), only the argument ‘p’ must be NULL or have been allocated in the specified heap.

**Parameters**
• heap: Handle to a registered heap.
• p: NULL, or a pointer previously returned from multi_heap_malloc() or multi_heap_realloc() for the same heap.

void **multi_heap_realloc** (multi_heap_handle_t heap, void *p, size_t size)
 realloc() a buffer in a given heap.

Semantics are the same as standard realloc(), only the argument ‘p’ must be NULL or have been allocated in the specified heap.

**Return** New buffer of ‘size’ containing contents of ‘p’, or NULL if reallocation failed.

**Parameters**
• heap: Handle to a registered heap.
• p: NULL, or a pointer previously returned from multi_heap_malloc() or multi_heap_realloc() for the same heap.
• size: Desired new size for buffer.

size_t **multi_heap_get_allocated_size** (multi_heap_handle_t heap, void *p)

Return the size that a particular pointer was allocated with.

**Return** Size of the memory allocated at this block. May be more than the original size argument, due to padding and minimum block sizes.

**Parameters**
• heap: Handle to a registered heap.
• p: Pointer, must have been previously returned from multi_heap_malloc() or multi_heap_realloc() for the same heap.

**multi_heap_handle_t** **multi_heap_register** (void *start, size_t size)

Register a new heap for use.

This function initialises a heap at the specified address, and returns a handle for future heap operations.

There is no equivalent function for deregistering a heap - if all blocks in the heap are free, you can immediately start using the memory for other purposes.

**Return** Handle of a new heap ready for use, or NULL if the heap region was too small to be initialised.

**Parameters**
• start: Start address of the memory to use for a new heap.
• size: Size (in bytes) of the new heap.

void **multi_heap_set_lock** (multi_heap_handle_t heap, void *lock)

Associate a private lock pointer with a heap.

The lock argument is supplied to the MULTI_HEAP_LOCK() and MULTI_HEAP_UNLOCK() macros, defined in multi_heap_platform.h.

The lock in question must be recursive.

When the heap is first registered, the associated lock is NULL.
Parameters

- **heap**: Handle to a registered heap.
- **lock**: Optional pointer to a locking structure to associate with this heap.

```c
void multi_heap_dump (multi_heap_handle_t heap)
```

Dump heap information to stdout.

For debugging purposes, this function dumps information about every block in the heap to stdout.

**Parameters**

- **heap**: Handle to a registered heap.

```c
bool multi_heap_check (multi_heap_handle_t heap, bool print_errors)
```

Check heap integrity.

Walks the heap and checks all heap data structures are valid. If any errors are detected, an error-specific message can be optionally printed to stderr. Print behaviour can be overridden at compile time by defining MULTI_CHECK_FAILPRINTF in multi_heap_platform.h.

**Return** true if heap is valid, false otherwise.

**Parameters**

- **heap**: Handle to a registered heap.
- **print_errors**: If true, errors will be printed to stderr.

```c
size_t multi_heap_free_size (multi_heap_handle_t heap)
```

Return free heap size.

Returns the number of bytes available in the heap.

Equivalent to the total_free_bytes member returned by multi_heap_get_heap_info().

Note that the heap may be fragmented, so the actual maximum size for a single malloc() may be lower. To know this size, see the largest_free_block member returned by multi_heap_get_heap_info().

**Return** Number of free bytes.

**Parameters**

- **heap**: Handle to a registered heap.

```c
size_t multi_heap_minimum_free_size (multi_heap_handle_t heap)
```

Return the lifetime minimum free heap size.

Equivalent to the minimum_free_bytes member returned by multi_heap_get_info().

Returns the lifetime “low watermark” of possible values returned from multi_free_heap_size(), for the specified heap.

**Return** Number of free bytes.

**Parameters**

- **heap**: Handle to a registered heap.

```c
void multi_heap_get_info (multi_heap_handle_t heap, multi_heap_info_t *info)
```

Return metadata about a given heap.

Fills a multi_heap_info_t structure with information about the specified heap.

**Parameters**

- **heap**: Handle to a registered heap.
- **info**: Pointer to a structure to fill with heap metadata.

**Structures**

```c
struct multi_heap_info_t
```

Structure to access heap metadata via multi_heap_get_info.
Public Members

size_t total_free_bytes
    Total free bytes in the heap. Equivalent to multi_free_heap_size().

size_t total_allocated_bytes
    Total bytes allocated to data in the heap.

size_t largest_free_block
    Size of the largest free block in the heap. This is the largest malloc-able size.

size_t minimum_free_bytes
    Lifetime minimum free heap size. Equivalent to multi_minimum_free_heap_size().

size_t allocated_blocks
    Number of (variable size) blocks allocated in the heap.

size_t free_blocks
    Number of (variable size) free blocks in the heap.

size_t total_blocks
    Total number of (variable size) blocks in the heap.

Type Definitions

typedef struct multi_heap_info *multi_heap_handle_t
    Opaque handle to a registered heap.

2.7.12 Heap Memory Debugging

Overview

ESP-IDF integrates tools for requesting heap information, detecting heap corruption, and tracing memory leaks. These can help track down memory-related bugs.

For general information about the heap memory allocator, see the Heap Memory Allocation page.

Heap Information

To obtain information about the state of the heap:

- xPortGetFreeHeapSize() is a FreeRTOS function which returns the number of free bytes in the (data memory) heap. This is equivalent to calling heap_caps_get_free_size(MALLOC_CAP_8BIT).
- heap_caps_get_free_size() can also be used to return the current free memory for different memory capabilities.
- heap_caps_get_largest_free_block() can be used to return the largest free block in the heap. This is the largest single allocation which is currently possible. Tracking this value and comparing to total free heap allows you to detect heap fragmentation.
- xPortGetMinimumEverFreeHeapSize() and the related heap_caps_get_minimum_free_size() can be used to track the heap “low watermark” since boot.
- heap_caps_get_info() returns a multi_heap_info_t structure which contains the information from the above functions, plus some additional heap-specific data (number of allocations, etc.).
- heap_caps_print_heap_info() prints a summary to stdout of the information returned by heap_caps_get_info().
- heap_caps_dump() and heap_caps_dump_all() will output detailed information about the structure of each block in the heap. Note that this can be large amount of output.
Heap Corruption Detection

Heap corruption detection allows you to detect various types of heap memory errors:

- Out of bounds writes & buffer overflow.
- Writes to freed memory.
- Reads from freed or uninitialized memory.

Assertions The heap implementation (multi_heap.c, etc.) includes a lot of assertions which will fail if the heap memory is corrupted. To detect heap corruption most effectively, ensure that assertions are enabled in the project configuration menu under Compiler options -> CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL.

If a heap integrity assertion fails, a line will be printed like CORRUPT HEAP: multi_heap.c:225 detected at 0x3ffbb71c. The memory address which is printed is the address of the heap structure which has corrupt content.

It’s also possible to manually check heap integrity by calling heap_caps_check_integrity_all() or related functions. This function checks all of requested heap memory for integrity, and can be used even if assertions are disabled. If the integrity check prints an error, it will also contain the address(es) of corrupt heap structures.

Memory Allocation Failed Hook Users can use heap_caps_register_failed_alloc_callback() to register a callback that will be invoked every time an allocation operation fails.

Additionally, users can enable the generation of a system abort if an allocation operation fails by following the steps below: - In the project configuration menu, navigate to Component config - Heap Memory Debugging and select Abort if memory allocation fails option (see CONFIG_HEAP_ABORT_WHEN_ALLOCATION_FAILS).

The example below shows how to register an allocation failure callback:

```c
#include "esp_heap_caps.h"

void heap_caps_alloc_failed_hook(size_t requested_size, uint32_t caps, const char* function_name)
{
    printf("%s was called but failed to allocate %d bytes with 0x%X capabilities. \n", function_name, requested_size, caps);
}

void app_main()
{
    ...  
    esp_err_t error = heap_caps_register_failed_alloc_callback(heap_caps_alloc_failed_hook);
    ...
    void *ptr = heap_caps_malloc(allocation_size, MALLOC_CAP_DEFAULT);
    ...
}
```

Finding Heap Corruption Memory corruption can be one of the hardest classes of bugs to find and fix, as one area of memory can be corrupted from a totally different place. Some tips:

- A crash with a CORRUPT HEAP: message will usually include a stack trace, but this stack trace is rarely useful. The crash is the symptom of memory corruption when the system realises the heap is corrupt, but usually the corruption happened elsewhere and earlier in time.
- Increasing the Heap memory debugging Configuration level to “Light impact” or “Comprehensive” can give you a more accurate message with the first corrupt memory address.
- Adding regular calls to heap_caps_check_integrity_all() or heap_caps_check_integrity_addr() in your code will help you pin down the exact time
that the corruption happened. You can move these checks around to “close in on” the section of code that corrupted the heap.

- Based on the memory address which is being corrupted, you can use **JTAG debugging** to set a watchpoint on this address and have the CPU halt when it is written to.
- If you don’t have JTAG, but you do know roughly when the corruption happens, then you can set a watchpoint in software just beforehand via `esp_cpu_set_watchpoint()`. A fatal exception will occur when the watchpoint triggers. The following is an example of how to use the function `- esp_cpu_set_watchpoint(0, (void *)addr, 4, ESP_WATCHPOINT_STORE)`. Note that watchpoints are per-CPU and are set on the current running CPU only, so if you don’t know which CPU is corrupting memory then you will need to call this function on both CPUs.

  - For buffer overflows, **heap tracing** in `HEAP_TRACE_ALL` mode lets you see which callers are allocating which addresses from the heap. See [Heap Tracing To Find Heap Corruption](#) for more details. If you can find the function which allocates memory with an address immediately before the address which is corrupted, this will probably be the function which overflows the buffer.

  - Calling `heap_caps_dump()` or `heap_caps_dump_all()` can give an indication of what heap blocks are surrounding the corrupted region and may have overflowed/underflowed/etc.

### Configuration

Temporarily increasing the heap corruption detection level can give more detailed information about heap corruption errors.

In the project configuration menu, under **Component config** there is a menu **Heap memory debugging**. The setting `CONFIG_HEAP_CORRUPTION_DETECTION` can be set to one of three levels:

**Basic (no poisoning)** This is the default level. No special heap corruption features are enabled, but provided assertions are enabled (the default configuration) then a heap corruption error will be printed if any of the heap’s internal data structures appear overwritten or corrupted. This usually indicates a buffer overrun or out of bounds write.

If assertions are enabled, an assertion will also trigger if a double-free occurs (the same memory is freed twice).

Calling `heap_caps_check_integrity()` in Basic mode will check the integrity of all heap structures, and print errors if any appear to be corrupted.

**Light Impact** At this level, heap memory is additionally “poisoned” with head and tail “canary bytes” before and after each block which is allocated. If an application writes outside the bounds of allocated buffers, the canary bytes will be corrupted and the integrity check will fail.

The head canary word is 0xABBA1234 (3412BAAB in byte order), and the tail canary word is 0xBAAD5678 (7856ADBA in byte order).

“Basic” heap corruption checks can also detect most out of bounds writes, but this setting is more precise as even a single byte overrun can be detected. With Basic heap checks, the number of overrun bytes before a failure is detected will depend on the properties of the heap.

Enabling “Light Impact” checking increases memory usage, each individual allocation will use 9 to 12 additional bytes of memory (depending on alignment).

Each time `free()` is called in Light Impact mode, the head and tail canary bytes of the buffer being freed are checked against the expected values.

When `heap_caps_check_integrity()` is called, all allocated blocks of heap memory have their canary bytes checked against the expected values.

In both cases, the check is that the first 4 bytes of an allocated block (before the buffer returned to the user) should be the word 0xABBA1234. Then the last 4 bytes of the allocated block (after the buffer returned to the user) should be the word 0xBAAD5678.

Different values usually indicate buffer underrun or overrun, respectively.
Comprehensive This level incorporates the “light impact” detection features plus additional checks for uninitialised-access and use-after-free bugs. In this mode, all freshly allocated memory is filled with the pattern 0xCE, and all freed memory is filled with the pattern 0xFE.

Enabling “Comprehensive” detection has a substantial runtime performance impact (as all memory needs to be set to the allocation patterns each time a malloc/free completes, and the memory also needs to be checked each time.) However, it allows easier detection of memory corruption bugs which are much more subtle to find otherwise. It is recommended to only enable this mode when debugging, not in production.

Crashes in Comprehensive Mode If an application crashes reading/writing an address related to 0xCECECECECE in Comprehensive mode, this indicates it has read uninitialized memory. The application should be changed to either use calloc() (which zeroes memory), or initialize the memory before using it. The value 0xCECECECECE may also be seen in stack-allocated automatic variables, because in IDF most task stacks are originally allocated from the heap and in C stack memory is uninitialized by default.

If an application crashes and the exception register dump indicates that some addresses or values were 0xFEFEFEFEFE, this indicates it is reading heap memory after it has been freed (a “use after free bug”). The application should be changed to not access heap memory after it has been freed.

If a call to malloc() or realloc() causes a crash because it expected to find the pattern 0xFEFEFEFE in free memory and a different pattern was found, then this indicates the app has a use-after-free bug where it is writing to memory which has already been freed.

Manual Heap Checks in Comprehensive Mode Calls to heap_caps_check_integrity() may print errors relating to 0xFEFEFEFEFE, 0xABBA1234 or 0xBAAD5678. In each case the checker is expecting to find a given pattern, and will error out if this is not found:

- For free heap blocks, the checker expects to find all bytes set to 0xFE. Any other values indicate a use-after-free bug where free memory has been incorrectly overwritten.
- For allocated heap blocks, the behaviour is the same as for Light Impact mode. The canary bytes 0xABBA1234 and 0xBAAD5678 are checked at the head and tail of each allocated buffer, and any variation indicates a buffer overrun/underrun.

Heap Task Tracking

Heap Task Tracking can be used to get per task info for heap memory allocation. Application has to specify the heap capabilities for which the heap allocation is to be tracked.

Example code is provided in system/heap_task_tracking

Heap Tracing

Heap Tracing allows tracing of code which allocates/frees memory. Two tracing modes are supported:

- Standalone. In this mode trace data are kept on-board, so the size of gathered information is limited by the buffer assigned for that purposes. Analysis is done by the on-board code. There are a couple of APIs available for accessing and dumping collected info.
- Host-based. This mode does not have the limitation of the standalone mode, because trace data are sent to the host over JTAG connection using app_trace library. Later on they can be analysed using special tools.

Heap tracing can perform two functions:

- Leak checking: find memory which is allocated and never freed.
- Heap use analysis: show all functions that are allocating/freeing memory while the trace is running.

How To Diagnose Memory Leaks If you suspect a memory leak, the first step is to figure out which part of the program is leaking memory. Use the xPortGetFreeHeapSize(), heap_caps_get_free_size(), or related functions to track memory use over the life of the application. Try to narrow the leak down to a single function or sequence of functions where free memory always decreases and never recovers.
**Standalone Mode**  Once you’ve identified the code which you think is leaking:

- In the project configuration menu, navigate to Component settings -> Heap Memory Debugging -> Heap tracing and select Standalone option (see `CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_DEST`).
- Call the function `heap_trace_init_standalone()` early in the program, to register a buffer which can be used to record the memory trace.
- Call the function `heap_trace_start()` to begin recording all mallocs/frees in the system. Call this immediately before the piece of code which you suspect is leaking memory.
- Call the function `heap_trace_stop()` to stop the trace once the suspect piece of code has finished executing.
- Call the function `heap_trace_dump()` to dump the results of the heap trace.

An example:

```c
#include "esp_heap_trace.h"

#define NUM_RECORDS 100
static heap_trace_record_t trace_record[NUM_RECORDS]; // This buffer must be in internal RAM
...

void app_main()
{
    ...
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_init_standalone(trace_record, NUM_RECORDS) );
    ...
}

void some_function()
{
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_start(HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS) );
    do_something_you_suspect_is_leaking();
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_stop() );
    heap_trace_dump();
    ...
}
```

The output from the heap trace will look something like this:

```
2 allocations trace (100 entry buffer)
32 bytes (@ 0x3ffaf214) allocated CPU 0 ccount 0x2e9b7384 caller __0x400d276d:0x400d27c1
0x400d276d: leak_some_memory at /path/to/idf/examples/get-started/blink/main/.//blink.c:27
0x400d27c1: blink_task at /path/to/idf/examples/get-started/blink/main/.//blink.c:52
8 bytes (@ 0x3ffaf804) allocated CPU 0 ccount 0x2e9b79c0 caller __0x400d2776:0x400d27c1
0x400d2776: leak_some_memory at /path/to/idf/examples/get-started/blink/main/.//blink.c:29
0x400d27c1: blink_task at /path/to/idf/examples/get-started/blink/main/.//blink.c:52
40 bytes 'leaked' in trace (2 allocations)
total allocations 2 total frees 0
```

(Above example output is using IDF Monitor to automatically decode PC addresses to their source files & line number.)

The first line indicates how many allocation entries are in the buffer, compared to its total size.
In \texttt{HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS} mode, for each traced memory allocation which has not already been freed a line is printed with:

- \texttt{XX bytes} is the number of bytes allocated.
- \texttt{@ 0x...} is the heap address returned from \texttt{malloc}/\texttt{calloc}.
- \texttt{CPU x} is the CPU (0 or 1) running when the allocation was made.
- \texttt{ccount 0x...} is the \texttt{CCOUNT} (CPU cycle count) register value when the allocation was made. Is different for CPU 0 vs CPU 1.
- \texttt{caller 0x...} gives the call stack of the call to \texttt{malloc()}/\texttt{free()}, as a list of PC addresses. These can be decoded to source files and line numbers, as shown above.

The depth of the call stack recorded for each trace entry can be configured in the project configuration menu, under \texttt{Heap Memory Debugging -\rightarrow Enable heap tracing -\rightarrow Heap tracing stack depth}. Up to 10 stack frames can be recorded for each allocation (the default is 2). Each additional stack frame increases the memory usage of each \texttt{heap_trace_record_t} record by eight bytes.

Finally, the total number of ‘leaked’ bytes (bytes allocated but not freed while trace was running) is printed, and the total number of allocations this represents.

A warning will be printed if the trace buffer was not large enough to hold all the allocations which happened. If you see this warning, consider either shortening the tracing period or increasing the number of records in the trace buffer.

\textbf{Host-Based Mode}  
Once you’ve identified the code which you think is leaking:

- In the project configuration menu, navigate to \texttt{Component settings -\rightarrow Heap Memory Debugging -\rightarrow CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_DEST} and select \texttt{Host-Based}.
- In the project configuration menu, navigate to \texttt{Component settings -\rightarrow Application Level Tracing -\rightarrow CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION} and select Trace memory.
- In the project configuration menu, navigate to \texttt{Component settings -\rightarrow Application Level Tracing -\rightarrow FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing} and enable \texttt{CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE}.
- Call the function \texttt{heap_trace_init_tohost()} early in the program, to initialize JTAG heap tracing module.
- Call the function \texttt{heap_trace_start()} to begin recording all \texttt{malloc}/\texttt{free}s in the system. Call this immediately before the piece of code which you suspect is leaking memory. In host-based mode, the argument to this function is ignored, and the heap tracing module behaves like \texttt{HEAP_TRACE_ALL} was passed: all allocations and deallocations are sent to the host.
- Call the function \texttt{heap_trace_stop()} to stop the trace once the suspect piece of code has finished executing.

An example:

```c
#include "esp_heap_trace.h"

... void app_main()
{
    ... 
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_init_tohost() );
    ... 
}

void some_function()
{
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_start(HEAP_TRACELeaks) );
    do_something_you_suspect_is_leaking();
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_stop() );
    ...
}
```
To gather and analyse heap trace do the following on the host:

1. Build the program and download it to the target as described in *Getting Started Guide*.
2. Run OpenOCD (see *JTAG Debugging*).

### Note
In order to use this feature you need OpenOCD version v0.10.0-esp32-20181105 or later.

3. You can use GDB to start and/or stop tracing automatically. To do this you need to prepare special `gdbinit` file:

   ```
   target remote :3333
   mon reset halt
   flushregs
   tb heap_trace_start
   commands
   mon esp sysview start file:///tmp/heap.svdat
   c
   tb heap_trace_stop
   commands
   mon esp sysview stop
   end
   c
   ```

Using this file GDB will connect to the target, reset it, and start tracing when program hits breakpoint at `heap_trace_start()`. Trace data will be saved to `/tmp/heap_log.svdat`. Tracing will be stopped when program hits breakpoint at `heap_trace_stop()`.

4. Run GDB using the following command `xtensa-esp32-elf-gdb -x gdbinit </path/to/program/elf>`
5. Quit GDB when program stops at `heap_trace_stop()`. Trace data are saved in `/tmp/heap.svdat`
6. Run processing script `$IDF_PATH/tools/esp_app_trace/sysviewtrace_proc.py -p -b </path/to/program/elf> /tmp/heap_log.svdat`

The output from the heap trace will look something like this:

```plaintext
Parse trace from '/tmp/heap.svdat'...
Stop parsing trace. (Timeout 0.000000 sec while reading 1 bytes!)
Process events from '/tmp/heap.svdat'...
[0.002245757] HEAP: Allocated 1 bytes @ 0x3ffaffd8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
   /sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.002258425] HEAP: Allocated 2 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
   /sysview_heap_log.c:48
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.002563725] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffaffe0 from task "free" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
   /sysview_heap_log.c:31 (discriminator 9)
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.002782950] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffb40b8 from task "main" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.c:4590
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.c:4590
```

(下页继续)
Processing completed.
Processed 1019 events
--------------------- HEAP TRACE REPORT ---------------------
Processed 14 heap events.

[0.002798700] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ff50bc from task "main" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.c:4590
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.c:4590

[0.102436025] HEAP: Allocated 2 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.102449800] HEAP: Allocated 4 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:48
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.102666150] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffaffe8 from task "free" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:31 (discriminator 9)
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.202436200] HEAP: Allocated 3 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.202451725] HEAP: Allocated 6 bytes @ 0x3ffafff0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:48
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.202667075] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffafff0 from task "free" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:31 (discriminator 9)
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.302436000] HEAP: Allocated 4 bytes @ 0x3ffafff0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.302451475] HEAP: Allocated 8 bytes @ 0x3ffbf4b8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:48
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.302667500] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffbf4b8 from task "free" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:31 (discriminator 9)
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

Processing completed.
Processed 1019 events
--------------------- HEAP TRACE REPORT ---------------------
Processed 14 heap events.

[0.002244575] HEAP: Allocated 1 bytes @ 0x3ffa8d8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.102436025] HEAP: Allocated 2 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
~sysview_heap_log.c:47
Heap Tracing To Find Heap Corruption

Heap tracing can also be used to help track down heap corruption. When a region in heap is corrupted, it may be from some other part of the program which allocated memory at a nearby address.

If you have some idea at what time the corruption occurred, enabling heap tracing in `HEAP_TRACE_ALL` mode allows you to record all the functions which allocated memory, and the addresses of the allocations.

Using heap tracing in this way is very similar to memory leak detection as described above. For memory which is allocated and not freed, the output is the same. However, records will also be shown for memory which has been freed.

Performance Impact

Enabling heap tracing in menuconfig increases the code size of your program, and has a very small negative impact on performance of heap allocation/free operations even when heap tracing is not running.

When heap tracing is running, heap allocation/free operations are substantially slower than when heap tracing is stopped. Increasing the depth of stack frames recorded for each allocation (see above) will also increase this performance impact.

False-Positive Memory Leaks

Not everything printed by `heap_trace_dump()` is necessarily a memory leak. Among things which may show up here, but are not memory leaks:

- Any memory which is allocated after `heap_trace_start()` but then freed after `heap_trace_stop()` will appear in the leak dump.
- Allocations may be made by other tasks in the system. Depending on the timing of these tasks, it’s quite possible this memory is freed after `heap_trace_stop()` is called.
- The first time a task uses `stdio` - for example, when it calls `printf()` - a lock (RTOS mutex semaphore) is allocated by the libc. This allocation lasts until the task is deleted.
- Certain uses of `printf()`, such as printing floating point numbers, will allocate some memory from the heap on demand. These allocations last until the task is deleted.
- The Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and TCP/IP libraries will allocate heap memory buffers to handle incoming or outgoing data. These memory buffers are usually short-lived, but some may be shown in the heap leak trace if the data was received/transmitted by the lower levels of the network while the leak trace was running.
- TCP connections will continue to use some memory after they are closed, because of the `TIME_WAIT` state. After the `TIME_WAIT` period has completed, this memory will be freed.

One way to differentiate between “real” and “false positive” memory leaks is to call the suspect code multiple times while tracing is running, and look for patterns (multiple matching allocations) in the heap trace output.

API Reference - Heap Tracing

Header File

- components/heap/include/esp_heap_trace.h
Chapter 2. API 参考

Functions

`esp_err_t heap_trace_init_standalone (heap_trace_record_t *record_buffer, size_t num_records)`

Initialise heap tracing in standalone mode.

This function must be called before any other heap tracing functions.

To disable heap tracing and allow the buffer to be freed, stop tracing and then call `heap_trace_init_standalone(NULL, 0);`

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing is currently in progress.
- ESP_OK Heap tracing initialised successfully.

Parameters

- `record_buffer`: Provide a buffer to use for heap trace data. Must remain valid any time heap tracing is enabled, meaning it must be allocated from internal memory not in PSRAM.
- `num_records`: Size of the heap trace buffer, as number of record structures.

`esp_err_t heap_trace_init_tohost (void)`

Initialise heap tracing in host-based mode.

This function must be called before any other heap tracing functions.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing is currently in progress.
- ESP_OK Heap tracing initialised successfully.

`esp_err_t heap_trace_start (heap_trace_mode_t mode)`

Start heap tracing. All heap allocations & frees will be traced, until `heap_trace_stop()` is called.

Note heap_trace_init_standalone() must be called to provide a valid buffer, before this function is called.

Note Calling this function while heap tracing is running will reset the heap trace state and continue tracing.

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE A non-zero-length buffer has not been set via heap_trace_init_standalone().
- ESP_OK Tracing is started.

Parameters

- `mode`: Mode for tracing.
  - HEAP_TRACE_ALL means all heap allocations and frees are traced.
  - HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS means only suspected memory leaks are traced. (When memory is freed, the record is removed from the trace buffer.)

`esp_err_t heap_trace_stop (void)`

Stop heap tracing.

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing was not in progress.
- ESP_OK Heap tracing stopped..

`esp_err_t heap_trace_resume (void)`

Resume heap tracing which was previously stopped.

Unlike heap_trace_start(), this function does not clear the buffer of any pre-existing trace records.

The heap trace mode is the same as when heap_trace_start() was last called (or HEAP_TRACE_ALL if heap_trace_start() was never called).

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing was already started.
- ESP_OK Heap tracing resumed.

`size_t heap_trace_get_count (void)`

Return number of records in the heap trace buffer.
It is safe to call this function while heap tracing is running.

```c
esp_err_t heap_trace_get(size_t index, heap_trace_record_t *record)
```

Return a raw record from the heap trace buffer.

**Note** It is safe to call this function while heap tracing is running, however in HEAP_TRACE_LEAK mode record indexing may skip entries unless heap tracing is stopped first.

**Return**
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing was not initialised.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Index is out of bounds for current heap trace record count.
- ESP_OK Record returned successfully.

**Parameters**
- `index`: Index (zero-based) of the record to return.
- `record`: Record where the heap trace record will be copied.

```c
void heap_trace_dump(void)
```

Dump heap trace record data to stdout.

**Note** It is safe to call this function while heap tracing is running, however in HEAP_TRACE_LEAK mode the dump may skip entries unless heap tracing is stopped first.

**Structures**

```c
struct heap_trace_record_t
```

Trace record data type. Stores information about an allocated region of memory.

**Public Members**

```c
uint32_t ccount
```

C_COUNT of the CPU when the allocation was made. LSB (bit value 1) is the CPU number (0 or 1).

```c
void *address
```

Address which was allocated.

```c
size_t size
```

Size of the allocation.

```c
void *allocated_by[CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH]
```

Call stack of the caller which allocated the memory.

```c
void *freed_by[CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH]
```

Call stack of the caller which freed the memory (all zero if not freed.)

**Macros**

```c
CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH
```

**Enumerations**

```c
enum heap_trace_mode_t
```

Values:
- `HEAP_TRACE_ALL`
- `HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS`

---

**2.7.13 High Resolution Timer**

**Overview**

Although FreeRTOS provides software timers, these timers have a few limitations:
• Maximum resolution is equal to RTOS tick period
• Timer callbacks are dispatched from a low-priority task

Hardware timers are free from both of the limitations, but often they are less convenient to use. For example, application components may need timer events to fire at certain times in the future, but the hardware timer only contains one “compare” value used for interrupt generation. This means that some facility needs to be built on top of the hardware timer to manage the list of pending events can dispatch the callbacks for these events as corresponding hardware interrupts happen.

An interrupt level of the handler depends on the `CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_INTERRUPT_LEVEL` option. It allows to set this: 1, 2 or 3 level (by default 1). Raising the level, the interrupt handler can reduce the timer processing delay.

Internally, `esp_timer` set of APIs provides one-shot and periodic timers, microsecond time resolution, and 64-bit range.

Using `esp_timer` APIs

Single timer is represented by `esp_timer_handle_t` type. Timer has a callback function associated with it. This callback function is called from the `esp_timer` task each time the timer elapses.

• To create a timer, call `esp_timer_create()`.  
• To delete the timer when it is no longer needed, call `esp_timer_delete()`.  

The timer can be started in one-shot mode or in periodic mode.

• To start the timer in one-shot mode, call `esp_timer_start_once()`, passing the time interval after which the callback should be called. When the callback gets called, the timer is considered to be stopped.  
• To start the timer in periodic mode, call `esp_timer_start_periodic()`, passing the period with which the callback should be called. The timer keeps running until `esp_timer_stop()` is called.
Note that the timer must not be running when `esp_timer_start_once()` or `esp_timer_start_periodic()` is called. To restart a running timer, call `esp_timer_stop()` first, then call one of the start functions.

**Callback functions**

Callback functions should be kept as short as possible otherwise it will affect all timers.

Timer callbacks which are processed by `ESP_TIMER_ISR` method should not call the context switch call `- portYIELD_FROM_ISR()`. Instead of this you should use the `esp_timer_isr_dispatch_need_yield()` function. The context switch will be done after all ISR dispatch timers have been processed, if required by the system.

**esp_timer during the light sleep**

During light sleep, the esp_timer counter stops and no callback functions are called. Instead, the time is counted by the RTC counter. Upon waking up, the system gets the difference between the counters and calls a function that advances the esp_timer counter. Since the counter has been advanced, the system starts calling callbacks that were not called during sleep. The number of callbacks depends on the duration of the sleep and the period of the timers. It can lead to overflow of some queues. This only applies to periodic timers, one-shot timers will be called once.

This behavior can be changed by calling `esp_timer_stop()` before sleeping. In some cases, this can be inconvenient, and instead of the stop function, you can use the `skip_unhandled_events` option during `esp_timer_create()`. When the `skip_unhandled_events` is true, if a periodic timer expires one or more times during light sleep then only one callback is called on wake.

Using the `skip_unhandled_events` option with automatic light sleep (see Power Management APIs) helps to reduce the consumption of the system when it is in light sleep. The duration of light sleep is also determined by esp_timers. Timers with `skip_unhandled_events` option will not wake up the system.

**Handling callbacks**

esp_timer is designed to achieve a high-resolution low latency timer and the ability to handle delayed events. If the timer is late then the callback will be called as soon as possible, it will not be lost. In the worst case, when the timer has not been processed for more than one period (for periodic timers), in this case the callbacks will be called one after the other without waiting for the set period. This can be bad for some applications, and the `skip_unhandled_events` option was introduced to eliminate this behavior. If `skip_unhandled_events` is set then a periodic timer that has expired multiple times without being able to call the callback will still result in only one callback event once processing is possible.

**Obtaining Current Time**

`esp_timer` also provides a convenience function to obtain the time passed since start-up, with microsecond precision: `esp_timer_get_time()`. This function returns the number of microseconds since `esp_timer` was initialized, which usually happens shortly before `app_main` function is called.

Unlike `gettimeofday()` function, values returned by `esp_timer_get_time()`:

- Start from zero after the chip wakes up from deep sleep
- Do not have timezone or DST adjustments applied

**Application Example**

The following example illustrates usage of `esp_timer` APIs: system/esp_timer.
API Reference

Header File
- components/esp_timer/include/esp_timer.h

Functions

- **esp_err_t esp_timer_early_init (void)**
  Minimal initialization of esp_timer.
  
  This function can be called very early in startup process, after this call only esp_timer_get_time function can be used.

  **Note** This function is called from startup code. Applications do not need to call this function before using other esp_timer APIs.

  **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success

- **esp_err_t esp_timer_init (void)**
  Initialize esp_timer library.

  **Note** This function is called from startup code. Applications do not need to call this function before using other esp_timer APIs. Before calling this function, esp_timer_early_init must be called by the startup code.

  **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocation has failed
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already initialized
  - other errors from interrupt allocator

- **esp_err_t esp_timer_deinit (void)**
  De-initialize esp_timer library.

  **Note** Normally this function should not be called from applications

  **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not yet initialized

- **esp_err_t esp_timer_create (const esp_timer_create_args_t *create_args, esp_timer_handle_t *out_handle)**
  Create an esp_timer instance.

  **Note** When done using the timer, delete it with esp_timer_delete function.

  **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if some of the create_args are not valid
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_timer library is not initialized yet
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if memory allocation fails

  **Parameters**
  - create_args: Pointer to a structure with timer creation arguments. Not saved by the library, can be allocated on the stack.
  - [out] out_handle: Output, pointer to esp_timer_handle_t variable which will hold the created timer handle.

- **esp_err_t esp_timer_start_once (esp_timer_handle_t timer, uint64_t timeout_us)**
  Start one-shot timer.

  Timer should not be running when this function is called.

  **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is invalid
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the timer is already running

  **Parameters**
Chapter 2. API

- timer: timer handle created using esp_timer_create
- timeout_us: timer timeout, in microseconds relative to the current moment

\[
\text{esp_err_t esp_timer_start_periodic}(\text{esp_timer_handle_t timer, uint64_t period})
\]

Start a periodic timer.

Timer should not be running when this function is called. This function will start the timer which will trigger every \( \text{period} \) microseconds.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the timer is already running

Parameters

- timer: timer handle created using esp_timer_create
- period: timer period, in microseconds

\[
\text{esp_err_t esp_timer_stop}(\text{esp_timer_handle_t timer})
\]

Stop the timer.

This function stops the timer previously started using esp_timer_start_once or esp_timer_start_periodic.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the timer is not running

Parameters

- timer: timer handle created using esp_timer_create

\[
\text{esp_err_t esp_timer_delete}(\text{esp_timer_handle_t timer})
\]

Delete an esp_timer instance.

The timer must be stopped before deleting. A one-shot timer which has expired does not need to be stopped.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the timer is running

Parameters

- timer: timer handle allocated using esp_timer_create

\[
\text{int64_t esp_timer_get_time}(\text{void})
\]

Get time in microseconds since boot.

Return number of microseconds since underlying timer has been started

\[
\text{int64_t esp_timer_get_next_alarm}(\text{void})
\]

Get the timestamp when the next timeout is expected to occur.

Return Timestamp of the nearest timer event, in microseconds. The timebase is the same as for the values returned by esp_timer_get_time.

\[
\text{int64_t esp_timer_get_next_alarm_for_wake_up}(\text{void})
\]

Get the timestamp when the next timeout is expected to occur skipping those which have skip_unhandled_events flag.

Return Timestamp of the nearest timer event, in microseconds. The timebase is the same as for the values returned by esp_timer_get_time.

\[
\text{esp_err_t esp_timer_get_period}(\text{esp_timer_handle_t timer, uint64_t *period})
\]

Get the period of a timer.

This function fetches the timeout period of a timer.

Note The timeout period is the time interval with which a timer restarts after expiry. For one-shot timers, the period is 0 as there is no periodicity associated with such timers.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the arguments are invalid
Parameters
- **timer**: timer handle allocated using esp_timer_create
- **period**: memory to store the timer period value in microseconds

```c
esp_err_t esp_timer_get_expiry_time(esp_timer_handle_t timer, uint64_t* expiry)
```

Get the expiry time of a one-shot timer.

**Note** This API returns a valid expiry time only for a one-shot timer. It returns an error if the timer handle passed to the function is for a periodic timer.

**Return**
- **ESP_OK** on success
- **ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG** if the arguments are invalid
- **ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED** if the timer type is periodic

**Parameters**
- **timer**: timer handle allocated using esp_timer_create
- **expiry**: memory to store the timeout value in microseconds

```c
esp_err_t esp_timer_dump(FILE* stream)
```

Dump the list of timers to a stream.

If CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING option is enabled, this prints the list of all the existing timers. Otherwise, only the list active timers is printed.

The format is:

```
name period alarm_time times_armed times_triggered total_callback_run_time
```

where:

- **name**: timer name (if CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING is defined), or timer pointer
- **period**: period of timer, in microseconds, or 0 for one-shot timer
- **alarm_time**: time of the next alarm, in microseconds since boot, or 0 if the timer is not started

The following fields are printed if CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING is defined:

- **times_armed**: number of times the timer was armed via esp_timer_start_X
- **times_triggered**: number of times the callback was called
- **total_callback_run_time**: total time taken by callback to execute, across all calls

**Return**
- **ESP_OK** on success
- **ESP_ERR_NO_MEM** if cannot allocate temporary buffer for the output

**Parameters**
- **stream**: stream (such as stdout) to dump the information to

```c
bool esp_timer_is_active(esp_timer_handle_t timer)
```

Returns status of a timer, active or not.

This function is used to identify if the timer is still active or not.

**Return**
- **1** if timer is still active
- **0** if timer is not active.

**Parameters**
- **timer**: timer handle created using esp_timer_create

**Structures**

```c
struct esp_timer_create_args_t
```

Timer configuration passed to esp_timer_create.
Public Members

```c
struct esp_timer_cb_t
{
    Function to call when timer expires.

    void *arg
    Argument to pass to the callback.

    esp_timer_dispatch_t dispatch_method
    Call the callback from task or from ISR.

    const char *name
    Timer name, used in esp_timer_dump function.

    bool skip_unhandled_events
    Skip unhandled events for periodic timers.
```

Type Definitions

```c
typedef struct esp_timer *esp_timer_handle_t

Opaque type representing a single esp_timer.

typedef void (*esp_timer_cb_t)(void *arg)

Timer callback function type.
```

Parameters

- **arg**: pointer to opaque user-specific data

Enumerations

```c
enum esp_timer_dispatch_t

Method for dispatching timer callback.

Values:

ESP_TIMER_TASK
    Callback is called from timer task.

ESP_TIMER_MAX
    Count of the methods for dispatching timer callback.
```

2.7.14 The himem allocation API

Overview

The ESP32 can access external SPI RAM transparently, so you can use it as normal memory in your program code. However, because the address space for external memory is limited in size, only the first 4MiB can be used as such. Access to the remaining memory is still possible, however this needs to go through a bankswitching scheme controlled by the himem API.

Specifically, what is implemented by the himem API is a bankswitching scheme. Hardware-wise, the 4MiB region for external SPI RAM is mapped into the CPU address space by a MMU, which maps a configurable 32K bank/page of external SPI RAM into each of the 32K pages in the 4MiB region accessed by the CPU. For external memories that are <=4MiB, this MMU is configured to unity mapping, effectively mapping each CPU address 1-to-1 to the external SPI RAM address.

In order to use the himem API, you have to enable it in the menuconfig using `CONFIG_SPIRAM_BANKSWITCH_ENABLE`, as well as set the amount of banks reserved for this in `CONFIG_SPIRAM_BANKSWITCH_RESERVE`. This decreases the amount of external memory allocated by functions like `malloc()`, but it allows you to use the himem api to map any of the remaining memory into the reserved banks.

The himem API is more-or-less an abstraction of the bankswitching scheme: it allows you to claim one or more banks of address space (called ‘regions’ in the API) as well as one or more of banks of memory to map into the ranges.
Example

An example doing a simple memory test of the high memory range is available in esp-idf: `system/himem`

API Reference

Header File

- `components/esp_hw_support/include/soc/esp32/himem.h`

Functions

`esp_err_t esp_himem_alloc(size_t size, esp_himem_handle_t *handle_out)`

Allocate a block in high memory.

Return - ESP_OK if successful
  - ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size is not a multiple of 32K

Parameters
- `size`: Size of the to-be-allocated block, in bytes. Note that this needs to be a multiple of the external RAM mmu block size (32K).
- `[out] handle_out`: Handle to be returned

`esp_err_t esp_himem_alloc_map_range(size_t size, esp_himem_rangehandle_t *handle_out)`

Allocate a memory region to map blocks into.

This allocates a contiguous CPU memory region that can be used to map blocks of physical memory into.

Return - ESP_OK if successful
  - ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory or address space
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size is not a multiple of 32K

Parameters
- `size`: Size of the range to be allocated. Note this needs to be a multiple of the external RAM mmu block size (32K).
- `[out] handle_out`: Handle to be returned

`esp_err_t esp_himem_map(esp_himem_handle_t handle, esp_himem_rangehandle_t range, size_t ram_offset, size_t range_offset, size_t len, int flags, void **out_ptr)`

Map a block of high memory into the CPUs address space.

This effectively makes the block available for read/write operations.

Note The region to be mapped needs to have offsets and sizes that are aligned to the SPI RAM MMU block size (32K)

Return - ESP_OK if the memory could be mapped
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if offset, range or len aren’t MMU-block-aligned (32K)
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if the offsets/lengths don’t fit in the allocated memory or range
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if a block in the selected ram offset/length is already mapped, or if a block in the selected range offset/length already has a mapping.

Parameters
- `handle`: Handle to the block of memory, as given by esp_himem_alloc
- `range`: Range handle to map the memory in
- `ram_offset`: Offset into the block of physical memory of the block to map
- `range_offset`: Offset into the address range where the block will be mapped
- `len`: Length of region to map
- `flags`: One of ESP_HIMEM_MAPFLAG_*
- `[out] out_ptr`: Pointer to variable to store resulting memory pointer in

`esp_err_t esp_himem_free(esp_himem_handle_t handle)`

Free a block of physical memory.

This clears out the associated handle making the memory available for re-allocation again. This will only succeed if none of the memory blocks currently have a mapping.
Chapter 2. API Reference

Return - ESP_OK if the memory is successfully freed
  • ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle still is (partially) mapped

Parameters
  • handle: Handle to the block of memory, as given by esp_himem_alloc

`esp_err_t esp_himem_free_map_range (esp_himem_rangehandle_t handle)`
Free a mapping range.

This clears out the associated handle making the range available for re-allocation again. This will only succeed if none of the range blocks currently are used for a mapping.

Return - ESP_OK if the memory is successfully freed
  • ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle still is (partially) mapped to

Parameters
  • handle: Handle to the block range, as given by esp_himem_alloc_map_range

`esp_err_t esp_himem_unmap (esp_himem_rangehandle_t range, void *ptr, size_t len)`
Unmap a region.

Return - ESP_OK if the memory is successfully unmapped,
  • ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if ptr or len are invalid.

Parameters
  • range: Range handle
  • ptr: Pointer returned by esp_himem_map
  • len: Length of the block to be unmapped. Must be aligned to the SPI RAM MMU blocksize (32K)

`size_t esp_himem_get_phys_size (void)`
Get total amount of memory under control of himem API.

Return Amount of memory, in bytes

`size_t esp_himem_get_free_size (void)`
Get free amount of memory under control of himem API.

Return Amount of free memory, in bytes

`size_t esp_himem_reserved_area_size (void)`
Get amount of SPI memory address space needed for bankswitching.

Note This is also weakly defined in esp32/spiram.c and returns 0 there, so if no other function in this file is used, no memory is reserved.

Return Amount of reserved area, in bytes

Macros

`ESP_HIMEM_BLK_SZ`
`ESP_HIMEM_MAPFLAG_RO`
Indicates that a mapping will only be read from. Note that this is unused for now.

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_himem_ramdata_t *esp_himem_handle_t

typedef struct esp_himem_rangedata_t *esp_himem_rangehandle_t

2.7.15 Inter-Processor Call

Note: The IPC is an Inter-Processor Call and NOT Inter-Process Communication as found on other operating systems.
Overview

Due to the dual core nature of the ESP32, there are instances where a certain callback must be run in the context of a particular CPU such as:

• When allocating an ISR to an interrupt source of a particular CPU (applies to freeing a particular CPU’s interrupt source as well).
• On particular chips (such as the ESP32), accessing memory that is exclusive to a particular CPU (such as RTC Fast Memory).
• Reading the registers/state of another CPU.

The IPC (Inter-Processor Call) feature allows a particular CPU (the calling CPU) to trigger the execution of a callback function on another CPU (the target CPU). The IPC feature allows execution of a callback function on the target CPU in either a task context, or a High Priority Interrupt context (see High-Level Interrupts for more details). Depending on the context that the callback function is executed in, different restrictions apply to the implementation of the callback function.

IPC in Task Context

The IPC feature implements callback execution in a task context by creating an IPC task for each CPU during application startup. When the calling CPU needs to execute a callback on the target CPU, the callback will execute in the context of the target CPU’s IPC task.

When using IPCs in a task context, users need to consider the following:

• IPC callbacks should ideally be simple and short. An IPC callback should avoid attempting to block or yield.
• The IPC tasks are created at the highest possible priority (i.e., configMAX_PRIORITIES – 1) thus the callback should also run at that priority as a result. However, CONFIG_ESP_IPC_USES_CALLERS_PRIORITY is enabled by default which will temporarily lower the priority of the target CPU’s IPC task to the calling CPU before executing the callback.
• Depending on the complexity of the callback, users may need to configure the stack size of the IPC task via CONFIG_ESP_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE.
• The IPC feature is internally protected by a mutex. Therefore, simultaneous IPC calls from two or more calling CPUs will be handled on a first come first serve basis.

API Usage Task Context IPC callbacks have the following restrictions:

• The callback must be of type void func(void *arg)
• The callback should avoid attempting to block or yielding as this will result in the target CPU’s IPC task blocking or yielding.
• The callback must avoid changing any aspect of the IPC task (e.g., by calling vTaskPrioritySet(NULL, x)).

The IPC feature offers the API listed below to execute a callback in a task context on a target CPU. The API allows the calling CPU to block until the callback’s execution has completed, or return immediately once the callback’s execution has started.

• esp_ipc_call() will trigger an IPC call on the target CPU. This function will block until the target CPU’s IPC task begins execution of the callback.
• esp_ipc_call_blocking() will trigger an IPC on the target CPU. This function will block until the target CPU’s IPC task completes execution of the callback.

IPC in ISR Context

In some cases, we need to quickly obtain the state of another CPU such as in a core dump, GDB stub, various unit tests, and DPORT workaround. For such scenarios, the IPC feature supports execution of callbacks in a High Priority Interrupt context. The IPC feature implements the High Priority Interrupt context by reserving a High Priority Interrupt context.
Interrupt on each CPU for IPC usage. When a calling CPU needs to execute a callback on the target CPU, the callback will execute in the context of the High Priority Interrupt of the target CPU.

When using IPCs in High Priority Interrupt context, users need to consider the following:

- Since the callback is executed in a High Priority Interrupt context, the callback must be written entirely in assembly. See the API Usage below for more details regarding writing assembly callbacks.
- The priority of the reserved High Priority Interrupt is dependent on the `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL` option.

**When the callback executes:**
- The calling CPU will disable interrupts of level 3 and lower.
- Although the priority of the reserved interrupt depends on `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL`, during the execution IPC ISR callback, the target CPU will disable interrupts of level 5 and lower regardless of what `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL` is set to.

**API Usage**  
High Priority Interrupt IPC callbacks have the following restrictions:

- The callback must be of type `void func(void *arg)` but implemented entirely in assembly.
- The callback is invoked via the `CALLX0` instruction with register windowing disabled, thus the callback:
  - Must not call any register window related instructions (e.g., `entry` and `retw`).
  - Must not call other C functions as register windowing is disabled.
- The callback should be placed in IRAM at a 4-byte aligned address.
- (On invocation of/after returning from) the callback, the registers `a2`, `a3`, `a4` are (saved/restored) automatically thus:
  - `a2` will contain the `void *arg` of the callback
  - `a3/a4` are free to use as scratch registers.

The IPC feature offers the API listed below to execute a callback in a High Priority Interrupt context.

- `esp_ipc_isr_asm_call()` will trigger an IPC call on the target CPU. This function will busy-wait until the target CPU begins execution of the callback.
- `esp_ipc_isr_asm_call_blocking()` will trigger an IPC call on the target CPU. This function will busy-wait until the target CPU completes execution of the callback.

The following code-blocks demonstrates a High Priority Interrupt IPC callback written in assembly that simply reads the target CPU’s cycle count.

```c
/* esp_test_ipc_isr_get_cycle_count_other_cpu(void *arg) */
// this function reads CCOUNT of the target CPU and stores it in arg.
// use only a2, a3 and a4 regs here.
.section .iram1, "ax"
.align 4
.global esp_test_ipc_isr_get_cycle_count_other_cpu
.type esp_test_ipc_isr_get_cycle_count_other_cpu, @function
// Args:
// a2 - void* arg
esp_test_ipc_isr_get_cycle_count_other_cpu:
rsr.ccount a3
s32i a3, a2, 0
ret

unit32_t cycle_count;
esp_ipc_isr_asm_call_blocking(esp_test_ipc_isr_get_cycle_count_other_cpu, (void *)__wcs_cycle_count);
```

**Note:** The number of scratch registers available for use is sufficient for most simple use cases. But if your callback requires more scratch registers, `void *arg` can point to a buffer that is used as a register save area. The callback can then save and restore more registers. See the `system/ipc/ipc_isr`.
Chapter 2. API 参考

For more examples of High Priority Interrupt IPC callbacks, see components/esp_system/port/arch/xtensa/esp_ipc_isr_routines.S and components/esp_system/test/test_ipc_isr.S

The High Priority Interrupt IPC API also provides the following convenience functions that can stall/resume the target CPU. These API utilize the High Priority Interrupt IPC, but supply their own internal callbacks:

- `esp_ipc_isr_stall_other_cpu()` stalls the target CPU. The calling CPU disables interrupts of level 3 and lower while the target CPU will busy-wait with interrupts of level 5 and lower disabled. The target CPU will busy-wait until `esp_ipc_isr_release_other_cpu()` is called.
- `esp_ipc_isr_release_other_cpu()` resumes the target CPU.

### API Reference

#### Header File

- components/esp_system/include/esp_ipc.h

#### Functions

- **`esp_err_t esp_ipc_call(uint32_t cpu_id, esp_ipc_func_t func, void *arg)`**
  
  Execute a callback on a given CPU.
  
  Execute a given callback on a particular CPU. The callback must be of type `esp_ipc_func_t` and will be invoked in the context of the target CPU’s IPC task.
  
  - This function will block the target CPU’s IPC task has begun execution of the callback
  - If another IPC call is ongoing, this function will block until the ongoing IPC call completes
  - The stack size of the IPC task can be configured via the `CONFIG_ESP_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE` option
  
  **Note** In single-core mode, returns ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG for cpu_id 1.

  **Return**
  
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if cpu_id is invalid
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the FreeRTOS scheduler is not running
  - ESP_OK otherwise

- **`esp_err_t esp_ipc_call_blocking(uint32_t cpu_id, esp_ipc_func_t func, void *arg)`**
  
  Execute a callback on a given CPU until and block until it completes.
  
  This function is identical to esp_ipc_call() except that this function will block until the execution of the callback completes.
  
  **Note** In single-core mode, returns ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG for cpu_id 1.

  **Return**
  
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if cpu_id is invalid
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the FreeRTOS scheduler is not running
  - ESP_OK otherwise

- **`typedef void (*esp_ipc_func_t)(void *arg)`**

  IPC Callback.
A callback of this type should be provided as an argument when calling esp_ipc_call() or esp_ipc_call_blocking().

**Header File**

- components/esp_system/include/esp_ipc_isr.h

**Functions**

```c
void esp_ipc_isr_init (void)
```

Initialize the IPC ISR feature.

This function initializes the IPC ISR feature and must be called before any other esp_ipc_isr...() functions. The IPC ISR feature allows for callbacks (written in assembly) to be run on a particular CPU in the context of a High Priority Interrupt.

- This function will register a High Priority Interrupt on each CPU. The priority of the interrupts is dependent on the CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL option.
- Callbacks written in assembly can then run in context of the registered High Priority Interrupts
- Callbacks can be executed by calling esp_ipc_isr_asm_call() or esp_ipc_isr_asm_call_blocking()

```c
void esp_ipc_isr_asm_call (esp_ipc_isr_func_t func, void *arg)
```

Execute an assembly callback on the other CPU.

Execute a given callback on the other CPU in the context of a High Priority Interrupt.

- This function will busy-wait in a critical section until the other CPU has started execution of the callback
- The callback must be written in assembly, is invoked using a CALLX0 instruction, and has a2, a3, a4 as scratch registers. See docs for more details

**Note** This function is not available in single-core mode.

**Parameters**

- [in] func: Pointer to a function of type void func(void* arg) to be executed
- [in] arg: Arbitrary argument of type void* to be passed into the function

```c
void esp_ipc_isr_asm_call_blocking (esp_ipc_isr_func_t func, void *arg)
```

Execute an assembly callback on the other CPU and busy-wait until it completes.

This function is identical to esp_ipc_isr_asm_call() except that this function will busy-wait until the execution of the callback completes.

**Note** This function is not available in single-core mode.

**Parameters**

- [in] func: Pointer to a function of type void func(void* arg) to be executed
- [in] arg: Arbitrary argument of type void* to be passed into the function

```c
void esp_ipc_isr_stall_other_cpu (void)
```

Stall the other CPU.

This function will stall the other CPU. The other CPU is stalled by busy-waiting in the context of a High Priority Interrupt. The other CPU will not be resumed until esp_ipc_isr_release_other_cpu() is called.

- This function is internally implemented using IPC ISR
- This function is used for DPORT workaround.
- If the stall feature is paused using esp_ipc_isr_stall_pause(), this function will have no effect

**Note** This function is not available in single-core mode.

```c
void esp_ipc_isr_release_other_cpu (void)
```

Release the other CPU.

This function will release the other CPU that was previously stalled from calling esp_ipc_isr_stall_other_cpu() (void)

- This function is used for DPORT workaround.
- If the stall feature is paused using esp_ipc_isr_stall_pause(), this function will have no effect

**Note** This function is not available in single-core mode.
void esp_ipc_isr_stall_pause (void)

    Pause the CPU stall feature.

    This function will pause the CPU stall feature. Once paused, calls to esp_ipc_isr_stall_other_cpu() and
    esp_ipc_isr_release_other_cpu() will have no effect. If a IPC ISR call is already in progress, this function
    will busy-wait until the call completes before pausing the CPU stall feature.

void esp_ipc_isr_stall_abort (void)

    Abort a CPU stall.

    This function will abort any stalling routine of the other CPU due to a previous call to
    esp_ipc_isr_stall_other_cpu(). This function aborts the stall in a non-recoverable manner, thus should
    only be called in case of a panic().

        • This function is used in panic handling code

void esp_ipc_isr_stall_resume (void)

    Resume the CPU stall feature.

    This function will resume the CPU stall feature that was previously paused by calling esp_ipc_isr_stall_pause().
    Once resumed, calls to esp_ipc_isr_stall_other_cpu() and esp_ipc_isr_release_other_cpu() will have effect
    again.

Type Definitions

typedef void (*esp_ipc_isr_func_t)(void *arg)

    IPC ISR Callback.

    A callback of this type should be provided as an argument when calling esp_ipc_isr_asm_call() or
    esp_ipc_isr_asm_call_blocking().

2.7.16 Call function with external stack

Overview

A given function can be executed with a user allocated stack space which is independent of current task stack, this
mechanism can be used to save stack space wasted by tasks which call a common function with intensive stack usage
such as printf. The given function can be called inside the shared stack space which is a callback function deferred
by calling esp_execute_shared_stack_function(), passing that function as parameter

Usage

esp_execute_shared_stack_function() takes four arguments:

        • a mutex object allocated by the caller, which is used to protect if the same function shares its allocated stack
        • a pointer to the top of stack used for that function
        • the size of stack in bytes
        • a pointer to the shared stack function

The user defined function will be deferred as a callback and can be called using the user allocated space without
taking space from current task stack.

The usage may look like the code below:

void external_stack_function(void)
{
    printf("Executing this printf from external stack! \n");
}

//Let's suppose we want to call printf using a separated stack space
//allowing the app to reduce its stack size.
void app_main()
{ 
    //Allocate a stack buffer, from heap or as a static form:
    portSTACK_TYPE *shared_stack = malloc(8192 * sizeof(portSTACK_TYPE));
    assert(shared_stack != NULL);

    //Allocate a mutex to protect its usage:
    SemaphoreHandle_t printf_lock = xSemaphoreCreateMutex();
    assert(printf_lock != NULL);

    //Call the desired function using the macro helper:
    esp_execute_shared_stack_function(printf_lock,
                                       shared_stack,
                                       8192,
                                       external_stack_function);

    vSemaphoreDelete(printf_lock);
    free(shared_stack);
}

API Reference

Header File

- components/esp_system/include/esp_expression_with_stack.h

Functions

`void esp_execute_shared_stack_function(SemaphoreHandle_t lock, void *stack, size_t stack_size, shared_stack_function function)`

Calls user defined shared stack space function.

**Note** if either lock, stack or stack size is invalid, the expression will be called using the current stack.

**Parameters**

- `lock`: Mutex object to protect in case of shared stack
- `stack`: Pointer to user allocated stack
- `stack_size`: Size of current stack in bytes
- `function`: Pointer to the shared stack function to be executed

Macros

`ESP_EXECUTE_EXPRESSION_WITH_STACK(lock, stack, stack_size, expression)`

Type Definitions

`typedef void(*shared_stack_function)(void)`

2.7.17 Interrupt allocation

Overview

The ESP32 has two cores, with 32 interrupts each. Each interrupt has a certain priority level, most (but not all) interrupts are connected to the interrupt mux.

Because there are more interrupt sources than interrupts, sometimes it makes sense to share an interrupt in multiple drivers. The `esp_intr_alloc()` abstraction exists to hide all these implementation details.
A driver can allocate an interrupt for a certain peripheral by calling `esp_intr_alloc()` (or `esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus()`). It can use the flags passed to this function to set the type of interrupt allocated, specifying a specific level or trigger method. The interrupt allocation code will then find an applicable interrupt, use the interrupt mux to hook it up to the peripheral, and install the given interrupt handler and ISR to it.

This code has two different types of interrupts it handles differently: Shared interrupts and non-shared interrupts. The simplest of the two are non-shared interrupts: a separate interrupt is allocated per `esp_intr_alloc` call and this interrupt is solely used for the peripheral attached to it, with only one ISR that will get called. Shared interrupts can have multiple peripherals triggering it, with multiple ISRs being called when one of the peripherals attached signals an interrupt. Thus, ISRs that are intended for shared interrupts should check the interrupt status of the peripheral they service in order to see if any action is required.

Non-shared interrupts can be either level- or edge-triggered. Shared interrupts can only be level interrupts (because of the chance of missed interrupts when edge interrupts are used.) (The logic behind this: DevA and DevB share an int. DevB signals an int. Int line goes high. ISR handler calls code for DevA -> does nothing. ISR handler calls code for DevB, but while doing that, DevA signals an int. ISR DevB is done, clears int for DevB, exits interrupt code. Now an interrupt for DevA is still pending, but because the int line never went low (DevA kept it high even when the int for DevB was cleared) the interrupt is never serviced.)

**Multicore issues**

Peripherals that can generate interrupts can be divided in two types:

- External peripherals, within the ESP32 but outside the Xtensa cores themselves. Most ESP32 peripherals are of this type.
- Internal peripherals, part of the Xtensa CPU cores themselves.

Interrupt handling differs slightly between these two types of peripherals.

**Internal peripheral interrupts** Each Xtensa CPU core has its own set of six internal peripherals:

- Three timer comparators
- A performance monitor
- Two software interrupts.

Internal interrupt sources are defined in `esp_intr_alloc.h` as `ETS_INTERNAL_*_INTR_SOURCE.`

These peripherals can only be configured from the core they are associated with. When generating an interrupt, the interrupt they generate is hard-wired to their associated core; it’s not possible to have e.g. an internal timer comparator of one core generate an interrupt on another core. That is why these sources can only be managed using a task running on that specific core. Internal interrupt sources are still allocatable using `esp_intr_alloc` as normal, but they cannot be shared and will always have a fixed interrupt level (namely, the one associated in hardware with the peripheral).

**External Peripheral Interrupts** The remaining interrupt sources are from external peripherals. These are defined in `soc/soc.h` as `ETS_*_INTR_SOURCE.`

Non-internal interrupt slots in both CPU cores are wired to an interrupt multiplexer, which can be used to route any external interrupt source to any of these interrupt slots.

- Allocating an external interrupt will always allocate it on the core that does the allocation.
- Freeing an external interrupt must always happen on the same core it was allocated on.
- Disabling and enabling external interrupts from another core is allowed.
- Multiple external interrupt sources can share an interrupt slot by passing `ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED` as a flag to `esp_intr_alloc()`.

Care should be taken when calling `esp_intr_alloc()` from a task which is not pinned to a core. During task switching, these tasks can migrate between cores. Therefore it is impossible to tell which CPU the interrupt is allocated on, which makes it difficult to free the interrupt handle and may also cause debugging difficulties. It is advised to use `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()` with a specific CoreID argument to create tasks that will allocate interrupts. In the case of internal interrupt sources, this is required.
IRAM-Safe Interrupt Handlers

The ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag registers an interrupt handler that always runs from IRAM (and reads all its data from DRAM), and therefore does not need to be disabled during flash erase and write operations.

This is useful for interrupts which need a guaranteed minimum execution latency, as flash write and erase operations can be slow (erases can take tens or hundreds of milliseconds to complete).

It can also be useful to keep an interrupt handler in IRAM if it is called very frequently, to avoid flash cache misses.

Refer to the SPI flash API documentation for more details.

Multiple Handlers Sharing A Source

Several handlers can be assigned to a same source, given that all handlers are allocated using the ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED flag. They’ll be all allocated to the interrupt, which the source is attached to, and called sequentially when the source is active. The handlers can be disabled and freed individually. The source is attached to the interrupt (enabled), if one or more handlers are enabled, otherwise detached. A handler will never be called when disabled, while its source may still be triggered if any one of its handler enabled.

Sources attached to non-shared interrupt do not support this feature.

Though the framework support this feature, you have to use it very carefully. There usually exist 2 ways to stop an interrupt from being triggered: disable the source or mask peripheral interrupt status. IDF only handles the enabling and disabling of the source itself, leaving status and mask bits to be handled by users. Status bits should always be masked before the handler responsible for it is disabled, or the status should be handled in other enabled interrupt properly. You may leave some status bits unhandled if you just disable one of all the handlers without masking the status bits, which causes the interrupt to trigger infinitely resulting in a system crash.

API Reference

Header File

• components/esp_hw_support/include/esp_intr_alloc.h

Functions

esp_err_t esp_intr_mark_shared (int intno, int cpu, bool is_in_iram)
Mark an interrupt as a shared interrupt.

This will mark a certain interrupt on the specified CPU as an interrupt that can be used to hook shared interrupt handlers to.

Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if cpu or intno is invalid ESP_OK otherwise

Parameters

• intno: The number of the interrupt (0-31)
• cpu: CPU on which the interrupt should be marked as shared (0 or 1)
• is_in_iram: Shared interrupt is for handlers that reside in IRAM and the int can be left enabled while the flash cache is disabled.

esp_err_t esp_intr_reserve (int intno, int cpu)
Reserve an interrupt to be used outside of this framework.

This will mark a certain interrupt on the specified CPU as reserved, not to be allocated for any reason.

Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if cpu or intno is invalid ESP_OK otherwise

Parameters

• intno: The number of the interrupt (0-31)
• cpu: CPU on which the interrupt should be marked as shared (0 or 1)

esp_err_t esp_intr_alloc (int source, int flags, intr_handler_t handler, void *arg, intr_handle_t *ret_handle)
Allocate an interrupt with the given parameters.
This finds an interrupt that matches the restrictions as given in the flags parameter, maps the given interrupt source to it and hooks up the given interrupt handler (with optional argument) as well. If needed, it can return a handle for the interrupt as well.

The interrupt will always be allocated on the core that runs this function.

If ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag is used, and handler address is not in IRAM or RTC_FAST_MEM, then ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG is returned.

**Return** ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND No free interrupt found with the specified flags ESP_OK otherwise

**Parameters**

- **source**: The interrupt source. One of the ETS_*_INTR_SOURCE interrupt mux sources, as defined in soc/soc.h, or one of the internal ETS_INTERNAL_*_INTR_SOURCE sources as defined in this header.
- **flags**: An ORred mask of the ESP_INTR_FLAG_* defines. These restrict the choice of interrupts that this routine can choose from. If this value is 0, it will default to allocating a non-shared interrupt of level 1, 2 or 3. If this is ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED, it will allocate a shared interrupt of level 1. Setting ESP_INTR_FLAG_INTRDISABLED will return from this function with the interrupt disabled.
- **handler**: The interrupt handler. Must be NULL when an interrupt of level >3 is requested, because these types of interrupts aren’t C-callable.
- **arg**: Optional argument for passed to the interrupt handler
- **ret_handle**: Pointer to an intr_handle_t to store a handle that can later be used to request details or free the interrupt. Can be NULL if no handle is required.

```c
esp_err_t esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus(int source, int flags, uint32_t intrstatusreg, uint32_t intrstatusmask, intr_handler_t handler, void *arg, intr_handle_t *ret_handle)
```

Allocate an interrupt with the given parameters.

This essentially does the same as esp_intr_alloc, but allows specifying a register and mask combo. For shared interrupts, the handler is only called if a read from the specified register, ANDed with the mask, returns non-zero. By passing an interrupt status register address and a fitting mask, this can be used to accelerate interrupt handling in the case a shared interrupt is triggered; by checking the interrupt statuses first, the code can decide which ISRs can be skipped

**Return** ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND No free interrupt found with the specified flags ESP_OK otherwise

**Parameters**

- **source**: The interrupt source. One of the ETS_*_INTR_SOURCE interrupt mux sources, as defined in soc/soc.h, or one of the internal ETS_INTERNAL_*_INTR_SOURCE sources as defined in this header.
- **flags**: An ORred mask of the ESP_INTR_FLAG_* defines. These restrict the choice of interrupts that this routine can choose from. If this value is 0, it will default to allocating a non-shared interrupt of level 1, 2 or 3. If this is ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED, it will allocate a shared interrupt of level 1. Setting ESP_INTR_FLAG_INTRDISABLED will return from this function with the interrupt disabled.
- **intrstatusreg**: The address of an interrupt status register
- **intrstatusmask**: A mask. If a read of address intrstatusreg has any of the bits that are 1 in the mask set, the ISR will be called. If not, it will be skipped.
- **handler**: The interrupt handler. Must be NULL when an interrupt of level >3 is requested, because these types of interrupts aren’t C-callable.
- **arg**: Optional argument for passed to the interrupt handler
- **ret_handle**: Pointer to an intr_handle_t to store a handle that can later be used to request details or free the interrupt. Can be NULL if no handle is required.

```c
esp_err_t esp_intr_free(intr_handle_t handle)
```

Disable and free an interrupt.

Use an interrupt handle to disable the interrupt and release the resources associated with it. If the current core is not the core that registered this interrupt, this routine will be assigned to the core that allocated this interrupt,
blocking and waiting until the resource is successfully released.

**Note** When the handler shares its source with other handlers, the interrupt status bits it’s responsible for should be managed properly before freeing it. See `esp_intr_disable` for more details. Please do not call this function in `esp_ipc_call_blocking`.

**Return** ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG the handle is NULL ESP_FAIL failed to release this handle ESP_OK otherwise

**Parameters**
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by `esp_intr_alloc` or `esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus`

```c
int esp_intr_get_cpu (intr_handle_t handle)
```
Get CPU number an interrupt is tied to.

**Return** The core number where the interrupt is allocated

**Parameters**
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by `esp_intr_alloc` or `esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus`

```c
int esp_intr_get_intno (intr_handle_t handle)
```
Get the allocated interrupt for a certain handle.

**Return** The interrupt number

**Parameters**
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by `esp_intr_alloc` or `esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus`

```c
esp_err_t esp_intr_disable (intr_handle_t handle)
```
Disable the interrupt associated with the handle.

**Note**
1. For local interrupts (ESP_INTERNAL_* sources), this function has to be called on the CPU the interrupt is allocated on. Other interrupts have no such restriction.
2. When several handlers sharing a same interrupt source, interrupt status bits, which are handled in the handler to be disabled, should be masked before the disabling, or handled in other enabled interrupts properly. Miss of interrupt status handling will cause infinite interrupt calls and finally system crash.

**Return** ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_OK otherwise

**Parameters**
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by `esp_intr_alloc` or `esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus`

```c
esp_err_t esp_intr_enable (intr_handle_t handle)
```
Enable the interrupt associated with the handle.

**Note** For local interrupts (ESP_INTERNAL_* sources), this function has to be called on the CPU the interrupt is allocated on. Other interrupts have no such restriction.

**Return** ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_OK otherwise

**Parameters**
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by `esp_intr_alloc` or `esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus`

```c
esp_err_t esp_intr_set_in_iram (intr_handle_t handle, bool is_in_iram)
```
Set the “in IRAM” status of the handler.

**Note** Does not work on shared interrupts.

**Return** ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_OK otherwise

**Parameters**
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by `esp_intr_alloc` or `esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus`
- `is_in_iram`: Whether the handler associated with this handle resides in IRAM. Handlers residing in IRAM can be called when cache is disabled.

```c
void esp_intr_noniram_disable (void)
```
Disable interrupts that aren’t specifically marked as running from IRAM.

```c
void esp_intr_noniram_enable (void)
```
Re-enable interrupts disabled by `esp_intr_noniram_disable`.

```c
void esp_intr_enable_source (int inum)
```
enable the interrupt source based on its number

**Parameters**
void esp_intr_disable_source (int inum)
  disable the interrupt source based on its number

Parameters
  • inum: interrupt number from 0 to 31

static int esp_intr_flags_to_level (int flags)
  Get the lowest interrupt level from the flags.

Parameters
  • flags: The same flags that pass to esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus API

Macros

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL1
  Interrupt allocation flags. These flags can be used to specify which interrupt qualities the code calling esp_intr_alloc* needs. Accept a Level 1 interrupt vector (lowest priority)

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL2
  Accept a Level 2 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL3
  Accept a Level 3 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL4
  Accept a Level 4 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL5
  Accept a Level 5 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL6
  Accept a Level 6 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_NMI
  Accept a Level 7 interrupt vector (highest priority)

ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED
  Interrupt can be shared between ISRs.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_EDGE
  Edge-triggered interrupt.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM
  ISR can be called if cache is disabled.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_INTRDISABLED
  Return with this interrupt disabled.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LOWMED
  Low and medium prio interrupts. These can be handled in C.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_HIGH
  High level interrupts. Need to be handled in assembly.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVELMASK
  Mask for all level flags.

ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER0_INTR_SOURCE
  Platform timer 0 interrupt source.

The esp_intr_alloc* functions can allocate an int for all ETS_*_INTR_SOURCE interrupt sources that are routed through the interrupt mux. Apart from these sources, each core also has some internal sources that do not pass through the interrupt mux. To allocate an interrupt for these sources, pass these pseudo-sources to the functions.
ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER1_INTR_SOURCE
Platform timer 1 interrupt source.

ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER2_INTR_SOURCE
Platform timer 2 interrupt source.

ETS_INTERNAL_SW0_INTR_SOURCE
Software int source 1.

ETS_INTERNAL_SW1_INTR_SOURCE
Software int source 2.

ETS_INTERNAL_PROFILING_INTR_SOURCE
Int source for profiling.

ETS_INTERNAL_INTR_SOURCE_OFF
Provides SystemView with positive IRQ IDs, otherwise scheduler events are not shown properly.

ESP_INTR_ENABLE(inum)
Enable interrupt by interrupt number

ESP_INTR_DISABLE(inum)
Disable interrupt by interrupt number

Type Definitions

typedef void(*intr_handler_t)(void *arg)
Function prototype for interrupt handler function

typedef struct intr_handle_data_t intr_handle_data_t
Interrupt handler associated data structure

typedef intr_handle_data_t *intr_handle_t
Handle to an interrupt handler

2.7.18 Logging library

Overview

The logging library provides two ways for setting log verbosity:

- **At compile time**: in menuconfig, set the verbosity level using the option `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL`. Optionally, also in menuconfig, set the maximum verbosity level using the option `CONFIG_LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL`. By default this is the same as the default level, but it can be set higher in order to compile more optional logs into the firmware.

- **At runtime**: all logs for verbosity levels lower than `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL` are enabled by default. The function `esp_log_level_set()` can be used to set a logging level on a per module basis. Modules are identified by their tags, which are human-readable ASCII zero-terminated strings.

There are the following verbosity levels:

- Error (lowest)
- Warning
- Info
- Debug
- Vrbose (highest)

**Note:** The function `esp_log_level_set()` cannot set logging levels higher than specified by `CONFIG_LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL`. To increase log level for a specific file above this maximum at compile time, use the macro `LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL` (see the details below).
Chapter 2. API 参考

How to use this library

In each C file that uses logging functionality, define the TAG variable as shown below:

```c
static const char * TAG = "MyModule";
```

Then use one of the logging macros to produce output, e.g:

```c
ESP_LOGW(TAG, "Baud rate error %.1f%%. Requested: %d baud, actual: %d baud", error_ - — 100, baud_req, baud_real);
```

Several macros are available for different verbosity levels:

- ESP_LOGE - error (lowest)
- ESP_LOGW - warning
- ESP_LOGI - info
- ESP_LOGD - debug
- ESP_LOGV - verbose (highest)

Additionally, there are ESP_EARLY_LOGx versions for each of these macros, e.g. ESP_EARLY_LOGE. These versions have to be used explicitly in the early startup code only, before heap allocator and syscalls have been initialized. Normal ESP_LOGx macros can also be used while compiling the bootloader, but they will fall back to the same implementation as ESP_EARLY_LOGx macros.

There are also ESP_DRAM_LOGx versions for each of these macros, e.g. ESP_DRAM_LOGE. These versions are used in some places where logging may occur with interrupts disabled or with flash cache inaccessible. Use of this macros should be as sparing as possible, as logging in these types of code should be avoided for performance reasons.

注解：Inside critical sections interrupts are disabled so it’s only possible to use ESP_DRAM_LOGx (preferred) or ESP_EARLY_LOGx. Even though it’s possible to log in these situations, it’s better if your program can be structured not to require it.

To override default verbosity level at file or component scope, define the LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL macro.

At file scope, define it before including esp_log.h, e.g:

```c
#define LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL ESP_LOG_VERBOSE
#include "esp_log.h"
```

At component scope, define it in the component makefile:

```c
target_compile_definitions($(COMPONENT_LIB) PUBLIC "-DLOG_LOCAL_LEVEL=ESP_LOG_ ...
-VERBOSE")
```

To configure logging output per module at runtime, add calls to the function esp_log_level_set() as follows:

```c
esp_log_level_set("*", ESP_LOG_ERROR);  // set all components to ERROR level
esp_log_level_set("wifi", ESP_LOG_WARN);  // enable WARN logs from WiFi stack
esp_log_level_set("dhcpc", ESP_LOG_INFO);  // enable INFO logs from DHCP client
```

注解：The “DRAM” and “EARLY” log macro variants documented above do not support per module setting of log verbosity. These macros will always log at the “default” verbosity level, which can only be changed at runtime by calling esp_log_level("*", level).

Logging to Host via JTAG By default, the logging library uses the vprintf-like function to write formatted output to the dedicated UART. By calling a simple API, all log output may be routed to JTAG instead, making logging several times faster. For details, please refer to Section 记录日志到主机.
Application Example

The logging library is commonly used by most esp-idf components and examples. For demonstration of log functionality, check ESP-IDF’s examples directory. The most relevant examples that deal with logging are the following:

- system/ota
- storage/sd_card
- protocols/https_request

API Reference

Header File

- components/log/include/esp_log.h

Functions

void esp_log_level_set (const char *tag, esp_log_level_t level)

Set log level for given tag.

If logging for given component has already been enabled, changes previous setting.

**Note** Note that this function can not raise log level above the level set using CONFIG_LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL setting in menuconfig. To raise log level above the default one for a given file, define LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL to one of the ESP_LOG_* values, before including esp_log.h in this file.

**Parameters**

- **tag**: Tag of the log entries to enable. Must be a non-NULL zero terminated string. Value "*" resets log level for all tags to the given value.
- **level**: Selects log level to enable. Only logs at this and lower verbosity levels will be shown.

esp_log_level_t esp_log_level_get (const char *tag)

Get log level for a given tag, can be used to avoid expensive log statements.

**Return** The current log level for the given tag

**Parameters**

- **tag**: Tag of the log to query current level. Must be a non-NULL zero terminated string.

vprintf_like_t esp_log_set_vprintf (vprintf_like_t func)

Set function used to output log entries.

By default, log output goes to UART0. This function can be used to redirect log output to some other destination, such as file or network. Returns the original log handler, which may be necessary to return output to the previous destination.

**Note** Please note that function callback here must be re-entrant as it can be invoked in parallel from multiple thread context.

**Return** func old Function used for output.

**Parameters**

- **func**: new Function used for output. Must have same signature as vprintf.

uint32_t esp_log_timestamp (void)

Function which returns timestamp to be used in log output.

This function is used in expansion of ESP_LOGx macros. In the 2nd stage bootloader, and at early application startup stage this function uses CPU cycle counter as time source. Later when FreeRTOS scheduler start running, it switches to FreeRTOS tick count.

For now, we ignore millisecond counter overflow.

**Return** timestamp, in milliseconds

char *esp_log_system_timestamp (void)

Function which returns system timestamp to be used in log output.
This function is used in expansion of ESP_LOGx macros to print the system time as “HH:MM:SS.sss”. The system time is initialized to 0 on startup, this can be set to the correct time with an SNTP sync, or manually with standard POSIX time functions.

Currently, this will not get used in logging from binary blobs (i.e. Wi-Fi & Bluetooth libraries), these will still print the RTOS tick time.

Return timestamp, in “HH:MM:SS.sss”

```c
uint32_t esp_log_early_timestamp (void)
```

Function which returns timestamp to be used in log output.

This function uses HW cycle counter and does not depend on OS, so it can be safely used after application crash.

Return timestamp, in milliseconds

```c
void esp_log_write (esp_log_level_t level, const char *tag, const char *format, ...)
```

Write message into the log.

This function is not intended to be used directly. Instead, use one of ESP_LOGE, ESP_LOGW, ESP_LOGI, ESP_LOGD, ESP_LOGV macros.

This function or these macros should not be used from an interrupt.

```c
void esp_log_writev (esp_log_level_t level, const char *tag, const char *format, va_list args)
```

Write message into the log, va_list variant.

This function is provided to ease integration toward other logging framework, so that esp_log can be used as a log sink.

See esp_log_write()

**Macros**

**ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX_LEVEL**(tag, buffer, buff_len, level)

Log a buffer of hex bytes at specified level, separated into 16 bytes each line.

**Parameters**

- **tag**: description tag
- **buffer**: Pointer to the buffer array
- **buff_len**: length of buffer in bytes
- **level**: level of the log

**ESP_LOG_BUFFER_CHAR_LEVEL**(tag, buffer, buff_len, level)

Log a buffer of characters at specified level, separated into 16 bytes each line. Buffer should contain only printable characters.

**Parameters**

- **tag**: description tag
- **buffer**: Pointer to the buffer array
- **buff_len**: length of buffer in bytes
- **level**: level of the log

**ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEXDUMP**(tag, buffer, buff_len, level)

Dump a buffer to the log at specified level.

The dump log shows just like the one below:

```
W (195) log_example: 0x3ffb4280 45 53 50 33 32 20 69 73 20 67 72 65 61 74
    |ESP32 is great, |
W (195) log_example: 0x3ffb4290 77 6f 72 6b 69 6e 67 20 61 6c 6f 6e 67 20
    |working along wi|
W (205) log_example: 0x3ffb42a0 74 68 62 74 68 65 20 49 44 46 2e 00
    |th the IDF...|
```

It is highly recommended to use terminals with over 102 text width.
### Parameters
- **tag**: description tag
- **buffer**: Pointer to the buffer array
- **buff_len**: length of buffer in bytes
- **level**: level of the log

**ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX** (tag, buffer, buff_len)
Log a buffer of hex bytes at Info level.

See [esp_log_buffer_hex_level](#)

**Parameters**
- **tag**: description tag
- **buffer**: Pointer to the buffer array
- **buff_len**: length of buffer in bytes

**ESP_LOG_BUFFER_CHAR** (tag, buffer, buff_len)
Log a buffer of characters at Info level. Buffer should contain only printable characters.

See [esp_log_buffer_char_level](#)

**Parameters**
- **tag**: description tag
- **buffer**: Pointer to the buffer array
- **buff_len**: length of buffer in bytes

**portGET_ARGUMENT_COUNT_INNER** (zero, one, count, ...)
Macro to output logs in startup code, before heap allocator and syscalls have been initialized. Log at ESP_LOG_ERROR level.

See [printf, ESP_LOGE, ESP_DRAM_LOGE](#)

**ESP_EARLY_LOGE** (tag, format, ...)
In the future, we want to switch to C++20. We also want to become compatible with clang. Hence, we provide two versions of the following macros which are using variadic arguments. The first one is using the GNU extension `##__VA_ARGS__`. The second one is using the C++20 feature `VA_OPT()`. This allows users to compile their code with standard C++20 enabled instead of the GNU extension. Below C++20, we haven’t found any good alternative to using `##__VA_ARGS__`.

**ESP_EARLY_LOGW** (tag, format, ...)
Macro to output logs in startup code at ESP_LOG_WARN level.

See [ESP_EARLY_LOGE, ESP_LOGE, printf](#)

**ESP_EARLY_LOGI** (tag, format, ...)
Macro to output logs in startup code at ESP_LOG_INFO level.

See [ESP_EARLY_LOGE, ESP_LOGE, printf](#)

**ESP_EARLY_LOGD** (tag, format, ...)
Macro to output logs in startup code at ESP_LOG_DEBUG level.

See [ESP_EARLY_LOGE, ESP_LOGE, printf](#)

**ESP_EARLY_LOGV** (tag, format, ...)
Macro to output logs in startup code at ESP_LOG_VERBOSE level.

See [ESP_EARLY_LOGE, ESP_LOGE, printf](#)

**_ESP_LOG_EARLY_ENABLED** (log_level)

**ESP_LOG_EARLY_IMPL** (tag, format, log_level, log_tag_letter, ...)

**ESP_LOGE** (tag, format, ...)

**ESP_LOGW** (tag, format, ...)

**ESP_LOGI** (tag, format, ...)

**ESP_LOGD** (tag, format, ...)
ESP_LOGV (tag, format, ...)

ESP_LOG_LEVEL (level, tag, format, ...)

Runtime macro to output logs at a specified level.

See printf

Parameters

- `tag`: tag of the log, which can be used to change the log level by `esp_log_level_set` at runtime.
- `level`: level of the output log.
- `format`: format of the output log. See printf
- `...`: variables to be replaced into the log. See printf

ESP_LOG_LEVEL_LOCAL (level, tag, format, ...)

Runtime macro to output logs at a specified level. Also check the level with LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL.

See printf, ESP_LOG_LEVEL

ESP_DRAM_LOGE (tag, format, ...)

Macro to output logs when the cache is disabled. Log at ESP_LOG_ERROR level.

Similar to

Usage: ESP_DRAM_LOGE(DRAM_STR("my_tag"), "format", or ESP_DRAM_LOGE(TAG, "format", ...), where TAG is a char* that points to a str in the DRAM.

Note Unlike normal logging macros, it’s possible to use this macro when interrupts are disabled or inside an ISR.

See ESP_EARLY_LOGE, the log level cannot be changed per-tag, however esp_log_level_set("*", level) will set the default level which controls these log lines also.

Note Placing log strings in DRAM reduces available DRAM, so only use when absolutely essential.

See esp_rom_printf, ESP_LOGE

ESP_DRAM_LOGW (tag, format, ...)

Macro to output logs when the cache is disabled at ESP_LOG_WARN level.

See ESP_DRAM_LOGW, ESP_LOGW, esp_rom_printf

ESP_DRAM_LOGI (tag, format, ...)

Macro to output logs when the cache is disabled at ESP_LOG_INFO level.

See ESP_DRAM_LOGI, ESP_LOGI, esp_rom_printf

ESP_DRAM_LOGD (tag, format, ...)

Macro to output logs when the cache is disabled at ESP_LOG_DEBUG level.

See ESP_DRAM_LOGD, ESP_LOGD, esp_rom_printf

ESP_DRAM_LOGV (tag, format, ...)

Macro to output logs when the cache is disabled at ESP_LOG_VERBOSE level.

See ESP_DRAM_LOGV, ESP_LOGV, esp_rom_printf

Type Definitions

typedef int (*vprintf_like_t)(const char *, va_list)

Enumerations

enum esp_log_level_t

Log level.

Values:

ESP_LOG_NONE

No log output
ESP_LOG_ERROR
Critical errors, software module cannot recover on its own

ESP_LOG_WARN
Error conditions from which recovery measures have been taken

ESP_LOG_INFO
Information messages which describe normal flow of events

ESP_LOG_DEBUG
Extra information which is not necessary for normal use (values, pointers, sizes, etc).

ESP_LOG_VERBOSE
Bigger chunks of debugging information, or frequent messages which can potentially flood the output.

2.7.19 Miscellaneous System APIs

Software reset

To perform software reset of the chip, \textit{esp_restart()} function is provided. When the function is called, execution of the program will stop, both CPUs will be reset, application will be loaded by the bootloader and started again.

Additionally, \textit{esp_register_shutdown_handler()} function is provided to register a routine which needs to be called prior to restart (when done by \textit{esp_restart()}). This is similar to the functionality of \texttt{atexit} POSIX function.

Reset reason

ESP-IDF application can be started or restarted due to a variety of reasons. To get the last reset reason, call \textit{esp_reset_reason()} function. See description of \textit{esp_reset_reason_t} for the list of possible reset reasons.

Heap memory

Two heap memory related functions are provided:

- \textit{esp_get_free_heap_size()} returns the current size of free heap memory
- \textit{esp_get_minimum_free_heap_size()} returns the minimum size of free heap memory that was available during program execution.

Note that ESP-IDF supports multiple heaps with different capabilities. Functions mentioned in this section return the size of heap memory which can be allocated using \texttt{malloc} family of functions. For further information about heap memory see \textit{Heap Memory Allocation}.

MAC Address

These APIs allow querying and customizing MAC addresses for different network interfaces that supported (e.g. Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, Ethernet).

To fetch MAC address for a specific interface (e.g. Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, Ethernet), call the function \textit{esp_read_mac()} function.

In ESP-IDF these addresses are calculated from a single \textit{Base MAC address}. By default, the Espressif base MAC address is used. This MAC is pre-programmed into ESP32 eFuse from the factory.
Chapter 2. API 参考

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>MAC address (4 universally administered, default)</th>
<th>MAC address (2 universally administered)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wi-Fi Station</td>
<td>base_mac</td>
<td>base_mac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wi-Fi SoftAP</td>
<td>base_mac, +1 to the last octet</td>
<td>Local MAC derived from Wi-Fi Station MAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>base_mac, +2 to the last octet</td>
<td>base_mac, +1 to the last octet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethernet</td>
<td>base_mac, +3 to the last octet</td>
<td>Local MAC (derived from Bluetooth MAC)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解：The default configuration is 4 universally administered MAC addresses, and this is recommended when using Espressif-provided MAC addresses.

**Custom Base MAC**  The default Base MAC is pre-programmed by Espressif in eFuse BLK0. To set a custom Base MAC instead, call the function `esp_base_mac_addr_set()` before initializing any network interfaces or calling the `esp_read_mac()` function. The customized MAC address can be stored in any supported storage device (e.g. Flash, NVS, etc).

The custom base MAC addresses should be allocated such that derived MAC addresses will not overlap. Configure the option `CONFIG_ESP32_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES` to set the number of valid universal MAC addresses that can be derived from the custom base MAC, according to the table above.

注解：It is also possible to call the function `esp_netif_set_mac()` to set the specific MAC used by a network interface, after network initialization. It’s recommended to use the Base MAC approach documented here instead, to avoid the possibility of the original MAC address briefly appearing on the network before it is changed.

**Custom MAC address in eFuse** When reading custom MAC addresses from eFuse, ESP-IDF provides a helper function `esp_efuse_mac_get_custom()`. This loads the MAC address from eFuse BLK3. This function assumes that the custom base MAC address is stored in the following format:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th># of bits</th>
<th>Range of bits</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>191:184</td>
<td>0: invalid, others ---valid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserved</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>183:56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC address</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>55:8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC address CRC</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7:0</td>
<td>CRC-8-CCITT, polynomial 0x07</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解：If the 3/4 coding scheme is enabled, all eFuse fields in this block must be burnt at the same time.

Once MAC address has been obtained using `esp_efuse_mac_get_custom()`, call `esp_base_mac_addr_set()` to set this MAC address as base MAC address.

**Local vs Universal MAC addresses** ESP32 comes pre-programmed with enough valid Espressif universally administered MAC addresses for all internal interfaces. The specific calculations to derive an interface’s MAC address from the base MAC address is shown in the table above.

When using a custom MAC address scheme, it’s possible that not all interfaces can be assigned a universally administered MAC address. In these cases, a locally administered MAC address is assigned. Note that these addresses are intended for use on a single local network, only.

See this article for the definition of local and universally administered MAC addresses.

Function `esp_derive_local_mac()` is called internally to derive a local MAC address from a universal MAC address. The process is as follows:
1. The U/L bit (bit value 0x2) is set in the first octet of the universal MAC address, creating a local MAC address.
2. If this bit is already set in the supplied universal MAC address (meaning: the supplied “universal” MAC address was in fact already a local MAC address), then the first octet of the local MAC address is XORed with 0x4.

Chip version

`esp_chip_info()` function fills `esp_chip_info_t` structure with information about the chip. This includes the chip revision, number of CPU cores, and a bit mask of features enabled in the chip.

SDK version

`esp_get_idf_version()` returns a string describing the IDF version which was used to compile the application. This is the same value as the one available through `IDF_VER` variable of the build system. The version string generally has the format of `git describe` output.

To get the version at build time, additional version macros are provided. They can be used to enable or disable parts of the program depending on IDF version.

- `ESP_IDF_VERSION_MAJOR`, `ESP_IDF_VERSION_MINOR`, `ESP_IDF_VERSION_PATCH` are defined to integers representing major, minor, and patch version.
- `ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL` and `ESP_IDF_VERSION` can be used when implementing version checks:

```c
#include "esp_idf_version.h"

#if ESP_IDF_VERSION >= ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL(4, 0, 0)
  // enable functionality present in IDF v4.0
#endif
```

App version

Application version is stored in `esp_app_desc_t` structure. It is located in DROM sector and has a fixed offset from the beginning of the binary file. The structure is located after `esp_image_header_t` and `esp_image_segment_header_t` structures. The field version has string type and max length 32 chars.

To set version in your project manually you need to set `PROJECT_VER` variable in your project CMakeLists.txt/Makefile:

- In application CMakeLists.txt put `set(PROJECT_VER "0.1.0.1")` before including project. cmake.

If `CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG` option is set, the value of `CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER` will be used. Otherwise, if `PROJECT_VER` variable is not set in the project then it will be retrieved from either `$(PROJECT_PATH)/version.txt` file (if present) else using `git describe` command. If neither is available then `PROJECT_VER` will be set to “1”. Application can make use of this by calling `esp_ota_get_app_description()` or `esp_ota_get_partition_description()` functions.

API Reference

**Header File**

- components/esp_system/include/esp_system.h

**Functions**
### Chapter 2. API 参考

```c
esp_err_t esp_register_shutdown_handler (shutdown_handler_t handle)
```

Register shutdown handler.

This function allows you to register a handler that gets invoked before the application is restarted using `esp_restart` function.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the handler has already been registered
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if no more shutdown handler slots are available

**Parameters**

- `handle`: function to execute on restart

```c
esp_err_t esp_unregister_shutdown_handler (shutdown_handler_t handle)
```

Unregister shutdown handler.

This function allows you to unregister a handler which was previously registered using `esp_register_shutdown_handler` function.

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the given handler hasn’t been registered before

### void esp_restart (void)

Restart PRO and APP CPUs.

This function can be called both from PRO and APP CPUs. After successful restart, CPU reset reason will be SW_CPU_RESET. Peripherals (except for Wi-Fi, BT, UART0, SPI1, and legacy timers) are not reset. This function does not return.

### esp_reset_reason_t esp_reset_reason (void)

Get reason of last reset.

**Return** See description of `esp_reset_reason_t` for explanation of each value.

### uint32_t esp_get_free_heap_size (void)

Get the size of available heap.

**Note** Note that the returned value may be larger than the maximum contiguous block which can be allocated.

**Return** Available heap size, in bytes.

### uint32_t esp_get_free_internal_heap_size (void)

Get the size of available internal heap.

**Note** Note that the returned value may be larger than the maximum contiguous block which can be allocated.

**Return** Available internal heap size, in bytes.

### uint32_t esp_get_minimum_free_heap_size (void)

Get the minimum heap that has ever been available.

**Return** Minimum free heap ever available

### void esp_system_abort (const char *details)

Trigger a software abort.

**Parameters**

- `details`: Details that will be displayed during panic handling.

### Type Definitions

```c
typedef void (*shutdown_handler_t)(void)
```

Shutdown handler type

### Enumerations

```c
enum esp_reset_reason_t
```

Reset reasons.

**Values:**
### Chapter 2. API 参考

**ESP_RST_UNKNOWN**
Reset reason can not be determined.

**ESP_RST_POWERON**
Reset due to power-on event.

**ESP_RST_EXT**
Reset by external pin (not applicable for ESP32)

**ESP_RST_SW**
Software reset via esp_restart.

**ESP_RST_PANIC**
Software reset due to exception/panic.

**ESP_RST_INT_WDT**
Reset (software or hardware) due to interrupt watchdog.

**ESP_RST_TASK_WDT**
Reset due to task watchdog.

**ESP_RST_WDT**
Reset due to other watchdogs.

**ESP_RST_DEEPSLEEP**
Reset after exiting deep sleep mode.

**ESP_RST_BROWNOUT**
Brownout reset (software or hardware)

**ESP_RST_SDIO**
Reset over SDIO.

### Header File

- components/esp_common/include/esp_idf_version.h

### Functions

```c
const char* esp_get_idf_version(void)
```

Return full IDF version string, same as `git describe` output.

**Note** If you are printing the ESP-IDF version in a log file or other information, this function provides more information than using the numerical version macros. For example, numerical version macros don’t differentiate between development, pre-release and release versions, but the output of this function does.

**Return** constant string from IDF_VER

### Macros

**ESP_IDF_VERSION_MAJOR**
Major version number (X.x.x)

**ESP_IDF_VERSION_MINOR**
Minor version number (x.X.x)

**ESP_IDF_VERSION_PATCH**
Patch version number (x.x.X)

**ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL** (major, minor, patch)
Macro to convert IDF version number into an integer

To be used in comparisons, such as ESP_IDF_VERSION >= ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL(4, 0, 0)

**ESP_IDF_VERSION**
Current IDF version, as an integer

To be used in comparisons, such as ESP_IDF_VERSION >= ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL(4, 0, 0)
2.7.20 空中升级 (OTA)

OTA 流程概览

OTA 升级机制可以让设备在固件正常运行时根据接收数据（如通过 Wi-Fi 或蓝牙）进行自我更新。

要运行 OTA 机制，需配置设备的 分区表，该分区表至少包含两个 OTA 应用程序分区（即 ota_0 和 ota_1）和一个 OTA 数据分区。

OTA 功能启动后，向前未用于启动的 OTA 应用程序写入新的应用固件镜像。镜像验证后，OTA 数据分区更新，指定在下一次启动时使用该镜像。

OTA 数据分区

所有使用 OTA 功能项目，其 分区表 必须包含一个 OTA 数据分区（类型为 data，子类型为 ota)。

工厂启动设置下，OTA 数据分区中应没有数据（所有字节填写成 0xFF）。如果分区表中有工厂应用程序，
ESP-IDF 软件引导加载程序会启动工厂应用程序。如果分区表中没有工厂应用程序，则启动第一个可用的
OTA 分区（通常是 ota_0)。

第一次 OTA 升级后，OTA 数据分区更新，指定下一次启动哪个 OTA 应用程序分区。

OTA 数据分区是两个 0x2000 字节大小的 flash 扇区，防止写入时电源故障引发问题。两个扇区单独擦除、
写入匹配数据，若存在不一致，则用计算器字段判断哪个扇区为最新数据。

应用程序回滚

应用程序回滚的主要目的是确保设备在更新后正常工作。如果新版应用程序出现严重错误，该功能可使
设备回滚到之前正常运行的应用版本。在使能回滚并且 OTA 升级应用程序至新版本后，可能出现的结果
如下:

• 应用程序运行正常，esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback() 将正在运行的应用程序
  状态标记为 ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID，启动此应用程序无限制。
• 应用程序出现严重错误，无法继续工作，必须回滚到此前的版本，
  esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot() 将正在运行的版本标记为
  ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID 然后复位。引导加载程序不会选取此版本，而是启动此前正常运行的版本。
• 如果CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE 使能，则无需调用函数便可复位，回滚至之
  前的应用版本。

注解：应用程序的状态不是写到程序的二进制镜像，而是写到 otadata 分区。该分区有一个 ota_seq
计数器，该计数器是 OTA 应用分区的指针，指向下次启动时选取应用所在的分区 (ota_0, ota_1, …)。

应用程序 OTA 状态

状态控制了选取启动应用程序的过程：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>状态</th>
<th>引导加载程序选取启动应用程序的限制</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID</td>
<td>没有限制，可以选取。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_OTA_IMG_UNDEFINED</td>
<td>只有分区表中存在分区时，可以选取。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID</td>
<td>只有分区表中存在分区时，可以选取。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED | 如使能 CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE，则仅会选取一次。在
  引导加载程序中，状态立即变为 ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY。 |
| ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY | 如使能 CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE，则不会选取。状态变
  为 “ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED”。 |

如果 CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE 没有使能（默认情况），
则 esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback() 和 esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot
为可选功能，ESP_OTA/img_new 和 ESP_OTA/img_pending_verify 不会使用。
Kconfig 中的 `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE` 可以帮助用户追踪新版应用程序的第一次启动。应用程序需调用 `esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()` 函数确认可以运行，否则将会在重启时滚回至旧版本。该功能可让用户在启动阶段控制应用程序的可操作性。新版应用程序仅有一次机会尝试是否能成功启动。

**回滚过程** `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE` 使能时，回滚过程如下：

- 新版应用程序下载成功，`esp_ota_set_boot_partition()` 函数将分区设为可启动，状态设为 `ESP OTA_IMG_NEW`。该状态表示应用程序为新版本，第一次启动需要监测。
- 重新启动 `esp_restart()`。
- 引导加载程序检查 `ESP OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY` 状态，如有设置，则将其写入 `ESP OTA_IMG_ABORTED`。
- 引导加载程序选取一个新版应用程序来引导，这样应用程序状态就不会设置为 `ESP OTA_IMG_INVALID` 或 `ESP OTA_IMG_ABORTED`。
- 引导加载程序检查所选取的新版应用程序，若状态设置为 `ESP OTA_IMG_NEW`，则写入 `ESP OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY`。该状态表示，需确认应用程序的可操作性，如不确认，发生重启，则状态会重写为 `ESP OTA_IMG_ABORTED` (见上文)，该应用程序不可再启动，将回滚至上一版本。
- 新版应用程序启动，应进行自测。
- 若通过自测，则必须调用函数 `esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()`，因为新版应用程序在等待确认其可操作性 (`ESP OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY` 状态)。
- 若未通过自测，则调用函数 `esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot()`，回滚至之前能正常工作的应用程序版本，同时将无效的新版应用程序设置为 `ESP OTA_IMG_INVALID`。
- 如果新版应用程序可操作性没有确认，则状态一直为 `ESP OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY`。下次启动时，状态变更为 `ESP OTA_IMG_ABORTED`，阻止其再次启动，之后回滚到之前的版本。

**意外复位** 如果在新版应用第一次启动时发生断电或意外崩溃，则会回滚至之前正常运行的版本。

建议：尽快完成自测，防止因断电回滚。

只有 OTA 分区可以回滚。工厂分区不会回滚。

**启动无效/中止的程序** 用户可以启动此前设置为 `ESP OTA_IMG_INVALID` 或 `ESP OTA_IMG_ABORTED` 的应用程序:

- 获取最后一个无效分区 `esp_ota_get_last_invalid_partition()`。
- 将获取的分区传给 `esp_ota_set_boot_partition()`，更新 `otadata`。
- 重启 `esp_restart()`。引导加载程序会启动指定应用程序。

要确定是否在应用程序启动时进行自测，可以调用 `esp_ota_get_state_partition()` 函数。如果结果为 `ESP OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY`，则需要自测，后续确认应用程序的可操作性。

**如何设置状态** 下文简单描述了如何设置应用程序状态：

- `ESP OTA_IMG_VALID` 由函数 `esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()` 设置。
- 如果 `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE` 没有使能，`ESP OTA_IMG_UNDEFINED` 由函数 `esp_ota_set_boot_partition()` 设置。
- 如果 `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE` 没有使能，`ESP OTA_IMG_NEW` 由函数 `esp_ota_set_boot_partition()` 设置。
- `ESP OTA_IMG_INVALID` 由函数 `esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot()` 设置。
- 如果应用程序的可操作性无法确认，发生重启 (`CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE` 使能)，则设置 `ESP OTA_IMG_ABORTED`。
- 如果 `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE` 使能，选取的应用程序状态为 `ESP OTA_IMG_NEW`，则在引导加载程序中设置 `ESP OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY`。
防回滚

防回滚机制可以防止回滚到安全版本号低于芯片 eFuse 中烧录程序的应用程序版本。

设置 CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTIROLLBACK 启动防回滚机制。在引导加载程序中选取可启动的应用程序，会额外检查芯片和应用程序镜像的安全版本号。可启动固件中的应用安全版本号必须等于或高于芯片中的应用安全版本号。

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTIROLLBACK 和 CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE 一起使用。此时，只有安全版本号等于或高于芯片中的应用安全版本号时才会回滚。

典型的防回滚机制

- 新发布的固件解决了此前版本的安全问题。
- 开发者在确保固件可以运行之后，增加安全版本号，发布固件。
- 下载新版应用程序。
- 运行函数 esp_ota_set_boot_partition()，将新版应用程序设为可启动。如果新版应用程序的安全版本号低于芯片中的应用安全版本号，新版应用程序会被擦除，无法更新到新固件。
- 重新启动。
- 在引导加载程序中选取安全版本号等于或高于芯片中应用安全版本号的应用程序。如果 odata 处于初始阶段，通过串行通道加载了安全版本号高于芯片中应用安全版本号的固件，则引导加载程序中 eFuse 的安全版本号会立即更新。
- 新版应用程序启动，之后进行可操作性检测。如果通过检测，则调用函数 esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()，将应用程序标记为 ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID，更新芯片中应用程序的安全版本号。注意，如果调用函数 esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot()，可能会因为设备中没有可启动的应用程序而回滚失败，返回 ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED 错误，应用程序状态一直为 ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY。
- 如果运行的应用程序处于 ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID 状态，则可再次更新。

建议：

如果想避免因服务器应用程序的安全版本号低于运行的应用程序，造成不必要的下载和擦除，必须从镜像的第一个包中获取 new_app_info.secure_version，和 eFuse 的安全版本号比较。如果 esp_efuse_check_secure_version(new_app_info.secure_version) 函数为真，则下载继续，反之则中断。

```c
bool image_header_was_checked = false;
while (1) { 
    int data_read = esp_http_client_read(client, ota_write_data, BUFFSIZE);
    ...
    if (data_read > 0) {
        if (image_header_was_checked == false) {
            esp_app_desc_t new_app_info;
            if (data_read > sizeof(esp_image_header_t) + sizeof(esp_image_segment_header_t) + sizeof(esp_app_desc_t)) {
                // check current version with downloading
                if (esp_efuse_check_secure_version(new_app_info.secure_version) == false) {
                    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "This a new app can not be downloaded due to a secure version is lower than stored in efuse.");
                    http_cleanup(client);
                    task_fatal_error();
                }
                image_header_was_checked = true;
                esp_ota_begin(update_partition, OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN, &update_handle);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

(下页继续)
```c
esp_ota_write(update_handle, (const void *)ota_write_data, data_read);
```

**限制：**
- `secure_version` 字段最多有 32 位。也就是说，同个段最多可以做 32 次。用户可以使用`CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SEC_VER_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD`减少该 eFuse 字段的长度。
- 防回滚仅在 eFuse 编码机制设置为 NONE 时生效。
- 防回滚不支持工厂和测试分区，因此分区表中不应有设置为工厂或测试的分区。

**security_version:**
- 存储在应用程序镜像中的 esp_app_desc 里。版本号用`CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SECURE_VERSION`设置。
- ESP32 中版本号存储在 eFuse 的 EFUSE_BLK3_RDATA4_REG 里（若 eFuse 的位烧写为 1，则永远无法恢复为 0），寄存器设置了多少位，应用程序的安全版本号就为多少。

没有安全启动的安全 OTA 升级

即便硬件安全启动没有使能，也可验证已签名的 OTA 升级。可通过设置`CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT`和`CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_ON_UPDATE_NO_SECURE_BOOT`实现。

具体可参考`Signed App Verification Without Hardware Secure Boot`。

### OTA 工具 (otatool.py)

`app_update` 组件中有 otatool.py 工具，用于在目标设备上完成下列 OTA 分区相关操作：
- 读取 otadata 分区 (read_otadata)
- 擦除 otadata 分区，将设备复位至工厂应用程序 (erase_otadata)
- 切换 OTA 分区 (switch_ota_partition)
- 擦除 OTA 分区 (erase_ota_partition)
- 写入 OTA 分区 (write_ota_partition)
- 读取 OTA 分区 (read_ota_partition)

用户若想通过编程方式完成相关操作，可从另一个 Python 脚本导入并使用该 OTA 工具，或者从 Shell 脚本调用该 OTA 工具。前者可使用工具的 Python API，后者可使用命令行界面。

### Python API

首先，确保已导入 otatool 模块。

```python
import sys
import os

idf_path = os.environ['IDF_PATH']  # 从环境中获取 IDF_PATH 的值
otatool_dir = os.path.join(idf_path, "components", "app_update")  # otatool.py 位于 ~$IDF_PATH/components/app_update 下

sys.path.append(otatool_dir)  # 使能 Python 寻找 otatool 模块
from otatool import *  # 导入 otatool 模块内的所有名称
```

要使用 OTA 工具的 Python API，第一步是创建 OtapoolTarget 对象：

```python
# 创建 partool.py 的目标设备，并将目标设备连接到串行端口 /dev/ttyUSB1
target = OtapoolTarget("/dev/ttyUSB1")
```

现在，可使用创建的 OtapoolTarget 在目标设备上完成操作：
# 擦除 odata，将设备复位至工厂应用程序
target.erase_otadata()

# 擦除 OTA 应用程序分区 0
target.erase_ota_partition(0)

# 将启动分区切换至 OTA 应用程序分区 1
target.switch_ota_partition(1)

# 读取 OTA 分区 'ota_3'，将内容保存至文件 'ota_3.bin'
target.read_ota_partition("ota_3", "ota_3.bin")

要操作的 OTA 分区通过应用程序分区序号或分区名称指定。
更多关于 Python API 的信息，请查看 OTA 工具的代码注释。

命令行界面  otatool.py 的命令行界面具有如下结构：

otatool.py [command-args] [subcommand] [subcommand-args]

- command-args - 执行主命令（otatool.py）所需的实际参数，多与目标设备有关
- subcommand - 要执行的操作
- subcommand-args - 所选操作的实际参数

# 擦除 odata，将设备复位至工厂应用程序
otatool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" erase_otadata

# 擦除 OTA 应用程序分区 0
otatool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" erase_ota_partition --slot 0

# 将启动分区切换至 OTA 应用程序分区 1
otatool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" switch_ota_partition --slot 1

# 读取 OTA 分区 'ota_3'，将内容保存至文件 'ota_3.bin'
otatool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" read_ota_partition --name=ota_3 --output=ota_3.bin

更多信息可用 -help 指令查看：

# 显示可用的子命令和主命令描述
otatool.py --help

# 显示子命令的描述
otatool.py [subcommand] --help

相关文档

- 分区表
- SPI Flash 和分区 API
- ESP HTTPS OTA

应用程序示例

端对端的 OTA 固件升级示例请参考 system/ota。

API 参考

Header File
Chapter 2. API

• components/app_update/include/esp_ota_ops.h

**Functions**

```c
const esp_app_desc_t *esp_ota_get_app_description (void)
```

Return esp_app_desc structure. This structure includes app version.

Return description for running app.

```c
int esp_ota_get_app_elf_sha256 (char *dst, size_t size)
```

Fill the provided buffer with SHA256 of the ELF file, formatted as hexadecimal, null-terminated. If the buffer size is not sufficient to fit the entire SHA256 in hex plus a null terminator, the largest possible number of bytes will be written followed by a null.

Return Number of bytes written to dst (including null terminator)

**Parameters**

- `dst`: Destination buffer
- `size`: Size of the buffer

```c
esp_err_t esp_ota_begin (const esp_partition_t *partition, size_t image_size, esp_ota_handle_t *out_handle)
```

Commence an OTA update writing to the specified partition.

The specified partition is erased to the specified image size.

If image size is not yet known, pass OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN which will cause the entire partition to be erased.

On success, this function allocates memory that remains in use until esp_ota_end() is called with the returned handle.

Note: If the rollback option is enabled and the running application has the ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY state then it will lead to the ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE error. Confirm the running app before to run download a new app, use esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback() function for it (this should be done as early as possible when you first download a new application).

Return

- ESP_OK: OTA operation commenced successfully.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: partition or out_handle arguments were NULL, or partition doesn’t point to an OTA app partition.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for OTA operation.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_PARTITION_CONFLICT: Partition holds the currently running firmware, cannot update in place.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Partition argument not found in partition table.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID: The OTA data partition contains invalid data.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: Partition doesn’t fit in configured flash size.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE: If the running app has not confirmed state. Before performing an update, the application must be valid.

**Parameters**

- `partition`: Pointer to info for partition which will receive the OTA update. Required.
- `image_size`: Size of new OTA app image. Partition will be erased in order to receive this size of image. If 0 or OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN, the entire partition is erased.
- `out_handle`: On success, returns a handle which should be used for subsequent esp_ota_write() and esp_ota_end() calls.

```c
esp_err_t esp_ota_write (esp_ota_handle_t handle, const void *data, size_t size)
```

Write OTA update data to partition.

This function can be called multiple times as data is received during the OTA operation. Data is written sequentially to the partition.

Return

- ESP_OK: Data was written to flash successfully.
Chapter 2. API 参考

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: handle is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: First byte of image contains invalid app image magic byte.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID: OTA data partition has invalid contents

**Parameters**
- handle: Handle obtained from esp_ota_begin
- data: Data buffer to write
- size: Size of data buffer in bytes

```c
esp_err_t esp_ota_write_with_offset (esp_ota_handle_t handle, const void *data, size_t size, uint32_t offset)
```

Write OTA update data to partition at an offset.

This function can write data in non-contiguous manner. If flash encryption is enabled, data should be 16 bytes aligned.

**Note** While performing OTA, if the packets arrive out of order, esp_ota_write_with_offset() can be used to write data in non-contiguous manner. Use of esp_ota_write_with_offset() in combination with esp_ota_write() is not recommended.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Data was written to flash successfully.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: handle is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: First byte of image contains invalid app image magic byte.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID: OTA data partition has invalid contents

**Parameters**
- handle: Handle obtained from esp_ota_begin
- data: Data buffer to write
- size: Size of data buffer in bytes
- offset: Offset in flash partition

```c
esp_err_t esp_ota_end (esp_ota_handle_t handle)
```

Finish OTA update and validate newly written app image.

**Note** After calling esp_ota_end(), the handle is no longer valid and any memory associated with it is freed (regardless of result).

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Newly written OTA app image is valid.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: OTA handle was not found.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Handle was never written to.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: OTA image is invalid (either not a valid app image, or - if secure boot is enabled - signature failed to verify.)
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: If flash encryption is enabled, this result indicates an internal error writing the final encrypted bytes to flash.

**Parameters**
- handle: Handle obtained from esp_ota_begin().

```c
esp_err_t esp_ota_abort (esp_ota_handle_t handle)
```

Abort OTA update, free the handle and memory associated with it.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Handle and its associated memory is freed successfully.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: OTA handle was not found.

**Parameters**
- handle: obtained from esp_ota_begin().

```c
esp_err_t esp_ota_set_boot_partition (const esp_partition_t *partition)
```

Configure OTA data for a new boot partition.

**Note** If this function returns ESP_OK, calling esp_restart() will boot the newly configured app partition.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: OTA data updated, next reboot will use specified partition.
• ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: partition argument was NULL or didn’t point to a valid OTA partition of type “app”.  
• ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: Partition contained invalid app image. Also returned if secure boot is enabled and signature validation failed.  
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: OTA data partition not found.  
• ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash erase or write failed.

Parameters

• partition: Pointer to info for partition containing app image to boot.

const esp_partition_t *esp_ota_get_boot_partition (void)
Get partition info of currently configured boot app.

If esp_ota_set_boot_partition() has been called, the partition which was set by that function will be returned.  
If esp_ota_set_boot_partition() has not been called, the result is usually the same as esp_ota_get_running_partition(). The two results are not equal if the configured boot partition does not contain a valid app (meaning that the running partition will be an app that the bootloader chose via fallback).

If the OTA data partition is not present or not valid then the result is the first app partition found in the partition table. In priority order, this means: the factory app, the first OTA app slot, or the test app partition.

Note that there is no guarantee the returned partition is a valid app. Use esp_image_verify(ESP_IMAGE_VERIFY, ...) to verify if the returned partition contains a bootable image.

Return Pointer to info for partition structure, or NULL if partition table is invalid or a flash read operation failed. Any returned pointer is valid for the lifetime of the application.

const esp_partition_t *esp_ota_get_running_partition (void)
Get partition info of currently running app.

This function is different to esp_ota_get_boot_partition() in that it ignores any change of selected boot partition caused by esp_ota_set_boot_partition(). Only the app whose code is currently running will have its partition information returned.

The partition returned by this function may also differ from esp_ota_get_boot_partition() if the configured boot partition is somehow invalid, and the bootloader fell back to a different app partition at boot.

Return Pointer to info for partition structure, or NULL if no partition is found or flash read operation failed. Returned pointer is valid for the lifetime of the application.

const esp_partition_t *esp_ota_get_next_update_partition (const esp_partition_t *start_from)
Return the next OTA app partition which should be written with a new firmware.

Call this function to find an OTA app partition which can be passed to esp_ota_begin().

Finds next partition round-robin, starting from the current running partition.

Return Pointer to info for partition which should be updated next. NULL result indicates invalid OTA data partition, or that no eligible OTA app slot partition was found.

Parameters

• start_from: If set, treat this partition info as describing the current running partition. Can be NULL, in which case esp_ota_get_running_partition() is used to find the currently running partition.  
The result of this function is never the same as this argument.

 esp_err_t esp_ota_get_partition_description (const esp_partition_t *partition, esp_app_desc_t *app_desc)
Returns esp_app_desc structure for app partition. This structure includes app version.

Returns a description for the requested app partition.

Return

• ESP_OK Successful.  
• ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND app_desc structure is not found. Magic word is incorrect.  
• ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Partition is not application.
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Arguments is NULL or if partition’s offset exceeds partition size.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE Read would go out of bounds of the partition.
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** partition: Pointer to app partition. (only app partition)
- **[out]** app_desc: Structure of info about app.

`uint8_t esp_ota_get_app_partition_count (void)`

Returns number of OTA partitions provided in partition table.

**Return**
- Number of OTA partitions

`esp_err_t esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback (void)`

This function is called to indicate that the running app is working well.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: if successful.

`esp_err_t esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot (void)`

This function is called to roll back to the previously workable app with reboot.

If rollback is successful then device will reset else API will return with error code. Checks applications on a flash drive that can be booted in case of rollback. If the flash does not have at least one app (except the running app) then rollback is not possible.

**Return**
- ESP_FAIL: if not successful.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED: The rollback is not possible due to flash does not have any apps.

`const esp_partition_t *esp_ota_get_last_invalid_partition (void)`

Returns last partition with invalid state (ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID or ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED).

**Return**
- partition.

`esp_err_t esp_ota_get_state_partition (const esp_partition_t *partition, esp_ota_img_states_t *ota_state)`

Returns state for given partition.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: partition or ota_state arguments were NULL.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: partition is not ota.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Partition table does not have odata or state was not found for given partition.

**Parameters**
- **[in]** partition: Pointer to partition.
- **[out]** ota_state: state of partition (if this partition has a record in odata).

`esp_err_t esp_ota_erase_last_boot_app_partition (void)`

Erase previous boot app partition and corresponding odata select for this partition.

When current app is marked to as valid then you can erase previous app partition.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Successful, otherwise ESP_ERR.

`bool esp_ota_check_rollback_is_possible (void)`

Checks applications on the slots which can be booted in case of rollback.

These applications should be valid (marked in odata as not UNDEFINED, INVALID or ABORTED and crc is good) and be able booted, and secure_version of app >= secure_version of efuse (if anti-rollback is enabled).

**Return**
- True: Returns true if the slots have at least one app (except the running app).
- False: The rollback is not possible.
Chapter 2. API

Macros

OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN
Used for esp_ota_begin() if new image size is unknown

OTA_WITH_SEQUENTIAL_WRITES
Used for esp_ota_begin() if new image size is unknown and erase can be done in incremental manner (assuming write operation is in continuous sequence)

ESP_ERR_OTA_BASE
Base error code for ota_ops API

ESP_ERR_OTA_PARTITION_CONFLICT
Error if request was to write or erase the current running partition

ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID
Error if OTA data partition contains invalid content

ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED
Error if OTA app image is invalid

ESP_ERR_OTA_SMALL_SEC_VER
Error if the firmware has a secure version less than the running firmware.

ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED
Error if flash does not have valid firmware in passive partition and hence rollback is not possible

ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE
Error if current active firmware is still marked in pending validation state (ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY), essentially first boot of firmware image post upgrade and hence firmware upgrade is not possible

Type Definitions

typedef uint32_t esp_ota_handle_t
Opaque handle for an application OTA update.

esp_ota_begin() returns a handle which is then used for subsequent calls to esp_ota_write() and esp_ota_end().

OTA 升级失败排查

2.7.21 Performance Monitor

The Performance Monitor component provides APIs to use ESP32 internal performance counters to profile functions and applications.

Application Example

An example which combines performance monitor is provided in examples/system/perfmon directory. This example initializes the performance monitor structure and execute them with printing the statistics.

High level API Reference

Header Files

• perfmon/include/perfmon.h

API Reference

Header File

• components/perfmon/include/xtensa_perfmon_access.h
图 37: OTA 升级失败时如何排查（点击放大）
Functions

`esp_err_t xtensa_perfmon_init (int id, uint16_t select, uint16_t mask, int kernelcnt, int tracelevel)`

Initialize performance monitor register with define values

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if one of the arguments is not correct

**Parameters**
- [in] `id`: performance counter number
- [in] `select`: select value from PMCTRLx register
- [in] `mask`: mask value from PMCTRLx register
- [in] `kernelcnt`: kernelcnt value from PMCTRLx register
- [in] `tracelevel`: tracelevel value from PMCTRLx register

`esp_err_t xtensa_perfmon_reset (int id)`

Reset PM counter.

Reset PM counter. Writes 0 to the PMx register.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if id out of range

**Parameters**
- [in] `id`: performance counter number

```c
void xtensa_perfmon_start (void)
Start PM counters.
Start all PM counters synchronously. Write 1 to the PGM register
```

```c
void xtensa_perfmon_stop (void)
Stop PM counters.
Stop all PM counters synchronously. Write 0 to the PGM register
```

```c
uint32_t xtensa_perfmon_value (int id)
Read PM counter.
Read value of defined PM counter.

**Return**
- Performance counter value

**Parameters**
- [in] `id`: performance counter number
```
```

`esp_err_t xtensa_perfmon_overflow (int id)`

Read PM overflow state.

Read overflow value of defined PM counter.

**Return**
- ESP_OK if there is no overflow (overflow = 0)
- ESP_FAIL if overflow occurs (overflow = 1)

**Parameters**
- [in] `id`: performance counter number

```c
void xtensa_perfmon_dump (void)
Dump PM values.
Dump all PM register to the console.
```

**Header File**
- components/perfmon/include/xtensa_perfmon_apis.h
Functions

```c
esp_err_t xtensa_perfmon_exec(const xtensa_perfmon_config_t *config)
```

Execute PM.

Execute performance counter for dedicated function with defined parameters

Return

- ESP_OK if no errors
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if one of the required parameters not defined
- ESP_FAIL - counter overflow

Parameters

- [in] config: pointer to the configuration structure

```c
void xtensa_perfmon_view_cb(void *params, uint32_t select, uint32_t mask, uint32_t value)
```

Dump PM results.

Callback to dump perfmon result to a FILE* stream specified in perfmon_config_t::callback_params. If callback_params is set to NULL, will print to stdout

Parameters

- [in] params: used parameters passed from configuration (callback_params). This parameter expected as FILE* hanle, where data will be stored. If this parameter NULL, then data will be stored to the stdout.
- [in] select: select value for current counter
- [in] mask: mask value for current counter
- [in] value: counter value for current counter

Structures

```c
struct xtensa_perfmon_config
```

Performance monitor configuration structure.

Structure to configure performance counter to measure dedicated function

Public Members

```c
int repeat_count
```

how much times function will be called before the callback will be repeated

```c
float max_deviation
```

Difference between min and max counter number 0..1, 0 - no difference, 1 - not used

```c
void (*call_params)
```

This pointer will be passed to the call_function as a parameter

```c
void (*call_function)(void *params)
```

pointer to the function that have to be called

```c
void (*callback)(void *params, uint32_t select, uint32_t mask, uint32_t value)
```

pointer to the function that will be called with result parameters

```c
void (*callback_params)
```

parameter that will be passed to the callback

```c
int tracelevel
```

trace level for all counters. In case of negative value, the filter will be ignored. If it’s >=0, then the perfmon will count only when interrupt level > tracelevel. It’s useful to monitor interrupts.

```c
uint32_t counters_size
```

amount of counter in the list

```c
const uint32_t *select_mask
```

list of the select/mask parameters
Type Definitions

typedef struct xtensa_perfmon_config xtensa_perfmon_config_t

Performance monitor configuration structure.

Structure to configure performance counter to measure dedicated function

2.7.22 电源管理

概述

ESP-IDF 中集成的电源管理算法可以根据应用程序组件的需求，调整外围总线 (APB) 频率和 CPU 频率，并使芯片进入 Light-sleep 模式，尽可能减少运行应用程序的功耗。

应用程序组件可以通过创建和获取电源管理锁来控制功耗。

例如:

- 对于 APB 外设，APB 时钟频率的外设，其驱动可以要求在使用外设时，将 APB 频率设置为 80 MHz。
- RTOS 可以要求 CPU 在有任务需要时开始运行时以最高配置频率工作。
- 一些外设可能需要中断才能启用，因此其驱动也会要求禁用 Light-sleep 模式。

请求较高的 APB 频率或 CPU 频率以及禁用 Light-sleep 模式会增加功耗，因此请将组件使用的电源管理锁降到最少。

电源管理配置

编译时可使用 CONFIG_PM_ENABLE 选项启用电源管理功能。

启用电源管理功能将会增加中断延迟。额外延迟与多个因素有关，例如：CPU 频率、单/双核模式、是否需要进行频率切换等。CPU 频率为 240 MHz 且未启用频率调节时，最小额外延迟为 0.2 μs；如果启用频率调节，且在中断入口将频率由 40 MHz 调节至 80 MHz，则最大额外延迟为 40 μs。

通过调用 esp_pm_configure() 函数可以在应用程序中启用动态调频 (DFS) 功能和自动 Light-sleep 模式。此函数的参数 esp_pm_config_esp32_t 定义了频率调节的相关设置。此参数结构中，需要初始化以下三个字段：

- max_freq_mhz: 最大 CPU 频率 (MHz)。即获取 ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX 辅助所使用的频率。该字段通常设置为 CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ。
- min_freq_mhz: 最小 CPU 频率 (MHz)。即获取 ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX 辅助所使用的频率。该字段可设置为晶振 (XTAL) 频率值，或者 XTAL 频率值除以整数。注意，10 MHz 是生成 1 MHz 的 REF_TICK 默认时钟所需的最小频率。
- light_sleep_enable: 没有获取任何管理锁时，决定系统是否需要自动进入 Light-sleep 状态 (true/false)。

如果在 menuconfig 中启用了 CONFIG_PM_DFS_INIT_AUTO 选项，最大 CPU 频率将由 CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ 设置决定，最小 CPU 频率将锁定为 XTAL 频率。

注解：自动 Light-sleep 模式基于 FreeRTOS Tickless Idle 功能，因此如果在 menuconfig 中没有启用 CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE 选项，在请求自动 Light-sleep 时，esp_pm_configure() 将会返回 ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED 错误。

注解：Light-sleep 状态下，外设设有时钟门控，不会产生来自 GPIO 和内部外设的中断。Sleep Modes 文档中所提到的唤醒源可用于从 Light-sleep 状态触发唤醒。

例如，EXT0 和 EXT1 唤醒源可以通过 GPIO 唤醒芯片。
电源管理

应用程序可以通过获取或释放管理锁来控制电源管理算法。应用程序获取电源管理锁后，电源管理算法的操作将受到下面的限制。释放电源管理锁后，限制解除。

电源管理锁设有获取/释放计数器，如果已多次获取电源管理锁，则需要将电源管理锁释放相同次数以解除限制。

ESP32 支持下表中三种电源管理锁。

### 电源管理锁

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>电源管理锁</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX</td>
<td>请求使用 <code>esp_pm_configure()</code> 将 CPU 频率设置为最大值。ESP32 可以将该值设置为 80 MHz、160 MHz 或 240 MHz。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX</td>
<td>请求将 APB 频率设置为最大值，ESP32 支持的最大频率为 80 MHz。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP</td>
<td>禁止自动切换至 Light-sleep 模式。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ESP32 电源管理算法

下表列出了启用动态调整时如何切换 CPU 频率和 APB 频率。您可以使用 `esp_pm_configure()` 或者 `CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ` 指定 CPU 最大频率。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CPU 最高频率</th>
<th>电源管理锁获取情况</th>
<th>APB 频率和 CPU 频率</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 240          | 获得 ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX 或 ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX | CPU: 240 MHz  
APB: 80 MHz |
|              | 无                   | 使用 `esp_pm_configure()` 为二者设置最小值 |
| 160          | 获得 ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX | CPU: 160 MHz  
APB: 80 MHz |
|              | 获得 ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX, 未获得 ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX | CPU: 80 MHz  
APB: 80 MHz |
|              | 无                   | 使用 `esp_pm_configure()` 为二者设置最小值 |
| 80           | 获得 ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX 或 ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX | CPU: 80 MHz  
APB: 80 MHz |
|              | 无                   | 使用 `esp_pm_configure()` 为二者设置最小值 |

如果没有获取任何管理锁，调用 `esp_pm_configure()` 将启动 Light-sleep 模式。Light-sleep 模式持续时间由以下因素决定：

- 处于阻塞状态的 FreeRTOS 任务数（有限超时）
- 高分辨率定时器 API 注册的计数器数量

您也可以设置 Light-sleep 模式在最近事件（任务解除阻塞，或计时器超时）之前持续多久才唤醒芯片。
为了跳过不必要的唤醒，可以将 `skip_unhandled_events` 选项设置为 true 来初始化 `esp_timer`。带有此标志的定时器不会唤醒系统，有助于减少功耗。

**动态调频和外设驱动**

启用动态调频后，APB 频率在一个 RTOS 滴答周期内多次更改。有些外设不受 APB 频率变更的影响，但有些外设可能会出现问题。例如，Timer Group 外设定时器会继续计数，但定时器计数的速度将随 APB 频率的变更而变更。

以下外设不受 APB 频率变更的影响：

- **UART**：如果 `REF_TICK` 用作时钟源，则 UART 不受 APB 频率变更影响。请查看 `uart_config_t` 中的 `use_ref_tick`。
- **LEDC**：如果 `REF_TICK` 用作时钟源，则 LEDC 不受 APB 频率变更影响。请查看 `ledc_config_t` 结构体中的 flags 成员以及 `RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS` 宏。

目前以下外设驱动程序可知感知动态调频，并在调频期间使用 `ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX` 钥：

- SPI master
- I2C
- I2S（如果 APLL 锁在使用中，I2S 会启用 `ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP` 钥）
- SDMMC

启用以下驱动程序时，将占用 `ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX` 钥：

- **SPI slave**：从调用 `spi_slave_initialize()` 至 `spi_slave_free()` 期间。
- **Ethernet**：从调用 `esp_eth_driver_install()` 至 `esp_eth_driver_uninstall()` 期间。
- **WiFi**：从调用 `esp_wifi_start()` 至 `esp_wifi_stop()` 期间。如果启用了调制解调器睡眠模式，广播关闭时将释放此管理锁。
- **TWAI**：从调用 `twai_driver_install()` 至 `twai_driver_uninstall()` 期间。
- **Bluetooth**：从调用 `esp_bt_controller_enable()` 至 `esp_bt_controller_disable()` 期间。如果启用了蓝牙调制解调器，广播关闭时将释放此管理锁。但依然占用 `ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP` 钥，除非将 `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_LOW_POWER_CLOCK` 选项设置为“外部 32 kHz 晶振”。

以下外设驱动程序无法感知动态调频，应用程序需自己获取/释放管理锁：

- PCNT
- Sigma-delta
- Timer group
- MCPWM

**API 参考**

**Header File**

- components/esp_pm/include/esp_pm.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t esp_pm_configure(const void *config)
```

Set implementation-specific power management configuration.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the configuration values are not correct
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if certain combination of values is not supported，or if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE` is not enabled in sdkconfig

**Parameters**

- config: pointer to implementation-specific configuration structure (e.g. `esp_pm_config_esp32`)
**esp_err_t esp_pm_get_configuration (void *config)**

Get implementation-specific power management configuration.

- **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the pointer is null

- **Parameters**
  - config: pointer to implementation-specific configuration structure (e.g. esp_pm_config_esp32)

**esp_err_t esp_pm_lock_create (esp_pm_lock_type_t lock_type, int arg, const char *name, esp_pm_lock_handle_t *out_handle)**

Initialize a lock handle for certain power management parameter.

When lock is created, initially it is not taken. Call esp_pm_lock_acquire to take the lock.

This function must not be called from an ISR.

- **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if the lock structure cannot be allocated
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if out_handle is NULL or type argument is not valid
  - ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE is not enabled in sdkconfig

- **Parameters**
  - lock_type: Power management constraint which the lock should control
  - arg: argument, value depends on lock_type, see esp_pm_lock_type_t
  - name: arbitrary string identifying the lock (e.g. “wifi” or “spi”). Used by the esp_pm_dump_locks function to list existing locks. May be set to NULL. If not set to NULL, must point to a string which is valid for the lifetime of the lock.
  - [out] out_handle: handle returned from this function. Use this handle when calling esp_pm_lock_delete, esp_pm_lock_acquire, esp_pm_lock_release. Must not be NULL.

**esp_err_t esp_pm_lock_acquire (esp_pm_lock_handle_t handle)**

Take a power management lock.

Once the lock is taken, power management algorithm will not switch to the mode specified in a call to esp_pm_lock_create, or any of the lower power modes (higher numeric values of ‘mode’).

The lock is recursive, in the sense that if esp_pm_lock_acquire is called a number of times, esp_pm_lock_release has to be called the same number of times in order to release the lock.

This function may be called from an ISR.

This function is not thread-safe w.r.t. calls to other esp_pm_lock_* functions for the same handle.

- **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is invalid
  - ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE is not enabled in sdkconfig

- **Parameters**
  - handle: handle obtained from esp_pm_lock_create function

**esp_err_t esp_pm_lock_release (esp_pm_lock_handle_t handle)**

Release the lock taken using esp_pm_lock_acquire.

Call to this functions removes power management restrictions placed when taking the lock.

Locks are recursive, so if esp_pm_lock_acquire is called a number of times, esp_pm_lock_release has to be called the same number of times in order to actually release the lock.

This function may be called from an ISR.

This function is not thread-safe w.r.t. calls to other esp_pm_lock_* functions for the same handle.

- **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is invalid
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if lock is not acquired
Chapter 2. API

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE` is not enabled in `sdkconfig`

**Parameters**
- `handle`: handle obtained from `esp_pm_lock_create` function

```c
esp_err_t esp_pm_lock_delete(esp_pm_lock_handle_t handle)
```
Delete a lock created using `esp_pm_lock`.

The lock must be released before calling this function.

This function must not be called from an ISR.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle argument is NULL
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the lock is still acquired
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE` is not enabled in `sdkconfig`

**Parameters**
- `handle`: handle obtained from `esp_pm_lock_create` function

```c
esp_err_t esp_pm_dump_locks(FILE *stream)
```
Dump the list of all locks to stderr

This function dumps debugging information about locks created using `esp_pm_lock_create` to an output stream.

This function must not be called from an ISR. If `esp_pm_lock_acquire/release` are called while this function is running, inconsistent results may be reported.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE` is not enabled in `sdkconfig`

**Parameters**
- `stream`: stream to print information to; use stdout or stderr to print to the console; use `fmemopen/open_memstream` to print to a string buffer.

**Type Definitions**

```c
typedef struct esp_pm_lock *esp_pm_lock_handle_t
```
Opaque handle to the power management lock.

**Enumerations**

```c
enum esp_pm_lock_type_t
```
Power management constraints.

**Values:**

- **ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX**
  - Require CPU frequency to be at the maximum value set via `esp_pm_configure`. Argument is unused and should be set to 0.

- **ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX**
  - Require APB frequency to be at the maximum value supported by the chip. Argument is unused and should be set to 0.

- **ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP**
  - Prevent the system from going into light sleep. Argument is unused and should be set to 0.

**Header File**

- `components/esp_pm/include/esp32/pm.h`
Chapter 2. API 参考

Structures

```c
struct esp_pm_config_esp32_t

Power management config for ESP32.
Pass a pointer to this structure as an argument to esp_pm_configure function.
```

Public Members

- `int max_freq_mhz`
  Maximum CPU frequency, in MHz
- `int min_freq_mhz`
  Minimum CPU frequency to use when no locks are taken, in MHz
- `bool light_sleep_enable`
  Enter light sleep when no locks are taken

### 2.7.23 Random Number Generation

ESP32 contains a hardware random number generator, values from it can be obtained using the APIs `esp_random()` and `esp_fill_random()`.

The hardware RNG produces true random numbers under any of the following conditions:

- RF subsystem is enabled (i.e. Wi-Fi or Bluetooth are enabled).
- An internal entropy source has been enabled by calling `bootloader_random_enable()` and not yet disabled by calling `bootloader_random_disable()`.
- While the ESP-IDF is running. This is because the default ESP-IDF bootloader implementation calls `bootloader_random_enable()` when the bootloader starts, and `bootloader_random_disable()` before executing the app.

When any of these conditions are true, samples of physical noise are continuously mixed into the internal hardware RNG state to provide entropy. Consult the ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > Random Number Generator (RNG) [PDF] chapter for more details.

If none of the above conditions are true, the output of the RNG should be considered pseudo-random only.

### Startup

During startup, ESP-IDF bootloader temporarily enables a non-RF entropy source (internal reference voltage noise) that provides entropy for any first boot key generation. However, after the app starts executing then normally only pseudo-random numbers are available until Wi-Fi or Bluetooth are initialized.

To re-enable the entropy source temporarily during app startup, or for an application that does not use Wi-Fi or Bluetooth, call the function `bootloader_random_enable()` to re-enable the internal entropy source. The function `bootloader_random_disable()` must be called to disable the entropy source again before using ADC, I2S, Wi-Fi or Bluetooth.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注解:** The entropy source enabled during the boot process by the ESP-IDF Second Stage Bootloader will seed the internal RNG state with some entropy. However, the internal hardware RNG state is not large enough to provide a continuous stream of true random numbers. This is why a continuous entropy source must be enabled whenever true random numbers are required.

**注解:** If an application requires a source of true random numbers but it is not possible to permanently enable a hardware entropy source, consider using a strong software DRBG implementation such as the mbedTLS CTR-DRBG or HMAC-DRBG, with an initial seed of entropy from hardware RNG true random numbers.
Chapter 2. API 参考

API Reference

Header File

- components/esp_hw_support/include/esp_random.h

Functions

uint32_t esp_random (void)
Get one random 32-bit word from hardware RNG.

If Wi-Fi or Bluetooth are enabled, this function returns true random numbers. In other situations, if true random numbers are required then consult the ESP-IDF Programming Guide “Random Number Generation” section for necessary prerequisites.

This function automatically busy-waits to ensure enough external entropy has been introduced into the hardware RNG state, before returning a new random number. This delay is very short (always less than 100 CPU cycles).

Return Random value between 0 and UINT32_MAX

void esp_fill_random (void *buf, size_t len)
Fill a buffer with random bytes from hardware RNG.

Note This function is implemented via calls to esp_random(), so the same constraints apply.

Parameters

- buf: Pointer to buffer to fill with random numbers.
- len: Length of buffer in bytes

Header File

- components/bootloader_support/include/bootloader_random.h

Functions

void bootloader_random_enable (void)
Enable an entropy source for RNG if RF is disabled.

The exact internal entropy source mechanism depends on the chip in use but all SoCs use the SAR ADC to continuously mix random bits (an internal noise reading) into the HWRNG. Consult the SoC Technical Reference Manual for more information.

Can also be used from app code early during operation, if true random numbers are required before RF is initialised. Consult ESP-IDF Programming Guide “Random Number Generation” section for details.

void bootloader_random_disable (void)
Disable entropy source for RNG.

Disables internal entropy source. Must be called after bootloader_random_enable() and before RF features, ADC, or I2S (ESP32 only) are initialized.

Consult the ESP-IDF Programming Guide “Random Number Generation” section for details.

void bootloader_fill_random (void *buffer, size_t length)
Fill buffer with ‘length’ random bytes.

Note If this function is being called from app code only, and never from the bootloader, then it’s better to call esp_fill_random().

Parameters

- buffer: Pointer to buffer
- length: This many bytes of random data will be copied to buffer

getrandom

A compatible version of the Linux getrandom() function is also provided for ease of porting:
#include <sys/random.h>

ssize_t getrandom(void *buf, size_t buflen, unsigned int flags);

This function is implemented by calling esp_fill_random() internally.

The flags argument is ignored, this function is always non-blocking but the strength of any random numbers is dependent on the same conditions described above.

Return value is -1 (with errno set to EFAULT) if the buf argument is NULL, and equal to buflen otherwise.

## 2.7.24 Sleep Modes

### Overview

ESP32 is capable of light sleep and deep sleep power saving modes.

In light sleep mode, digital peripherals, most of the RAM, and CPUs are clock-gated, and supply voltage is reduced. Upon exit from light sleep, peripherals and CPUs resume operation, their internal state is preserved.

In deep sleep mode, CPUs, most of the RAM, and all the digital peripherals which are clocked from APB_CLK are powered off. The only parts of the chip which can still be powered on are:

- RTC controller
- RTC peripherals
- ULP coprocessor
- RTC fast memory
- RTC slow memory

Wakeup from deep and light sleep modes can be done using several sources. These sources can be combined, in this case the chip will wake up when any one of the sources is triggered. Wakeup sources can be enabled using esp_sleep_enable_X_wakeup APIs and can be disabled using esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source() API. Next section describes these APIs in detail. Wakeup sources can be configured at any moment before entering light or deep sleep mode.

Additionally, the application can force specific powerdown modes for the RTC peripherals and RTC memories using esp_sleep_pd_config() API.

Once wakeup sources are configured, application can enter sleep mode using esp_light_sleep_start() or esp_deep_sleep_start() APIs. At this point the hardware will be configured according to the requested wakeup sources, and RTC controller will either power down or power off the CPUs and digital peripherals.

If WiFi connection needs to be maintained, enable WiFi modem sleep, and enable automatic light sleep feature (see Power Management APIs). This will allow the system to wake up from sleep automatically when required by WiFi driver, thereby maintaining connection to the AP.

### WiFi/BT and sleep modes

In deep sleep and light sleep modes, wireless peripherals are powered down. Before entering deep sleep or light sleep modes, applications must disable WiFi and BT using appropriate calls (esp_bluedroid_disable(), esp_bt_controller_disable(), esp_wifi_stop()). WiFi and BT connections will not be maintained in deep sleep or light sleep, even if these functions are not called.

### Wakeup sources

**Timer**  
RTC controller has a built in timer which can be used to wake up the chip after a predefined amount of time. Time is specified at microsecond precision, but the actual resolution depends on the clock source selected for RTC SLOW_CLK.

For details on RTC clock options, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > ULP Coprocessor [PDF].
This wakeup mode doesn’t require RTC peripherals or RTC memories to be powered on during sleep. `esp_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup()` function can be used to enable deep sleep wakeup using a timer.

**Touch pad**  
RTC IO module contains logic to trigger wakeup when a touch sensor interrupt occurs. You need to configure the touch pad interrupt before the chip starts deep sleep.

Revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32 only support this wakeup mode when RTC peripherals are not forced to be powered on (i.e. `ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_PERIPH` should be set to `ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO`).

`esp_sleep_enable_touchpad_wakeup()` function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

**External wakeup (ext0)**  
RTC IO module contains logic to trigger wakeup when one of RTC GPIOs is set to a predefined logic level. RTC IO is part of RTC peripherals power domain, so RTC peripherals will be kept powered on during deep sleep if this wakeup source is requested.

Because RTC IO module is enabled in this mode, internal pullup or pulldown resistors can also be used. They need to be configured by the application using `rtc_gpio_pullup_en()` and `rtc_gpio_pulldown_en()` functions, before calling `esp_sleep_start()`.

In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, this wakeup source is incompatible with ULP and touch wakeup sources.

`esp_sleep_enable_ext0_wakeup()` function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

⚠️: After wake up from sleep, IO pad used for wakeup will be configured as RTC IO. Before using this pad as digital GPIO, reconfigure it using `rtc_gpio_deinit(gpio_num)` function.

**External wakeup (ext1)**  
RTC controller contains logic to trigger wakeup using multiple RTC GPIOs. One of the two logic functions can be used to trigger wakeup:

- wake up if any of the selected pins is high (`ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ANY_HIGH`)
- wake up if all the selected pins are low (`ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ALL_LOW`)

This wakeup source is implemented by the RTC controller. As such, RTC peripherals and RTC memories can be powered down in this mode. However, if RTC peripherals are powered down, internal pullup and pulldown resistors will be disabled. To use internal pullup or pulldown resistors, request RTC peripherals power domain to be kept on during sleep, and configure pullup/pulldown resistors using `rtc_gpio_` functions, before entering sleep:

```
esp_sleep_pd_config(ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_PERIPH, ESP_PD_OPTION_ON);
gpio_pullup_dis(gpio_num);
gpio_pulldown_en(gpio_num);
```

⚠️: After wake up from sleep, IO pad(s) used for wakeup will be configured as RTC IO. Before using these pads as digital GPIOs, reconfigure them using `rtc_gpio_deinit(gpio_num)` function.

`esp_sleep_enable_ext1_wakeup()` function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

**ULP coprocessor wakeup**  
ULP coprocessor can run while the chip is in sleep mode, and may be used to poll sensors, monitor ADC or touch sensor values, and wake up the chip when a specific event is detected. ULP coprocessor is part of RTC peripherals power domain, and it runs the program stored in RTC slow memory. RTC slow memory will be powered on during sleep if this wakeup mode is requested. RTC peripherals will be automatically powered on before ULP coprocessor starts running the program; once the program stops running, RTC peripherals are automatically powered down again.

Revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32 only support this wakeup mode when RTC peripherals are not forced to be powered on (i.e. `ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_PERIPH` should be set to `ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO`).

`esp_sleep_enable_ulp_wakeup()` function can be used to enable this wakeup source.
GPIO wakeup (light sleep only) In addition to EXT0 and EXT1 wakeup sources described above, one more method of wakeup from external inputs is available in light sleep mode. With this wakeup source, each pin can be individually configured to trigger wakeup on high or low level using gpio_wakeup_enable() function. Unlike EXT0 and EXT1 wakeup sources, which can only be used with RTC IOs, this wakeup source can be used with any IO (RTC or digital).

esp_sleep_enable_gpio_wakeup() function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

UART wakeup (light sleep only) When ESP32 receives UART input from external devices, it is often required to wake up the chip when input data is available. UART peripheral contains a feature which allows waking up the chip from light sleep when a certain number of positive edges on RX pin are seen. This number of positive edges can be set using uart_set_wakeup_threshold() function. Note that the character which triggers wakeup (and any characters before it) will not be received by the UART after wakeup. This means that the external device typically needs to send an extra character to the ESP32 to trigger wakeup, before sending the data.

esp_sleep_enable_uart_wakeup() function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

Power-down of RTC peripherals and memories

By default, esp_deep_sleep_start() and esp_light_sleep_start() functions will power down all RTC power domains which are not needed by the enabled wakeup sources. To override this behaviour, esp_sleep_pd_config() function is provided.

Note: in revision 0 of the ESP32, RTC fast memory will always be kept enabled in deep sleep, so that the deep sleep stub can run after reset. This can be overridden, if the application doesn’t need clean reset behaviour after deep sleep.

If some variables in the program are placed into RTC slow memory (for example, using RTC_DATA_ATTR attribute), RTC slow memory will be kept powered on by default. This can be overridden using esp_sleep_pd_config() function, if desired.

Entering light sleep

esp_light_sleep_start() function can be used to enter light sleep once wakeup sources are configured. It is also possible to go into light sleep with no wakeup sources configured, in this case the chip will be in light sleep mode indefinitely, until external reset is applied.

Entering deep sleep

esp_deep_sleep_start() function can be used to enter deep sleep once wakeup sources are configured. It is also possible to go into deep sleep with no wakeup sources configured, in this case the chip will be in deep sleep mode indefinitely, until external reset is applied.

Configuring IOs

Some ESP32 IOs have internal pullups or pulldowns, which are enabled by default. If an external circuit drives this pin in deep sleep mode, current consumption may increase due to current flowing through these pullups and pulldowns.
To isolate a pin, preventing extra current draw, call `rtc_gpio_isolate()` function.

For example, on ESP32-WROVER module, GPIO12 is pulled up externally. GPIO12 also has an internal pull-down in the ESP32 chip. This means that in deep sleep, some current will flow through these external and internal resistors, increasing deep sleep current above the minimal possible value. Add the following code before `esp_deep_sleep_start()` to remove this extra current:

```c
rtc_gpio_isolate(GPIO_NUM_12);
```

**UART output handling**

Before entering sleep mode, `esp_deep_sleep_start()` will flush the contents of UART FIFOs.

When entering light sleep mode using `esp_light_sleep_start()`, UART FIFOs will not be flushed. Instead, UART output will be suspended, and remaining characters in the FIFO will be sent out after wakeup from light sleep.

**Checking sleep wakeup cause**

`esp_sleep_get_wakeup_cause()` function can be used to check which wakeup source has triggered wakeup from sleep mode.

For touch pad, it is possible to identify touch pad which has caused wakeup using `esp_sleep_get_touchpad_wakeup_status()` functions.

For ext1 wakeup sources, it is possible to identify pin which has caused wakeup using `esp_sleep_get_exti_wakeup_status()` functions.

**Disable sleep wakeup source**

Previously configured wakeup source can be disabled later using `esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source()` API. This function deactivates trigger for the given wakeup source. Additionally it can disable all triggers if the argument is `ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ALL`.

**Application Example**

Implementation of basic functionality of deep sleep is shown in `protocols/sntp` example, where ESP module is periodically waken up to retrieve time from NTP server.

More extensive example in `system/deep_sleep` illustrates usage of various deep sleep wakeup triggers and ULP co-processor programming.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/esp_hw_support/include/esp_sleep.h

**Functions**

```c
esp_err_t esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source(esp_sleep_source_t source)
```

Disable wakeup source.

This function is used to deactivate wake up trigger for source defined as parameter of the function.

See docs/sleep-modes.rst for details.

**Note** This function does not modify wake up configuration in RTC. It will be performed in `esp_sleep_start` function.
Chapter 2. API

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if trigger was not active

**Parameters**
- `source`: - number of source to disable of type esp_sleep_source_t

`esp_err_t esp_sleep_enable_ulp_wakeup (void)`
Enable wakeup by ULP coprocessor.

**Note** In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, ULP wakeup source cannot be used when RTC_PERIPH power domain is forced to be powered on (ESP_PD_OPTION_ON) or when ext0 wakeup source is used.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if additional current by touch (CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT) is enabled.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if ULP co-processor is not enabled or if wakeup triggers conflict

`esp_err_t esp_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup (uint64_t time_in_us)`
Enable wakeup by timer.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if value is out of range (TBD)

**Parameters**
- `time_in_us`: time before wakeup, in microseconds

`esp_err_t esp_sleep_enable_touchpad_wakeup (void)`
Enable wakeup by touch sensor.

**Note** In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, touch wakeup source can not be used when RTC_PERIPH power domain is forced to be powered on (ESP_PD_OPTION_ON) or when ext0 wakeup source is used.

**Note** The FSM mode of the touch button should be configured as the timer trigger mode.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if additional current by touch (CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT) is enabled.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if wakeup triggers conflict

`touch_pad_t esp_sleep_get_touchpad_wakeup_status (void)`
Get the touch pad which caused wakeup.
If wakeup was caused by another source, this function will return TOUCH_PAD_MAX;

**Return** touch pad which caused wakeup

`bool esp_sleep_is_valid_wakeup_gpio (gpio_num_t gpio_num)`
Returns true if a GPIO number is valid for use as wakeup source.

**Note** For SoCs with RTC IO capability, this can be any valid RTC IO input pin.

**Return** True if this GPIO number will be accepted as a sleep wakeup source.

**Parameters**
- `gpio_num`: Number of the GPIO to test for wakeup source capability

`esp_err_t esp_sleep_enable_ext0_wakeup (gpio_num_t gpio_num, int level)`
Enable wakeup using a pin.

This function uses external wakeup feature of RTC_IO peripheral. It will work only if RTC peripherals are kept on during sleep.

This feature can monitor any pin which is an RTC IO. Once the pin transitions into the state given by level argument, the chip will be woken up.

**Note** This function does not modify pin configuration. The pin is configured in esp_sleep_start, immediately before entering sleep mode.

**Note** In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, ext0 wakeup source can not be used together with touch or ULP wakeup sources.
Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if any of the selected GPIOs is not an RTC GPIO, or mode is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if wakeup triggers conflict

Parameters

- gpio_num: GPIO number used as wakeup source. Only GPIOs which have RTC functionality can be used: 0, 2, 4, 12-15, 25-27, 32-39.
- level: input level which will trigger wakeup (0=low, 1=high)

`esp_err_t esp_sleep_enable_ext1_wakeup (uint64_t mask, esp_sleep_ext1_wakeup_mode_t mode)`

Enable wakeup using multiple pins.

This function uses external wakeup feature of RTC controller. It will work even if RTC peripherals are shut down during sleep.

This feature can monitor any number of pins which are in RTC IOs. Once any of the selected pins goes into the state given by mode argument, the chip will be woken up.

**Note** This function does not modify pin configuration. The pins are configured in esp_sleep_start, immediately before entering sleep mode.

**Note** Internal pullups and pulldowns don’t work when RTC peripherals are shut down. In this case, external resistors need to be added. Alternatively, RTC peripherals (and pullups/pulldowns) may be kept enabled using esp_sleep_pd_config function.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if any of the selected GPIOs is not an RTC GPIO, or mode is invalid

Parameters

- mask: bit mask of GPIO numbers which will cause wakeup. Only GPIOs which have RTC functionality can be used in this bit map: 0, 2, 4, 12-15, 25-27, 32-39.
- mode: select logic function used to determine wakeup condition:
  - ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ALL_LOW: wake up when all selected GPIOs are low
  - ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ANY_HIGH: wake up when any of the selected GPIOs is high

`esp_err_t esp_sleep_enable_gpio_wakeup (void)`

Enable wakeup from light sleep using GPIOs.

Each GPIO supports wakeup function, which can be triggered on either low level or high level. Unlike EXT0 and EXT1 wakeup sources, this method can be used both for all IOs: RTC IOs and digital IOs. It can only be used to wakeup from light sleep though.

To enable wakeup, first call gpio_wakeup_enable, specifying gpio number and wakeup level, for each GPIO which is used for wakeup. Then call this function to enable wakeup feature.

**Note** In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, GPIO wakeup source can not be used together with touch or ULP wakeup sources.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if wakeup triggers conflict

`esp_err_t esp_sleep_enable_uart_wakeup (int uart_num)`

Enable wakeup from light sleep using UART.

Use uart_set_wakeup_threshold function to configure UART wakeup threshold.

Wakeup from light sleep takes some time, so not every character sent to the UART can be received by the application.

**Note** ESP32 does not support wakeup from UART2.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if wakeup from given UART is not supported

Parameters

- uart_num: UART port to wake up from
**esp_err_t esp_sleep_enable_wifi_wakeup (void)**

Enable wakeup by WiFi MAC.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success

**esp_err_t esp_sleep_disable_wifi_wakeup (void)**

Disable wakeup by WiFi MAC.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success

**uint64_t esp_sleep_get_ext1_wakeup_status (void)**

Get the bit mask of GPIOs which caused wakeup (ext1)

If wakeup was caused by another source, this function will return 0.

**Return**

bit mask, if GPIO caused wakeup, BIT(n) will be set

**esp_err_t esp_sleep_pd_config (esp_sleep_pd_domain_t domain, esp_sleep_pd_option_t option)**

Set power down mode for an RTC power domain in sleep mode.

If not set set using this API, all power domains default to ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if either of the arguments is out of range

**Parameters**

- **domain**: power domain to configure
- **option**: power down option (ESP_PD_OPTION_OFF, ESP_PD_OPTION_ON, or ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO)

**void esp_deep_sleep_start (void)**

Enter deep sleep with the configured wakeup options.

This function does not return.

**esp_err_t esp_light_sleep_start (void)**

Enter light sleep with the configured wakeup options.

**Return**

- ESP_OK on success (returned after wakeup)
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if WiFi or BT is not stopped

**void esp_deep_sleep (uint64_t time_in_us)**

Enter deep-sleep mode.

The device will automatically wake up after the deep-sleep time Upon waking up, the device calls deep sleep wake stub, and then proceeds to load application.

Call to this function is equivalent to a call to esp_deep_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup followed by a call to esp_deep_sleep_start.

**esp_deep_sleep** does not shut down WiFi, BT, and higher level protocol connections gracefully. Make sure relevant WiFi and BT stack functions are called to close any connections and deinitialize the peripherals. These include:

- esp_bluedroid_disable
- esp_bt_controller_disable
- esp_wifi_stop

This function does not return.

**Note**

The device will wake up immediately if the deep-sleep time is set to 0

**Parameters**

- **time_in_us**: deep-sleep time, unit: microsecond

**esp_sleep_wakeup_cause_t esp_sleep_get_wakeup_cause (void)**

Get the wakeup source which caused wakeup from sleep.
Return  cause of wake up from last sleep (deep sleep or light sleep)

void \texttt{esp\_wake\_deep\_sleep} (void)
Default stub to run on wake from deep sleep.

Allows for executing code immediately on wake from sleep, before the software bootloader or ESP-IDF app has started up.

This function is weak-linked, so you can implement your own version to run code immediately when the chip wakes from sleep.

See docs/deep-sleep-stub.rst for details.

void \texttt{esp\_set\_deep\_sleep\_wake\_stub} (esp\_deep\_sleep\_wake\_stub\_fn\_t \texttt{new\_stub})
Install a new stub at runtime to run on wake from deep sleep.

If implementing esp\_wake\_deep\_sleep() then it is not necessary to call this function.

However, it is possible to call this function to substitute a different deep sleep stub. Any function used as a deep sleep stub must be marked RTC\_IRAM\_ATTR, and must obey the same rules given for esp\_wake\_deep\_sleep().

\texttt{esp\_deep\_sleep\_wake\_stub\_fn} / \texttt{esp\_get\_deep\_sleep\_wake\_stub} (void)
Get current wake from deep sleep stub.

\textbf{Return } Return current wake from deep sleep stub, or NULL if no stub is installed.

void \texttt{esp\_default\_wake\_deep\_sleep} (void)
The default esp-idf-provided esp\_wake\_deep\_sleep() stub.

See docs/deep-sleep-stub.rst for details.

void \texttt{esp\_deep\_sleep\_disable\_rom\_logging} (void)
Disable logging from the ROM code after deep sleep.

Using LSB of RTC\_STORE4.

void \texttt{esp\_sleep\_config\_gpio\_isolate} (void)
Configure to isolate all GPIO pins in sleep state.

void \texttt{esp\_sleep\_enable\_gpio\_switch} (bool \texttt{enable})
Enable or disable GPIO pins status switching between slept status and waked status.

\textbf{Parameters }
\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{enable}: decide whether to switch status or not
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Type Definitions}
\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{typedef esp\_sleep\_source\_t esp\_sleep\_wakeup\_cause\_t}
  \item \texttt{typedef void (esp\_deep\_sleep\_wake\_stub\_fn\_t) (void)}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Function type for stub to run on wake from sleep.}

\textbf{Enumerations}
\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{enum esp\_sleep\_ext1\_wakeup\_mode\_t}
    \textbf{Logic function used for EXT1 wakeup mode.}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item \texttt{ESP\_EXT1\_WAKEUP\_ALL\_LOW} = 0
        Wake the chip when all selected GPIOs go low.
      \item \texttt{ESP\_EXT1\_WAKEUP\_ANY\_HIGH} = 1
        Wake the chip when any of the selected GPIOs go high.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{enum esp\_sleep\_pd\_domain\_t}
    \textbf{Power domains which can be powered down in sleep mode.}
    \begin{itemize}
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
### ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_PERIPH
RTC IO, sensors and ULP co-processor.

### ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_SLOW_MEM
RTC slow memory.

### ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_FAST_MEM
RTC fast memory.

### ESP_PD_DOMAIN_XTAL
XTAL oscillator.

### ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC8M
Internal 8M oscillator.

### ESP_PD_DOMAIN_VDDSDIO
VDD_SDIO.

### ESP_PD_DOMAIN_MAX
Number of domains.

```c
enum esp_sleep_pd_option_t
Power down options.

Values:

- **ESP_PD_OPTION_OFF**
  Power down the power domain in sleep mode.

- **ESP_PD_OPTION_ON**
  Keep power domain enabled during sleep mode.

- **ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO**
  Keep power domain enabled in sleep mode, if it is needed by one of the wakeup options. Otherwise power it down.

### enum esp_sleep_source_t
Sleep wakeup cause.

Values:

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_UNDEFINED**
  In case of deep sleep, reset was not caused by exit from deep sleep.

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ALL**
  Not a wakeup cause, used to disable all wakeup sources with esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source.

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_EXT0**
  Wakeup caused by external signal using RTC IO.

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_EXT1**
  Wakeup caused by external signal using RTC_CNTL.

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_TIMER**
  Wakeup caused by timer.

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_TOUCHPAD**
  Wakeup caused by touchpad.

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ULP**
  Wakeup caused by ULP program.

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_GPIO**
  Wakeup caused by GPIO (light sleep only)

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_UART**
  Wakeup caused by UART (light sleep only)

- **ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_WIFI**
  Wakeup caused by WIFI (light sleep only)
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_COCPU
Wakeup caused by COCPU int.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_COCPU_TRAP_TRIG
Wakeup caused by COCPU crash.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_BT
Wakeup caused by BT (light sleep only)

2.7.25 Watchdogs

Overview

The ESP-IDF has support for multiple types of watchdogs, with the two main ones being: The Interrupt Watchdog Timer and the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT). The Interrupt Watchdog Timer and the TWDT can both be enabled using Project Configuration Menu, however the TWDT can also be enabled during runtime. The Interrupt Watchdog is responsible for detecting instances where FreeRTOS task switching is blocked for a prolonged period of time. The TWDT is responsible for detecting instances of tasks running without yielding for a prolonged period.

Interrupt watchdog
The interrupt watchdog makes sure the FreeRTOS task switching interrupt isn’t blocked for a long time. This is bad because no other tasks, including potentially important ones like the WiFi task and the idle task, can’t get any CPU runtime. A blocked task switching interrupt can happen because a program runs into an infinite loop with interrupts disabled or hangs in an interrupt.

The default action of the interrupt watchdog is to invoke the panic handler, causing a register dump and an opportunity for the programmer to find out, using either OpenOCD or gdbstub, what bit of code is stuck with interrupts disabled. Depending on the configuration of the panic handler, it can also blindly reset the CPU, which may be preferred in a production environment.

The interrupt watchdog is built around the hardware watchdog in timer group 1. If this watchdog for some reason cannot execute the NMI handler that invokes the panic handler (e.g. because IRAM is overwritten by garbage), it will hard-reset the SOC. If the panic handler executes, it will display the panic reason as “Interrupt wdt timeout on CPU0” or “Interrupt wdt timeout on CPU1” (as applicable).

Configuration
The interrupt watchdog is enabled by default via the CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT configuration flag. The timeout is configured by setting CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS. The default timeout is higher if PSRAM support is enabled, as a critical section or interrupt routine that accesses a large amount of PSRAM will take longer to complete in some circumstances. The INT WDT timeout should always be longer than the period between FreeRTOS ticks (see CONFIG_FREERTOS_HZ).

Tuning
If you find the Interrupt watchdog timeout is triggering because an interrupt or critical section is running longer than the timeout period, consider rewriting the code: critical sections should be made as short as possible, with non-critical computation happening outside the critical section. Interrupt handlers should also perform the minimum possible amount of computation, consider pushing data into a queue from the ISR and processing it in a task instead. Neither critical sections or interrupt handlers should ever block waiting for another event to occur.

If changing the code to reduce the processing time is not possible or desirable, it’s possible to increase the CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS setting instead.

Task Watchdog Timer
The Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT) is responsible for detecting instances of tasks running for a prolonged period of time without yielding. This is a symptom of CPU starvation and is usually caused by a higher priority task looping without yielding to a lower-priority task thus starving the lower priority task from CPU time. This can be an indicator of poorly written code that spinloops on a peripheral, or a task that is stuck in an infinite loop.

By default the TWDT will watch the Idle Tasks of each CPU, however any task can subscribe to be watched by the TWDT. Each watched task must ‘reset’ the TWDT periodically to indicate that they have been allocated CPU time.
If a task does not reset within the TWDT timeout period, a warning will be printed with information about which tasks failed to reset the TWDT in time and which tasks are currently running.

It is also possible to redefine the function `esp_task_wdt_isr_user_handler` in the user code, in order to receive the timeout event and handle it differently.

The TWDT is built around the Hardware Watchdog Timer in Timer Group 0. The TWDT can be initialized by calling `esp_task_wdt_init()` which will configure the hardware timer. A task can then subscribe to the TWDT using `esp_task_wdt_add()` in order to be watched. Each subscribed task must periodically call `esp_task_wdt_reset()` to reset the TWDT. Failure by any subscribed tasks to periodically call `esp_task_wdt_reset()` indicates that one or more tasks have been starved of CPU time or are stuck in a loop somewhere.

A watched task can be unsubscribed from the TWDT using `esp_task_wdt_delete()`. A task that has been unsubscribed should no longer call `esp_task_wdt_reset()`. Once all tasks have unsubscribed from the TWDT, the TWDT can be deinitialized by calling `esp_task_wdt_deinit()`.

The default timeout period for the TWDT is set using config item `CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_TIMEOUT_S`. This should be set to at least as long as you expect any single task will need to monopolize the CPU (for example, if you expect the app will do a long intensive calculation and should not yield to other tasks). It is also possible to change this timeout at runtime by calling `esp_task_wdt_init()`.

The following config options control TWDT configuration at startup. They are all enabled by default:

- `CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT` - the TWDT is initialized automatically during startup. If this option is disabled, it is still possible to initialize the Task WDT at runtime by calling `esp_task_wdt_init()`.
- `CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU0` - CPU0 Idle task is subscribed to the TWDT during startup. If this option is disabled, it is still possible to subscribe the idle task by calling `esp_task_wdt_add()` at any time.
- `CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU1` - CPU1 Idle task is subscribed to the TWDT during startup.

**JTAG and watchdogs** While debugging using OpenOCD, the CPUs will be halted every time a breakpoint is reached. However if the watchdog timers continue to run when a breakpoint is encountered, they will eventually trigger a reset making it very difficult to debug code. Therefore OpenOCD will disable the hardware timers of both the interrupt and task watchdogs at every breakpoint. Moreover, OpenOCD will not reenable them upon leaving the breakpoint. This means that interrupt watchdog and task watchdog functionality will essentially be disabled. No warnings or panics from either watchdogs will be generated when the ESP32 is connected to OpenOCD via JTAG.

**Interrupt Watchdog API Reference**

**Header File**

- `esp_system/include/esp_int_wdt.h`

**Functions**

void `esp_int_wdt_init` (void)

Initialize the non-CPU-specific parts of interrupt watchdog. This is called in the init code if the interrupt watchdog is enabled in menuconfig.

**Task Watchdog API Reference**

A full example using the Task Watchdog is available in esp-idf: `system/task_watchdog`

**Header File**

- `components/esp_system/include/esp_task_wdt.h`
Chapter 2. API

Functions

**esp_err_t esp_task_wdt_init**(uint32_t timeout, bool panic)

Initialize the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function configures and initializes the TWDT. If the TWDT is already initialized when this function is called, this function will update the TWDT’s timeout period and panic configurations instead. After initializing the TWDT, any task can elect to be watched by the TWDT by subscribing to it using `esp_task_wdt_add()`.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Initialization was successful
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Initialization failed due to lack of memory

**Note**

`esp_task_wdt_init()` must only be called after the scheduler started

**Parameters**

- **[in]** timeout: Timeout period of TWDT in seconds
- **[in]** panic: Flag that controls whether the panic handler will be executed when the TWDT times out

**esp_err_t esp_task_wdt_deinit**(void)

Deinitialize the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function will deinitialize the TWDT. Calling this function whilst tasks are still subscribed to the TWDT, or when the TWDT is already deinitialized, will result in an error code being returned.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: TWDT successfully deinitialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error, tasks are still subscribed to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Error, TWDT has already been deinitialized

**esp_err_t esp_task_wdt_add**(TaskHandle_t handle)

Subscribe a task to the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function subscribes a task to the TWDT. Each subscribed task must periodically call `esp_task_wdt_reset()` to prevent the TWDT from elapsing its timeout period. Failure to do so will result in a TWDT timeout. If the task being subscribed is one of the Idle Tasks, this function will automatically enable `esp_task_wdt_reset()` to called from the Idle Hook of the Idle Task. Calling this function whilst the TWDT is uninitialized or attempting to subscribe an already subscribed task will result in an error code being returned.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Successfully subscribed the task to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error, the task is already subscribed
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Error, could not subscribe the task due to lack of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error, the TWDT has not been initialized yet

**Parameters**

- **[in]** handle: Handle of the task. Input NULL to subscribe the current running task to the TWDT

**esp_err_t esp_task_wdt_reset**(void)

Reset the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT) on behalf of the currently running task.

This function will reset the TWDT on behalf of the currently running task. Each subscribed task must periodically call this function to prevent the TWDT from timing out. If one or more subscribed tasks fail to reset the TWDT on their own behalf, a TWDT timeout will occur. If the IDLE tasks have been subscribed to the TWDT, they will automatically call this function from their idle hooks. Calling this function from a task that has not subscribed to the TWDT, or when the TWDT is uninitialized will result in an error code being returned.

**Return**

- ESP_OK: Successfully reset the TWDT on behalf of the currently running task
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Error, the current running task has not subscribed to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error, the TWDT has not been initialized yet

**esp_err_t esp_task_wdt_delete**(TaskHandle_t handle)

Unsubscribe a task from the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)
This function will unsubscribe a task from the TWDT. After being unsubscribed, the task should no longer call esp_task_wdt_reset(). If the task is an IDLE task, this function will automatically disable the calling of esp_task_wdt_reset() from the Idle Hook. Calling this function whilst the TWDT is uninitialized or attempting to unsubscribe an already unsubscribed task from the TWDT will result in an error code being returned.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: Successfully unsubscribed the task from the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error, the task is already unsubscribed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error, the TWDT has not been initialized yet

**Parameters**
- `[in] handle`: Handle of the task. Input NULL to unsubscribe the current running task.

```c
esp_err_t esp_task_wdt_status(TaskHandle_t handle)
```

Query whether a task is subscribed to the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function will query whether a task is currently subscribed to the TWDT, or whether the TWDT is initialized.

**Return**
- ESP_OK: The task is currently subscribed to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: The task is currently not subscribed to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: The TWDT is not initialized, therefore no tasks can be subscribed

**Parameters**
- `[in] handle`: Handle of the task. Input NULL to query the current running task.

## 2.7.26 System Time

### Overview

System time can be kept using either one time source or two time sources simultaneously. The choice depends on the application purpose and accuracy requirements for system time.

There are the following two time sources:

- **RTC timer**: Allows keeping the system time during any resets and sleep modes, only the power-up reset leads to resetting the RTC timer. The frequency deviation depends on an RTC Clock Source and affects accuracy only in sleep modes, in which case the time will be measured at 6.6667 us resolution.
- **High-resolution timer**: Not available during any reset and sleep modes. The reason for using this timer is to achieve greater accuracy. It uses the APB_CLK clock source (typically 80 MHz), which has a frequency deviation of less than ±10 ppm. Time will be measured at 1 us resolution.

The settings for the system time source are as follows:

- RTC and high-resolution timer (default)
- RTC
- High-resolution timer
- None

It is recommended to stick to the default setting which provides maximum accuracy. If you want to choose a different timer, configure `CONFIG_ESP32_TIME_SYSCALL` in project configuration.

### RTC Clock Source

The RTC timer has the following clock sources:

- **Internal 150kHz RC oscillator** (default): Features the lowest deep sleep current consumption and no dependence on any external components. However, as frequency stability is affected by temperature fluctuations, time may drift in both Deep and Light sleep modes.
- **External 32kHz crystal**: Requires a 32kHz crystal to be connected to the 32K_XP and 32K_XN pins. Provides better frequency stability at the expense of slightly higher (by 1 uA) Deep sleep current consumption.
Chapter 2. API

- **External 32kHz oscillator at 32K_XN pin**: Allows using 32kHz clock generated by an external circuit. The external clock signal must be connected to the 32K_XN pin. The amplitude should be less than 1.2 V for sine wave signal and less than 1 V for square wave signal. Common mode voltage should be in the range of $0.1 < V_{cm} < 0.5 \times V_{amp}$, where $V_{amp}$ is signal amplitude. Additionally, a 1 nF capacitor must be placed between the 32K_XP pin and ground. In this case, the 32K_XP pin cannot be used as a GPIO pin.
- **Internal 8.5MHz oscillator, divided by 256 (~33kHz)**: Provides better frequency stability than the internal 150kHz RC oscillator at the expense of higher (by 5 uA) deep sleep current consumption. It also does not require external components.

The choice depends on your requirements for system time accuracy and power consumption in sleep modes. To modify the RTC clock source, set `CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC` in project configuration.

More details on wiring requirements for the External 32kHz crystal and External 32kHz oscillator at 32K_XN pin sources can be found in Section Crystal Oscillator of ESP32 Hardware Design Guidelines.

**Get Current Time**

To get the current time, use the POSIX function `gettimeofday()`. Additionally, you can use the following standard C library functions to obtain time and manipulate it:

```c
gettimeofday
time
asctime
clock
cftime
difftime
gmtime
localtime
mktime
strftime
adjtime*
```

* – To stop smooth time adjustment and update the current time immediately, use the POSIX function `settimeofday()`.

If you need to obtain time with one second resolution, use the following method:

```c
time_t now;
char strftime_buf[64];
struct tm timeinfo;
time(&now);
// Set timezone to China Standard Time
setenv("TZ", "CST-8", 1);
tzset();
localtime_r(&now, &timeinfo);
strftime(strftime_buf, sizeof(strftime_buf), "%c", &timeinfo);
ESP_LOGI(TAG, "The current date/time in Shanghai is: %s", strftime_buf);
```

If you need to obtain time with one microsecond resolution, use the code snippet below:

```c
struct timeval tv_now;
gettimeofday(&tv_now, NULL);
int64_t time_us = (int64_t)tv_now.tv_sec * 1000000L + (int64_t)tv_now.tv_usec;
```

**SNTP Time Synchronization**

To set the current time, you can use the POSIX functions `settimeofday()` and `adjtime()`. They are used internally in the lwIP SNTP library to set current time when a response from the NTP server is received. These
functions can also be used separately from the lwIP SNTP library.

A function to use inside the lwIP SNTP library depends on a sync mode for system time. Use the function `sntp_set_sync_mode()` to set one of the following sync modes:

- **SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED** (default) updates system time immediately upon receiving a response from the SNTP server after using `settimeofday()`.
- **SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH** updates time smoothly by gradually reducing time error using the function `adjtime()`. If the difference between the SNTP response time and system time is more than 35 minutes, update system time immediately by using `settimeofday()`.

The lwIP SNTP library has API functions for setting a callback function for a certain event. You might need the following functions:

- **sntp_set_time_sync_notification_cb()** - use it for setting a callback function that will notify of the time synchronization process.
- **sntp_get_sync_status()** and **sntp_set_sync_status()** - use it to get/set time synchronization status.

To start synchronization via SNTP, just call the following three functions.

```c
sntp_setoperatingmode(SNTP_OPMODE_POLL);
sntp_setservername(0, "pool.ntp.org");
sntp_init();
```

An application with this initialization code will periodically synchronize the time. The time synchronization period is determined by `CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY` (default value is one hour). To modify the variable, set `CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY` in project configuration.

A code example that demonstrates the implementation of time synchronization based on the lwIP SNTP library is provided in the `protocols/sntp` directory.

**Timezones**

To set local timezone, use the following POSIX functions:

1. Call `setenv()` to set the `TZ` environment variable to the correct value depending on the device location. The format of the time string is the same as described in the GNU libc documentation (although the implementation is different).
2. Call `tzset()` to update C library runtime data for the new time zone.

Once these steps are completed, call the standard C library function `localtime()`, and it will return correct local time taking into account the time zone offset and daylight saving time.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/lwip/include/apps/esp_sntp.h

**Functions**

```c
void sntp_sync_time(struct timeval *tv)
```

This function updates the system time.

This is a weak-linked function. It is possible to replace all SNTP update functionality by placing a `sntp_sync_time()` function in the app firmware source. If the default implementation is used, calling `sntp_set_sync_mode()` allows the time synchronization mode to be changed to instant or smooth. If a callback function is registered via `sntp_set_time_sync_notification_cb()`, it will be called following time synchronization.

**Parameters**

- **tv**: Time received from SNTP server.
void sntp_set_sync_mode (sntp_sync_mode_t sync_mode)
    Set the sync mode.

Modes allowed: SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED and SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH.

Parameters
    • sync_mode: Sync mode.

sntp_sync_mode_t sntp_get_sync_mode (void)
    Get set sync mode.

    Return SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED: Update time immediately. SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH: Smooth time updating.

sntp_sync_status_t sntp_get_sync_status (void)
    Get status of time sync.

    After the update is completed, the status will be returned as SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_COMPLETED. After that, the status will be reset to SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET. If the update operation is not completed yet, the status will be SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET. If a smooth mode was chosen and the synchronization is still continuing (adjtime works), then it will be SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_IN_PROGRESS.

    Return SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET: Reset status. SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_COMPLETED: Time is synchronized. SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_IN_PROGRESS: Smooth time sync in progress.

void sntp_set_sync_status (sntp_sync_status_t sync_status)
    Set status of time sync.

Parameters
    • sync_status: status of time sync (see sntp_sync_status_t)

void sntp_set_time_sync_notification_cb (sntp_sync_time_cb_t callback)
    Set a callback function for time synchronization notification.

Parameters
    • callback: a callback function

void sntp_set_sync_interval (uint32_t interval_ms)
    Set the sync interval of SNTP operation.

Note: SNTPv4 RFC 4330 enforces a minimum sync interval of 15 seconds. This sync interval will be used in the next attempt update time through SNTP. To apply the new sync interval call the sntp_restart() function, otherwise, it will be applied after the last interval expired.

Parameters
    • interval_ms: The sync interval in ms. It cannot be lower than 15 seconds, otherwise 15 seconds will be set.

uint32_t sntp_get_sync_interval (void)
    Get the sync interval of SNTP operation.

Return the sync interval

bool sntp_restart (void)
    Restart SNTP.

Return True - Restart False - SNTP was not initialized yet

Type Definitions
typedef void (*sntp_sync_time_cb_t) (struct timeval *tv)
    SNTP callback function for notifying about time sync event.

Parameters
    • tv: Time received from SNTP server.
**Enumerations**

```c
enum sntp_sync_mode_t
    SNTP time update mode.

Values:

SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED
    Update system time immediately when receiving a response from the SNTP server.

SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH
    Smooth time updating. Time error is gradually reduced using adjtime function. If the difference between
    SNTP response time and system time is large (more than 35 minutes) then update immediately.
```

```c
enum sntp_sync_status_t
    SNTP sync status.

Values:

SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET
SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_COMPLETED
SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_IN_PROGRESS
```

### 2.7.27 Internal and Unstable APIs

This section is listing some APIs that are internal or likely to be changed or removed in the next releases of ESP-IDF.

**API Reference**

**Header File**

- components/esp_rom/include/esp_rom_sys.h

**Functions**

`int esp_rom_printf(const char *fmt, ...)`

Print formatted string to console device.

**Note** float and long long data are not supported!

**Return** int: Total number of characters written on success; A negative number on failure.

**Parameters**

- fmt: Format string
- ...: Additional arguments, depending on the format string

`void esp_rom_delay_us(uint32_t us)`

Pauses execution for us microseconds.

**Parameters**

- us: Number of microseconds to pause

`void esp_rom_install_channel_putc(int channel, void (*putc)) char c`

`esp_rom_printf` can print message to different channels simultaneously. This function can help install the low
level putc function for `esp_rom_printf`.

**Parameters**

- channel: Channel number (starting from 1)
- putc: Function pointer to the putc implementation. Set NULL can disconnect `esp_rom_printf` with putc.

`void esp_rom_install_uart_printf(void)`

Install UART1 as the default console channel, equivalent to `esp_rom_install_channel_putc(1, esp_rom_uart_putc)`

`soc_reset_reason_t esp_rom_get_reset_reason(int cpu_no)`

Get reset reason of CPU.
**Return**  Reset reason code (see in soc/reset_reasons.h)

**Parameters**

- cpu_no: CPU number

Code examples for this API section are provided in the system directory of ESP-IDF examples.

## 2.8 API Conventions

This document describes conventions and assumptions common to ESP-IDF Application Programming Interfaces (APIs).

ESP-IDF provides several kinds of programming interfaces:

- C functions, structures, enums, type definitions and preprocessor macros declared in public header files of ESP-IDF components. Various pages in the API Reference section of the programming guide contain descriptions of these functions, structures and types.
- Build system functions, predefined variables and options. These are documented in the *build system guide*.
- Kconfig options can be used in code and in the build system (CMakeLists.txt) files.
- Host tools and their command line parameters are also part of ESP-IDF interface.

ESP-IDF consists of components written specifically for ESP-IDF as well as third-party libraries. In some cases, an ESP-IDF-specific wrapper is added to the third-party library, providing an interface that is either simpler or better integrated with the rest of ESP-IDF facilities. In other cases, the original API of the third-party library is presented to the application developers.

Following sections explain some of the aspects of ESP-IDF APIs and their usage.

### 2.8.1 Error handling

Most ESP-IDF APIs return error codes defined with `esp_err_t` type. See *Error Handling* section for more information about error handling approaches. *Error Code Reference* contains the list of error codes returned by ESP-IDF components.

### 2.8.2 Configuration structures

**重要**：Correct initialization of configuration structures is an important part in making the application compatible with future versions of ESP-IDF.

Most initialization or configuration functions in ESP-IDF take as an argument a pointer to a configuration structure. For example:

```c
const esp_timer_create_args_t my_timer_args = {
    .callback = &my_timer_callback,
    .arg = callback_arg,
    .name = "my_timer"
};
esp_timer_handle_t my_timer;
esp_err_t err = esp_timer_create(&my_timer_args, &my_timer);
```

Initialization functions never store the pointer to the configuration structure, so it is safe to allocate the structure on the stack.

The application must initialize all fields of the structure. The following is incorrect:
Most ESP-IDF examples use C99 designated initializers for structure initialization, since they provide a concise way of setting a subset of fields, and zero-initializing the remaining fields:

```c
const esp_timer_create_args_t my_timer_args = {
    .callback = &my_timer_callback,
    /* Correct, fields .arg and .name are zero-initialized */
};
```

C++ language doesn’t support the designated initializers syntax until C++20, however GCC compiler partially supports it as an extension. When using ESP-IDF APIs in C++ code, you may consider using the following pattern:

```c
esp_timer_create_args_t my_timer_args = {}; /* All the fields are zero-initialized */
my_timer_args.callback = &my_timer_callback;
```

### Default initializers

For some configuration structures, ESP-IDF provides macros for setting default values of fields:

```c
httpd_config_t config = HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG(); /* HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG expands to a designated initializer.
   Now all fields are set to the default values. 
   Any field can still be modified: */
config.server_port = 8081;
httpd_handle_t server;
esp_err_t err = httpd_start(&server, &config);
```

It is recommended to use default initializer macros whenever they are provided for a particular configuration structure.

#### 2.8.3 Private APIs

Certain header files in ESP-IDF contain APIs intended to be used only in ESP-IDF source code, and not by the applications. Such header files often contain private or esp_private in their name or path. Certain components, such as hal only contain private APIs.

Private APIs may be removed or changed in an incompatible way between minor or patch releases.

#### 2.8.4 Components in example projects

ESP-IDF examples contain a variety of projects demonstrating usage of ESP-IDF APIs. In order to reduce code duplication in the examples, a few common helpers are defined inside components that are used by multiple examples. This includes components located in common_components directory, as well as some of the components located in the examples themselves. These components are not considered to be part of the ESP-IDF API.

It is not recommended to reference these components directly in custom projects (via EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS build system variable), as they may change significantly between ESP-IDF versions. When starting a new project based on an ESP-IDF example, copy both the project and the common components it depends on out of ESP-IDF, and treat the common components as part of the project. Note that the common components are written with examples in mind, and might not include all the error handling required for production applications. Take time to read the code and understand if it applicable to your use case.
### 2.8.5 API Stability

ESP-IDF uses **Semantic Versioning** as explained in the [versions page](#). Minor and bugfix releases of ESP-IDF guarantee compatibility with previous releases. The sections below explain different aspects and limitations to compatibility.

#### Source level compatibility

ESP-IDF guarantees source level compatibility of C functions, structures, enums, type definitions and preprocessor macros declared in public header files of ESP-IDF components. Source level compatibility implies that the application can be recompiled with the newer version of ESP-IDF without changes.

The following changes are allowed between minor versions and do not break source level compatibility:

- Deprecating functions (using the `deprecated` attribute) and header files (using a preprocessor `#warning`). Deprecations are listed in ESP-IDF release notes. It is recommended to update the source code to use the newer functions or files that replace the deprecated ones, however this is not mandatory. Deprecated functions and files can be removed in major versions of ESP-IDF.
- Renaming components, moving source and header files between components — provided that the build system ensures that correct files are still found.
- Renaming Kconfig options. Kconfig system [renaming mechanism](#) ensures that the original Kconfig option names can still be used by the application in `sdkconfig` file, CMake files and source code.

#### Lack of binary compatibility

ESP-IDF does not guarantee binary compatibility between releases. This means that if a precompiled library is built with one ESP-IDF version, it is not guaranteed to work the same way with the next minor or bugfix release. The following are the possible changes that keep source level compatibility but not binary compatibility:

- Changing numerical values for C enum members.
- Adding new structure members or changing the order of members. See [Configuration structures](#) for tips that help ensure compatibility.
- Replacing an `extern` function with a `static inline` one with the same signature, or vice versa.
- Replacing a function-like macro with a compatible C function.

#### Other exceptions from compatibility

While we try to make upgrading to a new ESP-IDF version easy, there are parts of ESP-IDF that may change between minor versions in an incompatible way. We appreciate issue reports about any unintended breaking changes that don’t fall into the categories below.

- **Private APIs**.
- **Components in example projects**.
- Features clearly marked as “beta”, “preview”, or “experimental”.
- Changes made to mitigate security issues or to replace insecure default behaviors with a secure ones.
- Features which were never functional. For example, if it was never possible to use a certain function or an enumeration value, it may get renamed (as part of fixing it) or removed. This includes software features which depend on non-functional chip hardware features.
- Unexpected or undefined behavior (for example, due to missing validation of argument ranges) that is not documented explicitly may be fixed/changed.
- Location of Kconfig options in menuconfig.
- Location and names of example projects.

### 2.9 Project Configuration
2.9.1 Introduction

ESP-IDF uses kconfiglib which is a Python-based extension to the Kconfig system which provides a compile-time project configuration mechanism. Kconfig is based around options of several types: integer, string, boolean. Kconfig files specify dependencies between options, default values of the options, the way the options are grouped together, etc.

For the complete list of available features please see Kconfig and kconfiglib extentions.

2.9.2 Project Configuration Menu

Application developers can open a terminal-based project configuration menu with the idf.py menuconfig build target.

After being updated, this configuration is saved inside sdkconfig file in the project root directory. Based on sdkconfig, application build targets will generate sdkconfig.h file in the build directory, and will make sdkconfig options available to the project build system and source files.

2.9.3 Using sdkconfig.defaults

In some cases, such as when sdkconfig file is under revision control, the fact that sdkconfig file gets changed by the build system may be inconvenient. The build system offers a way to avoid this, in the form of sdkconfig.defaults file. This file is never touched by the build system, and must be created manually. It can contain all the options which matter for the given application. The format is the same as that of the sdkconfig file. Once sdkconfig.defaults is created, sdkconfig can be deleted and added to the ignore list of the revision control system (e.g. .gitignore file for git). Project build targets will automatically create sdkconfig file, populated with the settings from sdkconfig.defaults file, and the rest of the settings will be set to their default values. Note that the build process will not override settings that are already in sdkconfig by ones from sdkconfig.defaults. For more information, see 自定义 sdkconfig 的默认值.

2.9.4 Kconfig Formatting Rules

The following attributes of Kconfig files are standardized:

- Within any menu, option names should have a consistent prefix. The prefix length is currently set to at least 3 characters.
- The indentation style is 4 characters created by spaces. All sub-items belonging to a parent item are indented by one level deeper. For example, menu is indented by 0 characters, the config inside of the menu by 4 characters, the help of the config by 8 characters and the text of the help by 12 characters.
- No trailing spaces are allowed at the end of the lines.
- The maximum length of options is set to 40 characters.
- The maximum length of lines is set to 120 characters.
- Lines cannot be wrapped by backslash (because there is a bug in earlier versions of conf-idf which causes that Windows line endings are not recognized after a backslash).

Format checker

tools/check_kconfigs.py is provided for checking the Kconfig formatting rules. The checker checks all Kconfig and Kconfig.projbuild files in the ESP-IDF directory and generates a new file with suffix .new with some recommendations how to fix issues (if there are any). Please note that the checker cannot correct all rules and the responsibility of the developer is to check and make final corrections in order to pass the tests. For example, indentations will be corrected if there isn’t some misleading previous formatting but it cannot come up with a common prefix for options inside a menu.
### 2.9.5 Backward Compatibility of Kconfig Options

The standard Kconfig tools ignore unknown options in `sdkconfig`. So if a developer has custom settings for options which are renamed in newer ESP-IDF releases then the given setting for the option would be silently ignored. Therefore, several features have been adopted to avoid this:

1. `confgen.py` is used by the tool chain to pre-process `sdkconfig` files before anything else, for example `menuconfig`, would read them. As the consequence, the settings for old options will be kept and not ignored.
2. `confgen.py` recursively finds all `sdkconfig.rename` files in ESP-IDF directory which contain old and new Kconfig option names. Old options are replaced by new ones in the `sdkconfig` file.
3. `confgen.py` post-processes `sdkconfig` files and generates all build outputs (`sdkconfig.h`, `sdkconfig.cmake`, `auto.conf`) by adding a list of compatibility statements, i.e. value of the old option is set the value of the new option (after modification). This is done in order to not break customer codes where old option might still be used.
4. Deprecated options and their replacements are automatically generated by `confgen.py`.

### 2.9.6 Configuration Options Reference

Subsequent sections contain the list of available ESP-IDF options, automatically generated from Kconfig files. Note that depending on the options selected, some options listed here may not be visible by default in the interface of menuconfig.

By convention, all option names are upper case with underscores. When Kconfig generates `sdkconfig` and `sdkconfig.h` files, option names are prefixed with `CONFIG_`. So if an option `ENABLE_FOO` is defined in a Kconfig file and selected in `menuconfig`, then `sdkconfig` and `sdkconfig.h` files will have `CONFIG_ENABLE_FOO` defined. In this reference, option names are also prefixed with `CONFIG_`, same as in the source code.

#### SDK tool configuration

Contains:

- `CONFIG_SDK_TOOLPREFIX`
- `CONFIG_SDK_TOOLCHAIN_SUPPORTS_TIME_WIDE_64_BITS`

**CONFIG_SDK_TOOLPREFIX**

Compiler toolchain path/prefix

*Found in: SDK tool configuration*

The prefix/path that is used to call the toolchain. The default setting assumes a crosstool-ng gcc setup that is in your PATH.

*Default value:*

- `"xtensa-esp32-elf-"`

**CONFIG_SDK_TOOLCHAIN_SUPPORTS_TIME_WIDE_64_BITS**

Toolchain supports time_t wide 64-bits

*Found in: SDK tool configuration*

Enable this option in case you have a custom toolchain which supports time_t wide 64-bits. This option checks time_t is 64-bits and disables ROM time functions to use the time functions from the toolchain instead. This option allows resolving the Y2K38 problem. See “Setup Linux Toolchain from Scratch” to build a custom toolchain which supports 64-bits time_t.

Note: ESP-IDF does not currently come with any pre-compiled toolchain that supports 64-bit wide time_t. This will change in a future major release, but currently 64-bit time_t requires a custom built toolchain.
Default value:
- No (disabled)

Build type

Contains:
- `CONFIG_APP_BUILD_TYPE`
- `CONFIG_APP_REPRODUCIBLE_BUILD`

**CONFIG_APP_BUILD_TYPE**

Application build type

*Found in: Build type*

Select the way the application is built.

By default, the application is built as a binary file in a format compatible with the ESP-IDF bootloader. In addition to this application, 2nd stage bootloader is also built. Application and bootloader binaries can be written into flash and loaded/executed from there.

Another option, useful for only very small and limited applications, is to only link the .elf file of the application, such that it can be loaded directly into RAM over JTAG. Note that since IRAM and DRAM sizes are very limited, it is not possible to build any complex application this way. However for kinds of testing and debugging, this option may provide faster iterations, since the application does not need to be written into flash. Note that at the moment, ESP-IDF does not contain all the startup code required to initialize the CPUs and ROM memory (data/bss). Therefore it is necessary to execute a bit of ROM code prior to executing the application. A gdbinit file may look as follows (for ESP32):

```bash
# Connect to a running instance of OpenOCD target remote:3333 # Reset and halt the target
mon reset halt # Run to a specific point in ROM code, # where most of initialization is complete.
thb *0x40007d54 c # Load the application into RAM
load # Run till app_main tb
app_main c
```

Execute this gdbinit file as follows:

```bash
xtensa-esp32-elf-gdb build/app-name.elf -x gdbinit
```

Example gdbinit files for other targets can be found in tools/test_apps/system/gdb_loadable_elf/

Recommended sdkconfig.defaults for building loadable ELF files is as follows. `CONFIG_APP_BUILD_TYPE_ELF_RAM` is required, other options help reduce application memory footprint.

```bash
CONFIG_APP_BUILD_TYPE_ELF_RAM=y
CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_TERMIOS=
CONFIG_NEWLIB_NANO_FORMAT=y
CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_HALT=y
CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_STUBS_ENABLE=
CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP=
```

**Available options:**
- Default (binary application + 2nd stage bootloader) (APP_BUILD_TYPE_APP_2NDBOOT)
- ELF file, loadable into RAM (EXPERIMENTAL) (APP_BUILD_TYPE_ELF_RAM)

**CONFIG_APP_REPRODUCIBLE_BUILD**

Enable reproducible build

*Found in: Build type*

If enabled, all date, time, and path information would be eliminated. A .gdbinit file would be create automatically. (or will be append if you have one already)

**Default value:**
Chapter 2. API 参考

- No (disabled)

**Application manager**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_APP_EXCLUDE_PROJECT_NAME_VAR`
- `CONFIG_APP_EXCLUDE_PROJECT_VER_VAR`
- `CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG`
- `CONFIG_APP_RETRIEVE_LEN_TL_GF_SHA`
- `CONFIG_APP_COMPILE_TIME_DATE`

**CONFIG_APP_COMPILE_TIME_DATE**

Use time/date stamp for app

*Found in: Application manager*

If set, then the app will be built with the current time/date stamp. It is stored in the app description structure. If not set, time/date stamp will be excluded from app image. This can be useful for getting the same binary image files made from the same source, but at different times.

*Default value:*

- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_APP_EXCLUDE_PROJECT_VER_VAR**

Exclude PROJECT_VER from firmware image

*Found in: Application manager*

The PROJECT_VER variable from the build system will not affect the firmware image. This value will not be contained in the esp_app_desc structure.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_APP_EXCLUDE_PROJECT_NAME_VAR**

Exclude PROJECT_NAME from firmware image

*Found in: Application manager*

The PROJECT_NAME variable from the build system will not affect the firmware image. This value will not be contained in the esp_app_desc structure.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG**

Get the project version from Kconfig

*Found in: Application manager*

If this is enabled, then config item APP_PROJECT_VER will be used for the variable PROJECT_VER. Other ways to set PROJECT_VER will be ignored.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled)
**CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER**

Project version

*Found in:* Application manager > CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG

Project version

**Default value:**

- 1 if CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG

**CONFIG_APP RETRIEVE LEN ELF SHA**

The length of APP ELF SHA is stored in RAM (chars)

*Found in:* Application manager

At startup, the app will read this many hex characters from the embedded APP ELF SHA-256 hash value and store it in static RAM. This ensures the app ELF SHA-256 value is always available if it needs to be printed by the panic handler code. Changing this value will change the size of a static buffer, in bytes.

**Range:**

- from 8 to 64

**Default value:**

- 16

**Bootloader config**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SPI_WP_PIN`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FLASH_XMC_SUPPORT`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_HOLD_TIME_GPIO`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_reserve_RTC`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ALWAYS`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ON_POWER_ON`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SPI_CUSTOM_WP_PIN`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE`
- `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_VDDSDIO_BOOST`

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION**

Bootloader optimization Level

*Found in:* Bootloader config

This option sets compiler optimization level (gcc -O argument) for the bootloader.

- The default “Size” setting will add the -Os flag to CFLAGS.
- The “Debug” setting will add the -Og flag to CFLAGS.
- The “Performance” setting will add the -O2 flag to CFLAGS.
- The “None” setting will add the -O0 flag to CFLAGS.

Note that custom optimization levels may be unsupported.

**Available options:**
Chapter 2. API

- Size (-Os) (BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_SIZE)
- Debug (-Og) (BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_DEBUG)
- Optimize for performance (-O2) (BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_PERF)
- Debug without optimization (-O0) (BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_NONE)

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL**

Bootloader log verbosity

*Found in: Bootloader config*

Specify how much output to see in bootloader logs.

**Available options:**
- No output (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_NONE)
- Error (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_ERROR)
- Warning (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_WARN)
- Info (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_INFO)
- Debug (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- Verbose (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SPI_CUSTOM_WP_PIN**

Use custom SPI Flash WP Pin when flash pins set in eFuse (read help)

*Found in: Bootloader config*

This setting is only used if the SPI flash pins have been overridden by setting the eFuses SPI_PAD_CONFIG_xxx, and the SPI flash mode is QIO or QOUT.

When this is the case, the eFuse config only defines 3 of the 4 Quad I/O data pins. The WP pin (aka ESP32 pin “SD_DATA_3” or SPI flash pin “IO2”) is not specified in eFuse. The same pin is also used for external SPIRAM if it is enabled.

If this config item is set to N (default), the correct WP pin will be automatically used for any Espressif chip or module with integrated flash. If a custom setting is needed, set this config item to Y and specify the GPIO number connected to the WP.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QIO || ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QOUT

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SPI_WP_PIN**

Custom SPI Flash WP Pin

*Found in: Bootloader config*

The option “Use custom SPI Flash WP Pin” must be set or this value is ignored

If burning a customized set of SPI flash pins in eFuse and using QIO or QOUT mode for flash, set this value to the GPIO number of the SPI flash WP pin.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 33 if ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QIO || ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QOUT

**Default value:**
- 7 if ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QIO || ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QOUT
CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_VDDSDIO_BOOST

VDDSDIO LDO voltage

*Found in: Bootloader config*

If this option is enabled, and VDDSDIO LDO is set to 1.8V (using eFuse or MTBZ bootstrapping pin), bootloader will change LDO settings to output 1.9V instead. This helps prevent flash chip from browning out during flash programming operations.

This option has no effect if VDDSDIO is set to 3.3V, or if the internal VDDSDIO regulator is disabled via eFuse.

**Available options:**
- 1.8V (BOOTLOADER_VDDSDIO_BOOST_1_8V)
- 1.9V (BOOTLOADER_VDDSDIO_BOOST_1_9V)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET

GPIO triggers factory reset

*Found in: Bootloader config*

Allows to reset the device to factory settings: - clear one or more data partitions; - boot from "factory" partition. The factory reset will occur if there is a GPIO input held at the configured level while device starts up. See settings below.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_NUM_PIN_FACTORY_RESET

Number of the GPIO input for factory reset

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*

The selected GPIO will be configured as an input with internal pull-up enabled (note that on some SoCs, not all pins have an internal pull-up, consult the hardware datasheet for details.) To trigger a factory reset, this GPIO must be held high or low (as configured) on startup.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 39 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET

**Default value:**
- 4 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET_PIN_LEVEL

Factory reset GPIO level

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*

Pin level for factory reset, can be triggered on low or high.

**Available options:**
- Reset on GPIO low (BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET_PIN_LOW)
- Reset on GPIO high (BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET_PIN_HIGH)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_OTA_DATA_ERASE

Clear OTA data on factory reset (select factory partition)

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*

The device will boot from “factory” partition (or OTA slot 0 if no factory partition is present) after a factory reset.
CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_DATA_FACTORY_RESET

Comma-separated names of partitions to clear on factory reset

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*

Allows customers to select which data partitions will be erased while factory reset.

Specify the names of partitions as a comma-delimited with optional spaces for readability. (Like this: “nvs, phy_init, …”) Make sure that the name specified in the partition table and here are the same. Partitions of type “app” cannot be specified here.

**Default value:**
- “nvs” if `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET`

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST

GPIO triggers boot from test app partition

*Found in: Bootloader config*

Allows to run the test app from “TEST” partition. A boot from “test” partition will occur if there is a GPIO input pulled low while device starts up. See settings below.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK`

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_NUM_PIN_APP_TEST

Number of the GPIO input to boot TEST partition

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST*

The selected GPIO will be configured as an input with internal pull-up enabled. To trigger a test app, this GPIO must be pulled low on reset. After the GPIO input is deactivated and the device reboots, the old application will boot. (factory or OTA[x]). Note that GPIO34-39 do not have an internal pullup and an external one must be provided.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 39 if `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST`

**Default value:**
- 18 if `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST`

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_HOLD_TIME_GPIO

Hold time of GPIO for reset/test mode (seconds)

*Found in: Bootloader config*

The GPIO must be held low continuously for this period of time after reset before a factory reset or test partition boot (as applicable) is performed.

**Default value:**
- 5 if `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET || CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST`

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE

Use RTC watchdog in start code

*Found in: Bootloader config*

Tracks the execution time of startup code. If the execution time is exceeded, the RTC_WDT will restart system. It is also useful to prevent a lock up in start code caused by an unstable power source. NOTE: Tracks the execution time starts from the bootloader code - re-set timeout, while selecting the source for slow_clk - and ends calling app_main. Re-set timeout is needed due to WDT uses a SLOW_CLK.
clock source. After changing a frequency slow_clk a time of WDT needs to be reset for new frequency. slow_clk depends on ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC (INTERNAL_RC or EXTERNAL_CRYSTAL).

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_DISABLE_IN_USER_CODE**

Allows RTC watchdog disable in user code

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE*

If this option is set, the ESP-IDF app must explicitly reset, feed, or disable the rtc_wdt in the app’s own code. If this option is not set (default), then rtc_wdt will be disabled by ESP-IDF before calling the app_main() function.

Use function rtc_wdt_feed() for resetting counter of rtc_wdt. Use function rtc_wdt_disable() for disabling rtc_wdt.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_TIME_MS**

Timeout for RTC watchdog (ms)

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE*

Verify that this parameter is correct and more than the execution time. Pay attention to options such as reset to factory, trigger test partition and encryption on boot - these options can increase the execution time. Note: RTC_WDT will reset while encryption operations will be performed.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 120000

**Default value:**
- 9000

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE**

Enable app rollback support

*Found in: Bootloader config*

After updating the app, the bootloader runs a new app with the “ESP OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY” state set. This state prevents the re-run of this app. After the first boot of the new app in the user code, the function should be called to confirm the operability of the app or vice versa about its non-operability. If the app is working, then it is marked as valid. Otherwise, it is marked as not valid and rolls back to the previous working app. A reboot is performed, and the app is booted before the software update. Note: If during the first boot a new app the power goes out or the WDT works, then roll back will happen. Rollback is possible only between the apps with the same security versions.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK**

Enable app anti-rollback support

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE*

This option prevents rollback to previous firmware/application image with lower security version.

**Default value:**
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SECURE_VERSION**

eFuse secure version of app

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*

The secure version is the sequence number stored in the header of each firmware. The security version is set in the bootloader, version is recorded in the eFuse field as the number of set ones. The allocated number of bits in the eFuse field for storing the security version is limited (see BOOTLOADER_APP_SEC_VER_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD option).

Bootloader: When bootloader selects an app to boot, an app is selected that has a security version greater or equal that recorded in eFuse field. The app is booted with a higher (or equal) secure version.

The security version is worth increasing if in previous versions there is a significant vulnerability and their use is not acceptable.

Your partition table should has a scheme with ota_0 + ota_1 (without factory).

*Default value:*

- 0 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SEC_VER_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD**

Size of the eFuse secure version field

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*

The size of the eFuse secure version field. Its length is limited to 32 bits for ESP32 and 16 bits for ESP32-S2. This determines how many times the security version can be increased.

*Range:*

- from 1 to 32 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK
- from 1 to 16 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK

*Default value:*

- 32 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK
- 16 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_EFUSE_SECURE_VERSION_EMULATE**

Emulate operations with eFuse secure version (only test)

*Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*

This option allows to emulate read/write operations with all eFuses and eFuse secure version. It allows to test anti-rollback implementation without permanent write eFuse bits. There should be an entry in partition table with following details: `emul_eFuse, data, eFuse, 0x2000`.

This option enables: EFUSE_VIRTUAL and EFUSE_VIRTUAL_KEEP_IN_FLASH.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP**

Skip image validation when exiting deep sleep

*Found in: Bootloader config*
This option disables the normal validation of an image coming out of deep sleep (checksums, SHA256, and signature). This is a trade-off between wakeup performance from deep sleep, and image integrity checks.

Only enable this if you know what you are doing. It should not be used in conjunction with using deep_sleep() entry and changing the active OTA partition as this would skip the validation upon first load of the new OTA partition.

It is possible to enable this option with Secure Boot if “allow insecure options” is enabled, however it’s strongly recommended to NOT enable it as it may allow a Secure Boot bypass.

Default value:
- No (disabled) if (CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT && CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE) || CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ON_POWER_ON

Skip image validation from power on reset (READ HELP FIRST)

Found in: Bootloader config

Some applications need to boot very quickly from power on. By default, the entire app binary is read from flash and verified which takes up a significant portion of the boot time.

Enabling this option will skip validation of the app when the SoC boots from power on. Note that in this case it’s not possible for the bootloader to detect if an app image is corrupted in the flash, therefore it’s not possible to safely fall back to a different app partition. Flash corruption of this kind is unlikely but can happen if there is a serious firmware bug or physical damage.

Following other reset types, the bootloader will still validate the app image. This increases the chances that flash corruption resulting in a crash can be detected following soft reset, and the bootloader will fall back to a valid app image. To increase the chances of successfully recovering from a flash corruption event, keep the option BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE enabled and consider also enabling BOOTLOADER_WDT_DISABLE_IN_USER_CODE - then manually disable the RTC Watchdog once the app is running. In addition, enable both the Task and Interrupt watchdog timers with reset options set.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ALWAYS

Skip image validation always (READ HELP FIRST)

Found in: Bootloader config

Selecting this option prevents the bootloader from ever validating the app image before booting it. Any flash corruption of the selected app partition will make the entire SoC unbootable.

Although flash corruption is a very rare case, it is not recommended to select this option. Consider selecting “Skip image validation from power on reset” instead. However, if boot time is the only important factor then it can be enabled.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_reserve_RTC

Reserve RTC FAST memory for custom purposes

Found in: Bootloader config

This option allows the customer to place data in the RTC FAST memory, this area remains valid when rebooted, except for power loss. This memory is located at a fixed address and is available for both the bootloader and the application. (The application and bootloader must be compiled with the same option). The RTC FAST memory has access only through PRO_CPU.
**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_reserve_RTC_SIZE**

Size in bytes for custom purposes

*Found in:* Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_reserve_RTC

This option reserves in RTC FAST memory the area for custom purposes. If you want to create your own bootloader and save more information in this area of memory, you can increase it. It must be a multiple of 4 bytes. This area (rtc_retain_mem_t) is reserved and has access from the bootloader and an application.

*Range:*
- from 0 to 0x10 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_reserve_RTC

*Default value:*
- 0 if CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_reserve_RTC

**CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FLASH_XMC_Support**

Enable the support for flash chips of XMC (READ HELP FIRST)

*Found in:* Bootloader config

Perform the startup flow recommended by XMC. Please consult XMC for the details of this flow. XMC chips will be forbidden to be used, when this option is disabled.

DON’T DISABLE THIS UNLESS YOU KNOW WHAT YOU ARE DOING.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled)

**Security features**

Contains:
- CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE
- CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_SCHEME
- CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_ON_BOOT_NO_SECURE_BOOT
- CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_CHECK_ENC_EN_IN_APP
- CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED
- CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT
- CONFIG_SECURE_BOOTLOADER_KEY_ENCODING
- Potentially insecure options
- CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT
- CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_VERIFICATION_KEY
- CONFIG_SECURE_BOOTLOADER_MODE
- CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_BUILD_SIGNED_BINARIES
- CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE
- CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_ON_UPDATE_NO_SECURE_BOOT

**CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT**

Require signed app images

*Found in:* Security features

Require apps to be signed to verify their integrity.

This option uses the same app signature scheme as hardware secure boot, but unlike hardware secure boot it does not prevent the bootloader from being physically updated. This means that the device can...
be secured against remote network access, but not physical access. Compared to using hardware Secure Boot this option is much simpler to implement.

**CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_SCHEME**

App Signing Scheme

*Found in: Security features*


**Available options:**

- **ECDSA (SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_ECDSA_SCHEME)**
  Embeds the ECDSA public key in the bootloader and signs the application with an ECDSA key.
  Refer to the documentation before enabling.

- **RSA (SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_RSA_SCHEME)**
  Appends the RSA-3072 based Signature block to the application. Refer to `<Secure Boot Version 2 documentation link>` before enabling.

**CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_ON_BOOT_NO_SECURE_BOOT**

Bootloader verifies app signatures

*Found in: Security features*

If this option is set, the bootloader will be compiled with code to verify that an app is signed before booting it.

If hardware secure boot is enabled, this option is always enabled and cannot be disabled. If hardware secure boot is not enabled, this option doesn’t add significant security by itself so most users will want to leave it disabled.

**Default value:**

- **No** (disabled) if `CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT` && `SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_ECDSA_SCHEME`

**CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_ON_UPDATE_NO_SECURE_BOOT**

Verify app signature on update

*Found in: Security features*

If this option is set, any OTA updated apps will have the signature verified before being considered valid.

When enabled, the signature is automatically checked whenever the esp_ota_ops.h APIs are used for OTA updates, or esp_image_format.h APIs are used to verify apps.

If hardware secure boot is enabled, this option is always enabled and cannot be disabled. If hardware secure boot is not enabled, this option still adds significant security against network-based attackers by preventing spoofing of OTA updates.

**Default value:**

- **Yes** (enabled) if `CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT`

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT**

Enable hardware Secure Boot in bootloader (READ DOCS FIRST)

*Found in: Security features*
Build a bootloader which enables Secure Boot on first boot.

Once enabled, Secure Boot will not boot a modified bootloader. The bootloader will only load a partition table or boot an app if the data has a verified digital signature. There are implications for reflashing updated apps once secure boot is enabled.

When enabling secure boot, JTAG and ROM BASIC Interpreter are permanently disabled by default.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_VERSION**

Select secure boot version

*Found in: Security features > CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT*


**Available options:**
- Enable Secure Boot version 1 (SECURE_BOOT_V1_ENABLED)
  Build a bootloader which enables secure boot version 1 on first boot. Refer to the Secure Boot section of the ESP-IDF Programmer’s Guide for this version before enabling.
- Enable Secure Boot version 2 (SECURE_BOOT_V2_ENABLED)
  Build a bootloader which enables Secure Boot version 2 on first boot. Refer to Secure Boot V2 section of the ESP-IDF Programmer’s Guide for this version before enabling.

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOTLOADER_MODE**

Secure bootloader mode

*Found in: Security features*

**Available options:**
- One-time flash (SECURE_BOOTLOADER_ONE_TIME_FLASH)
  On first boot, the bootloader will generate a key which is not readable externally or by software. A digest is generated from the bootloader image itself. This digest will be verified on each subsequent boot. Enabling this option means that the bootloader cannot be changed after the first time it is booted.
- Reflashable (SECURE_BOOTLOADER_REFLECTABLE)
  Generate a reusable secure bootloader key, derived (via SHA-256) from the secure boot signing key. This allows the secure bootloader to be re-flashed by anyone with access to the secure boot signing key. This option is less secure than one-time flash, because a leak of the digest key from one device allows reflashing of any device that uses it.

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_BUILD_SIGNED_BINARIES**

Sign binaries during build

*Found in: Security features*

Once secure boot or signed app requirement is enabled, app images are required to be signed. If enabled (default), these binary files are signed as part of the build process. The file named “Secure boot private signing key” will be used to sign the image.
If disabled, unsigned app/partition data will be built. They must be signed manually using espsecure.py. Version 1 to enable ECDSA Based Secure Boot and Version 2 to enable RSA based Secure Boot. (for example, on a remote signing server.)

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_SIGNING_KEY**

Secure boot private signing key

*Found in: Security features > CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_BUILD_SIGNED_BINARIES*

Path to the key file used to sign app images.

Key file is an ECDSA private key (NIST256p curve) in PEM format for Secure Boot V1. Key file is an RSA private key in PEM format for Secure Boot V2.

Path is evaluated relative to the project directory.

You can generate a new signing key by running the following command: espsecure.py generate_signing_key secure_boot_signing_key.pem

See the Secure Boot section of the ESP-IDF Programmer’s Guide for this version for details.

**Default value:**

- “secure_boot_signing_key.pem” if `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_BUILD_SIGNED_BINARIES`

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_VERIFICATION_KEY**

Secure boot public signature verification key

*Found in: Security features*

Path to a public key file used to verify signed images. Secure Boot V1: This ECDSA public key is compiled into the bootloader and/or app, to verify app images. Secure Boot V2: This RSA public key is compiled into the signature block at the end of the bootloader/app.

Key file is in raw binary format, and can be extracted from a PEM formatted private key using the espsecure.py extract_public_key command.

Refer to the Secure Boot section of the ESP-IDF Programmer’s Guide for this version before enabling.

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOTLOADER_KEY_ENCODING**

Hardware Key Encoding

*Found in: Security features*

In reflashable secure bootloader mode, a hardware key is derived from the signing key (with SHA-256) and can be written to eFuse with espfuse.py.

Normally this is a 256-bit key, but if 3/4 Coding Scheme is used on the device then the eFuse key is truncated to 192 bits.

This configuration item doesn’t change any firmware code, it only changes the size of key binary which is generated at build time.

**Available options:**

- No encoding (256 bit key) (SECURE_BOOTLOADER_KEY_ENCODING_256BIT)
- 3/4 encoding (192 bit key) (SECURE_BOOTLOADER_KEY_ENCODING_192BIT)

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE**

Allow potentially insecure options

*Found in: Security features*
You can disable some of the default protections offered by secure boot, in order to enable testing or a custom combination of security features.

Only enable these options if you are very sure.

Refer to the Secure Boot section of the ESP-IDF Programmer’s Guide for this version before enabling.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT`

**CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED**

Enable flash encryption on boot (READ DOCS FIRST)

*Found in: Security features*

If this option is set, flash contents will be encrypted by the bootloader on first boot.

*Note: After first boot, the system will be permanently encrypted. Re-flashing an encrypted system is complicated and not always possible. Read Flash before enabling.***

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE**

Enable usage mode

*Found in: Security features > CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED*

By default Development mode is enabled which allows ROM download mode to perform flash encryption operations (plaintext is sent to the device, and it encrypts it internally and writes ciphertext to flash.) This mode is not secure, it’s possible for an attacker to write their own chosen plaintext to flash.

Release mode should always be selected for production or manufacturing. Once enabled it’s no longer possible for the device in ROM Download Mode to use the flash encryption hardware.

Refer to the Flash Encryption section of the ESP-IDF Programmer’s Guide for details.

**Available options:**
- Development (NOT SECURE) (SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT)
- Release (SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_RELEASE)

**Potentially insecure options**

*Contains:

- `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_V2_ALLOW_EFUSE_RD_DIS`
- `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_SHORT_APP_PARTITION`
- `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_JTAG`
- `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_ROM_BASIC`
- `CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_DEC`
- `CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENC`
- `CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_CACHE`
- `CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_REQUIRE_ALREADY_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_ROM_BASIC**

Leave ROM BASIC Interpreter available on reset

*Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options*

By default, the BASIC ROM Console starts on reset if no valid bootloader is read from the flash.
When either flash encryption or secure boot are enabled, the default is to disable this BASIC fallback mode permanently via eFuse.

If this option is set, this eFuse is not burned and the BASIC ROM Console may remain accessible. Only set this option in testing environments.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE` || `SECRET_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT`

---

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_JTAG**

Allow JTAG Debugging

*Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options*

If not set (default), the bootloader will permanently disable JTAG (across entire chip) on first boot when either secure boot or flash encryption is enabled.

Setting this option leaves JTAG on for debugging, which negates all protections of flash encryption and some of the protections of secure boot.

Only set this option in testing environments.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE` || `SECRET_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT`

---

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_SHORT_APP_PARTITION**

Allow app partition length not 64KB aligned

*Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options*

If not set (default), app partition size must be a multiple of 64KB. App images are padded to 64KB length, and the bootloader checks any trailing bytes after the signature (before the next 64KB boundary) have not been written. This is because flash cache maps entire 64KB pages into the address space. This prevents an attacker from appending unverified data after the app image in the flash, causing it to be mapped into the address space.

Setting this option allows the app partition length to be unaligned, and disables padding of the app image to this length. It is generally not recommended to set this option, unless you have a legacy partitioning scheme which doesn’t support 64KB aligned partition lengths.

---

**CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_V2_ALLOW_EFUSE_RD_DIS**

Allow additional read protecting of efuses

*Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options*

If not set (default, recommended), on first boot the bootloader will burn the WR_DIS_RD_DIS efuse when Secure Boot is enabled. This prevents any more efuses from being read protected.

If this option is set, it will remain possible to write the EFUSE_RD_DIS efuse field after Secure Boot is enabled. This may allow an attacker to read-protect the BLK2 efuse (for ESP32) and BLOCK4-BLOCK10 (i.e. BLOCK_KEY0-BLOCK_KEY5) holding the public key digest, causing an immediate denial of service and possibly allowing an additional fault injection attack to bypass the signature protection.

**NOTE:** Once a BLOCK is read-protected, the application will read all zeros from that block.

**NOTE:** If “UART ROM download mode (Permanently disabled (recommended))” or “UART ROM download mode (Permanently switch to Secure mode (recommended))” is set, then it is NOT possible to read/write efuses using espfuse.py utility. However, efuse can be read/written from the application.
**CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENC**

Leave UART bootloader encryption enabled

*Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options*

If not set (default), the bootloader will permanently disable UART bootloader encryption access on first boot. If set, the UART bootloader will still be able to access hardware encryption.

It is recommended to only set this option in testing environments.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

**CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_DEC**

Leave UART bootloader decryption enabled

*Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options*

If not set (default), the bootloader will permanently disable UART bootloader decryption access on first boot. If set, the UART bootloader will still be able to access hardware decryption.

Only set this option in testing environments. Setting this option allows complete bypass of flash encryption.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

**CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_CACHE**

Leave UART bootloader flash cache enabled

*Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options*

If not set (default), the bootloader will permanently disable UART bootloader flash cache access on first boot. If set, the UART bootloader will still be able to access the flash cache.

Only set this option in testing environments.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

**CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_REQUIRE_ALREADY_ENABLED**

Require flash encryption to be already enabled

*Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options*

If not set (default), and flash encryption is not yet enabled in eFuses, the 2nd stage bootloader will enable flash encryption: generate the flash encryption key and program eFuses. If this option is set, and flash encryption is not yet enabled, the bootloader will error out and reboot. If flash encryption is enabled in eFuses, this option does not change the bootloader behavior.

Only use this option in testing environments, to avoid accidentally enabling flash encryption on the wrong device. The device needs to have flash encryption already enabled using espfuse.py.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

**CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_CHECK_ENC_EN_IN_APP**

Check Flash Encryption enabled on app startup

*Found in: Security features*
If set (default), in an app during startup code, there is a check of the flash encryption eFuse bit is on (as the bootloader should already have set it). The app requires this bit is on to continue work otherwise abort.

If not set, the app does not care if the flash encryption eFuse bit is set or not.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE**

UART ROM download mode

*Found in: Security features*

**Available options:**

- UART ROM download mode (Permanently disabled (recommended)) (SECURE_DISABLE_ROM_DL_MODE)
  
  If set, during startup the app will burn an eFuse bit to permanently disable the UART ROM Download Mode. This prevents any future use of esptool.py, espfuse.py and similar tools. Once disabled, if the SoC is booted with strapping pins set for ROM Download Mode then an error is printed instead.

  It is recommended to enable this option in any production application where Flash Encryption and/or Secure Boot is enabled and access to Download Mode is not required.

  It is also possible to permanently disable Download Mode by calling `esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode()` at runtime.

- UART ROM download mode (Permanently switch to Secure mode (recommended)) (SECURE_ENABLE_SECURE_ROM_DL_MODE)
  
  If set, during startup the app will burn an eFuse bit to permanently switch the UART ROM Download Mode into a separate Secure Download mode. This option can only work if Download Mode is not already disabled by eFuse.

  Secure Download mode limits the use of Download Mode functions to simple flash read, write and erase operations, plus a command to return a summary of currently enabled security features.

  Secure Download mode is not compatible with the esptool.py flasher stub feature, espfuse.py, read/writing memory or registers, encrypted download, or any other features that interact with unsupported Download Mode commands.

  Secure Download mode should be enabled in any application where Flash Encryption and/or Secure Boot is enabled. Disabling this option does not immediately cancel the benefits of the security features, but it increases the potential “attack surface” for an attacker to try and bypass them with a successful physical attack.

  It is also possible to enable secure download mode at runtime by calling `esp_efuse_enable_rom_secure_download_mode()`.

  Note: Secure Download mode is not available for ESP32 (includes revisions till ECO3).

- UART ROM download mode (Enabled (not recommended)) (SECURE_INSECURE_ALLOW_DL_MODE)
  
  This is a potentially insecure option. Enabling this option will allow the full UART download mode to stay enabled. This option SHOULD NOT BE ENABLED for production use cases.

**Serial flasher config**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD`
- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_AFTER`
- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_BEFORE`
- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER_VAL`
- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_DETECT`
- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_NO_STUB`
- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASH_SAMPLE_MODE`
Chapter 2. API 参考

- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE`
- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE`
- `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ`

**CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_NO_STUB**

Disable download stub

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

The flasher tool sends a precompiled download stub first by default. That stub allows things like compressed downloads and more. Usually you should not need to disable that feature

*Default value:*
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE**

Flash SPI mode

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

Mode the flash chip is flashed in, as well as the default mode for the binary to run in.

*Available options:*
- QIO (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QIO)
- QOUT (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QOUT)
- DIO (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DIO)
- DOUT (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DOUT)
- OPI (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_OPI)

**CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASH_SAMPLE_MODE**

Flash Sampling Mode

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

*Available options:*
- STR Mode (ESPTOOLPY_FLASH_SAMPLE_MODE_STR)
- DTR Mode (ESPTOOLPY_FLASH_SAMPLE_MODE_DTR)

**CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ**

Flash SPI speed

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

The SPI flash frequency to be used.

*Available options:*
- 120 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_120M)
- 80 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_80M)
- 40 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_40M)
- 26 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_26M)
- 20 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_20M)

**CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE**

Flash size

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

SPI flash size, in megabytes
Available options:
- 1 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_1MB)
- 2 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_2MB)
- 4 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_4MB)
- 8 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_8MB)
- 16 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_16MB)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_DETECT
Detect flash size when flashing bootloader

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

If this option is set, flashing the project will automatically detect the flash size of the target chip and update the bootloader image before it is flashed.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_BEFORE
Before flashing

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

Configure whether esptool.py should reset the ESP32 before flashing.

Automatic resetting depends on the RTS & DTR signals being wired from the serial port to the ESP32. Most USB development boards do this internally.

*Available options:*
- Reset to bootloader (ESPTOOLPY_BEFORE_RESET)
- No reset (ESPTOOLPY_BEFORE_NORESET)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_AFTER
After flashing

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

Configure whether esptool.py should reset the ESP32 after flashing.

Automatic resetting depends on the RTS & DTR signals being wired from the serial port to the ESP32. Most USB development boards do this internally.

*Available options:*
- Reset after flashing (ESPTOOLPY_AFTER_RESET)
- Stay in bootloader (ESPTOOLPY_AFTER_NORESET)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD
`idf.py monitor` baud rate

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

Baud rate to use when running `idf.py monitor` or `make monitor` to view serial output from a running chip.

If “Same as UART Console baud rate” is chosen then the value will follow the “UART Console baud rate” config item.

Can override by setting the MONITORBAUD environment variable.

*Available options:*
- Same as UART console baud rate (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_CONSOLE)
Chapter 2. API

- 9600 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_9600B)
- 57600 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_57600B)
- 115200 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_115200B)
- 230400 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_230400B)
- 921600 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_921600B)
- 2 Mbps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_2MB)
- Custom baud rate (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER)

**CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER_VAL**

Custom baud rate value

*Found in: Serial flasher config*

**Default value:**

- 115200

**Partition Table**

Contains:

- **CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_CUSTOM_FILENAME**
- **CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_MD5**
- **CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET**
- **CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_TYPE**

**CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_TYPE**

**Partition Table**

*Found in: Partition Table*

The partition table to flash to the ESP32. The partition table determines where apps, data and other resources are expected to be found.

The predefined partition table CSV descriptions can be found in the components/partition_table directory. These are mostly intended for example and development use, it’s expect that for production use you will copy one of these CSV files and create a custom partition CSV for your application.

**Available options:**

- **Single factory app, no OTA (PARTITION_TABLE_SINGLE_APP)**
  This is the default partition table, designed to fit into a 2MB or larger flash with a single 1MB app partition.
  The corresponding CSV file in the IDF directory is components/partition_table/partitions_singleapp.csv
  This partition table is not suitable for an app that needs OTA (over the air update) capability.

- **Single factory app (large), no OTA (PARTITION_TABLE_SINGLE_APP_LARGE)**
  This is a variation of the default partition table, that expands the 1MB app partition size to 1.5MB to fit more code.
  The corresponding CSV file in the IDF directory is components/partition_table/partitions_singleapp_large.csv
  This partition table is not suitable for an app that needs OTA (over the air update) capability.

- **Factory app, two OTA definitions (PARTITION_TABLE_TWO_OTA)**
  This is a basic OTA-enabled partition table with a factory app partition plus two OTA app partitions. All are 1MB, so this partition table requires 4MB or larger flash size.
  The corresponding CSV file in the IDF directory is components/partition_table/partitions_two_ota.csv

- **Custom partition table CSV (PARTITION_TABLE_CUSTOM)**
  Specify the path to the partition table CSV to use for your project.
  Consult the Partition Table section in the ESP-IDF Programmers Guide for more information.
• Single factory app, no OTA, encrypted NVS (PARTITION_TABLE_SINGLE_APP_ENCRYPTED_NVS)
This is a variation of the default “Single factory app, no OTA” partition table that supports encrypted NVS when using flash encryption. See the Flash Encryption section in the ESP-IDF Programmers Guide for more information.
The corresponding CSV file in the IDF directory is components/partition_table/partitions_singleapp_encr_nvs.csv

• Single factory app (large), no OTA, encrypted NVS (PARTITION_TABLE_SINGLE_APP_LARGE_ENC_NVS)
This is a variation of the “Single factory app (large), no OTA” partition table that supports encrypted NVS when using flash encryption. See the Flash Encryption section in the ESP-IDF Programmers Guide for more information.
The corresponding CSV file in the IDF directory is components/partition_table/partitions_singleapp_large_encr_nvs.csv

• Factory app, two OTA definitions, encrypted NVS (PARTITION_TABLE_TWO_OTA_ENCRYPTED_NVS)
This is a variation of the “Factory app, two OTA definitions” partition table that supports encrypted NVS when using flash encryption. See the Flash Encryption section in the ESP-IDF Programmers Guide for more information.
The corresponding CSV file in the IDF directory is components/partition_table/partitions_two_ota_encr_nvs.csv

CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_CUSTOM_FILENAME
Custom partition CSV file

*Found in: Partition Table*

Name of the custom partition CSV filename. This path is evaluated relative to the project root directory.

*Default value:*
  
  • “partitions.csv”

CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET
Offset of partition table

*Found in: Partition Table*

The address of partition table (by default 0x8000). Allows you to move the partition table, it gives more space for the bootloader. Note that the bootloader and app will both need to be compiled with the same PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET value.

This number should be a multiple of 0x1000.

Note that partition offsets in the partition table CSV file may need to be changed if this value is set to a higher value. To have each partition offset adapt to the configured partition table offset, leave all partition offsets blank in the CSV file.

*Default value:*
  
  • “0x8000”

CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_MD5
Generate an MD5 checksum for the partition table

*Found in: Partition Table*

Generate an MD5 checksum for the partition table for protecting the integrity of the table. The generation should be turned off for legacy bootloaders which cannot recognize the MD5 checksum in the partition table.

*Default value:*
Chapter 2. API

- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_ESP32_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V3_1_BOOTLOADERS

Compiler options

Contains:

- CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL
- CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_CHECKS_SILENT
- CONFIG_COMPILER_DISABLE_GCC8_WARNINGS
- CONFIG_COMPILER_DUMP_RTL_FILES
- CONFIG_COMPILER_WARN_WRITE_STRINGS
- CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS
- CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX RTTI
- CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION
- CONFIG_COMPILER_HIDE_PATHS_MACROS
- CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE

CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION

Optimization Level

Found in: Compiler options

This option sets compiler optimization level (gcc -O argument) for the app.

- The “Default” setting will add the -Og flag to CFLAGS.
- The “Size” setting will add the -Os flag to CFLAGS.
- The “Performance” setting will add the -O2 flag to CFLAGS.
- The “None” setting will add the -O0 flag to CFLAGS.

The “Size” setting cause the compiled code to be smaller and faster, but may lead to difficulties of correlating code addresses to source file lines when debugging.

The “Performance” setting causes the compiled code to be larger and faster, but will be easier to correlated code addresses to source file lines.

“None” with -O0 produces compiled code without optimization.

Note that custom optimization levels may be unsupported.

Compiler optimization for the IDF bootloader is set separately, see the BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION setting.

Available options:

- Debug (-Og) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_DEFAULT)
- Optimize for size (-Os) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_SIZE)
- Optimize for performance (-O2) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_PERF)
- Debug without optimization (-O0) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_NONE)

CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL

Assertion level

Found in: Compiler options

Assertions can be:

- Enabled. Failure will print verbose assertion details. This is the default.
- Set to “silent” to save code size (failed assertions will abort() but user needs to use the aborting address to find the line number with the failed assertion.)
- Disabled entirely (not recommended for most configurations.) -DNDEBUG is added to CPPFLAGS in this case.

Available options:
• Enabled (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_ENABLE)
  Enable assertions. Assertion content and line number will be printed on failure.
• Silent (saves code size) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_SILENT)
  Enable silent assertions. Failed assertions will abort(), user needs to use the aborting address to find the line number with the failed assertion.
• Disabled (sets -DNDEBUG) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_DISABLE)
  If assertions are disabled, -DNDEBUG is added to CPPFLAGS.

CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_CHECKS_SILENT
  Disable messages in ESP_RETURN_ON_* and ESP_EXIT_ON_* macros

  Found in: Compiler options

  If enabled, the error messages will be discarded in following check macros:
  - ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR - ESP_EXIT_ON_ERROR - ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE - ESP_EXIT_ON_FALSE

  Default value:
  • No (disabled)

CONFIG_COMPILER_HIDE_PATHS_MACROS
  Replace ESP-IDF and project paths in binaries

  Found in: Compiler options

  When expanding the __FILE__ and __BASE_FILE__ macros, replace paths inside ESP-IDF with paths relative to the placeholder string “IDF”, and convert paths inside the project directory to relative paths.

  This allows building the project with assertions or other code that embeds file paths, without the binary containing the exact path to the IDF or project directories.

  This option passes -fmacro-prefix-map options to the GCC command line. To replace additional paths in your binaries, modify the project CMakeLists.txt file to pass custom -fmacro-prefix-map or -ffile-prefix-map arguments.

  Default value:
  • Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS
  Enable C++ exceptions

  Found in: Compiler options

  Enabling this option compiles all IDF C++ files with exception support enabled.

  Disabling this option disables C++ exception support in all compiled files, and any libstdc++ code which throws an exception will abort instead.

  Enabling this option currently adds an additional ~500 bytes of heap overhead when an exception is thrown in user code for the first time.

  Default value:
  • No (disabled)

  Contains:
  • CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE
CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE

Emergency Pool Size

*Found in: Compiler options > CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS*

Size (in bytes) of the emergency memory pool for C++ exceptions. This pool will be used to allocate memory for thrown exceptions when there is not enough memory on the heap.

**Default value:**

- 0 if `CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS`

CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_RTTI

Enable C++ run-time type info (RTTI)

*Found in: Compiler options*

Enabling this option compiles all C++ files with RTTI support enabled. This increases binary size (typically by tens of kB) but allows using `dynamic_cast` conversion and `typeid` operator.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE

Stack smashing protection mode

*Found in: Compiler options*

Stack smashing protection mode. Emit extra code to check for buffer overflows, such as stack smashing attacks. This is done by adding a guard variable to functions with vulnerable objects. The guards are initialized when a function is entered and then checked when the function exits. If a guard check fails, program is halted. Protection has the following modes:

- In NORMAL mode (GCC flag: `-fstack-protector`) only functions that call `alloca`, and functions with buffers larger than 8 bytes are protected.
- STRONG mode (GCC flag: `-fstack-protector-strong`) is like NORMAL, but includes additional functions to be protected—those that have local array definitions, or have references to local frame addresses.
- In OVERALL mode (GCC flag: `-fstack-protector-all`) all functions are protected.

Modes have the following impact on code performance and coverage:

- performance: NORMAL > STRONG > OVERALL
- coverage: NORMAL < STRONG < OVERALL

The performance impact includes increasing the amount of stack memory required for each task.

**Available options:**

- None (COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE_NONE)
- Normal (COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE_NORM)
- Strong (COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE_STRONG)
- Overall (COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE_ALL)

CONFIG_COMPILER_WARN_WRITE_STRINGS

Enable `-Wwrite-strings` warning flag

*Found in: Compiler options*

Adds `-Wwrite-strings` flag for the C/C++ compilers.

For C, this gives string constants the type `const char[]` so that copying the address of one into a non-const `char *` pointer produces a warning. This warning helps to find at compile time code that tries to write into a string constant.
For C++, this warns about the deprecated conversion from string literals to char *.  

**Default value:**  
• No (disabled)

**CONFIG_COMPILER_DISABLE_GCC8_WARNINGS**  
Disable new warnings introduced in GCC 6 - 8  

*Found in:* Compiler options  
Enable this option if using GCC 6 or newer, and wanting to disable warnings which don’t appear with GCC 5.  

**Default value:**  
• No (disabled)

**CONFIG_COMPILER_DUMP_RTL_FILES**  
Dump RTL files during compilation  

*Found in:* Compiler options  
If enabled, RTL files will be produced during compilation. These files can be used by other tools, for example to calculate call graphs.

**Component config**

Contains:

• ADC-Calibration  
• Application Level Tracing  
• Bluetooth  
• CoAP Configuration  
• Common ESP-related  
• Core dump  
• Driver configurations  
• eFuse Bit Manager  
• CONFIG_BLE_MESH  
• ESP HTTP client  
• ESP HTTPS OTA  
• ESP HTTPS server  
• ESP NETIF Adapter  
• ESP System Settings  
• ESP-ASIO  
• ESP-MQTT Configurations  
• ESP-TLS  
• ESP32-specific  
• Ethernet  
• Event Loop Library  
• FAT Filesystem support  
• FreeRTOS  
• GDB Stub  
• Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) and Low Level (LL)  
• Hardware Settings  
• Heap memory debugging  
• High resolution timer (esp_timer)  
• HTTP Server  
• IPC (Inter-Processor Call)  
• jsmn
Chapter 2. API 参考

- LCD and Touch Panel
- Libsodium
- Log output
- LWIP
- MbedTLS
- Modbus configuration
- Newlib
- NVS
- OpenSSL
- OpenThread
- PHY
- Power Management
- PThreads
- SPI Flash driver
- SPIFFS Configuration
- Supplicant
- TCP Transport
- Unity unit testing library
- Virtual file system
- Wear Levelling
- Wi-Fi
- Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager

**Application Level Tracing**  Contains:

- `CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION`
- FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing
- `CONFIG_APPTRACE_GCOV_ENABLE`
- `CONFIG_APPTRACE_BUF_SIZE`
- `CONFIG_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX`
- `CONFIG_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_THRESH`
- `CONFIG_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO`

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION**

Data Destination

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing*

Select destination for application trace: JTAG or none (to disable).

*Available options:*

- JTAG (APPTRACE_DEST_JTAG)
- None (APPTRACE_DEST_NONE)

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO**

Timeout for flushing last trace data to host on panic

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing*

Timeout for flushing last trace data to host in case of panic. In ms. Use -1 to disable timeout and wait forever.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_THRESH**

Threshold for flushing last trace data to host on panic

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing*
Threshold for flushing last trace data to host on panic in post-mortem mode. This is minimal amount of data needed to perform flush. In bytes.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_BUF_SIZE**

Size of the apptrace buffer

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing*

Size of the memory buffer for trace data in bytes.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX**

Size of the pending data buffer

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing*

Size of the buffer for events in bytes. It is useful for buffering events from the time critical code (scheduler, ISRs etc). If this parameter is 0 then events will be discarded when main HW buffer is full.

**FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing** Contains:

- **CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE**

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE**

SystemView Tracing Enable

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing*

Enables support for SEGGER SystemView tracing functionality.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_TS_SOURCE**

Timer to use as timestamp source

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE*

SystemView needs to use a hardware timer as the source of timestamps when tracing. This option selects the timer for it.

**Available options:**

- CPU cycle counter (CCOUNT) (APPTRACTCE_SV_TS_SOURCE_CCOUNT)
- Timer 0, Group 0 (APPTRACTCE_SV_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_00)
- Timer 1, Group 0 (APPTRACTCE_SV_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_01)
- Timer 0, Group 1 (APPTRACTCE_SV_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_10)
- Timer 1, Group 1 (APPTRACTCE_SV_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_11)
- esp_timer high resolution timer (APPTRACTCE_SV_TS_SOURCE_ESP_TIMER)

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_MAX_TASKS**

Maximum supported tasks

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE*

Configures maximum supported tasks in sysview debug
**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_BUF_WAIT_TMO**

Trace buffer wait timeout

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Configures timeout (in us) to wait for free space in trace buffer. Set to -1 to wait forever and avoid lost events.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_OVERFLOW_ENABLE**

Trace Buffer Overflow Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Trace Buffer Overflow” event.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_ISR_ENTER_ENABLE**

ISR Enter Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “ISR Enter” event.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_ISR_EXIT_ENABLE**

ISR Exit Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “ISR Exit” event.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_ISR_TO_SCHED_ENABLE**

ISR Exit to Scheduler Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “ISR to Scheduler” event.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_TASK_START_EXEC_ENABLE**

Task Start Execution Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Task Start Execution” event.

**CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_TASK_STOP_EXEC_ENABLE**

Task Stop Execution Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Task Stop Execution” event.
CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_TASK_START_READY_ENABLE

Task Start Ready State Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Task Start Ready State” event.

CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_TASK_STOP_READY_ENABLE

Task Stop Ready State Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Task Stop Ready State” event.

CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_TASK_CREATE_ENABLE

Task Create Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Task Create” event.

CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_TASK_TERMINATE_ENABLE

Task Terminate Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Task Terminate” event.

CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_IDLE_ENABLE

System Idle Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “System Idle” event.

CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_TIMER_ENTER_ENABLE

Timer Enter Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Timer Enter” event.

CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_TIMER_EXIT_ENABLE

Timer Exit Event

*Found in:* Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE

Enables “Timer Exit” event.
CONFIG_APPTTRACE_GCOV_ENABLE

GCOV to Host Enable

*Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing*

Enables support for GCOV data transfer to host.

ESP-ASIO  Contains:

•  CONFIG_ASIO_SSL_SUPPORT

CONFIG_ASIO_SSL_SUPPORT

Enable SSL/TLS support of ASIO

*Found in: Component config > ESP-ASIO*

Enable support for basic SSL/TLS features, available for mbedTLS/OpenSSL as well as wolfSSL TLS library.

Default value:

•  No (disabled)

CONFIG_ASIO_SSL_LIBRARY_CHOICE

Choose SSL/TLS library for ESP-TLS (See help for more Info)

*Found in: Component config > ESP-ASIO > CONFIG_ASIO_SSL_SUPPORT*

The ASIO support multiple backend TLS libraries. Currently the mbedTLS with a thin ESP-OpenSSL port layer (default choice) and WolfSSL are supported. Different TLS libraries may support different features and have different resource usage. Consult the ESP-TLS documentation in ESP-IDF Programming guide for more details.

Available options:

•  esp-openssl (ASIO_USE_ESP_OPENSSL)
•  wolfSSL (License info in wolfSSL directory README) (ASIO_USE_ESP_WOLFSSL)

Bluetooth  Contains:

•  Bluedroid Options
•  CONFIG_BT_ENABLED
•  NimBLE Options

CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

Bluetooth

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth*

Select this option to enable Bluetooth and show the submenu with Bluetooth configuration choices.

Bluetooth controller  Contains:

•  CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_AUTO_LATENCY
•  CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP
•  CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_FULL_SCAN_SUPPORTED
•  CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BLE_MAX_CONN
•  CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL
•  CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SLEEP_CLOCK_ACCURACY
•  CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_MODE
Chapter 2. API

- `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_MAX_ACL_CONN`
- `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_SCO_DATA_PATH`
- `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_MAX_SYNC_CONN`
- `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_CHOICE`
- `HCI UART(H4) Options`
- `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HLI`
- `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_LEGACY_AUTH_VENDOR_EVT`
- `MODEM SLEEP Options`
- `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PCM_ROLE_EDGE_CONFIG`
- `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE`

### `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_MODE`

Bluetooth controller mode (BR/EDR/BLE/DUALMODE)

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

Specify the bluetooth controller mode (BR/EDR, BLE or dual mode).

**Available options:**
- BLE Only (`BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BLE_ONLY`)
- BR/EDR Only (`BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BR_EDR_ONLY`)
- Bluetooth Dual Mode (`BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM`)

### `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BLE_MAX_CONN`

BLE Max Connections

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

BLE maximum connections of bluetooth controller. Each connection uses 1KB static DRAM whenever the BT controller is enabled.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 9 if (`BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BLE_ONLY` || `BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM`) && `CONFIG_BT_ENABLED`

**Default value:**
- 3 if (`BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BLE_ONLY` || `BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM`) && `CONFIG_BT_ENABLED`

### `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_MAX_ACL_CONN`

BR/EDR ACL Max Connections

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

BR/EDR ACL maximum connections of bluetooth controller. Each connection uses 1.2 KB DRAM whenever the BT controller is enabled.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 7 if (`BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BR_EDR_ONLY` || `BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM`) && `CONFIG_BT_ENABLED`

**Default value:**
- 2 if (`BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BR_EDR_ONLY` || `BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM`) && `CONFIG_BT_ENABLED`

### `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_MAX_SYNC_CONN`

BR/EDR Sync(SCO/eSCO) Max Connections

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*
BR/EDR synchronize maximum connections of bluetooth controller. Each connection uses 2 KB DRAM whenever the BT controller is enabled.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 3 if (BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BR_EDR_ONLY || BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM) && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**Default value:**
- 0 if (BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BR_EDR_ONLY || BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM) && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_SCO_DATA_PATH**

BR/EDR Synchronous SCO or eSCO) default data path

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

SCO data path, i.e. HCI or PCM. SCO data can be sent/received through HCI synchronous packets, or the data can be routed to on-chip PCM module on ESP32. PCM input/output signals can be “matrixed” to GPIOs. The default data path can also be set using API “esp_bredr_sco_datapath_set”

**Available options:**
- HCI (BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_SCO_DATA_PATH_HCI)
- PCM (BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_SCO_DATA_PATH_PCM)

**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PCM_ROLE_EDGE_CONFIG**

PCM Signal Config (Role and Polar)

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_SCO_DATA_PATH_PCM && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**Contains:**
- CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PCM_POLAR
- CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PCM_ROLE

**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PCM_ROLE**

PCM Role

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PCM_ROLE_EDGE_CONFIG*

PCM role can be configured as PCM master or PCM slave

**Available options:**
- PCM Master (BTDM_CTRL_PCM_ROLE_MASTER)
- PCM Slave (BTDM_CTRL_PCM_ROLE_SLAVE)

**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PCM_POLAR**

PCM Polar

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PCM_ROLE_EDGE_CONFIG*

PCM polarity can be configured as Falling Edge or Rising Edge

**Available options:**
- Falling Edge (BTDM_CTRL_PCM_POLAR_FALLING_EDGE)
- Rising Edge (BTDM_CTRL_PCM_POLAR_RISING_EDGE)
**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_AUTO_LATENCY**

Auto latency

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

BLE auto latency, used to enhance classic BT performance while classic BT and BLE are enabled at the same time.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_LEGACY_AUTH_VENDOR_EVT**

Legacy Authentication Vendor Specific Event Enable

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

To protect from BIAS attack during Legacy authentication, Legacy authentication Vendor specific event should be enabled

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if (BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BR_EDR_ONLY || BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM) && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE**

The cpu core which bluetooth controller run

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

Specify the cpu core to run bluetooth controller. Can not specify no-affinity.

**Available options:**
- Core 0 (PRO CPU) (BTDM_CTRL_PINNED_TO_CORE_0)
- Core 1 (APP CPU) (BTDM_CTRL_PINNED_TO_CORE_1)

**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_CHOICE**

HCImode

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

Specify HCImode as VHCI or UART(H4)

**Available options:**
- VHCI (BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_VHCI)
  - Normal option. Mostly, choose this VHCI when bluetooth host run on ESP32, too.
- UART(H4) (BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_UART_H4)
  - If use external bluetooth host which run on other hardware and use UART as the HCI interface, choose this option.

**HCI UART(H4) Options**

Contains:
- CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HCI_UART_BAUDRATE
- CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HCI_UART_NO

**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HCI_UART_NO**

UART Number for HCI

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > HCI UART(H4) Options*

Uart number for HCI. The available uart is UART1 and UART2.
Range:
  • from 1 to 2 if BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_UART_H4 && \texttt{CONFIG_BT_ENABLED}

Default value:
  • 1 if BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_UART_H4 && \texttt{CONFIG_BT_ENABLED}

\textbf{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HCI_UART_BAUDRATE}

UART Baudrate for HCI

\textit{Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > HCI UART(H4) Options}

UART Baudrate for HCI. Please use standard baudrate.

Range:
  • from 115200 to 921600 if BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_UART_H4 && \texttt{CONFIG_BT_ENABLED}

Default value:
  • 921600 if BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_UART_H4 && \texttt{CONFIG_BT_ENABLED}

\textbf{MODEM SLEEP Options}

Contains:
  • \texttt{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_LOW_POWER_CLOCK}
  • \texttt{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_MODEM_SLEEP}

\textbf{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_MODEM_SLEEP}

Bluetooth modem sleep

\textit{Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > MODEM SLEEP Options}

Enable/disable bluetooth controller low power mode.

Default value:
  • Yes (enabled) if \texttt{CONFIG_BT_ENABLED}

\textbf{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_MODEM_SLEEP_MODE}

Bluetooth Modem sleep mode

\textit{Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > MODEM SLEEP Options > CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_MODEM_SLEEP}

To select which strategy to use for modem sleep

Available options:
  • ORIG Mode(sleep with low power clock) (BTDM_CTRL_MODEM_SLEEP_MODE_ORIG)
    ORIG mode is a bluetooth sleep mode that can be used for dual mode controller. In this mode, bluetooth controller sleeps between BR/EDR frames and BLE events. A low power clock is used to maintain bluetooth reference clock.
  • EVED Mode(For internal test only) (BTDM_CTRL_MODEM_SLEEP_MODE_EVED)
    EVED mode is for BLE only and is only for internal test. Do not use it for production. this mode is not compatible with DFS nor light sleep

\textbf{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_LOW_POWER_CLOCK}

Bluetooth low power clock

\textit{Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > MODEM SLEEP Options}
Select the low power clock source for bluetooth controller. Bluetooth low power clock is the clock source to maintain time in sleep mode.

- “Main crystal” option provides good accuracy and can support Dynamic Frequency Scaling to be used with Bluetooth modem sleep. Light sleep is not supported.
- “External 32kHz crystal” option allows user to use a 32.768kHz crystal as Bluetooth low power clock. This option is allowed as long as External 32kHz crystal is configured as the system RTC clock source. This option provides good accuracy and supports Bluetooth modem sleep to be used alongside Dynamic Frequency Scaling or light sleep.

Available options:
- Main crystal (BTDM_CTRL_LPCLK_SEL_MAIN_XTAL)
  Main crystal can be used as low power clock for bluetooth modem sleep. If this option is selected, bluetooth modem sleep can work under Dynamic Frequency Scaling (DFS) enabled, but cannot work when light sleep is enabled. Main crystal has a good performance in accuracy as the bluetooth low power clock source.
- External 32kHz crystal (BTDM_CTRL_LPCLK_SEL_EXT_32K_XTAL)
  External 32kHz crystal has a nominal frequency of 32.768kHz and provides good frequency stability. If used as Bluetooth low power clock, External 32kHz can support Bluetooth modem sleep to be used with both DFS and light sleep.

CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SLEEP_CLOCK_ACCURACY

BLE Sleep Clock Accuracy

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller

BLE Sleep Clock Accuracy (SCA) for the local device is used to estimate window widening in BLE connection events. With a lower level of clock accuracy (e.g., 500ppm over 250ppm), the slave needs a larger RX window to synchronize with master in each anchor point, thus resulting in an increase of power consumption but a higher level of robustness in keeping connected. According to the requirements of Bluetooth Core specification 4.2, the worst-case accuracy of Classic Bluetooth low power oscillator (LPO) is +/-250ppm in STANDBY and in low power modes such as sniff. For BLE the worst-case SCA is +/-500ppm.

- “151ppm to 250ppm” option is the default value for Bluetooth Dual mode
- “251ppm to 500ppm” option can be used in BLE only mode when using external 32kHz crystal as low power clock. This option is provided in case that BLE sleep clock has a lower level of accuracy, or other error sources contribute to the inaccurate timing during sleep.

Available options:
- 251ppm to 500ppm (BTDM_BLE_DEFAULT_SCA_500PPM)
- 151ppm to 250ppm (BTDM_BLE_DEFAULT_SCA_250PPM)

CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL

BLE Scan Duplicate Options

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller

This select enables parameters setting of BLE scan duplicate.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if (BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM || BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BLE_ONLY) && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

CONFIG_BTDM_SCAN_DUPL_TYPE

Scan Duplicate Type

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL
Scan duplicate have three ways. one is “Scan Duplicate By Device Address”. This way is to use advertiser address filtering. The adv packet of the same address is only allowed to be reported once. Another way is “Scan Duplicate By Device Address And Advertising Data”. This way is to use advertising data and device address filtering. All different adv packets with the same address are allowed to be reported. The last way is “Scan Duplicate By Advertising Data”. This way is to use advertising data filtering. All same advertising data only allow to be reported once even though they are from different devices.

Available options:
- Scan Duplicate By Device Address (BTDM_SCAN_DUPL_TYPE_DEVICE)
  This way is to use advertiser address filtering. The adv packet of the same address is only allowed to be reported once
- Scan Duplicate By Advertising Data (BTDM_SCAN_DUPL_TYPE_DATA)
  This way is to use advertising data filtering. All same advertising data only allow to be reported once even though they are from different devices.
- Scan Duplicate By Device Address And Advertising Data (BTDM_SCAN_DUPL_TYPE_DATA_DEVICE)
  This way is to use advertising data and device address filtering. All different adv packets with the same address are allowed to be reported.

**CONFIG_BTDM_SCAN_DUPL_CACHE_SIZE**

Maximum number of devices in scan duplicate filter

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL*

Maximum number of devices which can be recorded in scan duplicate filter. When the maximum amount of device in the filter is reached, the cache will be refreshed.

*Range:*
- from 10 to 1000 if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

*Default value:*
- 200 if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_MESH_SCAN_DUPL_EN**

Special duplicate scan mechanism for BLE Mesh scan

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL*

This enables the BLE scan duplicate for special BLE Mesh scan.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BTDM_MESH_DUPL_SCAN_CACHE_SIZE**

Maximum number of Mesh adv packets in scan duplicate filter

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL > CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_MESH_SCAN_DUPL_EN*

Maximum number of adv packets which can be recorded in duplicate scan cache for BLE Mesh. When the maximum amount of device in the filter is reached, the cache will be refreshed.

*Range:*
- from 10 to 1000 if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_MESH_SCAN_DUPL_EN && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

*Default value:*
- 200 if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_MESH_SCAN_DUPL_EN && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED
**CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_FULL_SCAN_SUPPORTED**

BLE full scan feature supported

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

The full scan function is mainly used to provide BLE scan performance. This is required for scenes with high scan performance requirements, such as BLE Mesh scenes.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if (BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BLE_ONLY || BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM) && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP**

BLE adv report flow control supported

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller*

The function is mainly used to enable flow control for advertising reports. When it is enabled, advertising reports will be discarded by the controller if the number of unprocessed advertising reports exceeds the size of BLE adv report flow control.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if (BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM || BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BLE_ONLY) && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_NUM**

BLE adv report flow control number

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP*

The number of unprocessed advertising report that Bluedroid can save. If you set BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_NUM to a small value, this may cause adv packets lost. If you set BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_NUM to a large value, Bluedroid may cache a lot of adv packets and this may cause system memory run out. For example, if you set it to 50, the maximum memory consumed by host is 35 * 50 bytes. Please set BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_NUM according to your system free memory and handle adv packets as fast as possible, otherwise it will cause adv packets lost.

**Range:**

- from 50 to 1000 if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**Default value:**

- 100 if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_DISCARD_THRESHOLD**

BLE adv lost event threshold value

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller > CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP*

When adv report flow control is enabled, The ADV lost event will be generated when the number of ADV packets lost in the controller reaches this threshold. It is better to set a larger value. If you set BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_DISCARD_THRESHOLD to a small value or printf every adv lost event, it may cause adv packets lost more.

**Range:**

- from 1 to 1000 if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED
Default value:
• 20 if CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HLI

High level interrupt

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED > Bluetooth controller

Using Level 4 interrupt for Bluetooth.

Default value:
• Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BT_ENABLED && CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_HOST

Bluetooth Host

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

This helps to choose Bluetooth host stack

Available options:
• Bluedroid - Dual-mode (BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED)
  This option is recommended for classic Bluetooth or for dual-mode usecases
• NimBLE - BLE only (BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED)
  This option is recommended for BLE only usecases to save on memory
• Controller Only (BT_CONTROLLER_ONLY)
  This option is recommended when you want to communicate directly with the controller (without any host) or when you are using any other host stack not supported by Espressif (not mentioned here).

Bluedroid Options

Contains:
• CONFIG_BT_BLE_HOST_QUEUE_CONG_CHECK
• CONFIG_BT_BLUEDROID_MEM_DEBUG
• CONFIG_BT_BTH_TASK_STACK_SIZE
• CONFIG_BT_BTU_TASK_STACK_SIZE
• CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED
• BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_ACL_CONNECTIONS
• CONFIG_BT_ALLOCATION_FROM_SPIRAM_FIRST
• CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED
• CONFIG_BT_HID_ENABLED
• CONFIG_BT_STACK_NO_LOG
• CONFIG_BT_MULTI_CONNECTION_ENABLE
• CONFIG_BT_MAX_DEVICE_NAME_LEN
• CONFIG_BT_BLE_ACT_SCAN_REP_ADV_SCAN
• CONFIG_BT_SSP_ENABLED
• CONFIG_BT_BLUEDROID_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE
• CONFIG_BT_BLE_ESTAB_LINK_CONN_TOUT
• CONFIG_BT_BLE_RPA_SUPPORTED
• CONFIG_BT_BLE_DYNAMIC_ENV_MEMORY
• CONFIG_BT_HFP_WBS_ENABLE

CONFIG_BT_BTU_TASK_STACK_SIZE

Bluetooth event (callback to application) task stack size

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options
This select btct task stack size

**Default value:**
- 3072 if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_BLUEDROID_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE**

The cpu core which Bluedroid run

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

Which the cpu core to run Bluedroid. Can choose core0 and core1. Can not specify no-affinity.

**Available options:**
- Core 0 (PRO CPU) (BT_BLUEDROID_PINNED_TO_CORE_0)
- Core 1 (APP CPU) (BT_BLUEDROID_PINNED_TO_CORE_1)

**CONFIG_BT_BTU_TASK_STACK_SIZE**

Bluetooth Bluedroid Host Stack task stack size

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

This select btut task stack size

**Default value:**
- 4096 if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_BLUEDROID_MEM_DEBUG**

Bluedroid memory debug

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

Bluedroid memory debug

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED**

Classic Bluetooth

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

For now this option needs “SMP_ENABLE” to be set to yes

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_A2DP_ENABLE**

A2DP

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED*

Advanced Audio Distribution Profile

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_BT_SPP_ENABLED**

SPP

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED*

This enables the Serial Port Profile

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED` && `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_HFP_ENABLE**

Hands Free/Handset Profile

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED*

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED` && `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_HFP_ROLE**

Hands-free Profile Role configuration

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_HFP_ENABLE*

**Available options:**

- Hands Free Unit (`BT_HFP_CLIENT_ENABLE`)
- Audio Gateway (`BT_HFP_AG_ENABLE`)

**CONFIG_BT_HFP_AUDIO_DATA_PATH**

Audio(SCO) data path

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_HFP_ENABLE*

SCO data path, i.e. HCI or PCM. This option is set using API “esp_bredr_sco_datapath_set” in Bluetooth host. Default SCO data path can also be set in Bluetooth Controller.

**Available options:**

- PCM (`BT_HFP_AUDIO_DATA_PATH_PCM`)
- HCI (`BT_HFP_AUDIO_DATA_PATH_HCI`)

**CONFIG_BT_HFP_WBS_ENABLE**

Wide Band Speech

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

This enables Wide Band Speech. Should disable it when SCO data path is PCM. Otherwise there will be no data transmitted via GPIOs.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if `BT_HFP_AUDIO_DATA_PATH_HCI` && `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_HID_ENABLED**

Classic BT HID

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

This enables the BT HID Host
**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED` && `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_HID_ROLE**

Profile Role configuration

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_HID_ENABLED*

**Available options:**
- Classic BT HID Host (BT_HID_HOST_ENABLED)
  This enables the BT HID Host
- Classic BT HID Device (BT_HID_DEVICE_ENABLED)
  This enables the BT HID Device

**CONFIG_BT_SSP_ENABLED**

Secure Simple Pairing

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

This enables the Secure Simple Pairing. If disable this option, Bluedroid will only support Legacy Pairing

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BT_CLASSIC_ENABLED` && `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED**

Bluetooth Low Energy

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

This enables Bluetooth Low Energy

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED` && `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE**

Include GATT server module (GATTs)

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED*

This option can be disabled when the app work only on gatt client mode

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED` && `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_GATTS_PPCP_CHAR_GAP**

Enable Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters characteristic in GAP service

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE*

This enables “Peripheral Preferred Connection Parameters” characteristic (UUID: 0x2A04) in GAP service that has connection parameters like min/max connection interval, slave latency and supervision timeout multiplier

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE` && `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`
CONFIG_BT_BLE_BLUFI_ENABLE

Include blufi function

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluebroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE

This option can be close when the app does not require blufi function.

Default value:
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE && BT_BLUE_DROID_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_GATT_MAX_SR_PROFILES

Max GATT Server Profiles

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluebroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE

Maximum GATT Server Profiles Count

Range:
- from 1 to 32 if CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE && BT_BLUE_DROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUE_DROID_ENABLED

Default value:
- 8 if CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE && BT_BLUE_DROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUE_DROID_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_MODE

GATT Service Change Mode

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluebroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE

Service change indication mode for GATT Server.

Available options:
- GATTs manually send service change indication (BT_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_MANUAL)
- GATTs automatically send service change indication (BT_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_AUTO)

Let Bluebroid handle the service change indication internally

CONFIG_BT_GATTC_ENABLE

Include GATT client module(GATTC)

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluebroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED

This option can be close when the app work only on gatt server mode

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED && BT_BLUE_DROID_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_GATTC_CACHE_NVS_FLASH

Save gattc cache data to nvs flash

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluebroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_GATTC_ENABLE

This select can save gattc cache data to nvs flash
**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_GATTC_ENABLE` & `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_GATTC_CONNECT_RETRY_COUNT**

The number of attempts to reconnect if the connection establishment failed

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_GATTC_ENABLE*

The number of attempts to reconnect if the connection establishment failed

*Range:*
- from 0 to 7 if `CONFIG_BT_GATTC_ENABLE` & `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

*Default value:*
- 3 if `CONFIG_BT_GATTC_ENABLE` & `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_BLE_SMP_ENABLE**

Include BLE security module (SMP)

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED*

This option can be close when the app not used the ble security connect.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED` & `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_SMP_SLAVE_CON_PARAMS_UPD_ENABLE**

Slave enable connection parameters update during pairing

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > CONFIG_BT_BLE_ENABLED > CONFIG_BT_BLE_SMP_ENABLE*

In order to reduce the pairing time, slave actively initiates connection parameters update during pairing.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_BLE_SMP_ENABLE` & `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_STACK_NO_LOG**

Disable BT debug logs (minimize bin size)

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

This select can save the rodata code size

*Default value:*
- No (disabled) if `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED` & `BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED`

**BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL`
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL
• CONFIG_BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL

CONFIG_BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL

HCI layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for HCI layer

Available options:
• NONE (BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
• ERROR (BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
• WARNING (BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
• API (BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
• EVENT (BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
• DEBUG (BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
• VERBOSE (BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL

BTM layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for BTM layer

Available options:
• NONE (BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
• ERROR (BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
• WARNING (BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
• API (BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
• EVENT (BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
• DEBUG (BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
• VERBOSE (BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL

L2CAP layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for L2CAP layer

Available options:
• NONE (BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
• ERROR (BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
• WARNING (BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
• API (BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
• EVENT (BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
• DEBUG (BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
• VERBOSE (BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)
CONFIG_BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL

RFCOMM layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for RFCOMM layer

Available options:

- NONE (BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL

SDP layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for SDP layer

Available options:

- NONE (BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL

GAP layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for GAP layer

Available options:

- NONE (BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL

BNEP layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for BNEP layer

Available options:

- NONE (BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
Chapter 2. API

- EVENT (BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL

PAN layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for PAN layer

*Available options:*

- NONE (BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL

A2D layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for A2D layer

*Available options:*

- NONE (BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL

AVDT layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for AVDT layer

*Available options:*

- NONE (BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL

AVCT layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for AVCT layer
Available options:
- NONE (BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL
AVRClayer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for AVRC layer

Available options:
- NONE (BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL
MCA layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for MCA layer

Available options:
- NONE (BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL
HID layer

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BT trace level for HID layer

Available options:
- NONE (BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)
Chapter 2. API

CONFIG_BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL

APPL layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for APPL layer

**Available options:**

- NONE (BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL

GATT layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for GATT layer

**Available options:**

- NONE (BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL

SMP layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for SMP layer

**Available options:**

- NONE (BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
- EVENT (BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
- DEBUG (BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL

BTIF layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for BTIF layer

**Available options:**

- NONE (BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- API (BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
• EVENT (BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
• DEBUG (BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
• VERBOSE (BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL

BTC layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for BTC layer

**Available options:**
• NONE (BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
• ERROR (BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
• WARNING (BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
• API (BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
• EVENT (BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
• DEBUG (BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
• VERBOSE (BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL

OSI layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for OSI layer

**Available options:**
• NONE (BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
• ERROR (BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
• WARNING (BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
• API (BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
• EVENT (BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
• DEBUG (BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
• VERBOSE (BT_LOG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL

BLUFI layer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options > BT DEBUG LOG LEVEL*

Define BT trace level for BLUFI layer

**Available options:**
• NONE (BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
• ERROR (BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
• WARNING (BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
• API (BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_API)
• EVENT (BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT)
• DEBUG (BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
• VERBOSE (BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BT_ACL_CONNECTIONS

BT/BLE MAX ACL CONNECTIONS(1~7)

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

Maximum BT/BLE connection count
Range:
- from 1 to 7 if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

Default value:
- 4 if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_MULTI_CONNECTION_ENBALE**

Enable BLE multi-connections

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

Enable this option if there are multiple connections

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_ALLOCATION_FROM_SPIRAM_FIRST**

BT/BLE will first malloc the memory from the PSRAM

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

This select can save the internal RAM if there have the PSRAM

Default value:
- No (disabled) if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_BLE_DYNAMIC_ENV_MEMORY**

Use dynamic memory allocation in BT/BLE stack

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

This select can make the allocation of memory will become more flexible

Default value:
- No (disabled) if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_BLE_HOST_QUEUE_CONG_CHECK**

BLE queue congestion check

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

When scanning and scan duplicate is not enabled, if there are a lot of adv packets around or application layer handling adv packets is slow, it will cause the controller memory to run out. if enabled, adv packets will be lost when host queue is congested.

Default value:
- No (disabled) if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_BLE_ACT_SCAN_REP_ADV_SCAN**

Report adv data and scan response individually when BLE active scan

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Bluedroid Options*

Originally, when doing BLE active scan, Bluedroid will not report adv to application layer until receive scan response. This option is used to disable the behavior. When enable this option, Bluedroid will report adv data or scan response to application layer immediately.

# Memory reserved at start of DRAM for Bluetooth stack

Default value:
Chapter 2. API

• No (disabled) if BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED && (BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BTDM || BTDM_CTRL_MODE_BLE_ONLY) && BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_BLE_ESTAB_LINK_CONN_TOUT

Timeout of BLE connection establishment

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Blue_ droid Options

Bluetooth Connection establishment maximum time, if connection time exceeds this value, the connection establishment fails, ESP_GATTC_OPEN_EVT or ESP_GATTS_OPEN_EVT is triggered.

Range:
• from 1 to 60 if BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED
Default value:
• 30 if BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_MAX_DEVICE_NAME_LEN

length of bluetooth device name

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Blue_ droid Options

Bluetooth Device name length shall be no larger than 248 octets, If the broadcast data cannot contain the complete device name, then only the shortname will be displayed, the rest parts that can’t fit in will be truncated.

Range:
• from 32 to 248 if BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED
Default value:
• 32 if BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_BLE_RPA_SUPPORTED

Update RPA to Controller

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > Blue_ droid Options

This enables controller RPA list function. For ESP32, ESP32 only support network privacy mode. If this option is enabled, ESP32 will only accept advertising packets from peer devices that contain private address, HW will not receive the advertising packets contain identity address after IRK changed. If this option is disabled, address resolution will be performed in the host, so the functions that require controller to resolve address in the white list cannot be used. This option is disabled by default on ESP32, please enable or disable this option according to your own needs.

For ESP32C3 and esp32s3, devices support network privacy mode and device privacy mode, users can switch the two modes according to their own needs. So this option is enabled by default.

Default value:
• No (disabled) if BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED && BT_BLUE_ DROID_ENABLED

NimBLE Options
Contains:
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ACL_BUF_COUNT
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ACL_BUF_SIZE
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SVC_GAP_DEVICE_NAME
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_STOP_TIMEOUT_MS
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_BROADCASTER
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_CENTRAL
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_OBSERVER
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_PERIPHERAL
Chapter 2. API

- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_BLUFI_ENABLE
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ENABLE_CONN_REATTEMPT
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_USE_ESP_TIMER
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_DEBUG
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SVC_GAP_APPEARANCE
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_BUF_SIZE
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_HI_BUF_COUNT
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_GAP_DEVICE_NAME_MAX_LEN
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MAX_BONDS
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MAX_CCCDS
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MAX_CONNECTIONS
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_L2CAP_COC_MAX_NUM
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MSYS1_BLOCK_COUNT
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_LOG_LEVEL
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_TASK_STACK_SIZE
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_CRYPTO_STACK_MBEDTLS
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_NVS_PERSIST
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ATT_PREFERRED_MTU
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_RPA_TIMEOUT
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SM_LEGACY
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SM_SC
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE
- CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SM_SC_DEBUG_KEYS

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE**

Memory allocation strategy

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Allocation strategy for NimBLE host stack, essentially provides ability to allocate all required dynamic allocations from,

- Internal DRAM memory only
- External SPIRAM memory only
- Either internal or external memory based on default malloc() behavior in ESP-IDF
- Internal IRAM memory wherever applicable else internal DRAM

**Available options:**

- Internal memory (BT_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_INTERNAL)
- External SPIRAM (BT_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_EXTERNAL)
- Default alloc mode (BT_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_DEFAULT)
- Internal IRAM (BT_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_IRAM_8BIT)

Allows to use IRAM memory region as 8bit accessible region.

Every unaligned (8bit or 16bit) access will result in an exception and incur penalty of certain clock cycles per unaligned read/write.

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_LOG_LEVEL**

NimBLE Host log verbosity

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Select NimBLE log level. Please make a note that the selected NimBLE log verbosity can not exceed the level set in “Component config -> Log output -> Default log verbosity”.

**Available options:**

- No logs (BT_NIMBLE_LOG_LEVEL_NONE)
Chapter 2. API

- Error logs (BT_NIMBLE_LOG_LEVEL_ERROR)
- Warning logs (BT_NIMBLE_LOG_LEVEL_WARNING)
- Info logs (BT_NIMBLE_LOG_LEVEL_INFO)
- Debug logs (BT_NIMBLE_LOG_LEVEL_DEBUG)

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MAX_CONNECTIONS**

Maximum number of concurrent connections

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Defines maximum number of concurrent BLE connections. For ESP32, user is expected to configure BTDM_CTRL_BLE_MAX_CONN from controller menu along with this option. Similarly for ESP32-C3 or ESP32-S3, user is expected to configure BT_CTRL_BLE_MAX_ACT from controller menu.

*Range:*

- from 1 to 9 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

*Default value:*

- 3 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MAX_BONDS**

Maximum number of bonds to save across reboots

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Defines maximum number of bonds to save for peer security and our security

*Default value:*

- 3 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MAX_CCCDS**

Maximum number of CCC descriptors to save across reboots

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Defines maximum number of CCC descriptors to save

*Default value:*

- 8 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_L2CAP_COC_MAX_NUM**

Maximum number of connection oriented channels

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Defines maximum number of BLE Connection Oriented Channels. When set to (0), BLE COC is not compiled in

*Range:*

- from 0 to 9 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

*Default value:*

- 0 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE**

The CPU core on which NimBLE host will run

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

The CPU core on which NimBLE host will run. You can choose Core 0 or Core 1. Cannot specify no-affinity
Available options:
- Core 0 (PRO CPU) (BT_NIMBLE_PINNED_TO_CORE_0)
- Core 1 (APP CPU) (BT_NIMBLE_PINNED_TO_CORE_1)

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_TASK_STACK_SIZE**
NimBLE Host task stack size
*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*
This configures stack size of NimBLE host task
**Default value:**
- 5120 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`
- 4096 if `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_CENTRAL**
Enable BLE Central role
*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_PERIPHERAL**
Enable BLE Peripheral role
*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_BROADCASTER**
Enable BLE Broadcaster role
*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_OBSERVER**
Enable BLE Observer role
*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_NVS_PERSIST**
Persist the BLE Bonding keys in NVS
*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*
Enable this flag to make bonding persistent across device reboots
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`
CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SM_LEGACY
Security manager legacy pairing

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SM_SC
Security manager secure connections (4.2)

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_DEBUG
Enable extra runtime asserts and host debugging

Default value:
- No (disabled) if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SM_SC_DEBUG_KEYS
Use predefined public-private key pair

Default value:
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SM_SC && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SVC_GAP_DEVICE_NAME
BLE GAP default device name

Default value:
- “nimble” if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_GAP_DEVICE_NAME_MAX_LEN
Maximum length of BLE device name in octets

Default value:
- 31 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED
CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ATT_PREFERRED_MTU

Preferred MTU size in octets

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

This is the default value of ATT MTU indicated by the device during an ATT MTU exchange. This value can be changed using API ble_att_set_preferred_mtu()

**Default value:**
- 256 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_SVC_GAP_APPEARANCE

External appearance of the device

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Standard BLE GAP Appearance value in HEX format e.g. 0x02C0

**Default value:**
- 0 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ACL_BUF_COUNT

ACL Buffer count

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

The number of ACL data buffers.

**Default value:**
- 20 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ACL_BUF_SIZE

ACL Buffer size

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

This is the maximum size of the data portion of HCI ACL data packets. It does not include the HCI data header (of 4 bytes)

**Default value:**
- 255 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_BUF_SIZE

HCI Event Buffer size

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

This is the size of each HCI event buffer in bytes. In case of extended advertising, packets can be fragmented. 257 bytes is the maximum size of a packet.

**Default value:**
- 70 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_HI_BUF_COUNT

High Priority HCI Event Buffer count

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*
This is the high priority HCI events' buffer size. High-priority event buffers are for everything except advertising reports. If there are no free high-priority event buffers then host will try to allocate a low-priority buffer instead.

**Default value:**
- 30 ifBT_NIMBLE_ENABLED & BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_LO_BUF_COUNT**

Low Priority HCI Event Buffer count

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

This is the low priority HCI events’ buffer size. Low-priority event buffers are only used for advertising reports. If there are no free low-priority event buffers, then an incoming advertising report will get dropped.

**Default value:**
- 8 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED & BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MSYS1_BLOCK_COUNT**

MSYS_1 Block Count

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

MSYS is a system level mbuf registry. For prepare write & prepare responses MBUFs are allocated out of msys_1 pool. For NIMBLE_MESH enabled cases, this block count is increased by 8 than user defined count.

**Default value:**
- 12 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED & BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL**

Enable Host Flow control

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Enable Host Flow control

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED & BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_ITVL**

Host Flow control interval

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL*

Host flow control interval in msecs

**Default value:**
- 1000 if CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL & BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_THRESH**

Host Flow control threshold

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL*

Host flow control threshold, if the number of free buffers are at or below this threshold, send an immediate number-of-completed-packets event

**Default value:**
Chapter 2. API

• 2 if CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_TX_ON_DISCONNECT

Host Flow control on disconnect

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL

Enable this option to send number-of-completed-packets event to controller after disconnection

Default value:

• Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_RPA_TIMEOUT

RPA timeout in seconds

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options

Time interval between RPA address change. This is applicable in case of Host based RPA

Range:

• from 1 to 41400 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

Default value:

• 900 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH

Enable BLE mesh functionality

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options

Enable BLE Mesh functionality

Default value:

• No (disabled) if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

Contains:

• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROVISIONER
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROV
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_FRIEND
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_LOW_POWER
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROXY
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_RELAY
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_DEVICE_NAME
• CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_NODE_COUNT

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROXY

Enable mesh proxy functionality

Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH

Enable proxy. This is automatically set whenever NIMBLE_MESH_PB_GATT or NIMBLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY is set

Default value:

• No (disabled) if CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED
CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROV
Enable BLE mesh provisioning

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH*

Enable mesh provisioning

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PB_ADV
Enable mesh provisioning over advertising bearer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROV*

Enable this option to allow the device to be provisioned over the advertising bearer

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROV && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PB_GATT
Enable mesh provisioning over GATT bearer

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROV*

Enable this option to allow the device to be provisioned over the GATT bearer

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROV && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY
Enable GATT Proxy functionality

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH*

This option enables support for the Mesh GATT Proxy Service, i.e. the ability to act as a proxy between a Mesh GATT Client and a Mesh network

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_RELAY
Enable mesh relay functionality

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH*

Support for acting as a Mesh Relay Node

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_LOW_POWER
Enable mesh low power mode

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH*

Enable this option to be able to act as a Low Power Node

**Default value:**
• No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_FRIEND**
Enable mesh friend functionality

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH*

Enable this option to be able to act as a Friend Node

**Default value:**
• No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_DEVICE_NAME**
Set mesh device name

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH*

This value defines Bluetooth Mesh device/node name

**Default value:**
• “nimble-mesh-node” if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_NODE_COUNT**
Set mesh node count

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH*

Defines mesh node count.

**Default value:**
• 1 if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH_PROVISIONER**
Enable BLE mesh provisioner

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH*

Enable mesh provisioner.

**Default value:**
• 0 if `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MESH` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_CRYPTO_STACK_MBEDTLS**
Override TinyCrypt with mbedTLS for crypto computations

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Enable this option to choose mbedTLS instead of TinyCrypt for crypto computations.

**Default value:**
• Yes (enabled) if `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED` && `BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_STOP_TIMEOUT_MS**
BLE host stop timeout in msec

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

BLE Host stop procedure timeout in milliseconds.

**Default value:**
Chapter 2. API

• 2000 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ENABLE_CONN_REATTEMPT**
Enable connection reattempts on connection establishment error

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Enable to make the NimBLE host to reattempt GAP connection on connection establishment failure.

**Default value:**
• No (disabled) if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MAX_CONN_REATTEMPT**
Maximum number connection reattempts

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options > CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ENABLE_CONN_REATTEMPT*

Defines maximum number of connection reattempts.

**Range:**
• from 1 to 7 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ENABLE_CONN_REATTEMPT && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**Default value:**
• 3 if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ENABLE_CONN_REATTEMPT && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_BLUFI_ENABLE**
Enable blufi functionality

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Set this option to enable blufi functionality.

**Default value:**
• No (disabled) if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED && BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_USE_ESP_TIMER**
Enable Esp Timer for Nimble

*Found in: Component config > Bluetooth > NimBLE Options*

Set this option to use Esp Timer which has higher priority timer instead of FreeRTOS timer

**Default value:**
• Yes (enabled) if BT_NIMBLE_ENABLED

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH**
ESP BLE Mesh Support

*Found in: Component config*

This option enables ESP BLE Mesh support. The specific features that are available may depend on other features that have been enabled in the stack, such as Bluetooth Support, Bluedroid Support & GATT support.

Contains:
• BLE Mesh and BLE coexistence support
• CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_CLIENT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_SERVER
- BLE Mesh NET BUF DEBUG LOG LEVEL
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROV
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROXY
- BLE Mesh specific test option
- BLE Mesh STACK DEBUG LOG LEVEL
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NO_LOG
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_IVU_DIVIDER
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FAST_PROV
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FREERTOS_STATIC_ALLOC
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_CRPL
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RX_SDU_MAX
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MODEL_KEY_COUNT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_APP_KEY_COUNT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GROUP_COUNT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LABEL_COUNT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUBNET_COUNT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TX_SEG_MAX
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RX_SEG_MSG_COUNT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TX_SEG_MSG_COUNT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MEM_ALLOC_MODE
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MSG_CACHE_SIZE
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_ADV_BUF_COUNT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_GATT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_ADV
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEINIT
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_USE_DUPLICATE_SCAN
- Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
- Support for BLE Mesh Foundation models
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_HCI_5_0
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_IV_UPDATE_TEST
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_CLIENT_MSG_TIMEOUT

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_HCI_5_0**

Support sending 20ms non-connectable adv packets

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

It is a temporary solution and needs further modifications.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_USE_DUPLICATE_SCAN**

Support Duplicate Scan in BLE Mesh

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to allow using specific duplicate scan filter in BLE Mesh, and Scan Duplicate Type must be set by choosing the option in the Bluetooth Controller section in menuconfig, which is “Scan Duplicate By Device Address and Advertising Data”.

**Default value:**
• Yes (enabled) if BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MEM_ALLOC_MODE

Memory allocation strategy

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Allocation strategy for BLE Mesh stack, essentially provides ability to allocate all required dynamic allocations from,

• Internal DRAM memory only
• External SPIRAM memory only
• Either internal or external memory based on default malloc() behavior in ESP-IDF
• Internal IRAM memory wherever applicable else internal DRAM

Recommended mode here is always internal (*), since that is most preferred from security perspective. But if application requirement does not allow sufficient free internal memory then alternate mode can be selected.

(*) In case of ESP32-S2/ESP32-S3, hardware allows encryption of external SPIRAM contents provided hardware flash encryption feature is enabled. In that case, using external SPIRAM allocation strategy is also safe choice from security perspective.

**Available options:**

• Internal DRAM (BLE_MESH_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_INTERNAL)
• External SPIRAM (BLE_MESH_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_EXTERNAL)
• Default alloc mode (BLE_MESH_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_DEFAULT)

Enable this option to use the default memory allocation strategy when external SPIRAM is enabled. See the SPIRAM options for more details.

• Internal IRAM (BLE_MESH_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_IRAM_8BIT)

Allows to use IRAM memory region as 8bit accessible region. Every unaligned (8bit or 16bit) access will result in an exception and incur penalty of certain clock cycles per unaligned read/write.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FREERTOS_STATIC_ALLOC

Enable FreeRTOS static allocation

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to use FreeRTOS static allocation APIs for BLE Mesh, which provides the ability to use different dynamic memory (i.e. SPIRAM or IRAM) for FreeRTOS objects. If this option is disabled, the FreeRTOS static allocation APIs will not be used, and internal DRAM will be allocated for FreeRTOS objects.

**Default value:**

• No (disabled) if (CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || CONFIG_ESP32_IRAM_AS_8BIT_ACCESSIBLE_MEMORY) && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FREERTOS_STATIC_ALLOC_MODE

Memory allocation for FreeRTOS objects

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FREERTOS_STATIC_ALLOC*

Choose the memory to be used for FreeRTOS objects.

**Available options:**

• External SPIRAM (BLE_MESH_FREERTOS_STATIC_ALLOC_EXTERNAL)

If enabled, BLE Mesh allocates dynamic memory from external SPIRAM for FreeRTOS objects, i.e. mutex, queue, and task stack. External SPIRAM can only be used for task stack.
when `SPIRAM_ALLOW_STACK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY` is enabled. See the SPIRAM options for more details.

- **Internal IRAM (BLE_MESH_FREERTOS_STATIC_ALLOC_IRAM_8BIT)**
  If enabled, BLE Mesh allocates dynamic memory from internal IRAM for FreeRTOS objects, i.e. mutex, queue. Note: IRAM region cannot be used as task stack.

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEINIT**

Support de-initialize BLE Mesh stack

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

If enabled, users can use the function `esp_ble_mesh_deinit()` to de-initialize the whole BLE Mesh stack.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**BLE Mesh and BLE coexistence support**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUPPORT_BLE_SCAN`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUPPORT_BLE_ADV`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUPPORT_BLE_ADV**

Support sending normal BLE advertising packets

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE and BLE coexistence support*

When selected, users can send normal BLE advertising packets with specific API.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_BLE_ADV_BUF_COUNT**

Number of advertising buffers for BLE advertising packets

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE and BLE coexistence support > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUPPORT_BLE_ADV*

Number of advertising buffers for BLE packets available.

**Range:**

- from 1 to 255 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUPPORT_BLE_ADV` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**

- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUPPORT_BLE_ADV` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUPPORT_BLE_SCAN**

Support scanning normal BLE advertising packets

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE and BLE coexistence support*

When selected, users can register a callback and receive normal BLE advertising packets in the application layer.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FAST_PROV

Enable BLE Mesh Fast Provisioning

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to allow BLE Mesh fast provisioning solution to be used. When there are multiple unprovisioned devices around, fast provisioning can greatly reduce the time consumption of the whole provisioning process. When this option is enabled, and after an unprovisioned device is provisioned into a node successfully, it can be changed to a temporary Provisioner.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE

Support for BLE Mesh Node

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable the device to be provisioned into a node. This option should be enabled when an unprovisioned device is going to be provisioned into a node and communicate with other nodes in the BLE Mesh network.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER

Support for BLE Mesh Provisioner

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable the device to be a Provisioner. The option should be enabled when a device is going to act as a Provisioner and provision unprovisioned devices into the BLE Mesh network.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_WAIT_FOR_PROV_MAX_DEV_NUM

Maximum number of unprovisioned devices that can be added to device queue

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER*

This option specifies how many unprovisioned devices can be added to device queue for provisioning. Users can use this option to define the size of the queue in the bottom layer which is used to store unprovisioned device information (e.g. Device UUID, address).

**Range:**
- from 1 to 100 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 10 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MAX_PROV_NODES

Maximum number of devices that can be provisioned by Provisioner

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER*

This option specifies how many devices can be provisioned by a Provisioner. This value indicates the maximum number of unprovisioned devices which can be provisioned by a Provisioner. For instance, if the value is 6, it means the Provisioner can provision up to 6 unprovisioned devices. Theoretically a Provisioner without the limitation of its memory can provision up to 32766 unprovisioned devices, here we limit the maximum number to 100 just to limit the memory used by a Provisioner. The bigger the value is, the more memory it will cost by a Provisioner to store the information of nodes.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 1000 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
• 10 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}

\textbf{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PBA\_SAME\_TIME}

Maximum number of PB-ADV running at the same time by Provisioner

\textit{Found in: Component config > CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH > CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER}

This option specifies how many devices can be provisioned at the same time using PB-ADV. For example, if the value is 2, it means a Provisioner can provision two unprovisioned devices with PB-ADV at the same time.

\textbf{Range:}

• from 1 to 10 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PB\_ADV} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}

\textbf{Default value:}

• 2 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PB\_ADV} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}

\textbf{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PB\_GATT\_SAME\_TIME}

Maximum number of PB-GATT running at the same time by Provisioner

\textit{Found in: Component config > CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH > CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER}

This option specifies how many devices can be provisioned at the same time using PB-GATT. For example, if the value is 2, it means a Provisioner can provision two unprovisioned devices with PB-GATT at the same time.

\textbf{Range:}

• from 1 to 5 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PB\_GATT} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}

\textbf{Default value:}

• 1 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PB\_GATT} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}

\textbf{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER\_SUBNET\_COUNT}

Maximum number of mesh subnets that can be created by Provisioner

\textit{Found in: Component config > CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH > CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER}

This option specifies how many subnets per network a Provisioner can create. Indeed, this value decides the number of network keys which can be added by a Provisioner.

\textbf{Range:}

• from 1 to 4096 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}

\textbf{Default value:}

• 3 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}

\textbf{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER\_APP\_KEY\_COUNT}

Maximum number of application keys that can be owned by Provisioner

\textit{Found in: Component config > CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH > CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER}

This option specifies how many application keys the Provisioner can have. Indeed, this value decides the number of the application keys which can be added by a Provisioner.

\textbf{Range:}

• from 1 to 4096 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}

\textbf{Default value:}

• 3 if \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH\_PROVISIONER} \\
\texttt{&&} \texttt{CONFIG\_BLE\_MESH}
**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_HB**

Support receiving Heartbeat messages

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER*

When this option is enabled, Provisioner can call specific functions to enable or disable receiving Heartbeat messages and notify them to the application layer.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER && CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_HB_FILTER_SIZE**

Maximum number of filter entries for receiving Heartbeat messages

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_HB*

This option specifies how many heartbeat filter entries Provisioner supports. The heartbeat filter (acceptlist or rejectlist) entries are used to store a list of SRC and DST which can be used to decide if a heartbeat message will be processed and notified to the application layer by Provisioner. Note: The filter is an empty rejectlist by default.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 1000 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_HB && CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER && CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER_RECV_HB && CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER && CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROV**

BLE Mesh Provisioning support

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to support BLE Mesh Provisioning functionality. For BLE Mesh, this option should be always enabled.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_ADV**

Provisioning support using the advertising bearer (PB-ADV)

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to allow the device to be provisioned over the advertising bearer. This option should be enabled if PB-ADV is going to be used during provisioning procedure.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_UNPROVISIONED_BEACON_INTERVAL**

Interval between two consecutive Unprovisioned Device Beacon

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_ADV*

This option specifies the interval of sending two consecutive unprovisioned device beacon, users can use this option to change the frequency of sending unprovisioned device beacon. For example, if the value is 5, it means the unprovisioned device beacon will send every 5 seconds. When the option of `BLE_MESH_FAST_PROV` is selected, the value is better to be 3 seconds, or less.
Range:
- from 1 to 100 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_ADV` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

Default value:
- 5 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_ADV` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FAST_PROV` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_ADV` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_GATT`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PB_GATT**

Provisioning support using GATT (PB-GATT)

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to allow the device to be provisioned over GATT. This option should be enabled if PB-GATT is going to be used during provisioning procedure.

# Virtual option enabled whenever any Proxy protocol is needed

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROXY**

BLE Mesh Proxy protocol support

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to support BLE Mesh Proxy protocol used by PB-GATT and other proxy pdu transmission.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_SERVER**

BLE Mesh GATT Proxy Server

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

This option enables support for Mesh GATT Proxy Service, i.e. the ability to act as a proxy between a Mesh GATT Client and a Mesh network. This option should be enabled if a node is going to be a Proxy Server.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE_ID_TIMEOUT**

Node Identity advertising timeout

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_SERVER*

This option determines for how long the local node advertises using Node Identity. The given value is in seconds. The specification limits this to 60 seconds and lists it as the recommended value as well. So leaving the default value is the safest option. When an unprovisioned device is provisioned successfully and becomes a node, it will start to advertise using Node Identity during the time set by this option. And after that, Network ID will be advertised.

*Range:*
- from 1 to 60 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_SERVER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

*Default value:*
- 60 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_SERVER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROXY_FILTER_SIZE**

Maximum number of filter entries per Proxy Client

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_SERVER*

This option specifies how many Proxy Filter entries the local node supports. The entries of Proxy filter (whitelist or blacklist) are used to store a list of addresses which can be used to decide which messages will be forwarded to the Proxy Client by the Proxy Server.

*Range:*

- from 1 to 32767 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_SERVER && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

*Default value:*

- 4 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_SERVER && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY_CLIENT**

BLE Mesh GATT Proxy Client

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

This option enables support for Mesh GATT Proxy Client. The Proxy Client can use the GATT bearer to send mesh messages to a node that supports the advertising bearer.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS**

Store BLE Mesh configuration persistently

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

When selected, the BLE Mesh stack will take care of storing/restoring the BLE Mesh configuration persistently in flash. If the device is a BLE Mesh node, when this option is enabled, the configuration of the device will be stored persistently, including unicast address, NetKey, AppKey, etc. And if the device is a BLE Mesh Provisioner, the information of the device will be stored persistently, including the information of provisioned nodes, NetKey, AppKey, etc.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_STORE_TIMEOUT**

Delay (in seconds) before storing anything persistently

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS*

This value defines in seconds how soon any pending changes are actually written into persistent storage (flash) after a change occurs. The option allows nodes to delay a certain period of time to save proper information to flash. The default value is 0, which means information will be stored immediately once there are updates.

*Range:*

- from 0 to 1000000 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

*Default value:*

- 0 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SEQ_STORE_RATE**
How often the sequence number gets updated in storage

Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS

This value defines how often the local sequence number gets updated in persistent storage (i.e. flash). e.g. a value of 100 means that the sequence number will be stored to flash every 100th increment. If the node sends messages very frequently a higher value makes more sense, whereas if the node sends infrequently a value as low as 0 (update storage for every increment) can make sense. When the stack gets initialized it will add sequence number to the last stored one, so that it starts off with a value that’s guaranteed to be larger than the last one used before power off.

Range:
- from 0 to 1000000 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

Default value:
- 0 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RPL_STORE_TIMEOUT

Minimum frequency that the RPL gets updated in storage

Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS

This value defines in seconds how soon the RPL (Replay Protection List) gets written to persistent storage after a change occurs. If the node receives messages frequently, then a large value is recommended. If the node receives messages rarely, then the value can be as low as 0 (which means the RPL is written into the storage immediately). Note that if the node operates in a security-sensitive case, and there is a risk of sudden power-off, then a value of 0 is strongly recommended. Otherwise, a power loss before RPL being written into the storage may introduce message replay attacks and system security will be in a vulnerable state.

Range:
- from 0 to 1000000 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

Default value:
- 0 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS_BACKWARD_COMPATIBILITY

A specific option for settings backward compatibility

Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS

This option is created to solve the issue of failure in recovering node information after mesh stack updates. In the old version mesh stack, there is no key of “mesh/role” in nvs. In the new version mesh stack, key of “mesh/role” is added in nvs, recovering node information needs to check “mesh/role” key in nvs and implements selective recovery of mesh node information. Therefore, there may be failure in recovering node information during node restarting after OTA.

The new version mesh stack adds the option of “mesh/role” because we have added the support of storing Provisioner information, while the old version only supports storing node information.

If users are updating their nodes from old version to new version, we recommend enabling this option, so that system could set the flag in advance before recovering node information and make sure the node information recovering could work as expected.

Default value:
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE && CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SPECIFIC_PARTITION

Use a specific NVS partition for BLE Mesh

Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS
When selected, the mesh stack will use a specified NVS partition instead of default NVS partition. Note that the specified partition must be registered with NVS using nvs_flash_init_partition() API, and the partition must exist in the csv file. When Provisioner needs to store a large amount of nodes’ information in the flash (e.g. more than 20), this option is recommended to be enabled.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`  

**CONFIGBLE_MESH_PARTITION_NAME**

Name of the NVS partition for BLE Mesh  
*Found in:* `Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SPECIFIC_PARTITION`  
This value defines the name of the specified NVS partition used by the mesh stack.  

**Default value:**
- “ble_mesh” if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SPECIFIC_PARTITION` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`  

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_USE_MULTIPLE_NAMESPACE**

Support using multiple NVS namespaces by Provisioner  
*Found in:* `Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS`  
When selected, Provisioner can use different NVS namespaces to store different instances of mesh information. For example, if in the first room, Provisioner uses NetKey A, AppKey A and provisions three devices, these information will be treated as mesh information instance A. When the Provisioner moves to the second room, it uses NetKey B, AppKey B and provisions two devices, then the information will be treated as mesh information instance B. Here instance A and instance B will be stored in different namespaces. With this option enabled, Provisioner needs to use specific functions to open the corresponding NVS namespace, restore the mesh information, release the mesh information or erase the mesh information.  

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_PROVISIONER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`  

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MAX_NVSNAMESPACE**

Maximum number of NVS namespaces  
*Found in:* `Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_USE_MULTIPLE_NAMESPACE`  
This option specifies the maximum NVS namespaces supported by Provisioner.  

**Range:**
- from 1 to 255 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_USE_MULTIPLE_NAMESPACE` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`  

**Default value:**
- 2 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_USE_MULTIPLE_NAMESPACE` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SETTINGS` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`  

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SUBNET_COUNT**

Maximum number of mesh subnets per network  
*Found in:* `Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
This option specifies how many subnets a Mesh network can have at the same time. Indeed, this value decides the number of the network keys which can be owned by a node.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 4096 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

### CONFIG_BLE_MESH_APP_KEY_COUNT

Maximum number of application keys per network

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

This option specifies how many application keys the device can store per network. Indeed, this value decides the number of the application keys which can be owned by a node.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 4096 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

### CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MODEL_KEY_COUNT

Maximum number of application keys per model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

This option specifies the maximum number of application keys to which each model can be bound.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 4096 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

### CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MODEL_GROUP_COUNT

Maximum number of group address subscriptions per model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

This option specifies the maximum number of addresses to which each model can be subscribed.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 4096 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

### CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LABEL_COUNT

Maximum number of Label UUIDs used for Virtual Addresses

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

This option specifies how many Label UUIDs can be stored. Indeed, this value decides the number of the Virtual Addresses can be supported by a node.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 4096 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_CRPL**

Maximum capacity of the replay protection list

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

This option specifies the maximum capacity of the replay protection list. It is similar to Network message cache size, but has a different purpose. The replay protection list is used to prevent a node from replay attack, which will store the source address and sequence number of the received mesh messages. For Provisioner, the replay protection list size should not be smaller than the maximum number of nodes whose information can be stored. And the element number of each node should also be taken into consideration. For example, if Provisioner can provision up to 20 nodes and each node contains two elements, then the replay protection list size of Provisioner should be at least 40.

*Range:*
- from 2 to 65535 if **CONFIG_BLE_MESH**

*Default value:*
- 10 if **CONFIG_BLE_MESH**

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_MSG_CACHE_SIZE**

Network message cache size

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Number of messages that are cached for the network. This helps prevent unnecessary decryption operations and unnecessary relays. This option is similar to Replay protection list, but has a different purpose. A node is not required to cache the entire Network PDU and may cache only part of it for tracking, such as values for SRC/SEQ or others.

*Range:*
- from 2 to 65535 if **CONFIG_BLE_MESH**

*Default value:*
- 10 if **CONFIG_BLE_MESH**

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_ADV_BUF_COUNT**

Number of advertising buffers

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Number of advertising buffers available. The transport layer reserves ADV_BUF_COUNT - 3 buffers for outgoing segments. The maximum outgoing SDU size is 12 times this value (out of which 4 or 8 bytes are used for the Transport Layer MIC). For example, 5 segments means the maximum SDU size is 60 bytes, which leaves 56 bytes for application layer data using a 4-byte MIC, or 52 bytes using an 8-byte MIC.

*Range:*
- from 6 to 256 if **CONFIG_BLE_MESH**

*Default value:*
- 60 if **CONFIG_BLE_MESH**

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_IVU_DIVIDER**

Divider for IV Update state refresh timer

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

When the IV Update state enters Normal operation or IV Update in Progress, we need to keep track of how many hours has passed in the state, since the specification requires us to remain in the state at least for 96 hours (Update in Progress has an additional upper limit of 144 hours).

In order to fulfill the above requirement, even if the node might be powered off once in a while, we need to store persistently how many hours the node has been in the state. This doesn’t necessarily need to
happen every hour (thanks to the flexible duration range). The exact cadence will depend a lot on the ways that the node will be used and what kind of power source it has.

Since there is no single optimal answer, this configuration option allows specifying a divider, i.e. how many intervals the 96 hour minimum gets split into. After each interval the duration that the node has been in the current state gets stored to flash. E.g. the default value of 4 means that the state is saved every 24 hours (96 / 4).

**Range:**
- from 2 to 96 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 4 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

---

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TX_SEG_MSG_COUNT**

Maximum number of simultaneous outgoing segmented messages

*Found in:* `Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

Maximum number of simultaneous outgoing multi-segment and/or reliable messages. The default value is 1, which means the device can only send one segmented message at a time. And if another segmented message is going to be sent, it should wait for the completion of the previous one. If users are going to send multiple segmented messages at the same time, this value should be configured properly.

**Range:**
- from 1 to if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 1 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

---

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RX_SEG_MSG_COUNT**

Maximum number of simultaneous incoming segmented messages

*Found in:* `Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

Maximum number of simultaneous incoming multi-segment and/or reliable messages. The default value is 1, which means the device can only receive one segmented message at a time. And if another segmented message is going to be received, it should wait for the completion of the previous one. If users are going to receive multiple segmented messages at the same time, this value should be configured properly.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 255 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 1 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

---

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RX_SDU_MAX**

Maximum incoming Upper Transport Access PDU length

*Found in:* `Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

Maximum incoming Upper Transport Access PDU length. Leave this to the default value, unless you really need to optimize memory usage.

**Range:**
- from 36 to 384 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 384 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TX_SEG_MAX**

Maximum number of segments in outgoing messages

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Maximum number of segments supported for outgoing messages. This value should typically be fine-tuned based on what models the local node supports, i.e. what’s the largest message payload that the node needs to be able to send. This value affects memory and call stack consumption, which is why the default is lower than the maximum that the specification would allow (32 segments).

The maximum outgoing SDU size is 12 times this number (out of which 4 or 8 bytes is used for the Transport Layer MIC). For example, 5 segments means the maximum SDU size is 60 bytes, which leaves 56 bytes for application layer data using a 4-byte MIC and 52 bytes using an 8-byte MIC.

Be sure to specify a sufficient number of advertising buffers when setting this option to a higher value. There must be at least three more advertising buffers (BLE_MESH_ADV_BUF_COUNT) as there are outgoing segments.

*Range:*
  - from 2 to 32 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

*Default value:*
  - 32 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY**

Relay support

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Support for acting as a Mesh Relay Node. Enabling this option will allow a node to support the Relay feature, and the Relay feature can still be enabled or disabled by proper configuration messages. Disabling this option will let a node not support the Relay feature.

*Default value:*
  - Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NODE && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY_ADV_BUF**

Use separate advertising buffers for relay packets

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY*

When selected, self-send packets will be put in a high-priority queue and relay packets will be put in a low-priority queue.

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY_ADV_BUF_COUNT**

Number of advertising buffers for relay packets

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY_ADV_BUF*

Number of advertising buffers for relay packets available.

*Range:*
  - from 6 to 256 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY_ADV_BUF && CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY && CONFIG_BLE_MESH

*Default value:*
  - 60 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY_ADV_BUF && CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RELAY && CONFIG_BLE_MESH
**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER**

Support for Low Power features

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to operate as a Low Power Node. If low power consumption is required by a node, this option should be enabled. And once the node enters the mesh network, it will try to find a Friend node and establish a friendship.

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_ESTABLISHMENT**

Perform Friendship establishment using low power

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER*

Perform the Friendship establishment using low power with the help of a reduced scan duty cycle. The downside of this is that the node may miss out on messages intended for it until it has successfully set up Friendship with a Friend node. When this option is enabled, the node will stop scanning for a period of time after a Friend Request or Friend Poll is sent, so as to reduce more power consumption.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_AUTO**

Automatically start looking for Friend nodes once provisioned

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER*

Once provisioned, automatically enable LPN functionality and start looking for Friend nodes. If this option is disabled LPN node needs to be manually enabled by calling `bt_mesh_lpn_set(true)`. When an unprovisioned device is provisioned successfully and becomes a node, enabling this option will trigger the node to send Friend Request at a certain period until it finds a proper Friend node.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_AUTO_TIMEOUT**

Time from last received message before going to LPN mode

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_AUTO*

Time in seconds from the last received message, that the node waits out before starting to look for Friend nodes.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 3600 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_AUTO` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 15 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_AUTO` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_RETRY_TIMEOUT**

Retry timeout for Friend requests

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER*

Time in seconds between Friend Requests, if a previous Friend Request did not yield any acceptable Friend Offers.

**Range:**
• from 1 to 3600 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

Default value:
• 6 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_RSSI_FACTOR

RSSIFactor, used in Friend Offer Delay calculation

Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER

The contribution of the RSSI, measured by the Friend node, used in Friend Offer Delay calculations. 0 = 1, 1 = 1.5, 2 = 2, 3 = 2.5. RSSIFactor, one of the parameters carried by Friend Request sent by Low Power node, which is used to calculate the Friend Offer Delay.

Range:
• from 0 to 3 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

Default value:
• 0 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_RECV_WIN_FACTOR

ReceiveWindowFactor, used in Friend Offer Delay calculation

Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER

The contribution of the supported Receive Window used in Friend Offer Delay calculations. 0 = 1, 1 = 1.5, 2 = 2, 3 = 2.5. ReceiveWindowFactor, one of the parameters carried by Friend Request sent by Low Power node, which is used to calculate the Friend Offer Delay.

Range:
• from 0 to 3 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

Default value:
• 0 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_MIN_QUEUE_SIZE

Minimum size of the acceptable friend queue (MinQueueSizeLog)

Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER

The MinQueueSizeLog field is defined as log_2(N), where N is the minimum number of maximum size Lower Transport PDUs that the Friend node can store in its Friend Queue. As an example, MinQueueSizeLog value 1 gives N = 2, and value 7 gives N = 128.

Range:
• from 1 to 7 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

Default value:
• 1 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_RECV_DELAY

Receive delay requested by the local node

Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER

The ReceiveDelay is the time between the Low Power node sending a request and listening for a response. This delay allows the Friend node time to prepare the response. The value is in units of milliseconds.

Range:
• from 10 to 255 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH

Default value:
• 100 if CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER & CONFIG_BLE_MESH
**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_POLL_TIMEOUT**

The value of the PollTimeout timer

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER*

PollTimeout timer is used to measure time between two consecutive requests sent by a Low Power node. If no requests are received the Friend node before the PollTimeout timer expires, then the friendship is considered terminated. The value is in units of 100 milliseconds, so e.g. a value of 300 means 30 seconds. The smaller the value, the faster the Low Power node tries to get messages from corresponding Friend node and vice versa.

**Range:**
- from 10 to 244735 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 300 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_INIT_POLL_TIMEOUT**

The starting value of the PollTimeout timer

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER*

The initial value of the PollTimeout timer when Friendship is to be established for the first time. After this, the timeout gradually grows toward the actual PollTimeout, doubling in value for each iteration. The value is in units of 100 milliseconds, so e.g. a value of 300 means 30 seconds.

**Range:**
- from 10 to if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_SCAN_LATENCY**

Latency for enabling scanning

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER*

Latency (in milliseconds) is the time it takes to enable scanning. In practice, it means how much time in advance of the Receive Window, the request to enable scanning is made.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 50 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 10 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LPN_GROUPS**

Number of groups the LPN can subscribe to

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER*

Maximum number of groups to which the LPN can subscribe.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 16384 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 8 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LOW_POWER` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
Support for Friend feature

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Enable this option to be able to act as a Friend Node.

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_RECV_WIN**

Friend Receive Window

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND*

Receive Window in milliseconds supported by the Friend node.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 255 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 255 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_QUEUE_SIZE**

Minimum number of buffers supported per Friend Queue

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND*

Minimum number of buffers available to be stored for each local Friend Queue. This option decides the size of each buffer which can be used by a Friend node to store messages for each Low Power node.

**Range:**
- from 2 to 65536 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 16 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_SUB_LIST_SIZE**

Friend Subscription List Size

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND*

Size of the Subscription List that can be supported by a Friend node for a Low Power node. And Low Power node can send Friend Subscription List Add or Friend Subscription List Remove messages to the Friend node to add or remove subscription addresses.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 1023 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 3 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_LPN_COUNT**

Number of supported LPN nodes

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND*

Number of Low Power Nodes with which a Friend can have Friendship simultaneously. A Friend node can have friendship with multiple Low Power nodes at the same time, while a Low Power node can only establish friendship with only one Friend node at the same time.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 1000 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 2 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND_SEG_RX

Number of incomplete segment lists per LPN

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND

Number of incomplete segment lists tracked for each Friends’ LPN. In other words, this determines from how many elements can segmented messages destined for the Friend queue be received simultaneously.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 1000 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 1 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_FRIEND` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NO_LOG

Disable BLE Mesh debug logs (minimize bin size)

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH

Select this to save the BLE Mesh related rodata code size. Enabling this option will disable the output of BLE Mesh debug log.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

BLE Mesh STACK DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Contains:

- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_STACK_TRACE_LEVEL`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_STACK_TRACE_LEVEL

BLE_MESH_STACK

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh STACK DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BLE Mesh trace level for BLE Mesh stack.

**Available options:**
- NONE (BLE_MESHTRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BLE_MESH_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BLE_MESH_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- INFO (BLE_MESH_TRACE_LEVEL_INFO)
- DEBUG (BLE_MESH_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- VERBOSE (BLE_MESH_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

BLE Mesh NET BUF DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Contains:

- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NET_BUF_TRACE_LEVEL`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_NET_BUF_TRACE_LEVEL

BLE_MESH_NET_BUF

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh NET BUF DEBUG LOG LEVEL

Define BLE Mesh trace level for BLE Mesh net buffer.

**Available options:**
- NONE (BLE_MESH_NET_BUF_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE)
- ERROR (BLE_MESH_NET_BUF_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR)
- WARNING (BLE_MESH_NET_BUF_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING)
- INFO (BLE_MESH_NET_BUF_TRACE_LEVEL_INFO)
- DEBUG (BLE_MESH_NET_BUF_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG)
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_CLIENT_MSG_TIMEOUT**

Timeout (ms) for client message response

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

Timeout value used by the node to get response of the acknowledged message which is sent by the client model. This value indicates the maximum time that a client model waits for the response of the sent acknowledged messages. If a client model uses 0 as the timeout value when sending acknowledged messages, then the default value will be used which is four seconds.

**Range:**
- from 100 to 1200000 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Default value:**
- 4000 if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Support for BLE Mesh Foundation models**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_CFG_CLI`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLI`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SRV`

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_CFG_CLI**

Configuration Client model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Foundation models*

Enable support for Configuration Client model.

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLI**

Health Client model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Foundation models*

Enable support for Health Client model.

**CONFIG_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_SRV**

Health Server model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Foundation models*

Enable support for Health Server model.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_BATTERY_CLI`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_DEF_TRANS_TIME_CLI`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_LEVEL_CLI`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH GENERIC_LOCATION_CLI`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_ONOFF_CLI`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH GENERIC_PROPERTY_CLI`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH GENERIC_SERVER`
Chapter 2. API

- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CTL_CLI
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_CLI
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_LC_CLI
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_CLI
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_XYL_CLI
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SCENE_CLI
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULER_CLI
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_CLI
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SERVER
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER
- CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TIME_CLI

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_ONOFF_CLI

Generic OnOff Client model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*

Enable support for Generic OnOff Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_LEVEL_CLI

Generic Level Client model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*

Enable support for Generic Level Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_DEF_TRANS_TIME_CLI

Generic Default Transition Time Client model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*

Enable support for Generic Default Transition Time Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_POWER_ONOFF_CLI

Generic Power OnOff Client model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*

Enable support for Generic Power OnOff Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_POWER_LEVEL_CLI

Generic Power Level Client model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*

Enable support for Generic Power Level Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_BATTERY_CLI

Generic Battery Client model

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*

Enable support for Generic Battery Client model.
CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_LOCATION_CLI
Generic Location Client model

Located in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
Enable support for Generic Location Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_PROPERTY_CLI
Generic Property Client model

Located in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
Enable support for Generic Property Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_CLI
Sensor Client model

Located in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
Enable support for Sensor Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TIME_CLI
Time Client model

Located in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
Enable support for Time Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SCENE_CLI
Scene Client model

Located in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
Enable support for Scene Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SCHEDULER_CLI
Scheduler Client model

Located in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
Enable support for Scheduler Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_CLI
Light Lightness Client model

Located in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
Enable support for Light Lightness Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_CTL_CLI
Light CTL Client model

Located in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models
Enable support for Light CTL Client model.
CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_CLI
Light HSL Client model
*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*
Enable support for Light HSL Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_XYL_CLI
Light XYL Client model
*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*
Enable support for Light XYL Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_LC_CLI
Light LC Client model
*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*
Enable support for Light LC Client model.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER
Generic server models
*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*
Enable support for Generic server models.
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_SERVER
Sensor server models
*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*
Enable support for Sensor server models.
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TIME_SCENE_SERVER
Time and Scenes server models
*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*
Enable support for Time and Scenes server models.
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_LIGHTING_SERVER
Lighting server models
*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > Support for BLE Mesh Client/Server models*
Enable support for Lighting server models.
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH
CONFIG_BLE_MESH_IV_UPDATE_TEST
Test the IV Update Procedure

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH*

This option removes the 96 hour limit of the IV Update Procedure and lets the state to be changed at any time. If IV Update test mode is going to be used, this option should be enabled.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

**BLE Mesh specific test option** Contains:
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SHELL`
- `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SELF_TEST`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SELF_TEST
Perform BLE Mesh self-tests

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option*

This option adds extra self-tests which are run every time BLE Mesh networking is initialized.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TEST_AUTO_ENTER_NETWORK
Unprovisioned device enters mesh network automatically

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SELF_TEST*

With this option enabled, an unprovisioned device can automatically enters mesh network using a specific test function without the provisioning procedure. And on the Provisioner side, a test function needs to be invoked to add the node information into the mesh stack.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SELF_TEST` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_TEST_USE_WHITE_LIST
Use white list to filter mesh advertising packets

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SELF_TEST*

With this option enabled, users can use white list to filter mesh advertising packets while scanning.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SELF_TEST` && `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SHELL
Enable BLE Mesh shell

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option*

Activate shell module that provides BLE Mesh commands to the console.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BLE_MESH`
CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG
Enable BLE Mesh debug logs

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option*

Enable debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_BLE_MESH

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_NET
Network layer debug

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG*

Enable Network layer debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_TRANS
Transport layer debug

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG*

Enable Transport layer debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_BEACON
Beacon debug

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG*

Enable Beacon-related debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_CRYPTO
Crypto debug

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG*

Enable cryptographic debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_PROV
Provisioning debug

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG*

Enable Provisioning debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_ACCESS
Access layer debug

*Found in: Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG*

Enable Access layer debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.
CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_MODEL

Foundation model debug

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG

Enable Foundation Models debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_ADV

Advertising debug

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG

Enable advertising debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_LOW_POWER

Low Power debug

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG

Enable Low Power debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_FRIEND

Friend debug

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG

Enable Friend debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG_PROXY

Proxy debug

*Found in:* Component config > CONFIG_BLE_MESH > BLE Mesh specific test option > CONFIG_BLE_MESH_DEBUG

Enable Proxy protocol debug logs for the BLE Mesh functionality.

CoAP Configuration

Contains:

- CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_ENCRYPTION_MODE
- CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_DEBUG

CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_ENCRYPTION_MODE

CoAP Encryption method

*Found in:* Component config > CoAP Configuration

If the CoAP information is to be encrypted, the encryption environment can be set up in one of two ways (default being Pre-Shared key mode)

- Encrypt using defined Pre-Shared Keys (PSK if uri includes coaps://)
- Encrypt using defined Public Key Infrastructure (PKI if uri includes coaps://)

Available options:

- Pre-Shared Keys (COAP_MBEDTLS_PSK)
- PKI Certificates (COAP_MBEDTLS_PKI)
CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_DEBUG

Enable CoAP debugging

*Found in: Component config > CoAP Configuration*

Enable CoAP debugging functions at compile time for the example code.

If this option is enabled, call `coap_set_log_level()` at runtime in order to enable CoAP debug output via the ESP log mechanism.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL

Set CoAP debugging level

*Found in: Component config > CoAP Configuration > CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_DEBUG*

Set CoAP debugging level

**Available options:**

- Emergency (COAP_LOG_EMERG)
- Alert (COAP_LOG_ALERT)
- Critical (COAP_LOG_CRIT)
- Error (COAP_LOG_ERROR)
- Warning (COAP_LOG_WARNING)
- Notice (COAP_LOG_NOTICE)
- Info (COAP_LOG_INFO)
- Debug (COAP_LOG_DEBUG)
- mbedTLS (COAP_LOG_MBEDTLS)

**Driver configurations**

Contains:

- ADC configuration
- GDMA Configuration
- GPIO Configuration
- MCPWM configuration
- RTCIO configuration
- SPI configuration
- TWAI configuration
- UART configuration

ADC configuration

Contains:

- `CONFIG_ADC_DISABLE_DAC`
- `CONFIG_ADC_FORCE_XPD_FSM`

CONFIG_ADC_FORCE_XPD_FSM

Use the FSM to control ADC power

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > ADC configuration*

ADC power can be controlled by the FSM instead of software. This allows the ADC to be shut off when it is not working leading to lower power consumption. However using the FSM control ADC power will increase the noise of ADC.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled)
**CONFIG_ADC_DISABLE_DAC**

Disable DAC when ADC2 is used on GPIO 25 and 26

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > ADC configuration*

If this is set, the ADC2 driver will disable the output of the DAC corresponding to the specified channel. This is the default value.

For testing, disable this option so that we can measure the output of DAC by internal ADC.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**MCPWM configuration**  
Contains:

- **CONFIG_MCPWM_ISR_IN_IRAM**

**CONFIG_MCPWM_ISR_IN_IRAM**

Place MCPWM ISR function into IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > MCPWM configuration*

If this option is not selected, the MCPWM interrupt will be deferred when the Cache is in a disabled state (e.g. Flash write/erase operation).

Note that if this option is selected, all user registered ISR callbacks should never try to use cache as well (with IRAM_ATTR)

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**SPI configuration**  
Contains:

- **CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_ISR_IN_IRAM**
- **CONFIG_SPI_SLAVE_ISR_IN_IRAM**
- **CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_IN_IRAM**
- **CONFIG_SPI_SLAVE_IN_IRAM**

**CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_ISR_IN_IRAM**

Place transmitting functions of SPI master into IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > SPI configuration*

Normally only the ISR of SPI master is placed in the IRAM, so that it can work without the flash when interrupt is triggered. For other functions, there’s some possibility that the flash cache miss when running inside and out of SPI functions, which may increase the interval of SPI transactions. Enable this to put queue\_trans, get\_trans\_result and transmit functions into the IRAM to avoid possible cache miss.

During unit test, this is enabled to measure the ideal case of api.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_ISR_IN_IRAM**

Place SPI master ISR function into IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > SPI configuration*

Place the SPI master ISR in to IRAM to avoid possible cache miss.
Also you can forbid the ISR being disabled during flash writing access, by add ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM when initializing the driver.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_SLAVE_IN_IRAM**

Place transmitting functions of SPI slave into IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > SPI configuration*

Normally only the ISR of SPI slave is placed in the IRAM, so that it can work without the flash when interrupt is triggered. For other functions, there’s some possibility that the flash cache miss when running inside and out of SPI functions, which may increase the interval of SPI transactions. Enable this to put queue\_trans, get\_trans\_result and transmit functions into the IRAM to avoid possible cache miss.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_SLAVE_ISR_IN_IRAM**

Place SPI slave ISR function into IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > SPI configuration*

Place the SPI slave ISR in to IRAM to avoid possible cache miss.

Also you can forbid the ISR being disabled during flash writing access, by add ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM when initializing the driver.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**TWAI configuration**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_TWAI_ERRATA_FIX_RX_FRAME_INVALID`
- `CONFIG_TWAI_ERRATA_FIX_BUS_OFF_REC`
- `CONFIG_TWAI_ERRATA_FIX_RX_FIFO_CORRUPT`
- `CONFIG_TWAI_ERRATA_FIX_TX_INTR_LOST`
- `CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM`

**CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM**

Place TWAI ISR function into IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > TWAI configuration*

Place the TWAI ISR in to IRAM. This will allow the ISR to avoid cache misses, and also be able to run whilst the cache is disabled (such as when writing to SPI Flash). Note that if this option is enabled: - Users should also set the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM in the driver configuration structure when installing the driver (see docs for specifics). - Alert logging (i.e., setting of the TWAI_ALERT_AND_LOG flag) will have no effect.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
CONFIG_TWAI_ERRATA_FIX_BUS_OFF_REC
Add SW workaround for REC change during bus-off

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > TWAI configuration*

When the bus-off condition is reached, the REC should be reset to 0 and frozen (via LOM) by the driver’s ISR. However on the ESP32, there is an edge case where the REC will increase before the driver’s ISR can respond in time (e.g., due to the rapid occurrence of bus errors), thus causing the REC to be non-zero after bus-off. A non-zero REC can prevent bus-off recovery as the bus-off recovery condition is that both TEC and REC become 0. Enabling this option will add a workaround in the driver to forcibly reset REC to zero on reaching bus-off.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_TWAI_ERRATA_FIX_TX_INTR_LOST
Add SW workaround for TX interrupt lost errata

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > TWAI configuration*

On the ESP32, when a transmit interrupt occurs, and interrupt register is read on the same APB clock cycle, the transmit interrupt could be lost. Enabling this option will add a workaround that checks the transmit buffer status bit to recover any lost transmit interrupt.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_TWAI_ERRATA_FIX_RX_FRAME_INVALID
Add SW workaround for invalid RX frame errata

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > TWAI configuration*

On the ESP32, when receiving a data or remote frame, if a bus error occurs in the data or CRC field, the data of the next received frame could be invalid. Enabling this option will add a workaround that will reset the peripheral on detection of this errata condition. Note that if a frame is transmitted on the bus whilst the reset is ongoing, the message will not be receive by the peripheral sent on the bus during the reset, the message will be lost.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_TWAI_ERRATA_FIX_RX_FIFO_CORRUPT
Add SW workaround for RX FIFO corruption errata

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > TWAI configuration*

On the ESP32, when the RX FIFO overruns and the RX message counter maxes out at 64 messages, the entire RX FIFO is no longer recoverable. Enabling this option will add a workaround that resets the peripheral on detection of this errata condition. Note that if a frame is being sent on the bus during the reset bus during the reset, the message will be lost.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

UART configuration Contains:

- **CONFIG_UART_ISR_IN_IRAM**
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_UART_ISR_IN_IRAM**

Place UART ISR function into IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > UART configuration*

If this option is not selected, UART interrupt will be disabled for a long time and may cause data lost when doing spi flash operation.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**RTCIO configuration**  Contains:

- **CONFIG_RTCIO_SUPPORT_RTC_GPIO_DESC**

**CONFIG_RTCIO_SUPPORT_RTC_GPIO_DESC**

Support array rtc_gpio_desc for ESP32

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > RTCIO configuration*

The array rtc_gpio_desc will not compile by default. If this option is selected, the array rtc_gpio_desc can be compile. If user use this array, please enable this configuration.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**GPIO Configuration**  Contains:

- **CONFIG_GPIO_ESP32_SUPPORT_SWITCH_SLP_PULL**

**CONFIG_GPIO_ESP32_SUPPORT_SWITCH_SLP_PULL**

Support light sleep GPIO pullup/pulldown configuration for ESP32

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > GPIO Configuration*

This option is intended to fix the bug that ESP32 is not able to switch to configured pullup/pulldown mode in sleep. If this option is selected, chip will automatically emulate the behaviour of switching, and about 450B of source codes would be placed into IRAM.

**GDMA Configuration**  Contains:

- **CONFIG_GDMA_ISR_IRAM_SAFE**
- **CONFIG_GDMA_CTRL_FUNC_IN_IRAM**

**CONFIG_GDMA_CTRL_FUNC_IN_IRAM**

Place GDMA control functions into IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > GDMA Configuration*

Place GDMA control functions (like start/stop/append/reset) into IRAM, so that these functions can be IRAM-safe and able to be called in the other IRAM interrupt context. Enabling this option can improve driver performance as well.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
CONFIG_GDMA_ISR_IRAM_SAFE

GDMA ISR IRAM-Safe

*Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > GDMA Configuration*

This will ensure the GDMA interrupt handler is IRAM-Safe, allow to avoid flash cache misses, and also be able to run whilst the cache is disabled. (e.g. SPI Flash write).

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**eFuse Bit Manager**  Contains:
- `CONFIG_EFUSE_CODE_SCHEME_SELECTOR`
- `CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL`
- `CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE`

**CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE**

Use custom eFuse table

*Found in: Component config > eFuse Bit Manager*

Allows to generate a structure for eFuse from the CSV file.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE_FILENAME**

Custom eFuse CSV file

*Found in: Component config > eFuse Bit Manager > CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE*

Name of the custom eFuse CSV filename. This path is evaluated relative to the project root directory.

**Default value:**
- “main/esp_efuse_custom_table.csv” if `CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE`

**CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL**

Simulate eFuse operations in RAM

*Found in: Component config > eFuse Bit Manager*

If “y” - No virtual mode. All eFuse operations are real and use eFuse registers. If “y” - The virtual mode is enabled and all eFuse operations (read and write) are redirected to RAM instead of eFuse registers, all permanent changes (via eFuse) are disabled. Log output will state changes that would be applied, but they will not be.

During startup, the eFuses are copied into RAM. This mode is useful for fast tests.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL_KEEP_IN_FLASH**

Keep eFuses in flash

*Found in: Component config > eFuse Bit Manager > CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL*

In addition to the “Simulate eFuse operations in RAM” option, this option just adds a feature to keep eFuses after reboots in flash memory. To use this mode the partition_table should have the efuse partition. partition.csv: “efuse_em, data, efuse, , 0x2000,”
During startup, the eFuses are copied from flash or, in case if flash is empty, from real eFuse to RAM and then update flash. This mode is useful when need to keep changes after reboot (testing secure_boot and flash_encryption).

**CONFIG_EFUSE_CODE_SCHEME_SELECTOR**

Coding Scheme Compatibility

*Found in: Component config > eFuse Bit Manager*

Selector eFuse code scheme.

**Available options:**

- None Only (EFUSE_CODE_SCHEME_COMPAT_NONE)
- 3/4 and None (EFUSE_CODE_SCHEME_COMPAT_3_4)
- Repeat, 3/4 and None (common table does not support it) (EFUSE_CODE_SCHEME_COMPAT_REPEAT)

**ESP-TLS** Contains:

- `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_INSECURE`
- `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_LIBRARY_CHOOSE`
- `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_CLIENT_SESSION_TICKETS`
- `CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_WOLFSSL`
- `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER`
- `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_PSK_VERIFICATION`
- `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER_SESSION_TICKETS`
- `CONFIG_ESP_WOLFSSL_SMALL_CERT_VERIFY`
- `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_USE_SECURE_ELEMENT`

**CONFIG_ESP_TLS_LIBRARY_CHOOSE**

Choose SSL/TLS library for ESP-TLS (See help for more Info)

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*

The ESP-TLS APIs support multiple backend TLS libraries. Currently mbedTLS and WolfSSL are supported. Different TLS libraries may support different features and have different resource usage. Consult the ESP-TLS documentation in ESP-IDF Programming guide for more details.

**Available options:**

- mbedTLS (ESP_TLS_USING_MBEDTLS)
- wolfSSL (License info in wolfSSL directory README) (ESP_TLS_USING_WOLFSSL)

**CONFIG_ESP_TLS_USE_SECURE_ELEMENT**

Use Secure Element (ATECC608A) with ESP-TLS

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*

Enable use of Secure Element for ESP-TLS, this enables internal support for ATECC608A peripheral on ESPWROOM32SE, which can be used for TLS connection.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER**

Enable ESP-TLS Server

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*
Enable support for creating server side SSL/TLS session, available for mbedTLS as well as wolfSSL TLS library.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_TLS_CLIENT_SESSION_TICKETS**
Enable client session tickets

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*

Enable session ticket support as specified in RFC5077.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER_SESSION_TICKETS**
Enable server session tickets

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*

Enable session ticket support as specified in RFC5077.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER && ESP_TLS_USING_MBEDTLS && CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SERVER_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS`

**CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER_SESSION_TICKET_TIMEOUT**
Server session ticket timeout in seconds

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS > CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER_SESSION_TICKETS*

Sets the session ticket timeout used in the tls server.

**Default value:**
- 86400 if `CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER_SESSION_TICKETS`

**CONFIG_ESP_TLS_PSK_VERIFICATION**
Enable PSK verification

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*

Enable support for pre shared key ciphers, supported for both mbedTLS as well as wolfSSL TLS library.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_TLS_INSECURE**
Allow potentially insecure options

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*

You can enable some potentially insecure options. These options should only be used for testing purposes. Only enable these options if you are very sure.
CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SKIP_SERVER_CERT_VERIFY

Skip server certificate verification by default (WARNING: ONLY FOR TESTING PURPOSE, READ HELP)

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS > CONFIG_ESP_TLS_INSECURE*

After enabling this option the esp-tls client will skip the server certificate verification by default. Note that this option will only modify the default behaviour of esp-tls client regarding server cert verification. The default behaviour should only be applicable when no other option regarding the server cert verification is opted in the esp-tls config (e.g. crt_bundle_attach, use_global_ca_store etc.). WARNING: Enabling this option comes with a potential risk of establishing a TLS connection with a server which has a fake identity, provided that the server certificate is not provided either through API or other mechanism like ca_store etc.

CONFIG_ESP_WOLFSSL_SMALL_CERT_VERIFY

Enable SMALL_CERT_VERIFY

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*

Enables server verification with Intermediate CA cert, does not authenticate full chain of trust upto the root CA cert (After Enabling this option client only needs to have Intermediate CA certificate of the server to authenticate server, root CA cert is not necessary).

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if ESP_TLS_USING_WOLFSSL

CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_WOLFSSL

Enable debug logs for wolfSSL

*Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS*

Enable detailed debug prints for wolfSSL SSL library.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if ESP_TLS_USING_WOLFSSL

ESP32-specific Contains:

- CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT_METHOD
- CONFIG_ESP32_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V3_1_BOOTLOADERS
- CONFIG_ESP32_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V2_1_BOOTLOADERS
- CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ
- CONFIG_ESP32_DPORT_DIS_INTERRUPT_LVL
- CONFIG_ESP32_IRAM_AS_8BIT_ACCESSIBLE_MEMORY
- CONFIG_ESP32_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED
- CONFIG_ESP32_DEEP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_DELAY
- CONFIG_ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET
- CONFIG_ESP32_XTAL_FREQ_SEL
- CONFIG_ESP32_DEBUG_OCDAWARE
- CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN
- CONFIG_ESP32_NO_BLOBS
- CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_XTAL_CAL_RETRY
- CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLK_CAL_CYCLES
- CONFIG_ESP32_DISABLE_BASIC_ROM_CONSOLE
- CONFIG_ESP32_RTCDATA_IN_FAST_MEM
- CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC
- CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT
- CONFIG_ESP32_TIME_SYSCALL
- CONFIG_ESP32_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE
**CONFIG_ESP32_TRAX**

**CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN**

Minimum Supported ESP32 Revision

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

Minimum revision that ESP-IDF would support. ESP-IDF performs different strategy on different esp32 revision.

*Available options:*

- Rev 0 (ESP32_REV_MIN_0)
- Rev 1 (ESP32_REV_MIN_1)
- Rev 2 (ESP32_REV_MIN_2)
- Rev 3 (ESP32_REV_MIN_3)

**CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ**

CPU frequency

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

CPU frequency to be set on application startup.

*Available options:*

- 40 MHz (ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_40)
- 80 MHz (ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_80)
- 160 MHz (ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_160)
- 240 MHz (ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_240)

**CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT**

Support for external, SPI-connected RAM

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

This enables support for an external SPI RAM chip, connected in parallel with the main SPI flash chip.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled)

**SPI RAM config**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_SPIRAM.Allow_BSS_SEG_EXTERNAL_MEMORY`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM.Allow_NOINIT_SEG_EXTERNAL_MEMORY`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM.Allow_STACK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_SPIWP_SD3_PIN`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_BANKSWITCH_ENABLE`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_2T_MODE`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOCP_ALWAYSINTERNAL`
- `PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-D2WD`
- `PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-DOWD`
- `PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-PICO`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOCP_RESERVE_INTERNAL`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_MEMTEST`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_SPEED`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_OCCUPY_SPI_HOST`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE`
- `SPIRAM cache workaround debugging`
Chapter 2. API

- SPIRAM workaround libraries placement
- CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP
- CONFIG_SPIRAM_TYPE
- CONFIG_SPIRAM_CUSTOM_SPIWP_SD3_PIN

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_TYPE**

Type of SPI RAM chip in use

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

**Available options:**
- Auto-detect (SPIRAM_TYPE_AUTO)
- ESP-PSRAM16 or APS1604 (SPIRAM_TYPE_ESPPSRAM16)
- ESP-PSRAM32 or IS25WP032 (SPIRAM_TYPE_ESPPSRAM32)
- ESP-PSRAM64 or LY68L6400 (SPIRAM_TYPE_ESPPSRAM64)

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_SPEED**

Set RAM clock speed

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

Select the speed for the SPI RAM chip. If SPI RAM is enabled, we only support three combinations of SPI speed mode we supported now:

1. Flash SPI running at 40Mhz and RAM SPI running at 40Mhz
2. Flash SPI running at 80Mhz and RAM SPI running at 40Mhz
3. Flash SPI running at 80Mhz and RAM SPI running at 80Mhz

*Note: If the third mode (80Mhz+80Mhz) is enabled for SPI RAM of type 32MBit, one of the HSPI/VSPI host will be occupied by the system. Which SPI host to use can be selected by the config item SPIRAM_OCCUPY_SPI_HOST. Application code should never touch HSPI/VSPI hardware in this case. The option to select 80MHz will only be visible if the flash SPI speed is also 80MHz. (ESP-TOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_80M is true)*

**Available options:**
- 40MHz clock speed (SPIRAM_SPEED_40M)
- 80MHz clock speed (SPIRAM_SPEED_80M)

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT**

Initialize SPI RAM during startup

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

If this is enabled, the SPI RAM will be enabled during initial boot. Unless you have specific requirements, you’ll want to leave this enabled so memory allocated during boot-up can also be placed in SPI RAM.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_IGNORE_NOTFOUND**

Ignore PSRAM when not found

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT*

Normally, if psramp initialization is enabled during compile time but not found at runtime, it is seen as an error making the CPU panic. If this is enabled, booting will complete but no PSRAM will be available.

**Default value:**
Chapter 2. API

### CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE

SPI RAM access method

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

The SPI RAM can be accessed in multiple methods: by just having it available as an unmanaged memory region in the CPU’s memory map, by integrating it in the heap as ‘special’ memory needing heap_caps_malloc to allocate, or by fully integrating it making malloc() also able to return SPI RAM pointers.

**Available options:**

- Integrate RAM into memory map (SPIRAM_USE_MEMMAP)
- Make RAM allocatable using heap_caps_malloc (SPIRAM_USE_CAPS_ALLOC)
- Make RAM allocatable using malloc() as well (SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC)

### CONFIG_SPIRAM_MEMTEST

Run memory test on SPI RAM initialization

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

Runs a rudimentary memory test on initialization. Aborts when memory test fails. Disable this for slightly faster startup.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

### CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_ALWAYSINTERNAL

Maximum malloc() size, in bytes, to always put in internal memory

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

If malloc() is capable of also allocating SPI-connected ram, its allocation strategy will prefer to allocate chunks less than this size in internal memory, while allocations larger than this will be done from external RAM. If allocation from the preferred region fails, an attempt is made to allocate from the non-preferred region instead, so malloc() will not suddenly fail when either internal or external memory is full.

**Range:**

- from 0 to 131072 if SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**Default value:**

- 16384 if SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

### CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP

Try to allocate memories of WiFi and LWIP in SPIRAM firstly. If failed, allocate internal memory

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

Try to allocate memories of WiFi and LWIP in SPIRAM firstly. If failed, try to allocate internal memory then.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if (SPIRAM_USE_CAPS_ALLOC || SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC) && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT
CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_RESERVE_INTERNAL
Reserve this amount of bytes for data that specifically needs to be in DMA or internal memory

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

Because the external/internal RAM allocation strategy is not always perfect, it sometimes may happen that the internal memory is entirely filled up. This causes allocations that are specifically done in internal memory, for example the stack for new tasks or memory to service DMA or have memory that’s also available when SPI cache is down, to fail. This option reserves a pool specifically for requests like that; the memory in this pool is not given out when a normal malloc() is called.

Set this to 0 to disable this feature.

Note that because FreeRTOS stacks are forced to internal memory, they will also use this memory pool; be sure to keep this in mind when adjusting this value.

Note also that the DMA reserved pool may not be one single contiguous memory region, depending on the configured size and the static memory usage of the app.

**Range:**
- From 0 to 262144 if SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**Default value:**
- 32768 if SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

CONFIG_SPIRAM_ALLOW_BSS_SEG_EXTERNAL_MEMORY
Allow .bss segment placed in external memory

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

If enabled, variables with EXT_RAM_ATTR attribute will be placed in SPIRAM instead of internal DRAM. BSS sections of lwip, net80211, pp, bt libraries will be automatically placed in SPIRAM. BSS sections from other object files and libraries can also be placed in SPIRAM through linker fragment scheme extram_bss.

Note that the variables placed in SPIRAM using EXT_RAM_ATTR will be zero initialized.

CONFIG_SPIRAM_ALLOW_NOINIT_SEG_EXTERNAL_MEMORY
Allow .noinit segment placed in external memory

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

If enabled, noinit variables can be placed in PSRAM using EXT_RAM_NOINIT_ATTR.

Note the values placed into this section will not be initialized at startup and should keep its value after software restart.

CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND
Enable workaround for bug in SPI RAM cache for Rev1 ESP32s

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

Revision 1 of the ESP32 has a bug that can cause a write to PSRAM not to take place in some situations when the cache line needs to be fetched from external RAM and an interrupt occurs. This enables a fix in the compiler (-mfix-esp32-psram-cache-issue) that makes sure the specific code that is vulnerable to this will not be emitted.

This will also not use any bits of newlib that are located in ROM, opting for a version that is compiled with the workaround and located in flash instead.

The workaround is not required for ESP32 revision 3 and above.

**Default value:**
SPIRAM cache workaround debugging  Contains:

- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY`

`CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY`
Workaround strategy

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPIRAM cache workaround debugging*

Select the workaround strategy. Note that the strategy for precompiled libraries (libgcc, newlib, bt, wifi) is not affected by this selection.

Unless you know you need a different strategy, it’s suggested you stay with the default MEMW strategy. Note that DUPLDST can interfere with hardware encryption and this will be automatically disabled if this workaround is selected. ‘Insert nops’ is the workaround that was used in older esp-idf versions. This workaround still can cause faulty data transfers from/to SPI RAM in some situations.

**Available options:**

- Insert memw after vulnerable instructions (default) (SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_MEMW)
- Duplicate LD/ST for 32-bit, memw for 8/16 bit (SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_DUPLDST)
- Insert nops between vulnerable loads/stores (old strategy, obsolete) (SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_NOPS)

SPIRAM workaround libraries placement  Contains:

- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBCHAR_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBENV_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBFILE_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBIO_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBJMP_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMATH_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMEM_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMISC_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBNUMPARSER_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBRAND_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBSTR_IN_IRAM`
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBTIME_IN_IRAM`

`CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBJMP_IN_IRAM`

Put libc’s jump related functions in IRAM

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPIRAM workaround libraries placement*

The functions affected by this option are: longjmp and setjmp. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`
CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMATH_IN_IRAM

Put libc’s math related functions in IRAM

Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config
SPIRAM workaround libraries placement

The functions affected by this option are: abs, div, labs, ldiv, quorem, fclassify, and nan. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBNUMPARSER_IN_IRAM

Put libc’s number parsing related functions in IRAM

Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config
SPIRAM workaround libraries placement

The functions affected by this option are: utoa, itoa, atoi, atol, strtol, and strtoul. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBIO_IN_IRAM

Put libc’s I/O related functions in IRAM

Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config
SPIRAM workaround libraries placement

The functions affected by this option are: wcrtomb, fwrite, wbuf, wsetup, fputwc, wcrtomb_r, ungetc, makebuf, fflush, refill, and sccl. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBTIME_IN_IRAM

Put libc’s time related functions in IRAM

Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config
SPIRAM workaround libraries placement

The functions affected by this option are: asctime, asctime_r, ctime, ctime_r, localtime, localtime_r, gmtime, gmtime_r, strftime, mktime, tzset, tzset_r, time,getzinfo, systimes, month_lengths, timelocal, tzvars, tzlock, tzcalc_limits, and strftime. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT
CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBCHAR_IN_IRAM

Put libc’s characters related functions in IRAM

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPI RAM workaround libraries placement*

The functions affected by this option are: `ctype`, `toupper`, `tolower`, `toascii`, `strupr`, `bzero`, `isalnum`, `isalpha`, `isascii`, `isblank`, `iscntrl`, `isdigit`, `isgraph`, `islower`, `ispunct`, `isspace`, and `isupper`. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMEM_IN_IRAM

Put libc’s memory related functions in IRAM

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPI RAM workaround libraries placement*

The functions affected by this option are: `memcpy`, `memchr`, `memmove`, and `memrchr`. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBSTR_IN_IRAM

Put libc’s string related functions in IRAM

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPI RAM workaround libraries placement*

The functions affected by this option are: `strncasecmp`, `strcasestr`, `strchr`, `strcoll`, `strcpy`, `strcspn`, `strdup`, `strdup_r`, `stricmp`, `strlcpy`, `strlen`, `strlwr`, `strnstr`, `strnstr`, `strncpy`, `strncpy`, `strndup`, `strndup_r`, `strrchr`, `strsep`, `strstr`, `strtok_r`, and `strupr`. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBRAND_IN_IRAM

Put libc’s random related functions in IRAM

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPI RAM workaround libraries placement*

The functions affected by this option are: `srand`, `rand`, and `rand_r`. Putting these function in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`
**CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBENV_IN_IRAM**

Put libc’s environment related functions in IRAM.

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPIRAM workaround libraries placement

The functions affected by this option are: environ, envlock, and getenv_r. Putting these functions in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

*Default value:*  
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBFILE_IN_IRAM**

Put libc’s file related functions in IRAM.

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPIRAM workaround libraries placement

The functions affected by this option are: lock, isatty, fclose, open, close, creat, read, rshift, brk, stdio, syssbrk, syscall, fopen, creat, sysread, syswrite, impure, fwalk, and findfp. Putting these functions in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

*Default value:*  
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMISC_IN_IRAM**

Put libc’s miscellaneous functions in IRAM, see help.

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > SPIRAM workaround libraries placement

The functions affected by this option are: raise and system. Putting these functions in IRAM will allow them to be called when flash cache is disabled but it will also reduce the available size of free IRAM for the user application.

*Default value:*  
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_BANKSWITCH_ENABLE**

Enable bank switching for >4MiB external RAM.

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

The ESP32 only supports 4MiB of external RAM in its address space. The hardware does support larger memories, but these have to be bank-switched in and out of this address space. Enabling this allows you to reserve some MMU pages for this, which allows the use of the esp_himem api to manage these banks.

#Note that this is limited to 62 banks, as esp_spiram_writeback_cache needs some kind of mapping of some banks below that mark to work. We cannot at this moment guarantee this to exist when himem is #enabled.

If spiram 2T mode is enabled, the size of 64Mbit psram will be changed as 32Mbit, so himem will be unusable.

*Default value:*
• Yes (enabled) if \((\text{SPIRAM\_USE\_MEMMAP} \lor \text{SPIRAM\_USE\_CAPS\_ALLOC} \lor \text{SPIRAM\_USE\_Malloc}) \land \text{CONFIG\_ESP32\_SPIRAM\_SUPPORT})

**CONFIG\_SPIRAM\_BANKSWITCH\_RESERVE**

Amount of 32K pages to reserve for bank switching

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG\_ESP32\_SPIRAM\_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > CONFIG\_SPIRAM\_BANKSWITCH\_ENABLE*

Select the amount of banks reserved for bank switching. Note that the amount of RAM allocatable with malloc/esp\_heap\_alloc\_caps will decrease by 32K for each page reserved here.

Note that this reservation is only actually done if your program actually uses the himem API. Without any himem calls, the reservation is not done and the original amount of memory will be available to malloc/esp\_heap\_alloc\_caps.

**Range:**
• from 1 to 62 if CONFIG\_SPIRAM\_BANKSWITCH\_ENABLE \land \text{CONFIG\_ESP32\_SPIRAM\_SUPPORT}

**Default value:**
• 8 if CONFIG\_SPIRAM\_BANKSWITCH\_ENABLE \land \text{CONFIG\_ESP32\_SPIRAM\_SUPPORT}

**CONFIG\_SPIRAM\_ALLOW\_STACK\_EXTERNAL\_MEMORY**

Allow external memory as an argument to xTaskCreateStatic

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG\_ESP32\_SPIRAM\_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

Because some bits of the ESP32 code environment cannot be recompiled with the cache workaround, normally tasks cannot be safely run with their stack residing in external memory; for this reason xTaskCreate (and related task creation functions) always allocate stack in internal memory and xTaskCreateStatic will check if the memory passed to it is in internal memory. If you have a task that needs a large amount of stack and does not call on ROM code in any way (no direct calls, but also no Bluetooth/WiFi), you can try enable this to cause xTaskCreateStatic to allow tasks stack in external memory.

**Default value:**
• No (disabled) if SPIRAM\_USE\_Malloc \land \text{CONFIG\_ESP32\_SPIRAM\_SUPPORT}

**CONFIG\_SPIRAM\_OCCUPY\_SPI\_HOST**

SPI host to use for 32MBit PSRAM

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG\_ESP32\_SPIRAM\_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

When both flash and PSRAM is working under 80MHz, and the PSRAM is of type 32MBit, one of the HSPI/VSPI host will be used to output the clock. Select which one to use here.

**Available options:**
• HSPI host (SPI2) (SPIRAM\_OCCUPY\_HSPI\_HOST)
• VSPI host (SPI3) (SPIRAM\_OCCUPY\_VSPI\_HOST)
• Will not try to use any host, will abort if not able to use the PSRAM (SPIRAM\_OCCUPY\_NO\_HOST)

**PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-DOWD**

Contains:
• CONFIG\_DOWD\_PSRAM\_CLK\_IO
• CONFIG\_DOWD\_PSRAM\_CS\_IO
### CONFIG_D0WD_PSRAM_CLK_IO

PSRAM CLK IO number

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-DOWD*

The PSRAM CLOCK IO can be any unused GPIO, user can config it based on hardware design. If user use 1.8V flash and 1.8V psram, this value can only be one of 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 16, 17.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 33 if `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

**Default value:**
- 17 if `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

### CONFIG_D0WD_PSRAM_CS_IO

PSRAM CS IO number

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-DOWD*

The PSRAM CS IO can be any unused GPIO, user can config it based on hardware design. If user use 1.8V flash and 1.8V psram, this value can only be one of 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 16, 17.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 33 if `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

**Default value:**
- 16 if `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

### PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-D2WD

Contains:
- `CONFIG_D2WD_PSRAM_CLK_IO`
- `CONFIG_D2WD_PSRAM_CS_IO`

### CONFIG_D2WD_PSRAM_CLK_IO

PSRAM CLK IO number

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-D2WD*

User can config it based on hardware design. For ESP32-D2WD chip, the psram can only be 1.8V psram, so this value can only be one of 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 16, 17.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 33 if `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

**Default value:**
- 9 if `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT` && `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT`

### CONFIG_D2WD_PSRAM_CS_IO

PSRAM CS IO number

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-D2WD*

User can config it based on hardware design. For ESP32-D2WD chip, the psram can only be 1.8V psram, so this value can only be one of 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 16, 17.

**Range:**
Chapter 2. API

PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-PICO

Contains:

- CONFIG_PICO_PSRAM_CS_IO

**CONFIG_PICO_PSRAM_CS_IO**

PSRAM CS IO number

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32-PICO

The PSRAM CS IO can be any unused GPIO, user can config it based on hardware design.

For ESP32-PICO chip, the psram share clock with flash, so user do not need to configure the clock IO. For the reference hardware design, please refer to [https://www.espressif.com/sites/default/files/documentation/esp32-pico-d4_datasheet_en.pdf](https://www.espressif.com/sites/default/files/documentation/esp32-pico-d4_datasheet_en.pdf)

*Range:*

- from 0 to 33 if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

*Default value:*

- 10 if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_CUSTOM_SPIWP_SD3_PIN**

Use custom SPI PSRAM WP(SD3) Pin when flash pins set in eFuse (read help)

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

This setting is only used if the SPI flash pins have been overridden by setting the eFuses SPI_PAD_CONFIG_xxx, and the SPI flash mode is DIO or DOUT.

When this is the case, the eFuse config only defines 3 of the 4 Quad I/O data pins. The WP pin (aka ESP32 pin “SD_DATA_3” or SPI flash pin “IO2”) is not specified in eFuse. The psram only has QPI mode, so a WP pin setting is necessary.

If this config item is set to N (default), the correct WP pin will be automatically used for any Espressif chip or module with integrated flash. If a custom setting is needed, set this config item to Y and specify the GPIO number connected to the WP pin.

When flash mode is set to QIO or QOUT, the PSRAM WP pin will be set the same as the SPI Flash WP pin configured in the bootloader.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled) if (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DIO || ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DOUT) && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_SPIWP_SD3_PIN**

Custom SPI PSRAM WP(SD3) Pin

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

The option “Use custom SPI PSRAM WP(SD3) pin” must be set or this value is ignored

If burning a customized set of SPI flash pins in eFuse and using DIO or DOUT mode for flash, set this value to the GPIO number of the SPIRAM WP pin.

*Range:*

- from 0 to 33 if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

*Default value:*

- 10 if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT
- from 0 to 33 if (ESP_TOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DIO || ESP_TOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DOUT) && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**Default value:**
- 7 if (ESP_TOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DIO || ESP_TOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DOUT) && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_SPIRAM_2T_MODE**

Enable SPI PSRAM 2T mode

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config*

Enable this option to fix single bit errors inside 64Mbit PSRAM.

Some 64Mbit PSRAM chips have a hardware issue in the RAM which causes bit errors at multiple fixed bit positions.

Note: If this option is enabled, the 64Mbit PSRAM chip will appear to be 32Mbit in size. Applications will not be affected unless the use the esp_himem APIs, which are not supported in 2T mode.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_ESP32_TRAX**

Use TRAX tracing feature

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

The ESP32 contains a feature which allows you to trace the execution path the processor has taken through the program. This is stored in a chunk of 32K (16K for single-processor) of memory that can’t be used for general purposes anymore. Disable this if you do not know what this is.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP32_TRAX_TWOBANKS**

Reserve memory for tracing both pro as well as app cpu execution

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_TRAX*

The ESP32 contains a feature which allows you to trace the execution path the processor has taken through the program. This is stored in a chunk of 32K (16K for single-processor) of memory that can’t be used for general purposes anymore. Disable this if you do not know what this is.

# Memory to reverse for trace, used in linker script

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_ESP32_TRAX && CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE

**CONFIG_ESP32_ulp_copro_enabled**

Enable Ultra Low Power (ULP) Coprocessor

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

Set to ‘y’ if you plan to load a firmware for the coprocessor.

If this option is enabled, further coprocessor configuration will appear in the Components menu.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
CONFIG_ESP32_ULP_COPROC_RESERVE_MEM

RTC slow memory reserved for coprocessor

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED*

Bytes of memory to reserve for ULP coprocessor firmware & data.
Data is reserved at the beginning of RTC slow memory.

**Range:**
- from 32 to 8176 if `CONFIG_ESP32_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED`
- from 0 to 0 if `CONFIG_ESP32_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED`

**Default value:**
- 512 if `CONFIG_ESP32_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED`
- 0 if `CONFIG_ESP32_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED`

CONFIG_ESP32_DEBUG_OCD AWARE

Make exception and panic handlers JTAG/OCD aware

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

The FreeRTOS panic and unhandled exception handlers can detect a JTAG OCD debugger and instead of panicking, have the debugger stop on the offending instruction.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET

Hardware brownout detect & reset

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

The ESP32 has a built-in brownout detector which can detect if the voltage is lower than a specific value. If this happens, it will reset the chip in order to prevent unintended behaviour.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL

Brownout voltage level

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET*

The brownout detector will reset the chip when the supply voltage is approximately below this level. Note that there may be some variation of brownout voltage level between each ESP32 chip.

#The voltage levels here are estimates, more work needs to be done to figure out the exact voltages #of the brownout threshold levels.

**Available options:**
- 2.43V +/- 0.05 (ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_0)
- 2.48V +/- 0.05 (ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_1)
- 2.58V +/- 0.05 (ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_2)
- 2.62V +/- 0.05 (ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_3)
- 2.67V +/- 0.05 (ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_4)
- 2.70V +/- 0.05 (ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_5)
- 2.77V +/- 0.05 (ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_6)
- 2.80V +/- 0.05 (ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_7)
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_ESP32_TIME_SYSCALL**

Timers used for gettimeofday function

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

This setting defines which hardware timers are used to implement `gettimeofday` and `time` functions in C library.

- If both high-resolution and RTC timers are used, timekeeping will continue in deep sleep. Time will be reported at 1 microsecond resolution. This is the default, and the recommended option.
- If only high-resolution timer is used, gettimeofday will provide time at microsecond resolution. Time will not be preserved when going into deep sleep mode.
- If only RTC timer is used, timekeeping will continue in deep sleep, but time will be measured at 6.6 microsecond resolution. Also the gettimeofday function itself may take longer to run.
- If no timers are used, gettimeofday and time functions return -1 and set errno to ENOSYS.
- When RTC is used for timekeeping, two RTC_STORE registers are used to keep time in deep sleep mode.

**Available options:**

- RTC and high-resolution timer (ESP32_TIME_SYSCALL_USE_RTC_FRC1)
- RTC (ESP32_TIME_SYSCALL_USE_RTC)
- High-resolution timer (ESP32_TIME_SYSCALL_USE_FRC1)
- None (ESP32_TIME_SYSCALL_USE_NONE)

**CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC**

RTC clock source

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

Choose which clock is used as RTC clock source.

- “Internal 150kHz oscillator” option provides lowest deep sleep current consumption, and does not require extra external components. However frequency stability with respect to temperature is poor, so time may drift in deep/light sleep modes.
- “External 32kHz crystal” provides better frequency stability, at the expense of slightly higher (1uA) deep sleep current consumption.
- “External 32kHz oscillator” allows using 32kHz clock generated by an external circuit. In this case, external clock signal must be connected to 32K_XN pin. Amplitude should be <1.2V in case of sine wave signal, and <1V in case of square wave signal. Common mode voltage should be 0.1 < Vcm < 0.5Vamp, where Vamp is the signal amplitude. Additionally, 1nF capacitor must be connected between 32K_XP pin and ground. 32K_XP pin can not be used as a GPIO in this case.
- “Internal 8.5MHz oscillator divided by 256” option results in higher deep sleep current (by 5uA) but has better frequency stability than the internal 150kHz oscillator. It does not require external components.

**Available options:**

- Internal 150kHz RC oscillator (ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_INT_RC)
- External 32kHz crystal (ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_CRYST)
- External 32kHz oscillator at 32K_XN pin (ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_OSC)
- Internal 8.5MHz oscillator, divided by 256 (~33kHz) (ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_INT_8MD256)

**CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT_METHOD**

Additional current for external 32kHz crystal

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

With some 32kHz crystal configurations, the X32N and X32P pins may not have enough drive strength to keep the crystal oscillating. Choose the method to provide additional current from touchpad 9 to the
external 32kHz crystal. Note that the deep sleep current is slightly high (4.5uA) and the touchpad and the wakeup sources of both touchpad and ULP are not available in method 1 and method 2. This problem is fixed in ESP32 ECO 3, so this workaround is not needed. Setting the project configuration to minimum revision ECO3 will disable this option, , allow all wakeup sources, and save some code size.

- “None” option will not provide additional current to external crystal
- “Method 1” option can’t ensure 100% to solve the external 32k crystal start failed issue, but the touchpad can work in this method.
- “Method 2” option can solve the external 32k issue, but the touchpad can’t work in this method.

Available options:
- None (ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT_NONE)
- Method 1 (ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT)
- Method 2 (ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT_V2)

CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLK_CAL_CYCLES

Number of cycles for RTC_SLOW_CLK calibration

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific

When the startup code initializes RTC_SLOW_CLK, it can perform calibration by comparing the RTC_SLOW_CLK frequency with main XTAL frequency. This option sets the number of RTC_SLOW_CLK cycles measured by the calibration routine. Higher numbers increase calibration precision, which may be important for applications which spend a lot of time in deep sleep. Lower numbers reduce startup time.

When this option is set to 0, clock calibration will not be performed at startup, and approximate clock frequencies will be assumed:

- 150000 Hz if internal RC oscillator is used as clock source. For this use value 1024.
- 32768 Hz if the 32k crystal oscillator is used. For this use value 3000 or more. In case more value will help improve the definition of the launch of the crystal. If the crystal could not start, it will be switched to internal RC.

*Range:*
- from 0 to 27000 if ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_CRYST || ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_OSC || ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_INT_8MD256
- from 0 to 32766

*Default value:*
- 3000 if ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_CRYST || ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_OSC || ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_INT_8MD256
- 1024

CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_XTAL_CAL_RETRY

Number of attempts to repeat 32k XTAL calibration

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific

Number of attempts to repeat 32k XTAL calibration before giving up and switching to the internal RC. Increase this option if the 32k crystal oscillator does not start and switches to internal RC.

*Default value:*
- 1 if ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_CRYST

CONFIG_ESP32_DEEP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_DELAY

Extra delay in deep sleep wake stub (in us)

*Found in:* Component config > ESP32-specific
When ESP32 exits deep sleep, the CPU and the flash chip are powered on at the same time. CPU will run deep sleep stub first, and then proceed to load code from flash. Some flash chips need sufficient time to pass between power on and first read operation. By default, without any extra delay, this time is approximately 900us, although some flash chip types need more than that.

By default extra delay is set to 2000us. When optimizing startup time for applications which require it, this value may be reduced.

If you are seeing “flash read err, 1000” message printed to the console after deep sleep reset, try increasing this value.

Range:
- from 0 to 5000
Default value:
- 2000

**CONFIG_ESP32_XTAL_FREQ_SEL**

Main XTAL frequency

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

ESP32 currently supports the following XTAL frequencies:
- 26 MHz
- 40 MHz

Startup code can automatically estimate XTAL frequency. This feature uses the internal 8MHz oscillator as a reference. Because the internal oscillator frequency is temperature dependent, it is not recommended to use automatic XTAL frequency detection in applications which need to work at high ambient temperatures and use high-temperature qualified chips and modules.

**Available options:**
- 40 MHz (ESP32_XTAL_FREQ_40)
- 26 MHz (ESP32_XTAL_FREQ_26)
- Autodetect (ESP32_XTAL_FREQ_AUTO)

**CONFIG_ESP32_DISABLE_BASIC_ROM_CONSOLE**

Permanently disable BASIC ROM Console

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

If set, the first time the app boots it will disable the BASIC ROM Console permanently (by burning an eFuse).

Otherwise, the BASIC ROM Console starts on reset if no valid bootloader is read from the flash.

(Enabling secure boot also disables the BASIC ROM Console by default.)

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP32_NO_BLOBS**

No Binary Blobs

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

If enabled, this disables the linking of binary libraries in the application build. Note that after enabling this Wi-Fi/Bluetooth will not work.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_ENABLED`
**CONFIG_ESP32_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V2_1_BOOTLOADERS**

App compatible with bootloaders before ESP-IDF v2.1

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

Bootloaders before ESP-IDF v2.1 did less initialisation of the system clock. This setting needs to be enabled to build an app which can be booted by these older bootloaders.

If this setting is enabled, the app can be booted by any bootloader from IDF v1.0 up to the current version.

If this setting is disabled, the app can only be booted by bootloaders from IDF v2.1 or newer.

Enabling this setting adds approximately 1KB to the app’s IRAM usage.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP32_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V3_1_BOOTLOADERS**

App compatible with bootloader and partition table before ESP-IDF v3.1

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

Partition tables before ESP-IDF V3.1 do not contain an MD5 checksum field, and the bootloader before ESP-IDF v3.1 cannot read a partition table that contains an MD5 checksum field.

Enable this option only if your app needs to boot on a bootloader and/or partition table that was generated from a version *before* ESP-IDF v3.1.

If this option and Flash Encryption are enabled at the same time, and any data partitions in the partition table are marked Encrypted, then the partition encrypted flag should be manually verified in the app before accessing the partition (see CVE-2021-27926).

*Default value:*

- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP32_RTCDATA_IN_FAST_MEM**

Place RTC_DATA_ATTR and RTC_RODATA_ATTR variables into RTC fast memory segment

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

This option allows to place .rtc_data and .rtc_rodata sections into RTC fast memory segment to free the slow memory region for ULP programs. This option depends on the CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE option because RTC fast memory can be accessed only by PRO_CPU core.

*Default value:*

- No (disabled) if CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE

**CONFIG_ESP32_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE**

Use fixed static RAM size

*Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific*

If this option is disabled, the DRAM part of the heap starts right after the .bss section, within the dram0_0 region. As a result, adding or removing some static variables will change the available heap size.

If this option is enabled, the DRAM part of the heap starts right after the dram0_0 region, where its length is set with ESP32_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

*Default value:*

- No (disabled)
CONFIG_ESP32_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

Fixed Static RAM size

Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific > CONFIG_ESP32_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

RAM size dedicated for static variables (.data & .bss sections). Please note that the actual length will be reduced by BTDM_RESERVE_DRAM if Bluetooth controller is enabled.

Range:
- from 0 to 0x2c200 if CONFIG_ESP32_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

Default value:
- “0x1E000” if CONFIG_ESP32_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

CONFIG_ESP32_DPDK_DIS_INTERRUPT_LVL

Disable the interrupt level for the DPORT workarounds

Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific

To prevent interrupting DPORT workarounds, need to disable interrupt with a maximum used level in the system.

Default value:
- 5

CONFIG_ESP32_IRAM_AS_8BIT_ACCESSIBLE_MEMORY

Enable IRAM as 8 bit accessible memory

Found in: Component config > ESP32-specific

If enabled, application can use IRAM as byte accessible region for storing data (Note: IRAM region cannot be used as task stack)

This is possible due to handling of exceptions LoadStoreError (3) and LoadStoreAlignmentError (9) Each unaligned read/write access will incur a penalty of maximum of 167 CPU cycles.

ADC-Calibration Contains:

- CONFIG_ADC_CAL_EFUSE_VREF_ENABLE
- CONFIG_ADC_CAL_LUT_ENABLE
- CONFIG_ADC_CAL_EFUSE_TP_ENABLE

CONFIG_ADC_CAL_EFUSE_TP_ENABLE

Use Two Point Values

Found in: Component config > ADC-Calibration

Some ESP32s have Two Point calibration values burned into eFuse BLOCK3. This option will allow the ADC calibration component to characterize the ADC-Voltage curve using Two Point values if they are available.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ADC_CAL_EFUSE_VREF_ENABLE

Use eFuse Vref

Found in: Component config > ADC-Calibration

Some ESP32s have Vref burned into eFuse BLOCK0. This option will allow the ADC calibration component to characterize the ADC-Voltage curve using eFuse Vref if it is available.
Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ADC_CAL_LUT_ENABLE**

Use Lookup Tables

*Found in: Component config > ADC-Calibration*

This option will allow the ADC calibration component to use Lookup Tables to correct for non-linear behavior in 11db attenuation. Other attenuations do not exhibit non-linear behavior hence will not be affected by this option.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

**Common ESP-related**

Contains:
- **CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP**

**CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP**

Enable lookup of error code strings

*Found in: Component config > Common ESP-related*

Functions esp_err_to_name() and esp_err_to_name_r() return string representations of error codes from a pre-generated lookup table. This option can be used to turn off the use of the look-up table in order to save memory but this comes at the price of sacrificing distinguishable (meaningful) output string representations.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

**Ethernet**

Contains:
- **CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC**
- **CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH**
- **CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_ETHERNET**

**CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC**

Support ESP32 internal EMAC controller

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet*

ESP32 integrates a 10/100M Ethernet MAC controller.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

Contains:
- **CONFIG_ETH_DMA_RX_BUFFER_NUM**
- **CONFIG_ETH_DMA_TX_BUFFER_NUM**
- **CONFIG_ETH_SOFT_FLOW_CONTROL**
- **CONFIG_ETH_DMA_BUFFER_SIZE**
- **CONFIG_ETH_RMII_CLK_OUTPUT_GPIO0**
- **CONFIG_ETH_PHY_INTERFACE**
- **CONFIG_ETH_RMII_CLK_OUT_GPIO**
- **CONFIG_ETH_RMII_CLK_MODE**
CONFIG_ETH_PHY_INTERFACE

PHY interface

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

Select the communication interface between MAC and PHY chip.

Available options:
• Reduced Media Independent Interface (RMII) (ETH_PHY_INTERFACE_RMII)

CONFIG_ETH_RMII_CLK_MODE

RMII clock mode

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

Select external or internal RMII clock.

Available options:
• Input RMII clock from external (ETH_RMII_CLK_INPUT)
  MAC will get RMII clock from outside. Note that ESP32 only supports GPIO0 to input the
  RMII clock.
• Output RMII clock from internal (ETH_RMII_CLK_OUTPUT)
  ESP32 can generate RMII clock by internal APLL. This clock can be routed to the external
  PHY device. ESP32 supports to route the RMII clock to GPIO0/16/17.

CONFIG_ETH_RMII_CLK_OUTPUT_GPIO0

Output RMII clock from GPIO0 (Experimental!)

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

GPIO0 can be set to output a pre-divided PLL clock (test only!). Enabling this option will configure
GPIO0 to output a 50MHz clock. In fact this clock doesn’t have directly relationship with EMAC
peripheral. Sometimes this clock won’t work well with your PHY chip. You might need to add some
extra devices after GPIO0 (e.g. inverter). Note that outputting RMII clock on GPIO0 is an experimental
practice. If you want the Ethernet to work with WiFi, don’t select GPIO0 output mode for stability.

Default value:
• No (disabled) if ETH_RMII_CLK_OUTPUT && CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

CONFIG_ETH_RMII_CLK_OUT_GPIO

RMII clock GPIO number

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

Set the GPIO number to output RMII Clock.

Range:
• from 16 to 17 if CONFIG_ETH_RMII_CLK_OUTPUT_GPIO0 && ETH_RMII_CLK_OUTPUT && CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

Default value:
• 17 if CONFIG_ETH_RMII_CLK_OUTPUT_GPIO0 && ETH_RMII_CLK_OUTPUT && CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

CONFIG_ETH_DMA_BUFFER_SIZE

Ethernet DMA buffer size (Byte)

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

Set the size of each buffer used by Ethernet MAC DMA.
Range:
• from 256 to 1600
Default value:
• 512

**CONFIG_ETH_DMA_RX_BUFFER_NUM**

Amount of Ethernet DMA Rx buffers

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC*

Number of DMA receive buffers. Each buffer’s size is ETH_DMA_BUFFER_SIZE. Larger number of buffers could increase throughput somehow.

Range:
• from 3 to 30
Default value:
• 10

**CONFIG_ETH_DMA_TX_BUFFER_NUM**

Amount of Ethernet DMA Tx buffers

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC*

Number of DMA transmit buffers. Each buffer’s size is ETH_DMA_BUFFER_SIZE. Larger number of buffers could increase throughput somehow.

Range:
• from 3 to 30
Default value:
• 10

**CONFIG_ETH_SOFT_FLOW_CONTROL**

Enable software flow control

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC*

Ethernet MAC engine on ESP32 doesn’t feature a flow control logic. The MAC driver can perform a software flow control if you enable this option. Note that, if the RX buffer number is small, enabling software flow control will cause obvious performance loss.

Default value:
• No (disabled) if CONFIG_ETH_DMA_RX_BUFFER_NUM > 15 && CONFIG_ETH_USE_ESP32_EMAC

**CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_Ethernet**

Support SPI to Ethernet Module

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet*

ESP-IDF can also support some SPI-Ethernet modules.

Default value:
• Yes (enabled)

Contains:
• CONFIG_ETH_SPI_Ethernet_DM9051
• CONFIG_ETH_SPI_Ethernet_KSZ8851SNL
• CONFIG_ETH_SPI_Ethernet_W5500
CONFIG_ETH_SPI_ETHERNET_DM9051

Use DM9051

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_ETHERNET*

DM9051 is a fast Ethernet controller with an SPI interface. It’s also integrated with a 10/100M PHY and MAC. Select this to enable DM9051 driver.

CONFIG_ETH_SPI_ETHERNET_W5500

Use W5500 (MAC RAW)

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_ETHERNET*

W5500 is a HW TCP/IP embedded Ethernet controller. TCP/IP stack, 10/100 Ethernet MAC and PHY are embedded in a single chip. However the driver in ESP-IDF only enables the RAW MAC mode, making it compatible with the software TCP/IP stack. Say yes to enable W5500 driver.

CONFIG_ETH_SPI_ETHERNET_KSZ8851SNL

Use KSZ8851SNL

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_ETHERNET*

The KSZ8851SNL is a single-chip Fast Ethernet controller consisting of a 10/100 physical layer transceiver (PHY), a MAC, and a Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI). Select this to enable KSZ8851SNL driver.

CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH

Support OpenCores Ethernet MAC (for use with QEMU)

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet*

OpenCores Ethernet MAC driver can be used when an ESP-IDF application is executed in QEMU. This driver is not supported when running on a real chip.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

Contains:

- `CONFIG_ETH_OPENETH_DMA_RX_BUFFER_NUM`
- `CONFIG_ETH_OPENETH_DMA_TX_BUFFER_NUM`

CONFIG_ETH_OPENETH_DMA_RX_BUFFER_NUM

Number of Ethernet DMA Rx buffers

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH*

Number of DMA receive buffers, each buffer is 1600 bytes.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 64 if `CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH`

**Default value:**
- 4 if `CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH`
CONFIG_ETH_OPENETH_DMA_TX_BUFFER_NUM

Number of Ethernet DMA Tx buffers

*Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH*

Number of DMA transmit buffers, each buffer is 1600 bytes.

*Range:*
  - from 1 to 64 if `CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH`

*Default value:*
  - 1 if `CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH`

**Event Loop Library** Contains:

- `CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING`
- `CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR`

**CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING**

Enable event loop profiling

*Found in: Component config > Event Loop Library*

Enables collections of statistics in the event loop library such as the number of events posted to/recieved by an event loop, number of callbacks involved, number of events dropped to to a full event loop queue, run time of event handlers, and number of times/run time of each event handler.

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR**

Support posting events from ISRs

*Found in: Component config > Event Loop Library*

Enable posting events from interrupt handlers.

*Default value:*
  - Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR**

Support posting events from ISRs placed in IRAM

*Found in: Component config > Event Loop Library > CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR*

Enable posting events from interrupt handlers placed in IRAM. Enabling this option places API functions `esp_event_post` and `esp_event_post_to` in IRAM.

*Default value:*
  - Yes (enabled)

**GDB Stub** Contains:

- `CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS`
**CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS**

Enable listing FreeRTOS tasks through GDB Stub

*Found in: Component config > GDB Stub*

If enabled, GDBStub can supply the list of FreeRTOS tasks to GDB. Thread list can be queried from GDB using ‘info threads’ command. Note that if GDB task lists were corrupted, this feature may not work. If GDBStub fails, try disabling this feature.

**CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_MAX_TASKS**

Maximum number of tasks supported by GDB Stub

*Found in: Component config > GDB Stub > CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS*

Set the number of tasks which GDB Stub will support.

**Default value:**
- 32 if `CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS`

**ESP HTTP client**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_BASIC_AUTH`
- `CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_DIGEST_AUTH`
- `CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_HTTPS`

**CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_HTTPS**

Enable https

*Found in: Component config > ESP HTTP client*

This option will enable https protocol by linking esp-tls library and initializing SSL transport

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_BASIC_AUTH**

Enable HTTP Basic Authentication

*Found in: Component config > ESP HTTP client*

This option will enable HTTP Basic Authentication. It is disabled by default as Basic auth uses unencrypted encoding, so it introduces a vulnerability when not using TLS

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_DIGEST_AUTH**

Enable HTTP Digest Authentication

*Found in: Component config > ESP HTTP client*

This option will enable HTTP Digest Authentication. It is enabled by default, but use of this configuration is not recommended as the password can be derived from the exchange, so it introduces a vulnerability when not using TLS

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
HTTP Server Contains:

- `CONFIG_HTTPD_PURGE_BUF_LEN`
- `CONFIG_HTTPD_LOG_PURGE_DATA`
- `CONFIG_HTTPD_MAX_REQ_HDR_LEN`
- `CONFIG_HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN`
- `CONFIG_HTTPD_ERR_RESP_NO_DELAY`
- `CONFIG_HTTPD_WS_SUPPORT`

**CONFIG_HTTPD_MAX_REQ_HDR_LEN**

Max HTTP Request Header Length

*Found in: Component config > HTTP Server*

This sets the maximum supported size of headers section in HTTP request packet to be processed by the server

*Default value:*

  - 512

**CONFIG_HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN**

Max HTTP URI Length

*Found in: Component config > HTTP Server*

This sets the maximum supported size of HTTP request URI to be processed by the server

*Default value:*

  - 512

**CONFIG_HTTPD_ERR_RESP_NO_DELAY**

Use TCP_NODELAY socket option when sending HTTP error responses

*Found in: Component config > HTTP Server*

Using TCP_NODEALY socket option ensures that HTTP error response reaches the client before the underlying socket is closed. Please note that turning this off may cause multiple test failures

*Default value:*

  - Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_HTTPD_PURGE_BUF_LEN**

Length of temporary buffer for purging data

*Found in: Component config > HTTP Server*

This sets the size of the temporary buffer used to receive and discard any remaining data that is received from the HTTP client in the request, but not processed as part of the server HTTP request handler.

If the remaining data is larger than the available buffer size, the buffer will be filled in multiple iterations. The buffer should be small enough to fit on the stack, but large enough to avoid excessive iterations.

*Default value:*

  - 32
CONFIG_HTTPD_LOG_PURGE_DATA

Log purged content data at Debug level

*Found in: Component config > HTTP Server*

Enabling this will log discarded binary HTTP request data at Debug level. For large content data this may not be desirable as it will clutter the log.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_HTTPD_WS_SUPPORT

WebSocket server support

*Found in: Component config > HTTP Server*

This sets the WebSocket server support.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

ESP HTTPS OTA Contains:

- CONFIG_OТА_ALLOW_HTTP

CONFIG_OТА_ALLOW_HTTP

Allow HTTP for OTA (WARNING: ONLY FOR TESTING PURPOSE, READ HELP)

*Found in: Component config > ESP HTTPS OTA*

It is highly recommended to keep HTTPS (along with server certificate validation) enabled. Enabling this option comes with potential risk of: - Non-encrypted communication channel with server - Accepting firmware upgrade image from server with fake identity

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

ESP HTTPS server Contains:

- CONFIG_ESP_HTTPS_SERVER_ENABLE

CONFIG_ESP_HTTPS_SERVER_ENABLE

Enable ESP_HTTPS_SERVER component

*Found in: Component config > ESP HTTPS server*

Enable ESP HTTPS server component

Hardware Settings Contains:

- MAC Config
- Sleep Config

MAC Config Contains:

- CONFIG_ESP32_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES
CONFIG_ESP32_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES

Number of universally administered (by IEEE) MAC address

*Found in: Component config > Hardware Settings > MAC Config*

Configure the number of universally administered (by IEEE) MAC addresses. During initialization, MAC addresses for each network interface are generated or derived from a single base MAC address. If the number of universal MAC addresses is four, all four interfaces (WiFi station, WiFi softap, Bluetooth and Ethernet) receive a universally administered MAC address. These are generated sequentially by adding 0, 1, 2 and 3 (respectively) to the final octet of the base MAC address. If the number of universal MAC addresses is two, only two interfaces (WiFi station and Bluetooth) receive a universally administered MAC address. These are generated sequentially by adding 0 and 1 (respectively) to the base MAC address. The remaining two interfaces (WiFi softap and Ethernet) receive local MAC addresses. These are derived from the universal WiFi station and Bluetooth MAC addresses, respectively. When using the default (Espressif-assigned) base MAC address, either setting can be used. When using a custom universal MAC address range, the correct setting will depend on the allocation of MAC addresses in this range (either 2 or 4 per device.)

*Available options:*
- Two (ESP32_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES_TWO)
- Four (ESP32_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES_FOUR)

**Sleep Config**

Contains:

- CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_FLASH_LEAKAGE_WORKAROUND
- CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_GPIO_RESET_WORKAROUND
- CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_POWER_DOWN_FLASH
- CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_PSRAM_LEAKAGE_WORKAROUND

**CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_POWER_DOWN_FLASH**

Power down flash in light sleep when there is no SPIRAM

*Found in: Component config > Hardware Settings > Sleep Config*

If enabled, chip will try to power down flash as part of esp_light_sleep_start(), which costs more time when chip wakes up. Can only be enabled if there is no SPIRAM configured. This option will in fact consider VDD_SDIO auto power value (ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO) as OFF. Also, it is possible to force a power domain to stay ON during light sleep by using esp_sleep_pd_config() function.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_GPIO_RESET_WORKAROUND**

light sleep GPIO reset workaround

*Found in: Component config > Hardware Settings > Sleep Config*

esp32c3 and esp32s3 will reset at wake-up if GPIO is received a small electrostatic pulse during light sleep, with specific condition

- GPIO needs to be configured as input-mode only
- The pin receives a small electrostatic pulse, and reset occurs when the pulse voltage is higher than 6 V

For GPIO set to input mode only, it is not a good practice to leave it open/ floating. The hardware design needs to controlled it with determined supply or ground voltage is necessary.

This option provides a software workaround for this issue. Configure to isolate all GPIO pins in sleep state.
**CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_PSRAM_LEAKAGE_WORKAROUND**

PSRAM leakage current workaround in light sleep

*Found in: Component config > Hardware Settings > Sleep Config*

When the CS pin of SPIRAM is not pulled up, the sleep current will increase during light sleep. If the CS pin of SPIRAM has an external pull-up, you do not need to select this option, otherwise, you should enable this option.

**CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_FLASH_LEAKAGE_WORKAROUND**

Flash leakage current workaround in light sleep

*Found in: Component config > Hardware Settings > Sleep Config*

When the CS pin of Flash is not pulled up, the sleep current will increase during light sleep. If the CS pin of Flash has an external pull-up, you do not need to select this option, otherwise, you should enable this option.

**LCD and Touch Panel**

Contains:
- **LCD Peripheral Configuration**

**LCD Peripheral Configuration**

Contains:
- **CONFIG_LCD_PANEL_IO_FORMAT_BUF_SIZE**

**CONFIG_LCD_PANEL_IO_FORMAT_BUF_SIZE**

LCD panel io format buffer size

*Found in: Component config > LCD and Touch Panel > LCD Peripheral Configuration*

LCD driver allocates an internal buffer to transform the data into a proper format, because of the endian order mismatch. This option is to set the size of the buffer, in bytes.

**Default value:**
- 32

**ESP NETIF Adapter**

Contains:
- **CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_TCPIP_ADAPTER_COMPATIBLE_LAYER**
- **CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP**
- **CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_IP_LOST_TIMER_INTERVAL**
- **CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_USE_TCPIP_STACK_LIB**

**CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_IP_LOST_TIMER_INTERVAL**

IPAddress lost timer interval (seconds)

*Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter*

The value of 0 indicates the IP lost timer is disabled, otherwise the timer is enabled.

The IP address may be lost because of some reasons, e.g. when the station disconnects from soft-AP, or when DHCP IP renew fails etc. If the IP lost timer is enabled, it will be started everytime the IP is lost. Event SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP will be raised if the timer expires. The IP lost timer is stopped if the station get the IP again before the timer expires.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 65535

**Default value:**


• 120

**CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_USE_TCPIP_STACK_LIB**

TCP/IP Stack Library

*Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter*

Choose the TCP/IP Stack to work, for example, LwIP, uIP, etc.

*Available options:*
  - LwIP (ESP_NETIF_TCPIP_LWIP)
    lwIP is a small independent implementation of the TCP/IP protocol suite.
  - Loopback (ESP_NETIF_LOOPBACK)
    Dummy implementation of esp-netif functionality which connects driver transmit to receive function. This option is for testing purpose only

**CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_TCPIP_ADAPTER_COMPATIBLE_LAYER**

Enable backward compatible tcpip_adapter interface

*Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter*

Backward compatible interface to tcpip_adapter is enabled by default to support legacy TCP/IP stack initialisation code. Disable this option to use only esp-netif interface.

*Default value:*
  - Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP**

Enable netif L2 TAP support

*Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter*

A user program can read/write link layer (L2) frames from/to ESP TAP device. The ESP TAP device can be currently associated only with Ethernet physical interfaces.

**CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP_MAX_FDS**

Maximum number of opened L2 TAP File descriptors

*Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter > CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP*

Maximum number of opened File descriptors (FD’s) associated with ESP TAP device. ESP TAP FD’s take up a certain amount of memory, and allowing fewer FD’s to be opened at the same time conserves memory.

*Range:*
  - from 1 to 10 if `CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP`

*Default value:*
  - 5 if `CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP`

**CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP_RX_QUEUE_SIZE**

Size of L2 TAP Rx queue

*Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter > CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP*

Maximum number of frames queued in opened File descriptor. Once the queue is full, the newly arriving frames are dropped until the queue has enough room to accept incoming traffic (Tail Drop queue management).

*Range:*

---

Espressif Systems 1570 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
• from 1 to 100 if `CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP`

Default value:
• 20 if `CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_L2_TAP`

**PHY** Contains:

• `CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MAX_WIFI_TX_POWER`
• `CONFIG_ESP_PHY_REDUCE_TX_POWER`
• `CONFIG_ESP_PHY_CALIBRATION_AND_DATA_STORAGE`
• `CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION`

**CONFIG_ESP_PHY_CALIBRATION_AND_DATA_STORAGE**

Store phy calibration data in NVS

*Found in: Component config > PHY*

If this option is enabled, NVS will be initialized and calibration data will be loaded from there. PHY calibration will be skipped on deep sleep wakeup. If calibration data is not found, full calibration will be performed and stored in NVS. Normally, only partial calibration will be performed. If this option is disabled, full calibration will be performed.

If it’s easy that your board calibrate bad data, choose ‘n’. Two cases for example, you should choose ‘n’: 1. If your board is easy to be booted up with antenna disconnected. 2. Because of your board design, each time when you do calibration, the result are too unstable. If unsure, choose ‘y’.

*Default value:*
• Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION**

Use a partition to store PHY init data

*Found in: Component config > PHY*

If enabled, PHY init data will be loaded from a partition. When using a custom partition table, make sure that PHY data partition is included (type: ‘data’, subtype: ‘phy’). With default partition tables, this is done automatically. If PHY init data is stored in a partition, it has to be flashed there, otherwise runtime error will occur.

If this option is not enabled, PHY init data will be embedded into the application binary.

If unsure, choose ‘n’.

*Default value:*
• No (disabled)

Contains:

• `CONFIG_ESP_PHY_DEFAULT_INIT_IF_INVALID`
• `CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN`

**CONFIG_ESP_PHY_DEFAULT_INIT_IF_INVALID**

Reset default PHY init data if invalid

*Found in: Component config > PHY > CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION*

If enabled, PHY init data will be restored to default if it cannot be verified successfully to avoid endless bootloops.

If unsure, choose ‘n’.

*Default value:*
• No (disabled) if `CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION`
CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN

Support multiple PHY init data bin

*Found in: Component config > PHY > CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION*

If enabled, the corresponding PHY init data type can be automatically switched according to the country code. China’s PHY init data bin is used by default. Can be modified by country information in API esp_wifi_set_country(). The priority of switching the PHY init data type is: 1. Country configured by API esp_wifi_set_country() and the parameter policy is WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL. 2. Country notified by the connected AP. 3. Country configured by API esp_wifi_set_country() and the parameter policy is WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION && CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN

CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN_EMBED

Support embedded multiple phy init data bin to app bin

*Found in: Component config > PHY > CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION > CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN*

If enabled, multiple phy init data bin will embedded into app bin. If not enabled, multiple phy init data bin will still leave alone, and need to be flashed by users.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN && CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION

CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_ERROR

Terminate operation when PHY init data error

*Found in: Component config > PHY > CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION > CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN*

If enabled, when an error occurs while the PHY init data is updated, the program will terminate and restart. If not enabled, the PHY init data will not be updated when an error occurs.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled) if CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN && CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION

CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MAX_WIFI_TX_POWER

Max WiFi TX power (dBm)

*Found in: Component config > PHY*

Set maximum transmit power for WiFi radio. Actual transmit power for high data rates may be lower than this setting.

**Range:**

- from 10 to 20

**Default value:**

- 20

CONFIG_ESP_PHY_REDUCE_TX_POWER
Reduce PHY TX power when brownout reset

*Found in: Component config > PHY*

When brownout reset occurs, reduce PHY TX power to keep the code running.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**Power Management**

Contains:
- `CONFIG_PM_SLP_DISABLE_GPIO`
- `CONFIG_PM_SLP_IRAM_OPT`
- `CONFIG_PM_RTOS_IDLE_OPT`
- `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE`

**CONFIG_PM_ENABLE**

Support for power management

*Found in: Component config > Power Management*

If enabled, application is compiled with support for power management. This option has run-time overhead (increased interrupt latency, longer time to enter idle state), and it also reduces accuracy of RTOS ticks and timers used for timekeeping. Enable this option if application uses power management APIs.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_PM_DFS_INIT_AUTO**

Enable dynamic frequency scaling (DFS) at startup

*Found in: Component config > Power Management > CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

If enabled, startup code configures dynamic frequency scaling. Max CPU frequency is set to `DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ` setting, min frequency is set to XTAL frequency. If disabled, DFS will not be active until the application configures it using `esp_pm_configure` function.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE`

**CONFIG_PM_USE_RTC_TIMER_REF**

Use RTC timer to prevent time drift (EXPERIMENTAL)

*Found in: Component config > Power Management > CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

When APB clock frequency changes, high-resolution timer (esp_timer) scale and base value need to be adjusted. Each adjustment may cause small error, and over time such small errors may cause time drift. If this option is enabled, RTC timer will be used as a reference to compensate for the drift. It is recommended that this option is only used if 32k XTAL is selected as RTC clock source.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE` && `ESP_TIMER_IMPL_FRC2`

**CONFIG_PM_PROFILING**

Enable profiling counters for PM locks

*Found in: Component config > Power Management > CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

If enabled, esp_pm_* functions will keep track of the amount of time each of the power management locks has been held, and esp_pm_dump_locks function will print this information. This feature can be
used to analyze which locks are preventing the chip from going into a lower power state, and see what
time the chip spends in each power saving mode. This feature does incur some run-time overhead, so
should typically be disabled in production builds.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE`

**CONFIG_PM_TRACE**

Enable debug tracing of PM using GPIOs

*Found in: Component config > Power Management > CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

If enabled, some GPIOs will be used to signal events such as RTOS ticks, frequency switching, entry/exit
from idle state. Refer to pm_trace.c file for the list of GPIOs. This feature is intended to be used when
analyzing/debugging behavior of power management implementation, and should be kept disabled in
applications.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE`

**CONFIG_PM_SLP_IRAM_OPT**

Put lightsleep related codes in internal RAM

*Found in: Component config > Power Management*

If enabled, about 1.8KB of lightsleep related source code would be in IRAM and chip would sleep
longer for 760us at most each time. This feature is intended to be used when lower power consumption
is needed while there is enough place in IRAM to place source code.

**CONFIG_PM_RTOS_IDLE_OPT**

Put RTOS IDLE related codes in internal RAM

*Found in: Component config > Power Management*

If enabled, about 260B of RTOS_IDLE related source code would be in IRAM and chip would sleep
longer for 40us at most each time. This feature is intended to be used when lower power consumption
is needed while there is enough place in IRAM to place source code.

**CONFIG_PM_SLP_DISABLE_GPIO**

Disable all GPIO when chip at sleep

*Found in: Component config > Power Management*

This feature is intended to disable all GPIO pins at automantic sleep to get a lower power mode.
If enabled, chips will disable all GPIO pins at automantic sleep to reduce about 200–300 uA cur-
tent. If you want to specifically use some pins normally as chip wakes when chip sleeps, you
can call `gpio_sleep_sel_dis` to disable this feature on those pins. You can also keep this fea-
ture on and call `gpio_sleep_set_direction` and `gpio_sleep_set_pull_mode` to have a different
GPIO configuration at sleep. Waring: If you want to enable this option on ESP32, you should en-
able `GPIO_ESP32_SUPPORT_SWITCH_SLP_PULL` at first, otherwise you will not be able to switch
pullup/pulldown mode.

**ESP System Settings**

Contains:
- `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_RTC_EXT_XTAL_BOOTSTRAP_CYCLES`
- `CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART`
- `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP`
- `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE`
Chapter 2. API

• `CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT`
• `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL`
• `CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT`
• `CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY`
• `CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE`

Memory protection
• `CONFIG_ESP_MINIMAL_SHARED_STACK_SIZE`
• `CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_STUBS_ENABLE`
• `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC`
• `CONFIG_ESP_PANIC_HANDLER_IRAM`
• `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE`
• `CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_BAUDRATE`
• `CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_NUM`
• `CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_RX_GPIO`
• `CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_TX_GPIO`

**CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC**

Panic handler behaviour

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

If FreeRTOS detects unexpected behaviour or an unhandled exception, the panic handler is invoked. Configure the panic handler’s action here.

**Available options:**

- Print registers and halt (ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_HALT)
  Outputs the relevant registers over the serial port and halt the processor. Needs a manual reset to restart.
- Print registers and reboot (ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_REBOOT)
  Outputs the relevant registers over the serial port and immediately reset the processor.
- Silent reboot (ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT)
  Just resets the processor without outputting anything
- GDBStub on panic (ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_GDBSTUB)
  Invoke gdbstub on the serial port, allowing for gdb to attach to it to do a postmortem of the crash.
- GDBStub at runtime (ESP_SYSTEM_GDBSTUB_RUNTIME)
  Invoke gdbstub on the serial port, allowing for gdb to attach to it and to do a debug on runtime. This feature will switch system to single core mode.

**CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_RTC_EXT_XTAL_BOOTSTRAP_CYCLES**

Bootstrap cycles for external 32kHz crystal

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

To reduce the startup time of an external RTC crystal, we bootstrap it with a 32kHz square wave for a fixed number of cycles. Setting 0 will disable bootstrapping (if disabled, the crystal may take longer to start up or fail to oscillate under some conditions).

If this value is too high, a faulty crystal may initially start and then fail. If this value is too low, an otherwise good crystal may not start.

To accurately determine if the crystal has started, set a larger “Number of cycles for RTC_SLOW_CLK calibration” (about 3000).

**CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP**

Enable RTC fast memory for dynamic allocations

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*
This config option allows to add RTC fast memory region to system heap with capability similar to that of DRAM region but without DMA. This memory will be consumed first per heap initialization order by early startup services and scheduler related code. Speed wise RTC fast memory operates on APB clock and hence does not have much performance impact.

**Memory protection**
Contains:

- `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE`

**CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE**
Enable memory protection

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > Memory protection*

If enabled, the permission control module watches all the memory access and fires the panic handler if a permission violation is detected. This feature automatically splits the SRAM memory into data and instruction segments and sets Read/Execute permissions for the instruction part (below given splitting address) and Read/Write permissions for the data part (above the splitting address). The memory protection is effective on all access through the IRAM0 and DRAM0 buses.

**CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK**
Lock memory protection settings

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > Memory protection > CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE*

Once locked, memory protection settings cannot be changed anymore. The lock is reset only on the chip startup.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE`

**CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE**
System event queue size

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

Config system event queue size in different application.

**Default value:**
- 32

**CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE**
Event loop task stack size

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

Config system event task stack size in different application.

**Default value:**
- 2304

**CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE**
Main task stack size

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

Configure the “main task” stack size. This is the stack of the task which calls app_main(). If app_main() returns then this task is deleted and its stack memory is freed.
Default value:
  • 3584

**CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY**

Main task core affinity

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

Configure the “main task” core affinity. This is the used core of the task which calls app_main(). If app_main() returns then this task is deleted.

**Available options:**
  • CPU0 (ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0)
  • CPU1 (ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1)
  • No affinity (ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY)

**CONFIG_ESP_MINIMAL_SHARED_STACK_SIZE**

Minimal allowed size for shared stack

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

Minimal value of size, in bytes, accepted to execute a expression with shared stack.

**Default value:**
  • 2048

**CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART**

Channel for console output

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

Select where to send console output (through stdout and stderr).

  • Default is to use UART0 on pre-defined GPIOs.
  • If “Custom” is selected, UART0 or UART1 can be chosen, and any pins can be selected.
  • If “None” is selected, there will be no console output on any UART, except for initial output from ROM bootloader. This ROM output can be suppressed by GPIO strapping or EFUSE, refer to chip datasheet for details.
  • On chips with USB OTG peripheral, “USB CDC” option redirects output to the CDC port. This option uses the CDC driver in the chip ROM. This option is incompatible with TinyUSB stack.
  • On chips with an USB serial/JTAG debug controller, selecting the option for that redirects output to the CDC/ACM (serial port emulation) component of that device.

**Available options:**
  • Default: UART0 (ESP_CONSOLE_UART_DEFAULT)
  • USB CDC (ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC)
  • USB Serial/JTAG Controller (ESP_CONSOLE_USB_SERIAL_JTAG)
  • Custom UART (ESP_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM)
  • None (ESP_CONSOLE_NONE)

**CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_NUM**

UART peripheral to use for console output (0-1)

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

This UART peripheral is used for console output from the ESP-IDF Bootloader and the app.

If the configuration is different in the Bootloader binary compared to the app binary, UART is reconfigured after the bootloader exits and the app starts.
Due to an ESP32 ROM bug, UART2 is not supported for console output via esp_rom_printf.

**Available options:**
- UART0 (ESP_CONSole_UART_CUSTOM_NUM_0)
- UART1 (ESP_CONSole_UART_CUSTOM_NUM_1)

**CONFIG_ESP_CONSole_UART_TX_GPIO**

UART TX on GPIO#

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

This GPIO is used for console UART TX output in the ESP-IDF Bootloader and the app (including boot log output and default standard output and standard error of the app).

If the configuration is different in the Bootloader binary compared to the app binary, UART is reconfigured after the bootloader exits and the app starts.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 46 if ESP_CONSole_UART_CUSTOM

**Default value:**
- 1 if ESP_CONSole_UART_CUSTOM
- 43 if ESP_CONSole_UART_CUSTOM

**CONFIG_ESP_CONSole_UART_RX_GPIO**

UART RX on GPIO#

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

This GPIO is used for UART RX input in the ESP-IDF Bootloader and the app (including default default standard input of the app).

Note: The default ESP-IDF Bootloader configures this pin but doesn’t read anything from the UART.

If the configuration is different in the Bootloader binary compared to the app binary, UART is reconfigured after the bootloader exits and the app starts.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 46 if ESP_CONSole_UART_CUSTOM

**Default value:**
- 3 if ESP_CONSole_UART_CUSTOM
- 44 if ESP_CONSole_UART_CUSTOM

**CONFIG_ESP_CONSole_UART_BAUDRATE**

UART console baud rate

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

This baud rate is used by both the ESP-IDF Bootloader and the app (including boot log output and default standard input/output/error of the app).

The app’s maximum baud rate depends on the UART clock source. If Power Management is disabled, the UART clock source is the APB clock and all baud rates in the available range will be sufficiently accurate. If Power Management is enabled, REF_TICK clock source is used so the baud rate is divided from 1MHz. Baud rates above 1Mbps are not possible and values between 500Kbps and 1Mbps may not be accurate.

If the configuration is different in the Bootloader binary compared to the app binary, UART is reconfigured after the bootloader exits and the app starts.

**Range:**
- from 1200 to 4000000 if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE
- from 1200 to 1000000 if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE
Default value:

- 115200

**CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT**

Interrupt watchdog

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

This watchdog timer can detect if the FreeRTOS tick interrupt has not been called for a certain time, either because a task turned off interrupts and did not turn them on for a long time, or because an interrupt handler did not return. It will try to invoke the panic handler first and failing that reset the SoC.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS**

Interrupt watchdog timeout (ms)

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT*

The timeout of the watchdog, in milliseconds. Make this higher than the FreeRTOS tick rate.

**Range:**

- from 10 to 10000

**Default value:**

- 300 if `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT` && `CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT`
- 800 if `CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT` && `CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT`

**CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_CHECK_CPU1**

Also watch CPU1 tick interrupt

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT*

Also detect if interrupts on CPU 1 are disabled for too long.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT` && `CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE`

**CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT**

Initialize Task Watchdog Timer on startup

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

The Task Watchdog Timer can be used to make sure individual tasks are still running. Enabling this option will cause the Task Watchdog Timer to be initialized automatically at startup. The Task Watchdog timer can be initialized after startup as well (see Task Watchdog Timer API Reference)

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_PANIC**

Invoke panic handler on Task Watchdog timeout

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT*

If this option is enabled, the Task Watchdog Timer will be configured to trigger the panic handler when it times out. This can also be configured at run time (see Task Watchdog Timer API Reference)

**Default value:**

- No (disabled)
CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_TIMEOUT_S
Task Watchdog timeout period (seconds)

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT*

Timeout period configuration for the Task Watchdog Timer in seconds. This is also configurable at run time (see Task Watchdog Timer API Reference)

**Range:**
- from 1 to 60

**Default value:**
- 5

CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU0
Watch CPU0 Idle Task

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT*

If this option is enabled, the Task Watchdog Timer will watch the CPU0 Idle Task. Having the Task Watchdog watch the Idle Task allows for detection of CPU starvation as the Idle Task not being called is usually a symptom of CPU starvation. Starvation of the Idle Task is detrimental as FreeRTOS household tasks depend on the Idle Task getting some runtime every now and then.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU1
Watch CPU1 Idle Task

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT*

If this option is enabled, the Task Watchdog Timer will watch the CPU1 Idle Task.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT && CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE

CONFIG_ESP_PANIC_HANDLER_IRAM
Place panic handler code in IRAM

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

If this option is disabled (default), the panic handler code is placed in flash not IRAM. This means that if ESP-IDF crashes while flash cache is disabled, the panic handler will automatically re-enable flash cache before running GDB Stub or Core Dump. This adds some minor risk, if the flash cache status is also corrupted during the crash.

If this option is enabled, the panic handler code (including required UART functions) is placed in IRAM. This may be necessary to debug some complex issues with crashes while flash cache is disabled (for example, when writing to SPI flash) or when flash cache is corrupted when an exception is triggered.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_STUBS_ENABLE
OpenOCD debug stubs

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

Debug stubs are used by OpenOCD to execute pre-compiled onboard code which does some useful debugging stuff, e.g. GCOV data dump.
Default value:

- “COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_LEVEL_DEBUG” if CONFIG_ESP32_TRAX && ESP32S2_TRAX && ESP32S3_TRAX

CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL

Interrupt level to use for Interrupt Watchdog and other system checks

*Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings*

Interrupt level to use for Interrupt Watchdog and other system checks.

**Available options:**

- Level 5 interrupt (ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL_5)
  Using level 5 interrupt for Interrupt Watchdog and other system checks.
- Level 4 interrupt (ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL_4)
  Using level 4 interrupt for Interrupt Watchdog and other system checks.

IPC (Inter-Processor Call)  Contains:

- CONFIG_ESP_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE
- CONFIG_ESP_IPC_USES_CALLERS_PRIORITY

CONFIG_ESP_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE

Inter-Processor Call (IPC) task stack size

*Found in: Component config > IPC (Inter-Processor Call)*

Configure the IPC tasks stack size. An IPC task runs on each core (in dual core mode), and allows for cross-core function calls. See IPC documentation for more details. The default IPC stack size should be enough for most common simple use cases. However, users can increase/decrease the stack size to their needs.

**Range:**

- from 512 to 65536

**Default value:**

- 1024

CONFIG_ESP_IPC_USES_CALLERS_PRIORITY

IPC runs at caller’s priority

*Found in: Component config > IPC (Inter-Processor Call)*

If this option is not enabled then the IPC task will keep behavior same as prior to that of ESP-IDF v4.0, hence IPC task will run at (configMAX_PRIORITIES - 1) priority.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE

High resolution timer (esp_timer)  Contains:

- CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING
- CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_IMPL
- CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE
- CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_INTERRUPT_LEVEL
- CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_SUPPORTS_ISR_DISPATCH_METHOD
CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING
Enable esp_timer profiling features

*Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)*

If enabled, esp_timer_dump will dump information such as number of times the timer was started, number of times the timer has triggered, and the total time it took for the callback to run. This option has some effect on timer performance and the amount of memory used for timer storage, and should only be used for debugging/testing purposes.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE
High-resolution timer task stack size

*Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)*

Configure the stack size of `timer_task` task. This task is used to dispatch callbacks of timers created using ets_timer and esp_timer APIs. If you are seeing stack overflow errors in timer task, increase this value.

Note that this is not the same as FreeRTOS timer task. To configure FreeRTOS timer task size, see “FreeRTOS timer task stack size” option in “FreeRTOS” menu.

**Range:**
- from 2048 to 65536

**Default value:**
- 3584

CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_INTERRUPT_LEVEL
Interrupt level

*Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)*

It sets the interrupt level for esp_timer ISR in range 1..3. A higher level (3) helps to decrease the ISR esp_timer latency.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 3
- from 1 to 1

**Default value:**
- 1

CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_SUPPORTS_ISR_DISPATCH_METHOD
Support ISR dispatch method

*Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)*

Allows using ESP_TIMER_ISR dispatch method (ESP_TIMER_TASK dispatch method is also available).
- ESP_TIMER_TASK - Timer callbacks are dispatched from a high-priority esp_timer task.
- ESP_TIMER_ISR - Timer callbacks are dispatched directly from the timer interrupt handler. The ISR dispatch can be used, in some cases, when a callback is very simple or need a lower-latency.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_IMPL

Hardware timer to use for esp_timer

*Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)*

esp_timer APIs can be implemented using different hardware timers.

- “FRC2 (legacy)” implementation has been used in ESP-IDF v2.x - v4.1.
- “LAC timer of Timer Group 0” implementation is simpler, and has smaller run time overhead because software handling of timer overflow is not needed.
- “SYSTIMER” implementation is similar to “LAC timer of Timer Group 0” but for non ESP32 chips.

**Available options:**

- FRC2 (legacy) timer (ESP_TIMER_IMPL_FRC2)
- LAC timer of Timer Group 0 (ESP_TIMER_IMPL_TG0_LAC)
- SYSTIMER (ESP_TIMER_IMPL_SYSTIMER)

Wi-Fi  
**Contains:**

- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_ENABLE_WPA3_SAE
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_SOFTAP_Beacon_MAX_LEN
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_CACHE_TX_BUFFER_NUM
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM
- CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLE
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_SW_CONNECTED_PM_ENABLE
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BUFFER
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_Ampdu_RX_ENABLED
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_Ampdu_TX_ENABLED
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_Amsdu_TX_ENABLED
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_Csi_ENABLED
- CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_Gmac_SUPPORT
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_Mgmt_Sbuf_NUM
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT
- CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT
- CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SOFTAP_SUPPORT
- CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TASK_CORE_ID

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_SW_COEXIST_ENABLE

Software controls WiFi/Bluetooth coexistence

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

If enabled, WiFi & Bluetooth coexistence is controlled by software rather than hardware. Recommended for heavy traffic scenarios. Both coexistence configuration options are automatically managed, no user intervention is required. If only Bluetooth is used, it is recommended to disable this option to reduce binary file size.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_BT_ENABLED

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM
Max number of WiFi static RX buffers

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Set the number of WiFi static RX buffers. Each buffer takes approximately 1.6KB of RAM. The static rx buffers are allocated when esp_wifi_init is called, they are not freed until esp_wifi_deinit is called.

WiFi hardware use these buffers to receive all 802.11 frames. A higher number may allow higher throughput but increases memory use. If ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED is enabled, this value is recommended to set equal or bigger than ESP32_WIFI_RX_BA_WIN in order to achieve better throughput and compatibility with both stations and APs.

**Range:**
- from 2 to 25

**Default value:**
- 10 if `CONFIG_SPIRAM.Try_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP`
- 16 if `CONFIG_SPIRAM.Try_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP`

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM**

Max number of WiFi dynamic RX buffers

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Set the number of WiFi dynamic RX buffers, 0 means unlimited RX buffers will be allocated (provided sufficient free RAM). The size of each dynamic RX buffer depends on the size of the received data frame.

For each received data frame, the WiFi driver makes a copy to an RX buffer and then delivers it to the high layer TCP/IP stack. The dynamic RX buffer is freed after the higher layer has successfully received the data frame.

For some applications, WiFi data frames may be received faster than the application can process them. In these cases we may run out of memory if RX buffer number is unlimited (0).

If a dynamic RX buffer limit is set, it should be at least the number of static RX buffers.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 128 if `CONFIG_LWIP.WND_SCALE`
- from 0 to 1024 if `CONFIG_LWIP.WND_SCALE`

**Default value:**
- 32

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BUFFER**

Type of WiFi TX buffers

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Select type of WiFi TX buffers:

If “Static” is selected, WiFi TX buffers are allocated when WiFi is initialized and released when WiFi is de-initialized. The size of each static TX buffer is fixed to about 1.6KB.

If “Dynamic” is selected, each WiFi TX buffer is allocated as needed when a data frame is delivered to the WiFi driver from the TCP/IP stack. The buffer is freed after the data frame has been sent by the WiFi driver. The size of each dynamic TX buffer depends on the length of each data frame sent by the TCP/IP layer.

If PSRAM is enabled. “Static” should be selected to guarantee enough WiFi TX buffers. If PSRAM is disabled. “Dynamic” should be selected to improve the utilization of RAM.

**Available options:**
- Static (ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER)
- Dynamic (ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER)
CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM

Max number of WiFi static TX buffers

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Set the number of WiFi static TX buffers. Each buffer takes approximately 1.6KB of RAM. The static RX buffers are allocated when esp_wifi_init() is called, they are not released until esp_wifi_deinit() is called.

For each transmitted data frame from the higher layer TCP/IP stack, the WiFi driver makes a copy of it in a TX buffer. For some applications especially UDP applications, the upper layer can deliver frames faster than WiFi layer can transmit. In these cases, we may run out of TX buffers.

*Range:*
  - from 1 to 64 if ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER

*Default value:*
  - 16 if ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_CACHE_TX_BUFFER_NUM

Max number of WiFi cache TX buffers

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Set the number of WiFi cache TX buffer number.

For each TX packet from uplayer, such as LWIP etc, WiFi driver needs to allocate a static TX buffer and makes a copy of uplayer packet. If WiFi driver fails to allocate the static TX buffer, it caches the uplayer packets to a dedicated buffer queue, this option is used to configure the size of the cached TX queue.

*Range:*
  - from 16 to 128 if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || ESP32S3_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

*Default value:*
  - 32 if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || ESP32S3_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM

Max number of WiFi dynamic TX buffers

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Set the number of WiFi dynamic TX buffers. The size of each dynamic TX buffer is not fixed, it depends on the size of each transmitted data frame.

For each transmitted frame from the higher layer TCP/IP stack, the WiFi driver makes a copy of it in a TX buffer. For some applications, especially UDP applications, the upper layer can deliver frames faster than WiFi layer can transmit. In these cases, we may run out of TX buffers.

*Range:*
  - from 1 to 128

*Default value:*
  - 32

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_CSI_ENABLED

WiFi CSI (Channel State Information)

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*
Select this option to enable CSI(Channel State Information) feature. CSI takes about CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM KB of RAM. If CSI is not used, it is better to disable this feature in order to save memory.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED**

WiFi AMPDU TX

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Select this option to enable AMPDU TX feature

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BA_WIN**

WiFi AMPDU TX BA window size

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED*

Set the size of WiFi Block Ack TX window. Generally a bigger value means higher throughput but more memory. Most of time we should NOT change the default value unless special reason, e.g. test the maximum UDP TX throughput with iperf etc. For iperf test in shieldbox, the recommended value is 9~12.

**Range:**
- from 2 to 32

**Default value:**
- 6

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED**

WiFi AMPDU RX

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Select this option to enable AMPDU RX feature

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_BA_WIN**

WiFi AMPDU RX BA window size

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED*

Set the size of WiFi Block Ack RX window. Generally a bigger value means higher throughput and better compatibility but more memory. Most of time we should NOT change the default value unless special reason, e.g. test the maximum UDP RX throughput with iperf etc. For iperf test in shieldbox, the recommended value is 9~12. If PSRAM is used and WiFi memory is prefered to allocat in PSRAM first, the default and minimum value should be 16 to achieve better throughput and compatibility with both stations and APs.

**Range:**
- from 2 to 32

**Default value:**
- 6 if CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP && CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED
• 16 if CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP && CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMSDU_RX_ENABLED

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMSDU_TX_ENABLED**

WiFi AMSDU TX

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Select this option to enable AMSDU TX feature

**Default value:**

• No (disabled) if CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || ESP32S3_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_NVSM_ENABLED**

WiFi NVS flash

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Select this option to enable WiFi NVS flash

**Default value:**

• Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TASK_CORE_ID**

WiFi Task Core ID

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Pinned WiFi task to core 0 or core 1.

**Available options:**

• Core 0 (ESP32_WIFI_TASK_PINNED_TO_CORE_0)
• Core 1 (ESP32_WIFI_TASK_PINNED_TO_CORE_1)

**CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_SOFTAP_BEACON_MAX_LEN**

Max length of WiFi SoftAP Beacon

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

ESP-MESH utilizes beacon frames to detect and resolve root node conflicts (see documentation). However the default length of a beacon frame can simultaneously hold only five root node identifier structures, meaning that a root node conflict of up to five nodes can be detected at one time. In the occurrence of more root nodes conflict involving more than five root nodes, the conflict resolution process will detect five of the root nodes, resolve the conflict, and re-detect more root nodes. This process will repeat until all root node conflicts are resolved. However this process can generally take a very long time.

To counter this situation, the beacon frame length can be increased such that more root nodes can be detected simultaneously. Each additional root node will require 36 bytes and should be added on top of the default beacon frame length of 752 bytes. For example, if you want to detect 10 root nodes simultaneously, you need to set the beacon frame length as 932 (752+36*5).

Setting a longer beacon length also assists with debugging as the conflicting root nodes can be identified more quickly.

**Range:**

• from 752 to 1256

**Default value:**

• 752
CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_MGMT_SBUF_NUM

WiFi mgmt short buffer number

*Found in:* Component config > Wi-Fi

Set the number of WiFi management short buffer.

*Range:*
  * from 6 to 32

*Default value:*
  * 32

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT

WiFi IRAM speed optimization

*Found in:* Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to place frequently called Wi-Fi library functions in IRAM. When this option is disabled, more than 10Kbytes of IRAM memory will be saved but Wi-Fi throughput will be reduced.

*Default value:*
  * No (disabled) if CONFIG_BT_ENABLED && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT
  * Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT

WiFi RX IRAM speed optimization

*Found in:* Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to place frequently called Wi-Fi library RX functions in IRAM. When this option is disabled, more than 17Kbytes of IRAM memory will be saved but Wi-Fi performance will be reduced.

*Default value:*
  * No (disabled) if CONFIG_BT_ENABLED && CONFIG_ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT
  * Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_ENABLE_WPA3_SAE

Enable WPA3-Personal

*Found in:* Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to allow the device to establish a WPA3-Personal connection with eligible AP’s. PMF (Protected Management Frames) is a prerequisite feature for a WPA3 connection, it needs to be explicitly configured before attempting connection. Please refer to the Wi-Fi Driver API Guide for details.

*Default value:*
  * Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT

WiFi SLP IRAM speed optimization

*Found in:* Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to place called Wi-Fi library TBTT process and receive beacon functions in IRAM. Some functions can be put in IRAM either by ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT and ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT, or this one. If already enabled ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT, the other 7.3KB IRAM memory would be taken by this option. If already enabled ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT, the other 1.3KB IRAM memory would be taken by this option.
If neither of them are enabled, the other 7.4KB IRAM memory would be taken by this option. Wi-Fi power-save mode average current would be reduced if this option is enabled.

**CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_DEFAULT_MIN_ACTIVE_TIME**

Minimum active time

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT*

The minimum timeout for waiting to receive data, unit: milliseconds.

**Range:**
- from 8 to 60 if CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT

**Default value:**
- 50 if CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT

**CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_DEFAULT_MAX_ACTIVE_TIME**

Maximum keep alive time

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT*

The maximum time that wifi keep alive, unit: seconds.

**Range:**
- from 10 to 60 if CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT

**Default value:**
- 10 if CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT

**CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLE**

Power Management for station at disconnected

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Select this option to enable power_management for station when disconnected. Chip will do modem-sleep when rf module is not in use any more.

**CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_GMAC_SUPPORT**

WiFi GMAC Support(GMAC128 and GMAC256)

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

Select this option to enable GMAC support. GMAC support is compulsory for WiFi 192 bit certification.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SOFTAP_SUPPORT**

WiFi SoftAP Support

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi*

WiFi module can be compiled without SoftAP to save code size.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)
Chapter 2. API

Core dump Contains:
- `CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_CHECK_BOOT`
- `CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT`
- `CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_CHECKSUM`
- `CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_TO_FLASH_OR_UART`
- `CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_UART_DELAY`
- `CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE`
- `CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_MAX_TASKS_NUM`

**CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_TO_FLASH_OR_UART**

Data destination

*Found in: Component config > Core dump*

Select place to store core dump: flash, uart or none (to disable core dumps generation).

Core dumps to flash are not available if PSRAM is used for task stacks.

If core dump is configured to be stored in flash and custom partition table is used add corresponding entry to your CSV. For examples, please see predefined partition table CSV descriptions in the components/partition_table directory.

*Available options:*
- Flash (`ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_FLASH`)
- UART (`ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_UART`)
- None (`ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_NONE`)

**CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT**

Core dump data format

*Found in: Component config > Core dump*

Select the data format for core dump.

*Available options:*
- Binary format (`ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT_BIN`)
- ELF format (`ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT_ELF`)

**CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_CHECKSUM**

Core dump data integrity check

*Found in: Component config > Core dump*

Select the integrity check for the core dump.

*Available options:*
- Use CRC32 for integrity verification (`ESP_COREDUMP_CHECKSUM_CRC32`)
- Use SHA256 for integrity verification (`ESP_COREDUMP_CHECKSUM_SHA256`)

**CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_CHECK_BOOT**

Check core dump data integrity on boot

*Found in: Component config > Core dump*

When enabled, if any data are found on the flash core dump partition, they will be checked by calculating their checksum.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled) if `ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_FLASH`
**CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_MAX_TASKS_NUM**

Maximum number of tasks

*Found in: Component config > Core dump*

Maximum number of tasks snapshots in core dump.

**CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_UART_DELAY**

Delay before print to UART

*Found in: Component config > Core dump*

Config delay (in ms) before printing core dump to UART. Delay can be interrupted by pressing Enter key.

**Default value:**
- 0 if ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_UART

**CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE**

Handling of UART core dumps in IDF Monitor

*Found in: Component config > Core dump*

**Available options:**
- Decode and show summary (info_corefile) (ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE_INFO)
- Don’t decode (ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE_DISABLE)

**FAT Filesystem support**

Contains:

- **CONFIG_FATFS_API_ENCODING**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_LONG_FILENAMES**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_MAX_LFN**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_FS_LOCK**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_VOLUME_COUNT**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_CHOOSE_CODEPAGE**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_ALLOC_PREFER_EXTRAM**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_TIMEOUT_MS**
- **CONFIG_FATFS_PER_FILE_CACHE**

**CONFIG_FATFS_VOLUME_COUNT**

Number of volumes

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

Number of volumes (logical drives) to use.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 10

**Default value:**
- 2

**CONFIG_FATFS_CHOOSE_CODEPAGE**

OEM Code Page

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

OEM code page used for file name encodings.
If “Dynamic” is selected, code page can be chosen at runtime using f_setcp function. Note that choosing this option will increase application size by ~480kB.

**Available options:**
- Dynamic (all code pages supported) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_DYNAMIC)
- US (CP437) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_437)
- Arabic (CP720) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_720)
- Greek (CP737) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_737)
- KBL (CP771) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_771)
- Baltic (CP775) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_775)
- Latin 1 (CP850) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_850)
- Latin 2 (CP852) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_852)
- Cyrillic (CP855) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_855)
- Turkish (CP857) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_857)
- Portugese (CP860) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_860)
- Icelandic (CP861) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_861)
- Hebrew (CP862) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_862)
- Canadian French (CP863) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_863)
- Arabic (CP864) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_864)
- Nordic (CP865) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_865)
- Russian (CP866) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_866)
- Greek 2 (CP869) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_869)
- Japanese (DBCS) (CP932) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_932)
- Simplified Chinese (DBCS) (CP936) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_936)
- Korean (DBCS) (CP949) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_949)
- Traditional Chinese (DBCS) (CP950) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_950)

**CONFIG_FATFS_LONG_FILENAMES**

Long filename support

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

Support long filenames in FAT. Long filename data increases memory usage. FATFS can be configured to store the buffer for long filename data in stack or heap.

**Available options:**
- No long filenames (FATFS_LFN_NONE)
- Long filename buffer in heap (FATFS_LFN_HEAP)
- Long filename buffer on stack (FATFS_LFN_STACK)

**CONFIG_FATFS_MAX_LFN**

Max long filename length

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

Maximum long filename length. Can be reduced to save RAM.

**Range:**
- from 12 to 255

**Default value:**
- 255

**CONFIG_FATFS_API_ENCODING**

API character encoding

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

Choose encoding for character and string arguments/returns when using FATFS APIs. The encoding of arguments will usually depend on text editor settings.
**Available options:**

- API uses ANSI/OEM encoding (FATFS_API_ENCODING_ANSI_OEM)
- API uses UTF-16 encoding (FATFS_API_ENCODING_UTF_16)
- API uses UTF-8 encoding (FATFS_API_ENCODING_UTF_8)

**CONFIG_FATFS_FS_LOCK**

Number of simultaneously open files protected by lock function

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

This option sets the FATFS configuration value _FS_LOCK. The option _FS_LOCK switches file lock function to control duplicated file open and illegal operation to open objects.

* 0: Disable file lock function. To avoid volume corruption, application should avoid illegal open, remove and rename to the open objects.

* >0: Enable file lock function. The value defines how many files/sub-directories can be opened simultaneously under file lock control.

Note that the file lock control is independent of re-entrancy.

**Range:**

- from 0 to 65535

**Default value:**

- 0

**CONFIG_FATFS_TIMEOUT_MS**

Timeout for acquiring a file lock, ms

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

This option sets FATFS configuration value _FS_TIMEOUT, scaled to milliseconds. Sets the number of milliseconds FATFS will wait to acquire a mutex when operating on an open file. For example, if one task is performing a lengthy operation, another task will wait for the first task to release the lock, and timeout after amount of time set by this option.

**Default value:**

- 10000

**CONFIG_FATFS_PER_FILE_CACHE**

Use separate cache for each file

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

This option affects FATFS configuration value _FS_TINY.

If this option is set, _FS_TINY is 0, and each open file has its own cache, size of the cache is equal to the _MAX_SS variable (512 or 4096 bytes). This option uses more RAM if more than 1 file is open, but needs less reads and writes to the storage for some operations.

If this option is not set, _FS_TINY is 1, and single cache is used for all open files, size is also equal to _MAX_SS variable. This reduces the amount of heap used when multiple files are open, but increases the number of read and write operations which FATFS needs to make.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)
CONFIG_FATFS_ALLOC_PREFER_EXTRAM
Perfer external RAM when allocating FATFS buffers

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

When the option is enabled, internal buffers used by FATFS will be allocated from external RAM. If the allocation from external RAM fails, the buffer will be allocated from the internal RAM. Disable this option if optimizing for performance. Enable this option if optimizing for internal memory size.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled) if SPIRAM_USE_CAPS_ALLOC || SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC

CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK
Enable fast seek algorithm when using lseek function through VFS FAT

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support*

The fast seek feature enables fast backward/long seek operations without FAT access by using an in-memory CLMT (cluster link map table). Please note, fast-seek is only allowed for read-mode files, if a file is opened in write-mode, the seek mechanism will automatically fallback to the default implementation.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FATFS_FAST_SEEK_BUFFER_SIZE
Fast seek CLMT buffer size

*Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support > CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK*

If fast seek algorithm is enabled, this defines the size of CLMT buffer used by this algorithm in 32-bit word units. This value should be chosen based on prior knowledge of maximum elements of each file entry would store.

*Default value:*
- 64 if CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK

**Modbus configuration** Contains:

- CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_ASCII_EN
- CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_RTU_EN
- CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN
- CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE
- CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_TIMEOUT
- CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT
- CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE
- CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO
- CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_STACK_SIZE
- CONFIG_FMB_QUEUE_LENGTH
- CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_BUF_SIZE
- CONFIG_FMB_EVENT_QUEUE_TIMEOUT
- CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_PORT_ENABLED
- CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASKAFFINITY
- CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_USE_ISR_DISPATCH_METHOD
- CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_ASCII_BITS_PER_SYMB
- CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_ASCII_TIMEOUT_RESPOND_MS
- CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_DELAY_MS_CONVERT
- CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND
- CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND

---

**Espressif Systems**

1594

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback
**CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN**

Enable Modbus stack support for TCP communication mode

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Enable Modbus TCP option for stack.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_FMB_TCP_PORT_DEFAULT**

Modbus TCP port number

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration > CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN*

Modbus default port number used by Modbus TCP stack

**Range:**
- from 0 to 65535

**Default value:**
- 502

**CONFIG_FMB_TCP_PORT_MAX_CONN**

Maximum allowed connections for TCP stack

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration > CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN*

Maximum allowed connections number for Modbus TCP stack. This is used by Modbus master and slave port layer to establish connections. This parameter may decrease performance of Modbus stack and can cause increasing of processing time (increase only if absolutely necessary).

**Range:**
- from 1 to 6

**Default value:**
- 5

**CONFIG_FMB_TCP_CONNECTION_TOUT_SEC**

Modbus TCP connection timeout

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration > CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN*

Modbus TCP connection timeout in seconds. Once expired the current connection with the client will be closed and Modbus slave will be waiting for new connection to accept.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 3600

**Default value:**
- 20

**CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_RTU_EN**

Enable Modbus stack support for RTU mode

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Enable RTU Modbus communication mode option for Modbus serial stack.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)
CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE.ASCII_EN
Enable Modbus stack support for ASCII mode
*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*
Enable ASCII Modbus communication mode option for Modbus serial stack.
*Default value:*
  *Yes (enabled)*

CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND
Slave respond timeout (Milliseconds)
*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*
If master sends a frame which is not broadcast, it has to wait sometime for slave response. if slave is not respond in this time, the master will process timeout error.
*Range:*
  *from 50 to 3000*
*Default value:*
  *150*

CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_DELAY_MS_CONVERT
Slave conversion delay (Milliseconds)
*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*
If master sends a broadcast frame, it has to wait conversion time to delay, then master can send next frame.
*Range:*
  *from 50 to 400*
*Default value:*
  *200*

CONFIG_FMB_QUEUE_LENGTH
Modbus serial task queue length
*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*
Modbus serial driver queue length. It is used by event queue task. See the serial driver API for more information.
*Range:*
  *from 0 to 200*
*Default value:*
  *20*

CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_STACK_SIZE
Modbus port task stack size
*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*
Modbus port task stack size for rx/tx event processing. It may be adjusted when debugging is enabled (for example).
*Range:*
  *from 2048 to 8192*
*Default value:*

---

Espressif Systems 1596
Submit Document Feedback
Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Chapter 2. API 参考

- 4096

**CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_BUF_SIZE**

Modbus serial task RX/TX buffer size

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Modbus serial task RX and TX buffer size for UART driver initialization. This buffer is used for modbus frame transfer. The Modbus protocol maximum frame size is 256 bytes. Bigger size can be used for non standard implementations.

*Range:*
  - from 0 to 2048

*Default value:*
  - 256

**CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_ASCII_BITS_PER_SYMB**

Number of data bits per ASCII character

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

This option defines the number of data bits per ASCII character.

*Range:*
  - from 7 to 8

*Default value:*
  - 8

**CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_ASCII_TIMEOUT_RESPOND_MS**

Response timeout for ASCII communication mode (ms)

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

This option defines response timeout of slave in milliseconds for ASCII communication mode. Thus the timeout will expire and allow the master program to handle the error.

*Range:*
  - from 300 to 2000

*Default value:*
  - 1000

**CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO**

Modbus port task priority

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Modbus port data processing task priority. The priority of Modbus controller task is equal to (CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO - 1).

*Range:*
  - from 3 to 23

*Default value:*
  - 10
**CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_AFFINITY**

Modbus task affinity

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Allows setting the core affinity of the Modbus controller task, i.e. whether the task is pinned to particular CPU, or allowed to run on any CPU.

*Available options:*
- No affinity (FMB_PORT_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY)
- CPU0 (FMB_PORT_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0)
- CPU1 (FMB_PORT_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1)

**CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT**

Modbus controller slave ID support

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Modbus slave ID support enable. When enabled the Modbus <Report Slave ID> command is supported by stack.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID**

Modbus controller slave ID

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration > CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT*

Modbus slave ID value to identify modbus device in the network using <Report Slave ID> command. Most significant byte of ID is used as short device ID and other three bytes used as long ID.

*Range:*
- from 0 to 4294967295

*Default value:*
- “0x00112233”

**CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_TIMEOUT**

Modbus controller notification timeout (ms)

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Modbus controller notification timeout in milliseconds. This timeout is used to send notification about accessed parameters.

*Range:*
- from 0 to 200

*Default value:*
- 20

**CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE**

Modbus controller notification queue size

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Modbus controller notification queue size. The notification queue is used to get information about accessed parameters.

*Range:*


Chapter 2. API参考

- from 0 to 200
  
  **Default value:**
  - 20

**CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE**

Modbus controller stack size

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Modbus controller task stack size. The Stack size may be adjusted when debug mode is used which requires more stack size (for example).

*Range:*
- from 0 to 8192
  
  **Default value:**
  - 4096

**CONFIG_FMB_EVENT_QUEUE_TIMEOUT**

Modbus stack event queue timeout (ms)

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

Modbus stack event queue timeout in milliseconds. This may help to optimize Modbus stack event processing time.

*Range:*
- from 0 to 500
  
  **Default value:**
  - 20

**CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_PORT_ENABLED**

Modbus stack use timer for 3.5T symbol time measurement

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

If this option is set the Modbus stack uses timer for T3.5 time measurement. Else the internal UART TOUT timeout is used for 3.5T symbol time measurement.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_USE_ISR_DISPATCH_METHOD**

Modbus timer uses ISR dispatch method

*Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration*

If this option is set the Modbus stack uses ISR dispatch method to send timeout events from the callback function called from ISR. This option has dependency with the UART_ISR_IN_IRAM option which places UART interrupt handler into IRAM to prevent delays related to processing of UART events.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**FreeRTOS**

Contains:

- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_FPU_IN_ISR`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_MUTEX_GIVEN_BY_OWNER`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_INTERRUPT_BACKTRACE`
Chapter 2. API

- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_OPTIMIZED_SCHEDULER`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_STATIC_TASK_CLEAN_UP`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_TASK_SNAPSHOT`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_TASK_FUNCTION_WRAPPER`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_QUEUE_REGISTRY_SIZE`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT_ON_UNTESTED_FUNCTION`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_IDLE_TASK_STACKSIZE`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_ISR_STACKSIZE`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_MAX_TASK_NAME_LEN`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_PLACE_FUNCTIONS_INTO_FLASH`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_PORT_CRITICAL_COMPLIANCE`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_HZ`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_LEGACY_HOOKS`
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_CORETIMER`

### `CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE`

Run FreeRTOS only on first core

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

This version of FreeRTOS normally takes control of all cores of the CPU. Select this if you only want to start it on the first core. This is needed when e.g. another process needs complete control over the second core.

# This invisible config value sets the value of tskNO_AFFINITY in task.h. # Intended to be used as a constant from other Kconfig files. # Value is (32-bit) INT_MAX.

### `CONFIG_FREERTOS_CORETIMER`

Xtensa timer to use as the FreeRTOS tick source

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

FreeRTOS needs a timer with an associated interrupt to use as the main tick source to increase counters, run timers and do pre-emptive multitasking with. There are multiple timers available to do this, with different interrupt priorities. Check

**Available options:**

- Timer 0 (int 6, level 1) (`FREERTOS_CORETIMER_0`)  
  Select this to use timer 0
- Timer 1 (int 15, level 3) (`FREERTOS_CORETIMER_1`)  
  Select this to use timer 1
- SYSTIMER 0 (level 1) (`FREERTOS_CORETIMER_SYSTIMER_LVL1`)  
  Select this to use syster with the 1 interrupt priority.
- SYSTIMER 0 (level 3) (`FREERTOS_CORETIMER_SYSTIMER_LVL3`)  
  Select this to use syster with the 3 interrupt priority.

### `CONFIG_FREERTOS_OPTIMIZED_SCHEDULER`
Enable FreeRTOS platform optimized scheduler

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

On most platforms there are instructions that speed up the ready task searching. Enabling this option the FreeRTOS with this instructions support will be built.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE`

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_HZ**

Tick rate (Hz)

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

Select the tick rate at which FreeRTOS does pre-emptive context switching.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 1000

**Default value:**
- 100

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT_ON_UNTESTED_FUNCTION**

Halt when an SMP-untested function is called

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

Some functions in FreeRTOS have not beethoroughly tested yet when moving to the SMP implementation of FreeRTOS. When this option is enabled, these functions will throw an assert().

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW**

Check for stack overflow

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

FreeRTOS can check for stack overflows in threads and trigger an user function called `vApplicationStackOverflowHook` when this happens.

**Available options:**
- No checking (`FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW_NONE`)
  Do not check for stack overflows (configCHECK_FOR_STACK_OVERFLOW=0)
- Check by stack pointer value (`FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW_PTRVAL`)
  Check for stack overflows on each context switch by checking if the stack pointer is in a valid range. Quick but does not detect stack overflows that happened between context switches (configCHECK_FOR_STACK_OVERFLOW=1)
- Check using canary bytes (`FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW_CANARY`)
  Places some magic bytes at the end of the stack area and on each context switch, check if these bytes are still intact. More thorough than just checking the pointer, but also slightly slower. (configCHECK_FOR_STACK_OVERFLOW=2)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK**

Set a debug watchpoint as a stack overflow check

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

FreeRTOS can check if a stack has overflowed its bounds by checking either the value of the stack pointer or by checking the integrity of canary bytes. (See `FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW` for
more information.) These checks only happen on a context switch, and the situation that caused the stack overflow may already be long gone by then. This option will use the last debug memory watchpoint to allow breaking into the debugger (or panic ing) as soon as any of the last 32 bytes on the stack of a task are overwritten. The side effect is that using gdb, you effectively have one hardware watchpoint less because the last one is overwritten as soon as a task switch happens.

Another consequence is that due to alignment requirements of the watchpoint, the usable stack size decreases by up to 60 bytes. This is because the watchpoint region has to be aligned to its size and the size for the stack watchpoint in IDF is 32 bytes.

This check only triggers if the stack overflow writes within 32 bytes near the end of the stack, rather than overshooting further, so it is worth combining this approach with one of the other stack overflow check methods.

When this watchpoint is hit, gdb will stop with a SIGTRAP message. When no JTAG OCD is attached, esp-idf will panic on an unhandled debug exception.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_INTERRUPT_BACKTRACE**

Enable backtrace from interrupt to task context

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

If this option is enabled, interrupt stack frame will be modified to point to the code of the interrupted task as its return address. This helps the debugger (or the panic handler) show a backtrace from the interrupt to the task which was interrupted. This also works for nested interrupts: higher level interrupt stack can be traced back to the lower level interrupt. This option adds 4 instructions to the interrupt dispatching code.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS**

Number of thread local storage pointers

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

FreeRTOS has the ability to store per-thread pointers in the task control block. This controls the number of pointers available.

This value must be at least 1. Index 0 is reserved for use by the pthreads API thread-local-storage. Other indexes can be used for any desired purpose.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 256

**Default value:**
- 1

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT**

FreeRTOS assertions

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

Failed FreeRTOS configASSERT() assertions can be configured to behave in different ways.

By default these behave the same as the global project assert settings.

**Available options:**
• abort() on failed assertions (FREERTOS_ASSERT_FAIL_ABORT)
  If a FreeRTOS configASSERT() fails, FreeRTOS will abort() and halt execution. The panic
  handler can be configured to handle the outcome of an abort() in different ways.
  If assertions are disabled for the entire project, they are also disabled in FreeRTOS and this
  option is unavailable.
• Print and continue failed assertions (FREERTOS_ASSERT_FAIL_PRINT_CONTINUE)
  If a FreeRTOS assertion fails, print it out and continue.
• Disable FreeRTOS assertions (FREERTOS_ASSERT_DISABLE)
  FreeRTOS configASSERT() will not be compiled into the binary.

CONFIG_FREERTOS_IDLE_TASK_STACKSIZE

Idle Task stack size

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

The idle task has its own stack, sized in bytes. The default size is enough for most uses. Size can
be reduced to 768 bytes if no (or simple) FreeRTOS idle hooks are used and pthread local storage or
FreeRTOS local storage cleanup callbacks are not used.

The stack size may need to be increased above the default if the app installs idle or thread local storage
cleanup hooks that use a lot of stack memory.

*Range:*
  • from 768 to 32768

*Default value:*
  • 1536

CONFIG_FREERTOS_ISR_STACKSIZE

ISR stack size

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

The interrupt handlers have their own stack. The size of the stack can be defined here. Each processor
has its own stack, so the total size occupied will be twice this.

*Range:*
  • from 2096 to 32768 if ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT_ELF
  • from 1536 to 32768

*Default value:*
  • 2096 if ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT_ELF
  • 1536

CONFIG_FREERTOS_LEGACY_HOOKS

Use FreeRTOS legacy hooks

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

FreeRTOS offers a number of hooks/callback functions that are called when a timer tick happens, the idle thread runs etc. esp-idf replaces these by runtime registerable hooks using the
esp_register_freertos_xxx_hook system, but for legacy reasons the old hooks can also still be en-
abled. Please enable this only if you have code that for some reason can’t be migrated to the
esp_register_freertos_xxx_hook system.

*Default value:*
  • No (disabled)
CONFIG_FREERTOS_MAX_TASK_NAME_LEN

Maximum task name length

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

Changes the maximum task name length. Each task allocated will include this many bytes for a task name. Using a shorter value saves a small amount of RAM, a longer value allows more complex names.

For most uses, the default of 16 is OK.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 256

**Default value:**
- 16

CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_STATIC_TASK_CLEAN_UP

Enable static task cleanup hook

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

Enable this option to make FreeRTOS call the static task cleanup hook when a task is deleted.

Bear in mind that if this option is enabled you will need to implement the following function:

```c
void vPortCleanUpTCB ( void *pxTCB ) {  
    // place clean up code here
}
```

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY

FreeRTOS timer task priority

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

The timer service task (primarily) makes use of existing FreeRTOS features, allowing timer functionality to be added to an application with minimal impact on the size of the application’s executable binary.

Use this constant to define the priority that the timer task will run at.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 25

**Default value:**
- 1

CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH

FreeRTOS timer task stack size

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

The timer service task (primarily) makes use of existing FreeRTOS features, allowing timer functionality to be added to an application with minimal impact on the size of the application’s executable binary.

Use this constant to define the size (in bytes) of the stack allocated for the timer task.

**Range:**
- from 1536 to 32768

**Default value:**
- 2048
CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH

FreeRTOS timer queue length

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS provides a set of timer related API functions. Many of these functions use a standard FreeRTOS queue to send commands to the timer service task. The queue used for this purpose is called the ‘timer command queue’. The ‘timer command queue’ is private to the FreeRTOS timer implementation, and cannot be accessed directly.

For most uses the default value of 10 is OK.

Range:
- from 5 to 20

Default value:
- 10

CONFIG_FREERTOS_QUEUE_REGISTRY_SIZE

FreeRTOS queue registry size

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS uses the queue registry as a means for kernel aware debuggers to locate queues, semaphores, and mutexes. The registry allows for a textual name to be associated with a queue for easy identification within a debugging GUI. A value of 0 will disable queue registry functionality, and a value larger than 0 will specify the number of queues/semaphores/mutexes that the registry can hold.

Range:
- from 0 to 20

Default value:
- 0

CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY

Enable FreeRTOS trace facility

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

If enabled, configUSE_TRACE_FACILITY will be defined as 1 in FreeRTOS. This will allow the usage of trace facility functions such as uxTaskGetSystemState().

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS

Enable FreeRTOS stats formatting functions

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY

If enabled, configUSE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS will be defined as 1 in FreeRTOS. This will allow the usage of stats formatting functions such as vTaskList().

Default value:
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY

CONFIG_FREERTOS_VTASKLIST_INCLUDE_COREID

Enable display of xCoreID in vTaskList

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY > CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS
If enabled, this will include an extra column when vTaskList is called to display the CoreID the task is pinned to (0,1) or -1 if not pinned.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS`

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS**

Enable FreeRTOS to collect run time stats

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

If enabled, `configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS` will be defined as 1 in FreeRTOS. This will allow FreeRTOS to collect information regarding the usage of processor time amongst FreeRTOS tasks. Run time stats are generated using either the ESP Timer or the CPU Clock as the clock source (Note that run time stats are only valid until the clock source overflows). The function `vTaskGetRunTimeStats()` will also be available if `FREERTOS_USE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS` and `FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY` are enabled. `vTaskGetRunTimeStats()` will display the run time of each task as a % of the total run time of all CPUs (task run time / no of CPUs) / (total run time / 100)

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_RUN_TIME_STATS_CLK**

Choose the clock source for run time stats

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS*

Choose the clock source for FreeRTOS run time stats. Options are CPU0’s CPU Clock or the ESP Timer. Both clock sources are 32 bits. The CPU Clock can run at a higher frequency hence provide a finer resolution but will overflow much quicker. Note that run time stats are only valid until the clock source overflows.

**Available options:**
- Use ESP TIMER for run time stats (`FREERTOS_RUN_TIME_STATS_USING_ESP_TIMER`) ESP Timer will be used as the clock source for FreeRTOS run time stats. The ESP Timer runs at a frequency of 1MHz regardless of Dynamic Frequency Scaling. Therefore the ESP Timer will overflow in approximately 4290 seconds.
- Use CPU Clock for run time stats (`FREERTOS_RUN_TIME_STATS_USING_CPU_CLK`) CPU Clock will be used as the clock source for the generation of run time stats. The CPU Clock has a frequency dependent on `ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ` and Dynamic Frequency Scaling (DFS). Therefore the CPU Clock frequency can fluctuate between 80 to 240MHz. Run time stats generated using the CPU Clock represents the number of CPU cycles each task is allocated and DOES NOT reflect the amount of time each task runs for (as CPU clock frequency can change). If the CPU clock consistently runs at the maximum frequency of 240MHz, it will overflow in approximately 17 seconds.

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE**

Tickless idle support

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

If power management support is enabled, FreeRTOS will be able to put the system into light sleep mode when no tasks need to run for a number of ticks. This number can be set using `FREERTOS_IDLE_TIME_BEFORE_SLEEP` option. This feature is also known as “automatic light sleep”.

Note that timers created using esp_timer APIs may prevent the system from entering sleep mode, even when no tasks need to run. To skip unnecessary wake-up initialize a timer with the “skip_unhandled_events” option as true.
If disabled, automatic light sleep support will be disabled.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_PM_ENABLE`

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_IDLE_TIME_BEFORE_SLEEP**

Minimum number of ticks to enter sleep mode for

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE*

FreeRTOS will enter light sleep mode if no tasks need to run for this number of ticks.

**Range:**
- from 2 to 4294967295 if `CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE`

**Default value:**
- 3 if `CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE`

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_TASK_FUNCTION_WRAPPER**

Enclose all task functions in a wrapper function

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

If enabled, all FreeRTOS task functions will be enclosed in a wrapper function. If a task function mistakenly returns (i.e. does not delete), the call flow will return to the wrapper function. The wrapper function will then log an error and abort the application. This option is also required for GDB backtraces and C++ exceptions to work correctly inside top-level task functions.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_MUTEX_GIVEN_BY_OWNER**

Check that mutex semaphore is given by owner task

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

If enabled, assert that when a mutex semaphore is given, the task giving the semaphore is the task which is currently holding the mutex.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_PORT_CRITICAL_COMPILANCE**

Tests compliance with Vanilla FreeRTOS port*_.CRITICAL calls

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

If enabled, context of port*_.CRITICAL calls (ISR or Non-ISR) would be checked to be in compliance with Vanilla FreeRTOS. e.g Calling port*_.CRITICAL from ISR context would cause assert failure

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_PLACE_FUNCTIONS_INTO_FLASH**

Place FreeRTOS functions into Flash

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

When enabled the selected Non-ISR FreeRTOS functions will be placed into Flash memory instead of IRAM. This saves up to 8KB of IRAM depending on which functions are used.
**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_FPU_IN_ISR**

Allow use of float inside Level 1 ISR (EXPERIMENTAL)

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

When enabled, the usage of float type is allowed inside Level 1 ISRs.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_TASK_SNAPSHOT**

Enable task snapshot functions

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS*

When enabled, the functions related to snapshots, such as vTaskGetSnapshot or uxTaskGetSnapshotAll, are compiled and linked.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_FREERTOS_PLACE_SNAPSHOT_FUNS INTO_FLASH**

Place task snapshot functions into flash

*Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_TASK_SNAPSHOT*

When enabled, the functions related to snapshots, such as vTaskGetSnapshot or uxTaskGetSnapshotAll, will be placed in flash. Note that if enabled, these functions cannot be called when cache is disabled.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_TASK_SNAPSHOT && CONFIG_ESP_PANIC_HANDLER_I RAM

**Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) and Low Level (LL)**

Contains:

- **CONFIG_HAL_DEFAULT_ASSERTION_LEVEL**

**CONFIG_HAL_DEFAULT_ASSERTION_LEVEL**

Default HAL assertion level

*Found in: Component config > Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) and Low Level (LL)*

Set the assert behavior / level for HAL component. HAL component assert level can be set separately, but the level can’t exceed the system assertion level. e.g. If the system assertion is disabled, then the HAL assertion can’t be enabled either. If the system assertion is enable, then the HAL assertion can still be disabled by this Kconfig option.

**Available options:**
- Same as system assertion level (HAL_ASSERTION_EQUALS_SYSTEM)
- Disabled (HAL_ASSERTION_DISABLE)
- Silent (HAL_ASSERTION_SILENT)
- Enabled (HAL_ASSERTION_ENABLE)
Heap memory debugging  Contains:

- `CONFIG_HEAP_ABORT_WHEN_ALLOCATION_FAILS`
- `CONFIG_HEAP_TASK_TRACKING`
- `CONFIG_HEAP_CORRUPTION_DETECTION`
- `CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_DEST`
- `CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH`

**CONFIG_HEAP_CORRUPTION_DETECTION**

Heap corruption detection

*Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging*

Enable heap poisoning features to detect heap corruption caused by out-of-bounds access to heap memory.

See the “Heap Memory Debugging” page of the IDF documentation for a description of each level of heap corruption detection.

*Available options:*

- Basic (no poisoning) (HEAP_POISONING_DISABLED)
- Light impact (HEAP_POISONING_LIGHT)
- Comprehensive (HEAP_POISONING_COMPREHENSIVE)

**CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_DEST**

Heap tracing

*Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging*

Enables the heap tracing API defined in esp_heap_trace.h.

This function causes a moderate increase in IRAM code size and a minor increase in heap function (malloc/free/realloc) CPU overhead, even when the tracing feature is not used. So it’s best to keep it disabled unless tracing is being used.

*Available options:*

- Disabled (HEAP_TRACING_OFF)
- Standalone (HEAP_TRACING_STANDALONE)
- Host-based (HEAP_TRACING_TOHOST)

**CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH**

Heap tracing stack depth

*Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging*

Number of stack frames to save when tracing heap operation callers.

More stack frames uses more memory in the heap trace buffer (and slows down allocation), but can provide useful information.

**CONFIG_HEAP_TASK_TRACKING**

Enable heap task tracking

*Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging*

Enables tracking the task responsible for each heap allocation.

This function depends on heap poisoning being enabled and adds four more bytes of overhead for each block allocated.
**CONFIG_HEAP_ABORT_WHEN_ALLOCATION_FAILS**

Abort if memory allocation fails

*Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging*

When enabled, if a memory allocation operation fails it will cause a system abort.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**jsmn** Contains:
- `CONFIG_JSMN_PARENT_LINKS`
- `CONFIG_JSMN STRICT`

**CONFIG_JSMN_PARENT_LINKS**

Enable parent links

*Found in: Component config > jsmn*

You can access to parent node of parsed json

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_JSMN STRICT**

Enable strict mode

*Found in: Component config > jsmn*

In strict mode primitives are: numbers and booleans

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**libsodium** Contains:
- `CONFIG_LIBSODIUM_USE_MBEDTLS_SHA`

**CONFIG_LIBSODIUM_USE_MBEDTLS_SHA**

Use mbedTLS SHA256 & SHA512 implementations

*Found in: Component config > libsodium*

If this option is enabled, libsodium will use thin wrappers around mbedTLS for SHA256 & SHA512 operations.

This saves some code size if mbedTLS is also used. However it is incompatible with hardware SHA acceleration (due to the way libsodium’s API manages SHA state).

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**Log output** Contains:
- `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_LOG_TIMESTAMP_SOURCE`
- `CONFIG_LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_LOG_COLORS`
**CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL**

Default log verbosity

*Found in: Component config > Log output*

Specify how much output to see in logs by default. You can set lower verbosity level at runtime using `esp_log_level_set` function.

By default, this setting limits which log statements are compiled into the program. For example, selecting “Warning” would mean that changing log level to “Debug” at runtime will not be possible. To allow increasing log level above the default at runtime, see the next option.

**Available options:**

- No output (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_NONE)
- Error (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_ERROR)
- Warning (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_WARN)
- Info (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_INFO)
- Debug (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- Verbose (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

**CONFIG_LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL**

Maximum log verbosity

*Found in: Component config > Log output*

This config option sets the highest log verbosity that it’s possible to select at runtime by calling `esp_log_level_set()`. This level may be higher than the default verbosity level which is set when the app starts up.

This can be used enable debugging output only at a critical point, for a particular tag, or to minimize startup time but then enable more logs once the firmware has loaded.

Note that increasing the maximum available log level will increase the firmware binary size.

This option only applies to logging from the app, the bootloader log level is fixed at compile time to the separate “Bootloader log verbosity” setting.

**Available options:**

- Same as default (LOG_MAXIMUM_EQUALS_DEFAULT)
- Error (LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL_ERROR)
- Warning (LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL_WARN)
- Info (LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL_INFO)
- Debug (LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- Verbose (LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

**CONFIG_LOG_COLORS**

Use ANSI terminal colors in log output

*Found in: Component config > Log output*

Enable ANSI terminal color codes in bootloader output.

In order to view these, your terminal program must support ANSI color codes.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LOG_TIMESTAMP_SOURCE**

Log Timestamps

*Found in: Component config > Log output*
Choose what sort of timestamp is displayed in the log output:

- **Milliseconds since boot** is calculated from the RTOS tick count multiplied by the tick period. This time will reset after a software reboot. e.g. (90000)
- **System time** is taken from POSIX time functions which use the ESP32’s RTC and FRC1 timers to maintain an accurate time. The system time is initialized to 0 on startup, it can be set with an SNTP sync, or with POSIX time functions. This time will not reset after a software reboot. e.g. (00:01:30.000)
- **NOTE**: Currently this will not get used in logging from binary blobs (i.e WiFi & Bluetooth libraries), these will always print milliseconds since boot.

**Available options:**
- Milliseconds Since Boot (LOG_TIMESTAMP_SOURCE_RTOS)
- System Time (LOG_TIMESTAMP_SOURCE_SYSTEM)

**LWIP** Contains:

- **Checksums**
- **DHCP server**
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_OPTIONS_LEN`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DISABLE_CLIENT_ID`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DISABLE_VENDOR_CLASS_ID`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DOES_ARP_CHECK`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_RESTORE_LAST_IP`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_CHAP_SUPPORT`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_L2_TO_L3_COPY`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_IPv6_DHCP6`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_IP4_FRAG`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_FRAG`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_IP_FORWARD`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_NETBUF_RECVINFO`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_IPv6`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_ETHARP_TRUST_IP_MAC`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_LWIP_ASSERT`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_STATS`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_TIMERS_ONDEMAND`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_DNS_SUPPORT_MDNS_QUERIES`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MPPE_SUPPORT`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MSDCHP_SUPPORT`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_NOTIFY_PHASE_SUPPORT`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_PAP_SUPPORT`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_DEBUG_ON`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_IP4_REASSEMBLY`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_REASSEMBLY`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_SUPPORT`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_SO_LINGER`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_STATUS_CALLBACK`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_CORE_LOCKING`
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_API`
  - **Hooks**
  - **ICMP**
  - `CONFIG_LWIP_LOCAL_HOSTNAME`
Chapter 2. API

- **LWIP RAW API**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_NUM_NEIGHBORS**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_MEMP_NUM_ND6_QUEUE**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_SOCKETS**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_GRATUITOUS_ARP**
- **SNTP**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_LOOPBACK**
- **TCP**
  - **CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY**
  - **CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE**
  - **CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE**
- **UDP**
  - **CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_RDNSS_MAX_DNS_SERVERS**

**CONFIG_LWIP_LOCAL_HOSTNAME**

Local netif hostname

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

The default name this device will report to other devices on the network. Could be updated at runtime with esp_netif_set_hostname()

**Default value:**
- “espressif”

**CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_API**

Enable usage of standard POSIX APIs in LWIP

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

If this feature is enabled, standard POSIX APIs: if_indextoname(), if_nametoindex() could be used to convert network interface index to name instead of IDF specific esp-netif APIs (such as esp_netif_get_netif_impl_name())

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_CORE_LOCKING**

Enable tcpip core locking

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

If Enable tcpip core locking, creates a global mutex that is held during TCPIP thread operations. Can be locked by client code to perform lwIP operations without changing into TCPIP thread using callbacks. See LOCK_TCPIP_CORE() and UNLOCK_TCPIP_CORE().

If disable tcpip core locking, TCP IP will perform tasks through context switching.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_DNS_SUPPORT_MDNS_QUERIES**

Enable mDNS queries in resolving host name

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

If this feature is enabled, standard API such as gethostbyname support .local addresses by sending one shot multicast mDNS query
**CONFIG_LWIP_L2_TO_L3_COPY**

Enable copy between Layer2 and Layer3 packets

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

If this feature is enabled, all traffic from layer2 (WIFI Driver) will be copied to a new buffer before sending it to layer3 (LWIP stack), freeing the layer2 buffer. Please be notified that the total layer2 receiving buffer is fixed and ESP32 currently supports 25 layer2 receiving buffer, when layer2 buffer runs out of memory, then the incoming packets will be dropped in hardware. The layer3 buffer is allocated from the heap, so the total layer3 receiving buffer depends on the available heap size, when heap runs out of memory, no copy will be sent to layer3 and packet will be dropped in layer2. Please make sure you fully understand the impact of this feature before enabling it.

*Default value:*
  * Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION**

Enable LWIP IRAM optimization

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

If this feature is enabled, some functions relating to RX/TX in LWIP will be put into IRAM, it can improve UDP/TCP throughput by >10% for single core mode, it doesn’t help too much for dual core mode. On the other hand, it needs about 10KB IRAM for these optimizations.

If this feature is disabled, all lwip functions will be put into FLASH.

*Default value:*
  * No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_TIMERS_ONDEMAND**

Enable LWIP Timers on demand

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

If this feature is enabled, IGMP and MLD6 timers will be activated only when joining groups or receiving QUERY packets.

This feature will reduce the power consumption for applications which do not use IGMP and MLD6.

*Default value:*
  * Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_MAX SOCKETS**

Max number of open sockets

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Sockets take up a certain amount of memory, and allowing fewer sockets to be open at the same time conserves memory. Specify the maximum amount of sockets here. The valid value is from 1 to 16.

*Range:*
  * from 1 to 16

*Default value:*
  * 10
**CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT**

Support LWIP socket select() only (DEPRECATED)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

This option is deprecated. Use VFS_SUPPORT_SELECT instead, which is the inverse of this option. The virtual filesystem layer of select() redirects sockets to lwip_select() and non-socket file descriptors to their respective driver implementations. If this option is enabled then all calls of select() will be redirected to lwip_select(), therefore, select can be used for sockets only.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_SO_LINGER**

Enable SO_LINGER processing

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows SO_LINGER processing. l_onoff=1,l_linger can set the timeout.

If l_linger=0, When a connection is closed, TCP will terminate the connection. This means that TCP will discard any data packets stored in the socket send buffer and send an RST to the peer.

If l_linger!=0, Then closesocket() calls to block the process until the remaining data packets has been sent or timed out.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE**

Enable SO_REUSEADDR option

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows binding to a port which remains in TIME_WAIT.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE_RXTOALL**

SO_REUSEADDR copies broadcast/multicast to all matches

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE*

Enabling this option means that any incoming broadcast or multicast packet will be copied to all of the local sockets that it matches (may be more than one if SO_REUSEADDR is set on the socket.)

This increases memory overhead as the packets need to be copied, however they are only copied per matching socket. You can safely disable it if you don’t plan to receive broadcast or multicast traffic on more than one socket at a time.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_SO_RCVBUF**

Enable SO_RCVBUF option

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows checking for available data on a netconn.
Default value:
  • No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_NETBUF_RECVINFO**

Enable IP_PKTINFO option
*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows checking for the destination address of a received IPv4 Packet.

Default value:
  • No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_IP4_FRAG**

Enable fragment outgoing IP4 packets
*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows fragmenting outgoing IP4 packets if their size exceeds MTU.

Default value:
  • Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_FRAG**

Enable fragment outgoing IP6 packets
*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows fragmenting outgoing IP6 packets if their size exceeds MTU.

Default value:
  • Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_IP4_REASSEMBLY**

Enable reassembly incoming fragmented IP4 packets
*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows reassembling incoming fragmented IP4 packets.

Default value:
  • No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_REASSEMBLY**

Enable reassembly incoming fragmented IP6 packets
*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows reassembling incoming fragmented IP6 packets.

Default value:
  • No (disabled)
CONFIG_LWIP_IP_FORWARD
Enable IP forwarding

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows packets forwarding across multiple interfaces.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IPV4_NAPT
Enable NAT (new/experimental)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_IP_FORWARD*

Enabling this option allows Network Address and Port Translation.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_IP_FORWARD`

CONFIG_LWIP_STATS
Enable LWIP statistics

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows LWIP statistics

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_ETHARP_TRUST_IP_MAC
Enable LWIP ARP trust

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows ARP table to be updated.

If this option is enabled, the incoming IP packets cause the ARP table to be updated with the source MAC and IP addresses supplied in the packet. You may want to disable this if you do not trust LAN peers to have the correct addresses, or as a limited approach to attempt to handle spoofing. If disabled, lwIP will need to make a new ARP request if the peer is not already in the ARP table, adding a little latency. The peer “is” in the ARP table if it requested our address before. Also notice that this slows down input processing of every IP packet!

There are two known issues in real application if this feature is enabled: - The LAN peer may have bug to update the ARP table after the ARP entry is aged out. If the ARP entry on the LAN peer is aged out but failed to be updated, all IP packets sent from LWIP to the LAN peer will be dropped by LAN peer.
- The LAN peer may not be trustful, the LAN peer may send IP packets to LWIP with two different MACs, but the same IP address. If this happens, the LWIP has problem to receive IP packets from LAN peer.

So the recommendation is to disable this option. Here the LAN peer means the other side to which the ESP station or soft-AP is connected.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
Chapter 2. API 参考

**CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_GRATUITOUS_ARP**

Send gratuitous ARP periodically

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enable this option allows to send gratuitous ARP periodically.

This option solve the compatibility issues. If the ARP table of the AP is old, and the AP doesn’t send ARP request to update its ARP table, this will lead to the STA sending IP packet fail. Thus we send gratuitous ARP periodically to let AP update its ARP table.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_GARP_TMR_INTERVAL**

GARP timer interval(seconds)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_GRATUITOUS_ARP*

Set the timer interval for gratuitous ARP. The default value is 60s

**Default value:**

- 60

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE**

TCPIP task receive mail box size

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Set TCPIP task receive mail box size. Generally bigger value means higher throughput but more memory. The value should be bigger than UDP/TCP mail box size.

**Range:**

- from 6 to 64 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*
- from 6 to 1024 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

**Default value:**

- 32

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DOES_ARP_CHECK**

DHCP: Perform ARP check on any offered address

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option performs a check (via ARP request) if the offered IP address is not already in use by another host on the network.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DISABLE_CLIENT_ID**

DHCP: Disable Use of HW address as client identification

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

This option could be used to disable DHCP client identification with its MAC address. (Client id is used by DHCP servers to uniquely identify clients and are included in the DHCP packets as an option 61) Set this option to “y” in order to exclude option 61 from DHCP packets.

**Default value:**

- No (disabled)
**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DISABLE_VENDOR_CLASS_ID**

DHCP: Disable Use of vendor class identification

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

This option could be used to disable DHCP client vendor class identification. Set this option to “y” in order to exclude option 60 from DHCP packets.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_RESTORE_LAST_IP**

DHCP: Restore last IP obtained from DHCP server

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

When this option is enabled, DHCP client tries to re-obtain last valid IP address obtained from DHCP server. Last valid DHCP configuration is stored in nvs and restored after reset/power-up. If IP is still available, there is no need for sending discovery message to DHCP server and save some time.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_OPTIONS_LEN**

DHCP total option length

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Set total length of outgoing DHCP option msg. Generally bigger value means it can carry more options and values. If your code meets LWIP_ASSERT due to option value is too long. Please increase the LWIP_DHCP_OPTIONS_LEN value.

**Range:**
- from 68 to 255

**Default value:**
- 68

**DHCP server**  Contains:

- **CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS**

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS**

DHCP: Enable IPv4 Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Server (DHCPS)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > DHCP server*

Enabling this option allows the device to run the DHCP server (to dynamically assign IPv4 addresses to clients).

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS_LEASE_UNIT**

Multiplier for lease time, in seconds

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > DHCP server > CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS*

The DHCP server is calculating lease time multiplying the sent and received times by this number of seconds per unit. The default is 60, that equals one minute.
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS_MAX_STATION_NUM**

Maximum number of stations

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > DHCP server > CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS*

The maximum number of DHCP clients that are connected to the server. After this number is exceeded, DHCP server removes of the oldest device from it’s address pool, without notification.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 3600

**Default value:**
- 60

**CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP**

Enable IPV4 Link-Local Addressing (AUTOIP)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows the device to self-assign an address in the 169.256/16 range if none is assigned statically or via DHCP.

See RFC 3927.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**Contains:**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_TRIES**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_MAX_CONFLICTS**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_RATE_LIMIT_INTERVAL**

**CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_TRIES**

DHCP Probes before self-assigning IPv4 LL address

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

DHCP client will send this many probes before self-assigning a link local address.

From LWIP help: "This can be set as low as 1 to get an AutoIP address very quickly, but you should be prepared to handle a changing IP address when DHCP overrides AutoIP." (In the case of ESP-IDF, this means multiple SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP events.)

**Range:**
- from 1 to 100 if **CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP**

**Default value:**
- 2 if **CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP**

**CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_MAX_CONFLICTS**

Max IP conflicts before rate limiting

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

If the AUTOIP functionality detects this many IP conflicts while self-assigning an address, it will go into a rate limited mode.
**Range:**
- from 1 to 100 if `CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP`

**Default value:**
- 9 if `CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP`

**CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_RATELIMIT_INTERVAL**
Rate limited interval (seconds)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

If rate limiting self-assignment requests, wait this long between each request.

**Range:**
- from 5 to 120 if `CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP`

**Default value:**
- 20 if `CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP`

**CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6**
Enable IPv6

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enable IPv6 function. If not use IPv6 function, set this option to n. If disabling LWIP_IPV6 then some other components (coap and asio) will no longer be available.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_AUTOCONFIG**
Enable IPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6*

Enabling this option allows the devices to IPV6 stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC).

See RFC 4862.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_NUM_ADDRESSES**
Number of IPv6 addresses on each network interface

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6*

The maximum number of IPv6 addresses on each interface. Any additional addresses will be discarded.

**Default value:**
- 3

**CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_FORWARD**
Enable IPv6 forwarding between interfaces

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6*

Forwarding IPv6 packets between interfaces is only required when acting as a router.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_RDNSS_MAX_DNS_SERVERS

Use IPv6 Router Advertisement Recursive DNS Server Option

*Found in:* Component config > LWIP

Use IPv6 Router Advertisement Recursive DNS Server Option (as per RFC 6106) to copy a defined maximum number of DNS servers to the DNS module. Set this option to a number of desired DNS servers advertised in the RA protocol. This feature is disabled when set to 0.

**Default value:**
- 0 if CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_AUTOCONFIG

CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_DHCP6

Enable DHCPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration

*Found in:* Component config > LWIP

Enable DHCPv6 for IPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration. Note that the dhcpv6 client has to be started using dhcp6_enable_stateless(netif); Note that the stateful address autoconfiguration is not supported.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_AUTOCONFIG

CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_STATUS_CALLBACK

Enable status callback for network interfaces

*Found in:* Component config > LWIP

Enable callbacks when the network interface is up/down and addresses are changed.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_LOOPBACK

Support per-interface loopback

*Found in:* Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option means that if a packet is sent with a destination address equal to the interface’s own IP address, it will “loop back” and be received by this interface.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**Contains:**
- CONFIG_LWIP_LOOPBACK_MAX_PBUFS

CONFIG_LWIP_LOOPBACK_MAX_PBUFS

Max queued loopback packets per interface

*Found in:* Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_LOOPBACK

Configure the maximum number of packets which can be queued for loopback on a given interface. Reducing this number may cause packets to be dropped, but will avoid filling memory with queued packet data.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 16

**Default value:**
Chapter 2. API

TCP Contains:
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RTO_TIME`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_ACTIVE_TCP`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_LISTENING_TCP`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MAXRTX`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SYNMAXRTX`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSL`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSS`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_QUEUE_OOSEQ`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SACK_OUT`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_HIGH_SPEED_RETRANSMISSION`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_TMR_INTERVAL`

**CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_ACTIVE_TCP**

Maximum active TCP Connections

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

The maximum number of simultaneously active TCP connections. The practical maximum limit is determined by available heap memory at runtime.

Changing this value by itself does not substantially change the memory usage of LWIP, except for preventing new TCP connections after the limit is reached.

*Range:*
- from 1 to 1024

*Default value:*
- 16

**CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_LISTENING_TCP**

Maximum listening TCP Connections

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

The maximum number of simultaneously listening TCP connections. The practical maximum limit is determined by available heap memory at runtime.

Changing this value by itself does not substantially change the memory usage of LWIP, except for preventing new listening TCP connections after the limit is reached.

*Range:*
- from 1 to 1024

*Default value:*
- 16

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_HIGH_SPEED_RETRANSMISSION**

TCP high speed retransmissions

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*
Speed up the TCP retransmission interval. If disabled, it is recommended to change the number of SYN retransmissions to 6, and TCP initial rto time to 3000.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MAXRTX**

Maximum number of retransmissions of data segments

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set maximum number of retransmissions of data segments.

**Range:**
- from 3 to 12

**Default value:**
- 12

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SYNMAXRTX**

Maximum number of retransmissions of SYN segments

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set maximum number of retransmissions of SYN segments.

**Range:**
- from 3 to 12

**Default value:**
- 6
- 12

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSS**

Maximum Segment Size (MSS)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set maximum segment size for TCP transmission.

Can be set lower to save RAM, the default value 1460(ipv4)/1440(ipv6) will give best throughput. IPv4

TCP_MSS Range: 576 <= TCP_MSS <= 1460
IPv6 TCP_MSS Range: 1220 <= TCP_mSS <= 1440

**Range:**
- from 536 to 1460

**Default value:**
- 1440

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_TMR_INTERVAL**

TCP timer interval (ms)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set TCP timer interval in milliseconds.

Can be used to speed connections on bad networks. A lower value will redeliver unacked packets faster.

**Default value:**
- 250
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSL**

Maximum segment lifetime (MSL)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set maximum segment lifetime in milliseconds.

**Default value:**
- 60000

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT**

Default send buffer size

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set default send buffer size for new TCP sockets.

Per-socket send buffer size can be changed at runtime with lwip_setsockopt(s, TCP_SNDBUF, ...).

This value must be at least 2x the MSS size, and the default is 4x the default MSS size.

Setting a smaller default SNDBUF size can save some RAM, but will decrease performance.

**Range:**
- from 2440 to 65535 if `CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE`
- from 2440 to 1024000 if `CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE`

**Default value:**
- 5744

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT**

Default receive window size

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set default TCP receive window size for new TCP sockets.

Per-socket receive window size can be changed at runtime with lwip_setsockopt(s, TCP_WINDOW, ...).

Setting a smaller default receive window size can save some RAM, but will significantly decrease performance.

**Range:**
- from 2440 to 65535 if `CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE`
- from 2440 to 1024000 if `CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE`

**Default value:**
- 5744

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE**

Default TCP receive mailbox size

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set TCP receive mailbox size. Generally bigger value means higher throughput but more memory. The recommended value is: `LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT/TCP_MSS + 2`, e.g. if `LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT=14360`, `TCP_MSS=1436`, then the recommended receive mailbox size is `(14360/1436 + 2) = 12`.

TCP receive mailbox is a per socket mail box, when the application receives packets from TCP socket, LWIP core firstly posts the packets to TCP receive mailbox and the application then fetches the packets from mail box. It means LWIP can caches maximum `LWIP_TCP_RECCVMBOX_SIZE` packets for each TCP socket, so the maximum possible cached TCP packets for all TCP sockets is...
LWIP_TCP_RECCVMBOX_SIZE multiples the maximum TCP socket number. In other words, the bigger LWIP_TCP_RECCVMBOX_SIZE means more memory. On the other hand, if the receive mail box is too small, the mail box may be full. If the mail box is full, the LWIP drops the packets. So generally we need to make sure the TCP receive mail box is big enough to avoid packet drop between LWIP core and application.

Range:
- from 6 to 64 if CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE
- from 6 to 1024 if CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE

Default value:
- 6

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_QUEUE_OOSEQ**
Queue incoming out-of-order segments

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*
Queue incoming out-of-order segments for later use.
Disable this option to save some RAM during TCP sessions, at the expense of increased retransmissions if segments arrive out of order.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SACK_OUT**
Support sending selective acknowledgements

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*
TCP will support sending selective acknowledgements (SACKs).

Default value:
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES**
Keep TCP connections when IP changed

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*
This option is enabled when the following scenario happen: network dropped and reconnected, IP changes is like: 192.168.0.2->0.0.0.0->192.168.0.2
Disable this option to keep consistent with the original LWIP code behavior.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE**
Pre-allocate transmit PBUF size

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*
Allows enabling “oversize” allocation of TCP transmission pbufs ahead of time, which can reduce the length of pbuf chains used for transmission.
This will not make a difference to sockets where Nagle’s algorithm is disabled.
Default value of MSS is fine for most applications, 25% MSS may save some RAM when only transmitting small amounts of data. Disabled will have worst performance and fragmentation characteristics, but uses least RAM overall.
Available options:
- MSS (LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE_MSS)
- 25% MSS (LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE_QUARTER_MSS)
- Disabled (LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE_DISABLE)

**CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE**

Support TCP window scale

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Enable this feature to support TCP window scaling.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP`

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RCV_SCALE**

Set TCP receiving window scaling factor

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP > CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

Enable this feature to support TCP window scaling.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 14 if `CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE`

**Default value:**
- 0 if `CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE`

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RTO_TIME**

Default TCP rto time

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP*

Set default TCP rto time for a reasonable initial rto. In bad network environment, recommend set value of rto time to 1500.

**Default value:**
- 3000
- 1500

**UDP** Contains:

- `CONFIG_LWIP_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_UDP_PCBS`

**CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_UDP_PCBS**

Maximum active UDP control blocks

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > UDP*

The maximum number of active UDP "connections" (ie UDP sockets sending/receiving data). The practical maximum limit is determined by available heap memory at runtime.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 1024

**Default value:**
- 16
**CONFIG_LWIP_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE**

Default UDP receive mail box size

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > UDP*

Set UDP receive mail box size. The recommended value is 6.

UDP receive mail box is a per socket mail box, when the application receives packets from UDP socket, LWIP core firstly posts the packets to UDP receive mail box and the application then fetches the packets from mail box. It means LWIP can caches maximum UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE packets for each UDP socket, so the maximum possible cached UDP packets for all UDP sockets is UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE multiples the maximum UDP socket number. In other words, the bigger UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE means more memory. On the other hand, if the receiv mail box is too small, the mail box may be full. If the mail box is full, the LWIP drops the packets. So generally we need to make sure the UDP receive mail box is big enough to avoid packet drop between LWIP core and application.

**Range:**
- from 6 to 64

**Default value:**
- 6

**Checksums**

Contains:
- `CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_ICMP`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_IP`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_UDP`

**CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_IP**

Enable LWIP IP checksums

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > Checksums*

Enable checksum checking for received IP messages

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_UDP**

Enable LWIP UDP checksums

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > Checksums*

Enable checksum checking for received UDP messages

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_ICMP**

Enable LWIP ICMP checksums

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > Checksums*

Enable checksum checking for received ICMP messages

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)
CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE
TCP/IP Task Stack Size

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Configure TCP/IP task stack size, used by LWIP to process multi-threaded TCP/IP operations. Setting this stack too small will result in stack overflow crashes.

**Range:**
- from 2048 to 65536

**Default value:**
- 3072

CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY
TCP/IP task affinity

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Allows setting LwIP tasks affinity, i.e. whether the task is pinned to CPU0, pinned to CPU1, or allowed to run on any CPU. Currently this applies to “TCP/IP” task and “Ping” task.

**Available options:**
- No affinity (LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY)
- CPU0 (LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0)
- CPU1 (LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1)

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT
Enable PPP support (new/experimental)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enable PPP stack. Now only PPP over serial is possible. PPP over serial support is experimental and unsupported.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

Contains:
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_ENABLE_IPV6*

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_ENABLE_IPV6
Enable IPv6 support for PPP connections (IPV6CP)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*

Enable IPv6 support in PPP for the local link between the DTE (processor) and DCE (modem). There are some modems which do not support the IPv6 addressing in the local link. If they are requested for IPV6CP negotiation, they may time out. This would in turn fail the configuration for the whole link. If your modem is not responding correctly to PPP Phase Network, try to disable IPv6 support.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT* && *CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6*

CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_MEMP_NUM_ND6_QUEUE
Max number of IPv6 packets to queue during MAC resolution

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Config max number of IPv6 packets to queue during MAC resolution.
### Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_ND6_NUM_NEIGHBORS**

- **Description:** Max number of entries in IPv6 neighbor cache
- **Found in:** Component config > LWIP
- **Default value:**
  - No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT`

**CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_NOTIFY_PHASE_SUPPORT**

- **Description:** Enable Notify Phase Callback
- **Found in:** Component config > LWIP
- **Default value:**
  - No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT`

**CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_PAP_SUPPORT**

- **Description:** Enable PAP support
- **Found in:** Component config > LWIP
- **Default value:**
  - No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT`

**CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_CHAP_SUPPORT**

- **Description:** Enable CHAP support
- **Found in:** Component config > LWIP
- **Default value:**
  - No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT`

**CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MSCHAP_SUPPORT**

- **Description:** Enable MSCHAP support
- **Found in:** Component config > LWIP
- **Default value:**
  - No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT`
CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MPPE_SUPPORT
Enable MPPE support

Found in: Component config > LWIP
Enable Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption (MPPE) support

Default value:
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT

CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO
Enable LCP ECHO

Found in: Component config > LWIP
Enable LCP echo keepalive requests

Default value:
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT

CONFIG_LWIP_LCP_ECHO_INTERVAL
Echo interval (s)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO
Interval in seconds between keepalive LCP echo requests, 0 to disable.

Range:
- from 0 to 1000000 if CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO

Default value:
- 3 if CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO

CONFIG_LWIP_LCP_MAX_ECHO_FAILURES
Maximum echo failures

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO
Number of consecutive unanswered echo requests before failure is indicated.

Range:
- from 0 to 100000 if CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO

Default value:
- 3 if CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_DEBUG_ON
Enable PPP debug log output

Found in: Component config > LWIP
Enable PPP debug log output

Default value:
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT
CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_SUPPORT
Enable SLIP support (new/experimental)

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable SLIP stack. Now only SLIP over serial is possible.
SLIP over serial support is experimental and unsupported.

Default value:
• No (disabled)

Contains:
• CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_DEBUG_ON

CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_DEBUG_ON
Enable SLIP debug log output

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_SUPPORT

Enable SLIP debug log output

Default value:
• No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_SUPPORT

ICMP  Contains:
• CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP
• CONFIG_LWIP_BROADCAST_PING
• CONFIG_LWIP_MULTICAST_PING

CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP
ICMP: Enable ICMP

Found in: Component config > LWIP > ICMP

Enable ICMP module for check network stability

Default value:
• Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_MULTICAST_PING
Respond to multicast pings

Found in: Component config > LWIP > ICMP

Default value:
• No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_BROADCAST_PING
Respond to broadcast pings

Found in: Component config > LWIP > ICMP

Default value:
• No (disabled)
LWIP RAW API  Contains:

- `CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_RAW_PCBS`

**CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_RAW_PCBS**

Maximum LWIP RAW PCBs

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > LWIP RAW API*

The maximum number of simultaneously active LWIP RAW protocol control blocks. The practical maximum limit is determined by available heap memory at runtime.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 1024

**Default value:**
- 16

SNTP  Contains:

- `CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_MAX_SERVERS`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY`
- `CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_GET_NTP_SRV`

**CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_MAX_SERVERS**

Maximum number of NTP servers

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > SNTP*

Set maximum number of NTP servers used by LwIP SNTP module. First argument of snntp_setserver/snntp_setservername functions is limited to this value.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 16

**Default value:**
- 1

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_GET_NTP_SRV**

Request NTP servers from DHCP

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > SNTP*

If enabled, LWIP will add ‘NTP’ to Parameter-Request Option sent via DHCP-request. DHCP server might reply with an NTP server address in option 42. SNTP callback for such replies should be set accordingly (see snntp_servermode_dhcp() func.)

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_MAX_NTP_SERVERS**

Maximum number of NTP servers acquired via DHCP

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > SNTP > CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_GET_NTP_SRV*

Set maximum number of NTP servers acquired via DHCP-offer. Should be less or equal to “Maximum number of NTP servers”, any extra servers would be just ignored.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 16 if `CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_GET_NTP_SRV`

**Default value:**
- 1 if `CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_GET_NTP_SRV`
CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY

Request interval to update time (ms)

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > SNTP*

This option allows you to set the time update period via SNTP. Default is 1 hour. Must not be below 15 seconds by specification. (SNTPv4 RFC 4330 enforces a minimum update time of 15 seconds).

*Range:*
- from 15000 to 4294967295

*Default value:*
- 3600000

CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_LWIP_ASSERT

Enable LWIP ASSERT checks

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enable this option keeps LWIP assertion checks enabled. It is recommended to keep this option enabled. If asserts are disabled for the entire project, they are also disabled for LWIP and this option is ignored.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled) if COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_DISABLE

Hooks

Contains:
- CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_ND6_GET_GW
- CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE
- CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXTERNAL_RESOLVE
- CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN

CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN

TCP ISN Hook

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > Hooks*

Enables to define a TCP ISN hook to randomize initial sequence number in TCP connection. The default TCP ISN algorithm used in IDF (standardized in RFC 6528) produces ISN by combining an MD5 of the new TCP id and a stable secret with the current time. This is because the lwIP implementation (tcp_next_iss) is not very strong, as it does not take into consideration any platform specific entropy source.

Set to LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_CUSTOM to provide custom implementation. Set to LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_NONE to use lwIP implementation.

*Available options:*
- No hook declared (LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_NONE)
- Default implementation (LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_DEFAULT)
- Custom implementation (LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_CUSTOM)

CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE

IPv6 route Hook

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > Hooks*

Enables custom IPv6 route hook. Setting this to “default” provides weak implementation stub that could be overwritten in application code. Setting this to “custom” provides hook’s declaration only and expects the application to implement it.

*Available options:*

• No hook declared (LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE_NONE)
• Default (weak) implementation (LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE_DEFAULT)
• Custom implementation (LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE_CUSTOM)

**CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_ND6_STEP_DOWN**
IPv6 get gateway Hook

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > Hooks*

Enables custom IPv6 route hook. Setting this to “default” provides weak implementation stub that could be overwritten in application code. Setting this to “custom” provides hook’s declaration only and expects the application to implement it.

**Available options:**
- No hook declared (LWIP_HOOK_ND6_GET_GW_NONE)
- Default (weak) implementation (LWIP_HOOK_ND6_GET_GW_DEFAULT)
- Custom implementation (LWIP_HOOK_ND6_GET_GW_CUSTOM)

**CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXTERNAL_RESOLVE**
Netconn external resolve Hook

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > Hooks*

Enables custom DNS resolve hook. Setting this to “default” provides weak implementation stub that could be overwritten in application code. Setting this to “custom” provides hook’s declaration only and expects the application to implement it.

**Available options:**
- No hook declared (LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXT_RESOLVE_NONE)
- Default (weak) implementation (LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXT_RESOLVE_DEFAULT)
- Custom implementation (LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXT_RESOLVE_CUSTOM)

**CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG**
Enable LWIP Debug

*Found in: Component config > LWIP*

Enabling this option allows different kinds of lwIP debug output.

All lwIP debug features increase the size of the final binary.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

Contains:

- CONFIG_LWIP_API_LIB_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_STATE_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_ETHARP_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP6_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_IP_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_PBUF_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_SOCKETS_DEBUG
- CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_DEBUG
CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_DEBUG

Enable netif debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

CONFIG_LWIP_PBUF_DEBUG

Enable pbuf debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

CONFIG_LWIP_ETHARP_DEBUG

Enable etharp debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

CONFIG_LWIP_API_LIB_DEBUG

Enable api lib debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

CONFIG_LWIP_SOCKETS_DEBUG

Enable socket debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

CONFIG_LWIP_IP_DEBUG

Enable IP debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP_DEBUG

Enable ICMP debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG & & CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP
Chapter 2. API Reference

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_STATE_DEBUG**
Enable DHCP state tracking

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG`

**CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DEBUG**
Enable DHCP debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG`

**CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_DEBUG**
Enable IPv6 debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG`

**CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP6_DEBUG**
Enable ICMPv6 debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG`

**CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_DEBUG**
Enable TCP debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG`

**CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_DEBUG**
Enable SNTP debug messages

*Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG`

**mbedTLS**
Contains:
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLSASYMMETRICCONTENTLEN`
- Certificate Bundle
- Certificates
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLSCHACHA20_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLSDHM_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDH_C`
Chapter 2. API

- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP256R1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP384R1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP512R1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CMAC_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_CURVE25519_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDSA_DETERMINISTIC
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_AES
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_MPI
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_SHA
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEBUG
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_RESTARTABLE
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192K1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192R1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224K1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224R1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256K1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256R1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP384R1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP521R1_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SHA512_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CHECK_EXTENDED_KEY_USAGE
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CHECK_KEY_USAGE
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_LARGE_KEY_SOFTWARE_MPI
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HKDF_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_SSL3
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_MEM_ALLOC_MODE
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CLIENT_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SERVER_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ROM_MD5
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_MEM_ALLOC_MODE**

Memory allocation strategy

*Found in:* Component config > mbedTLS

Allocation strategy for mbedTLS, essentially provides ability to allocate all required dynamic allocations from,
Chapter 2. API

- Internal DRAM memory only
- External SPIRAM memory only
- Either internal or external memory based on default malloc() behavior in ESP-IDF
- Custom allocation mode, by overwriting calloc()/free() using mbedtls_platform_set_calloc_free() function
- Internal IRAM memory wherever applicable else internal DRAM

Recommended mode here is always internal (*), since that is most preferred from security perspective. But if application requirement does not allow sufficient free internal memory then alternate mode can be selected.

(*) In case of ESP32-S2/ESP32-S3, hardware allows encryption of external SPIRAM contents provided hardware flash encryption feature is enabled. In that case, using external SPIRAM allocation strategy is also safe choice from security perspective.

Available options:
- Internal memory (MBEDTLS_INTERNAL_MEM_ALLOC)
- External SPIRAM (MBEDTLS_EXTERNAL_MEM_ALLOC)
- Default alloc mode (MBEDTLS_DEFAULT_MEM_ALLOC)
- Custom alloc mode (MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_MEM_ALLOC)
- Internal IRAM (MBEDTLS_IRAM_8BIT_MEM_ALLOC) Allows to use IRAM memory region as 8bit accessible region.

TLS input and output buffers will be allocated in IRAM section which is 32bit aligned memory. Every unaligned (8bit or 16bit) access will result in an exception and incur penalty of certain clock cycles per unaligned read/write.

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_MAX_CONTENT_LEN

TLS maximum message content length

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Maximum TLS message length (in bytes) supported by mbedTLS.

16384 is the default and this value is required to comply fully with TLS standards.

However you can set a lower value in order to save RAM. This is safe if the other end of the connection supports Maximum Fragment Length Negotiation Extension (max_fragment_length, see RFC6066) or you know for certain that it will never send a message longer than a certain number of bytes.

If the value is set too low, symptoms are a failed TLS handshake or a return value of MBEDTLS_ERR_SSL_INVALID_RECORD (-0x7200).

*Range:*
- from 512 to 16384

*Default value:*
- 16384

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ASYMMETRIC_CONTENT_LEN

Asymmetric in/out fragment length

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

If enabled, this option allows customizing TLS in/out fragment length in asymmetric way. Please note that enabling this with default values saves 12KB of dynamic memory per TLS connection.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_IN_CONTENT_LEN
TLS maximum incoming fragment length

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLSASYMMETRICCONTENT_LEN*

This defines maximum incoming fragment length, overriding default maximum content length (MBEDTLS_SSL_MAXCONTENT_LEN).

**Range:**
- from 512 to 16384

**Default value:**
- 16384

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_OUT_CONTENT_LEN**

TLS maximum outgoing fragment length

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLSASYMMETRICCONTENT_LEN*

This defines maximum outgoing fragment length, overriding default maximum content length (MBEDTLS_SSL_MAXCONTENT_LEN).

**Range:**
- from 512 to 16384

**Default value:**
- 4096

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER**

Using dynamic TX/RX buffer

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Using dynamic TX/RX buffer. After enabling this option, mbedTLS will allocate TX buffer when need to send data and then free it if all data is sent, allocate RX buffer when need to receive data and then free it when all data is used or read by upper layer.

By default, when SSL is initialized, mbedTLS also allocate TX and RX buffer with the default value of “MBEDTLS_SSL_OUTCONTENT_LEN” or “MBEDTLS_SSL_INCONTENT_LEN”, so to save more heap, users can set the options to be an appropriate value.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_PEER_CERT**

Free SSL peer certificate after its usage

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER*

Free peer certificate after its usage in handshake process.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_CONFIG_DATA**

Free private key and DHM data after its usage

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER*

Free private key and DHM data after its usage in handshake process.

The option will decrease heap cost when handshake, but also lead to problem: Because all certificate, private key and DHM data are freed so users should register certificate and private key to ssl config object again.
Chapter 2. API

Default value:
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER`

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_CA_CERT**

Free SSL ca certificate after its usage

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE.CONFIG_DATA*

Free ca certificate after its usage in the handshake process. This option will decrease the heap footprint for the TLS handshake, but may lead to a problem: If the respective ssl object needs to perform the TLS handshake again, the ca certificate should once again be registered to the ssl object.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_CONFIG_DATA`

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEBUG**

Enable mbedtls debugging

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls*

Enable mbedtls debugging functions at compile time.

If this option is enabled, you can include "mbedtls/esp_debug.h" and call mbedtlsesp_enable_debug_log() at runtime in order to enable mbedtls debug output via the ESP log mechanism.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL**

Set mbedtls debugging level

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEBUG*

Set mbedtls debugging level

Available options:
- Warning (MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL_WARN)
- Info (MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL_INFO)
- Debug (MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- Verbose (MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

**Certificate Bundle**  Contains:

- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE`

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE**

Enable trusted root certificate bundle

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls > Certificate Bundle*

Enable support for large number of default root certificates

When enabled this option allows user to store default as well as customer specific root certificates in compressed format rather than storing full certificate. For the root certificates the public key and the subject name will be stored.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEFAULT_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Default certificate bundle options

*Found in:* Component config > mbedtls > Certificate Bundle > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEFAULT_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

**Available options:**
- Use the full default certificate bundle (MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_DEFAULT_FULL)
- Use only the most common certificates from the default bundles (MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_DEFAULT_CMN)
  
  Use only the most common certificates from the default bundles, reducing the size with 50%, while still having around 99% coverage.
- Do not use the default certificate bundle (MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_DEFAULT_NONE)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Add custom certificates to the default bundle

*Found in:* Component config > mbedtls > Certificate Bundle > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_PATH

Custom certificate bundle path

*Found in:* Component config > mbedtls > Certificate Bundle > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Name of the custom certificate directory or file. This path is evaluated relative to the project root directory.

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_RESTARTABLE

Enable mbedtls ecp restartable

*Found in:* Component config > mbedtls

Enable “non-blocking” ECC operations that can return early and be resumed.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CMAC_C

Enable CMAC mode for block ciphers

*Found in:* Component config > mbedtls

Enable the CMAC (Cipher-based Message Authentication Code) mode for block ciphers.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_AES

Enable hardware AES acceleration

*Found in:* Component config > mbedtls

Enable hardware accelerated AES encryption & decryption.
Note that if the ESP32 CPU is running at 240MHz, hardware AES does not offer any speed boost over software AES.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_DUPLDST

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_MPI**

Enable hardware MPI (bignum) acceleration

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable hardware accelerated multiple precision integer operations.

Hardware accelerated multiplication, modulo multiplication, and modular exponentiation for up to 4096 bit results.

These operations are used by RSA.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_DUPLDST

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_SHA**

Enable hardware SHA acceleration

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable hardware accelerated SHA1, SHA256, SHA384 & SHA512 in mbedTLS.

Due to a hardware limitation, on the ESP32 hardware acceleration is only guaranteed if SHA digests are calculated one at a time. If more than one SHA digest is calculated at the same time, one will be calculated fully in hardware and the rest will be calculated (at least partially calculated) in software. This happens automatically.

SHA hardware acceleration is faster than software in some situations but slower in others. You should benchmark to find the best setting for you.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_DUPLDST

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ROM_MD5**

Use MD5 implementation in ROM

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Use ROM MD5 in mbedTLS.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN**

Enable hardware ECDSA sign acceleration when using ATECC608A

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

This option enables hardware acceleration for ECDSA sign function, only when using ATECC608A cryptoauth chip (integrated with ESP32-WROOM-32SE)

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY

Enable hardware ECDSA verify acceleration when using ATECC608A

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

This option enables hardware acceleration for ECDSA sign function, only when using ATECC608A cryptoauth chip (integrated with ESP32-WROOM-32SE)

Default value:
  • No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME

Enable mbedtls time support

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable use of time.h functions (time() and gmtime()) by mbedTLS.

This option doesn’t require the system time to be correct, but enables functionality that requires relative timekeeping - for example periodic expiry of TLS session tickets or session cache entries.

Disabling this option will save some firmware size, particularly if the rest of the firmware doesn’t call any standard timekeeping functions.

Default value:
  • Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME_DATE

Enable mbedtls certificate expiry check

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME

Enables X.509 certificate expiry checks in mbedTLS.

If this option is disabled (default) then X.509 certificate “valid from” and “valid to” timestamp fields are ignored.

If this option is enabled, these fields are compared with the current system date and time. The time is retrieved using the standard time() and gmtime() functions. If the certificate is not valid for the current system time then verification will fail with code MBEDTLS_X509_BADCERT_FUTURE or MBEDTLS_X509_BADCERT_EXPIRED.

Enabling this option requires adding functionality in the firmware to set the system clock to a valid timestamp before using TLS. The recommended way to do this is via ESP-IDF’s SNTP functionality, but any method can be used.

In the case where only a small number of certificates are trusted by the device, please carefully consider the tradeoffs of enabling this option. There may be undesired consequences, for example if all trusted certificates expire while the device is offline and a TLS connection is required to update. Or if an issue with the SNTP server means that the system time is invalid for an extended period after a reset.

Default value:
  • No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDSA_DETERMINISTIC

Enable deterministic ECDSA

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Standard ECDSA is “fragile” in the sense that lack of entropy when signing may result in a compromise of the long-term signing key.

Default value:
• Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SHA512_C**
Enable the SHA-384 and SHA-512 cryptographic hash algorithms

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*
Enable MBEDTLS_SHA512_C adds support for SHA-384 and SHA-512.

*Default value:*
  • Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_TLS_MODE**
TLS Protocol Role

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*
mbedtls can be compiled with protocol support for the TLS server, TLS client, or both server and client.

Reducing the number of TLS roles supported saves code size.

*Available options:*
  • Server & Client (MBEDTLS_TLS_SERVER_AND_CLIENT)
  • Server (MBEDTLS_TLS_SERVER_ONLY)
  • Client (MBEDTLS_TLS_CLIENT_ONLY)
  • None (MBEDTLS_TLS_DISABLED)

**TLS Key Exchange Methods**  Contains:

  • CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_DHE_RSA
  • CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECJPAKE
  • CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES
  • CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_RSA
  • CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES**
Enable pre-shared-key ciphersuites

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods*
Enable to show configuration for different types of pre-shared-key TLS authentication methods.

Leaving this options disabled will save code size if they are not used.

*Default value:*
  • No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_PSK**
Enable PSK based ciphersuite modes

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES*
Enable to support symmetric key PSK (pre-shared-key) TLS key exchange modes.

*Default value:*
  • No (disabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_DHE_PSK
Enable DHE-PSK based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES
Enable to support Diffie-Hellman PSK (pre-shared-key) TLS authentication modes.

Default value:
• Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES && CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DHM_C

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDHE_PSK
Enable ECDHE-PSK based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES
Enable to support Elliptic-Curve-Diffie-Hellman PSK (pre-shared-key) TLS authentication modes.

Default value:
• Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES && CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDH_C

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_RSA_PSK
Enable RSA-PSK based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES
Enable to support RSA PSK (pre-shared-key) TLS authentication modes.

Default value:
• Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_RSA
Enable RSA-only based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods
Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-RSA-WITH-

Default value:
• Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_DHE_RSA
Enable DHE-RSA based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods
Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-

Default value:
• Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DHM_C

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE
Support Elliptic Curve based ciphersuites

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods
Enable to show Elliptic Curve based ciphersuite mode options.
Disabling all Elliptic Curve ciphersuites saves code size and can give slightly faster TLS handshakes, provided the server supports RSA-only ciphersuite modes.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDHE_RSA**
Enable ECDHE-RSA based ciphersuite modes

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE*

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDHE_ECDSA**
Enable ECDHE-ECDSA based ciphersuite modes

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE*

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDH_ECDSA**
Enable ECDH-ECDSA based ciphersuite modes

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE*

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDH_RSA**
Enable ECDH-RSA based ciphersuite modes

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE*

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECJPAKE**
Enable ECJPAKE based ciphersuite modes

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods*

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECJPAKE-WITH-

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_C && CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256R1_ENABLED
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_RENEGOTIATION
Support TLS renegotiation

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

The two main uses of renegotiation are (1) refresh keys on long-lived connections and (2) client authentication after the initial handshake. If you don’t need renegotiation, disabling it will save code size and reduce the possibility of abuse/vulnerability.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_SSL3
Legacy SSL 3.0 support

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Support the legacy SSL 3.0 protocol. Most servers will speak a newer TLS protocol these days.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1
Support TLS 1.0 protocol

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1_1
Support TLS 1.1 protocol

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1_2
Support TLS 1.2 protocol

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_GMTSSL1_1
Support GM/T SSL 1.1 protocol

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Provisions for GM/T SSL 1.1 support

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_DTLS
Support DTLS protocol (all versions)
*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*
Requires TLS 1.1 to be enabled for DTLS 1.0 Requires TLS 1.2 to be enabled for DTLS 1.2
*Default value:*
  * No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_ALPN
Support ALPN (Application Layer Protocol Negotiation)
*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*
Disabling this option will save some code size if it is not needed.
*Default value:*
  * Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CLIENT_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS
TLS: Client Support for RFC 5077 SSL session tickets
*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*
Client support for RFC 5077 session tickets. See mbedTLS documentation for more details. Disabling this option will save some code size.
*Default value:*
  * Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CHECK_KEY_USAGE
Enable verification of the keyUsage extension
*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*
Disabling this avoids problems with mis-issued and/or misused (intermediate) CA and leaf certificates. Depending on your PKI use, disabling this can be a security risk.
*Default value:*
  * Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CHECK_EXTENDED_KEY_USAGE
Enable verification of the extendedKeyUsage extension
*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*
Disabling this avoids problems with mis-issued and/or misused certificates. Depending on your PKI use, disabling this can be a security risk.
*Default value:*
  * Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SERVER_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS
TLS: Server Support for RFC 5077 SSL session tickets
*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*
Server support for RFC 5077 session tickets. See mbedTLS documentation for more details. Disabling this option will save some code size.
Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

**Symmetric Ciphers**  Contains:

- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_AES_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_BLOWFISH_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CCM_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DES_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_GCM_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_NIST_KW_C`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_RC4_MODE`
- `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_XTEA_C`

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_AES_C**

AES block cipher

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers*

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_C**

Camellia block cipher

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers*

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DES_C**

DES block cipher (legacy, insecure)

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers*

Enables the DES block cipher to support 3DES-based TLS ciphersuites.

3DES is vulnerable to the Sweet32 attack and should only be enabled if absolutely necessary.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_RC4_MODE**

RC4 Stream Cipher (legacy, insecure)

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers*

ARCFOUR (RC4) stream cipher can be disabled entirely, enabled but not added to default ciphersuites, or enabled completely.

Please consider the security implications before enabling RC4.

**Available options:**
- Disabled (MBEDTLS_RC4_DISABLED)
- Enabled, not in default ciphersuites (MBEDTLS_RC4_ENABLED_NO_DEFAULT)
- Enabled (MBEDTLS_RC4_ENABLED)
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_BLOWFISH_C
Blowfish block cipher (read help)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enables the Blowfish block cipher (not used for TLS sessions.)
The Blowfish cipher is not used for mbedTLS TLS sessions but can be used for other purposes. Read up on the limitations of Blowfish (including Sweet32) before enabling.

Default value:
• No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_XTEA_C
XTEA block cipher

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enables the XTEA block cipher.

Default value:
• No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CCM_C
CCM (Counter with CBC-MAC) block cipher modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enable Counter with CBC-MAC (CCM) modes for AES and/or Camellia ciphers.
Disabling this option saves some code size.

Default value:
• Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_GCM_C
GCM (Galois/Counter) block cipher modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enable Galois/Counter Mode for AES and/or Camellia ciphers.
This option is generally faster than CCM.

Default value:
• Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_NIST_KW_C
NIST key wrapping (KW) and KW padding (KWP)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enable NIST key wrapping and key wrapping padding.

Default value:
• No (disabled)
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_C
Enable RIPEMD-160 hash algorithm.

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS
Enable the RIPEMD-160 hash algorithm.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

Certificates Contains:
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PEM_PARSE_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PEM_WRITE_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CRL_PARSE_C
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CSR_PARSE_C

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PEM_PARSE_C
Read & Parse PEM formatted certificates.

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificates
Enable decoding/parsing of PEM formatted certificates.
If your certificates are all in the simpler DER format, disabling this option will save some code size.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PEM_WRITE_C
Write PEM formatted certificates.

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificates
Enable writing of PEM formatted certificates.
If writing certificate data only in DER format, disabling this option will save some code size.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CRL_PARSE_C
X.509 CRL parsing.

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificates

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CSR_PARSE_C
X.509 CSR parsing.

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificates
Support for parsing X.509 Certificate Signing Requests.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)
**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C**

Elliptic Curve Ciphers

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DHM_C**

Diffie-Hellman-Merkle key exchange (DHM)

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable DHM. Needed to use DHE-xxx TLS ciphersuites.

Note that the security of Diffie-Hellman key exchanges depends on a suitable prime being used for the exchange. Please see detailed warning text about this in file `mbedtls/dhm.h` file.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDH_C**

Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman (ECDH)

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable ECDH. Needed to use ECDHE-xxx TLS ciphersuites.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDSA_C**

Elliptic Curve DSA

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDH_C*

Enable ECDSA. Needed to use ECDSA-xxx TLS ciphersuites.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_C**

Elliptic curve J-PAKE

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable ECJPAKE. Needed to use ECJPAKE-xxx TLS ciphersuites.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192R1_ENABLED**

Enable SECP192R1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable support for SECP192R1 Elliptic Curve.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `(CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN || CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY) && CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C`
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224R1_ENABLED
Enable SECP224R1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable support for SECP224R1 Elliptic Curve.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if $(\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C}$

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256R1_ENABLED
Enable SECP256R1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable support for SECP256R1 Elliptic Curve.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP384R1_ENABLED
Enable SECP384R1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable support for SECP384R1 Elliptic Curve.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if $(\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C}$

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP521R1_ENABLED
Enable SECP521R1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable support for SECP521R1 Elliptic Curve.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if $(\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C}$

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192K1_ENABLED
Enable SECP192K1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable support for SECP192K1 Elliptic Curve.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if $(\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C}$

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224K1_ENABLED
Enable SECP224K1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Enable support for SECP224K1 Elliptic Curve.
Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if \((\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C})\n
**CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_DP\_SECP256K1\_ENABLED**

Enable SECP256K1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls*

Enable support for SECP256K1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if \((\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C})\n
**CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_DP\_BP256R1\_ENABLED**

Enable BP256R1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls*

support for DP Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if \((\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C})\n
**CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_DP\_BP384R1\_ENABLED**

Enable BP384R1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls*

support for DP Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if \((\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C})\n
**CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_DP\_BP512R1\_ENABLED**

Enable BP512R1 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls*

support for DP Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if \((\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C})\n
**CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_DP\_CURVE25519\_ENABLED**

Enable CURVE25519 curve

*Found in: Component config > mbedtls*

Enable support for CURVE25519 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if \((\text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_SIGN} \lor \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ATCA\_HW\_ECDSA\_VERIFY}) \land \text{CONFIG\_MBEDTLS\_ECP\_C})
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_NIST_OPTIM

NIST ‘modulo p’ optimisations

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

NIST ‘modulo p’ optimisations increase Elliptic Curve operation performance.

Disabling this option saves some code size.

# end of Elliptic Curve options

Default value:
• Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_POLY1305_C

Poly1305 MAC algorithm

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable support for Poly1305 MAC algorithm.

Default value:
• No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_C

Chacha20 stream cipher

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable support for Chacha20 stream cipher.

Default value:
• No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHAPOLY_C

ChaCha20-Poly1305 AEAD algorithm

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_C

Enable support for ChaCha20-Poly1305 AEAD algorithm.

Default value:
• No (disabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_C && CONFIG_MBEDTLS_POLY1305_C

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HKDF_C

HKDF algorithm (RFC 5869)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable support for the Hashed Message Authentication Code (HMAC)-based key derivation function (HKDF).

Default value:
• No (disabled)
CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C

Enable the threading abstraction layer

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

If you do intend to use contexts between threads, you will need to enable this layer to prevent race conditions.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_ALT

Enable threading alternate implementation

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C*

Enable threading alt to allow your own alternate threading implementation.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_PTHREAD

Enable threading pthread implementation

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C*

Enable the pthread wrapper layer for the threading layer.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_LARGE_KEYSOFTWARE_MPI

Fallback to software implementation for larger MPI values

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

Fallback to software implementation for RSA key lengths larger than SOC_RSA_MAX_BIT_LEN. If this is not active then the ESP will be unable to process keys greater than SOC_RSA_MAX_BIT_LEN.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SECURITY_RISKS

Show configurations with potential security risks

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS*

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

Contains:
- CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ALLOW_UNSUPPORTED_CRITICAL_EXT

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ALLOW_UNSUPPORTED_CRITICAL_EXT

X.509 CRT parsing with unsupported critical extensions

*Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SECURITY_RISKS*

Allow the X.509 certificate parser to load certificates with unsupported critical extensions
Default value:
  - No (disabled) if `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SECURITY_RISKS`

**mDNS** Contains:
- `CONFIG_MDNS_MAX_SERVICES`
- `CONFIG_MDNS_SERVICE_ADD_TIMEOUT_MS`
- `CONFIG_MDNS STRICT_MODE`
- `CONFIG_MDNS TASK AFFINITY`
- `CONFIG_MDNS TASK_PRIORITY`
- `CONFIG_MDNS TASK STACK_SIZE`
- `CONFIG_MDNS_TIMER_PERIOD_MS`
- `CONFIG_MDNS_MULTIPLE_INSTANCE`
- `CONFIG_MDNS_NETWORKING_SOCKET`

**CONFIG_MDNS_MAX_SERVICES**
Max number of services

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Services take up a certain amount of memory, and allowing fewer services to be open at the same time conserves memory. Specify the maximum amount of services here. The valid value is from 1 to 64.

*Range:*
  - from 1 to 64

*Default value:*
  - 10

**CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_PRIORITY**
mDNS task priority

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Allows setting mDNS task priority. Please do not set the task priority higher than priorities of system tasks. Compile time warning/error would be emitted if the chosen task priority were too high.

*Range:*
  - from 1 to 255

*Default value:*
  - 1

**CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_STACK_SIZE**
mDNS task stack size

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Allows setting mDNS task stacksize.

*Default value:*
  - 4096

**CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY**
mDNS task affinity

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Allows setting mDNS tasks affinity, i.e. whether the task is pinned to CPU0, pinned to CPU1, or allowed to run on any CPU.
Available options:

- No affinity (MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY)
- CPU0 (MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0)
- CPU1 (MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1)

CONFIG_MDNS_SERVICE_ADD_TIMEOUT_MS

mDNS adding service timeout (ms)

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Configures timeout for adding a new mDNS service. Adding a service fails if could not be completed within this time.

**Range:**
- from 10 to 30000

**Default value:**
- 2000

CONFIG_MDNS STRICT MODE

mDNS strict mode

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Configures strict mode. Set this to 1 for the mDNS library to strictly follow the RFC6762: Currently the only strict feature: Do not repeat original questions in response packets (defined in RFC6762 sec. 6). Default configuration is 0, i.e. non-strict mode, since some implementations, such as lwIP mdns resolver (used by standard POSIX API like getaddrinfo, gethostbyname) could not correctly resolve advertised names.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MDNS_TIMER_PERIOD_MS

mDNS timer period (ms)

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Configures period of mDNS timer, which periodically transmits packets and schedules mDNS searches.

**Range:**
- from 10 to 10000

**Default value:**
- 100

CONFIG_MDNS_NETWORKING_SOCKET

Use BSD sockets for mdns networking

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Enables optional mdns networking implementation using BSD sockets in UDP multicast mode. This option creates a new thread to serve receiving packets (TODO). This option uses additional N sockets, where N is number of interfaces.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
CONFIG_MDNS_MULTIPLE_INSTANCE

Multiple instances under the same service type

*Found in: Component config > mDNS*

Enables adding multiple service instances under the same service type.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

ESP-MQTT Configurations  Contains:

- CONFIG_MQTT_CUSTOM_OUTBOX
- CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_SSL
- CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET
- CONFIG_MQTT_PROTOCOL_311
- CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_CORE_SELECTION_ENABLED
- CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG
- CONFIG_MQTT_OUTBOX_EXPIRED_TIMEOUT_MS
- CONFIG_MQTT_REPORT_DELETED_MESSAGES
- CONFIG_MQTT_SKIP_PUBLISH_IF_DISCONNECTED
- CONFIG_MQTT_MSG_ID_INCREMENTAL

CONFIG_MQTT_PROTOCOL_311

Enable MQTT protocol 3.1.1

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

If not, this library will use MQTT protocol 3.1

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_SSL

Enable MQTT over SSL

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

Enable MQTT transport over SSL with mbedtls

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET

Enable MQTT over Websocket

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

Enable MQTT transport over Websocket.

**Default value:**

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET_SECURE

Enable MQTT over Websocket Secure

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET*

Enable MQTT transport over Websocket Secure.
**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_MQTT_MSG_ID_INCREMENTAL**

Use Incremental Message Id

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

Set this to true for the message id (2.3.1 Packet Identifier) to be generated as an incremental number rather than a random value (used by default)

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MQTT_SKIP_PUBLISH_IF_DISCONNECTED**

Skip publish if disconnected

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

Set this to true to avoid publishing (enqueuing messages) if the client is disconnected. The MQTT client tries to publish all messages by default, even in the disconnected state (where the qos1 and qos2 packets are stored in the internal outbox to be published later) The MQTT_SKIP_PUBLISH_IF_DISCONNECTED option allows applications to override this behaviour and not enqueue publish packets in the disconnected state.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MQTT_REPORT_DELETED_MESSAGES**

Report deleted messages

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

Set this to true to post events for all messages which were deleted from the outbox before being correctly sent and confirmed.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG**

MQTT Using custom configurations

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

Custom MQTT configurations.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_MQTT_TCP_DEFAULT_PORT**

Default MQTT over TCP port

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*

Default MQTT over TCP port

**Default value:**
- 1883 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*
CONFIG_MQTT_SSL_DEFAULT_PORT
Default MQTT over SSL port

Default value:
  • 8883 if CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG && CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_SSL

CONFIG_MQTT_WS_DEFAULT_PORT
Default MQTT over Websocket port

Default value:
  • 80 if CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

CONFIG_MQTT_WSS_DEFAULT_PORT
Default MQTT over Websocket Secure port

Default value:
  • 443 if CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG && CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET && CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET_SECURE

CONFIG_MQTT_BUFFER_SIZE
Default MQTT Buffer Size

Default value:
  • 1024 if CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_STACK_SIZE
MQTT task stack size

Default value:
  • 6144 if CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

CONFIG_MQTT_DISABLE_API_LOCKS
Disable API locks

Default config employs API locks to protect internal structures. It is possible to disable these locks if the user code doesn’t access MQTT API from multiple concurrent tasks

Default value:
CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_PRIORITY

MQTT task priority

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*

MQTT task priority. Higher number denotes higher priority.

**Default value:**

* 5 if CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_CORE_SELECTION_ENABLED

Enable MQTT task core selection

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

This will enable core selection

**Default value:**

* "false"

CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_CORE_SELECTION

Core to use?

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_CORE_SELECTION_ENABLED*

**Available options:**

* Core 0 (MQTT_USE_CORE_0)
* Core 1 (MQTT_USE_CORE_1)

CONFIG_MQTT_CUSTOM_OUTBOX

Enable custom outbox implementation

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

Set to true if a specific implementation of message outbox is needed (e.g. persistant outbox in NVM or similar).

**Default value:**

* No (disabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_OUTBOX_EXPIRED_TIMEOUT_MS

Outbox message expired timeout[ms]

*Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations*

Messages which stays in the outbox longer than this value before being published will be discarded.

**Default value:**

* 30000 if CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

**Newlib** Contains:

* CONFIG_NEWLIB_NANO_FORMAT
* CONFIG_NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING
* CONFIG_NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING
**CONFIG_NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING**

Line ending for UART output

*Found in: Component config > Newlib*

This option allows configuring the desired line endings sent to UART when a newline (‘
’, LF) appears on stdout. Three options are possible:

- **CRLF**: whenever LF is encountered, prepend it with CR
- **LF**: no modification is applied, stdout is sent as is
- **CR**: each occurrence of LF is replaced with CR

This option doesn’t affect behavior of the UART driver (drivers/uart.h).

**Available options:**
- CRLF (NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING_CRLF)
- LF (NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING_LF)
- CR (NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING_CR)

**CONFIG_NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING**

Line ending for UART input

*Found in: Component config > Newlib*

This option allows configuring which input sequence on UART produces a newline (‘
’, LF) on stdin. Three options are possible:

- **CRLF**: CRLF is converted to LF
- **LF**: no modification is applied, input is sent to stdin as is
- **CR**: each occurrence of CR is replaced with LF

This option doesn’t affect behavior of the UART driver (drivers/uart.h).

**Available options:**
- CRLF (NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING_CRLF)
- LF (NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING_LF)
- CR (NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING_CR)

**CONFIG_NEWLIB_NANO_FORMAT**

Enable ‘nano’ formatting options for printf/scanf family

*Found in: Component config > Newlib*

ESP32 ROM contains parts of newlib C library, including printf/scanf family of functions. These functions have been compiled with so-called “nano” formatting option. This option doesn’t support 64-bit integer formats and C99 features, such as positional arguments.

For more details about “nano” formatting option, please see newlib readme file, search for ‘--enable-newlib-nano-formatted-io’ : https://sourceware.org/newlib/README

If this option is enabled, build system will use functions available in ROM, reducing the application binary size. Functions available in ROM run faster than functions which run from flash. Functions available in ROM can also run when flash instruction cache is disabled.

If you need 64-bit integer formatting support or C99 features, keep this option disabled.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)
Chapter 2. API

NVS Contains:
- `CONFIG_NVS_ENCRYPTION`
- `CONFIG_NVS_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V4_3_ENCRYPTION_FLAG`

**CONFIG_NVS_ENCRYPTION**
Enable NVS encryption

*Found in: Component config > NVS*

This option enables encryption for NVS. When enabled, AES-XTS is used to encrypt the complete NVS data, except the page headers. It requires XTS encryption keys to be stored in an encrypted partition. This means enabling flash encryption is a pre-requisite for this feature.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if `CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED`

**CONFIG_NVS_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V4_3_ENCRYPTION_FLAG**
NVS partition encrypted flag compatible with ESP-IDF before v4.3

*Found in: Component config > NVS*

Enabling this will ignore “encrypted” flag for NVS partitions. NVS encryption scheme is different than hardware flash encryption and hence it is not recommended to have “encrypted” flag for NVS partitions. This was not being checked in pre v4.3 IDF. Hence, if you have any devices where this flag is kept enabled in partition table then enabling this config will allow to have same behavior as pre v4.3 IDF.

**OpenSSL** Contains:
- `CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG`
- `CONFIG_OPENSSL_ERROR_STACK`
- `CONFIG_OPENSSL_LOWLEVEL_DEBUG`
- `CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_OPENSSL_ASSERT`

**CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG**
Enable OpenSSL debugging

*Found in: Component config > OpenSSL*

Enable OpenSSL debugging function.

If the option is enabled, “SSL_DEBUG” works.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_OPENSSL_ERROR_STACK**
Enable OpenSSL error structure

*Found in: Component config > OpenSSL*

Enable OpenSSL Error reporting

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)
CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG_LEVEL

OpenSSL debugging level

*Found in: Component config > OpenSSL*

OpenSSL debugging level.

Only function whose debugging level is higher than “OPENSSL_DEBUG_LEVEL” works.

For example: If OPENSSL_DEBUG_LEVEL = 2, you use function “SSL_DEBUG(1, “malloc failed”)” . Because 1 < 2, it will not print.

**Range:**
- from 0 to 255 if CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG

**Default value:**
- 0 if CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG

CONFIG_OPENSSL_LOWLEVEL_DEBUG

Enable OpenSSL low-level module debugging

*Found in: Component config > OpenSSL*

If the option is enabled, low-level module debugging function of OpenSSL is enabled, e.g. mbedtls internal debugging function.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG

CONFIG_OPENSSL_ASSERT

Select OpenSSL assert function

*Found in: Component config > OpenSSL*

OpenSSL function needs “assert” function to check if input parameters are valid.

If you want to use assert debugging function, “OPENSSL_DEBUG” should be enabled.

**Available options:**
- Do nothing (OPENSSL_ASSERT_DO NOTHING)
  Do nothing and “SSL_ASSERT” does not work.
- Check and exit (OPENSSL_ASSERT_EXIT)
  Enable assert exiting, it will check and return error code.
- Show debugging message (OPENSSL_ASSERT_DEBUG)
  Enable assert debugging, it will check and show debugging message.
- Show debugging message and exit (OPENSSL_ASSERT_DEBUG_EXIT)
  Enable assert debugging and exiting, it will check, show debugging message and return error code.
- Show debugging message and block (OPENSSL_ASSERT_DEBUG_BLOCK)
  Enable assert debugging and blocking, it will check, show debugging message and block by “while (1);”.

OpenThread  Contains:

- CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

OpenThread

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread*

Select this option to enable OpenThread and show the submenu with OpenThread configuration choices.
Default value:
• No (disabled)

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_RADIO_TYPE

Config the Thread radio type

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

Configure how OpenThread connects to the 15.4 radio

*Available options:*
• Native 15.4 radio (OPENTHREAD_RADIO_NATIVE)
  Select this to use the native 15.4 radio.
• Connect via UART (OPENTHREAD_RADIO_SPINEL_UART)
  Select this to connect to a Radio Co-Processor via UART.

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_DEVICE_TYPE

Config the Thread device type

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

OpenThread can be configured to different device types (FTD, MTD, Radio)

*Available options:*
• Full Thread Device (OPENTHREAD_FTD)
  Select this to enable Full Thread Device which can act as a router and leader in a Thread network.
• Minimal Thread Device (OPENTHREAD_MTD)
  Select this to enable Minimal Thread Device which can only act as an end device in a Thread network. This will reduce the code size of the OpenThread stack.
• Radio Only Device (OPENTHREAD_RADIO)
  Select this to enable Radio Only Device which cannot forward 15.4 packets to the host. The OpenThread stack will be run on the host and OpenThread will have minimal footprint on the radio only device.

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_DIAG

Enable diag

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

Select this option to enable diag in OpenThread. This will enable diag mode and a series of diag commands in the OpenThread command line. These commands allow users to manipulate low-level features of the storage and 15.4 radio.

*Default value:*
• Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_COMMISSIONER

Enable Commissioner

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

Select this option to enable commissioner in OpenThread. This will enable the device to act as a commissioner in the Thread network. A commissioner checks the pre-shared key from a joining device with the Thread commissioning protocol and shares the network parameter with the joining device upon success.

*Default value:*
• No (disabled) if CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED
**CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_JOINER**

Enable Joiner

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

Select this option to enable Joiner in OpenThread. This allows a device to join the Thread network with a pre-shared key using the Thread commissioning protocol.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if **CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED**

**CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_SRP_CLIENT**

Enable SRP Client

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

Select this option to enable SRP Client in OpenThread. This allows a device to register SRP services to SRP Server.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if **CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED**

**CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_BORDER_ROUTER**

Enable Border Router

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

Select this option to enable border router features in OpenThread.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if **CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED**

**CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_TREL**

Enable Thread Radio Encapsulation Link

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_BORDER_ROUTER*

Select this option to enable sending 15.4 frames through the backbone interface.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if **CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_BORDER_ROUTER**

**CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ESP_LIB_FROM_INTERNAL_SRC**

Build esp_openthread libraries from source

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

Override the shipped libopenthread_br.a and libopenthread_port.a, for internal builds.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if **CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED**

**CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_NUM_MESSAGE_BUFFERS**

The number of openthread message buffers

*Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

**Range:**
- from 50 to 100 if **CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED**
Default value:
  • 65 if CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

**PThreads** Contains:
  • CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT
  • CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT
  • CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT
  • CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT
  • CONFIG_PTHREAD_STACK_MIN

### CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT
Default task priority

*Found in: Component config > PThreads*

Priority used to create new tasks with default pthread parameters.

**Range:**
  • from 0 to 255

**Default value:**
  • 5

### CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT
Default task stack size

*Found in: Component config > PThreads*

Stack size used to create new tasks with default pthread parameters.

**Default value:**
  • 3072

### CONFIG_PTHREAD_STACK_MIN
Minimum allowed pthread stack size

*Found in: Component config > PThreads*

Minimum allowed pthread stack size set in attributes passed to pthread_create

**Default value:**
  • 768

### CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT
Default pthread core affinity

*Found in: Component config > PThreads*

The default core to which pthreads are pinned.

**Available options:**
  • No affinity (PTHREAD_DEFAULT_CORE_NO_AFFINITY)
  • Core 0 (PTHREAD_DEFAULT_CORE_0)
  • Core 1 (PTHREAD_DEFAULT_CORE_1)
CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT

Default name of pthreads

*Found in: Component config > PThreads*

The default name of pthreads.

**Default value:**
- “pthread”

**SPI Flash driver** Contains:

- Auto-detect flash chips
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_BYPASS_BLOCK_ERASE
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ENABLE_ENCRYPTED_READ_WRITE
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ENABLE_COUNTERS
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ROM_DRIVER_PATCH
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_YIELD_DURING_ERASE
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_CHECK_ERASE_TIMEOUT_DISABLED
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITE_CHUNK_SIZE
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_OVERRIDE_CHIP_DRIVER_LIST
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SIZE_OVERRIDE
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SHARE_SPI1_BUS
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE**

Verify SPI flash writes

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

If this option is enabled, any time SPI flash is written then the data will be read back and verified. This can catch hardware problems with SPI flash, or flash which was not erased before verification.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_LOG_FAILED_WRITE**

Log errors if verification fails

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE*

If this option is enabled, if SPI flash write verification fails then a log error line will be written with the address, expected & actual values. This can be useful when debugging hardware SPI flash problems.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WARN_SETTING_ZERO_TO_ONE**

Log warning if writing zero bits to ones

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE*

If this option is enabled, any SPI flash write which tries to set zero bits in the flash to ones will log a warning. Such writes will not result in the requested data appearing identically in flash once written, as SPI NOR flash can only set bits to one when an entire sector is erased. After erasing, individual bits can only be written from one to zero.
Note that some software (such as SPIFFS) which is aware of SPI NOR flash may write one bits as an optimisation, relying on the data in flash becoming a bitwise AND of the new data and any existing data. Such software will log spurious warnings if this option is enabled.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE`

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ENABLE_COUNTERS**

Enable operation counters

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

This option enables the following APIs:
- `spi_flash_reset_counters`
- `spi_flash_dump_counters`
- `spi_flash_get_counters`

These APIs may be used to collect performance data for `spi_flash` APIs and to help understand behaviour of libraries which use SPI flash.

**Default value:**
- 0

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ROM_DRIVER_PATCH**

Enable SPI flash ROM driver patched functions

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

Enable this flag to use patched versions of SPI flash ROM driver functions. This option should be enabled, if any one of the following is true: (1) need to write to flash on ESP32-D2WD; (2) main SPI flash is connected to non-default pins; (3) main SPI flash chip is manufactured by ISSI.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE**

Writing to dangerous flash regions

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

SPI flash APIs can optionally abort or return a failure code if erasing or writing addresses that fall at the beginning of flash (covering the bootloader and partition table) or that overlap the app partition that contains the running app.

It is not recommended to ever write to these regions from an IDF app, and this check prevents logic errors or corrupted firmware memory from damaging these regions.

Note that this feature *does not* check calls to the `esp_rom_xxx` SPI flash ROM functions. These functions should not be called directly from IDF applications.

**Available options:**
- Aborts (`SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE_ABORTS`)
- Fails (`SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE_FAILS`)
- Allowed (`SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE_ALLOWED`)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL**

Use the legacy implementation before IDF v4.0

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*
The implementation of SPI flash has been greatly changed in IDF v4.0. Enable this option to use the legacy implementation.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SHARE_SPI1_BUS**

Support other devices attached to SPI1 bus

*Found in:* Component config > SPI Flash driver

Each SPI bus needs a lock for arbitration among devices. This allows multiple devices on a same bus, but may reduce the speed of esp_flash driver access to the main flash chip.

If you only need to use esp_flash driver to access the main flash chip, disable this option, and the lock will be bypassed on SPI1 bus. Otherwise if extra devices are needed to attach to SPI1 bus, enable this option.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL`

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_BYPASS_BLOCK_ERASE**

Bypass a block erase and always do sector erase

*Found in:* Component config > SPI Flash driver

Some flash chips can have very high “max” erase times, especially for block erase (32KB or 64KB). This option allows to bypass “block erase” and always do sector erase commands. This will be much slower overall in most cases, but improves latency for other code to run.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_YIELD_DURING_ERASE**

Enables yield operation during flash erase

*Found in:* Component config > SPI Flash driver

This allows to yield the CPUs between erase commands. Prevents starvation of other tasks.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ERASE_YIELD_DURATION_MS**

Duration of erasing to yield CPUs (ms)

*Found in:* Component config > SPI Flash driver > CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_YIELD_DURING_ERASE

If a duration of one erase command is large then it will yield CPUs after finishing a current command.

**Default value:**
- 20

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ERASE_YIELD_TICKS**

CPU release time (tick) for an erase operation

*Found in:* Component config > SPI Flash driver > CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_YIELD_DURING_ERASE

Defines how many ticks will be before returning to continue a erasing.

**Default value:**
CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITE_CHUNK_SIZE

Flash write chunk size

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

Flash write is broken down in terms of multiple (smaller) write operations. This configuration option helps to set individual write chunk size, smaller value here ensures that cache (and non-IRAM resident interrupts) remains disabled for shorter duration.

*Range:*
  - from 256 to 8192

*Default value:*
  - 8192

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SIZE_OVERRIDE

Override flash size in bootloader header by ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

SPI Flash driver uses the flash size configured in bootloader header by default. Enable this option to override flash size with latest ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE value from the app header if the size in the bootloader header is incorrect.

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_CHECK_ERASE_TIMEOUT_DISABLED

Flash timeout checkout disabled

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

This option is helpful if you are using a flash chip whose timeout is quite large or unpredictable.

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_OVERRIDE_CHIP_DRIVER_LIST

Override default chip driver list

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

This option allows the chip driver list to be customized, instead of using the default list provided by ESP-IDF.

When this option is enabled, the default list is no longer compiled or linked. Instead, the default_registered_chips structure must be provided by the user.

See example: custom_chip_driver under examples/storage for more details.

*Default value:*
  - No (disabled) if CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL

Auto-detect flash chips Contains:

- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_GD_CHIP
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_ISSI_CHIP
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_MXIC_CHIP
- CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_WINBOND_CHIP
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_ISSI_CHIP**

ISSI

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips*

Enable this to support auto detection of ISSI chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip_drv` member of the chip struct. This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_MXIC_CHIP**

MXIC

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips*

Enable this to support auto detection of MXIC chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip_drv` member of the chip struct. This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_GD_CHIP**

GigaDevice

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips*

Enable this to support auto detection of GD (GigaDevice) chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip_drv` member of the chip struct. If you are using Wrover modules, please don’t disable this, otherwise your flash may not work in 4-bit mode.

This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time and image size. Note that the default chip driver supports the GD chips with product ID 60H.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_WINBOND_CHIP**

Winbond

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips*

Enable this to support auto detection of Winbond chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip_drv` member of the chip struct. This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ENABLE_ENCRYPTED_READ_WRITE**

Enable encrypted partition read/write operations

*Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver*

This option enables flash read/write operations to encrypted partition/s. This option is kept enabled irrespective of state of flash encryption feature. However, in case application is not using flash encryption feature and is in need of some additional memory from IRAM region (~1KB) then this config can be disabled.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)
SPIFFS Configuration  Contains:

- Debug Configuration
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MAGIC
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_STATS
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_PAGE_CHECK
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_FOLLOW_SYMLINKS
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_MAX_PARTITIONS
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MTIME
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_MAX_RUNS
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_META_LENGTH
- SPIFFS Cache Configuration
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_PAGE_SIZE
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_MTIME_WIDE_64_BITS

CONFIG_SPIFFS_MAX_PARTITIONS
Maximum Number of Partitions

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

Define maximum number of partitions that can be mounted.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 10

**Default value:**
- 3

SPIFFS Cache Configuration  Contains:

- CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE

CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE
Enable SPIFFS Cache

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > SPIFFS Cache Configuration*

Enables/disables memory read caching of nucleus file system operations.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE_WR
Enable SPIFFS Write Caching

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > SPIFFS Cache Configuration > CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE*

Enables memory write caching for file descriptors in hydrogen.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE_STATS
Enable SPIFFS Cache Statistics

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > SPIFFS Cache Configuration > CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE*
Enable/disable statistics on caching. Debug/test purpose only.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_PAGE_CHECK**

Enable SPIFFS Page Check

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

Always check header of each accessed page to ensure consistent state. If enabled it will increase number of reads from flash, especially if cache is disabled.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_MAX_RUNS**

Set Maximum GC Runs

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

Define maximum number of GC runs to perform to reach desired free pages.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 255

**Default value:**
- 10

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_STATS**

Enable SPIFFS GC Statistics

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

Enable/disable statistics on gc. Debug/test purpose only.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_PAGE_SIZE**

SPIFFS logical page size

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

Logical page size of SPIFFS partition, in bytes. Must be multiple of flash page size (which is usually 256 bytes). Larger page sizes reduce overhead when storing large files, and improve filesystem performance when reading large files. Smaller page sizes reduce overhead when storing small (< page size) files.

**Range:**
- from 256 to 1024

**Default value:**
- 256

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN**

Set SPIFFS Maximum Name Length

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

Object name maximum length. Note that this length include the zero-termination character, meaning maximum string of characters can at most be SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN - 1.
SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN + SPIFFS_META_LENGTH should not exceed SPIFFS_PAGE_SIZE - 64.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 256

**Default value:**
- 32

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_FOLLOW_SYMLINKS**

Enable symbolic links for image creation

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

If this option is enabled, symbolic links are taken into account during partition image creation.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MAGIC**

Enable SPIFFS Filesystem Magic

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

Enable this to have an identifiable spiffs filesystem. This will look for a magic in all sectors to determine if this is a valid spiffs system or not at mount time.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MAGIC_LENGTH**

Enable SPIFFS Filesystem Length Magic

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MAGIC*

If this option is enabled, the magic will also be dependent on the length of the filesystem. For example, a filesystem configured and formatted for 4 megabytes will not be accepted for mounting with a configuration defining the filesystem as 2 megabytes.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_META_LENGTH**

Size of per-file metadata field

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

This option sets the number of extra bytes stored in the file header. These bytes can be used in an application-specific manner. Set this to at least 4 bytes to enable support for saving file modification time.

SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN + SPIFFS_META_LENGTH should not exceed SPIFFS_PAGE_SIZE - 64.

**Default value:**
- 4
CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MTIME

Save file modification time

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

If enabled, then the first 4 bytes of per-file metadata will be used to store file modification time (mtime), accessible through stat/fstat functions. Modification time is updated when the file is opened.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_MTIME_WIDE_64_BITS

The time field occupies 64 bits in the image instead of 32 bits

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration*

If this option is not set, the time field is 32 bits (up to 2106 year), otherwise it is 64 bits and make sure it matches SPIFFS_META_LENGTH. If the chip already has the spiffs image with the time field = 32 bits then this option cannot be applied in this case. Erase it first before using this option. To resolve the Y2K38 problem for the spiffs, use a toolchain with support time_t 64 bits (see SDK_TOOLCHAIN_SUPPORTS_TIME_WIDE_64_BITS).

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if CONFIG_SPIFFS_META_LENGTH >= 8

Debug Configuration

Contains:
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_DBG
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_API_DBG
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE_DBG
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_CHECK_DBG
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_TEST_VISUALISATION
- CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_DBG

CONFIG_SPIFFS_DBG

Enable general SPIFFS debug

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration*

Enabling this option will print general debug messages to the console.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_API_DBG

Enable SPIFFS API debug

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration*

Enabling this option will print API debug messages to the console.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_DBG

Enable SPIFFS Garbage Cleaner debug

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration*

Enabling this option will print GC debug messages to the console.
**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE_DBG**
Enable SPIFFS Cache debug

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration*

Enabling this option will print cache debug messages to the console.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_CHECK_DBG**
Enable SPIFFS Filesystem Check debug

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration*

Enabling this option will print Filesystem Check debug messages to the console.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_SPIFFS_TEST_VISUALISATION**
Enable SPIFFS Filesystem Visualization

*Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration*

Enable this option to enable SPIFFS_vis function in the API.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled)

**TCP Transport** Contains:
- **Websocket**

**Websocket** Contains:
- **CONFIG_WS_TRANSPORT**

**CONFIG_WS_TRANSPORT**
Enable Websocket Transport

*Found in: Component config > TCP Transport > Websocket*

Enable support for creating websocket transport.

*Default value:*
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_WS_BUFFER_SIZE**
Websocket transport buffer size

*Found in: Component config > TCP Transport > Websocket > CONFIG_WS_TRANSPORT*

Size of the buffer used for constructing the HTTP Upgrade request during connect

*Default value:*
- 1024
Unity unit testing library  Contains:

- CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_COLOR
- CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_IDF_TEST_RUNNER
- CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_FIXTURE
- CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_BACKTRACE_ON_FAIL
- CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_64BIT
- CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_DOUBLE
- CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_FLOAT

CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_FLOAT

Support for float type

*Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library*

If not set, assertions on float arguments will not be available.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_DOUBLE

Support for double type

*Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library*

If not set, assertions on double arguments will not be available.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_64BIT

Support for 64-bit integer types

*Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library*

If not set, assertions on 64-bit integer types will always fail. If this feature is enabled, take care not to pass pointers (which are 32 bit) to UNITY_ASSERT_EQUAL, as that will cause pointer-to-int-cast warnings.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_COLOR

Colorize test output

*Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library*

If set, Unity will colorize test results using console escape sequences.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

CONFIGUNITY_ENABLE_IDF_TEST_RUNNER

Include ESP-IDF test registration/running helpers

*Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library*

If set, then the following features will be available:
- TEST_CASE macro which performs automatic registration of test functions
• Functions to run registered test functions: unity_run_all_tests, unity_run_tests_with_filter, unity_run_single_test_by_name.
• Interactive menu which lists test cases and allows choosing the tests to be run, available via unity_run_menu function.

Disable if a different test registration mechanism is used.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_FIXTURE**

Include Unity test fixture

*Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library*

If set, unity_fixture.h header file and associated source files are part of the build. These provide an optional set of macros and functions to implement test groups.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_BACKTRACE_ON_FAIL**

Print a backtrace when a unit test fails

*Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library*

If set, the unity framework will print the backtrace information before jumping back to the test menu. The jumping is usually occurs in assert functions such as TEST_ASSERT, TEST_FAIL etc.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**Virtual file system** Contains:

- **CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO**

**CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO**

Provide basic I/O functions

*Found in: Component config > Virtual file system*

If enabled, the following functions are provided by the VFS component.
open, close, read, write, pread, pwrite, lseek, fstat, fsync, ioctl, fcntl

Filesystem drivers can then be registered to handle these functions for specific paths.
Disabling this option can save memory when the support for these functions is not required.

Note that the following functions can still be used with socket file descriptors when this option is disabled:
close, read, write, ioctl, fcntl.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)
CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_DIR

Provide directory related functions

*Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO*

If enabled, the following functions are provided by the VFS component.

- stat, link, unlink, rename, utime, access, truncate, rmdir, mkdir, opendir, closedir, readdir, readdir_r, seekdir, telldir, rewinddir

Filesystem drivers can then be registered to handle these functions for specific paths.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_SELECT

Provide select function

*Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO*

If enabled, select function is provided by the VFS component, and can be used on peripheral file descriptors (such as UART) and sockets at the same time.

If disabled, the default select implementation will be provided by LWIP for sockets only.

Disabling this option can reduce code size if support for “select” on UART file descriptors is not required.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled) if CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO && CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT

CONFIG_VFS_SUPPRESS_SELECT_DEBUG_OUTPUT

Suppress select() related debug outputs

*Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_SELECT*

Select() related functions might produce an unconveniently lot of debug outputs when one sets the default log level to DEBUG or higher. It is possible to suppress these debug outputs by enabling this option.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_TERMIOS

Provide termios.h functions

*Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO*

Disabling this option can save memory when the support for termios.h is not required.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

Host File System I/O (Semihosting) Contains:

- CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_MAX_MOUNT_POINTS
- CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_HOST_PATH_MAX_LEN
Chapter 2. API

**CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_MAX_MOUNT_POINTS**

Host FS: Maximum number of the host filesystem mount points

*Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO > Host File System I/O (Semihosting)*

Define maximum number of host filesystem mount points.

**Default value:**

- 1

**CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_HOST_PATH_MAX_LEN**

Host FS: Maximum path length for the host base directory

*Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO > Host File System I/O (Semihosting)*

Define maximum path length for the host base directory which is to be mounted. If host path passed to esp_vfs_semihost_register() is longer than this value it will be truncated.

**Default value:**

- 128

**Wear Levelling**

Contains:

- **CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_MODE**
- **CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_SIZE**

**CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_SIZE**

Wear Levelling library sector size

*Found in: Component config > Wear Levelling*

Sector size used by wear levelling library. You can set default sector size or size that will fit to the flash device sector size.

With sector size set to 4096 bytes, wear levelling library is more efficient. However if FAT filesystem is used on top of wear levelling library, it will need more temporary storage: 4096 bytes for each mounted filesystem and 4096 bytes for each opened file.

With sector size set to 512 bytes, wear levelling library will perform more operations with flash memory, but less RAM will be used by FAT filesystem library (512 bytes for the filesystem and 512 bytes for each file opened).

**Available options:**

- 512 (WL_SECTOR_SIZE_512)
- 4096 (WL_SECTOR_SIZE_4096)

**CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_MODE**

Sector store mode

*Found in: Component config > Wear Levelling*

Specify the mode to store data into flash:

- In Performance mode a data will be stored to the RAM and then stored back to the flash. Compared to the Safety mode, this operation is faster, but if power will be lost when erase sector operation is in progress, then the data from complete flash device sector will be lost.
- In Safety mode data from complete flash device sector will be read from flash, modified, and then stored back to flash. Compared to the Performance mode, this operation is slower, but if power is lost during erase sector operation, then the data from full flash device sector will not be lost.
Available options:
- Performance (WL_SECTOR_MODE_PERF)
- Safety (WL_SECTOR_MODE_SAFE)

**Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager** Contains:
- `CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_BLE_BONDING`
- `CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_SCAN_MAX_ENTRIES`
- `CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_AUTOSTOP_TIMEOUT`

**CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_SCAN_MAX_ENTRIES**
Max Wi-Fi Scan Result Entries

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager*

This sets the maximum number of entries of Wi-Fi scan results that will be kept by the provisioning manager.

**Range:**
- from 1 to 255

**Default value:**
- 16

**CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_AUTOSTOP_TIMEOUT**
Provisioning auto-stop timeout

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager*

Time (in seconds) after which the Wi-Fi provisioning manager will auto-stop after connecting to a Wi-Fi network successfully.

**Range:**
- from 5 to 600

**Default value:**
- 30

**CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_BLE_BONDING**
Enable BLE bonding

*Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager*

This option is applicable only when provisioning transport is BLE.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled) if `CONFIG_BT_ENABLED`

**Supplicant** Contains:
- `CONFIG_WPA_TESTING_OPTIONS`
- `CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT`
- `CONFIG_WPA_SUITE_B_192`
- `CONFIG_WPA_WAPI_PSK`
- `CONFIG_WPA_DEBUG_PRINT`
- `CONFIG_WPA_WPS_STRICT`
- `CONFIG_WPA_MBEDTLS_CRYPTO`
**CONFIG_WPA_MBEDTLS_CRYPTO**

Use MbedTLS crypto APIs

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant*

Select this option to use MbedTLS crypto APIs which utilize hardware acceleration.

**Default value:**
- Yes (enabled)

**CONFIG_WPA_WAPI_PSK**

Enable WAPI PSK support

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant*

Select this option to enable WAPI-PSK which is a Chinese National Standard Encryption for Wireless LANs (GB 15629.11-2003).

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_WPA_SUITE_B_192**

Enable NSA suite B support with 192 bit key

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant*

Select this option to enable 192 bit NSA suite-B. This is necessary to support WPA3 192 bit security.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_WPA_DEBUG_PRINT**

Print debug messages from WPA Supplicant

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant*

Select this option to print logging information from WPA supplicant, this includes handshake information and key hex dumps depending on the project logging level.

Enabling this could increase the build size ~60kb depending on the project logging level.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_WPA_TESTING_OPTIONS**

Add DPP testing code

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant*

Select this to enable unity test for DPP.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_WPA_WPS_STRICT**

Strictly validate all WPS attributes

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant*

Select this option to enable validate each WPS attribute rigorously. Disabling this add the workarounds with various APs. Enabling this may cause inter operability issues with some APs.
**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT**
Enable 802.11k, 802.11v APIs handling in supplicant

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant*
Select this option to enable 802.11k 802.11v APIs (RRM and BTM support). Only APIs which are helpful for network assisted roaming are supported for now. Enable this option with BTM and RRM enabled in sta config to make device ready for network assisted roaming. BTM: BSS transition management enables an AP to request a station to transition to a specific AP, or to indicate to a station a set of preferred APs. RRM: Radio measurements enable STAs to understand the radio environment, it enables STAs to observe and gather data on radio link performance and on the radio environment. Current implementation adds beacon report, link measurement, neighbor report.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled)

Contains:
- **CONFIG_WPA_MBO_SUPPORT**
- **CONFIG_WPA_SCAN_CACHE**

**CONFIG_WPA_SCAN_CACHE**
Keep scan results in cache

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant > CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT*
Keep scan results in cache, if not enabled, those will be flushed immediately.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled) if **CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT**

**CONFIG_WPA_MBO_SUPPORT**
Enable MBO support in supplicant

*Found in: Component config > Supplicant > CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT*
Select this option to enable WiFi Multiband operation certification support.

*Default value:*
- No (disabled) if **CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT**

**Compatibility options**
Contains:
- **CONFIG_LEGACY_INCLUDE_COMMON_HEADERS**

**CONFIG_LEGACY_INCLUDE_COMMON_HEADERS**
Include headers across components as before IDF v4.0

*Found in: Compatibility options*
Soc, esp32, and driver components, the most common components. Some header of these components are included implicitly by headers of other components before IDF v4.0. It’s not required for high-level components, but still included through long header chain everywhere.

This is harmful to the modularity. So it’s changed in IDF v4.0.
You can still include these headers in a legacy way until it is totally deprecated by enable this option.

**Default value:**
- No (disabled)

**Deprecated options and their replacements**

- **CONFIG_A2DP_ENABLE** *(CONFIG_BT_A2DP_ENABLE)*
- **CONFIG_A2D_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL** *(CONFIG_BT_LOG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL)*
  - CONFIG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_A2D_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- **CONFIG_ADC2_DISABLE_DAC** *(CONFIG_ADC_DISABLE_DAC)*
- **CONFIG_APP_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL** *(CONFIG_BT_LOG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL)*
  - CONFIG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_APPL_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- **CONFIG_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK** *(CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK)*
- **CONFIG_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE** *(CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE)*
- **CONFIG_APP_SECURE_VERSION** *(CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SECURE_VERSION)*
  - CONFIG_APP_SECURE_VERSION_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD *(CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SEC_VER_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD)*
- **CONFIG_AVCT_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL** *(CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL)*
  - CONFIG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_AVCT_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- **CONFIG_AVDT_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL** *(CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL)*
  - CONFIG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_AVDT_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- **CONFIG_AVRC_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL** *(CONFIG_BT_LOG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL)*
  - CONFIG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_AVRC_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- **CONFIG_BLE_ACTIVE_SCAN_REPORT_ADV_SCAN_RSP_INDIVIDUALLY** *(CONFIG_BT_BLE_ACT_SCAN_REP_ADV_SCAN)*
- **CONFIG_BLE_ADV_REPORT_DISCARD_THRESHOLD** *(CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_DISCARD_THRESHOLD)*
- **CONFIG_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CONTROL_NUM** *(CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_NUM)*
• CONFIG_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CONTROL_SUPPORTED
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_ADV_REPORT_FLOW_CTRL_SUPP}) \)
• CONFIG_BLE_ESTABLISH_LINK_CONNECTION_TIMEOUT
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_BLE_ESTAB_LINK_CONN_TOUT}) \)
• CONFIG_BLE_HOST_QUEUE_CONGESTION_CHECK
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_BLE_HOST_QUEUE_CONG_CHECK}) \)
• CONFIG_BLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_MESH_PROXY_SERVER}) \)
• CONFIG_BLE_MESH_SCAN_DUPLICATE_EN
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_MESH_SCAN_DUPL_EN}) \)
• CONFIG_BLE_SCAN_DUPLICATE
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_BLE_SCAN_DUPL}) \)
• CONFIG_BLE_SMP_ENABLE
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_BLE_SMP_ENABLE}) \)
• CONFIG_BLUEDROID_MEM_DEBUG
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_BLUEDROID_MEM_DEBUG}) \)
• CONFIG_BLUEDROID_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_BLUEDROID_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE}) \)
  - CONFIG_BLUEDROID_PINNED_TO_CORE_0
  - CONFIG_BLUEDROID_PINNED_TO_CORE_1
• CONFIG_BLUFI_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_LOG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL}) \)
  - CONFIG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_BLUFI_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
• CONFIG_BNEP_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_LOG_BNEP_TRACE_LEVEL}) \)
• CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET
  \( (\text{CONFIG_ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET}) \)
• CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL
  \( (\text{CONFIG_ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL}) \)
  - CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_0
  - CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_1
  - CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_2
  - CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_3
  - CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_4
  - CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_5
  - CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_6
  - CONFIG_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_7
• CONFIG_BTC_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_LOG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL}) \)
  - CONFIG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_BTC_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
• CONFIG_BTC_TASK_STACK_SIZE
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BT_BTC_TASK_STACK_SIZE}) \)
• CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_BLE_MAX_CONN
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BLE_MAX_CONN}) \)
• CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_BR_EDR_MAX_ACL_CONN
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_MAX_ACL_CONN}) \)
• CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_BR_EDR_MAX_SYNC_CONN
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_MAX_SYNC_CONN}) \)
• CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_FULL_SCAN_SUPPORTED
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_FULL_SCAN_SUPPORTED}) \)
• CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_HCI_MODE_CHOICE
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HCI_MODE_CHOICE}) \)
  - CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_HCI_MODE_VHCI
  - CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_HCI_MODE_UART_H4
• CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_MODE
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_MODE}) \)
  - CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_MODE_BLE_ONLY
  - CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_MODE_BR_EDR_ONLY
  - CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_MODE_BTDM
• CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_MODEM_SLEEP
  \( (\text{CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_MODEM_SLEEP}) \)
Chapter 2. API

- CONFIG_BTDM_CONTROLLER_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE
- CONFIG_BT_LOG_SDP_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_SDP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- CONFIG_BTIF_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_BTIF_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- CONFIG_BTM_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_BTM_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- CONFIG_BTU_TASK_STACK_SIZE
- CONFIG_CLASSIC_BT_ENABLED
- CONFIG_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V2_1_BOOTLOADERS
- CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART
  - CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_DEFAULT
  - CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM
  - CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_NONE
- CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_BAUDRATE
- CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_NUM
  - CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM_NUM_0
  - CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM_NUM_1
- CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_RX_GPIO
- CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_TX_GPIO
- CONFIG_CXX_EXCEPTIONS
- CONFIG_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE
- CONFIG_DISABLE_BASIC_ROM_CONSOLE (CONFIG_ESP32_DISABLE_BASIC_ROM_CONSOLE)
- CONFIG_DISABLE_GCC8_WARNINGS
- CONFIG_DUPLICATE_SCAN_CACHE_SIZE
- CONFIG_EFUSE_SECURE_VERSION_EMULATE
- CONFIG_ENABLE_STATIC_TASK_CLEAN_UP_HOOK
- CONFIG_ESP32C3_LIGHTSLEEP_GPIO_RESET_WORKAROUND
- CONFIG_ESP32C3_MEMPROT_FEATURE
- CONFIG_ESP32C3_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK
- CONFIG_ESP32H2_MEMPROT_FEATURE
- CONFIG_ESP32H2_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK
- CONFIG_ESP32S2_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP
- CONFIG_ESP32S2_MEMPROT_FEATURE
- CONFIG_ESP32S2_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK
- CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_PRINT_HALT
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_PRINT_REBOOT
– CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT
– CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_GDBSTUB
• CONFIG_ESP32.Allow_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP (CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP)
• CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_DESTINATION (CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION)
  – CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX
  – CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_DEST_NONE
• CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO (CONFIG_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO)
• CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX (CONFIG_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX)
• CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_TRAX_THRES (CONFIG_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_THRES)
• CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_DECODE (CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE)
  – CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_DECODE_INFO
  – CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_DECODE_DISABLE
• CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_MAX_TASKS_NUM (CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_MAX_TASKS_NUM)
• CONFIG_ESP32_DEBUG_STUBS_ENABLE (CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_STUBS_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_ESP32_GCOV_ENABLE (CONFIG_APPTRACE_GCOV_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PANIC (CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC)
  – CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_PRINT_HALT
  – CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_PRINT_REBOOT
  – CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT
  – CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_GDBSTUB
• CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_CALIBRATION_AND_DATA_STORAGE (CONFIG_ESP_PHY_CALIBRATION_AND_DATA_STORAGE)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_DEFAULT_INIT_IF_INVALID (CONFIG_ESP_PHY_DEFAULT_INIT_IF_INVALID)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_ERROR (CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_ERROR)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION (CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_MAX_WIFI_TX_POWER (CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MAX_WIFI_TX_POWER)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_STACK_MIN (CONFIG_PTHREAD_STACK_MIN)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT (CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT)
  – CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_PTHREAD_CORE_NO_AFFINITY
  – CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_PTHREAD_CORE_0
  – CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_PTHREAD_CORE_1
• CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT (CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT (CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT)
• CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT (CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT)
• CONFIG_ESP32_REDUCE_PHY_TX_POWER (CONFIG_ESP_PHY_REDUCE_TX_POWER)
• CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLOCK_SOURCE (CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC)
  – CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLOCK_SOURCE_INTERNAL_RC
  – CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLOCK_SOURCE_EXTERNAL_CRYSTAL
  – CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLOCK_SOURCE_EXTERNAL_OSC
  – CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLOCK_SOURCE_INTERNAL_8MD256
• CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_XTAL_BOOTSTRAP_CYCLES (CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_RTC_EXT_XTAL_BOOTSTRAP_CYCLES)
• CONFIG_ESP32_SUPPORT_MULTIPLE_PHY_INIT_DATA_BIN (CONFIG_ESP_PHY_MULTIPLE_INIT_DATA_BIN)
• CONFIG_ESP32_BROADCAST_ARP (CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_BROADCAST_ARP)
• CONFIG_ESP32_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES (CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES)
• CONFIG_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_ENABLED (CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED)
• CONFIG_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_CACHE (CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_CACHE)
• CONFIG_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_DECRYPT (CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_DECRYPT)
• CONFIG_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENCRYPT (CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENCRYPT)
FIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENC

- CONFIG_GAP_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_GAP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- CONFIG_GAP_TMR_INTERVAL (CONFIG_LWP_GARP_TMR_INTERVAL)
- CONFIG_GATTCACHE_NVS_FLASH (CONFIG_BT_GATT_CACHE_NVS_FLASH)
- CONFIG_GATT_ENABLE (CONFIG_BT_GATT_ENABLE)
- CONFIG_GATTS_ENABLE (CONFIG_BT_GATTS_ENABLE)
- CONFIG_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_MODE (CONFIG_BT_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_MODE)
  - CONFIG_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_MANUAL
  - CONFIG_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_AUTO
- CONFIG_GATT_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_GATT_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- CONFIG_GDBSTUB_MAX_TASKS (CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_MAX_TASKS)
- CONFIG_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS (CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS)
- CONFIG_HCI_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_HCI_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- CONFIG_HFP_AUDIO_DATA_PATH (CONFIG_BT_HFP_AUDIO_DATA_PATH)
  - CONFIG_HFP_AUDIO_DATA_PATH_PCM
  - CONFIG_HFP_AUDIO_DATA_PATH_HCI
- CONFIG_HFP_ENABLE (CONFIG_BT_HFP_ENABLE)
- CONFIG_HFP_ROLE (CONFIG_BT_HFP_ROLE)
  - CONFIG_HFP_CLIENT_ENABLE
  - CONFIG_HFP_AG_ENABLE
- CONFIG_HID_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_HID_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- CONFIG_INT_WDT (CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT)
- CONFIG_INT_WDT_CHECK_CPU1 (CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_CHECK_CPU1)
- CONFIG_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS (CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS)
- CONFIG_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE (CONFIG_ESP_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE)
- CONFIG_L2CAP_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
- CONFIG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_API
- CONFIG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
- CONFIG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
- CONFIG_L2CAP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE

• CONFIG_L2_TO_L3_COPY (CONFIG_LWIP_L2_TO_L3_COPY)

• CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL (CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_WARN
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_INFO
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_VERBOSE

• CONFIG_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE (CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE)
• CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE (CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE)
• CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_TIMEOUT (CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_TIMEOUT)
• CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID (CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID)
• CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT (CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT)
• CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE (CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE)
• CONFIG_MB_EVENT_QUEUE_TIMEOUT (CONFIG_FMB_EVENT_QUEUE_TIMEOUT)
• CONFIG_MB_MASTER_DELAY_MS_CONVERT (CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_DELAY_MS_CONVERT)
• CONFIG_MB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND (CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND)
• CONFIG_MB_QUEUE_LENGTH (CONFIG_FMB_QUEUE_LENGTH)
• CONFIG_MB_SERIAL_BUF_SIZE (CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_BUF_SIZE)
• CONFIG_MB_SERIAL_TASK_PRIO (CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO)
• CONFIG_MB_SERIAL_TASK_STACK_SIZE (CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_STACK_SIZE)
• CONFIG_MB_TIMER_PORT_ENABLED (CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_PORT_ENABLED)

• CONFIG_MCA_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_MCA_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE

• CONFIG_MESH_DUPLICATE_SCAN_CACHE_SIZE (CONFIG_BTDM_MESH_DUPL_SCAN_CACHE_SIZE)

• CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD (CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD)
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_9600B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_57600B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_115200B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_230400B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_921600B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_2MB
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER

• CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER_VAL (CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER_VAL)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_ACL_BUF_COUNT (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ACL_BUF_COUNT)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_ACL_BUF_SIZE (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ACL_BUF_SIZE)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_ATT_PREFERRED_MTU (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ATT_PREFERRED_MTU)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_CRYPTO_STACK_MBEDTLS (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_CRYPTO_STACK_MBEDTLS)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_DEBUG (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_DEBUG)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_GAP_DEVICE_NAME_MAX_LEN (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_GAP_DEVICE_NAME_MAX_LEN)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_BUF_SIZE (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_BUF_SIZE)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_HI_BUF_COUNT (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_HI_BUF_COUNT)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_LO_BUF_COUNT (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HCI_EVT_LO_BUF_COUNT)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_ITVL (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_ITVL)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_THRESH (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_THRESH)
• CONFIG_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_TX_ON_DISCONNECT (CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_HS_FLOW_CTRL_TX_ON_DISCONNECT)
Chapter 2. API

- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_L2CAP_COC_MAX_NUM`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MAX_BONDS`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MAX_CCCDS`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MAX_CONNECTIONS`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE`
  - `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_INTERNAL`
  - `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_EXTERNAL`
  - `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MEM_ALLOC_MODE_DEFAULT`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_DEVICE_NAME`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_FRIEND`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_GATT_PROXY`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_LOW_POWER`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_PB_ADV`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_PB_GATT`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_PROV`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_PROXY`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MESH_RELAY`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_MSYS1_BLOCK_COUNT`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_NVS_PERSIST`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_PINNED_TO_CORE_CHOICE`
  - `CONFIG_NIMBLE_PINNED_TO_CORE_0`
  - `CONFIG_NIMBLE_PINNED_TO_CORE_1`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_ROLE_BROADCASTER`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_ROLE_CENTRAL`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_ROLE_OBSERVER`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_ROLE_PERIPHERAL`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_RPA_TIMEOUT`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_SM_LEGACY`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_SM_SC`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_SM_SC_DEBUG_KEYS`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_SVC_GAP_APPEARANCE`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_SVC_GAP_DEVICE_NAME`
- `CONFIG_NIMBLE_TASK_STACK_SIZE`
- `CONFIG_NO_BLOBS`
- `CONFIG_NUMBER_OF_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESS`
  - `CONFIG_TWO_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESS`
  - `CONFIG_FOUR_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESS`
- `CONFIG_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL`
- `CONFIG_OPTIMIZATION_COMPILER`
- `CONFIG_OSI_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL`
  - `CONFIG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE`
  - `CONFIG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR`
  - `CONFIG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING`
  - `CONFIG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_API`
  - `CONFIG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT`
  - `CONFIG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG`
  - `CONFIG_OSI_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE`
- `CONFIG_PAN_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL`
  - `CONFIG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE`
Chapter 2. API

- CONFIG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
- CONFIG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
- CONFIG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_API
- CONFIG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
- CONFIG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
- CONFIG_PAN_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE

• CONFIG_POST_EVENTS_FROM_IRAM_ISR (CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR)
• CONFIG_POST_EVENTS_FROM_ISR (CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR)
• CONFIG_PPP_CHAP_SUPPORT (CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_CHAP_SUPPORT)
• CONFIG_PPP_DEBUG_ON (CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_DEBUG_ON)
• CONFIG_PPP_MPPE_SUPPORT (CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MPPE_SUPPORT)
• CONFIG_PPP_MSCHAP_SUPPORT (CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MSCHAP_SUPPORT)
• CONFIG_PPP_NOTIFY_PHASE_SUPPORT (CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_NOTIFY_PHASE_SUPPORT)
• CONFIG_PPP_PAP_SUPPORT (CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_PAP_SUPPORT)
• CONFIG_PPP_SUPPORT (CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT)
• CONFIG_REDUCE_PHY_TX_POWER (CONFIG_ESP_PHY_REDUCE_TX_POWER)

• CONFIG_RFCOMM_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_RFCOMM_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE

• CONFIG_SCAN_DUPLICATE_TYPE (CONFIG_BTDM_SCAN_DUPL_TYPE)
  - CONFIG_SCAN_DUPLICATE_BY_DEVICE_ADDR
  - CONFIG_SCAN_DUPLICATE_BY_ADV_DATA
  - CONFIG_SCAN_DUPLICATE_BY_ADV_DATA_AND_DEVICE_ADDR
• CONFIG_SEMIHOSTFS_HOST_PATH_MAX_LEN (CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_HOST_PATH_MAX_LEN)
• CONFIG_SEMIHOSTFS_MAX_MOUNT_POINTS (CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_MAX_MOUNT_POINTS)

• CONFIG_SMP_INITIAL_TRACE_LEVEL (CONFIG_BT_LOG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL)
  - CONFIG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_WARNING
  - CONFIG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_API
  - CONFIG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_EVENT
  - CONFIG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_SMP_TRACE_LEVEL_VERBOSE

• CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITING_DANGEROUS_REGIONS (CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE)
  - CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITING_DANGEROUS_REGIONS_ABORTS
  - CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITING_DANGEROUS_REGIONS_FAILS
  - CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITING_DANGEROUS_REGIONS_ALLOWED

• CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_MODE (CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE)
  - CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_NONE
  - CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_NORM
  - CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_STRONG
  - CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_ALL

• CONFIG_SUPPORT_TERMIOS (CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_TERMIOS)
• CONFIG_SUPPRESS_SELECT_DEBUG_OUTPUT (CONFIG_VFS_SUPPRESS_SELECT_DEBUG_OUTPUT)
• CONFIG_SW_COEXIST_ENABLE (CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_SW_COEXIST_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE (CONFIG_ESP32_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE)
• CONFIG_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE (CONFIG_ESP32_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_BUF_WAIT_TMO (CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_BUF_WAIT_TMO)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE (CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_IDLE_ENABLE (CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_IDLE_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_ISR_ENTER_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_ISR_ENTER_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_ISR_EXIT_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_ISR_EXIT_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_ISR_TO_SCHEDULER_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_ISR_TO_SCHED_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_OVERFLOW_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_OVERFLOW_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_CREATE_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_TASK_CREATE_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_START_EXEC_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_TASK_START_EXEC_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_START_READY_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_TASK_START_READY_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_STOP_EXEC_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_TASK_STOP_EXEC_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_STOP_READY_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_TASK_STOP_READY_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_TERMINATE_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_TASK_TERMINATE_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TIMER_ENTER_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_TIMER_ENTER_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TIMER_EXIT_ENABLE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_EVT_TIMER_EXIT_ENABLE)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_MAX_TASKS (CON_SWITCH_SYS_MAX_TASKS)
• CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE (CON_SWITCH_SYS_TS_SOURCE)
  – CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_CCOUNT
  – CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_00
  – CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_01
  – CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_10
  – CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_11
  – CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_ESP_TIMER
• CONFIG_TASK_WDT (CON_SWITCH_TASK_WDT)
• CONFIG_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU0 (CON_SWITCH_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU0)
• CONFIG_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU1 (CON_SWITCH_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU1)
• CONFIG_TASK_WDT_PANIC (CON_SWITCH_TASK_WDT_PANIC)
• CONFIG_TASK_WDT_TIMEOUT_S (CON_SWITCH_TASK_WDT_TIMEOUT_S)
• CONFIG_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE (CON_SWITCH_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE)
• CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY (CON_SWITCH_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY)
  – CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY
  – CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0
  – CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1
• CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE (CON_SWITCH_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE)
• CONFIG_TCP_MAXRTX (CON_SWITCH_TCP_MAXRTX)
• CONFIG_TCP_MSL (CON_SWITCH_TCP_MSL)
• CONFIG_TCP_MSS (CON_SWITCH_TCP_MSS)
• CONFIG_TCP_OOSEQ (CON_SWITCH_TCP_OOSEQ)
• CONFIG_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE (CON_SWITCH_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE)
• CONFIG_TCP_SEND_BUF_DEFAULT (CON_SWITCH_TCP_SEND_BUF_DEFAULT)
• CONFIG_TCP_SYNMAXRTX (CON_SWITCH_TCP_SYNMAXRTX)
• CONFIG_TCP_WND_DEFAULT (CON_SWITCH_TCP_WND_DEFAULT)
• CONFIG_TIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH (CON_SWITCH_TIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH)
• CONFIG_TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY (CON_SWITCH_TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY)
• CONFIG_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH (CON_SWITCH_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH)
• CONFIG_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE (CON_SWITCH_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE)
• CONFIG_TOOLPREFIX (CON_SWITCH_TOOLPREFIX)
• CONFIG_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE (CON_SWITCH_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE)
• CONFIG_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED (CON_SWITCH_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED)
• CONFIG_ULP_COPROC_RESERVE_MEM (CON_SWITCH_ULP_COPROC_RESERVE_MEM)
• CONFIG_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT (CON_SWITCH_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT)
• CONFIG_WARN_WRITE_STRINGS (CON_SWITCH_WARN_WRITE_STRINGS)
• CONFIG_WIFI_LWIP_ALLOCATION_FROM_SPIRAM_FIRST (CON_SWITCH_WIFI_LWIP_ALLOCATION_FROM_SPIRAM_FIRST)
2.10 Error Codes Reference

This section lists various error code constants defined in ESP-IDF.
For general information about error codes in ESP-IDF, see Error Handling.

ESP_FAIL (-1): Generic esp_err_t code indicating failure
ESP_OK (0): esp_err_t value indicating success (no error)
ESP_ERR_NO_MEM (0x101): Out of memory
ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG (0x102): Invalid argument
ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE (0x103): Invalid state
ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE (0x104): Invalid size
ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND (0x105): Requested resource not found
ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED (0x106): Operation or feature not supported
ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT (0x107): Operation timed out
ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE (0x108): Received response was invalid
ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC (0x109): CRC or checksum was invalid
ESP_ERR_INVALID_VERSION (0x10a): Version was invalid
ESP_ERR_INVALID_MAC (0x10b): MAC address was invalid
ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED (0x10c): There are items remained to retrieve
ESP_ERR_NVS_BASE (0x1100): Starting number of error codes
ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED (0x1101): The storage driver is not initialized
ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND (0x1102): Id namespace doesn’t exist yet and mode is NVS_READONLY
ESP_ERR_NVS_TYPE_MISMATCH (0x1103): The type of set or get operation doesn’t match the type of value stored in NVS
ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY (0x1104): Storage handle was opened as read only
ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE (0x1105): There is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value
ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME (0x1106): Namespace name doesn’t satisfy constraints
ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE (0x1107): Handle has been closed or is NULL
ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED (0x1108): The value wasn’t updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn’t fail again.
ESP_ERR_NVS_KEY_TOO_LONG (0x1109): Key name is too long
ESP_ERR_NVS_PAGE_FULL (0x110a): Internal error; never returned by nvs API functions
ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_STATE (0x110b): NVS is in an inconsistent state due to a previous error. Call nvs_flash_init and nvs_open again, then retry.
ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_LENGTH (0x110c): String or blob length is not sufficient to store data
ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES (0x110d): NVS partition doesn’t contain any empty pages. This may happen if NVS partition was truncated. Erase the whole partition and call nvs_flash_init again.
ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG (0x110e): String or blob length is longer than supported by the implementation
ESP_ERR_NVS_PARTITION_NOT_FOUND (0x110f): Partition with specified name is not found in the partition table
**ESP_ERR_NVS_NEW_VERSION_FOUND** (0x1110): NVS partition contains data in new format and cannot be recognized by this version of code

**ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_ENCR_FAILED** (0x1111): XTS encryption failed while writing NVS entry

**ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_DECR_FAILED** (0x1112): XTS decryption failed while reading NVS entry

**ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_FAILED** (0x1113): XTS configuration setting failed

**ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_NOT_FOUND** (0x1114): XTS configuration not found

**ESP_ERR_NVS_ENCR_NOT_SUPPORTED** (0x1115): NVS encryption is not supported in this version

**ESP_ERR_NVS_KEYS_NOT_INITIALIZED** (0x1116): NVS key partition is uninitialized

**ESP_ERR_NVS_CORRUPT_KEY_PART** (0x1117): NVS key partition is corrupt

**ESP_ERR_NVS_CONTENT_DIFFERS** (0x1118): Internal error; never returned by nvs API functions. NVS key is different in comparison

**ESP_ERR_NVS_WRONG_ENCRYPTION** (0x1119): NVS partition is marked as encrypted with generic flash encryption. This is forbidden since the NVS encryption works differently.

**ESP_ERR_ULP_BASE** (0x1200): Offset for ULP-related error codes

**ESP_ERR_ULP_SIZE_TOO_BIG** (0x1201): Program doesn’t fit into RTC memory reserved for the ULP

**ESP_ERR_ULP_INVALID_LOAD_ADDR** (0x1202): Load address is outside of RTC memory reserved for the ULP

**ESP_ERR_ULP_DUPLICATE_LABEL** (0x1203): More than one label with the same number was defined

**ESP_ERR_ULP_UNDEFINED_LABEL** (0x1204): Branch instructions references an undefined label

**ESP_ERR_ULP_BRANCH_OUT_OF_RANGE** (0x1205): Branch target is out of range of B instruction (try replacing with BX)

**ESP_ERR_OTA_BASE** (0x1500): Base error code for ota_ops api

**ESP_ERR_OTA_PARTITION_CONFLICT** (0x1501): Error if request was to write or erase the current running partition

**ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID** (0x1502): Error if OTA data partition contains invalid content

**ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED** (0x1503): Error if OTA app image is invalid

**ESP_ERR_OTA_SMALL_SEC_VER** (0x1504): Error if the firmware has a secure version less than the running firmware.

**ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED** (0x1505): Error if flash does not have valid firmware in passive partition and hence rollback is not possible

**ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE** (0x1506): Error if current active firmware is still marked in pending validation state (ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY), essentially first boot of firmware image post upgrade and hence firmware upgrade is not possible

**ESP_ERR_EFUSE** (0x1600): Base error code for efuse api.

**ESP_OK_EFUSE_CNT** (0x1601): OK the required number of bits is set.

**ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL** (0x1602): Error field is full.

**ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG** (0x1603): Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.

**ESP_ERR_CODING** (0x1604): Error while a encoding operation.

**ESP_ERR_NOT_ENOUGH_UNUSED_KEY_BLOCKS** (0x1605): Error not enough unused key blocks available

**ESP_ERR_DAMAGED_READING** (0x1606): Error. Burn or reset was done during a reading operation leads to damage read data. This error is internal to the efuse component and not returned by any public API.

**ESP_ERR_IMAGE_BASE** (0x2000)
ESP_ERR_IMAGE_FLASH_FAIL (0x2001)
ESP_ERR_IMAGE_INVALID (0x2002)
ESP_ERR_WIFI_BASE (0x3000): Starting number of WiFi error codes
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT (0x3001): WiFi driver was not installed by esp_wifi_init
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED (0x3002): WiFi driver was not started by esp_wifi_start
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STOPPED (0x3003): WiFi driver was not stopped by esp_wifi_stop
ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF (0x3004): WiFi interface error
ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE (0x3005): WiFi mode error
ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE (0x3006): WiFi internal state error
ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN (0x3007): WiFi internal control block of station or soft-AP error
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NVS (0x3008): WiFi internal NVS module error
ESP_ERR_WIFI_MAC (0x3009): MAC address is invalid
ESP_ERR_WIFI_SSID (0x300a): SSID is invalid
ESP_ERR_WIFI_PASSWORD (0x300b): Password is invalid
ESP_ERR_WIFI_TIMEOUT (0x300c): Timeout error
ESP_ERR_WIFI_WAKE_FAIL (0x300d): WiFi is in sleep state (RF closed) and wakeup fail
ESP_ERR_WIFI_WOULD_BLOCK (0x300e): The caller would block
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_CONNECT (0x300f): Station still in disconnect status
ESP_ERR_WIFI_POST (0x3012): Failed to post the event to WiFi task
ESP_ERR_WIFI_INIT_STATE (0x3013): Invalid WiFi state when init/deinit is called
ESP_ERR_WIFI_STOP_STATE (0x3014): Returned when WiFi is stopping
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_ASSOC (0x3015): The WiFi connection is not associated
ESP_ERR_WIFI_TX_DISALLOW (0x3016): The WiFi TX is disallowed
ESP_ERR_WIFI_REGISTRAR (0x3033): WPS registrar is not supported
ESP_ERR_WIFI_WPS_TYPE (0x3034): WPS type error
ESP_ERR_WIFI_WPS_SM (0x3035): WPS state machine is not initialized
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_BASE (0x3064): ESPNOW error number base.
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT (0x3065): ESPNOW is not initialized.
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG (0x3066): Invalid argument
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM (0x3067): Out of memory
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL (0x3068): ESPNOW peer list is full
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND (0x3069): ESPNOW peer is not found
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW/Internal (0x306a): Internal error
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_EXIST (0x306b): ESPNOW peer has existed
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_IF (0x306c): Interface error
ESP_ERR_DPP_FAILURE (0x3097): Generic failure during DPP Operation
ESP_ERR_DPP_TX_FAILURE (0x3098): DPP Frame Tx failed OR not Acked
ESP_ERR_DPP_INVALID_ATTR (0x3099): Encountered invalid DPP Attribute
ESP_ERR_MESH_BASE (0x4000): Starting number of MESH error codes
Chapter 2. API

ESP_ERR_MESH_WIFI_NOT_START (0x4001)
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_INIT (0x4002)
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG (0x4003)
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START (0x4004)
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_SUPPORT (0x4005)
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED (0x4006)
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY (0x4007)
ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT (0x4008)
ESP_ERR_MESH_EXCEED_MTU (0x4009)
ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT (0x400a)
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED (0x400b)
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FAIL (0x400c)
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL (0x400d)
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_PARENT_FOUND (0x400e)
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_ROUTE_FOUND (0x400f)
ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_NULL (0x4010)
ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_UNKNOWN (0x4011)
ESP_ERR_MESH_XON_NO_WINDOW (0x4012)
ESP_ERR_MESH_INTERFACE (0x4013)
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD_DUPLICATE (0x4014)
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD (0x4015)
ESP_ERR_MESH_VOTING (0x4016)
ESP_ERR_MESH_XMIT (0x4017)
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_READ (0x4018)
ESP_ERR_MESH_PS (0x4019)
ESP_ERR_MESH_RECV_RELEASE (0x401a)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_BASE (0x5000)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS (0x5001)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY (0x5002)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCPD_START_FAILED (0x5003)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCPD_ALREADY_STARTED (0x5004)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCPD_ALREADY_STOPPED (0x5005)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_NO_MEM (0x5006)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCPD_NOT_STOPPED (0x5007)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DRIVER_ATTACHMENT_FAILED (0x5008)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INIT_FAILED (0x5009)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DNS_NOT_CONFIGURED (0x500a)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_MLD6_FAILED (0x500b)
ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IP6_ADDR_FAILED (0x500c)
**ESP_ERR_FLASH_BASE (0x6000)**: Starting number of flash error codes

ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL (0x6001)
ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT (0x6002)
ESP_ERR_FLASH_NOT_INITIALISED (0x6003)
ESP_ERR_FLASH_UNSUPPORTED_HOST (0x6004)
ESP_ERR_FLASH_UNSUPPORTED_CHIP (0x6005)
ESP_ERR_FLASH_PROTECTED (0x6006)

**ESP_ERR_HTTP_BASE (0x7000)**: Starting number of HTTP error codes

ESP_ERR_HTTP_MAX_REDIRECT (0x7001): The error exceeds the number of HTTP redirects
ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECT (0x7002): Error open the HTTP connection
ESP_ERR_HTTP_WRITE_DATA (0x7003): Error write HTTP data
ESP_ERR_HTTP_FETCH_HEADER (0x7004): Error read HTTP header from server
ESP_ERR_HTTP_INVALID_TRANSPORT (0x7005): There are no transport support for the input scheme
ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTING (0x7006): HTTP connection hasn’t been established yet
ESP_ERR_HTTP_EAGAIN (0x7007): Mapping of errno EAGAIN to esp_err_t

**ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTION_CLOSED (0x7008)**: Read FIN from peer and the connection closed

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_BASE (0x8000): Starting number of ESP-TLS error codes

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_CANNOT_RESOLVE_HOSTNAME (0x8001): Error if hostname couldn’t be resolved upon tls connection
ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_CANNOT_CREATE_SOCKET (0x8002): Failed to create socket
ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_UNSUPPORTED_PROTOCOL_FAMILY (0x8003): Unsupported protocol family
ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_FAILED_CONNECT_TO_HOST (0x8004): Failed to connect to host
ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_SOCKET_SETOPT_FAILED (0x8005): failed to set/get socket option
ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_CONNECTION_TIMEOUT (0x8006): new connection in esp_tls_low_level_conn connection timeouted

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_SE_FAILED (0x8007)
ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_TCP_CLOSED_FIN (0x8008)
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_CERT_PARTLY_OK (0x8010): mbedtls parse certificates was partly successful
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_SEED_FAILED (0x8011): mbedtls api returned error
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_SET_HOSTNAME_FAILED (0x8012): mbedtls api returned error
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULTS_FAILED (0x8013): mbedtls api returned error
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_CONF_ALPN_PROTOCOLS_FAILED (0x8014): mbedtls api returned error
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_X509_CRT_PARSE_FAILED (0x8015): mbedtls api returned error
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_CONF_OWN_CERT_FAILED (0x8016): mbedtls api returned error
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_SETUP_FAILED (0x8017): mbedtls api returned error
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_WRITE_FAILED (0x8018): mbedtls api returned error
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_PK_PARSE_KEY_FAILED (0x8019): mbedtls api returned failed
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_HANDSHAKE_FAILED (0x801a): mbedtls api returned failed
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_CONF_PSK_FAILED (0x801b): mbedtls api returned failed
ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_TICKET_SETUP_FAILED (0x801c): mbedtls api returned failed
Chapter 2. API

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_SET_HOSTNAME_FAILED (0x8031): wolfSSL api returned error
ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_CONF_ALPN_PROTOCOLS_FAILED (0x8032): wolfSSL api returned error
ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_CERT_VERIFY_SETUP_FAILED (0x8033): wolfSSL api returned error
ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_KEY_VERIFY_SETUP_FAILED (0x8034): wolfSSL api returned failed
ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_HANDSHAKE_FAILED (0x8035): wolfSSL api returned failed
ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_CTX_SETUP_FAILED (0x8036): wolfSSL api returned failed
ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_SETUP_FAILED (0x8037): wolfSSL api returned failed
ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_WRITE_FAILED (0x8038): wolfSSL api returned failed

ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_BASE (0x9000)
ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_IN_PROGRESS (0x9001)
ESP_ERR_PING_BASE (0xa000)
ESP_ERR_PING_INVALID_PARAMS (0xa001)
ESP_ERR_PING_NO_MEM (0xa002)

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_BASE (0xb000): Starting number of HTTPD error codes
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLERS_FULL (0xb001): All slots for registering URI handlers have been consumed
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLER_EXISTS (0xb002): URI handler with same method and target URI already registered
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ (0xb003): Invalid request pointer
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC (0xb004): Result string truncated
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR (0xb005): Response header field larger than supported
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND (0xb006): Error occurred while sending response packet
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_ALLOC_MEM (0xb007): Failed to dynamically allocate memory for resource
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_TASK (0xb008): Failed to launch server task/thread

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_BASE (0xc000): Starting number of HW cryptography module error codes
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_HMAC_FAIL (0xc001): HMAC peripheral problem
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_KEY (0xc002)
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_DIGEST (0xc004)
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_PADDING (0xc005)
Chapter 3

ESP32 H/W 硬件参考

3.1 芯片系列对比

下表对比了 ESP-IDF 各系列芯片的主要特性，如需了解更多信息，请参考相关文档中各系列芯片的技术规格书。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>特性</th>
<th>ESP32 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-S2 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-C3 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-S3 系列</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>发布时间</td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>产品型号</td>
<td>请参考 ESP32 技术规格书 (PDF)</td>
<td>请参考 ESP32-S2 技术规格书 (PDF)</td>
<td>请参考 ESP32-C3 技术规格书 (PDF)</td>
<td>请参考 ESP32-S3 技术规格书 (PDF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>内核</td>
<td>搭载高效 Xtensa® LX6 32 位双核/单核处理器</td>
<td>搭载高效 Xtensa® LX7 32 位单核处理器</td>
<td>搭载 RISC-V 32 位单核处理器</td>
<td>搭载高效 Xtensa® LX7 32 位双核处理器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wi-Fi 协议</td>
<td>802.11 b/g/n, 2.4 GHz</td>
<td>802.11 b/g/n, 2.4 GHz</td>
<td>802.11 b/g/n, 2.4 GHz</td>
<td>802.11 b/g/n, 2.4 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth®</td>
<td>Bluetooth v4.2 BR/EDR 和 Bluetooth Low Energy</td>
<td>Bluetooth 5.0</td>
<td>Bluetooth 5.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>主频</td>
<td>240 MHz (ESP32-S0WD 为 160 MHz)</td>
<td>240 MHz</td>
<td>160 MHz</td>
<td>240 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRAM</td>
<td>520 KB</td>
<td>320 KB</td>
<td>400 KB</td>
<td>512 KB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROM</td>
<td>448 KB 用于程序启动和内核功能调用</td>
<td>128 KB 用于程序启动和内核功能调用</td>
<td>384 KB 用于程序启动和内核功能调用</td>
<td>384 KB 用于程序启动和内核功能调用</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>嵌入式 flash</td>
<td>2 MB, 4 MB 或无嵌入式 flash, 不同型号有差异</td>
<td>2 MB, 4 MB 或无嵌入式 flash, 不同型号有差异</td>
<td>4 MB 或无嵌入式 flash, 不同型号有差异</td>
<td>8 MB 或无嵌入式 flash, 不同型号有差异</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>外部 flash</td>
<td>最大支持 16 MB, 一次最多可映射 11 MB + 248 KB</td>
<td>最大支持 1 GB, 一次最多可映射 11.5 MB</td>
<td>最大支持 16 MB, 一次最多可映射 8 MB</td>
<td>最大支持 1 GB, 一次最多可映射 32 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>片外 RAM</td>
<td>最大支持 8 MB, 一次最多可映射 4 MB</td>
<td>最大支持 1 GB, 一次最多可映射 11.5 MB</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache</td>
<td>✅ 2 路缓存</td>
<td>✅ 4 路缓存, 独立的指令和数据 cache</td>
<td>✅ 8 路缓存, 32 位数据/指令总线宽度</td>
<td>✅ 指令 cache 可配置为 4 路缓存或 8 路缓存, 数据 cache 固定为 4 路缓存, 32 位数据/指令总线宽度</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>外设</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

下页继续
### 表 1 – 续上页

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>特性</th>
<th>ESP32 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-S2 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-C3 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-S3 系列</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>模/数转换器 (ADC)</td>
<td>两个 12 位 SAR ADC，多达 18 个通道</td>
<td>两个 12 位 SAR ADC，多达 20 个通道</td>
<td>两个 12 位 SAR ADC，多达 20 个通道</td>
<td>两个 12 位 SAR ADC，多达 20 个通道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>数/模转换器 (DAC)</td>
<td>两个 8 位通道</td>
<td>两个 8 位通道</td>
<td>两个 8 位通道</td>
<td>两个 8 位通道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>定时器</td>
<td>4 个 64 位通用定时器，3 个看门狗定时器</td>
<td>4 个 64 位通用定时器，3 个看门狗定时器</td>
<td>2 个 54 位通用定时器，3 个看门狗定时器</td>
<td>4 个 54 位通用定时器，3 个看门狗定时器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>温度传感器</td>
<td>✗ 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>触摸传感器</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>✗ 14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>霍尔传感器</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>通用输入输出接口 (GPIO)</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>串行外设接口 (SPI)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD 接口</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>通用异步收发器 (UART)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2¹</td>
<td>2¹</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I2C 接口</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I2S 接口</td>
<td>2，可配置为 8/16/32/40/48 位的输入输出通道</td>
<td>1，可配置为 8/16/24/32/48/64 位的输入输出通道</td>
<td>1，可配置为 8/16/24/32 位的输入输出通道</td>
<td>2，可配置为 8/16/24/32 位的输入输出通道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera 接口</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMA</td>
<td>UART、SPI、I2S、SDIO 从机、SD/MMC 主机、EMAC、BT 和 Wi-Fi 专用的 DMA 控制器</td>
<td>UART、SPI、AES、SHA、I2S 和 ADC 控制器都有专用的 DMA 控制器</td>
<td>通用 DMA 控制器，3 个接收通道和 3 个发送通道</td>
<td>通用 DMA 控制器，5 个接收通道和 5 个发送通道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>红外遥控器 (RMT)</td>
<td>支持 8 道</td>
<td>支持 4 道¹，可配置为红外发射和接收</td>
<td>支持 4 道¹，双通道的红外发射和双通道的红外接收</td>
<td>支持 8 道¹，可配置为红外发射和接收</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电源计数器</td>
<td>8 道</td>
<td>4 道¹</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>4 道¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LED PWM</td>
<td>16 道</td>
<td>8 道¹</td>
<td>6 道²</td>
<td>8 道¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCPWM</td>
<td>2，提供六个 PWM 输出</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>2，提供六个 PWM 输出</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB OTG</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

下页继续
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>特性</th>
<th>ESP32 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-S2 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-C3 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-S3 系列</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TWAI®控制（兼容ISO 11898-1）</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD/SDIO/MMC</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDO 从机控制器</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>以太网接口</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>超低功耗处理器 (ULP)</td>
<td>ULP FSM</td>
<td>PicoRV32内核,8KB SRAM, ULP FSM</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>PicoRV32内核,8KB SRAM, ULP FSM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>辅助调试</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>安全机制</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>安全启动</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓  比 ESP32 更快更安全</td>
<td>✓  比 ESP32 更快更安全</td>
<td>✓  比 ESP32 更快更安全</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash加密</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓  支持PSRAM 加密, 比 ESP32 更安全</td>
<td>✓  比 ESP32 更安全</td>
<td>✓  支持PSRAM 加密, 比 ESP32 更安全</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTP</td>
<td>1024位</td>
<td>4096位</td>
<td>4096位</td>
<td>4096位</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES</td>
<td>✓ AES-128, AES-192, AES-256 (FIPS PUB 197)</td>
<td>✓ AES-128, AES-192, AES-256 (FIPS PUB 197); 支持 DMA</td>
<td>✓ AES-128, AES-256 (FIPS PUB 197); 支持 DMA</td>
<td>✓ AES-128, AES-256 (FIPS PUB 197); 支持 DMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HASH</td>
<td>SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512 (FIPS PUB 180-4)</td>
<td>SHA-1, SHA-224, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512, SHA-512/224, SHA-512/256, SHA-512/512 (FIPS PUB 180-4); 支持 DMA</td>
<td>SHA-1, SHA-224, SHA-256 (FIPS PUB 180-4); 支持 DMA</td>
<td>SHA-1, SHA-224, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512, SHA-512/224, SHA-512/256, SHA-512/512 (FIPS PUB 180-4); 支持 DMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>高达4096位</td>
<td>高达4096位</td>
<td>高达3072位</td>
<td>高达4096位</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>随机数生成器 (RNG)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMAC</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>数字签名</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XTS</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✓  XTS-AES-128, XTS-AES-256</td>
<td>✓  XTS-AES-128</td>
<td>✓  XTS-AES-128, XTS-AES-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>其它</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

表1 - 续上页
### 表 1 - 续上页

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>特性</th>
<th>ESP32 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-S2 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-C3 系列</th>
<th>ESP32-S3 系列</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deep-sleep 功耗（超低功耗监视方式）</td>
<td>100 μA（ADC 以 1% 占空比工作时）</td>
<td>22 μA（触摸传感器以 1% 占空比工作时）</td>
<td>无此模式</td>
<td>TBD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>封装尺寸</td>
<td>QFN48 5<em>5，6</em>6. 不同型号有差异</td>
<td>QFN56 7*7</td>
<td>QFN32 5*5</td>
<td>QFN56 7*7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注解：**

**注解：** 芯片大小 (die size): ESP32-C3 < ESP32-S2 < ESP32-S3 < ESP32

#### 3.1.1 相关文档

- ESP32 技术规格书 (PDF)
- ESP32-PICO 技术规格书 (PDF)
  - ESP32-PICO-D4
  - ESP32-PICO-V3
  - ESP32-PICO-V3-02
- ESP32-S2 技术规格书 (PDF)
- ESP32-C3 技术规格书 (PDF)
- ESP32-S3 技术规格书 (PDF)
- ESP 产品选型
Chapter 4

API 指南

4.1 应用层跟踪库

4.1.1 概述

为了分析应用程序的行为，IDF 提供了一个有用的功能：应用层跟踪。此功能可以提供一个形式，可以通过 menuconfig 开启。此功能使得用户可以在程序运行时查看某些特定的变量，通过 JTAG 接口在主机和 ESP32 之间传输任意数据。

开发人员可以使用这个功能库将应用程序的运行状态发送给主机，在运行时接收来自主机的命令或其他类型的信息。该库的主要使用场景有：

1. 收集应用程序特定的数据，具体请参阅特定应用程序的跟踪
2. 记录到主机的轻量级日志，具体请参阅记录日志到主机
3. 系统行为分析，具体请参阅基于 SEGGER SystemView 的系统行为分析
4. 源代码覆盖率，具体请参阅 Gcov（源代码覆盖）

使用 JTAG 接口的跟踪组件工作示意图：

4.1.2 运行模式

该库支持两种操作模式：

流模式：这是默认的模式，该模式不需要和主机进行交互。在这种模式下，跟踪模块会根据条件在缓存区中存放数据，待数据达到一定条件时再将数据发往主机。

4.1.3 配置选项与依赖项

使用此功能需要在主机端和目标端设置相应的配置：

1707
1. **主机端**：应用程序跟踪是通过 JTAG 来完成的，因此需要在主机上安装并运行 OpenOCD。相关信息请参阅 JTAG Debugging。

2. **目标端**：在 menuconfig 中开启应用程序跟踪功能。Component config > Application Level Tracing 菜单允许选择跟踪数据的传输目标（具体用于传输的硬件接口），选择任一非 None 的目标都会自动开启 CONFIG_APPTRACE_ENABLE 这个选项。

**注解**：为了实现更高的数据速率并降低丢包率，建议优化 JTAG 的时钟频率，使其达到能够稳定运行的最大值。详细信息请参阅优化 JTAG 的速度。

以下为前述未提及的另外两个 menuconfig 选项：

1. **Threshold for flushing last trace data to host on panic** (CONFIG_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_THRESH)。由于在 JTAG 上工作的性质，此选项是必选项。在该模式下，跟踪数据以 16 KB 数据块的形式暴露给主机。在后验模式中，当一个块被填充时，它会暴露给主机，而之前的块会变得不可用。换句话说，跟踪数据以 16 KB 的粒度进行覆盖。在发生 panic 的时候，当前输入块的最新数据将会被暴露给主机，主机可以读取它们以进行后续分析。如果系统发生 panic 的时候仍有少量数据还没来得及曝光给主机，那么之前收集的 16 KB 的数据将丢失。主机只能看到非常少的最新的跟踪部分，它可能不足以用来诊断问题所在。此 menuconfig 选项允许避免此类情况。它可以控制在发生 panic 时刷新数据的阈值。例如用户可以确定它需要不少于 512 字节的最新跟踪数据，所以如果在发生 panic 时待处理的数据少于 512 字节，它们不会被刷新，也不会覆盖之前的 16 KB。该选项仅在后验模式和 JTAG 工作时有意义。

2. **Timeout for flushing last trace data to host on panic** (CONFIG_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO)。该选项仅在流模式下才起作用，它控制跟踪模块在发生 panic 时等待主机读取最新数据的最长时间。

### 4.1.4 如何使用这个库

该库提供了用于在主机和 ESP32 之间传输任意数据的 API。当在 menuconfig 中启用时，目标应用程序的跟踪模块会在系统启动时自动初始化，因此用户需要做的就是调用相应的 API 来发送，接收或者刷新数据。
特定应用程序的跟踪

通常，用户需要决定在每个方向上待传输数据的类型以及如何解析（处理）这些数据。要想在目标和主机之间传输数据，用户必须执行以下几个步骤。

1. 在目标端，用户需要实现将跟踪数据写入主机的算法。下面的代码片段展示了如何执行此操作。

```c
#include "esp_app_trace.h"
...
char buf[] = "Hello World!");
esp_err_t res = esp_apptrace_write(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, buf, strlen(buf),
     ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE);
if (res != ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to write data to host!");
    return res;
}
```

`esp_apptrace_write()` 函数使用 `memcpy` 把用户数据复制到内部缓存中。在某些情况下，使用 `esp_apptrace_buffer_get()` 和 `esp_apptrace_buffer_put()` 函数会更加理想，它们允许开发人员自行分配缓冲区并填充。下面的代码片段展示了如何执行此操作。

```c
#include "esp_app_trace.h"
...
int number = 10;
char *ptr = (char *)&esp_apptrace_buffer_get(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, 32, 100/
     "tmo in us/");
if (ptr == NULL) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to get buffer!");
    return ESP_FAIL;
}
sprintf(ptr, "Here is the number %d", number);
esp_err_t res = esp_apptrace_buffer_put(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, ptr, 100/*tmo...
     in us*/);
if (res != ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to put buffer!");
    return res;
}
```

另外，根据实际项目的需要，用户可能希望从主机接收数据。下面的代码片段展示了如何执行此操作。

```c
#include "esp_app_trace.h"
...
char buf[32];
char down_buf[32];
size_t sz = sizeof(buf);
/* config down buffer */
esp_apptrace_down_buffer_config(down_buf, sizeof(down_buf));
/* check for incoming data and read them if any */
esp_err_t res = esp_apptrace_read(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, buf, &sz, 0/*do not...
     wait*/);
if (res != ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to read data from host!");
    return res;
}
if (sz > 0) {
    /* we have data, process them */
    ...
}
```

`esp_apptrace_read()` 函数使用 `memcpy` 来把主机端的数据复制到用户缓存区。在某些情况下，使用 `esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get()` 和 `esp_apptrace_down_buffer_put()` 函数。
```c
#include "esp_app_trace.h"
...
char down_buf[32];
uint32_t *number;
sz = 32;

/* config down buffer */
esp_apptrace_down_buffer_config(down_buf, sizeof(down_buf));
char *ptr = (char *)esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, &sz, ...
--100/"tmo in us"/);
if (ptr == NULL) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to get buffer!");
    return ESP_FAIL;
}
if (sz > 4) {
    number = (uint32_t *)ptr;
    printf("Here is the number %d", *number);
} else {
    printf("No data");
}
esp_err_t res = esp_apptrace_down_buffer_put(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, ptr, 100/...
"tmo in us"/);
if (res != ESP_OK) {
    /* in case of error host tracing tool (e.g. OpenOCD) will report...
    incomplete user buffer */
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to put buffer!");
    return res;
}
```

2. 下一步是编译应用程序的镜像并将其下载到目标板上，这一步可以参考文档构建并烧写。
3. 运行 OpenOCD（参见 JTAG 调试）。
4. 连接到 OpenOCD 的 telnet 服务器，在终端执行如下命令 telnet <oocd_host> 4444。如果
在运行 OpenOCD 的同一台机器上打开 telnet 会话，您可以使用 localhost 替换上面命令中的
<oocd_host>。
5. 使用特殊的 OpenOCD 命令开始收集跟踪数据，此命令将传输跟踪数据并将其重定向到指定的
文件或套接字（当前仅支持文件作为跟踪数据目标）。相关命令的说明请参阅启动调试器。
6. 最后一步是处理接收到的数据。由于数据格式由用户定义，因此处理阶段超出了本文档的
范围。数据处理的范例可以参考位于 $IDF_PATH/tools/esp_app_trace 下的 Python 脚本
app-trace Proc.py (用于功能测试) 和 logtrace Proc.py (请参阅记录日志到主机 章节中的
details)。

OpenOCD 应用程序跟踪命令  HW UP BUFFER 在用户数据段之间共享，并且会替 API 的调用者（在任
务或者中断上下文中）填充分配到的内存。它在系统环境下，正在填充缓存区的任务/中断可能会被另一
个高优先级的任务/中断抢占，有可能发生主机会接收未准备好的用户数据的情况。为了处理这样的情况，
跟踪模块在所有用户数据段之前添加一个数据头，其中包含有分配的用户缓冲区的大小（2 字节）和实
际写入的数据长度（2 字节），也就是说数据头总共长 4 字节。负责读取跟踪数据的 OpenOCD 命令在读
取到不完整的用户数据段时会报错，但是无论如何它都会将整个用户数据段（包括还未填充的区域）
的内容放到输出文件中。

下面是 OpenOCD 应用程序跟踪命令的使用说明。

注解：目前，OpenOCD 还不支持将任意用户数据发送到目标的命令。

命令用法：

```
esp apptrace [start <options>] | [stop] | [status] | [dump <cores_num>
<outfile>]
```
子命令：
start 开始跟踪（连续流模式）。
stop 停止跟踪。
dump 转储所有后验模式的数据。
Start 子命令的语法：

```
start <outfile> [poll_period [trace_size [stop_tmo [wait4halt
[skip_size]]]]]
```

outfile 用于保存来自两个 CPU 的数据文件的路径。该参数需要具有以下格式：file://path/to/file。
poll_period 轮询跟踪数据的周期（单位：毫秒），如果大于 0 则以非阻塞模式运行。默认为 1 毫秒。
trace_size 最多要收集的数据量（单位：字节），接收到指定数量的数据后将会停止跟踪。默认情况下是 -1（禁用跟踪大小停止触发器）。
stop_tmo 空闲超时（单位：秒），如果指定的时间段内都没有数据就会停止跟踪。默认为 -1（禁用跟踪超时停止触发器）。还可以将其设置为比目标跟踪命令之间的最短暂停值更长的值（可选）。
wait4halt 如果设置为 0 则立即开始跟踪，否则命令等待目标停止（复位，打断点等），然后自动恢复它并开始跟踪。默认值为 0。
skip_size 开始时要跳过的字节数，默认为 0。

注解：如果 poll_period 为 0，则在跟踪停止之前，OpenOCD 的 telnet 命令将不可用。必须通过复位电路板或者在 OpenOCD 的窗口中（不是 telnet 会话窗口）按 Ctrl+C。另一种选择是设置 trace_size 并等待。当收集到指定数据量时，跟踪会自动停止。

命令使用示例：

1. 将 2048 个字节的跟踪数据收集到 “trace.log” 文件中。该文件将保存在 “openocd-esp32” 目录中。

```
esp apptrace start file://trace.log 1 2048 5 0 0
```

跟踪数据会被检索并以非阻塞的模式保存到文件中。如果收集满 2048 字节的数据或者在 5 秒内都没有新的数据，那么该过程就会停止。

注解：在将数据提供给 OpenOCD 之前，会对其进行缓冲。如果看到 “Data timeout!” 的消息，则目标可能在超时之前没有发送足够的数据给 OpenOCD 来清空缓冲区。增加超时时间或者使用函数 esp_apptrace_flush() 以特定间隔刷新数据都可以解决这个问题。

2. 在非阻塞模式下无限制地检索跟踪数据。

```
esp apptrace start file://trace.log 1 1 -1 -1 0 0
```

对收集数据的大小没有限制，并且没有设置任何超时时间。可以通过在 OpenOCD 的 telnet 会话窗口中发送 esp apptrace stop 命令，或者在 OpenOCD 窗口中使用快捷键 Ctrl+C 来停止此过程。

3. 检索跟踪数据并无限期保存。

```
esp apptrace start file://trace.log 0 0 -1 -1 0 0
```

在跟踪停止之前，OpenOCD 的 telnet 会话窗口将不可用。要停止跟踪，请在 OpenOCD 的窗口中使用快捷键 Ctrl+C。

4. 等待目标停止，然后恢复目标的操作并开始检索数据。当收集满 2048 字节的数据后就停止：

```
esp apptrace start file://trace.log 0 2048 -1 1 0
```

想要复位后立即开始跟踪，请使用 OpenOCD 的 reset halt 命令。

记载日志到主机

记录日志到主机是 IDF 的一个非常实用的功能：通过应用层跟踪库将日志保存到主机端。某种程度上这也算是一种半主机（semihosting）机制，相较于调用 ESP_LOGx 将待打印的字符串发送到 UART 的日志
Chapter 4. API 指南

记录方式，这个功能的优势在于它减少了本地的工作量，而将大部分工作转移到了主机端。

IDF 的日志库会默认使用类 vprintf 的函数将格式化的字符串输出到专用的 UART。一般来说，它涉及到以下几个步骤：

1. 解析格式字符串以获取每个参数的类型。
2. 根据其类型，将每个参数都转换为字符。
3. 格式字符串与转换后的参数一起发送到 UART。

虽然可以将类 vprintf 函数优化到一定程度，但是上述步骤在任何情况下都是必须要执行的，并且每个步骤都会消耗一定的时间（尤其是步骤3）。所以经常会发现以下这种情况：向程序中添加额外的打印信息以诊断问题，却改变了应用程序的行为，使得问题无法复现。在最差的情况下，程序会无法正常工作，最终导致报错甚至挂起。

解决此类问题的可能方法是使用更高的波特率或者其他更快的接口，并将字符串格式化的工作转移到主机端。

通过应用层跟踪库的 esp_aptrace_vprintf 函数，可以将日志信息发送到主机。该函数不执行格式字符串和参数的完全解析，而仅仅计算传递的参数的数量，并将它们与格式字符串地址一起发送给主机。主机端会通过一个特殊的 Python 脚本来处理并打印接收到的日志数据。

局限 当前通过 JTAG 实现记录日志还存在以下几点局限：

1. 不支持使用 ESP_EARLY_LOGx 宏进行跟踪。
2. 仅支持大于或等于 4 字节的 printf 参数（例如 double 和 uint64_t）。
3. 仅支持 rodata 段中的格式字符串和参数。
4. printf 参数最多 256 个。

如何使用 为了使用跟踪模块来记录日志，用户需要执行以下步骤：

1. 在 目 标 端，需 要 安 装 特 殊 类 的 printf 函数，正 如 前 面 提 到 过 的，这 个 函 数 是 esp_aptrace_vprintf，它会负责将日志数据发送给主机。示例代码参见 system/app_trace_to_host。
2. 按照特定应用程序的跟踪 章节中第 2-5 步骤中的说明进行操作。
3. 打印接收到的日志记录，请在终端运行以下命令：$IDF_PATH/tools/esp_app_trace/logtrace_proc.py /path/to/trace/file /path/to/program/elf/file。

Log Trace Processor 命令选项 命令用法：

logtrace_proc.py [-h] [--no-errors] <trace_file> <elf_file>

位置参数（必要）：

trace_file 日志跟踪文件的路径
elf_file 程序 ELF 文件的路径

可选参数：

-h, --help 显示此帮助信息并退出
--no-errors, -n 不打印错误信息

基于 SEGGER SystemView 的系统行为分析

IDF 中另一个基于应用层跟踪库的实用功能是系统级跟踪，它会生成与 SEGGER SystemView 工具相兼容的跟踪信息。SEGGER SystemView 是一种实时记录和可视化工具，用来分析应用程序运行时的行为。

注解：目前，基于 IDF 的应用程序能够以文件的形式生成与 SystemView 格式兼容的跟踪信息，并可以使用 SystemView 工具软件打开。但是还无法使用该工具控制跟踪的过程。
如何使用：若需使用这个功能，需要在 menuconfig 中开启 `CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_ENABLE` 选项，具体路径为：Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing。在同一个菜单栏下还开启了其他几个选项:

1. ESP32 timer to use as SystemView timestamp source （`CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_TS_SOURCE`）选择 SystemView 事件使用的时间戳来源。在单核模式下，使用 ESP32 内部的循环计数器生成时间戳，其最大的工作频率是 240 MHz （时间戳精度大约为 4 ns）。在双核模式下，使用工作在 40 MHz 的外部定时器，因此时间戳精度为 25 ns。

2. 可以单独启用或禁用的 SystemView 事件集合 （`CONFIG_APPTRACE_SV_EVT_XXX`）：
   - Trace Buffer Overflow Event
   - ISR Enter Event
   - ISR Exit Event
   - ISR Exit to Scheduler Event
   - Task Start Execution Event
   - Task Stop Execution Event
   - Task Ready State Event
   - Task Create Event
   - Task Terminate Event
   - System Idle Event
   - Timer Enter Event
   - Timer Exit Event

IDF 中已经包含了所有用于生成兼容 SystemView 跟踪信息的代码，用户只需配置必要的项目选项（如上所示），然后构建、烧写映像到目标板，接着参照前面的介绍，使用 OpenOCD 收集数据。

**OpenOCD SystemView 跟踪命令选项** 命令用法：

```sh
esp sysview [start <options>] | [stop] | [status]
```

子命令:

- **start** 开启跟踪 (连续流模式)。
- **stop** 停止跟踪。
- **status** 获取跟踪状态。

Start 子命令语法:

```
start <outfile1> [outfile2] [poll_period [trace_size [stop_tmo]]]
```

- **outfile1** 保存 PRO CPU 数据的文件路径。此参数需要具备如下格式：`file://path/to/file`。
- **outfile2** 保存 APP CPU 数据的文件路径。此参数需要具备如下格式：`file://path/to/file`。
- **poll_period** 跟踪数据的轮询周期 (单位：毫秒)。如果该值大于 0，则命令以非阻塞的模式运行，默认为 1 毫秒。
- **trace_size** 最多要收集的数据量 (单位：字节)。当收到指定数量的数据后，将停止跟踪。默认值是 -1 (禁用跟踪大小停止触发器)。
- **stop_tmo** 空闲超时 (单位：秒)。如果指定的时间内没有数据，将停止跟踪。默认值是 -1 (禁用跟踪超时停止触发器)。

**注解**：如果 poll_period 为 0，则在跟踪停止之前，OpenOCD 的 telnet 命令行将不可用。你需通过复位板卡或者在 OpenOCD 的窗口 (不是 telnet 会话窗口) 输入 Ctrl+C 命令来手动停止它。另一个方法是设置 trace_size 然后等到收集满指定数量的数据后自动停止跟踪。

命令使用示例：

1. 将 SystemView 跟踪数据收集到文件“pro-cpu.SVDat”和“app-cpu.SVDat”中。这些文件会被保存在 “openocd-esp32” 目录中。

```sh
esp sysview start file://pro-cpu.SVDat file://app-cpu.SVDat
```

跟踪数据被检索并以非阻塞的方式保存。要停止此过程，需要在 OpenOCD 的 telnet 会话窗口输入 esp sysview stop 命令，或者也可以在 OpenOCD 窗口中按下 Ctrl+C。
Chapter 4. API 指南

2. 检索跟踪数据并无限保存。

```plaintext
esp32 sysview start file://pro-cpu.SVD file://app-cpu.SVDat 0 -1 -1
```

OpenOCD 的 telnet 命令行在跟踪停止前会无法使用，要停止跟踪，请在 OpenOCD 窗口按下 Ctrl+C。

数据可视化：收集到跟踪数据后，用户可以使用特殊的工具来可视化结果并分析程序的行为。

遗憾的是，SystemView 不支持从多个核心进行跟踪。所以当追踪双核模式下的 ESP32 时会生成两个文件：一个用于 PRO CPU，另一个用于 APP CPU。用户可以用每个文件加载到工具中单独分析。

在工具中单独分析每个核的跟踪数据是比较棘手的，但是 Eclipse 提供了一个叫 Impulse 的插件可以加载多个跟踪文件，并且可以在同一个视图中检查来自两个内核的事件。此外，与免费版的 SystemView 相比，此插件没有 1,000,000 事件的限制。

关于如何安装、配置 Impulse 并使用它可视化来自单个核心的跟踪数据，请参阅官方教程。

注解：IDF 使用自己的 SystemView FreeRTOS 事件 ID 映射，因此用户需要将`SYSVIEW_INSTALL_DIR/Description/SYSVIEW_FreeRTOS.txt`替换为 `$IDF_PATH/docs/api-guides/SYSVIEW_FreeRTOS.txt`。在使用上述链接配置 SystemView 序列化程序时，也应该使用该 IDF 特定文件的内容。

配置 Impulse 实现双核跟踪：在安装好 Impulse 插件并确保 Impulse 能够在单独的选项卡中成功加载每个核心的跟踪数据后，用户可以添加特殊的 Multi Adapter 端口并将这两个文件加载到一个视图中。为此，用户需要在 Eclipse 中执行以下操作：

1. 打开“Signal Ports”视图，前往 Windows->Show View->Other 菜单，在 Impulse 文件夹中找到“Signal Ports”视图，然后双击它。
2. 在“Signal Ports”视图中，右键单击“Ports”并选择“Add ...”，然后选择 New Multi Adapter Port。
3. 在打开的对话框中按下“Add”按钮，选择“New Pipe/File”。
4. 在打开的对话框中选择“SystemView Serializer”并设置 PRO CPU 跟踪文件的路径，按下确定保存设置。
5. 对 APP CPU 的跟踪文件重复步骤 3 和 4。
6. 双击创建的端口，会打开此端口的视图。
7. 单击 Start/Stop Streaming 按钮，数据将会被加载。
8. 使用“Zoom Out”、“Zoom In”和“Zoom Fit”按钮来查看数据。
9. 有关设置测量光标和其他的功能，请参阅 Impulse 官方文档。

注解：如果您在可视化方面遇到了问题（未显示数据或者缩放操作异常），您可以尝试删除当前的信号层次结构，再双击必要的文件或端口。Eclipse 会请求您创建新的信号层次结构。

Gcov（源代码覆盖）

Gcov 和 Gcovr 简介：源代码覆盖率显示程序运行时间内执行的每一条程序执行路径的数量和频率。Gcov 是一个 GCC 工具，与编译器协同使用时，可生成日志文件，显示源文件每行的执行次数。Gcovr 是管理 Gcov 和生成代码覆盖率总结的工具。

一般来说，使用 Gcov 在主机上编译和运行程序会经过以下步骤：

1. 使用 GCC 以及 --coverage 选项编译源代码。这会让编译器在编译过程中生成一个 .gcno 注释文件，该文件包含执行路径块图以及将每个块映射到源代码行号等信息。每个用 --coverage 选项编译的源文件都会有一个同名的 .gcno 文件（如 main.c 在编译时会生成 main.gcno）。
2. 执行程序。在执行过程中，程序会生成 .gcda 数据文件。这些数据文件包含了执行路径的次数统计。程序将为每个用 --coverage 选项编译的源文件生成一个 .gcda 文件（如 main.c 将生成 main gcda）。
3. Gcov 或 Gcovr 可用于生成基于 .gcno、.gcda 和源文件的代码覆盖。Gcov 将以 .gcov 文件的形式为每个源文件生成基于文本的覆盖报告，而 Gcovr 将以 HTML 格式生成覆盖报告。
ESP-IDF 中 Gcov 和 Gcovr 应用
   在 ESP-IDF 中使用 Gcov 比较复杂。因为程序不在主机上运行（即在目标机上运行），代码覆盖率数据（即 .gcda 文件）最初存储在目标机上。然后 OpenOCD 在运行时通过 JTAG 将代码覆盖率数据从目标机转储到主机上。在 ESP-IDF 中使用 Gcov 可以分为以下几个步骤:

1. 为 Gcov 设置项目
2. 转储代码覆盖数据
3. 生成代码覆盖报告

为 Gcov 设置项目

编译器选项
   为了获得项目中的代码覆盖率数据，项目中的一个或多个源文件必须使用 --coverage 选项进行编译。在 ESP-IDF 中，这可以在组件级或单个源文件级实现:
   在组件的 CMakeLists.txt 文件中添加 target_compile_options(${COMPONENT_LIB} PRIVATE -coverage) 可将组件中的所有源文件用 -coverage 选项进行编译。
   在组件的 CMakeLists.txt 文件中添加 set_source_files_properties(source1.c source2.c PROPERTIES COMPILE_FLAGS -coverage) 可将同一组件中选定的一些源文件（如 source1.c 和 source2.c）通过 -coverage 选项编译。
   当一个源文件用 --coverage 选项编译时（例如 gcov_example.c），编译器会在项目的目标目录下生成 gcov_example.gcno 文件。

项目配置
   在构建一个有源代码覆盖的项目之前，请通过运行 idf.py menuconfig 启用以下项目配置选项。
   - 通过 CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION 选项选择 Trace Memory 来启用应用程序跟踪模块。
   - 通过 CONFIG_APPTRACE_GCOV_ENABLE 选项启用 Gcov 主机。

转储代码覆盖数据
   一旦一个项目使用 --coverage 选项编译并烧录到目标机上，在应用程序运行时，代码覆盖率数据将存储在目标机内部（即在跟踪存储器中）。将代码覆盖率数据从目标机转储到主机上的过程称为转储。

覆盖率数据的转储通过 OpenOCD 进行（关于如何设置和运行 OpenOCD，请参考 JTAG 试试）。由于是通过向 OpenOCD 发出命令来触发转储，因此必须打开 telnet 会话来向 OpenOCD 发出这些命令（运行 telnet localhost 4444）。GDB 也可以代替 telnet 来向 OpenOCD 发出命令，但是所有从 GDB 发出的命令都需要以 mon <oocd_command> 为前缀。

当目标机转储代码覆盖数据时，.gcda 文件存储在项目的构建目录中。例如，如果 main 组件的 gcov_example_main.c 在编译时使用了 --coverage 选项，那么转储代码覆盖数据将在 build/esp-idf/main/CMakeFiles/__idf_main.dir/gcov_example_main.c.gcda 中生成一个 gcov_example_main.gcda 文件。注意，编译过程中产生的 .gcno 文件也放在同一个目录下。

代码覆盖数据的转储可以在应用程序的整个生命周期内多次进行。每次转储都会用最新的代码覆盖率信息更新 .gcda 文件。代码覆盖率数据是累积的，因此最新的数据将包含应用程序整个生命周期中每个代码路径的总执行次数。

ESP-IDF 支持两种将代码覆盖数据从目标机转储到主机的方法:

- 运行中实时转储
- 停机转储

运行中实时转储
   通过 telnet 会话调用 OpenOCD 命令 ESP32 gcov 来触发运行时的实时转储。一旦被调用，OpenOCD 将立即抢占 ESP32 的当前状态，并执行一个内部的 IDF Gcov 调试存根函数。调试存根函数将数据转储到主机。完成后，ESP32 将恢复当前状态。
硬编码转储 硬编码转储是由应用程序本身从程序内部调用 esp_gcov_dump() 函数触发的。在调用时，应用程序将停止并等待 OpenOCD 连接并检查代码覆盖数据。一旦 esp_gcov_dump() 函数被调用，主机会通过 telnet 会话执行 esp gcov dump OpenOCD 命令。esp gcov dump 命令会让 OpenOCD 连接到 ESP32，检查代码覆盖数据，然后断开与 ESP32 的连接，从而恢复应用程序。可以在应用程序的生命周期中多次触发硬编码转储。

通过在必要地方放置 esp_gcov_dump()（如在应用程序初始化后，在应用程序主循环的每次迭代期间），当应用程序在生命周期的某刻需要代码覆盖率数据时，硬编码转储会非常有用。

GDB 可以用来在 esp_gcov_dump() 上设置一个断点，然后通过使用 gdbinit 脚本自动调用 mon esp gcov dump（关于 GDB 的使用可参考使用命令行调试）。

以下 GDB 脚本将在 esp_gcov_dump() 处添加一个断点，然后调用 mon esp gcov dump OpenOCD 命令。

```c
b esp_gcov_dump
commands
mon esp gcov dump
end
```

注解：注意所有的 OpenOCD 命令都应该在 GDB 中以 mon <oocd_command> 方式调用。

生成代码覆盖报告 一旦代码覆盖数据被转储，.gcno、.gcda 和源文件可以用来生成代码覆盖报告。该报告会显示源文件中每行被执行的次数。

Gcov 和 Gcovr 都可以用来生成代码覆盖报告。安装 Xilinx 工具链时会一起安装 Gcov，但 Gcovr 可能需要单独安装。关于如何使用 Gcov 或 Gcovr，请参考 Gcov documentation 和 Gcovr documentation。

在工程中添加 Gcov 构建目标 用户可以在自己的工程中定义额外的构建目标从而更方便地生成报告。可以通过一个简单的构建命令生成这样的报告。

请在您的工程的 CMakeLists.txt 文件中添加以下内容:

```c
include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/gcov.cmake)
idf_create_coverage_report(${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}/coverage_report)
idf_clean_coverage_report(${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}/coverage_report)
```

可使用以下命令:

- cmake --build build/ --target gcovr-report: 在 $(BUILD_DIR_BASE)/coverage_report/html 目录下生成 HTML 格式代码覆盖报告。
- cmake --build build/ --target cov-data-clean: 删除所有代码覆盖数据文件。

### 4.2 应用程序的启动流程

本文将会介绍 ESP32 从上电到运行 app_main 函数中间所经历的步骤（即启动流程）。

宏观上，该启动流程可以分为如下 3 个步骤:

1. 一级引导程序 被固化在了 ESP32 内部的 ROM 中，它会从 flash 的 0x1000 偏移地址处加载一级引导程序至 RAM (IRAM & DRAM) 中。
2. 二级引导程序 从 flash 中加载分区表和主程序镜像至内存中，主程序中包含了 RAM 段和通过 flash 高速缓存映射的只读段。
3. 应用程序启动阶段 运行，这时第二个 CPU 和 RTOS 的调度器启动。

下面会对上述过程进行更为详细的阐述。
4.2.1 一级引导程序

SoC 复位后，PRO CPU 会立即开始运行，执行复位向量代码，而 APP CPU 仍然保持复位状态。在启动过程中，PRO CPU 会执行所有的初始化操作。APP CPU 的复位状态会在应用程序启动代码的 call_start_cpu0 函数中失效。复位向量代码位于 ESP32 芯片掩膜 ROM 处，且不能被修改。

复位向量调用的启动代码会根据 GPIO Strap 规律寄存器的值来确定 ESP32 的启动模式，该寄存器保存着复位后 bootstrap 引脚的电平状态。根据不同的复位原因，程序会执行如下操作：

1. 从深度睡眠模式复位：如果 RTC_CNTL_STORE6_REG 寄存器的值非零，且 RTC_CNTL_STORE7_REG 寄存器中的 RTC 内存的 CRC 校验值有效，那么程序会使用 RTC_CNTL_STORE6_REG 寄存器的值作为入口地址，并立即跳转到该地址进行。如果 RTC_CNTL_STORE6_REG 的值为零，或 RTC_CNTL_STORE7_REG 中的 CRC 校验值无效，又或通过 RTC_CNTL_STORE6_REG 调用的代码返回。则像上电复位一样继续启动。注意：如果想在这里运行自定义的代码，可以参考深度睡眠文档里面介绍的深度睡眠唤醒机制方法。

2. 上电复位，软件 Soc 复位，看门狗 SoC 复位：检查 GPIO Strap 规律寄存器，判断是否请求自定义启动模式。如 UART 下载模式。如果是，ROM 会执行此自定义加载器模式。否则程序会像软件 CPU 复位一样继续启动。请参考 ESP32 技术规格书了解 SoC 启动模式以及具体执行过程。

3. 软件 CPU 复位，看门狗 CPU 复位：根据 EFUSE 中的值配置 SPI flash，然后尝试从 flash 中加载代码，这部分将会在后面的章节详细介绍。

注解：正常启动模式下会使能 RTC 看门狗，因此，如果进程中断或停止，看门狗将自动重置 SOC 并重复启动过程。如果 strapping GPIOs 已更改，则可能导致 SoC 陷入新的启动模式。

4.2.2 二级引导程序

在 ESP-IDF 中，存在于 flash 的 0x1000 偏移地址处的二进制映像就是二级引导程序。二级引导程序的源码可以在 ESP-IDF 的 components/bootloader 目录下找到。ESP-IDF 使用的启动引导程序可以增加 flash 分区的灵活性（使用分区表），并且方便实现 flash 加密，安全引导和空中升级（OTA）等功能。

当一级引导程序校验加载完二级引导程序后，它会从二进制映像的头部找到二级引导程序的入口点，并跳转过去运行。

二级引导程序默认从 flash 的 0x8000 偏移地址处可配置的值）读取分区表。请参考分区表 获取详细信息。引导程序会寻找工厂分区和 OTA 应用程序分区。如果在分区表中找到了 OTA 应用程序分区，引导程序将读取 otadata 分区以确定应引导哪个分区。更多信息请参考空中升级 (OTA)。

关于 ESP-IDF 引导程序可用的配置选项，请参考引导加载程序 (Bootloader)。

对于选定的分区，二级引导程序将从 flash 逐段读取二进制映像：

- 对于在内部 RAM (指令 RAM) 或 DRAM (数据 RAM) 中具有加载地址的段，将把数据从 flash 复制到它们的加载地址处。
- 对于一些加载地址位于 DROM（数据存储在 Flash 中）或 IROM（代码从 Flash 中运行）区域的段，通过配置 flash MMU，可为 flash 加载地址提供正确的映射。

请注意，二级引导程序同时为 PRO CPU 和 APP CPU 配置 flash MMU，不仅使能 PRO CPU 的 flash MMU。原因是二级引导程序代码已加载到 APP CPU 的高速缓存使用的内存区域中。因此使能 APP CPU 高速缓存的任务就交给了应用程序。

一旦处理完所有段（即加载了代码并设置了 flash MMU），二级引导程序将验证应用程序的完整性，并从二进制映像文件的头部寻找入口地址，然后跳转到该地址处运行。

4.2.3 应用程序启动阶段

应用程序启动包含了从应用程序开始执行到 app_main 函数在主任务内部运行前的所有过程。可分为三个阶段：
• 硬件和基本C语言运行环境的端口初始化。
• 软件服务和FreeRTOS的系统初始化。
• 运行主任务并调用app_main。

**注解**：通常不需要了解ESP-IDF应用程序初始化的所有阶段。如果需要仅从应用程序开发人员的角度了解初始化，请跳至运行主任务。

### 端口初始化

ESP-IDF应用程序的入口点是components/esp_system/port/cpu_start.c文件中的call_start_cpu0函数，这个函数由二级引导加载程序执行，并且从不返回。

该端口层的初始化功能会初始化基本的C运行环境（“CRT”），并对SoC的内部硬件进行了初始化。

- 为应用程序重新配置CPU异常（允许应用程序中断处理程序运行，并使用为应用程序配置的选项来处理异常错误，而不是使用ROM提供的异常处理程序处理）。
- 如果没有设置配置CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE，则不会使RTC看门狗定时器。
- 初始化内部存储器（数据和bss）。
- 完成MMU高速缓存配置。
- 如果配置了PSRAM，则能使PSRAM。
- 将CPU时钟设置为项目设置的频率。
- 根据应用程序头部设置重新配置主SPI flash。这是为了与ESP-IDF V4.0之前的引导程序版本兼容，请参考引导加载程序兼容性。
- 如果应用程序被配置为在多个内核上运行，则另一个内核并等待其初始化（在类似“端口层”初始化函数call_start_cpu0内）。

call_start_cpu0完成运行后，将调用在components/esp_system/startup.c中找到的“系统层”初始化函数start_cpu0。其他内核也将完成端口层的初始化，并调用同一文件中的start_other_cores。

### 系统初始化

主要的系统初始化函数是start_cpu0。默认情况下，这个函数与start_cpu0_default函数弱链接。这意味着可以覆盖这个函数，增加一些额外的初始化步骤。

主要的系统初始化阶段包括：

- 如果默认的目录级别允许，则记录该应用程序的相关信息（项目名称、App version等）。
- 初始化堆分配器（在这之前，所有分配必须是静态的或在堆栈上）。
- 初始化newlib组件的系统调用和时间函数。
- 配置断电检测器。
- 根据串行控制台配置设置libc stdin、stdout、和stderr。
- 执行与安全有关的检查，包括该配置烧录efuse（包括禁用ESP32 V3的ROM下载模式，CONFIG_ESP32_DISABLE_BASIC_ROM_CONSOLE）。
- 初始化SPI flash API支持。
- 调用全局C++构造函数和任何标有_attribute__((constructor))的C函数。

二级系统初始化允许单个组件被初始化。如果一个组件有一个用ESP_SYSTEM_INIT_FN宏注释的初始化函数，它将作为二级初始化的一部分被调用。

### 运行主任务

在所有其他组件都初始化后，主任务会被创建。FreeRTOS调度器开始运行。

做完一些初始化任务后（需要启动调度器），主任务在固件中运行应用程序提供的函数app_main。

运行app_main的主任务有一个固定的RTOS优先级（比最低值高）和一个可配置的堆栈大小。

主任务的内核亲和性也是可以配置的，请参考CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY。
Chapter 4. API 指南

与普通的 FreeRTOS 任务（或嵌入式 C 的 `main` 函数）不同，`app_main` 任务可以返回。如果 `app_main` 函数返回，那么主任务将会被删除。系统将重复运行其他的 RTOS 任务。因此可以将 `app_main` 实现作为一个创建其他应用任务然后返回的函数，或主应用任务本身。

**APP CPU 的内核启动流程**

**APP CPU 的启动流程类似但更简单：**

当运行系统初始化时，PRO CPU 上的代码会给 APP CPU 设置好入口地址，解除其复位状态，然后等待 APP CPU 上运行的代码设置一个全局标志，以表明 APP CPU 已经正常启动。完成后，APP CPU 跳转到 components/esp_system/port/cpu_start.c 中的 call_start_cpu1 函数。

当 `start_cpu0` 函数对 PRO CPU 进行初始化的时候，APP CPU 运行 `start_cpu_other_cores` 函数。与 `start_cpu0` 函数类似，`start_cpu_other_cores` 函数是弱链接的，认为 `start_cpu_other_cores_default` 函数，但可以由应用程序替换为不同的函数。

`start_cpu_other_cores_default` 函数做了一些与内核相关的系统初始化，然后等待 PRO CPU 启动 FreeRTOS 的调度器，启动完成后，它会执行 `esp_startup_start_app_other_cores` 函数，这是另一个默认为 `esp_startup_start_app_other_cores_default` 的弱链接函数。

默认情况下，`esp_startup_start_app_other_cores_default` 只会自旋，直到 PRO CPU 上的调度器触发中断，以启动 APP CPU 上的 RTOS 调度器。

### 4.3 BluFi

#### 4.3.1 概览

BluFi 是一款基于蓝牙通道的 Wi-Fi 网络配置功能，适用于 ESP32。它通过安全协议将 Wi-Fi 的 SSID、密码等配置信息传输到 ESP32，然后 ESP32 可基于这些信息连接到 AP 或建立 SoftAP。

BluFi 流程的关键部分包括数据的分片、加密、校验和验证。

用户可按需自定义用于对称加密、非对称加密和校验的算法。这里我们采用 DH 算法进行密钥协商、128-AES 算法用于数据加密、CRC16 算法用于校验和验证。

#### 4.3.2 BluFi 流程

BluFi 配网功能包含配置 SoftAP 和 Station 两部分。

下面以配置 Station 为例说明配置步骤。BluFi 配网的配置 Station 包含广播、连接、服务发现、协商共享密钥、传输数据、回找连接状态等步骤。

1. ESP32 开启 GATT Server 模式，发送带有特定 `advertising data` 的广播。你可以自定义该广播，该广播不属于 BluFi Profile。
2. 使用手机 APP 搜索到该特定广播，手机作为 GATT Client 连接 ESP32。你可以决定使用哪款手机 APP。
3. GATT 连接建立成功后，手机会向 ESP32 发送数据帧进行密钥协商（详情见 BluFi 中定义的帧格式）。
4. ESP32 收到密钥协商的数据帧后，会按照使用者自定义的协商方法来解析。
5. 手机与 ESP32 进行密钥协商。协商过程可使用 DH/RSA/ECC 等加密算法。
6. 协商结束后，手机端向 ESP32 发送控制帧，用于设置安全模式。
7. ESP32 收到控制帧后，使用共享密钥以及安全配置对通信数据进行加密和解密。
8. 手机向 ESP32 发送 BluFi 中定义的帧格式中定义的数据帧，包括 SSID、密码等 Wi-Fi 配置信息。
9. 手机向 ESP32 发送 Wi-Fi 连接请求的控制帧。ESP32 收到这个控制帧之后，会认为手机已将必要的信息已传输完毕，准备连接 Wi-Fi。
10. ESP32 连接到 Wi-Fi 后，发送 Wi-Fi 连接状态报告的控制帧到手机，以报告连接状态。至此配网结束。
注解:
1. ESP32 收到安全模式配置的控制帧后，会根据定义的安全模式进行相关操作。
2. 进行对称加密和解密时，加密和解密前后的数据长度必须一致，支持原地加密和解密。

4.3.3 BluFi 流程图

![BluFi Flow Chart](image)

图 2: BluFi Flow Chart

4.3.4 BluFi 中定义的帧格式

手机 APP 与 ESP32 之间的 BluFi 通信格式定义如下：
帧不分片情况下的格式 (8 位):

---

Espressif Systems
1720
Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
### Chapter 4. API 指南

#### 描述 | 值
---|---
类型字段 (最低有效位) | 1
帧控制字段 | 1
序列号字段 | 1
数据长度字段 | 1
数据字段 | $\text{Data Length}$
校验字段 (最后有效位) | 2

如果使能 帧控制位，则 总长度 位表示帧的剩余部分的总长度，用于报告终端需要分配多少内存。

帧分片格式（8 位）:

#### 描述 | 值
---|---
类型字段 (最低有效位) | 1
帧控制字段（分片） | 1
序列号字段 | 1
数据长度字段 | 1
数据字段 | • Total Content Length: 2  
|  | • Content: $\text{Data Length} - 2$
校验字段 (最后有效位) | 2

通常情况下，控制帧不包含数据位，ACK 帧除外。

ACK 帧格式（8 bit）:

#### 描述 | 值
---|---
类型字段 - ACK（最低有效位） | 1
帧控制字段 | 1
序列号字段 | 1
数据长度字段 | 1
数据字段 | ACK 序列号: 2
校验字段 (最后有效位) | 2

1. **类型字段**
   类型字段，占 1 字节。分为类型字段和子类型字段两部分，类型字段占低 2 位，子类型字段占高 6 位。
   - 控制帧，暂不进行加密，可校验；
   - 数据帧，可加密，可校验。

1.1 **控制帧** (二进制： 0x0 b’ 00)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>控制帧</th>
<th>含义</th>
<th>解释</th>
<th>备注</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x0</td>
<td>ACK</td>
<td>ACK 帧的数据字段使用回复对象帧的序列值。</td>
<td>数据字段占用 1 字节，其序列值与回复对象帧的序列值相同。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x1</td>
<td>将 ESP 设备设置为安全模式。</td>
<td>通知 ESP 设备发送数据时使用的安全模式，在数据发送过程中可多次重置，每次设置后会影响后续使用的安全模式。如果不设置，ESP 设备将默认发送不带校验和加密的控制帧和数据帧。从手机到 ESP 设备的数据传输是由这个控制帧控制的。</td>
<td>数据字段占用一个字节。高 4 位用于控制帧的安全模式设置，低 4 位用于数据帧的安全模式设置。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'000001</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• b'0000：无校验、无加密；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• b'0001：有校验、无加密；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• b'0010：有校验、有加密；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• b'0011：有校验、有加密。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2</td>
<td>设置 Wi-Fi 的 op-mode。</td>
<td>该帧包含设置 ESP 设备 Wi-Fi 模式 (opmode) 的设置信息。</td>
<td>data[0] 用于设置 opmode，包括：</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'00010</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 0x00：NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 0x01：STA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 0x02：SoftAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 0x03：SoftAP &amp; STA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>如果设置中包含 AP，请尽量优先设置 AP 模式的 SSID/密码/最大连接数等。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x3</td>
<td>将 ESP 设备连接至 AP。</td>
<td>通知 ESP 设备必要的信息已经发送完毕，可以连接至 AP。</td>
<td>不包含数据字段。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'00011</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x4</td>
<td>断开 ESP 设备与 AP 的连接。</td>
<td></td>
<td>不包含数据字段。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'00010</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x5</td>
<td>获取 ESP 设备的 Wi-Fi 模式和状态等信息。</td>
<td></td>
<td>• 不包含数据字段。ESP 设备收到此控制帧后，会向手机发送一个报告 Wi-Fi 连接状态的帧来告知手机端当前所处的 opmode、连接状态、SSID 等信息。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'00010</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 提供给手机端的信息类型由手机上的应用程序决定。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x6</td>
<td>断开 STA 设备与 SoftAP 的连接 (SoftAP 模式)。</td>
<td></td>
<td>data[0-5] 为 STA 设备的 MAC 地址，如有多个 STA 设备，则第二个使用 data[6-11]，依次类推。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'00110</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7</td>
<td>获取版本信息。</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'00111</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8</td>
<td>断开 BLE GATT 连接。</td>
<td></td>
<td>ESP 设备收到该指令后主动断开 BLE GATT 连接。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'00100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x9</td>
<td>获取 Wi-Fi 列表。</td>
<td>通知 ESP 设备扫描周围的 Wi-Fi 热点。</td>
<td>不包含数据字段。ESP 设备收到此控制帧后，会向手机发送一个包含 Wi-Fi 热点报告的帧。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b'00100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 数据帧 (二进制：0x1 b’01)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>数据项</th>
<th>含义</th>
<th>解释</th>
<th>备注</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x0 (b'000000)</td>
<td>发送协商数据。协商数据会发送到应用层注册的回调函数中。</td>
<td>数据的长度取决于数据长度字段。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x1 (b'000010)</td>
<td>发送 STA 模式的 BSSID。</td>
<td>请参考备注 1。</td>
<td>在 SSID 隐藏的情况下，发送 STA 设备要连接的 AP 的 BSSID。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2 (b'000100)</td>
<td>发送 STA 模式的 SSID。</td>
<td>请参考备注 1。</td>
<td>发送 STA 设备要连接的 AP 的 SSID。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x3 (b'000110)</td>
<td>发送 STA 模式的密码。</td>
<td>请参考备注 1。</td>
<td>发送 STA 设备要连接的 AP 的密码。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x4 (b'000100)</td>
<td>发送 SoftAP 模式的 SSID。</td>
<td>请参考备注 1。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x5 (b'000100)</td>
<td>发送 SoftAP 模式的密码。</td>
<td>请参考备注 1。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x6 (b'000110)</td>
<td>设置 SoftAP 模式的最大连接数。</td>
<td>data[0] 为连接数的值，范围从 1 到 4。当传输方向是 ESP 设备到手机时，表示向手机端提供所需信息。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7 (b'000111)</td>
<td>设置 SoftAP 的认证模式。</td>
<td>data[0] 包括：</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x00: OPEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x01: WEP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x02: WPA_PSK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x03: WPA2_PSK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x04: WPA_WPA2_PSK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x8 (b'001000)</td>
<td>设置 SoftAP 模式的通道数量。</td>
<td>data[0] 代表支持的通道的数量，范围从 1 到 14。当传输方向是 ESP 设备到手机时，表示向手机端提供所需信息。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x9 (b'001001)</td>
<td>用户名</td>
<td>在进行企业级加密时提供 GATT 客户端的用户名。</td>
<td>数据的长度取决于数据长度字段。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xa (b'001010)</td>
<td>CA 认证</td>
<td>在进行企业级加密时提供 CA 认证。</td>
<td>请参考备注 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xb (b'001011)</td>
<td>客户端认证</td>
<td>在进行企业级加密时提供客户端认证。是否包含私钥，取决于认证的内容。</td>
<td>请参考备注 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xc (b'001100)</td>
<td>服务端认证</td>
<td>在进行企业级加密时提供服务端认证。是否包含私钥，取决于认证的内容。</td>
<td>请参考备注 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xd (b'001101)</td>
<td>客户端私钥</td>
<td>在进行企业级加密时提供客户端私钥。</td>
<td>请参考备注 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xe (b'001110)</td>
<td>服务端私钥</td>
<td>在进行企业级加密时提供服务端私钥。</td>
<td>请参考备注 2。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xf (b'001111)</td>
<td>Wi-Fi 连接状态报告</td>
<td>data[0] 表示 opmode，包括：</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x00: NULL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x01: STA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x02: SoftAP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x03: SoftAP &amp; STA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>data[1] STA 设备的连接状态，0x0 表示处于连接状态，其他表示处于非连接状态。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>data[2] SoftAP 的连接状态，即表示有多少 STA 设备已经连接。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>data[3] 及后面的数据是按照 SSID/BSSID 斯波的。</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
注解:

- 备注 1: 数据的长度取决于数据长度字段。当传输方向是 ESP 设备到手机时，表示向手机端提供所需信息。
- 备注 2: 数据的长度取决于数据长度字段。如果数据长度不够，该帧可用分片。

2. Frame Control
帧控制字段，占 1 字节，每个位表示不同含义。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>位</th>
<th>含义</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>表示帧是否加密。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 0 表示加密</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 表示未加密</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>该帧的加密部分包括数据字段加密之前的完整明文数据（不包括校验部分）。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>控制帧不加密，故控制帧此位为 0。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 0x02 | 该数据字段表示帧尾是否包含校验位，如 SHA1、MD5、CRC 等。该数据字段包含序列 + 数据长度 + 明文。控制帧和数据帧都可以选择包含或不包含校验位。 |
| 0x04 | 表示数据方向。 |
|      | • 0 表示传输方向是手机到 ESP 设备   |
|      | • 1 表示传输方向是 ESP 设备到手机   |

| 0x08 | 表示是否要求对方回复 ACK。 |
|      | • 0 表示不要求   |
|      | • 1 表示要求回复 ACK   |

| 0x10 | 表示是否有后续的数据分片。 |
|      | • 0 表示此帧没有后续数据分片   |
|      | • 1 表示还有后续数据分片，用来传输较长的数据   |
|      | 对于分片帧，在数据字段的前两个字节中会给定当前内容部分 + 后续内容部分的总长度（即最大支持 64 K 的数据内容）。 |

| 0x10-0x80 | 保留 |

3. 序列控制
序列控制字段。帧发送时，无论帧的类型是什么，序列都会自动加 1，用来防止重放攻击（Replay Attack）。每次重新连接后，序列清零。

4. 长度
数据字段的长度，不包含校验部分。

5. 数据
对于不同的类型或子类型，数据字段的含义均不同。请参考上方表格。

6. 校验
此字段占两个字节，用来校验“序列 + 数据长度 + 明文数据”。

4.3.5 ESP32 端的安全实现

1. 数据安全
为了保证 Wi-Fi SSID 和密码的传输过程是安全的，需要使用对称加密算法（例如 AES、DES 等）对报文进行加密。在使用对称加密算法之前，需要使用非对称加密算法（DH、RSA、ECC 等）协商出（或生成出）一个共享密钥。

2. 保证数据完整性
为了保证数据完整性，需要加入校验算法，例如 SHA1、MD5、CRC 等。

3. 身份安全（签名）
某些算法如 RSA 可以保证身份安全。有些算法如 DH，本身不能保证身份安全，需要添加其他算法来签名。

4. 防止重放攻击（Replay Attack）
添加其到序列字段中，并且在数据校验过程中使用。
在 ESP32 端的代码中，你可以决定和开发加密钥协商等安全处理的流程。手机应用向 ESP32 发送协商数据，数据会传送给应用层处理。如果应用层不处理，可使用 BluFi 提供的 DH 加密算法来协商密钥。
应用层需向 BluFi 注册以下几个与安全相关的函数：

```c
typedef void (*esp_blufi_negotiate_data_handler_t)(uint8_t *data, int len, uint8_t _output_data, int _output_len, bool _need_free)
```

该函数用来接收协商期间的正常数据 (normal data)，数据处理完成后，需要将待发送的数据使用 output_data 和 output_len 传出。

BluFi 会在调用完 Negotiate_data_handler 后，发送 Negotiate_data_handler 传出的 output_data。

这里的两个 “*”，因为需要发出去的数据长度未知，所以需要函数自行分配 (malloc) 或者指向全局变量，并告知是否需要通过 NEED_FREE 释放内存。

```c
typedef int (*esp_blufi_encrypt_func_t)(uint8_t iv8, uint8_t *crypt_data, int _crypt_len)
```

加密和解密的数据长度必须一致。其中 IV8 为帧的 8 位序列，可作为 IV 的某 8 个位来使用。

```c
typedef int (*esp_blufi_decrypt_func_t)(uint8_t iv8, uint8_t *crypt_data, int _crypt_len)
```

加密和解密的数据长度必须一致。其中 IV8 为帧的 8 位序列，可作为 IV 的某 8 个位来使用。

```c
typedef uint16_t (*esp_blufi_checksum_func_t)(uint8_t iv8, uint8_t *data, int len)
```

该函数用来进行校验，返回值为校验的值。BluFi 会使用该函数返回值与帧的校验值进行比较。

### 4.3.6 GATT 相关说明

**UUID**

BluFi Service UUID：0xFFFF，16 bit
BluFi (手机 -> ESP32) 特性：0xFF01，主要权限：可写
BluFi (ESP32 -> 手机) 特性：0xFF02，主要权限：可读/可通知

### 4.4 引导加载程序 (Bootloader)

ESP-IDF 软件引导加载程序 (Bootloader) 主要执行以下任务：

1. 内部模块的最小化初始化配置；
2. 如果配置了 `Flash 加密` 和/或 `Secure`，则对其进行初始化。
3. 根据分区表和 ota_data（如果存在）选择需要引导的应用程序 (app) 分区；
4. 将此应用程序镜像加载到 RAM（IRAM 和 DRAM）中，最后将控制权转交给此应用程序。

引导加载程序位于 flash 的 0x1000 偏移地址处。
关于启动过程以及 ESP-IDF 引导加载程序的更多信息，请参考 [应用程序的启动流程](#)

#### 4.4.1 引导加载程序兼容性

建议使用最新发布的 ESP-IDF 版本。OTA (空中升级) 更新可以在现场烧录新的应用程序，但不能烧录一个新的引导加载程序。因此，引导加载程序支持引导从 ESP-IDF 新版本中构建的应用程序。

但不支持引导从 ESP-IDF 旧版本中构建的程序。如果现有产品可能需要将应用程序降级到旧版本，那么在手动更新 ESP-IDF 时，请继续使用旧版本 ESP-IDF 引导加载程序的二进制文件。
ESP-IDF V2.1 之前的版本

与新版本相比，ESP-IDF V2.1 之前的版本构建的引导加载程序对硬件的配置更少。使用这些早期 ESP-IDF 版本的引导加载程序并构建新应用程序时，请启用配置选项`CONFIG_ESP32_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V2_1_BOOTLOADERS`。

ESP-IDF V3.1 之前的版本

ESP-IDF V3.1 之前的版本构建的引导加载程序不支持分区表二进制文件中的 MD5 校验。使用这些 ESP-IDF 版本的引导加载程序并构建新应用程序时，请启用配置选项`CONFIG_ESP32_COMPATIBLE_PRE_V3_1_BOOTLOADERS`。

配置 SPI Flash

每个 ESP-IDF 应用程序或引导加载程序的二进制文件中都包含一个文件头，其中内置了`CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE`、`CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ`和`CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE`。这些是用于在启动时配置 SPI flash。

ROM 中的一级引导程序从 flash 中读取二级引导程序文件头中的配置信息，并使用这些信息来加载剩余的二级引导程序。然而，此时系统的时钟速度低于其被配置的速度，并且在这个阶段，只支持部分 flash 模式。因此，当二级引导程序运行时，它会从当前应用程序的二进制文件头中读取数据（而不是从引导加载程序的文件头中读取数据），并使用这些数据重新配置 flash。这样的配置流程可让 OTA 更新去更改当前使用的 SPI flash 的配置。

ESP-IDF V4.0 版本之前的引导加载程序使用其自身的文件头来配置 SPI flash，这意味着无法在 OTA 更新时更改 SPI flash 配置。为了与旧引导加载程序兼容，应用程序在其启动期间使用应用程序文件头中的配置信息重新初始化 flash 配置。

4.4.2 日志级别

引导加载程序日志的级别默认为“Info”。通过设置`CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL`选项，可以增加或减少这个等级。这个日志级别与应用程序中使用的日志级别是分开的（见`Logging library`）。降低引导加载程序日志的详细程度可以稍微缩短整个项目的启动时间。

4.4.3 恢复出厂设置

在更新出现问题时，最好有一种方法让设备回到已知的正常状态，这时可选择恢复出厂设置。

要回到原始出厂设置并清除所有用户设置，请在引导加载程序中配置`CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET`。

以下两种方式可以将设备恢复出厂设置。

- 清除一个或多个数据分区，`CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_DATA_FACTORY_RESET` 选项允许用户选择哪些数据分区在恢复出厂设置时被擦除。
- 用户可以使用以逗号分隔的列表形式指定分区的名称，为了提高可读性，可以选择添加空格（如：nvs, phy_init, nvs_custom）。请确保选项里指定的分区名称和分区表中的名称相同。此处不能指定“app”类型的分区。
从“工厂”应用分区启动时，当启用 CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_OTA_DATA_ERASE 选项，恢复出厂设置后，设备将从默认的“工厂”应用分区启动（如果分区表中没有“工厂”应用分区，则从默认的OTA应用分区启动）。这个恢复过程是通过擦除OTA数据分区来完成的。OTA数据分区中保存了当前选择的OTA分区槽，当不使用“工厂”应用分区槽时，不会通过OTA更新。因此置为从“工厂”应用分区启动则意味着将固件应用程序恢复为正常状态。

这两个配置选项都可以独立启用。

此外，以下配置选项用于配置触发恢复出厂设置的条件：

- **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_NUM_PIN_FACTORY_RESET** - 输入管脚 (GPIO) 的编号。该管脚用于触发恢复出厂设置。它在重置时从管脚拉低或拉高（可配置），然后才能触发出厂重置事件。
- **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_HOLD_TIME_GPIO** - 管脚电平保持时间（默认为5秒）。当管脚电平必须保持特定时间时，才能执行恢复出厂设置或引导测试分区（如适用）。配置此参数时，必须设置管脚电平低平。设备重置后，设备将管脚拉高或拉低，才能触发出厂重置事件。如果管脚具有内部上拉，则上拉会在管脚采样前生效。有关管脚内部上拉的详细信息，请参考 ESP32 的技术规格书。
- **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET_PIN_LEVEL** - 设置管脚电平高低。设备重置后，根据设置将管脚拉高或拉低，才能触发出厂重置事件。如果管脚具有内部上拉，则上拉会在管脚采样前生效。有关管脚内部上拉的详细信息，请参考 ESP32 的技术规格书。

### 4.4.4 从测试固件启动

用户可以编写特殊固件用于生产环境中测试，并在需要的时候运行。此时需要在项目分区表中专门申请一块分区用于保存该测试固件，其类型为 app，子类型为 test（详情请参考【分区表】）。

实现该测试应用固件需要为测试应用创建一个完全独立的 ESP-IDF 项目（ESP-IDF 中的每个项目仅构建一个应用程序），该测试应用可以独立于主项目进行开发和测试，然后在生成测试时作为一个预编译的.bin 文件集成到主项目的测试应用程序分区的地址。

为了使主项目的引导加载程序支持这个功能，请设置 **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST** 并配置以下两个选项：

- **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_NUM_PIN_FACTORY_RESET** - 设置启动 TEST 分区的管脚编号。选中的管脚将被配置为启动了内部上拉的输入，当触发测试应用时，必须在重置时将管脚拉低。
  
  当管脚输入被释放（则被拉高）时，设备重置后，配置的应用程序将启动（工厂或任何 OTA 应用的分区）。

- **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_HOLD_TIME_GPIO** - 设置 GPIO 电平保持的时间（默认为5秒）。当管脚电平保持特定时间（如适用时），设备重置后，管脚在设定的时间内必须保持低电平，然后才会执行出厂重置或引导测试分区（如适用）。

### 4.4.5 回滚

回滚和反回滚功能也必须在驱动程序中配置。

请参考 **OTA API 参考文档** 中的应用程序回滚和反回滚章节。

### 4.4.6 看门狗

默认情况下，硬件 RTC 看门狗定时器在引导加载程序运行时保持运行，如果9秒后没有应用程序成功启动，它将自动重置芯片。

- 可以通过设置 **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_TIME_MS** 并重新编译引导加载程序来调整超时时间。
- 可以通过调整应用程序的行为使 RTC 看门狗在应用程序启动后保持运行。看门狗需要由应用程序显示地重置（即“喂狗”），以避免重置。为此，请设置 **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_DISABLE_IN_USER_CODE** 选项，根据需要修改应用程序，然后重新编译应用程序。
- 通过禁用 **CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE** 设置并重新编译引导加载程序，可以在引导加载程序中禁用 RTC 看门狗，但并不建议这样做。
4.4.7 引导加载程序大小

当需要启用额外的引导加载程序功能，包括Flash boot 密或安全启动，尤其是设置高级别 CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL 时，监控引导加载程序.bin 文件的大小变得非常重要。

当使用默认的 CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET 值 0x8000 时，二进制文件最大可为 0x7000 (28672) 字节。

如果引导加载程序二进制文件过大，则引导加载程序会构建失败并显示“Bootloader binary size [...] is too large for partition table offset”的错误。如果此二进制文件已经被烧录，那么 ESP32 将无法启动 - 日志中将记录无效分区表或无效引导加载程序校验和的错误。

可以使用如下方法解决此问题：

- 将 bootloader 编译器优化 重新设置默认值“Size”。
- 降低引导加载程序日志级别。将日志级别设置为 Warning, Error 或 None 都会显著减少最终二进制文件的大小（但也会让调试变得更加困难）。
- 将 CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET 设置为高于 0x8000 的值，以便稍后将分区表放置在 flash 中，这样可以增加引导加载程序的可用空间。如果分区表的 CSV 文件包含明确的分区偏移，这需要修改这些偏移，从而保证没有分区的偏移量低于 CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET + 0x1000。（这包括随 ESP-IDF 提供的默认分区 CSV 文件）

当启用 Secure Boot V2 时，由于引导加载程序必须加载到固定大小的缓冲区中进行验证，对二进制文件大小的绝对限制为 48KB (0xC000 bytes)（不包括 4 KB 签名）。

4.4.8 从深度睡眠中快速启动

引导加载程序有 CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP 选项，可以减少从深度睡眠中唤醒的时间（有利于降低功耗）。当 CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT 选项禁用时，该选项可用。由于无需镜像校验，唤醒时间减少。在第一次启动时，引导加载程序将启动的应用程序的地址存储在 RTC FAST 存储器中。而在唤醒过程中，这个地址用于启动而无需任何检查，从而实现了快速加载。

4.4.9 自定义引导加载程序

用户可以扩展或修改当前的引导加载程序，具体有两种方法：使用钩子实现或重写覆盖当前程序。这两种方法在 ESP-IDF 示例的 custom_bootloader 文件夹中都有呈现。

- bootloader_hooks 介绍了如何将钩子与引导加载程序初始化连接。
- bootloader_override 介绍了如何覆盖引导加载程序的实现。

在引导加载程序的代码中，用户不能使用其他组件提供的驱动和函数，如果确实需要，请将该功能的实现部分放在项目的 bootloader_components 目录中（注意，这会增加引导加载程序的大小）。

如果引导加载程序过大，则可能与内存中的分区表重叠，分区表默认烧录在偏移量 0x8000 处。增加分区表偏移量，将分区表放在 flash 中靠后的区域，这样可以增加引导程序的可用空间。

4.5 构建系统（CMake 版）

本文档主要介绍 ESP-IDF 构建系统的实现原理以及组件等概念。如需您想了解如何组织和构建新的 ESP-IDF 项目或组件，请阅读本文档。

4.5.1 概述

一个 ESP-IDF 项目可以看作是多个不同组件的集合，例如一个显示当前湿度的网页服务器会包含以下组件：

- ESP-IDF 基础库，包括 libc、ROM bindings 等
- Wi-Fi 驱动
Chapter 4. API 指南

- TCP/IP 协议栈
- FreeRTOS 操作系统
- 网页服务器
- 湿度传感器的驱动
- 负载上述组件整合到一起的主程序

ESP-IDF 可以显式地指定和配置每个组件。在构建项目的时候，构建系统会前往 ESP-IDF 目录、项目目录和用户自定义组件目录（可选）中查找所有组件。允许用户通过文本菜单系统配置 ESP-IDF 项目中用到的每个组件。在所有组件配置结束后，构建系统开始编译整个项目。

概念

- 项目指一个目录，其中包含了构建可执行应用程序所需的全部文件和配置，以及其他支持型文件（例如分区表、数据/文件系统分区和引导程序）。
- 项目配置保存在项目根目录下名为 sdkconfig 的文件中，可以通过 idf.py menuconfig 进行修改，且一个项目只能包含一个项目配置。
- 每个组件是模块化且独立的代码，会被编译成静态库 (.a 文件) 并链接到应用程序。部分组件由 ESP-IDF 官方提供，其他组件则来源于其它开源项目。
- 目标指运行后应用程序的硬件设备，ESP-IDF 当前仅支持 esp32 和 esp32s2 及 esp32c3 这三个目标。

请注意，以下内容并不属于项目的组成部分:

- ESP-IDF 并不是项目的一部分，它独立于项目。通过 IDF_PATH 环境变量（保存 esp-idf 目录的路径）链接到项目，从而将 IDF 框架与项目分离。
- 交叉编译工具链并不是项目的组成部分，它应该被安装在系统 PATH 环境变量中。

4.5.2 使用构建系统

idf.py

idf.py 命令行工具提供了一个前端，可以帮助您轻松管理项目的构建过程，它管理了以下工具:

- CMake，配置构建的项目
- 命令行构建工具（Ninja 或 GNU Make）
- esptool.py，烧录目标硬件设备

入门指南：简要介绍了如何设置 idf.py 用于配置、构建并烧录项目。

idf.py 应运行在 ESP-IDF 的项目目录下，即包含 CMakeLists.txt 文件的目录。仅包含 Makefile 的老式项目并不支持 idf.py。

运行 idf.py --help 查看完整的命令列表。下面总结了最常用的命令:

- idf.py set-target <target> 会设置构建项目的目标 (芯片)。请参考选择目标芯片。
- idf.py menuconfig 会运行 menuconfig 工具来配置项目。
- idf.py build 会构建在当前目录下找到的项目，它包括以下步骤:
  - 根据需要创建 build 构建目录，它用于保存构建过程的输出文件，可以使用 -B 选项修改默认的构建目录。
  - 根据需要运行 CMake 来配置项目，为主构建工具生成构建文件。
  - 运行主构建工具 (Ninja 或 GNU Make)。默认情况下，构建工具会被自动检测，可以使用 -G 选项显式地指定构建工具。
- 构建过程是增量式的，如果自上次构建以来源文件或项目配置没有发生改变，则不会执行任何操作。
- idf.py clean 会把构建输出的文件从构建目录中删除。从而清理整个项目。下次构建时会强制 “重新完整构建” 这个项目。清理时，不会删除 CMake 配置输出及其他文件。
Chapter 4. API 指南

- idf.py fullclean 会将整个 build 目录下的内容全部删除，包括所有 CMake 的配置输出文件。下次构建项目时，CMake 会从头开始配置项目。请注意，该命令会递归删除构建目录下的所有文件，请谨慎使用。项目配置文件不会被删除。
- idf.py flash 会在必要时自动构建项目，并将生成的二进制程序烧录进目标 ESP32 设备中。
- idf.py monitor 用于显示目标 ESP32 设备的串口输出。
- idf.py 支持 bash、zsh 以及 fish shell 的自动补全。
- idf.py --cmake-warn-uninitialized
- idf.py python-clean
- idf.py app
- idf.py -C <dir>
- idf.py app-flash
- idf.py flash
- idf.py app-flash
- idf.py --ccache
- idf.py --help

多个 idf.py 命令可合并成一个。例如，idf.py -p COM4 clean flash monitor 会依次清理源码树，构建项目，烧录进目标 ESP32 设备，最后运行串口监视器。

对于 idf.py 不知道的指令，idf.py 会尝试将其作为构建系统的目标来执行。

idf.py 命令支持 bash、zsh 以及 fish shell 的自动补全。

要实现实现 shell 自动补全，请先确保您安装了 Python 3.5 以及 click 7.1 及以上版本 (请参考这里)。

使用 export 命令来启用 idf.py 的自动补全功能 (请参考这里)。按 TAB 键可实现自动补全。输入 “idf.py -” 后按 TAB 键可自动补全选项。

未来我们也支持 PowerShell 的自动补全功能。

注解：环境变量 ESPPORT 和 ESPPBAUD 可分别用来设置 -p 和 -b 选项的默认值，在命令行中，重新为这两个选项赋值，会覆盖其默认值。

高级命令

- idf.py app, idf.py bootloader, idf.py partition-table 仅可用于从适用的项目中构建应用程序、引导程序或分区表。
- idf.py app-flash 等匹配命令，仅将项目的特定部分烧录至 ESP32。
- idf.py -p PORT erase-flash 会使用 esp tool 擦除 ESP32 的整个 Flash。
- idf.py size 会打印应用程序相关的大小信息，size-components 和 size-files 这两个命令相似，分别用于打印每个组件或源文件的详细信息。如果您在运行 CMake (或 idf.py) 时定义了变量 -DOUTPUT_JSON=1，那么输出的格式会变成 JSON 而不是可读文本。详情请查看 idf.py-size。
- idf.py reconfigure 命令会重新运行 CMake (即便无需重新运行)。正常使用时，并不需要运行此命令，但当源码树中添加/删除文件后或更改 CMake cache 变量时，此命令会非常有用。例如，idf.py -DNAME='VALUE' reconfigure 会将 CMake cache 中的变量 NAME 的值设置为 VALUE。
- idf.py python-clean 会从 IDF 目录中删除生成的 Python 字节码，Python 字节码可能会在切换 IDF 和 Python 版本时引发变化，因此建议在切换 Python 后运行该命令。
- idf.py docs 将在浏览器中直接打开项目目标芯片和对应版本的文档链接。请使用 idf.py docs --help 查看所有选项。

同时调用多个 idf.py 命令时，命令的输入顺序并不重要，它们会按照正确的顺序依次执行，并保证第一条命令都生效 (即先构建后烧录，先擦除后烧录等)。

idf.py 选项
- idf.py --help 命令列出所有顶级选项。运行 idf.py <command> --help 命令列出针对某一命令的选项，如 idf.py monitor --help。下列是一些常用选项：
  - -C <dir> 可用来从默认的当前工作目录覆盖项目目录。
  - -B <dir> 可用来从项目目录默认的 build 目录覆盖构建目录。
  - --ccache 可用来在编译源文件时启用 CCache，安装了 CCache 构工具后可极大缩短编译时间。

请注意，一些旧版本的 CCache 在某些平台上可能会出现 bug，因此如果文件没有按预期重新构建，请尝试禁用 CCache 后再重新构建。通过设置环境变量 IDF_CCACHE_ENABLE 为非零值，可以默认启用 CCache。

- -v 可以让 idf.py 和编译系统产生详细的编译输出，对于调试编译问题会非常有用。
- --cmake-warn-uninitialized`````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````````
开始新项目

运行 `idf.py create-project` 命令可以开始创建您的新项目，运行 `idf.py create-project --help` 命令获取更多相关信息。

例如:

```
idf.py create-project --path my_projects my_new_project
```

以上命令会在 `my_projects` 目录下创建一个名为 `my_new_project` 的新项目。

直接使用 CMake

为了方便，`idf.py` 已经封装了 CMake 命令，但是您愿意，也可以直接调用 CMake。

当 `idf.py` 在执行某些操作时，它会打印出其运行的每条命令以便参考。例如运行 `idf.py build` 命令与在 bash shell（或者 Windows Command Prompt）中运行以下命令是相同的:

```
mkdir -p build
cd build
cmake .. -G Ninja  # 或者 'Unix Makefiles'
ninja
```

在上面的命令列表中，`cmake` 命令对项目进行配置，并生成用于最终构建工具的构建文件。在这个例子中，最终构建工具是 Ninja。运行 `ninja` 来构建项目。

没有必要多次运行 `cmake`。第一次构建后，往后每次只需运行 `ninja` 即可。如果项目需要重新配置，`ninja` 会自动重新调用 `cmake`。

若在 CMake 中使用 `ninja` 或 `make`，则多数 `idf.py` 子命令也会有其对应的目标，例如在构建目录下运行 `make menuconfig` 或 `ninja menuconfig` 与运行 `idf.py menuconfig` 是相同的。

**注解**: 如果您已经熟悉了 CMake，那么可能会发现 ESP-IDF 的 CMake 构建系统不同寻常，为了减少样板文件，该系统封装了 CMake 的许多功能。请参考编写或 CMake 组件以编写更多“CMake 风格”的组件。

使用 Ninja/Mk 制程

您可以直接使用 `ninja` 或 `make` 运行如下命令来构建项目并烧录:

```
ninja flash
```

或:

```
make app-flash
```

可用的目标还包括：flash, app-flash (仅用于 app), bootloader-flash (仅用于 bootloader)。

以这种方式烧录时，可以通过设置 `ESPPORT` 和 `ESPBAUD` 环境变量来指定串口设备和波特率。您可以在操作系统或 IDE 项目中设置该环境变量，或者直接在命令行中进行设置:

```
ESPPORT=/dev/ttyUSB0
```

**注解**: 在命令的开头为环境变量赋值属于 Bash shell 的语法，可在 Linux、macOS 和 Windows 的类 Bash shell 中运行，但在 Windows Command Prompt 中无法运行。

或:
在 IDE 中使用 CMake

您还可以使用集成了 CMake 的 IDE，仅需将项目 CMakeLists.txt 文件的路径告诉 IDE 即可。集成 CMake 的 IDE 通常会有自己的构建工具（CMake 称之为“生成器”），它是组成 IDE 的一部分，用来构建源文件。

向 IDE 中添加除 build 目标以外的自定义目标（如添加“Flash”目标到 IDE）时，建议调用 idf.py 命令来执行这些“特殊”的操作。

有关将 ESP-IDF 同 CMake 集成到 IDE 中的详细信息，请参阅构建系统的元数据。

设置 Python 解释器

ESP-IDF 适用于所有支持的 Python 版本。即使您系统中默认的 python 解释器仍是 Python 2.7，ESP-IDF 也可以使用，但建议您升级至 Python 3。

idf.py 和其他的 Python 脚本会使用默认的 Python 解释器运行，如 python。您可以通过 python3 $IDF_PATH/tools/idf.py ... 命令切换到别的 Python 解释器，或者您可以通过设置 shell 别名或其他脚本来简写该命令。

如果直接使用 CMake，运行 cmake -D PYTHON=python3 ...，CMake 会使用传入的值覆盖默认的 Python 解释器。

如果使用集成 CMake 的 IDE，可以在 IDE 的图形用户界面中给名为 PYTHON 的 CMake cache 变量设置新的值来覆盖默认的 Python 解释器。

如果想在命令行中更优雅地管理 Python 的各个版本，请查看 pyenv 或 virtualenv 工具，它们会帮助您更改默认的 python 版本。

潜在问题 使用 idf.py 可能会出现如下 ImportError 错误：

```python
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "~/Users/user_name/e/esp-idf/tools/kconfig_new/confgen.py", line 27, in ...
    from kconfiglib import kconfiglib
ImportError: bad magic number in 'kconfiglib': b'\x03\xf3\r\n'
```

该错误通常是由不同 Python 版本生成的 .pyc 文件引起的，可以通过运行以下命令解决该问题：

```bash
idf.py python-clean
```

4.5.3 示例项目

示例项目的目录结构如下所示:

```
- myProject/
  - CMakeLists.txt
  - sdkconfig
  - components/
    - component1/
      - CMakeLists.txt
      - Kconfig
      - src1.c
    - component2/
      - CMakeLists.txt
```

(下页继续)
该示例项目“myProject”包含以下组成部分：

- 顶层项目 CMakeLists.txt 文件，这是 CMake 用于学习如何构建项目的主要文件，可以在这个文件中设置项目全局的 CMake 变量。顶层项目 CMakeLists.txt 文件会引导/tools/cmake/project.cmake 文件，由它负责实现构建系统的其余部分。该文件最后会设置项目的名称，并定义该项目。
- “sdkconfig”项目配置文件，执行 idf.py menuconfig 时会创建或更新此文件，文件中保存了项目中所有组件（包括 ESP-IDF 本身的）配置信息。sdkconfig 文件可能会也可能不会被添加到项目源代码管理系统中。
- 可选的“components”目录中包含了项目的部分自定义组件，并不是每个项目都需要这种自定义组件。但它有助于构建可复用的代码或者导入第三方（不包含 ESP-IDF）的组件。或者，您也可以在顶层 CMakeLists.txt 中设置 EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS 变量以查找其他指定位置处的组件。有关详细信息，请参阅命名 main 组件。如果项目中源文件较多，建议将其归于组件中，而不是全部放在“main”中。
- “main”目录是一个特殊的组件，它包含项目本身的源代码。”main”是默认名称，CMake 变量 COMPONENT_DIRS 默认包含此组件，但您可以修改此变量。
- “build”目录是存放构建输出的地方，如果没有此目录，idf.py 会自动创建。CMake 会配置项目，并在此目录下生成临时的构建文件。此后，在主构建进程的运行期间，该目录还会保存临时目标文件、库文件以及最终输出的二进制文件。此目录通常不会添加到项目的源代码管理系统中，也不会随项目源码一同发布。

每个组件目录都包含一个 CMakeLists.txt 文件，里面会定义一些变量以控制该组件的构建过程，以及其与整个项目的集成。更多详细信息请参阅组件 CMakeLists 文件。

每个组件还可以包含一个 Kconfig 文件。它用于定义 menuconfig 时展示的组件配置选项。某些组件可能还会包含 Kconfig.projbuild 和 project_include.cmake 特殊文件，它们用于覆盖项目的部分设置。

4.5.4 项目 CMakeLists 文件

每个项目都有一个顶层 CMakeLists.txt 文件，包含整个项目的构建设置。默认情况下，项目 CMakeLists 文件会非常小。

最小 CMakeLists 文件示例

最小项目：

cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.5)
include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/project.cmake)
project(myProject)

必要部分

每个项目都要按照上面显示的顺序添加上述三行代码：

- cmake_minimum_required (VERSION 3.5) 必须放在 CMakeLists.txt 文件的第一行，它会告诉 CMake 构建该项目所需的最小版本号。ESP-IDF 支持 CMake 3.5 或更高版本。
- include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/project.cmake) 会引入 CMake 的其余功能来完成配置项目、检测组件等任务。
• `project(myProject)` 会创建项目本身，并指定项目名称。该名称会作为最终输出的二进制文件的名字，即 `myProject.elf` 和 `myProject.bin`。每个 `CMakeLists` 文件只能定义一个项目。

可选的项目变量

以下这些变量都有默认值，用户可以覆盖这些变量值以自定义构建行为。更多实现细节，请参阅 `tools/cmake/project.cmake` 文件。

- `COMPONENT_DIRS`：组件的搜索目录。默认为 `IDF_PATH/components`, `PROJECT_DIR/components` 和 `EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS`。如果您不想在这些位置搜索组件，请覆盖此变量。
- `EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS`：用于搜索组件的其它可选目录列表。路径可以是相对于项目目录的相对路径，也可以是绝对路径。
- `COMPONENTS`：要构建进项目中的组件名称列表。默认为 `COMPONENT_DIRS` 目录下检索到的所有组件。使用此变量可以“精简”项目以缩短构建时间。请注意，如果一个组件通过 `COMPONENT_REQUIRES` 指定了它依赖的另一个组件，则会自动将其添加到 `COMPONENTS` 中，所以 `COMPONENTS` 列表可能会非常短。

以上变量中的路径可以是绝对路径，或者是相对于项目目录的相对路径。

请使用 `cmake` 中的 `set` 命令来设置这些变量，如 `set(VARIABLE "VALUE")`。请注意，`set()` 命令需放在 `include(...)` 之前，`cmake_minimum(...)` 之后。

重命名 main 组件

构建系统会对 `main` 组件进行特殊处理。假如 `main` 组件位于预期的位置（即 `$PROJECT_PATH/main`），那么它会被自动添加到构建系统中。其他组件也会作为其依赖项被添加到构建系统中，这使用户免于处理依赖关系，并提供即时可用的构建功能。重命名 main 组件会减轻上述这些幕后工作量，但要求用户指定重命名后的组件位置，并手动为其添加依赖项。重命名 main 组件的步骤如下：

1. 重命名 main 目录。
2. 在项目 `CMakeLists.txt` 文件中设置 `EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS`，并添加重命名后的 main 目录。
3. 在组件的 `CMakeLists.txt` 文件中设置 `COMPONENT_REQUIRES` 或 `COMPONENT_PRIV_REQUIRES` 以指定依赖项。

覆盖默认的构建规范

构建系统设置了一些全局的构建规范（编译标志、定义等），这些规范可用于编译来自所有组件的所有源文件。

例如，其中一个默认的构建规范是编译选项 Wextra。假设一个用户想用 Wno-extra 来覆盖这个选项，应在 `project()` 之后进行：

```cmake
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.5)
include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/project.cmake)
project(myProject)
idf_build_set_property(COMPILE_OPTIONS "-Wno-error" APPEND)
```

这确保了用户设置的编译选项不会被默认的构建规范所覆盖，因为默认的构建规范是在 `project()` 内设置的。

4.5.5 组件 CMakeLists 文件

每个项目都包含一个或多个组件，这些组件可以是 ESP-IDF 的一部分，可以是项目自身组件目录的一部分，也可以从自定义组件目录添加（见上文）。

组件是 `COMPONENT_DIRS` 列表中包含 CMakeLists.txt 文件的任何目录。
搜索组件

搜索 COMPONENT_DIRS 中的目录列表以查找项目的组件。此列表中的目录可以是组件自身（即包含 CMakeLists.txt 文件的目录），也可以是子目录为组件的顶级目录。

当 CMake 运行项目配置时，它会记录本次构建包含的组件列表，它可用于调试某些组件的添加/排除。

同名组件

ESP-IDF 在搜索所有待构建的组件时，会按照 COMPONENT_DIRS 指定的顺序依次进行。这意味着在默认情况下，首先搜索 ESP-IDF 内部组件（IDF_PATH/components），然后是 EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS 中的组件，最后是项目组件（PROJECT_DIR/components）。如果这些目录中的两个或者多个包含具有相同名称的组件，则使用搜索到的最后一个位置的组件。这就允许将组件复制到项目目录中再修改以覆盖 ESP-IDF 组件。如果使用这种方式，ESP-IDF 目录本身可以保持不变。

注解：如果在现有项目中通过将组件移动到一个新位置来覆盖它，项目不会自动看到新组件的路径。请运行 idf.py reconfigure 命令后（或删除项目构建文件夹）再重新构建。

最小组件 CMakeLists 文件

最小组件 CMakeLists.txt 文件通过使用 idf_component_register 将组件添加到构建系统中。

```cmake
idf_component_register(SRCS "foo.c" "bar.c" INCLUDE_DIRS "include" REQUIRES mbedtls)
```

- SRCS 是源文件列表 (*c, *cpp, *cc, *S)，里面所有的源文件都将编译进组件库中。
- INCLUDE_DIRS 是目录列表，里面的路径会被添加到所有需要该组件的组件（包括 main 组件）全局 include 搜索路径中。
- REQUIRES 实际上并不是必需的，但通常需要它来声明该组件需要使用哪些其它组件，请参考组件依赖。

上述命令会构建生成与组件同名的库，并最终被链接到应用程序中。

上述目录通常设置为相对于 CMakeLists.txt 文件的相对路径，当然也可以设置为绝对路径。

还有其它参数可以传递给 idf_component_register，具体可参考 here。

有关更完整的 CMakeLists.txt 示例，请参阅组件依赖示例 和组件 CMakeLists 示例。

创建新组件

使用 idf.py create-component 命令创建新组件。新组件将包含构建组件所需的一组文件。您可以将组件的头文件纳入到您的项目中，并使用其功能。请运行 idf.py create-component --help 命令获取更多信息。

示例:

```bash
idf.py -C components create-component my_component
```

该示例将在当前工作目录下的子目录 components 中创建一个新的组件。更多关于组件的信息，请参考上文。

预设的组件变量

以下专用于组件的变量可以在组件 CMakeLists 中使用，但不建议修改：

- COMPONENT_DIR：组件目录，即包含 CMakeLists.txt 文件的绝对路径，它与 CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR 变量一样，路径中不能包含空格。
Chapter 4. API 指南

- COMPONENT_NAME：组件名，与组件目录名相同。
- COMPONENT_ALIAS：库别名，由构建系统在内部为组件创建。
- COMPONENT_LIB：库名，由构建系统在内部为组件创建。

以下变量在项目级别中被设置，但可在组件 CMakeLists 中使用：
- CONFIG_*：项目配置中的每个值在 cmake 中都对应一个以 CONFIG_ 开头的变量。更多详细信息请参阅 Kconfig。
- ESP_PLATFORM：ESP-IDF 构件系统处理 CMake 文件时，其值设为 1。

构建/项目变量

以下是可作为构建属性的构建/项目变量，可通过组件 CMakeLists.txt 中的 idf_build_get_property 查询其变量值。
- PROJECT_NAME：项目名，在项目 CMakeLists.txt 文件中设置。
- PROJECT_DIR：项目目录（包含项目 CMakeLists 文件）的绝对路径，与 CMAKE_SOURCE_DIR 变量相同。
- COMPONENTS：此次构建中包含的所有组件的名称，具体格式为用分号隔开的 CMake 列表。
- IDF_VER：ESP-IDF 的 git 版本号，由 git describe 命令生成。
- IDF_VERSION_MAJOR, IDF_VERSION_MINOR, IDF_VERSION_PATCH：ESP-IDF 的组件版本，可用于条件表达式。请注意这些信息的精度度不如 IDF_VER 变量，版本号 v4.0-dev-*，v4.0-beta1，v4.0-rc1 和 v4.0 对应的 IDF_VERSION_* 变量值是相同的，但是 IDF_VER 的值是不同的。
- IDF_TARGET：项目的硬件目标名称。
- PROJECT_VER：项目版本号。
  - 如果设置了 CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG 选项，将会使用 CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER 的值。
  - 否则，如果在项目 CMakeLists.txt 文件中设置了 PROJECT_VER 变量，则该变量值可以使用。
  - 否则，如果 PROJECT_DIR/version.txt 文件存在，其内容会用作 PROJECT_VER 的值。
  - 否则，如果项目位于某个 Git 仓库中，则使用 git describe 命令的输出作为 PROJECT_VER 的值。
  - 否则，PROJECT_VER 的值为 1。

其它与构建属性有关的信息请参考这里。

组件编译控制

在编译特定组件的源文件时，可以使用 target_compile_options 函数来传递编译器选项：

```cpp
target_compile_options(${COMPONENT_LIB} PRIVATE -Wno-unused-variable)
```

如果给单个源文件指定编译器标志，可以使用 CMake 的 set_source_files_properties 命令：

```cpp
set_source_files_properties(mysrc.c
  PROPERTIES COMPILDE_FLAGS
  -Wno-unused-variable)
```

如果上游代码在编译的时候发出了警告，那么这么做可能会很有效。
请注意，上述两条命令只能在组件 CMakeLists 文件的 idf_component_register 命令之后调用。

4.5.6 组件配置

每个组件都可以包含一个 Kconfig 文件，和 CMakeLists.txt 放在同一目录下。Kconfig 文件中包含要添加到该组件配置菜单中的一些配置设置信息。

运行 menuconfig 时，可以在 Component Settings 菜单栏下找到这些设置。
创建一个组件的 Kconfig 文件，最简单的方法就是使用 ESP-IDF 中现有的 Kconfig 文件作为模板，在这基础上进行修改。

有关示例请参阅添加条件配置。

### 4.5.7 预处理器定义

ESP-IDF 构建系统会在命令行中添加以下 C 预处理器定义：

- `ESP_PLATFORM`：可以用来检测在 ESP-IDF 内发生了构建行为。
- `IDF_VER`：定义 git 版本字符串，例如：v2.0 用于标记已发布的版本，v1.0-275-g0efaa4f 则用于标记任意某个的提交记录。

### 4.5.8 组件依赖

编译各个组件时，ESP-IDF 系统会递归评估其依赖项，这意味着每个组件都需要声明它所依赖的组件，即“requires”。

**编写组件**

```cpp
idf_component_register(...
    REQUIRES mbedtls
    PRIV_REQUIRES console spiffs)
```

- `REQUIRES` 需要包含所有在当前组件的 公共头文件里 #include 的头文件所在的组件。
- `PRIV_REQUIRES` 需要包含被当前组件的源文件 #include 的头文件所在的组件（除非已经被设置在了 `REQUIRES` 中），以及是当前组件正常工作必须要链接的组件。
- `REQUIRES` 和 `PRIV_REQUIRES` 的值不能依赖于任何配置选项 (CONFIG_xxx 宏)。这是因为在配置加载之前，依赖关系就已经被展开。其它组件变量（比如包含路径或源文件）可以依赖配置选择。
- 如果当前组件除了通用组件依赖项 中设置的通用组件（比如 RTOS, libc 等）外，并不依赖其它组件，那么对于上述两个 `REQUIRES` 变量，可以选择其中一个或是两个都不设置。

如果组件仅支持某些硬件目标（IDF_TARGET 的值），则可以在 idf_component_register 中指定 REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS 来声明这个需求。在这种情况下，如果构建系统导入了不支持当前硬件目标的组件时就会报错。

**注释：** 在 CMake 中，`REQUIRES` 和 `PRIV_REQUIRES` 是 CMake 函数 `target_link_libraries(... PUBLIC ...)` 和 `target_link_libraries(... PRIVATE ...)` 的近似包装。

**组件依赖示例**

假设现在有一个 car 组件，它需要使用 engine 组件，而 engine 组件需要使用 spark_plug 组件：

- autoProject/
  - CMakeLists.txt
  - components/  - car/  - CMakeLists.txt
    - car.c
    - car.h
  - engine/  - CMakeLists.txt
    - engine.c
    - include/  - engine.h
  - spark_plug/  - CMakeLists.txt
    - plug.c
    - plug.h
Car组件
car.h头文件是car组件的公共接口。该头文件直接包含了engine.h，因为它需要使用engine.h中的一些声明:

```c
/* car.h */
#include "engine.h"

#ifdef ENGINE_IS_HYBRID
#define CAR_MODEL "Hybrid"
#endif
```

同时car.c也包含了car.h:

```c
/* car.c */
#include "car.h"
```

这代表文件car/CMakeLists.txt需要声明car需要engine:

```c
idf_component_register(SRCS "car.c"
    INCLUDE_DIRS "." 
    REQUIRES engine)
```

- SRCS提供car组件中源文件列表。
- INCLUDE_DIRS提供该组件公共头文件目录列表，由于car.h是公共接口，所以这里列出了所有包含了car.h的目录。
- REQUIRES给出该组件的公共接口所需的组件列表。由于car.h是一个公共头文件并且包含了来自engine的头文件，所以我们这里包含engine。这样可以确保任何包含car.h的其他组件也能递归地包含所需的engine.h。

Engine组件
eengine组件也有一个公共头文件include/engine.h，但这个头文件更为简单:

```c
/* engine.h */
#define ENGINE_IS_HYBRID

void engine_start (void);
```

在engine.c中执行:

```c
/* engine.c */
#include "engine.h"
#include "spark_plug.h"
...
```

在该组件中，engine依赖于spark_plug，但这是私有依赖关系。编译engine.c需要spark_plug.h但不需要包含engine.h。

这代表文件engine/CMakeLists.txt可以使用PRIV_REQUIRES:

```c
idf_component_register(SRCS "engine.c"
    INCLUDE_DIRS "include"
    PRIV_REQUIRES spark_plug)
```

因此，car组件中的源文件不需要在编译器搜索路径中添加spark_plug include目录，这可以加快编译速度，避免编译器命令行过长的冗长。

Spark Plug组件
spark_plug组件没有依赖项，它有一个公共头文件spark_plug.h，但不包含其他组件的头文件。

这代表spark_plug/CMakeLists.txt文件不需要任何REQUIRES或PRIV_REQUIRES:
源文件 Include 目录

每个组件的源文件都是用这些 Include 路径目录编译的，这些路径在传递给 idf_component_register 的参数中指定：

```c
idf_component_register(SRCS "spark_plug.c"
    INCLUDE_DIRS ".")
```

- 当前组件的 INCLUDE_DIRS 和 PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS。
- REQUIRES 和 PRIV_REQUIRES 参数指定的所有其他组件（即当前组件的所有公共和私有依赖项）所设置的 INCLUDE_DIRS。
- 递归列出所有组件 REQUIRES 列表中 INCLUDE_DIRS 目录（如递归展开这个组件的所有公共依赖项）。

主要组件依赖项

main 组件比较特别，因为它在构建过程中自动依赖所有其他组件。所以不需要向这个组件传递 REQUIRES 或 PRIV_REQUIRES。有关不再使用 main 组件时需要更改哪些内容，请参考 重命名 main 组件。

通用组件依赖项

为避免重复性工作，各组件都用自动依赖一些“通用”IDF 组件，即使它们没有被明确提及。这些组件的头文件会一直包含在构建系统中。

通用组件包括：cxx, newlib, freertos, esp_hw_support, heap, log, lwip, soc, hal, esp_rom, esp_common, esp_system。

在构建中导人组件

- 默认情况下，每个组件都会包含在构建系统中。
- 如果将 COMPONENTS 变量设置为项目直接使用的最小组件列表，那么构建系统会扩展到包含所有组件。完整的组件列表为：
  - COMPONENTS 中明确提及的组件。
  - 这些组件的依赖项（以及递归运算后的组件）。
  - 每个组件都依赖的通用组件。
- 将 COMPONENTS 设置为所需组件的最小列表，可以显著减少项目的构建时间。

循环依赖

一个项目中可能包含组件 A 和组件 B，而组件 A 依赖 (REQUIRES 或 PRIV_REQUIRES) 组件 B，组件 B 又依赖组件 A。这就是所谓的依赖循环或循环依赖。

CMake 通常会在链接器命令行上重复两次组件库名称来自动处理循环依赖。然而这种方法并不总是有效，还是可能构建失败并出现关于 “Undefined reference to …” 的链接器错误，这通常是由于引用了循环依赖中某一组件中定义的符号，如果存在较大的循环依赖关系，即 A->B->C->D->A，这种情况极有可能发生。

最好的解决办法是重构组件以消除循环依赖关系。在大多数情况下，没有循环依赖的软件架构具有模块化和分层清晰的特性，并且从长远来看更容易维护。然而，移除循环依赖关系并不容易做到。
要绕过由循环依赖引起的链接器错误，最简单的解决方法是增加其中一个组件库的 CMake LINK_INTERFACE_MULTIPLICITY 属性。这会让 CMake 在链接器命令行上对此库及其依赖项重复两次以上。

例如：

```
set_property(TARGET $({COMPONENT_LIB}) APPEND PROPERTY LINK_INTERFACE_MULTIPLICITY 3)
```

- 这一行应该放在组件 CMakeLists.txt 文件 idf_component_register 之后。
- 可以的话，将此行放置在因依赖其他组件而造成循环依赖的组件中。实际上，该行可以放在循环内的任何一个组件中，但建议将其放置在拥有链接器错误提示信息中显示的源文件的组件中，或是放置在定义了链接器错误提示信息中所列出的符号的组件，先从这些组件开始是个不错的选择。
- 通常将值增加到 3（默认是 2）就足够了，但如果不奏效，可以尝试逐步增加这个数字。
- 注意，增加这个选项会使链接器的命令行变长，链结阶段变慢。

**高级解决方法：未定义符号** 如果只有一两个符号导致循环依赖，而所有其他依赖都是线性的，那么有一种替代方法可以避免链接器错误：在链接时将“反向”依赖所需的特定符号指定为未定义符号。

例如，如果组件 A 依赖于组件 B，但组件 B 也需要引用组件 A 的 reverse_ops（但不依赖组件 A 中的其他内容），那么你可以在组件 B 的 CMakeLists.txt 中添加如下一行，以在链接时避免这出现循环。

```
# 该符号是由“组件 A”在链接时提供
target_link_libraries($({COMPONENT_LIB}) INTERFACE "-u reverse_ops")
```

- `-u` 参数意味着链接器将始终在链接中包含此符号，而不管依赖项顺序如何。
- 该行应该放在组件 CMakeLists.txt 文件中的 idf_component_register 之后。
- 如果“组件 B”不需要访问“组件 A”的任何头文件，只需链接几个符号，那么这一行可以用来代替 B 对 A 的任何“REQUIRES”这样则进一步简化了构建系统中的组件结构。

请参考 target_link_libraries 文档以了解更多关于此 CMake 函数的信息。

**构建系统中依赖处理的实现细节**

- 在 CMake 配置进程的早期阶段会运行 expand_requirements.cmake 脚本，该脚本会为所有组件的 CMakeLists.txt 文件进行局部的运算，得到一张组件依赖关系图（此图可能会有闭环），此图用于在构建目录中生成 component_depeands.cmake 文件。
- CMake 主进程会导入该文件，并以此来确定是否包含到构建系统中的组件列表，内部使用的 BUILD_COMPONENTS 变量。BUILD_COMPONENTS 变量只包含组件名，依赖组件会排在前面，由于组件依赖关系图中可能存在闭环，因此不能保证每个组件都满足该排序规则。如果给定相同的组件集和依赖关系，那么最终的排序结果应该是确定的。
- CMake 会将 BUILD_COMPONENTS 的值以“Component names” 的形式打印出来。
- 然后执行构建系统中包含的组件的配置。
- 每个组件都被正常包含在构建系统中，然后再次执行 CMakeLists.txt 文件，将组件库加入构建系统。

**组件依赖顺序** BUILD_COMPONENTS 变量中组件的顺序决定了构建过程中的其它顺序，包括：

- 项目导入 project_include.cmake 文件的顺序。
- 生成用于编译（通过 -I 参数）的头文件路径列表的顺序。请注意，对于给定组件的源文件，仅需将该组件的依赖组件的头文件路径告知编译器。

**覆盖项目部分设置**

**project_include.cmake** 如果组件的某些构建行为需要在组件 CMakeLists 文件之前被执行，您可以在组件目录下创建名为 project_include.cmake 的文件。project.cmake 在运行过程中会导入此 CMake 文件。

**project_include.cmake** 文件在 ESP-IDF 内部使用，以定义项目范围内的构建功能，比如 esptool.py 的命令行参数和 bootloader 这个特殊的应用程序。
与组件 CMakeLists.txt 文件有所不同，在导入 “project_include.cmake” 文件的时候，当前源文件目录（即 CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR 和工作目录）为项目目录。如果想获得当前组件的绝对路径，可以用 CMAKE_CURRENT_PATH 变量。

请注意，project_include.cmake 对于大多数常见的组件并不是必需的。例如给项目添加 include 搜索目录，给最终的链接步骤添加 LDFLAGS 选项等都可以通过 CMakeLists.txt 文件来自定义。详细信息请参考可选的项目变量。

project_include.cmake 文件会按照 BUILD_COMPONENTS 变量中组件的顺序（由 CMake 记录）依次导入。即只有在当前组件所有依赖组件的 project_include.cmake 文件都被导入后，当前组件的 project_include.cmake 文件才会被导入，除非两个组件在同一个依赖闭环中。如果某个 project_include.cmake 文件依赖于另一组件设置的变量，则要特别注意上述情况。更多详情请参阅构建系统中依赖处理的实现细节。

在 project_include.cmake 文件中设置变量或目标时要格外小心，这些值被包含在项目的顶层 CMake 文件中，因此他们会影响或破坏所有组件的功能。

KConfigProjbuild 与 project_include.cmake 类似，也可以为组件定义一个 KConfig 文件以实现全局的配置。如果要在 menuconfig 的顶层添加配置选项，而不是在 “Component Configuration” 子菜单中，则可以在 CMakeLists.txt 文件所在目录的 KConfigProjbuild 文件中定义这些选项。

在此文件中添加配置时要小心，因为这些配置会包含在整个项目配置中。在可能的情况下，请为配置创建 KConfig 文件。

project_include.cmake 文件在 ESP-IDF 内部使用，以定义项目范围内的构建功能，比如 esptool.py 的命令行参数和 bootloader 这个特殊的应用程序。

仅配置组件 仅配置组件是一类不包含源文件的特殊组件，仅包含 KconfigProjbuild、KConfig 和 CMakeLists.txt 文件，该 CMakeLists.txt 文件仅有一行代码，调用了 idf_component_register() 函数。此函数会将组件导入到项目构建中，但不会构建任何库，也不会将头文件添加到任何 include 搜索路径中。

CMake 调试

请查看 CMake v3.5 官方文档 获取更多关于 CMake 和 CMake 命令的信息。

调试 ESP-IDF CMake 构建系统的一些技巧：

- CMake 运行时，会打印大量诊断信息，包括组件列表和组件路径。
- 运行 cmake --DDEBUG=1，IDF 构建系统会生成更详细的诊断输出。
- 运行 cmake 时指定 --trace 或 --trace-expand 选项会提供大量有关控制流信息。详情请参考 CMake 命令行文档。

当从项目 CMakeLists 文件导入时，project.cmake 文件会定义工具模块和全局变量，并在系统环境中没有设置 IDF_PATH 时设置 IDF_PATH。

同时还定义了一个自定义版本的内置 CMake project 函数，这个函数被覆盖，以添加所有 ESP-IDF 特定的项目功能。

警告未定义的变量 默认情况下，idf.py 在调用 CMake 时会给它传递 --warn-uninitialized 标志，如果在构建的过程中引用了未定义的变量，CMake 会打印警告。这对查找有错误的 CMake 文件非常有用。

如果您不想启用此功能，可以给 idf.py 传递 --no-warnings 标志。

更多信息，请参考文件 /tools/cmake/project.cmake 以及 /tools/cmake/ 中支持的函数。
4.5.9 组件 CMakeLists 示例

因为构建环境试图设置大多数情况都能工作的合理默认值，所以组件 CMakeLists.txt 文件可能非常小，甚至可能是空的，所以组件 CMakeLists 文件没有提供很多功能。有些功能往往需要覆盖预设的组件变量才能实现。

以下是组件 CMakeLists 文件的更高级的示例。

添加条件配置

配置系统可用于根据项目配置中选择的选项有条件地编译某些文件。

Kconfig:

```c
config FOO_ENABLE_BAR
  bool "Enable the BAR feature."
  help
      This enables the BAR feature of the FOO component.
```

CMakeLists.txt:

```c
set(srcs "foo.c" "more_foo.c"
if(CONFIG_FOO_ENABLE_BAR)
  list(APPEND srcs "bar.c"
endif()
idf_component_register(SRCS "${srcs}"
```

上述示例使用了 CMake 的 if 函数和 list APPEND 函数。

也可用于选择或删除某一实现，如下所示：

Kconfig:

```c
config ENABLE_LCD_OUTPUT
  bool "Enable LCD output."
  help
      Select this if your board has a LCD.
config ENABLE_LCD_CONSOLE
  bool "Output console text to LCD"
  depends on ENABLE_LCD_OUTPUT
  help
      Select this to output debugging output to the LCD
config ENABLE_LCD_PLOT
  bool "Output temperature plots to LCD"
  depends on ENABLE_LCD_OUTPUT
  help
      Select this to output temperature plots
```

CMakeLists.txt:

```c
if(CONFIG_ENABLE_LCD_OUTPUT)
  set(srcs lcd-real.c lcd-spi.c)
else()
  set(srcs lcd-dummy.c)
endif()
if(CONFIG_ENABLE_LCD_CONSOLE OR CONFIG_ENABLE_LCD_PLOT)
```

Espressif Systems 1742

Submit Document Feedback
硬件目标的条件判断

CMake 文件可以使用 IDF_TARGET 变量来获取当前的硬件目标。

此外，如果当前的硬件目标是 xyz (即 IDF_TARGET=xyz)，那么 Kconfig 变量 CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_XYZ 同样也会被设置。

请注意，组件可以依赖 IDF_TARGET 变量，但不能依赖这个 Kconfig 变量。同样也不可在 CMake 文件的 include 语句中使用 Kconfig 变量，在这种上下文中可以使用 IDF_TARGET。

生成源代码

有些组件的源文件可能并不是由组件本身提供，而必须从另外的文件生成。假设组件需要一个头文件，该文件由 BMP 文件转换后（使用 bmp2h 工具）的二进制数据组成，然后将头文件包含在名为 graphics_lib.c 的文件中:

```cmake
add_custom_command(OUTPUT logo.h
    COMMAND bmp2h -i ${COMPONENT_DIR}/logo.bmp -o log.h
    DEPENDS ${COMPONENT_DIR}/logo.bmp
    VERBATIM)
add_custom_target(logo
    DEPENDS log.h)
add_dependencies(${COMPONENT_LIB} logo)
set_property(DIRECTORY "${COMPONENT_DIR}" APPEND PROPERTY
    ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES logo.h)
```

这个示例改编自 CMake 的一则 FAQ，其中还包含了一些同样适用于 ESP-IDF 构建系统示例。

这个示例会在当前目录（构建目录）中生成 logo.h 文件，而 logo.bmp 会随组件一起提供在组件目录中。因为 logo.h 是一个新生成的文件，一旦项目需要清理，该文件也应该被清除。因此，要将该文件添加到 ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES 属性中。

注解: 如果需要生成文件作为项目 CMakeLists.txt 的一部分，而不是作为组件 CMakeLists.txt 的一部分，此时需要使用 $(PROJECT_PATH) 替代 $(COMPONENT_DIR)，使用 $(PROJECT_NAME).elf 替代 $(COMPONENT_LIB)。

如果某个源文件是从其他组件中生成，且包含 logo.h 文件，则需要调用 add_dependencies，在这两个组件之间添加一个依赖项，以确保组件源文件按照正确顺序进行编译。

嵌入二进制数据

有时您的组件希望使用一个二进制文件或者文本文件，但是您又不希望将它们重新格式化为 C 源文件。

这时，您可以在组件注册中指定 EMBED_FILES 参数，用空格分隔要嵌入的文件名称:

```cmake
idf_component_register(...
    EMBED_FILES server_root_cert.der)
```

或者，如果文件是字符串，则可以使用 EMBED_TXTFILES 变量，把文件的内容转成以 null 结尾的字符串嵌入:
文件的内容会被添加到 Flash 的.rodata 段，用户可以通过符号名来访问，如下所示:

```
//server_root_cert.pem_start
extern const uint8_t server_root_cert_pem_start[] asm("_binary_server_root_cert_
<-pem_start");
//server_root_cert.pem_end
extern const uint8_t server_root_cert_pem_end[] asm("_binary_server_root_cert_
<-pem_end");
```

符号名会根据文件全名生成，如 EMBED_FILES 中所示，字符 /、等都会被下划线替代。符号名称中的_binary 前缀由 objcopy 命令添加，对文本文件和二进制文件都是如此。

如果要将文件嵌入到项目中，而非组件中，可以调用 target_add_binary_data 函数:

```
target_add_binary_data(myproject.elf "main/data.bin" TEXT)
```

并将这行代码放在项目 CMakeLists.txt 的 project() 命令之后，修改 myproject.elf 为你自己的项目名。如果最后一个参数是 TEXT，那么构建系统会嵌入以 null 结尾的字符串，如果最后一个参数被设置为 BINARY，则将文件内容按照原样嵌入。

有关使用此技术的示例，请查看 file_serving 示例 protocols/http_server/file_serving/main/CMakeLists.txt 中的 main 组件，两个文件会在编译时加载并链接到固件中。

也可以嵌入生成的文件:

```
add_custom_command(OUTPUT my_processed_file.bin
  COMMAND my_process_file_cmd
  my_unprocessed_file.bin)
target_add_binary_data(my_target "my_processed_file.bin" BINARY)
```

上述示例中，my_processed_file.bin 是通过命令 my_process_file_cmd 从文件 my_unprocessed_file.bin 中生成，然后嵌入到目标中。

使用 DEPENDS 参数来指明对目标的依赖性:

```
add_custom_target(my_process COMMAND ...)
target_add_binary_data(my_target "my_embed_file.bin" BINARY DEPENDS my_process)
```

target_add_binary_data 的 DEPENDS 参数确保目标首先执行。

### 代码和数据的存放

ESP-IDF 还支持自动生成链接脚本，它允许组件通过链接片段文件定义其代码和数据在内存中的存放位置。构建系统会处理这些链接片段文件，并将处理后的结果扩充进链接脚本，从而指导应用程序二进制文件的链接过程。更多详细信息与快速上手指南，请参阅链接脚本生成机制。

### 完全覆盖组件的构建过程

当然，在有些情况下，上面提到的方法不一定够用。如果组件封装了另一个第三方组件，而这个第三方组件并不能直接在 ESP-IDF 的构建系统中工作。在这种情况下，就需要放弃 ESP-IDF 的构建系统，改为使用 CMake 的 ExternalProject 功能。组件 CMakeLists 示例如下:

```
# 用于 quirc 的外部构建过程，在源目录中运行
# 并生成 libquirc.a
externalproject_add(quirc_build
  PREFIX ${COMPONENT_DIR}
  SOURCE_DIR ${COMPONENT_DIR}/quirc
  CONFIGURE_COMMAND"
  BUILD_IN_SOURCE 1
  BUILD_COMMAND make CC=${CMAKE_C_COMPILER} libquirc.a
```

(下页继续)
(上述 CMakeLists.txt 可用于创建名为 quirc 的组件，该组件使用自己的 Makefile 构建 quirc 项目。)

- **externalproject_add** 定义了一个外部构建系统。
  - 设置 `SOURCE_DIR`、`CONFIGURE_COMMAND`、`BUILD_COMMAND` 和 `INSTALL_COMMAND`。如果外部构建系统没有配置这一步骤，可以将 `CONFIGURE_COMMAND` 设置为空字符串。在 ESP-IDF 的构建系统中，一般会将 `INSTALL_COMMAND` 变量设置为空。
  - 设置 `BUILD_IN_SOURCE`，即构建目录与源目录相同。否则，您也可以设置 `BUILD_DIR` 变量。
  - 有关 `externalproject_add` 命令的详细信息，请参阅 [ExternalProject](https://esp-idf.readthedocs.io/en/latest/analyze_externalproject.html)。
- 第二组命令添加了一个目标库，指向外部构建系统生成的库文件。为了添加 `include` 目录，并告知 CMake 该文件的位置，需要再设置一些属性。
- 最后，生成的库被添加到 `ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES` 中，即执行 `make clean` 后会删除该库。请注意，构建系统中的其他目标文件不会被删除。

### 备注
当外部构建系统使用 PSRAM 时，请记得将 `-mfix-esp32-psram-cache-issue` 添加到 C 编译器的参数中。关于该标志的更多信息，请参考 `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND`。

**ExternalProject 的依赖与构建清理**

对于外部项目的构建，CMake 会有一些不同寻常的行为：

- `ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES` 仅在使用 `Make` 构建系统时有效。如果使用 `Ninja` 或 IDE 自带的构建系统，执行项目清理时，这些文件不会被删除。
- `ExternalProject` 会在 clean 运行后自动重新运行配置和构建命令。

可以采用以下两种方法来配置外部构建命令：

1. 将外部 `BUILD_COMMAND` 命令设置为对所有源代码完整的重新编译。如果传递给 `externalproject_add` 命令的 `DEPENDS` 的依赖项发生了改变，或者当前执行的是项目清理操作（即运行了 `idf.py clean`），那么就会执行该命令。
2. 将外部 `BUILD_COMMAND` 命令设置为增量式构建命令，并给 `externalproject_add` 传递 `BUILD_ALWAYS` 参数。即不管实际的依赖情况，每次构建时，都会构建外部项目。这种方式仅当外部构建系统具备增量式构建的能力，且运行时间不会很长时才推荐。

构建外部项目的最佳方法取决于项目本身，其构建系统，以及是否需要频繁重新编译项目。

#### 4.5.10 自定义 `sdkconfig` 的默认值

对于示例工程或其他您不想指定完整 `sdkconfig` 配置的项目，但是您确实希望覆盖 ESP-IDF 默认值中的某些键值，则可以在项目中创建 `sdkconfig.defaults` 文件。重新创建新配置时将会用到此文件，另外在 `sdkconfig` 没有设置新配置时，上述文件也会被用到。

如若需要覆盖此文件的名称或指定多个文件，请设置 `SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS` 环境变量或在顶层 CMakeLists.txt 文件中设置 `SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS`。在指定多个文件时，使用分号作为分隔符。未指定完整路径的文件名将以当前项目的相对路径来解析。
一些IDF示例中包含了sdkconfig.ci文件。该文件是CI（持续集成）测试框架的一部分，在正常构建过程中会被忽略。

### 依赖于硬件目标的sdkconfig默认值

除了sdkconfig.defaults之外，构建系统还将从sdkconfig.defaults.TARGET_NAME文件加载默认值。其中IDF_TARGET的值为TARGET_NAME。例如，对于ESP32这个硬件目标，sdkconfig的默认值会首先从sdkconfig.defaults获取，然后再从sdkconfig.defaults.esp32获取。

如果使用SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS覆盖了sdkconfig默认文件的名称，则硬件目标的sdkconfig默认文件名也会从SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS值中派生。

### 4.5.11 Flash参数

有些情况下，我们希望在没有IDF时也能烧写目标板，为此，我们希望可以保存已构建的二进制文件、esptool.py和esptool write flash命令的参数。可以通过编写一段简单脚本来保存二进制文件和esptool.py。

运行项目构建之后，构建目录将包含项目二进制输出文件（.bin文件），同时也包含以下烧录数据文件:

- flash_project_args包含烧录整个项目的参数，包括应用程序（app）、引导程序（bootloader）、分区表，如果设置了PHY数据，也会包含此数据。
- flash_app_args只包含烧录应用程序的参数。
- flash_bootloader_args只包含烧录引导程序的参数。

您可以参照如下命令将任意烧录参数文件传递给esptool.py:

```bash
python esptool.py --chip esp32 write_flash @build/flash_project_args
```

也可以手动复制参数文件中的数据到命令行中执行。

构建目录中还包含生成的flasher_args.json文件，此文件包含JSON格式的项目烧录信息，可用于idf.py和其它需要项目构建信息的工具。

### 4.5.12 构建Bootloader

引导程序默认作为idf.pybuild的一部分被构建，也可以通过idf.pybootloader来单独构建。

引导程序是/components/bootloader/subproject内部独特的“子项目”，它有自己的CMakeLists.txt文件，能够构建独立于主项目的.ELF和.BIN文件，同时它又与主项目共享配置和构建目录。

子项目通过/components/bootloader/project_include.cmake文件作为外部项目插入到项目的顶层设计，主构建进程会运行子项目的CMake，包括查找组件（主项目使用的组件的子集），生成引导程序专用的配置文件（从主sdkconfig文件中派生）。

### 4.5.13 选择目标芯片

ESP-IDF支持多款芯片，它们通过在软件中使用不同的“目标”（target）名进行区分。具体对应关系如下:

- esp32—适用于ESP32-D0WD、ESP32-D2WD、ESP32-S0WD（ESP-SOLO）、ESP32-U4WDH、ESP32-PICO-D4
- esp32s2—适用于ESP32-S2
- esp32c3—适用于ESP32-C3

在构建项目前，请首先根据您的芯片选择正确的软件目标。具体命令为idf.pyset-target<target>。例如

```bash
idf.py set-target esp32s2
```
4.5.14 编写纯 CMake 组件

ESP-IDF 构建系统用“组件”的概念“封装”了 CMake，并提供了很多帮助函数来自动将这些组件集成到项目构建当中。

然而，“组件”概念的背后是完整的 CMake 构建系统，因此可以制作纯 CMake 组件。

下面是使用纯 CMake 语法来json 组件编写的最小 CMakeLists 文件的示例：

```cmake
add_library(json STATIC cJSON/cJSON.c cJSON/cJSON_Utils.c)
target_include_directories(json PUBLIC cJSON)
```

- 这实际上与 IDF 中的 json 组件是等效的。
- 因为组件中的源文件不多，所以这个 CMakeLists 文件非常简单。对于具有大量源文件的组件而言，ESP-IDF 支持的组件的组件文件可以选择使用 CMakeLists 的样式。
- 每当组件中新增一个与组件同名的库目标时，ESP-IDF 构建系统会自动将其添加到构建中，并公开公共的 include 目录。如果组件想要添加一个与组件同名的库目标，就需要使用 CMake 命令手动添加依赖关系。

4.5.15 组件中使用第三方 CMake 项目

CMake 在许多开源的 C/C++ 项目中广泛使用，用户可以在自己的应用程序中使用开源代码。CMake 构建系统的一大好处就是可以导入这些第三方的项目，有有时候甚至不用做任何改动。这就允许用户使用当前 ESP-IDF 组件尚未提供的功能，或者使用其它库来实现相同的功能。

假设 main 组件需要导入一个假想库 foo，相应的组件 CMakeLists 文件如下所示：

```cmake
# 注册组件
idf_component_register(...)

# 设置 “foo” 项目中的一些 CMake 变量，以控制 “foo”的构建过程
set(FOO_BUILD_STATIC OFF)
set(FOO_BUILD_TESTS OFF)
```

(下页继续)
实际的案例请参考 `build_system/cmake/import_lib`。请注意，导入第三方库所需要做的工作可能会因库的不同而有所差异。建议仔细阅读第三方库的文档，了解如何将其导入到其它项目中。阅读第三方库的 `CMakeLists.txt` 文件以及构建结构也会有所帮助。

用这种方法还可以将第三方库封装成 ESP-IDF 的组件。例如 `mbedts` 组件就是封装了 `mbedts` 项目的。详情请参考 `mbedts` 组件的 `CMakeLists.txt` 文件。

每当使用 ESP-IDF 构建系统时，CMake 变量 `ESP_PLATFORM` 都会被设置为 1。如果要在通用的 CMake 代码加入 IDF 特定的代码时，可以采用 `if (ESP_PLATFORM)` 的形式加以分隔。

### 外部库中使用 ESP-IDF 组件

上述示例中假设的是外部库 `foo`（或 `import_lib` 示例中的 `tinyxml` 库）除了常见的 API 如 `libc`、`libstdc++` 等外不需要使用其它 ESP-IDF API。如果外部库需要使用其它 ESP-IDF 组件提供的 API，则需要在外部 `CMakeLists.txt` 文件中通过添加对库目标 `idf::<componentname>` 的依赖关系。

例如，在 `foo/CMakeLists.txt` 文件:

```cmake
add_library(foo bar.c fizz.cpp buzz.cpp)

if (ESP_PLATFORM)
    # 在 ESP-IDF 中，bar.c 需要包含 spi_flash 组件中的 esp_spi_flash.h
    target_link_libraries(foo PRIVATE idf::spi_flash)
endif()
```

### 4.5.16 组件中使用预建库

还有一种情况是您有一个由其它构建过程生成预建静态库（.a 文件)。

ESP-IDF 构建系统为用户提供了一个实用函数 `add_prebuilt_library`，能够轻松导入并使用预建库:

```cmake
add_prebuilt_library(target_name lib_path [REQUIRES req1 req2 ...] [PRIV_REQUIRES... --req1 req2 ...])
```

其中:

- `target_name`: 用于引用导入库的名称，如链接到其它目标时
- `lib_path`: 预建库的路径，可以是绝对路径或是相对于组件目录的相对路径
- 可选参数 `REQUIRES` 和 `PRIV_REQUIRES` 指定对其它组件的依赖性。这些参数与 `idf_component_register` 的参数的意义相同。

注意预建库的编译目标需与目前的项目相同。预建库的相关参数也要匹配。如果不特别注意，这两个因素可能会导致应用程序中出现 bug。

请查看示例 `build_system/cmake/import_prebuilt`。

### 4.5.17 在自定义 CMake 项目中使用 ESP-IDF

ESP-IDF 提供了一个模板 CMake 项目，可以基于此轻松创建应用程序。然而在有些情况下，用户可能已有一个现成的 CMake 项目，或者想自己创建一个 CMake 项目，此时就希望将 IDF 中的组件以库的形式链接到用户目标（库/可执行文件）。

可以通过 `tools/cmake/idf.cmake` 提供的 `build system APIs` 实现该目标。例如:


```cmake
# 导入提供 ESP-IDF CMake 构建系统 API 的 CMake 文件
include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/idf.cmake)

# 在构建中导入 ESP-IDF 组件，可以视作等同 add_subdirectory()
# 但为 ESP-IDF 构建增加额外的构建过程
idf_build_process(esp32)

# 创建项目可执行文件
# 使用其别名 idf::newlib 将其链接到 newlib 组件
add_executable(${CMAKE_PROJECT_NAME}.elf main.c)
target_link_libraries(${CMAKE_PROJECT_NAME}.elf idf::newlib)

idf_build_executable(${CMAKE_PROJECT_NAME}.elf)
```

build_system/cmake/idf_as_lib 中的示例演示了如何在自定义的 CMake 项目创建一个类似于 Hello World 的应用流程。

**注解**：IDF 构建系统只能为其构建的源文件设置编译器标志。当使用外部 CMakeLists.txt 文件并启用 PSRAM 时，记得在 C 编译器参数中添加 mfix-esp32-psram-cache-issue。参见 ref:CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND 了解更多信息。

### 4.5.18 ESP-IDF CMake 构建系统 API

**idf 构建命令**

```cmake
idf_build_get_property(var property [GENERATOR_EXPRESSION])
```

检索一个构建属性 property，并将其存储在当前作用域可访问的 var 中。特定 GENERATOR_EXPRESSION 将检索该属性的生成器表达式字符串（不是实际值）。它可与支持生成器表达式的 CMake 命令一起使用。

```cmake
idf_build_set_property(property val [APPEND])
```

设置构建属性 property 的值为 val。特定 APPEND 将把指定的值附加到属性当前值之后。如果该属性之前不存在或当前为空，则指定的值将变为第一个元素/成员。

```cmake
idf_build_component(component_dir)
```

向构建系统提交一个包含组件的 component_dir 目录。相对路径会转换为相对于当前目录的绝对路径。所有对该命令的调用必须在 idf_build_process 之前执行。

该命令并不保证组件在构建过程中会被处理（参见 idf_build_process 中 COMPONENTS 参数说明）

```cmake
idf_build_process(target
    [PROJECT_DIR project_dir]
    [PROJECT_VER project_ver]
    [PROJECT_NAME project_name]
    [SDKCONFIG sdkconfig]
    [SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS sdkconfig_defaults]
    [BUILD_DIR build_dir]
    [COMPONENTS component1 component2 ...])
```

导入 ESP-IDF 组件执行大量的幕后工作，包括组件配置、库创建、依赖性扩展和解析。在这些功能中，对于用户最重要的可能是通过调用每个组件的 idf_component_register 来创建库。该命令为每个
组件创建库，这些库可以使用别名来访问，其形式为 `idf:component_name`。这些别名可以用来将组件链接到用户自己的目标库或可执行文件上。

该调用要求用 `target` 参数指定目标芯片。调用的可选参数包括：

- `PROJECT_DIR` - 项目目录，默认为 `CMAKE_SOURCE_DIR`。
- `PROJECT_NAME` - 项目名称，默认为 `CMAKE_PROJECT_NAME`。
- `PROJECT_VER` - 项目版本/版本号，默认为“1”。
- `SDKCONFIG` - 生成的 `sdkconfig` 文件的输出路径，根据是否设置 `PROJECT_DIR`，默认为 `PROJECT_DIR/sdkconfig` 或 `CMAKE_SOURCE_DIR/sdkconfig`。
- `SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS` - 包含默认配置的文件列表（列表中必须包含完整的路径），默认为空；对于列表中的每个值 `filename`，如果存在的话，也会加载文件 `filename.target` 中的配置。对于列表中的 `filename` 的每一个值，也会加载文件 `filename.target` （如果存在的话）中的配置。
- `BUILD_DIR` - 用于放置 ESP-IDF 构建相关工具的目录，如生成的二进制文件、文本文件、组件；默认为 `CMAKE_BINARY_DIR`。
- `KCONFIGS` - 从构建系统已知的组件中选择要处理的组件（通过 `idf_build_component` 添加）。这个参数用于精简构建过程。如果在依赖链中需要其它组件，则会自动添加，即自动添加这个列表中组件的公共和私有依赖项，进而添加这些依赖项的公共和私有依赖，以此类推。如果不指定，则会处理构建系统已知的所有组件。

```c
idf_build_executable(executable)
```

指定 ESP-IDF 构建的可执行文件 `executable`。这将添加额外的目标，如与 flash 相关的依赖关系，生成额外的二进制文件等。应在 `idf_build_process` 之后调用。

```c
idf_build_get_config(var config [GENERATOR_EXPRESSION])
```

获取指定配置的值。就像构建属性一样，特定 `GENERATOR_EXPRESSION` 将检索该配置的生成器表达式字符串，而不是实际值。即可用于支持生成器表达式的 CMake 命令一起使用。然而，实际的配置值只有在调用 `idf_build_process` 后才能知道。

**idf 构建属性**

可以通过使用构建命令 `idf_build_get_property` 来获取构建属性的值。例如，以下命令可以获取构建过程中使用的 Python 解释器的相关信息。

```c
idf_build_get_property(python PYTHON)
message(STATUS "The Python interpreter is: \${python}\n")
```

- `BUILD_DIR` - 建目录：由 `idf_build_process` 的 `BUILD_DIR` 参数设置。
- `BUILD_COMPONENTS` - 包含在构建中的组件列表：由 `idf_build_process` 设置。
- `BUILD_COMPONENT_ALIASES` - 包含在构建中的组件的库别名列表：由 `idf_build_process` 设置。
- `C_COMPILE_OPTIONS` - 适用于所有组件的 C 源代码文件的编译选项。
- `CMAKE_COMPILE_OPTIONS` - 适用于所有组件的源文件（无论是 C 还是 C++）的编译选项。
- `CMAKE_COMPILE_DEFINITIONS` - 适用于所有组件源文件的编译定义。
- `CXX_COMPILE_OPTIONS` - 适用于所有组件的 C++源文件的编译选项。
- `EXECUTABLE` - 项目可执行文件：通过调用 `idf_build_executable` 设置。
- `EXECUTABLE_NAME` - 不含扩展名的项目可执行文件的名称：通过调用 `idf_build_executable` 设置。
- `EXECUTABLE_DIR` - 输出的可执行文件的路径。
- `IDF_PATH` - ESP-IDF 路径：由 `IDF_PATH` 环境变量设置；或者从 `idf.cmake` 的位置推断。
- `IDF_TARGET` - 构建的目标芯片：由 `idf_build_process` 的目标参数设置。
- `IDF_VER` - ESP-IDF 版本：由版本文件或 `IDF_PATH` 仓库的 Git 版本设置。
- `INCLUDE_DIRECTORIES` - 包含所有组件源文件的目录。
- `KCONFIGS` - 构建过程中组件的 `Kconfig` 文件的列表：由 `idf_build_process` 设置。
- `KCONFIG_PROJBUilds` - 构建过程中组件中的 Kconfig projbuild 文件的列表：由 `idf_build_process` 设置。
- `PROJECT_NAME` - 项目名称：由 `idf_build_process` 的 `PROJECT_NAME` 参数设置。
Chapter 4. API 指南

- PROJECT_DIR - 项目的目录：由 idf_build_process 的 PROJECT_DIR 参数设置。
- PROJECT_VER - 项目的版本：由 idf_build_process 的 PROJECT_VER 参数设置。
- PYTHON - 用于构建的 Python 解释器；如果没有则从 PYTHON 环境变量中设置，如果没有，则使用“python”。
- SDKCONFIG - 输出的配置文件的完整路径：由 idf_build_process SDKCONFIG 参数设置。
- SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS - 包含默认配置的文件列表：由 idf_build_process SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS 参数设置。
- SDKCONFIG_HEADER - 包含组件配置的 C/C++ 头文件的完整路径：由 idf_build_process 设置。
- SDKCONFIG_CMAKE - 包含组件配置的 CMake 文件的完整路径：由 idf_build_process 设置。
- SDKCONFIG_JSON - 包含组件配置的 JSON 文件的完整路径：由 idf_build_process 设置。
- SDKCONFIG_JSON_MENUS - 包含配置菜单的 JSON 文件的完整路径：由 idf_build_process 设置。

idf 组件命令

idf_component_get_property(var component property [GENERATOR_EXPRESSION])

检索一个指定的 component 的组件属性 property，并将其存储在当前作用域可访问的 var 中。指定 GENERATOR_EXPRESSION 将检索该属性的生成器表达式字符串（不是实际值），它可以在支持生成器表达式的 CMake 命令中使用。

idf_component_set_property(component property val [APPEND])

设置指定的 component 的组件属性 property 的值为 val。特定 APPEND 将把指定的值追加到属性的当前值后。如果该属性之前不存在或当前为空，指定的值将成为第一个元素/成员。

idf_component_register([ [SRCS src1 src2 ... ] | [ [SRC_DIRS dir1 dir2 ... ] [EXCLUDE_SRCS src1 src2 ... ] ] ] [INCLUDE_DIRS dir1 dir2 ... ] [PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS dir1 dir2 ... ] [REQUIRES component1 component2 ... ] [PRIV_REQUIRES component1 component2 ... ] [LDFRAGMENTS ldfragment1 ldfragment2 ... ] [REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS target1 target2 ... ] [EMBED_FILES file1 file2 ... ] [EMBED_TXTFILES file1 file2 ... ] [KCONFIG kconfig] [KCONFIG_PROJBUILD kconfig_projbuild])

将一个组件注册到构建系统中。就像 project() CMake 命令一样，该命令应该直接从组件的 CMake-Lists.txt 中调用（而不是通过函数或宏），且建议在其他命令之前调用该命令。下面是一些关于在 idf_component_register 之前不能调用哪些命令的指南：

- 在 CMake 脚本模式下无效的命令。
- 在 project() 中定义的自定义命令。
- 除了 idf_build_get_property 之外，构建系统的 API 命令：但要考虑该属性是否有被设置。

对变量进行设置和操作的命令，一般可在 idf_component_register 之前调用。

idf_component_register 的参数包括：

- SRCS - 组件的源文件，用于为组件创建静态库；如果没有指定，组件将被视为仅配置组件，从而创建可执行文件。
- SRC_DIRS、EXCLUDE_SRCS - 用于通过指定目录来 glob 源文件 (.c, .cpp, .s)，而不是通过 SRCS 手动指定源文件。请注意，这对 CMake 中配置的限制，在 EXCLUDE_SRCS 中指定的源文件会从被 glob 的文件中移除。
- INCLUDE_DIRS - 相对于组件目录的路径，该路径将会被添加到需要当前组件的所有其他组件的 include 搜索路径中。
- PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS - 必须是相对于组件目录的目录路径，它仅被添加到这个组件源文件的 include 搜索路径中。

Espressif Systems  1751  Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36  Submit Document Feedback
• REQUIRES - 组件的公共依赖项。
• PRIV_REQUIRES - 组件的私有依赖项；仅用于配置的组件上会被忽略。
• LDFRAGMENTS - 组件链接器片段文件。
• REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS - 指定该组件唯一支持的目标。
• KCONFIG - 覆盖默认的 Kconfig 文件。
• KCONFIG_PROJBUILD - 覆盖默认的 Kconfig.projbuild 文件。

以下内容用于将数据嵌入到组件中，并在确定组件是否仅用于配置时被视为源文件。这意味着，即使组件没有指定源文件，如果组件指定了以下之一，仍然会在内部为组件创建一个静态库。

• EMBED_FILES - 嵌入组件的二进制文件
• EMBED_TXTFILES - 嵌入组件的文本文件

idf 组件属性

组件的属性值可以通过使用构建命令 idf_component_get_property 来获取。例如，以下命令可以获取 freertos 组件的目录。

```bash
idf_component_get_property(dir freertos COMPONENT_DIR)
message(STATUS "The 'freertos' component directory is: $(dir)"
```

• COMPONENT_ALIAS - COMPONENT_LIB 的别名，用于将组件链接到外部目标；由 idf_build_component 设置，别名库本身由 idf_component_register 创建。
• COMPONENT_DIR - 组件目录；由 idf_build_component 设置。
• COMPONENT_OVERRIDEN_DIR - 如果这个组件覆盖了另一个组件，则包含原组件的目录。
• COMPONENT_LIB - 所创建的组件静态/接口库的名称；由 idf_build_component 设置，库本身由 idf_component_register 创建。
• COMPONENT_NAME - 组件的名称；由 idf_build_component 根据组件的目录名设置。
• COMPONENT_TYPE - 组件的类型 (LIBRARY 或 CONFIG_ONLY)。如果一个组件指定了源文件或嵌入了一个文件，那么它的类型就是 LIBRARY。
• EMBED_FILES - 要嵌入组件的文件列表；由 idf_component_register EMBED_FILES 参数设置。
• EMBED_TXTFILES - 要嵌入组件的文本文件列表；由 idf_component_register EMBED_TXTFILES 参数设置。
• INCLUDE_DIRS - 组件 include 目录列表；由 idf_component_register INCLUDE_DIRS 参数设置。
• KCONFIG - 组件 Kconfig 文件；由 idf_build_component 设置。
• KCONFIG_PROJBUILD - 组件 Kconfig.projbuild；由 idf_build_component 设置。
• LDFRAGMENTS - 组件链接器片段文件列表；由 idf_component_register LDFRAGMENTS 参数设置。
• PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS - 组件私有 include 目录列表；在 LIBRARY 类型的组件 idf_component_register PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS 参数中设置。
• PRIV_REQUIRES - 私有组件依赖关系列表；由 idf_component_register PRIV_REQUIRES 参数设置。
• REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS - 组件支持的目标列表；由 idf_component_register REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS 参数设置。
• SRCS - 组件源文件列表；由 idf_component_register 的 SRCS 或 SRC_DIRS/EXCLUDE_SRCS 参数设置。

4.5.19 文件通配 & 增量构建

在 ESP-IDF 组件中添加源文件的首选方法是在 COMPONENT_SRCS 中手动列出它们：

```bash
idf_component_register(SRCS library/a.c library/b.c platform/platform.c ...
```

Espressif Systems 1752 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Chapter 4. API 指南

这是在 CMake 中手动列出源文件的最佳实践。然而，当有许多源文件需要添加到构建中时，这种方法就会很不方便。ESP-IDF 构建系统因此提供了另一种替代方法，即使用 SRC_DIRS 来指定源文件:

```
idf_component_register(SRC_DIRS library platform ...
```

后台会使用通配符在指定的目录中查找源文件。请注意，在使用这种方法的时候，如果组件中添加了一个新的源文件，CMake 并不知道重新运行配置，最终该文件也没有被加入构建中。

如果是自己添加的源文件，这种折衷还是可以接受的，因为用户可以触发一次干净的构建，或者运行 idf.py reconfigure 来手动重启 CMake。但是，如果你需要与其他使用 Git 等版本控制工具的开发人员共享项目时，问题就会变得更加复杂，因为开发人员有可能会拉取新的版本。

ESP-IDF 中的组件使用了第三方的 Git CMake 集成模块(/tools/cmake/third_party/GetGitRevisionDescription.cmake)，任何时候源码仓库的提交记录发生了改变，该模块就会自动重新运行 CMake，即只要拉取了新的 ESP-IDF 版本，CMake 就会重新运行。

对于不属于 ESP-IDF 的项目组件，有以下几个选项供参考:

- 如果项目文件保存在 Git 中，ESP-IDF 会自动跟踪 Git 修订版本，并在它发生变化时重新运行 CMake。
- 如果一些组件保存在第三方 Git 仓库中（不在项目仓库或 ESP-IDF 仓库），则可以在组件 CMakeLists 文件中调用 git_describe 函数，以便在 Git 修订版本发生变化时自动重启 CMake。
- 如果没有使用 Git，请记住在源文件发生变化时手动运行 idf.py reconfigure。
- 使用 idf_component_register 的 SRCS 参数来列出项目组件中的所有源文件则可以完全避免这一问题。

具体选择哪一种方式，就要取决于项目本身，以及项目用户。

### 4.5.20 构建系统的元数据

为了将 ESP-IDF 集成到 IDE 或者其它构建系统中，CMake 在构建的过程中会在 build/ 目录下生成大量元数据文件。运行 cmake 或 idf.py reconfigure（或任何其它 idf.py 构建命令），可以重新生成这些元数据文件。

- compile_commands.json 是标准格式的 JSON 文件，它描述了在项目中参与编译的每个源文件。
- project_description.json 包含有关 ESP-IDF 项目、已配置路径等的一些常规信息。
- flasher_args.json 包含 esptool.py 工具用于烧录项目二进制文件的参数，此外还有 flash_*_args 文件，可直接与 esptool.py 一起使用。更多详细信息请参阅 Flash 参数。
- CMakeCache.txt 是 CMake 的缓存文件，包含 CMake 进程、工具链等其它信息。
- config/sdkconfig.json 包含 JSON 格式的项目配置结果。
- config/kconfig_menus.json 是在 menuconfig 中显示菜单的 JSON 格式版本，用于外部 IDE 的 UI。

### JSON 配置服务器

confserver.py 工具可以帮助 IDE 轻松地与配置系统的逻辑进行集成，它运行在后台，通过使用 stdin 和 stdout 读写 JSON 文件的方式与构造函数交互。

您可以通过 idf.py confserver 或 ninja confserver 从项目中运行 confserver.py，也可以使用不同的构建生成器来触发类似的目标。

有关 confserver.py 的更多信息，请参阅 tools/kconfig_new/README.md

### 4.5.21 构建系统内部

**CMake**

ESP-IDF 构建系统的列表文件位于 /tools/cmake 中。实现构建系统核心功能的模块如下：

```
ESP-IDF
```
Chapter 4. API

• build.cmake - 构建相关命令，即构建初始化、检素/设置构建属性、构建处理。
• component.cmake - 组件相关命令，如添加组件、检素/设置组件属性、注册组件。
• kconfig.cmake - 从 Kconfig 文件中生成配置文件（sdkconfig、sdkconfig.h、sdkconfig.cmake 等）。
• ldgen.cmake - 从链接器片段生成最终链接器脚本。
• target.cmake - 设置构建目标和工具链文件。
• utilities.cmake - 其它帮助命令。

除了这些文件，还有两个重要的 CMake 脚本在 /tools/cmake 中：
• idf.cmake - 设置构建参数并导入上面列出的核心模块。之所以包括在 CMake 项目中，是为了方便访问 ESP-IDF 构建系统功能。
• project.cmake - 导入 idf.cmake，并提供了一个自定义的 "project()" 命令，该命令负责处理建立可执行文件时所有的繁重工作。包含在标准 ESP-IDF 项目的顶层 CMakeLists.txt 中。

/tools/cmake 中的其它文件都是构建过程中的支持性文件或第三方脚本。

构建过程

本节介绍了标准的 ESP-IDF 应用构建过程。构建过程可以大致分为四个阶段：

初始化

该阶段为构建设置必要的参数。

• 在将 idf.cmake 导入 project.cmake 后，将执行以下步骤：
  - 在环境变量中设置 IDF_PATH 或从顶层 CMakeLists.txt 中包含的 project.cmake 路径推断相对路径。
  - 将 /tools/cmake 添加到 CMAKE_MODULE_PATH 中，并导入核心模块和各种辅助/第三方脚本。
  - 设置构建工具/可执行文件，如默认的 Python 解释器。
  - 获取 ESP-IDF git 修订版，并存储为 IDF_VER。
  - 设置全局构建参数，即编译选项、编译定义、包括所有组件的 include 目录。
  - 将 components 中的组件添加到构建中。

• 自定义 project() 命令的初始部分执行以下步骤：
  - 在环境变量或 CMake 缓存中设置 IDF_TARGET 以及设置相应要使用的 “CMAKE_TOOLCHAIN_FILE”。
  - 添加 EXTRA_COMPONENTS_DIRS 中的组件至构建中
  - 从 COMPONENTS/EXCLUDE_COMPONENTS、SDKCONFIG、SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS 等变量中为调用命令 idf_build_process() 准备参数。

调用 idf_build_process() 命令标志着这个阶段的结束。

枚举

这个阶段会建立一个需要在构建过程中处理的组件列表，该阶段在 idf_build_process() 的前半部分进行。
处理

该阶段处理构建中的组件，是 idf_build_process() 的后半部分。

- 从 sdkconfig 文件中加载项目配置，并生成 sdkconfig.cmake 和 sdkconfig.h 头文件。这两个文件分别定义了可以从构建脚本和 C/C++ 源文件/头文件中访问的配置变量/宏。
- 导入各组件的 project_include.cmake。
- 将每个组件添加为一个子目录，处理其 CMakeLists.txt。组件 CMakeLists.txt 调用注册命令 idf_component_register 添加源文件、导入目录、创建组件库、链接依赖关系等。

完成

该阶段是 idf_build_process() 剩余的步骤。

- 创建可执行文件并将其链接到组件库中。
- 生成 project_description.json 等项目元数据文件并且显示所建项目等相关信息。

请参考 /tools/cmake/project.cmake 获取更多信息。

4.5.22 从 ESP-IDF GNU Make 构建系统迁移到 CMake 构建系统

ESP-IDF CMake 构建系统与旧版的 GNU Make 构建系统在某些方面非常相似，开发者都需要提供 include 目录、源文件等。然而，有一个语法上的区别：即对于 ESP-IDF CMake 构建系统，开发者需要将这些作为参数传递给注册命令 idf_component_register。

CMake 中不可用的功能

有些功能已从 CMake 构建系统中移除，或者已经发生很大改变。GNU Make 构建系统中的以下变量已从 CMake 构建系统中删除：

- COMPONENT_BUILD_DIR: 由 CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR 替代。
- COMPONENT_LIBRARY: 默认为 $(COMPONENT_NAME).a 但是库名可以被组件覆盖。在 CMake 构建系统中，组件库名称不能再被组件覆盖。
- CC, LD, AR, OBJCOPY: gcc xtensa 交叉工具链中每个工具的完整路径。CMake 使用 CMAKE_C_COMPILER, CMAKE_C_LINK_EXECUTABLE 和 CMAKE_OBJCOPY 进行替代。完整列表请参阅 CMake 语言变量。
- HOSTCC, HOSTLD, HOSTAR: 宿主机本地工具链中每个工具的全名。CMake 系统不再提供此变量，外部项目需要手动检测所需的宿主机工具链。
- COMPONENT_ADD_LDFLAGS: 用于覆盖链接标志。CMake 中使用 target_link_libraries 命令替代。
- COMPONENT_ADD_LINKER_DEPS: 链接过程依赖的文件列表。target_link_libraries 通常会自动推断这些依赖。对于链接脚本，可以使用自定义的 CMake 函数 target_linker_scripts。
- COMPONENT_SUBMODULES: 不再使用。CMake 会自动枚举 ESP-IDF 仓库中所有的子模块。
- COMPONENT_EXTRA_INCLUDES: 曾是 COMPONENT_PRIV_INCLUDEDIRS 变量的替代版本，仅支持绝对路径。CMake 系统中统一使用 COMPONENT_PRIV_INCLUDEDIRS（可以是相对路径，也可以是绝对路径）。
- COMPONENT_OBJS: 以前，可以以目标文件列表的方式指定组件源，现在，可以通过 COMPONENT_SRCS 以源文件列表的形式指定组件源。
- COMPONENT_OBJEXCLUDE: 已被 COMPONENT_SRCEXCLUDE 替换。用于指定源文件（绝对路径或组件目录的相对路径）。
- COMPONENT_EXTRA_CLEAN: 已被 ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES 属性取代，注意，CMake 对此功能有部分限制。
4.6 Deep Sleep Wake Stubs

ESP32 supports running a “deep sleep wake stub” when coming out of deep sleep. This function runs immediately as soon as the chip wakes up - before any normal initialisation, bootloader, or ESP-IDF code has run. After the wake stub runs, the SoC can go back to sleep or continue to start ESP-IDF normally.

Deep sleep wake stub code is loaded into “RTC Fast Memory” and any data which it uses must also be loaded into RTC memory. RTC memory regions hold their contents during deep sleep.

4.6.1 Rules for Wake Stubs

Wake stub code must be carefully written:

- As the SoC has freshly woken from sleep, most of the peripherals are in reset states. The SPI flash is unmapped.
- The wake stub code can only call functions implemented in ROM or loaded into RTC Fast Memory (see below.)
- The wake stub code can only access data loaded in RTC memory. All other RAM will be uninitialised and have random contents. The wake stub can use other RAM for temporary storage, but the contents will be overwritten when the SoC goes back to sleep or starts ESP-IDF.
- RTC memory must include any read-only data (.rodata) used by the stub.
- Data in RTC memory is initialised whenever the SoC restarts, except when waking from deep sleep. When waking from deep sleep, the values which were present before going to sleep are kept.
- Wake stub code is a part of the main esp-idf app. During normal running of esp-idf, functions can call the wake stub functions or access RTC memory. It is as if these were regular parts of the app.

4.6.2 Implementing A Stub

The wake stub in esp-idf is called esp_wake_deep_sleep(). This function runs whenever the SoC wakes from deep sleep. There is a default version of this function provided in esp-idf, but the default function is weak-linked so if your app contains a function named esp_wake_deep_sleep() then this will override the default.
If supplying a custom wake stub, the first thing it does should be to call `esp_default_wake_deep_sleep()`. It is not necessary to implement `esp_wake_deep_sleep()` in your app in order to use deep sleep. It is only necessary if you want to have special behaviour immediately on wake.

If you want to swap between different deep sleep stubs at runtime, it is also possible to do this by calling the `esp_set_deep_sleep_wake_stub()` function. This is not necessary if you only use the default `esp_wake_deep_sleep()` function.

All of these functions are declared in the `esp_sleep.h` header under components/esp32.

### 4.6.3 Loading Code Into RTC Memory

Wake stub code must be resident in RTC Fast Memory. This can be done in one of two ways. The first way is to use the `RTC_IRAM_ATTR` attribute to place a function into RTC memory:

```c
void RTC_IRAM_ATTR esp_wake_deep_sleep(void) {
    esp_default_wake_deep_sleep();
    // Add additional functionality here
}
```

The second way is to place the function into any source file whose name starts with `rtc_wake_stub`. File names `rtc_wake_stub*` have their contents automatically put into RTC memory by the linker.

The first way is simpler for very short and simple code, or for source files where you want to mix "normal" and "RTC" code. The second way is simpler when you want to write longer pieces of code for RTC memory.

### 4.6.4 Loading Data Into RTC Memory

Data used by stub code must be resident in RTC memory.

The data can be placed in RTC Fast memory or in RTC Slow memory which is also used by the ULP.

Specifying this data can be done in one of two ways:

The first way is to use the `RTC_DATA_ATTR` and `RTC_RODATA_ATTR` to specify any data (writeable or read-only, respectively) which should be loaded into RTC memory:

```c
RTC_DATA_ATTR int wake_count;

void RTC_IRAM_ATTR esp_wake_deep_sleep(void) {
    esp_default_wake_deep_sleep();
    static RTC_RODATA_ATTR const char fmt_str[] = "Wake count %d\n";
    esp_rom_printf(fmt_str, wake_count);
}
```

The RTC memory area where this data will be placed can be configured via menuconfig option named `CONFIG_ESP32_RTCDATA_IN_FAST_MEM`. This option allows to keep slow memory area for ULP programs and once it is enabled the data marked with `RTC_DATA_ATTR` and `RTC_RODATA_ATTR` are placed in the RTC fast memory segment otherwise it goes to RTC slow memory (default option). This option depends on the `CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE` because RTC fast memory can be accessed only by PRO_CPU.

The attributes `RTC_FAST_ATTR` and `RTC_SLOW_ATTR` can be used to specify data that will be force placed into RTC_FAST and RTC_SLOW memory respectively. Any access to data marked with `RTC_FAST_ATTR` is allowed by PRO_CPU only and it is responsibility of user to make sure about it.

Unfortunately, any string constants used in this way must be declared as arrays and marked with `RTC_RODATA_ATTR`, as shown in the example above.

The second way is to place the data into any source file whose name starts with `rtc_wake_stub`.

For example, the equivalent example in `rtc_wake_stub_counter.c`:
int wake_count;

void RTC_IRAM_ATTR esp_wake_deep_sleep(void) {
    esp_default_wake_deep_sleep();
    esp_rom_printf("Wake count %d\n", wake_count);
}

The second way is a better option if you need to use strings, or write other more complex code.

To reduce wake-up time use the CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP Kconfig option, see more information in Fast boot from Deep Sleep.

4.7 预处理

4.7.1 概述

在应用程序开发中，及时发现并处理在运行时期的错误，对于保证应用程序的健壮性非常重要。常见的运行时错误有如下几种:

- 可恢复的错误:
  - 通过函数的返回值（错误码）表示的错误
  - 使用 throw 关键字抛出的 C++ 异常
- 不可恢复（严重）的错误:
  - 断言失败（使用 assert 宏或者其它类似方法）或者直接调用 abort() 函数造成的错误
  - CPU 异常：访问受保护的内存区域、非法指令等
  - 系统级检查：看门狗超时、缓存访问错误、堆栈溢出、堆栈粉碎、堆栈损坏等

本文将介绍 ESP-IDF 中针对可恢复错误的错误处理机制，并提供一些常见错误的处理模式。

关于如何处理不可恢复的错误，请查阅 不可恢复错误。

4.7.2 错误码

ESP-IDF 中大多数函数会返回 esp_err_t 类型的错误码，esp_err_t 实质上是带符号的整型，ESP_OK 代表成功（没有错误），具体值定义为 0。

在 ESP-IDF 中，许多头文件都会使用预处理器，定义可能出现的错误代码。这些错误代码通常均以 ESP_ERR_ 前缀开头，一些常见错误（比如内存不足、超时、无效参数等）的错误代码则已经在 esp_err.h 文件中定义好了。此外，ESP-IDF 中的各种组件 (component) 也都可以针对具体情况，自行定义更多错误代码。

完整错误代码列表，请见 错误代码参考 中查看完整的错误列表。

4.7.3 错误码到错误消息

错误码并不直观，因此 ESP-IDF 还可以使用 esp_err_to_name() 或者 esp_err_to_name_r() 函数，将错误代码转换为具体的错误消息。例如，我们可以调用 esp_err_to_name() 函数传递错误代码 0x101，可以得到返回字符串 “ESP_ERR_NO_MEM”。这样一来，我们可以在日志中输出更加直观的错误消息，而不是简单的错误码，从而帮助研究人员更快理解发生了何种错误。

此外，如果出现找不到匹配的 ESP_ERR_ 值的情况，函数 esp_err_to_name_r() 则会尝试将错误码作为一种 标准 POSIX 错误码 进行解释。具体过程为：POSIX 错误代码（例如 ENOENT, ENOMEM）定义在errno.h 文件中，可以通过 errno 变量获得。进而调用 strerror_r 函数实现。在 ESP-IDF 中，errno 是一个基于进程的局部变量，即每个 FreeRTOS 任务都有自己的 errno 副本，通过函数修改 errno 也只会作用于当前任务中的 errno 变量值。

该功能（即在无法匹配 ESP_ERR_ 值时，尝试用标准 POSIX 解释错误码）默认启用。用户也可以禁用该功能，从而减小应用程序的二进制文件大小。详情可见 CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP。注意，
该功能对禁用并不影响 esp_err_to_name() 和 esp_err_to_name_r() 函数的定义，用户仍可调用这两个函数处理错误码。在这种情况下，esp_err_to_name() 函数在遇到无法匹配错误码的情况会返回 UNKNOWN ERROR，而 esp_err_to_name_r() 函数会返回 Unknown error 0xXXXX(YYYYY)，其中 0xXXXX 和 YYYY 分别代表错误代码的十六进制和十进制表示。

4.7.4 ESP_ERROR_CHECK 宏

宏 ESP_ERROR_CHECK() 的功能和 assert 类似，不同之处在于：这个宏会检查 esp_err_t 的值，而非判断 bool 条件。如果传给 ESP_ERROR_CHECK() 的参数不等于 ESP_OK，则会在控制台上打印错误消息，然后调用 abort() 函数。

错误消息通常如下所示:

```
ESP_ERROR_CHECK failed: esp_err 0x107 (ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT) at 0x400d1fdf
```

- 第一行打印错误代码的十六进制表示，及该错误在源代码中的标识符。这个标识符取决于 CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP 选项的设定。最后，第一行还会打印程序中该错误发生的具体位置。
- 下面几行显示了程序中调用 ESP_ERROR_CHECK() 宏的具体位置，以及传递给该宏的参数。
- 最后一行打印错误结果。对于所有不可恢复错误，这里在应急处理程序中打印的内容都是一样的。更多有关回溯结果的详细信息，请参阅不可恢复错误。

注解：如果使用 IDF monitor，则最后一行回溯结果中的地址将会被替换为相应的文件名和行号。

4.7.5 ESP_ERROR_CHECK WITHOUT_ABORT 宏

宏 ESP_ERROR_CHECK WITHOUT_ABORT() 的功能和 ESP_ERROR_CHECK 类似，不同之处在于它不会调用 abort()。

4.7.6 ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR 宏

宏 ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR() 用于错误码检查，如果错误码不等于 ESP_OK，该宏会打印错误信息，并使原函数立刻返回。

4.7.7 ESP_GOTO_ON_ERROR 宏

宏 ESP_GOTO_ON_ERROR() 用于错误码检查，如果错误码不等于 ESP_OK，该宏会打印错误信息，并使局部变量 ret 赋值为该错误码，并使原函数跳转至给定的 goto_tag。

4.7.8 ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE 宏

宏 ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE() 用于条件检查，如果给定条件不等于 true，该宏会打印错误信息，并使原函数立刻返回，返回值为给定的 err_code。
4.7.9 **ESP_GOTO_ON_FALSE** 宏

宏 ESP_GOTO_ON_FALSE() 用于条件检查。如果给定条件不等于 true，该宏会打印错误信息，将局部变量 ret 赋值为给定的 err_code，并使原函数跳转至给定的 goto_tag。

### 4.7.10 CHECK 宏使用示例

示例:

```c
static const char* TAG = "Test";

esp_err_t test_func(void)
{
    esp_err_t ret = ESP_OK;

    ESP_ERROR_CHECK(x); // err message
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK WITHOUT_ABORT(x); // err message
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK_WITHOUT_ABORT(x); // err message
    ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR(x, TAG, "fail reason 1"); // err message
    ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE(a, "fail reason 2"); // err message
    ESP_GOTO_ON_ERROR(x, err, TAG, "fail reason 3"); // err message
    ESP_GOTO_ON_FALSE(a, "fail reason 4"); // err message
}
```

**注解**：如果 Kconfig 中的 CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_CHECKS_SILENT 选项被打开，CHECK 宏将不会打印错误信息，其他功能不变。

ESP_RETURN_xx 和 ESP_GOTO_xx 宏不可以在中断服务程序里被调用。如需要在中断中使用类似功能，请使用 xx_ISR 宏，如 ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR_ISR 等。

### 4.7.11 错误处理模式

1. 尝试恢复。根据具体情况不同，我们具体可以:
   - 在一段时间后，重新调用该函数;
   - 尝试删除该驱动，然后重新进行“初始化”;
   - 采用其他带外机制，修改导致错误发生的条件（例如，对一直没有响应的外设进行复位等）。

示例:

```c
esp_err_t err;
do{
    err = sdio_slave_send_queue(addr, len, arg, timeout);
    // 如果发送队列已满就不断重试
} while (err != ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT);
if (err != ESP_OK) {
    // 处理其他错误
}
```
2. 将错误传递回调用程序。在某些中间件组件中，采用此类处理模式代表函数必须以相同的错误码退出，这样才能确保所有分配的资源都能得到释放。
示例:

```c
sdmmc_card_t* card = calloc(1, sizeof(sdmmc_card_t));
if (card == NULL) {
    return ESP_ERR_NO_MEM;
}
esp_err_t err = sdmmc_card_init(host, &card);
if (err != ESP_OK) {
    // 释放内存
    free(card);
    // 将错误码传递给上层（例如通知用户）
    // 或者应用程序可以自定义错误代码并返回
    return err;
}
```

3. 转为不可恢复错误，比如使用 ESP_ERROR_CHECK，详情请见 `ESP_ERROR_CHECK` 章节。
对于中间件组件而言，通常并不希望在发生错误时中断应用程序。不过，有时在应用程序级别，这种做法是可以接受的。在 ESP-IDF 的示例代码中，很多都会使用 ESP_ERROR_CHECK 来处理各种 API 引发的错误，虽然这不是应用程序的最佳做法，但可以让示例代码看起来更加简洁。
示例:

```c
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(spi_bus_initialize(host, bus_config, dma_chan));
```

### 4.7.12 C++ 异常

默认情况下，ESP-IDF 会禁用对 C++ 异常的支持，但是可以通过 `CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS` 选项启用。

通常情况下，启用异常处理会增加应用程序的二进制文件大小几 kB。此外，启用该功能时还应为异常事故池预留一定内存。当应用程序无法从堆中分配异常对象时，就可以使用该池中的内存。该内存池的大小可以通过 `CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE` 来设定。

如果 C++ 程序抛出了异常，但是程序中并没有 catch 代码块来捕获该异常，那么程序的运行就会被 `abort` 函数中止，然后打印回溯信息。有关回溯的更多信息，请参阅不可恢复错误。

### 4.8 ESP-BLE-MESH

#### 4.8.1 概述

蓝牙 mesh 网络实现了无线设备的“多对多”通讯，其可用于建立包含大量设备的网络。

设备能将数据中继至不在初始设备无线电覆盖范围内的其他设备。这样，mesh 网络就能够覆盖非常大的物理区域，并且囊括大量设备。Mesh 网络非常适合于楼宇自动化、传感器网络和其他物联网解决方案，这些情景下数以十计、百计、千计的设备需要与其他设备进行安全可靠的通信。

蓝牙 mesh 并非无线通信技术，而是一种网络技术。该技术基于一种无线通讯协议栈，即低功耗蓝牙。

ESP-BLE-MESH 基于 Zephyr，蓝牙 Mesh 协议栈的顶端，其实现支持设备配网和节点控制，同时也实现了代理、中继、低功耗和朋友等节点功能。

有关 ESP-BLE-MESH 架构实现的信息，请参见 `ESP-BLE-MESH 架构`；有关各自 API 的信息，请参见 `ESP-BLE-MESH API Reference`。

ESP-BLE-MESH 的实现和认证基于最新的 Mesh Profile v1.0.1。有关 ESP-BLE-MESH 认证的细节，请参考 [此处](#)。
4.8.2 ESP-BLE-MESH 快速入门

该章旨在帮助您根据 ESP32 开发板搭建 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络。

我们将会展示如何搭建并运行一个包含 3 个节点的小型 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络，其中包含设备配网、节点配置，以及向特定节点上的 Generic OnOff Server Model 发送开关灯命令。

如果您是第一次接触 ESP-IDF，请参阅 es-idf 快速入门来设置开发环境，编译、烧写和运行示例应用程序。

硬件及软件准备

硬件:

- 3 块 ESP32 开发板，参见 options。
- 连接开发板的 USB 线。
- ESP-IDF 开发环境。
- 运行 Android 或 iOS 的手机或平板。

软件:

- 下载至 ESP32 开发板的示例应用 bluetooth/esp_ble_mesh/ble_mesh_node。
- 手机 App: nRF Mesh Android 或 iOS 版本。除 nRF Mesh 的 App，以下 App 也支持 ESP-BLE-MESH:
  - EspBleMesh Android App
  - Silicon Labs Android 或 iOS App

安装

以下详细步骤可指导您完成安装过程。

步骤 1. 检查硬件 ESP32-DevKitC 和 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板均支持 ESP-BLE-MESH。您可以通过 menuconfig:idf.py menuconfig>Example Configuration>Board selection for ESP-BLE-MESH 选择特定的开发板。

注解：如果您打算使用 ESP32-DevKitC 开发板，请将 RGB 灯焊接至 GPIO 管脚 25、26 和 27。

步骤 2. 配置软件 进入 bluetooth/esp_ble_mesh/ble_mesh_node 示例文件夹，运行 idf.py menuconfig 选择所使用的开发板，然后运行 idf.py build 编译示例。

步骤 3. 下载应用

bluetooth/esp_ble_mesh/ble_mesh_node 示例编译成功后，用户可以运行 idf.py flash 将编译生成的二进制文件下载至 3 块开发板中。

当开发板上电后，RGB 灯会变为绿色。

步骤 4. 设备配网 在该章节中，我们将使用 nRF Mesh Android App 演示如何配网设备。用户也可以从 App Store 下载其 iOS 版本。
4.1 扫描 (scanner) 扫描 (Scanner) 是 nRF Mesh App 搜索蓝牙通信范围内未配网设备的功能。打开 App，点击底部的扫描按钮 Scanner。App 就会开始扫描设备，很快，我们便可在屏幕上看到 3 个未配网设备。

4.2 识别 用户可以选择任何一个未配网设备，此时 App 会尝试和该设备建立连接。连接成功（有时可能需要尝试多次），且发现相应的 ESP-BLE-MESH GATT 服务后，用户可以在屏幕上看到识别按钮 IDENTIFY。IDENTIFY 操作告诉用户哪个设备将被配网。

注解：IDENTIFY 需要设备侧的支持，然后才能用来识别当前正在配网的设备。当前如果点击识别按钮 IDENTIFY，除了串口输出的 log，在当前的 example 中设备侧不会有其他现象。

点击识别按钮 IDENTIFY 后，用户可以看到配网按钮 PROVISION。

4.3 配网 点击配网按钮 PROVISION。App 会开始配网设备。当设备配网成功后，开发板上的 RGB 灯会熄灭。此时 App 会执行以下几个步骤:

1. 和该节点（设备配网后成为节点）断开连接
2. 尝试和该节点重新建立连接
3. 连接成功并且发现了相应的 ESP-BLE-MESH GATT 服务
4. 获取节点的 Composition Data 并且给该节点添加 AppKey

当以上所有的步骤完成后，节点初始化配置完成。此时点击 OK，用户可以看到节点的单播地址分配成功，并且其 Composition Data 也被成功解析。

有时在上述步骤 2 中，App 可能与节点连接失败。这种情况下，用户点击 OK 后可以看到，节点只有单播地址被成功分配，Composition data 并没有被成功获取。此时用户需要点击右上角的连接按钮 CONNECT，屏幕上会显示原先配网的节点，用户需要选择该节点并重新建立连接。

连接成功后，App 会显示获取 Composition Data 以及添加 AppKey 的按钮。

图 4: ESP-BLE-MESH 设备上电
Chapter 4. API

图 5: nRF Mesh - 扫描

图 6: nRF Mesh - 识别 - 配网
Chapter 4. API

![Image of API configuration]

**Configuration Complete**
Mesh node has been successfully configured.

- Configuration Complete
- Sending provisioning data
- Provisioning complete received
- Sending composition data get
- Composition data status received
- Receiving block acknowledgements
- App key status received

**Initial Configuration Failed**
Initial configuration of the node has failed. Continue with the following steps to configure the node.

1. Connect to the network.
2. Select the configuration option of the node.
3. Click get composition data.
4. Add app key.

![Image of API configuration error]

**图 7: nRF Mesh - 配置完成**

**图 8: nRF Mesh - 初始配置失败**
图 9: nRF Mesh - 重连 - 初始配置

如果该设备是 App 配网的第二个或第三个节点，此时点击连接按钮 CONNECT 后，用户可以在屏幕上看到 2 个或 3 个节点。这种情况下，用户可以选择其中一个节点建立连接，连接成功后可以返回至主界面选择需要配置的节点。

这里给出了一个 3 个节点的示例。

- 左侧图片表示第三个设备成功配网，但是 App 没有和其成功建立连接。当 App 尝试去重新连接第三个节点时，界面上会显示 3 个节点。
- 右侧图片表示节点成功建立连接后，App 显示这 3 个节点的信息。用户可以看到 App 已经获取了第一个和第二个节点的 Composition Data，但是对于第三个节点，只有单播地址被成功分配而节点的 Composition Data 未知。

### 4.4 配置

当成功配网和初始化配置完成后，用户可以配置节点的其余信息，例如将 AppKey 绑定至每个元素 (element) 的每个模型 (model) 中，设置模型的发布信息等。

下图展示了如何将 AppKey 绑定至 Primary Element 中的 Generic OnOff Server Model 上。

**注释**：用户不需要将 AppKey 绑定至 Configuration Server Model，因为该模型使用 DevKey 在 Upper Transport Layer 中对消息进行加密。

#### Step 5. 运行网络

当 3 个元素中的 Generic OnOff Server Models 均成功绑定 AppKey 后，用户可以使用 App 开关 RBG 灯。

在 bluetooth/esp_ble_mesh/ble_mesh_node 示例中，第一个 Generic OnOff Server Model 用来控制红色，第二个用来控制绿色，同时第三个用来控制蓝色。

下图展示了打开了不同色灯的开发板。

**注释**：对于 nRF Mesh iOS App [version 1.0.4]，当节点包含超过一个元素时，App 表现不正确。如果用户尝试打开或关闭第 2 个或第 3 个 Generic OnOff Server Model，App 会将相应的消息发送至第 1 个...
图 10: nRF Mesh - 重连 - 3 个节点

图 11: nRF Mesh - Model Bind AppKey
图 12: nRF Mesh - 通用开关控制

图 13: 3 个上电的 ESP-BLE-MESH 节点
4.8.3 ESP-BLE-MESH 示例

- **ESP-BLE-MESH 节点** - 展示了将 ESP-BLE-MESH 作为拥有 Configuration Server model 和 Generic OnOff Server model 的节点设备的用法。然后，ESP-BLE-MESH Provisioner 可以配网设备，控制显示开关/关状态的 RGB 灯，示例请见 example code 。
- **ESP-BLE-MESH 客户端模型** - 展示了 Generic OnOff Client model 如何在节点内工作。节点拥有 Configuration Server model、Generic OnOff Server model 和 Generic OnOff Client model，示例请见 example code 。
- **ESP-BLE-MESH Provisioner** - 展示了设备如何充当 ESP-BLE-MESH Provisioner 以配网设备。Provisioner 拥有 Configuration Server model，Configuration Client model 和 Generic OnOff Client model，示例请见 example code 。
- **ESP-BLE-MESH 快速配网 - Client 和 Server** - 该示例用于演示快速配网。配网 100 个设备费时不超过 60 秒，示例请见：example client code 和 example server code 。
- **Wi-Fi 和 ESP-BLE-MESH 共存** - 该示例用于演示 Wi-Fi 和 ESP-BLE-MESH 共存的功能。简而言之，用户可在运行 ESP-BLE-MESH 时使用 Wi-Fi，示例请见 example code 。
- **ESP-BLE-MESH 节点控制台 - Provisioner and Node** 可以扫描、验证节点，节点可以回复 Provisioner 的获取/设置消息，示例请见：example code 。

4.8.4 ESP-BLE-MESH 演示视频

- Provisioning of ESP-BLE-MESH nodes using Smartphone App
- Espressif Fast Provisioning using ESP-BLE-MESH App
- Espressif ESP-BLE-MESH and Wi-Fi Coexistence

4.8.5 ESP-BLE-MESH 常见问题手册

- 1. Provisioner 开发
- 2. 节点开发
- 3. ESP-BLE-MESH 和 Wi-Fi 共存
- 4. 快速配网
- 5. Log 帮助
- 6. 示例帮助
- 7. 其他

4.8.6 相关文档

ESP-BLE-MESH Feature List

Supported Features

**Mesh Core**

- **Provisioning: Node Role**
  - PB-ADV and PB-GATT
  - OOB Authentication
- **Provisioning: Provisioner Role**
  - PB-ADV and PB-GATT
  - OOB Authentication
- **Networking**
  - Relay
– Segmentation and Reassembly
– Key Refresh Procedure
– IV Update Procedure
– Friend
– Low Power
– Proxy Server
– Proxy Client

• **Multiple Client Models Run Simultaneously**
  – Support multiple client models send packets to different nodes simultaneously
  – No blocking between client model and server model

• **NVS Storing**
  – Store provisioning and configuration information of ESP-BLE-MESH Node

**Mesh Models**

• **Foundation models**
  – Configuration Server model
  – Configuration Client model
  – Health Server model
  – Health Client model

• **Generic client models**
  – Generic OnOff Client
  – Generic Level Client
  – Generic Default Transition Time Client
  – Generic Power OnOff Client
  – Generic Power Level Client
  – Generic Battery Client
  – Generic Location Client
  – Generic Property Client

• **Sensor client models**
  – Sensor Client

• **Time and Scenes client models**
  – Time Client
  – Scene Client
  – Scheduler Client

• **Lighting client models**
  – Light Lightness Client
  – Light CTL Client
  – Light HSL Client
  – Light xyL Client
  – Light LC Client

• **Generic server models**
  – Generic OnOff Server
  – Generic Level Server
  – Generic Default Transition Time Server
  – Generic Power OnOff Server
  – Generic Power OnOff Setup Server
  – Generic Power Level Server
  – Generic Power Level Setup Server
  – Generic Battery Server
  – Generic Location Server
  – Generic Location Setup Server
  – Generic User Property Server
  – Generic Admin Property Server
  – Generic Manufacturer Property Server
  – Generic Client Property Server

• **Sensor server models**
  – Sensor Server
Chapter 4. API

- Sensor Setup Server

**Time and Scenes server models**
- Time Server
- Time Setup Server
- Scene Server
- Scene Setup Server
- Scheduler Server
- Scheduler Setup Server

**Lighting server models**
- Light Lightness Server
- Light Lightness Setup Server
- Light CTL Server
- Light CTL Temperature Server
- Light HSL Server
- Light HSL Hue Server
- Light HSL Saturation Server
- Light HSL Setup Server
- Light xyl Server
- Light xyl Setup Server
- Light LC Server
- Light LC Setup Server

**Mesh Applications**

- **ESP-BLE-MESH Node**
  - Tutorial
  - Example
- **ESP-BLE-MESH Provisioner**
  - Tutorial
  - Example
- **ESP-BLE-MESH Fast Provisioning**
  - Fast Provisioning Client Model Tutorial
  - Fast Provisioning Server Model Tutorial
  - Example
  - Demo Video
- **ESP-BLE-MESH and Wi-Fi Coexistence**
  - Tutorial
  - Example
  - Demo Video
- **ESP-BLE-MESH Console Commands**
  - Example

**Future Release Features**

**Mesh Core**

- Provisioner NVS Storage

**Mesh Applications**

- Fast OTA
- Friendship
ESP-BLE-MESH 架构

本文档将介绍 ESP-BLE-MESH 的架构概览、架构实现和辅助程序。

- **ESP-BLE-MESH 架构概览**
  - 描述了 ESP-BLE-MESH 架构的 5 大部分及每个部分的功能。
- **ESP-BLE-MESH 架构实现**
  - 描述了 ESP-BLE-MESH 文件的基本功能、文件与 ESP-BLE-MESH 架构的对应关系及文件间调用的接口。
- **ESP-BLE-MESH 辅助程序**
  - 描述了 ESP-BLE-MESH 的辅助程序，比如 Mesh 网络管理，Mesh 特性等。

1. **ESP-BLE-MESH 架构概览** 目前，ESP-BLE-MESH 已经实现了 Mesh Profile 的大多数功能及 Mesh Model 规范中定义的所有 Client Model。未支持的功能/模型尚在开发中，会尽快提供。ESP-BLE-MESH 已通过 Bluetooth SIG 蓝牙技术联盟的 认证。

ESP-BLE-MESH 架构主要由以下 5 大部分组成：

- **Mesh 协议栈**
  - Mesh Networking 负责 BLE Mesh 设备的网络消息处理等。
  - Mesh Provisioning 负责 BLE Mesh 设备的启动配置流程。
  - Mesh Models 负责实现 SIG 定义的模型。
- **网络管理**
  - 负责实现网络管理程序，包括节点删除程序、网络索引 (IV Index) 恢复程序等。
- **特性**
  - 包括 BLE Mesh 特性，如低功耗特性、友好特性、中继特性等。
- **Mesh 承载层**
  - 包括 广播承载层和 GATT 承载层。承载层对于 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈至关重要，因为协议栈基于蓝牙低功耗技术构建而成，其必须利用承载层通过 BLE 广播通道和连接通道进行数据传输。
- **应用层**
  - 基于 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈和 Mesh Models。
  - 通过调用 API 和处理事件，Applications 实现了与 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈中的 Mesh Networking 和 Mesh Provisioning 的交互，也实现了与 Mesh Models 中一系列模型的交互。

1.1 Mesh 协议栈

1.1.1 Mesh Networking 协议栈架构中的 Mesh Networking 实现了如下功能:

- **Mesh 网络中节点间的通讯。**
- **Mesh 网络中消息的加解密。**
- **Mesh 网络资源的管理，如网络秘钥 (NetKey)、网络索引等。**
- **Mesh 网络消息的分包与重组。**
- **消息在不同模型间的模型映射。**
- **更多功能，请参见 ESP-BLE-MESH Feature List。**

Mesh Networking 功能的实现是基于层级结构的。每一层的功能如表 1.1 所示：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>层级</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>接入层</td>
<td>接入层定义应用程序数据的格式，还需对上层传输层对数据包的加密和解密进行定义和控制。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>上层传输层</td>
<td>上层传输层对接入层进出的应用数据进行加密、解密和认证，同时也处理被称为“传输控制消息”的特殊消息，这种消息包括了与“友谊”和心跳包相关的消息。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>底层传输层</td>
<td>底层传输层处理 PDU 的分包和重组。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>网络层</td>
<td>网络层定义网络消息的地址类型和格式，实现设备的中继功能。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.1.2 Mesh Provisioning 协议栈架构中的 Mesh Provisioning 实现了如下功能:
• 对未配网设备的配网。
• Mesh 网络资源的分配（单播地址、网络索引和网络秘钥）。
• 配网期间对 4 种验证方法的支持。
• 更多功能，请参见 ESP-BLE-MESH Feature List。

Mesh Provisioning 功能的实现是基于层级结构的。每一层的功能如表 1.2 所示:

表 2: 表 1.2 Mesh Provisioning 框架描述

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>层级</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning PDUs</td>
<td>通过配网协议处理不同层级的 Provisioning PDUs。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generic Provisioning PDU/Proxy PDU</td>
<td>使用 Generic Provisioning 层或代理协议层将 Provisioning PDU 传输到未配网的设备。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PB-ADV/PB-GATT</td>
<td>这些层级定义了 Provisioning PDUs 作为可分包和重组的消息进行传输的方式。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advertising/Provisioning Service</td>
<td>Provisioning bearer 定义了会话建立的方式，该方式用来将 Generic Provisioning 层的传输包传送到设备。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.1.3 Mesh Models 协议栈架构中的 Mesh Models 实现了如下功能:
• Configuration Client/Server Models
• Health Client/Server Models
• Generic Client/Server Models
• Sensor Client/Server Models
• Time and Scenes Client/Server Models
• Lighting Client/Server Models

每一层的功能如表 1.3 所示:

表 3: 表 1.3 Mesh Models 框架描述

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>层级</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>模型层</td>
<td>模型层实现用于标准化典型用户场景操作的模型，包括 Generic Client/Server Models，Sensor Client/Server Models，Time and Scenes Client/Server Models，Lighting Client/Server Models 和若干自定义模型。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>基础模型层</td>
<td>基础模型层实现与 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络配置、管理和自我诊断等相关的模型。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 Mesh 网络管理 网络管理实现了如下功能:
• 节点移除程序：用于将节点从网络中移除。
• 网络索引恢复程序：用于恢复节点的网络索引。
• 网络索引更新程序：用于更新节点的网络索引。
• 秘钥更新程序：用于更新节点的网络秘钥、应用秘钥 (AppKey) 等。
• 网络创建程序：用于创建 mesh 网络。
• NVS 存储器：用于存储节点的网络信息。

1.3 Mesh 特性 特性包括以下几项:
• 低功耗特性：用于降低节点的能耗。
• 好友特性：用于为低功耗节点存储消息。
• 中继特性：用于中继转发节点通过广播或转发层收到的网络 PDU。
• Proxy Server/Client 是代理协议中的两个节点角色，其使节点可以通过面向连接的承载层发送 Network PDUs、mesh beacons，代理配置消息和 Provisioning PDU。

1.4 Mesh 承载层 协议栈框架中的 承载层负责 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈和低功耗蓝牙核心协议间的数据传输。
承载层可视为是基于蓝牙低功耗核心协议的载体层，其实现了 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈数据的接收和传输。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>层级</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GATT</td>
<td>GATT 承载层使用代理协议通过 GATT 连接在两个设备之间发送和接收 Proxy PDUs。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>广播承载层</td>
<td>使用广播承载层时，必须使用低功耗蓝牙广播通道来发送 mesh 数据包，数据包中的 AD Type 需要设置为 mesh 数据包的类型。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

表 4: 表 1.3 Mesh 承载层描述

1.5 Mesh 应用层 协议栈框架中的应用层通过调用 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈提供的 API 并处理协议栈上报的事件来实现相应的功能，有一些常见应用，比如网关、照明等。

API / 事件之间的交互

- 应用层调用 API
  - 调用配网相关的 API 进行配网。
  - 调用模型相关的 API 发送消息。
  - 调用设备属性相关的 API 获取设备的本地信息。

- 应用层处理事件
  应用层的设计基于事件设计，事件将参数传给应用层。事件主要分为两大类。
  - 调用 API 完成的事件。
    * 比如接收消息的事件。
  - 协议栈自动上报给应用层的事件。
    * 协议栈自动上报的事件。
    * 模型主动上报的事件。

- 事件通过应用层注册的回调函数进行上报，同时回调函数中也会包含对事件的相应处理。

API / 事件与 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈的交互

- 用户使用的 API 主要调用 “Mesh Networking”、Mesh Provisioning 和 Mesh Models 提供的函数。
- API / 事件和协议栈的交互不会跨越协议栈的层级进行操作。比如 API 不会调用 Network Layer 相关的函数。

2. ESP-BLE-MESH 架构实现 ESP-BLE-MESH 架构的设计和实现是基于层级和模块的。具体而言，第 2.1 节（Mesh 网络的实现）、第 2.2 节（Mesh 配网实现）和第 2.3 节（Mesh 层级实现）基于层级思想，第 2.4 节（网络模型的实现）基于模块思想。

- 层级思想：基于层级思想，网络架构根据 Mesh Profile Specification 中指定的层级设计而成。每层都有独特的文件，文件包括该层的 API 等。具体设计如图 2.1 所示。
- 模块思想：每个文件实现一个独立的功能，供其它程序调用。

ESP-BLE-MESH 架构采用分层的方式进行设计，数据包的处理所经过的层级顺序是固定的，也就是数据包的处理过程会形成一个消息流。因此，我们可以从图 2.1 的协议栈接口图中看到消息流。

2.1 Mesh 协议栈的实现

2.1.1 Mesh Networking 实现 Mesh Networking 中的文件列表和每个文件实现的功能如表 2.1 所示：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>文件</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>access.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 接入层</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transport.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 底层/上层传输层</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>net.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 网络层</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.c</td>
<td>用于发送 BLE Mesh 广播包的任务，一个用于处理收到的广播包的回调以及用于分配 adv 缓冲区的 API</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.1.2 Mesh Provisioning 实现 由于 Node/Provisioner 共存的限制，Mesh Provisioning 的实现分为两大模块。实现 Node 启动配置的特定文件如表 2.2 所示:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>文件</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prov.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 节点配网 (PB-ADV &amp; PB-GATT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy_server.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 节点代理服务器相关功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beacon.c</td>
<td>用于处理 BLE Mesh Beacon 的 API</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

实现 Provisioner 配置功能的特定文件如表 2.3 所示:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>文件</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>provisioner_prov.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh Provisioner 配置入网 (PB-ADV &amp; PB-GATT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy_client.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 代理客户端相关功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provisioner_main.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh Provisioner 网络相关功能</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.1.3 Mesh Models 实现  Mesh Models 用于实现节点中所包含的模型的具体功能。服务器模型主要用于维护节点状态。客户端模型主要用于获取和修改节点状态。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>文件</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cfg cli.c</td>
<td>发送 Configuration Client 消息，接收相应应答消息</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cfg srv.c</td>
<td>接收 Configuration Client 消息，发送应答消息</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health cli.c</td>
<td>发送 Health Client 消息，接收相应应答消息</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health srv.c</td>
<td>接收 Health Client 消息，发送应答消息</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client common.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 模型相关操作</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generic client.c</td>
<td>发送 BLE Mesh Generic Client 消息，接收应答消息</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lighting client.c</td>
<td>发送 BLE Mesh Lighting Client 消息，接收应答消息</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensor client.c</td>
<td>发送 BLE Mesh Sensor Client 消息，接收应答消息</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time scene client.c</td>
<td>发送 BLE Mesh Time Scene Client 消息，接收应答消息</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 Mesh Bearers 实现 Mesh Bearers 在实现时充分考虑了可移植性。当 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈需要移植到其它平台时，用户只需要修改 mesh_bearer_adapter.c 就能移植成功。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>文件</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mesh_bearer_adapter.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 承载层适配文件。此文件提供用于接收和发送 BLE Mesh ADV 和 GATT 相关数据包的接口。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解: mesh_bearer_adapter.c 是对 Mesh 网络框架中 Advertising Bearer 和 GATT Bearer 的实现。

2.3 Mesh Applications 实现 我们提供了一系列用于客户开发的应用示例，用户可以基于 ESP-BLE-MESH 示例 开发产品。

3. ESP-BLE-MESH 辅助程序 辅助程序指的是 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈中可选的功能。辅助程序的设计通常通过 CONFIG_BLE_MESH 来实现代码的裁剪。
3.1 特性
- 低功耗
- 好友
- 中继
- 代理客户端/代理服务器

3.2 网络管理
- 节点移除程序
- 网络索引恢复程序
- 网络索引更新程序
- 秘钥更新程序
- 网络创建程序
- NVS 存储器

3.3 辅助程序实现
采用独立模块的设计主要考虑到两个因素:
- 该模块不具备分层结构的条件，其实现可以完全独立，不需要依赖其它模块。
- 模块中的函数会被反复使用到，因此最好设计成独立模块。独立模块如表 3.1 所示:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>文件</th>
<th>功能</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lpn.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 低功耗功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 好友功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>net.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 中继功能、网络创建、网络索引更新程序、网络索引恢复程序、秘钥更新程序相关功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy_server.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 代理服务器相关功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy_client.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 代理客户端相关功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settings.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh NVS 存储器功能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main.c</td>
<td>BLE Mesh 协议栈初始化，协议栈使能，节点移除相关功能</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ESP-BLE-MESH 常见问题手册

本文汇总了 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈开发的常见问题及解答，全文分为 7 个章节。
- 1. Provisioner 开发
- 2. 节点开发
- 3. ESP-BLE-MESH 和 Wi-Fi 共存
- 4. 快速配网
- 5. Log 帮助
- 6. 示例帮助
- 7. 其他

用户可以参考这些章节，快速找到问题的答案。该文档会根据各种渠道收集的反馈进行更新。

1. Provisioner 开发

通常而言，Provisioner 用于配网未配网设备并形成 mesh 网络。组网后，设备的角色变成节点。

1.1 未配网设备加入 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络的流程是什么？

设备通过 Provisioner 加入 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络分为两个阶段，配网阶段和配置阶段。
- 配网阶段：为设备分配单播地址，添加网络密钥 (NetKey) 等。通过配网，设备加入 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络，身份未配网设备变为节点。
配置阶段：为节点添加应用密钥(AppKey) 并将应用密钥绑定到相应模型。配置期间，有些选项是可选的，比如为节点添加订阅地址、设置发布地址等。通过配置，该节点实际上可以向 Provisioner 发送消息，也可以接收来自 Provisioner 的消息。

1.2 如果 Provisioner 想要改变节点状态，其需满足什么条件？
- 需要有和节点的服务器模型相对应的客户端模型。
- 需要和节点有相同的、可用于加密消息的网络密钥和应用密钥。
- 需要知道节点的地址，可以是单播地址，也可以是订阅地址。

1.3 如何使用网络密钥和应用密钥？
- 网络密钥用于加密网络层的消息。具有相同网络密钥的节点视作在同一网络中，具有不同网络密钥的节点相互之间不能进行通信。
- 应用密钥用于加密上传传输层中的消息。如果服务器模型和客户端模型绑定的应用密钥不同，则无法实现通信。

1.4 如何生成网络密钥或应用密钥？是否可以采用固定的网络密钥或应用密钥？
- API esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_net_key() 可以用来添加包含固定值或随机值的网络密钥。
- API esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_app_key() 可以用来添加包含固定值或随机值的应用密钥。

1.5 Provisioner 的单播地址是不是固定的？

esp_ble_mesh_prov_t 中 prov_unicast_addr 的值用于设置 Provisioner 的单播地址，只能在初始化期间设置一次，此后不能更改。

1.6 Provisioner 的地址是否可以作为节点上报状态消息的目的地址？
Provisioner 的单播地址只能在初始化期间设置一次，此后不能更改。理论上，只要节点知道 Provisioner 的单播地址，此地址便可用作节点上报状态消息的目的地址。节点在网络配置的过程中可以知道 Provisioner 的单播地址，因为 Provisioner 往节点发送消息时，消息的源地址就是 Provisioner 的单播地址。订阅地址也可使用。Provisioner 订阅组地址或者虚拟地址，节点向该订阅地址发送消息。

1.7 被 Provisioner 配网到 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络中的第一个节点的单播地址是不是固定的？

esp_ble_mesh_prov_t 中 prov_start_address 的值用于设置 Provisioner 配网未配网设备的起始地址，即其首先配网的节点的单播地址。单播地址只能在初始化期间设置一次，此后不能修改。

1.8 手机 App 首先配置的节点的单播地址是不是固定的？
该 App 将确定单播地址，目前大多数单播地址是固定的。

1.9 如何知道当前 Provisioner 正在配网哪个未配网设备？

esp_ble_mesh_prov_t 中 prov_attention 的值由 Provisioner 在配网过程中设置给未配网设备。该值只能在初始化期间设置一次，此后不能修改。未配网设备加入 mesh 网络后可以用特定的方式来显示自己正在配网，比如灯光闪烁，以告知 Provisioner 其正在配网。
1.10 请描述几种设备认证方法？提供的示例中 provided examples 使用了什么方法？

共有四种设备认证方法，即 No OOB、Static OOB、Output OOB 和 Input OOB。提供的示例使用了 No OOB 的方式。

1.11 配置网前，未配网设备的广播包可以携带哪些信息？

- Device UUID
- OOB Info
- URL Hash (可选的)

1.12 这些信息可以用于设备识别吗？

是的。每个设备都有独一无二的 Device UUID，用户可以通过 Device UUID 识别设备。

1.13 当 Provisioner 配网的节点包含多个元素时，单播地址是如何分配的？

- Provisioner 会将设备的主元素分配一个单播地址，其余元素的单播地址在此基础上递增。
- 比如：一个未配网设备有三个元素，即主元素、第二元素和第三元素。配网完成后，节点主元素的单播地址为 0x0002，节点第二元素的单播地址为 0x0003，节点第三元素的单播地址为 0x0004。

1.14 Provisioner 如何通过 Configuration Client Model 获取并解析节点的构成数据？

- Provisioner 可以调用 Configuration Client Model API esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state() 设置参数，调用 esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_get_state_t 中的 comp_data_get 获取节点的构成数据。
- 用户可以参考以下代码解析 Composition Data:

```c
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdint.h>

//test date: 0C001A000800030000105010000000010001000103103F002A00
//0C00 1A00 0800 0300 0000 01 05 01 00 00 00 00 01 00 03 10 3F 00 2A 00

// CID is 0x0000
// PID is 0x0001
// VID is 0x0000
// CRPL is 0x0008
// Features is 0x0003 - Relay and Friend features.
// Loc is "front" - 0x0100
// NumS is 5
// NumV is 1
// The Bluetooth SIG Models supported are: 0x0000, 0x8000, 0x0001, 0x1000, ...
// 0x1003
// The Vendor Models supported are: Company Identifier 0x003F and Model...
// Identifier 0x002A

typedef struct {
    int16_t cid;
    int16_t pid;
    int16_t vid;
    int16_t crpl;
    int16_t features;
    int16_t all_models;
    uint8_t sig_models;
    uint8_t vnd_models;
} esp_ble_mesh_composition_head;
```

(下页继续)
typedef struct {
    uint16_t model_id;
    uint16_t vendor_id;
} tsModel;

typedef struct {
    // reserve space for up to 20 SIG models
    uint16_t SIG_models[20];
    uint8_t numSIGModels;
    // reserve space for up to 4 vendor models
    tsModel Vendor_models[4];
    uint8_t numVendorModels;
} esp_ble_mesh_composition_decode;

int decode_comp_data(esp_ble_mesh_composition_head *head, esp_ble_mesh_composition_decode *data, uint8_t *mystr, int size)
{
    int pos_sig_base;
    int pos_vnd_base;
    int i;
    memcpy(head, mystr, sizeof(*head));
    if (size < sizeof(*head) + head->sig_models * 2 + head->vnd_models * 4) {
        return -1;
    }
    pos_sig_base = sizeof(*head) - 1;
    for (i = 1; i < head->sig_models * 2; i = i + 2) {
        data->SIG_models[i/2] = mystr[i + pos_sig_base] | (mystr[i + pos_  
        sig_base + 1] << 8);
        printf("%d: %4.4x\n", i/2, data->SIG_models[i/2]);
    }
    pos_vnd_base = head->sig_models * 2 + pos_sig_base;
    for (i = 1; i < head->vnd_models * 2; i = i + 2) {
        data->Vendor_models[i/2].model_id = mystr[i + pos_vnd_base] | (mystr[i + pos_  
        vnd_base + 1] << 8);
        printf("%d: %4.4x\n", i/2, data->Vendor_models[i/2].model_id);
        data->Vendor_models[i/2].vendor_id = mystr[i + pos_vnd_base + 2]  
        | (mystr[i + pos_vnd_base + 3] << 8);
        printf("%d: %4.4x\n", i/2, data->Vendor_models[i/2].vendor_id);
    }
    return 0;
}

void app_main(void)
{
    esp_ble_mesh_composition_head head = {0};
    esp_ble_mesh_composition_decode data = {0};
    uint8_t mystr[] = { 0x0C, 0x00, 0x1A, 0x00,  
    0x01, 0x00, 0x08, 0x00,  
    0x03, 0x00, 0x00, 0x01,  
    0x05, 0x01, 0x00, 0x00,  
    0x00, 0x00, 0x01, 0x00, };
0x00, 0x10, 0x03, 0x10,
0x3F, 0x00, 0x2A, 0x00);  

int ret;
ret = decode_comp_data(&head, &data, mystr, sizeof(mystr));
if (ret == -1) {
    printf("decode_comp_data error");
}

1.15 Provisioner 如何通过获取的 Composition Data 进一步配置节点？
Provisioner 通过调用 Configuration Client Model API esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state() 来进行如下配置。
- 正确设置参数 esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t 中的 app_key_add, 将应用密钥添加到节点中。
- 正确设置参数 esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t 中的 model_sub_add, 将订阅地址添加到节点的模型中。
- 正确设置参数 esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t 中的 model_pub_set, 将发布地址添加到节点的模型中。

1.16 节点可以自己添加相应的配置吗？
本法可用于特殊情况，如测试阶段。
- 此示例展示了节点如何为自己的模型添加新的组地址。

```c
esp_err_t example_add_fast_prov_group_address(uint16_t model_id, uint16_t group_addr) {
    const esp_ble_mesh_comp_t *comp = NULL;
    esp_ble_mesh_elem_t *element = NULL;
    esp_ble_mesh_model_t *model = NULL;
    int i, j;

    if (!ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_IS_GROUP(group_addr)) {
        return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG;
    }

    comp = esp_ble_mesh_get_composition_data();
    if (!comp) {
        return ESP_FAIL;
    }

    for (i = 0; i < comp->element_count; i++) {
        element = &comp->elements[i];
        model = esp_ble_mesh_find_sig_model(element, model_id);
        if (!model) {
            continue;
        }
        for (j = 0; j < ARRAY_SIZE(model->groups); j++) {
            if (model->groups[j] == group_addr) {
                break;
            }
        }
        if (j != ARRAY_SIZE(model->groups)) {
            ESP_LOGW(TAG, "%s: Group address already exists, element_index: %d", __func__, i);
            continue;
        }
```
for (j = 0; j < ARRAY_SIZE(model->groups); j++) {
    if (model->groups[j] == ESP_BLE_MESH_ADDR_UNASSIGNED) {
        model->groups[j] = group_addr;
        break;
    }
}
if (j == ARRAY_SIZE(model->groups)) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "%s: Model is full of group addresses, element...", __func__, i);
}
return ESP_OK;

### 1.17 Provisioner 如何通过分组的方式控制节点？

通常而言，在 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络中实现组控制有两种方法：即组地址方法和虚拟地址方法。假设有 10 个设备，即 5 个带蓝灯的设备和 5 个带红灯的设备。

- 方案一：5 个蓝灯设备订阅一个组地址，5 个红灯设备订阅另一个组地址。Provisioner 往不同的组地址发送消息，即可实现分组控制设备。
- 方案二：5 个蓝灯设备订阅一个虚拟地址，5 个红灯设备订阅另一个虚拟地址，Provisioner 往不同的虚拟地址发送消息，即可实现分组控制设备。

### 1.18 Provisioner 如何将节点添加至多个子网？

节点配置期间，Provisioner 可以为节点添加多个网络密钥，拥有相同网络密钥的节点属于同一子网。Provisioner 可以通过不同的网络密钥与不同子网内的节点进行通信。

### 1.19 Provisioner 如何知道网络中的某个设备是否离线？

节点离线通常定义为：电源故障或其他原因导致的节点无法与 mesh 网络中的其他节点正常通信的情况。

ESP-BLE-MESH 网络中的节点间彼此不连接，它们通过广播通道进行通信。

此处示例展示了如何通过 Provisioner 检测节点是否离线。

- 节点定期给 Provisioner 发送心跳包。如果 Provisioner 超过一定的时间未接收到心跳包，则视该节点离线。

**注释:** 心跳包的设计应该采用单包（字节数小于 11 个字节）的方式，这样收发效率会更高。

### 1.20 Provisioner 删除网络中的节点时，需要进行哪些操作？

通常而言，Provisioner 从网络中移除节点主要涉及三个步骤：

- 首先，Provisioner 将需要移除的节点添加至“黑名单”。
- 其次，Provisioner 启动密钥更新程序。
- 最后，节点执行节点重置程序，切换自身身份为未配网设备。

**注释：**
1.21 在密钥更新的过程中，Provisioner 如何更新节点的网络密钥？

- 通过正确设置参数 `esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t` 中的 `net_key_update`，使用 `Configuration Client Model API esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state()`，Provisioner 更新节点的网络密钥。
- 通过正确设置参数 `esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t` 中的 `app_key_update`，使用 `Configuration Client Model API esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state()`，Provisioner 更新节点的应用密钥。

1.22 Provisioner 如何管理 mesh 网络中的节点？

ESP-BLE-MESH 在示例中实现了基本的节点管理功能。比如 `esp_ble_mesh_store_node_info()`。ESP-BLE-MESH 还提供可用于设置节点本地名称的 API `esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_set_node_name()` 和可用于获取节点本地名称的 API `esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_get_node_name()`。

1.23 Provisioner 想要控制节点的服务器模型时需要什么？

Provisioner 在控制节点的服务器模型前，必须包括相应的客户端模型。

- Provisioner 应当添加本地的网络密钥和应用密钥。
  - Provisioner 调用 API `esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_net_key()` 以添加网络密钥。
  - Provisioner 调用 API `esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_add_local_app_key()` 以添加应用密钥。

Provisioner 应当配置自己的客户端模型。

- Provisioner 调用 API `esp_ble_mesh_provisioner_bind_app_key_to_local_model()` 以绑定应用密钥至自己的客户端模型。

1.24 Provisioner 如何控制节点的服务器模型？

ESP-BLE-MESH 支持所有 SIG 定义的客户端模型。Provisioner 可以使用这些客户端模型控制节点的服务器模型。客户端模型分为 6 类，每类有相应的功能。

- Configuration Client Model
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_config_client_get_state()` 可用于获取 `Configuration Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t` 值。
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_config_client_set_state()` 可用于获取 `Configuration Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_cfg_client_set_state_t` 值。
- Health Client Model
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state()` 可用于获取 `Health Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_health_client_get_state_t` 值。
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state()` 可用于获取 `Health Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_health_client_set_state_t` 值。
- Generic Client Models
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_get_state()` 可用于获取 `Generic Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_get_state_t` 值。
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state()` 可用于获取 `Generic Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t` 值。
- Lighting Client Models
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_light_client_get_state()` 可用于获取 `Lighting Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_light_client_get_state_t` 值。
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state()` 可用于获取 `Lighting Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t` 值。
- Sensor Client Models
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_get_state()` 可用于获取 `Sensor Server Model` 的 `esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_get_state_t` 值。
Chapter 4. API

- API `esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_set_state()` 可用于获取 Sensor Server Model 的 `esp_ble_mesh_sensor_client_set_state_t` 值。

- Time and Scenes Client Models

  - API `esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_get_state()` 可用于获取 Time and Scenes Server Model 的 `esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_get_state_t` 值。
  
  - API `esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_set_state()` 可用于获取 Time and Scenes Server Model 的 `esp_ble_mesh_time_scene_client_set_state_t` 值。

2. 节点开发

2.1 节点包含什么样的模型？

- ESP-BLE-MESH 中，节点由一系列的模型组成，每个模型实现节点的某些功能。
- 模型分为两种，客户端模型和服务器模型。客户端模型可以获取并设置服务器模型的状态。
- 模型也可以分为 SIG 模型和自定义模型。SIG 模型的所有行为都由官方定义，而自定义模型的行为均由用户定义。

2.2 每个模型对应的消息格式是不是固定的？

- 消息由 opcode 和 payload 组成，通过 opcode 进行区分。
- 与模型对应的消息的类型和格式都是固定的，这意味着模型之间传输的消息是固定的。

2.3 节点的模型可以使用哪些函数发送消息？

- 对于客户端模型，用户可以调用 API `esp_ble_mesh_client_model_send_msg()` 发送消息。
- 对于服务器模型，用户可以调用 API `esp_ble_mesh_server_model_send_msg()` 发送消息。
- 对于发布，用户可以调用 API `esp_ble_mesh_model_publish()` 发布消息。

2.4 如何实现消息传输不丢失？

如果用户要实现消息传输不丢失，则需有应答的消息。等待应答的默认时间在 `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_CLIENT_MSG_TIMEOUT` 中设置。如果发送端等待应答超时，就会触发对应的超时事件。

注解：API `esp_ble_mesh_client_model_send_msg()` 中可以设置应答的超时时间。如果参数 `msg_timeout` 设为 0，那么超时时间便会采用默认值（4 秒）。

2.5 如何发送无应答的消息？

对于客户端模型，用户可以调用 API `esp_ble_mesh_client_model_send_msg()` with the parameter `need_rsp` set to false 发送无应答消息。

对于服务器模型，调用 API `esp_ble_mesh_server_model_send_msg()` 发送的消息总是无应答的消息。

2.6 如何为模型添加订阅地址？

通过 Configuration Client Model 添加订阅地址。
2.7 模型发送的消息和发布的消息有何不同？

调用 API esp_ble_mesh_client_model_send_msg() 或 esp_ble_mesh_server_model_send_msg() 发送的消息会在 Network Transmit 状态规定的期限内发送。

调用 API esp_ble_mesh_model_publish() 发布的消息将由模型发布状态决定是否发布。消息的发布一般是周期性的，或者有固定次数。发布周期和发布次数由模型发布状态控制，并且可以通过 Configuration Client Model 进行配置。

2.8 发送不分包消息时，最多可携带多少有效字节？

不分包消息的总有效载荷长度（可由用户设置）为 11 个八位组。因此，如果消息的 opcode 为 2 个八位组，则该消息可以携带 9 个八位组的有效信息。对于 vendor 消息，由于 opcode 是 3 个八位组，剩余的有效负载长度为 8 个八位组。

2.9 什么时候应该使能节点的 Relay 功能？

如果 mesh 网络中检测到的节点很稀疏，用户可以使用节点的 Relay 功能。

如果 mesh 网络中检测到的节点很密集，用户可以选择仅使能一些节点的 Relay 功能。

如果 mesh 网络大小未知，用户可以默认使能 Relay 功能。

2.10 什么时候应该使能节点的 Proxy 功能？

如果未配网设备将由电话配网，则未配网设备应该使能 Proxy 功能，因为当前几乎所有电话都不支持通过广播载波层发送 ESP-BLE-MESH 数据包，并且，未配网设备成功配网成为 Proxy 节点后，其会通过 GATT 载波层和广播载波层与 mesh 网络中的其他节点通信。

2.11 如何使用代理过滤器？

代理过滤器用于减少 Proxy Client（如手机）和 Proxy Server（如节点）之间交换的 Network PDU 的数量。另外，通过代理过滤器，Proxy Client 可以明确请求仅接收来自 Proxy Server 的某些目标地址的 mesh 消息。

2.12 Relay 节点什么时候可以中继消息？

如果要中继消息，消息需满足以下要求。

- 消息存在于 mesh 网络中。
- 消息的目的地址不是节点的单播地址。
- 消息的 TTL 值需大于 1。

2.13 如果一条消息分成几段，那么其他 Relay 节点是接收到一段消息就中继还是等接收到完整的数据包才中继？

Relay 节点收到其中一段消息时就中继，而非一直等到接收所有的消息。

2.14 使用 Low Power 功能降低功耗的原理是什么？

- 开启无线电进行收听时，设备消耗能量。使能节点的低功耗功能后，它将在大多数时间内关闭无线电能。
- 低功耗节点和好友节点需要合作，因此低功耗节点可以以适当或较低的频率接收消息，而无需一直收听。
- 当低功耗节点有一些新消息时，好友节点将为其存储消息。低功耗节点可以间隔固定时间轮询好友节点，以查看是否有新的消息。
2.15 设备断电后上电，如何能继续在网络中进行通讯？
在 menuconfig 中启用配置 Store BLE Mesh Node configuration persistently。

2.16 如何实现将节点自检的信息发送出来？
推荐节点通过 Health Server Model 定期发布其自检结果。

2.17 节点间如何传输消息？
节点间传输信息的可能应用场景是，一旦烟雾警报检测到高浓度的烟雾，就会触发喷淋设备。
有两种实现方法。
- 方法 1：喷淋设备订阅组地址。当烟雾警报器检测到高浓度的烟雾时，它会发布一条消息，该消息的目标地址是喷淋设备已订阅的组地址。
- 方法 2：Provisioner 可以配置喷淋设备的单播地址为烟雾警报器的地址。当检测到高浓度的烟雾时，烟雾警报器以喷淋设备的单播地址为目标地址，将消息发送到喷淋设备。

2.18 设备通信必须要网关吗？
- 情况 1：节点仅在 mesh 网络内通信。这种情况下，不需要网关。ESP-BLE-MESH 网络是一个泛洪的网络，网络中的消息没有固定的路径，节点与节点之间可以随意通信。
- 情况 2：如果用户需要远程控制网络，比如在到家之前打开某些节点，则需要网关。

2.19 何时使用 IV Update 更新程序？
一旦节点的底层检测到发送的消息的序列号达到临界值，IV Update 更新程序便会启用。

2.20 如何启用 IV Update 更新程序？
节点可以使用带有 Secure Network Beacon 的 IV Update 更新程序。

3. ESP-BLE-MESH 和 Wi-Fi 共存

3.1 Wi-Fi 和 ESP-BLE-MESH 共存时，支持哪些模式？
目前，只有 Wi-Fi STA 模式支持共存。

3.2 Wi-Fi 和 ESP-BLE-MESH 共存时，为什么 Wi-Fi 吞吐量很低？
未搭载 PSRAM 的 ESP32-DevKitC 开发版，Wi-Fi 和 ESP-BLE-MESH 共存可以正常运行，但是吞吐率较低。当 Wi-Fi 和 ESP-BLE-MESH 共存时，搭载 PSRAM 的 ESP32-DevKitC 速率可以稳定在 1 Mbps 以上。
应使能 menuconfig 中的一些配置来支持 PSRAM。
- ESP32-specific --> Support for external, SPI-connected RAM --> Try to allocate memories of Wi-Fi and LWIP...
- Bluetooth --> Bluedriod Enable --> BT/BLE will first malloc the memory from the PSRAM
- Bluetooth --> Bluedriod Enable --> Use dynamic memory allocation in BT/BLE stack.
- Bluetooth --> Bluetooth controller --> BLE full scan feature supported.
- Wi-Fi --> Software controls Wi-Fi/Bluetooth coexistence --> Wi-Fi
Chapter 4. API 指南

4. 快速配网

4.1 为什么需要快速配网？
通常而言，存在少量未配网设备时，用户可以逐个配置。但是如果有大量未配网设备（比如 100 个）时，逐个配置会耗费大量时间。通过快速配网，用户可以在约 50 秒内配网 100 个未配网设备。

4.2 为什么会出现 EspBleMesh App 在快速配网期间长时间等待的情况？
快速配网期间，代理节点在配置完一个节点后会断开与 APP 的连接，待所有节点配网完成后再与 APP 重新建立连接。

4.3 为什么 APP 中显示的节点地址的数量比现有的节点地址更多？
每完成一次快速配网后，开始新一次快速配网前，APP 会存有上次配网的数据，因此 APP 中显示的节点地址的数量比现有的节点地址更多。

4.4 在 EspBleMesh App 中输入的 ** count ** 值有什么用途？
此 count 值提供给 App 配置的代理节点，以决定何时提前开始 Proxy 广播信息。

4.5 运行以下示例 fast_prov_server 的节点的 Configuration Client Model 何时开始工作？
使能了 Temporary Provisioner 功能后，Configuration Client Model 会开始工作。

4.6 Temporary Provisioner 功能会一直处于使能的状态吗？
节点收到打开/关闭电灯的消息后，所有节点会禁用其 Temporary Provisioner 功能并且转化为一般节点。

5. Log 帮助 当 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈底层出现错误或者警告时，您可以在这儿找到这些错误和警告的含义。

5.1 ran out of retransmit attempts 代表什么？
节点发送分段消息时，由于某些原因，接收端未收到完整的消息。节点会重传消息。当重传次数达到最大重传次数时，会出现该警告，当前最大重传次数为 4。

5.2 Duplicate found in Network Message Cache 代表什么？
当节点收到一条消息时，它会把该消息与网络缓存中存储的消息进行比较。如果在缓存中找到相同的消息，这意味着之前已接受过该消息，则该消息会被丢弃。

5.3 Incomplete timer expired 代表什么？
当节点在一定时间段（比如 10 秒）内未收到分段消息的所有段时，则 Incomplete 计时器到时，并且出现该警告。

5.4 No matching TX context for ack 代表什么？
当节点收到一个分段 ack 且不能找到任何自己发送的与该 ack 相关的消息时，会出现该警告。
5.5 No free slots for new incoming segmented messages 代表什么？
当节点没有空间来接收新的分段消息时，会出现该警告。用户可以通过配置 `CONFIG_BLE_MESH_RX_SEG_MSG_COUNT` 扩大空间。

5.6 Model not bound to AppKey 0x0000 代表什么？
当节点发送带有模型的消息且模型尚未绑定到索引为 0x0000 的应用密钥时，会出现该错误。

5.7 Busy sending message to DST xxxx 代表什么？
该错误表示节点的客户端模型已将消息发送给目标节点，并且正在等待响应。用户无法将消息发送到单播地址相同的同一节点。接收到相应的响应或计时器到时后，可以发送另一条消息。

6. 示例帮助

6.1 ESP-BLE-MESH 回调函数如何分类？
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_prov_callback()` 用于注册处理配网和入网相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_config_client_callback()` 用于注册处理 Configuration Client Model 相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_config_server_callback()` 用于注册处理 Configuration Server Model 相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_health_client_callback()` 用于注册处理 Health Client Model 相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_health_server_callback()` 用于注册处理 Health Server Model 相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_generic_client_callback()` 用于注册处理 Generic Client Models 相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_light_client_callback()` 用于注册处理 Lighting Client Models 相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_sensor_client_callback()` 用于注册处理 Sensor Client Model 相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_time_scene_client_callback()` 用于注册处理 Time and Scenes Client Models 相关事件的回调函数。
- API `esp_ble_mesh_register_custom_model_callback()` 用于注册处理自定义模型和未实现服务器模型的相关事件的回调函数。

7. 其他

7.1 如何打印数据包？
示例使用如下函数 ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX() 打印信息语境，而 ESP-BLE-MESH 协议栈使用 bt_hex() 打印。

7.2 重启 ESP32 应使用哪个 API？
API `esp_restart()`。

7.3 如何监测任务栈的剩余空间？
API `vTaskList()` 可以用于定期打印任务栈的剩余空间。
7.4 如何在不更改 menuconfig 输出级别的情况下改变 log 级别？
无需使用 menuconfig，可以通过 API `esp_log_level_set()` 修改 log 的输出级别。

ESP-BLE-MESH Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>术语</th>
<th>官方定义</th>
<th>详细说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>未配网设备</td>
<td>“A device that is not a member of a mesh network is known as an unprovisioned device.”</td>
<td>示例：照明装置、温控设备、制造设备和电动门等。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>节点</td>
<td>“A node is a provisioned device.”</td>
<td>经配网加入 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络后，未配网设备的身份转变成节点。节点（如照明装置、温控设备、制造设备和电动门）是指能在蓝牙 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络中发送、接收或中继消息的设备，且节点可以选择性地支持一个或多个子网。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>中继节点</td>
<td>“A node that supports the Relay feature and has the Relay feature enabled is known as a Relay node.”</td>
<td>中继节点接收并中继 ESP-BLE-MESH 消息，因此消息可以传输得更远。用户可以根据节点的状态来决定是否使能节点的中继功能。消息可以中继多次，每次中继为“一跳”，消息最多可有 126 跳，足以让消息在广阔的区域内传输。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>代理节点</td>
<td>“A node that supports the Proxy feature and has the Proxy feature enabled is known as a Proxy node.”</td>
<td>代理节点从一个承载层（通常包括广播承载层和 GATT 承载层）接收消息，并通过另一个承载层重新发送消息。其目的是将只支持 GATT 承载层的通信设备接入 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络中。通常而言，手机 App 需要一个代理节点才能接入 Mesh 网络。没有代理节点，手机 App 无法与 Mesh 网络中成员通信。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>好友节点</td>
<td>“A node that supports the Friend feature, has the Friend feature enabled, and has a friendship with a node that supports the Low Power feature is known as a Friend node.”</td>
<td>好友节点相当于低功耗节点（LPN）的备份，可存储发送往低功耗节点的消息及安全更新信息；当低功耗节点需要这些存储的信息时，这些信息便被传输至低功耗节点。低功耗节点必须与支持好友特性的另一节点建立“友谊”，以减少其接收器的占空比，从而降低低功耗节点的功耗。低功耗节点需要找到好友节点，与其建立友谊关系，其中涉及的过程称为“友谊建立”。低功耗节点与好友节点的搭配可让低功耗节点规划对无线电的使用，从而以适当或较低的频率接收消息，无需保持收听状态。低功耗节点会轮询好友节点以查看是否有新的消息。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>低功耗节点</td>
<td>“A node that supports the Low Power feature and has a friendship with a node that supports the Friend feature is known as a Low Power node.”</td>
<td>低功耗节点通过轮询从好友节点获取信息，比如消息、安全更新等。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>启动配置设备(以下简称 Provisioner)</td>
<td>“A node that is capable of adding a device to a mesh network.”</td>
<td>能够配网未配网设备的设备称为启动配置设备。这一流程通常需要通过产品制造商的提供的 App 来实现，并可在网关、智能手机、平板电脑和其他载体上使用。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
表 12: 表 2 ESP-BLE-MESH 术语 - 节点构成

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>术语</th>
<th>官方定义</th>
<th>详细说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>状态</td>
<td>“A value representing a condition of an element that is exposed by an element of a node.”</td>
<td>ESP-BLE-MESH 网络中的每台设备都具有一组独立的状态值，表示设备的某些状态，比如照明设备的亮度，颜色等状态。更改状态值会修改设备本身的物理状态，比如更改设备的开关状态值实际是在打开或关闭设备。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>模型</td>
<td>“A model defines the basic functionality of a node.”</td>
<td>一个节点可能包含多个模型，而每个模型定义了节点的基本功能，比如节点所需要的状态、控制状的消息以及处理消息所产生的动作等。节点功能的实现是基于模型的，模型可分为 SIG 模型和自定义模型，前者由 SIG 定义，而后者由用户定义。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>元素</td>
<td>“An addressable entity within a device.”</td>
<td>一个节点可以包含一个或多个元素，每个元素都有一个单播地址和一个或多个模型，并且同一元素所包含的模型不可以出现重复。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>节点构成状态</td>
<td>“The Composition Data state contains information about a node, the elements it includes, and the supported models.”</td>
<td>通过读取节点构成状态的值，用户可以了解节点的基本信息，比如元素的数量及每个元素中的模型。Provisioner 通过获取这个消息对设备进一步配置，比如配置节点的订阅地址与发布地址。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

表 13: 表 3 ESP-BLE-MESH 术语 - 特性

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>术语</th>
<th>官方定义</th>
<th>详细说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>低功耗特性</td>
<td>“The ability to operate within a mesh network at significantly reduced receiver duty cycles only in conjunction with a node supporting the Friend feature.”</td>
<td>低功耗功能可降低节点的功耗。当低功耗节点寻找好友节点，且附近有多个好友节点时，它会通过算法选择最适合的好友节点。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>好友特性</td>
<td>“The ability to help a node supporting the Low Power feature to operate by storing messages destined for those nodes.”</td>
<td>通过使能好友特性，节点可以存储低功耗节点的信息，使用好友特性时节点可能会产生更大的功耗和内存消耗。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>中继特性</td>
<td>“The ability to receive and retransmit mesh messages over the advertising bearer to enable larger networks.”</td>
<td>中继特性能让 ESP-BLE-MESH 的消息在节点之间实现多次跳跃，传输距离可超过两个节点之间直接进行无线电传输的范围，从而覆盖整个网络。使能了中继特性时，节点中继消息时，只中继其所在子网的消息，不中继其它子网的消息。中继特性时节点中继分段消息时不考虑数据的完整性。节点每收到一条分段消息便会直接中继，不会等待收到完整的消息。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>代理特性</td>
<td>“The ability to receive and retransmit mesh messages between GATT and advertising bearers.”</td>
<td>代理特性用的目的是允许不具备广播承载层的节点访问 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络。代理特性通常为需要和手机 App 连接的节点所用。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
表 14: 表 4 ESP-BLE-MESH 术语 - 配置入网

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>术语</th>
<th>官方定义</th>
<th>详细说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PB-ADV</td>
<td>“PB-ADV is a provisioning bearer used to provision a device using Generic Provisioning PDUs over the advertising channels.”</td>
<td>PB-ADV 通过广播通道传输配网过程中产生的数据包。只有 Provisioner 和未配网设备都支持 PB-ADV 时才可使用这种方法进行配网。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PB-GATT</td>
<td>“PB-GATT is a provisioning bearer used to provision a device using Proxy PDUs to encapsulate Provisioning PDUs within the Mesh Provisioning Service.”</td>
<td>PB-GATT 通过连接通道传输配网过程中产生的数据包。如果未配网设备想使用此方式进行配网，其需要实现相关的 Mesh Provisioning Service。未实现此服务的未配网设备不能通过 PB-GATT 承载层配网接入 mesh 网络。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>配置入网</td>
<td>“Provisioning is a process of adding an unprovisioned device to a mesh network, managed by a Provisioner.”</td>
<td>经过配网，“未配网设备”的身份转变为“节点”，成为 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络中的一员。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>认证方式</td>
<td>“Authentication is a step during the provisioning of nodes.”</td>
<td>未配网设备有四种认证方法：输入带外 (Input OOB)、输出带外 (Output OOB)、静态带外 (Static OOB) 和无带外 (No OOB)。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>输入带外 (Input OOB)</td>
<td>Input Out-of-Band</td>
<td>比如，Provisioner 生成并显示随机数，然后提示用户采取适当操作将随机数输入未配网的设备中。以照明开关为例，用户可以在一定时间内数次按下按钮，以这种形式输入 Provisioner 显示的随机数。输入带外认证方法与输出带外的认证方法类似，但设备的角色相反。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>输出带外 (Output OOB)</td>
<td>Output Out-of-Band</td>
<td>比如，未配网设备会选择一个随机数，并通过与其功能兼容的方式输出该数字。如果未配网设备是一个灯泡，则其能够闪烁指定的次数。如果未配网设备有 LCD 屏幕，则可以将随机数显示为多位数值。启动 Provisioner 的用户需要输入观察到的数字，来认证未配网的设备。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>静态带外 (Static OOB)</td>
<td>Static Out-of-Band</td>
<td>静态 OOB 的认证方法：使用静态 OOB 信息。如果需要使用无 OOB 信息，请将静态 OOB 字段赋值为 0。如果需要使用 OOB 信息，请使用静态 OOB 信息认证正在配网的设备。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>无带外 (No OOB)</td>
<td>No Out-of-Band</td>
<td>无 OOB 的认证方法：将“静态 OOB”字段赋值为 0，采用这种方式相当于不认证未配网的设备。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
表 15: 表 5 ESP-BLE-MESH 术语 - 地址

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>术语</th>
<th>官方定义</th>
<th>详细说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>未分配地址</td>
<td>“This is a special address type, with a value of 0x0000. Its use indicates that an Element has not yet been configured or had a Unicast Address assigned to it.”</td>
<td>未分配的元素地址或未分配的元素地址都称为未分配地址。对于这些元素没有固定的地址，它们不会用于消息的传输。建议在设置用户代码的地址之前，将该地址的值设为未分配地址。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>单播地址</td>
<td>“A unicast address is a unique address allocated to each element.”</td>
<td>在配网期间，Provisioner 会给网络中处于生命周期内节点的每个元素分配一个单播地址。单播地址可能会出现在消息的源/目标地址字段中。发送到单播地址的消息只能由拥有该单播地址的元素进行处理。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>虚拟地址</td>
<td>“A virtual address represents a set of destination addresses. Each virtual address logically represents a Label UUID, which is a 128-bit value that does not have to be managed centrally.”</td>
<td>虚拟地址与特定的 UUID 标签相关联，可以用作模型的发布地址或订阅地址。UUID 标签与一个或多个节点或元素关联的 128 位值。虚拟地址的第 15 位和第 14 位分别设置为 1 和 0。从第 13 位到第 0 位设置为散列值（提供 16384 个散列值）。散列是 UUID 标签的派生。使用订阅元素检查完整的 128 位 UUID 十分低效，而散列值提供了更有效的方法来确定最终将哪些消息发送到哪些元素。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>群组地址</td>
<td>“A group address is an address that is programmed into zero or more elements.”</td>
<td>群组地址是 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络中的另一种多播地址，通常用于将节点进行分组。发送到 all-proxies 地址的信息应由启用了代理功能的所有节点的主要元素处理。发送到 all-friends 地址的消息应由启用了好友功能的所有节点的主要元素处理。发送到 all-relays 地址的消息应由启用了中继功能的所有节点的主要元素处理。发送到 all-nodes 地址的消息应由所有节点的主要元素处理。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

表 16: 表 6 ESP-BLE-MESH 术语 - 安全

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>术语</th>
<th>官方定义</th>
<th>详细说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>设备密钥 (Dev-Key)</td>
<td>“There is also a device key, which is a special application key that is unique to each node, is known only to the node and a Configuration Client, and is used to secure communications between the node and a Configuration Client.”</td>
<td>设备密钥让您能够配网未配网设备、配置节点。设备密钥用来加密配置信息，即配置设备时 Provisioner 和节点之间传输的消息。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>应用密钥 (App-Key)</td>
<td>“Application keys are used to secure communications at the upper transport layer.”</td>
<td>应用密钥用于应用数据传送至应用层过程中对应用数据的解密，和应用层下发过程中对数据的加密。网络中的一些节点有特定的用途，并且可以根据应用程序的需求对一些敏感数据的访问进行限制。通过特定的应用密钥，这些节点与特定应用程序相关联。通常而言，使用不同应用密钥的领域有安全（楼宇门禁、机房门禁和 CEO 办公室门禁）、照明（工厂、外部楼宇和人行道）和 HVAC 系统。应用密钥绑定在网络密钥上，这意味着应用密钥仅在绑定网络密钥的情况下使用。每一个应用密钥仅可绑定到一个网络密钥。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>主安全资料</td>
<td>“The master security material is derived from the network key (NetKey) and can be used by other nodes in the same network. Messages encrypted with master security material can be decoded by any node in the same network.”</td>
<td>使用好友安全材料加密的相应友谊消息有：1. 好友轮询 (Friend Poll), 2. 好友更新 (Friend Update), 3. 好友订阅列表 (Friend Subscription List), 添加/删除/确认。好友节点发送到低功耗节点的“已存储消息”。使用主安全材料加密的相应友谊消息有：1. 好友清除 (Friend Clear), 2. 好友清除确认 (Friend Clear Confirm)。根据应用程序的设置，从低功耗节点发送到好友节点的消息会被使用友谊安全材料或主安全材料进行加密，前者用于低功耗节点与好友节点之间的消息传输，而后者用于其他网络消息。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Esperrif Systems

1793

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
### Chapter 4. API

#### 17: ESP-BLE-MESH

**Segmentation and reassembly (SAR)** is a method of communication network, which is divided into small units before transmitting packets and re-assembled in a proper order at the communication receiving end.

There are two types of messages: Un-acknowledged or Acknowledged.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>术语</strong></th>
<th><strong>官方定义</strong></th>
<th><strong>详细说明</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>重组 / 分包</td>
<td>“Segmentation and reassembly (SAR) is a method of communication network, which is divided into small units before transmitting packets and re-assembled in a proper order at the communication receiving end.”</td>
<td>底层传输层会自动分包过大的消息。接收端会回复一条应答消息，根据应答消息，发送端会重新向接收端发送其未接收到的数据包。这些都是底层传输层自动完成的。未分包的消息最多携带 15 个字节，其中 4 个字节是 transMIC，所以剩余 11 个字节；在分包的情况下，前面的包中每包有 12 个有效字节，最后一个包中有 8 个有效字节。特殊情况下：一个较短的包需要底层传输端强制分包，这种情况下有 8 个有效字节。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>无 应答 / 有应答</td>
<td>“There are two types of messages: Un-acknowledged or Acknowledged.”</td>
<td>根据接收端是否需要发送应答消息，发送的消息可分为两种。发送端需要设置最大重传次数。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration Server Model**

This model is used to represent a mesh network configuration of a device.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>术语</strong></th>
<th><strong>官方定义</strong></th>
<th><strong>详细说明</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Server Model</td>
<td>“This model is used to represent a mesh network configuration of a device.”</td>
<td>节点必须包含 Configuration Server Model，其负责维护配置相关的状态。Configuration Server Model 维护的状态包含：网络密钥名单 (NetKey List)、应用密钥名单 (AppKey List)、模型绑定的应用密钥名单 (Model to App-Key List)、节点身份 (Node Identity)、密钥更新阶段 (Key Refresh Phase)、心跳消息发布 (Heartbeat Publish)、心跳消息订阅 (Heartbeat Subscription)、网络传输 (Network Transmit) 和中继重传 (Relay Retransmit) 等。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration Client Model**

The model is used to control and monitor the configuration of a node.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>术语</strong></th>
<th><strong>官方定义</strong></th>
<th><strong>详细说明</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Client Model</td>
<td>“The model is used to control and monitor the configuration of a node.”</td>
<td>Configuration Client Model 通过消息控制 Configuration Server Model 维护的状态。Configuration Client Model 具有该模型才可发送“Configuration Composition Data Get”等配置消息。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Health Server Model**

“This model is used to represent a mesh network diagnostics of a device.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>术语</strong></th>
<th><strong>官方定义</strong></th>
<th><strong>详细说明</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health Server Model</td>
<td>“This model is used to represent a mesh network diagnostics of a device.”</td>
<td>Health Server Model 用于设备状态检查自身状态，查看自己是否发生错误。Health Server model 维护的状态包含：当前故障 (Current Fault)、已登记故障 (Registered Fault)、健康周期 (Health Period) 和关注计时器 (Attention Timer)。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Health Client Model**

“The model is used to represent an element that can control and monitor the health of a node.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>术语</strong></th>
<th><strong>官方定义</strong></th>
<th><strong>详细说明</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health Client Model</td>
<td>“The model is used to represent an element that can control and monitor the health of a node.”</td>
<td>Health Client Model 通过消息控制 Health Server Model 维护的状态。该模型可通过消息 “Health Fault Get” 获取其他节点的自检信息。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This procedure is used when the security of one or more network keys and/or one or more of the application keys has been compromised or could be compromised.

A node can also use an IV Update procedure to signal to peer nodes that it is updating the IV Index.

IV update procedures are used when the security of one or more network keys and/or one or more of the application keys has been compromised or could be compromised. When a node detects that a network key has been compromised, it will use an IV update procedure to signal to peer nodes that it is updating the IV Index. This allows the peer nodes to update their IV Index to avoid potential security vulnerabilities.

### Glossary of Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>术语</th>
<th>官方定义</th>
<th>详细说明</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>密钥更新程序</td>
<td>“This procedure is used when the security of one or more network keys and/or one or more of the application keys has been compromised or could be compromised.”</td>
<td>密钥更新程序用于更新 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络的网络密钥和应用密钥。当一个或多个网络密钥和/或一个或多个应用密钥的安全受到威胁或可能受到威胁时，会启动密钥更新程序。通常而言，在网络中某些节点移除后可以进行密钥更新。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV更新程序</td>
<td>“A node can also use an IV Update procedure to signal to peer nodes that it is updating the IV Index.”</td>
<td>IV更新程序用于更新 ESP-BLE-MESH 网络的IV Index的值。这个值和消息加密时所需的随机数相关。为了保证随机数的值不重复，所以将这个值定期增加。IV Index是一个32位的值，是一种共享网络资源。比如一个mesh网中的所有节点共享一个IV Index的值。IV Index从0x00000000开始，在IV更新过程中递增，并由特定的进程维护。以保证整个Mesh网内共享一个IV Index。当节点认为它耗尽其序列号的风险，或它确定另一个节点即将耗尽其序列号时，可以启动该程序。注意：每次的更新时间不得低于96小时。节点接收到secure network beacon或者确定自己的序列号大于特定值时，会触发IV更新程序。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

官方定义摘自 ESP-BLE-MESH Glossary of Terms。查看更多术语，也请参照上述网址。

### 蓝牙 SIG 文档

- BLE Mesh Profile Specification
- BLE Mesh Model Specification
- An Intro to Bluetooth Mesh Part 1 / Part 2
- The Fundamental Concepts of Bluetooth Mesh Networking, Part 1 / Part 2
- Bluetooth Mesh Networking: Friendship
- Management of Devices in a Bluetooth Mesh Network
- Bluetooth Mesh Security Overview
- Provisioning a Bluetooth Mesh Network Part 1 / Part 2

### 4.9 ESP-WIFI-MESH

本指南提供有关ESP-WIFI-MESH协议的介绍。更多有关API使用的信息，请见ESP-WIFI-MESH API参考。

#### 4.9.1 概述

ESP-WIFI-MESH 是一套建立在Wi-Fi协议之上的网络协议。ESP-WIFI-MESH允许分布在大范围区域内（室内和室外）的大量设备（下文称节点）在同一个WLAN（无线局域网）中相互连接。ESP-WIFI-MESH具有自组网和自修复的特性，也就是说mesh网络可以自主地构建和维护。

本ESP-WIFI-MESH指南分为以下几个部分：

1. 简介
2. ESP-WIFI-MESH概念
3. 建立网络
4. 管理网络
5. 数据传输
6. 信道切换
7. 性能
8. 更多注意事项
4.9.2 简介

图 16: 传统 Wi-Fi 网络架构

传统基础设施 Wi-Fi 网络是一个“单点对多点”的网络。这种网络架构的中心节点为接入点 (AP)，其他节点 (station) 均与 AP 直接相连。其中，AP 负责各个 station 之间的仲裁和转发，一些 AP 还会通过路由器与外部 IP 网络交换数据。在传统 Wi-Fi 网络架构中，1) 由于所有 station 均需与 AP 直接相连，不能距离 AP 太远，因此覆盖区域相对有限；2) 受到 AP 容量的限制，因此网络中允许的 station 数量相对有限，很容易超载。

图 17: ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络架构示意图

ESP-WIFI-MESH 与传统 Wi-Fi 网络的不同之处在于：网络中的节点不需要连接到中心节点，而是可以与相邻节点连接。各节点均负责相连节点的数据中继。由于无需受限于距离中心节点的位置，所有节点仍可互连，因此 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的覆盖区域更广。类似地，由于不再受限于中心节点的容量限制，ESP-WIFI-MESH 允许更多节点接入，也不容易超载。
4.9.3 ESP-WIFI-MESH 概念

术语

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>术语</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>节点</td>
<td>任何属于或可以成为 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络一部分的设备</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>根节点</td>
<td>网络顶部的节点</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>子节点</td>
<td>如节点 X 连接至节点 Y，且 X 相较 Y 与根节点的距离更远（跨越的连接数量更多），则称 X 为 Y 的子节点。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>交节点</td>
<td>与子节点对应的概念</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>后裔节点</td>
<td>任何可以从根节点追溯到的节点</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>兄弟节点</td>
<td>连接至同一个交节点的所有节点</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>连接</td>
<td>AP 和 station 之间的传统 Wi-Fi 关联。ESP-WIFI-MESH 中的节点使用 station 接口与另一个节点的 SoftAP 接口产生关联，进而形成连接。连接包括 Wi-Fi 网络中的身份验证和关联过程。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>上行连接</td>
<td>从节点到其父节点的连接</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>下行连接</td>
<td>从父节点到其一个子节点的连接</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 无线 hop | 源节点和目标节点间无线连接路径中的一部分。单跳指通单个跳的连接。
多跳指通多个跳的数据包。 |
| 子网 | 子网指 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的一部分，包括一个节点及所有后裔节点。
因此，根节点的子网包括 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的所有节点。 |
| MAC 地址 | 在 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中用于区分每个节点或路由器的唯一地址 |
| DS | 分布式系统（外部 IP 网络） |

树型拓扑

ESP-WIFI-MESH 建立在传统 Wi-Fi 协议之上，可被视为一种将多个独立 Wi-Fi 网络组合为一个单一 WLAN 网络的组网协议。在 Wi-Fi 网络中，station 在任何时候都仅限于与 AP 建立单个连接（上行连接），而 AP 则可以同时连接到多个 station（下行连接）。然而，ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络则允许节点同时充当 station 和 AP。因此，ESP-WIFI-MESH 中的节点可以使用其 SoftAP 接口建立多个下行连接，同时使用其 station 接口建立一个上行连接。这将自然产生一个由多层父子结构组成的树型网络拓扑结构。

图 18: ESP-WIFI-MESH 树型拓扑

ESP-WIFI-MESH 是一个多跳网络，也就是说网络中的节点可以通过单跳或多跳向网络中的其他节点传送数据包。因此，ESP-WIFI-MESH 中的节点不仅传输自己的数据包，而且同时充当其他节点的中继。假
设 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的任意两个节点存在物理层上连接（通过单跳或多跳），则这两个节点可以进行通信。

**注释:** ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的大小（节点总数）取决于网络中允许的最大层级，以及每个节点可以具有的最大下行连接数。因此，这两个变量可用于配置 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的大小。

### 节点类型

- **Root Node**
- **Intermediate Parent Node**
- **Leaf Node**
- **Idle Node**

![图 19: ESP-WIFI-MESH 节点类型](image)

**根节点**：指网络顶部的节点，是 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络和外部 IP 网络之间的唯一接口，根节点直接连接至传统的 Wi-Fi 路由器，并在 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的节点和外部 IP 网络之间中继数据包。ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中只能有一个根节点，且根节点的上行连接只能是路由器。如图所示，节点 A 即为该 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的根节点。

**叶子节点**：指不允许拥有任何子节点（即无下行连接）的节点。因此，叶子节点只能传输或接收自己的数据包，但不能转发其他节点的数据包。如果节点处于 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的最大允许层级，则该节点将成为叶子节点。叶子节点不可再生下行连接，这可以防止节点继续生成下行连接，从而确保网络层级不会超出限制。由于建立下行连接必须使用 SoftAP 接口，因此一些没有 SoftAP 接口的节点（仅有限 station 接口）也将被分配为叶子节点。如上图所示，位于网络最外层的 L/M/N 节点即为叶子节点。

**中间父节点**：既不是属于根节点也不属于叶子节点的节点即为中间父节点。中间父节点必须有且仅有一个上行连接（即一个父节点），但可以有 0 个或多个下行连接（即 0 个或多个子节点）。因此，中间父节点可以发送和接收自己的数据包，也可以转发其上行和下行连接的数据包。如上图所示，节点 B 到 J 即为中间父节点。注意，E/F/G/I/J 等没有下行连接的中间父节点并不等同于叶子节点，原因在于这些节点仍允许形成下行连接。

**空闲节点**：尚未加入网络的节点即为空闲节点。空闲节点将尝试与中间父节点形成上行连接，或者在有条件的情况下（参见自动根节点选择）成为一个根节点。如上图所示，K 和 O 节点即为空闲节点。
信标帧和 RSSI 阈值

ESP-WIFI-MESH 中能够形成下行连接的每个节点（即具有 SoftAP 接口）都会定期传输 Wi-Fi 信标帧。节点可以通过信标帧让其他节点检测自己的存在和状态。空闲节点将侦听信标帧以生成一个潜在父节点列表，并与其中一个潜在父节点形成上行连接。ESP-WIFI-MESH 使用“供应商信息元素”来存储元数据，例如：

- 节点类型（根节点、中间父节点、叶子节点、空闲节点）
- 节点当前所处的层级
- 网络允许的最大层级
- 当前于节点数量
- 可接受的最大下行连接数量

潜在上行连接的信号强度可由潜在父节点信标帧的 RSSI 表示。为了防止节点形成弱上行连接，ESP-WIFI-MESH 采用了针对信标帧的 RSSI 阈值控制机制。如果节点检测到某节点的信标帧 RSSI 过低（即低于预设阈值），则会在尝试形成上行连接时忽略该节点。

![Area where RSSI > Threshold](image)

图 20: RSSI 阈值的影响

上图（A 侧）展示了 RSSI 阈值将如何影响空闲节点的候选父节点数量。

上图（B 侧）展示了 RF 屏蔽物如何降低潜在父节点的 RSSI。由于存在 RF 屏蔽物，节点 X 的 RSSI 高于阈值的区域显著减小。这会导致空闲节点忽略节点 X，即使从地理位置上看 X 就在空闲节点附近。相反，该空闲节点将从更远的地方找到一个 RSSI 更高的节点 Y 形成上行连接。

注释：事实上，ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的节点在 MAC 层仍可以接收所有的信标帧，但 RSSI 阈值控制功能可以过滤掉所有 RSSI 低于预设阈值的信标帧。

首选父节点

当一个空闲节点有多个候选父节点（潜在父节点）时，空闲节点将与其中的首选父节点形成上行连接。首选父节点基于以下条件确定：

- 候选父节点所处的层级
- 候选父节点当前具有的下行连接（子节点）数量

在网络中所处层级较浅的候选父节点（包括根节点）将优先成为首选父节点。这有助于在形成上行连接时控制 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的总层级使之最小。例如，在位于第二层和第三层的候选父节点间选择时，位于第二层的候选父节点将始终优先成为首选父节点。
如果同一层上存在多个候选父节点，则子节点最少的候选父节点将优先成为首选父节点。这有助于平衡同一层节点的下行连接数量。

图 21：首选父节点选择

上图（A 侧）展示了空闲节点 G 如何在 B/C/D/E/F 五个候选父节点中选择首选父节点：首先，B/C 节点优于 D/E/F 节点，因为这两个节点所处的层级更浅。其次，C 节点优于 B 节点，因为 C 节点的下行连接数（子节点数量）更少。

上图（B 侧）展示了空闲节点 G 如何在根节点 A 和其他候选父节点中选择首选父节点。此时根节点 A 处于空闲节点 G 范围之内（即空闲节点 G 接收到的根节点 A 信标帧 RSSI 强度高于预设阈值）：由于根节点 A 处于网络中浅的层，因此将成为首选父节点。

注解：用户还可以自行定义首选父节点的选择规则，也可以直接指定某个节点为首选父节点（见 Mesh 手动配网示例）。

路由表

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的每个节点均会维护自己的路由表，并按路由表将数据包（请见 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包）沿正确的路线发送至正确的目标节点。某个特定节点的路由表将包含该节点的子网中所有节点的 MAC 地址，也包括该节点自己的 MAC 地址。每个路由表会划分为多个子路由表，与每个子节点的子网对应。

以上图为例，节点 B 的路由表中将包含节点 B 到节点 I 的 MAC 地址（即相当于节点 B 的子网）。节点 B 的路由表可划分为节点 C 和 G 的子路由表，分别包含节点 C 到节点 F 的 MAC 地址、节点 G 到节点 I 的 MAC 地址。

ESP-WIFI-MESH 利用路由表来使用以下规则进行转发，确定 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包应根据向上行转发还是向下行转发。

1. 如果数据包的目标 MAC 地址处于当前节点的路由表中且不是当前节点本身，则选择包含目标 MAC 地址的子路由表，并将数据包向下转发给子路由表对应的子节点。

2. 如果数据包的目标 MAC 地址不在当前节点的路由表内，则将数据包向上转发给当前节点的父节点，并重复执行该操作直至数据包达到目标地址。此步骤可重复至根节点（根节点包含整个网络的全部节点）。

注解：用户可以通过调用 esp_mesh_get_routing_table() 获取一个节点的路由表。
由表，调用 `esp_mesh_get_routing_table_size()` 获取一个路由表的大小，也可通过调用 `esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_list()` 获取某个子节点的子路由表，调用 `esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_num()` 获取子路由表的大小。

### 4.9.4 建立网络

**一般过程**

警告：ESP-WIFI-MESH 正式开始构建网络前，必须确保网络中所有节点具有相同的配置（见 `mesh_cfg_t`）。每个节点必须配置相同 MESH 网络 ID、路由器配置和 SoftAP 配置。

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络将首先选择根节点，然后逐层形成下行连接，直到所有节点均加入网络。网络的布局可能取决于诸如根节点选择、父节点选择和异步上电复位等因素。但简单来说，一个 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的构建过程可以概括为以下步骤：

1. **根节点选择**  根节点直接进行指定（见未指定根节点）或通过选举由信号强度最强的节点担任（见自动根节点选择）。一旦选定，根节点将与路由器连接，并开始允许下行连接形成。如上图所示，节点 A 被选为根节点，因此节点 A 上行连接到路由器。

2. **第二层形成**  一旦根节点连接到路由器，根节点范围内的空闲节点将开始与根节点连接，从而形成第二层网络。一旦连接，第二层节点成为中间父节点（假设最大允许层级多于 2 层），并进而形成下一层。如上图所示，节点 B 到节点 D 都在根节点的连接范围内。因此，节点 B 到节点 D 将与根节点形成上行连接，并成为中间父节点。

3. **其余层形成**  剩余的空闲节点将与所处范围内的中间父节点连接，并形成新的层。一旦连接，根据网络的最大允许层级，空闲节点成为中间父节点或叶子节点。此后重复该步骤，直到网络中的所有空闲节点均加入网络或达到网络最大允许层级。如上图所示，节点 E/F/G 分别与节点 B/C/D 连接，并成为中间父节点。
4. 限制树深度 为了防止网络超支允许层级，最大允许层级上的节点将在完成连接后成为叶子节点。这样一来，其他空闲节点将无法与这些最大允许层级上的叶子节点形成连接，因此不会超过最大允许层级。然而，如果空闲节点无法找到其他潜在父节点，则将无限期地保持空闲状态。如上图所示，网络的最大允许层级为四。因此，节点 H 在完成连接后将变为叶子节点，以防止任何下行连接的形成。

自动根节点选择

在自动模式下，根节点的选择取决于相对于路由器的信号强度。每个空闲节点将通过 Wi-Fi 信标帧发送自己的 MAC 地址和路由器 RSSI 值。MAC 地址可以表示网络中的唯一节点，而路由器 RSSI 值代表相对于路由器的信号强度。

此后，每个节点将同时扫描来自其他空闲节点的信标帧。如果节点检测到具有更强的路由器 RSSI 的信标帧，则节点将开始传输该信标帧的内容（相当于为这个节点投票）。经过最小迭代次数（可预先设置，默认为 10 次）后将选出路由器 RSSI 值最强的信标帧。

在达到预设迭代次数后，每个节点将单独检查其得票百分比（得票数/总数）以确定它是否应该成为根节点。如果节点的得票百分比大于预设的阈值（默认为 90%），则该节点将成为根节点。

下图展示了在 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中，根节点的自动选择过程。

1. 上电复位时，每个节点开始传输自己的信标帧（包括 MAC 地址和路由器 RSSI 值）。

2. 在多次传输和扫描迭代中，路由器 RSSI 最强的节点将在整个网络中传播。节点 C 具有最强的路由器 RSSI 值（-10 dB），因此它的信标帧将在整个网络中传播。所有参与选举的节点均给节点 C 投票，因此节点 C 的得票百分比为 100%。因此，节点 C 成为根节点，并与路由器连接。

3. 一旦节点 C 与路由器连接，节点 C 将成为节点 A/B/D/E 的首选父节点（即最浅的节点），并与这些节点连接。节点 A/B/D/E 将形成网络的第二层。

4. 节点 F 和节点 G 分别连接节点 D 和节点 E，并完成网络构建过程。

注解：用户可以通过 esp_mesh_set_attempts() 配置选举的最小迭代次数。用户应根据网络内的节点数量配置迭代次数（即 mesh 网络越大，所需的迭代次数越高）。

图 23: ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络构建过程
### 用户指定根节点

根节点也可以由用户指定，即直接让指定的根节点与路由器连接，并放弃选举过程。当根节点指定后，网络内的所有其他节点也必须放弃选举过程，以防止根节点冲突的发生。下图展示了在ESP-WIFI-MESH网络中，根节点的手动选择过程。

1. 节点 A 是由用户指定的根节点，因此直接与路由器连接。此时，所有其他节点放弃选举过程。  
2. 节点 C 和节点 D 将节点 A 选为自己的首选父节点，并与其形成连接。这两个节点将形成网络的第二层。  
3. 类似地，节点 B 和节点 E 将与节点 C 连接，节点 F 将与节点 D 连接。这三个节点将形成网络的第三层。  
4. 节点 G 将与节点 E 连接，形成网络的第四层。然而，由于该网络的最大允许层级已配置为 4，因此节点 G 将成为叶子节点，以防止形成任何新层。

**注解**：一旦指定根节点，该根节点应调用 esp_mesh_set_parent() 使其直接与路由器连接。类似地，所有其他节点都应该调用 esp_mesh_fix_root() 放弃选举过程。

### 选择父节点

默认情况下，ESP-WIFI-MESH 具有可以自组网的特点，也就是每个节点都可以自主选择与其形成上行连接的潜在父节点。自主选择出的父节点被称为首选父节点。用于选择首选父节点的标准旨在减少 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的层级，并平衡各个潜在父节点的下行连接数（参见首选父节点）。

警告：得票百分比阈值也可以使用 esp_mesh_set_vote_percentage() 进行配置。得票百分比阈值过低可能导致同一 mesh 网络中两个或多个节点成为根节点，进而分化为多个 mesh 网络。如果发生这种情况，ESP-WIFI-MESH 具有内部机制，可自主解决根节点冲突。这些具有多个根节点的网络将围绕一个根节点形成一个网络。然而，两个或多个路由器 SSID 相同但路由器 BSSID 不同的根节点冲突尚无法解决。
不过，ESP-WIFI-MESH 也允许用户使用自组网功能，即允许用户自己定义父节点选择标准，或直接指定某个节点为父节点（见：Mesh 手动组网示例）。

异步上电复位

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络构建可能会受到节点上电顺序的影响。如果网络中的某些节点为异步上电（即相隔几分钟上电），网络的最终结构可能与所有节点同步上电时的理想情况不同。延迟上电的节点将遵循以下规则：

**规则 1**：如果网络中已存在根节点，则延迟节点不会尝试选举成为新的根节点。即使自身的路由器 RSSI 更强。相反，延迟节点与其他节点间异，将通过与首置父节点连接来加入网络。如果该延迟节点为用户指定的根节点，则网络中的所有其他节点将保持空闲状态，直到延迟节点完成上电。

**规则 2**：如果延迟节点形成上行连接，并成为中间父节点，则后续也可能成为其他节点（即其他更深的节点）的新首置父节点。此时，其他节点切换上行连接至该延迟节点（见父节点切换）。

**规则 3**：如果空闲节点的指定父节点上电延迟了，则该空闲节点在没有找到指定父节点前不会尝试形成任何上行连接。空闲节点将无限期地保持空闲，直到其指定的父节点上电完成。

下方示例展示了异步上电对网络构建的影响。

1. 节点 A/C/D/F/G/H 同步上电，并通过广播其 MAC 地址和路由器 RSSI 开始选举根节点。节点 A 的 RSSI 最强，因此当选为根节点。

2. 一旦节点 A 成为根节点，其余的节点就开始与首置父节点逐层形成上行连接，并最终形成一个具有五层的网络。

3. 节点 B/E 由于存在上电延迟，因此即使路由器 RSSI 比节点 A 更强（-20 dB 和 -10 dB ）也不会尝试成为根节点。相反，这两个上电延迟节点均将与对应的首置父节点 A 和 C 形成上行连接。加入网络后，节点 B/E 均将成为中间父节点。

4. 节点 B 由于所处层矢变化（现为第二层）而成为新的首置父节点。因此节点 D/G 将切换其上行连接从而选择新的首置父节点。由于切换的发生，最终的网络层次从原来的五层减少至三层。

**同步上电**：如果所有节点均同步上电，节点 E （-10 dB）由于路由器 RSSI 最强而成为根节点。此时形成的网络结构与异步上电的情况截然不同。但是，如果用户手动选择根节点，则仍可以达到同步上电的网络结构（请见 esp_mesh_waive_root）。

Submit Document Feedback

Espressif Systems 1804 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
图 26: 网络构建（异步电源）示例
注解：从某种程度上，ESP-WIFI-MESH可以自动修复部分因异步上电引起的父节点选择的偏差（请见父节点切换）

环路，检测和处理

环路是指特定节点与其后世节点（特定节点子网中的节点）形成上行连接的情况。因此产生的循环连接路径将破坏mesh网络的拓扑结构。ESP-WIFI-MESH的节点在选择父节点时将主动排除路由表（见路由表）中的节点，从而避免与其子网中的节点建立上行连接并将形成环路。

在存在环路的情况下，ESP-WIFI-MESH可利用路径验证机制和能量传递机制来检测环路的产生。与子节点建立上行连接而导致环路形成的父节点将通知子节点环路的存在，并主动断开连接。

4.9.5 管理网络

作为一个自修复网络，ESP-WIFI-MESH可以检测并修正网络路由中的故障。当具有一个或多个子节点的父节点断开或父节点与其父节点之间的连接不稳定性时，会发生故障。ESP-WIFI-MESH中的子节点将自主选择一个新的父节点，并与其形成上行连接，以维持网络互联。ESP-WIFI-MESH可以处理根节点故障和中间节点故障。

根节点故障

如果根节点断开，则与之连接的节点（第二层节点）将及时检测到该根节点故障。第二层节点将主动尝试与根节点重建，但多次尝试失败后，第二层节点将启动新一轮的根节点选举。第二层中RSSI最强的节点将当选为新的根节点，而剩余的第二层节点将与新的根节点（如果不在范围内的话，也可与相邻父节点连接）形成上行连接。

如果根节点和下面多层的节点（例如根节点、第二层节点和第三层节点）同时断开，则位于最浅层的仍在正常工作的节点将发起根节点选举。下方示例展示了网络从根节点断开故障中进行自修复。

1. 节点C是网络的根节点。节点A/B/D/E是连接到节点C的第二层节点。
2. 节点C断开。在多次重连尝试失败后，第二层节点开始通过广播其路由器RSSI开始新一轮的选举。此时，节点B的路由器RSSI最强。
3. 节点B被选为根节点，并开始建立下层连接。剩余的第二层节点A/D/E形成与节点B的上行连接，从而使网络恢复，并且可以继续正常运行。

图27: 根节点故障的自修复示例

Espressif Systems 1806 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
注解：如果是手动指定的根节点断开，则无法进行自动修复。任何节点不会在存在指定根节点的情况下开始选举过程。

### 中间父节点故障

如果中间父节点断开，则与之断开的子节点将主动尝试与该父节点重连。在多次重连尝试失败后，每个
子节点开始扫描潜在父节点（请见判决帧和 RSSI 阈值）。

如果存在其他潜在的父节点，每个子节点将分别给自己选择一个新的首选父节点（请见首选父节点
），并与它形成上行连接。如果特定子节点没有其他潜在的父节点，则将无限期地保持空闲状态。

下方示例展示了网络从中间父节点断开故障中进行自修复。

![图28: 中间父节点故障的自修复](image)

1. 网络中存在节点 A 至 G。
2. 节点 C 断开。节点 F/G 检测到节点 C 的断开故障，并尝试与节点 C 重新连接。在多次重连尝试失败
   后，节点 F/G 将开始选择新的父选父节点。
3. 节点 G 因其范围内不存在任何父节点而暂时保持空闲。节点 F 的范围中 B 和 E 两个节点，但节点 B
   因为所处层级更低而当选新的父节点。节点 F 将与节点 B 连接后，并成为一个中间父节点，节点 G 将于
   节点 F 相连。这样一来，网络已经恢复了，但结构发生了变化（网络层级增加了 1 层）。

注解：如果子节点的父节点已被指定，则子节点不会尝试与其他潜在父节点连接。此时，该子节点将无
限期地保持空闲状态。

### 根节点切换

除非根节点断开，否则 ESP-WIFI-MESH 不会自动切换根节点。即使根节点的路由器 RSSI 降低至必须断
开的情况，根节点也将保持不变。根节点切换是指明确启动新选举过程的行为，即具有更强路由器 RSSI
的节点选为新的根节点。这可以用于应对根节点性能降低的情况。

要触发根节点切换，当前根节点必须明确调用 esp_mesh_waive_root() 以触发新的选举。当下根节
点将指示网络中的所有节点开始发送并扫描判决帧（见自动根节点选择）。但与此同时一直保持联网（即
不会变为空闲节点）。如果另一个节点收到的票数超过当前根节点，则将启动根节点切换过程，否则根
节点将保持不变。

新选出的新节点向当前的根节点发送 切换请求。而原先的根节点将返回一个应答通知，表示已经准备好
切换。一旦接收到应答，新选出的根节点将与其父节点断开连接，并迅速与路由器形成上行连接。进而
成为网络的新根节点。原先的根节点将断开与路由器的连接，并与此同时保持其所有下行连接并进入空闲状态。之前的根节点将开始扫描潜在的父节点并选择首选父节点。

下图说明了根节点切换的示例。

### 切换根节点示例

1. 节点 C 是当前的根节点，但路由器 RSSI 值 (-85 dB) 降低至较低水平。此时，新的选举过程被触发了。所有节点开始传输和扫描信标帧（此时仍保持连接）。

2. 经过多轮传输和扫描后，节点 B 被选为新的根节点。节点 B 向节点 C 发送了一个切换请求，节点 C 回应一个应答。

3. 节点 B 与其父节点断开连接，并与路由器连接，成为网络中的新根节点。节点 C 与路由器断开连接，进入空闲状态，并开始扫描并选择新的首父节点。**节点 C 在整个过程中仍保持其所有的下行连接。**

4. 节点 C 选择节点 B 作为其的首选父节点，与之形成上下连接，并成为一个第二层节点。由于节点 C 仍保持相同的子网，因此根节点切换后的网络结构没有变化。然而，由于切换的发生，节点 C 子网中每个节点的所处层级均增加了一层。如果根节点切换过程中产生了新的根节点，则**父节点切换** 可以随后调整网络结构。

### 注解：根节点切换必须要求选举，因此只有在使用自组网 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络时才支持。换句话说，如果使用指定的根节点，则不能进行根节点切换。

### 父节点切换

父节点切换是指一个子节点将其上行连接切换到更浅一层的另一个父节点。**父节点切换是自动的**，这意味着如果较低层出现了可用的潜在父节点（因“异步上电复位”产生），子节点将自动更改其上行连接。

所有潜在的父节点将定期发送信标帧（参见**信标帧**和 **RSSI 阈值**），从而使子节点扫描较浅层的父节点的可用性。由于父节点切换，自组网 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络可以动态调整其网络结构，以确保每个连接均具有良好 RSSI 值，并且网络中的层级最小。

### 4.9.6 数据传输
ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络使用 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包传输数据。ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包完全包含在 Wi-Fi 数据帧中。ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的多跳数据传输将涉及通过不同 Wi-Fi 数据帧在每个无线跳上传输的单个 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包。

下图显示了 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包的结构及其与 Wi-Fi 数据帧的关系。

![ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包结构图](image)

图 29: ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包

ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包的**报头**包含源节点和目标节点的 MAC 地址。**选项 (option)** 字段包含有关特殊类型 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包的信息，例如组传输或来自外部 IP 网络的数据包（请参阅 MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP 和 MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR）。

ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包的**有效载荷**包含实际的应用数据。该数据可以为原始二进制数据，也可以是使用 HTTP、MQTT 和 JSON 等应用层协议的编码数据（请见：mesh_proto_t）。

**注释**: 作为外部 IP 网络发送 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包时，报头的目标地址字段将包含目标服务器的 IP 地址和端口号，而不是节点的 MAC 地址（请见：mesh_addr_t）。此外，根节点将处理外发 TCP/IP 数据包的形成。

**组控制和组播**

组播功能允许将单个 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包同时发送给网络中的多个节点。ESP-WIFI-MESH 中的组播可以通过“指定一个目标节点列表”或“预配置一个节点组”来实现。这两种组播方式均需调用 esp_mesh_send() 实现。

如果通过“指定目标节点列表”实现组播，用户必须首先将 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包的目标地址设置为**组播节点地址**（比如 01:00:5E:xx:xx:xx）。这表明 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包是一个拥有一组地址的组播数据包，且该地址应该从报头选项中获得。然后，用户必须将目标节点的 MAC 地址列为选项（请见：mesh_opt_t 和 MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP）。这种组播方式不需要进行提前设置，但由于每个目标节点的 MAC 地址均需列为报头的选项字段，因此会产生大量开销数据。

分组组播允许 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包被发送到一个预先配置的节点组。每个分组都有一个具有唯一性的 ID 标识。用户可通过 esp_mesh_set_group_id() 将节点加入一个组。分组组播需要将 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包的目标地址设置为目标组的 ID，还必须设置 MESH_DATA_GROUP 标志位。分组组播产生的开销更小，但必须提前将节点加入分组中。

**注释**: 在组播期间，网络中的所有节点在 MAC 层都会收到 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包。然而，不包括在 MAC 地址列表或目标组中的节点将简单地过滤掉这些数据包。

**广播**

广播功能允许将单个 ESP-WIFI-MESH 数据包同时发送给网络中的所有节点。每个节点可以将一个广播包转发至其所有上行和下行连接，使得数据包尽可能快地在整个网络中传播。但是，ESP-WIFI-MESH 利
用以下方法来避免在广播期间浪费带宽。
1. 当中间父节点接收到来自其父节点的广播包时，它会将该数据包转发给自己的各个子节点，同时为自己保存一份数据包的副本。
2. 当中间父节点是广播的源节点时，它会将该数据包向上发送至其父节点，并向下发送给自己的各个子节点。
3. 当中间父节点接收到一个来自其子节点的广播包时，它会将该数据包转发给其父节点和其余子节点，同时为自己保存一份数据包的副本。
4. 当叶子节点是广播的源节点时，它会直接将该数据包发送至其父节点。
5. 当根节点是广播的源节点时，它会将该数据包发送至自己的所有子节点。
6. 当根节点接收到来自其子节点的广播包时，它会将该数据包转发给其余子节点，同时为自己保存一份数据包的副本。
7. 当节点接收到一个源地址与自身 MAC 地址匹配的广播包时，它会将该广播包丢弃。
8. 当中间父节点接收到一个来自其父节点的广播包时（该数据包最初来自该父节点的一个子节点），它会将该广播包丢弃。

上行流量控制

ESP-WIFI-MESH 依赖父节点来控制其直接子节点的上行数据流。为了防止父节点的消息缓冲因上传传输数据包而溢出，父节点将为每个子节点分配一个称为接收窗口的上行传输配额。每个子节点均必须申请接收窗口才允许进行上行传输。每个接收窗口的大小可以动态调整。完成从子节点到父节点的上行传输包括以下步骤：
1. 在每次传输之前，子节点向其父节点发送窗口请求。窗口请求中包括一个序号，与子节点的待传输数据包相对应。
2. 父节点接收窗口请求，并将序号与子节点发送的前一个数据包的序号进行比较，用于计算返回给子节点的接收窗口大小。
3. 子节点根据父节点指定的窗口大小发送数据包。如果子节点的接收窗口耗尽，它必须通过发送请求获得另一个接收窗口，然后才允许继续发送。

注解：ESP-WIFI-MESH 不支持任何下行流量控制。

警告：由于父节点切换，数据包可能会在上行传输期间丢失。

由于根节点是通向外部 IP 网络的唯一接口，因此下行节点必须了解根节点与外部 IP 网络的连接状态，否则，节点可能会尝试向一个已经与 IP 网络断开连接的根节点发送数据，从而造成不必要的传输和数据包丢失。ESP-WIFI-MESH 可以基于监测根节点和外部 IP 网络的连接状态，提供一种稳定外发数据吞吐量的机制。根节点可以通过调用 esp_mesh_post_toDS_state() 将自身与外部 IP 网络的连接状态广播给所有其他节点。

双向数据流

下图展示了 ESP-WIFI-MESH 双向数据流涉及的各种网络层。

由于使用路由表，ESP-WIFI-MESH 能够在 mesh 层中完全处理数据包的转发。TCP/IP 层仅与 mesh 网络的根节点有关，可帮助根节点与外部 IP 网络的数据包传送。
4.9.7 信道切换

背景

在传统的 Wi-Fi 网络中，信道代表预设的频率范围。在基础设施基本服务集 (BSS) 中，工作 AP 及与之相连的 station 必须处于传输信标的工作信道（1 到 14）中。物理上相邻的 BSS 使用相同的工作信道会导致干扰产生和性能下降。

为了允许 BSS 适应不断变化的物理层条件并保持性能，Wi-Fi 网络中增加了网络信道切换的机制。网络信道切换是将 BSS 移至新的工作信道，并同时最大限度地减少期间对 BSS 的影响。然而，我们应该认识到，网络信道切换可能不会成功，无法将原信道中的所有 station 均移动至新的信道。

在基础设施 Wi-Fi 网络中，网络信道切换由 AP 触发，目的是将该 AP 及与之相连的所有 station 同步切换到新的信道。网络信道切换是通过在 AP 的周期性发送信标帧内嵌入一个信道切换公告 (CSA) 元素来实现的。在网络信道切换前，该 CSA 元素用于向所有连接的 station 广播有关即将发生的网络信道切换，并且将包含在多个信标帧中。

一个 CSA 元素包含有关 新信道号 和 信道切换计数 的信息。其中，信道切换计数指示在网络信道切换之前剩余的信标帧间隔 (TBTT) 数量。因此，信道切换计数依每个信标帧递减，并且允许与之连接的 station 与 AP 同步进行信道切换。

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络信道切换

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络信道切换还利用包含 CSA 元素的信标帧。然而，ESP-WIFI-MESH 作作为一个多跳网络，其信标帧可能无法到达网络中的所有节点（这点与单跳网络不同），因此信道切换过程更加复杂。因此，ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络依赖于通过节点触发 CSA 元素，从而实现在整个网络中的传播。

当具有一个或多个子节点的中间父节点接收到包含 CSA 元素的信标帧时，该节点会将该元素包含在其下一个发送的信标帧 (即具有相同的 新信道号 和 信道切换计数 ) 中，从而实现该 CSA 元素的转发。鉴于 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中的所有节点都接收到来自相同的 CSA 元素，这些节点可以使用 信道切换计数 来同步其信道切换，但也会经历因 CSA 元素转发造成的延迟。

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络信道切换可以由路由器或根节点触发。

根节点触发 由根节点触发的信道切换只能在 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络未连接到路由器时才会发生。通过调用 esp_mesh_switch_channel()，根节点将设置一个初始 信道切换计数值，并开始在其信标帧中包含 CSA 元素。接着，每个 CSA 元素将抵达第二层节点，并通过第二层节点自己的信标帧继续进行向下转发。
网络信道切换的影响

- 由于 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络信道切换与路由器的信道切换不同时，ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络和路由器之间会出现临时信道切换。ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的信道切换时间取决于 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的信标间隔和根节点的自定义信道切换计数。
- 在 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络切换期间，信道差异将阻止根节点和路由器之间的任何数据交换。
- 在 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络中，根节点和中间父节点将请求与其连接的子节点停止传输，直至信道切换发生（通过将 CSA 元素的信道切换模式字段设置为 1）。
- 信道的路由器触发网络信道切换可能会降低 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的性能。请注意，这可能是由 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络本身造成的（例如由于 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的无线介质竞争等原因）。此时，用户应该禁用路由器触发的自主信道切换，并直接指定一个信道。
- 当存在临时信道差异时，根节点从技术上来说仍保持连接至路由器。
  - 如果根节点经过一定数量信标间隔仍无法接到信标帧或探测来自路由器的响应，则断开连接。
  - 断开连接时，根节点将自动重新扫描所有信道以确定是否存在路由器。
- 如果根节点无法接收任何路由器的 CSA 信标帧（例如短暂的路由器切换时间），则路由器将在没有 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络存在的情况下重新启动信道切换。
  - 在路由器切换信道后，根节点将不再能够接收路由器的信标帧和探测响应，并导致在一定数量的信标间隔后断开连接。
  - 在断开连接后，根节点将重新扫描所有信道，寻找路由器。
  - 根节点将在整个过程中维护与之相连的下行连接。

注解：虽然 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络信道切换的目的是将网络中的所有节点移动到新的工作信道，但也应该认识到，信道切换可能无法成功移动所有节点（比如由于节点故障等原因）。
4.9.8 性能

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的性能可以基于以下多个指标进行评估:

组网时长：从头开始构建 ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络所需的总时长。

修改时间：从网络检测到节点断开到执行适当操作（例如生成新的根节点或形成新的连接等）以修复网络所需的时间。

每跳延迟：数据每经过一次无线 hop 而经历的延迟，即从父节点向子节点（或从子节点向父节点）发送一个数据包所需的时间。

网络节点容量：ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络可以同时支持的节点总数。该指标取决于节点可以接受到的最大下行连接数和网络中允许的最大层级。

ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的常见性能指标如下表所示：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>预设信道</th>
<th>允许信道切换</th>
<th>预置路由器</th>
<th>允许路由器切换</th>
<th>存在根节点</th>
<th>允许切换</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>信道与路由器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>仅信道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>信道与路由器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>信道与路由器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>信道与路由器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>仅信道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>无</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>信道与路由器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>仅路由器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>信道与路由器</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解：上述性能指标的测试条件见下。

- 测试设备数量：100
- 最大允许下行连接数量：6
- 最大允许层级：6

注解：吞吐量取决于数据包错误率和 hop 数量。

注解：用户应注意，ESP-WIFI-MESH 网络的性能与网络配置和工作环境密切相关。
4.9.9  更多注意事项

- 数据传输使用 Wi-Fi WPA2-PSK 加密
- Mesh 网络 IE 使用 AES 加密

本文图片中使用的路由器与互联网图标来自 www.flaticon.com 的 Smashicons。

4.10  Core Dump

4.10.1  Overview

ESP-IDF provides support to generate core dumps on unrecoverable software errors. This useful technique allows post-mortem analysis of software state at the moment of failure. Upon the crash system enters panic state, prints some information and halts or reboots depending configuration. User can choose to generate core dump in order to analyse the reason of failure on PC later on. Core dump contains snapshots of all tasks in the system at the moment of failure. Snapshots include tasks control blocks (TCB) and stacks. So it is possible to find out what task, at what instruction (line of code) and what callstack of that task lead to the crash. It is also possible dumping variables content on demand if previously attributed accordingly. ESP-IDF provides special script espcoredump.py to help users to retrieve and analyse core dumps. This tool provides two commands for core dumps analysis:

- info_corefile - prints crashed task’s registers, callstack, list of available tasks in the system, memory regions and contents of memory stored in core dump (TCBs and stacks)
- dbg_corefile - creates core dump ELF file and runs GDB debug session with this file. User can examine memory, variables and tasks states manually. Note that since not all memory is saved in core dump only values of variables allocated on stack will be meaningful

For more information about core dump internals see the - Core dump internals

4.10.2  Configurations

There are a number of core dump related configuration options which user can choose in project configuration menu (idf.py menuconfig).

Core dump data destination (Components -> Core dump -> Data destination)

- Save core dump to Flash (Flash)
- Print core dump to UART (UART)
- Disable core dump generation (None)

Core dump data format (Components -> Core dump -> Core dump data format)

- ELF format (Executable and Linkable Format file for core dump)
- Binary format (Basic binary format for core dump)

The ELF format contains extended features and allow to save more information about broken tasks and crashed software but it requires more space in the flash memory. This format of core dump is recommended for new software designs and is flexible enough to extend saved information for future revisions.

The Binary format is kept for compatibility standpoint, it uses less space in the memory to keep data and provides better performance.

Core dump data integrity check (Components -> Core dump -> Core dump data integrity check)

- Use CRC32 for core dump integrity verification
- Use SHA256 for core dump integrity verification (only work in ELF format)

The CRC32 option provides better calculation performance and consumes less memory for storage.

The SHA256 hash algorithm provides greater probability of detecting corruption than a CRC32 with multiple bit errors.
Maximum number of tasks snapshots in core dump (Components -> Core dump -> Maximum number of tasks)

Delay before core dump is printed to UART (Components -> Core dump -> Delay before print to UART)

The value is in ms.

Handling of UART core dumps in IDF Monitor (Components -> Core dump -> Delay before print to UART)

The value is base64 encoded.

- Decode and show summary (info_corefile)
- Don’t decode

4.10.3 Save core dump to flash

When this option is selected core dumps are saved to special partition on flash. When using default partition table files which are provided with ESP-IDF it automatically allocates necessary space on flash, but if user wants to use its own layout file together with core dump feature it should define separate partition for core dump as it is shown below:

```plaintext
# Name, Type, SubType, Offset, Size
# Note: if you have increased the bootloader size, make sure to update the offsets...
--to avoid overlap
nvs, data, nvs, 0x9000, 0x6000
phy_init, data, phy, 0xf000, 0x1000
factory, app, factory, 0x10000, 1M
coredump, data, coredump,, 64K
```

There are no special requirements for partition name. It can be chosen according to the user application needs, but partition type should be ‘data’ and sub-type should be ‘coredump’. Also when choosing partition size note that core dump data structure introduces constant overhead of 20 bytes and per-task overhead of 12 bytes. This overhead does not include size of TCB and stack for every task. So partition size should be at least 20 + max tasks number x (12 + TCB size + max task stack size) bytes.

The example of generic command to analyze core dump from flash is: `espcoredump.py -p </path/to/serial/port> info_corefile </path/to/program/elf/file>`

4.10.4 Print core dump to UART

When this option is selected base64-encoded core dumps are printed on UART upon system panic. In this case user should save core dump text body to some file manually and then run the following command: `espcoredump.py --chip <target_chip_type> info_corefile -t b64 -c </path/to/program/elf/file> or espcoredump.py --chip <target_chip_type> dbg_corefile -t b64 -c </path/to/program/elf/file>`

Base64-encoded body of core dump will be between the following header and footer:

```plaintext
== CORE DUMP START ==
<body of base64-encoded core dump, save it to file on disk>
== CORE DUMP END ==
```

The CORE DUMP START and CORE DUMP END lines must not be included in core dump text file.

4.10.5 ROM Functions in Backtraces

It is possible situation that at the moment of crash some tasks or/and crashed task itself have one or more ROM functions in their callstacks. Since ROM is not part of the program ELF it will be impossible for GDB to parse such callstacks, because it tries to analyse functions’ prologues to accomplish that. In that case callstack printing will be
broken with error message at the first ROM function. To overcome this issue you can use ROM ELF provided by Espressif (https://dl.espressif.com/dl/esp32_rom.elf) and pass it to ‘espcoredump.py’.

4.10.6 Dumping variables on demand

Sometimes you want to read the last value of a variable to understand the root cause of a crash. Core dump supports retrieving variable data over GDB by attributing special notations declared variables.

Supported notations and RAM regions

- **COREDUMP_DRAM_ATTR** places variable into DRAM area which will be included into dump.
- **COREDUMP_RTC_ATTR** places variable into RTC area which will be included into dump.
- **COREDUMP_RTC_FAST_ATTR** places variable into RTC_FAST area which will be included into dump.

Example

1. In *Project Configuration Menu*, enable **COREDUMP TO FLASH**, then save and exit.
2. In your project, create a global variable in DRAM area as such as:

   ```
   // uint8_t global_var;
   COREDUMP_DRAM_ATTR uint8_t global_var;
   ```

3. In main application, set the variable to any value and `assert(0)` to cause a crash.

   ```
   global_var = 25;
   assert(0);
   ```

4. Build, flash and run the application on a target device and wait for the dumping information.
5. Run the command below to start core dumping in GDB, where **PORT** is the device USB port:

   ```
   espcoredump.py -p PORT dbg_corefile <path/to/elf>
   ```

6. In GDB shell, type `p global_var` to get the variable content:

   ```
   (gdb) p global_var
   $1 = 25 '\031'
   ```

4.10.7 Running espcoredump.py

Generic command syntax: `espcoredump.py [options] command [args]`

**Script Options**

- `--chip {auto,esp32,esp32s2,esp32c3}` Target chip type. Default value is “auto”
- `--port PORT, -p PORT` Serial port device. Either “chip” or “port” need to be specified to determine the port when you have multi-target connected at the same time.
- `--baud BAUD, -b BAUD` Serial port baud rate used when flashing/reading
- `--gdb-timeout-sec GDB_TIMEOUT_SEC` Overwrite the default internal delay for gdb responses

**Commands**

- `dbg_corefile` Starts GDB debugging session with specified corefile
- `info_corefile` Print core dump info from file

**Command Arguments**

- `--debug DEBUG, -d DEBUG` Log level (0..3)
- `--gdb gdb, -g gdb` Path to gdb
- `--core CORE, -c CORE` Path to core dump file (if skipped core dump will be read from flash)
--core-format {b64,elf,raw}, -t {b64,elf,raw}  File specified with “-c” is an ELF (‘elf’), raw (raw) or base64-encoded (b64) binary
--off OFF, -o OFF  Offset of coredump partition in flash (type “idf.py partition-table” to see).
--save-core SAVE_CORE, -s SAVE_CORE  Save core to file. Otherwise temporary core file will be deleted. Does not work with “-c”
--rom-elf ROM_ELF, -r ROM_ELF  Path to ROM ELF file. Will use “<target>_rom.elf” if not specified
--print-mem, -m  Print memory dump. Only valid when info_corefile.
<prog>  Path to program ELF file.

4.11 Event Handling

Several ESP-IDF components use events to inform application about state changes, such as connection or disconnection. This document gives an overview of these event mechanisms.

4.11.1 Wi-Fi, Ethernet, and IP Events

Before the introduction of esp_event library, events from Wi-Fi driver, Ethernet driver, and TCP/IP stack were dispatched using the so-called legacy event loop. The following sections explain each of the methods.

esp_event Library Event Loop

esp_event library is designed to supersede the legacy event loop for the purposes of event handling in ESP-IDF. In the legacy event loop, all possible event types and event data structures had to be defined in system_event_id_t enumeration and system_event_info_t union, which made it impossible to send custom events to the event loop, and use the event loop for other kinds of events (e.g. Mesh). Legacy event loop also supported only one event handler function, therefore application components could not handle some of Wi-Fi or IP events themselves, and required application to forward these events from its event handler function.

See esp_event library API reference for general information on using this library. Wi-Fi, Ethernet, and IP events are sent to the default event loop provided by this library.

Legacy Event Loop

This event loop implementation is started using esp_event_loop_init() function. Application typically supplies an event handler, a function with the following signature:

```c
esp_err_t event_handler(void *ctx, system_event_t *event) {
}
```

Both the pointer to event handler function, and an arbitrary context pointer are passed to esp_event_loop_init().

When Wi-Fi, Ethernet, or IP stack generate an event, this event is sent to a high-priority event task via a queue. Application-provided event handler function is called in the context of this task. Event task stack size and event queue size can be adjusted using CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE and CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE options, respectively.

Event handler receives a pointer to the event structure (system_event_t) which describes current event. This structure follows a tagged union pattern: event_id member indicates the type of event, and event_info member is a union of description structures. Application event handler will typically use switch(event->event_id) to handle different kinds of events.
If application event handler needs to relay the event to some other task, it is important to note that event pointer passed to the event handler is a pointer to temporary structure. To pass the event to another task, application has to make a copy of the entire structure.

**Event IDs and Corresponding Data Structures**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event ID (legacy event ID)</th>
<th>Event data structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wi-Fi</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_WIFI_READY</td>
<td>wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE</td>
<td>wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_START</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED</td>
<td>wifi_event_sta_connected_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED</td>
<td>wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE</td>
<td>wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED</td>
<td>wifi_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN</td>
<td>wifi_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_AP_START</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_AP_STOP</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED</td>
<td>wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED</td>
<td>wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED</td>
<td>wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ethernet</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETHERNET_EVENT_START</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETHERNET_EVENT_STOP</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETHERNET_EVENT_CONNECTED</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETHERNET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP</td>
<td>ip_event_got_ip_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP_EVENT_STA_IPASSIGNED</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP6</td>
<td>ip_event_got_ip6_t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP</td>
<td>ip_event_got_ip_t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.11.2 Mesh Events

ESP-WIFI-MESH uses a system similar to the Legacy Event Loop to deliver events to the application. See 系统事件 for details.
4.11.3 Bluetooth Events

Various modules of the Bluetooth stack deliver events to applications via dedicated callback functions. Callback functions receive the event type (enumerated value) and event data (union of structures for each event type). The following list gives the registration API name, event enumeration type, and event parameter type.

- **BLE GAP**: esp_ble_gap_register_callback(), esp_gap_ble_cb_event_t, esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t.
- **BT GAP**: esp_bt_gap_register_callback(), esp_gap_ble_cb_event_t, esp_gap_ble_cb_param_t.
- **GATT**: esp_ble_gattc_register_callback(), esp_gattc_cb_event_t, esp_gattc_cb_param_t.
- **GATT**: esp_ble_gatts_register_callback(), esp_gatts_cb_event_t, esp_gatts_cb_param_t.
- **SPP**: esp_spp_register_callback(), esp_spp_cb_event_t, esp_spp_cb_param_t.
- **Blufi**: esp_blufi_register_callbacks(), esp_blufi_cb_event_t, esp_blufi_cb_param_t.
- **A2DP**: esp_a2d_register_callback(), esp_a2d_cb_event_t, esp_a2d_cb_param_t.
- **AVRC**: esp_avrc_ct_register_callback(), esp_avrc_ct_event_t, esp_avrc_ct_cb_param_t.
- **HFP Client**: esp_hf_client_register_callback(), esp_hf_client_event_t, esp_hf_client_cb_param_t.
- **HFP AG**: esp_hf_ag_register_callback(), esp_hf_ag_cb_event_t, esp_hf_ag_cb_param_t.

4.12 片外 RAM

4.12.1 简介

ESP32 提供了好几百 KB 的片上 RAM，可以满足大部分需求。但在有些场景可能需要更多 RAM。因此 ESP32 另外提供了高达 4 MB 的片外 SPI RAM 存储器供用户使用。片外 RAM 已经集成到内存映射中，在某些范围内与片上 RAM 使用方式相同。

4.12.2 硬件

ESP32 支持与 SPI Flash 芯片并联的 SPI PSRAM（伪静态随机存储器）。虽然 ESP32 支持多种类型的 RAM 芯片，但 ESP-IDF 当前仅支持乐鑫品牌的 PSRAM 芯片，如 ESP-PSRAM32、ESP-PSRAM64 等。

注解：PSRAM 芯片的工作电压为 1.8 V 和 3.3 V。其工作电压必须与 flash 的工作电压匹配。请查询您 PSRAM 芯片以及 ESP32 的技术规格书获取准确的工作电压。对于 1.8 V 的 PSRAM 芯片，请确保在启动时将 MTDI 管脚设置为高电平，或者将 ESP32 中的 eFuses 设置为始终使用 1.8 V 的 VDD_SIO 电平，否则有可能会损坏 PSRAM 和/或 flash 芯片。

注解：乐鑫同时提供模组和系统级封装芯片，集成了兼容的 PSRAM 和 flash，可直接用于终端产品 PCB 中。如需了解更多信息，请前往乐鑫官网。

有关将 SoC 或模组管脚连接到片外 PSRAM 芯片的具体细节，请查阅 SoC 或模组技术规格书。

4.12.3 配置片外 RAM

ESP-IDF 完全支持将片外 RAM 集成到您的应用程序中。在启动并完成片外 RAM 初始后，可以将 ESP-IDF 配置为用多种方式处理片外 RAM：
集成片外 RAM 到 ESP32 内存映射

在 `CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE` 中选择“Integrate RAM into memory map (集成片外 RAM 到 ESP32 内存映射)”选项。

这是集成片外 RAM 最基础的设置选项，大多数用户需要用到更低级的选项。

ESP-IDF 启动过程中，片外 RAM 被映射到以 0x3F800000 起始的数据地址空间（字节可寻址），空间大小正好为 SPI RAM 的大小 (4 MB)。

应用程序可以通过创建指向该区域的指针手动将数据放入片外存储器，同时应用程序全权负责管理片外 SPI RAM，包括协调 Buffer 的使用，防止发生损坏等。

添加片外 RAM 到堆内存分配器

在 `CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE` 中选择 “Make RAM allocatable using heap_caps_malloc( ..., MAL-LOC_CAP_SPIRAM)” 选项。

启用上述选项后，片外 RAM 被映射到地址 0xF800000，并将该区域添加到携带 `MAL-LOC_CAP_SPIRAM` 标志的堆内存分配器。

程序如果想从片外存储器分配存储空间，则需要调用 `heap_caps_malloc(size, MAL-LOC_CAP_SPIRAM)`，之后可以调用 `free()` 函数释放这部分存储空间。

调用 malloc() 分配片外 RAM

在 `CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE` 中选择 “Make RAM allocatable using malloc() as well” 选项，该选项为默认选项。

启用此选项后，片外存储器将被添加到内存分配程序 (与上一选项相同)，同时也将被添加到由标准 `malloc()` 函数返回的 RAM 中。

应用程序因此可以使用片外 RAM，无需重写代码就能使用 `heap_caps_malloc(..., MAL-LOC_CAP_SPIRAM)`。

如果某次内存分配偏向于片外存储器，您也可以使用 `CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_ALWAYSINTERNAL` 设置分配空间的大小阈值，控制分配结果：

- 如果分配的空间小于阈值，分配程序将首先选择内存存储器。
- 如果分配的空间等于或大于阈值，分配程序将首先选择外部存储器。

如果优先考虑的内部或外部存储器中没有可用的存储块，分配程序则会选择其他类型存储。

由于有些内存缓冲器仅在内部存储器中分配，因此需要使用第二配置项 `CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_RESERVE_INTERNAL` 定义一个内部内存池，仅限显式的内部存储器分配使用 (例如用于 DMA 的存储器)。常规 `malloc()` 将不会从该池中分配，但可以使用 `MALLOC_CAP_DMA` 和 `MALLOC_CAP_INTERNAL` 标志从该池中分配存储器。

允许 bss 段放入片外存储器

通过勾选 `CONFIG_SPIRAM_ALLOW_BSS_SEG_EXTERNAL_MEMORY` 启用该选项，此选项配置与其它三个选项互不影响。

启用该选项后，从 0x3F800000 起始的地址空间将用于存储来自 lwip、net80211、libpp 和 bluedroid ESP-IDF 库中零初始化的数据 (BSS 段)。
EXT_RAM_ATTR 宏应用于任何静态声明（未初始化为非零值）之后，可以将附加数据从内部 BSS 段移到片外 RAM。

也可以使用链接器片段方案 extram_bss 将组件或库的 BSS 段放到片外 RAM 中。

启用此选项可以减少 BSS 段占用的内部静态存储。

剩余的片外 RAM 也可以通过上述方法添加到堆分配器中。

允许 noinit 段放入片外存储器

通过勾选 CONFIG_SPIRAM_ALLOW_NOINIT_SEG_EXTERNAL_MEMORY 启用该选项。启用该选项后，外部 RAM 中提供的地址空间区域将用于存储未初始化的数据。即使在启动或重新启动期间，放置在该段中的值也不会被初始化或修改。

通过应用 EXT_RAM_NOINIT_ATTR 宏，可以将数据从内部 NOINIT 段移到片外 RAM。剩余的片外 RAM 也可以通过上述方法添加到堆分配器中，具体请参考添加片外 RAM 到堆内存分配。

4.12.4 片外 RAM 使用限制

使用片外 RAM 有下面一些限制：

- Flash cache 禁用时（比如，正在写入 flash），片外 RAM 将无法访问；同样，对片外 RAM 的读写操作也将导致 cache 访问异常。出于这个原因，ESP-IDF 不会在片外 RAM 中分配任务堆栈（详见下文）。
- 片外 RAM 不能用于存储 DMA 事务描述符，也不能用作 DMA 读写操作的缓冲区 (Buffer)。与 DMA 搭配使用的 Buffer 必须先使用 heap_caps_malloc(size, MALLOC_CAP_DMA) 进行分配，之后可以调用标准 free() 回调释放 Buffer。
- 片外 RAM 与片外 flash 使用相同的 cache 区域，这意味着频繁在片外 RAM 访问的变量可以像在片上 RAM 中一样快速读取和修改。但访问大块数据时（大于 32 KB），cache 空间可能会不足，访问速度将回落到片外 RAM 访问速度。此外，访问大块数据会挤出 flash cache，可能降低代码执行速度。
- 一般来说，片外 RAM 不可用作任务堆栈存储器。因此 xTaskCreate() 及类似函数将始终为堆栈和任务 TCB 分配片上存储器，而 xTaskCreateStatic() 类型的函数将检查传递的 Buffer 是否属于片上存储器。

可以使用 CONFIG_SPIRAM_ALLOW_STACK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY 选项将任务堆栈放入片外存储器。这时，必须使用 xTaskCreateStatic() 指定从片外存储器分配的任务堆栈缓冲区，否则任务堆栈将会从片上存储器分配。

4.12.5 初始化失败

默认情况下，片外 RAM 初始化失败将终止 ESP-IDF 启动。如果想禁用此功能，可启用 CONFIG_SPIRAM_IGNORE_NOTFOUND 配置选项。

如果启用 CONFIG_SPIRAM_ALLOW_BSS_SEG_EXTERNAL_MEMORY，忽略失败的选项将无法使用，这是因为在链接时，链接器已经向片外存储器分配标志符。

- Regarding stacks in PSRAM: For tasks not calling on code in ROM in any way, directly or indirectly, the menuconfig option CONFIG_SPIRAM_ALLOW_STACK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY will eliminate the check in xTaskCreateStatic, allowing a task’s stack to be in external RAM. Using this is not advised, however.
- When used at 80 MHz clock speed, external RAM must also occupy either the HSPI or VSPI bus. Select which SPI host will be used by CONFIG_SPIRAM_OCCUPY_SPI_HOST.

4.12.6 Chip revisions

There are some issues with certain revisions of ESP32 that have repercussions for use with external RAM. The issues are documented in the ESP32 ECO document. In particular, ESP-IDF handles the bugs mentioned in the following ways:
Chapter 4. API

ESP32 rev v0

ESP-IDF has no workaround for the bugs in this revision of silicon, and it cannot be used to map external PSRAM into ESP32’s main memory map.

ESP32 rev v1

The bugs in this revision of silicon cause issues if certain sequences of machine instructions operate on external memory. (ESP32 ECO 3.2). As a workaround, the GCC compiler received the flag \texttt{-mfix-esp32-psram-cache-issue} to filter these sequences and only output the code that can safely be executed. Enable this flag by checking \texttt{CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND}.

Aside from linking to a recompiled version of Newlib with the additional flag, ESP-IDF also does the following:

- Avoids using some ROM functions
- Allocates static memory for the WiFi stack

ESP32 rev v3

ESP32 revision 3 ("ECO V3") fixes the PSRAM cache issue found in rev. 1. When \texttt{CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN} option is set to rev. 3, compiler workarounds related to PSRAM will be disabled. For more information about ESP32 ECO V3, see ESP32 ECO V3 User Guide.

4.13 严重错误

4.13.1 概述

在某些情况下，程序并不会按照我们的预期运行，在 ESP-IDF 中，这些情况包括:

- CPU 异常: 非法指令，加载/存储时的内存对齐错误，加载/存储时的访问权限错误，双重异常。
- 系统级检查错误:
  - 中断看门狗 超时
  - 任务看门狗 超时（只有打开 \texttt{CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_PANIC} 后才会触发严重错误）
  - 高速缓存访问错误
  - 掉电检测事件
  - 堆栈溢出
  - Stack 粉碎保护检查
  - Heap 完整性检查
  - 未定义行为清理器（UBSAN）检查
- 使用 assert, configASSERT 等类似的宏导致失败。

本指南会介绍 ESP-IDF 中这类错误的处理流程，并给出对应的解决建议。

4.13.2 紧急处理程序

概述 中列举的所有错误都会由 紧急处理程序（Panic Handler）负责处理。

紧急处理程序首先会将出错原因打印到控制台，例如 CPU 异常的错误信息通常会类似于

Guru Meditation Error: Core 0 panic'ed (IllegalInstruction). Exception was... unhandled.

对于一些系统级检查错误（如中断看门狗超时，高速缓存访问错误等），错误信息会类似于

Guru Meditation Error: Core 0 panic'ed (Cache disabled but cached memory... region accessed). Exception was unhandled.
不管哪种情况，错误原因都会被打印在括号中。请参阅《Guru Meditation 错误》以查看所有可能的出错原因。

紧急处理程序接下来的行为将取决于 `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC` 的设置，支持的选项包括:

- 打印 CPU 寄存器，然后重启 (`CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_REBOOT`) - 默认选项
- 打印系统发生异常时 CPU 寄存器的值，打印回溯，最后重启芯片。
- 打印 CPU 寄存器，然后暂停 (`CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_HALT`) 与上一个选项类似，但不会重启，而是选择暂停程序的运行。重启程序需要外部执行复位操作。
- **不** 打印 CPU 寄存器的值，也不打印回溯，立即重启芯片。
- 调用 `GDB Stub (CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_GDBSTUB)` 启动 GDB 服务器，通过控制台 UART 接口与 GDB 进行通信。详细信息请参阅 `GDB Stub`。

紧急处理程序的行为还受到另外两个配置项的影响:

- 如果使能了 `CONFIG_ESP32_DEBUG_OCDAWARE` (默认)，紧急处理程序会检测 ESP32 是否已经连接 JTAG 调试器。如果检测成功，程序会暂停运行。并将控制权交给调试器。在这种情况下，寄存器和回溯不会被打印到控制台，并且也不会使用 GDB Stub 和 Core Dump 的功能。
- 如果使能了 `内核转储` 功能，系统状态（任务堆栈和寄存器）会被转储到 Flash 或者 UART 以供后续分析。
- 如果 `CONFIG_ESP_PANIC_HANDLER_IRAM` 被禁用（默认情况下禁用），紧急处理程序的代码会放置在 Flash 而不是 IRAM 中。这意味着，如果 ESP-IDF 在 Flash 高速缓存使用完毕时崩溃，在运行 GDB Stub 和内核转储之前紧急处理程序会自动重新使能 Flash 高速缓存。如果 Flash 高速缓存也崩溃了，这样做会增加一些小风险。
- 如果禁用了该选项，紧急处理程序的代码（包括所需的 UART 函数）会放置在 IRAM 中。当禁用 Flash 高速缓存（例如写入 SPI flash）时或触发异常导致 Flash 高速缓存崩溃时，可用此选项调试一些复杂的崩溃问题。

下图展示了紧急处理程序的行为:

**4.13.3 寄存器转储与回溯**

除非启用了 `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT` 否则紧急处理程序会将 CPU 寄存器和回溯打印到控制台

```
Core register dump:
PC : 0x400e14ed PS : 0x00060030 A0 : 0x800d0805 A1 : ...
~0x3fff5030
A2 : 0x00000000 A3 : 0x00000001 A4 : 0x00000001 A5 : ...
~0x3fff50dc
A6 : 0x00000000 A7 : 0x00000000 A8 : 0x00000000 A9 : ...
~0x3fff5000
A10 : 0x00000000 A11 : 0x3fff2bac A12 : 0x40082d1c A13 : ...
~0x066eff8
A14 : 0x33fcb7078 A15 : 0x00000000 SAR : 0x00000014 EXCCAUSE : ...
~0x0000001d
EXCVADDR : 0x00000000 LBEQ : 0x4000c46c LEND : 0x4000c477 LCOUNT : ...
~0xffffffff
Backtrace: 0x400e14ed:0x3fff5030 0x400d0802:0x3fff5050
```

仅会打印异常帧中 CPU 寄存器的值，即引发 CPU 异常或者其它严重错误时刻的值。

紧急处理程序如果是因 abort() 而调用，则不会打印寄存器转储。

在某些情况下，例如中断看门狗超时，紧急处理程序会额外打印 CPU 寄存器 (`EPC1-EPC4`) 的值，以及另一个 CPU 的寄存器值和代码回溯。

回溯行包含了当前任务中每个堆栈帧的 PC:SP 对 (PC 是程序计数器，SP 是堆栈指针)。如果在 ISR 中发生了严重错误，回溯会同时包括被打中断任务的 PC:SP 对，以及 ISR 中的 PC:SP 对。

如果使用了 `IDF 监视器`，该工具会将程序计数器的值转换为对应的代码位置 (函数名，文件名，行号)，并加以注释。
图 31: 紧急处理程序流程图（点击放大）
Core 0 register dump:

PC : 0x400e14ed PS : 0x00060030 A0 : 0x800d0805 A1 : ...

- 0x3f6f5030

0x400e14ed: app_main at /Users/user/esp/example/main/main.cpp:36

A2 : 0x00000000 A3 : 0x00000001 A4 : 0x00000001 A5 : ...

- 0x3f6f50dc

A6 : 0x00000000 A7 : 0x00000001 A8 : 0x00000000 A9 : ...

- 0x3f6f5000

A10 : 0x00000000 A11 : 0x3f6f2bac A12 : 0x40082d1c A13 : ...

- 0x06ff1ff8

0x40082d1c: _calloc_r at /Users/user/esp/esp-idf/components/newlib/syscalls.c:51

A14 : 0x3f6f7078 A15 : 0x00000000 SAR : 0x0000001d EXCCAUSE : ...

- 0x00000001d

EXCVADDR : 0x00000000 LBEGBEG : 0x4000c46c LEIG COUNT : ...

- 0xffffffff

Backtrace: 0x400e14ed:0x3f6f5030 0x400d0802:0x3f6f5050

0x400e14ed: app_main at /Users/user/esp/example/main/main.cpp:36

0x400d0802: main_task at /Users/user/esp/esp-idf/components/esp32/cpu_start.c:470

若要查找发生严重错误的代码位置，请查看“Backtrace”的后面几行，发生严重错误的代码显示在顶层，后续几行显示的是调用堆栈。

### 4.13.4 GDB Stub

如果启用了 CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_GDBSTUB 选项，在发生严重错误时，紧急处理程序不会复位芯片，相反，它将启动 GDB 远程调试器，通常称为 GDB Stub。发生这种情况时，可以让主机上运行的 GDB 实例通过 UART 端口连接到 ESP32。

如果使用了 IDF 监视器，该工具会在 UART 端口检测到 GDB Stub 提示符后自动启动 GDB，输出会类似于:

Entering gdb stub now.

$70b#6GNU gdb (crosstool-NG crosstool-ng-1.22.0-80-gff1f415) 7.10
Copyright (C) 2015 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law. Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "--host=x86_64-build_apple-darwin16.3.0 --target=xtensa-
.esp32-elf".
Type "show configuration" for configuration details.
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
Find the GDB manual and other documentation resources online at:
For help, type "help".
Type "apropos word" to search for commands related to "word"...
Reading symbols from /Users/user/esp/example/build/example.elf...done.
Remote debugging using /dev/cu.usbserial-31301
0x400e1b41 in app_main ()
at /Users/user/esp/example/main/main.cpp:36
36  *((int*) 0) = 0;
(gdb)

在 GDB 会话中，我们可以检查 CPU 寄存器，本地和静态变量以及内存中任意位置的值。但是不支持设置断点，改变 PC 值或者恢复程序的运行。若要复位程序，请退出 GDB 会话，在 IDF 监视器中连续输入 Ctrl-T Ctrl-R，或者按下开发板上的复位按键也可以重新运行程序。
4.13.5  

**Guru Meditation 错误**

本节将对打印在 Guru Meditation Error: Core panic'ed 后面括号中的致错原因进行逐一解释。

**注解：** 想要了解“Guru Meditation”的历史渊源，请阅 维基百科。

**IllegalInstruction**

此 CPU 异常表示当前执行的指令不是有效指令，引起此错误的常见原因包括:

- FreeRTOS 中的任务函数已返回。在 FreeRTOS 中，如果想终止任务函数，需要调用 vTaskDelete() 函数释放当前任务的资源，而不是直接返回。
- 无法从 SPI Flash 中加载下一条指令，这通常发生在:
  - 应用程序将 SPI Flash 的引脚重新配置为其它问题 (如 GPIO, UART 等等)。有关 SPI Flash 引脚的详细信息，请参阅硬件设计指南和芯片/模组的数据手册。
  - 某些外部设备意外连接到 SPI Flash 的引脚上，干扰了 ESP32 和 SPI Flash 之间的通信。

**InstrFetchProhibited**

此 CPU 异常表示 CPU 无法加载指令，因为指令的地址不在 IRAM 或者 IROM 中的有效区域中。

通常这意味着代码中调用了并不指向有效代码块的函数指针。这种情况下，可以查看 FC (程序计数器) 寄存器的值并做进一步判断：若为 0 或者其它非法值 (即只要不是 0x4xxxxxxxx的情况)，则证实确实是该原因。

**LoadProhibited, StoreProhibited**

当应用程序尝试读取或写入无效的内存位置时，会发生此类 CPU 异常。此类无效内存地址可以在寄存器 EXCVADDR 中找到。如果该地址为零，通常意味着应用程序正尝试访问一个 NULL 指针。如果该地址接近于零，则通常意味着应用程序尝试访问某个结构体的成员，但是该结构体的指针为 NULL。如果该地址是其它非法值（不在 0x3fxxxxxxxx - 0x6xxxxxxxx 的范围内），则可能意味着用于访问数据的指针未初始化或者已经损坏。

**IntegerDivideByZero**

应用程序尝试将整数除以零。

**LoadStoreAlignment**

应用程序尝试读取/写入的内存位置不符合加载/存储指令对字节对齐大小的要求。例如，32 位加载指令只能访问 4 字节对齐的内存地址，而 16 位加载指令只能访问 2 字节对齐的内存地址。

**LoadStoreError**

这类异常通常发生于以下几种场合:

- 应用程序尝试从仅支持 32 位加载/存储的内存区域执行 8 位或 16 位加载/存储操作，例如，解引用一个指向指令内存区域（例如 IRAM 或者 IROM）的 char* 指针就会触发这个错误。
- 应用程序尝试保存数据到只读的内存区域（比如 IROM 或者 DROM）也会触发这个错误。
Unhandled debug exception

这后面通常会再跟一条消息:

```
Debug exception reason: Stack canary watchpoint triggered (task_name)
```

此错误表示应用程序写入的位置越过了 task_name 任务堆栈的末尾。请注意，并非每次堆栈溢出都会触发此错误。任务有可能会绕过堆栈金丝雀（stack canary）的位置访问堆栈，在这种情况下，监视点就不会被触发。

Interrupt wdt timeout on CPU0 / CPU1

这表示发生了中断看门狗超时。详细信息请查阅看门狗文档。

Cache disabled but cached memory region accessed

在某些情况下，ESP-IDF 会暂时禁止通过高速缓存访问外部 SPI Flash 和 SPI RAM，例如在使用 spi_flash API 读取/写入/擦除/映射 SPI Flash 的时候。在这些情况下，任务会被挂起，并且未使用 ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM 注册的中断处理程序会被禁用。请确保任何使用此标志注册的中断处理程序所访问的代码和数据分别位于 IRAM 和 DRAM 中。更多详细信息请参阅 SPI Flash API 文档。

4.13.6 其它严重错误

欠压

ESP32 内部集成掉电检测电路，并且会默认启用。如果电源电压低于安全值，掉电检测器可以触发系统复位。掉电检测器可以使用 CONFIG_ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET 和 CONFIG_ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL 这两个选项进行设置。

当掉电检测器被触发时，会打印如下信息:

```
Brownout detector was triggered
```

芯片会在该打印信息结束后复位。

请注意，如果电源电压快速下降，则只能在控制台上看到部分打印信息。

Heap 不完整

ESP-IDF 堆的实现包含许多运行时的堆结构检查，可以在 menuconfig 中开启额外的检查（“Heap Poisoning”）。如果其中的某项检查失败，则会打印类似如下信息:

```
CORRUPT HEAP: Bad tail at 0x3ffe270a. Expected 0xbaad5678 got 0xbaac5678
assertion "head != NULL" failed: file "/Users/user/esp/esp-idf/components/heap/
   ..-multi_heap_poisoning.c", line 201, function: multi_heap_free
abort() was called at PC 0x400dca43 on core 0
```

更多详细信息，请查阅堆内存调试 文档。

Stack 粉碎

Stack 粉碎保护（基于 GCC -fstack-protector* 标志）可以通过 ESP-IDF 中的 CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE 选项来开启。如果检测到 Stack 粉碎，则会打印类似如下的信息:
Stack smashing protect failure!
abort() was called at PC 0x400d2138 on core 0
Backtrace: 0x4008e6c0:0x3ffc1780 0x4008e8b7:0x3ffc17a0 0x400d2138:0x3ffc17c0
0x400e79d5:0x3ffc17e0 0x400e79a7:0x3ffc1840 0x400e79df:0x3ffc18a0
0x400e2235:0x3ffc18c0 0x400e1916:0x3ffc18f0 0x400e19cd:0x3ffc1910
0x400e1a11:0x3ffc1930 0x400e1bb2:0x3ffc1950 0x400d2c44:0x3ffc1a80

回溯信息会指明发生 Stack 粉碎的函数，建议检查函数中是否有代码访问局部数组时发生了越界。

未定义行为清理器 (UBSAN) 检查

未定义行为清理器 (UBSAN) 是一种编译器功能，它会为可能不正确的操作添加运行时检查，例如:
- 溢出（乘法溢出、有符号整数溢出）
- 移位基数或指数错误（如移位超过 32 位）
- 整数转换错误

请参考 GCC 文档 中的 "-fsanitize=undefined" 选项，查看支持检查的完整列表。

使能 UBSAN 默认情况下未启用 UBSAN，可以通过在构建系统中添加编译器选项 -fsanitize=undefined 在文件、组件或项目经理上使能 UBSAN。

在对使用硬件寄存器头文件 (soc/xxx_reg.h) 的代码使能 UBSAN 时，建议使用 -fno-sanitize=shift-base 选项禁用移位基数清理器，这是由于 ESP-IDF 寄存器头文件目前包含的模式会对这个特定的清理器选项造成误报。

要在项目级使能 UBSAN，请在项目 CMakeLists.txt 文件的末尾添加以下内容:

```cmake
idf_build_set_property(COMPILE_OPTIONS "-fsanitize=undefined" "-fno-sanitize=shift-base" APPEND)
```

或者，通过 EXTRA_CFLAGS 和 EXTRA_CXXFLAGS 环境变量来传递这些选项。

使能 UBSAN 会明显增加代码量和数据大小。当为整个应用程序使能 UBSAN 时，微控制器的可用 RAM 无法容纳大多数应用程序（例如一些微小程序）。因此，建议为特定的待测组件使能 UBSAN。

要在项目 CMakeLists.txt 文件中的特定组件 (component_name) 启用 UBSAN，请在文件末尾添加以下内容:

```cmake
idf_component_get_property(lib component_name COMPONENT_LIB)
target_compile_options(${lib} PRIVATE "-fsanitize=undefined" "-fno-sanitize=shift-base")
```

**注意**: 关于构建属性和组件属性的更多信息，请查看构建系统文档。

要为同一组件的 CMakeLists.txt 中的特定组件 (component_name) 使能 UBSAN，在文件末尾添加以下内容:

```cmake
target_compile_options(${COMPONENT_LIB} PRIVATE "-fsanitize=undefined" "-fno-sanitize=shift-base")
```

**UBSAN 输出** 当 UBSAN 检测到一个错误时，会打印一个信息和回溯。例如:
当使用 IDF 监视器时，回溯会被解码为函数名以及源代码位置，并指向问题发生的位置（这里是 main.c:128）：

```
0x4008b383: panic_abort at /path/to/esp-idf/components/esp_system/panic.c:367
0x4008c791: esp_system_abort at /path/to/esp-idf/components/esp_system/system_api.c:106
0x4008c587: __ubsan_default_handler at /path/to/esp-idf/components/esp_system/ubsan.c:152
0x4008c6be: __ubsan_handle_out_of_bounds at /path/to/esp-idf/components/esp_system/ubsan.c:223
0x400db74f: test_ub at main.c:128
0x400db99c: app_main at main.c:56 (discriminator 1)
```

UBSAN 报告的错误类型为以下几种：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>名称</th>
<th>含义</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type_mismatch, type_mismatch_v1</td>
<td>指针值不正确：空、未对齐、或与给定类型不兼容</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add_overflow, sub_overflow, mul_overflow</td>
<td>加法、减法、乘法、求反过程中的整数溢出</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divrem_overflow</td>
<td>整数除以 0 或 INT_MIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shift_out_of_bounds</td>
<td>左移或右移运算符导致的溢出</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out_of_bounds</td>
<td>访问超出数组范围</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unreachable</td>
<td>执行无法访问的代码</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missing_return</td>
<td>Non-void 函数已结束而没有返回值（仅限 C++）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vla_bound_not_positive</td>
<td>变量长度数组的大小不是正整数</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load_invalid_value</td>
<td>bool 或 enum（仅 C++）变量的值无效（超出范围）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonnull_arg</td>
<td>对于 nonnull 属性的函数，传递给函数的参数为空</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonnull_return</td>
<td>对于 returns_nonnull 属性的函数，函数返回值为空</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>builtin_unreachable</td>
<td>调用 __builtin_unreachable 函数</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pointer_overflow</td>
<td>指针运算过程中的溢出</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.14 Flash 加密

本文档旨在引导用户快速了解 ESP32 的 flash 加密功能，通过应用程序代码示例向用户演示如何在开发及生产过程中测试及验证 flash 加密的相关操作。

#### 4.14.1 概述

flash 加密功能用于加密与 ESP32 搭载使用的片外 flash 中的内容。启用 flash 加密功能后，固件会以明文形式烧录，然后在首次启动时将数据进行加密。因此，物理读取 flash 将无法恢复大部分 flash 内容。

启用 flash 加密后，系统将默认加密下列类型的 flash 数据：

- 固件引导加载程序
- 分区表
- 所有 "app" 类型的分区
其他类型的数据视情况进行加密：

- 任何在分区表中标有“加密”标志的分区。详情请见加密分区标志。
- 如果启用了安全启动，则可以加密安全启动引导程序摘要（见下文）。

安全启动是一个独立的功能，可以与 flash 加密一起使用，从而创建更安全的环境。

重要：对于生产用途，flash 加密仅应在“发布”模式下启用。

重要：启用 flash 加密将限制后续 ESP32 更新。在使用 flash 加密功能前，请务必阅读本文档了解其影响。

### 4.14.2 相关 eFuses

Flash 加密操作由 ESP32 上的多个 eFuse 控制。以下是这些 eFuse 列表及其描述。下表中的各 eFuse 名称也在 esefuse.py 工具中使用，为了能在 eFuse API 中使用，请在名称前加上 ESP_EFUSE_，如：

```python
esp_efuse_read_field_bit(ESP_EFUSE_DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT)
```

表 20: Flash 加密过程中使用的 eFuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eFuse</th>
<th>描述</th>
<th>位深</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CODING_SCHEME</td>
<td>控制用于产生最终 256 位 AES 密钥的 block1 的实际位数。可能的值：0 代表 256 位，1 代表 192 位，2 代表 128 位。最终的 AES 密钥根据 FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG 值得出</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flash_encryption</td>
<td>AES 密钥存储</td>
<td>256 位密钥块</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG</td>
<td>控制 AES 加密过程</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT</td>
<td>设置后，在固件加载模式运行时禁用 flash 加密操作</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT</td>
<td>设置后，在 UART 固件加载模式运行时禁用 flash 解密操作</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLASH_CRYPT_CNT</td>
<td>在启动时启用/禁用加密。如果设置了偶数个比特位 (0, 2, 4, 6)，则在启动时加密 flash。如果设置了奇数个比特位 (1, 3, 5, 7)，则在启动时不加密 flash</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解：

- 上表中列出的所有 eFuse 位都提供读/写访问控制。
- 这些位的默认值是 0。

对上述 eFuse 位的读写访问由 WR_DIS 和 RD_DIS 寄存器中的相应字段控制。有关 ESP32 eFuse 的详细信息，请参考 eFuse 管理器。要使用 esefuse.py 更改 eFuse 字段的保护位，请使用以下两个命令: read_protect_efuse 和 write_protect_efuse。例如 esefuse.py write_protect_efuse DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT。

### 4.14.3 Flash 的加密过程

假设 eFuse 值处于默认状态，且固件的引导加载程序编译为支持 flash 加密，则 flash 加密的具体过程如下：

1. 第一次开机复位时，flash 中的所有数据都是未加密的（明文）。ROM 引导加载程序加载固件引导加载程序。
2. 固件的引导加载程序将读取 FLASH_CRYPT_CNT eFuse 值 (0b00000000)。因为该值为 0 (偶数位)，固件的引导加载程序将配置并启用 flash 加密，同时将 FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG eFuse 的值编程为 0xF。关于 flash 加密块的更多信息，请参考 ESP32 技术参考手册 > eFuse 控制器 (eFuse) > flash 加密块 [PDF]。
3. 固件的引导加载程序使用 RNG（随机数生成）模块生成 AES-256 位密钥，然后将其写入 flash_encryption eFuse 中。由于 flash_encryption eFuse 已设置为可写和读取保护位，将无法通过软件访问密钥。Flash 加密操作完全在硬件中完成，无法通过软件访问密钥。

4. Flash 加密块将加密 flash 的内容（固件的引导加载程序、应用程序，以及标有“加密”标志的分区）。

5. 固件引导加载程序将在 FLASH_CRYPT_CNT (060000001) 中设置第一个可用位来对已加密的 flash 内容进行标记。设置奇数个比特位。

6. 对于开发模式，固件引导加载程序仅设置 DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT 和 DISABLE_DL_CACHE 的 eFuse 位，以便 UART 引导加载程序重新烧录加密的二进制文件。此外，FLASH_CRYPT_CNT 的 eFuse 位不受写入保护。

7. 对于发布模式，固件引导加载程序设置 DISABLE_DL_ENCRIPT, DISABLE_DL_DECRIPT 和 DISABLE_DL_CACHE 的 eFuse 位为 1，以防止 UART 引导加载程序解密 flash 内容。它还写入保护 FLASH_CRYPT_CNT eFuse 位。要修改此行为，请参阅使用 UART 引导加载程序加密/解密。

8. 重新启动设备以开始执行加密镜像。固件引导加载程序使用 flash 解密程序来解密 flash 内容，然后将解密的内容加载到 IRAM 中。

在开发阶段常需编写不同的明文 flash 镜像并测试 flash 的加密过程。这要求固件下载模式能够根据需求不断加载新的明文镜像。但是，在制造和生产过程中，出于安全考虑，固件下载模式不应有权限访问 flash 内容。

因此需要有两种不同的 flash 加密配置：一种用于开发，另一种用于生产。详情请参考 Flash 加密设置。

### 4.14.4 Flash 加密设置

提供以下 flash 加密模式：

- 开发模式 - 建议仅在开发过程中使用，因为它不会阻止修改和读取加密的 flash 内容。
- 发布模式 - 建议用于制造和生产，以防止物理读取加密的 flash 内容。

本节将详细介绍上述 flash 加密模式，并且逐步说明如何使用它们。

#### 开发模式

在开发过程中，可使用 ESP32 内部生成的密钥或外部主机生成的密钥进行 flash 加密。

#### 使用 ESP32 生成的密钥

开发模式允许用户使用固件下载模式下载多个明文镜像。

测试 flash 加密过程需完成以下步骤：

1. 确保您的 ESP32 设备有相关 eFuses 中所示的 flash 加密 eFuse 的默认设置。
   
   请参考如何检查 ESP32 flash 加密状态。

2. 在项目配置菜单，执行以下操作：
   
   - 启动时使能 flash 加密
   - 选择加密模式（默认是 开发模式）
   - 选择 UART ROM 下载模式（默认是 启用，对于 esp32 芯片，该选项仅在 CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN 级别设置为 3 时 (ESP32 V3) 可用）。
   - 选择适当程度的引导加载程序日志
   - 保存配置并退出。

启用 flash 加密将增大引导加载程序，因而可能需更新分区表偏移量。请参考引导加载程序大小。

3. 运行以下命令来构建和烧录完整的镜像。

```
idf.py flash monitor
```

**注解：** 这个命令不包括任何应该写入 flash 分区的用户文件。请在运行此命令前手动写入这些文件，否则在写入前应单独对这些文件进行加密。
该命令将向 flash 写入未加密的镜像：固件引导加载程序、分区表和应用程序。烧录完成后，ESP32 将重启。在下一次启动时，固件引导加载程序会加密：固件引导加载程序、应用程序分区和标记为“加密”的分区，然后复位。就地加密可能需要时间，对于大分区最多需要一分钟。之后，应用程序在运行时解密并执行命令。

下面是启用 flash 加密后 ESP32 首次启动时的样例输出：

```
--- idf_monitor on /dev/cu.SLAB_USBtoUART 115200 ---
--- Quit: Ctrl+| Menu: Ctrl+T | Help: Ctrl+T followed by Ctrl+H ---
ets Jun 8 2016 00:22:57
rst:0x1 (POWER_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
configspi: 0, SPWF:0xee
clk_drv:0x000,q_drv:0x000,d_drv:0x000,cs0_drv:0x000,hd_drv:0x000,wp_drv:0x00
mode:DIO, clock div:2
load:0x3fff0018,len:4
load:0x3fff001c,len:8452
load:0x40078000,len:13608
load:0x40080400,len:6664
echo 0x40080764
  I (28) boot: ESP-IDF V4.0-dev-850-gc4447462d-dirty 2nd stage bootloader
  I (29) boot: compile time 15:37:14
  I (30) boot: Enabling RNG early entropy source...
  I (35) boot: SPI Speed  : 40MHz
  I (39) boot: SPI Mode   : DIO
  I (43) boot: SPI Flash Size : 4MB
  I (47) boot: Partition Table:
  I (51) boot: ## Label   Usage       Type ST Offset  Length
  I (58) boot: 0 nvs      WiFi data   01 0  0000a000  00006000
  I (66) boot: 1 phy_init  RF data     01 0  00010000  00001000
  I (73) boot: 2 factory  factory app 00 0  00020000  00100000
  I (81) boot: End of partition table
  I (85) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x00020020 vaddr=0x3f400020 size=0x0808c (-
     32908) map
  I (105) esp_image: segment 1: paddr=0x000280b4 vaddr=0x3fbb0000 size=0x01ea4 (-
     7844) load
  I (109) esp_image: segment 2: paddr=0x00029f60 vaddr=0x40080000 size=0x00400 (-
     1024) load
  0x40080000: _WindowOverflow4 at esp-idf/esp-idf/components/freertos/xtensa_vectors.---S:1778
  I (114) esp_image: segment 3: paddr=0x0002a368 vaddr=0x40080400 size=0x05ca8 (-
     23720) load
  I (132) esp_image: segment 4: paddr=0x00030018 vaddr=0x400d0018 size=0x126a8 (-
     75432) map
  0x400d0018: _flash_cache_start at ??:?
  I (159) esp_image: segment 5: paddr=0x000426c8 vaddr=0x400860a8 size=0x01f4c (-
     8012) load
  0x400860a8: prvAddNewTaskToReadyList at esp-idf/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.---c:4561
  I (168) boot: Loaded app from partition at offset 0x20000
  I (168) boot: Checking flash encryption...
  I (168) flash_encrypt: Generating new flash encryption key...
  I (187) flash_encrypt: Read & write protecting new key...
  I (187) flash_encrypt: Setting CRYPT_CONFIG efuse to 0xF
  W (188) flash_encrypt: Not disabling UART bootloader encryption
  I (195) flash_encrypt: Disable UART bootloader encryption
  I (201) flash_encrypt: Disable UART bootloader MMIU cache...
  I (208) flash_encrypt: Disable JTAG...
  I (212) flash_encrypt: Disable ROM BASIC interpreter fallback...
  I (219) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x00001020 vaddr=0x3fff0018 size=0x00004 (---
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry Point</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x40080764</td>
<td>Boot: ESP-IDF v4.0-dev-850-gc4447462d-dirty 2nd stage bootloader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x40080000</td>
<td>_WindowOverflow4 at esp-idf/esp-idf/components/freertos/xtensa_vectors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x40080000</td>
<td>_WindowOverflow4 at esp-idf/esp-idf/components/freertos/xtensa_vectors.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

启动 flash 加密后，在下次启动时输出会显示已启用 flash 加密，示例输出如下：

```
rst=0x1 (POWERON_RESET), boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)  
configspace: 0, SPIWP:0xee  
clk_drv:0x000,q_drv:0x000,d_drv:0x000,cs0_drv:0x000,hd_drv:0x000,wp_drv:0x00  
mode:DIO, clock div:2  
load:0x3ff0018,len:4  
load:0x3ff001c,len:8452  
load:0x40078000,len:13608  
ho 0 tail 12 room 4  
load:0x40080400,len:6664  
entry 0x40080764  
I (30) boot: ESP-IDF v4.0-dev-850-gc4447462d-dirty 2nd stage bootloader  
I (30) boot: compile time 16:32:53  
I (31) boot: Enabling RNG early entropy source...  
I (37) boot: SPI Speed : 40MHz  
I (41) boot: SPI Mode : DIO  
I (45) boot: SPI Flash Size : 4MB  
I (49) boot: Partition Table:  
I (52) boot: ## Label Usage Type ST Offset Length  
I (60) boot: 0 nvs WiFi data 01 02 00000a000 00006000  
I (67) boot: 1 phy_init RF data 01 01 000100000 00001000  
I (75) boot: 2 factory factory app 00 00 000200000 00100000  
I (82) boot: End of partition table  
I (86) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x000002020 vaddr=0x3f400020 size=0x808c (  
I (107) esp_image: segment 1: paddr=0x00001880 vaddr=0x3f800000 size=0x01ea4 (  
I (111) esp_image: segment 2: paddr=0x000029f60 vaddr=0x40080000 size=0x00400 (  

```

(续上页)
在此阶段，如果用户需要更新或重新烧录二进制文件，请参考重新烧录更新后的分区。

**使用主机生成的密钥** 可在主机中预生成 flash 加密密钥，并将其烧录到 eFuse 密钥块中。这样，无需明文 flash 更新便可以在主机上加密数据并将其烧录。该功能可在 **开发模式** 和 **发布模式** 两模式下使用。如果没有预生成的密钥，数据将以明文形式烧录，然后 ESP32 对数据进行就地加密。

**注解**：不建议在生产中使用该方法，除非为每个设备都单独生成一个密钥。

使用主机生成的密钥需完成以下步骤：

1. 确保您的 ESP32 设备有相关 eFuses 中所示的 flash 加密 eFuse 的默认设置。
   请参考如何检查 ESP32 flash 密钥状态。
2. 通过运行以下命令生成一个随机密钥：
3. **在第一次加密启动前**，使用以下命令将该密钥烧录到设备上，这个操作只能执行一次。

```
espsecure.py generate_flash_encryption_key my_flash_encryption_key.bin
```

如果未烧录密钥并在启用 flash 加密后启动设备，ESP32 将生成一个软件无法访问或修改的随机密钥。

4. **在项目配置菜单**中进行如下设置：
   - 启动时启用 flash 加密功能
   - 选择加密模式（默认为 开发模式）
   - 选择适当详细程度的引导加载程序目录
   - 保存配置并退出

启用 flash 加密将增加引导加载程序，因而可能需更新分区表偏移量。请参考引导加载程序大小。

5. 运行以下命令来构建并烧录完整的镜像：

```
idf.py flash monitor
```

**注解：**这个命令不包括任何应该被写入 flash 分区的用户文件。请在运行此命令前手动写入这些文件，否则在写入后应单独对这些文件进行加密。

该命令将向 flash 写入未加密的镜像：固件引导加载程序、分区表和应用程序。烧录完成后，ESP32 将重置。在下一次启动时，固件引导加载程序会加密：固件引导加载程序、应用程序分区和标记为 加密的分区，然后复位。就地加密可能需要时间，对于大的分区来说可能耗时一分钟。之后，应用程序在运行时被解密并执行。

如果使用开发模式，那么更新和重新烧录二进制文件最简单的方法是重新烧录更新后的分区。

如果使用发布模式，那么可以在主机上预先加密二进制文件，然后将其作为密文烧录。具体请参考手动加密文件。

**重新烧录更新后的分区** 如果用户以明文方式更新了应用程序代码并需要重新烧录，则需要在烧录前对其进行加密。请运行以下命令一次完成应用程序的加密与烧录：

```
idf.py encrypted-app-flash monitor
```

如果所有分区都需要以加密形式更新，请运行：

```
idf.py encrypted-flash monitor
```

**发布模式**

在发布模式下，UART 引导加载程序无法执行 flash 加密操作，只能使用 OTA 方案下载新的明文镜像，该方案将在写入 flash 前加密明文镜像。

使用该模式需要执行以下步骤：

1. 确保您的 ESP32 设备有相关 eFuses 中所示的 flash 加密 eFuse 的默认设置。
   请参考如何检查 ESP32 flash 加密状态。

2. 在项目配置菜单，执行以下操作：
   - 启动时使能 flash 加密
   - 选择发布模式（注意一旦选择了发布模式，DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT 和 DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT eFuse 位将被编程为在 ROM 下载模式下禁用 flash 加密硬件）
Chapter 4. API 指南

- 选择 UART ROM 下载模式（推荐永久性禁用）（注意该选项仅在 CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN 级别设置为 3 时 (ESP32 V3) 可用。）默认选项是保持启用 UART ROM 下载模式，然而建议永久禁用该模式，以减少攻击者可用的选项。
- 选择适当详细程度的引导加载程序目录
- 保存配置并退出

启用 flash 加密将增大引导加载程序，因而可能需更新分区表偏移量。请参考引导加载程序大小。

3. 运行以下命令来构建并烧录完整的镜像:

```bash
idf.py flash monitor
```

**注释：**这个命令不包括任何应该被写入 flash 分区的用户文件。请在运行此命令前手动写入这些文件，否则在写入前应单独对这些文件进行加密。

该命令将向 flash 写入加密后的程序、分区表和应用程序。烧录完成后，ESP32 将重置。在下一次启动时，固件引导加载程序会加密：固件引导加载程序、应用程序分区和标志位 加密的分区，然后复位。就地加密可能需要时间，对于大的分区来说可能耗时一分钟。之后，应用程序在运行时被解密并执行。

一旦在发布模式下启用 flash 加密，引导加载程序将写保护 FLASH_CRYPT_CNT eFuse。

请使用 OTA 方案 对字段中的明文进行后续更新。

**注释：**如果用户已经预生成了 flash 加密密钥并存储了一个副本，并且 UART 下载模式没有通过 CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE (ESP32 V3 only) 永久禁用，那么可以通过使用 espsecure.py encrypt_flash_data 预加密文件，从而在本地更新 flash，然后烧录密文。请参考手动加密文件。

**最佳实践**

在生产中使用 flash 加密时：

- 不要在多个设备之间重复使用同一个 flash 加密密钥，这样攻击者就无法从一台设备上复制加密数据后再将其转移动到第二台设备上。
- 在使用 ESP32 V3 时，如果生产设备不需要 UART ROM 下载模式，那么则该禁用该模式以增加设备安全性。这可以通过在应用程序启动时调用 esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode() 来实现，或者，可将项目 CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN 级别配置为 3 (仅针对 ESP32 V3)，然后选择 CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE 为 “永久性的禁用 ROM 下载模式 (推荐)”。在早期的 ESP32 版本上无法禁用 ROM 下载模式。
- 启用安全启动 作为额外的保护层，防止攻击者在启动前有选择地破坏 flash 中某部分。

4.14.5 可能出现的错误

一旦启用 flash 加密，FLASH_CRYPT_CNT 的 eFuse 值将设置为奇数位。这意味着所有标有加密标志的分区都会包含加密的密文。如果 ESP32 错误地加载了明文数据，则会出现以下三种典型的错误情况：

1. 如果通过 明文固件引导加载程序镜像重新烧录了引导加载程序分区，则 ROM 加载器将无法加载固件引导加载程序，并会显示以下错误类型:

```bash
rst:0x3 (SW_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
flash read err, 1000
ets_main.c 371
ets Jun 8 2016 00:22:57
```

```bash
rst:0x7 (TGOWDT_SYS_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
flash read err, 1000
```

(下页继续)
注解：如果 flash 内容被擦除或损坏，也会出现这个错误。

2. 如果固件的引导加载程序已加密，但通过 明文分区表镜像 重新烧录了分区表，引导加载程序将无法读取分区表，从而出现以下错误：

```
rst:0x3 (SW_RESET), boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
configisip: 0, SPIWP:0xee
clk_drv:0x00, q_drv:0x00, d_drv:0x00, cs0_dr:0x00, hd_drv:0x00, wp_drv:0x00
mode:DIO, clock div:2
load:0x3fff0018,len:4
load:0x3fff001c,len:10464
ho 0 tail 12 room 4
load:0x40078000,len:19168
load:0x40080400,len:6664
entry 0x40080764
I (56) boot: ESP-IDF v4.0-dev-850-gc4447462d-dirty 2nd stage bootloader
I (56) boot: compile time 15:37:14
I (58) boot: Enabling RNG early entropy source...
I (64) boot: SPI Speed : 40MHz
E (80) flash_parts: partition 0 invalid magic number 0x94f6
E (86) boot: Failed to verify partition table
E (91) boot: load partition table error!
```

3. 如果引导加载程序和分区表已加密，但使用 明文应用程序镜像 重新烧录了应用程序，引导加载程序将无法加载应用程序，从而出现以下错误：

```
rst:0x3 (SW_RESET), boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
configisip: 0, SPIWP:0xee
clk_drv:0x00, q_drv:0x00, d_drv:0x00, cs0_dr:0x00, hd_drv:0x00, wp_drv:0x00
mode:DIO, clock div:2
load:0x3fff0018,len:4
load:0x3fff001c,len:8452
load:0x40078000,len:13616
load:0x40080400,len:6664
entry 0x40080764
I (56) boot: ESP-IDF v4.0-dev-850-gc4447462d-dirty 2nd stage bootloader
I (56) boot: compile time 15:37:14
I (58) boot: Enabling RNG early entropy source...
I (64) boot: SPI Speed : 40MHz
```
4.14.6 ESP32 flash 加密状态

1. 确保您的 ESP32 设备有相关 eFuses 中所示的 flash 加密 eFuse 的默认设置。

要检查您的 ESP32 设备上是否启用了 flash 加密，请执行以下操作之一：

- 将应用示例 security/flash_encryption 烧录到您的设备上。此应用程序会打印 FLASH_CRYPT_CNT eFuse 值，以及是否启用了 flash 加密。
- 查询设备所连接的串口名称，在以下命令中将 PORT 替换为串口名称后运行：

```
espfuse.py -p PORT summary
```

4.14.7 在加密的 flash 中读写数据

ESP32 应用程序代码可以通过调用函数 esp_flash_encryption_enabled() 来检查当前是否启用了 flash 加密。此外，设备可以通过调用函数 esp_get_flash_encryption_mode() 来识别 flash 加密模式。

一旦启用 flash 加密，使用代码访问 flash 内容时要更加小心。

Flash 加密范围

当 FLASH_CRYPT_CNT eFuse 设置为奇数位的值，所有通过 MMU 的 flash 缓存访问的 flash 内容都将被透明解密。包括：

- Flash 中可执行的应用程序代码 (IROM)。
- 所有存储于 flash 中的只读数据 (DROM)。
- 通过函数 spi_flash_mmap() 访问的任意数据。
- ROM 引导加载程序读取的固件引导加载程序镜像。

重要： MMU flash 缓存将无条件解密所有数据。Flash 中未加密存储的数据将通过 flash 缓存 “被透明解密”，并在软件中存储为随机垃圾数据。

读取加密的 flash

如果需要在不使用 flash 缓存 MMU 映射的情况下读取数据，推荐使用分区读取函数 esp_partition_read()，该函数只会解密从加密分区读取的数据。从未加密分区读取的数据不会被解密。这样，软件便能以相同的方式访问加密和未加密的 flash。

也可以使用以下 SPI flash API 函数：
• 通过函数 `esp_flash_read()` 读取不会被解密的原（加密）数据。
• 通过函数 `esp_flash_read_encrypted()` 读取和解密数据。

ROM 函数 SPIRead() 可以在不解密的情况下读取数据，但是在 esp-idf 应用程序中不支持该函数。
使用非易失性存储器 (NVS) API 存储的数据始终从 flash 加密的角度进行存储和读取解密。如有需要，则由库提供加密功能。详情可参考 NVS 加密。

写入加密的 flash

推荐使用分区写入函数 `esp_partition_write()`。此函数只会在将数据写入加密分区时加密数据，而写入未加密分区的数据不会被加密。通过这种方式，软件可以以相同的方式访问加密和非加密 flash。
也可以使用函数 `esp_flash_write_encrypted()` 加密和写入数据。

此外，esp-idf 应用程序中存在但不支持以下 ROM 函数:

• `esp_rom_spiflash_write_encrypted` 加密并写入 flash
• `SPIWrite` 将未加密的数据写入 flash

由于数据是按块加密的，加密数据最小的写入大小为 16 字节，对齐也是 16 字节。

4.14.8 更新加密的 flash

OTA 更新

如果使用函数 `esp_partition_write()`，对加密分区的 OTA 更新将自动以加密形式写入。
在为已加密设备的 OTA 更新构建应用程序镜像之前，启用项目配置菜单中的 启动时使能 flash 加密 选项。
请参考 OTA 获取更多关于 ESP-IDF OTA 更新的信息。

通过串口更新加密 flash

通过串行引导加载程序烧录加密设备，需要串行引导加载程序下载接口没有通过 eFuse 被永久禁用。
在开发模式下，推荐的方法是 重新烧录更新后的分区。
在发布模式下，如果主机上有存储在 eFuse 中的相同密钥的副本，那么就可以在主机上对文件进行加密，然后进行烧录，具体请参考 手动加密文件。

4.14.9 关闭 flash 加密

如果意外启用了 flash 加密，则明文数据的 flash 会使 ESP32 无法正常启动。设备将不断重启，并报错 flash read err, 1000 或 invalid header: 0XXXXXXXX。

对于开发模式下的 flash 加密，可以通过烧录 FLASH_CRYPT_CNT eFuse 来关闭加密。每个芯片仅有 3 次机会，请执行以下步骤:

1. 在项目配置菜单中，禁用 启动时使能 flash 加密 选项，然后保存并退出。
2. 再次打开项目配置菜单，再次检查你是否已经禁用了该选项，如果这个选项仍被启用，引导加载程序在启动时将立即重新启用加密功能。
3. 在禁用 flash 加密后，通过运行 idf.py flash 来构建和烧录新的引导加载程序和应用程序。
4. 使用 espefuse.py (在 components/esptool_py/esptool 中) 以关闭 FLASH_CRYPT_CNT，运行:

```bash
espefuse.py burn_efuse FLASH_CRYPT_CNT
```

重置 ESP32，flash 加密应处于关闭状态，引导加载程序将正常启动。


### 4.14.10 Flash 加密的要点

- 使用 AES-256 加密 flash。Flash 加密密钥存储于芯片内部的 flash_encryption eFuse 中，并（默认）受保护，防止软件访问。
- Flash 加密算法采用的是 AES-256，其中密钥随着 flash 的每个 32 字节块的偏移地址“调整”。这意味着，每个 32 字节块（2 个连续的 16 字节 AES 块）使用从 flash 加密密钥中产生的一个特殊密钥进行加密。
- 通过 ESP32 的 flash 缓存映射功能，flash 可支持透明访问——任何映射到地址空间的 flash 区域在读取时都将被透明地解密。
  
  为便于访问，某些数据分区最好保持未加密状态，或者也可使用对已加密数据无效的 flash 友好型更新算法。由于 NVS 库无法与 flash 加密直接兼容，因此无法加密非易失性存储器的 NVS 分区。详情可参见 NVS 加密。
- 如果以后可能需要启用 flash 加密，则编程人员在编写使用加密 flash 代码时需小心谨慎。
- 如果已启用安全启动，重新烧录加密设备的引导加载程序则需要“可重新烧录”的安全启动摘要（可参考 Flash 加密与安全启动）。

启用 flash 加密将增大引导加载程序，因此可能需更新分区表偏移量。请参考引导加载程序大小。

| 重要： | 在首次启动加密过程中，请勿切断 ESP32 的电源。如果电源被切断，flash 的内容将受到破坏，并需要重新烧录未加密数据。而这类重新烧录将不计入烧录限制次数。 |

### 4.14.11 Flash 加密的局限性

flash 加密可以保护固件，防止未经授权的读取与修改。了解 flash 加密系统的局限之处亦十分重要：

- Flash 加密功能与密钥同样稳定。然而，推荐您首次启动设备时在设备上生成密钥（默认行为）。如果在设备外生成密钥，请确保遵循正确的后续步骤，不要在所有生产设备之间使用相同的密钥。
- 并非所有数据都是加密存储。因而在 flash 上存储数据时，请检查您使用的存储方式（库、API 等）是否支持 flash 加密。
- Flash 加密无法阻止攻击者获取 flash 的高层次布局信息。这是因为对每对相邻的 16 字节 AES 块都使用相邻的 AES 密钥。当这些相邻的 16 字节块包含相同内容时（如空白或填充区域），这些字节块将加密以产生匹配的加密块对。这让攻击者可在加密设备间进行层次对比（例如，确认两设备是否可能运行相同的固件版本）。
- 出于相同原因，攻击者始终可获取一对相邻的 16 字节块（32 字节对齐）何包含相同的 16 字节序列。因此，在 flash 上存储敏感数据时应牢记这点，可进行相关设置避免该情况发生（可使用计数器字节或每 16 字节设置不同的值即可）。具体请参考 NVS 加密。
- 单独使用 flash 加密可能无法防止攻击者修改本设备的固件。为防止设备上运行未经授权的固件，可搭配 flash 加密使用安全启动。

### 4.14.12 Flash 加密与安全启动

推荐 flash 加密与安全启动搭配使用。但是，如果已启用安全启动，则重新烧录设备时会受到其他限制：

- 如果新的应用程序已使用安全启动签名密钥正确签名，则 OTA 更新 不受限制。
- 只有当选择可再次烧录 安全启动模式，且安全启动密钥已预生成并烧录至 ESP32 时（可参见安全启动），明文串行 flash 更新 才可能实现。在该配置下，idf.py bootloader 将生成简化的引导加载程序和安全启动摘要文件，在偏移量 0x0 处进行烧录。当进行明文串行重新烧录步骤时，需在烧录其他明文数据前重新烧录此文件。
- 如果未重新烧录引导加载程序，则仍然可以使用预生成的 flash 加密密钥重新烧录。重新烧录引导加载程序时，需在安全启动配置中启用相同的可重新烧录 选项。

### 4.14.13 Flash 加密的高级功能

以下部分介绍了 flash 加密的高级功能。
加密分区标志

部分分区默认为已加密。通过在分区的标志字段中添加“encrypted”标志，可在分区表描述中将其他分区标记为需要加密。在这些标记分区中的数据会和应用程序分区一样视为加密数据。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th># Name, Type, SubType, Offset, Size, Flags</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nvs, data, nvs, 0x9000, 0x6000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phy_init, data, phy, 0xf000, 0x1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factory, app, factory, 0x10000, 1M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secret_data, 0x40, 0x01, 0x20000, 256K, encrypted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

请参考分区表获取更多关于分区表描述的具体信息。

关于分区加密您还需要了解以下信息：

- 默认分区表都不包含任何加密数据分区。
- 启用 flash 加密后，“app”分区一般视为加密分区，因此无需标记。
- 如果未启用 flash 加密，则“encrypted”标记无效。
- 将可选 phy 分区标记为“encrypted”，可以防止物理访问读取或修改 phy_init 数据。
- nvs 分区无法标记为“encrypted”因为 NVS 库与 flash 加密不直接兼容。

启用 UART 引导加载程序加密/解密

在第一次启动时，flash 加密过程默认会烧录以下 eFuse:

- DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT 在 UART 引导加载程序启动模式下运行时，禁止 flash 加密操作。
- DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT 在 UART 引导加载程序模式下运行时，禁止透明 flash 解密（即使 eFuse FLASH_CRYPT_CNT 已设置为正常操作中启用 flash 透明解密）。
- DISABLE_DL_CACHE 在 UART 引导加载程序模式下运行时禁止整个 MMU flash 缓存。

为了能启用这些功能，可在首次启动前仅烧录部分 eFuse，并用未设置值 0 保护其他部分。例如：

```
esefuse.py --port PORT burn_efuse DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT
esefuse.py --port PORT write_protect_efuse DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT
```

重要：保持 DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT 未设置 (0) 会使 flash 加密无效。

对芯片具有物理访问权限的攻击者会使用 UART 引导加载程序模式（使用自定义根根代码）读取 flash 的内容。

设置 FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG

FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG eFuse 决定 flash 加密密钥中逐块偏移“调整”的位数。详情可参考Flash 加密算法。

首次启动固件引导加载程序时，该值始终设置为最大值 0xF。

可手动写入这些 eFuse，并在首次启动前对其写保护，以便选择不同的调整值。但不推荐该操作。

强烈建议在 FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG 未设置时，不要对其进行写保护。否则，它的值将永久为零，而 flash 加密密钥中则无调整位。这导致 flash 加密算法等同于 AES ECB 模式。

JTAG 调试

默认情况下，当启用 flash 加密（开发或发布模式）时，将通过 eFuse 禁用 JTAG 调试。引导加载程序在首次启动时执行此操作，同时启用 flash 加密。

请参考 JTAG 与闪存加密和安全引导 了解更多关于使用 JTAG 调试与 flash 加密的信息。
手动加密文件

手动加密或解密文件需要在 eFuse 中预烧录 flash 加密密钥（请参阅使用主机生成的密钥）并在主机上保留一份副本。如果 flash 加密配置在开发模式下，那么则不需要保留密钥的副本或遵循这些步骤，可以使用更简单的重新烧录更新后的分区步骤。

密钥文件应该是单个原始二进制文件（例如：key.bin）。

例如，以下是将文件 build/my-app.bin 进行加密，烧录到偏移量 0x10000 的步骤，运行 espsecure.py，如下所示：

```
espsecure.py encrypt_flash_data --keyfile /path/to/key.bin --address 0x10000 --
```

然后可以使用 esptool.py 将文件 my-app-ciphertext.bin 写入偏移量 0x10000。关于为 esptool.py 推荐的所有命令行选项，请查看 idf.py build 成功时打印的输出。

注解：

如果 ESP32 在启动时无法识别烧录进去的密文文件，请检查密钥是否匹配以及命令行参数是否完全匹配，包括偏移量是否正确。

如果您的 ESP32 在 eFuse 中使用了非默认的 FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG 值，那么则需要向 espsecure.py 传递 --flash_crypt_conf 参数以设置匹配的值。如果设备自己设置了 flash 加密就不会出现这种情况，但如果手动烧录 eFuse 来启用 flash 加密就可能发生这种情况。

```
espsecure.py decrypt_flash_data 命令可以使用同样的选项（和不同的输入/输出文件）来解密 flash 密文或之前加密的文件。
```

4.14.14 技术细节

以下章节将提供 flash 加密操作的相关信息。

Flash 加密算法

- AES-256 在 16 字节的数据块上运行。Flash 加密引擎在 32 字节的数据（2 个串行 AES 块）上加密或解密数据。
- Flash 加密的主密钥存储于 flash_encryption eFuse 中，默认受保护防止进一步写入或软件读取。
- AES-256 密钥大小为 256 位（32 字节），从 flash_encryption eFuse 中读取。与 flash_encryption 中的存储顺序相比，硬件 AES 引擎使用的是相反的字节顺序的密钥。
  - 如果 CODING_SCHEME eFuse 设置为 0（默认“无”编码方案），则 eFuse 密钥块为 256 位，且密钥按原始存储（反字节序）。
  - 如果 CODING_SCHEME eFuse 设置为 1（3/4 编码），则 eFuse 密钥块为 192 位（反字节序），信息熵总量减少。硬件 flash 加密仍在 256 字节密钥上运行。在读取后（字节序未反向），密钥扩展为 key = key[0:255] + key[64:127]。
- Flash 加密中使用了逆向 AES 算法，因此 flash 加密的“加密”操作相当于 AES 解密，而其“解密”操作则相当于 AES 加密。这是为了优化性能，不会影响算法的有效性。
- 每个 32 字节块（2 个相邻的 16 字节 AES 块）都由一个特殊的密钥进行加密。该密钥由 flash_encryption 中 flash 加密的主密钥产生，并随 flash 中该字节块的偏移进行 XOR 运算（一次“密钥调整”）。
- 具体调整量取决于 FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG eFuse 的设置。该 eFuse 共 4 位，每位可对特定范围的密钥位进行 XOR 运算；
  - Bit 1，对密钥的 0-66 位进行 XOR 运算。
  - Bit 2，对密钥的 67-131 位进行 XOR 运算。
  - Bit 3，对密钥的 132-194 位进行 XOR 运算。
  - Bit 4，对密钥的 195-256 位进行 XOR 运算。
建议将 FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG 的值始终保留为默认值 0xF，这样所有密钥位都随块偏移进行 XOR 运算。详情请参见设置 FLASH_CRYPT_CONFIG。

- 块偏移的 19 个高位（第 5-23 位）由 flash 加密的主密钥进行 XOR 运算。选定该范围的原因：flash 的大小最大为 16 MB（24 位），每个块大小为 32 字节，因而 5 个最低有效位始终为 0。
- 从 19 个块偏移位中每个位到 flash 加密密钥的 256 位都有一个特殊的映射，以决定与哪个位进行 XOR 运算。有关完整映射可参见 espsecure.py 源代码中的变量 _FLASH_ENCRYPTION_TWEAK_PATTERN。
- 有关在 Python 中实现的完整 flash 加密算法，可参见 espsecure.py 源代码中的函数 _flash_encryption_operation()。

4.15 ESP-IDF FreeRTOS SMP Changes

4.15.1 Overview

The vanilla FreeRTOS is designed to run on a single core. However the ESP32 is dual core containing a Protocol CPU (known as CPU 0 or PRO_CPU) and an Application CPU (known as CPU 1 or APP_CPU). The two cores are identical in practice and share the same memory. This allows the two cores to run tasks interchangeably between them.

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is a modified version of vanilla FreeRTOS which supports symmetric multiprocessing (SMP). ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is based on the Xtensa port of FreeRTOS v10.2.0. This guide outlines the major differences between vanilla FreeRTOS and ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. The API reference for vanilla FreeRTOS can be found via https://www.freertos.org/a00106.html.

For information regarding features that are exclusive to ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, see ESP-IDF FreeRTOS Additions.

Tasks and Task Creation: Use xTaskCreatePinnedToCore() or xTaskCreateStaticPinnedToCore() to create tasks in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. The last parameter of the two functions is xCoreID. This parameter specifies which core the task is pinned to. Acceptable values are 0 for PRO_CPU, 1 for APP_CPU, or tskNO_AFFINITY which allows the task to run on both.

Round Robin Scheduling: The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS scheduler implements a “Best Effort Round-Robin Scheduling” instead of the ideal Round-RobinschedulinginvanillaFreeRTOS.

Scheduler Suspension: Suspending the scheduler in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS will only affect the scheduler on the calling core. In other words, calling vTaskSuspendAll() on PRO_CPU will not prevent APP_CPU from scheduling, and vice versa. Use critical sections or semaphores instead for simultaneous access protection.

Tick Interrupt Synchronicity: Tick interrupts of PRO_CPU and APP_CPU are not synchronized. Do not expect to use vTaskDelay() or vTaskDelayUntil() as an accurate method of synchronizing task execution between the two cores. Use a counting semaphore instead as their context switches are not tied to tick interrupts due to preemption.

Critical Sections & Disabling Interrupts: In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, critical sections are implemented using mutexes. Entering critical sections involve taking a mutex, then disabling the scheduler and interrupts of the calling core. However the other core is left unaffected. If the other core attempts to take same mutex, it will spin until the calling core has released the mutex by exiting the critical section.

Floating Point Arithmetic: The ESP32 supports hardware acceleration of single precision floating point arithmetic (float). However the use of hardware acceleration leads to some behavioral restrictions in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. Therefore, tasks that utilize float will automatically be pinned to a core if not done so already. Furthermore, float cannot be used in interrupt service routines.

Thread Local Storage Pointers & Deletion Callbacks: Deletion callbacks are called automatically during task deletion and are used to free memory pointed to by TLSP. Call vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback() to set TLSP and Deletion Callbacks.

Configuring ESP-IDF FreeRTOS: Several aspects of ESP-IDF FreeRTOS can be set in the project configuration (idf.py menuconfig) such as running ESP-IDF in Unicore (single core) Mode, or configuring the number of Thread Local Storage Pointers each task will have.
It is not necessary to manually start the FreeRTOS scheduler by calling `vTaskStartScheduler()`. In ESP-IDF the scheduler is started by the 应用程序的启动流程 and is already running when the `app_main` function is called (see 运行主任务 for details).

### 4.15.2 Tasks and Task Creation

Tasks in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS are designed to run on a particular core, therefore two new task creation functions have been added to ESP-IDF FreeRTOS by appending `PinnedToCore` to the names of the task creation functions in vanilla FreeRTOS. The vanilla FreeRTOS functions of `xTaskCreate()` and `xTaskCreateStatic()` have led to the addition of `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()` and `xTaskCreateStaticPinnedToCore()` in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS.

For more details see `freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/tasks.c`

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS task creation functions are nearly identical to their vanilla counterparts with the exception of the extra parameter known as `xCoreID`. This parameter specifies the core on which the task should run on and can be one of the following values:

- 0 pins the task to PRO_CPU
- 1 pins the task to APP_CPU
- `tskNO_AFFINITY` allows the task to be run on both CPUs

For example `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(tsk_callback, "APP_CPU Task", 1000, NULL, 1)` creates a task of priority 10 that is pinned to APP_CPU with a stack size of 1000 bytes. It should be noted that the `uxStackDepth` parameter in vanilla FreeRTOS specifies a task’s stack depth in terms of the number of words, whereas ESP-IDF FreeRTOS specifies the stack depth in terms of bytes.

Note that the vanilla FreeRTOS functions `xTaskCreate()` and `xTaskCreateStatic()` have been defined in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS as inline functions which call `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()` and `xTaskCreateStaticPinnedToCore()` respectively with `tskNO_AFFINITY` as the `xCoreID` value.

Each Task Control Block (TCB) in ESP-IDF stores the `xCoreID` as a member. Hence when each core calls the scheduler to select a task to run, the `xCoreID` member will allow the scheduler to determine if a given task is permitted to run on the core that called it.

### 4.15.3 Scheduling

The vanilla FreeRTOS implements scheduling in the `vTaskSwitchContext()` function. This function is responsible for selecting the highest priority task to run from a list of tasks in the Ready state known as the Ready Tasks List (described in the next section). In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, each core will call `vTaskSwitchContext()` independently to select a task to run from the Ready Tasks List which is shared between both cores. There are several differences in scheduling behavior between vanilla and ESP-IDF FreeRTOS such as differences in Round Robin scheduling, scheduler suspension, and tick interrupt synchronicity.

#### Round Robin Scheduling

Given multiple tasks in the Ready state and of the same priority, vanilla FreeRTOS implements Round Robin scheduling between multiple ready state tasks of the same priority. This will result in running those tasks in turn each time the scheduler is called (e.g. when the tick interrupt occurs or when a task blocks/yields).

On the other hand, it is not possible for the ESP-IDF FreeRTOS scheduler to implement perfect Round Robin due to the fact that a particular task may not be able to run on a particular core due to the following reasons:

- The task is pinned to the another core.
- For unpinned tasks, the task is already being run by another core.

Therefore, when a core searches the ready state task list for a task to run, the core may need to skip over a few tasks in the same priority list or drop to a lower priority in order to find a ready state task that the core can run.
The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS scheduler implements a Best Effort Round Robin scheduling for ready state tasks of the same priority by ensuring that tasks that have been selected to run will be placed at the back of the list, thus giving unselected tasks a higher priority on the next scheduling iteration (i.e., the next tick interrupt or yield).

The following example demonstrates the Best Effort Round Robin Scheduling in action. Assume that:

- There are four ready state tasks of the same priority AX, B0, C1, D1 where:
  - The priority is the current highest priority with ready state tasks
  - The first character represents the task’s name (i.e., A, B, C, D)
  - And the second character represents the tasks core pinning (and X means unpinned)
- The task list is always searched from the head

1. Starting state. None of the ready state tasks have been selected to run
   Head [ AX , B0 , C1 , D0 ] Tail

2. Core 0 has tick interrupt and searches for a task to run.
   Task A is selected and is moved to the back of the list
   Core0=|
   Head [ AX , B0 , C1 , D0 ] Tail
   0
   Head [ B0 , C1 , D0 , AX ] Tail

3. Core 1 has a tick interrupt and searches for a task to run.
   Task B cannot be run due to incompatible affinity, so core 1 skips to Task C.
   Task C is selected and is moved to the back of the list
   Core1------|
   0
   Head [ B0 , C1 , D0 , AX ] Tail
   0 1
   Head [ B0 , D0 , AX , C1 ] Tail

4. Core 0 has another tick interrupt and searches for a task to run.
   Task B is selected and moved to the back of the list
   Core0=|
   1
   Head [ B0 , D0 , AX , C1 ] Tail
   1 0
   Head [ D0 , AX , C1 , B0 ] Tail

5. Core 1 has another tick and searches for a task to run.
   Task D cannot be run due to incompatible affinity, so core 1 skips to Task A
   Task A is selected and moved to the back of the list
   Core1------|
   0
   Head [ D0 , AX , C1 , B0 ] Tail
   0 1
   Head [ D0 , C1 , B0 , AX ] Tail
The implications to users regarding the Best Effort Round Robin Scheduling:

- Users cannot expect multiple ready state tasks of the same priority to run sequentially (as is the case in Vanilla FreeRTOS). As demonstrated in the example above, a core may need to skip over tasks.
- However, given enough ticks, a task will eventually be given some processing time.
- If a core cannot find a task runnable task at the highest ready state priority, it will drop to a lower priority to search for tasks.
- To achieve ideal round robin scheduling, users should ensure that all tasks of a particular priority are pinned to the same core.

**Scheduler Suspension**

In vanilla FreeRTOS, suspending the scheduler via `vTaskSuspendAll()` will prevent calls of `vTaskSwitchContext` from context switching until the scheduler has been resumed with `xTaskResumeAll()`. However servicing ISRs are still permitted. Therefore any changes in task states as a result from the current running task or ISRs will not be executed until the scheduler is resumed. Scheduler suspension in vanilla FreeRTOS is a common protection method against simultaneous access of data shared between tasks, whilst still allowing ISRs to be serviced.

In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, `xTaskSuspendAll()` will only prevent calls of `vTaskSwitchContext()` from switching contexts on the core that called for the suspension. Hence if `PRO_CPU` calls `vTaskSuspendAll()`, `APP_CPU` will still be able to switch contexts. If data is shared between tasks that are pinned to different cores, scheduler suspension is **NOT** a valid method of protection against simultaneous access. Consider using critical sections (disables interrupts) or semaphores (does not disable interrupts) instead when protecting shared resources in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS.

In general, it’s better to use other RTOS primitives like mutex semaphores to protect against data shared between tasks, rather than `vTaskSuspendAll()`.

**Tick Interrupt Synchronicity**

In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, tasks on different cores that unblock on the same tick count might not run at exactly the same time due to the scheduler calls from each core being independent, and the tick interrupts to each core being unsynchronized.

In vanilla FreeRTOS the tick interrupt triggers a call to `xTaskIncrementTick()` which is responsible for incrementing the tick counter, checking if tasks which have called `vTaskDelay()` have fulfilled their delay period, and moving those tasks from the Delayed Task List to the Ready Task List. The tick interrupt will then call the scheduler if a context switch is necessary.

In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, delayed tasks are unblocked with reference to the tick interrupt on `PRO_CPU` as `PRO_CPU` is responsible for incrementing the shared tick count. However tick interrupts to each core might not be synchronized (same frequency but out of phase) hence when `PRO_CPU` receives a tick interrupt, `APP_CPU` might not have received it yet. Therefore if multiple tasks of the same priority are unblocked on the same tick count, the task pinned to `PRO_CPU` will run immediately whereas the task pinned to `APP_CPU` must wait until `APP_CPU` receives its out of sync tick interrupt. Upon receiving the tick interrupt, `APP_CPU` will then call for a context switch and finally switches contexts to the newly unblocked task.

Therefore, task delays should **NOT** be used as a method of synchronization between tasks in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. Instead, consider using a counting semaphore to unblock multiple tasks at the same time.

**4.15.4 Critical Sections & Disabling Interrupts**

Vanilla FreeRTOS implements critical sections with `taskENTER_CRITICAL()` which calls `portDISABLE_INTERRUPTS()`. This prevents preemptive context switches and servicing of ISRs during a critical section. Therefore, critical sections are used as a valid protection method against simultaneous access in vanilla FreeRTOS.

On the other hand, ESP32 has no hardware method for cores to disable each other’s interrupts. Calling `portDISABLE_INTERRUPTS()` will have no effect on the interrupts of the other core. Therefore, disabling interrupts
Chapter 4. API

is NOT a valid protection method against simultaneous access to shared data as it leaves the other core free to access the data even if the current core has disabled its own interrupts.

For this reason, ESP-IDF FreeRTOS implements critical sections using special mutexes, referred to as portMUX_Type objects. These are implemented on top of a specific spinlock component. Calls to taskENTER_CRITICAL or taskEXIT_CRITICAL each provide a spinlock object as an argument. The spinlock is associated with a shared resource requiring access protection. When entering a critical section in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, the calling core will disable interrupts similar to the vanilla FreeRTOS implementation, and will then take the spinlock and enter the critical section. The other core is unaffected at this point, unless it enters its own critical section and attempts to take the same spinlock. In that case it will spin until the lock is released. Therefore, the ESP-IDF FreeRTOS implementation of critical sections allows a core to have protected access to a shared resource without disabling the other core. The other core will only be affected if it tries to concurrently access the same resource.

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS critical section functions have been modified as follows...

- taskENTER_CRITICAL(mux), taskENTER_CRITICAL_ISR(mux), portENTER_CRITICAL(mux), portENTER_CRITICAL_ISR(mux) are all macro defined to call internal function vPortEnterCritical()
- taskEXIT_CRITICAL(mux), taskEXIT_CRITICAL_ISR(mux), portEXIT_CRITICAL(mux), portEXIT_CRITICAL_ISR(mux) are all macro defined to call internal function vPortExitCritical()
- portENTER_CRITICAL_SAFE(mux), portEXIT_CRITICAL_SAFE(mux) macro identifies the context of execution, i.e ISR or Non-ISR, and calls appropriate critical section functions (port*_CRITICAL in Non-ISR and port*_CRITICAL_ISR in ISR) in order to be in compliance with Vanilla FreeRTOS.

For more details see esp_hw_support/include/soc/spinlock.h, freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/include/freertos/task.h, and freertos/FreeRTOS-Kernel/tasks.c

It should be noted that when modifying vanilla FreeRTOS code to be ESP-IDF FreeRTOS compatible, it is trivial to modify the type of critical section called as they are all defined to call the same function. As long as the same spinlock is provided upon entering and exiting, the exact macro or function used for the call should not matter.

4.15.5 Floating Point Arithmetic

ESP-IDF FreeRTOS implements Lazy Context Switching for FPUs. In other words, the state of a core’s FPU registers are not immediately saved when a context switch occurs. Therefore, tasks that utilize float must be pinned to a particular core upon creation. If not, ESP-IDF FreeRTOS will automatically pin the task in question to whichever core the task was running on upon the task’s first use of float. Likewise due to Lazy Context Switching, only interrupt service routines of lowest priority (that is it the Level 1) can use float, higher priority interrupts do not support FPU usage.

ESP32 does not support hardware acceleration for double precision floating point arithmetic (double). Instead double is implemented via software hence the behavioral restrictions with regards to float do not apply to double. Note that due to the lack of hardware acceleration, double operations may consume significantly larger amount of CPU time in comparison to float.

4.15.6 Task Deletion

In FreeRTOS task deletion the freeing of task memory will occur immediately (within vTaskDelete()) if the task being deleted is not currently running or is not pinned to the other core (with respect to the core vTaskDelete() is called on). TLSP deletion callbacks will also run immediately if the same conditions are met.

However, calling vTaskDelete() to delete a task that is either currently running or pinned to the other core will still result in the freeing of memory being delegated to the Idle Task.

4.15.7 Thread Local Storage Pointers & Deletion Callbacks

Thread Local Storage Pointers (TLSP) are pointers stored directly in the TCB. TLSP allow each task to have its own unique set of pointers to data structures. However task deletion behavior in vanilla FreeRTOS does not automatically
Chapter 4. API

free the memory pointed to by TLSP. Therefore if the memory pointed to by TLSP is not explicitly freed by the user before task deletion, memory leak will occur.

ESP-IDF FreeRTOS provides the added feature of Deletion Callbacks. Deletion Callbacks are called automatically during task deletion to free memory pointed to by TLSP. Each TLSP can have its own Deletion Callback. Note that due to the to Task Deletion behavior, there can be instances where Deletion Callbacks are called in the context of the Idle Tasks. Therefore Deletion Callbacks should never attempt to block and critical sections should be kept as short as possible to minimize priority inversion.

Deletion callbacks are of type void (*TlsDeleteCallbackFunction_t)( int, void * ) where the first parameter is the index number of the associated TLSP, and the second parameter is the TLSP itself.

Deletion callbacks are set alongside TLSP by calling vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDeleteCallback(). Calling the vanilla FreeRTOS function vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer() will simply set the TLSP’s associated Deletion Callback to NULL meaning that no callback will be called for that TLSP during task deletion. If a deletion callback is NULL, users should manually free the memory pointed to by the associated TLSP before task deletion in order to avoid memory leak.

For more details see FreeRTOS API reference.

4.15.8 Configuring ESP-IDF FreeRTOS

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS can be configured in the project configuration menu (idf.py menuconfig) under Component Config/FreeRTOS. The following section highlights some of the ESP-IDF FreeRTOS configuration options. For a full list of ESP-IDF FreeRTOS configurations, see FreeRTOS

CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE will run ESP-IDF FreeRTOS only on PRO_CPU. Note that this is not equivalent to running vanilla FreeRTOS. Note that this option may affect behavior of components other than freertos. For more details regarding the effects of running ESP-IDF FreeRTOS on a single core, search for occurrences of CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE in the ESP-IDF components.

CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT_ON_UNTESTED_FUNCTION will trigger a halt in particular functions in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS which have not been fully tested in an SMP context.

CONFIG_FREERTOS_TASK_FUNCTION_WRAPPER will enclose all task functions within a wrapper function. In the case that a task function mistakenly returns (i.e. does not call vTaskDelete()), the call flow will return to the wrapper function. The wrapper function will then log an error and abort the application, as illustrated below:

```
E (25) FreeRTOS: FreeRTOS task should not return. Aborting now!
abort() was called at PC 0x40085c53 on core 0
```

4.16 Hardware Abstraction

Hardware abstraction in ESP-IDF are a group of API that allow users to control peripherals at differing levels of abstraction, as opposed to interfacing with hardware using only the ESP-IDF drivers. ESP-IDF Hardware abstraction will likely be useful for users writing high performance bare-metal drivers, or for those attempting to port an ESP chip to another platform.

This guide is split into the following sections:

1. Architecture
2. LL (Low Level) Layer
3. HAL (Hardware Abstraction Layer)

警告： Hardware abstraction API (excluding the driver and xxx_types.h) should be considered an experimental feature, thus cannot be considered public API. Hardware abstraction API do not adhere to the API name changing restrictions of ESP-IDF’s versioning scheme. In other words, it is possible that Hardware Abstraction API may change in between non-major release versions.
4.16.1 Architecture

Hardware abstraction in ESP-IDF is comprised of the following layers, ordered from low level (closer to hardware) to high level (further away from hardware) of abstraction.

- Low Level (LL) Layer
- Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL)
- Driver Layers

The LL Layer, and HAL are entirely contained within the `hal` component. Each layer is dependent on the layer below it (i.e., driver depends on HAL, HAL depends on LL, LL depends on the register header files).

For a particular peripheral `xxx`, its hardware abstraction will generally consist of the header files described in the table below. Files that are Target Specific will have a separate implementation for each target (i.e., a separate copy for each chip). However, the `#include` directive will still be target-independent (i.e., will be the same for different targets) as the build system will automatically include the correct version of the header and source files.
Chapter 4. API

### 21: Hardware Abstraction Header Files

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Include Directive</th>
<th>Target Specific</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
#include 'soc/xxx_caps.h' | Y | This header contains a list of C macros specifying the various capabilities of the ESP32’s peripheral xxx. Hardware capabilities of a peripheral include things such as the number of channels, DMA support, hardware FIFO/buffer lengths, etc. |
| 
#include "soc/xxx_struct.h" 
#include "soc/xxx_reg.h" | Y | The two headers contain a representation of a peripheral’s registers in C structure and C macro format respectively. Users can operate a peripheral at the register level via either of these two header files. |
| 
#include "soc/xxx_pins.h" | Y | If certain signals of a peripheral are mapped to a particular pin of the ESP32, their mappings are defined in this header as C macros. |
| 
#include "soc/xxx_reg.h" | N | This header is mainly used as a convenience header file to automatically include xxx_caps.h, xxx_struct.h, and xxx_reg.h. |
| 
#include "hal/xxx_types.h" | N | This header contains type definitions and macros that are shared among the LL, HAL, and driver layers. Moreover, it is considered public API thus can be included by the application level. The shared types and definitions usually related to non-implementation specific concepts such as the following:  
- Protocol related types/macros such as frames, modes, common bus speeds, etc.  
- Features/characteristics of an xxx peripheral that are likely to be present on any implementation (implementation-independent) such as channels, operating modes, signal amplification or attenuation intensities, etc. |
| 
#include "hal/xxx_ll.h" | Y | This header contains the Low Level (LL) Layer of hardware abstraction. LL Layer API are primarily used to abstract away register operations into readable functions. |
| 
#include "hal/xxx_hal.h" | Y | The Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) is used to abstract away peripheral operation steps into functions (e.g., reading a buffer, starting a transmission, handling an event, etc). The HAL is built on top of the LL Layer. |
| 
#include "driver/xxx.h" | N | The driver layer is the highest level of ESP-IDF’s hardware abstraction. Driver layer API are meant to be called from ESP-IDF applications, and internally utilize OS primitives. Thus, driver layer API are event-driven, and can used in a multi-threaded environment. |

### 4.16.2 LL (Low Level) Layer

The primary purpose of the LL Layer is to abstract away register field access into more easily understandable functions. LL functions essentially translate various in/out arguments into the register fields of a peripheral in the form of get/set functions. All the necessary bit shifting, masking, offsetting, and endianness of the register fields should be handled by the LL functions.

```c
//Inside xxx_ll.h

static inline void xxx_ll_set_baud_rate(xxx_dev_t *hw,
        xxx_ll_clk_src_t clock_source,
        uint32_t baud_rate) {
    uint32_t src_clk_freq = (source_clk == XXX_SCLK_APB) ? APB_CLK_FREQ : REF_CLK_FREQ;
    uint32_t clock_divider = src_clk_freq / baud;
    // Set clock select field
    hw->clk_div_reg.divider = clock_divider >> 4;
    // Set clock divider field
    hw->config.clk_sel = (source_clk == XXX_SCLK_APB) ? 0 : 1;
}
```

(下页續讀)
Chapter 4. API

```c
static inline uint32_t xxx_ll_get_rx_byte_count(xxx_dev_t *hw) {
    return hw->status_reg.rx_cnt;
}
```

The code snippet above illustrates typical LL functions for a peripheral `xxx`. LL functions typically have the following characteristics:

- All LL functions are defined as `static inline` so that there is minimal overhead when calling these functions due to compiler optimization.
- The first argument should be a pointer to a `xxx_dev_t` type. The `xxx_dev_t` type is a structure representing the peripheral’s registers; thus, the first argument is always a pointer to the starting address of the peripheral’s registers. Note that in some cases where the peripheral has multiple channels with identical register layouts, `xxx_dev_t *hw` may point to the registers of a particular channel instead.
- LL functions should be short and in most cases are deterministic. In other words, the worst case runtime of the LL function can be determined at compile time. Thus, any loops in LL functions should be finite bounded; however, there are currently a few exceptions to this rule.
- LL functions are not thread safe, it is the responsibility of the upper layers (driver layer) to ensure that registers or register fields are not accessed concurrently.

4.16.3 HAL (Hardware Abstraction Layer)

The HAL layer models the operational process of a peripheral as a set of general steps, where each step has an associated function. For each step, the details of a peripheral’s register implementation (i.e., which registers need to be set/read) are hidden (abstracted away) by the HAL. By modelling peripheral operation as a set of functional steps, any minor hardware implementation differences of the peripheral between different targets or chip versions can be abstracted away by the HAL (i.e., handled transparently). In other words, the HAL API for a particular peripheral will remain mostly the same across multiple targets/chip versions.

The following HAL function examples are selected from the Watchdog Timer HAL as each function maps to one of the steps in a WDT’s operation life cycle, thus illustrating how a HAL abstracts a peripheral’s operation into functional steps.

```c
// Initialize one of the WDTs
void wdt_hal_init(wdt_hal_context_t *hal, wdt_inst_t wdt_inst, uint32_t prescaler, _bool enable_intr);

// Configure a particular timeout stage of the WDT
void wdt_hal_config_stage(wdt_hal_context_t *hal, wdt_stage_t stage, uint32_t timeout, wdt_stage_action_t behavior);

// Start the WDT
void wdt_hal_enable(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);

// Feed (i.e., reset) the WDT
void wdt_hal_feed(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);

// Handle a WDT timeout
void wdt_hal_handle_intr(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);

// Stop the WDT
void wdt_hal_disable(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);

// De-initialize the WDT
void wdt_hal_deinit(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);
```

HAL functions will generally have the following characteristics:
• The first argument to a HAL function has the xxx_hal_context_t * type. The HAL context type is used
to store information about a particular instance of the peripheral (i.e. the context instance). A HAL context is
initialized by the xxx_hal_init() function and can store information such as the following:
  – The channel number of this instance
  – Pointer to the peripheral’s (or channel’s) registers (i.e., a xxx_dev_t * type)
  – Information about an ongoing transaction (e.g., pointer to DMA descriptor list in use)
  – Some configuration values for the instance (e.g., channel configurations)
  – Variables to maintain state information regarding the instance (e.g., a flag to indicate if the instance is
    waiting for transaction to complete)
• HAL functions should not contain any OS primitives such as queues, semaphores, mutexes, etc. All synchro-
nization/concurrency should be handled at higher layers (e.g., the driver).
• Some peripherals may have steps that cannot be further abstracted by the HAL, thus will end up being a direct
  wrapper (or macro) for an LL function.
• Some HAL functions may be placed in IRAM thus may carry an IRAM_ATTR or be placed in a separate
  xxx_hal_iram.c source file.

4.17 High-Level Interrupts

The Xtensa architecture has support for 32 interrupts, divided over 8 levels, plus an assortment of exceptions. On the
ESP32, the interrupt mux allows most interrupt sources to be routed to these interrupts using the interrupt allocator.
Normally, interrupts will be written in C, but ESP-IDF allows high-level interrupts to be written in assembly as well,
allowing for very low interrupt latencies.

4.17.1 Interrupt Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Exception and level 0 interrupts. Handled by ESP-IDF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Medium level interrupts. Handled by ESP-IDF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>xt_highint4</td>
<td>Free to use (See 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>xt_highint5</td>
<td>Normally used by ESP-IDF debug logic (See 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NMI</td>
<td>xt_nmi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dbg</td>
<td>xt_debugexception</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following notes give more information about the items in the tables above.

1. ESP-IDF debug logic can be configured to run on xt_highint4 or xt_highint5 in CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_CHECK_INT_LEVEL. Bluetooth’s interrupt can be configured to run on level 4 by enabling CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HLI. If CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HLI is enabled, ESP-IDF debug logic must be running on level 5 interrupt.
2. If CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HLI is enabled, xt_debugexception is used to fix live lock issue in ESP32 ECO3.

Using these symbols is done by creating an assembly file (suffix .S) and defining the named symbols, like this:

```
.section .iram1,"ax"
.global xt_highint5
.type xt_highint5,@function
.align 4
xt_highint5:
... your code here
rsr a0, EXCSAVE_5
rfi 5
```

For a real-life example, see the esp_system/port/soc/esp32/highint_hdl.S file; the panic handler interrupt is imple-
mented there.
4.17.2 Notes

- Do not call C code from a high-level interrupt; because these interrupts still run in critical sections, this can cause crashes. (The panic handler interrupt does call normal C code, but this is OK because there is no intention of returning to the normal code flow afterwards.)
  And if `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_HLI` is enabled, it does call normal C code in high-level interrupt, but this is OK because we add some protection for it.
- Make sure your assembly code gets linked in. If the interrupt handlers symbol is the only symbol the rest of the code uses from this file, the linker will take the default ISR instead and not link the assembly file into the final project. To get around this, in the assembly file, define a symbol, like this:
  ```
  .global ld_include_my_isr_file
  ld_include_my_isr_file:
  ```
  The symbol is called `ld_include_my_isr_file` here but can have any arbitrary name not defined anywhere else.
  Then, in the component CMakeLists.txt, add this file as an unresolved symbol to the ld command line arguments:
  ```
  target_link_libraries(${COMPONENT_TARGET} "-u ld_include_my_isr_file")
  ```
  This should cause the linker to always include a file defining `ld_include_my_isr_file`, causing the ISR to always be linked in.
  - High-level interrupts can be routed and handled using `esp_intr_alloc` and associated functions. The handler and handler arguments to `esp_intr_alloc` must be NULL, however.
  - In theory, medium priority interrupts could also be handled in this way. For now, ESP-IDF does not support this.

4.18 JTAG 调试

本文将介绍如何安装 ESP32 的 OpenOCD 调试环境，以及如何使用 GDB 来调试 ESP32 的应用程序。本文结构如下：

引言 介绍本指南主旨。
工作原理 介绍 ESP32、JTAG（Joint Test Action Group）接口、OpenOCD 和 GDB 如何相互连接，从而实现 ESP32 的调试功能。
选择 JTAG 适配器 介绍有关 JTAG 硬件适配器的选择及参照标准。
安装 OpenOCD 介绍如何安装官方编译好的 OpenOCD 软件包并验证是否安装成功。
配置 ESP32 目标板 介绍如何设置 OpenOCD 软件并安装 JTAG 硬件，两项共同构成调试目标。
启动调试器 介绍如何从 Eclipse 集成开发环境 和 命令行终端 启动 GDB 调试会话。
调试范围 如果您不熟悉 GDB，请查看此小节以获取 Eclipse 集成开发环境 以及 命令行终端 提供的调试示例。
从源码构建 OpenOCD 介绍如何在 Windows、Linux 和 macOS 操作系统上从源码构建 OpenOCD。
注意事项和补充内容 介绍使用 OpenOCD 和 GDB 通过 JTAG 接口调试 ESP32 时的注意事项和补充内容。

4.18.1 引言

ESP32 具有两个强大的 Xtensa 内核，支持多种程序架构。ESP-IDF 自带的 FreeRTOS 操作系统支持多核抢占式调度，允许用户以更加直观的方式编写软件。

与此相对地，由于缺乏合适的工具，简便的编程方式也会给程序的调试带来困难，比如找出由两个线程引起的错误，并且这两个线程在单独的 CPU 核上同时运行，那么仅凭 printf 语句会花费很长时间来定位错误。调试此类问题更需要 (往往也更快) 的方法是使用调试器，将其连接到处理器的调试端口。

乐鑫已完成 OpenOCD 移植，以支持 ESP32 处理器和多核 FreeRTOS 架构（此作为大多数 ESP32 应用程序的基础）。此外，乐鑫还提供了一些 OpenOCD 本身并不支持的工具，以进一步丰富调试功能。
本文将介绍如何在 Linux、Windows 和 macOS 环境下为 ESP32 安装 OpenOCD，并使用 GDB 进行软件调试。除部分安装修程有所不同外，所有操作系统的软件用户界面和使用流程都是相同的。

注解：本文使用的图片素材来自于 Ubuntu 16.04 LTS 上 Eclipse Neon 3 软件的截图，不同的操作系统（Windows、macOS 或 Linux）或不同的 Eclipse 软件版本在用户界面上可能会有细微差别。

4.18.2 工作原理

通过 JTAG（Joint Test Action Group）接口使用 OpenOCD 调试 ESP32 时所需要的关键软件和硬件包括 xtensa-esp32-elf-gdb 调试器、OpenOCD 上调试器和连接到 ESP32 目标 JTAG 适配器，如下图 “Application Loading and Monitoring” 标志所示。

![Diagram](image)

图 32: JTAG 调试 - 概述图

“Application Loading and Monitoring” 标志显示一组关键的软件和硬件组件，可用于编译、构建和烧写应用程序到 ESP32 上，以及监视来自 ESP32 的运行诊断信息。

Eclipse 环境集成了 JTAG 调试和应用程序加载、监视的功能，使得软件从编写、编译、加载到调试的迭代过程变得更加简单。Eclipse IDE 及其集成的调试软件均适用于 Windows、Linux 和 macOS 平台。

若使用 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板，由于其板载 FT232H 芯片，仅需一根 USB 线即可连接 PC 与 ESP32。FT232H 提供了两路 USB 通道，一路连接到 JTAG，另一路连接到 UART。

根根据用户喜好，除了使用 Eclipse 集成开发环境，还可以直接在命令行终端运行 debugger 和 idf.py build。

4.18.3 选择 JTAG 适配器

上手 JTAG 最快速便捷的方式是使用 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板，因为它板载了 JTAG 调试接口，无需使用外部 JTAG 硬件适配器和额外线缆来连接 JTAG 与 ESP32。ESP-WROVER-KIT 采用 FT2232H 提供的 JTAG 接口，可以稳定运行在 20 MHz 的时钟频率，外接的适配器很难达到这个速度。

上手 JTAG 最快速便捷的方式是将一根 USB 线连接到 ESP32 的 D+/D- USB 管脚，无须使用外部 JTAG 适配器和额外线缆。

如果您想使用单独的 JTAG 适配器，请确保其与 ESP32 的电平电压和 OpenOCD 软件都兼容。ESP32 使用的是业界标准的 JTAG 接口，它未使用（实际上也并不需要）TRST 信号线。JTAG 使用的 IO 管脚由
VDD_3P_RTC 电源管脚供电（通常连接到外部 3.3 V 的电源轨），因此 JTAG 硬件适配器的管脚需要能够在这个电压范围内正常工作。

在软件方面，OpenOCD 支持相当多数量的 JTAG 适配器，请参阅 OpenOCD 支持的适配器列表（请注意这一列表并不完整），其中还列出了兼容 SWD 接口的适配器，但请注意，ESP32 目前并不支持 SWD。此外，被硬编码为只支持特定产品的 JTAG 适配器也无法在 ESP32 上工作，例如仅针对 STM32 系列产品的 ST-LINK 适配器。

JTAG 正常工作至少需要连接的信号线有：TDI、TDO、TCK、TMS 和 GND。一些 JTAG 适配器还需要 ESP32 提供一路电源到适配器的某个管脚上（比如 Vtar），用于设置适配器的工作电压。您也可以选择将 SRST 信号线连接到 ESP32 的 CH_PD 管脚上，但请注意，目前 OpenOCD 对该信号线提供的支持相当有限。

ESP-Prog 中展示了使用外部电路板进行调试的实例，方法是将其连接到 ESP32 的 JTAG 管脚上。

### 4.18.4 安装 OpenOCD

如果您已经按照 快速入门 完成了 ESP-IDF 及其 CMake 构建系统的安装，那么 OpenOCD 已经被默认安装到了您的开发系统中。在 设置开发环境 结束后，您应该能够在终端中运行如下 OpenOCD 命令：

```
openocd --version
```

终端会输出以下信息（实际版本号可能会更新）：

```
Open On-Chip Debugger v0.10.0-esp32-20190708 (2019-07-08-11:04)
Licensed under GNU GPL v2
For bug reports, read http://openocd.org/doc/doxygen/bugs.html
```

您还可以检查 OPENOCD_SCRIPTS 环境变量的值，以确认 OpenOCD 配置文件的路径，Linux 和 macOS 用户可以在终端输入 `echo $OPENOCD_SCRIPTS`，Windows 用户需要输入 `echo %OPENOCD_SCRIPTS%`。如果终端输出了有效路径，则表明您已经正确安装 OpenOCD。

如果无法执行上述步骤，请再次阅读快速入门手册，参考 设置安装工具 章节。

**注解**：另外也可以从源代码编译 OpenOCD 工具，详细信息请参阅 从源码构建 OpenOCD 章节。

### 4.18.5 配置 ESP32 目标板

OpenOCD 安装完成后就可以配置 ESP32 目标（即带 JTAG 接口的 ESP32 板），具体分为以下三个步骤：

- 配置并连接 JTAG 接口
- 运行 OpenOCD
- 上传待调试的应用程序

#### 配置并连接 JTAG 接口

此步骤取决于使用的 JTAG 和 ESP32 板，请参考以下两种情况。

**配置 ESP-WROOM-32 上的 JTAG 接口** 所有版本的 ESP-WROOM-32 板子都内置了 JTAG 调试功能，要使其正常工作，还需要设置相关跳线来启用 JTAG 功能，设置 SPI 闪存电压和配置 USB 驱动程序。具体步骤请参考以下说明。
配置硬件

- 根据ESP-WROVER-KIT V4.1入门指南文档中设置选项章节所描述的信息，设置JP8便可以启用JTAG功能。
- 检查ESP32上用于JTAG通信的引脚是否被接到了其它硬件上，这可能会影响JTAG的工作。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESP32引脚</th>
<th>JTAG信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MTDO/GPIO15</td>
<td>TDO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTDI/GPIO12</td>
<td>TDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTCK/GPIO13</td>
<td>TCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTMS/GPIO14</td>
<td>TMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GND</td>
<td>GND</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

配置USB驱动 安装和配置USB驱动，这样OpenOCD才能够与ESP-WROVER-KIT板上的JTAG接口通信，并且使用UART接口上传待烧写的镜像文件。请根据你的操作系统按照以下步骤进行安装配置。

注解：ESP-WROVER-KIT使用了FT2232芯片实现了JTAG适配器，所以以下说明同样适用于其他基于FT2232的JTAG适配器。

Windows

1. 使用标准USB A / micro USB B线将ESP-WROVER-KIT与计算机相连接，并打开板子的电源。
2. 等待Windows识别出ESP-WROVER-KIT并且为其安装驱动。如果驱动没有被自动安装，请前往官网下载并手动安装。
3. 从Zadig官网下载Zadig工具（Zadig_X.X.exe）并运行。
4. 在Zadig工具中，进入“Options”菜单中选中“List All Devices”。
5. 检查设备列表，其中应该包含两条与ESP-WROVER-KIT相关的条目：“Dual RS232-HS (Interface 0)”和“Dual RS232-HS (Interface 1)”。驱动的名字应该是“FTDIBUS (vxxxx)”并且USB ID为：04036010。

图33：在Zadig工具中配置JTAG USB驱动

6. 第一个设备“Dual RS232-HS (Interface 0)”连接到了ESP32的JTAG端口，此设备原来的“FTDIBUS (vxxxx)”驱动需要替换成“WinUSB (v6xxxxx)”。为此，请选择“Dual RS232-HS (Interface 0)”并将驱动重新安装为“WinUSB (v6xxxxx)”，具体可以参考上图。
注解：请勿更改第二个设备“Dual RS232-HS（Interface 1）”的驱动，它被连接到 ESP32 的串口（UART），用于上传应用程序映像给 ESP32 进行烧写。

现在，ESP-WROVER-KIT 的 JTAG 接口应该可以被 OpenOCD 使用了，想要进一步设置调试环境，请前往运行 OpenOCD 章节。

Linux

1. 使用标准 USB A / micro USB B 线将 ESP-WROVER-KIT 与计算机相连接，并打开板子的电源。
2. 打开终端，输入 ls -l /dev/ttyUSB* 命令检查操作系统是否能够识别板子的 USB 端口。类似识别结果如下：

   ```
   user-name@computer-name:~/esp$ ls -l /dev/ttyUSB*
   crw-rw---- 1 root dialout 188, 0 Jul 10 19:04 /dev/ttyUSB0
   crw-rw---- 1 root dialout 188, 1 Jul 10 19:04 /dev/ttyUSB1
   ```

3. 根据 OpenOCD README 文档中“Permissions delegation”小节的介绍，设置这两个 USB 端口的访问权限。
4. 注销并重新登录 Linux 系统，然后重新插拔板子的电源使之前的改动生效。在终端再次输入 ls -l /dev/ttyUSB* 命令进行验证，查看这两个设备的组所有者是否已经从 dialout 更改为 plugdev。

   ```
   user-name@computer-name:~/esp$ ls -l /dev/ttyUSB*
   crw-rw---- 1 root plugdev 188, 0 Jul 10 19:07 /dev/ttyUSB0
   crw-rw---- 1 root plugdev 188, 1 Jul 10 19:07 /dev/ttyUSB1
   ```

如果看到类似的输出结果，并且你也是 plugdev 组的成员，那么设置工作就完成了。

具有较低编号的 /dev/ttyUSBn 接口用于 JTAG 通信，另一路接口被连接到 ESP32 的串口（UART），用于上传应用程序映像给 ESP32 进行烧写。

现在，ESP-WROVER-KIT 的 JTAG 接口应该可以被 OpenOCD 使用了，想要进一步设置调试环境，请前往运行 OpenOCD 章节。

MacOS 在 macOS 上，同时使用 FT2232 的 JTAG 接口和串口还需另外进行其它操作。当操作系统加载 FTDI 串口驱动的时候，它会对 FT2232 芯片的两个通道做相同的操作。但是，这两个通道中只有一个是被用作串口，而另一个用于 JTAG，如果操作系统已经为用于 JTAG 的通道加载了 FTDI 串口驱动的话，OpenOCD 将无法连接到芯片。有两个方法可以解决这个问题：

1. 在启动 OpenOCD 之前手动卸载 FTDI 串口驱动程序，然后启动 OpenOCD，再加载串口驱动程序。
2. 修改 FTDI 驱动程序的配置，使其不会为 FT2232 芯片的通道 B 进行自我加载，该通道用于 ESP-WROVER-KIT 板上的 JTAG 通道。

手动卸载驱动程序

1. 从 FTDI 官网 安装驱动。
2. 使用 USB 线连接 ESP-WROVER-KIT。
3. 卸载串口驱动

   ```
   sudo kextunload -b com.FTDI.driver.FTDIUSBSerialDriver
   ```

有时，您可能还需要卸载苹果的 FTDI 驱动：

- macOS < 10.15:

   ```
   sudo kextunload -b com.apple.driver.AppleUSBFTDI
   ```

- macOS 10.15:

   ```
   sudo kextunload -b com.apple.DriverKit-AppleUSBFTDI
   ```
警告：对于 FTDI 驱动，如果使用串口的通道不正确，则可能会导致内核崩溃。ESP-WROVER-KIT 将通道 A 用于 JTAG，通道 B 用于串口。

4. 运行 OpenOCD:

```bash
.. include:: esp32.inc
:start-after: run-openocd
:end-before: ---
```

5. 在另一个终端窗口，再一次加载 FTDI 串口驱动:

```
sudo kextload -b com.FTDI.driver.FTDIUSBSerialDriver
```

注解：如果你需要重启 OpenOCD，则无需再次卸载 FTDI 驱动程序，只需停止 OpenOCD 并再次启动它。只有在重新连接 ESP-WROVER-KIT 或者切换了电源的情况下才需要再次卸载驱动。

你也可以根据自身需求，将此过程包装进 shell 脚本中。

修改 FTDI 驱动 简而言之，这种方法需要修改 FTDI 驱动程序的配置文件，这样可以防止为 FT2232H 的通道 B 自动加载串口驱动。

注解：其他板子可能将通道 A 用于 JTAG，因此请谨慎使用此选项。

警告：此方法还需要操作系统禁止对驱动进行签名验证，因此可能无法被所有的用户所接受。

1. 使用文本编辑器打开 FTDI 驱动的配置文件（注意 sudo）:

```
sudo nano /Library/Extensions/FTDIUSBSerialDriver.kext/Contents/Info.plist
```

2. 找到并删除以下几行:

```xml
<key>FT2232H_B</key>
<dict>
<key>CFBundleIdentifier</key>
<string>com.FTDI.driver.FTDIUSBSerialDriver</string>
<key>iOLClass</key>
<string>FTDIUSBSerialDriver</string>
<key>iOProviderClass</key>
<string>IOUSBInterface</string>
<key>bConfigurationValue</key>
<integer>1</integer>
<key>bInterfaceNumber</key>
<integer>1</integer>
<key>bcdDevice</key>
<integer>1792</integer>
<key>idProduct</key>
<integer>24592</integer>
<key>idVendor</key>
<integer>1027</integer>
</dict>
```

3. 保存并关闭文件
4. 禁用驱动的签名认证:
   1. 点击苹果的 logo，选择 “Restart…”
   2. 重启后当听到响铃时，立即按下键盘上的 CMD+R 组合键
   3. 进入恢复模式后，打开终端
   4. 运行命令:
5. 再一次重启系统
完成这些步骤后，可以同时使用串口和 JTAG 接口了。
想要进一步设置调试环境，请前往运行 OpenOCD 章节。

配置其它 JTAG 接口：关于适配 OpenOCD 和 ESP32 的 JTAG 接口选择问题，请参考选择 JTAG 适配器章节，确保 JTAG 适配器能够与 OpenOCD 和 ESP32 一同工作。然后按照以下三个步骤进行设置，使其正常工作。

配置硬件
1. 找到 JTAG 接口和 ESP32 板上需要相互连接并建立通信的引脚/信号。
   表 23: ESP32 引脚和 JTAG 接口信号

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESP32 引脚</th>
<th>JTAG 信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MTDO/GPIO15</td>
<td>TDO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTDI/GPIO12</td>
<td>TDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTCK/GPIO13</td>
<td>TCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTMS/GPIO14</td>
<td>TMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GND</td>
<td>GND</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. 检查 ESP32 上用于 JTAG 通信的引脚是否被连接到了其它硬件上，这可能会影响 JTAG 的工作。
3. 连接 ESP32 和 JTAG 接口上的引脚/信号。

配置驱动：你可能还需要安装软件驱动，才能使 JTAG 在计算机上正常工作，请参阅你所使用的 JTAG 适配器的有关文档，获取相关详细信息。

连接：将 JTAG 接口连接到计算机，打开 ESP32 和 JTAG 接口板上的电源，然后检查计算机是否可以识别到 JTAG 接口。
要继续设置调试环境，请前往运行 OpenOCD 章节。

运行 OpenOCD
配置完目标并将其连接到电脑后，即可启动 OpenOCD。
打开终端，按照快速入门指南中的设置好开发环境章节进行操作，然后运行如下命令，以启动 OpenOCD（该命令适用于 Windows、Linux 和 macOS）：

```
openocd -f board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg
```

注解：上述命令中 -f 选项后跟的配置文件专用于板载 ESP32-WROOM-32 模组的 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板。基于具体使用的硬件，您可能需要选择不同的配置文件，具体内容请参阅根据目标芯片配置 OpenOCD。

例如，对于带有用于 JTAG 连接的 FT2232H 或 FT232H 芯片的定制板，或带有 ESP-Prog 的定制板，可使用 board/esp32c3-ftdi.cfg。

现在您应该可以看到如下输出（此日志来自板载 ESP32-WROOM-32 模组的 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板）：

```
如果出现指示权限问题的错误，请打开 ~/esp/openocd-esp32 目录，参阅 OpenOCD README 文件中关于“Permissions delegation”的说明。

如果遇到无法找到配置文件的错误，例如 Can't find board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg，请检查 OPENOCD_SCRIPTS 环境变量是否设置正确，OpenOCD 根据此环境变量来查找 -f 指定的文件，参见安装 OpenOCD。此外，还需要检查配置文件是否确实位于该路径下。

如果出现 JTAG 错误（例如输出为 ...all ones 或 ...all zeroes），请检查硬件连接是否正确。除了 ESP32 的管脚之外是否还有其他信号连接到了 JTAG，并查看是否所有器件都已经上电。

上传待调试的应用程序

按照正常步骤构建并上传 ESP32 应用程序，具体请参阅第八步：编译工程 章节。

此外，您还可以使用 OpenOCD 通过 JTAG 接口将应用程序镜像烧写到闪存中，命令如下:

codec -f board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg -c "program_esp filename.bin 0x10000 ...verify exit"

其中 OpenOCD 的烧写命令 program_esp 格式如下:

program_esp <image_file> <offset> [verify] [reset] [exit]

- image_file: 程序镜像文件存放的路径
- offset: 镜像烧写到闪存中的偏移地址
- verify: 烧写完成后校验闪存中的内容（可选）
- reset: 烧写完成后重启目标（可选）
- exit: 烧写完成后退出 OpenOCD（可选）

现在可以调试应用程序了，请按照以下章节中的步骤进行操作。

4.18.6 启动调试器

ESP32 的工具链中带有 GNU 调试器（简称 GDB），它和其它工具链软件共同存放于 xtensa-esp32-elf-gdb 中。除了直接在命令行终端中调用并操作 GDB 外，也可以在 IDE（例如 Eclipse, Visual Studio Code 等）中进行调用，使用图形用户界面间接运行 GDB，这一方法无需在终端中输入任何命令。

关于以上两种调试器的使用方法，详见以下链接。

- 使用 Eclipse 调试
- 使用命令行调试

建议首先检查调试器能否在命令行终端下正常工作，然后再使用 Eclipse 集成开发环境 进行调试工作。
4.18.7 调试范例

本节适用于不熟悉 GDB 的用户，下文将使用 get-started/blink 下简单的应用程序来演示调试会话的工作流程，同时会介绍以下常用的调试操作:

1. 浏览代码，查看堆栈和线程
2. 设置和清除断点
3. 手动暂停目标
4. 单步执行代码
5. 查看并设置内存
6. 观察和设置程序变量
7. 设置条件断点

此外还会提供在命令行终端进行调试下使用 GDB 调试的案例。

在演示之前，请完成 ESP32 目标板设置并加载 get-started/blink 至 ESP32 中。

4.18.8 从源码构建 OpenOCD

以下文档分别介绍了如何在各操作系统平台上从源码构建 OpenOCD。

Windows 环境下从源码编译 OpenOCD

除了从 Espressif 官方直接下载 OpenOCD 可执行文件，你还可以选择从源码编译得到 OpenOCD。如果想要快速设置 OpenOCD 而不是自行编译，请备份好当前文件，前往安装 OpenOCD 章节查阅。

下载 OpenOCD 源码 支持 ESP32 的 OpenOCD 源代码可以从乐鑫官方的 GitHub 获得，网址为 https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32，请使用以下命令来下载源代码:

```bash
cd ~/esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32.git
```

克隆后的源代码被保存在 ~/esp/openocd-esp32 目录中。

安装依赖的软件包 安装编译 OpenOCD 所需的软件包。

注解: 依次安装以下软件包，检查安装是否成功，然后继续下一个软件包的安装。在进行下一步操作之前，要先解决当前报告的问题。

```bash
pacman -S libtool
pacman -S autoconf
pacman -S automake
pacman -S texinfo
pacman -S mingw-w64-i686-libusb-compat-git
pacman -S pkg-config
```

注解: 安装 pkg-config 会破坏 esp-idf 的工具链。因而在 OpenOCD 构建完成后，应将其卸载。详见文末进一步说明。如果想要再次构建 OpenOCD，你需要再次运行 pacman -S pkg-config。此步骤安装的其他软件包（在 pkg-config 之前）并不会出现这一问题。

构建 OpenOCD 配置和构建 OpenOCD 的流程如下:
你可以选择再执行 `sudo make install`，如果你已经安装过别的开发平台的 OpenOCD，请跳过这个步骤，因为它可能会覆盖掉原来的 OpenOCD。

### 注解:
- 如果发生错误，请解决后再次尝试编译，直到 `make` 成功为止。
- 如果 OpenOCD 存在子模块问题，请 `cd` 到 openocd-esp32 目录，并输入 `git submodule update --init` 命令。
- 如果 `./configure` 成功运行，JTAG 被使能的信息会被打印在 OpenOCD configuration summary 下面。
- 如果您的设备信息未显示在日志中，请根据 `./openocd-esp32/doc/INSTALL.txt` 文中的描述使用 `./configure` 启用它。
- 有关编译 OpenOCD 的详细信息，请参阅 openocd-esp32/README.Windows。

一旦 `make` 过程成功完成，OpenOCD 的可执行文件会被保存到 `~/esp/openocd-esp32/src/openocd` 目录中。

如安装依赖步骤所述，最后还需要移除 `pkg-config` 软件包:

```
pacman -Rs pkg-config
```

### 下一步：
想要进一步配置调试环境，请前往 配置 ESP32 目标板 章节。

#### Linux 环境下从源码编译 OpenOCD
除了从 Espressif 官方 直接下载 OpenOCD 可执行文件，你还可以选择从源码编译得到 OpenOCD。如果想要快速设置 OpenOCD 而不是自行编译，请备份好当前文件，前往 安装 OpenOCD 章节查阅。

#### 下载 OpenOCD 源码
支持 ESP32 的 OpenOCD 源代码可以从乐鑫官方的 GitHub 获得，网址为 https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32。请使用以下命令来下载源代码:

```
cd ~/esp
 git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32.git
```

克隆后的源代码被保存在 ~/esp/openocd-esp32 目录中。

#### 安装依赖的软件包
安装编译 OpenOCD 所需的软件包。

### 注解：
依次安装以下软件包，检查安装是否成功，然后继续下一个软件包的安装。在进行下一步操作之前，要先解决当前报告的问题。

```
sudo apt-get install make
sudo apt-get install libtool
sudo apt-get install pkg-config
sudo apt-get install autoconf
sudo apt-get install automake
sudo apt-get install texinfo
sudo apt-get install libusb-1.0
```
注解:
- pkg-config 应为 0.2.3 或以上的版本。
- autoconf 应为 2.6.4 或以上的版本。
- automake 应为 1.9 或以上的版本。
- 当使用 USB-Blaster，ASIX Presto，OpenJTAG 和 FT2232 作为适配器时，需要下载安装 libFTDI 和 FTD2XX 的驱动。
- 当使用 CMSIS-DAP 时，需要安装 HIDAPI。

构建 OpenOCD 配置和构建 OpenOCD 的流程如下:

```bash
cd ~/esp/openocd-esp32
./bootstrap
./configure
make
```

你可以选择最后再执行 sudo make install，如果你已经安装过别的开发平台的 OpenOCD，请跳过这个步骤，因为它可能会覆盖掉原来的 OpenOCD。

注解:
- 如果发生错误，请解决后再次尝试编译，直到 make 成功为止。
- 如果 OpenOCD 存在子模块问题，请 cd 到 openocd-esp32 目录，并输入 git submodule update --init 命令。
- 如果 ./configure 成功运行，JTAG 被使能的信息会被打印在 OpenOCD configuration summary 下面。
- 如果您的设备信息未显示在日志中，请根据 ../openocd-esp32/doc/INSTALL.txt 文中的描述使用 ./configure 启用它。
- 有关编译 OpenOCD 的详细信息，请参阅 openocd-esp32/README。

一旦 make 过程成功结束，OpenOCD 的可执行文件会被保存到 ~/openocd-esp32/bin 目录中。

下一步 想要进一步配置调试环境，请前往配置 ESP32 目标板 章节。

MacOS 环境下从源码编译 OpenOCD

除了从 Espressif 官方 直接下载 OpenOCD 可执行文件，你还可以选择从源码编译得到 OpenOCD。如果想要快速设置 OpenOCD 而不是自行编译，备份好当前文件，前往安装 OpenOCD 章节查阅。

下载 OpenOCD 源码 支持 ESP32 的 OpenOCD 源代码可以从乐鑫官方的 GitHub 获得，网址为 https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32，使用以下命令来下载源代码:

```bash
cd ~/esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32.git
```

克隆后的源代码被保存在 ~/esp/openocd-esp32 目录中。

安装依赖的软件包 使用 Homebrew 安装编译 OpenOCD 所需的软件包:

```bash
brew install automake libtool libusb wget gcc@4.9 pkg-config
```
构建 OpenOCD 配置和构建 OpenOCD 的流程如下:

```bash
cd ~/esp/openocd-esp32
./bootstrap
./configure
make
```

你可以选择最后再执行 `sudo make install`，如果你已经安装过别的开发平台的 OpenOCD，请跳过这个步骤，因为它可能会覆盖掉原来的 OpenOCD。

注解:
- 如果发生错误，请解决后再次尝试编译，直到 make 成功为止。
- 如果 OpenOCD 存在子模块问题，请 cd 到 openocd-esp32 目录，并输入 `git submodule update --init` 命令。
- 如果 ./configure 成功运行，JTAG 被使能的信息会被打印在 OpenOCD configuration summary 下面。
- 如果您的设备信息未显示在日志中，请根据 ./openocd-esp32/doc/INSTALL.txt 文中的描述使用 ./configure 启用它。
- 有关编译 OpenOCD 的详细信息，请参阅 openocd-esp32/README.OSX。

一旦 make 过程成功结束，OpenOCD 的可执行文件会被保存到 ~/esp/openocd-esp32/src/openocd 目录中。

下一步 想要进一步配置调试环境，请前往配置 ESP32 目标板 章节。

本文档在演示中所使用的 OpenOCD 是预编译好的二进制发行版，在安装 OpenOCD 章节中有所介绍。

如果要使用本地从源代码编译的 OpenOCD 程序，需要将相应可执行文件的路径修改为 src/openocd，并设置 OPENOCD_SCRIPTS 环境变量，使得 OpenOCD 能够找到配置文件。Linux 和 macOS 用户可以执行:

```bash
cd ~/esp/openocd-esp32
export OPENOCD_SCRIPTS=$PWD/tcl
```

Windows 用户可以执行:

```bash
cd %USERPROFILE%\esp\openocd-esp32
set "OPENOCD_SCRIPTS=%CD%\tcl"
```

针对 Linux 和 macOS 用户，运行本地编译的 OpenOCD 的示例:

```bash
src/openocd -f board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg
```

Windows 用户的示例如下:

```bash
src\openocd -f board\esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg
```

4.18.9 注意事项和补充内容

本节列出了上文中提到的所有注意事项和补充内容的链接。

注意事项和补充内容

本节提供了本指南中各部分提到的一些注意事项和补充内容。
可用的断点和观察点：ESP32调试器支持2个硬件断点和64个软件断点。硬件断点是由ESP32芯片内部的逻辑电路实现的，能够设置在代码的任何位置，即内存或者IRAM的代码区域。除了硬件断点，OpenOCD还支持软件断点：当使用menuconfig中的CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK项时会使用第二硬件断点。如果不在OpenOCD或者GDB中再次尝试使用这个观察点，可能会得到预期的结果。

关于断点的补充知识：使用软件的内存模拟部分硬件断点的方式就是当使用GDB命令`hb myFunction`给某个函数设置硬件断点时，如果该函数位于内存中，并且此时还可用的硬件断点，该调试器就会使用硬件断点，否则就使用32个软件内存断点中的一个来模拟。这个规则同样适用于b myFunction之类的命令。在这种情况下，GDB会自己决定使用哪种类型的断点。如果myFunction位于可写区域(IRAM)，那就使用软件内存断点，否则就会像处理 hb 命令一样使用硬件断点或者软件内存断点。

闪存映射 vs 软件内存断点：为了在内存中设置或者清除软件断点，OpenOCD需要知道它们在内存中的地址。为了完成从ESP32的地址空间到内存地址的转换，OpenOCD使用内存中页面代码区域的映射。这些映射被保存在内存映射的头部，位于页目录数据（代码段和数据段）之前，并且保存在写入缓存的每一个应用的映射表中。为了支持软件内存断点，OpenOCD需要知道待调试的内存区域映射在内存中的位置。默认情况下，OpenOCD会在0x8000处读取分区表并使用第一个找到的内存映射映射，但是也可能会存在无法工作的原因，比如分区表不标准的内存位置，甚至可能有多个映射；一个出厂映射和两个OTA映射。你可能需要调试其中的任意一个。为了涵盖所有的调试情况，OpenOCD支持特殊的命令，用于指定待调试的内存映射在内存中的具体位置。该命令具有以下格式：

```
esp appimage_offset <offset>
```

偏移量应为十六进制，若要恢复默认行为，可以将偏移地址设置为-1。

注解：由于GDB在连接OpenOCD时仅仅请求一次内存映射，所以可以在TCL配置文件中指定该命令，或者通过命令行传递给OpenOCD。对于后者，命令示例如下：

```
openocd -f board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg -c "init; halt; esp appimage_offset...-0x210000"
```

另外还可以通过OpenOCD的telnet会话执行该命令，然后再连接GDB，不过这种方式似乎没有那么便捷。

“next”命令无法跳过子程序的原因：当使用next命令单步执行代码时，GDB会在子程序的前面设置一个断点（两个中可用的一个），这样就可以跳过进入子程序内部的细节。如果这两个断点已经用在代码的其它位置，那么next命令将不起作用。在这种情况下，请删除一个断点以使其中一个变得可用。当两个断点都已经被使用时，next命令会像step命令一样工作，调试器就会进入子程序内部。

OpenOCD支持的编译时的选项：ESP-IDF有一些针对OpenOCD调试功能的选项可以在编译时进行设置。

- `CONFIG_ESP32_DEBUG_OCDAware`默认会被能。如果程序抛出了不可修复或者未处理的异常，并且此时已经连接上了JTAG调试器（即OpenOCD正在运行），那么ESP-IDF将会进入调试器工作模式。
- `CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK`默认没有使能。在所有任务堆栈的末尾设置观察点，从1号开始索引。这是调试任务堆栈溢出的最准确的方式。

更多有关设置编译时的选项的信息，请参阅项目配置菜单。
Chapter 4. API 指南

支持 FreeRTOS OpenOCD 完全支持 ESP-IDF 自带的 FreeRTOS 操作系统，GDB 会将 FreeRTOS 中的任务当作线程。使用 GDB 命令 i threads 可以查看所有的线程，使用命令 thread n 可以切换到某个具体任务的堆栈，其中 n 是线程的编号。检测 FreeRTOS 的功能可以在配置目标时被禁用。更多详细信息，请参阅根据目标芯片配置 OpenOCD。

在 OpenOCD 的配置文件中设置 SPI 闪存的工作电压 ESP32 的 MTDI 引脚是用于 JTAG 通信的四个引脚之一，同时也是 ESP32 的 bootstrapping 引脚。上电时，ESP32 会在 MTDI 引脚上采样二进制电平，据此来设置内部的稳压器，用于给外部的 SPI 闪存芯片供电。如果上电时 MTDI 引脚上的二进制电平为低电平，则稳压器会被设置为 3.3 V；如果 MTDI 引脚为高电平，则稳压器会被设置为 1.8 V。MTDI 引脚通常需要一个上拉电阻或者直接能使内部的弱下拉电阻（详见 ESP32 系列芯片技术规格书），具体取决于所使用的 SPI 芯片的类型。但是一旦连接上 JTAG 后，原来用于实现 bootstrapping 功能的上拉或下拉电阻会被覆盖掉。

为了解决这个问题，OpenOCD 的板级配置文件（例如 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板的 board\esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg）提供了 ESP32_FLASH_VOLTAGE 参数来设置 TDO 信号线在空闲状态下的二进制电平，这样就减少由于闪存电压不正确而导致的应用程序启动不良的几率。

查看 JTAG 连接的 ESP32 模组的规格书，检查其 SPI 闪存芯片的供电电压值，然后再相应的设置 ESP32_FLASH_VOLTAGE。大多数 WROOM 模块使用 3.3 V 的闪存芯片。早于 ESP32-WROVER-B 的 WROVER 模块使用 1.8 V 闪存芯片，而 ESP32-WROVER-B 和 E 模块使用 3.3 V 闪存芯片。

优化 JTAG 的速度 为了实现更高的数据通信速率同时最小化丢包数，建议优化 JTAG 时钟频率的设置，使其达到 JTAG 能稳定运行的最大值。为此，请参考以下建议。

1. 如果 CPU 以 80 MHz 运行，则 JTAG 时钟频率的上限为 20 MHz：如果 CPU 以 160 MHz 或者 240 MHz 运行，则上限为 26 MHz。
2. 根据特定的 JTAG 适配器和连接电缆的长度，你可能需要将 JTAG 的工作频率降低至 20 / 26 MHz 以下。
3. 在某些特殊情况下，如果你看到 DSR/DIR 错误（并且它并不是由 OpenOCD 试图从一个没有物理存储器映射的地址空间读取数据而导致的），请降低 JTAG 的工作频率。
4. ESP-WROVER-KIT 能够稳定运行在 20 / 26 MHz 频率下。

调试器的启动命令的含义 在启动时，调试器发出一系列命令来复位芯片并使其在特定的代码行停止运行。这个命令序列（如下所示）支持自定义，用户可以选择在最方便合适的代码行开始调试工作。

- set remote hardware-watchpoint-limit 2 —限制 GDB 仅使用 ESP32 支持的两个硬件观察点。更多详细信息，请查阅 GDB 配置远程目标。
- mon reset halt —复位芯片并使 CPU 停止运行。
- flushregs —monitor (mon) 命令无法通知 GDB 目标状态已经更改，GDB 会假设在 mon reset halt 之前所有的任务堆栈仍然有效，实际上，复位后目标状态将发生变化。执行 flushregs 是一种强制 GDB 从目标获取最新状态的方法。
- thb app_main —在 app_main 处插入一个临时的硬件断点，如果有需要，可以将其替换为其他函数。
- c —恢复程序运行，它将会在 app_main 的断点处停止运行。

根据目标芯片配置 OpenOCD OpenOCD 有很多种配置文件 (*.cfg)，它们位于 OpenOCD 安装目录的 share/openocd/scripts 子目录下（或者在 OpenOCD 源码目录的 tcl/scripts 目录中）。本文主要介绍 board, interface 和 target 这三个目录。

- interface 包含了例如 ESPProg, J-Link 这些 JTAG 适配器的配置文件。
- target 包含了目标芯片或者模块的配置文件。
- board 包含有关于 JTAG 适配器的开发板的配置文件，这些配置文件会根据实际的 JTAG 适配器和芯片/模块来构建某个具体的 interface 和 target 配置。

ESP32 可以使用的配置文件如下表所示：
如果你使用的开发板已经有了一份预定义好的配置文件，你只需将该文件通过 -f 参数告诉 OpenOCD。
如果你的开发板不在上述列表中，你需要使用多个 -f 参数来告诉 OpenOCD 你选择的 interface 和 target 配置文件。

自定义配置文件 OpenOCD 的配置文件是用 TCL 语言编写的，包含了定制和编写脚本的各种选项。这在非标准调试的场景中非常有用，更多关于 TCL 脚本的内容请参考 OpenOCD 参考手册。

OpenOCD 中的配置变量 你还可以视情况在导入 target 配置文件之前，设定如下变量的值。可以写在自定义配置文件中，或通过命令行传递。

TCL 语言中为变量赋值的语法是：

```tcl
set VARIABLE_NAME value
```

在命令行中为变量赋值请参考如下示例（请把 .cfg 配置文件替换成你自己的开发板配置）：

```bash
openocd -c 'set VARIABLE_NAME value' -f board/esp-xxxxx-kit.cfg
```

请切记，一定要在导入配置文件之前设置这些变量，否则变量的值将不会生效。为多个变量赋值需要重复多次 -c 选项。

### 表 24: ESP32 相关的 OpenOCD 配置文件

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>名字</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg</td>
<td>板载 3.3V 模组（ESP32-WROVER-32, ESP32-WROVER-B, ESP32-WROVER-E）的 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板配置文件</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board/esp32-wrover-kit-1.8v.cfg</td>
<td>板载 1.8V 模组（ESP32-WROVER）的 ESP-WROVER-KIT 开发板配置文件</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board/esp32-ethernet-kit-3.3v.cfg</td>
<td>板载 3.3V 模组（ESP32-WROVER-B / ESP32-WROVER-E）的 ESP-Ethernet-KIT 开发板配置文件</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target/esp32.cfg</td>
<td>ESP32 的目标配置文件，可以和某个 interface/ 下的配置文件一同使用</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target/esp32-solo-1.cfg</td>
<td>ESP32-SOLO-1 的目标配置文件，和 esp32.cfg 的差别在于它仅配置一个 CPU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface/ftdi/esp32_devkitj_v1.cfg</td>
<td>适用于 ESP-WROVER-KIT 和 ESP-Prog 板子的 JTAG 适配器配置文件</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 表 25: 通用的 ESP 相关的 OpenOCD 变量

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>变量名</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP_RTOS</td>
<td>设置成 none 可以关闭 OpenOCD 对 RTOS 的支持。这样的话，你将无法在 GDB 中查看到线程列表。这个功能在调试 FreeRTOS 本身的时候会很有用。可以单步调试调度器的代码。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_FLASH_SIZE</td>
<td>设置成 0 可以关闭对 Flash 断点的支持。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_SEMIHOST_BASEDIR</td>
<td>设置 semihosting 在主机端的默认目录。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 表 26: ESP32 相关的 OpenOCD 变量

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>名字</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP32_FLASH_VOLTAGE</td>
<td>如果 ESP32 模组集成的是 1.8V 的 Flash，将该变量设置为 1.8，详情请参考在 OpenOCD 的配置文件中设置 SPI 闪存的工作电压</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP32_ONLYCPU</td>
<td>对于多核芯片，将该值设置为 1 可以仅启用单核调试功能</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
复位 ESP32 通过在 GDB 中输入 `mon reset` 或者 `mon reset halt` 来复位板子。

不要将 JTAG 引脚用于其他功能 如果除了 ESP32 模组和 JTAG 适配器之外的其他硬件也连接到了 JTAG 引脚，那么 JTAG 的操作可能会受到干扰。ESP32 JTAG 使用以下引脚：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESP32 引脚</th>
<th>JTAG 信号</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MTDI / GPIO12</td>
<td>TDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTDCK / GPIO13</td>
<td>TCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTMS / GPIO14</td>
<td>TMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GND</td>
<td>GND</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

如果用户应用程序更改了 JTAG 引脚的配置，JTAG 通信可能会失败。如果 OpenOCD 正确初始化（检测到两个 Tensilica 内核），但在程序运行期间失去了同步并报出大量 DTR/DIR 错误，则应用程序可能将 JTAG 引脚重新配置为其他功能或者用户忘记将 Vtar 连接到 JTAG 适配器。

以下是 GDB 在应用程序进入重新配置 MTDI/GPIO15 作为输入代码后报告的一系列错误摘录：

```plaintext
cpu0: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates target still busy!
cpu0: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates DIR instruction generated. an exception!
cpu0: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates DIR instruction generated. an overrun!
cpu1: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates target still busy!
cpu1: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates DIR instruction generated. an exception!
cpu1: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates DIR instruction generated. an overrun!
```

**JTAG 与闪存加密和安全引导** 默认情况下，开启了闪存加密和（或者）安全引导后，系统在首次启动时，引导程序会烧写 eFuse 的某个比特，从而将 JTAG 永久关闭。

Kconfig 配置项 `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_JTAG` 可以改变这个默认行为，使得用户即使开启了安全引导或者闪存加密，仍会保留 JTAG 的功能。

然而，因为设置 **软件断点** 的需要，OpenOCD 会尝试自动读取 Flash 中的内容，这会带来两个问题：

- 软件断点和闪存加密是不兼容的，目前 OpenOCD 尚不支持对 Flash 中的内容进行加密和解密。
- 如果开启了安全引导功能，设置软件断点会改变被签名的程序的摘要，从而使得签名失效。这也意味着，如果设置了软件断点，系统会在下次重启时的签名验证阶段失败，导致无法启动。

关闭 JTAG 的软件断点功能，可以在启动 OpenOCD 时在命令行额外加一项配置参数 `-c 'set ESP_FLASH_SIZE 0'`，请参考 OpenOCD 中的配置变量。

**注解** 同样地，当启用该选项，并且调试过程中打了软件断点，之后引导程序将无法校验通过应用程序的签名。

**JTAG 和 ESP32-WROOM-32 AT 固件兼容性问题** ESP32-WROOM 系列模块预装了 AT 固件。该固件将 GPIO12 至 GPIO15 管脚配置为 SPI 从属接口，使得无法使用 JTAG。

要想使用 JTAG，需要编译新的固件。新的固件不能使用专门用于 JTAG 通信的管脚 (GPIO12 至 GPIO15)，然后将固件烧录到模组中。请参考不要将 JTAG 引脚用于其他功能。
报告 OpenOCD / GDB 的问题

如果你遇到 OpenOCD 或者 GDB 程序本身的问题，并且在网上没有找到可用的解决方案，请前往 https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/issues 新建一个议题。

1. 请在问题报告中提供你使用的配置的详细信息：
   a. JTAG 适配器类型。
   b. 用于编译和加载正在调试的应用程序的 ESP-IDF 版本号。
   c. 用于调试的操作系统的详细信息。
   d. 操作系统是在本地计算机运行还是在虚拟机上运行？
2. 创建一个能够演示问题的简单示例工程，描述复现该问题的步骤。且这个调试示例不能受到 Wi-Fi 协议栈引入的非确定性行为的影响，因而再次遇到同样问题时，更容易复现。
3. 在启动命令中添加额外的参数来输出调试日志。
   OpenOCD 端：
   ```
   openocd -l openocd_log.txt -d3 -f board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg
   ```
   这种方式会将日志输出到文件，但是它会阻止调试信息打印在终端上，当有大量信息需要输出的时候（比如调试等级提高到 -d3）这是个不错的选择。如果你仍然希望在屏幕上看到调试日志，请改用以下命令：
   ```
   openocd -d3 -f board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg 2>&1 | tee openocd.log
   ```
   Debugger 端：
   ```
   xtensa-esp32-elf-gdb -ex "set remotelogfile gdb_log.txt" <all other options>
   ```
   也可以将命令 remotelogfile gdb_log.txt 添加到 gdbinit 文件中。
4. 请将 openocd_log.txt 和 gdb_log.txt 文件附在你的问题报告中。

4.18.10 相关文档

使用调试器
本节介绍以下几种配置和运行调试器的方法：

- 使用 Eclipse 调试
- 使用命令行调试
- 使用 idf.py 进行调试

使用 Eclipse 调试
注解：建议您首先通过 idf.py 或命令行 检查调试器是否正常工作，然后再转到使用 Eclipse 平台。

标准的 Eclipse 安装流程默认安装调试功能，另外您还可以使用插件来调试，比如“GDB Hardware Debugging”。这个插件用起来非常方便，本指南会详细介绍该插件的使用方法。首先，打开 Eclipse 并转到“Help” > “Install New Software”来安装“GDB Hardware Debugging”插件。

安装完成后，按照以下步骤配置调试会话。请注意，一些配置参数是通用的，有些则针对特定项目，我们会通过配置“blink”示例项目的调试环境来进行展示，请先按照使用 Eclipse IDE 编译和烧写 介绍的方法将该示例项目添加到 Eclipse 的工作空间。示例项目 get-started/blink 的源代码可以在 ESP-IDF 仓库的 examples 目录下找到。

1. 在 Eclipse 中，进入 Run > Debug Configuration，会出现一个新的窗口。在窗口的左侧窗格中，双击“GDB Hardware Debugging”(或者选择“GDB Hardware Debugging”然后按“New”按钮) 来新建一个配置。
2. 在右边显示的表单中，“Name:” — 框中输入配置的名称，例如：“Blink checking”。
3. 在下面的“Main”选项卡中，点击“Project”边上的“Browse”按钮，然后选择当前的“blink”项目。
4. 在下一行的“C/C++ Application:”中，点击“Browse”按钮，选择“blink.elf”文件。如果“blink.elf”文件不存在，那么很有可能该项目还没有编译，请参考使用 Eclipse IDE 编译和烧写 指南中的介绍。
5. 最后，在“Build (if required) before launching”下面点击“Disable auto build”，

上述步骤 1-5 的示例输入如下图所示。
图 34: GDB 硬件调试的配置 - Main 选项卡
6. 点击“Debugger”选项卡，在“GDB Command”栏中输入 xtensa-esp32-elf-gdb 来调用调试器。
7. 更改“Remote host”的默认配置，在“Port number”下面输入 3333。
   上述步骤 6 - 7 的示例输入如下图所示。

图 35: GDB 硬件调试的配置 - Debugger 选项卡

8. 最后一个需要更改默认配置的选项卡是“Startup”选项卡。在“Initialization Commands”下，取消选中“Reset and Delay (seconds)”和“Halt”，然后在下面一栏中输入以下命令:

   ```
   mon reset halt
   flushregs
   set remote hardware-watchpoint-limit 2
   ```

   **注解:** 如果您想在启动新的调试会话之前自动更新闪存中的镜像，请在“Initialization Commands”文本框的开头添加以下命令行:

   ```
   mon reset halt
   mon program_esp ${workspace_loc:blink/build/blink.bin} 0x10000 verify
   ```

   有关 program_esp 命令的说明请参考上传待调试的应用程序 章节。

9. 在“Load Image and Symbols”下，取消选中“Load image”选项。
10. 在同一个选项卡中继续往下浏览，建立一个初始断点用来在调试器复位后暂停 CPU。插件会根据“Set break point at:”一栏中输入的函数名，在该函数的开头设置断点。选中这一选项，并在相应的字段中输入 app_main。
11. 选中“Resume”选项。这会使程序在每次调用步骤 8 中的 mon reset halt 后恢复，然后在 app_main 的断点处停止。
   上述步骤 8 - 11 的示例输入如下图所示。

   上面的启动序列看起来有些复杂，如果您对其中的初始化命令不太熟悉，请查阅调试器的启动命令的含义 章节获取更多说明。
图 36: GDB 硬件调试的配置 - Startup 选项卡
12. 如果您前面已经完成配置 ESP32 目标板中介绍的步骤，那么目标正在运行并准备与调试器进行对话。按下“Debug”按钮就可以直接调试，否则请按下“Apply”按钮保存配置。返回配置 ESP32 目标板章进行配置，最后再回到这里开始调试。

一旦所有 1-12 的配置步骤都已经完成，Eclipse 就会打开“Debug”视图，如下图所示。

![Eclipse调试视图](image)

图 37: Eclipse 中的调试视图

如果您不太了解 GDB 的常用方法，请查阅使用 Eclipse 的调试示例 文中的调试示例章节调试范例。

使用命令行调试

1. 为了能够启动调试会话，需要先启动并运行目标，如果还没有完成，请按照配置 ESP32 目标板 中的介绍进行操作。

2. 打开一个新的终端会话并前往待调试的项目目录，比如:

   ```
   cd ~/esp/blink
   ```

3. 当启动调试器时，通常需要提供几个配置参数和命令。为了避免每次都在命令行中逐行输入这些命令，您可以新建一个配置文件，并将其命名为 gdbinit:

   ```
   target remote :3333
   set remote hardware-watchpoint-limit 2
   monoreset halt
   flushregs
   thb app_main
   ```

   将此文件保存在当前目录中。

   有关 gdbinit 文件内部的更多信息，请参阅调试器的启动命令的含义 章节。

4. 准备好启动 GDB，请在终端中输入以下内容:
注意上面日志的倒数第三行显示了调试器已经在 app_main() 函数的断点处停止。该断点在 gdbinit 文件中设定。由于处理器已经暂停运行，LED 也不会闪烁。如果这也是您看到的现象，您可以开始调试了。

如果您不太了解 GDB 的常用方法，请查阅 使用命令行的调试示例 文章中的调试示例章节 调试范例。

使用 idf.py 进行调试 您还可以使用 idf.py 更方便地执行上述提到的调试命令，可以使用以下命令：

```bash
xtensa-esp32-elf-gdb -x gdbinit build/blink.elf
```
1. `idf.py openocd`

在终端中运行 `OpenOCD`，其配置信息来源于环境变量或命令行，默认会使用 `OPENOCD_SCRIPTS` 环境变量中指定的脚本路径，它是由 ESP-IDF 项目仓库中的导出脚本（如 `export.sh` 或 `export.bat`）添加到系统环境变量中的。当然，您可以在命令行中通过 `--openocd-scripts` 参数来覆盖这个变量的值。

至于当前开发板的 JTAG 配置，请使用环境变量 `OPENOCD_COMMANDS` 或命令行参数 `--openocd-commands`。如果这两者都没有被定义，那么 `OpenOCD` 会使用 `-f board/esp32-wrover-kit-3.3v.cfg` 参数来启动。

2. `idf.py gdb`

根据当前项目的 elf 文件自动生成 GDB 启动脚本，然后会按照使用命令行调试中所描述的步骤启动 GDB。

3. `idf.py gdbtui`

和步骤 2 相同，但是会在启动 GDB 的时候传递 tui 参数，这样可以方便在调试过程中查看源代码。

4. `idf.py gdbgui`

启动 gdbgui，在浏览器中打开调试器的前端界面。

上述这些命令也可以合并到一起使用，`idf.py` 会自动将后台进程（比如 openocd）最先运行，交互式进程（比如 GDB, monitor）最后运行。

常用的组合命令如下所示:

```
idf.py openocd gdbgui monitor
```

上述命令会将 OpenOCD 运行至后台，然后启动 gdbgui 打开一个浏览器窗口，显示调试器的前端界面，最后在活动终端打开串口监视器。

### 调试示例

本节将介绍如何在 Eclipse 和命令行中使用 GDB 进行调试的示例。

使用 Eclipse 的调试示例 请检查目标板是否已经准备好，并加载了 get-started/blink 示例代码，然后按照使用 Eclipse 调试中介绍的步骤配置和启动调试器，最后选择让应用程序在 `app_main()` 建立的断点处停止。

本小节的示例

1. 浏览代码，查看堆栈和线程
2. 设置和清除断点
3. 停止暂停目标
4. 单步执行代码
5. 查看并设置内存
6. 观察和设置程序变量
7. 设置条件断点

### 浏览代码，查看堆栈和线程

当目标暂停时，调试器会在“Debug”窗口中显示线程的列表，程序暂停的代码行在下面的另一个窗口中被高亮显示，如下图所示。此时板子上的 LED 停止了闪烁。

暂停的程序线程也将被展开，显示函数调用的堆栈，它表示直到目标暂停所在的代码行（下图高亮处）为止的相关函数的调用关系。1 号线程下函数调用堆栈的第一行包含了最后一个调用的函数 `app_main()`，根据下一行显示，它又是在函数 `main_task()` 中被调用的。堆栈的每一行都包含调用函数的文件名和行号。通过单击每个堆栈的条目，在下面的窗口中，你将看到此文件的内容。

通过展开线程，你可以浏览整个应用程序。展开 5 号线程，它包含了更长的函数调用堆栈，你可以看到其中一个调用函数旁边的数字，比如 `0x40000000c`，它代表末以源码形式提供的二进制代码所在的内存地址。

无论项目是以源代码还是仅以二进制形式提供，在右边一个窗口中，都可以看到反汇编后的机器代码。

回到 1 号线程中的 `app_main()` 函数所在的 `blink.c` 源码文件。下面的示例将会以该文件为例介绍调试的常用功能。调试器可以轻松浏览整个应用程序的代码，这给单步调试代码和设置断点带来了很大的便利，下面将一一展开讨论。
图 38: Eclipse 中的 Debug 视图
图 39: 调试时目标停止
图 40: 浏览函数调用堆栈
设置和清除断点  在调试时，我们希望能够在关键的代码行停止应用程序，然后检查特定的变量、内存、寄存器和外设的状态。为此我们需要使用断点，以便在特定某行代码处快速访问和停止应用程序。

我们在控制 LED 状态发生变化的两处代码行分别设置一个断点，基于以上代码列表，这两处分别为第 33 和 36 代码行。按住键盘上的“Control”键，双击 blink.c 文件中的行号 33，并在弹出的对话框中点击“OK”按钮进行确定。如果你不看到此对话框，双击行号即可。执行同样操作，在第 36 行设置另外一个断点。

断点的数量和位置信息会显示在右上角的“断点”窗口中。单击“Show Breakpoints Supported by Selected Target”图标可以刷新此列表。除了刚才设置的两个断点外，列表中可能还包含在调试器启动时设置在 app_main() 函数处的临时断点。由于最多只允许设置两个断点（详细信息请参阅可用的断点和观察点），你需要将它删除，否则调试会失败。

单击“Resume”（如果“Resume”按钮是灰色的，请先单击第 8 号线程的 blink_task() 函数）后处理器将开始继续运行，并在断点处停止。再一次单击“Resume”按钮，使程序再次运行，然后停在第二个断点处，依次类推。

每次单击“Resume”按钮恢复程序运行后，都会看到 LED 切换状态。

更多关于断点的信息，请参阅可用的断点和观察点和关于断点的补充知识。

手动暂停目标  在调试时，你可以恢复程序运行并输入代码等待某个事件发生或者保持无限循环而不设置任何断点。后者，如果想要返回调试模式，可以通过单击“Suspend”按钮来手动中断程序的运行。

在此之前，请删除所有的断点，然后单击“Resume”按钮。接着单击“Suspend”按钮，应用程序会停止在某个随机的位置，此时 LED 也停止闪烁。调试器将展开线程并高亮显示停止的代码行。

在上图所示的情况下，应用程序已经在 freertos_hooks.c 文件的第 52 行暂停运行，现在你可以通过单击“Resume”按钮再次将其恢复运行或者进行下面要介绍的调试工作。
图 42: 设置了三个断点 / 最多允许两个断点
图 43: 手动暂停目标
单步执行代码

我们还可以使用 “Step Into (F5)” 和 “Step Over (F6)” 命令单步执行代码。这两者之间的区别是执行 “Step Into (F5)” 命令会进入调用的子程序，而执行 “Step Over (F6)” 命令则会直接将子程序看成单独源码行，单步就能将其运行结束。

在继续演示此功能之前，请参照上文所述确保只在 blink.c 文件的第 36 行设置了一个断点。

按下 F8 键让程序继续运行然后在断点处停止运行，多次按下 “Step Over (F6)” 按钮，观察调试器是如何单步执行一行代码的。

如果你改用 “Step Into (F5)”，那么调试器将会进入调用的子程序内部。

在上述例子中，调试器进入 gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0) 代码内部，同时代码窗口快速切换到 gpio.c 驱动文件。

请参阅 “next” 命令无法跳过子程序的原因 文档以了解 next 命令的潜在局限。

查看并设置内存

要显示或者设置内存的内容，请使用 “调试” 视图中位于底部的 “Memory” 选项卡。

在 “Memory” 选项卡下，我们将在内存地址 0x3FF44004 处读取和写入内容。该地址也是 GPIO_OUT_REG 寄存器的地址，可以用来控制（设置或者清除）某个 GPIO 的电平。

关于该寄存器的更多详细信息，请参阅 ESP32 技术参考手册 > IO MUX 和 GPIO Matrix (GPIO, IO_MUX) [PDF] 章节。

同样在 blink.c 项目文件中，在两个 gpio_set_level 语句的后面各设置一个断点，单击 “Memory” 选项卡，然后单击 “Add Memory Monitor” 按钮，在弹出的对话框中输入 0x3FF44004。

按下 F8 按键恢复程序运行，并观察 “Monitor” 选项卡。

每按一下 F8，你就会看到在内存 0x3FF44004 地址处的一个比特位被翻转（并且 LED 会改变状态）。

图 44: 使用 “Step Over (F6)” 单步执行代码
图 45: 使用“Step Into (F5)”单步执行代码

图 46: 观察内存地址 0x3FF44004 处的某个比特被置高
Chapter 4. API

图47：观察内存地址0x3FF4004处的某个比特被置低

要修改内存的数值，请在“Monitor”选项卡中找到待修改的内存地址，如前面观察的结果一样，输入特定比特翻转后的值。当按下回车键后，将立即看到LED的状态发生了改变。

观察和设置程序变量 常见的调试任务是在程序运行期间检查程序中某个变量的值，为了演示这个功能，更新 blink.c 文件，在 blink_task 函数的上面添加一个全局变量的声明 int i，然后在 while(1)里添加 i++，这样每次LED改变状态的时候，变量i都会增加1。

退出调试器，这样就不会与新代码混淆，然后重新构建并烧写代码到ESP32中，接着重启调试器。注意，这里不需要我们重启OpenOCD。

一旦程序停止运行，在代码 i++ 处添加一个断点。

下面，在“Breakpoints”所在的窗口中，选择“Expressions”选项卡。如果该选项卡不存在，请在顶部菜单栏的Window > Show View > Expressions中添加这一选项卡。然后在该选项卡中单击“Add new expression”，并输入i。

按下F8继续运行程序，每次程序停止时，都会看到变量i的值在递增。

如果想更改i的值，可以在“Value”一栏中输入新的数值。按下“Resume(F8)”后，程序将从新输入的数字开始递增i。

设置条件断点 下面的内容更为有趣，你可能想在一定条件满足的情况下设置断点，然后让程序停止运行。右击断点打开上下文菜单，选择“Breakpoint Properties”，将“Type”改选为“Hardware”然后在“Condition”一栏中输入条件表达式，例如i == 2。

如果当前i的值小于2（如果有需要也可以更改这个阈值）并且程序被恢复运行，那么LED就会循环闪烁，直到i == 2条件成立，最后程序停止在该处。

使用命令行的调试示例 请检查您的目标板是否已经准备好，并加载了get-started/blink示例代码，然后按照使用命令行调试中介绍的步骤配置和启动调试器，最后选择让应用程序在app_main()建立的断点处停止运行

```
Temporary breakpoint 1, app_main () at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/.blink.c:43
43 xTaskCreate(&blink_task, "blink_task", configMINIMAL_STACK_SIZE, NULL,
-5, NULL);
```

本小节的示例

1. 浏览代码，查看堆栈和线程
2. 设置和清除断点

Espressif Systems 1884 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
图 48: 观察程序变量 “i”
图 49: 设置条件断点
Chapter 4. API 指南

3. 暂停和恢复应用程序的运行
4. 单步执行代码
5. 查看并设置内存
6. 观察和设置程序变量
7. 设置条件断点

浏览代码、查看堆栈和线程  当看到 (gdb) 提示符的时候，应用程序已停止运行，LED 也停止闪烁。
要找到代码暂停的位置，输入 l 或者 list 命令，调试器会打印出暂停点 (blink.c 代码文件的第 43 行) 附近的几行代码

```c
(gdb) l
38 }
39 }
40 void app_main()
41 {
42 xTaskCreate(&blink_task, "blink_task", configMINIMAL_STACK_SIZE, NULL,
43 -5, NULL);
44 }
(gdb)
```

也可以通过输入 l 30, 40 等命令来查看特定行号范围内的代码。
使用 bt 或者 backtrace 来查看哪些函数最终导致了此代码被调用:

```c
(gdb) bt
#0 app_main () at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/.blink.c:43
#1 0x400d057e in main_task (args=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/
--esp32/.cpu_start.c:339
(gdb)
```

输出的第 0 行表示应用程序暂停之前调用的最后一个函数，即我们之前列出的 app_main()。
app_main() 又被位于 cpu_start.c 文件第 339 行的 main_task 函数调用。
想查看 cpu_start.c 文件中 main_task 函数的上下文，需要输入 frame N，其中 N=1，因为根据
前面的输出, main_task 位于 #1 下:

```c
(gdb) frame 1
#1 0x400d057e in main_task (args=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/
--esp32/.cpu_start.c:339
339 app_main();
(gdb)
```

输入 1 将显示一段名为 app_main() 的代码 (在第 339 行):

```c
(gdb) l
334 }
335 }　　//Enable allocation in region where the startup stacks were located.
336 #endif
337 heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps();
338 app_main();
340 vTaskDelete(NULL);
341 }
342
(gdb)
```

通过打印前面的一些行，你会看到我们一直在寻找的 main_task 函数:

```c
(gdb) l 326, 341
326 static void main_task(void* args)
```

(下页继续)
Chapter 4. API

327  
328  // Now that the application is about to start, disable boot watchdogs
329  REG_CLR_BIT(TIMG_WDTCONFIG0_REG(0), TIMG_WDT_FLASHBOOT_MOD_EN_S);
330  REG_CLR_BIT(RTC_CNTL_WDTCONFIG0_REG, RTC_CNTL_WDT_FLASHBOOT_MOD_EN);
331  if (!CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE)
332  // Wait for FreeRTOS initialization to finish on APP CPU, before...
333  while (!port_xSchedulerRunning[1]) {}
334  
335  
336  #endif
337  // Enable allocation in region where the startup stacks were located.
338  heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps();
339  app_main();
340  vTaskDelete(NULL);
341  }

(gdb)

如果要查看其他代码，可以输入 `i threads` 命令，则会输出目标板上运行的线程列表:

(gdb) i threads
   Id Target Id   Frame
  8  Thread 1073411336 (dport) 0x400d0848 in dport_access_init_core (arg=
<optimized out>)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/esp32/.dport_access.c:170
  7  Thread 1073408744 (ipc0) xQueueGenericReceive (xQueue=0x3ffae694,...
<pvBuffer=0x0, xTicksToWait=164638200, 
  xJustPeeking=0) at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/.queue.
<e:c:1452
  6  Thread 1073431096 (Tmr Svc) prvTimerTask (pvParameters=0x0)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/.timers.c:1445
  5  Thread 1073410208 (ipc1 : Running) 0x4000bfea in ?? ()
  4  Thread 1073432224 (dport) dport_access_init_core (arg=0x0)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/.dport_access.c:150
  3  Thread 1073412156 (IDLE) prvIdleTask (pvParameters=0x0)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/.tasks.c:3282
  2  Thread 1073412512 (IDLE) prvIdleTask (pvParameters=0x0)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/.tasks.c:3282
 * 1  Thread 1073411772 (main : Running) app_main () at /home/user-name/esp/blink/
<main/.blink.c:43

(gdb)

线程列表显示了每个线程最后一个被调用的函数以及所在的 C 源文件名（如果存在的话）。
您可以通过输入 `thread N` 进入特定的线程。其中 N 是线程 ID。我们进入 5 号线程来看一下它是如何工作的:

(gdb) thread 5
[Switching to thread 5 (Thread 1073410208)]
#0 0x4000bfea in ?? ()

(gdb)

然后查看回溯:

(gdb) bt
#0 0x4000bfea in ?? ()
#1 0x40083a85 in vPortCPUReleaseMutex (mux=<optimized out>) at /home/user-name/
<esp-idf/components/freertos/.port.c:415
#2 0x40083fc8 in vTaskSwitchContext () at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/
<freertos/.tasks.c:2846
#3 0x4008532b in _frxtDispatch ()

(下页延续)
如上所示，回溯可能会包含多个条目，方便查看直至目标停止运行的函数调用顺序。如果找不到某个函数的源码文件，将会使用问号 ?? 替代，这表示该函数是以二进制格式提供的，像 0x400bfe8 这样的值是被调用函数所在的内存地址。

使用诸如 bt，threads，thread N 和 list 命令可以浏览整个应用程序的代码。给单步调试代码和设置断点带来很大的便利，下面将一一展开来讨论。

**设置和清除断点** 在调试时，我们希望能够在关键的代码行停止应用程序，然后检查特定的变量，内存、寄存器和外设的状态。为此我们需要使用断点，以便在特定某行代码处快速访问和停止应用程序。

我们在控制 LED 状态发生变化的两处代码行分别设置一个断点。基于以上代码列表，这两处分别为第 33 和 36 代码行。使用命令 break M 设置断点，其中 M 是具体的代码行：

```
(gdb) break 33
Breakpoint 2 at 0x400db6f6: file /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.c, line 33.
(gdb) break 36
Breakpoint 3 at 0x400db704: file /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.c, line 36.
```

输入命令 c，处理器将运行并在断点处停止。再次输入 c 将使其再次运行，并在第二个断点处停止。依此类推：

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB6F6 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D10D8
Breakpoint 2, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
    blink.c:33
33    gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0);
    (gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB6F8 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D10D8
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB704 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D10D8
Breakpoint 3, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
    blink.c:36
36    gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 1);
    (gdb)
```

只有在输入命令 c 恢复程序运行后才能看到 LED 改变状态。

查看已设置断点的数量和位置，请使用命令 info break：

```
(gdb) info break
Num Type Disp Enb Address What
2 breakpoint keep y 0x400db6f6 in blink_task at /home/user-name/esp/
    blink/main/./blink.c:33
    breakpoint already hit 1 time
3 breakpoint keep y 0x400db704 in blink_task at /home/user-name/esp/
    blink/main/./blink.c:36
    breakpoint already hit 1 time
```
请注意，断点序号（在 Num 栏列出）从 2 开始，这是因为在调试器启动时执行 thb app_main 命令已经在 app_main() 函数处建立了第一个断点。由于它是一个临时断点，已经被自动删除，所以没有被列出。

要删除一个断点，请输入 delete N 命令（或者简写成 d N），其中 N 代表断点序号：

```
(gdb) delete 1
No breakpoint number 1.
(gdb) delete 2
(gdb)
```

更多关于断点的信息，请参阅可用的断点和观察点 和关于断点的补充知识。

### 暂停和恢复应用程序的运行

在调试时，可以恢复程序运行并输入代码等待某个事件发生或者保持无限循环而不设置任何断点。对于后者，想要返回调试模式，可以通过重新输入 Ctrl+C 手动中断程序的运行。

在此之前，请删除所有的断点，然后输入 c 恢复程序运行。接着输入 Ctrl+C，应用程序会停止在某个随机的位置，此时 LED 也将停止闪烁。调试器会打印如下信息：

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
^CTarget halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400D0C00 APP_CPU: PC=0x400D0C00 (active)
[New Thread 1073433352]
Program received signal SIGINT, Interrupt.
[Switching to Thread 1073413512]
0x400D0C00 in esp_vApplicationIdleHook () at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/!
components/esp32/./freertos_hooks.c:52
52 asm("waiti 0");
(gdb)
```

在上图所示的情况下，应用程序已经在 freertos_hooks.c 文件的第 52 行暂停运行，现在您可以通过输入 c 再次将其恢复运行或者进行如下所述的一些调试工作。

**注解**：在 MSYS2 的 shell 中输入 Ctrl+C 并不会暂停目标的运行，而是会退出调试器；解决这个问题的方法可以通过使用 Eclipse 来调试 或者参考 [http://www.mingw.org/wiki/Workaround_for_GDB_Ctrl_C_Interrupt](http://www.mingw.org/wiki/Workaround_for_GDB_Ctrl_C_Interrupt) 里的解决方案。

### 单步执行代码

我们还可以使用 step 和 next 命令（可以简写成 s 和 n）单步执行代码，这两者之间的区别是执行 *step* 命令会进入调用的子程序内部，而执行 *next* 命令则会直接将子程序看成单个源码行，单步就能将其运行结束。

在继续演示此功能之前，请使用前面介绍的 break 和 delete 命令，确保目前只在 blink.c 文件的第 36 行设置了一个断点：

```
(gdb) info break
Num Type Disp Enb Address What
3 breakpoint keep y 0x400db704 in blink_task at /home/user-name/esp/!
    ./blinky/main/./blinky.c:36
    breakpoint already hit 1 time
(gdb)
```

输入 c 恢复程序运行然后等它在断点处停止运行：

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB754 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Breakpoint 3, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blinky/main/.
    ./blinky.c:36
```
然后输入 n 多次，观察调试器是如何单步执行一行代码的:

```
36 gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 1);
(gdb)
```

```
(gdb) n
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB756 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB758 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DC04C (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB75B (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
37 vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
(gdb) n
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB75E (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400846FC (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB761 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB746 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
33 gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0);
(gdb)
```

如果你输入 s，那么调试器将进入子程序:

```
(gdb) s
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB748 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB74B (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DC04C (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DC04F (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
gpio_set_level (gpio_num=GPIO_NUM_4, level=0) at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/.
components/driver/gpio.c:183
183 GPIO_CHECK(GPIO_IS_VALID_OUTPUT_GPIO(gpio_num), "GPIO output gpio_num error",
ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG);
(gdb)
```

上述例子中，调试器进入 gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0) 代码内部，同时代码窗口快速切换到 gpio.c 驱动文件。

请参阅 “next” 命令无法跳过子程序的原因 文档以了解 next 命令的潜在局限。

查看并设置内存 使用命令 x 可以显示内存的内容，配合其余参数还可以调整所显示内存位置的格式和数量。运行 help x 可以查看更多相关细节。与 x 命令配合使用的命令是 set，它允许你将值写入内存。

为了演示 x 和 set 的使用，我们将在内存地址 0x3FF44004 处读取和写入内容。该地址也是 GPIO_OUT_REG 寄存器的地址，可以用来控制（设置或者清除）某个 GPIO 的电平。

关于该寄存器的更多详细信息，请参阅 ESP32 技术参考手册 > IO MUX 和 GPIO Matrix (GPIO, IO_MUX) [PDF] 章节。

同样在 blink.c 项目文件中，在两个 gpio_set_level 语句的后面各设置一个断点。输入两次 c 命令后停止在断点处，然后输入 x /1wx 0x3FF44004 来显示 GPIO_OUT_REG 寄存器的值:

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB756 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB746 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Breakpoint 2, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/.
blink.c:34
34 vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
(gdb) x /1wx 0x3FF44004
0x3ff44004: 0x00000000
(gdb) c
Continuing.
```
如果闪烁的 LED 连接到了 GPIO4，那么每次 LED 改变状态时你会看到第 4 比特被翻转:

0x3ff44004: 0x00000000
...
0x3ff44004: 0x00000010

在输入 set {unsigned int} 0x3FF44004=0x000010 命令后，你会立即看到 LED 亮起。

观察和设置程序变量 常见的调试任务是在程序运行期间检查程序中某个变量的值。为了能够演示这个功能，更新 blink.c 文件，在 blink_task 函数的后面添加一个全局变量的声明 int i，然后在 while(1) 里添加 i++，这样每次 LED 改变状态的时候，变量 i 都会增加 1。退出调试器，这样就不会与新代码混淆，然后重新构建并烧写代码到 ESP32 中，接着重启调试器。注意，这里不需要我们重启 OpenOCD。

一旦程序停止运行，输入命令 watch i:

(gdb) watch i
Hardware watchpoint 2: i
(gdb)

这会在所有变量 i 发生改变的代码处插入所谓的“观察点”。现在输入 continue 命令来恢复应用程序的运行并观察它停止:

(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB751 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D0811
[New Thread 1073432196]

Program received signal SIGTRAP, Trace/breakpoint trap. 
[Switching to Thread 1073432196]
0x400db751 in blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/.
-./blink.c:33
 33 i++;
(gdb)

多次恢复程序运行后，变量 i 的值会增加，现在你可以输入 print i （简写 p i）来看看当前 i 的值:

(gdb) p i
$1 = 3
(gdb)

要修改 i 的值，请使用 set 命令，如下所示（可以将其打印输出来查看是否修改）：
最多可以使用两个观察点。详细信息请参阅可用的断点和观察点。

设置条件断点 接下来的内容更为有趣，你可能想在一定条件满足的情况下设置断点。请先删除已有的断点，然后尝试如下命令:

```
(gdb) break blink.c:34 if (i == 2)
Breakpoint 3 at 0x400db753: file /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.c, line 34.
```

以上命令在 blink.c 文件的 34 处设置了一个条件断点，当 i == 2 条件满足时，程序会停止运行。

如果当前 i 的值小于 2 并且程序被恢复运行，那么 LED 就会循环闪烁，直到 i == 2 条件成立，程序停止在该处:

```
(gdb) set var i = 0
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB755 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D112C
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB753 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D112C
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB755 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D112C
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB753 (active) APP_CPU: PC=0x400D112C
Breakpoint 3, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
    blink.c:34
34 gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0);
```

获得命令的帮助信息 目前所介绍的都是些非常基础的命令，目的在于让您快速上手 JTAG 调试。如果想获得特定命令的语法和功能相关的信息，请在 (gdb) 提示符下输入 help 和命令名:

```
(gdb) help next
Step program, proceeding through subroutine calls.
Usage: next [N]
Unlike "step", if the current source line calls a subroutine, this command does not enter the subroutine, but instead steps over the call, in effect treating it as a single source line.
```

只需输入 help 命令，即可获得高级命令列表，帮助你了解更多详细信息。此外，还可以参考一些 GDB 命令速查表，比如 https://darkdust.net/files/GDB%20Cheat%20Sheet.pdf。虽然不是所有命令都适用于嵌入式环境，但还是会有所帮助。

结束调试会话 输入命令 q 可以退出调试器:

```
(gdb) q
A debugging session is active.
Inferior 1 [Remote target] will be detached.
Quit anyway? (y or n) y
Detaching from program: /home/user-name/esp/blink/build/blink.elf, Remote target
Ending remote debugging.
user-name@computer-name:~/esp/blink$
```
4.19 架构器脚本生成机制

4.19.1 概述

ESP32 中有多个用于存放代码和数据的内存区域。代码和只读数据默认存放在 flash 中，可写数据存放在 RAM 中。不过有时，用户必须更改默认存放区域。

例如为了提高性能，将关键代码存放到 RAM 中，或者将代码存放到 RTC 存储器中以便在唤醒时和 ULP 协处理器中使用。

链接器脚本生成机制可以让用户指定代码和数据在 ESP-IDF 组件中的存放区域。组件包含如何存放符号、目标或完整库的信息。在构建应用程序时，组件中的这些信息会被收集、解析并处理；生成的存放周规则用于链接应用程序。

4.19.2 快速上手

本段将指导如何使用 ESP-IDF 的即用方案，快速将代码和数据放入 RAM 和 RTC 存储器中。

假设用户有：

```
- components/
  - my_component/
    - CMakeLists.txt
    - component.mk
    - Kconfig
    - src/
      - my_src1.c
      - my_src2.c
      - my_src3.c
      - my_linker_fragment_file.lf
```

- 名为 my_component 的组件，在构建过程中存储为 libmy_component.a 库文件
- 库文件包含的三个源文件: my_src1.c, my_src2.c 和 my_src3.c, 编译后分别为 my_src1.o, my_src2.o 和 my_src3.o
- 在 my_src1.o 中定义 my_function1 函数, 在 my_src2.o 中定义 my_function2 函数
- 在 my_component 下 Kconfig 中存在布尔类型配置 PERFORMANCE_MODE (y/n) 和整数类型配置 PERFORMANCE_LEVEL（范围是 0-3）

创建和指定链接器片段文件

首先，用户需要创建链接器片段文件。链接器片段文件是一个扩展名为 .lf 的文本文件，想要存放的位置信息写入该文件内。文件创建成功后，需要将其呈现在构建系统中。ESP-IDF 支持的构建系统指南如下：

在组件目录的 CMakeLists.txt 文件中，指定 idf_component_register 调用引数 LDFRAGMENTS 的值。LDFRAGMENTS 可以为绝对路径，也可为组件目录的相对路径，指向已创建的链接器片段文件。

```
# 相对于组件的 CMakeLists.txt 的文件路径
idf_component_register(
  LDFRAGMENTS "path/to/linker_fragment_file.lf" "path/to/
  another_linker_fragment_file.lf"
)
```

Submit Document Feedback

Espressif Systems 1894 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
指定存放区域

可以按照下列粒度指定存放区域:

- 目标文件 (.obj 或 .o 文件)
- 符号 (函数/变量)
- 库 (.a 文件)

存放目标文件  假设整个 my_src1.o 目标文件对性能至关重要，所以最好将该文件放在 RAM 中。另外，my_src2.o 目标文件包含从深度睡眠唤醒所需的符号，因此需要将其存放到 RTC 存储器中。在链接器片段文件中可以写入以下内容:

```text
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
  my_src1 (noflash)  # 将所有 my_src1 代码和只读数据存放在 IRAM 和 DRAM 中
  my_src2 (rtc)     # 将所有 my_src2 代码, 数据和只读数据存放到 RTC 快速 RAM 和 RTC...
  --慢速 RAM 中
```

那么 my_src3.o 放在哪里呢? 由于未指定存放区域，my_src3.o 会存放到默认区域。更多关于默认存放区域的信息，请查看这里。

存放符号  继续上文的例子，假设 object1.o 目标文件定义的功能中，只有 my_function1 影响到性能: object2.o 目标文件中只有 my_function2 需要在芯片从深度睡眠中唤醒后运行。要实现该目的，可在链接器片段文件中写入以下内容:

```text
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
  my_src1:my_function1 (noflash)
  my_src2:my_function2 (rtc)
```

my_src1.o 和 my_src2.o 中的其他函数以及整个 object3.o 目标文件会存放到默认区域。要指定数据的存放区域，仅需将上文的函数名替换为变量名即可，如:

```text
my_src1:my_variable (noflash)
```

注意: 按照符号粒度存放代码和数据有一定的极限。为确保存放区域合适，您也可以将相关代码和数据集中在源文件中，参考使用目标文件的存放规则。

存放整个库  在这个例子中，假设整个组件库都需存放到 RAM 中，可以写入以下内容存放整个库:

```text
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
  * (noflash)
```

类似的，写入以下内容可以将整个组件存放到 RTC 存储器中:
根据具体配置存放 假设只有在某个条件为真时，比如 `CONFIG_PERFORMANCE_MODE == y` 时，整个组件库才有特定存放区域，可以写入以下内容实现:

```python
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    if PERFORMANCE_MODE == y:
        * (noflash)
    else:
        * (default)
```

来看一种更复杂的情况。假设 “CONFIG_PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 1” 时，只有 object1.o 存放到 RAM 中; `CONFIG_PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 2` 时，object1.o 和 object2.o 会存放到 RAM 中; `CONFIG_PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 3` 时，库中的所有目标文件都会存放到 RAM 中。以上三个条件为假时，整个库会存放到 RTC 存储器中。虽然这种使用场景很罕见，不过，还是可以通过以下方式实现:

```python
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 1:
        my_src1 (noflash)
    elif PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 2:
        my_src1 (noflash)
        my_src2 (noflash)
    elif PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 3:
        my_src1 (noflash)
        my_src2 (noflash)
        my_src3 (noflash)
    else:
        * (rtc)
```

也可以嵌套条件检查。以下内容与上述片段等效:

```python
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL <= 3 && PERFORMANCE_LEVEL > 0:
        if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL >= 1:
            object1 (noflash)
        if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL >= 2:
            object2 (noflash)
        if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL >= 3:
            object2 (noflash)
    else:
        * (rtc)
```

默认存放区域

到目前为止，“默认存放区域”在未指定 rtc 和 noflash 存放规则时才会作为备选方案使用。需要注意的是，noflash 或者 rtc 标记不仅仅是关键字，实际上还是被称作片段的实体，确切地说是协议。

与 rtc 和 noflash 类似，还有一个默认协议，定义了默认存放规则。顾名思义，该协议规定了代码和数据通常存放的区域，即代码和恒量放在 flash 中，变量存放在 RAM 中。更多关于默认协议的信息，请见这里。
API

**注解：** 使用链接器脚本生成机制的 IDF 组件示例，请参阅 freertos/CMakeLists.txt。为了提高性能，freertos 使用链接器脚本生成机制，将其目标文件存放到 RAM 中。

快速入门指南到此结束，下文将详述这个机制的内核，有助于创建自定义存放区域或修改默认方式。

### 4.19.3 链接器脚本生成机制内核

链接是将 C/C++ 源文件转换成可执行文件的最后一步。链接由工具链的链接器完成，接受指定代码和数据存放区域等信息的链接脚本。链接器脚本生成机制的转换过程类似，区别在于传输给链接器的链接脚本根据 (1) 收集的链接器片段文件 和 (2) 链接器脚本模板 动态生成。

**注解：** 执行链接器脚本生成机制的工具存放在 tools/ldgen 之下。

#### 链接器片段文件

如快速入门指南所述，片段文件是拓展名为 .lfe 的简单文本文件，内含想要存放区域的信息。不过，这是对片段文件所包含内容的简化版描述。实际上，片段文件内包含的是“片段”。片段是实体，包含多条信息，这些信息放在一起组成了存放规则，说明目标文件各个段在二进制输出文件中的存放位置。片段一共有三种，分别是段、协议和映射。

**语法** 三种片段类型使用同一种语法：

```markdown
[type:name]
key: value
key:
  value
  value
  value
...
```

- 类型：片段类型，可以为 段、协议或 映射。
- 名称：片段名称，指定片段类型的片段名称应唯一。
- 键值：片段内容。每个片段类型可支持不同的键值和不同的键值语法。

**注解：** 多个片段的类型和名称相同时会引发异常。

**注解：** 片段名称和键值只能使用字母、数字和下划线。

#### 条件检查

条件检查使得链接器脚本生成机制可以感知配置。含有配置值的表达式是否为真，决定了使用哪些特定键值。检查使用的是 kconfiglib 脚本的 eval_string，遵循该脚本要求的语法和局限性，支持：

- **比较**
  - 小于 <
  - 小于等于 <=
  - 大于 >
  - 大于等于 =>
  - 等于 =
  - 不等于 !=
- **逻辑**
  - 或 ||
- 和 
- 取反！

• 分组
- 圆括号 ()

条件检查和其他语言中的 if...elseif/elif...else 块作用一样。键值和完整段都可以进行条件检查。以下两个示例效果相同：

```python
# 键值取决于配置
def if CONDITION = y:
    [type:name]
    key_1:
        value_1
    else:
        value_2
    key_2:
        if CONDITION = y:
            value_a
        else:
            value_b
# 完整片段的定义取决于配置
if CONDITION = y:
    [type:name]
    key_1:
        value_1
    key_2:
        value_b
else:
    [type:name]
    key_1:
        value_2
    key_2:
        value_b
```

### 注释

链接器片段文件中的注释以 # 开头。和在其他语言中一样，注释提供了有用的描述和资料，在处理过程中会被忽略。

### 与 ESP-IDF v3.x 链接器脚本片段文件兼容

ESP-IDF v4.0 变更了链接器脚本片段文件使用的一些语法：

- 必须缩进，缩进不当的文件会产生解析异常；旧版本不强制缩进，但之前的文档和示例均遵循了正确的缩进语法
- 条件改用 if...elif...else 结构，可以嵌套检查，将完整片段置于条件内
- 映射片段和其他片段类型一样，需有名称

链接器脚本生成器可解析 ESP-IDF v3.x 版本中缩进正确的链接器片段文件（如 ESP-IDF v3.x 版本中的本文件所示），依然可以向后兼容此前的映射片段语法（可选名称和条件的旧语法），但是会有弃用警告。用户应换成本文档介绍的新语法，因为旧语法将在未来停用。

请注意，ESP-IDF v3.x 不支持使用 ESP-IDF v4.0 新语法的链接器片段文件。

### 类型段

段定义了 GCC 编译器输出的一系列目标文件段，可以是默认段（如 .text、.data），也可以是用户通过 __attribute__ 关键字定义的段。

‘+’ 表示段列表开始，且当前段为列表中的第一个段。这种表达方式更加推荐。
Chapter 4. API 指南

示例:

```plaintext
[sections:name]
entries:
  .section+
  .section
...
```

协议

协议定义了每个段对应的 目标。

```plaintext
[scheme:name]
entries:
  sections -> target
  sections -> target
...
```

示例:

```plaintext
[scheme:noflash]
entries:
  text  -> iram0_text  # text 段下的所有条目均入 iram0_text
  rodata -> dram0_data  # rodata 段下的所有条目均入 dram0_data
```

默认协议

注意，有一个 默认的协议很特殊，特殊在于包罗存放规则都是根据这个协议中的条目生成的。这意味着，如果该协议有一条条目是 text  ->  flash_text，则将为目标 flash_text 生成如下的存放规则:

```plaintext
* (.literal .literal.* .text .text.*)
```

这些生成的包罗规则将用于未指定存放规则的情况。

默认协议在 esp_system/app.lf 文件中定义。快速上手指南中提到的内置 noflash 协议和 rtc 协议也在该文件中定义。

映射

映射定义了可映射实体（即目标文件、函数名、变量名和常数）对应的协议。

```plaintext
[mapping]
archive: archive  # 构建后输出的库文件名称（即 libxxx.a)
entries:
  object:symbol (scheme)  # 符号
  object (scheme)  # 目标
  * (scheme)  # 库
```

有三种存放粒度：
Chapter 4. API

- 符号: 指定了目标文件名称和符号名称。符号名称可以是函数名或变量名。
- 目标: 只指定目标文件名称。
- 库: 指定*, 即某个库下面所有目标文件的简化表达法。

为了更好地理解条目的含义，请看一个按目标存放的例子。

```object (scheme)
```

根据条目定义，将这个协议展开:

```object (sections -> target,
sections -> target,
...)
```

再根据条目定义，将这个段展开:

```object (.section,
.section,
... -> target, # 根据目标文件将这里所列出的所有段放在该目标位置
.section,
.section,
... -> target, # 同样的方法指定向其他段
...)
```

示例:

```[mapping:map]
archive: libfreertos.a
entries:
* (noflash)
```

除了实体和协议，条目中也支持指定如下标志: (注: <> = 参数名称，[] = 可选参数)

1. **ALIGN**([<alignment>[, pre, post]])
   根据 alignment 中指定的数字对齐存放区域。根据是否指定 pre 和 post, 或两者都
   指定，在输入段描述（生成于映射条目）的前面和/或后面生成:

2. **SORT**([<sort_by_first>, <sort_by_second>])
   在输入段描述中输出 SORT_BY_NAME, SORT_BY_ALIGNMENT, SORT_BY_INIT_PRIORITY 或 SORT.
   sort_by_first 和 sort_by_second 的值可以是: name, alignment, init_priority.
   如果既没指定 sort_by_first 也没指定 sort_by_second, 则输入段会按照名称
   排序，如果两者都指定了, 那么嵌套排序会遵循 https://sourceware.org/binutils/docs/ld/
   Input-Section-Wildcards.html 中的规则。

3. **KEEP**()
   用 KEEP 命令包围输入段描述，从而防止链接器丢弃存放区域。更多细节请参考 https:
   //sourceware.org/binutils/docs/ld/Input-Section-Keep.html

4. **SURROUND**(<name>)
   在存放区域的前面和后面生成符号, 生成的符号遵循 `_<name>_start 和 `_<name>_end` 的
   命名方式，例如, 如果 name == sym1

在添加标志时，协议中需要指定具体的 section -> target。对于多个 section -> target，使
用逗号作为分隔符，例如:

```# 注意
# A. entity-scheme 后使用分号
# B. section2 -> target2 前使用逗号
# C. 在 scheme1 中定义 section1 -> target1 和 section2 -> target2
entity1 (scheme1);
```

(下页继续)
合并后，如下的映射:

```plaintext
[mapping:name]
archive: lib1.a
targets:
  obj1 (noflash);
  rodata -> dram0_data KEEP() SORT() ALIGN(8) SURROUND(my_sym)
```

会在链接器脚本上生成如下输出:

```plaintext
_ = ALIGN(8)
_my_sym_start = ABSOLUTE(.)
KEEP(lib1.a:obj1.*( SORT(.rodata) SORT(.rodata.*) ))
_my_sym_end = ABSOLUTE(.)
```

注意，正如在 `flag` 描述中提到的，ALIGN 和 SURROUND 的使用对顺序敏感，因此如果将两者顺序调换后用到相同的映射片段，则会生成:

```plaintext
_my_sym_start = ABSOLUTE(.)
_ = ALIGN(8)
KEEP(lib1.a:obj1.*( SORT(.rodata) SORT(.rodata.*) ))
_my_sym_end = ABSOLUTE(.)
```

按符号存放
按符号存放可通过编译器标志 `ffunction-sections` 和 `fdata-sections` 实现。ESP-IDF 默认用这些标志编译。用户若选择移除这些标志，便不能按符号存放。另外，即便有标志，也会受到其他限制，具体取决于编译器输出的段。

比如，使用 `ffunction-sections`，针对每个功能会输出单独的段，段的名称可以预测，即 `.text.{func_name}` 和 `.literal.{func_name}`。但是功能内的字符串并非如此，因为字符串会进入字符串池，或者使用生成的段名称。

使用 `fdata-sections`，对全局数据来说编译器可输出 `.data.{var_name}`、`.rodata.{var_name}` 或 `.bss.{var_name}`。因此类型 I 映射词条可以适用。但是，功能中声明的静态数据并非如此，生成的段名称是将变量名称和其他信息混合。

### 链接器脚本模板

链接器脚本模板是指定存放规则的存放位置的框架，与其他链接器脚本没有本质区别，但带有特定的标记语法，可以指示存放生成的存放规则的位置。

如需引用一个目标标记下的所有存放规则，请使用以下语法:

```plaintext
mapping[target]
```

示例:

以下示例是某个链接器脚本模板的摘录，定义了输出段 `.iram0.text`，该输出段包含一个引用目标 `.iram0.text` 的标记。

```plaintext
.iram0.text :
{
    /* 标记 IRAM 空间不足 */
    _iram_text_start = ABSOLUTE(.);
    /* 引用 .iram0.text */
    mapping[iram0_text]
}
```
4.20 lwIP

ESP-IDF uses the open source lwIP lightweight TCP/IP stack. The ESP-IDF version of lwIP (esp-lwip) has some modifications and additions compared to the upstream project.
4.20.1 Supported APIs

ESP-IDF supports the following lwIP TCP/IP stack functions:

- **BSD Sockets API**
- **Netconn API** is enabled but not officially supported for ESP-IDF applications

Adapted APIs

Some common lwIP “app” APIs are supported indirectly by ESP-IDF:

- DHCP Server & Client are supported indirectly via the **ESP-NETIF** functionality
- Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) is supported via the `lwip/include/apps/sntp/sntp.h` functions (see also **SNTP Time Synchronization**)
- ICMP Ping is supported using a variation on the lwIP ping API. See **ICMP Echo**.
- NetBIOS lookup is available using the standard lwIP API. `protocols/http_server/restful_server` has an option to demonstrate using NetBIOS to look up a host on the LAN.
- mDNS uses a different implementation to the lwIP default mDNS (see **mDNS**), but lwIP can look up mDNS hosts using standard APIs such as `gethostbyname()` and the convention `hostname.local`, provided the `CONFIG_LWIP_DNS_SUPPORT_MDNS_QUERIES` setting is enabled.

4.20.2 BSD Sockets API

The BSD Sockets API is a common cross-platform TCP/IP sockets API that originated in the Berkeley Standard Distribution of UNIX but is now standardized in a section of the POSIX specification. BSD Sockets are sometimes called POSIX Sockets or Berkeley Sockets.

As implemented in ESP-IDF, lwIP supports all of the common usages of the BSD Sockets API.

References

A wide range of BSD Sockets reference material is available, including:

- Single UNIX Specification BSD Sockets page
- Berkeley Sockets Wikipedia page

Examples

A number of ESP-IDF examples show how to use the BSD Sockets APIs:

- `protocols/sockets/tcp_server`
- `protocols/sockets/tcp_client`
- `protocols/sockets/udp_server`
- `protocols/sockets/udp_client`
- `protocols/sockets/udp_multicast`
- `protocols/http_request` (Note: this is a simplified example of using a TCP socket to send an HTTP request. The **ESP HTTP Client** is a much better option for sending HTTP requests.)

Supported functions

The following BSD socket API functions are supported. For full details see `lwip/lwip/src/include/lwip/sockets.h`.

- `socket()`
- `bind()`
- `accept()`
- `shutdown()`
- `getpeername()`
- `getsockopt()` & `setsockopt()` (see *Socket Options*)
- `close()` (via 虚拟文件系统组件)
- `read()`, `readv()`, `write()`, `writev()` (via 虚拟文件系统组件)
- `recv()`, `recvmsg()`, `recvfrom()`
- `send()`, `sendmsg()`, `sendto()`
- `select()` (via 虚拟文件系统组件)
- `poll()` (Note: on ESP-IDF, `poll()` is implemented by calling `select` internally, so using `select()` directly is recommended if a choice of methods is available.)
- `fcntl()` (see *fcntl*)

Non-standard functions:
- `ioctl()` (see *ioctls*)

注解：Some lwIP application sample code uses prefixed versions of BSD APIs, for example `lwip_socket()` instead of the standard `socket()`. Both forms can be used with ESP-IDF, but using standard names is recommended.

**Socket Error Handling**

BSD Socket error handling code is very important for robust socket applications. Normally the socket error handling involves the following aspects:

- Detecting the error.
- Getting the error reason code.
- Handle the error according to the reason code.

In lwIP, we have two different scenarios of handling socket errors:

- Socket API returns an error. For more information, see *Socket API Errors*.
- `select(int maxfdp1, fd_set *readset, fd_set *writset, fd_set *except-set, struct timeval *timeout)` has exception descriptor indicating that the socket has an error. For more information, see *select() Errors*.

**Socket API Errors**

The error detection
- We can know that the socket API fails according to its return value.

Get the error reason code
- When socket API fails, the return value doesn’t contain the failure reason and the application can get the error reason code by accessing `errno`. Different values indicate different meanings. For more information, see <Socket Error Reason Code>.

Example:

```c
int err;
int sockfd;

if (sockfd = socket(AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0) < 0) {
    // the error code is obtained from errno
    err = errno;
    return err;
}
```

**select() Errors**

The error detection
- Socket error when `select()` has exception descriptor

Get the error reason code
If the `select` indicates that the socket fails, we can’t get the error reason code by accessing `errno`, instead we should call `getsockopt()` to get the failure reason code. Because `select()` has exception descriptor, the error code will not be given to `errno`.

**Note:** `getsockopt` function prototype: `int getsockopt(int s, int level, int optname, void *optval, socklen_t *optlen)`. Its function is to get the current value of the option of any type, any state socket, and store the result in `optval`. For example, when you get the error code on a socket, you can get it by `getsockopt(sockfd, SOL_SOCKET, SO_ERROR, &err, &optlen)`.

```c
int err;
if (select(sockfd + 1, NULL, NULL, &exfds, &tval) <= 0) {
    err = errno;
    return err;
} else {
    if (FD_ISSET(sockfd, &exfds)) {
        // select() exception set using getsockopt()
        int optlen = sizeof(int);
        getsockopt(sockfd, SOL_SOCKET, SO_ERROR, &err, &optlen);
        return err;
    }
}
```

### Socket Error Reason Code
Below is a list of common error codes. For more detailed list of standard POSIX/C error codes, please see `newlib errno.h` (<https://github.com/espressif/newlib-esp32/blob/master/newlib/libc/include/sys/errno.h>) and the platform-specific extensions `newlib/platform_include/errno.h`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECONNREFUSED</td>
<td>Connection refused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EADDRINUSE</td>
<td>Address already in use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECONNABORTED</td>
<td>Software caused connection abort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENETUNREACH</td>
<td>Network is unreachable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENETDOWN</td>
<td>Network interface is not configured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETIMEDOUT</td>
<td>Connection timed out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EHOSTDOWN</td>
<td>Host is down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EHOSTUNREACH</td>
<td>Host is unreachable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINPROGRESS</td>
<td>Connection already in progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EALREADY</td>
<td>Socket already connected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDESTADDRREQ</td>
<td>Destination address required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPROTONOSUPPORT</td>
<td>Unknown protocol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Socket Options

The `getsockopt()` and `setsockopt()` functions allow getting/setting per-socket options.

Not all standard socket options are supported by lwIP in ESP-IDF. The following socket options are supported:

**Common options** Used with level argument SOL_SOCKET.

- `SO_REUSEADDR` (available if `CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE` is set, behavior can be customized by setting `CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE_RXTOALL`)
- `SO_KEEPALIVE`
- `SO_BROADCAST`
Chapter 4. API

* SO_ACCEPTCONN
* SO_RCVBUF (available if CONFIG_LWIP_SO_RCVBUF is set)
* SO_SNDBUF / SO_RCVTIMEO
* SO_ERROR (this option is only used with select(), see Socket Error Handling)
* SO_TYPE
* SO_NO_CHECK (for UDP sockets only)

**IP options**  Used with level argument IPPROTO_IP.

* IP_TOS
* IP_TTL
* IP_PKTINFO (available if CONFIG_LWIP_NETBUF_RECVINFO is set)

For multicast UDP sockets:

* IP_MULTICAST_IF
* IP_MULTICAST_LOOP
* IP_MULTICAST_TTL
* IP_ADD_MEMBERSHIP
* IP_DROP_MEMBERSHIP

**TCP options**  TCP sockets only. Used with level argument IPPROTO_TCP.

* TCP_NODELAY

Options relating to TCP keepalive probes:

* TCP_KEEPALIVE (int value, TCP keepalive period in milliseconds)
* TCP_KEEPIDLE (same as TCP_KEEPALIVE, but the value is in seconds)
* TCP_KEEPINTVL (int value, interval between keepalive probes in seconds)
* TCP_KEEPCNT (int value, number of keepalive probes before timing out)

**IPv6 options**  IPv6 sockets only. Used with level argument IPPROTO_IPV6

* IPV6_CHECKSUM
* IPV6_V6ONLY

For multicast IPv6 UDP sockets:

* IPV6_JOIN_GROUP / IPV6_ADD_MEMBERSHIP
* IPV6_LEAVE_GROUP / IPV6_DROP_MEMBERSHIP
* IPV6_MULTICAST_IF
* IPV6_MULTICAST_HOPS
* IPV6_MULTICAST_LOOP

**fcntl**

The `fcntl()` function is a standard API for manipulating options related to a file descriptor. In ESP-IDF, the [虚拟文件系统组件] layer is used to implement this function.

When the file descriptor is a socket, only the following `fcntl()` values are supported:

* O_NONBLOCK to set/clear non-blocking I/O mode. Also supports O_NDELAY, which is identical to O_NONBLOCK.
* O_RDONLY, O_WRONLY, O_RDWR flags for different read/write modes. These can read via F_GETFL only, they cannot be set using F_SETFL. A TCP socket will return a different mode depending on whether the connection has been closed at either end or is still open at both ends. UDP sockets always return O_RDWR.
Chapter 4. API

**ioctl**

The ioctl() function provides a semi-standard way to access some internal features of the TCP/IP stack. In ESP-IDF, the virtual filesystem layer is used to implement this function.

When the file descriptor is a socket, only the following ioctl() values are supported:

- **FIONREAD** returns the number of bytes of pending data already received in the socket’s network buffer.
- **FIONBIO** is an alternative way to set/clear non-blocking I/O status for a socket, equivalent to fcntl(fd, F_SETFL, O_NONBLOCK, ...).

### 4.20.3 Netconn API

lwIP supports two lower level APIs as well as the BSD Sockets API: the Netconn API and the Raw API.

The lwIP Raw API is designed for single threaded devices and is not supported in ESP-IDF.

The Netconn API is used to implement the BSD Sockets API inside lwIP, and it can also be called directly from ESP-IDF apps. This API has lower resource usage than the BSD Sockets API, in particular it can send and receive data without needing to first copy it into internal lwIP buffers.

**Important:** Espressif does not test the Netconn API in ESP-IDF. As such, this functionality is **enabled but not supported**. Some functionality may only work correctly when used from the BSD Sockets API.

For more information about the Netconn API, consult lwip/lwip/src/include/lwip/api.h and this wiki page which is part of the unofficial lwIP Application Developers Manual.

### 4.20.4 lwIP FreeRTOS Task

lwIP creates a dedicated TCP/IP FreeRTOS task to handle socket API requests from other tasks.

A number of configuration items are available to modify the task and the queues (“mailboxes”) used to send data to/from the TCP/IP task:

- **CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE**
- **CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY**

### 4.20.5 IPv6 Support

Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported as dual stack and enabled by default (IPv6 may be disabled if it’s not needed, see **Minimum RAM usage**). IPv6 support is limited to **Stateless Autoconfiguration** only. **Stateful configuration** is not supported in ESP-IDF (not in upstream lwip). IPv6 Address configuration is defined by means of these protocols or services:

- **SLAAC** IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (RFC-2462)
- **DHCPv6** Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (RFC-8415)

None of these two types of address configuration is enabled by default, so the device uses only Link Local addresses or statically defined addresses.

**Stateless Autoconfiguration Process**

To enable address autoconfiguration using Router Advertisement protocol please enable:

- **CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_AUTOCONF**
This configuration option enables IPv6 autoconfiguration for all network interfaces (in contrast to the upstream lwIP, where the autoconfiguration needs to be explicitly enabled for each netif with `netif->ip6_autoconfig_enabled=1`)

**DHCPv6**

DHCPv6 in lwIP is very simple and support only stateless configuration. It could be enabled using:

- `CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_DHCP6`

Since the DHCPv6 works only in its stateless configuration, the **Stateless Autoconfiguration Process** has to be enabled, too, by means of `CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_AUTOCONFIG`. Moreover, the DHCPv6 needs to be explicitly enabled form the application code using

```c
dhcp6_enable_stateless(netif);
```

**DNS servers in IPv6 autoconfiguration**

In order to autoconfigure DNS server(s), especially in IPv6 only networks, we have these two options

- Recursive domain names system – this belongs to the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP), uses **Stateless Autoconfiguration Process**. Number of servers must be set `CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_RDNSS_MAX_DNS_SERVERS`, this is option is disabled (set to 0) by default.
- DHCPv6 stateless configuration – uses `DHCPv6` to configure DNS servers. Note that the this configuration assumes IPv6 Router Advertisement Flags (RFC-5175) to be set to
  - Managed Address Configuration Flag = 0
  - Other Configuration Flag = 1

### 4.20.6 esp-lwip custom modifications

#### Additions

The following code is added which is not present in the upstream lwIP release:

**Thread-safe sockets** It is possible to `close()` a socket from a different thread to the one that created it. The `close()` call will block until any function calls currently using that socket from other tasks have returned.

It is, however, not possible to delete a task while it is actively waiting on `select()` or `poll()` APIs. It is always necessary that these APIs exit before destroying the task, as this might corrupt internal structures and cause subsequent crashes of the lwIP. (These APIs allocate globally referenced callback pointers on stack, so that when the task gets destroyed before unrolling the stack, the lwIP would still hold pointers to the deleted stack)

**On demand timers** lwIP IGMP and MLD6 features both initialize a timer in order to trigger timeout events at certain times.

The default lwIP implementation is to have these timers enabled all the time, even if no timeout events are active. This increases CPU usage and power consumption when using automatic light sleep mode. esp-lwip default behaviour is to set each timer “on demand” so it is only enabled when an event is pending.

To return to the default lwIP behaviour (always-on timers), disable `CONFIG_LWIP_TIMERS_ONDEMAND`.

**Lwip timers API** When users are not using WiFi, these APIs provide users with the ability to turn off LwIP timer to reduce power consumption.

The following API functions are supported. For full details see `lwip/lwip/src/include/lwip/timeouts.h`.

- `sys_timeouts_init()`
- `sys_timeouts_deinit()`
Abort TCP connections when IP changes  

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES

is disabled by default. This disables the default lwIP behaviour of keeping TCP connections open if an interface IP changes, in case the interface IP changes back (for example, if an interface connection goes down and comes back up). Enable this option to keep TCP connections open in this case, until they time out normally. This may increase the number of sockets in use if a network interface goes down temporarily.

Additional Socket Options

- Some standard IPV4 and IPV6 multicast socket options are implemented (see Socket Options).
- Possible to set IPV6-only UDP and TCP sockets with IPV6_V6ONLY socket option (normal lwIP is TCP only).

IP layer features

- IPV4 source based routing implementation is different.
- IPV4 mapped IPV6 addresses are supported.

Limitations

Calling send() or sendto() repeatedly on a UDP socket may eventually fail with errno equal to ENOMEM. This is a limitation of buffer sizes in the lower layer network interface drivers. If all driver transmit buffers are full then UDP transmission will fail. Applications sending a high volume of UDP datagrams who don’t wish for any to be dropped by the sender should check for this error code and re-send the datagram after a short delay.

Increasing the number of TX buffers in the Wi-Fi or Ethernet project configuration (as applicable) may also help.

4.20.7 Performance Optimization

TCP/IP performance is a complex subject, and performance can be optimized towards multiple goals. The default settings of ESP-IDF are tuned for a compromise between throughput, latency, and moderate memory usage.

Maximum throughput

Espressif tests ESP-IDF TCP/IP throughput using the wifi/iperf example in an RF sealed enclosure. The wifi/iperf/sdkconfig.defaults file for the iperf example contains settings known to maximize TCP/IP throughput, usually at the expense of higher RAM usage. To get maximum TCP/IP throughput in an application at the expense of other factors then suggest applying settings from this file into the project sdkconfig.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Important: Suggest applying changes a few at a time and checking the performance each time with a particular application workload.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- If a lot of tasks are competing for CPU time on the system, consider that the lwIP task has configurable CPU affinity (CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY) and runs at fixed priority ESP_TASK_TCPIP_PRIO (18). Configure competing tasks to be pinned to a different core, or to run at a lower priority. See also Built-In Task Priorities.
- If using select() function with socket arguments only, setting CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT will make select() calls faster.
- If there is enough free IRAM, select CONFIG_LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION to improve TX/RX throughput.

If using a Wi-Fi network interface, please also refer to Wi-Fi 缓冲区使用情况.
Minimum latency

Except for increasing buffer sizes, most changes which increase throughput will also decrease latency by reducing the amount of CPU time spent in lwIP functions.

- For TCP sockets, lwIP supports setting the standard TCP_NODELAY flag to disable Nagle’s algorithm.

Minimum RAM usage

Most lwIP RAM usage is on-demand, as RAM is allocated from the heap as needed. Therefore, changing lwIP settings to reduce RAM usage may not change RAM usage at idle but can change it at peak.

- Reducing CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_SOCKETS reduces the maximum number of sockets in the system. This will also cause TCP sockets in the WAIT_CLOSE state to be closed and recycled more rapidly (if needed to open a new socket), further reducing peak RAM usage.
- Reducing CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_IP_RECVMBBOX_SIZE, CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RECVMBBOX_SIZE and CONFIG_LWIP_UDP_RECVMBBOX_SIZE reduce memory usage at the expense of throughput, depending on usage.
- Disable CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6 can save about 39 KB for firmware size and 2K RAM when system power up and 7KB RAM when TCP/IP stack running. If there is no requirement for supporting IPV6 then it can be disabled to save flash and RAM footprint.

If using Wi-Fi, please also refer to Wi-Fi缓冲区使用情况.

Peak Buffer Usage

The peak heap memory that lwIP consumes is the theoretically-maximum memory that the lwIP driver consumes. Generally, the peak heap memory that lwIP consumes depends on:

- the memory required to create a UDP connection: lwip_udp_conn
- the memory required to create a TCP connection: lwip_tcp_conn
- the number of UDP connections that the application has: lwip_udp_conn_num
- the number of TCP connections that the application has: lwip_tcp_conn_num
- the TCP TX window size: lwip_tcp_tx_win_size
- the TCP RX window size: lwip_tcp_rx_win_size

So, the peak heap memory that the LwIP consumes can be calculated with the following formula:

\[
\text{lwip_dynamic_peak_memory} = (\text{lwip_udp_conn_num} \times \text{lwip_udp_conn}) + (\text{lwip_tcp_conn_num} \times (\text{lwip_tcp_tx_win_size} + \text{lwip_tcp_rx_win_size} + \text{lwip_tcp_conn}))
\]

Some TCP-based applications need only one TCP connection. However, they may choose to close this TCP connection and create a new one when an error (such as a sending failure) occurs. This may result in multiple TCP connections existing in the system simultaneously, because it may take a long time for a TCP connection to close, according to the TCP state machine (refer to RFC793).

4.21 OpenThread

OpenThread is a IP stack running on the 802.15.4 MAC layer which features mesh network and low power consumption.

4.21.1 Mode of the OpenThread stack

OpenThread can run under the following modes on Espressif chips:

Standalone node

The full OpenThread stack and the application layer runs on the same chip. This mode is available on chips with 15.4 radio such as ESP32-H2.
Radio Co-Processor (RCP)

The chip will be connected to another host running the OpenThread IP stack. It will send and received 15.4 packets on behalf of the host. This mode is available on chips with 15.4 radio such as ESP32-H2. The underlying transport between the chip and the host can be SPI or UART. For sake of latency, we recommend to use SPI as the underlying transport.

OpenThread host

For chips without 15.4 radio, it can be connected to an RCP and run OpenThread under host mode. This mode enables OpenThread on Wi-Fi chips such as ESP32, ESP32-S2, ESP32-S3 and ESP32-C3. The following diagram shows how devices work under different modes:

![Diagram of OpenThread device modes](image)

**4.21.2 How To Write an OpenThread Application**

The OpenThread openthread/ot_cli example will be a good place to start at. It demonstrates basic OpenThread initialization and simple socket-based server and client.

**Before OpenThread initialization**

- s1.1 The main task calls `esp_vfs_eventfd_register()` to initialize the eventfd virtual filesystem. The eventfd file system is used for task notification in the OpenThread driver.
- s1.2 The main task calls `nvs_flash_init()` to initialize the NVS where the Thread network data is stored.
- s1.3 Optional. The main task calls `esp_netif_init()` only when it wants to create the network interface for Thread.
- s1.4: The main task calls `esp_event_loop_create()` to create the system Event task and initialize an application event’s callback function.

**OpenThread stack initialization**

- s2.1: Call `esp_openthread_init()` to initialize the OpenThread stack.
**OpenThread network interface initialization**

The whole stage is *optional* and only required if the application wants to create the network interface for Thread.
- s3.1: Call `esp_netif_new()` with `ESP_NETIF_DEFAULT_OPENTHREAD` to create the interface.
- s3.2: Call `esp_openthread_netif_glue_init()` to create the OpenThread interface handlers.
- s3.3: Call `esp_netif_attach()` to attach the handlers to the interface.

**The OpenThread main loop**

- s4.3: Call `esp_openthread_launch_mainloop()` to launch the OpenThread main loop. Note that this is a busy loop and will not return until the OpenThread stack is terminated.

**Calling OpenThread APIs**

The OpenThread APIs are not thread-safe. When calling OpenThread APIs from other tasks, make sure to hold the lock with `esp_openthread_lock_acquire()` and release the lock with `esp_openthread_lock_release()` afterwards.

**Deinitialization**

The following steps are required to deinitialize the OpenThread stack:
- Call `esp_netif_destroy()` and `esp_openthread_netif_glue_deinit()` to deinitialize the OpenThread network interface if you have created one.
- Call `esp_openthread_deinit()` to deinitialize the OpenThread stack.

**4.21.3 The OpenThread border router**

The OpenThread border router connects the Thread network with other IP networks. It will provide IPv6 connectivity, service registration and commission functionality. To launch an OpenThread border router on an ESP chip, you need to connect an RCP to a Wi-Fi capable chip such as ESP32. Call `esp_openthread_border_router_init()` during the initialization will launch all the border routing functionalities.

You may refer to the `openthread/ot_br` example and the README for further border router details.

**4.22 应用程序的内存布局**

ESP32 芯片具有灵活的内存映射功能，本小节将介绍 ESP-IDF 默认使用这些功能的方式。

ESP-IDF 应用程序的代码可以在以下内存区域之一。

**4.22.1 IRAM（指令 RAM）**

ESP-IDF 将内部 SRAM0 区域（在技术参考手册中有定义）的一部分分配为指令 RAM。除了开始的 64kB 用作 PRO CPU 和 APP CPU 的高速缓存外，剩余内存区域（从 0x40080000 至 0x400A0000）会被用来存储应用程序中部分需要在 RAM 中运行的代码。

一些 ESP-IDF 的组件和 WiFi 协议栈的部分代码通过链接脚本文件被存放在了这块内存区域。如果一些应用程序的代码需要放在 IRAM 中运行，可以使用 `IRAM_ATTR` 宏定义进行声明。

```c
#include "esp_attr.h"

void IRAM_ATTR gpio_isr_handler(void* arg) {
    // ...
}
```
4.22.2 IROM（代码从 Flash 中运行）

如果一个函数没有被显式地声明放在 IROM 或者 RTC 内存中，则将其置于 Flash 中。Flash 技术参考手册中介绍了 Flash MMU 允许代码从 Flash 执行的机制。ESP-IDF 将从 Flash 中执行的代码放在 0x40000000—0x40400000 区域的开始，在启动阶段，二级引导程序会初始化 Flash MMU，将代码在 Flash 中的位置映射到这个区域的开头。对这个区域的访问会被透明地缓存到 0x40070000—0x40080000 范围内的两个 32kB 的块中。

请注意，使用 Window ABI CALLx 指令可能无法访问 0x40000000—0x40400000 区域以外的代码，所以要特别留意应用程序是否使用了 0x40400000—0x40800000 或者 0x40800000—0x40C00000 区域，ESP-IDF 默认不会使用这两个区域。

4.22.3 RTC 快速内存

从深度睡眠模式唤醒后必须要运行的代码要放在 RTC 内存中，更多信息请查阅文档深度睡眠。

4.22.4 DRAM（数据 RAM）

链接器将非常量静态数据和零初始化数据放入 0×3FFB0000 — 0×3FFFF000 这 256kB 的区域。注意，如果使用蓝牙堆栈，此区域会减少 64kB（通过将起始地址移至 0×3FFC0000）。如果使用了内存跟踪的功能，该区域的长度要减少 16kB 或者 32kB。放置静态数据后，留在此区域中的剩余空间都用作运行时堆。

常量数据也可以放在 DRAM 中，例如，用在 ISR 中的常量数据（参见上面 IROM 部分的介绍），为此需要使用 DRAM_ATTR 宏来声明。

```
DRAM_ATTR const char[] format_string = "%p %x";
char buffer[64];
printf(buffer, format_string, ptr, val);
```

毋庸置疑，不建议在 ISR 中使用 printf 和其余输出函数。出于调试的目的，可以在 ISR 中使用 ESP_EARLY_LOGx 来输出日志，不过要确保将 TAG 和格式字符串都放在了 DRAM 中。

宏 __NOINIT_ATTR 可以用来声明将数据放在 .noinit 段中，放在该段中的数据不会在启动时被初始化，并且在软件重启后会保留原来的值。

例子：

```
__NOINIT_ATTR uint32_t noinit_data;
```

4.22.5 DROM（数据存储在 Flash 中）

默认情况下，链接器将常量数据放入一个 4MB 区域 (0x3F400000 — 0x3F800000)。该区域用于通过 Flash MMU 和高速缓存来访问外部 Flash。一种特例情况是，字面量会被编译器嵌入到应用程序代码中。

Espressif Systems 1913 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
4.22.6 RTC 慢速内存

从 RTC 内存运行的代码（例如深度睡眠模块的代码）使用的全局和静态变量必须要放在 RTC 慢速内存中。更多详细说明请查看文档《深度睡眠》。

宏 RTC_NOINIT_ATTR 用来声明将数据放入 RTC 慢速内存中，该数据在深度睡眠唤醒后将保持不变。

例子：

```c
RTC_NOINIT_ATTR uint32_t rtc_noinit_data;
```

4.23 DMA 能力要求

大多数的 DMA 控制器（例如 SPI, SDMMC 等）都要求发送/接收缓冲区放在 DRAM 中，并且按字对齐。我们建议将 DMA 缓冲区放在静态变量中而不是堆栈中。使用 DMA_ATTR 宏可以声明该全局/本地的静态变量具备 DMA 能力，例如：

```c
DMA_ATTR uint8_t buffer[] = "I want to send something";
void app_main()
{
    // 初始化代码...
    spi_transaction_t temp = {
        .tx_buffer = buffer,
        .length = 8*sizeof(buffer),
    };
    spi_device_transmit( spi, &temp );
    // 其他程序
}
```

或者：

```c
void app_main()
{
    DMA_ATTR static uint8_t buffer[] = "I want to send something";
    // 初始化代码...
    spi_transaction_t temp = {
        .tx_buffer = buffer,
        .length = 8*sizeof(buffer),
    };
    spi_device_transmit( spi, &temp );
    // 其他程序
}
```

在堆栈中放置 DMA 缓冲区仍然是允许的，但是你必须记住：

- 如果堆栈在 pSRAM 中，切勿尝试这么做，因为堆栈在 pSRAM 中的话就要按照片外 SRAM 文档介绍的步骤来操作（至少要在 menuconfig 中使能 SPIRAM_ALLOW_STACK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY），所以请确保你的任务不在 PSRAM 中。
- 在函数中使用 WORD_ALIGNED_ATTR 宏来修饰变量，将其放在适当的位置上，比如：

```c
void app_main()
{
    uint8_t stuff;
    WORD_ALIGNED_ATTR uint8_t buffer[] = "I want to send something";  // 否则 buffer 数组会被存储在 stuff 变量的后面
    // 初始化代码...
    spi_transaction_t temp = {
        .tx_buffer = buffer,
        .length = 8*sizeof(buffer),
    }
```

(下页继续)
SPI 应用程序

```c
};
spi_device_transmit( spi, &temp );
// 其他程序
```

### 4.24 分区表

#### 4.24.1 概述

每片 ESP32 的 flash 可以包含多个应用程序，以及多种不同类型的数据（例如校准数据、文件系统数据、参数存储数据等）。因此，我们使用 flash 的默认偏移地址 0x8000 处烧写一张分区表。

分区表的长度为 0xC00 字节（最多可以保存 95 条分区表条目）。分区表数据后保存着该表的 MD5 校验和，用于验证分区表的完整性。此外，如果芯片使能了安全启动功能，则该分区表后还会保存签名信息。

分区表中的每个条目都包括以下几个部分：Name（标签）、Type（app、data 等）、SubType 以及在 flash 中的偏移量（分区的加载地址）。

在使用分区表时，最简单的方法就是打开项目配置菜单（idf.py menuconfig），并在 `CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_TYPE` 下选择一个预定义的分区表。

- “Single factory app, no OTA”
- “Factory app, two OTA definitions”

在以上两种选项中，出厂应用程序均将被烧录至 flash 的 0x10000 偏移地址处。这时，运行 `idf.py partition-table`，即可打印当前使用分区表的信息摘要。

#### 4.24.2 内置分区表

以下是“Single factory app, no OTA”选项的分区表信息摘要:

```c
# ESP-IDF Partition Table
# Name, Type, SubType, Offset, Size, Flags
nvs, data, nvs, 0x9000, 0x6000,
phy_init, data, phy, 0xf000, 0x1000,
factory, app, factory, 0x10000, 1M,
```

- flash 的 0x10000 (64 KB) 偏移地址处存放一个标记为“factory”的二进制应用文件，且启动加载器将默认加载该应用文件。
- 分区表中还定义了两个数据区域，分别用于存储 NVS 库专用分区和 PHY 初始化数据。

以下是“Factory app, two OTA definitions”选项的分区表信息摘要:

```c
# ESP-IDF Partition Table
# Name, Type, SubType, Offset, Size, Flags
nvs, data, nvs, 0x9000, 0x4000,
otadata, data, ota, 0xd000, 0x2000,
phy_init, data, phy, 0xf000, 0x1000,
factory, app, factory, 0x10000, 1M,
ota_0, app, ota_0, 0x110000, 1M,
ota_1, app, ota_1, 0x210000, 1M,
```

- 分区表中定义了三个应用程序分区，这三个分区的类型都被设置为“app”，但具体 app 类型不同。其中，位于 0x10000 偏移地址处的为出厂应用程序 (factory)，其余两个为 OTA 应用程序 (ota_0, ota_1)。
- 新增了一个名为“otadata”的数据分区，用于保存 OTA 升级时需要的数据。启动加载器会查询该分区的数据，以判断该从哪个 OTA 应用程序分区加载程序。如果“otadata”分区为空，则会执行出厂程序。
### 创建自定义分区表

如果在 `menuconfig` 中选择了“Custom partition table CSV”，则还需要输入该分区表的 CSV 文件在项目中的路径。CSV 文件可以根据需要，描述任意数量的分区信息。

CSV 文件的格式与上面摘要中打印的格式相同，但是在 CSV 文件中并非所有字段都是必需的。例如下面是一个自定义的 OTA 分区表的 CSV 文件:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name, Type, SubType, Offset, Size, Flags</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nvs, data, nvs, 0x9000, 0x4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otadata, data, ota, 0xd000, 0x2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phy_init, data, phy, 0xf000, 0x1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factory, app, factory, 0x10000, 1M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ota_0, app, ota_0, 0, 1M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ota_1, app, ota_1, 0, 1M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nvs_key, data, nvs_keys, 0x1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 字段之间的空格会被忽略，任何以 # 开头的行 (注释) 也会被忽略。
- CSV 文件中的每个非注释行均为一个分区定义。
- 每个分区的 Offset 字段可以为空，`gen_es32part.py` 工具会从分区表位置的后面开始自动计算并填充该分区的偏移地址，同时确保每个分区的偏移地址正确对齐。

#### Name 字段

Name 字段可以是任何有意义的名称，但不能超过 16 个字符（之后的内容将被截断）。该字段对 ESP32 并不是特别重要。

#### Type 字段

Type 字段可以指定为 app (0x00) 或者 data (0x01)，也可以直接使用数字 0-254（或者十六进制 0x00-0xFE)。注意，0x00-0x3F 不得使用（预留给 esp-idf 的核心功能）。

如果您的应用程序需要以 ESP-IDF 尚未支持的格式存储数据，请在 0x40-0xFE 内添加一个自定义分区类型。

参考 `esp_partition_type_t` 关于 app` 和 `data 分区的枚举定义。

如果用 C++ 编写，那么指定一个应用程序定义的分区类型，需要在 `esp_partition_type_t` 中使用整数，从而与分区 API 一起使用。例如:

```c
static const esp_partition_type_t APP_PARTITION_TYPE_A = (esp_partition_type_t)0x40;
```

注意，启动加载器将忽略 app (0x00) 和 data (0x01) 以外的其他分区类型。

#### SubType 字段

SubType 字段长度为 8 bit，内容与具体分区 Type 有关。目前，esp-idf 仅仅规定了“app”和“data”两种分区类型的子类型含义。

参考 `esp_partition_subtype_t`，以了解 ESP-IDF 定义的全部子类型列表，包括:

- 当 Type 定义为 app 时，SubType 字段可以指定为 factory (0x00)、ota_0 (0x10)…ota_15 (0x1F) 或者 test (0x20)。
- factory (0x00) 是默认的 app 分区。启动加载器将默认加载该应用程序。但如果存在类型为 data/ota 分区，则启动加载器将加载 data/ota 分区中的数据，进而判断启动哪个 OTA 镜像文件。
- 假如您希望在 OTA 项目中预留更多 flash，可以删除 factory 分区，转而使用 ota_0 分区。
Chapter 4. API

- ota_0 (0x10) - ota_15 (0x1F) 为 OTA 应用程序分区，启动加载器根据 OTA 数据分区中的数据来决定加载哪个 OTA 应用程序分区中的程序。在使用 OTA 功能时，应用程序至少拥有 2 个 OTA 应用程序分区（ota_0 和 ota_1）。更多详细信息，请参考 OTA 文档。
- test (0x20) 为预留的子类型，用于简单测试程序。如果没有其他有效 app 分区，test 将作为备选启动分区使用。也可以配置启动加载器在每次启动时读取 GPIO，如果 GPIO 被拉低则启动该分区。更多信息请查阅从测试固件启动。
  - 当 Type 定义为 data 时，SubType 字段可以指定为 ota (0x00), phy (0x01), nvs (0x02), nvs_keys (0x04) 或者其他组件特定的子类型（请参考子类型枚举）。
  - ota (0) 即 OTA 数据分区，用于存储当前所选的 OTA 应用程序的信息。这个分区的大小需要设定为 0x2000，更多详细信息，请参考 OTA 文档。
  - phy (1) 分区用于存放 PHY 初始化数据，从而保证可以为每个设备单独配置 PHY，而非必须采用固化在固件中的统一 PHY 初始化数据。
    * 默认配置下，phy 分区并不启动，而是直接将 phy 初始化数据编译至应用程序中，从而节省分区表空间（直接将此分区删掉）。
    * 如果需要在此分区加载 phy 初始化数据，请打开项目配置菜单（idf.py menuconfig），并且使用 CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION 选项。此时，您还需要手动将 phy 初始化数据烧至设备 flash（esp-idf 编译系统并不会自动完成该操作）。
- nvs (2) 是专门用于非易失性存储 (NVS) API 使用的分区。
  * 用于存储每个设备的 PHY 校准数据（注意，并不是 PHY 初始化数据）。
  * 用于存储 Wi-Fi 数据（如果使用了 esp_wifi_set_storage(WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH) 初始化函数）。
  * NVS API 还可以用于其他应用程序数据。
  * 强烈建议您应为 NVS 分区分配至少 0x3000 字节空间。
  * 如果使用 NVS API 存储大量数据，请增加 NVS 分区的大小（默认是 0x6000 字节）。
- nvs_keys (4) 是 NVS 秘钥分区。更多信息，请参考非易失性存储 (NVS) API 文档。
  * 用于存储加密密钥（如果启用了 NVS 加密功能）。
  * 此分区应至少设定为 4096 字节。
- ESP-IDF 还支持其它预定义的子类型用于数据存储，包括：
  - FAT 文件系统 (ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_FAT)
  - SPIFFS (ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_SPIFFS)

另外数据子类型已预留给 esp-idf 未来使用。
  - 如果分区类型是应用程序定义的任意值 (0x40-0xFE)，那么 subtype 字段可以是由应用程序选择的任何值 (0x00-0xFE)。

请注意如果用 C++ 编写，应用程序定义的子类型值需要转换为 esp_partition_type_t，从而与分区 API 一起使用。

Offset 和 Size 字段

分区若偏移地址为空，则会紧跟着前一个分区之后开始；若为首分区，则将紧跟着分区表开始。

app 分区的偏移地址必须与 0x10000 (64K) 对齐，如果将偏移字段留空，gen Esp32part.py 工具会自动计算得到一个满足对齐要求的偏移地址。如果 app 分区的偏移地址没有与 0x10000 (64K) 对齐，则该工具会报错。

app 分区的大小和偏移地址可以采用十进制数，以 0x 为前缀的十六进制数，且支持 K 或 M 的倍数单位（分别代表 1024 和 1024*1024 字节）。

如果您希望允许分区表中的分区采用任意起始偏移量 (CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET)，请将分区表 (CSV 文件) 中所有分区的偏移字段留空。注意，此时，如果您更改了分区表中任意分区的偏移地址，则其他分区的偏移地址也会跟着改变。这种情况下，如果您之前曾设定某个分区采用固定偏移地址，则可能造成分区表冲突，从而导致报错。

Flags 字段

当前仅支持 encrypted 标记。如果 Flags 字段设置为 encrypted，且已启用 Flash 加密功能，则该分区将会被加密。

---

Espressif Systems  1917
Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback
4.24.4 生成二进制分区表

烧写到 ESP32 中的分区表采用二进制格式，而不是 CSV 文件本身。此时，partition_table/gen_esp32part.py 工具可以实现 CSV 和二进制文件之间的转换。

如果您在项目配置菜单 (idf.py menuconfig) 中设置了分区表 CSV 文件的名称，然后构建项目或执行 idf.py partition-table。这时，转换将在编译过程中自动完成。

手动将 CSV 文件转换为二进制文件:

```
python gen_esp32part.py input_partitions.csv binary_partitions.bin
```

手动将二进制文件转换为 CSV 文件:

```
python gen_esp32part.py binary_partitions.bin input_partitions.csv
```

在标准输出 (stdout) 上，打印二进制分区表的内容（运行 idf.py partition-table 时展示的信息摘要也是这样生成的）：

```
python gen_esp32part.py binary_partitions.bin
```

4.24.5 分区大小检查

ESP-IDF 构建系统将自动检查生成的二进制文件大小与可用的分区大小是否匹配，如果二进制文件太大，则会构建失败并报错。

目前会对以下二进制文件进行检查：

- 引导加载程序的二进制文件的大小要适合分区表前的区域大小（分区表前的区域都分配给了引导加载程序），具体请参考引导加载程序大小。
- 应用程序二进制文件应至少适合一个“app”类型的分区。如果不适合任何应用程序分区，则会构建失败。如果只适合某些应用程序分区，则会打印相关警告。

注解：即使分区大小检查返回错误并导致构建失败，仍然会生成可以烧录的二进制文件（它们对于可用空间来说过大，因此无法正常工作）。

MD5 校验和

二进制格式的分区表中含一个 MD5 校验和。这个 MD5 校验和是根据分区表内容计算的，可在设备启动阶段，用于验证分区表的完整性。

用户可通过 gen_esp32part.py 的 --disable-md5sum 选项或者 CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_MD5 选项关闭 MD5 校验。对于 ESP-IDF v3.1 版本前的引导加载程序，因为它不支持 MD5 校验，所以无法正常启动并报错 invalid magic number 0xebeb，此时用户可以使用此选项关闭 MD5 校验。

4.24.6 烧写分区表

- idf.py partition-table-flash：使用 esptool.py 工具烧写分区表。
- idf.py flash：会烧写所有内容，包括分区表。
Chapter 4. API

在执行 idf.py partition-table 命令时，手动烧写分区表的命令也将打印在终端上。

注解：分区表的更新并不会擦除根据旧分区表存储的数据。此时，您可以使用 idf.py erase-flash 命令或者 esptool.py erase_flash 命令来擦除 flash 中的所有内容。

4.24.7 分区工具 (parttool.py)

partition_table 组件中有分区工具 parttool.py，可以在目标设备上完成分区相关操作。该工具有如下用途：

- 读取分区，将内容存储到文件中 (read_partition)
- 将文件中的内容写至分区 (write_partition)
- 擦除分区 (erase_partition)
- 检索特定分区的名称、偏移、大小和 flag（“加密”）标志等信息 (get_partition_info)

用户若想通过编程方式完成相关操作，可从另一个 Python 脚本导入并使用分区工具，或者从 Shell 脚本调用分区工具。前者可使用工具的 Python API，后者可使用命令行界面。

Python API

首先请确保已导入 parttool 模块。

```python
import sys
import os

idf_path = os.environ['IDF_PATH']  # 从环境中获取 IDF_PATH 的值
parttool_dir = os.path.join(idf_path, "components", "partition_table")  # parttool.py 位于 $IDF_PATH/components/partition_table 下
sys.path.append(parttool_dir)  # 允许 Python 寻找 parttool 模块
from parttool import *  # 导入 parttool 模块内的所有名称
```

要使用分区工具的 Python API，第一步是创建 ParttoolTarget：

```python
# 创建 partool.py 的目标设备，并将目标设备连接到串行端口 /dev/ttyUSB1
target = ParttoolTarget("/dev/ttyUSB1")
```

现在，可使用创建的 ParttoolTarget 在目标设备上完成操作：

```python
# 擦除名为 ‘storage’ 的分区
target.erase_partition(PartitionName("storage"))

# 读取类型为 ‘data’、子类型为 ‘spiffs’ 的分区，保存至文件 ‘spiffs.bin’
target.read_partition(PartitionType("data", "spiffs"), "spiffs.bin")

# 将 ‘factory.bin’ 文件的内容写至 ‘factory’ 分区
target.write_partition(PartitionName("factory"), "factory.bin")

# 打印默认启动分区的大小
storage = target.get_partition_info(PARTITION_BOOT_DEFAULT)
print(storage.size)
```

使用 PartitionName、PartitionType 或 PARTITION_BOOT_DEFAULT 指定要操作的分区。顾名思义，这三个参数可以指向拥有特定名称的分区、特定类型和子类型的分区或默认启动分区。

更多关于 Python API 的信息，请查看分区工具的代码注释。
4.25 Performance

ESP-IDF ships with default settings that are designed for a trade-off between performance, resource usage, and available functionality.

These guides describe how to optimize a firmware application for a particular aspect of performance. Usually this involves some trade-off in terms of limiting available functions, or swapping one aspect of performance (such as execution speed) for another (such as RAM usage).

4.25.1 How to Optimize Performance

1. Decide what the performance-critical aspects of your application are (for example: a particular response time to a certain network operation, a particular startup time limit, particular peripheral data throughput, etc.).
2. Find a way to measure this performance (some methods are outlined in the guides below).
3. Modify the code and project configuration and compare the new measurement to the old measurement.
4. Repeat step 3 until the performance meets the requirements set out in step 1.

4.25.2 Guides

Maximizing Execution Speed

Overview Optimizing execution speed is a key element of software performance. Code that executes faster can also have other positive effects, like reducing overall power consumption. However, improving execution speed may have trade-offs with other aspects of performance such as Minimizing Binary Size.
Choose What To Optimize  If a function in the application firmware is executed once per week in the background, it may not matter if that function takes 10 ms or 100 ms to execute. If a function is executed constantly at 10 Hz, it matters greatly if it takes 10 ms or 100 ms to execute.

Most application firmwares will only have a small set of functions which require optimal performance. Perhaps those functions are executed very often, or have to meet some application requirements for latency or throughput. Optimization efforts should be targeted at these particular functions.

Measuring Performance  The first step to improving something is to measure it.

Basic Performance Measurements  If measuring performance relative to an external interaction with the world, you may be able to measure this directly (for example see the examples wifi/iperf and ethernet/iperf for measuring general network performance, or you can use an oscilloscope or logic analyzer to measure timing of an interaction with a device peripheral.)

Otherwise, one way to measure performance is to augment the code to take timing measurements:

```c
#include "esp_timer.h"

void measure_important_function(void) {
    const unsigned MEASUREMENTS = 5000;
    uint64_t start = esp_timer_get_time();

    for (int retries = 0; retries < MEASUREMENTS; retries++) {
        important_function(); // This is the thing you need to measure
    }

    uint64_t end = esp_timer_get_time();

    printf("%u iterations took %ull milliseconds (%ull microseconds per invocation)\n", MEASUREMENTS, (end - start)/1000, (end - start)/MEASUREMENTS);
}
```

Executing the target multiple times can help average out factors like RTOS context switches, overhead of measurements, etc.

- Using `esp_timer_get_time()` generates “wall clock” timestamps with microsecond precision, but has moderate overhead each time the timing functions are called.
- It’s also possible to use the standard Unix `gettimeofday()` and `utime()` functions, although the overhead is slightly higher.
- Otherwise, including `hal/cpu_hal.h` and calling the HAL function `cpu_hal_get_cycle_count()` will return the number of CPU cycles executed. This function has lower overhead than the others. It is good for measuring very short execution times with high precision.
- The CPU cycles are counted per-core, so only use this method from an interrupt handler, or a task that is pinned to a single core.
- If making “microbenchmarks” (i.e. benchmarking only a very small routine of code that runs in less than 1-2 milliseconds) then flash cache performance can sometimes cause big variations in timing measurements depending on the binary. This happens because binary layout can cause different patterns of cache misses in a particular sequence of execution. If the test code is larger then this effect usually averages out. Executing a small function multiple times when benchmarking can help reduce the impact of flash cache misses. Alternatively, move this code to IRAM (see Targeted Optimizations).

External Tracing  The 应用层跟踪库 allows measuring code execution with minimal impact on the code itself.

Tasks  If the option `CONFIG_FREERTOS_GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS` is enabled then the FreeRTOS API `vTaskGetRunTimeStats()` can be used to retrieve runtime information about the processor time used by each FreeRTOS task.
SEGGER SystemView is an excellent tool for visualizing task execution and looking for performance issues or improvements in the system as a whole.

Improving Overall Speed  The following optimizations will improve the execution of nearly all code - including boot times, throughput, latency, etc:

- Set `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ` to 80 MHz. This is double the 40 MHz default value and will double the speed at which code is loaded or executed from flash. You should verify that the board or module that connects the ESP32 to the flash chip is rated for 80 MHz operation at the relevant temperature ranges, before changing this setting. The hardware datasheet(s) will have this information.

- Set `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE` to QIO or QOUT mode (Quad I/O). Both will almost double the speed at which code is loaded or executed from flash compared to the default DIO mode. QIO is slightly faster than QOUT if both are supported. Note that both the flash chip model and the electrical connections between the ESP32 and the flash chip must support quad I/O modes or the SoC will not work correctly.

- Set `CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION` to “Optimize for performance (-O2)”. This may slightly increase binary size compared to the default setting, but will almost certainly increase performance of some code. Note that if your code contains C or C++ Undefined Behaviour then increasing the compiler optimization level may expose bugs that otherwise are not seen.

- Avoid using floating point arithmetic (`float`). Even though ESP32 has a single precision hardware floating point unit, floating point calculations are always slower than integer calculations. If possible then use fixed point representations, a different method of integer representation, or convert part of the calculation to be integer only before switching to floating point.

- Avoid using double precision floating point arithmetic (`double`). These calculations are emulated in software and are very slow. If possible then use an integer-based representation, or single-precision floating point.

Reduce Logging Overhead Although standard output is buffered, it’s possible for an application to be limited by the rate at which it can print data to log output once buffers are full. This is particularly relevant for startup time if a lot of output is logged, but can happen at other times as well. There are multiple ways to solve this problem:

- Reduce the volume of log output by lowering the app `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL` (the equivalent bootloader setting is `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL`). This also reduces the binary size, and saves some CPU time spent on string formatting.

- Increase the speed of logging output by increasing the `CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_BAUDRATE`

Not Recommended  The following options will also increase execution speed, but are not recommended as they also reduce the debuggability of the firmware application and may increase the severity of any bugs.

- Set `CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL` to disabled. This also reduces firmware binary size by a small amount. However, it may increase the severity of bugs in the firmware including security-related bugs. If necessary to do this to optimize a particular function, consider adding `#define NDEBUG` in the top of that single source file instead.

Targeted Optimizations  The following changes will increase the speed of a chosen part of the firmware application:

- Move frequently executed code to IRAM. By default, all code in the app is executed from flash cache. This means that it’s possible for the CPU to have to wait on a “cache miss” while the next instructions are loaded from flash. Functions which are copied into IRAM are loaded once at boot time, and then will always execute at full speed.

IRAM is a limited resource, and using more IRAM may reduce available DRAM, so a strategic approach is needed when moving code to IRAM. See [IRAM](https://www.espressif.com/technical-reference/espressif-system-api) for more information.

- Jump table optimizations can be re-enabled for individual source files that don’t need to be placed in IRAM. For hot paths in large switch cases this will improve performance. For instructions on how to add the `-fjump-tables -ftree-switch-conversion` options when compiling individual source files, see [组件编译控制](https://www.espressif.com/technical-reference/espressif-system-api)
Improving Startup Time  In addition to the overall performance improvements shown above, the following options can be tweaked to specifically reduce startup time:

- Minimizing the `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL` and `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL` has a large impact on startup time. To enable more logging after the app starts up, set the `CONFIG_LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL` as well and call `esp_log_set_level()` to restore higher level logs. The `system/startup_time` main function shows how to do this.
- If using deep sleep, setting `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP` allows a faster wake from sleep. Note that if using Secure Boot this represents a security compromise, as Secure Boot validation will not be performed on wake.
- Setting `CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ON_POWER_ON` will skip verifying the binary on every boot from power-on reset. How much time this saves depends on the binary size and the flash settings. Note that this setting carries some risk if the flash becomes corrupt unexpectedly. Read the help text of the config item for an explanation and recommendations if using this option.
- It’s possible to save a small amount of time during boot by disabling RTC slow clock calibration. To do so, set `CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_CLK_CAL_CYCLES` to 0. Any part of the firmware that uses RTC slow clock as a timing source will be less accurate as a result.

The example project `system/startup_time` is pre-configured to optimize startup time. The files `system/startup_time/sdkconfig.defaults` and `system/startup_time/sdkconfig.defaults.esp32` contain all of these settings. You can append these to the end of your project’s own `sdkconfig` file to merge the settings, but please read the documentation for each setting first.

Task Priorities  As ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is a real-time operating system, it’s necessary to ensure that high throughput or low latency tasks are granted a high priority in order to run immediately. Priority is set when calling `xTaskCreate()` or `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()` and can be changed at runtime by calling `vTaskPrioritySet()`.

It’s also necessary to ensure that tasks yield CPU (by calling `vTaskDelay()`, `sleep()`, or by blocking on semaphores, queues, task notifications, etc) in order to not starve lower priority tasks and cause problems for the overall system. The Task Watchdog Timer provides a mechanism to automatically detect if task starvation happens, however note that a Task WDT timeout does not always indicate a problem (sometimes the correct operation of the firmware requires some long-running computation). In these cases tweaking the Task WDT timeout or even disabling the Task WDT may be necessary.

Built-In Task Priorities  ESP-IDF starts a number of system tasks at fixed priority levels. Some are automatically started during the boot process, some are started only if the application firmware initializes a particular feature. To optimize performance, structure application task priorities so that they are not delayed by system tasks, while also not starving system tasks and impacting other functions of the system.

This may require splitting up a particular task. For example, perform a time-critical operation in a high priority task or an interrupt handler and do the non-time-critical part in a lower priority task.

Header `components/esp_system/include/esp_task.h` contains macros for the priority levels used for built-in ESP-IDF tasks system.

Common priorities are:

- **Main task that executes app_main function** has minimum priority (1). This task is pinned to Core 0 by default (configurable).
- **High Resolution Timer** system task to manage high precision timer events and execute callbacks has high priority (22, `ESP_TASK_TIMER_PRIO`). This task is pinned to Core 0.
- FreeRTOS Timer Task to handle FreeRTOS timer callbacks is created when the scheduler initializes and has minimum task priority (1, configurable). This task is pinned to Core 0.
- **Event Handling** system task to manage the default system event loop and execute callbacks has high priority (20, `ESP_TASK_EVENT_PRIO`) and pinned to Core 0. This configuration is only used if the application calls `esp_event_loop_create_default()`, it’s possible to call `esp_event_loop_create()` with a custom task configuration instead.
- **lwIP TCP/IP** task has high priority (18, `ESP_TASK_TCPIP_PRIO`) and is not pinned to any core (configurable).
• **Wi-Fi Driver** task has high priority (23) and is pinned to Core 0 by default (*configurable*).

Wi-Fi wpa_supplicant component may create dedicated tasks while the Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS), WPA2 EAP-TLS, Device Provisioning Protocol (DPP) or BSS Transition Management (BTM) features are in use. These tasks all have low priority (2) and are not pinned to any core.

• **Bluetooth Controller** task has high priority (23, `ESP_TASK_BT_CONTROLLER_PRIO`) and is pinned to Core 0 by default (*configurable*). The Bluetooth Controller needs to respond to requests with low latency, so it should always be close to the highest priority task assigned to a single CPU.

• **NimBLE Bluetooth Host** host task has high priority (21) and is pinned to Core 0 by default (*configurable*).

• **Bluedroid Bluetooth Host** creates multiple tasks when used:
  – Stack event callback task (“BTC”) has high priority (19).
  – Stack BTU layer task has high priority (20).
  – Host HCI host task has high priority (22).

All Bluedroid Tasks are pinned to the same core, which is Core 0 by default (*configurable*).

• The Ethernet driver creates a task for the MAC to receive Ethernet frames. If using the default config `ETH_MAC_DEFAULT_CONFIG` then the priority is medium-high (15) and the task is not pinned to any core. These settings can be changed by passing a custom `eth_mac_config_t` struct when initializing the Ethernet MAC.

• If using the `mDNS` component, it creates a task with default low priority 1 (*configurable*) and pinned to CPU0 (*configurable*).

• If using the `MQTT` component, it creates a task with default priority 5 (*configurable*, depends on `CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG`) and not pinned to any core (*configurable*).

### Choosing application task priorities

With a few exceptions (most importantly the lwIP TCP/IP task), in the default configuration most built-in tasks are pinned to Core 0. This makes it quite easy for the application to place high priority tasks on Core 1. Using priority 19 or higher will guarantee an application task can run on Core 1 without being preempted by any built-in task. To further isolate the tasks running on each CPU, configure the lwIP task to only run on Core 0 instead of either core (this may reduce total TCP/IP throughput depending on what other tasks are running).

In general, it’s not recommended to set task priorities on Core 0 higher than the built-in Wi-Fi/BT operations as starving them of CPU may make the system unstable. Choosing priority 19 and Core 0 will allow lower layer Wi-Fi/BT functionality to run without delays, but still pre-empts the lwIP TCP/IP stack and other less time-critical internal functionality - this is an option for time-critical tasks that don’t perform network operations. Any task that does TCP/IP network operations should run at lower priority than the lwIP TCP/IP task (18) to avoid priority inversion issues.

### Improving Interrupt Performance

ESP-IDF supports dynamic *Interrupt allocation* with interrupt preemption. Each interrupt in the system has a priority, and higher priority interrupts will preempt lower priority ones.

Interrupt handlers will execute in preference to any task (provided the task is not inside a critical section). For this reason, it’s important to minimize the amount of time spent executing in an interrupt handler.

To obtain the best performance for a particular interrupt handler:

- Assign more important interrupts a higher priority using a flag such as `ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL2` or `ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL3` when calling `esp_intr_alloc()`.

---

**Note:** Setting a task to always run in preference to built-in ESP-IDF tasks does not require pinning to Core 1. The task can be left unpinned - at priority 17 or lower - to optionally run on Core 0 as well, if no higher priority built-in task is running there. Using unpinned tasks can improve the overall CPU utilization, however it makes reasoning about task scheduling more complex.

**Note:** Task execution is always completely suspended when writing to the built-in SPI flash chip. Only IRAM 安全中断处理程序 will continue executing.
• Assign the interrupt on a CPU where built-in Wi-Fi/BT tasks are not configured to run (this means assigning on Core 1 by default, see Built-In Task Priorities). Interrupts are assigned on the same CPU where the `esp_intr_alloc()` function call is made.

• If you’re sure the entire interrupt handler can run from IRAM (see IRAM 安全中断处理程序) then set the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag when calling `esp_intr_alloc()` to assign the interrupt. This prevents it being temporarily disabled if the application firmware writes to the internal SPI flash.

• Even if the interrupt handler is not IRAM safe, if it is going to be executed frequently then consider moving the handler function to IRAM anyhow. This minimizes the chance of a flash cache miss when the interrupt code is executed (see Targeted Optimizations). It’s possible to do this without adding the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag to mark the interrupt as IRAM-safe, if only part of the handler is guaranteed to be in IRAM.

Improving Network Speed

• For Wi-Fi, see 如何提高 Wi-Fi 性能 and Wi-Fi 缓冲区使用情况
• For lwIP TCP/IP (Wi-Fi and Ethernet), see Performance Optimization
• The wifi/iperf example contains a configuration that is heavily optimized for Wi-Fi TCP/IP throughput. Append the contents of the files wifi/iperf/sdkconfig.defaults, wifi/iperf/sdkconfig.defaults.esp32 and wifi/iperf/sdkconfig.ci.99 to your project `sdkconfig` file in order to add all of these options. Note that some of these options may have trade-offs in terms of reduced debuggability, increased firmware size, increased memory usage, or reduced performance of other features. To get the best result, read the documentation pages linked above and use this information to determine exactly which options are best suited for your app.

Minimizing Binary Size

The ESP-IDF build system compiles all source files in the project and ESP-IDF, but only functions and variables that are actually referenced by the program are linked into the final binary. In some cases, it is necessary to reduce the total size of the firmware binary (for example, in order to fit it into the available flash partition size).

The first step to reducing the total firmware binary size is measuring what is causing the size to increase.

Measuring Static Sizes  To optimize both firmware binary size and memory usage it’s necessary to measure statically allocated RAM (“data”, “bss”), code (“text”) and read-only data (“rodata”) in your project.

Using the `idf.py` sub-commands `size`, `size-components` and `size-files` provides a summary of memory used by the project:

```
$ idf.py size
[...]
  Total sizes:
  DRAM .data size: 14956 bytes
  DRAM .bss size: 15808 bytes
  Used static DRAM: 30764 bytes (149972 available, 17.0% used)
  Used static IRAM: 83918 bytes (47154 available, 64.0% used)
  Flash code: 559943 bytes
  Flash rodata: 176736 bytes
  Total image size: 835553 bytes (.bin may be padded larger)
```

This output breaks down the size of all static memory regions in the firmware binary:

• DRAM .data size is statically allocated RAM that is assigned to non-zero values at startup. This uses RAM (DRAM) at runtime and also uses space in the binary file.
• DRAM .bss size is statically allocated RAM that is assigned zero at startup. This uses RAM (DRAM) at runtime but doesn’t use any space in the binary file.
• Used static DRAM is the total DRAM used by .data + .bss. The available size is the estimated amount of DRAM which will be available as heap memory at runtime (due to metadata overhead and implementation constraints, and heap allocations done by ESP-IDF during startup, the actual free heap at startup will be lower than this).
API

- Used static IRAM is the total size of executable code executed from IRAM. This uses space in the binary file and also reduces IRAM and/or DRAM (depending on sizes) available as heap memory at runtime. See Optimizing IRAM Usage.
- Flash code is the total size of executable code executed from flash cache (IROM). This uses space in the binary file.
- Flash rodata is the total size of read-only data loaded from flash cache (DROM). This uses space in the binary file.
- Total image size is the estimated total binary file size, which is the total of all the used memory types except for .bss.

Component Usage Summary (idf.py size-components) The summary output provided by idf.py size does not give enough detail to find the main contributor to excessive binary size. To analyze in more detail, use idf.py size-components

$ idf.py size-components
 [...] Total sizes:
 DRAM .data size:  14956 bytes
 DRAM .bss size:  15808 bytes
Used static DRAM:  30764 bytes (149972 available, 17.0% used)
Used static IRAM:  83918 bytes (47154 available, 64.0% used)
 Flash code:  559943 bytes
 Flash rodata:  176736 bytes
Total image size: ~835553 bytes (.bin may be padded larger)

Per-archive contributions to ELF file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Archive File</th>
<th>DRAM .data &amp; .bss &amp; other</th>
<th>IRAM</th>
<th>D/IRAM</th>
<th>Flash code &amp; rodata</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>libnet80211.a</td>
<td>1267 6044 0 5490 0 107445</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liblwip.a</td>
<td>21 3838 0 0 0 97465</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libmbedtls.a</td>
<td>60 524 0 0 0 27655</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libmbedtls.a</td>
<td>64 81 0 30 0 76645</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libpp.a</td>
<td>2427 1292 0 20851 0 37208</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libc.a</td>
<td>4 0 0 0 0 57056</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libphy.a</td>
<td>1439 715 0 7798 0 33074</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libnvs FLASH.a</td>
<td>12 848 0 0 0 35505</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libfreertos.a</td>
<td>3104 740 0 15711 0 367</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libnvs_flash.a</td>
<td>0 24 0 0 0 14347</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libspi FLASH.a</td>
<td>1562 294 0 8851 0 1840</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libesp system.a</td>
<td>245 206 0 3078 0 5990</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libesp-tls.a</td>
<td>0 4 0 0 0 5637</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| [... removed some lines here ...]
| libtcpip_adapter.a | 0 17 0 0 0 216    |      |        |                     |
| libesp_rom.a | 0 0 0 112 0 0       |      |        |                     |
| libcxx.a | 0 0 0 0 0 47       |      |        |                     |
| (exe) | 0 0 0 3 0 3       |      |        |                     |
| (<下页继续>) |
The first lines of output from `idf.py size-components` are the same as `idf.py size`. After this a table is printed of “per-archive contributions to ELF file”. This means how much each static library archive has contributed to the final binary size.

Generally, one static library archive is built per component, although some are binary libraries included by a particular component (for example, `libnet80211.a` is included by `esp_wifi` component). There are also toolchain libraries such as `libc.a` and `libgcc.a` listed here, these provide Standard C/C++ Library and toolchain built-in functionality.

If your project is simple and only has a “main” component, then all of the project’s code will be shown under `libmain.a`. If your project includes its own components (see [构建系统（CMake 版）](#)), then they will each be shown on a separate line.

The table is sorted in descending order of the total contribution to the binary size.

The columns are as follows:

- DRAM .data & .bss & other - .data and .bss are the same as for the totals shown above (static variables, these both reduce total available RAM at runtime but .bss doesn’t contribute to the binary file size). “other” is a column for any custom section types that also contribute to RAM size (usually this value is 0).
- IRAM - is the same as for the totals shown above (code linked to execute from IRAM, uses space in the binary file and also reduces IRAM that can be dynamically allocated at runtime using `HEAP_CAP_32BIT`.
- D/IRAM - Shows IRAM space which, due to occupying D/IRAM space, is also reducing available DRAM available as heap at runtime.
- Flash code & rodata - these are the same as the totals above, IROM and DROM space accessed from flash cache that contribute to the binary size.

**Source File Usage Summary (idf.py size-files)** For even more detail, run `idf.py size-files` to get a summary of the contribution each object file has made to the final binary size. Each object file corresponds to a single source file.

```bash
$ idf.py size-files
[...,]
Total sizes:
   DRAM .data size:    14956 bytes
   DRAM .bss size:     15808 bytes
Used static DRAM:   30764 bytes ( 149972 available, 17.0% used)
Used static IRAM:   83918 bytes ( 47154 available, 64.0% used)
   Flash code:      559943 bytes
   Flash rodata:    176736 bytes
Total image size:  835553 bytes (.bin may be padded larger)
Per-file contributions to ELF file:
   Object File   DRAM .data & .bss & other   IRAM   D/IRAM   Flash code &...
       x509_crt_bundle.S.o          0       0       0       0       0       64212
       wl_cnx.o                       2      3183       0      221       0      13119
     phy_chip_v7.o                    721     614       0     1642       0      16820
       ieee80211_ioctl.o              740      96       0     437       0      15325
       pp.o                           1142     45       0     8871       0      5030
```

(continued)
After the summary of total sizes, a table of “Per-file contributions to ELF file” is printed.

The columns are the same as shown above for `idy.py size-components`, but this time the granularity is the contribution of each individual object file to the binary size.

For example, we can see that the file `x509_crt_bundle.S.o` contributed 64212 bytes to the total firmware size, all as `.rodata` in flash. Therefore we can guess that this application is using the `ESP x509 Certificate Bundle` feature and not using this feature would save at least this many bytes from the firmware size.
Some of the object files are linked from binary libraries and therefore you won’t find a corresponding source file. To locate which component a source file belongs to, it’s generally possible to search in the ESP-IDF source tree or look in the Linker Map File for the full path.

Comparing Two Binaries If making some changes that affect binary size, it’s possible to use an ESP-IDF tool to break down the exact differences in size. This operation isn’t part of idf.py, it’s necessary to run the idf-size.py Python tool directly.

To do so, first locate the linker map file in the build directory. It will have the name PROJECTNAME.map. The idf-size.py tool performs its analysis based on the output of the linker map file.

To compare with another binary, you will also need its corresponding .map file saved from the build directory.

For example, to compare two builds: one with the default CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION setting “Debug (-Og)” configuration and one with “Optimize for size (-Os)”:

```
$ $IDF_PATH/tools/idf_size.py --diff build_Og/https_request.map build_Os/https_request.map
<CURRENT> MAP file: build_Os/https_request.map
<REFERENCE> MAP file: build_Og/https_request.map
Difference is counted as <CURRENT> - <REFERENCE>, i.e. a positive number means that <CURRENT> is larger.
Total sizes of <CURRENT>:
  <REFERENCE> Difference
DRAM .data size: 14516 bytes
  14956 -440
DRAM .bss size: 15792 bytes
  15808 -16
Used static DRAM: 30308 bytes (150428 available, 16.8% used)
  30764 -456 ( +456 available, +0 total)
Used static IRAM: 78498 bytes (52574 available, 59.9% used)
  83918 -5420 ( +5420 available, +0 total)
  509183 Flash code: 509183 bytes
  559943 -50760
  170592 Flash rodata: 170592 bytes
  176736 -6144
  835553 Total image size: 772789 bytes (.bin may be padded larger)
  835553 -62764

We can see from the “Difference” column that changing this one setting caused the whole binary to be over 60 KB smaller and over 5 KB more RAM is available.

It’s also possible to use the “diff” mode to output a table of component-level (static library archive) differences:

```
$ $IDF_PATH/tools/idf_size.py --archives --diff build_Og/https_request.map build_Os/https_request.map
```

Also at the individual source file level:

```
$ $IDF_PATH/tools/idf_size.py --files --diff build_Og/https_request.map build_Os/https_request.map
```

Other options (like writing the output to a file) are available, pass --help to see the full list.

Showing Size When Linker Fails If too much static memory is used, then the linker will fail with an error such as DRAM segment data does not fit, region `iram0_0_seg' overflowed by 44 bytes, or similar.

In these cases, idf.py size will not succeed either. However it is possible to run idf_size.py manually in order to view the partial static memory usage (the memory usage will miss the variables which could not be linked, so there still appears to be some free space.)
The map file argument is `<projectname>.map` in the build directory

```
$IDF_PATH/tools/idf_size.py build/project_name.map
```

It is also possible to view the equivalent of `size-components` or `size-files` output:

```
$IDF_PATH/tools/idf_size.py --archives build/project_name.map
$IDF_PATH/tools/idf_size.py --files build/project_name.map
```

**Linker Map File**  
*This is an advanced analysis method, but it can be very useful. Feel free to skip ahead to \ref{reducing-overall-size} and possibly come back to this later.*

The `idf.py size` analysis tools all work by parsing the GNU binutils “linker map file”, which is a summary of everything the linker did when it created (“linked”) the final firmware binary file.

Linker map files themselves are plain text files, so it’s possible to read them and find out exactly what the linker did. However, they are also very complex and long - often 100,000 or more lines!

The map file itself is broken into parts and each part has a heading. The parts are:

- **Archive member included to satisfy reference by file (symbol).** This shows you: for each object file included in the link, what symbol (function or variable) was the linker searching for when it included that object file. If you’re wondering why some object file in particular was included in the binary, this part may give a clue. This part can be used in conjunction with the Cross Reference Table at the end of the file. Note that not every object file shown in this list ends up included in the final binary, some end up in the Discarded input sections list instead.
- **Allocating common symbols** - This is a list of (some) global variables along with their sizes. Common symbols have a particular meaning in ELF binary files, but ESP-IDF doesn’t make much use of them.
- **Discarded input sections** - These sections were read by the linker as part of an object file to be linked into the final binary, but then nothing else referred to them so they were discarded from the final binary. For ESP-IDF this list can be very long, as we compile each function and static variable to a unique section in order to minimize the final binary size (specifically ESP-IDF uses compiler options `-ffunction-sections -fdata-sections` and linker option `--gc-sections`). Items mentioned in this list do not contribute to the final binary.
- **Memory Configuration, Linker script and memory map** These two parts go together. Some of the output comes directly from the linker command line and the Linker Script, both provided by the CMake build system. The linker script is partially generated from the ESP-IDF project using the 链接器脚本生成机制 feature.

As the output of the Linker script and memory map part of the map unfolds, you can see each symbol (function or static variable) linked into the final binary along with its address (as a 16 digit hex number), its length (also in hex), and the library and object file it was linked from (which can be used to determine the component and the source file).

Following all of the output sections that take up space in the final .bin file, the memory map also includes some sections in the ELF file that are only used for debugging (ELF sections `.debug_*`, etc.). These don’t contribute to the final binary size. You’ll notice the address of these symbols is a very low number (starting from 0x0000000000000000 and counting up).

- **Cross Reference Table**. This table shows for each symbol (function or static variable), the list of object file(s) that referred to it. If you’re wondering why a particular thing is included in the binary, this will help determine what included it.

**Note:** Unfortunately, the Cross Reference Table doesn’t only include symbols that made it into the final binary. It also includes symbols in discarded sections. Therefore, just because something is shown here doesn’t mean that it was included in the final binary - this needs to be checked separately.

**Note:** Linker map files are generated by the GNU binutils linker “ld”, not ESP-IDF. You can find additional information online about the linker map file format. This quick summary is written from the perspective of ESP-IDF build system in particular.
Reducing Overall Size

The following configuration options will reduce the final binary size of almost any ESP-IDF project:

- Set `CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION` to “Optimize for size (-Os)”. In some cases, “Optimize for performance (-O2)” will also reduce the binary size compared to the default. Note that if your code contains C or C++ Undefined Behaviour then increasing the compiler optimization level may expose bugs that otherwise don’t happen.
- Reduce the compiled-in log output by lowering the app `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL`. If the `CONFIG_LOG_MAXIMUM_LEVEL` is changed from the default then this setting controls the binary size instead. Reducing compiled-in logging reduces the number of strings in the binary, and also the code size of the calls to logging functions.
- Set the `CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL` to “Silent”. This avoids compiling in a dedicated assertion string and source file name for each assert that may fail. It’s still possible to find the failed assert in the code by looking at the memory address where the assertion failed.
- Besides the `CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL`, you can disable or silent the assertion for HAL component separately by setting `CONFIG_HAL_DEFAULT_ASSERTION_LEVEL`.
- Set `CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_CHECKS_SILENT`. This removes specific error messages for particular internal ESP-IDF error check macros. This may make it harder to debug some error conditions by reading the log output.
- If the binary needs to run on only certain revision(s) of ESP32, increasing `CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN` to match can result in a reduced binary size. This will make a large difference if setting ESP32 minimum revision 3, and PSRAM is enabled.
- Don’t enable `CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS`, `CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_RTTI`, or set the `CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE` to Overall. All of these options are already disabled by default, but they have a large impact on binary size.
- Disabling `CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP` will remove the lookup table to translate user-friendly names for error values (see Error Numbers) in error logs, etc. This saves some binary size, but error values will be printed as integers only.
- Setting `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC` to “Silent reboot” will save a small amount of binary size, however this is only recommended if no one will use UART output to debug the device.

Targeted Optimizations

The following binary size optimizations apply to a particular component or a function:

**Wi-Fi**

- Disabling `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_ENABLE_WPA3_SAE` will save some Wi-Fi binary size if WPA3 support is not needed. (Note that WPA3 is mandatory for new Wi-Fi device certifications.)
- Disabling `CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SOFTAP_SUPPORT` will save some Wi-Fi binary size if soft-AP support is not needed.

**ADC**

- Disabling ADC calibration features `CONFIG_ADC_CAL_EFUSE_TP_ENABLE`, `CONFIG_ADC_CAL_EFUSE_VREF_ENABLE`, `CONFIG_ADC_CAL_LUT_ENABLE` will save a small amount of binary size if ADC driver is used, at expense of accuracy.

**Bluetooth NimBLE**

If using NimBLE Bluetooth Host then the following modifications can reduce binary size:

- Set `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BLE_MAX_CONN` to 1 if only one BLE connection is needed.
- Set `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_MAX_CONNECTIONS` to 1 if only one BLE connection is needed.
- Disable either `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_CENTRAL` or `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_ROLE_OBSERVER` if these roles are not needed.
• Reducing `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_LOG_LEVEL` can reduce binary size. Note that if the overall log level has been reduced as described above in *Reducing Overall Size* then this also reduces the NimBLE log level.

lwIP IPv6

• Setting `CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6` to false will reduce the size of the lwIP TCP/IP stack, at the cost of only supporting IPv4.

注解: IPv6 is required by some components such as *coap* and *ASIO port*, These components will not be available if IPv6 is disabled.

Newlib nano formatting  By default, ESP-IDF uses newlib “full” formatting for I/O (printf, scanf, etc.)

Enabling the config option `CONFIG_NEWLIB_NANO_FORMAT` will switch newlib to the “nano” formatting mode. This both smaller in code size and a large part of the implementation is compiled into the ESP32 ROM, so it doesn’t need to be included in the binary at all.

The exact difference in binary size depends on which features the firmware uses, but 25 KB ~ 50 KB is typical.

Enabling Nano formatting also reduces the stack usage of each function that calls printf() or another string formatting function, see *Reducing Stack Sizes*.

“Nano” formatting doesn’t support 64-bit integers, or C99 formatting features. For a full list of restrictions, search for `--enable-newlib-nano-formatted-io` in the Newlib README file.

mbedTLS features  Under Component Config -> *mbedTLS* there are multiple mbedTLS features which are enabled by default but can be disabled if not needed to save code size.

These include:

• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDSA_DETERMINISTIC`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SHA512_C`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1_1`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CLIENT_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SERVER_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_ALPN`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CCM_C`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_GCM_C`
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C` (Alternatively: Leave this option enabled but disable some of the elliptic curves listed in the sub-menu.)
• `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_RENEGOTIATION`
• Change `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_TLS_MODE` if both Server & Client are not needed
• Consider disabling some ciphersuites listed in the “TLS Key Exchange Methods” sub-menu (i.e. `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_RSA`)

The help text for each option has some more information.

重要: It is strongly not recommended to disable all these mbedTLS options. Only disable options where you understand the functionality and are certain that it is not needed in the application. In particular:

• Ensure that any TLS server(s) the device connects to can still be used. If the server is controlled by a third party or a cloud service, recommend ensuring that the firmware supports at least two of the supported cipher suites in case one is disabled in a future update.
• Ensure that any TLS client(s) that connect to the device can still connect with supported/recommended cipher suites. Note that future versions of client operating systems may remove support for some features, so it is recommended to enable multiple supported cipher suites or algorithms for redundancy.
If depending on third party clients or servers, always pay attention to announcements about future changes to supported TLS features. If not, the ESP32 device may become inaccessible if support changes.

**FreeModBus** If using Modbus, enable or disable `CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN`, `CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_RTU_EN`, `CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_ASCII_EN` as applicable for the necessary functionality.

**VFS** Virtual filesystem feature in ESP-IDF allows multiple filesystem drivers and file-like peripheral drivers to be accessed using standard I/O functions (open, read, write, etc.) and C library functions (fopen, fread, fwrite, etc.). When filesystem or file-like peripheral driver functionality is not used in the application this feature can be fully or partially disabled. VFS component provides the following configuration options:

- **CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_TERMIOS** — can be disabled if the application doesn’t use termios family of functions. Currently, these functions are implemented only for UART VFS driver. Most applications can disable this option. Disabling this option reduces the code size by about 1.8 kB.
- **CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_SELECT** — can be disabled if the application doesn’t use select function with file descriptors. Currently, only the UART and eventfd VFS drivers implement select support. Note that when this option is disabled, select can still be used for socket file descriptors. Disabling this option reduces the code size by about 2.7 kB.
- **CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_DIR** — can be disabled if the application doesn’t use directory related functions, such as readdir (see the description of this option for the complete list). Applications which only open, read and write specific files and don’t need to enumerate or create directories can disable this option, reducing the code size by 0.5 kB or more, depending on the filesystem drivers in use.
- **CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO** — can be disabled if the application doesn’t use filesystems or file-like peripheral drivers. This disables all VFS functionality, including the three options mentioned above. When this option is disabled, console can’t be used. Note that the application can still use standard I/O functions with socket file descriptors when this option is disabled. Compared to the default configuration, disabling this option reduces code size by about 9.4 kB.

**Bootloader Size** This document deals with the size of an ESP-IDF app binary only, and not the ESP-IDF 二级引导程序.

For a discussion of ESP-IDF bootloader binary size, see 引导加载程序大小.

**IRAM Binary Size** If the IRAM section of a binary is too large, this issue can be resolved by reducing IRAM memory usage. See Optimizing IRAM Usage.

**Minimizing RAM Usage**

In some cases, a firmware application’s available RAM may run low or run out entirely. In these cases, it’s necessary to tune the memory usage of the firmware application.

In general, firmware should aim to leave some “headroom” of free internal RAM in order to deal with extraordinary situations or changes in RAM usage in future updates.

**Background** Before optimizing ESP-IDF RAM usage, it’s necessary to understand the basics of ESP32 memory types, the difference between static and dynamic memory usage in C, and the way ESP-IDF uses stack and heap. This information can all be found in Heap Memory Allocation.
Measuring Static Memory Usage  The \textit{idf.py} tool can be used to generate reports about the static memory usage of an application. Refer to the \textit{Binary Size} chapter for more information.

Measuring Dynamic Memory Usage  ESP-IDF contains a range of heap APIs for measuring free heap at runtime. See \textit{Heap Memory Debugging}.

---

注解： 在嵌入式系统中，堆碎片化可能是一个显著的问题，同时总RAM使用量。堆测量API提供了一种测量“最大空闲块”的方法。监控这个值，同时跟踪总数量的空闲字节可以给出一个快速的指示，堆碎片化是否成为一个问题。

---

Reducing Static Memory Usage

- Reducing the static memory usage of the application increases the amount of RAM available for heap at runtime, and vice versa.
- Generally speaking, minimizing static memory usage requires monitoring the .data and .bss sizes. For tools to do this, see \textit{Measuring Static Sizes}.
- Internal ESP-IDF functions do not make heavy use of static RAM allocation in C. In many instances (including: Wi-Fi library, Bluetooth controller) “static” buffers are still allocated from heap, but the allocation is done once when the feature is initialized and will be freed if the feature is deinitialized. This is done in order to maximize the amount of free memory at different points in the application life-cycle.

To minimize static memory use:

- Declare structures, buffers, or other variables \texttt{const} whenever possible. Constant data can be stored in flash not RAM. This may require changing functions in the firmware to take \texttt{const *} arguments instead of mutable pointer arguments. These changes can also reduce the stack usage of some functions.
- If using Bluedroid, setting the option \texttt{CONFIG_BT_BLE_DYNAMIC_ENV_MEMORY} will cause Bluedroid to allocate memory on initialization and free it on deinitialization. This doesn’t necessarily reduce the peak memory usage, but changes it from static memory usage to runtime memory usage.

Reducing Stack Sizes  In FreeRTOS, task stacks are usually allocated from the heap. The stack size for each task is fixed (passed as an argument to \texttt{xTaskCreate()}). Each task can use up to its allocated stack size, but using more than this will cause an otherwise valid program to crash with a stack overflow or heap corruption.

Therefore, determining the optimum sizes of each task stack can substantially reduce RAM usage.

To determine optimum task stack sizes:

- Combine tasks. The best task stack size is 0 bytes, achieved by combining a task with another existing task. Anywhere that the firmware can be structured to perform multiple functions sequentially in a single task will increase free memory. In some cases, using a “worker task” pattern where jobs are serialized into a FreeRTOS queue (or similar) and then processed by generic worker tasks may help.
- Consolidate task functions. String formatting functions (like \texttt{printf}) are particularly heavy users of stack, so any task which doesn’t ever call these can usually have its stack size reduced.
- Enabling \texttt{Newlib nano formatting} will reduce the stack usage of any task that calls \texttt{printf()} or other C string formatting functions.
- Avoid allocating large variables on the stack. In C, any large struct or array allocated as an “automatic” variable (i.e. default scope of a C declaration) will use space on the stack. Minimize the sizes of these, allocate them statically and/or see if you can save memory by allocating them from the heap only when they are needed.
- Avoid deep recursive function calls. Individual recursive function calls don’t always add a lot of stack usage each time they are called, but if each function includes large stack-based variables then the overhead can get quite high.
- At runtime, call the function \texttt{uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark()} with the handle of any task where you think there is unused stack memory. This function returns the minimum lifetime free stack memory in bytes. The easiest time to call this is from the task itself: call \texttt{uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark(NULL)} to get the current task’s high water mark after the time that the task has achieved its peak stack usage (i.e. if there is a main loop, execute the main loop a number of times with all possible states and
then call `uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark()`). Often, it’s possible to subtract almost the entire value returned here from the total stack size of a task, but allow some safety margin to account for unexpected small increases in stack usage at runtime.

- Call `uxTaskGetSystemState()` at runtime to get a summary of all tasks in the system. This includes their individual stack “high watermark” values.
- When debugger watchpoints are not being used, set the `CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK` option to trigger an immediate panic if a task writes the word at the end of its assigned stack. This is slightly more reliable than the default `CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW` option of “Check using canary bytes”, because the panic happens immediately, not on the next RTOS context switch. Neither option is perfect, it’s possible in some cases for stack pointer to skip the watchpoint or canary bytes and corrupt another region of RAM, instead.

**Internal Stack Sizes** ESP-IDF allocates a number of internal tasks for housekeeping purposes or operating system functions. Some are created during the startup process, and some are created at runtime when particular features are initialized.

The default stack sizes for these tasks are usually set conservatively high, to allow all common usage patterns. Many of the stack sizes are configurable, and it may be possible to reduce them to match the real runtime stack usage of the task.

**Important:** If internal task stack sizes are set too small, ESP-IDF will crash unpredictably. Even if the root cause is task stack overflow, this is not always clear when debugging. It is recommended that internal stack sizes are only reduced carefully (if at all), with close attention to “high water mark” free space under load. If reporting an issue that occurs when internal task stack sizes have been reduced, please always include this information and the specific configuration that is being used.

- **Main task that executes app_main function** has stack size `CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE`.
- **High Resolution Timer** system task which executes callbacks has stack size `CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE`.
- FreeRTOS Timer Task to handle FreeRTOS timer callbacks has stack size `CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH`.
- **Event Handling** system task to execute callbacks for the default system event loop has stack size `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE`.
- **lwIP** TCP/IP task has stack size `CONFIG_LWIP_TCPPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE`.
- **Bluedroid Bluetooth Host** have task stack sizes `CONFIG_BT_BTC_TASK_STACK_SIZE, CONFIG_BT_BTU_TASK_STACK_SIZE`.
- **NimBLE Bluetooth Host** has task stack size `CONFIG_BT_NIMBLE_TASK_STACK_SIZE`.
- The Ethernet driver creates a task for the MAC to receive Ethernet frames. If using the default config `ETH_MAC_DEFAULT_CONFIG` then the task stack size is 4 KB. This setting can be changed by passing a custom `eth_mac_config_t` struct when initializing the Ethernet MAC.
- FreeRTOS idle task stack size is configured by `CONFIG_FREERTOS_IDLE_TASK_STACKSIZE`.
- If using the mDNS and/or MQTT components, they create tasks with stack sizes configured by `CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_STACK_SIZE` and `CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_STACK_SIZE`, respectively. MQTT stack size can also be configured using `task_stack` field of `esp_mqtt_client_config_t`.

**Note:** Aside from built-in system features such as esp-timer, if an ESP-IDF feature is not initialized by the firmware then no associated task is created. In those cases, the stack usage is zero and the stack size configuration for the task is not relevant.

**Reducing Heap Usage** For functions that assist in analyzing heap usage at runtime, see Heap Memory Debugging.

Normally, optimizing heap usage consists of analyzing the usage and removing calls to `malloc()` that aren’t being used, reducing the corresponding sizes, or freeing previously allocated buffers earlier.

There are some ESP-IDF configuration options that can reduce heap usage at runtime:
lwIP documentation has a section to configure **Minimum RAM usage**.

Wi-Fi缓冲区使用情况 describes options to either reduce numbers of “static” buffers or reduce the maximum number of “dynamic” buffers in use, in order to minimize memory usage at possible cost of performance. Note that “static” Wi-Fi buffers are still allocated from heap when Wi-Fi is initialized and will be freed if Wi-Fi is deinitialized.

The Ethernet driver allocates DMA buffers for the internal Ethernet MAC when it is initialized - configuration options are `CONFIG_ETH_DMA_BUFFER_SIZE`, `CONFIG_ETH_DMA_RX_BUFFER_NUM`, `CONFIG_ETH_DMA_TX_BUFFER_NUM`.

mbedTLS TLS session memory usage can be minimized by enabling the ESP-IDF feature `CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER`.

In single core mode only, it’s possible to use IRAM as byte accessible memory (added to the regular heap) by enabling `CONFIG_ESP32_IRAM_AS_8BIT_ACCESSIBLE_MEMORY`. Note that this option carries a performance penalty and the risk of security issues caused by executable data. If this option is enabled then it’s possible to set other options to prefer certain buffers be allocated from this memory: mbedTLS, NimBLE.

Reduce `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BLE_MAX_CONN` if using BLE.

Reduce `CONFIG_BTDM_CTRL_BR_EDR_MAX_ACL_CONN` if using Bluetooth Classic.

There are other configuration options that will increase heap usage at runtime if changed from the defaults. These are not listed here, but the help text for the configuration item will mention if there is some memory impact.

### Optimizing IRAM Usage

If the app allocates more static IRAM than is available then the app will fail to build and linker errors such as section `.iram0.text' will not fit in region `iram0_0_seg', IRAM0 segment data does not fit and region `iram0_0_seg' overflowed by 84 bytes will be seen. If this happens, it is necessary to find ways to reduce static IRAM usage in order to link the application.

To analyze the IRAM usage in the firmware binary, use *Measuring Static Sizes*. If the firmware failed to link, steps to analyze are shown at *Showing Size When Linker Fails*.

The following options will reduce IRAM usage of some ESP-IDF features:

- Enable `CONFIG_FREERTOS_PLACE_FUNCTIONS_INTO_FLASH`. Provided these functions are not (incorrectly) used from ISRs, this option is safe to enable in all configurations.
- Enable `CONFIG_FREERTOS_PLACE_SNAPSHOT_FUNS_INTO_FLASH`. Enabling this option will place snapshot-related functions, such as `vTaskGetSnapshot` or `uxTaskGetSnapshotAll`, in flash.
- Disable Wi-Fi options `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT` and/or `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT`. Disabling these options will free available IRAM at the cost of Wi-Fi performance.
- Disable `CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ROM_DRIVER_PATCH` disabling this option will free some IRAM but is only available in some flash configurations (see the configuration item help text).
- Disable `CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR` prevents posting `esp_event` events from IRAM安全中断处理程序 but will save some IRAM.
- Disable `CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_ISR_IN_IRAM` prevents spi_master interrupts from being serviced while writing to flash, and may otherwise reduce spi_master performance, but will save some IRAM.
- Setting `CONFIG_HAL_DEFAULT_ASSERTION_LEVEL` to disable assertion for HAL component will save some IRAM especially for HAL code who calls `HAL_ASSERT` a lot and resides in IRAM.

When compiling for ESP32 revisions older than ECO3 (`CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN`), PSRAM cache bug workaround (`CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND`) option is enabled, and the C library functions normally located in ROM are recompiled with the workaround and placed into IRAM instead. For most applications, it is safe to move many of the C library functions into Flash, reclaiming some IRAM. Corresponding options include:

- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBJMP_IN_IRAM`: affects the functions `longjmp` and `setjmp`.
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMATH_IN_IRAM`: affects the functions `abs`, `div`, `labs`, `ldiv`, `quorem`, `fpclassify` and `nan`.
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBNUMPARSER_IN_IRAM`: affects the functions `utoa`, `itoa`, `atoi`, `atol`, `strtol` and `strtoul`.
- `CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBIO_IN_IRAM`: affects the functions `wcrtomb`, `fwrite`, `wbuf`, `wsetup`, `fputc`, `wctomb_r`, `ungetc`, `makebuf`, `fflush`, `refill`, and `sccl`.
• **CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBTIME_IN_IRAM**: affects the functions `asctime`, `asctime_r`, `ctime`, `ctime_r`, `lcftime`, `lcltime_r`, `gmtime`, `gmtime`, `gmtime_r`, `strftime`, `mktime`, `tzset_r`, `tzset`, `time`, `gettimeofday`, `systimes`, `month_lengths`, `timelocal`, `tzvars`, `tzlock`, `tzcalc_limits`, and `strptime`.

• **CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBCHAR_IN_IRAM**: affects the functions `ctype`, `toupper`, `tolower`, `toascii`, `strupr`, `bzero`, `isalnum`, `isalpha`, `isascii`, `isblank`, `iscntrl`, `isdigit`, `isgraph`, `islower`, `isprint`, `ispunct`, `isspace`, and `isupper`.

• **CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMEM_IN_IRAM**: affects the functions `memccpy`, `memchr`, `memmove`, and `memrchr`.

• **CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBSTR_IN_IRAM**: affects the functions `strcasecmp`, `strcasestr`, `strchr`, `strcoll`, `strcpy`, `strcspn`, `strdup`, `strdup_r`, `strlcat`, `strlcpy`, `strlcn`, `strlwr`, `strncasecmp`, `strncat`, `strncpy`, `strndup`, `strndup_r`, `strrchr`, `strsep`, `strspn`, `strstr`, `strtok_r`, and ```strupr`.

• **CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBRAND_IN_IRAM**: affects the functions `srand`, `rand`, and `rand_r`.

• **CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBENV_IN_IRAM**: affects the functions `environ`, `envlock`, and `getenv_r`.

• **CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBFILE_IN_IRAM**: affects the functions `lock```, `isatty`, `fclose`, `open`, `close`, `creat`, `read`, `rshift`, `sbrk`, `stdio`, `syssbrk`, `sysclose`, `sysopen`, `creat`, `sysread`, `syswrite`, `impure`, `fwalk`, and `findfp`.

• **CONFIG_SPIRAM_CACHE_LIBMISC_IN_IRAM**: affects the functions `raise` and `system`.

The exact amount of IRAM saved will depend on how much C library code is actually used by the application. In addition to these, the following options may be used to move more of the C library code into Flash, however note that this may result in reduced performance. Also take care to not use corresponding C library functions from interrupts which may be called while cache is disabled (allocated with `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM` flag), refer to IRAM 移动 for more details. For these reasons, the functions `itoa`, `memcpy`, `memcmp`, `memset`, `strcat`, `strcmp`, and `strlen` are always put in IRAM.

### 4.26 RF calibration

ESP32 supports three RF calibration methods during RF initialization:

1. Partial calibration
2. Full calibration
3. No calibration

#### 4.26.1 Partial calibration

During RF initialization, the partial calibration method is used by default for RF calibration. It is done based on the full calibration data which is stored in the NVS. To use this method, please go to menuconfig and enable `CONFIG_ESP_PHY_CALIBRATION_AND_DATA_STORAGE`.

#### 4.26.2 Full calibration

Full calibration is triggered in the following conditions:

1. NVS does not exist.
Chapter 4. API

2. The NVS partition to store calibration data is erased.
3. Hardware MAC address is changed.
4. PHY library version is changed.
5. The RF calibration data loaded from the NVS partition is broken.

It takes about 100ms more than partial calibration. If boot duration is not critical, it is suggested to use
the full calibration method. To switch to the full calibration method, go to menuconfig and disable
CONFIG_ESP_PHY_CALIBRATION_AND_DATA_STORAGE. If you use the default method of RF calibration, there are
two ways to add the function of triggering full calibration as a last-resort remedy.

1. Erase the NVS partition if you don’t mind all of the data stored in the NVS partition is erased. That is indeed
   the easiest way.
2. Call API esp_phy_erase_cal_data_in_nvs() before initializing WiFi and BT/BLE based on some
   conditions (e.g. an option provided in some diagnostic mode). In this case, only phy namespace of the NVS
   partition is erased.

4.26.3 No calibration

No calibration method is only used when the device wakes up from deep sleep.

4.26.4 PHY initialization data

The PHY initialization data is used for RF calibration. There are two ways to get the PHY initialization data.

One is the default initialization data which is located in the header file components/esp_phy/esp32/include/phy_init_data.h.

It is embedded into the application binary after compiling and then stored into read-only memory (DROM). To use the
default initialization data, please go to menuconfig and disable CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION.

Another is the initialization data which is stored in a partition. When using a custom partition table, make
sure that PHY data partition is included (type: data, subtype: phy). With default partition table, this is done
automatically. If initialization data is stored in a partition, it has to be flashed there, otherwise runtime er-
ror will occur. To switch to the initialization data stored in a partition, go to menuconfig and enable CONFIG_ESP_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION.

4.27 Secure Boot

Secure Boot is a feature for ensuring only your code can run on the chip. Data loaded from flash is verified on each
reset.

Secure Boot is separate from the Flash Encryption feature, and you can use secure boot without encrypting the flash
contents. However, for a secure environment both should be used simultaneously. See Secure Boot & Flash Encryption
for more details.

Important: Enabling secure boot limits your options for further updates of your ESP32. Make sure to read this document
throughly and understand the implications of enabling secure boot.
4.27.1 Background

- Most data is stored in flash. Flash access does not need to be protected from physical access in order for secure boot to function, because critical data is stored (non-software-accessible) in Efuses internal to the chip.
- Efuses are used to store the secure bootloader key (in efuse BLOCK2), and also a single Efuse bit (ABS_DONE_0) is burned (written to 1) to permanently enable secure boot on the chip. For more details on Efuses, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > eFuse Controller (eFuse) [PDF].
- To understand the secure boot process, first familiarise yourself with the standard ESP-IDF boot process.
- Both stages of the boot process (initial software bootloader load, and subsequent partition & app loading) are verified by the secure boot process, in a “chain of trust” relationship.

4.27.2 Secure Boot Process Overview

This is a high level overview of the secure boot process. Step by step instructions are supplied under How To Enable Secure Boot. Further in-depth details are supplied under Technical Details:

1. The options to enable secure boot are provided in the Project Configuration Menu, under “Secure Boot Configuration”.
2. Secure Boot defaults to signing images and partition table data during the build process. The “Secure boot private signing key” config item is a file path to a ECDSA public/private key pair in a PEM format file.
3. The software bootloader image is built by esp-idf with secure boot support enabled and the public key (signature verification) portion of the secure boot signing key compiled in. This software bootloader image is flashed at offset 0x1000.
4. On first boot, the software bootloader follows the following process to enable secure boot:
   - Hardware secure boot support generates a device secure bootloader key (generated via hardware RNG, then stored read/write protected in efuse), and a secure digest. The digest is derived from the key, an IV, and the bootloader image contents.
   - The secure digest is flashed at offset 0x0 in the flash.
   - Depending on Secure Boot Configuration, efuses are burned to disable JTAG and the ROM BASIC interpreter (it is strongly recommended these options are turned on.)
   - Bootloader permanently enables secure boot by burning the ABS_DONE_0 efuse. The software bootloader then becomes protected (the chip will only boot a bootloader image if the digest matches.)
5. On subsequent boots the ROM bootloader sees that the secure boot efuse is burned, reads the saved digest at 0x0 and uses hardware secure boot support to compare it with a newly calculated digest. If the digest does not match then booting will not continue. The digest and comparison are performed entirely by hardware, and the calculated digest is not readable by software. For technical details see Secure Boot Hardware Support.
6. When running in secure boot mode, the software bootloader uses the secure boot signing key (the public key of which is embedded in the bootloader itself, and therefore validated as part of the bootloader) to verify the signature appended to all subsequent partition tables and app images before they are booted.

4.27.3 Keys

The following keys are used by the secure boot process:

- “secure bootloader key” is a 256-bit AES key that is stored in Efuse block 2. The bootloader can generate this key itself from the internal hardware random number generator, the user does not need to supply it (it is optionally possible to supply this key, see Re-Flashable Software Bootloader). The Efuse holding this key is read & write protected (preventing software access) before secure boot is enabled.
  - By default, the Efuse Block 2 Coding Scheme is “None” and a 256 bit key is stored in this block. On some ESP32s, the Coding Scheme is set to 3/4 Encoding (CODING_SCHEME efuse has value 1) and a 192 bit key must be stored in this block.
For more details, see ESP32 Technical Reference Manual > eFuse Controller (eFuse) > System Parameter coding_scheme [PDF].
The algorithm operates on a 256 bit key in all cases, 192 bit keys are extended by repeating some bits (details).
- “secure boot signing key” is a standard ECDSA public/private key pair (see Image Signing Algorithm) in PEM format.
Chapter 4. API

− The public key from this key pair (for signature verification but not signature creation) is compiled into
  the software bootloader and used to verify the second stage of booting (partition table, app image) before
  booting continues. The public key can be freely distributed, it does not need to be kept secret.
− The private key from this key pair must be securely kept private, as anyone who has this key can authenticate
  to any bootloader that is configured with secure boot and the matching public key.

4.27.4 Bootloader Size

Enabling Secure boot and/or flash encryption will increase the size of bootloader, which might require updating
partition table offset. See 引导加载程序大小.

4.27.5 How To Enable Secure Boot

1. Open the Project Configuration Menu, navigate to “Secure Boot Configuration” and select the option “One-time
   Flash”. (To understand the alternative “Reflashable” choice, see Re-Flashable Software Bootloader.)
2. Select a name for the secure boot signing key. This option will appear after secure boot is enabled. The file
   can be anywhere on your system. A relative path will be evaluated from the project directory. The file does
   not need to exist yet.
3. Set other menuconfig options (as desired). Pay particular attention to the “Bootloader Config” options, as you
   can only flash the bootloader once. Then exit menuconfig and save your configuration
4. The first time you run make, if the signing key is not found then an error message will be printed with a
   command to generate a signing key via espsecure.py generate_signing_key.

重要: A signing key generated this way will use the best random number source available to the OS and its Python
installation (/dev/arandom on OS/X/Linux and CryptGenRandom() on Windows). If this random number source is
weak, then the private key will be weak.

重要: For production environments, we recommend generating the keypair using openssl or another industry standard
encryption program. See Generating Secure Boot Signing Key for more details.

5. Run idf.py bootloader to build a secure boot enabled bootloader. The build output will include a
   prompt for a flashing command, using esptool.py write_flash.
6. When you’re ready to flash the bootloader, run the specified command (you have to enter it yourself, this step
   is not performed by make) and then wait for flashing to complete. Remember this is a one time flash, you
   can’t change the bootloader after this!
7. Run idf.py flash to build and flash the partition table and the just-built app image. The app image will
   be signed using the signing key you generated in step 4.

注解: idf.py flash doesn’t flash the bootloader if secure boot is enabled.

8. Reset the ESP32 and it will boot the software bootloader you flashed. The software bootloader will enable
   secure boot on the chip, and then it verifies the app image signature and boots the app. You should watch the
   serial console output from the ESP32 to verify that secure boot is enabled and no errors have occurred due to
   the build configuration.

注解: Secure boot won’t be enabled until after a valid partition table and app image have been flashed. This is to
prevent accidents before the system is fully configured.

注解: If the ESP32 is reset or powered down during the first boot, it will start the process again on the next boot.
9. On subsequent boots, the secure boot hardware will verify the software bootloader has not changed (using the secure bootloader key) and then the software bootloader will verify the signed partition table and app image (using the public key portion of the secure boot signing key).

### 4.27.6 Re-Flashable Software Bootloader

Configuration “Secure Boot: One-Time Flash” is the recommended configuration for production devices. In this mode, each device gets a unique key that is never stored outside the device.

However, an alternative mode Secure Boot: Reflashable is also available. This mode allows you to supply a binary key file that is used for the secure bootloader key. As you have the key file, you can generate new bootloader images and secure boot digests for them.

In the esp-idf build process, this 256-bit key file is derived from the ECDSA app signing key generated by the user (see the generating Secure Boot Signing Key step below). This private key’s SHA-256 digest is used as the secure bootloader key in efuse (as-is for Coding Scheme None, or truncate to 192 bytes for 3/4 Encoding). This is a convenience so you only need to generate/protect a single private key.

Although it’s possible, we strongly recommend not generating one secure boot key and flashing it to every device in a production environment. The “One-Time Flash” option is recommended for production environments.

To enable a reflashable bootloader:

1. In the Project Configuration Menu, select “Bootloader Config” -> CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT -> CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_V1_ENABLED -> CONFIG_SECURE_BOOTLOADER_MODE -> Reflashable.
2. If necessary, set the CONFIG_SECURE_BOOTLOADER_KEY_ENCODING based on the coding scheme used by the device. The coding scheme is shown in the Features line when esptool.py connects to the chip, or in the espefuse.py summary output.

3. Follow the steps shown above to choose a signing key file, and generate the key file.
4. Run idf.py bootloader. A binary key file will be created, derived from the private key that is used for signing. Two sets of flashing steps will be printed - the first set of steps includes an espefuse.py burn_key secure_boot_v1 path_to/secure-bootloader-key-xxx.bin command which is used to write the bootloader key to efuse. (Flashing this key is a one-time-only process.) The second set of steps can be used to reflash the bootloader with a pre-calculated digest (generated during the build process).

4. Resume from Step 6 of the one-time flashing process, to flash the bootloader and enable secure boot. Watch the console log output closely to ensure there were no errors in the secure boot configuration.

### 4.27.7 Generating Secure Boot Signing Key

The build system will prompt you with a command to generate a new signing key via espsecure.py generate_signing_key. This uses the python-ecdsa library, which in turn uses Python’s os.urandom() as a random number source.

The strength of the signing key is proportional to (a) the random number source of the system, and (b) the correctness of the algorithm used. For production devices, we recommend generating signing keys from a system with a quality entropy source, and using the best available EC key generation utilities.

For example, to generate a signing key using the openssl command line:
```
`openssl ecparam -name prime256v1 -genkey -noout -out my_secure_boot_signing_key.pem`
```

Remember that the strength of the secure boot system depends on keeping the signing key private.
4.27.8 Remote Signing of Images

For production builds, it can be good practice to use a remote signing server rather than have the signing key on the build machine (which is the default esp-idf secure boot configuration). The espsecure.py command line program can be used to sign app images & partition table data for secure boot, on a remote system.

To use remote signing, disable the option “Sign binaries during build”. The private signing key does not need to be present on the build system. However, the public (signature verification) key is required because it is compiled into the bootloader (and can be used to verify image signatures during OTA updates).

To extract the public key from the private key:

```
espsecure.py extract_public_key --keyfile PRIVATE_SIGNING_KEY PUBLIC_VERIFICATION_KEY
```

The path to the public signature verification key needs to be specified in the menuconfig under “Secure boot public signature verification key” in order to build the secure bootloader.

After the app image and partition table are built, the build system will print signing steps using espsecure.py:

```
espsecure.py sign_data --keyfile PRIVATE_SIGNING_KEY BINARY_FILE
```

The above command appends the image signature to the existing binary. You can use the --output argument to write the signed binary to a separate file:

```
.espsecure.py sign_data --keyfile PRIVATE_SIGNING_KEY --output SIGNED_BINARY_FILE
```

4.27.9 Secure Boot Best Practices

- Generate the signing key on a system with a quality source of entropy.
- Keep the signing key private at all times. A leak of this key will compromise the secure boot system.
- Do not allow any third party to observe any aspects of the key generation or signing process using espsecure.py. Both processes are vulnerable to timing or other side-channel attacks.
- Enable all secure boot options in the Secure Boot Configuration. These include flash encryption, disabling of JTAG, disabling BASIC ROM interpreter, and disabling the UART bootloader encrypted flash access.
- Use secure boot in combination with flash encryption to prevent local readout of the flash contents.

4.27.10 Technical Details

The following sections contain low-level reference descriptions of various secure boot elements:

**Secure Boot Hardware Support**

The first stage of secure boot verification (checking the software bootloader) is done via hardware. The ESP32’s Secure Boot support hardware can perform three basic operations:

1. Generate a random sequence of bytes from a hardware random number generator.
2. Generate a digest from data (usually the bootloader image from flash) using a key stored in Efuse block 2. The key in Efuse can (& should) be read/write protected, which prevents software access. For full details of this algorithm see Secure Bootloader Digest Algorithm. The digest can only be read back by software if Efuse ABS_DONE_0 is not burned (ie still 0).
3. Generate a digest from data (usually the bootloader image from flash) using the same algorithm as step 2 and compare it to a pre-calculated digest supplied in a buffer (usually read from flash offset 0x0). The hardware returns a true/false comparison without making the digest available to software. This function is available even when Efuse ABS_DONE_0 is burned.
Secure Bootloader Digest Algorithm

Starting with an “image” of binary data as input, this algorithm generates a digest as output. The digest is sometimes referred to as an “abstract” in hardware documentation.

For a Python version of this algorithm, see the espsecure.py tool in the components/esptool_py directory (specifically, the digest_secure_bootloader command).

Items marked with (*) are to fulfill hardware restrictions, as opposed to cryptographic restrictions.

1. Read the AES key from efuse block 2, in reversed byte order. If Coding Scheme is set to 3/4 Encoding, extend the 192 bit key to 256 bits using the same algorithm described in Flash 保密算法.
2. Prefix the image with a 128 byte randomly generated IV.
3. If the image length is not modulo 128, pad the image to a 128 byte boundary with 0xFF. (*)
4. For each 16 byte plaintext block of the input image: - Reverse the byte order of the plaintext input block (*) - Apply AES256 in ECB mode to the plaintext block. - Reverse the byte order of the ciphertext output block. (*) - Append to the overall ciphertext output.
5. Byte-swap each 4 byte word of the ciphertext (*)
6. Calculate SHA-512 of the ciphertext.

Output digest is 192 bytes of data: The 128 byte IV, followed by the 64 byte SHA-512 digest.

Image Signing Algorithm

Deterministic ECDSA as specified by RFC 6979.

- Curve is NIST256p (openssl calls this curve “prime256v1”, it is also sometimes called secp256r1).
- Hash function is SHA256.
- Key format used for storage is PEM.
  - In the bootloader, the public key (for signature verification) is flashed as 64 raw bytes.
- Image signature is 68 bytes - a 4 byte version word (currently zero), followed by a 64 bytes of signature data. These 68 bytes are appended to an app image or partition table data.

Manual Commands

Secure boot is integrated into the esp-idf build system, so make will automatically sign an app image if secure boot is enabled. idf.py bootloader will produce a bootloader digest if menuconfig is configured for it.

However, it is possible to use the espsecure.py tool to make standalone signatures and digests.

To sign a binary image:

```
espsecure.py sign_data --keyfile ./my_signing_key.pem --output ./image_signed.bin
```

Keyfile is the PEM file containing an ECDSA private signing key.

To generate a bootloader digest:

```
espsecure.py digest_secure_bootloader --keyfile ./securebootkey.bin --output ./
```

Keyfile is the 32 byte raw secure boot key for the device.

The output of the espsecure.py digest_secure_bootloader command is a single file which contains both the digest and the bootloader appended to it. To flash the combined digest plus bootloader to the device:

```
esptool.py write_flash 0x0 bootloader-digest.bin
```
4.27.11 Secure Boot & Flash Encryption

If secure boot is used without Flash Encryption, it is possible to launch “time-of-check to time-of-use” attack, where flash contents are swapped after the image is verified and running. Therefore, it is recommended to use both the features together.

4.27.12 Signed App Verification Without Hardware Secure Boot

The integrity of apps can be checked even without enabling the hardware secure boot option. This option uses the same app signature scheme as hardware secure boot, but unlike hardware secure boot it does not prevent the bootloader from being physically updated. This means that the device can be secured against remote network access, but not physical access. Compared to using hardware Secure Boot this option is much simpler to implement. See How To Enable Signed App Verification for step by step instructions.

An app can be verified on update and, optionally, be verified on boot.

- Verification on update: When enabled, the signature is automatically checked whenever the esp_ota_ops.h APIs are used for OTA updates. If hardware secure boot is enabled, this option is always enabled and cannot be disabled. If hardware secure boot is not enabled, this option still adds significant security against network-based attackers by preventing spoofing of OTA updates.
- Verification on boot: When enabled, the bootloader will be compiled with code to verify that an app is signed before booting it. If hardware secure boot is enabled, this option is always enabled and cannot be disabled. If hardware secure boot is not enabled, this option doesn’t add significant security by itself so most users will want to leave it disabled.

How To Enable Signed App Verification

1. Open Project Configuration Menu -> Security features -> Enable CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT
2. “Bootloader verifies app signatures” can be enabled, which verifies app on boot.
3. By default, “Sign binaries during build” will be enabled on selecting “Require signed app images” option, which will sign binary files as a part of build process. The file named in “Secure boot private signing key” will be used to sign the image.
4. If you disable “Sign binaries during build” option then you’ll have to enter path of a public key file used to verify signed images in “Secure boot public signature verification key”. In this case, private signing key should be generated by following instructions in Generating Secure Boot Signing Key; public verification key and signed image should be generated by following instructions in Remote Signing of Images.

4.27.13 Advanced Features

JTAG Debugging

By default, when Secure Boot is enabled then JTAG debugging is disabled via eFuse. The bootloader does this on first boot, at the same time it enables Secure Boot.

See JTAG for more information about using JTAG Debugging with either Secure Boot or signed app verification enabled.

4.28 Secure Boot V2

This document is about Secure Boot V2, supported on the following chips: ESP32 (ECO3 onwards), ESP32-S2, ESP32-S3 and ESP32-C3 (ECO3 onwards). Except for ESP32, it is the only supported Secure Boot scheme.

For ESP32 before ECO3, refer to Secure Boot. It is recommended that users use Secure Boot V2 if they have a chip version that supports it. Secure Boot V2 is safer and more flexible than Secure Boot V1.
Secure Boot V2 uses RSA based app and bootloader verification. This document can also be used as a reference for signing apps using the RSA scheme without signing the bootloader.

**Secure Boot V2 and RSA scheme (App Signing Scheme) options are available for ESP32 from ECO3 onwards. To use these options in menuconfig, set CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN greater than or equal to Rev 3.**

### 4.28.1 Background

Secure Boot protects a device from running any unauthorized (i.e., unsigned) code by checking that each piece of software that is being booted is signed. On an ESP32, these pieces of software include the second stage bootloader and each application binary. Note that the first stage bootloader does not require signing as it is ROM code thus cannot be changed.

A new RSA based Secure Boot verification scheme (Secure Boot V2) has been introduced on the ESP32 (ECO3 onwards), ESP32-S2, ESP32-S3 and ESP32-C3 (ECO3 onwards).

The Secure Boot process on the ESP32 involves the following steps: 1. When the first stage bootloader loads the second stage bootloader, the second stage bootloader’s RSA-PSS signature is verified. If the verification is successful, the second stage bootloader is executed. 2. When the second stage bootloader loads a particular application image, the application’s RSA-PSS signature is verified. If the verification is successful, the application image is executed.

### 4.28.2 Advantages

* The RSA public key is stored on the device. The corresponding RSA private key is kept at a secret place and is never accessed by the device.
* Only one public key can be generated and stored in the chip during manufacturing.
* Same image format and signature verification method is applied for applications and software bootloader.
* No secrets are stored on the device. Therefore, it is immune to passive side-channel attacks (timing or power analysis, etc.)

### 4.28.3 Secure Boot V2 Process

This is an overview of the Secure Boot V2 Process. Instructions how to enable Secure Boot are supplied in section *How To Enable Secure Boot V2.*

Secure Boot V2 verifies the bootloader image and application binary images using a dedicated signature block. Each image has a separately generated signature block which is appended to the end of the image.

Only one signature block can be appended to the bootloader or application image in ESP32 ECO3.

Each signature block contains a signature of the preceding image as well as the corresponding RSA-3072 public key. For more details about the format, refer to *Signature Block Format.* A digest of the RSA-3072 public key is stored in the eFuse.

The application image is not only verified on every boot but also on each over the air (OTA) update. If the currently selected OTA app image cannot be verified, the bootloader will fall back and look for another correctly signed application image.

The Secure Boot V2 process follows these steps:

1. On startup, the ROM code checks the Secure Boot V2 bit in the eFuse. If Secure Boot is disabled, a normal boot will be executed. If Secure Boot is enabled, the boot will proceed according to the following steps.
2. The ROM code verifies the bootloader’s signature block (*Verifying a Signature Block*). If this fails, the boot process will be aborted.
3. The ROM code verifies the bootloader image using the raw image data, its corresponding signature block(s), and the eFuse (*Verifying an Image*). If this fails, the boot process will be aborted.
4. The ROM code executes the bootloader.
5. The bootloader verifies the application image’s signature block (**Verifying a Signature Block**). If this fails, the boot process will be aborted.

6. The bootloader verifies the application image using the raw image data, its corresponding signature blocks and the eFuse (**Verifying an Image**). If this fails, the boot process will be aborted. If the verification fails but another application image is found, the bootloader will then try to verify that other image using steps 5 to 7. This repeats until a valid image is found or no other images are found.

7. The bootloader executes the verified application image.

### 4.28.4 Signature Block Format

The bootloader and application images are padded to the next 4096 byte boundary, thus the signature has a flash sector of its own. The signature is calculated over all bytes in the image including the padding bytes.

The content of each signature block is shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Size (bytes)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Magic byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Version number byte (currently 0x02), 0x01 is for Secure Boot V1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Padding bytes, Reserved. Should be zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>SHA-256 hash of only the image content, not including the signature block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>384</td>
<td>RSA Public Modulus used for signature verification. (value ‘n’ in RFC8017).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>RSA Public Exponent used for signature verification (value ‘e’ in RFC8017).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>424</td>
<td>384</td>
<td>Pre-calculated R, derived from ‘n’.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>808</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pre-calculated M’, derived from ‘n’.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812</td>
<td>384</td>
<td>RSA-PSS Signature result (section 8.1.1 of RFC8017) of image content, computed using following PSS parameters: SHA256 hash, MFG1 function, 0 length salt, default trailer field (0xBC).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1196</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>CRC32 of the preceding 1095 bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Zero padding to length 1216 bytes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** R and M’ are used for hardware-assisted Montgomery Multiplication.

The remainder of the signature sector is erased flash (0xFF) which allows writing other signature blocks after previous signature block.

### 4.28.5 Verifying a Signature Block

A signature block is “valid” if the first byte is 0xe7 and a valid CRC32 is stored at offset 1196. Otherwise it’s invalid.

### 4.28.6 Verifying an Image

An image is “verified” if the public key stored in any signature block is valid for this device, and if the stored signature is valid for the image data read from flash.

1. Compare the SHA-256 hash digest of the public key embedded in the bootloader’s signature block with the digest(s) saved in the eFuses. If public key’s hash doesn’t match any of the hashes from the eFuses, the verification fails.
2. Generate the application image digest and match it with the image digest in the signature block. If the digests don’t match, the verification fails.
Chapter 4. API

3. Use the public key to verify the signature of the bootloader image, using RSA-PSS (section 8.1.2 of RFC8017) with the image digest calculated in step (2) for comparison.

4.28.7 Bootloader Size

Enabling Secure boot and/or flash encryption will increase the size of bootloader, which might require updating partition table offset. See 引导加载程序大小.

4.28.8 eFuse usage

ESP32-ECO3:

- ABS_DONE_1 - Enables Secure Boot protection on boot.
- BLK2 - Stores the SHA-256 digest of the public key. SHA-256 hash of public key modulus, exponent, pre-calculated R & M values (represented as 776 bytes – offsets 36 to 812 - as per the Signature Block Format) is written to an eFuse key block. The write-protection bit must be set, but the read-protection bit must not.

The key(s) must be readable in order to give software access to it. If the key(s) is read-protected then the software reads the key(s) as all zeros and the signature verification process will fail, and the boot process will be aborted.

4.28.9 How To Enable Secure Boot V2

1. Open the Project Configuration Menu, in “Security features” set “Enable hardware Secure Boot in bootloader” to enable Secure Boot.
2. For ESP32, Secure Boot V2 is available only ESP32 ECO3 onwards. To view the “Secure Boot V2” option the chip revision should be changed to revision 3 (ESP32-ECO3). To change the chip revision, set “Minimum Supported ESP32 Revision” to Rev 3 in “Component Config” -> “ESP32-Specific”.
3. Specify the path to Secure Boot signing key, relative to the project directory.
4. Select the desired UART ROM download mode in “UART ROM download mode”. By default the UART ROM download mode has been kept enabled in order to prevent permanently disabling it in the development phase, this option is a potentially insecure option. It is recommended to disable the UART download mode for better security.
5. Set other menuconfig options (as desired). Pay particular attention to the “Bootloader Config” options, as you can only flash the bootloader once. Then exit menuconfig and save your configuration.
6. The first time you run idf.py build, if the signing key is not found then an error message will be printed with a command to generate a signing key via espsecure.py generate_signing_key.

重要: A signing key generated this way will use the best random number source available to the OS and its Python installation (/dev/urandom on OSX/Linux and CryptGenRandom() on Windows). If this random number source is weak, then the private key will be weak.

重要: For production environments, we recommend generating the key pair using openssl or another industry standard encryption program. See Generating Secure Boot Signing Key for more details.

7. Run idf.py bootloader to build a Secure Boot enabled bootloader. The build output will include a prompt for a flashing command, using esptool.py write_flash.
8. When you’re ready to flash the bootloader, run the specified command (you have to enter it yourself, this step is not performed by the build system) and then wait for flashing to complete.
9. Run idf.py flash to build and flash the partition table and the just-built app image. The app image will be signed using the signing key you generated in step 4.
10. Reset the ESP32 and it will boot the software bootloader you flashed. The software bootloader will enable Secure Boot on the chip, and then it verifies the app image signature and boots the app. You should watch the serial console output from the ESP32 to verify that Secure Boot is enabled and no errors have occurred due to the build configuration.

Secure boot won’t be enabled until after a valid partition table and app image have been flashed. This is to prevent accidents before the system is fully configured.

If the ESP32 is reset or powered down during the first boot, it will start the process again on the next boot.

11. On subsequent boots, the Secure Boot hardware will verify the software bootloader has not changed and the software bootloader will verify the signed app image (using the validated public key portion of its appended signature block).

4.28.10 Restrictions after Secure Boot is enabled

- Any updated bootloader or app will need to be signed with a key matching the digest already stored in eFuse.
- After Secure Boot is enabled, no further eFuses can be read protected. (If Flash is enabled then the bootloader will ensure that any flash encryption key generated on first boot will already be read protected.) If `CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE` is enabled then this behavior can be disabled, but this is not recommended.

4.28.11 Generating Secure Boot Signing Key

The build system will prompt you with a command to generate a new signing key via `espsecure.py generate_signing_key`. The `version 2` parameter will generate the RSA 3072 private key for Secure Boot V2.

The strength of the signing key is proportional to (a) the random number source of the system, and (b) the correctness of the algorithm used. For production devices, we recommend generating signing keys from a system with a quality entropy source, and using the best available RSA key generation utilities.

For example, to generate a signing key using the openssl command line:

```
` openssl genrsa -out my_secure_boot_signing_key.pem 3072 `
```

Remember that the strength of the Secure Boot system depends on keeping the signing key private.

4.28.12 Remote Signing of Images

For production builds, it can be good practice to use a remote signing server rather than have the signing key on the build machine (which is the default esp-idf Secure Boot configuration). The espsecure.py command line program can be used to sign app images & partition table data for Secure Boot, on a remote system.

To use remote signing, disable the option “Sign binaries during build”. The private signing key does not need to be present on the build system.

After the app image and partition table are built, the build system will print signing steps using espsecure.py:

```
espsecure.py sign_data --version 2 --keyfile PRIVATE_SIGNING_KEY BINARY_FILE
```

The above command appends the image signature to the existing binary. You can use the `--output` argument to write the signed binary to a separate file:
4.28.13 Secure Boot Best Practices

- Generate the signing key on a system with a quality source of entropy.
- Keep the signing key private at all times. A leak of this key will compromise the Secure Boot system.
- Do not allow any third party to observe any aspects of the key generation or signing process using espsecure.py. Both processes are vulnerable to timing or other side-channel attacks.
- Enable all Secure Boot options in the Secure Boot Configuration. These include flash encryption, disabling of JTAG, disabling BASIC ROM interpreter, and disabling the UART bootloader encrypted flash access.
- Use Secure Boot in combination with flash encryption to prevent local readout of the flash contents.

4.28.14 Technical Details

The following sections contain low-level reference descriptions of various Secure Boot elements:

Manual Commands

Secure boot is integrated into the esp-idf build system, so idf.py build will sign an app image and idf.py bootloader will produce a signed bootloader if secure signed binaries on build is enabled.

However, it is possible to use the espsecure.py tool to make standalone signatures and digests.

To sign a binary image:

```
espsecure.py sign_data --version 2 --keyfile ./my_signing_key.pem --output ./image_signed.bin image_unsigned.bin
```

Keyfile is the PEM file containing an RSA-3072 private signing key.

4.28.15 Secure Boot & Flash Encryption

If Secure Boot is used without Flash Encryption, it is possible to launch “time-of-check to time-of-use” attack, where flash contents are swapped after the image is verified and running. Therefore, it is recommended to use both the features together.

4.28.16 Signed App Verification Without Hardware Secure Boot

The Secure Boot V2 signature of apps can be checked on OTA update, without enabling the hardware Secure Boot option. This option uses the same app signature scheme as Secure Boot V2, but unlike hardware Secure Boot it does not prevent an attacker who can write to flash from bypassing the signature protection.

This may be desirable in cases where the delay of Secure Boot verification on startup is unacceptable, and/or where the threat model does not include physical access or attackers writing to bootloader or app partitions in flash.

In this mode, the public key which is present in the signature block of the currently running app will be used to verify the signature of a newly updated app. (The signature on the running app isn’t verified during the update process, it’s assumed to be valid.) In this way the system creates a chain of trust from the running app to the newly updated app.

For this reason, it’s essential that the initial app flashed to the device is also signed. A check is run on app startup and the app will abort if no signatures are found. This is to try and prevent a situation where no update is possible. The app should have only one valid signature block in the first position. Note again that, unlike hardware Secure Boot V2, the signature of the running app isn’t verified on boot. The system only verifies a signature block in the first position and ignores any other appended signatures.
How To Enable Signed App Verification

1. Open Project Configuration Menu -> Security features
2. Ensure App Signing Scheme is RSA. For ESP32 ECO3 chip, select CONFIG_ESP32_REV_MIN to Rev 3 to get RSA option available
3. Enable CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT
4. By default, “Sign binaries during build” will be enabled on selecting “Require signed app images” option, which will sign binary files as a part of build process. The file named “Secure boot private signing key” will be used to sign the image.
5. If you disable “Sign binaries during build” option then all app binaries must be manually signed by following instructions in Remote Signing of Images.

警告： It is very important that all apps flashed have been signed, either during the build or after the build.

4.28.17 Advanced Features

JTAG Debugging

By default, when Secure Boot is enabled then JTAG debugging is disabled via eFuse. The bootloader does this on first boot, at the same time it enables Secure Boot.

See JTAG 与闪存加密和安全引导 for more information about using JTAG Debugging with either Secure Boot or signed app verification enabled.

4.29 Thread Local Storage

4.29.1 Overview

Thread-local storage (TLS) is a mechanism by which variables are allocated such that there is one instance of the variable per extant thread. ESP-IDF provides three ways to make use of such variables:

- FreeRTOS Native API: ESP-IDF FreeRTOS native API.
- Pthread API: ESP-IDF’s pthread API.
- C11 Standard: C11 standard introduces special keyword to declare variables as thread local.

4.29.2 FreeRTOS Native API

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS provides the following API to manage thread local variables:

- vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer()
- pvTaskGetThreadLocalStoragePointer()
- vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback()

In this case maximum number of variables that can be allocated is limited by CONFIG_FREERTOS_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS configuration value. Variables are kept in the task control block (TCB) and accessed by their index. Note that index 0 is reserved for ESP-IDF internal uses.

Using that API user can allocate thread local variables of an arbitrary size and assign them to any number of tasks. Different tasks can have different sets of TLS variables.
If size of the variable is more than 4 bytes then user is responsible for allocating/deallocating memory for it. Variable’s deallocation is initiated by FreeRTOS when task is deleted, but user must provide function (callback) to do proper cleanup.

### 4.29.3 Pthread API

The ESP-IDF provides the following `pthread API` to manage thread local variables:

- `pthread_key_create()`
- `pthread_key_delete()`
- `pthread_getspecific()`
- `pthread_setspecific()`

This API has all benefits of the one above, but eliminates some of its limits. The number of variables is limited only by size of available memory on the heap. Due to the dynamic nature this API introduces additional performance overhead compared to the native one.

### 4.29.4 C11 Standard

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS supports thread local variables according to C11 standard (ones specified with `__thread` keyword). For details on this GCC feature please see [https://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/gcc-5.5.0/gcc/Thread-Local.html#Thread-Local](https://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/gcc-5.5.0/gcc/Thread-Local.html#Thread-Local). Storage for that kind of variables is allocated on the task’s stack. Note that area for all such variables in the program will be allocated on the stack of every task in the system even if that task does not use such variables at all. For example ESP-IDF system tasks (like `ipc`, `timer` tasks etc.) will also have that extra stack space allocated. So this feature should be used with care. There is a tradeoff: C11 thread local variables are quite handy to use in programming and can be accessed using minimal CPU instructions, but this benefit goes with the cost of additional stack usage for all tasks in the system. Due to static nature of variables allocation all tasks in the system have the same sets of C11 thread local variables.

### 4.30 工具

#### 4.30.1 Downloadable Tools

ESP-IDF build process relies on a number of tools: cross-compiler toolchains, CMake build system, and others. Installing the tools using an OS-specific package manager (like apt, yum, brew, etc.) is the preferred method when the required version of the tool is available. This recommendation is reflected in the Getting Started guide. For example, on Linux and macOS it is recommended to install CMake using an OS package manager.

However, some of the tools are IDF-specific and are not available in OS package repositories. Furthermore, different versions of ESP-IDF require different versions of the tools to operate correctly. To solve these two problems, ESP-IDF provides a set of scripts for downloading and installing the correct versions of tools, and exposing them in the environment.

The rest of the document refers to these downloadable tools simply as "tools". Other kinds of tools used in ESP-IDF are:

- Python scripts bundled with ESP-IDF (such as `idf.py`)
- Python packages installed from PyPI.

The following sections explain the installation method, and provide the list of tools installed on each platform.

---

**注解:** This document is provided for advanced users who need to customize their installation, users who wish to understand the installation process, and ESP-IDF developers.

If you are looking for instructions on how to install the tools, see the *Getting Started Guide.*
Chapter 4. API

Tools metadata file

The list of tools and tool versions required for each platform is located in `tools/tools.json`. The schema of this file is defined by `tools/tools_schema.json`.

This file is used by `tools/idf_tools.py` script when installing the tools or setting up the environment variables.

Tools installation directory

`IDF_TOOLS_PATH` environment variable specifies the location where the tools are to be downloaded and installed. If not set, `IDF_TOOLS_PATH` defaults to `HOME/.espressif` on Linux and macOS, and `%USER_PROFILE%\.espressif` on Windows.

Inside `IDF_TOOLS_PATH`, the scripts performing tools installation create the following directories:

- `dist` — where the archives of the tools are downloaded.
- `tools` — where the tools are extracted. The tools are extracted into subdirectories: `tools/TOOL_NAME/VERSION/`. This arrangement allows different versions of tools to be installed side by side.

GitHub Assets Mirror

Most of the tools downloaded by the tools installer are GitHub Release Assets, which are files attached to a software release on GitHub.

If GitHub downloads are inaccessible or slow to access, it’s possible to configure a GitHub assets mirror.

To use Espressif’s download server, set the environment variable `IDF_GITHUB_ASSETS` to `dl.espressif.com/github_assets`. When the install process is downloading a tool from `github.com`, the URL will be rewritten to use this server instead.

Any mirror server can be used provided the URL matches the `github.com` download URL format: the install process will replace `https://github.com` with `https://${IDF_GITHUB_ASSETS}` for any GitHub asset URL that it downloads.

*注解：* The Espressif download server doesn’t currently mirror everything from GitHub, it only mirrors files attached as Assets to some releases as well as source archives for some releases.

**idf_tools.py script**

`tools/idf_tools.py` script bundled with ESP-IDF performs several functions:

- **install**: Download the tool into `${IDF_TOOLS_PATH}/dist` directory, extract it into `${IDF_TOOLS_PATH}/tools/TOOL_NAME/VERSION`.
  
  Install command accepts the list of tools to install, in `TOOL_NAME` or `TOOL_NAME@VERSION` format.
  
  If all is given, all the tools (required and optional ones) are installed. If no argument or required is given, only the required tools are installed.

- **download**: Similar to `install` but doesn’t extract the tools. An optional `--platform` argument may be used to download the tools for the specific platform.

- **export**: Lists the environment variables which need to be set to use the installed tools. For most of the tools, setting `PATH` environment variable is sufficient, but some tools require extra environment variables.

  The environment variables can be listed in either of shell or key-value formats, set by `--format` parameter:

  - `shell` produces output suitable for evaluation in the shell. For example,

    ```
    export PATH="/home/user/.espressif/tools/tool/v1.0.0/bin:$PATH"
    ```

    on Linux and macOS, and
Chapter 4. API

Set "PATH=C:\Users\user\espressif\tools\v1.0.0\bin;%PATH%"

on Windows.

Exporting environment variables in Powershell format is not supported at the moment. key-value format may be used instead.

The output of this command may be used to update the environment variables, if the shell supports this. For example:

```
 eval $(IDF_PATH/tools/idf_tools.py export)
```

-- key-value produces output in VARIABLE=VALUE format, suitable for parsing by other scripts:

```
PATH=/home/user/.espressif/tools/tool/v1.0.0:$PATH
```

Note that the script consuming this output has to perform expansion of $VAR or %VAR% patterns found in the output.

- list: Lists the known versions of the tools, and indicates which ones are installed.
- check: For each tool, checks whether the tool is available in the system path and in IDF_TOOLS_PATH.

**Install scripts**

Shell-specific user-facing scripts are provided in the root of ESP-IDF repository to facilitate tools installation. These are:

- `install.bat` for Windows Command Prompt
- `install.ps1` for Powershell
- `install.sh` for Bash

Aside from downloading and installing the tools into IDF_TOOLS_PATH, these scripts prepare a Python virtual environment, and install the required packages into that environment.

**Export scripts**

Since the installed tools are not permanently added into the user or system PATH environment variable, an extra step is required to use them in the command line. The following scripts modify the environment variables in the current shell to make the correct versions of the tools available:

- `export.bat` for Windows Command Prompt
- `export.ps1` for Powershell
- `export.sh` for Bash

Note: To modify the shell environment in Bash, `export.sh` must be “sourced”: `./export.sh` (note the leading dot and space).

`export.sh` may be used with shells other than Bash (such as zsh). However in this case the IDF_PATH environment variable must be set before running the script. When used in Bash, the script will guess the IDF_PATH value from its own location.

In addition to calling `idf_tools.py`, these scripts list the directories which have been added to the PATH.

**Other installation methods**

Depending on the environment, more user-friendly wrappers for `idf_tools.py` are provided:

- **IDF Tools installer for Windows** can download and install the tools. Internally the installer uses `idf_tools.py`. 

• **Eclipse plugin for ESP-IDF** includes a menu item to set up the tools. Internally the plugin calls `idf_tools.py`.
• Visual Studio Code extension for ESP-IDF includes an onboarding flow. This flow helps setting up the tools. Although the extension does not rely on `idf_tools.py`, the same installation method is used.

### Custom installation

Although the methods above are recommended for ESP-IDF users, they are not a must for building ESP-IDF applications. ESP-IDF build system expects that all the necessary tools are installed somewhere, and made available in the `PATH`.

### List of IDF Tools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Toolchain</th>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Download</th>
<th>SHA256 Hash</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xtensa-esp32-elf</td>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2021r2-linux-amd64.tar.gz">Download</a></td>
<td>3eb3d68b27fa6ba5af6f88da21cb8face9be0094daaa8960793cfe570ab785f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xtensa-esp32-elf</td>
<td>linux-arm64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2021r2-linux-arm64.tar.gz">Download</a></td>
<td>aa534be24e45e06b7080a6a3bb8c9d9e3cfc881f8f8c2244d7cf6be91336541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xtensa-esp32-elf</td>
<td>linux-armel</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2021r2-linux-armel.tar.gz">Download</a></td>
<td>0f9e49ce06fe78333f5d769661dc2dac5494320f8233bb8c05a302cf85a6e0b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xtensa-esp32-elf</td>
<td>linux-i686</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2021r2-linux-i686.tar.gz">Download</a></td>
<td>06de09b74652de43e5b22db37fc992623044ba75e9aaab68317a986715ba3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xtensa-esp32s2-elf</td>
<td>macos</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2021r2-macos.tar.gz">Download</a></td>
<td>96443f69c8569417c780ee749d91ef33cffe22153fffa3a0bf12107d87381b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### xtensa-esp32s2-elf

Toolchain for Xtensa (ESP32-S2) based on GCC

License: GPL-3.0-with-GCC-exception

More info: [https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG](https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Download</th>
<th>SHA256</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-amd64.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-amd64.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: af6e094792b832ca04f062522249f0a428357e0b056f1f4e6cbfacef3c63a7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-arm64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-arm64.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-arm64.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: d2e5600f194b508bd393b236a09df62ed70af6b6c366194d1b06696a56ca66d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-armel</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-armel.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-armel.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 3ff41990e986dd74660f17ca27df9414cb98f1b911a7f13bb322e784cb1156cf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-i686</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-i686.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-i686.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 77329f9b371d369b6324820ce300beecc33c32719921a61cf1c6b5c625016b346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macos</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-macos.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-macos.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: e6dd32782cf8f633299b97d1c671d6b6513390aca2ddbd7543c2cc62e72de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win32</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-patch1-win32.zip">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-patch1-win32.zip</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 083458a4de0e1efaf3779098b5626db41cfe00892daf1ae1fde07f59ac40b9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-patch1-win64.zip">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-patch1-win64.zip</a></td>
<td>SHA256: e53508488235d5f7587d79d4c0b6d135a318288acf50a5a2fe1b90dbce934b61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xtensa-esp32s3-elf  Toolchain for Xtensa (ESP32-S3) based on GCC
License: GPL-3.0-with-GCC-exception
More info: [https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG](https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Download</th>
<th>SHA256</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-amd64.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-amd64.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: b958eb47f5f16291e3beda78a33a380eb8c96d5452f77952d3f565d76ca2f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-arm64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-arm64.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-arm64.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 5fb122f1109a0b1aa7a42b684f5f6c8544ca84d213047a3bb0a78b9c737bf70e2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-armel</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-armel.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-armel.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: d618be50862974910178sce0038b35959ca4e6953629e2ed66d5697425b095e1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-i686</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-i686.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-linux-i686.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 9701907da616992079d302ac5a0f97361b39ca3e74112690b2c896875f3a62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macos</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-macos.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-macos.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: d417885a52d1f09d49b38b46f8460b7af399a789c0c7c632e222feed666c8aae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win32</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-patch1-win32.zip">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-patch1-win32.zip</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 0985f5292370daaad2b228d806c51a9b60288a247d1965f6dbb16e4e2613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-patch1-win64.zip">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4.0-esp-2021r2-patch1-win64.zip</a></td>
<td>SHA256: cb98c854017f8a3222e1db9e70515364d6f22841b1b07e857360365be91d1f</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xtensa-clang  LLVM for Xtensa (ESP32, ESP32-S2) based on clang
License: Apache-2.0
More info: [https://github.com/espressif/llvm-project](https://github.com/espressif/llvm-project)
### Chapter 4. API

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Download</th>
<th>SHA256</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/llvm-project/releases/download/esp-12.0.1-20210914/xtensa-esp32-elf-llvm12_0_1-esp-12.0.1-20210914-linux-amd64.tar.xz">https://github.com/espressif/llvm-project/releases/download/esp-12.0.1-20210914/xtensa-esp32-elf-llvm12_0_1-esp-12.0.1-20210914-linux-amd64.tar.xz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: d62d9234c702a86ed510777125ee97458204e287877806a73f9de5e41d7b65716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macos</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/llvm-project/releases/download/esp-12.0.1-20210914/xtensa-esp32-elf-llvm12_0_1-esp-12.0.1-20210914-macos.tar.xz">https://github.com/espressif/llvm-project/releases/download/esp-12.0.1-20210914/xtensa-esp32-elf-llvm12_0_1-esp-12.0.1-20210914-macos.tar.xz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 6e7413e5fa515e403859eecc5301bcde3f8b12c5de9aeccaa11e9f17f32b05db</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win64</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/llvm-project/releases/download/esp-12.0.1-20210914/xtensa-esp32-elf-llvm12_0_1-esp-12.0.1-20210914-win64.zip">https://github.com/espressif/llvm-project/releases/download/esp-12.0.1-20210914/xtensa-esp32-elf-llvm12_0_1-esp-12.0.1-20210914-win64.zip</a></td>
<td>SHA256: e056366959c722367e4144076c5383bd417ea199db5688b7bb6c95b9aca014b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**riscv32-esp-elf** Toolchain for 32-bit RISC-V based on GCC

License: GPL-3.0-with-GCC-exception

More info: https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Download</th>
<th>SHA256</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-linux-amd64.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-linux-amd64.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 812d735063da9d063b374b59f55832a96c41fbd27ddaef19000a75de8607ba21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-arm64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-linux-arm64.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-linux-arm64.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 712f11bc3e08304a6f32aa18b346b16bbc143b507d34c7c3211bf0fd7dc4813</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-armel</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-linux-armel.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-linux-armel.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 8a0334242c2d4db6b75ebb2b36d5d12f6e7d375cfadadef01ec3a907f0a16a2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macos</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-macos.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-macos.tar.gz</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 3ff7e5427907cf8e271c1f959b70f0b1e39625c3caaf61a6567e7b38aa0c11578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win32</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-patch1-win32.zip">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-patch1-win32.zip</a></td>
<td>SHA256: f1ff7d2a87c1f151371c44b89b82e6a958d144e211b2be7684ec1f9c93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-patch1-win64.zip">https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2021r2/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-osp-2021r2-patch1-win64.zip</a></td>
<td>SHA256: 791b8c8ed99934a2eef742100f2c71fb1ef7042efaa7e6267ce0d59394175c827a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**esp32ulp-elf** Toolchain for ESP32 ULP coprocessor

License: GPL-2.0-or-later

More info: https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp
### Platform Required Download

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Download</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-linux-amd64-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-linux-amd64-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz</a> SHA256: 3016c4fc551181175bd9979869bc1d1f28fa8efa25a0e29ad7f833fca4bc03d7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macos</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-macos-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-macos-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz</a> SHA256: a35d9e7a0445247c7fc9dcc3fbc35682f0faefc28e6e010c94b59466317190c4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### esp32s2ulp-elf  Toolchain for ESP32-S2 and ESP32-S3 ULP coprocessors

License: GPL-2.0-or-later

More info: [https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp](https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Download</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-linux-amd64-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-linux-amd64-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz</a> SHA256: df7b2ff6c7c718a7cbe3b4b6d6d6d880d835d164d1913be4698fd3781b9a466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-armel</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-linux-armel-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-linux-armel-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz</a> SHA256: 893b213c8f716d455a6efb2b0866bc1bc34d0878ee19c31e82ac44b1b45417e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macos</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-macos-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-macos-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz</a> SHA256: 5a9bb678a5246638c031f323d9b8b12da9a24dc1e82c21e46c41145155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-win32-2.28.51-esp-20191205.zip">https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-win32-2.28.51-esp-20191205.zip</a> SHA256: 587de59fbb469a39f96168ae3eaaf06b2601e6e0543c87eaf1bd97f23e5c4ca</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### cmake  CMake build system

On Linux and macOS, it is recommended to install CMake using the OS package manager. However, for convenience it is possible to install CMake using idf_tools.py along with the other tools.

License: BSD-3-Clause

More info: [https://github.com/Kitware/CMake](https://github.com/Kitware/CMake)
### Platform | Required | Download |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.20.3/cmake-3.20.3-linux-x86_64.tar.gz">https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.20.3/cmake-3.20.3-linux-x86_64.tar.gz</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: 97bf730372f9900b2dfb92066c6b4f921f5c7f3b502148b832e77451a0f0f9e06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-armel</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td><a href="https://dl.espressif.com/dl/cmake/cmake-3.20.3-Linux-armv7l.tar.gz">https://dl.espressif.com/dl/cmake/cmake-3.20.3-Linux-armv7l.tar.gz</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: f8bd050c2745f0dce4cb7c9f7038bf6b2f775950a10f5bd3777aabb0062835f669dc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macos</td>
<td>optional</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.20.3/cmake-3.20.3-macos-universal.tar.gz">https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.20.3/cmake-3.20.3-macos-universal.tar.gz</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: 5f72dba3aaf5f3800f29ab6115ae0b31f10db2aad66204e14e98f6ac7f6b6ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win32</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.20.3/cmake-3.20.3-windows-x86_64.zip">https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.20.3/cmake-3.20.3-windows-x86_64.zip</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: e27c6f7fb3e3e88bc666e183bc3ddaceb143a4c83f3b357b1dbb1a26fd6e4ea2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.20.3/cmake-3.20.3-windows-x86_64.zip">https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.20.3/cmake-3.20.3-windows-x86_64.zip</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: e27c6f7fb3e3e88bc666e183bc3ddaceb143a4c83f3b357b1dbb1a26fd6e4ea2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**openocd-esp32**  OpenOCD for ESP32

License: GPL-2.0-only

More info: [https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32](https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Download</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linux-amd64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-linux-amd64-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-linux-amd64-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: eed0030e49206175fb564756e9210a6389347867b3528b16f5072d574b5bf0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-arm64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-linux-arm64-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-linux-arm64-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: b4927173a4230157df5019b3c51e94c880a0320c3ab7349edc20c6b1c1eb14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-armel</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-linux-armel-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-linux-armel-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: 590fe5427496ca94616796235803145afec74db2aad19bf25e19e8c6a7b94d4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linux-armhf</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-linux-armhf-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-linux-armhf-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: 27d754db3f5b02cd3e78503af434828de473e0fadbe87ac83090dbd651b00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macos</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-macos-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz">https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-macos-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.tar.gz</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: bc194319a39f6bb03ce75dbd39f6b51a36da5f286de8b8ba594cc1d3073099c02f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win32</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-win32-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.zip">https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-win32-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.zip</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: 590e8a6b88b88255d4735a8f466c9ce8b97cc4584f77f3040fb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win64</td>
<td>required</td>
<td><a href="https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-win32-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.zip">https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20211111/openocd-esp32-win32-0.10.0-esp32-20211111.zip</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHA256: 590e8a6b88b88255d4735a8f466c9ce8b97cc4584f77f3040fb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ninja**  Ninja build system

On Linux and macOS, it is recommended to install ninja using the OS package manager. However, for convenience it is possible to install ninja using idf_tools.py along with the other tools.

License: Apache-2.0

More info: [https://github.com/ninja-build/ninja](https://github.com/ninja-build/ninja)
### Platform | Required | Download |
|-----------------|-----------|----------|
| linux-amd64     | optional  | https://dl.espressif.com/dl/ninja-1.10.2-linux64.tar.gz  
SHA256: 32bb769de4d57a7ee0e292fcb7553e7cc8ea961f7aa2b3aee60aa407c4033 |
| macos           | optional  | https://dl.espressif.com/dl/ninja-1.10.2-osx.tar.gz  
SHA256: 847bb1ca4bc16d8d6aead3eacb5055498b86bc6c364c37583eb5738bb440f1 |
| win64           | required  | https://dl.espressif.com/dl/ninja-1.10.2-win64.zip  
SHA256: bbde850d247d2737c5764e927d1071cbb1f1957dcabda4a130fa8547c12c695f |
| win32           | required  | https://dl.espressif.com/dl/idf-exe-v1.0.2.zip  
SHA256: 93d45466cd2c826231f0693a060f68833db7bc63da17e876b2a64298a8869b916f |
| win64           | required  | https://dl.espressif.com/dl/idf-exe-v1.0.2.zip  
SHA256: 93d45466cd2c826231f0693a060f68833db7bc63da17e876b2a64298a8869b916f |
| win64           | required  | https://github.com/ccache/ccache/releases/download/v4.3/ccache-4.3-windows-64.zip  
SHA256: a9cacae73c3906d8193456328bee74f7748cb1559a32eaced9ee78eadd416105 |
| win64           | required  | https://dl.espressif.com/dl/dfu-util-0.9-win64.zip  
SHA256: 5816d7ec68ef3ac07b5ac9fb9837c57d2e7e45b6a80a2f2b6be6b40b1c15c470e |

### 4.30.2 IDF Docker Image

IDF Docker image (espressif/idf) is intended for building applications and libraries with specific versions of ESP-IDF, when doing automated builds.

The image contains:

- Common utilities such as git, wget, curl, zip.
- Python 3.6 or newer.
- A copy of a specific version of ESP-IDF (see below for information about versions). IDF_PATH environment variable is set, and points to ESP-IDF location in the container.
- All the build tools required for the specific version of ESP-IDF: CMake, ninja, cross-compiler toolchains, etc.
- All Python packages required by ESP-IDF are installed in a virtual environment.

The image entrypoint sets up PATH environment variable to point to the correct version of tools, and activates the Python virtual environment. As a result, the environment is ready to use the ESP-IDF build system.
The image can also be used as a base for custom images, if additional utilities are required.

**Tags**

Multiple tags of this image are maintained:

- `latest`: tracks master branch of ESP-IDF
- `vX.Y`: corresponds to ESP-IDF release vX.Y
- `release-vX.Y`: tracks release/vX.Y branch of ESP-IDF

**Usage**

**Setting up Docker** Before using the `espressif/idf` Docker image locally, make sure you have Docker installed. Follow the instructions at [https://docs.docker.com/install/](https://docs.docker.com/install/), if it is not installed yet.

If using the image in CI environment, consult the documentation of your CI service on how to specify the image used for the build process.

**Building a project with CMake** In the project directory, run:

```
docker run --rm -v $PWD:/project -w /project espressif/idf idf.py build
```

The above command explained:

- `docker run`: runs a Docker image. It is a shorter form of the command `docker container run`.
- `--rm`: removes the container when the build is finished.
- `-v $PWD:/project`: mounts the current directory on the host ($PWD) as /project directory in the container.
- `espressif/idf`: uses Docker image `espressif/idf` with tag `latest` (implicitly added by Docker when no tag is specified).
- `idf.py build`: runs this command inside the container.

To build with a specific docker image tag, specify it as `espressif/idf:TAG`, for example:

```
docker run --rm -v $PWD:/project -w /project espressif/idf:release-v4.0 idf.py --build
```

You can check the up-to-date list of available tags at [https://hub.docker.com/r/espressif/idf/tags](https://hub.docker.com/r/espressif/idf/tags).

**Using the image interactively** It is also possible to do builds interactively, to debug build issues or test the automated build scripts. Start the container with `-i -t` flags:

```
docker run --rm -v $PWD:/project -w /project -it espressif/idf
```

Then inside the container, use `idf.py` as usual:

```
idf.py menuconfig
idf.py build
```

**Note:** Commands which communicate with the development board, such as `idf.py flash` and `idf.py monitor` will not work in the container unless the serial port is passed through into the container. However currently
this is not possible with Docker for Windows (https://github.com/docker/for-win/issues/1018) and Docker for Mac (https://github.com/docker/for-mac/issues/900).

### 4.30.3 IDF Windows Installer

#### Command-line parameters

Windows Installer `esp-idf-tools-setup` provides the following command-line parameters:

- `/CONFIG=[PATH]` - Path to ini configuration file to override default configuration of the installer. Default: config.ini.
- `/HELP` - Display command line options provided by Inno Setup installer.
- `/IDFDIR=[PATH]` - Path to directory where it will be installed. Default: {userdesktop}\esp-idf
- `/OFFLINE=[yes|no]` - Execute installation of Python packages by PIP in offline mode. The same result can be achieved by setting the environment variable PIP_NO_INDEX. Default: no.
- `/PYTHONNOUSERSITE=[yes|no]` - Set PYTHONNOUSERSITE variable before launching any Python command to avoid loading Python packages from AppDataRoaming. Default: yes.
- `/PYTHONWHEELSURL=[URL]` - Specify URLs to PyPi repositories for resolving binary Python Wheel dependencies. The same result can be achieved by setting the environment variable PIP_EXTRA_INDEX_URL. Default: https://dl.espressif.com/pypi
- `/VERYSILENT /SUPPRESSMSGBOXES /SP- /NOCANCEL` - Perform silent installation.

#### Unattended installation

The unattended installation of IDF can be achieved by following command-line parameters:

```
esp-idf-tools-setup-x.x.exe /VERYSILENT /SUPPRESSMSGBOXES /SP- /NOCANCEL
```

The installer detaches its process from the command-line. Waiting for installation to finish could be achieved by following PowerShell script:

```
$InstallerProcess = Get-Process esp-idf-tools-setup
Wait-Process -id $InstallerProcess.id
```

#### Custom Python and custom location of Python wheels

The IDF installer is using by default embedded Python with reference to Python Wheel mirror. Following parameters allow to select custom Python and custom location of Python wheels:
4.30.4 IDF Component Manager

The IDF Component manager is a tool that downloads dependencies for any ESP-IDF CMake project. The download happens automatically during a run of CMake. It can source components either from the component registry or from a git repository.

A list of components can be found on https://components.espressif.com/

Activating the Component Manager

If CMake is started using idf.py or ESP-IDF VSCode Extension then the component manager will be activated by default.

If CMake is used directly or with some CMake-based IDE like CLion, it’s necessary to set the IDF_COMPONENT_MANAGER environment variable to 1 to enable the component manager integration with the build system.

Using with a project

Dependencies for each component in the project are defined in a separate manifest file named idf_component.yml placed in the root of the component. The manifest file template can be created for a component by running idf.py create-manifest --component=my_component. When a new manifest is added to one of the components in the project it’s necessary to reconfigure it manually by running idf.py reconfigure. Then build will track changes in idf_component.yml manifests and automatically triggers CMake when necessary.

There is an example application: example/build_system/cmake/component_manager that uses components installed by the component manager.

It’s not necessary to have a manifest for components that don’t need any managed dependencies.

When CMake configures the project (e.g. idf.py reconfigure) component manager does a few things:

- Processes idf_component.yml manifests for every component in the project and recursively solves dependencies
- Creates a dependencies.lock file in the root of the project with a full list of dependencies
- Downloads all dependencies to the managed_components directory

The lock-file dependencies.lock and content of managed_components directory is not supposed to be modified by a user. When the component manager runs it always make sure they are up to date. If these files were accidentally modified it’s possible to re-run the component manager by triggering CMake with idf.py reconfigure

Defining dependencies in the manifest

```
dependencies:
  # Required IDF version
  idf: ">=4.1"
  # Defining a dependency from the registry:
  # https://components.espressif.com/component/example/cmp
  example/cmp: ">=1.0.0"
  # # Other ways to define dependencies
  #
  # # For components maintained by Espressif only name can be used.
```

(下页繼續)
4.30.5 IDF Clang Tidy

The IDF Clang Tidy is a tool that uses clang-tidy to run static analysis on your current app.

### Prerequisites

If you have never run this tool before, take the following steps to get this tool prepared.

1. Run the export scripts (`export.sh` / `export.bat` / ...) to set up the environment variables.
2. Run `pip install --upgrade pyclang` to install this plugin. The extra commands would be activated in `idf.py` automatically.
3. Run `idf_tools.py install xtensa-clang` to install the clang-tidy required binaries
   
   **Note:** This toolchain is still under development. After the final release, you don’t have to install them manually.

4. Get file from the llvm repository and add the folder of this script to the `PATH`. Or you could pass an optional argument `--run-clang-tidy-py` later when you call `idf.py clang-check`.
   
   **Note:** This file would be bundled in future toolchain releases. This is a temporary workaround.

5. Run the export scripts (`export.sh` / `export.bat` / ...) again to refresh the environment variables.

### Extra Commands
**clang-check**  Run `idf.py clang-check` to re-generate the compilation database and run `clang-tidy` under your current project folder. The output would be written to `<project_dir>/warnings.txt`.

Run `idf.py clang-check --help` to see the full documentation.

**clang-html-report**

1. Run `pip install codereport` to install the additional dependency.
2. Run `idf.py clang-html-report` to generate an HTML report in folder `<project_dir>/html_report` according to the `warnings.txt`. Please open the `<project_dir>/html_report/index.html` in your browser to check the report.

**Bug Report**

This tool is hosted in `espressif/clang-tidy-runner`. If you faced any bugs or have any feature request, please report them via github issues.

### 4.31 ULP 协处理器编程

#### 4.31.1 ESP32 ULP coprocessor instruction set

This document provides details about the instructions used by ESP32 ULP coprocessor assembler.

ULP coprocessor has 4 16-bit general purpose registers, labeled R0, R1, R2, R3. It also has an 8-bit counter register (stage_cnt) which can be used to implement loops. Stage count register is accessed using special instructions.

ULP coprocessor can access 8k bytes of RTC_SLOW_MEM memory region. Memory is addressed in 32-bit word units. It can also access peripheral registers in RTC_CNTL, RTC_IO, and SENS peripherals.

All instructions are 32-bit. Jump instructions, ALU instructions, peripheral register and memory access instructions are executed in 1 cycle. Instructions which work with peripherals (TSENS, ADC, I2C) take variable number of cycles, depending on peripheral operation.

The instruction syntax is case insensitive. Upper and lower case letters can be used and intermixed arbitrarily. This is true both for register names and instruction names.

**Note about addressing**

ESP32 ULP coprocessor’s JUMP, ST, LD instructions which take register as an argument (jump address, store/load base address) expect the argument to be expressed in 32-bit words.

Consider the following example program:

```
entry:
    NOP
    NOP
    NOP
loop:
    MOVE R1, loop
    JUMP R1
```

When this program is assembled and linked, address of label `loop` will be equal to 16 (expressed in bytes). However `JUMP` instruction expects the address stored in register to be expressed in 32-bit words. To account for this common use case, assembler will convert the address of label `loop` from bytes to words, when generating `MOVE` instruction, so the code generated code will be equivalent to:
The other case is when the argument of MOVE instruction is not a label but a constant. In this case assembler will use the value as is, without any conversion:

```assembly
.set val, 0x10
MOVE R1, val
```

In this case, value loaded into R1 will be 0x10.

Similar considerations apply to LD and ST instructions. Consider the following code:

```assembly
.global array
array: .long 0
   .long 0
   .long 0
   .long 0

MOVE R1, array
MOVE R2, 0x1234
ST R2, R1, 0 // write value of R2 into the first array element,
               // i.e. array[0]

ST R2, R1, 4 // write value of R2 into the second array element
              // (4 byte offset), i.e. array[1]

ADD R1, R1, 2 // this increments address by 2 words (8 bytes)
ST R2, R1, 0 // write value of R2 into the third array element,
              // i.e. array[2]
```

### Note about instruction execution time

ULP coprocessor is clocked from RTC_FAST_CLK, which is normally derived from the internal 8MHz oscillator. Applications which need to know exact ULP clock frequency can calibrate it against the main XTAL clock:

```c
#include "soc/rtc.h"

// calibrate 8M/256 clock against XTAL, get 8M/256 clock period
uint32_t rtc_8md256_period = rtc_clk_cal(RTC_CAL_8MD256, 100);
uint32_t rtc_fast_freq_hz = 1000000ULL * (1 << RTC_CLK_CAL_FRACT) * 256 / rtc_8md256_period;
```

ULP coprocessor needs certain number of clock cycles to fetch each instruction, plus certain number of cycles to execute it, depending on the instruction. See description of each instruction below for details on the execution time.

Instruction fetch time is:

- 2 clock cycles — for instructions following ALU and branch instructions.
- 4 clock cycles — in other cases.

Note that when accessing RTC memories and RTC registers, ULP coprocessor has lower priority than the main CPUs. This means that ULP coprocessor execution may be suspended while the main CPUs access same memory region as the ULP.
NOP - no operation

**Syntax** NOP  
**Operands** None  
**Cycles** 2 cycle to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction  
**Description** No operation is performed. Only the PC is incremented.

**Example:**

```
1: NOP
```

ADD - Add to register

**Syntax** ADD Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2  
**ADD** Rdst, Rsrc1, imm  

**Operands**  
- **Rdst** - Register R[0..3]  
- **Rsrc1** - Register R[0..3]  
- **Rsrc2** - Register R[0..3]  
- **Imm** - 16-bit signed value

**Cycles** 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction  
**Description** The instruction adds source register to another source register or to a 16-bit signed value and stores result to the destination register.

**Examples:**

```
1: ADD R1, R2, R3 //R1 = R2 + R3
2: Add R1, R2, 0x1234 //R1 = R2 + 0x1234
3: .set value1, 0x03 //constant value1 = 0x03
    Add R1, R2, value1 //R1 = R2 + value1
4: .global label //declaration of variable label
    Add R1, R2, label //R1 = R2 + label
    ...
    label: nop //definition of variable label
```

SUB - Subtract from register

**Syntax** SUB Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2  
**SUB** Rdst, Rsrc1, imm  

**Operands**  
- **Rdst** - Register R[0..3]  
- **Rsrc1** - Register R[0..3]  
- **Rsrc2** - Register R[0..3]  
- **Imm** - 16-bit signed value

**Cycles** 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction  
**Description** The instruction subtracts the source register from another source register or subtracts 16-bit signed value from a source register, and stores result to the destination register.

**Examples:**

```
1: SUB R1, R2, R3 //R1 = R2 - R3
2: sub R1, R2, 0x1234 //R1 = R2 - 0x1234
```
### AND - Logical AND of two operands

**Syntax**  
AND \( Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2 \)  
AND \( Rdst, Rsrc1, imm \)

**Operands**
- \( Rdst \) - Register R[0..3]  
- \( Rsrc1 \) - Register R[0..3]  
- \( Rsrc2 \) - Register R[0..3]  
- \( imm \) - 16-bit signed value

**Cycles**  
2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Description**  
The instruction does logical AND of a source register and another source register or 16-bit signed value and stores result to the destination register.

**Examples:**

1. \`AND R1, R2, R3\`  
   // \( R1 = R2 \land R3 \)

2. \`AND R1, R2, 0x1234\`  
   // \( R1 = R2 \lor 0x1234 \)

3. \`set value1, 0x03\`  
   //constant value1=0x03  
   AND R1, R2, value1  
   // \( R1 = R2 \land value1 \)

4. \`global label\`  
   //declaration of variable label  
   AND R1, R2, label  
   // \( R1 = R2 \land label \)

### OR - Logical OR of two operands

**Syntax**  
OR \( Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2 \)  
OR \( Rdst, Rsrc1, imm \)

**Operands**
- \( Rdst \) - Register R[0..3]  
- \( Rsrc1 \) - Register R[0..3]  
- \( Rsrc2 \) - Register R[0..3]  
- \( imm \) - 16-bit signed value

**Cycles**  
2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Description**  
The instruction does logical OR of a source register and another source register or 16-bit signed value and stores result to the destination register.

**Examples:**

1. \`OR R1, R2, R3\`  
   // \( R1 = R2 \lor R3 \)

2. \`OR R1, R2, 0x1234\`  
   // \( R1 = R2 \lor 0x1234 \)

3. \`set value1, 0x03\`  
   //constant value1=0x03  
   OR R1, R2, value1  
   // \( R1 = R2 \lor value1 \)

4. \`global label\`  
   //declaration of variable label
Chapter 4. API

ORS R1, R2, label  // R1 = R2 \| label
...
label: nop  // definition of variable label

LSH - Logical Shift Left

Syntax  

| LSH Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2  
| LSH Rdst, Rsrc1, imm |

Operands

- **Rdst** - Register R[0..3]
- **Rsrc1** - Register R[0..3]
- **Rsrc2** - Register R[0..3]
- **Imm** - 16-bit signed value

Cycles  2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description  The instruction does logical shift to left of source register to number of bits from another source register or 16-bit signed value and store result to the destination register.

Examples:

1:    LSH R1, R2, R3  // R1 = R2 << R3
2:    LSH R1, R2, 0x03 // R1 = R2 << 0x03
3:    .set value1, 0x03 // constant value1=0x03
     LSH R1, R2, value1  // R1 = R2 << value1
4:    .global label  // declaration of variable label
     LSH R1, R2, label  // R1 = R2 << label
...
label: nop  // definition of variable label

RSH - Logical Shift Right

Syntax  

| RSH Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2  
| RSH Rdst, Rsrc1, imm |

Operands

- **Rdst** - Register R[0..3]
- **Rsrc1** - Register R[0..3]
- **Rsrc2** - Register R[0..3]
- **Imm** - 16-bit signed value

Cycles  2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description  The instruction does logical shift to right of source register to number of bits from another source register or 16-bit signed value and store result to the destination register.

Examples:

1:    RSH R1, R2, R3  // R1 = R2 >> R3
2:    RSH R1, R2, 0x03 // R1 = R2 >> 0x03
3:    .set value1, 0x03 // constant value1=0x03
     RSH R1, R2, value1  // R1 = R2 >> value1
4:    .global label  // declaration of variable label
     RSH R1, R2, label  // R1 = R2 >> label
label: nop  // definition of variable label

MOVE – Move to register

Syntax  

| MOVE Rdst, Rsrc  
| MOVE Rdst, imm |

Espressif Systems  Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Operands

- **Rdst** – Register R[0..3]
- **Rsrc** – Register R[0..3]
- **Imm** – 16-bit signed value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction move to destination register value from source register or 16-bit signed value.

Note that when a label is used as an immediate, the address of the label will be converted from bytes to words. This is because **LD**, **ST**, and **JUMP** instructions expect the address register value to be expressed in words rather than bytes. To avoid using an extra instruction

Examples:

```plaintext
1:   MOVE R1, R2  //R1 = R2
2:   MOVE R1, 0x03 //R1 = 0x03
3:   .set value1, 0x03  //constant value1=0x03
     MOVE R1, value1 //R1 = value1
4:   .global label  //declaration of label
     MOVE R1, label //R1 = address_of(label) / 4
... label: nop  //definition of label
```

ST – Store data to the memory

Syntax **ST Rsrc, Rdst, offset**

Operands

- **Rsrc** – Register R[0..3], holds the 16-bit value to store
- **Rdst** – Register R[0..3], address of the destination, in 32-bit words
- **Offset** – 13-bit signed value, offset in bytes

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction stores the 16-bit value of **Rsrc** to the lower half-word of memory with address **Rdst+offset**. The upper half-word is written with the current program counter (PC) (expressed in words, shifted left by 5 bits) OR’d with **Rdst (0..3):**

```
Mem[Rdst+offset/4](31:0) = {PC[10:0], 3'b0, Rdst, Rsrc[15:0]}
```

The application can use higher 16 bits to determine which instruction in the ULP program has written any particular word into memory.

Examples:

```plaintext
1:   ST R1, R2, 0x12  //MEM[R2+0x12] = R1
2:   .data
     Addr1: .word 123  // Define label Addr1 16 bit
              .set offs, 0x00 // Define constant offs
              .text //Text section definition
     MOVE R1, 1  // R1 = 1
     MOVE R2, Addr1 // R2 = Addr1
     ST R1, R2, offs // MEM[R2 + 0] = R1
              // MEM[Addr1 + 0] will be 32'h600001
```

LD – Load data from the memory

Syntax **LD Rdst, Rsrc, offset**

Operands **Rdst** – Register R[0..3], destination

- **Rsrc** – Register R[0..3], holds address of destination, in 32-bit words
- **Offset** – 13-bit signed value, offset in bytes
Chapter 4. API

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction loads lower 16-bit half-word from memory with address Rsre+ofset into the destination register Rdst:

\[
\text{Rdst}[15:0] = \text{Mem[Rsrc + offset / 4][15:0]}
\]

Examples:

1: \( \text{LD R1, R2, 0x12} \) //R1 = MEM[R2+0x12]

2: 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Addr1: .word 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.set offs, 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE R1, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE R2, Addr1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \text{LD R1, R2, offs} \) // R1 = MEM[R2 + 0] // R1 will be 123

JUMP – Jump to an absolute address

Syntax JUMP Rdst

JUMP ImmAddr

JUMP Rdst, Condition

JUMP ImmAddr, Condition

Operands

• \( \text{Rdst} \) – Register R[0..3] containing address to jump to (expressed in 32-bit words)
• \( \text{ImmAddr} \) – 13 bits address (expressed in bytes), aligned to 4 bytes
• \( \text{Condition} \):
  – EQ – jump if last ALU operation result was zero
  – OV – jump if last ALU has set overflow flag

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 2 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction makes jump to the specified address. Jump can be either unconditional or based on an ALU flag.

Examples:

1: \( \text{JUMP R1} \) // Jump to address in R1 (address in R1 is in 32-bit words)

2: \( \text{JUMP 0x120, EQ} \) // Jump to address 0x120 (in bytes) if ALU result is zero

3: \( \text{JUMP label} \) // Jump to label

... label: \( \text{nop} \) // Definition of label

4: 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>.global</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE R1, label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JUMP R1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \text{label: nop} \) // Definition of label

JUMPR – Jump to a relative offset (condition based on R0)

Syntax JUMPR Step, Threshold, Condition

Operands

Espressif Systems 1970

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Chapter 4. API

- **Step** – relative shift from current position, in bytes
- **Threshold** – threshold value for branch condition
- **Condition:**
  - **EQ** (equal) – jump if value in R0 == threshold
  - **LT** (less than) – jump if value in R0 < threshold
  - **LE** (less or equal) – jump if value in R0 <= threshold
  - **GT** (greater than) – jump if value in R0 > threshold
  - **GE** (greater or equal) – jump if value in R0 >= threshold

**Cycles**  Conditions **LT, GE, LE and GT**: 2 cycles to execute, 2 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Cycles**  Conditions **LE and GT**: 2 cycles to execute, 2 cycles to fetch next instruction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Cycles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>EQ</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LE</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GT</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GE</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LT</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GE</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Description**  The instruction makes a jump to a relative address if condition is true. Condition is the result of comparison of R0 register value and the threshold value.

**Examples:**

1: pos: JUMPR 16, 20, GE // Jump to address (position + 16 bytes) if value in R0 >= 20

2: // Down counting loop using R0 register
   MOVE R0, 16 // load 16 into R0
   label: SUB R0, R0, 1 // R0--
   NOP // do something
   JUMPR label, 1, GE // jump to label if R0 >= 1

**JUMPS** – Jump to a relative address (condition based on stage count)

**Syntax**  **JUMPS**  **Step, Threshold, Condition**

**Operands**
- **Step** – relative shift from current position, in bytes
- **Threshold** – threshold value for branch condition
- **Condition:**
  - **EQ** (equal) – jump if value in stage_cnt == threshold
  - **LT** (less than) – jump if value in stage_cnt < threshold
  - **LE** (less or equal) – jump if value in stage_cnt <= threshold
  - **GT** (greater than) – jump if value in stage_cnt > threshold
  - **GE** (greater or equal) – jump if value in stage_cnt >= threshold

**Cycles**  Conditions **LE, LT, GE**: 2 cycles to execute, 2 cycles to fetch next instruction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Cycles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LE</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LT</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GE</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GT</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cycles**  Conditions **EQ, GT**: 2 cycles to execute, 2 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Examples:**

1: pos: JUMPS 16, 20, EQ // Jump to address (position + 16 bytes) if value in R0 == 20

2: // Down counting loop using R0 register
   MOVE R0, 16 // load 16 into R0
   label: SUB R0, R0, 1 // R0--
   NOP // do something
   JUMPS label, 1, EQ // jump to label if R0 == 1

(未完成)
Chapter 4. API

JUMPS next, threshold, LT
JUMPS target, threshold, LE

next:

// JUMPS target, threshold, GT is implemented as:

JUMPS next, threshold, LE
JUMPS target, threshold, GE

next:

Therefore the execution time will depend on the branches taken: either 2 cycles to execute + 2 cycles to fetch, or 4 cycles to execute + 4 cycles to fetch.

**Description** The instruction makes a jump to a relative address if condition is true. Condition is the result of comparison of count register value and threshold value.

**Examples:**

1: pos: JUMPS 16, 20, EQ // Jump to (position + 16 bytes) if stage_cnt...

2: // Up counting loop using stage count register
STAGE_RST // set stage_cnt to 0
label: STAGE_INC 1 // stage_cnt++
NOP // do something
JUMPS label, 16, LT // jump to label if stage_cnt < 16

**STAGE_RST** – Reset stage count register

**Syntax** STAGE_RST

**Operands** No operands

**Description** The instruction sets the stage count register to 0

**Cycles** 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Examples:**

1: STAGE_RST // Reset stage count register

**STAGE_INC** – Increment stage count register

**Syntax** STAGE_INC Value

**Operands**

- **Value** – 8 bits value

**Cycles** 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Description** The instruction increments stage count register by given value.

**Examples:**

1: STAGE_INC 10 // stage_cnt += 10

2: // Up counting loop example:
STAGE_RST // set stage_cnt to 0
label: STAGE_INC 1 // stage_cnt++
NOP // do something
JUMPS label, 16, LT // jump to label if stage_cnt < 16

**STAGE_DEC** – Decrement stage count register

**Syntax** STAGE_DEC Value
Chapter 4. API

Operands

• Value -8 bits value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction decrements stage count register by given value.

Examples:

1: STAGE_DEC 10 // stage_cnt -- 10;

2: // Down counting loop example
   STAGE_RST    // set stage_cnt to 0
   STAGE_INC 16 // increment stage_cnt to 16
   label: STAGE_DEC 1 // stage_cnt--;
   NOP          // do something
   JUMPS label, 0, GT // jump to label if stage_cnt > 0

HALT -End the program

Syntax HALT

Operands No operands

Cycles 2 cycles to execute

Description The instruction halts the ULP coprocessor and restarts ULP wakeup timer, if it is enabled.

Examples:

1: HALT // Halt the coprocessor

WAKE -Wake up the chip

Syntax WAKE

Operands No operands

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction sends an interrupt from ULP to RTC controller.

• If the SoC is in deep sleep mode, and ULP wakeup is enabled, this causes the SoC to wake up.
• If the SoC is not in deep sleep mode, and ULP interrupt bit (RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_INT_ENA) is set
  in RTC_CNTL_INT_ENA_REG register, RTC interrupt will be triggered.

Note that before using WAKE instruction, ULP program may needs to wait until RTC controller
is ready to wake up the main CPU. This is indicated using RTC_CNTL_RDY_FOR_WAKEUP
bit of RTC_CNTL_LOW_POWER_ST_REG register. If WAKE instruction is executed while
RTC_CNTL_RDY_FOR_WAKEUP is zero, it has no effect (wake up does not occur).

Examples:

1: is_rdy_for_wakeup: // Read RTC_CNTL_RDY_FOR_WAKEUP bit
    READ_RTC_FIELD(RTC_CNTL_LOW_POWER_ST_REG, RTC_CNTL_RDY_FOR_WAKEUP)
    AND r0, r0, 1
    JUMP is_rdy_for_wakeup, eq // Retry until the bit is set
    WAKE // Trigger wake up
    REG_WR 0x006, 24, 24, 0 // Stop ULP timer (clear RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_
    -->SLP_TIMER_EN)
    HALT // Stop the ULP program
    // After these instructions, SoC will wake up,
    // and ULP will not run again until started by the main program.

SLEEP -set ULP wakeup timer period

Syntax SLEEP sleep_reg

Operands
• sleep_reg – 0..4, selects one of SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYCx_REG registers.

**Cycles** 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Description** The instruction selects which of the SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYCx_REG \((x = 0..4)\) register values is to be used by the ULP wakeup timer as wakeup period. By default, the value from SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC0_REG is used.

**Examples:**

```c
1: SLEEP 1 // Use period set in SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC1_REG
2: .set sleep_reg, 4 // Set constant
    SLEEP sleep_reg // Use period set in SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC4_REG
```

---

**WAIT** – wait some number of cycles

**Syntax** WAIT **Cycles**

**Operands**

- **Cycles** – number of cycles for wait

**Cycles** 2 + **Cycles** cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Description** The instruction delays for given number of cycles.

**Examples:**

```c
1: WAIT 10 // Do nothing for 10 cycles
2: .set wait_cnt, 10 // Set a constant
    WAIT wait_cnt // wait for 10 cycles
```

---

**TSENS** – do measurement with temperature sensor

**Syntax**

- **TSENS** \(Rdst, \) \(Wait\_Delay\)

**Operands**

- **Rdst** – Destination Register R[0..3], result will be stored to this register
- **Wait\_Delay** – number of cycles used to perform the measurement

**Cycles** 2 + **Wait\_Delay** + 3 * TSENS_CLK to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Description** The instruction performs measurement using TSENS and stores the result into a general purpose register.

**Examples:**

```c
1: TSENS R1, 1000 // Measure temperature sensor for 1000 cycles,
    // and store result to R1
```

---

**ADC** – do measurement with ADC

**Syntax**

- **ADC** \(Rdst, Sar\_sel, Mux\)
- **ADC** \(Rdst, Sar\_sel, Mux, 0\) – deprecated form

**Operands**

- **Rdst** – Destination Register R[0..3], result will be stored to this register
- **Sar\_sel** – Select ADC: 0 = SARADC1, 1 = SARADC2
- **Mux** - Enable ADC channel. Channel number is \([Mux-1]\). If the user passes Mux value 1, then ADC channel 0 gets used.

**Cycles** 23 + max(1, SAR\_AMP\_WAIT1) + max(1, SAR\_AMP\_WAIT2) + max(1, SAR\_AMP\_WAIT3) + SARx\_SAMPLE\_CYCLE + SARx\_SAMPLE\_BIT cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description  The instruction makes measurements from ADC.

Examples:

```
1:   ADC  R1, 0, 1  // Measure value using ADC1 channel 0 and store...
```

**I2C_RD - read single byte from I2C slave**

**Syntax**

• **I2C_RD** *Sub_addr*, *High*, *Low*, *Slave_sel*

**Operands**

• *Sub_addr* — Address within the I2C slave to read.
• *High*, *Low* — Define range of bits to read. Bits outside of [High, Low] range are masked.
• *Slave_sel* - Index of I2C slave address to use.

**Cycles**  Execution time mostly depends on I2C communication time. 4 cycles to fetch next instruction.

**Description**  I2C_RD instruction reads one byte from I2C slave with index *Slave_sel*. Slave address (in 7-bit format) has to be set in advance into *SENS_I2C_SLAVE_ADDRx* register field, where x == *Slave_sel*. 8 bits of read result is stored into *R0* register.

**Examples:**

```
1:   I2C_RD  0x10, 7, 0, 0  // Read byte from sub-address 0x10 of...
```

**I2C_WR - write single byte to I2C slave**

**Syntax**

• **I2C_WR** *Sub_addr*, *Value*, *High*, *Low*, *Slave_sel*

**Operands**

• *Sub_addr* — Address within the I2C slave to write.
• *Value* — 8-bit value to be written.
• *High*, *Low* — Define range of bits to write. Bits outside of [High, Low] range are masked.
• *Slave_sel* - Index of I2C slave address to use.

**Cycles**  Execution time mostly depends on I2C communication time. 4 cycles to fetch next instruction.

**Description**  I2C_WR instruction writes one byte to I2C slave with index *Slave_sel*. Slave address (in 7-bit format) has to be set in advance into *SENS_I2C_SLAVE_ADDRx* register field, where x == *Slave_sel*.

**Examples:**

```
1:   I2C_WR  0x20, 0x33, 7, 0, 1  // Write byte 0x33 to sub-address...
```

**REG_RD — read from peripheral register**

**Syntax**  **REG_RD** *Addr*, *High*, *Low*

**Operands**

• *Addr* — Register address, in 32-bit words
• *High* — Register end bit number
• *Low* — Register start bit number

**Cycles**  4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

**Description**  The instruction reads up to 16 bits from a peripheral register into a general purpose register: *R0 = REG[Addr][High:Low]*.

This instruction can access registers in RTC_CNTL, RTC_IO, SENS, and RTC_I2C peripherals. Address of the target register, as seen from the ULP, can be calculated from the address of the same register on the DPORT bus as follows:
Chapter 4. API

addr_ulp = (addr_dport - DR_REG_RTC_CNTL_BASE) / 4

Examples:

1: REG_RD 0x120, 7, 4 // load 4 bits: R0 = {12'b0, REG[0x120][7:4]}

REG_WR –write to peripheral register

Syntax REG_WR Addr, High, Low, Data

Operands

• Addr – Register address, in 32-bit words.
• High – Register end bit number
• Low – Register start bit number
• Data – Value to write, 8 bits

Cycles 8 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction writes up to 8 bits from an immediate data value into a peripheral register:

REG[Addr][High:Low] = data.

This instruction can access registers in RTC_CNTL, RTC_IO, SENS, and RTC_I2C peripherals. Address of the register, as seen from the ULP, can be calculated from the address of the same register on the DPORT bus as follows:

addr_ulp = (addr_dport - DR_REG_RTC_CNTL_BASE) / 4

Examples:

1: REG_WR 0x120, 7, 0, 0x10 // set 8 bits: REG[0x120][7:0] = 0x10

Convenience macros for peripheral registers access

ULP source files are passed through C preprocessor before the assembler. This allows certain macros to be used to facilitate access to peripheral registers.

Some existing macros are defined in soc/soc_ulp.h header file. These macros allow access to the fields of peripheral registers by their names. Peripheral registers names which can be used with these macros are the ones defined in soc/rtc_cntl_reg.h, soc/rtc_io_reg.h, soc/sens_reg.h, and soc/rtc_i2c_reg.h.

READ_RTC_REG(rtc_reg, low_bit, bit_width) Read up to 16 bits from rtc_reg[low_bit + bit_width - 1 : low_bit] into R0. For example:

```c
#include "soc/soc_ulp.h"
#include "soc/rtc_cntl_reg.h"

/* Read 16 lower bits of RTC_CNTL_TIME0_REG into R0 */
READ_RTC_REG(RTC_CNTL_TIME0_REG, 0, 16)
```

READ_RTC_FIELD(rtc_reg, field) Read from a field in rtc_reg into R0, up to 16 bits. For example:

```c
#include "soc/soc_ulp.h"
#include "soc/sens_reg.h"

/* Read 8-bit SENS_TSENS_OUT field of SENS_SAR_SLAVE_ADDR3_REG into R0 */
READ_RTC_FIELD(SENS_SAR_SLAVE_ADDR3_REG, SENS_TSENS_OUT)
```

WRITE_RTC_REG(rtc_reg, low_bit, bit_width, value) Write immediate value into rtc_reg[low_bit + bit_width - 1 : low_bit], bit_width <= 8. For example:
#include "soc/soc_ulp.h"
#include "soc/rtc_io_reg.h"

/* Set BIT(2) of RTC_GPIO_OUT_DATA_W1TS field in RTC_GPIO_OUT_W1TS_REG */
WRITE_RTC_REG(RTC_GPIO_OUT_W1TS_REG, RTC_GPIO_OUT_DATA_W1TS_S + 2, 1, 1)

WRITE_RTC_FIELD(rtc_reg, field, value) Write immediate value into a field in rtc_reg, up to 8 bits. For example:

#include "soc/soc_ulp.h"
#include "soc/rtc_cntl_reg.h"

/* Set RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_SLP_TIMER_EN field of RTC_CNTL_STATE0_REG to 0 */
WRITE_RTC_FIELD(RTC_CNTL_STATE0_REG, RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_SLP_TIMER_EN, 0)

### 4.31.2 Programming ULP coprocessor using C macros (legacy)

In addition to the existing binutils port for the ESP32 ULP coprocessor, it is possible to generate programs for the ULP by embedding assembly-like macros into an ESP32 application. Here is an example how this can be done:

```c
const ulp_insn_t program[] = {
    I_MOVI(R3, 16),  // R3 <- 16
    I_LD(R0, R3, 0), // R0 <- RTC_SLOW_MEM[R3 + 0]
    I_LD(R1, R3, 1), // R1 <- RTC_SLOW_MEM[R3 + 1]
    I_ADDR(R2, R0, R1),  // R2 <- R0 + R1
    I_ST(R2, R3, 2),   // R2 -> RTC_SLOW_MEM[R2 + 2]
    I_HALT()
};
size_t load_addr = 0;
size_t size = sizeof(program)/sizeof(ulp_insn_t);
ulp_process_macros_and_load(load_addr, program, size);
ulp_run(load_addr);
```

The program array is an array of ulp_insn_t, i.e. ULP coprocessor instructions. Each I_XXX preprocessor define translates into a single 32-bit instruction. Arguments of these preprocessor defines can be register numbers (R0—R3) and literal constants. See **ULP coprocessor instruction defines** section for descriptions of instructions and arguments they take.

注解：Because some of the instruction macros expand to inline function calls, defining such array in global scope will cause the compiler to produce an “initializer element is not constant” error. To fix this error, move the definition of instructions array into local scope.

Load and store instructions use addresses expressed in 32-bit words. Address 0 corresponds to the first word of RTC_SLOW_MEM (which is address 0x50000000 as seen by the main CPUs).

To generate branch instructions, special M_ preprocessor defines are used. M_LABEL define can be used to define a branch target. Label identifier is a 16-bit integer. M_Bxxx defines can be used to generate branch instructions with target set to a particular label.

Implementation note: these M_ preprocessor defines will be translated into two ulp_insn_t values: one is a token value which contains label number, and the other is the actual instruction. ulp_process_macros_and_load function resolves the label number to the address, modifies the branch instruction to use the correct address, and removes the the extra ulp_insn_t token which contains the label numer.

Here is an example of using labels and branches:

```c
const ulp_insn_t program[] = {
    I_MOVI(R0, 34),  // R0 <- 34
    M_LABEL(1),     // label_1

    // continue
};
```

(下页继续)
Application Example

Demonstration of entering into deep sleep mode and waking up using several wake up sources: system/deep_sleep.

API Reference

Header File

- ulp/include/esp32/ulp.h

Functions

`esp_err_t ulp_process_macros_and_load(uint32_t load_addr, const ulp_insn_t* program, size_t *psize)`

Resolve all macro references in a program and load it into RTC memory.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if auxiliary temporary structure cannot be allocated
- one of ESP_ERR_ULP_xxx if program is not valid or cannot be loaded

Parameters

- load_addr: address where the program should be loaded, expressed in 32-bit words
- program: ulp_insn_t array with the program
- psize: size of the program, expressed in 32-bit words

`esp_err_t ulp_run(uint32_t entry_point)`

Run the program loaded into RTC memory.

Return ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- entry_point: entry point, expressed in 32-bit words

Error codes

`ESP_ERR_ULP_BASE`

Offset for ULP-related error codes

`ESP_ERR_ULP_SIZE_TOO_BIG`

Program doesn’ t fit into RTC memory reserved for the ULP

`ESP_ERR_ULP_INVALID_LOAD_ADDR`

Load address is outside of RTC memory reserved for the ULP
ESP_ERR_ULP_DUPLICATE_LABEL
More than one label with the same number was defined

ESP_ERR_ULP_UNDEFINED_LABEL
Branch instructions references an undefined label

ESP_ERR_ULP_BRANCH_OUT_OF_RANGE
Branch target is out of range of B instruction (try replacing with BX)

ULP coprocessor registers
ULP co-processor has 4 16-bit general purpose registers. All registers have same functionality, with one exception. R0 register is used by some of the compare-and-branch instructions as a source register.

These definitions can be used for all instructions which require a register.

R0
general purpose register 0

R1
general purpose register 1

R2
general purpose register 2

R3
general purpose register 3

ULP coprocessor instruction defines

I_DELAY (cycles_)
Delay (nop) for a given number of cycles

I_HALT ()
Halt the coprocessor.

This instruction halts the coprocessor, but keeps ULP timer active. As such, ULP program will be restarted again by timer. To stop the program and prevent the timer from restarting the program, use I_END(0) instruction.

I_END ()
Stop ULP program timer.

This is a convenience macro which disables the ULP program timer. Once this instruction is used, ULP program will not be restarted anymore until ulp_run function is called.

ULP program will continue running after this instruction. To stop the currently running program, use I_HALT().

I_ST (reg_val, reg_addr, offset_)
Store value from register reg_val into RTC memory.

The value is written to an offset calculated by adding value of reg_addr register and offset_field (this offset is expressed in 32-bit words). 32 bits written to RTC memory are built as follows:
• bits [31:21] hold the PC of current instruction, expressed in 32-bit words
• bits [20:18] = 3’b0
• bits [17:16] reg_addr (0..3)
• bits [15:0] are assigned the contents of reg_val

RTC_SLOW_MEM[addr + offset_] = { insn_PC[10:0], 3’b0, reg_addr, reg_val[15:0] }

I_LD (reg_dest, reg_addr, offset_)
Load value from RTC memory into reg_dest register.

Loads 16 LSBs from RTC memory word given by the sum of value in reg_addr and value of offset_.

Espressif Systems 1979 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
I_WR_REG (reg, low_bit, high_bit, val)
Write literal value to a peripheral register
reg[high_bit : low_bit] = val This instruction can access RTC_CNTL_, RTC_IO_, SENS_, and RTC_I2C peripheral registers.

I_RD_REG (reg, low_bit, high_bit)
Read from peripheral register into R0
R0 = reg[high_bit : low_bit] This instruction can access RTC_CNTL_, RTC_IO_, SENS_, and RTC_I2C peripheral registers.

I_BL (pc_offset, imm_value)
Branch relative if R0 less than immediate value.
pc_offset is expressed in words, and can be from -127 to 127 imm_value is a 16-bit value to compare R0 against

I_BGE (pc_offset, imm_value)
Branch relative if R0 greater or equal than immediate value.
pc_offset is expressed in words, and can be from -127 to 127 imm_value is a 16-bit value to compare R0 against

I_BXR (reg_pc)
Unconditional branch to absolute PC, address in register.
reg_pc is the register which contains address to jump to. Address is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXI (imm_pc)
Unconditional branch to absolute PC, immediate address.
Address imm_pc is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXZR (reg_pc)
Branch to absolute PC if ALU result is zero, address in register.
reg_pc is the register which contains address to jump to. Address is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXZI (imm_pc)
Branch to absolute PC if ALU result is zero, immediate address.
Address imm_pc is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXFR (reg_pc)
Branch to absolute PC if ALU overflow, address in register
reg_pc is the register which contains address to jump to. Address is expressed in 32-bit words.

I BXFI (imm_pc)
Branch to absolute PC if ALU overflow, immediate address
Address imm_pc is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_ADDR (reg_dest, reg_src1, reg_src2)
Addition: dest = src1 + src2

I_SUBR (reg_dest, reg_src1, reg_src2)
Subtraction: dest = src1 - src2

I_ANDR (reg_dest, reg_src1, reg_src2)
Logical AND: dest = src1 & src2

I_ORR (reg_dest, reg_src1, reg_src2)
Logical OR: dest = src1 | src2

I_MOVR (reg_dest, reg_src)
Copy: dest = src

I_LSHR (reg_dest, reg_src, reg_shift)
Logical shift left: dest = src « shift
Chapter 4. API

**I_RSHR** (reg_dest, reg_src, reg_shift)

Logical shift right: dest = src \(\gg\) shift

**I_ADDI** (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)

Add register and an immediate value: dest = src1 + imm

**I_SUBI** (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)

Subtract register and an immediate value: dest = src - imm

**I_ANDI** (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)

Logical AND register and an immediate value: dest = src & imm

**I_ORI** (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)

Logical OR register and an immediate value: dest = src | imm

**I_MOVI** (reg_dest, imm_)

Copy an immediate value into register: dest = imm

**I_LSHI** (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)

Logical shift left register value by an immediate: dest = src \(\ll\) imm

**I_RSHI** (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)

Logical shift right register value by an immediate: dest = val \(\gg\) imm

**M_LABEL** (label_num)

Define a label with number label_num.

This is a macro which doesn’t generate a real instruction. The token generated by this macro is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function. Label defined using this macro can be used in branch macros defined below.

**M_BL** (label_num, imm_value)

Macro: branch to label label_num if R0 is less than immediate value.

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

**M_BGE** (label_num, imm_value)

Macro: branch to label label_num if R0 is greater or equal than immediate value

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

**M_BX** (label_num)

Macro: unconditional branch to label

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

**M_BXZ** (label_num)

Macro: branch to label if ALU result is zero

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

**M_BXF** (label_num)

Macro: branch to label if ALU overflow

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.
Chapter 4. API

Defines

RTC_SLOW_MEM
RTC slow memory, 8k size

ULP (Ultra Low Power 超低功耗) 协处理器是一种简单的有限状态机 (FSM)，可以在主处理器处于深度睡眠模式时，使用 ADC、温度传感器和外部 I2C 传感器执行测量操作。ULP 协处理器可以访问 RTC_SLOW_MEM 内存区域及 RTC_CNTL、RTC_IO、SARADC 外设中的寄存器。ULP 协处理器使用 32 位固定宽度的指令，32 位内存寻址，配备 4 个 16 位通用寄存器。

4.31.3 安装工具链

ULP 协处理器代码是用汇编语言编写的，并使用 binutils-esp32ulp 工具链 进行编译。

如果你已经按照 快速入门指南 中的介绍安装好了 ESP-IDF 及其 CMake 构建系统，那么 ULP 工具链已经被默认安装到了你的开发环境中。

4.31.4 编译 ULP 代码

若需要将 ULP 代码编译为某组件的一部分，则必须执行以下步骤:

1. 用汇编语言编写的 ULP 代码必须导入到一个或多个 .S 扩展文件中，且这些文件必须放在组件目录中一个独立的目标中，例如 ulp/。

2. 注册后从组件 CMakeLists.txt 中调用 ulp_embed_binary 示例如下:

```
...  
idf_component_register()

set(ulp_app_name ulp_${COMPONENT_NAME})
set(ulp_s_sources ulp/ulp_assembly_source_file.S)
set(ulp_exp_dep_srcs "ulp_c_source_file.c")

ulp_embed_binary("${ulp_app_name}" "${ulp_s_sources}" "${ulp_exp_dep_srcs}")
```

ulp_embed_binary 的第一个参数为 ULP 二进制文件名称。指定的此名称也用于生成的其他文件，如: ELF 文件、.map 文件、头文件和链接器导出文件。第二个参数指定 ULP 程序集源文件。第三个参数指定组件源文件列表，其中包括被生成的头文件。此列表用以建立正确的依赖项，并确保在编译这些文件之前先创建生成的头文件。有关 ULP 应用程序生成的头文件等相关概念，请参考下文。

3. 使用常规方法（例如 idf.py app）编译应用代码

在内部，构建系统将按照以下步骤编译 ULP 程序:

1. 通过 C 预处理器运行每个程序集文件 (foo.S) 。此步骤在组件编译目录中生成预处理的程序集文件 (foo.ulp.S)，同时生成依赖文件 (foo.ulp.d)。

2. 通过汇编器运行预处理过的汇编源码。 此步骤会生成目标文件 (foo.ulp.o) 和清单文件 (foo.ulp.lst)。清单文件仅用于测试，不用于编译进程的后续步骤。

3. 通过 C 预处理器运行链接器脚本模板。 模板位于 components/ulp/ld 目录中。

4. 将目标文件链接到 ELF 输出文件 (ulp_app_name.elf)。 此步骤生成的.map 文件 (ulp_app_name.map) 默认用于调试。

5. 将 ELF 文件中的内容转储为二进制文件 (ulp_app_name.bin)，以便嵌入到应用程序中。

6. 使用 esp32ulp-elf-nm 在 ELF 文件中生成全局符号列表 (ulp_app_name.sym)。

7. 创建 LD 导出脚本和头文件 (ulp_app_name.ld 和 ulp_app_name.h)。 包含来自 ulp_app_name.sym 的符号。此步骤可借助 esp32ulp_mapgen.py 工具来完成。

8. 将生成的二进制文件添加到要嵌入应用程序的二进制文件列表中。

4.31.5 访问 ULP 程序变量

在 ULP 程序中定义的全局符号也可以在主程序中使用。

Espressif Systems 1982 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
例如，ULP 程序可以定义 `measurement_count` 变量，此变量可以定义程序从深度睡眠中唤醒芯片之前需要进行的 ADC 测量的次数:

```c
.global measurement_count
measurement_count: .long 0
/* later, use measurement_count */
move r3, measurement_count
ld r3, r3, 0

XYZ
```

主程序需要在启动 ULP 程序之前初始化 `measurement_count` 变量，构建系统会通过生成定义 ULP 编程中全局符号的 `$ULP_APP_NAME`.h 和 `$ULP_APP_NAME`.ld 文件实现上述操作。这些文件包含了在 ULP 程序中定义的所有全局符号，文件以 ulp_ 开头。

头文件包含对此类符号的声明:

```c
extern uint32_t ulp_measurement_count;
```

注意，所有符号（包括变量、数组、函数）均被声明为 `uint32_t`。对于函数和数组，先获取符号地址，然后转换为适当的类型。

生成的链接器脚本文件定义了 RTC_SLOW_MEM 中的符号位置:

```c
PROVIDE ( ulp_measurement_count = 0x50000060 );
```

如果要从主程序访问 ULP 程序变量，应先使用 `include` 语句包含生成的头文件，这样，就可以像访问常规变量一样访问 ulp 程序变量。操作如下:

```c
#include "ulp_app_name.h"

// later
void init_ulp_vars() {
    ulp_measurement_count = 64;
}
```

注意，ULP 程序在 RTC 内存中只能使用 32 位字的低 16 位，因为寄存器是 16 位的，并且不具备从字的高位加载的指令。

同样，ULP 储存指令将寄存器值写入 32 位字的低 16 位中。高 16 位写入的值取决于储存指令的地址，因此在读取 ULP 写的变量时，主应用程序需要屏蔽高 16 位，例如:

```c
printf("Last measurement value: \%d\n", ulp_last_measurement & UINT16_MAX);
```

### 4.31.6 启动 ULP 程序

要运行 ULP 程序，主应用程序需要调用 `ulp_load_binary` 函数将 ULP 程序加载到 RTC 内存中，然后调用 `ulp_run` 函数，启动 ULP 程序。

注意，在 menuconfig 中必须启用 “Enable Ultra Low Power (ULP) Coprocessor” 选项，以便为 ULP 预留内存。”RTC slow memory reserved for coprocessor” 选项设置的值必须足够储存 ULP 代码和数据。如果应用程序组件包含多个 ULP 程序，则 RTC 内存必须足以容纳最大的程序。

每个 ULP 程序均以二进制 BLOB 的形式嵌入到 ESP-IDF 应用程序中。应用程序可以引用此 BLOB，并以下面的方式加载此 BLOB（假设 `ULP_APP_NAME` 已被定义为 `ulp_app_name`）:

```c
extern const uint8_t bin_start[] asm("_binary_ulp_app_name_bin_start");
extern const uint8_t bin_end[] asm("_binary_ulp_app_name_bin_end");

void start_ulp_program() {
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( ulp_load_binary(
        0 /* load address, set to 0 when using default linker scripts */,
    );
```

(下页acz接)
bin_start,
    (bin_end - bin_start) / sizeof(uint32_t)));
}

\textbf{esp_err_t ulp_load_binary} (uint32_t load_addr, const uint8_t *program_binary, size_t program_size)

Load ULP program binary into RTC memory.

ULP program binary should have the following format (all values little-endian):

1. MAGIC, (value 0x00706c75, 4 bytes)
2. TEXT_OFFSET, offset of .text section from binary start (2 bytes)
3. TEXT_SIZE, size of .text section (2 bytes)
4. DATA_SIZE, size of .data section (2 bytes)
5. BSS_SIZE, size of .bss section (2 bytes)
6. (TEXT_OFFSET - 12) bytes of arbitrary data (will not be loaded into RTC memory)
7. .text section
8. .data section

Linker script in components/ulp/ld/esp32.ulp.ld produces ELF files which correspond to this format. This linker script produces binaries with load_addr == 0.

\textbf{Return}

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if load_addr is out of range
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if program_size doesn’t match (TEXT_OFFSET + TEXT_SIZE + DATA_SIZE)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the magic number is incorrect

\textbf{Parameters}

- load_addr: address where the program should be loaded, expressed in 32-bit words
- program_binary: pointer to program binary
- program_size: size of the program binary

一旦上述程序加载到 RTC 内存后，应用程序即可启动此程序，并将入口点的地址传递给 \textbf{ulp_run} 函数:

\begin{verbatim}
ESP_ERROR_CHECK( ulp_run(&ulp_entry - RTC_SLOW_MEM) );
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{esp_err_t ulp_run} (uint32_t entry_point)

Run the program loaded into RTC memory.

\textbf{Return} ESP_OK on success

\textbf{Parameters}

- entry_point: entry point, expressed in 32-bit words

上述生成的头文件 $(ULP_APP_NAME)_h 声明了入口点符号。在 ULP 应用程序的汇编源代码中，此符号必须标记为 .global:

\begin{verbatim}
.entry:
    /* code starts here */
\end{verbatim}

\section*{4.31.7 ESP32 ULP 程序流}

ESP32 ULP 协处理器由定时器启动，而调用 ulp_run 则可启动此定时器。定时器为 RTC_SLOW_CLK 的 Tick 事件计数（默认情况下，Tick 由内部 150 Khz RC 振荡器生成）。使用 SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC0_REG 寄存器 ($x = 0.4$) 设置 Tick 数值。第一次启动 ULP 时，使用 SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC0_REG 设置定时器 Tick 数值，之后，ULP 程序可以使用 sleep 指令来选择另一个 SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC0_REG 寄存器。

此应用程序可以调用 ulp_set_wakeup_period 函数来设置 ULP 定时器周期值 (SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC0_REG, $x = 0.4$)。
**Chapter 4. API**

**esp_err_t ulp_set_wakeup_period(size_t period_index, uint32_t period_us)**

Set one of ULP wakeup period values.

ULP coprocessor starts running the program when the wakeup timer counts up to a given value (called period). There are 5 period values which can be programmed into SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYCx_REG registers, x = 0..4 for ESP32, and one period value which can be programmed into RTC_CNTL_ULP_CPTIMER_1_REG register for ESP32-S2. By default, for ESP32, wakeup timer will use the period set into SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC0_REG, i.e. period number 0. ULP program code can use SLEEP instruction to select which of the SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYCx_REG should be used for subsequent wakeups.

However, please note that SLEEP instruction issued (from ULP program) while the system is in deep sleep mode does not have effect, and sleep cycle count 0 is used.

For ESP32-S2 the SLEEP instruction not exist. Instead a WAKE instruction will be used.

**Note** The ULP FSM requires two clock cycles to wakeup before being able to run the program. Then additional 16 cycles are reserved after wakeup waiting until the 8M clock is stable. The FSM also requires two more clock cycles to go to sleep after the program execution is halted. The minimum wakeup period that may be set up for the ULP is equal to the total number of cycles spent on the above internal tasks. For a default configuration of the ULP running at 150kHz it makes about 133us.

**Return**
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if period_index is out of range

**Parameters**
- period_index: wakeup period setting number (0 - 4)
- period_us: wakeup period, us

一旦定时器计数到 SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYCx_REG 寄存器设定的 Tick 数值，ULP 协处理器就会启动，并调用 ulp_run 的入口点开始运行程序。

程序保持运行，直到遇到 halt 指令或非法指令。一旦程序停止，ULP 协处理器电源关闭，定时器再次启动。

如果想禁用定时器（有效防止 ULP 程序再次运行），可在 ULP 代码或主程序中清除 RTC_CNTL_STATE0_REG 寄存器中的 RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_SLP_TIMER_EN 位。

### 4.32 ESP32 中的单元测试

ESP-IDF 提供以下方法测试软件。

- 一种是在目标芯片上运行并基于 Unity 测试框架的应用程序。这些单元测试用例都保存在 ESP-IDF 仓库中，分别存放于每个组件的 test 子目录中。本文主要介绍这种单元测试方法。
- 另一种是基于 Linux 主机的单元测试，其中所有硬件行为都通过 Mock 组件进行模拟。此测试方法目前仍在开发中，只有一小部分 IDF 组件支持了 Mock，具体请参考基于 Linux 主机的单元测试。

#### 4.32.1 添加常规测试用例

单元测试被添加在相应组件的 test 子目录中，测试用例写在 C 文件中，一个 C 文件可以包含多个测试用例。测试文件的名字要以 “test” 开头。

测试文件需要包含 unity.h 头文件，此外还需要包含待测试 C 模块需要的头文件。

测试用例需要通过 C 文件中特定的函数来添加。如下所示：

```c
TEST_CASE("test name", ",[module name]*)
{
   // 在这里添加测试用例
}
```

- 第一个参数是此测试的描述性名称。
- 第二个参数用方括号中的标识符来表示，标识符用来对相关测试或具有特定属性的测试进行分组。
### 注解
没有必要在每个测试用例中使用 `UNITY_BEGIN()` 和 `UNITY_END()` 来声明主函数的区域，`unity_platform.c` 会自动调用 `UNITY_BEGIN()`，然后运行测试用例，最后调用 `UNITY_END()`。

`test` 子目录应包含源文件 `CMakeLists.txt`，因为它们本身就是一种组件（即测试组件）。ESP-IDF 使用了 `Unity` 测试框架，位于 `unity` 组件里。因此，每个测试组件都通过 `REQUIRES` 参数将 `unity` 组件设为依赖项。通常，组件需要手动指定待编译的源文件，但是，对于测试组件来说，这个要求被放宽为仅建议将参数 `SRC_DIRS` 用于 `idf_component_register`。

总的来说，`test` 子目录下最小的 `CMakeLists.txt` 文件可能如下所示:

```c
idf_component_register(SRC_DIRS "."
    INCLUDE_DIRS "."
    REQUIRES unity)
```

更多关于如何在 `Unity` 下编写测试用例的信息，请查阅 [http://www.throwswitch.org/unity](http://www.throwswitch.org/unity)。

### 4.32.2 添加多设备测试用例
常规测试用例会在一个 DUT（Device Under Test，在试设备）上执行。但是，那些需要互相通信的组件（比如 GPIO、SPI）需要其他设备与之通信，因此不能使用常规测试用例进行测试。多设备测试用例包括写入多个测试函数，并在多个 DUT 进行运行测试。

以下是一个多设备测试用例:

```c
void gpio_master_test()
{
    gpio_config_t slave_config = {
        .pin_bit_mask = 1 << MASTER_GPIO_PIN,
        .mode = GPIO_MODE_INPUT,
    };
    gpio_config(&slave_config);
    unity_wait_for_signal("output high level");
    TEST_ASSERT(gpio_get_level(MASTER_GPIO_PIN) == 1);
}

void gpio_slave_test()
{
    gpio_config_t master_config = {
        .pin_bit_mask = 1 << SLAVE_GPIO_PIN,
        .mode = GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT,
    };
    gpio_config(&master_config);
    gpio_set_level(SLAVE_GPIO_PIN, 1);
    unity_send_signal("output high level");
}

TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_DEVICES("gpio multiple devices test example", 
    "[driver]", gpio_--master_test, gpio_slave_test);
```

宏 `TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_DEVICES` 用来声明多设备测试用例。

- 第一个参数指定测试用例的名字。
- 第二个参数是测试用例的描述。
- 从第三个参数开始，可以指定最多 5 个测试函数，每个函数都是单独运行在一个 DUT 上的测试入口点。

在不同的 DUT 上运行的测试用例，通常会要求它们之间进行同步。我们提供 `unity_wait_for_signal` 和 `unity_send_signal` 这两个函数来使用 UART 去支持同步操作。如果场景中，`slave` 应该在 `master` 设置好 GPIO 电平后再去读取 GPIO 电平，DUT 的 UART 终端会打印提示信息，并要求用户进行交互。
DUT1（master）终端:
Waiting for signal: [output high level]!
Please press "Enter" key once any board send this signal.

DUT2（slave）终端:
Send signal: [output high level]!

一旦DUT2发送了该信号，您需要在DUT1的终端按回车键，然后DUT1会从unity_wait_for_signal函数中解除阻塞，并开始更改GPIO的电平。

4.32.3 添加多阶段测试用例

常规的测试用例无需重启就会结束（或者仅需要检查是否发生了重启），可有些时候我们想在某些特定类型的重启事件后运行指定的测试代码，例如，我们想在深度睡眠唤醒后检查复位的原因是否正确。首先我们需要触发深度睡眠复位事件，然后检查复位的原因。为了实现这一点，我们可以定义多阶段测试用例来将这些测试函数组合在一起。

```c
static void trigger_deepsleep(void)
{
    esp_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup(2000);
    esp_deep_sleep_start();
}
void check_deepsleep_reset_reason()
{
    soc_reset_reason_t reason = esp_rom_get_reset_reason(0);
    TEST_ASSERT(reason == RESET_REASON_CORE_DEEP_SLEEP);
}
TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_STAGES("reset reason check for deepsleep", "[esp32]", trigger_deepsleep, check_deepsleep_reset_reason);
```

多阶段测试用例向用户呈现了一组测试函数，它需要用户进行交互（选择用例并选择不同的阶段）来运行。

4.32.4 应用于不同芯片的单元测试

某些测试（尤其与硬件相关的）无法在所有的芯片上执行。请参照本节让你的单元测试只在其中一部分芯片上执行。

1. 使用宏！(TEMPORARY_)DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS() 包装你的测试代码，并将其放在原始的测试文件中，或将代码分成按功能分组的文件。但请确保所有这些文件都会被编译器处理。例:

```c
#if !TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_Targets(ESP32, ESP8266)
TEST_CASE("a test that is not ready for esp32 and esp8266 yet", "[]")
{
}
#endif // !TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS(ESP32, ESP8266)
```

一旦你需要其中一个测试在某个芯片上被编译，只需要修改禁止的芯片列表。我们更鼓励使用一些通用的概念（能在soc_caps.h中被清楚描述）来禁止某些单元测试。如果你已经这样做，但有一些测试还没有在新的芯片版本中被调试通过，请同时使用上述两种方法，当调试完成后再移除!(TEMPORARY_)DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS()。例:

```c
#if SOC_SDIO_SLAVE_SUPPORTED
#if !TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS(ESP64)
TEST_CASE("a sdio slave tests that is not ready for esp64 yet", "[sdio_slave]")
```

(下页继续)
Chapter 4. API 指南

{  
    //available for esp32 now, and will be available for esp64 in the future
}
#endif //TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS(ESP64)
#endif //SOC_SDIO_SLAVE_SUPPORTED

2. 对于某些你确定不会支持的测试（例如，芯片根本没有该外设），使用 DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS 来禁止该测试；对于其他只是临时性需要关闭的（例如，没有 runner 资源等），使用 TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS 来暂时关闭该测试。

一些禁用目标芯片测试用例的旧方法，由于它们具有明显的缺陷，已经被废弃，请勿继续使用：

- 请勿将测试代码放在 test/芯片版本目录下面，然后用 CMakeLists.txt 来选择其中一个进行编译。这是因为测试代码比实现代码更容易被复用。如果你将一些代码放在 test/esp32 目录下来避免 esp32s2 芯片执行它，一旦你需要在新的芯片（比如 esp32s3）中启用该测试，你会发现这种结构非常难以保持代码的整洁。
- 请勿继续使用 CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_xxx 宏来禁止某些测试在一些芯片上编译。这种方法会让被禁止的测试项目难以追踪和重新打开，并且，相比于自名单的 #if CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_xxx，黑名单式的 #if !disabled 能避免新芯片引入时这些测试被自动关闭。但对于用于测试的一些实现，#if CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_xxx 仍可用于给不同芯片版本选择实现代码。测试项目和测试实现区分如下：
  - 测试项目：那些会在一些芯片上执行，而另外一些不执行的项目。例如：
    有三个测试项目 SD 1-bit, SD 4-bit 和 SDSPI。对于不支持 SD Host 外设的 ESP32-S2 芯片，只有 SDSPI 一个项目需要被执行。
  - 测试实现：一些最终发生代码的，但采取不同的实现方式。例如：
    ESP8266 芯片虽然有 SDIO_PKT_LEN 寄存器。如果在测试过程中需要获取从设备的数据长度，你可以用不同的方式取的 #if CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_xxx 宏来保护不同的实现代码。但请注意避免使用 #else 宏。这样当新芯片被引人时，测试就会在编译阶段失败，提示编译者去显示选择一个正确的测试实现。

4.32.5 编译单元测试程序

按照 esp-idf 顶层目录的 README 文件中的说明进行操作，确保 IDF_PATH 环境变量已经设置指向了 esp-idf 的顶层目录。

切换到 tools/unit-test-app 目录下进行配置和编译：

- idf.py menuconfig 配置单元测试程序。
- idf.py -T all build - 编译单元测试程序，测试每个组件 test 子目录下的用例。
- idf.py -T "xxx yyy" build - 编译单元测试程序，测试指定的组件。（如idf.py -T heap build - 仅对 heap 组件目录下的单元测试程序进行编译）
- idf.py -T all -E "xxx yyy" build - 编译单元测试程序，测试除指定组件之外的所有组件。（例如 idf.py -T all -E "ulp mbedtls" build - 编译所有的单元测试，不包括 ulp 和 mbedtls 组件。）

注解：由于 Windows 命令提示符固有限制，需使用以下语法来编译多个组件的单元测试程序：idf.py -T xxx -T yyy build 或者在 PowerShell 中使用 idf.py -T \"xxx yyy\" build，在 Windows 命令提示符中使用 idf.py -T -\"\"ssd1306 hts221\"\" build。

当编译完成时，它会打印出烧写芯片的指令。您只需要运行 idf.py flash 即可烧写所有编译输出的文件。

您还可以运行 idf.py -T all flash 或者 idf.py -T xxx flash 来编译并烧写，所有需要的文件都会在烧写之前自动重新编译。

使用 menuconfig 可以设置烧写测试程序所使用的串口。
4.32.6 运行单元测试

烧写完成后重启 ESP32，它将启动单元测试程序。

当单元测试应用程序空闲时，输入回车键，它会打印出测试菜单，其中包含所有的测试项目：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Here’s the test menu, pick your combo:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) “esp_ota_begin() verifies arguments” [ota]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) “esp_ota_get_next_update_partition logic” [ota]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) “Verify bootloader image in flash” [bootloader_support]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) “Verify unit test app image” [bootloader_support]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) “can use new and delete” [cxx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) “can call virtual functions” [cxx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) “can use static initializers for non-POD types” [cxx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) “static initialization guards work as expected” [cxx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9) “global initializers run in the correct order” [cxx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) “before scheduler has started, static initializers work correctly” [cxx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11) “adc2 work with wifi” [adc]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12) “can use std::vector” [cxx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13) “static initialization guards work as expected” [cxx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14) “SPI Master clockdiv calculation routines” [spi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15) “SPI Master test” [spi] [ignore]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16) “SPI Master test, interaction of multiple devs” [spi] [ignore]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) “SPI Master no response when switch from host1 (SPI2) to host2 (SPI3)” [spi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18) “SPI Master DMA test, TX and RX in different regions” [spi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(19) “SPI Master DMA test: length, start, not aligned” [spi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(20) “reset reason check for deepsleep” [esp32] [test_env=UT_T2_1] [multi_device]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) “trigger_deepsleep”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22) “check_deepsleep_reset_reason”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

常规测试用例会打印用例名称和描述，主从测试用例还会打印子菜单（已注册的测试函数的名字）。可以输入以下任意一项来运行测试用例：

- 引号中写入测试用例的名字，运行单个测试用例。
- 测试用例的序号，运行单个测试用例。
- 方括号中的模块名字，运行指定模块所有的测试用例。
- 星号，运行所有测试用例。

[multi_device] 和 [multi_stage] `\` 标签告诉测试运行者该用例是多设备测试还是多阶段测试。这些标签由 `\` TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_STAGES 和 TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_DEVICES 宏自动生成。

一旦选择了多设备测试用例，它会打印一个子菜单:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Running gpio master/slave test example...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gpio master/slave test example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) &quot;gpio_master_test&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) &quot;gpio_slave_test&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

您需要输入数字以选择在 DUT 上运行的测试。

与多设备测试用例相似，多阶段测试用例也会打印子菜单:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Running reset reason check for deepsleep...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reset reason check for deepsleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) &quot;trigger_deepsleep&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) &quot;check_deepsleep_reset_reason&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

第一次执行此例用时，输入 1 运行第一阶段（触发深度睡眠）。在重启 DUT 并再次选择运行此用例后，输入 2 来运行第二阶段。只有在最后一个阶段通过并且之前所有的阶段都成功触发了复位的情况下，该测试才算通过。
4.32.7 带缓存补偿定时器的定时代码

存储在外部存储器（如 SPI Flash 和 SPI RAM）中的指令和数据是通过 CPU 的统一指令和数据缓存来访问的。当代码或数据在缓存中时，访问速度会非常快（即缓存命中）。

然而，如果指令或数据不在缓存中，则需要从外部内存中获取（即缓存缺失）。访问外部存储器的速度明显较慢，因为 GPU 在等待从外部存储器获取指令或数据时会陷入停滞。这导致整体代码执行速度会依据缓存命中或缓存缺失的次数而变化。

在不同的编译中，代码和数据的位置可能会有所不同，一些可能会更有利于缓存访问（即，最大限度地减少缓存缺失）。理论上说这会影响执行速度，但这些因素通常却是无关紧要，因为它们的影响会在设备的运行过程中“平均化”。

然而，高速缓存对执行速度的影响可能与基准测试场景（尤其是微基准测试）有关。每次运行和构建时的执行时间可能会有所差异，清除部分差异的方法之一是将代码和数据分别放在指令或数据 RAM（IRAM/DRAM）中。CPU 可以直接访问 IRAM 和 DRAM，从而消除了高速缓存的影响因素。然而，由于 IRAM 和 DRAM 容量有限，该方法并不总是可行。

缓存补偿定时器是将要基准测试的代码/数据放置在 IRAM/DRAM 中的替代方法。该计时器使用处理器的内部事件计数器来确定在发生高速缓存未命中时等待代码/数据所花费的时间，然后从记录的实时时间中减去该时间。

```c
// Start the timer
ccomp_timer_start();

// Function to time
func_code_to_time();

// Stop the timer, and return the elapsed time in microseconds relative to
// ccomp_timer_start
int64_t t = ccomp_timer_stop();
```

缓存补偿定时器的限制之一是基准功能必须固定在一个内核上。这是由于每个内核都有自己的事件计数器，这些事件计数器彼此独立。例如，如果在一个内核上调用 ccomp_timer_start，使调度器进入睡眠状态。唤醒并在在另一个内核上重新调度，那么对应的 ccomp_timer_stop 将无效。

4.32.8 Mocks

嵌入式系统中单元测试的最大问题之一是硬件依赖性极强。所以 ESP-IDF 有一个集成了 CMock mocking 框架的组件。理想情况下，除了需要被测试的组件（待测组件）之外的所有组件都要被模拟。这样，测试环境就可以完全控制与被测组件之间的所有交互。但是，在实际调试中如果遇到过于具体而导致的困难，用户可以在测试代码中包含“(actual)”（非模拟）代码。

除了常规的 IDF 要求，_background.cpp 中的 Mock 的必要条件。具体请参考 cmock/CMock/docs/CMock_Summary.md 了解 CMock 工作原理以及如何创建和使用 Mock。

在 IDF 中，与编写普通组件或不需要 Mock 的单元测试相比，需要 Mock 的组件以及单元测试内部需要进行一些修改。

修改需要模拟的组件

要被模拟的组件需要一个单独的 mock 目录，用来包含实现模拟的文件。最重要的是，该目录下要包含用于配置 CMock 的 mock_config.yaml 文件。关于此配置文件中选项的含义以及如何编写自己的配置文件，请参考 CMock 文档。mock 目录中可能还需要包括其它与 Mock 有关的文件。

此外，组件的 CMakeLists.txt 文件中需要一个“开关”来决定是否编译 Mock。通常可以通过检查特定组件的属性 USE_MOCK 来实现。例如，spi_flash 组件在其 CMakeLists.txt 中执行以下代码，以检查是否应该编译 Mock。

```cmake
idf_component_get_property(spi_flash_mock ${COMPONENT_NAME} USE_MOCK)
```
在组件的 CMakeLists.txt 中创建组件的 Mock 的 CMake 编译命令可能如下所示:

```cmake
add_custom_command(
  OUTPUT ${MOCK_OUTPUT}
  COMMAND ruby ${CMOCK_DIR}/lib/cmock.rb -o${CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR}/mock/mock_
  -config.yaml ${MOCK_HEADERS}
  COMMAND ${CMAKE_COMMAND} -E env "UNITY_DIR=${IDF_PATH}/components/unity/unity"
  -ruby ${CMOCK_DIR}/lib/cmock.rb -o${CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR}/mock/mock_config.
  -yaml ${MOCK_HEADERS})
)
```

${MOCK_OUTPUT} 包含所有 CMock 生成的输出文件, ${MOCK_HEADERS} 包含所有 Mock 的头文件, ${CMOCK_DIR} 需要设置为 IDF 内的 CMock 目录。${CMAKE_COMMAND} 会由 IDF 构建系统自动设置。

使用 CMock 要特别注意的一个方面是：CMock 通常使用 Unity 作为一个子模块，但由于一些 Espressif 内部 CI 的限制，我们仍然将 Unity 作为一个库模块，要使用 IDF 提供的 Unity 组件，构建系统需要传递一个环境变量UNITY_DIR 给 CMock。该变量仅包含 IDF 中 Unity 目录的路径，如 export "UNITY_DIR=${IDF_PATH}/components/unity/unity"。关于 CMock 中 Unity 目录是如何确定的，请参考 cmock/CMock/lib/cmock_generator.rb。

更多细节可参考 spi_flash 目录下启用 Mock 的 CMakeLists.txt 示例文件。

### 修改单元测试文件

单元测试要为需要模拟的组件设置 USE_MOCK 组件属性。这会让依赖组件编译 Mock，而不是实际的组件。例如，在 NVS 主机测试的 CMakeLists.txt 中，以下代码用于启用 spi_flash Mock。

```cmake
idf_component_set_property(spi_flash USE_MOCK 1)
```

关于如何在单元测试中使用及控制 CMock，请参考 [NVS 主机单元测试](#)。

## 4.33 Unit Testing on Linux

**注解:** Host testing with IDF is experimental for now. We try our best to keep interfaces stable but can’t guarantee it for now. Feedback via github or the forum on esp32.com is highly welcome, though and may influence the future design of the host-based tests.

This article provides an overview of unit tests with IDF on Linux. For using unit tests on the target, please refer to *target based unit testing*.

### 4.33.1 Embedded Software Tests

Embedded software tests are challenging due to the following factors:

- Difficulties running tests efficiently.
- Lack of many operating system abstractions when interfacing with hardware, making it difficult to isolate code under test.

To solve these two problems, Linux host-based tests with CMock are introduced. Linux host-based tests are more efficient than unit tests on the target since they:

- Compile the necessary code only
- Don’t need time to upload to a target
- Run much faster on a host-computer, compared to an ESP

Using the CMock framework also solves the problem of hardware dependencies. Through mocking, hardware details are emulated and specified at run time, but only if necessary.
Of course, using code on the host and using mocks does not fully represent the target device. Thus, two kinds of tests are recommended:

1. Unit tests which test program logic on a Linux machine, isolated through mocks.
2. System/Integration tests which test the interaction of components and the whole system. They run on the target, where irrelevant components and code may as well be emulated via mocks.

This documentation is about the first kind of tests. Refer to target based unit testing for more information on target tests (the second kind of tests).

### 4.33.2 IDF Unit Tests on Linux Host

The current focus of the Linux host tests is on creating isolated unit tests of components, while mocking the component’s dependencies with CMock.

A complete implementation of IDF to run on Linux does not exist currently.

There are currently two examples for running IDF-built code on Linux host:

- An example hello-world application
- A unit test for NVS.

Inside the component which should be tested, there is a separate directory host_test, besides the “traditional” test directory or the test_apps directory. It has one or more subdirectories:

```
- host_test/
  - fixtures/
    contains test fixtures (structs/functions to do test case set-up-
    and tear-down).
    If there are no fixtures, this can be omitted.
  - `<test_name>/`
    IDF applications which run the tests
  - `<test_name2>/`
    Further tests are possible.
```

The IDF applications inside host_test set the mocking configuration as described in the IDF unit test documentation.

The NVS page unit test provides some illustration of how to control the mocks.

**Requirements**

- Installed IDF including all IDF requirements
- CMock requirements (Ruby)
- libbsd

The host tests have been tested on Ubuntu 20.04 with GCC version 9 and 10.

### 4.34 Wi-Fi 驱动程序

#### 4.34.1 ESP32 Wi-Fi 功能列表

- 支持仅 station 模式、仅 AP 模式、station/AP 共存模式
- 支持使用 IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g, IEEE 802.11n 和 API 配置协议模式
- 支持 WPA/WPA2/WPA3/WPA2-企业版和 WPS
- 支持 AMPDU、HT40、QoS 以及其它主要功能
- 支持 Modem-sleep
- 支持乐鑫专属协议，可实现 1 km 数据通信量
- 中间数据传输最高可达 20 MBit/s TCP 吞吐量和 30 MBit/s UDP 吞吐量
支持 Sniffer
支持快速扫描和全信道扫描
支持多个天线
支持获取信道状态信息

4.34.2 如何编写 Wi-Fi 应用程序

准备工作

一般来说，要编写自己的 Wi-Fi 应用程序，最有效的方式是先选择一个相似的应用程序示例，然后将其中可用的部分移植到自己的项目中。如果您希望编写一个强健的 Wi-Fi 应用程序，强烈建议您在开始之前先阅读本章。非强制要求，请依个人情况而定。

本文将补充说明 Wi-Fi API 和 Wi-Fi 示例的相关信息，重点描述使用 Wi-Fi API 的原则、当前 Wi-Fi API 实现的限制以及使用 Wi-Fi 时的常见错误。同时，本文还介绍了 Wi-Fi 驱动程序的一些设计细节。建议您选择一个示例 example 进行参考。

设置 Wi-Fi 编辑时选项

请参阅 Wi-Fi menuconfig。

Wi-Fi 初始化

请参阅 ESP32 Wi-Fi station一般情况、ESP32 Wi-Fi AP 一般情况。

启动/连接 Wi-Fi

请参阅 ESP32 Wi-Fi station一般情况、ESP32 Wi-Fi AP 一般情况。

事件处理

通常，在理想环境下编写代码难度并不大，如 WIFI_EVENT_STA_START、WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED 中所述，难度在于如何在现实的困难环境下编写代码，如 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 中所述。能否在后者情况下完美地解决各类事件冲突，是编写一个强健的 Wi-Fi 应用程序的根本。请参阅 ESP32 Wi-Fi 事件描述、ESP32 Wi-Fi station一般情况、ESP32 Wi-Fi AP 一般情况。另可参阅 ESP-IDF 中的 事件处理概述。

编写错误恢复程序

除了在能在比较差的环境下工作，错误恢复能力也对一个强健的 Wi-Fi 应用程序至关重要。请参阅 ESP32 Wi-Fi API 错误代码。

4.34.3 ESP32 Wi-Fi API 错误代码

所有 ESP32 Wi-Fi API 都有定义好的返回值，即错误代码。这些错误代码可分类为：

• 无错误，例如：返回值 ESP_OK 代表 API 成功返回
• 可恢复错误，例如：ESP_ERR_NO_MEM
• 不可恢复的非关键性错误
• 不可恢复的关键性错误
4.34.4 初始化 ESP32 Wi-Fi API 参数

初始化 API 的结构参数时，应遵循以下两种方式之一：

- 设置该参数的所有字段
- 先使用 get API 获取当前配置，然后只设置特定于应用程序的字段

初始化或获取某个结构至少是一项至关重要的任务，因为在大多数情况下，返回值 0 意味着程序使用了默认值。未来，我们将根据该结构中增加更多参数，并将这些字段初始化为 0，确保即使 IDF 版本升级后您的应用程序依然能够正常运行。

4.34.5 ESP32 Wi-Fi 编程模型

ESP32 Wi-Fi 编程模型如下图所示：

![Wi-Fi 编程模型](图51)

Wi-Fi 驱动程序可以看作是一个无法感知物理层的结构（如 TCP/IP 堆栈、应用程序任务、事件任务等）的黑匣子。通常，应用程序任务（代码）负责调用 Wi-Fi 驱动程序 APIs 来初始化 Wi-Fi，并在必要时处理 Wi-Fi 事件。然后，Wi-Fi 驱动程序接收并处理 API 数据，并在应用程序中插入事件。

Wi-Fi 事件处理是在 esp_event_handler_register 的基础上进行的。Wi-Fi 驱动程序将事件发送到默认事件循环，应用程序便可以使用 esp_event_handler_register() 中的回调函数处理这些事件。除此之外，esp_netif 模块也负责处理 Wi-Fi 事件，并产生一系列默认行为。例如，当 Wi-Fi station 连接到一个 AP 时，esp_netif 将自动开启 DHCP 客户端服务（系统默认）。
4.34.6 ESP32 Wi-Fi 事件描述

WIFI_EVENT_WIFI_READY

Wi-Fi 驱动程序永远不会生成此事件，因此，应用程序的事件回调函数可忽略此事件。在未来的版本中，此事件可能会被移除。

WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE

扫描完成事件，由 esp_wifi_scan_start() 函数触发，将在以下情况下产生：

- 扫描已结束，例如：Wi-Fi 已成功找到目标 AP 或已扫描所有信道。
- 当前扫描因函数 esp_wifi_scan_stop() 而终止。
- 在当前扫描完成之前调用了函数 esp_wifi_scan_start()。此时，新的扫描将覆盖当前扫描过程，并生成一个扫描完成事件。

以下情况下将不会产生扫描完成事件：

- 当前扫描被阻塞。
- 当前扫描是由函数 esp_wifi_connect() 触发的。

接收到此事件后，事件任务暂不做任何响应。首先，应用程序的事件回调函数需调用 esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_num() 和 esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records() 获取已扫描的 AP 列表，然后触发 Wi-Fi 驱动程序释放扫描过程中占用的内存空间（切记该步骤）。更多详细信息，请参阅 ESP32 Wi-Fi 扫描。

WIFI_EVENT_STA_START

如果调用函数 esp_wifi_start() 后接收到返回值 ESP_OK，且当前 Wi-Fi 处于 station 或 station/AP 共存模式，则将产生此事件。接收到此事件后，事件任务将初始化 LwIP 网络接口 (netif)。通常，应用程序的事件回调函数需调用 esp_wifi_connect() 来连接已配置的 AP。

WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP

如果调用函数 esp_wifi_stop() 后接收到返回值 ESP_OK，且当前 Wi-Fi 处于 station 或 station/AP 共存模式，则将产生此事件。接收到此事件后，事件任务将进行释放 station IP 地址，终止 DHCP 客户端服务，并移除 TCP/UDP 相关连接并清除 LwIP station netif 等动作。此时，应用程序的事件回调函数通常不需要做任何响应。

WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED

如果调用函数 esp_wifi_connect() 后接收到返回值 ESP_OK，且 station 已成功连接目标 AP，则将产生此连接事件。接收到此事件后，事件任务将启动 DHCP 客户端服务并开始获取 IP 地址。此时，Wi-Fi 驱动程序已准备就绪，可发送和接收数据。如果您的应用程序不依赖于 LwIP（即 IP 地址），则此刻便可以开始应用程序开发工作。但是，如果您的应用程序需基于 LwIP 进行，则还需等待 got ip 事件发生后才可开始。

WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED

此事件将在以下情况下产生：

- 调用了函数 esp_wifi_disconnect() 或 esp_wifi_stop(), 且 Wi-Fi station 已成功连接至 AP。
- 调用了函数 esp_wifi_connect(), 但 Wi-Fi 驱动程序因为某些原因未能成功连接至 AP。例如：未扫描到目标 AP、验证超时等。或存在多个 SSID 相同的 AP，station 无法连接所有已找到的 AP，也将产生该事件。
- Wi-Fi 连接因为某些原因而中断，例如：station 连续多次丢失 N beacon、AP 踢掉 station、AP 认证模式改变等。
Chapter 4. API 指南

接收到此事件后，事件任务的默认动作作为：

- 关闭 station 的 LwIP netif。
- 启动 LwIP 任务清除导致所有套接字状态错误的 UDP/TCP 连接。注意基于套接字编写的应用程序，其回调函数可以在接收到此事件后（如有必要）关闭并重新创建所有套接字。

应用程序处理此事件最常用的方法为：调用函数 esp_wifi_connect() 重新连接 Wi-Fi。但是，如果此事件是由函数 esp_wifi_disconnect() 引发的，则应用程序不应调用 esp_wifi_connect() 来重新连接。应用程序须明确区分此事件的引发原因，因为某些情况下应使用其它更好的方式进行重新连接。请参阅 Wi-Fi 重新连接和连接 Wi-Fi 时扫描。

需要注意的另一点是：接收到此事件后，LwIP 的默认动作是终止所有 TCP 套接字连接。大多数情况下，该动作不会造成影响。但对某些特殊应用程序可能除外。例如：

- 应用程序创建一个 TCP 连接，以维护每 60 秒发送一次的应用程序级、保持活动状态的数据。
- 由于某些原因，Wi-Fi 连接被切断并引发了 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件。根据当前实现，此时所有 TCP 连接都将被移除，且保持活动的套接字将处于错误的状态中。但是，由于应用程序设计者认为网络层不应考虑这个 Wi-Fi 层的错误，因此应用程序不会关闭套接字。
- 5 秒后，因在应用程序的事件回调函数中调用了 esp_wifi_connect()，Wi-Fi 连接恢复，同时，station 连接至同一个 AP 并获得与之前相同的 IPv4 地址。
- 60 秒后，当应用程序发送具有保持活动状态的套接字的数据时，套接字将返回错误，应用程序将关闭套接字并在必要时重新创建。

在上述场景中，理想状态下应用程序套接字和网络层将不会受到影响，因为在此过程中 Wi-Fi 连接只是短暂地断开然后快速恢复。应用程序可通过 LwIP menuconfig 启动“IP 改变时保持 TCP 连接”的功能。

**IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP**

当 DHCP 客户端成功从 DHCP 服务器获取 IPv4 地址或 IPv4 地址发生改变时，将引发此事件。此事件意味着应用程序一切就绪，可以开始任务（如：创建套接字）。

IPv4 地址可能由于以下原因而发生改变：

- DHCP 客户端无法重新获取/绑定 IPv4 地址，且 station 的 IPv4 重置为 0。
- DHCP 客户端重新绑定了其它地址。
- 静态配置的 IPv4 地址已发生改变。

函数 ip_event_got_ip_t 中的字段 ip_change 说明了 IPv4 地址是否发生改变。

套接字的状态是基于 IPv4 地址的，这意味着，如果 IPv4 地址发生改变，则所有与此 IPv4 相关的套接字都将变为异常。接收到此事件后，应用程序需关闭所有套接字，并在 IPv4 变为有效地址时重新创建应用程序。

**IP_EVENT_GOT_IPv6**

当 IPv6 SLAAC 支持自动为 ESP32 配置一个地址，或 ESP32 地址发生改变时，将引发此事件。此事件意味着应用程序一切就绪，可以开始任务（如：创建套接字）。

**IP_STA_LOST_IP**

当 IPv4 地址失时后，将引发此事件。

此事件不会在 Wi-Fi 断连后立刻出现。Wi-Fi 连接断开后，首先将启动一个 IPv4 地址丢失计时器，如果 station 在该计时器超时之前成功获取了 IPv4 地址，则不会发生此事件。否则，此事件将在计时器超时时发生。

一般来说，应用程序可忽略此事件。这只是一个调试事件，主要使应用程序获知 IPv4 地址已丢失。

**WIFI_EVENT_AP_START**

与 WIFI_EVENT_STA_START 事件相似。
WIFI_EVENT_AP_STOP

与 WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP 事件相似。

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED

每当有一个 station 成功连接 ESP32 AP 时，将引发此事件。接收到此事件后，事件任务将不做任何响应，应用程序的回调函数也可忽略这一事件。但是，您可以在此时进行一些操作，例如：获取已连接 station 的信息等。

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED

此事件将在以下情况下发生：
- 应用程序通过调用函数 esp_wifi_disconnect() 或 esp_wifi_deauth_sta() 手动断开 station 连接。
- Wi-Fi 驱动程序由于某些原因断开 station 连接，例如：AP 在过去 5 分钟（可通过函数 esp_wifi_set_inactive_time() 修改该时间）内未接收到任何数据包等。
- station 断开与 AP 之间的连接。

发生此事件时，事件任务将不做任何响应，但应用程序的事件回调函数需执行一些操作，例如：关闭与此 station 相关的套接字等。

WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED

默认情况下，此事件处于禁用状态，应用程序可以通过调用 API esp_wifi_set_event_mask() 启用。启用后，每当 AP 接收到 probe request 时都将引发此事件。

4.34.7 ESP32 Wi-Fi station 一般情况

下图为 station 模式下的宏观场景，其中包含不同阶段的具体描述：

1. Wi-Fi/LwIP 初始化阶段

- s1.1: 主任务通过调用函数 esp_netif_init() 创建一个 LwIP 核心任务，并初始化 LwIP 相关工作。
- s1.2: 主任务通过调用函数 esp_event_loop_create() 创建一个系统事件任务，并初始化应用程序事件的回调函数。在此情况下，该回调函数唯一的动作就是将事件中继到应用程序任务中。
- s1.3: 主任务通过调用函数 esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap() 或 esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta() 创建有 TCP/IP 堆栈的默认网络接口实例绑定 station 或 AP。
- s1.4: 主任务通过调用函数 esp_wifi_init() 创建 Wi-Fi 驱动程序任务，并初始化 Wi-Fi 驱动程序。
- s1.5: 主任务通过调用 OS API 创建应用数据任务。

推荐按照 s1.1 ~ s1.5 的步骤顺序针对基于 Wi-Fi/LwIP 的应用程序进行初始化。但这一顺序并非强制，您可以在第 s1.1 步创建应用程序任务，然后在该应用程序任务中进行所有其它初始化操作。不过，如果您的应用程序任务依赖套接字，那么在初始化阶段创建应用程序任务可能并不实用。此时，您可以在接收 IP 后再进行任务创建。

2. Wi-Fi 配置阶段

Wi-Fi 驱动程序初始化成功后，可以进入到配置阶段。该阶段中，Wi-Fi 驱动程序处于 station 模式。因此，首先您需调用函数 esp_wifi_set_mode() (WIFI_MODE_STA) 将 Wi-Fi 模式配置为 station 模式。
可通过调用其它 esp_wifi_set_xxx API 进行更多设置，例如：协议模式、国家代码、带宽等。请参阅 ESP32 Wi-Fi 配置。

一般情况下，我们会在建立 Wi-Fi 连接之前配置 Wi-Fi 驱动程序，但这并非强制要求。也就是说，只要 Wi-Fi 驱动程序已成功初始化，您可以在任意阶段进行配置。但是，如果您的 Wi-Fi 在建立连接后不需要更改配置，则应先在此阶段完成配置。因为调用配置 API（例如 esp_wifi_set_protocol()）将导致 Wi-Fi 连接断开，为您的操作带来不便。

如果 menuconfig 已使能 Wi-Fi NVS flash，则不论当前阶段还是后续的 Wi-Fi 配置信息都将被存储至该 flash 中。那么，当主板上电/重新启动时，就不需从头开始配置 Wi-Fi 驱动程序。您只需调用函数 esp_wifi_get_xxx API 获取之前存储的配置信息。当然，如果不想使用之前配置，您依然可以重新配置 Wi-Fi 驱动程序。

3. Wi-Fi 启动阶段

- s3.1: 调用函数 esp_wifi_start() 启动 Wi-Fi 驱动程序。
- s3.2: Wi-Fi 驱动程序将事件 WIFI_EVENT_STA_START 发布到事件任务中，然后，事件任务将执行一些正常操作并调用应用程序的事件回调函数。
- s3.3: 应用程序的事件回调函数将事件 WIFI_EVENT_STA_START 中继到应用程序任务中，推荐您此时调用函数 esp_wifi_connect() 进行 Wi-Fi 连接。当然，您也可以等待在 WIFI_EVENT_STA_START 事件发生后的其它阶段再调用此函数。

4. Wi-Fi 连接阶段

- s4.1: 调用函数 esp_wifi_connect() 后，Wi-Fi 驱动程序将启动内部扫描/连接过程。
- s4.2: 如果内部扫描/连接过程成功，将产生 WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED 事件。然后，事件任务将启动 DHCP 客户端服务，最终触发 DHCP 程序。
- s4.3: 在此情况下，应用程序的事件回调函数将 WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED 事件中继到应用程序任务中。通常，应用程序不需要进行操作，而您可以执行任何动作，例如：打印日志等。

步骤 s4.2 中 Wi-Fi 连接可能会由于某些原因而失败，例如：密码错误、未找到 AP 等。这种情况下，将引发 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件并提示连接错误原因。有关如何处理中断 Wi-Fi 连接的事件，请参阅下文阶段 6 的描述。

5. Wi-Fi 获取 IP 阶段

- s5.1: 一旦步骤 4.2 中的 DHCP 客户端初始化完成，Wi-Fi 驱动程序将进入获取 IP 阶段。
- s5.2: 如果 Wi-Fi 成功从 DHCP 服务器接收到 IP 地址，则将引发 IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP 事件，事件任务将执行正常处理。
- s5.3: 应用程序的事件回调函数将事件 IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP 中继到应用程序任务中。对于那些基于 LwIP 构建的应用程序，此事件较为特殊，因为它意味着应用程序已准备好，可以开始任务，例如：创建 TCP/UDP 套接字等。此时较为容易犯的一个错误就是在接收到 IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP 事件之前就初始化套接字。切勿在收到 IP 之前启动任何套接字相关操作。

6. Wi-Fi 断开阶段

- s6.1: 当 Wi-Fi 因为某些原因（例如：AP 掉电、RSSI 较弱等）连接中断时，将产生 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件。此事件也可能在上文阶段 3 中发生。在这里，事件任务将通知 LwIP 任务清除/移除所有 UDP/TCP 连接。然而，所用应用程序套接字都将处于错误状态。也就是说， WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件发生时，任何套接字都无法正常工作。
- s6.2: 上述情况下，应用程序的事件回调函数将 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件中继到应用程序任务中。推荐您调用函数 esp_wifi_connect() 重新连接 Wi-Fi，关闭所有套接字，并在必要时重新创建套接字。请参阅 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED。
7. Wi-Fi IP 更新阶段

- s7.1: 如果 IP 地址发生更改，将引发 IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP 事件，其中 “ip_change” 被置为 “true”。
- s7.2: 此事件对应用进程至关重要。这一事件发生时，适合关闭所有已创建的套接字并进行重新创建。

8. Wi-Fi 清理阶段

- s8.1: 调用函数 `esp_wifi_disconnect()` 断开 Wi-Fi 连接。
- s8.2: 调用函数 `esp_wifi_stop()` 终止 Wi-Fi 驱动程序。
- s8.3: 调用函数 `esp_wifi_deinit()` 清理 Wi-Fi 驱动程序。

### 4.34.8 ESP32 Wi-Fi AP 一般情况

下图为 AP 模式下的宏观场景，其中包含不同阶段的具体描述。

### 4.34.9 ESP32 Wi-Fi 扫描

目前，仅 station 或 station/AP 共存模式支持 `esp_wifi_scan_start()` API。

#### 扫描类型

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>模式</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>主动扫描</td>
<td>通过发送 probe request 进行扫描。该模式为默认的扫描模式。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>被动扫描</td>
<td>不发送 probe request。跳至某一特定信道并等待 beacon。应用程序可通过 wifi_scan_config_t 中的 scan_type 字段使能被动扫描。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>前端扫描</td>
<td>在 station 模式下 Wi-Fi 未连接时，可进行前端扫描。Wi-Fi 驱动程序决定进行前端扫描还是后端扫描。应用程序无法配置这两种模式。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>后端扫描</td>
<td>在 station 模式或 station/AP 共存模式下 Wi-Fi 已连接时，可进行后端扫描。Wi-Fi 驱动程序决定进行前端扫描还是后端扫描。应用程序无法配置这两种模式。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>全信道扫描</td>
<td>扫描所有信道。wifi_scan_config_t 中的 channel 字段为 0 时，当前模式为全信道扫描。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>特定信道扫描</td>
<td>仅扫描特定的信道。wifi_scan_config_t 中的 channel 字段为 1-14 时，当前模式为特定信道扫描。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

上表中的扫描模式可以任意组合，因此共有 8 种不同扫描方式:

- 全信道后端主动扫描
- 全信道后端被动扫描
- 全信道前端主动扫描
- 全信道前端被动扫描
- 特定信道后端主动扫描
- 特定信道后端被动扫描
- 特定信道前端主动扫描
- 特定信道前端被动扫描

#### 扫描配置

扫描类型与其他扫描属性通过函数 `esp_wifi_scan_start()` 进行配置。下表详细描述了函数 wifi_scan_config_t 各字段信息。
图 53: AP 模式下 Wi-Fi 事件流程示例
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>字段</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ssid</td>
<td>如果该字段的值不为 NULL，则仅可扫描到具有相同 SSID 值的 AP。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bssid</td>
<td>如果该字段的值不为 NULL，则仅可扫描到具有相同 BSSID 值的 AP。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>channel</td>
<td>如果该字段值为 0，将进行全信道扫描；反之，将针对特定信道进行扫描。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show_hidden</td>
<td>如果该字段值为 0，本次扫描将忽略具有隐藏 SSID 的 AP；反之，这些 AP 也会在扫描时被视为正常 AP。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scan_type</td>
<td>如果该字段值为 WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_ACTIVE，则本次扫描为启动扫描；反之，将被视为被动扫描。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scan_time</td>
<td>该字段用于控制每个信道的扫描时间。被启动扫描时，scan_time.active 字段负责为每个信道指定扫描时间。在主动扫描时，每个信道的扫描时间如下表所示。其中，min 代表 scan_time.active_min，max 代表 scan_time.active_max。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>min=0, max=0: 每个信道的扫描时间为 120 ms。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>min&gt;0, max=0: 每个信道的扫描时间为 120 ms。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>min=0, max&gt;0: 每个信道的扫描时间为 max ms。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>min&gt;0, max&gt;0: 每个信道扫描的最短时间为 min ms。如果在这段时间内未找到 AP，将跳转至下一个信道。如这段时间内找到 AP，则该信道的扫描时间为 max ms。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

调用 API esp_wifi_set_config() 可全局配置一些扫描属性，请参阅 station 基本配置。

### 在所有信道中扫描全部 AP（前端）

**场景**:

上述场景中描述了全信道前端扫描过程。仅 station 模式支持前端扫描，该模式下 station 未连接任何 AP。前端扫描还是后端扫描完全由 Wi-Fi 驱动程序决定，应用程序无法配置这一模式。

**详细描述**:

#### 扫描配置阶段

- s1.1: 如果默认的国家信息有误，调用函数 esp_wifi_set_country() 进行配置。请参阅 Wi-Fi 国家/地区代码。
- s1.2: 调用函数 esp_wifi_scan_start() 配置扫描信号，可参阅扫描配置。该场景为全信道扫描，将 SSID/BSSID/channel 设置为 0 即可。

#### Wi-Fi 驱动程序内部扫描阶段

- s2.1: Wi-Fi 驱动程序切换至信道 1，此时的扫描类型为 WIFI.Scan_Type.Active，同时发送一个 probe request。反之，Wi-Fi 将等待接收 AP beacon。Wi-Fi 驱动程序将在信道 1 停留一段时间。
- s2.2: Wi-Fi 驱动程序切换至信道 2，并重复进行 s2.1 中的步骤。
- s2.3: Wi-Fi 驱动程序扫描最后的信道 N，N 的具体数值由步骤 s1.1 中配置的国家代码决定。

#### 扫描完成后事件处理阶段

- s3.1: 当所有信道扫描全部完成后，将产生 WIFI.EVENT_SCAN_DONE 事件。
- s3.2: 应用程序的事件回调函数告知应用程序任务已接收到来自 WIFI.EVENT_SCAN_DONE 事件。调用函数 esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_num() 获取在本次扫描中找到的 AP 数量。然后，分配出足够的结构体，并调用函数 esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records() 获取 AP 记录。请注意，一旦调用 esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()，Wi-Fi 驱动程序中的 AP 记录将被释放。但是，请不要在单个扫描完成事件中重复调用 esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()。反之，如果扫描完成后未调用 esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()，则 Wi-Fi 驱动程序中的 AP 记录不会被释放。因此，请务必确保调用 esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()，且仅调用一次。
图 54: 所有 Wi-Fi 信道的前端扫描
在所有信道上扫描全部 AP（后端）

场景:
上述场景为一次信道后端扫描。与在所有信道中扫描全部 AP（前端）相比，信道后端扫描的不同之处在于：在跳至下一个信道之前，Wi-Fi 驱动程序会先返回信道停留 30 ms，以便 Wi-Fi 连接有一定的时间发送/接收数据。

在所有信道中扫描特定 AP

场景:
该扫描过程与在所有信道中扫描全部 AP（前端）相似。区别在于:

- s1.1：在步骤 1.2 中，目标 AP 将配置为 SSID/SSID/SSID。
- s2.1~s2.N：每当 Wi-Fi 驱动程序扫描某个 AP 时，它将检查该 AP 是否为目标 AP。如果本次扫描类型为 WIFI_FAST_SCAN，且确认已找到目标 AP，则产生扫描完成事件，同时结束本次扫描。反之，扫描将继续。请注意，第一个扫描的信道可能不是信道 1，因为 Wi-Fi 驱动程序会优化扫描顺序。

如果有多个匹配目标 AP 信息的 AP，例如：碰巧扫描到两个 SSID 为“ap”的 AP。如果本次扫描类型为 WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN，则仅可找到第一个扫描到的“ap”；如果本次扫描类型为 WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN，则两个“ap”都将被找到，且 station 将根据配置规则连接至其需要连接的“ap”，请参阅 station 基本配置。

您可以在任意信道中扫描某个特定的 AP，或扫描该信道中的所有 AP。这两种扫描过程也较为相似。

在 Wi-Fi 连接模式下扫描

调用函数 esp_wifi_connect() 后，Wi-Fi 驱动程序将首次尝试扫描已配置的 AP。Wi-Fi 连接模式下的扫描过程与在所有信道中扫描特定 AP 过程相同，但连接模式下扫描结束后将不会产生扫描完成事件。如果已找到目标 AP，则 Wi-Fi 驱动程序将开始 Wi-Fi 连接；反之，将产生 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件。请参阅在所有信道中扫描特定 AP。

在禁用模式下扫描

如果函数 esp_wifi_scan_start() 中的禁用参数为“true”，则本次扫描为禁用模式下的扫描。在该次扫描完成之前，应用程序任务都将被禁用。禁用模式下的扫描和正常扫描相似，不同之处在于，禁用模式下扫描完成之后将不会出现扫描完成事件。

并行扫描

有时，可能会有两个应用程序任务同时调用函数 esp_wifi_scan_start()，或者某个应用程序任务在获取扫描完成事件之前再次调用了函数 esp_wifi_scan_start()，这两种情况都有可能会发生。但是，Wi-Fi 驱动程序并不足以支持多个并行的扫描。因此，应避免上述并行扫描。随着 ESP32 的 Wi-Fi 功能不断提升，未来的版本中可能会增加并行扫描支持。

连接 Wi-Fi 时扫描

如果 Wi-Fi 正在连接，则调用函数 esp_wifi_scan_start() 后扫描将立即失败，因为 Wi-Fi 连接优先级高于扫描。如果扫描是因为 Wi-Fi 连接而失败的，此时推荐采取的策略是：等待一段时间后重试。因为一旦 Wi-Fi 连接完成后，扫描将立即成功。

但是，延迟重试策略并非万无一失。试想以下场景:

- 如果 station 正在连接一个不存在的 AP，或正在使用错误的密码连接一个 AP，此时将产生事件 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED。
- 接收到断开连接事件后，应用程序调用函数 esp_wifi_connect() 进行重新连接。
图 55: 所有 Wi-Fi 信道的后端扫描
图 56: 扫描特定的 Wi-Fi 信道
• 而另一个应用程序任务（如，控制任务）调用了函数 `esp_wifi_scan_start()` 进行扫描。这种情况下，每一次扫描都会立即失败，因为 `station` 一直处于正在连接状态。
• 扫描失败后，应用程序将等待一段时间后进行重新扫描。

上述场景中的扫描永远不会成功，因为 Wi-Fi 一直处于正在连接过程中。因此，如果您的应用程序也可能发生相似的场景，那么就需要为其配置一个更佳的重新连接策略，例如：

• 应用程序可以定义一个连续重新连接次数的最大值。当重新连接的次数达到这个最大值时，立刻停止重新连接。
• 应用程序可以在首轮连续重新连接 N 次后立即进行重新连接，然后延时一段时间后再进行下一次重新连接。

可以给应用程序定义其特殊的重新连接策略，以防止扫描无法成功。请参阅 Wi-Fi 重新连接。

4.3.10 ESP32 Wi-Fi station 连接场景

该场景仅针对在扫描阶段只找到一个目标 AP 的情况，对于多个相同 SSID AP 的情况，请参阅【找到多个 AP 时的 ESP32 Wi-Fi station 连接】。

通常，应用程序无需关心这一连接过程。如感兴趣，可参看下述简介。

字段：

扫描阶段

• s1.1：Wi-Fi 驱动程序开始在“Wi-Fi 连接”模式下扫描。详细信息参阅 【Wi-Fi 连接模式下扫描】。
• s1.2：如果未找到目标 AP，将产生 `WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED` 事件，且原因代码为 `WIFI_REASON_NO_AP_FOUND`。请参阅【Wi-Fi 原因代码】。

认证阶段

• s2.1：发送认证请求数据包并能认证计时器。
• s2.2：如果在认证计时器超时之前未收到认证响应数据包，将产生 `WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED` 事件，且原因代码为 `WIFI_REASON_AUTH_EXPIRE`。请参阅【Wi-Fi 原因代码】。
• s2.3：接收到认证响应数据包，且认证计时器终止。
• s2.4：AP 在响应中拒绝认证且产生 `WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED` 事件，原因代码为 `WIFI_REASON_AUTH_FAIL` 或为 AP 指定的其它原因。请参阅【Wi-Fi 原因代码】。

关联阶段

• s3.1：发送关联请求并使能关联计时器。
• s3.2：如果在关联计时器超时之前未接收到关联响应，将产生 `WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED` 事件，且原因代码为 `WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_EXPIRE`。请参阅【Wi-Fi 原因代码】。
• s3.3：接收到关联响应，且关联计时器终止。
• s3.4：AP 在响应中拒绝关联且产生 `WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED` 事件，原因代码将在关联响应中指定。请参阅【Wi-Fi 原因代码】。

四次握手阶段

• s4.1：使能握手定时器，定时器终止之前未接收到 1/4 EAPOL，此时将产生 `WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED` 事件，且原因代码为 `WIFI_REASON_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT`。请参阅【Wi-Fi 原因代码】。
• s4.2：接收到 1/4 EAPOL。
• s4.3：station 回复 2/4 EAPOL。
• s4.4：如果在握手定时器终止之前未接收到 3/4 EAPOL，将产生 `WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED` 事件，且原因代码为 `WIFI_REASON_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT`。请参阅【Wi-Fi 原因代码】。
Chapter 4. API 指南

• s4.5：接收到 3/4 EAPOL。
• s4.6：station 回复 4/4 EAPOL。
• s4.7：station 产生 WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED 事件。

Wi-Fi 原因代码

下表罗列了 ESP32 中定义的原因代码。其中，第一列为 esp_wifi_types.h 中定义的宏名称。名称中省去了前缀 WIFI_REASON，也就是说，名称 UNSPECIFIED 实际应为 WIFI_REASON_UNSPECIFIED，以此类推。第二列为原因代码的相应数值。第三列为该原因映射到 IEEE 802.11-2012 中 8.4.1.7 段的标准值。（更多详细信息，请参阅前文描述。）最后一列为这一原因的描述。
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>原因代码</th>
<th>数值</th>
<th>映射值</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UNSPECIFIED</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>出现内部错误。例如：内存已满，内部发送失败，或该原因已被远端接收等。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTH_EXPIRE</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>先前的 authentication 已失效。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP station，出现以下情况时将报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• authentication 超时；&lt;br&gt;• 从 AP 接收到该代码。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP AP，出现以下情况时将报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 在过去五分钟之内，AP 未从 station 接收到任何数据包；&lt;br&gt;• 由于调用了函数 esp_wifi_stop() 导致 AP 终止；&lt;br&gt;• 由于调用了函数 esp_wifi_deauth_sta() 导致 station 的 authentication 取消。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTH_BEAVE</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>authentication 取消，因为发送 station 正在离开（或已经离开）&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP station，出现以下情况时报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 从 AP 接收到该代码。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSOC_EXPIRE</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>因为 AP 不活跃，association 取消。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP station，出现以下情况时报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 从 AP 接收到该代码。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP AP，出现以下情况时将报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 在过去五分钟之内，AP 未从 station 接收到任何数据包；&lt;br&gt;• 由于调用了函数 esp_wifi_stop() 导致 AP 终止；&lt;br&gt;• 由于调用了函数 esp_wifi_deauth_sta() 导致 station 的 authentication 取消。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSOC_TOO_MANY</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>association 取消，因为 AP 无法同时处理所有当前已关联的 STA。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP station，出现以下情况时报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 从 AP 接收到该代码。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP AP，出现以下情况时将报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 与 AP 相关联的 station 数量已到达 AP 可支持的最大值。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT_AUTHED</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>从一个未认证 station 接收到 class-2 frame。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP station，出现以下情况时报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 从 AP 接收到该代码。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP AP，出现以下情况时将报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• AP 从一个未认证 station 接收到数据包。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT_ASSOCED</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>从一个未关联 station 接收到的 class-3 frame。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP station，出现以下情况时报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 从 AP 接收到该代码。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP AP，出现以下情况时将报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• AP 从未关联 station 接收到数据包。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSOC_LEAVE</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>association 取消，因为发送 station 正在离开（或已经离开）BSS。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP station，出现以下情况时报告该代码：&lt;br&gt;• 从 AP 接收到该代码。&lt;br&gt;• 由于调用 esp_wifi_disconnect() 和其它 API，station 断开连接。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSOC_NOTIFY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>station 的 reassociation) 请求未被响应 station 认证。&lt;br&gt;对于 ESP station，出现以下情况时报告该代码：</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Espressif Systems 由于 ESP 使用 target_layers，ESP 不处理以下情况时将报告该代码：
• AP 从一个已关联，但未认证的 station 接收到数据包。

- **2019** 接收到该代码。 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

- **2019** 接收到该代码。 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
4.34.11 找到多个 AP 时的 ESP32 Wi-Fi station 连接

该场景与 ESP32 Wi-Fi station 连接场景相似，不同之处在于该场景中不会产生 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件，除非 station 无法连接所有找到的 AP。

4.34.12 Wi-Fi 重新连接

出于多种原因，station 可能会断开连接，例如：连接的 AP 重新启动等。应用程序应负责重新连接。推荐使用的方法为：在接收到 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件后调用函数 esp_wifi_connect()。

但有时，应用程序需要更复杂的方式进行重新连接：

- 如果断开连接事件是由调用函数 esp_wifi_disconnect() 引发的，那么应用程序可能不希望进行重新连接。
- 如果 station 随时可能调用函数 esp_wifi_scan_start() 开始扫描，此时就需要一个更佳的重新连接方法，请参阅连接 Wi-Fi 时扫描。

另一点需要注意的是，如果存在多个具有相同 SSID 的 AP，那么重新连接后可能不会连接到之前的同一个 AP。重新连接时，station 将永远选择最佳的 AP 进行连接。

4.34.13 Wi-Fi beacon 超时

ESP32 使用 beacon 超时机制检测 AP 是否活跃。如果 station 连续丢失了 60 个所连接 AP 的 beacon，将发生 beacon 超时。

beacon 超时发生后，station 将向 AP 发送 5 个 probe request，如果仍未从 AP 接收到 probe response 或 beacon，station 将与 AP 断开连接并产生 WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED 事件。

4.34.14 ESP32 Wi-Fi 配置

使能 Wi-Fi NVS 时，所有配置都将存储到 flash 中；反之，请参阅 Wi-Fi NVS Flash。

Wi-Fi 模式

调用函数 esp_wifi_set_mode() 设置 Wi-Fi 模式。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>模式</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_MODE_NULL</td>
<td>NULL 模式：此模式下，内部数据结构不分配给 station 和 AP，同时，station 和 AP 接口不会为发送/接收 Wi-Fi 数据进行初始化。通常，此模式用于 Sniffer。或者您不想通过调用函数 esp_wifi_deinit() 卸载整个 Wi-Fi 驱动程序来同时停止 station 和 AP。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_MODE_STA</td>
<td>station 模式：此模式下，esp_wifi_start() 将初始化内部 station 数据，同时 station 接口准备发送/接收 Wi-Fi 数据。调用函数 esp_wifi_connect() 后，station 将连接到目标 AP。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_MODE_AP</td>
<td>AP 模式：在此模式下，esp_wifi_start() 将初始化内部 AP 数据，同时 AP 接口准备发送/接收 Wi-Fi 数据。随后，Wi-Fi 驱动程序开始广播 beacon，AP 即可与其它 station 连接。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_MODE_APSTA</td>
<td>station/AP 共存模式：在此模式下，函数 esp_wifi_start() 将同时初始化 station 和 AP。该步骤在 station 模式和 AP 模式下完成。请注意 ESP station 所连外部 AP 的信道优先于 ESP AP 信道。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

station 基本配置

API esp_wifi_set_config() 可用于配置 station。下表详细介绍了各个字段。
### 字段 概述

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>字段</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ssid</td>
<td>station 想要连接的目标 AP 的 SSID。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>目标 AP 的密码。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scan_method</td>
<td>WiFi_FAST_SCAN 模式下，扫描到一个匹配的 AP 时即结束。WiFi_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN 模式下，在所有信道扫描所有匹配的 AP。默认扫描模式是 WiFi_FAST_SCAN。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bssid_set</td>
<td>如果 bssid_set 为 0，station 连接 SSID 与 “ssid” 字段相同的 AP，同时忽略字段 “bssid”。其他情况下，station 连接 SSID 与 “ssid” 字段相同、BSSID 与 “bssid” 字段也相同的 AP。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bssid</td>
<td>只有当 bssid_set 为 1 时有效。见字段 “bssid_set”。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>channel</td>
<td>该字段为 0 时，station 扫描信道 1~N 寻找目标 AP；否则，station 首先扫描与 “channel” 字段相同的信道，再扫描其他信道。如果您不知道目标 AP 在哪个信道，请将该字段设置为 0。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sort_method</td>
<td>该字段仅用于 WiFi_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN 模式。如果设置为 WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SIGNAL，所有匹配的 AP 将会按照信道强度排序，信道最好的 AP 会是第一个连接。比如，如果 station 想要连接 ssid 为 “apxx” 的 AP，且扫描到两个这样的 AP。第一个 AP 的信号为 -90 dBm，第二个 AP 的信号为 -30 dBm，station 首先连接第二个 AP。除失败，才会连接第一个。如果设置为 WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SECURITY，所有匹配的 AP 将会按照安全性排序。比如，如果 station 想要连接 ssid 为 “apxx” 的 AP，并且扫描到两个这样的 AP。第一个 AP 为开放式，第二个 AP 为 WPA2 加密，station 首先连接第二个 AP。除失败，才会连接第一个。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threshold</td>
<td>该字段用来筛选找到的 AP，如果 AP 的 RSSI 或安全模式小于配置的阈值，则不会被连接。如果 RSSI 设置为 0，则表示默认阈值，默认 RSSI 阈值为 -127 dBm。如果 authmode 阈值设置为 0，则表示默认阈值，默认 authmode 阈值无授权。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**注意：** WEP/WPA 安全模式在 IEEE802.11-2016 协议中已弃用，建议不要使用。可使用 authmode 阈值代替，通过将 threshold.authmode 设置为 WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_PSK 使用 WPA2 模式

### AP 基本配置

API esp_wifi_set_config() 可用于配置 AP。下表详细介绍了各个字段。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>字段</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ssid</td>
<td>指 AP 的 SSID。如果 ssid[0] 和 ssid[1] 均为 0xFF，AP 默认 SSID 为 ESP_aabbcc，“aabbcc” 是 AP MAC 的最后三个字节。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>AP 的密码。如果身份验证模式为 WIFI_AUTH_OPEN，此字段将被忽略。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssid_len</td>
<td>SSID 的长度。如果 ssid_len 为 0，检查 SSID 直至出现终止字符。如果 ssid_len 大于 32，请改为 32，或者根据 ssid_len 设置 SSID 长度。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>channel</td>
<td>AP 的信道。如果信道超出范围，Wi-Fi 驱动程序将默认该信道为信道 1。所以，请确保信道在要求的范围内。有关详细信息，请参阅 Wi-Fi 驱动程序使用手册。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authmode</td>
<td>ESP AP 的身份验证模式。目前，ESP Wi-Fi 不支持 AUTH_WEP。如果 authmode 是一个无效值，AP 默认该值为 WIFI_AUTH_OPEN。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssid_hidden</td>
<td>如果 ssid_hidden 为 1，AP 不广播 SSID，若为其他值，则广播。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_connection</td>
<td>目前，ESP Wi-Fi 支持 10 个 Wi-Fi 连接。如果 max_connection 大于 10，AP 默认该值为 10。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beacon_interval</td>
<td>beacon 间隔。值为 100 ~ 60000 ms，默认值为 100 ms。如果该值不在上述范围，AP 默认取 100 ms。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Wi-Fi 协议模式**

目前，IDF 支持以下协议模式：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>协议模式</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>802.11b</td>
<td>调用函数 esp_wifi_set_protocol(IF, WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B)，将 station/AP 设置为仅 802.11b 模式。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>802.11bg</td>
<td>调用函数 esp_wifi_set_protocol(IF, WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>802.11bgn</td>
<td>调用函数 esp_wifi_set_protocol(IF, WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>802.11 BGNLR</td>
<td>调用函数 esp_wifi_set_protocol(IF, WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 802.11 LR | 调用函数 esp_wifi_set_protocol(IF, WIFI_PROTOCOL_LR)，将 station/AP 设置为仅乐鑫专属模式。
此模式是乐鑫的专利模式，可以达到 1 公里视线范围。请确保 station 和 AP 同时连接到 ESP 设备。 |

**远程 (LR)**

远程 (LR) 模式是乐鑫的一项专利 Wi-Fi 模式，可达到 1 公里视线范围。与传统 802.11b 模式相比，接收灵敏度更高，抗干扰能力更强，传输距离更长。

**LR 兼容性** 由于 LR 是乐鑫的独有 Wi-Fi 模式，只有 ESP32 设备才能传输和接收 LR 数据。也就是说，如果连接的设备不支持 LR，ESP32 设备则不会以 LR 数据速率传输数据。可通过配置适当的 Wi-Fi 模式使您的应用程序实现这一功能。如果协商的模式支持 LR，ESP32 可能会以 LR 速率传输数据，否则，ESP32 将以传统 Wi-Fi 数据速率传输所有数据。

下表是 Wi-Fi 模式协商：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APSTA</th>
<th>BGN</th>
<th>BG</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>BGNLR</th>
<th>BGLR</th>
<th>BLR</th>
<th>LR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BGN</td>
<td>BGN</td>
<td>BG</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>BGN</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BG</td>
<td>BG</td>
<td>BG</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>BG</td>
<td>BG</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BGNLR</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>BGNLR</td>
<td>BGLR</td>
<td>BLR</td>
<td>LR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BGLR</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>BGLR</td>
<td>BGLR</td>
<td>BLR</td>
<td>LR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLR</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>BLR</td>
<td>BLR</td>
<td>BLR</td>
<td>LR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LR</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>LR</td>
<td>LR</td>
<td>LR</td>
<td>LR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

上表中，行是 AP 的 Wi-Fi 模式，列是 station 的 Wi-Fi 模式。” -” 表示 AP 和 station 的 Wi-Fi 模式不兼容。

根据上表，得出以下结论：

- 对于已使能 LR 的 ESP32 AP，由于以 LR 模式发送 beacon，因此与传统的 802.11 模式不兼容。
- 对于已使能 LR 且并非仅 LR 模式的 ESP32 station，与传统 802.11 模式兼容。
- 如果 station 和 AP 都是 ESP32 设备，并且两者都使能 LR 模式，则协商的模式支持 LR。
Chapter 4. API 指南

如果协商的 Wi-Fi 模式同时支持传统的 802.11 模式和 LR 模式，则 Wi-Fi 驱动程序会在不同的 Wi-Fi 模式下自动选择最佳数据速率。应用程序无需任何操作。

**LR 对传统 Wi-Fi 设备的影响** 以 LR 速率进行的数据传输不会影响传统 Wi-Fi 设备，因为：

- LR 模式下的 CCA 和回退过程符合 802.11 协议。
- 传统的 Wi-Fi 设备可以通过 CCA 检测 LR 信号并进行回退。

也就是说，LR 模式下传输效果与 802.11b 模式相似。

**LR 传输距离** LR 的接收灵敏度比传统的 802.11b 模式高 4 dB，理论上，传输距离约为 802.11b 的 2 至 2.5 倍。

**LR 吞吐量** 因为原始 PHY 数据传输速率为 1/2 Mbit 和 1/4 Mbit，LR 的吞吐量有限。

**何时使用 LR** 通常使用 LR 的场景包括：

- AP 和 station 都是 ESP32 设备。
- 需要长距离 Wi-Fi 连接和数据传输。
- 数据吞吐量要求非常小，例如远程设备控制等。

**Wi-Fi 国家/地区代码**

调用 esp_wifi_set_country()，设置国家/地区信息。下表详细介绍各个字段，请在配置这些字段之前参考当地的 2.4 GHz RF 操作规定。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>字段</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
  - ASCII 码空格字符，表示 station/AP 所处国家/地区的规定允许当前频段所需的所有频段。
  - ASCII 码 ‘O’ 字符，表示 station/AP 所处国家/地区的规定允许室外环境。
  - ASCII 码 ‘I’ 字符，表示 station/AP 所处国家/地区的规定仅允许室内环境。
  - ASCII 码 ‘X’ 字符，表示 station/AP 位于非国家/地区实体。非国家实体的前两个八位字节是两个 ASCII 码 ‘XX’ 字符。
  - 当前使用的操作模式编号的二进制形式，见 IEEE Std 802.11-2012 附件 E。 |
| nchan | 起始信道。station/AP 所处国家/地区规定的最小信道数。 |
| policy | 国家/地区政策。当配置的国家/地区信息与所连 AP 的国家/地区信息冲突时，该字段决定使用哪一信息。更多政策相关信息，可参见下文。 |

默认国家/地区信息为 {cc=”CN”, .schan=1, .nchan=13, policy=WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO}，如果 Wi-Fi 模式为 station/AP 共存模式，则它们配置的国家/地区信息相同。有时，station 所连 AP 的国家/地区信息与配置的不同，例如，配置的 station 国家/地区信息为 {cc=”JP”, .schan=1, .nchan=14, policy=WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO}，但所连 AP 的国家/地区信息为 {cc=”CN”, .schan=1, .nchan=13}，此时，使用所连 AP 的国家/地区信息。

下表描述了在不同 Wi-Fi 模式和不同国家/地区政策下使用的国家/地区信息，并描述了对主动扫描的影响。

Espressif Systems 2014  Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
### Wi-Fi 模式

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>模式</th>
<th>政策</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>station</td>
<td>WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL</td>
<td>不连接任何外部 AP，AP 使用配置的国家/地区信息。如果 station 连接一个外部 AP，该 AP 的国家/地区信息与该 station 相同。与 station 模式，WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO 政策下使用的国家/地区信息相同。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station</td>
<td>WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL</td>
<td>不连接任何外部 AP，AP 使用配置的国家/地区信息。如果 station 连接一个外部 AP，该 AP 的国家/地区信息与该 station 相同。与 station 模式，WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO 政策下使用的国家/地区信息相同。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AP</td>
<td>WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL</td>
<td>不连接任何外部 AP，AP 使用配置的国家/地区信息。如果 station 连接一个外部 AP，该 AP 的国家/地区信息与该 station 相同。与 station 模式，WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO 政策下使用的国家/地区信息相同。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AP</td>
<td>WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO</td>
<td>不连接任何外部 AP，AP 使用配置的国家/地区信息。如果 station 连接一个外部 AP，该 AP 的国家/地区信息与该 station 相同。与 station 模式，WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO 政策下使用的国家/地区信息相同。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station/AP 共存模式</td>
<td>WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO</td>
<td>不连接任何外部 AP，AP 使用配置的国家/地区信息。如果 station 连接一个外部 AP，该 AP 的国家/地区信息与该 station 相同。与 station 模式，WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO 政策下使用的国家/地区信息相同。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**主信道** AP 模式下，AP 的信道定义为主信道。station 模式下，station 所连 AP 的信道定义为主信道。station/AP 共存模式下，AP 和 station 的主信道必须相同。如果不同，station 的主信道始终优先。比如，初始时，AP 位于信道 6，但 station 连接信道 9 的 AP。因为 station 的主信道具有优先性，该 AP 需要将信道从 6 切换至 9，确保与 station 主信道相同。切换信道时，AP 模式下的 ESP32 将使用信道切换公告 (CSA) 通知连接的 station。支持信道切换的 station 将直接通过，无需与 AP 断连再重新连接。

**Wi-Fi 供应商 IE 配置**

默认情况下，所有 Wi-Fi 管理帧都由 Wi-Fi 驱动程序处理，应用程序不需要任何操作。但是，某些应用程序可能需要处理 beacon、probe request、probe response 和其他管理帧。例如，如果在管理帧中插入一些只针对供应商的 IE，则只有包含此 IE 的管理帧才能得到处理。ESP32 中，esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie() 和 esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie_cb() 负责此类任务。

### 4.34.15 Wi-Fi Easy Connect™ (DPP)

Wi-Fi Easy Connect™（也称为设备配置协议）是一个安全且标准化的配置协议，用于配置 Wi-Fi 设备，更多信息请参考 doc/esp_dpp.c/api-reference/network/esp_dpp.h 并参阅 ESP32 开发者指南。

**WPA2-Enterprise**

WPA2-Enterprise 是企业无线网络的安全认证机制。在连接到接入点之前，它使用 RADIUS 服务器对网络用户进行身份验证。身份验证过程基于 802.1X 标准，并有不同的扩展身份验证协议 (EAP) 方法，如 TLS、TTLS、PEAP 等。RADIUS 服务器根据用户的凭据（用户名和密码）、数字证书或者两者对用户进行身份验证。当处于 station 模式的 ESP32 尝试连接到企业模式的 AP 时，它将向 AP 发送身份验证请求。AP 会将该请求发送到 RADIUS 服务器以对 station 进行身份验证。根据不同的 EAP 方式，可以通过 idf.py menuconfig 打开配置，并在配置中设置相应的参数。ESP32 仅在 station 模式下支持 WPA2-Enterprise。

为了建立安全连接，AP 和 station 协商并要用使用的最佳密码套件达成一致。ESP32 支持 AKM 的 802.1X/EAP (WPA) 方法和 AES-CCM (高级加密标准-带密码链消息验证码协议的计数器模式) 支持的密码套件。如果设置了 USE_MBEDTLS_CRYPTO 标志，ESP32 也支持 mbedtls 支持的密码套件。
目前，ESP32 支持以下 EAP 方法：
- EAP-TLS: 这是基于证书的方法，只需要 SSID 和 EAP-IDF。
- PEAP - PEAP: 这是受保护的 EAP 方法，用户名和密码是必填项。
- EAP-TTLS: 这是基于凭据的方法。只有服务器身份验证是强制性的，而用户身份验证是可选的。用户名和密码

- PAP: 密码认证协议
- CHAP: 询问握手身份验证协议
- MSCHAP 和 MSCHAP-V2

请查看 wifi/wifi Enterprise 获取关于证书创建以及如何在 ESP32 上运行 wpa2 Enterprise 示例的详细信息。

### 4.3.16 无线网络管理

无线网络管理让客户端设备能够交换有关网络拓扑结构的信息，包括与射频环境相关的信息。这使每个客户端都能感知到网络状况，从而促进无线网络性能的整体改进。这是 802.11v 规范的一部分。它还使客户端能够支持 Wi-Fi 相关。Wi-Fi 能够将 AP 关联，从而使客户端与具有更好链路质量的 AP 关联。这有助于促进负载平衡以及引导连接不良的客户端都使用更好的 AP。

目前 802.11v 的实现支持 BSS 过渡管理帧。

### 4.3.17 无线资源管理

无线电资源测量 (802.11k) 旨在改善网络内流量的分配方式。在无线局域网中，一般情况下，无线设备会连接发送信号最强的接收点 (AP)。根据用户的数量和地理位置，这种分配方式有时会导致某个接收点超负荷而其它接收点利用不足，从而导致整体网络性能下降。在符合 802.11k 规范的网络中，如果信号最强的 AP 已满负载加载，无线设备则转移到其它未充分利用的 AP。尽管信号可能较弱，但由于更有效利用了网络资源，总体吞吐量会更大。

目前 802.11k 的实现支持信标测量报告、链路测量报告和邻居请求。

请参考 IDF 示例程序 examples/wifi/roaming/README.md 来设置和使用这些 API。示例代码只演示了如何使用这些 API，应用程序应根据需要定义自己的算法和案例。

### 4.3.18 ESP32 Wi-Fi 节能模式

#### station 睡眠

目前，ESP32 Wi-Fi 支持 Modem-sleep 模式，该模式是 IEEE 802.11 协议中的传统节能模式。仅 station 模式支持该模式，station 必须先连接到 AP。如果使用了 Modem-sleep 模式，station 将在活动状态和睡眠状态之间切换。在睡眠状态下，RF, PHY 和 BB 处于关闭状态，以减少功耗。Modem-sleep 模式下，station 可以与 AP 保持连接。

Modem-sleep 模式包括最小和最大节能模式。在最小节能模式下，每个 DTIM 间隔，station 都将唤醒以接收 beacon。广播数据在 DTIM 之后传输，因此不会丢失。但是，由 DTIM 间隔长短由 AP 决定，如果该间隔时间设置较短，则省电效果不大。

在最大节能模式下，每个监听间隔，station 都将唤醒以接收 beacon。可以设置该监听间隔长于 AP 的 DTIM 周期。在 DTIM 间隔内，station 可能处于睡眠状态，广播数据会丢失。如果监听间隔较短，则可以节省更多电量，但广播数据更容易丢失。连接 AP 前，可以通过调用 API esp_wifi_set_config() 配置监听间隔。

调用 esp_wifi_init() 后，调用 esp_wifi_set_ps(WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM) 可使能 Modem-sleep 最小节能模式。调用 esp_wifi_set_ps(WIFI_PS_MAX_MODEM) 可使能 Modem-sleep 最大节能模式。station 连接到 AP 时，Modem-sleep 模式将启动。station 与 AP 断开连接时，Modem-sleep 模式将停止。

调用 esp_wifi_set_ps(WIFI_PS_NONE) 可以完全禁用 Modem-sleep 模式。禁用会加大功耗，但可以以最大限度减少实时接收 Wi-Fi 数据的延迟。使能 Modem-sleep 时，接收 Wi-Fi 数据的延迟时间可能与 DTIM 周期（最小节能模式）或监听间隔（最大节能模式）相同。在 Wi-Fi 与 Bluetooth LE 共存模式下，无法完全禁用 modem-sleep 模式。
默认的 Modem-sleep 模式是 WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM。

### AP 睡眠

目前，ESP32 AP 不支持 Wi-Fi 协议中定义的所有节能功能。具体来说，AP 只缓存所连 station 单播数据，不缓存组播数据。如果 ESP32 AP 所连的 station 已使能节能功能，可能发生组播数据包丢失。

未来，ESP32 AP 将支持所有节能功能。

#### 4.34.19 ESP32 Wi-Fi 吞吐量

下表是在 Espressif 实验室和屏蔽箱中获得的最佳吞吐量结果。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>类型/吞吐量</th>
<th>实验室空气状况</th>
<th>屏蔽箱</th>
<th>测试工具</th>
<th>IDF 版本 (commit ID)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>原始 802.11数据包接收数据</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>130 MBit/s</td>
<td>内部工具</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>原始 802.11数据包发送数据</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>130 MBit/s</td>
<td>内部工具</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP 接收数据</td>
<td>30 MBit/s</td>
<td>85 MBit/s</td>
<td>iperf example</td>
<td>15575346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP 发送数据</td>
<td>30 MBit/s</td>
<td>75 MBit/s</td>
<td>iperf example</td>
<td>15575346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 接收数据</td>
<td>20 MBit/s</td>
<td>65 MBit/s</td>
<td>iperf example</td>
<td>15575346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 发送数据</td>
<td>20 MBit/s</td>
<td>75 MBit/s</td>
<td>iperf example</td>
<td>15575346</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

使用 iperf example 测试吞吐量时，sdkconfig 是:idf_file:示例/wifi/iperf/sdkconfig.defaults.esp32。

#### 4.34.20 Wi-Fi 80211 数据包发送

`esp_wifi_80211_tx()` API 可用于:

- 发送 beacon、probe request、probe response 和 action 帧。
- 发送非 QoS 数据帧。

不能用于发送加密或 QoS 帧。

使用 `esp_wifi_80211_tx()` 的前提条件

- Wi-Fi 模式为 station 模式、AP 模式，或 station/AP 共存模式。
- API esp_wifi_set_promiscuous(true) 或 `esp_wifi_start()`，或者二者都返回 ESP_OK。这是为确保在调用函数 `esp_wifi_80211_tx()` 前，Wi-Fi 硬件已经初始化。对于 ESP32，`esp_wifi_set_promiscuous(true)` 和 `esp_wifi_start()` 都可以触发 Wi-Fi 硬件初始化。
- 提供正确的 `esp_wifi_80211_tx()` 参数。

传输速率

- 如果没有 Wi-Fi 连接，传输速率为 1 Mbps。
- 如果有 Wi-Fi 连接，且数据包是从 station 到 AP 或从 AP 到 station，则传输速率与 Wi-Fi 连接相同。否则，传输速率为 1 Mbps。
在不同情况下需要避免的副作用

理论上，如果不考虑 API 对 Wi-Fi 驱动程序或其他 station 或 AP 的副作用，可以通过空中发送一个原始的 802.11 数据包，包括任何目的地的 MAC、任意源地址的 MAC、任何 BSSID，或任何其他类型的的数据包。但是，一个具有强健、有用的程序应该避免这种副作用。下表针对如何避免 `esp_wifi_80211_tx()` 的副作用提供了一些提示或建议。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>场景</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 无 Wi-Fi 连接 | 在这种情况下，因为没有 Wi-Fi 连接，Wi-Fi 驱动程序不会受到副作用影响。如果 `en_sys_seq==true`，则 Wi-Fi 驱动程序负责序列控制。如果 `en_sys_seq==false`，应用程序需要确保缓冲区的序列正确。理论上，MAC 地址可以是任何地址。但是，这样可能会影响其他使用相同 MAC/BSSID 的 station/AP。例如，AP 模式下，应用程序调用函数 `esp_wifi_80211_tx()` 发送带有 BSSID == mac_x 的 beacon，但是 mac_x 并非 AP 接口的 MAC。而且，还有一个 AP（我们称之为“other-AP”）的 bssid 是 mac_x。因此，连接到“other-AP”的 station 无法分辨 beacon 来自“other-AP”还是 `esp_wifi_80211_tx()`。就会出现“意外行为”。为了避免上述副作用，我们建议：
- 如果在 station 模式下调用函数 `esp_wifi_80211_tx()`，第一个 MAC 应该是组播 MAC 或是目标设备的 MAC，第二个 MAC 应该是 station 接口的 MAC。
- 如果在 AP 模式下调用函数 `esp_wifi_80211_tx()`，第一个 MAC 应该是组播 MAC 或是目标设备的 MAC，第二个 MAC 应该是 AP 接口的 MAC。

上述建议仅供避免副作用，在有充分理由的情况下可以忽略。

| 有 Wi-Fi 连接 | 当 Wi-Fi 已连接，且序列由应用程序控制，应用程序可能会影响整个 Wi-Fi 连接的序列控制。因此，en_sys_seq 要为 true，否则将返回 ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG。

“无 Wi-Fi 连接”情况下的 MAC 地址建议适用于此情况。如果 Wi-Fi 模式是 station 模式，MAC 的地址 1 是 station 所连 AP 的 MAC，地址 2 是 station 接口的 MAC，那么称数据包是从 station 发送到 AP，另一方面。如果 Wi-Fi 模式是 AP 模式，且 MAC 地址 1 是该 AP 所连 station 的 MAC，地址 2 是 AP 接口的 MAC，那么称数据包是从 AP 发送到 station。为避免与 Wi-Fi 连接冲突，可采用以下检查方法：
- 如果数据包类型是数据，且是从 station 发送到 AP，IEEE 802.11 Frame control 字段中的 ToDS 位应该为 1，FromDS 位为 0，否则，Wi-Fi 驱动程序不接受该数据包。
- 如果数据包类型是数据，且是从 AP 发送到 station，IEEE 802.11 Frame control 字段中的 ToDS 位应该为 0，FromDS 位为 1，否则，Wi-Fi 驱动程序不接受该数据包。
- 如果数据包是从 station 发送到 AP，或从 AP 到 station，Power Management、More Data 和 Re-Transmission 位应该为 0，否则，Wi-Fi 驱动程序不接受该数据包。

如果任何检查失败，将返回 ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG。

### 4.34.21 Wi-Fi Sniffer 模式

Wi-Fi Sniffer 模式可以通过 `esp_wifi_set_promiscuous()` 使能。如果使能 Sniffer 模式，可以向应用程序转储以下数据。

- 802.11 管理帧
- 802.11 数据帧，包括 MPDU、AMPDU、AMSDU 等
- 802.11 MIMO 帧，Sniffer 模式仅转储 MIMO 帧的长度。
- 802.11 控制帧
- 802.11 CRC 错误帧

不可以向应用程序转储以下数据。

- 802.11 其他错误帧

对于 Sniffer 模式可以转储的帧，应用程序可以另外使用 `esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_filter()` 和 `esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_ctrl_filter()` 决定筛选哪些特定类型的数据包。应用程序默认筛选所有 802.11 数据和管理帧。
可以在 WiFi_MODE_NULL，WiFi_MODE_STA，WiFi_MODE_AP，WiFi_MODE_APSTA 等 WiFi 模式下使能 Wi-Fi Sniffer 模式。也就是说，当 station 连接到 AP，或者 AP 有 Wi-Fi 连接时，就可以使能。请注意，Sniffer 模式对 station/AP Wi-Fi 连接的吞吐量有很大影响。通常，除非有特别原因，当 station/AP Wi-Fi 连接出现大量流量，不应使能。

该模式下还应注意回调函数 wifi_promiscuous_cb 的使用。该回调将直接在 Wi-Fi 驱动程序任务中运行，所以如果应用程序需处理大量过滤的数据包，建议在回调中向应用程序任务发布一个事件，把真正的操作推迟到应用程序任务中完成。

### 4.3.4.22 Wi-Fi 多根天线

下图描述 Wi-Fi 多根天线的选择过程:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>Antenna</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX/TX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>antenna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>antenna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ESP32 通过外部天线开关，最多支持 16 根天线。天线开关最多可由四个地址管脚控制 - antenna_select[0:3]。向 antenna_select[0:3] 输入不同的值，以选择不同的天线。例如，输入值 ‘0b1011’ 表示选中天线 11。antenna_select[3:0] 的默认值为 “0b0000”，表示默认选择了天线 0。

四个高电平有效 antenna_select 管脚有达四个 GPIO 连接。ESP32 可以通过控制 GPIO[0:3] 选择天线。API esp_wifi_set_ant_gpio() 用于配置 antenna_selects 连接哪些 GPIO。如果 GPIO[x] 连接到 antenna_select[x]，gpio config->gpio_cfg[x].gpio_select 应设置为 1，且要提供 gpio_config->gpio_cfg[x].gpio_num 的值。

尽管最多支持 16 根天线，发送和接收数据时，最多仅能同时使能两根天线。API esp_wifi_set_ant() 用于配置使能哪根天线。

使能天线后，选择算法的过程同样可由 esp_wifi_set_ant() 配置。接收/发送数据源的天线模式可以是 WiFi_ANT_MODE_ANT0, WiFi_ANT_MODE_ANT1 或 WiFi_ANT_MODE_AUTO。如果天线模式为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_ANT0，使能的天线 0 用于接收/发送数据。如果天线模式为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_ANT1，使能天线 1 用于接收/发送数据。否则，Wi-Fi 会自动选择使能天线中信号较好的天线。

如果接收数据的天线模式为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_AUTO，还需要设置默认天线模式，只有在满足某些条件时，接收/发送天线才会切换。例如，如果 RSSI 低于 -65 dBm，或另一根天线信号更好。如果条件不满足，接收数据使用默认天线。如果默认天线模式为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_ANT1，使能的天线 1 是默认接收数据天线，否则是使能的天线 0。

有一些限制情况需要考虑：

- 因为发送数据天线基于 WiFi_ANT_MODE_AUTO 类型的接收数据天线选择算法，只有接收数据的天线模式为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_AUTO 时，发送数据天线才能设置为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_AUTO。
- 目前，Bluetooth 不支持多根天线功能，请不要使用与多根天线有关的 API。

推荐在以下场景中使用多根天线:

- Wi-Fi 模式 WiFi_MODE_STA 下，接收/发送数据的天线模式均配置为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_AUTO。Wi-Fi 驱动程序自动选择更好的接收/发送数据天线。
- 接收数据天线模式配置为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_AUTO。发送数据的天线模式配置为 WiFi_ANT_MODE_ANT0 或 WiFi_ANT_MODE_ANT1。应用程序可以始终选择指定的天线用于发

有关更多详情，请参阅《ESP32 Wi-Fi 指南》。
送数据，也可以执行自身发送数据天线选择算法，如根据信道切换信息选择发送数据的天线模式等。
- 接收/发送数据的天线模式均配置为 WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0 或 WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1。

**Wi-Fi 多根天线配置**

通常，可以执行以下步骤来配置多根天线:

- 配置 antenna selects 连接哪些 GPIOs，例如，如果支持四根天线，且 GPIO20/GPIO21 连接到 antenna select[0]/antenna select[1]，配置如下所示:

```c
wifi_ant_gpio_config_t config = {
    .gpio_select = 1, .gpio_num = 20,
    .gpio_select = 1, .gpio_num = 21
};
```

- 配置使能哪些天线、以及接收/发送数据如何使用使能的天线，例如，如果使能了天线 1 和天线 3，接收数据需要自动选择较好的天线，并将天线 1 作为默认天线，发送数据始终选择天线 3。配置如下所示:

```c
wifi_ant_config_t config = {
    .rx_ant_mode = WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO,
    .rx_ant_default = WIFI_ANT_ANT0,
    .tx_ant_mode = WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1,
    .enabled_ant0 = 1,
    .enabled_ant1 = 3
};
```

### 4.34.23 Wi-Fi 信道状态信息

信道状态信息 (CSI) 是指 Wi-Fi 连接的信道信息。ESP32 中，该信息由子载波的信道频率响应组成，并在从发送端接收数据包时进行估计。每个子载波信道频率响应由两个字节的签名字符记录，第一个字节是虚部，第二个是实部。根据接收数据包的类型，信道频率响应最多有三个字段。分别是传统的长训练字段 (LTF)、短训练字段 (HT-LTF) 和空间时间块代号 HT-LTF (STBC-HT-LTF)。对于在不同状态的信道上接收到的不同类型的CSI，CSI 的子载波指数和签名字符的总字节数如下表所示。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>信道带宽</th>
<th>信道模式</th>
<th>下</th>
<th>上</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20 MHz</td>
<td>HT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0~31 MHz</td>
<td>STBC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTF</td>
<td>0<del>31</del>32~1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0<del>31</del>32~1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0<del>31</del>32~1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STBC</td>
<td>0<del>31</del>32~1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HT-LTF</td>
<td>0<del>31</del>32~1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STBC-HT-LTF</td>
<td>0<del>31</del>32~1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>总字节数</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

表中的所有信息可以在 wifi_csi_info_t 结构中找到。
- 辅助信道指 rx_ctrl 字段的 secondary_channel 字段。
Chapter 4. API

- 数据包的信号模式指 rx_ctrl 字段的 sig_mode 字段。
- 信道带宽指 rx_ctrl 字段中的 cwb 字段。
- STBC 指 rx_ctrl 字段的 stbc 字段。
- 总字节数指 len 字段。
- 每个长训练字段 (LTF) 类型对应的 CSI 数据存储在从 buf 字段开始的缓冲区中。每个项目以两个字节的形式存储：虚部和实部。每个项目的顺序与表中的字节序相反。LTF 的顺序是 LLTF、HT-LTF 和 STBC-HT-LTF。但是，根据信道和数据包的信息，3 个 LTF 可能都不存在（见上文）。
- 如果 wifi_csi_info_t 的 first_word_invalid 字段为 true，表示由于 ESP32 的硬件限制，CSI 数据的前四个字节无效。
- 更多信息，如 RSSI，射频的噪声底，接收时间和天线 rx_ctrl 领域。

注解：
- 对于 STBC 数据包，每个空时流都提供了 CSI，不会出现 CSD（循环移位延迟）。由于附加链上的每一次循环移位为 -200 ns，因为子载波 0 中没有信道频率响应，在 HT-LTF 和 STBC-HT-LTF 中只记录第一空时流的 CSD 角度。CSD[100] 是 11 位。范围从 -pi 到 pi。
- 如果调用 API esp_wifi_set_csi_config() 设置 CSI 接收回调函数，ESP32 可以根据 CSI 数据的总字节数会比表中的少。例如，如果没有使能 LLTF 和 HT-LTF，而使能 STBC-HT-LTF，当接收到上述条件时，对 HT、40 MHz 或 STBC 的数据包时，CSI 数据的总字节数为 244 ((61+60)*2+2=244，结果对齐为四个字节，最后两个字节无效)。

4.34.24 Wi-Fi 信道状态信息配置

要使用 Wi-Fi CSI，需要执行以下步骤。

- 在菜单配置中选择 Wi-Fi CSI，方法是“菜单配置 -> 组件配置 -> Wi-Fi -> Wi-Fi CSI（信道状态信息）”。
- 调用 API esp_wifi_set_csi_rx_cb() 设置 CSI 接收回调函数。
- 调用 API esp_wifi_set_csi_config() 配置 CSI。
- 调用 API esp_wifi_set_csi() 使能 CSI。

CSI 接收回调函数从 Wi-Fi 任务中运行。因此，不要在回调函数中进行冗长的操作。但是需要将必要的数据发布到队列中，并从一个较低优先级的任务中处理。由于 station 在断开连接时不会收到任何数据包，只有在连接时才会收到来自 AP 的数据包，因此建议通过调用函数 esp_wifi_set_promiscuous() 使能 Sniffer 模式接收更多 CSI 数据。

4.34.25 Wi-Fi HT20/40

ESP32 支持 Wi-Fi 带宽 HT20 或 HT40，不支持 HT20/40 共存。调用函数 esp_wifi_set_bandwidth() 可改变 station/AP 的默认带宽。ESP32 station 和 AP 的默认带宽为 HT40。

station 模式下，实际带宽首先在 Wi-Fi 连接时协商。只有当 station 和所连 AP 都支持 HT40 时，带宽才为 HT40，否则为 HT20。如果所连的 AP 的带宽发生变化，则在不断开 Wi-Fi 连接的情况下再次协商实际带宽。

同样，在 AP 模式下，在 AP 与所连 station 协商实际带宽。如果 AP 和其中一个 station 支持 HT40，则为 HT40，否则为 HT20。

在 station/AP 共存模式下，station 和 AP 都可独立配置为 HT20/40。如果 station 和 AP 都协商为 HT40，由于 ESP32 中，station 的优先级总高于 AP，HT40 信道是 station 的信道。例如，AP 的配置带宽为 HT40，配置的主信道为 6，配置的辅助信道为 10。如果，station 所连路由器的主信道为 6，辅助信道为 2，AP 的实际信道将自动更改为主 6 和辅 2。

理论上，HT40 可以获得更大的吞吐量，因为 HT40 的最大原始 PHY 数据速率为 150 Mbps，而 HT20 为 72 Mbps。但是，如果设备在某些特殊环境中使用，例如，ESP32 周围其他 Wi-Fi 设备过多，HT40 的性能可能会降低。因此，如果应用程序需要支持相同或类似的情况，建议始终将带宽配置为 HT20。
4.34.26 Wi-Fi QoS

ESP32 支持 WFA Wi-Fi QoS 认证所要求的所有必备功能。

Wi-Fi 协议中定义了四个 AC（访问类别），每个 AC 有各自的优先级访问 Wi-Fi 信道。此外，还定义了映射规则以映射其他协议的 QoS 优先级，例如 802.11D 或 TCP/IP 到 Wi-Fi AC。

下表描述 ESP32 中 IP 优先级如何映射到 Wi-Fi AC，还指明此 AC 是否支持 AMPDU。该表按优先级降序排列，即 AC_VO 拥有最高优先级。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP 优先级</th>
<th>Wi-Fi AC</th>
<th>是否支持 AMPDU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6, 7</td>
<td>AC_VO (Voice)</td>
<td>否</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, 5</td>
<td>AC_VI (Video)</td>
<td>是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3, 0</td>
<td>AC_BE (Best Effort)</td>
<td>是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>AC_BK (Background)</td>
<td>是</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

应用程序可以通过套接字选项 IP_TOS 配置 IP 优先级使用 QoS 功能。下面是使套接字使用 VI 队列的示例：

```c
const int ipprecedence_vi = 4;
const int ipprecedence_offset = 5;
int priority = (ipprecedence_vi << ipprecedence_offset);
setsockopt(socket_id, IPPROTO_IP, IP_TOS, &priority, sizeof(priority));
```

理论上，高优先级的 AC 比低优先级 AC 具有更好的性能，但并非总是如此。下面是一些关于如何使用 Wi-Fi QoS 的建议：

- 可以把一些真正重要的应用程序流量放到 AC_VO 队列中。避免通过 AC_VO 队列发送大流量。一方面，AC_VO 队列不支持 AMPDU，如果流量很大，性能不会优于其他队列。另一方面，可能会受影响同样使用 AC_VO 队列的管理帧。
- 避免使用 AMPDU 支持的。两个以上的不同队列，比如 socket A 使用优先级 0，socket B 使用优先级 1，socket C 使用优先级 2。因为可能需要更多的内存，不是好的设计。具体来说，Wi-Fi 驱动程序可能会为每个优先级生成一个 Block Ack 会话，如果设置了 Block Ack 会话，则需要更多内存。

4.34.27 Wi-Fi AMSDU

ESP32 支持接收和发送 AMSDU。

4.34.28 Wi-Fi 分片

支持 Wi-Fi 接收分片，但不支持 Wi-Fi 发送分片。

4.34.29 WPS 注册

在 Wi-Fi 模式 WIFI_MODE_STA 或 WIFI_MODE_APSTA 下，ESP32 支持 WPS 注册功能。目前，ESP32 支持的 WPS enrollee 类型有 PBC 和 PIN。

4.34.30 Wi-Fi 缓冲区使用情况

本节只介绍动态缓冲区配置。
缓冲区配置的重要性

为了获得一个具有强健、高性能的系统，我们需要非常谨慎地考虑内存的使用或配置情况，因为：

- ESP32 的可用内存有限。
- 目前，LwIP 和 Wi-Fi 驱动程序中默认的缓冲区类型是“动态”，意味着 LwIP 和 Wi-Fi 都与应用程序共享内存。程序员应该时刻牢记这一点，否则将面临如“堆内存耗尽”等的内存问题。
- “堆耗尽”情况非常危险，会导致 ESP32 出现“未定义”行为。因此，应该为应用程序预留足够的堆内存，防止耗尽。
- Wi-Fi 的吞吐量很大程度上取决于与内存相关的配置，如 TCP 窗口大小、Wi-Fi 接收/发送数据动态缓冲区数量等。
- ESP32 LwIP/Wi-Fi 可能使用的堆内存峰值取决于许多因素，例如应用程序可能拥有的最大 TCP/UDP 连接等。
- 在考虑内存配置时，应用程序所需的总内存也是一个重要因素。

由于这些原因，不存在一个适合所有应用程序的配置。相反，我们必须为每个不同的应用程序考虑不同的内存配置。

动态与静态缓冲区

Wi-Fi 驱动程序中默认的缓冲类型是“动态”。大多数情况下，动态缓冲区可以极大地节省内存。但是因为应用程序需要考虑 Wi-Fi 的内存使用情况，会给应用程序编程造成一定的难度。

LwIP 还有 TCP/IP 层分配缓冲区，这种缓冲区分配也是动态的。具体内容，见 LwIP 文档内存使用和性能部分。

Wi-Fi 动态缓冲区峰值

Wi-Fi 驱动程序支持多种类型的缓冲区（参考 Wi-Fi 缓冲区配置）。但本节只介绍 Wi-Fi 动态缓冲的使用方法 Wi-Fi 使用的堆内存峰值是 Wi-Fi 驱动程序理论上消耗的最大内存。通常，该内存峰值取决于：

- 配置的动态接收数据缓冲区数：wifi_rx_dynamic_buf_num
- 配置的动态发送数据缓冲区数：wifi_tx_dynamic_buf_num
- Wi-Fi 驱动程序可以接收的最大数据包：wifi_rx_pkt_size_max
- Wi-Fi 驱动程序可以发送的最大数据包：wifi_tx_pkt_size_max

因此，Wi-Fi 驱动程序消耗的内存峰值可以用下面的公式计算：

\[
\text{wifi_dynamic_peek_memory} = (\text{wifi_rx_dynamic_buf_num} \times \text{wifi_rx_pkt_size_max}) + (
\text{wifi_tx_dynamic_buf_num} \times \text{wifi_tx_pkt_size_max})
\]

一般情况下，不需要关心动态发送数据长缓冲区和超长缓冲区，因为它们是管理帧，对系统的影响很小。

4.34.31 如何提高 Wi-Fi 性能

ESP32 Wi-Fi 的性能受许多参数的影响，各参数之间存在相互制约。如果配置地合理，不仅可以提高性能，还可以增加应用程序的可用内存，提高稳定性。

在本节中，我们将简单介绍 Wi-Fi/LWIP 协议栈的工作模式，并说明各个参数的作用。我们将推荐几种配置等级，您可以根据使用场景选择合适的等级。

协议栈工作模式

ESP32 协议栈分为四层，分别为应用层、LWIP 层、Wi-Fi 层和硬件层。

- 在接收过程中，硬件将接收到的数据包放入 DMA 缓冲区，然后依次传送到 Wi-Fi 的接收数据缓冲区，LWIP 的接收数据缓冲区进行相关协议处理，然后传送到应用层。Wi-Fi 的接收数据缓冲区和 LWIP 的接收数据缓冲区默认共享同一个缓冲区。也就是说，Wi-Fi 默认将数据包转发到 LWIP 作为参考。
在发送过程中，应用程序首先将要发送的消息复制到 LWIP 层的发送数据缓冲区，进行 TCP/IP 封装。然后将消息发送到 Wi-Fi 层的发送数据缓冲区进行 MAC 封装，最后等待发送。

参数

适当增加上述缓冲区的大小或数量，可以提高 Wi-Fi 性能，但同时，会减少应用程序的可用内存。下面我们将介绍您需要配置的参数：

接收数据方向：

- `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM` 该参数表示硬件层的 DMA 缓冲区数量。提高该参数将增加发送方的一次性接收吞吐量，从而提高 Wi-Fi 协议栈处理突发流量的能力。
- `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM` 该参数表示 Wi-Fi 层中接收数据缓冲区的数量。提高该参数可以增强数据包的接收性能。该参数需要与 LWIP 层的接收数据缓冲区大小相匹配。
- `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_BA_WIN` 该参数表示接收端 AMPDU BA 窗口的大小，应配置为 `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM` 和 `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM` 的二倍数值中较小的数值。
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCPWND_DEFAULT` 该参数表示 LWIP 层用于每个 TCP 流的接收数据缓冲区大小，应配置为 `LWIP_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM (KB)` 的值，从而实现高稳定性。同时，在有多个流的情况下，应相应降低该参数值。

发送数据方向：

- `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BUFFER` 该参数表示发送数据缓冲区的类型，建议配置为动态缓冲区，该配置可以充分利用内存。
- `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM` 该参数表示 Wi-Fi 层发送数据缓冲区数量。提高该参数可以增强数据包发送的性能。该参数值需要与 LWIP 层的发送数据缓冲区大小相匹配。
- `CONFIG_LWIP_TCPSEND_BUF_DEFAULT` 该参数表示 LWIP 层用于每个 TCP 流的发送数据缓冲区大小，应配置为 `LWIP_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM (KB)` 的值，从而实现高稳定性。在有多个流的情况下，应相应降低该参数值。

通过在 IRAM 中放置代码优化吞吐量：

- `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT` 如果使能该选项，一些 Wi-Fi 功能将被移至 IRAM，从而提高吞吐量，IRAM 使用量将增加 15 kB。
- `CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT` 如果使能该选项，一些 Wi-Fi 接收数据功能将被移至 IRAM，从而提高吞吐量，IRAM 使用量将增加 16 kB。
• **CONFIG_LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION** 如果使能该选项，一些 LWIP 功能将被移至 IRAM，从而提高吞吐量，IRAM 使用量将增加 13 kB。

注解：上述的缓冲区大小固定为 1.6 KB。

如何配置参数

ESP32 的内存由协议栈和应用程序共享。

在这里，我们给出了几种配置等级。在大多数情况下，您应根据应用程序所占用内存的大小，选择合适的等级进行参数配置。

下表中未提及的参数应设置为默认值。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>等级</th>
<th>Iperf</th>
<th>发送数据优先</th>
<th>高性能</th>
<th>接收数据优先</th>
<th>默认值</th>
<th>节省内存</th>
<th>最小</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>可用内存 (KB)</td>
<td>37.1</td>
<td>113.8</td>
<td>123.3</td>
<td>145.5</td>
<td>144.5</td>
<td>170.2</td>
<td>185.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>禁用</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP_SNDRBUF_DEFAULT (KB)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>禁用</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP_WND_DEFAULT</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_IRAM_OPT</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 发送数据吞吐量 (Mbit/s)</td>
<td>74.6</td>
<td>50.8</td>
<td>46.5</td>
<td>39.9</td>
<td>44.2</td>
<td>33.8</td>
<td>25.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 接收数据吞吐量 (Mbit/s)</td>
<td>63.6</td>
<td>35.5</td>
<td>42.3</td>
<td>48.5</td>
<td>40.5</td>
<td>30.1</td>
<td>27.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP 发送数据吞吐量 (Mbit/s)</td>
<td>76.2</td>
<td>75.1</td>
<td>74.1</td>
<td>72.4</td>
<td>69.6</td>
<td>64.1</td>
<td>36.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP 接收数据吞吐量 (Mbit/s)</td>
<td>83.1</td>
<td>66.3</td>
<td>75.1</td>
<td>75.6</td>
<td>73.1</td>
<td>65.3</td>
<td>54.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注解：以上结果使用华硕 RT-N66U 路由器，在屏蔽箱中进行单流测试得出。ESP32 的 CPU 为双核，频率为 240 MHz，flash 为 QIO 模式，频率为 80 MHz。

等级：

• **Iperf 等级** ESP32 的极端性能等级，用于测试极端性能。
• **高性能等级** ESP32 的高性能配置等级，适用于应用程序占用内存较少且有高性能要求的场景。在该等级中，您可以根据使用场景选择使用接收数据优先等级或发送数据优先等级。
• **默认等级** ESP32 的默认配置等级，兼顾可用内存和性能。
• **节省内存等级** 该等级适用于应用程序需要大量内存的场景。在这一等级下，收发器的性能会有所降低。
• **最小等级** ESP32 的最小配置等级。协议栈只使用运行所需的内存。适用于对性能没有要求，而应用程序需要大量内存的场景。
使用 PSRAM

PSRAM 一般在应用程序占用大量内存时使用。在该模式下，`CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BUFFER` 被强制为静态。`CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM` 表示硬件层 DMA 缓冲区数量，提高这一参数可以增强性能。以下是使用 PSRAM 时的推荐等级。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>等级</th>
<th>iperf</th>
<th>默认</th>
<th>节省内存</th>
<th>最小</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>可用静态 (KB)</td>
<td>113.8</td>
<td>152.4</td>
<td>181.2</td>
<td>202.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_RX_BW</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>禁用</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT (KB)</td>
<td>DEFUALT</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_IRAM_OPT</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 发送数据吞吐量 (Mbit/s)</td>
<td>37.5</td>
<td>31.7</td>
<td>21.7</td>
<td>14.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP 接收数据吞吐量 (Mbit/s)</td>
<td>31.5</td>
<td>29.8</td>
<td>26.5</td>
<td>21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP 发送数据吞吐量 (Mbit/s)</td>
<td>69.1</td>
<td>31.5</td>
<td>27.1</td>
<td>24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDP 接收数据吞吐量 (Mbit/s)</td>
<td>40.1</td>
<td>38.5</td>
<td>37.5</td>
<td>36.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.34.32 Wi-Fi Menuconfig

Wi-Fi 缓冲区配置

如果您要修改默认的缓冲区数量或类型，最好也了解缓冲区在数据路径中是如何分配或释放的。下图显示了发送数据方向的这一过程。

![TX Buffer Allocation Diagram](image)

图 59: TX Buffer Allocation

描述:
- 应用程序分配需要发送的数据。
- 应用程序调用 TCPIP 或套接字相关的 API 发送用户数据。这些 API 会分配一个在 LwIP 中使用的 PBUF，并复制用户数据。
- 当 LwIP 调用 Wi-Fi API 发送 PBUF 时，Wi-Fi API 会分配一个“动态发送数据缓冲区”或“静态发送数据缓冲区”，并复制 LwIP PBUF，最后发送数据。

下图展示了如何在接收数据方向分配或释放缓冲区:
图 60: 接收数据缓冲区分配

描述:

- Wi-Fi 硬件在空中接收到数据包后，将数据包内容放到“静态接收数据缓冲区”，也就是“接收数据DMA缓冲区”。
- Wi-Fi 驱动程序分配一个“动态接收数据缓冲区”，复制“静态接收数据缓冲区”，并将“静态接收数据缓冲区”返回给硬件。
- Wi-Fi 驱动程序将数据包传送到上层 (LwIP)，并分配一个 PBUF 用于存放“动态接收数据缓冲区”。
- 应用程序从 LwIP 接收数据。

下表是 Wi-Fi 内部缓冲区的配置情况。
## 线程类型
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>分配类型</th>
<th>默认</th>
<th>是否可配置</th>
<th>描述</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>静态接收</strong></td>
<td>静态</td>
<td>10 * 1600 Bytes</td>
<td>是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>动态接收</strong></td>
<td>动态</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>动态发送</strong></td>
<td>动态</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>静态发送</strong></td>
<td>静态</td>
<td>16 * 1600 Bytes</td>
<td>是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>管理短缓冲区</strong></td>
<td>动态</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>否</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>管理长缓冲区</strong></td>
<td>动态</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>否</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>管理超长缓冲区</strong></td>
<td>动态</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>否</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Wi-Fi NVS Flash

如果使用 Wi-Fi NVS flash，所有通过 Wi-Fi API 设置的 Wi-Fi 配置会先被存储到 flash 中。Wi-Fi 驱动程序在下次开启或重启时将自动加载这些配置。但是，应用程序可视情况禁用 Wi-Fi NVS flash，例如：其配置信息不需要存储在非易失性内存中，其配置信息已安全备份，或仅用于某些调试原因等。
Wi-Fi AMPDU

ESP32 同时支持接收和发送 AMPDU，AMPDU 可以大大提高 Wi-Fi 的吞吐量。
通常，应使用 AMPDU。禁用 AMPDU 通常用于调试目的。

4.34.33 故障排除

请见乐鑫 Wireshark 使用指南。

乐鑫 Wireshark 使用指南

1. 概述

1.1 什么是 Wireshark？ Wireshark（原名 Ethereal）是一个网络封包分析软件。网络封包分析软件的功能是捕获网络封包，并尽可能显示出最为详细的网络封包资料。Wireshark 使用 WinPCAP 作为接口，直接与网卡进行数据报文交换。

网络封包分析软件的功能可想像成“电工技师使用电表来测量电流、电压、电阻”的工作，只是将场景移植到网络上，并将电线替换成网线。

在过去，网络封包分析软件是非常昂贵，或是专门属于营利的软件。Wireshark 的出现改变了这一切。

在 GNU GPL 通用许可证的保障范围下，使用者可以以免费的代价取得软件与其源代码，并拥有针对其源代码修改及客制化的权利。

Wireshark 是目前全世界最广泛的网络封包分析软件之一。

1.2 Wireshark 的主要应用 下面是 Wireshark 一些应用的举例：

- 网络管理员用来解决网络问题
- 网络安全工程师用来检测安全隐患
- 开发人员用来测试协议执行情况
- 用来学习网络协议

除了上面提到的，Wireshark 还可以用在其它许多场合。

1.3 Wireshark 的特性

- 支持 UNIX 和 Windows 平台
- 在接口实时捕捉包
- 能详细显示包的详细协议信息
- 可以打开/保存捕捉的包
- 可以导入导出其他捕捉程序支持的包数据格式
- 可以通过多种方式过滤包
- 多种方式查找包
- 通过过滤以多种色彩显示包
- 创建多种统计分析
- 等等

1.4 Wireshark 的“能”与“不能”？

- 捕捉多种网络接口
  Wireshark 可以捕捉多种网络接口类型的包，哪怕是无线局域网接口。
- 支持多种其它程序捕捉的文件
  Wireshark 可以打开多种网络分析软件捕捉的包。
- 支持多种格式输出
  Wireshark 可以将捕捉文件输出为多种其他捕捉软件支持的格式。
Chapter 4. API 指南

- 对多种协议解码提供支持
  Wireshark 可以支持许多协议的解码。
- Wireshark 不是入侵检测系统
  如果您的网络中存在任何可疑活动，Wireshark 并不会主动发出警告。不过，当您希望对这些可疑活动一探究竟时，Wireshark 可以发挥作用。
- Wireshark 不会处理网络事务，它仅仅是“测量”（监视）网络
  Wireshark 不会发送网络包或做其它交互性的事情（名称解析除外，但您也可以禁止解析）。

2. 如何获取 Wireshark 官网链接：https://www.wireshark.org/download.html

Wireshark 支持多种操作系统，请在下载安装文件时，注意选择与您所用操作系统匹配的安装文件。

3. 使用步骤 本文档以 Linux 系统下的 Wireshark（版本号：2.2.6）为例。

1) 启动 Wireshark

Linux 下，可编写一个 Shell 脚本，运行该文件即可启动 Wireshark 配置抓包网卡和信道。Shell 脚本如下：

```bash
ifconfig $1 down
iwconfig $1 mode monitor
iwconfig $1 channel $2
ifconfig $1 up
Wireshark&
```

脚本中有两个参数：$1 和 $2，分别表示网卡和信道。例如，./xxx.sh wlan0 6（此处，wlan0 即为抓包使用的网卡，后面的数字 6 即为 AP 或 soft-AP 所在的 channel）。

2) 运行 Shell 脚本打开 Wireshark，会出现 Wireshark 抓包开始界面

![Wireshark界面](image)

图 61: Wireshark 抓包界面

3) 选择接口，开始抓包

从上图红色框中可以看到有多个接口，第一个为本地网卡，第二个为无线网络。

可根据自己的需求选取相应的网卡，本文是以利用无线网卡抓取空中包为例进行简单说明。

双击 wlan0 即可开始抓包。

4) 设置过滤条件

抓包过程中会抓取到信道所有的空中包，但其实很多都是我们不需要的，因此很多时候我们会设置抓包的过滤条件从而得到我们想要的包。

下图中红色框内即为设置 filter 的位置。
图 62: 设置 Wireshark 过滤条件

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>00:02:44:69</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>8c:5e:2a:4b:6c:7d</td>
<td>80:02</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0xFF 0x10 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

图 63: Display Filter 对话框
点击 Filter 按钮（下图的左上角蓝色按钮）会弹出 display filter 对话框。

点击 Expression 按钮，会出现 Filter Expression 对话框，在此你可以根据需求进行 filter 的设置。

### 图 64: Filter Expression 对话框

**最直接的方法**：直接在工具栏上输入过滤条件。

### 图 65: 过滤条件工具栏

点击在此区域输入或修改显示的过滤字符，在输入过程中会进行语法检查。如果您输入的格式不正确，或者未输入完成，则背景显示为红色。直到您输入合法的表达式，背景会变为绿色。你可以点击下拉列表选择您先前编写的过滤字符。列表会一直保留，即使您重新启动程序。

例如：下图所示，直接输入 2 个 MAC 作为过滤条件，点击 Apply（即图中的蓝色箭头），则表示只抓取 2 个此 MAC 地址之间的交互的包。

### 图 66: 在过滤条件工具栏中运用 MAC 地址过滤示例

5) 封包列表

若想查看包的具体信息只需要选中要查看的包，在界面的下方会显示出包的具体的格式和包的内容。

如上图所示，我要查看第 1 个包，选中此包，图中红色框中即为包的具体内容。

6) 停止/开始包的捕捉

若要停止当前抓包，点击下图的红色按钮即可。

若要重新开始抓包，点击下图左上角的蓝色按钮即可。

7) 保存当前捕捉包
图67: 封包列表具体信息示例

图68: 停止包的捕捉

图69: 开始或继续包的捕捉
4.35 Wi-Fi Security

4.35.1 ESP32 Wi-Fi Security Features

- Support for Protected Management Frames (PMF)
- Support for WPA3-Personal

In addition to traditional security methods (WEP/WPA-TKIP/WPA2-CCMP), ESP32 Wi-Fi supports state-of-the-art security protocols, namely Protected Management Frames based on 802.11w standard and Wi-Fi Protected Access 3 (WPA3-Personal). Together, PMF and WPA3 provide better privacy and robustness against known attacks on traditional modes.

4.35.2 Protected Management Frames (PMF)

Introduction

In Wi-Fi, management frames such as beacons, probes, (de)authentication, (dis)association are used by non-AP stations to scan and connect to an AP. Unlike data frames, these frames are sent unencrypted. An attacker can use eavesdropping and packet injection to send spoofed (de)authentication/(dis)association frames at the right time, leading to the following attacks in case of unprotected management frame exchanges.

- DOS attack on one or all clients in the range of the attacker.
- Tearing down existing association on AP side by sending association request.
- Forcing a client to perform 4-way handshake again in case PSK is compromised in order to get PTK.
- Getting SSID of hidden network from association request.
- Launching man-in-the-middle attack by forcing clients to deauth from legitimate AP and associating to a rogue one.
PMF provides protection against these attacks by encrypting unicast management frames and providing integrity checks for broadcast management frames. These include deauthentication, disassociation and robust management frames. It also provides Secure Association (SA) teardown mechanism to prevent spoofed association/authentication frames from disconnecting already connected clients.

**API & Usage**

`esp_wifi_set_config()` can be used to configure PMF mode by setting appropriate flags in `pmf_cfg` parameter. Currently, PMF is supported only in Station mode. While setting up a Station, configure PMF using two flags `capable` and `required` like below.

```c
wifi_config_t wifi_config = {
    .sta = {
        .ssid = EXAMPLE_WIFI_SSID,
        .password = EXAMPLE_WIFI_PASSWORD,
        .pmf_cfg = {
            .capable = true,
            .required = false
        }
    }
};
```

ESP32 supports three modes of PMF by combination of these two flags -

- **PMF Optional**: `.capable = true, .required = false`
- **PMF Required**: `.capable = true, .required = true`
- **PMF Disabled**: `.capable = false, .required = false`

Depending on what AP side PMF Mode is, the resulting connection will behave differently. The table below summarises all possible outcomes -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STA Setting</th>
<th>AP Setting</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PMF Optional</td>
<td>PMF Optional/Required</td>
<td>Mgmt Frames Protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMF Optional</td>
<td>PMF Disabled</td>
<td>Mgmt Frames Not Protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMF Required</td>
<td>PMF Optional/Required</td>
<td>Mgmt Frames Protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMF Required</td>
<td>PMF Disabled</td>
<td>STA refuses Connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMF Disabled</td>
<td>PMF Optional/Disabled</td>
<td>Mgmt Frames Not Protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMF Disabled</td>
<td>PMF Required</td>
<td>AP refuses Connection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PMF Optional Mode, which is shown in the example of `wifi_config_t`, is suggested to be used in all Station configurations. This is to take the additional security benefit of PMF whenever possible without breaking connections with legacy AP’s.

**4.35.3 WPA3-Personal**

**Introduction**

Wi-Fi Protected Access-3 (WPA3) is a set of enhancements to Wi-Fi access security intended to replace the current WPA2 standard. It includes new features and capabilities that offer significantly better protection against different types of attacks. It improves upon WPA2-Personal in following ways:

- **WPA3 uses Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE)**, which is password-authenticated key agreement method based on Diffie-Hellman key exchange. Unlike WPA2, the technology is resistant to offline-dictionary attack, where the attacker attempts to determine shared password based on captured 4-way handshake without any further network interaction.
- **Disallows outdated protocols such as TKIP**, which is susceptible to simple attacks like MIC key recovery attack.
- **Mandates Protected Management Frames (PMF)**, which provides protection for unicast and multicast robust management frames which include Disassoc and Deauth frames. This means that the attacker cannot disrupt...
an established WPA3 session by sending forged Assoc frames to the AP or Deauth/Disassoc frames to the Station.

- Provides forward secrecy, which means the captured data cannot be decrypted even if password is compromised after data transmission.

Please refer to Security section of Wi-Fi Alliance’s official website for further details.

**Setting up WPA3 with ESP32**

In IDF Menuconfig under Wi-Fi component, a config option “Enable WPA3-Personal” is provided to Enable/Disable WPA3. By default it is kept enabled, if disabled ESP32 will not be able to establish a WPA3 connection. Currently, WPA3 is supported only in the Station mode. Additionally, since PMF is mandated by WPA3 protocol, PMF Mode should be set to either Optional or Required while setting WiFi config.

Refer to Protected Management Frames (PMF) on how to set this mode.

After these settings are done, Station is ready to use WPA3-Personal. Application developers need not worry about the underlying security mode of the AP. WPA3-Personal is now the highest supported protocol in terms of security, so it will be automatically selected for the connection whenever available. For example, if an AP is configured to be in WPA3 Transition Mode, where it will advertise as both WPA2 and WPA3 capable, Station will choose WPA3 for the connection with above settings. Note that Wi-Fi stack size requirement will increase 3kB when WPA3 is used.
Chapter 5

ESP-IDF 5.0 迁移指南

5.1 Migrate Windows Environment to ESP-IDF 5.0

The Msys/Mingw-based Windows environment support got deprecated in ESP-IDF v4.0 and was entirely removed in v5.0. Please use ESP-IDF 工具安装器 to set up a compatible environment. The options include Windows Command Line, Power Shell and the graphical user interface based on Eclipse IDE. In addition, a VS Code-based environment can be set up with the supported plugin: https://github.com/espressif/vscode-esp-idf-extension.

5.2 Migrate Peripherals to ESP-IDF 5.0

5.2.1 Peripheral Clock Gating

As usual, peripheral clock gating is still handled by driver itself, users don’t need to take care of the peripheral module clock gating.

However, for advanced users who implement their own drivers based on hal and soc components, the previous clock gating include path has been changed from driver/periph_ctrl.h to esp_private/periph_ctrl.h.

5.3 Migrate Build System to ESP-IDF 5.0

Please follow the build system guide for migrating make-based projects no longer supported in ESP-IDF v5.0.

5.4 Migrate System to ESP-IDF 5.0

5.4.1 Inter-Processor Call

IPC (Inter-Processor Call) component has been moved to esp_system.

Thus, any project presenting a CMakeLists.txt file with the parameters PRIV_REQUIRES esp_ipc or REQUIRES esp_ipc, should be modified to simply remove these options as esp_system component is included by default.

5.5 Migrate Ethernet Drivers to ESP-IDF 5.0
5.5.1 esp_eth_ioctl() API

`esp_eth_ioctl()` third argument could take `int (bool)` number as an input in some cases. However, it was not properly documented and, in addition, the number had to be “unnaturally” type casted to `void *` data type to prevent compiler warnings as shown in below example:

```c
esp_eth_ioctl(eth_handle, ETH_CMD_S_FLOW_CTRL, (void *)true);
```

This could lead to misuse of the `esp_eth_ioctl()`. Therefore, ESP-IDF 5.0 unified usage of `esp_eth_ioctl()`. Its third argument now always acts as pointer to a memory location of specific type from/to where the configuration option is read/stored.

Usage example to set Ethernet configuration:

```c
eth_duplex_t new_duplex_mode = ETH_DUPLEX_HALF;
esp_eth_ioctl(eth_handle, ETH_CMD_S_DUPLEX_MODE, &new_duplex_mode);
```

Usage example to get Ethernet configuration:

```c
eth_duplex_t duplex_mode;
esp_eth_ioctl(eth_handle, ETH_CMD_G_DUPLEX_MODE, &duplex_mode);
```
Chapter 6

Libraries and Frameworks

6.1 Cloud Frameworks

ESP32 supports multiple cloud frameworks using agents built on top of ESP-IDF. Here are the pointers to various supported cloud frameworks’ agents and examples:

6.1.1 ESP RainMaker

ESP RainMaker is a complete solution for accelerated AlIoT development. ESP RainMaker on GitHub.

6.1.2 AWS IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-aws-iot is an open source repository for ESP32 based on Amazon Web Services’ aws-iot-device-sdk-embedded-C.

6.1.3 Azure IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-azure is an open source repository for ESP32 based on Microsoft Azure’s azure-iot-sdk-c SDK.

6.1.4 Google IoT Core

https://github.com/espressif/esp-google-iot is an open source repository for ESP32 based on Google’s iot-device-sdk-embedded-c SDK.

6.1.5 Aliyun IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-aliyun is an open source repository for ESP32 based on Aliyun’s iotkit-embedded SDK.

6.1.6 Joylink IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-joylink is an open source repository for ESP32 based on Joylink’s joylink_dev_sdk SDK.
6.1.7  Tencent IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-welink is an open source repository for ESP32 based on Tencent’s welink SDK.

6.1.8  Tencentyun IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-qcloud is an open source repository for ESP32 based on Tencentyun’s qcloud-iot-sdk-embedded-c SDK.

6.1.9  Baidu IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-baidu-iot is an open source repository for ESP32 based on Baidu’s iot-sdk-c SDK.

6.2  Espressif’s Frameworks

Here you will find a collection of the official Espressif libraries and frameworks.

6.2.1  Espressif Audio Development Framework

The ESP-ADF is a comprehensive framework for audio applications including:

- CODEC’s HAL
- Music Players and Recorders
- Audio Processing
- Bluetooth Speakers
- Internet Radios
- Hands-free devices
- Speech Recognition

This framework is available at GitHub: ESP-ADF.

6.2.2  ESP-CSI

ESP-CSI is an experimental implementation that uses the Wi-Fi Channel State Information to detect the presence of a human body.

See ESP-CSI project for more information about it.

6.2.3  Espressif DSP Library

The library provides algorithms optimized specifically for digital signal processing applications. This library supports:

- Matrix multiplication
- Dot product
- FFT (Fast Fourier Transform)
- IIR (Infinite Impulse Response)
- FIR (Finite Impulse Response)
- Vector math operations

This library is available here: ESP-DSP library.
6.2.4 ESP-WIFI-MESH Development Framework

This framework is based on the ESP-WIFI-MESH protocol with the following features:

- Fast network configuration
- Stable upgrade
- Efficient debugging
- LAN control
- Various application demos

ESP-MDF.

6.2.5 ESP-WHO

The ESP-WHO is a face detection and recognition framework using the ESP32 and camera. To know more about the project, see ESP-WHO on GitHub.

6.2.6 ESP RainMaker

ESP RainMaker is a complete solution for accelerated AIoT development. Using ESP RainMaker, you can create AIoT devices from the firmware to the integration with voice-assistant, phone apps and cloud backend.

ESP RainMaker on GitHub.

6.2.7 ESP-IoT-Solution

ESP-IoT-Solution contains commonly used device drivers and code frameworks when developing IoT systems. The device drivers and code frameworks within the ESP-IoT-Solution are organized as separate components, allowing them to be easily integrated into an ESP-IDF project.

ESP-IoT-Solution includes:

- Device drivers for sensors, display, audio, GUI, input, actuators, etc.
- Framework and documentation for low power, security, storage, etc.
- Guide for Espressif open source solutions from practical application point.

ESP-IoT-Solution on GitHub.
Chapter 7

Contributions Guide

We welcome contributions to the esp-idf project!

7.1 How to Contribute

Contributions to esp-idf - fixing bugs, adding features, adding documentation - are welcome. We accept contributions via Github Pull Requests.

7.2 Before Contributing

Before sending us a Pull Request, please consider this list of points:

- Is the contribution entirely your own work, or already licensed under an Apache License 2.0 compatible Open Source License? If not then we unfortunately cannot accept it. Please check the Copyright Header Guide for additional information.
- Does any new code conform to the esp-idf Style Guide?
- Have you installed the pre-commit hook for esp-idf project?
- Does the code documentation follow requirements in Documenting Code?
- Is the code adequately commented for people to understand how it is structured?
- Is there documentation or examples that go with code contributions? There are additional suggestions for writing good examples in examples readme.
- Are comments and documentation written in clear English, with no spelling or grammar errors?
- Example contributions are also welcome. Please check the guide for these.
- If the contribution contains multiple commits, are they grouped together into logical changes (one major change per pull request)? Are any commits with names like “fixed typo” squashed into previous commits?
- If you’re unsure about any of these points, please open the Pull Request anyhow and then ask us for feedback.

7.3 Pull Request Process

After you open the Pull Request, there will probably be some discussion in the comments field of the request itself. Once the Pull Request is ready to merge, it will first be merged into our internal git system for in-house automated testing.

If this process passes, it will be merged onto the public github repository.
Chapter 7. Contributions Guide

7.4 Legal Part

Before a contribution can be accepted, you will need to sign our Contributor Agreement. You will be prompted for this automatically as part of the Pull Request process.

7.5 Related Documents

7.5.1 Espressif IoT Development Framework Style Guide

About This Guide

Purpose of this style guide is to encourage use of common coding practices within the ESP-IDF.

Style guide is a set of rules which are aimed to help create readable, maintainable, and robust code. By writing code which looks the same way across the code base we help others read and comprehend the code. By using same conventions for spaces and newlines we reduce chances that future changes will produce huge unreadable diffs. By following common patterns for module structure and by using language features consistently we help others understand code behavior.

We try to keep rules simple enough, which means that they can not cover all potential cases. In some cases one has to bend these simple rules to achieve readability, maintainability, or robustness.

When doing modifications to third-party code used in ESP-IDF, follow the way that particular project is written. That will help propose useful changes for merging into upstream project.

C Code Formatting

Naming

- Any variable or function which is only used in a single source file should be declared static.
- Public names (non-static variables and functions) should be namespaced with a per-component or per-unit prefix, to avoid naming collisions. ie esp_vfs_register() or esp_console_run(). Starting the prefix with esp_ for Espressif-specific names is optional, but should be consistent with any other names in the same component.
- Static variables should be prefixed with s_ for easy identification. For example, static bool s_invert.
- Avoid unnecessary abbreviations (ie shortening data to dat), unless the resulting name would otherwise be very long.

Indentation       Use 4 spaces for each indentation level. Don’t use tabs for indentation. Configure the editor to emit 4 spaces each time you press tab key.

Vertical Space     Place one empty line between functions. Don’t begin or end a function with an empty line.

```c
void function1()
{
    do_one_thing();
    do_another_thing();
} // INCORRECT, don't place empty line here

void function2()
{
    // INCORRECT, don't use an empty line here
    int var = 0;
    while (var < SOME_CONSTANT) {
        do_stuff(&var);
    }

    // place empty line here
```
The maximum line length is 120 characters as long as it doesn’t seriously affect the readability.

**Horizontal Space** Always add single space after conditional and loop keywords:

```c
if (condition) {  // correct
    // ...
}

switch (n) {      // correct
    case 0:
        // ...
}

for (int i = 0; i < CONST; ++i) {    // INCORRECT
    // ...
}
```

Add single space around binary operators. No space is necessary for unary operators. It is okay to drop space around multiply and divide operators:

```c
const int y = y0 + (x - x0) * (y1 - y0) / (x1 - x0);       // correct
const int y = y0 + (x - x0) * (y1 - y0) / (x1 - x0);       // also okay
int y_cur = -y;
++y_cur;
const int y = y0 + (x - x0) * (y1 - y0) / (x1 - x0);       // INCORRECT
```

No space is necessary around . and -> operators.

Sometimes adding horizontal space within a line can help make code more readable. For example, you can add space to align function arguments:

```c
esp_rom_gpio_connect_in_signal(PIN_CAM_D6, I2S0I_DATA_IN14_IDX, false);
esp_rom_gpio_connect_in_signal(PIN_CAM_D7, I2S0I_DATA_IN15_IDX, false);
esp_rom_gpio_connect_in_signal(PIN_CAM_HREF, I2S0I_H_ENABLE_IDX, false);
esp_rom_gpio_connect_in_signal(PIN_CAM_PCLK, I2S0I_DATA_IN15_IDX, false);
```

Note however that if someone goes to add new line with a longer identifier as first argument (e.g. PIN_CAM_VSYNC), it will not fit. So other lines would have to be realigned, adding meaningless changes to the commit.

Therefore, use horizontal alignment sparingly, especially if you expect new lines to be added to the list later.

Never use TAB characters for horizontal alignment.

Never add trailing whitespace at the end of the line.

**Braces**

- Function definition should have a brace on a separate line:

  ```c
  // This is correct:
  void function(int arg)
  {
  }
  ```
Within a function, place opening brace on the same line with conditional and loop statements:

```c
if (condition) {
    do_one();
} else if (other_condition) {
    do_two();
}
```

Comments Use `//` for single line comments. For multi-line comments it is okay to use either `//` on each line or a `/* */` block.

Although not directly related to formatting, here are a few notes about using comments effectively.

- Don’t use single comments to disable some functionality:

```c
void init_something()
{
    setup_dma();
    // load_resources(); // WHY is this thing commented, asks...--the reader?
    start_timer();
}
```

- If some code is no longer required, remove it completely. If you need it you can always look it up in git history of this file. If you disable some call because of temporary reasons, with an intention to restore it in the future, add explanation on the adjacent line:

```c
void init_something()
{
    setup_dma();
    // TODO: we should load resources here, but loader is not fully integrated...--yet.
    // load_resources();
    start_timer();
}
```

- Same goes for `#if 0 ... #endif` blocks. Remove code block completely if it is not used. Otherwise, add comment explaining why the block is disabled. Don’t use `#if 0 ... #endif` or comments to store code snippets which you may need in the future.

- Don’t add trivial comments about authorship and change date. You can always look up who modified any given line using git. E.g. this comment adds clutter to the code without adding any useful information:

```c
void init_something()
{
    setup_dma();
    // XXX add 2016-09-01
    init_dma_list();
    fill_dma_item(0);
    // end XXX add
    start_timer();
}
```

Line Endings Commits should only contain files with LF (Unix style) endings.
Windows users can configure git to check out CRLF (Windows style) endings locally and commit LF endings by setting the `core.autocrlf` setting. Github has a document about setting this option `<github-line-endings>`.

If you accidentally have some commits in your branch that add LF endings, you can convert them to Unix by running this command in an MSYS2 or Unix terminal (change directory to the IDF working directory and check the correct branch is currently checked out, beforehand):

```
git rebase --exec 'git diff-tree --no-commit-id --name-only -r HEAD | xargs --dos2unix &
& git commit -a --amend --no-edit --allow-empty' master
```

(Noted that this line rebases on master, change the branch name at the end to rebase on another branch.)

For updating a single commit, it’s possible to run `dos2unix FILENAME` and then run `git commit --amend`

**Formatting Your Code**

You can use `astyle` program to format your code according to the above recommendations.

If you are writing a file from scratch, or doing a complete rewrite, feel free to re-format the entire file. If you are changing a small portion of file, don’t re-format the code you didn’t change. This will help others when they review your changes.

To re-format a file, run:

```
tools/format.sh components/my_component/file.c
```

**Type Definitions**

Should be snake_case, ending with _t suffix:

```
typedef int signed_32_bit_t;
```

**Enum**

Enums should be defined through the `typedef` and be namespaced:

```
typedef enum
{
    MODULE_FOO_ONE,
    MODULE_FOO_TWO,
    MODULE_FOO_THREE
} module_foo_t;
```

**Assertions**

The standard C `assert()` function, defined in `assert.h` should be used to check conditions that should be true in source code. In the default configuration, an assert condition that returns false or 0 will call `abort()` and trigger a Fatal Error.

`assert()` should only be used to detect unrecoverable errors due to a serious internal logic bug or corruption, where it’s not possible for the program to continue. For recoverable errors, including errors that are possible due to invalid external input, an error value should be returned.

注解：When asserting a value of type `esp_err_t` is equal to `ESP_OK`, use the `ESP_ERROR_CHECK` macro instead of an `assert()`.

It’s possible to configure ESP-IDF projects with assertions disabled (see `CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL`). Therefore, functions called in an `assert()` statement should not have side-effects.

It’s also necessary to use particular techniques to avoid “variable set but not used” warnings when assertions are disabled, due to code patterns such as:
int res = do_something();
assert(res == 0);

Once the `assert` is optimized out, the `res` value is unused and the compiler will warn about this. However the function `do_something()` must still be called, even if assertions are disabled.

When the variable is declared and initialized in a single statement, a good strategy is to cast it to `void` on a new line. The compiler will not produce a warning, and the variable can still be optimized out of the final binary:

```c
int res = do_something();
(void)res;
```

If the variable is declared separately, for example if it is used for multiple assertions, then it can be declared with the GCC attribute `__attribute__((unused))`. The compiler will not produce any unused variable warnings, but the variable can still be optimized out:

```c
int res __attribute__((unused));
res = do_something();
assert(res == 0);
res = do_something_else();
assert(res != 0);
```

### Header file guards

All public facing header files should have preprocessor guards. A `#pragma` is preferred:

```
#pragma once
```

over the following pattern:

```c
#ifndef FILE_NAME_H
#define FILE_NAME_H
...
#endif // FILE_NAME_H
```

In addition to guard macros, all C header files should have `extern "C"` guards to allow the header to be used from C++ code. Note that the following order should be used: `#pragma once`, then any `#include` statements, then `extern "C"` guards:

```c
#pragma once
#include <stdint.h>

#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "Cplusplus extern "C" {
#endif
/* declarations go here */
#ifdef __cplusplus
}
#endif
```

### Include statements

When writing `#include` statements, try to maintain the following order:
Chapter 7. Contributions Guide

- C standard library headers.
- Other POSIX standard headers and common extensions to them (such as sys/queue.h)
- Common IDF headers (esp_log.h, esp_system.h, esp_timer.h, esp_sleep.h, etc.)
- Headers of other components, such as FreeRTOS.
- Public headers of the current component.
- Private headers.

Use angle brackets for C standard library headers and other POSIX headers (#include <stdio.h>).
Use double quotes for all other headers (#include "esp_log.h").

C++ Code Formatting

The same rules as for C apply. Where they are not enough, apply the following rules.

File Naming  C++ Header files have the extension .hpp. C++ source files have the extension .cpp. The latter is important for the compiler to distinguish them from normal C source files.

Naming  
- Class and struct names shall be written in CamelCase with a capital letter as beginning. Member variables and methods shall be in snake_case.
- Namespaces shall be in lower snake_case.
- Templates are specified in the line above the function declaration.
- Interfaces in terms of Object-Oriented Programming shall be named without the suffix ...Interface. Later, this makes it easier to extract interfaces from normal classes and vice versa without making a breaking change.

Member Order in Classes  In order of precedence:

- First put the public members, then the protected, then private ones. Omit public, protected or private sections without any members.
- First put constructors/destructors, then member functions, then member variables.

For example:

```cpp
class ForExample {
public:
    // first constructors, then default constructor, then destructor
    ForExample(double example_factor_arg);
    ForExample();
    ~ForExample();

    // then remaining public methods
    set_example_factor(double example_factor_arg);

    // then public member variables
    uint32_t public_data_member;

private:
    // first private methods
    void internal_method();

    // then private member variables
    double example_factor;
};
```
Spacing

- Don’t indent inside namespaces.
- Put public, protected and private labels at the same indentation level as the corresponding class label.

Simple Example

```cpp
// file spaceship.h
#ifndef SPACESHIP_H_
#define SPACESHIP_H_
#include <cstdlib>
namespace spaceships {

class SpaceShip {
public:
    SpaceShip(size_t crew);
    size_t get_crew_size() const;
private:
    const size_t crew;
};
class SpaceShuttle : public SpaceShip {
public:
    SpaceShuttle();
};
class Sojuz : public SpaceShip {
public:
    Sojuz();
};
template <typename T>
class CargoShip {
public:
    CargoShip(const T &cargo);
private:
    T cargo;
};
} // namespace spaceships
#endif // SPACESHIP_H_

// file spaceship.cpp
#include "spaceship.h"
namespace spaceships {

// Putting the curly braces in the same line for constructors is OK if it only initializes
// values in the initializer list
SpaceShip::SpaceShip(size_t crew) : crew(crew) {
    size_t SpaceShip::get_crew_size() const
    {
        return crew;
    }
```

(下頁繼續)
SpaceShuttle::SpaceShuttle() : SpaceShip(7) {
    // doing further initialization
}

Sojuz::Sojuz() : SpaceShip(3) {
    // doing further initialization
}

template<typename T>
CargoShip<T>::CargoShip(const T &cargo) : cargo(cargo) {
} // namespace spaceships

CMake Code Style

- Indent with four spaces.
- Maximum line length 120 characters. When splitting lines, try to focus on readability where possible (for example, by pairing up keyword/argument pairs on individual lines).
- Don’t put anything in the optional parentheses after endforeach(), endif(), etc.
- Use lowercase (with underscores) for command, function, and macro names.
- For locally scoped variables, use lowercase (with underscores).
- For globally scoped variables, use uppercase (WITH_UNDERSCORES).
- Otherwise follow the defaults of the cmake-lint project.

Configuring the Code Style for a Project Using EditorConfig

EditorConfig helps developers define and maintain consistent coding styles between different editors and IDEs. The EditorConfig project consists of a file format for defining coding styles and a collection of text editor plugins that enable editors to read the file format and adhere to defined styles. EditorConfig files are easily readable and they work nicely with version control systems.

For more information, see EditorConfig Website.

Documenting Code

Please see the guide here: Documenting Code.

Structure

To be written.

Language Features

To be written.

7.5.2 Install pre-commit Hook for ESP-IDF Project

Required Dependency

Python 3.6.1 or above. This is our recommendation python version for IDF developers.
If you still have python versions not compatible, please do not install pre-commit hook and update your python versions.

Install pre-commit

Run `pip install pre-commit`

Install pre-commit hook

1. Go to the IDF Project Directory
2. Run `pre-commit install --allow-missing-config`. Install hook by this approach will let you commit successfully even in branches without the `.pre-commit-config.yaml`
3. pre-commit hook will run automatically when you’re running `git commit` command

Uninstall pre-commit

Run `pre-commit uninstall`

What’s More?

For detailed usage, please refer to the documentation of `pre-commit`.

Common Problems For Windows Users

`/usr/bin/env: python: Permission denied.`

If you’re in Git Bash, please check the python executable location by run `which python`.

If the executable is under `~/AppData/Local/Microsoft/WindowsApps/`, then it’s a link to Windows AppStore, not a real one.

Please install python manually and update this in your `PATH` environment variable.

Your `%USERPROFILE%` contains non-ASCII characters

`pre-commit` may fail when initializing an environment for a particular hook when the path of `pre-commit`’s cache contains non-ASCII characters. The solution is to set `PRE_COMMIT_HOME` to a path containing only standard characters before running pre-commit.

- CMD: `set PRE_COMMIT_HOME=C:\somepath\pre-commit`
- PowerShell: `$Env:PRE_COMMIT_HOME = "C:\somepath\pre-commit"`
- `git bash`: `export PRE_COMMIT_HOME="/c/somepath/pre-commit"`

7.5.3 Documenting Code

The purpose of this description is to provide quick summary on documentation style used in `espressif/esp-idf` repository and how to add new documentation.

Introduction

When documenting code for this repository, please follow Doxygen style. You are doing it by inserting special commands, for instance `@param`, into standard comments blocks, for example:

```
/**
 * @param ratio this is oxygen to air ratio
 */
```
Doxygen is phrasing the code, extracting the commands together with subsequent text, and building documentation out of it.

Typical comment block, that contains documentation of a function, looks like below.

Doxygen supports couple of formatting styles. It also gives you great flexibility on level of details to include in documentation. To get familiar with available features, please check data rich and very well organized Doxygen Manual.

Why we need it?

The ultimate goal is to ensure that all the code is consistently documented, so we can use tools like Sphinx and Breathe to aid preparation and automatic updates of API documentation when the code changes.

With these tools the above piece of code renders like below:

Go for it!

When writing code for this repository, please follow guidelines below.

1. Document all building blocks of code: functions, structs, typedefs, enums, macros, etc. Provide enough information about purpose, functionality and limitations of documented items, as you would like to see them documented when reading the code by others.
2. Documentation of function should describe what this function does. If it accepts input parameters and returns some value, all of them should be explained.
3. Do not add a data type before parameter or any other characters besides spaces. All spaces and line breaks are compressed into a single space. If you like to break a line, then break it twice.
4. If function has void input or does not return any value, then skip @param or @return

5. When documenting a define as well as members of a struct or enum, place specific comment like below after each member:

   /* !< how to documented members */

6. To provide well formatted lists, break the line after command (like @return in example below).

   @return
   ESP_OK if erase operation was successful
7. Overview of functionality of documented header file, or group of files that make a library, should be placed in a separate README.rst file of the same directory. If this directory contains header files for different APIs, then the file name should be apiname-readme.rst.

Go one extra mile

Here are a couple of tips on how you can make your documentation even better and more useful to the reader and writer.

When writing codes, please follow the guidelines below:

1. Add code snippets to illustrate implementation. To do so, enclose snippet using @code{c} and @endcode commands.

```c
/* @code{c}
 * // Example of using nvs_get_i32:
 * int32_t max_buffer_size = 4096; // default value
 * esp_err_t err = nvs_get_i32(my_handle, "max_buffer_size", &max_buffer_size);
 * assert(err == ESP_OK || err == ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND);
 * // if ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND was returned, max_buffer_size will still
 * // have its default value.
 * @endcode */
```

The code snippet should be enclosed in a comment block of the function that it illustrates.

2. To highlight some important information use command @attention or @note.

```c
/* @attention
 * 1. This API only impact WIFI_MODE_STA or WIFI_MODE_APSTA mode
 * 2. If the ESP32 is connected to an AP, call esp_wifi_disconnect to...
 * --disconnect.
 */
```

Above example also shows how to use a numbered list.

3. To provide common description to a group of similar functions, enclose them using /**@{*/ and /**@}*/* markup commands:

```c
/**@{*/
/**
 * @brief common description of similar functions
 */
void first_similar_function (void);
void second_similar_function (void); /**@}*/
```

For practical example see nvs_flash/include/nvs.h.

4. You may want to go even further and skip some code like repetitive defines or enumerations. In such case, enclose the code within /** @cond */ and /** @endcond */ commands. Example of such implementation is provided in driver/include/driver/gpio.h.

5. Use markdown to make your documentation even more readable. You will add headers, links, tables and more.
6. Prepare one or more complete code examples together with description. Place description to a separate file README.md in specific folder of examples directory.

**Standardize Document Format**

When it comes to text, please follow guidelines below to provide well formatted Markdown (.md) or reST (.rst) documents.

1. Please ensure that one paragraph is written in one line. Don’t break lines like below. Breaking lines to enhance readability is only suitable for writing codes. To make the text easier to read, it is recommended to place an empty line to separate the paragraph.

![Recommend: one line for one paragraph like below](image1)

![Don’t need to break lines here](image2)

2. Please make the line number of CN and EN documents consistent like below. The benefit of this approach is that it can save time for both writers and translators. When non-bilingual writers need to update text, they only need to update the same line in the corresponding CN or EN document. For translators, if documents are updated in English, then translators can quickly locate where to update in the corresponding CN document later. Besides, by comparing the total number of lines in EN and CN documents, you can quickly find out whether the CN version lags behind the EN version.

**Building Documentation**

The documentation is built with the esp-docs Python package, which is a wrapper around Sphinx.

To install it simply do:
pip install esp-docs

After a successful install then the documentation can be built from the docs folder with:

```bash
build-docs build
```

or for specific target and language with:

```bash
build-docs -t esp32 -l en build
```

For more in-depth documentation about esp-docs features please see the esp-doc documentation.

Wrap up

We love good code that is doing cool things. We love it even better, if it is well documented, so we can quickly make it run and also do the cool things.

Go ahead, contribute your code and documentation!

Related Documents

- API Documentation Template

7.5.4 创建示例项目

每个 ESP-IDF 的示例都是一个完整的项目，其他人可以将示例复制到本地，并根据实际情况进行一定修改。请注意，示例项目主要是为了展示 ESP-IDF 的功能。

示例项目结构

- `main` 目录需要包含一个名为 `(something)_example_main.c` 的源文件，里面包含示例项目的主要功能。
- 如果该示例项目包含子任务较多，请根据逻辑将其拆分为 `main` 目录下的多个 C 或者 C++ 源文件，并将对应的头文件也放在同一目录下。
- 如果该示例项目具有多种功能，可以考虑在项目中增加一个 `components` 子目录，通过库功能，将示例项目的不同功能划分为不同的组件。注意，如果该组件提供功能相对完整，且具有一定的通用性，则应该将它们添加到 ESP-IDF 的 `components` 目录中，使其成为 ESP-IDF 的一部分。
7.5.5 API Documentation Template

注解：INSTRUCTIONS

1. Use this file (docs/en/api-reference/template.rst) as a template to document API.
2. Change the file name to the name of the header file that represents documented API.
3. Include respective files with descriptions from the API folder using ..include::
   - README.rst
   - example.rst
   - ...
4. Optionally provide description right in this file.
5. Once done, remove all instructions like this one and any superfluous headers.

Overview

注解：INSTRUCTIONS

1. Provide overview where and how this API may be used.
2. Where applicable include code snippets to illustrate functionality of particular functions.
3. To distinguish between sections, use the following heading levels:
   - # with overline, for parts
   - * with overline, for chapters
Application Example

1. Prepare one or more practical examples to demonstrate functionality of this API.
2. Each example should follow pattern of projects located in esp-idf/examples/ folder.
3. Place example in this folder complete with README.md file.
4. Provide overview of demonstrated functionality in README.md.
5. With good overview reader should be able to understand what example does without opening the source code.
6. Depending on complexity of example, break down description of code into parts and provide overview of functionality of each part.
7. Include flow diagram and screenshots of application output if applicable.
8. Finally add in this section synopsis of each example together with link to respective folder in esp-idf/examples/.

API Reference

1. This repository provides for automatic update of API reference documentation using code markup retrieved by Doxygen from header files.
2. Update is done on each documentation build by invoking Sphinx extension: esp_extensions/run_doxygen.py for all header files listed in the INPUT statement of docs/doxygen/Doxyfile.
3. Each line of the INPUT statement (other than a comment that begins with ##) contains a path to header file *.h that will be used to generate corresponding *.inc files:

```bash
## Wi-Fi - API Reference
##
../components/esp32/include/esp_wifi.h \
../components/esp32/include/esp_smartconfig.h \
```

1. When the headers are expanded, any macros defined by default in sdkconfig.h as well as any macros defined in SOC-specific include/soc/*_caps.h headers will be expanded. This allows the headers to include/exclude material based on the IDF_TARGET value.
2. The *.inc files contain formatted reference of API members generated automatically on each documentation build. All *.inc files are placed in Sphinx _build directory. To see directives generated for e.g. esp_wifi.h, run python gen-dxd.py esp32/include/esp_wifi.h.
3. To show contents of *.inc file in documentation, include it as follows:

```rst
.. include-build-file:: inc/esp_wifi.inc
```

For example see docs/en/api-reference/network/esp_wifi.rst

1. Optionally, rather that using *.inc files, you may want to describe API in you own way. See docs/en/api-guides/ulp.rst for example.
   Below is the list of common .. doxygen... directives:
   * Functions - .. doxygenfunction:: name_of_function
7.5.6 Contributor Agreement

Individual Contributor Non-Exclusive License Agreement

including the Traditional Patent License OPTION

Thank you for your interest in contributing to Espressif IoT Development Framework (esp-idf) ( “We” or “Us”).
The purpose of this contributor agreement ( “Agreement”) is to clarify and document the rights granted by contributors to Us. To make this document effective, please follow the instructions at CONTRIBUTING.rst

1. DEFINITIONS

“You” means the Individual Copyright owner who submits a Contribution to Us. If You are an employee and submit the Contribution as part of your employment, You have had Your employer approve this Agreement or sign the Entity version of this document.

“Contribution” means any original work of authorship (software and/or documentation) including any modifications or additions to an existing work, Submitted by You to Us, in which You own the Copyright. If You do not own the Copyright in the entire work of authorship, please contact Us at marius.vikhammer@espressif.com.

“Copyright” means all rights protecting works of authorship owned or controlled by You, including copyright, moral and neighboring rights, as appropriate, for the full term of their existence including any extensions by You.

“Material” means the software or documentation made available by Us to third parties. When this Agreement covers more than one software project, the Material means the software or documentation to which the Contribution was Submitted. After You Submit the Contribution, it may be included in the Material.

“Submit” means any form of physical, electronic, or written communication sent to Us, including but not limited to electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, Us, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by You as “Not a Contribution.”

“Submission Date” means the date You Submit a Contribution to Us.

“Documentation” means any non-software portion of a Contribution.

2. LICENSE GRANT

2.1 Copyright License to Us

Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, You hereby grant to Us a worldwide, royalty-free, NON-exclusive, perpetual and irrevocable license, with the right to transfer an unlimited number of non-exclusive licenses or to grant sublicenses to third parties, under the Copyright covering the Contribution to use the Contribution by all means, including, but not limited to:

• to publish the Contribution,
• to modify the Contribution, to prepare derivative works based upon or containing the Contribution and to combine the Contribution with other software code,
• to reproduce the Contribution in original or modified form,
• to distribute, to make the Contribution available to the public, display and publicly perform the Contribution in original or modified form.

2.2 Moral Rights remain unaffected to the extent they are recognized and not waivable by applicable law. Notwithstanding, You may add your name in the header of the source code files of Your Contribution and We will respect this attribution when using Your Contribution.

3. PATENTS 3.1 Patent License
Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement You hereby grant to us a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual and irrevocable (except as stated in Section 3.2) patent license, with the right to transfer an unlimited number of non-exclusive licenses or to grant sublicenses to third parties, to make, have made, use, sell, offer for sale, import and otherwise transfer the Contribution and the Contribution in combination with the Material (and portions of such combination). This license applies to all patents owned or controlled by You, whether already acquired or hereafter acquired, that would be infringed by making, having made, using, selling, offering for sale, importing or otherwise transferring of Your Contribution(s) alone or by combination of Your Contribution(s) with the Material.

3.2 Revocation of Patent License
You reserve the right to revoke the patent license stated in section 3.1 if we make any infringement claim that is targeted at your Contribution and not asserted for a Defensive Purpose. An assertion of claims of the Patents shall be considered for a “Defensive Purpose” if the claims are asserted against an entity that has filed, maintained, threatened, or voluntarily participated in a patent infringement lawsuit against Us or any of Our licensees.

4. DISCLAIMER THE CONTRIBUTION IS PROVIDED “AS IS”. MORE PARTICULARLY, ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT ARE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED BY YOU TO US AND BY US TO YOU. TO THE EXTENT THAT ANY SUCH WARRANTIES CANNOT BE DISCLAIMED, SUCH WARRANTY IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE MINIMUM PERIOD PERMITTED BY LAW.

5. Consequential Damage Waiver TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL YOU OR US BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF ANTICIPATED SAVINGS, LOSS OF DATA, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL AND EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT REGARDLESS OF THE LEGAL OR EQUITABLE THEORY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) UPON WHICH THE CLAIM IS BASED.

6. Approximation of Disclaimer and Damage Waiver IF THE DISCLAIMER AND DAMAGE WAIVER MENTIONED IN SECTION 4 AND SECTION 5 CANNOT BE GIVEN LEGAL EFFECT UNDER APPLICABLE LOCAL LAW, REVIEWING COURTS SHALL APPLY LOCAL LAW THAT MOST CLOSELY APPROXIMATES AN ABSOLUTE WAIVER OF ALL CIVIL LIABILITY IN CONNECTION WITH THE CONTRIBUTION.

7. Term 7.1 This Agreement shall come into effect upon Your acceptance of the terms and conditions.

7.2 In the event of a termination of this Agreement Sections 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 shall survive such termination and shall remain in full force thereafter. For the avoidance of doubt, Contributions that are already licensed under a free and open source license at the date of the termination shall remain in full force after the termination of this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous 8.1 This Agreement and all disputes, claims, actions, suits or other proceedings arising out of this agreement or relating in any way to it shall be governed by the laws of People’s Republic of China excluding its private international law provisions.
8.2 This Agreement sets out the entire agreement between You and Us for Your Contributions to Us and overrides all other agreements or understandings.

8.3 If any provision of this Agreement is found void and unenforceable, such provision will be replaced to the extent possible with a provision that comes closest to the meaning of the original provision and that is enforceable. The terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement shall apply notwithstanding any failure of essential purpose of this Agreement or any limited remedy to the maximum extent possible under law.

8.4 You agree to notify Us of any facts or circumstances of which you become aware that would make this Agreement inaccurate in any respect.

You

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Us

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.5.7 Copyright Header Guide

ESP-IDF is released under the Apache License 2.0 with some additional third-party copyrighted code released under various licenses. For further information please refer to the list of copyrights and licenses.

This page explains how the source code should be properly marked with a copyright header. ESP-IDF uses The Software Package Data Exchange (SPDX) format which is short and can be easily read by humans or processed by automated tools for copyright checks.

How to Check the Copyright Headers

Please make sure you have installed the pre-commit hooks which contain a copyright header checker as well. The checker can suggest a header if it is not able to detect a properly formatted SPDX header.

What if the Checker’s Suggestion is Incorrect?

No automated checker (no matter how good is) can replace humans. So the developer’s responsibility is to modify the offered header to be in line with the law and the license restrictions of the original code on which the work is based on. Certain licenses are not compatible between each other. Such corner cases will be covered by the following examples.

Common Examples of Copyright Headers

The simplest case is when the code is not based on any licensed previous work, e.g. it was written completely from scratch. Such code can be decorated with the following copyright header and put under the license of ESP-IDF:
Less restrictive parts of ESP-IDF  Some parts of ESP-IDF are deliberately under less restrictive licenses in order to ease their re-use in commercial closed source projects. This is the case for ESP-IDF examples which are in Public domain or under the Creative Commons Zero Universal (CC0) license. The following header can be used in such source files:

```c
/*
 * SPDX-FileCopyrightText: 2015-2021 Espressif Systems (Shanghai) CO LTD
 * SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
 */
```

Third party licenses  Code licensed under different licenses, modified by Espressif Systems and included in ESP-IDF cannot be licensed under Apache License 2.0 not even if the checker suggests it. It is advised to keep the original copyright header and add an SPDX before it.

The following example is a suitable header for a code licensed under the “GNU General Public License v2.0 or later” held by John Doe with some additional modifications done by Espressif Systems:

```c
/*
 * SPDX-FileCopyrightText: 1991 John Doe
 * SPDX-License-Identifier: GPL-2.0-or-later
 * SPDX-FileContributor: 2019-2021 Espressif Systems (Shanghai) CO LTD
 */
```

The licenses can be identified and the short SPDX identifiers can be found in the official SPDX license list. Other very common licenses are the GPL-2.0-only, the BSD-3-Clause, and the BSD-2-Clause.
Chapter 8

ESP-IDF 版本简介

ESP-IDF 的 GitHub 仓库时常更新，特别是用于开发新特性的 master 分支。如有量产需求，请使用稳定版本。

8.1 发布版本

您可以通过以下链接访问各个版本的配套文档:

ESP-IDF 在 GitHub 平台上的完整发布历史请见发布说明页面。您可以在该页面查看各个版本的发布说明、配套文档及相应获取方式。

8.2 我该选择哪个版本？

- 如有量产需求，请使用最新稳定版本，稳定版本已通过人工测试，后续更新仅修复 bug，主要特性不受影响（更多详情，请见版本管理）。请访问发布说明页面界面查看每一个稳定发布版本。
- 如需尝试/测试 ESP-IDF 的新特性，请使用最新版本（即 master 分支上）。最新版本包含 ESP-IDF 的所有新特性，已通过自动化测试，但尚未全部完成人工测试（因此存在一定风险）。
- 如需使用稳定版本中没有的新特性，但同时又不希望受到 master 分支更新的影响，您可以将一个最适合您的稳定版本更新至一个预发布版本或更新至一个发布分支。

有关如何更新 ESP-IDF 本地副本的内容，请参考更新 ESP-IDF 章节。

8.3 版本管理

ESP-IDF 采用了语义版本管理方法，即您可以从字面含义理解每个版本的差异。其中
- 主要版本（例 v3.0）代表有重大更新，包括增加新特性、改变现有特性及移除已废弃的特性。
  - 升级至一个新的主要版本（例 v2.1 升级至 v3.0）意味着您可能需要更新您的工程代码，并重新测试您的工程。具体可参考发布说明页面的重亮变化（Breaking Change）部分。
- 次要版本（例 v3.1）代表有新增特性和 bug 修复，但现有特性不受影响，公开 API 的使用也不受影响。
  - 升级至一个新的次要版本（例 v3.0 升级至 v3.1）意味着您可能不需要更新您的工程代码，但需重新测试您的工程。特别是发布说明页面中专门提到的部分。
- Bugfix 版本（例 v3.0.1）仅修复 bug，并不增加任何新特性。
  - 升级至一个新的 Bugfix 版本（例 v3.0 升级至 v3.0.1）意味着您不需要更新您的工程代码，仅需测试与本次发布修复 bug（列表见发布说明页面）直接相关的特性。
8.4 支持期限

ESP-IDF 的每个主要版本和次要版本都有相应的支持期限。支持期限满后，版本停止更新维护，将不再提供支持。

支持期限政策 对此有具体描述，并介绍了每个版本的支持期限是如何界定的。

发布说明页面 界面上的每一个发布版本都提供了该版本的支持期限信息。

一般而言：

- 如您刚开始一个新项目，建议使用最新稳定版本。
- 如您有 GitHub 账号，请点击 发布说明页面 界面右上角的 “Watch” 按键，并选中 “Releases only” 选项。GitHub 将会在新版本发布的时候通知您。当您所使用的版本有 Bugfix 版本发布时，请做好升级至该 Bugfix 版本的规划。
- 如可能，请定期（如每年一次）将项目的 IDF 版本升级至一个新的主要版本或次要版本。对于次要版本更新，更新过程应该比较简单，但对于主要版本更新，可能需要细致查看发布说明并做对应的更新规划。
- 请确保您所使用的版本停止更新维护前，已做好升级至新版本的规划。

ESP-IDF 的每个主要版本和次要版本（V4.1、V4.2 等）的支持期限为 30 个月，从最初的稳定版发布日算起。

在支持期限内意味着 ESP-IDF 团队将继续在 GitHub 的发布分支上进行 bug 修复、安全修复等，并根据需要定期发布新的 Bugfix 版本。

支持期限分为“服务期”和“维护期”：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>周期</th>
<th>时长</th>
<th>是否推荐新工程使用</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>服务期</td>
<td>12 个月</td>
<td>是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>维护期</td>
<td>18 个月</td>
<td>否</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

在服务期内，Bugfix 版本的发布更为频繁。某些情况下，在服务期内会增加新特性，这些特性主要是为了满足新产品特定监管要求或标准，并且回归风险非常低。

在维护期内，该版本仍受支持，但只会对严重性较高的问题或安全问题进行 bug 修复。

当开始一个新项目时，建议使用在服务期内的版本。

鼓励用户在您所用的版本支持期限结束之前，将所有的工程升级到最新的 ESP-IDF 版本。在版本支持期限满后，我们将不再继续进行 bug 修复。

支持期限不包括预发布版本（betas、预览版、-rc 和 -dev 版等），有时会将某个特性在发布版中标记为 “预览版” 这意味着该特性也不在支持期限内。

关于 不同版本的 ESP-IDF（主要版本、次要版本、Bugfix 版本等）的更多信息，请参考 ESP-IDF 编程指南。
### 8.5 查看当前版本

查看 ESP-IDF 本地副本的版本，请使用 idf.py 命令:

```
idf.py --version
```

此外，由于 ESP-IDF 的版本也已编译至固件中，因此您也可以使用宏 IDF_VER 查看 ESP-IDF 的版本 (以字符串的格式)。ESP-IDF 默认引导程序会在设备启动时打印 ESP-IDF 的版本。请注意，在 GitHub 仓库中的代码更新时，代码中的版本信息仅会在源代码重新编译或在清除编译时才会更新，因此打印出来的版本可能并不是最新的。

如果编写的代码需要支持多个 ESP-IDF 版本，可以在编译时使用 `compile-time macros` 检查版本。

几个 ESP-IDF 版本的例子:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>版本字符串</th>
<th>含义</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| v3.2-dev-306-gbeb3611ca              | master 分支上的预发布版本。
|                                      | - v3.2-dev: 为 v3.2 进行的开发。                                    |
|                                      | - 306: v3.2 开发启动后的 commit 数量。                             |
|                                      | - beb3611ca: commit 标识符。                                      |
| v3.0.2                               | 稳定版本，标签为 v3.0.2。                                        |
| v3.1-beta1-75-g346d6b0ea             | v3.1 的 beta 测试版本 (可参考更新至一个发布分支)。
|                                      | - v3.1-beta1: 预发布标签。                                         |
|                                      | - 75: 添加预发布 beta 标签后的 commit 数量。                        |
|                                      | - 346d6b0ea: commit 标识符。                                      |
| v3.0.1-dirty                         | 稳定版本，标签为 v3.0.1。                                         |
|                                      | - dirty 代表 ESP-IDF 的本地副本有修改。                           |
8.6 Git 工作流

乐鑫 ESP-IDF 团队的 (Git) 开发工作流程如下：

- 新的改动总是在 master 分支（最新版本）上进行。master 分支上的 ESP-IDF 版本总带有 -dev 标签，表示“正在开发中”，例 v3.1-dev。
- 这些改动将首先在乐鑫的内部 Git 仓库进行代码审阅与测试，而后在自动化测试完成后推至 GitHub。
- 新版本一旦完成特性开发（在 master 分支上进行）并达到进入 beta 测试的标准，则将该版本切换至一个新分支（例 release/v3.1）。此外，该分支还打上预发布标签（例 v3.1-beta1）。您可以在 GitHub 平台上查看 ESP-IDF 的完整 分支列表 和 标签列表。Beta 预发布版本可能仍存在大量“已知问题”（Known Issue）。
- 随着对 beta 版本的不断测试，bug 修复将同时增加至该发布分支和 master 分支。而且，master 分支可能也已经开始为下个版本开发新特性了。
- 当测试快结束时，该发布分支上将增加一个 rc 标签，代表候选发布（Release Candidate），例 v3.1-rc1。此时，该分支仍属于预发布版本。
- 如果一直未发现或报告重大 bug，则该预发布版本将最终增加“主要版本”（例 v4.0）或“次要版本”标记（例 v3.1），成为正式发布版本，并体现在 发布说明页面。
- 后续，该版本中发现的 bug 都将在该发布分支上进行修复。人工测试完成后，该分支将增加一个 Bugfix 版本标签（例 v3.1.1），并体现在 发布说明页面。

8.7 更新 ESP-IDF

请根据您的实际情况，对 ESP-IDF 进行更新。

- 如有量产用途，建议参考更新至一个稳定发布版本。
- 如需测试研发/尝试最新特性，建议参考更新至 master 分支。
- 两者折衷建议参考更新至一个发布分支。

注解：在参考本指南时，请首先获得 ESP-IDF 的本地副本，具体步骤请参考 入门指南 中的介绍。

8.7.1 更新至一个稳定发布版本

对于量产用户，推荐更新至一个新的 ESP-IDF 发布版本，请参考以下步骤：

- 请定期查看 发布说明页面，了解最新发布情况。
- 如有新发布的 Bugfix 版本（例 v3.0.1 或 v3.0.2）时，请将新的 Bugfix 版本更新至您的 ESP-IDF 目录：

```bash
cd $IDF_PATH
git fetch
git checkout vX.Y.Z
git submodule update --init --recursive
```

- 在主要版本或次要版本新发布时，请查看发布说明中的具体描述，并决定是否升级您的版本。具体命令与上方描述一致。

注解：如果您之前在安装 ESP-IDF 时使用了 zip 文件包，而非通过 Git 命令，则您将无法使用 git 命令进行版本升级，此属正常情况。这种情况下，请重新下载最新 zip 文件包，并替换掉之前 IDF_PATH 下的全部内容。
8.7.2 更新至一个预发布版本

您也可以将您的本地副本切换（命令 `git checkout`）至一个预发布版本或 rc 版本，具体方法请参考更新至一个稳定发布版本 中的描述。

预发布版本通常不体现在 发布说明页面。更多详情，请查看完整 标签列表。使用预发布版本的注意事项，请参考更新至一个发布分支 中的描述。

8.7.3 更新至 master 分支

注解：ESP-IDF 中 master 分支上的代码会时时更新，因此使用 master 分支相当在 “流血的边缘试探”，存在一定风险。

如需使用 ESP-IDF 的 master 分支，请参考以下步骤：

- 本地切换至 master 分支：
  ```
  cd $IDF_PATH
  git checkout master
  git pull
  git submodule update --init --recursive
  ```

- 此外，您还应在后续工作中不时使用 `git pull` 命令，将远端 master 上的更新同步到本地。注意，在更新 master 分支后，您可能需要更改工程代码，也可能遇到新的 bug。
- 如需从 master 分支切换至一个发布分支或稳定版本，请使用 `git checkout` 命令。

重要：强烈建议您定期使用 `git pull` 和 `git submodule update --init --recursive` 命令，确保本地副本的及时更新。旧的 master 分支相当于一个 “快照”，可能存在未记录的问题，且无法获得支持。对于半稳定版本，请参考更新至一个发布分支。

8.7.4 更新至一个发布分支

从稳定性来说，使用 “发布分支” 相当于在使用 master 分支和稳定版本之间进行折衷，包含一些 master 分支上的新特性，但同时也保证可通过 beta 测试且基本完成了 bug 修复。

更多详情，请前往 GitHub 查看完整 标签列表。

举例，您可以关注 ESP-IDF v3.1 分支，随时关注该分支上的 Bugfix 版本发布（例 v3.1.1 等）：

```
  cd $IDF_PATH
  git fetch
  git checkout release/v3.1
  git pull
  git submodule update --init --recursive
```

您每次在该分支上使用 `git pull` 时都相当于把最新的 Bugfix 版本发布更新至您的本地副本中。

注解：发布分支并不会有关的配套文档，建议您使用与本分支最接近版本的文档。
Chapter 9

资源

9.1 PlatformIO

PlatformIO is a cross-platform embedded development environment with out-of-the-box support for ESP-IDF. Since ESP-IDF support within PlatformIO is not maintained by the Espressif team, please report any issues with PlatformIO directly to its developers in the official PlatformIO repositories.

A detailed overview of the PlatformIO ecosystem and its philosophy can be found in the official PlatformIO documentation.

9.1.1 What is PlatformIO?

PlatformIO is a cross-platform embedded development environment with out-of-the-box support for ESP-IDF.

9.1.2 Installation

• PlatformIO IDE is a toolset for embedded C/C++ development available on Windows, macOS and Linux platforms
• PlatformIO Core (CLI) is a command-line tool that consists of multi-platform build system, platform and library managers and other integration components. It can be used with a variety of code development environments and allows integration with cloud platforms and web services
9.1.3 Configuration

Please go through the official PlatformIO configuration guide for ESP-IDF.

9.1.4 Tutorials

- ESP-IDF and ESP32-DevKitC: debugging, unit testing, project analysis

9.1.5 Project Examples

Please check ESP-IDF page in the official PlatformIO documentation.

9.1.6 Next Steps

Here are some useful links for exploring the PlatformIO ecosystem:

- Learn more about integrations with other IDEs/Text Editors
- Get help from PlatformIO community

9.2 有用的链接

- 您可以在 ESP32 论坛 中提出您的问题，访问社区资源。
- 您可以通过 GitHub 的 Issues 版块提交 bug 或功能请求。在提交新 Issue 之前，请先查看现有的 Issues。
- 您可以在 ESP IoT Solution 库中找到基于 ESP-IDF 的解决方案、应用实例、组件和驱动等内容。多数文档均提供中英文版本。
- 通过 Arduino 平台开发应用，请参考 ESP32 Wi-Fi 芯片的 Arduino 内核。
- 关于 ESP32 的书籍列表，请查看 乐鑫 网站。
- 如果您有兴趣参与到 ESP-IDF 的开发，请查阅 Contributions Guide。
- 关于 ESP32 的其它信息，请查看官网 文档 版块。
- 关于本文档的 PDF 和 HTML 格式下载（最新版本和早期版本），请点击 下载。
Chapter 10

Copyrights and Licenses

10.1 Software Copyrights

All original source code in this repository is Copyright (C) 2015-2021 Espressif Systems. This source code is licensed under the Apache License 2.0 as described in the file LICENSE.

Additional third party copyrighted code is included under the following licenses.

Where source code headers specify Copyright & License information, this information takes precedence over the summaries made here.

Some examples use external components which are not Apache licensed, please check the copyright description in each example source code.

10.1.1 Firmware Components

These third party libraries can be included into the application (firmware) produced by ESP-IDF.

- **Newlib** is licensed under the BSD License and is Copyright of various parties, as described in COPYING.NEWLIB.
- **Xtensa header files** are Copyright (C) 2013 Tensilica Inc and are licensed under the MIT License as reproduced in the individual header files.
- Original parts of **FreeRTOS** (components/freertos) are Copyright (C) 2017 Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates are licensed under the MIT License, as described in license.txt.
- Original parts of **LWIP** (components/lwip) are Copyright (C) 2001, 2002 Swedish Institute of Computer Science and are licensed under the BSD License as described in COPYING file.
- **wpa_supplicant** Copyright (c) 2003-2005 Jouni Malinen and licensed under the BSD license.
- **FreeBSD net80211** Copyright (c) 2004-2008 Sam Leffler, Erno Consulting and licensed under the BSD license.
- **JSMN JSON Parser** (components/jsmn) Copyright (c) 2010 Serge A. Zaitsev and licensed under the MIT license.
- **argtable3** argument parsing library Copyright (C) 1998-2001,2003-2011,2013 Stewart Heitmann and licensed under 3-clause BSD license.
- **linenoise** line editing library Copyright (c) 2010-2014 Salvatore Sanfilippo, Copyright (c) 2010-2013 Pieter Noordhuis, licensed under 2-clause BSD license.
- **libcoap** COAP library Copyright (c) 2010-2017 Olaf Bergmann and others, is licensed under 2-clause BSD license as described in LICENSE file and COPYING file.
- **libexpat** XML parsing library Copyright (c) 1998-2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd and Clark Cooper, Copyright (c) 2001-2017 Expat maintainers, is licensed under MIT license as described in COPYING file.
- **FatFS** library, Copyright (C) 2017 ChaN, is licensed under a BSD-style license.
- **cJSON** library, Copyright (c) 2009-2017 Dave Gamble and cJSON contributors, is licensed under MIT license as described in LICENSE file.
Chapter 10. Copyrights and Licenses

- **libsodium** library, Copyright (c) 2013-2018 Frank Denis, is licensed under ISC license as described in LICENSE file.
- **micro-ecc** library, Copyright (c) 2014 Kenneth MacKay, is licensed under 2-clause BSD license.
- **nghttp2** library, Copyright (c) 2012, 2014, 2015, 2016 Tatsuhiro Tsujikawa, Copyright (c) 2012, 2014, 2015, 2016 nghttp2 contributors, is licensed under MIT license as described in COPYING file.
- **Mbed TLS** library, Copyright (C) 2006-2018 ARM Limited, is licensed under Apache License 2.0 as described in LICENSE file.
- **SPIFFS** library, Copyright (c) 2013-2017 Peter Andersson, is licensed under MIT license as described in LICENSE file.
- **TinyCBOR** library, Copyright (c) 2017 Intel Corporation, is licensed under MIT License as described in LICENSE file.
- **SD/MMC driver** is derived from OpenBSD SD/MMC driver, Copyright (c) 2006 Uwe Stuehler, and is licensed under BSD license.
- **Asio**, Copyright (c) 2003-2018 Christopher M. Kohlhoff is licensed under the Boost Software License as described in COPYING file.
- **ESP-MQTT** MQTT Package (contiki-mqtt) - Copyright (c) 2014, Stephen Robinson, MQTT-ESP - Tuan PM <tuannpm at live dot com> is licensed under Apache License 2.0 as described in LICENSE file.
- **BLE Mesh** is adapted from Zephyr Project, Copyright (c) 2017-2018 Intel Corporation and licensed under Apache License 2.0
- **mynewt-nimble** Apache Mynewt NimBLE, Copyright 2015-2018, The Apache Software Foundation, is licensed under Apache License 2.0 as described in LICENSE file.
- **cryptoauthlib** Microchip CryptoAuthentication Library - Copyright (c) 2015 - 2018 Microchip Technology Inc, is licensed under common Microchip software License as described in LICENSE file.
- **TLSF allocator** Two Level Segregated Fit memory allocator, Copyright (c) 2006-2016, Matthew Conte, and licensed under the BSD license.
- **qrcode** QR Code generator library Copyright (c) Project Nayuki, is licensed under MIT license.
- **openthead**, Copyright (c) The OpenThread Authors, is licensed under BSD License as described in LICENSE file.
- **UBSAN runtime** —Copyright (c) 2016, Linaro Limited and Jiří Zárevůcky, licensed under the BSD 2-clause license.

### 10.1.2 Build Tools

This is the list of licenses for tools included in this repository, which are used to build applications. The tools do not become part of the application (firmware), so their license does not affect licensing of the application.

- **esptool.py** is Copyright (C) 2014-2016 Fredrik Ahlberg, Angus Gratton and is licensed under the GNU General Public License v2, as described in LICENSE file.
- **KConfig** is Copyright (C) 2002 Roman Zippel and others, and is licensed under the GNU General Public License V2.

### 10.1.3 Documentation

- HTML version of the **ESP-IDF Programming Guide** uses the Sphinx theme sphinx_idf_theme, which is Copyright (c) 2013-2020 Dave Snider, Read the Docs, Inc. & contributors, and Espressif Systems (Shanghai) CO., LTD. It is based on sphinx_rtd_theme. Both are licensed under MIT license.

### 10.2 ROM Source Code Copyrights

ESP32, ESP32-S and ESP32-C Series SoCs mask ROM hardware includes binaries compiled from portions of the following third party software:

- **Newlib**, licensed under the BSD License and is Copyright of various parties, as described in COPYING.NEWLIB.
- **Xtensalibhal**, Copyright (c) Tensilica Inc and licensed under the MIT license (see below).
- **TinyBasic** Plus, Copyright Mike Field & Scott Lawrence and licensed under the MIT license (see below).
• **miniz**, by Rich Geldreich - placed into the public domain.
• **wpa_supplicant** Copyright (c) 2003-2005 Jouni Malinen and licensed under the BSD license.
• **TJpgDec** Copyright (C) 2011, ChaN, all right reserved. See below for license.

### 10.3 Xtensa libhal MIT License

Copyright (c) 2003, 2006, 2010 Tensilica Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the “Software”), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

### 10.4 TinyBasic Plus MIT License

Copyright (c) 2012-2013

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the “Software”), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

### 10.5 TJpgDec License

TJpgDec - Tiny JPEG Decompressor R0.01 (C)ChaN, 2011 The TJpgDec is a generic JPEG decompressor module for tiny embedded systems. This is a free software that opened for education, research and commercial developments under license policy of following terms.

Copyright (C) 2011, ChaN, all right reserved.

• The TJpgDec module is a free software and there is NO WARRANTY.
• No restriction on use. You can use, modify and redistribute it for personal, non-profit or commercial products UNDER YOUR RESPONSIBILITY.
• Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice.
Chapter 11

关于本指南

本指南为乐鑫公司 ESP32 官方应用开发框架 ESP-IDF 的配套文档。
ESP32 芯片是一款 2.4 GHz Wi-Fi 和蓝牙双模芯片，内置 1 或 2 个 Xtensa® 32 位 LX6 处理器，运算能力最高可达 600 DMIPS。

图 1: 乐鑫物联网综合开发框架

ESP-IDF 即乐鑫物联网开发框架，可为在 Windows、Linux 和 macOS 系统平台上开发 ESP32 应用程序提供工具链、API、组件和工作流程的支持。
Chapter 12

切换语言

《ESP-IDF 编程指南》部分文档现在有两种语言的版本。如有出入请以英文版本为准。

- 英文
- 中文

如下图所示，如果该文档两种语言版本均具备，您可以通过点击文档上方的语言链接轻松进行语言切换。

Fatal Errors

[中文]

Overview

In certain situations, execution of the program can not be continued in a well defined way. In ESP-IDF, these situations include:

- genindex
ADC2_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 637
_ADC_NETIF_SUPPRESS_LEGACY_WARNING_(C 宏), 637
_XFER_2_RD (C 宏), 1024
_XFER_2_WR (C 宏), 1024
_XFER_4_RD (C 宏), 1024
_XFER_4_WR (C 宏), 1024
[anonymous] (C++ enum), 128, 358
A
ADC1_CHANNEL_0 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC1_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_1 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC1_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_2 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC1_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_3 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC1_CHANNEL_3_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_4 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC1_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_5 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC1_CHANNEL_5_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_6 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC1_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_7 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC1_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC1_CHANNEL_MAX (C++ enumerator), 657
adc1_channel_t (C++ enum), 657
adc1_config_channel_atten (C++ function), 653
adc1_config_width (C++ function), 653
adc1_get_raw (C++ function), 653
ADC1_GPIO32_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
ADC1_GPIO33_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
ADC1_GPIO34_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
ADC1_GPIO35_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
ADC1_GPIO36_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
ADC1_GPIO37_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
ADC1_GPIO38_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
ADC1_GPIO39_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
adc1_pad_get_io_num (C++ function), 652
adc1_ulp_enable (C++ function), 654
ADC2_CHANNEL_0 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC2_CHANNEL_1 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 660
ADC2_CHANNEL_2 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 661
ADC2_CHANNEL_3 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_3_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 661
ADC2_CHANNEL_4 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 661
ADC2_CHANNEL_5 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_5_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 661
ADC2_CHANNEL_6 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 661
ADC2_CHANNEL_7 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 661
ADC2_CHANNEL_8 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_8_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 661
ADC2_CHANNEL_9 (C++ enumerator), 657
ADC2_CHANNEL_9_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 661
ADC2_CHANNEL_MAX (C++ enumerator), 657
adc2_channel_t (C++ enum), 657
adc2_config_channel_atten (C++ function), 654
adc2_get_raw (C++ function), 655
ADC2_GPIO0_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
ADC2_GPIO12_CHANNEL (C 宏), 661
ADC2_GPIO13_CHANNEL (C 宏), 661
ADC2_GPIO14_CHANNEL (C 宏), 661
ADC2_GPIO15_CHANNEL (C 宏), 661
ADC2_GPIO25_CHANNEL (C 宏), 661
ADC2_GPIO26_CHANNEL (C 宏), 661
ADC2_GPIO27_CHANNEL (C 宏), 661
ADC2_GPIO28_CHANNEL (C 宏), 661
ADC2_GPIO04_CHANNEL (C 宏), 660
adc2_pad_get_io_num (C++ function), 654
adc2_vref_to_gpio (C++ function), 656
ADC_ATTEN_0db (C 宏), 656
ADC_ATTEN_1db (C 宏), 656
ADC_ATTEN_2db (C 宏), 656
ADC_ATTEN_6db (C 宏), 656
ADC_ATTEN_DB_0 (C++ enumerator), 651
ADC_ATTEN_DB_11 (C++ enumerator), 651
ADC_ATTEN_DB_2_5 (C++ enumerator), 651
ADC_ATTEN_DB_6 (C++ enumerator), 651
ADC_ATTEN_MAX (C++ enumerator), 651
adc_atten_t (C++ enum), 651
adc_bits_width_t (C++ enum), 651
ADC_CHANNEL_0 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_1 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_2 (C++ enumerator), 650

2081
ADC_CHANNEL_3 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_4 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_5 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_6 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_7 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_8 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_9 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_CHANNEL_MAX (C++ enumerator), 651
adc_channel_t (C++ enum), 650
ADC_CONV_ALTER_UNIT (C++ enumerator), 652
ADC_CONV_BOTH_UNIT (C++ enumerator), 652
ADC_CONV_SINGLE_UNIT_1 (C++ enumerator), 651
ADC_CONV_SINGLE_UNIT_2 (C++ enumerator), 652
ADC_CONV_UNIT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 652
adc_digi_config_t (C++ class), 649
adc_digi_config_t::adc1_pattern (C++ member), 649
adc_digi_config_t::adc1_pattern_len (C++ member), 649
adc_digi_config_t::adc2_pattern (C++ member), 650
adc_digi_config_t::adc2_pattern_len (C++ member), 649
adc_digi_config_t::conv_limit_en (C++ member), 649
adc_digi_config_t::conv_limit_num (C++ member), 649
adc_digi_config_t::conv_mode (C++ member), 650
adc_digi_config_t::format (C++ member), 650
adc_digi_controller_config (C++ function), 656
adc_digi_convert_mode_t (C++ enum), 651
adc_digi_deinit (C++ function), 656
ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_11BIT (C++ enumerator), 652
ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_12BIT (C++ enumerator), 652
ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 652
adc_digi_init (C++ function), 656
adc_digi_output_data_t (C++ class), 648
adc_digi_output_data_t::channel (C++ member), 648
adc_digi_output_data_t::data (C++ member), 648
adc_digi_output_data_t::type1 (C++ member), 648
adc_digi_output_data_t::type2 (C++ member), 649
adc_digi_output_data_t::unit (C++ member), 649
adc_digi_output_data_t::val (C++ member), 649
adc_digi_output_format_t (C++ enum), 652
adc_digi_pattern_table_t (C++ class), 648
adc_digi_pattern_table_t::atten (C++ member), 648
adc_digi_pattern_table_t::bit_width (C++ member), 648
adc_digi_pattern_table_t::channel (C++ member), 648
adc_digi_pattern_table_t::val (C++ member), 648
ADC_ENCODE_11BIT (C++ enumerator), 658
ADC_ENCODE_12BIT (C++ enumerator), 658
ADC_ENCODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 658
adc_gpio_init (C++ function), 652
ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_ADC (C++ enumerator), 651
ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_IO_SIG (C++ enumerator), 651
ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_MAX (C++ enumerator), 651
adc_i2s_encode_t (C++ function), 647
adc_i2s_mode_init (C++ function), 647
adc_i2s_source_t (C++ enum), 651
adc_power_acquire (C++ function), 652
adc_power_off (C++ function), 652
adc_power_on (C++ function), 652
adc_power_release (C++ function), 652
adc_set_clk_div (C++ function), 654
adc_set_data_inv (C++ function), 654
adc_set_data_width (C++ function), 654
adc_set_i2s_data_source (C++ function), 647
ADC_UNIT_1 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_UNIT_2 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_UNIT_ALTER (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_UNIT_BOTH (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_UNIT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 650
adc_unit_t (C++ class), 650
adv_filter_allow_scan_any_con_any (C++ enumerator), 176
ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_ANY_CON_WLST (C++ enumerator), 176
ADV_FILTER_ALLOW_SCAN_WLST_CON_ANY (C++ enumerator), 176
ADV_FILTER.Allow_SCAN.WLST_CON_WLST (C++ enumerator), 176
ADC_WIDTH_MAX (C++ enum), 650
ADC_WIDTH_BIT_9 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_WIDTH_BIT_10 (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_WIDTH_BIT_11 (C++ enumerator), 650
adc_set_i2s_data_source (C++ function), 647
ADC_WIDTH_9Bit (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_WIDTH_11Bit (C++ enumerator), 650
ADC_WIDTH_12Bit (C++ enumerator), 650
E

eAbortSleep (C++ enumerator), 1263
eBlocked (C++ enumerator), 1263
eDeleted (C++ enumerator), 1263
eIncrement (C++ enumerator), 1263
eInvalid (C++ enumerator), 1263
EMAC_APPL_CLK_OUT_GPIO (C++ enumerator), 611
EMAC_CLK_DEFAULT (C++ enumerator), 611
EMAC_CLK_EXT_IN (C++ enumerator), 611
EMAC_CLK_IN_GPIO (C++ enumerator), 611
EMAC_CLK_OUT (C++ enumerator), 611
EMAC_CLK_OUT_180_GPIO (C++ enumerator), 611
EMAC_CLK_OUT_GPIO (C++ enumerator), 611
emac_rmii_clock_gpio_t (C++ enum), 611
eNoAction (C++ enumerator), 1263
eNoTasksWaitingTimeout (C++ enumerator), 1263
eNotifyAction (C++ enum), 1263
eReady (C++ enumerator), 1263
eRunning (C++ enumerator), 1263
eSetValueWithoutOverwrite (C++ enumerator), 1263
esleepModeStatus (C++ enum), 1263
ESP_A2D_AUDIO_CFG_EVT (C++ enumerator), 249
ESP_A2D_AUDIO_STATE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 249
ESP_A2D_AUDIO_STATE_REMOTE_SUSPEND (C++ enumerator), 248
ESP_A2D_AUDIO_STATE_STARTED (C++ enumerator), 248
esleepAudioState_t (C++ enum), 248
esleepcb_event_t (C++ enum), 249
esleepcb_param_t (C++ union), 245
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_audio_cfg_param (C++ class), 245
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_audio_cfg_param (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_audio_cfg_param (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_audio_stat_param (C++ class), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_audio_stat_param::state (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_conn_stat_param (C++ class), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_conn_stat_param::disc_rsn (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_conn_stat_param::remote_bda (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_conn_stat_param::state (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_prof_stat (C++ member), 245
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_prof_stat_param (C++ class), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_prof_stat_param::init_state (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_prof_stat_param::state (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_prof_stat_param::status (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_prof_stat_param::status (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_cb_param_t::a2d_prof_stat_param::cmd (C++ member), 246
esleepcb_param_t::media_ctrl_stat_param (C++ class), 246
esleepcb_param_t::media_ctrl_stat_param::cmd (C++ member), 246
esleepcb_param_t::media_ctrl_stat_param::status (C++ member), 246
esleepcb_param_t::media_ctrl_stat_param::status (C++ member), 246
ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_ATRAC (C), 247
ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_M12 (C), 247
ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_M24 (C), 247
ESP_A2D_CIE_LEN_SBC (C), 247
ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_CONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 248
ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_CONNECTING (C++ enumerator), 248
ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 248
ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_DISCONNECTING (C++ enumerator), 248
ESP_A2D_CONNECTION_STATE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 249
esp_a2d_connection_state_t (C++ enum), 248
ESP_A2D_DEINIT_SUCCESS (C++ enumerator), 249
ESP_A2D_INIT_SUCCESS (C++ enumerator), 249
ESP_A2D_DISC_RSN_ABNORMAL (C++ enumerator), 248
ESP_A2D_DISC_RSN_NORMAL (C++ enumerator), 248
esp_a2d_mcc::remote_bda (C++ class), 246
esleepcb_mcc_t::remote_bda (C++ member), 246
esp_a2d_mcc_t::atrac (C++ member), 247
ESP_APTRACE_DEST_JTAG (C++ enumerator), 1182
ESP_APTRACE_DEST_MAX (C++ enumerator), 1182
ESP_APTRACE_DEST_NUM (C++ enumerator), 1182
esp_aptrace_dest_t (C++ enum), 1182
ESP_APTRACEDEST_TRAX (C++ enumerator), 1182
ESP_APTRACE_DEST_UART0 (C++ enumerator), 1182
esp_aptrace_down_buffer_config (C++ function), 1179
esp_aptrace_down_buffer_get (C++ function), 1180
esp_aptrace_down_buffer_put (C++ function), 1180
esp_aptrace_ftclose (C++ function), 1181
esp_aptrace_flush (C++ function), 1180
esp_aptrace_flush_nolock (C++ function), 1180
esp_aptrace_fopen (C++ function), 1180
esp_aptrace_fread (C++ function), 1181
esp_aptrace_fseek (C++ function), 1181
esp_aptrace_fstop (C++ function), 1181
esp_aptrace_ftell (C++ function), 1181
esp_aptrace_fwrite (C++ function), 1181
esp_aptrace_host_is_connected (C++ function), 1180
esp_aptrace_init (C++ function), 1179
esp_aptrace_read (C++ function), 1180
esp_aptrace_vprintf (C++ function), 1179
esp_aptrace_vprintf_to (C++ function), 1179
esp_aptrace_write (C++ function), 1179
esp_attr_control_t (C++ class), 180
esp_attr_control_t::auto_rsp (C++ member), 181
esp_attr_desc_t (C++ class), 180
esp_attr_desc_t::length (C++ member), 180
esp_attr_desc_t::max_length (C++ member), 180
esp_attr_desc_t::perm (C++ member), 180
esp_attr_desc_t::uuid_length (C++ member), 180
esp_attr_desc_t::uuid_p (C++ member), 180
esp_attr_desc_t::value (C++ member), 180
esp_attr_detail_t (C++ class), 181
esp_attr_value_t (C++ class), 181
esp_attr_value_t::attr_len (C++ member), 181
esp_attr_value_t::attr_max_len (C++ member), 181
esp_attr_value_t::attr_value (C++ member), 181
ESP_AVRC_BATT_CRITICAL (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_BATTEXTERNAL (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_BATT_FULL_CHARGE (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_BATT_NORMAL (C++ enumerator), 265
esp_avrc_batt_stat_t (C++ enum), 263
ESP_AVRC_BATT_WARNING (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_CLEAR (C++ enumerator), 262
ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_SET (C++ enumerator), 262
esp_avrc_batt_mask_op_t (C++ enum), 261
ESP_AVRC_BIT_MASK_OP_TEST (C++ enumerator), 261
esp_avrc_ct_cb_event_t (C++ enum), 262
esp_avrc_ct_cb_param_t (C++ union), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ class), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
ESP_AVRC_BATT_WARNING (C++ enumerator), 265
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
esp_avrc_ct_change_notify_param (C++ member), 254
ESP_AVRC_BATT_FULL_CHARGE (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_BATT_WARNING (C++ enumerator), 265
Espersif Systems

2087

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_DOT (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_DISP_INFO (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_CONT_MENU (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_CLEAR (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_CHAN_UP (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_CHAN_DOWN (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_ANGLE (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_9 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_8 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_7 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_5 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_4 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_3 (C++ enumerator),
esp_avrc_psth_filter_t (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_SUPPORTED_CMD (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PSTH_FILTER_SUPPORT_MAX (C++ enumerator),
esp_avrc_psth_filter_t::bits (C++ enumerator),
esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_operation (C++ function),
esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t (C++ class),
esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t::bits (C++ member),
ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_ALL (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_MODE (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_OFF (C++ enumerator),
esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_operation (C++ function),
esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t (C++ class),
esp_avrc_psth_bit_mask_t::bits (C++ member),
ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_ALL (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_MODE (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PS_SHUFFLE_OFF (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_DOT (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_DOWN (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_EJECT (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_ENTER (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_EXIT (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F1 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F2 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F3 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F4 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_F5 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_FAST_FORWARD (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_FAV_MENU (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_FORWARD (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_HELP (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_INPUT_SEL (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_LEFT (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_LEFT_UP (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_MUTE (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_MUTE (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PAGE_DOWN (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PAGE_UP (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PAUSE (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PLAY (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_POWER (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_PREV_CHAN (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_RECORD (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_REWIND (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_RIGHT (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_RIGHT_DOWN (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_RIGHT_UP (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_ROOT_MENU (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SELECT (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SETUP_MENU (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SET物业管理 (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SOUND_SEL (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_STOP (C++ enumerator),
ESP_AVRC_PT_CMD_SUBPLECT (C++ enumerator),
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_app_value_param::p_vals (C++ member), 259
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_app_value_param::num_val (C++ member), 260
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_abs_vol_param::volume (C++ member), 261
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_rmt_feats_param::remote_bda (C++ member), 263
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_reg_ntf_param::event_id (C++ member), 263
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_psth_cmd_param::key_state (C++ member), 263
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_conn_stat_param::remote_bda (C++ member), 263
ESP_AVRC_RN_TRACK_REACHED_START (C++ enumerator), 263
ESP_AVRC_RN_UIDS_CHANGE (C++ enumerator), 263
ESP_AVRC_RN_VOLUME_CHANGE (C++ enumerator), 263
ESP_AVRC_RSP_ACCEPT (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_RSP_CHANGED (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_RSP_IMPL_STBL (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_RSP_IN_TRANS (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_RSP_INTRANS (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_RSP_NOT_IMPL (C++ enumerator), 265
ESP_AVRC_RSP_REJECT (C++ enumerator), 265
esp_avrc_rsp_t (C++ enum), 265
esp_avrc_set_app_value_param_t (C++ class), 257
esp_avrc_set_app_value_param_t::attr_id (C++ member), 258
esp_avrc_set_app_value_param_t::attr_val (C++ member), 258
esp_avrc_tg_cb_event_t (C++ enum), 262
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t (C++ union), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_conn_stat_param (C++ class), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_conn_stat_param:: (C++ member), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_conn_stat_param:: (C++ member), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_psht_cmd_param (C++ class), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_psht_cmd_param::k (C++ member), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_psht_cmd_param::k (C++ member), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_reg_ntf_param (C++ class), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_reg_ntf_param::ev (C++ member), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_reg_ntf_param::ev (C++ member), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_rmt_feats_param (C++ class), 256
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_rmt_feats_param:: (C++ member), 257
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_rmt_feats_param:: (C++ member), 257
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_abs_vol_param (C++ class), 257
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_abs_vol_param (C++ class), 257
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_app_value_param (C++ class), 257
esp_avrc_tg_cb_param_t::avrc_tg_set_app_value_param (C++ class), 257
esp_ble_adv_data_t (C++ class), 159
esp_ble_adv_data_t::appearance (C++ member), 160
esp_ble_adv_data_t::flag (C++ member), 160
esp_ble_adv_data_t::include_name (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_data_t::include_txd_power (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_data_t::manufacturer_len (C++ member), 160
esp_ble_adv_data_t::max_interval (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_data_t::min_interval (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_data_t::p_manufacturer_data (C++ member), 160
esp_ble_adv_data_t::p_service_data (C++ member), 160
esp_ble_adv_data_t::p_service_uuid (C++ member), 160
esp_ble_adv_data_t::service_data_len (C++ member), 160
esp_ble_adv_data_t::service_uuid_len (C++ member), 160
esp_ble_adv_data_t::set_scan_rsp (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_data_type (C++ enum), 175
esp_ble_adv_filter_t (C++ enum), 176
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_BREDR_NOT_SPT (C 宏), 168
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_DMT_CONTROLLER_SPT (C 宏), 168
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_DMT_HOST_SPT (C 宏), 168
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_DMT_LIMIT_DISC (C 宏), 168
ESP_BLE_ADV_FLAG_DMT_NON_LIMIT_DISC (C 宏), 168
esp_ble_adv_params_t (C++ class), 159
esp_ble_adv_params_t::adv_filter_policy (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_params_t::adv_int_max (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_params_t::adv_int_min (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_params_t::adv_type (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_params_t::channel_map (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_params_t::own_addr_type (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_params_t::peer_addr (C++ member), 159
esp_ble_adv_params_t::peer_addr_type (C++ member), 159
ESP_BLE_ADV_REPORT_EXT_ADV_IND (C 宏), 172
ESP_BLE_ADV_REPORT_EXT_DIRECT_ADV (C 宏), 172
ESP_BLE_ADV_REPORT_EXT_SCAN_IND (C 宏), 172
ESP_BLE_ADV_REPORT_EXT_SCAN_RSP (C 宏), 172
esp_ble_adv_type_t (C++ enum), 176
ESP_BLE_APP_ENC_KEY_SIZE (C++ enumerator), 177
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_BLOOD_PRESSURE_ARM (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_BLOOD_PRESSURE_WRIST (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_CYCLING_CADENCE (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_CYCLING_COMPUTER (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_CYCLING_POWER (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_CYCLING_SPEED (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_CYCLING_SPEED_CADENCE (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_BARCODE_SCANNER (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_BLOOD_PRESSURE (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_CLOCK (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_COMPUTER (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_CONTINUOUS_GLUCOSE_MONITOR (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_CYCLING (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_DISPLAY (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_EYEGlasses (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_GLUCOSE (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_HEART_RATE (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_HID (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_INSULIN_PUMP (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_KEYRING (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_MEDIA_PLAYER (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_MEDICATION_DELIVERY (C 宏), 171
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_OUTDOOR_SPORTS (C 宏), 171
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_PERSONAL_MOBILITY_DEVICE (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_PHONE (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_PULSE_OXIMETER (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_REMOTE (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_TAG (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_THERMOMETER (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_WALKING (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_WATCH (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_GENERIC_WEIGHT (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HEART_RATE_BELT (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_BARCODE_SCANNER (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_CARD_READER (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_DIGITAL_PEN (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_DIGITIZER_TABLET (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_GAMEPAD (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_JOYSTICK (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_KEYBOARD (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_MOUSE (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_PULSE_OXIMETER_PUMP (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_HID_PULSE_OXIMETER_PATCH_PUMP (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_MOBILITY_SCOOTER (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_OUTDOOR_SPORTS_LOCATION (C 宏), 171
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_PULSE_OXIMETER_FINGERTIP (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_PULSE_OXIMETER_WRIST (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_SPORTS_WATCH (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_THERMOMETER_EAR (C 宏), 170
ESP_BLE_APPEARANCE_UNKNOWN (C 宏), 169
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perdevice adv_set_params
(C++ class), 157
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perdevice adv_clear
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perdevice adv_start
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perdevice adv_stop
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perdevice adv_set_params
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perdevice adv_clear
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perdevice adv_start
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perdevice adv_stop
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ class), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rndm dev adv params
(C++ member), 158
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::get_bond_dev_cmpl
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ext_scan_stop
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ext_scan_start
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ext_adv_stop
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ext_adv_start
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ext_adv_report
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ext_adv_remove
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ext_adv_data_set
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ext_adv_clear
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::clear_bond_dev_cmpl
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::channel_sel_alg
(C++ member), 148
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_whitelist_cmpl evt_param::wl_opration
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_whitelist_cmpl evt_param
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_duplicate_exceptional_list_cmpl evt_param::subcode
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_duplicate_exceptional_list_cmpl evt_param::status
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_duplicate_exceptional_list_cmpl evt_param::length
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_conn_params_evt_param::timeout
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_conn_params_evt_param::status
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_conn_params_evt_param::min_int
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_conn_params_evt_param::max_int
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_conn_params_evt_param::latency
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_conn_params_evt_param::conn_int
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_update_conn_params_evt_param::bda
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_rand_cmpl evt_param::status
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perf_phy_cmpl evt_param::status
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t::ble_set_perf_def_phy_cmpl evt_param::status
(C++ member), 147
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_reprot_t::dir_addr_type (C++ member), 166
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_reprot_t::event_type (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_reprot_t::per_adv_interval (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_reprot_t::primary_phy (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_reprot_t::rssi (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_reprot_t::secondly_phy (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_reprot_t::sid (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_reprot_t::tx_power (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_set_clear (C++ function), 143
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_set_params (C++ function), 142
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_set_rand_addr (C++ function), 142
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_set_remove (C++ function), 143
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_start (C++ function), 143
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_stop (C++ function), 143
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_t (C++ class), 166
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_t::duration (C++ member), 166
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_t::instance (C++ member), 166
esp_ble_gap_ext_adv_t::max_events (C++ member), 166
ESP_BLE_GAP_EXT_SCAN_CFG_CODE_MASK (C constant), 172
ESP_BLE_GAP_EXT_SCAN_CFG_UNICODE_MASK (C constant), 172
esp_ble_get_local_used_addr (C function), 138
esp_ble_get_whitelist_size (C function), 137
ESP_BLE_GAP_NO_PREFER_RECEIVE_PHY (C constant), 171
ESP_BLE_GAP_NO_PREFER_TRANSMIT_PHY (C constant), 171
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_add_dev_to_list (C function), 145
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_add_dev_to_list (C function), 145
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_clear_dev (C function), 145
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_create_sync (C function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t (C++ member), 166
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t::properties (C++ member), 166
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_remove_dev_from_list (C function), 145
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t (C++ class), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data_length (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data_status (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::rssi (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::sync_handle (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_start (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_stop (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_cancel (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t (C++ class), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::addr_type (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_addr (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_clk_accuracy (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_phy (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data_status (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data_length (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::sync_timeout (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::skip (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::sid (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::filter_policy (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::addr_type (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::addr (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_phy (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_clk_accuracy (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_addr (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::period_adv_interval (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::sync_timeout (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::skip (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t::properties (C++ member), 166
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_remove_dev_from_list (C function), 145
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t (C++ class), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data_length (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data_status (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::rssi (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::sync_handle (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_start (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_stop (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_cancel (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t (C++ class), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::addr_type (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_addr (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_clk_accuracy (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_phy (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data_status (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data_length (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::sync_timeout (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::skip (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t::properties (C++ member), 166
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_remove_dev_from_list (C function), 145
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t (C++ class), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data_length (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data_status (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::rssi (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::sync_handle (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_start (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_stop (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_cancel (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t (C++ class), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::addr_type (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_addr (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_clk_accuracy (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_phy (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data_status (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data_length (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::sync_timeout (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::skip (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t::properties (C++ member), 166
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_remove_dev_from_list (C function), 145
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t (C++ class), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data_length (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::data_status (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::rssi (C++ member), 167
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_report_t::sync_handle (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_start (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_stop (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_cancel (C++ function), 144
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t (C++ class), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::addr_type (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_addr (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_clk_accuracy (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::adv_phy (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data_status (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data_length (C++ member), 168
esp_ble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::data (C++ member), 168
espble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::sync_timeout (C++ member), 167
espble_gap_periodic_adv_sync_estab_t::skip (C++ member), 167
espble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t::intemopt_t (C++ member), 167
espble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t::intemopt_t::sync_timeout (C++ member), 167
espble_gap_periodic_adv_params_t::intemopt_t::skip (C++ member), 167
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ member), 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ member), 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::dis_svc_cmpl(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ member), 211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::disconnect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ member), 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::exec_cmpl(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::close(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::congest(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espble_gattc_cb_param_t::connect(C++ member)</td>
<td>(C++ class), 213</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Espresif Systems

Espresif Systems

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback
esp_ble_gatts_register_callback (C++ function), 202
esp_ble_gatts_register_for_notify (C++ function), 209
esp_ble_gatts_search_service (C++ function), 203
esp_ble_gatts_send_mtu_req (C++ function), 203
esp_ble_gatts_unregister_for_notify (C++ function), 209
esp_ble_gatts_write_char (C++ function), 207
esp_ble_gatts_write_char_descr (C++ function), 207
esp_ble_gatts_add_char (C++ function), 191
esp_ble_gatts_add_char_descr (C++ function), 191
esp_ble_gatts_add_included_service (C++ function), 191
esp_ble_gatts_add_incl_srvc_evt_param (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_add_char_evt_param (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_add_char_descr_evt_param (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_add_attr_tab_evt_param (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_congest_evt_param (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_conf_evt_param (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_close_evt_param (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cancel_open_evt_param (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_app_register (C++ function), 190
esp_ble_gatts_app_unregister (C++ function), 190
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t (C++ class), 193
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::add_attr_tab (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::add_incl_srvc (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::add_char (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::add_char_descr (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::cancel_open (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::close (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::conf (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::congest (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::connect (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::create (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::del (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::disconnect (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::exec_write (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_attr_tab_evt_param (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_char_evt_param (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_char_descr_evt_param (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_incl_srvc_evt_param (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_attr_tab (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_char (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_char_descr (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_congest_evt_param (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_conf_evt_param (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_close_evt_param (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_cancel_open_evt_param (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_char_evt (C++ function), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_add_incl_srvc_evt (C++ function), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_congest_evt (C++ function), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_conf_evt (C++ function), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_close_evt (C++ function), 195
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_cancel_open_evt (C++ function), 195
esp_ble_gatts_register_for_notify (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_add_incl_srvc (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_add_char (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_add_char_descr (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_congest (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_connect (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_create (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_del (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_disconnect (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_exec_write (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_gatts_add_attr_tab (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_gatts_add_char (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_gatts_add_char_descr (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_gatts_congest (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_gatts_conf (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_gatts_close (C++ member), 196
esp_ble_gatts_gatts_cancel_open (C++ member), 196
}
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_write_value (C++ member), 200
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_write_value (C++ member), 200
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_write_value (C++ member), 200
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_write_value (C++ member), 200
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::gatts_write_value (C++ member), 200
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::mtu (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::open (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_cb_param_t::read (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_CB_param_t::reg (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_CB_param_t::rsp (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_CB_param_t::service_change (C++ member), 195
esp_ble_gatts_CB_param_t::set_attr_val (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_CB_param_t::start (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_CB_param_t::stop (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_CB_param_t::write (C++ member), 194
esp_ble_gatts_close (C++ function), 193
esp_ble_gatts_create_attr_tab (C++ function), 191
esp_ble_gatts_create_service (C++ function), 190
esp_ble_gatts_delete_service (C++ function), 192
esp_ble_gatts_get_attr_value (C++ function), 193
esp_ble_gatts_open (C++ function), 193
esp_ble_gatts_register_callback (C++ function), 190
esp_ble_gatts_send_indicate (C++ function), 192
esp_ble_gatts_send_response (C++ function), 192
esp_ble_gatts_send_service_change_indication (C++ function), 193
esp_ble_gatts_set_attr_value (C++ function), 193
esp_ble_gatts_start_service (C++ function), 192
esp_ble_gatts_stop_service (C++ function), 192
esp_get_bond_device_list (C++ function), 140
esp_get_bond_device_num (C++ function), 140

esp_ble_gatts_remove_current_conn_params (C++ function), 141
esp_unpair (C++ function), 132
esp_ble_io_cap_t (C++ type), 172
esp_ble_lenc_keys_t (C++ type), 131
esp_ble_key_mask_t (C++ type), 132
crypto_secret_key_t (C++ class), 163
esp_ble_key_t::bd_addr (C++ member), 163
esp_ble_key_t::dl_key (C++ member), 163
esp_ble_key_t::p_key_value (C++ member), 163
esp_unpair (C++ function), 132
esp_ble_lenc_keys_t (C++ type), 172
esp_ble_key_value_t (C++ union), 146
esp_ble_key_value_t::lcsrk_key (C++ member), 146
esp_ble_key_value_t::lenc_key (C++ member), 146
esp_ble_key_value_t::pcsrk_key (C++ member), 146
esp_ble_key_value_t::penc_key (C++ member), 146
esp_ble_key_value_t::pid_key (C++ member), 146
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys (C++ class), 162
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys::counter (C++ member), 162
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys::csrk (C++ member), 162
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys::div (C++ member), 162
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys::sec_level (C++ member), 162
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_DIRECT_IND (C type), 172
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_IND (C type), 172
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_NONCON_IND (C type), 172
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_SCAN_IND (C type), 172
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_SCAN_RSP_TO_ADV_IND (C type), 172
ESP_BLE_LEGACY_ADV_TYPE_SCAN_RESP_TO_ADV_IND (C type), 172
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys (C++ class), 162
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys::div (C++ member), 162
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys::lenc_key (C++ member), 162
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys::lcsrk_key (C++ member), 162
esp_ble_lcsrk_keys::p_key_value (C++ member), 162

esp_ble_key_type_t (C++ type), 172
esp_ble_id_key_mask (C type), 132
esp_ble_local_id_keys_t (C++ class), 163
esp_ble_local_id_keys_t::dhk (C++ member), 164
esp_ble_local_id_keys_t::ir (C++ member), 164
esp_ble_local_id_keys_t::irk (C++ mem-
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_composition_data_get_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_composition_data_get_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_hb_sub_status_cb_t::status
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{382})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{393})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_composition_data_get_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_composition_data_get_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_pub_set_t
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{382})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{389})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_pub_set_t::count
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{389})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_pub_set_t::dst
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{389})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_status_cb_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_default_ttl_status_cb_t::default_ttl
(\texttt{class}, \texttt{384})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_set_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_set_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t::src
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{392})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{392})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_set_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_set_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t::period
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{384})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{390})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_set_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t::src
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{384})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{390})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_status_cb_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_status_cb_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t::period
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{384})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{390})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_set_t::friend_status_cb_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_status_cb_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_pub_set_t::ttl
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{384})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{389})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_status_cb_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_status_cb_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t::dst
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{392})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{392})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_status_cb_t::friend_status_cb_t
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_status_cb_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t::period
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{384})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{390})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_friend_status_cb_t::friend_status_set_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t::period
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{384})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{390})

esp_ble_mesh_cfg_gatt_proxy_status_cb_t::esp_ble_mesh_cfg_heartbeat_sub_set_t::src
(\texttt{C++ class}, \texttt{392})
(\texttt{C++ member}, \texttt{392})
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_set_t::publish_addr
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_set_t::publish_period
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_set_t::publish_retransmit
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_bind_t
(C++ class), 384
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_status_cb_t::publish_app_idx
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_set_status_cb_t::publish_ttl
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_status_cb_t::publish_addr
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_status_cb_t::publish_period
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_status_cb_t::publish_retransmit
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_sub_add_t
(C++ class), 384
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_set_status_cb_t::publish_app_idx
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_status_cb_t::publish_ttl
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_status_cb_t::publish_addr
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_status_cb_t::publish_period
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_app_status_cb_t::publish_retransmit
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_mod_app_status_cb_t::status
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_mod_app_status_cb_t::model_id
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_mod_app_status_cb_t::element_addr
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_mod_app_status_cb_t::company_id
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_status_cb_t::status
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_status_cb_t::model_id
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_status_cb_t::element_addr
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_status_cb_t::company_id
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_set_t::publish_ttl
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_set_t::publish_retransmit
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_model_pub_set_t::publish_period
(C++ member), 385
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_transmit_set_t (C++ class), 389
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_net_transmit_set_t::relay (C++ member), 389
esp_ble_mesh_cfg CFG_SERVER_EVT_MAX (C++ enum), 399
esp_ble_mesh_CFG_SERVER_EVT_MAX (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATE_CHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
esp_ble mesh_CFG_SERVER_STATECHANGE_EVT (C++ member), 389
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_UNSPECIFIED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_TEMP_UNABLE_TO_CHANGE_STATE
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_status_t
(ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_SUCCESS
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_STORAGE_FAILURE
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_NOT_A_SUBSCRIBE_MODEL
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_KEY_INDEX_ALREADY_STORED
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_PUBLISH_PARAMETERS
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_NETKEY
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_MODEL
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_BINDING
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_APPKEY
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_ADDRESS
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_FEATURE_NOT_SUPPORTED
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_CANNOT_UPDATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_CANNOT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_CANNOT_REMOVE
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_CANNOT_BIND
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv_t
(esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv::ttl
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_SRV::timer
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv::src
(esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv::net_transmit
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_SRV::period
esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv::net_idx
(esp_ble_mesh_cfg_srv::model
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_SRV::min_hops
esp_ble_mesh_client_t::publish_status
esp_ble_mesh_client_t::op_pair_size
(esp_ble_mesh_client_t::op_pair
esp_ble_mesh_client_t::msg_role
esp_ble_mesh_client_t::model
esp_ble_mesh_client_t::internal_data
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::opcode
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::msg_timeout
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::msg_role
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::ctx
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::model
ESP_BLE_MESH_CID_NVAL
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::model_id
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::msg_role
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::msg_timeout
esp_ble_mesh_client_common_param_t::opcode
esp_ble_mesh_client_model_deinit
esp_ble_mesh_client_model_init
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_ADDRESS
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_APPKEY
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_BINDING
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_MODEL
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_INVALID_NETKEY
ESP_BLE_MESH_CFG_STATUS_UNSPECIFIED_ERROR

&nbsp;&n
```cpp

// ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_CLIENT_SET_STATE_EVT
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::power_default
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::onpowerup
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::onoff
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::manu_property
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::location_local
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::location_global
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::level
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::delta
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::def_trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::admin_property

// ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_RECV_GET_MSG_EVT
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_get_msg_t::user_property
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_get_msg_t::manu_property
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_get_msg_t::admin_property

// ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_SERVER_EVT_MAX
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_value_t::state_change
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_value_t::get
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_param_t::value
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_param_t::model
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_cb_param_t::ctx

// ESP_BLE_MESH_GENERIC_CLIENT_SET_STATE_EVT
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::user_property_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::power_range_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::power_level_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::power_default_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::onoff_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::move_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::loc_local_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::loc_global_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::level_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::def_trans_time_set
esp_ble_mesh_generic_client_set_state_t::admin_property_set
```
(C++ member), 412
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::user_property
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::power_range
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_generic_server_recv_set_msg_t::power_level
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_set_state
 ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT (C 宏), 338
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_set_state
 ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT (C 宏), 338
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_set_state
 ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::period_status
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::fault_status
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::current_status
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::attention_status
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::error_code
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::params
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::status_cb
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::attention
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::type
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::attention_cb
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::current_cb
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_heath_client_common_cb_param_t::fault_cb
(C++ member), 411
esp_ble_mesh_get_composition_data
(C++ function), 360
esp_ble_mesh_get_element_count
(C++ function), 360
esp_ble_mesh_get_fast_prov_app_key
(C++ function), 369
esp_ble_mesh_get_model_publish_period
(C++ function), 360
esp_ble_mesh_get_primary_element_address
(C++ function), 360
ESP_BLE_MESH_GETHUB_TRANSMIT_COUNT (C 宏), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_GETHUB_TRANSMIT_INTERVAL (C 宏), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_TRANSMIT_COUNT (C 宏), 338
ESP_BLE_MESH_GET_TRANSMIT_INTERVAL (C 宏), 338
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_PUBLISH_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_GET_STATE_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_CLIENT_EVT_MAX
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEA
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_OOB
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_NO_CHANGE_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_NO_CHANGE_ERROR
esp_ble_mesh_input_action_t
ESP_BLE_MESH_HOUSING_OPENED_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_HOUSING_OPENED_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_MESSAGE_RECV_EVT
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_REMOVE
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_REJECTLIST
esp_ble_mesh_heartbeat_filter_info_t::hb_src
esp_ble_mesh_heartbeat_filter_info_t::hb_dst
esp_ble_mesh_heartbeat_filter_info_t
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_ADD
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEARTBEAT_FILTER_ACCEPTLIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_HEALTH_STANDARD_TEST
esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_t::model
esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_t::health_test
esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_t::health_cb
esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_t::attention_timer_start
esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_t::attention_timer
esp_ble_mesh_health_srv_cb_t::fault_test
ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_FADE
ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_FADE_STANDBY_MANUAL
ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_FADE_STANDBY_AUTO
ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_OFF
ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_PROLONG
ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_RUN
ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_STANDBY
ESP_BLE_MESH_LC_Prolong
esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t::timestamp
esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t::tid
esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t::src
esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t::dst
esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t
ESP_BLE_MESH_KEY_PRIMARY
esp_ble_mesh_is_model_subscribed_to_group
ESP_BLE_MESH_KEY_ANY
esp_ble_mesh_key_dev
ESP_BLE_MESH_KEY_PRIMARY
ESP_BLE_MESH_KEY_UNUSED
esp_ble_mesh_last_msg_info_t::t_id
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SENSOR_SETTING_PROPERTY_ID
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SENSOR_PROPERTY_ID
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SCENE_NUMBER
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SETTINGS_IDX
esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_event_t
esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_param_t::error_code
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_LOW_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_LOW_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_HIGH_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_HIGH_ERROR
esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb_param_t::status
ESP_BLE_MESH_INTERNAL_BUS_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_INTERNAL_BUS_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_NODE_INDEX
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SETTINGSIDX
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SCENE_NUMBER
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SENSOR_PROPERTY_ID
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SENSOR_SETTING_PROPERTY_ID
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SCENE_NUMBER
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SETTINGSIDX
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SENSOR_PROPERTY_ID
ESP_BLE_MESH_INVALID_SENSOR_SETTING_PROPERTY_ID
esp_ble_mesh_light_client_cb::error_code
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_LOW_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_LOW_ERROR
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_HIGH_WARNING
ESP_BLE_MESH_INPUT_TOO_HIGH_ERROR
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C++ member</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_set</td>
<td>516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_range_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_linear_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_default_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_property_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_om_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_mode_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_last_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_linear_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::xyl_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::xyl_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::xyl_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::xyl_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_linear_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lc_property_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client status cb_t::lc_om_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lc_mode_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::ctl_temperature_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::ctl_temperature_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::ctl_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::ctl_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::xyl_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::xyl_range_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::xyl_default_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_saturation_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_hue_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_temperature_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_temperature_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_temperature_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_range_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_linear_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_default_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_property_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_om_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_mode_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_last_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_linear_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::xyl_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::xyl_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::xyl_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::xyl_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_linear_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lightness_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lc_property_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client status cb_t::lc_om_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::lc_mode_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::ctl_temperature_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::ctl_temperature_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::ctl_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_status_cb_t::ctl_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::xyl_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::xyl_range_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::xyl_default_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_saturation_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_hue_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::hsl_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_temperature_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_temperature_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_temperature_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble_mesh_light_client_set_state_t::ctl_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_range_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_linear_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_default_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_property_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_om_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_mode_set</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_last_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_linear_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_property_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_om_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_mode_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_last_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_linear_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_property_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_om_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lc_mode_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_last_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_target_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_range_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_linear_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_ble mesh_light_client_set_state_t::lightness_default_status</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::tt_delta_temperature
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::tt_delta_delta_uv
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::transition
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::state
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::rsp_ctrl

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_default_status_cb_t::saturation
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_default_status_cb_t::lightness
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_default_status_cb_t::hue

esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_status_cb_t::target_ctl_temperature
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_status_cb_t::target_ctl_delta_uv
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_status_cb_t::remain_time
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_status_cb_t::present_ctl_temperature
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_status_cb_t::present_ctl_delta_uv
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_status_cb_t::op_en

esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_set_t::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_set_t::delay
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_set_t::ctl_temperatrue
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_set_t::ctl_delta_uv

esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_status_cb_t::status_code
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_status_cb_t::range_min
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_status_cb_t::range_max

esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t::range_min
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t::range_max

esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::tt_delta_temperature
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::tt_delta_delta_uv
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::transition
esp_ble_mesh_light_ctl_temp_srv_t::state

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_set_t::saturation_range_min
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_set_t::saturation_range_max
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_set_t::hue_range_min
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_set_t::hue_range_max

ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_LIGHTNESS_STATE

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_status_cb_t::target_hue
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_status_cb_t::remain_time
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_status_cb_t::present_hue
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_status_cb_t::op_en
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_status_cb_t::tid

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t::delay
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t::ctl_temperatrue
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t::ctl_delta_uv

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t::tt_delta_hue
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t::transition
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t::state
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t::rsp_ctrl

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t::delay
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t::ctl_temperatrue
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_set_t::ctl_delta_uv

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t::tt_delta_hue
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t::transition
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t::state
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_hue_srv_t::rsp_ctrl
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_set_t::hsl_lightness
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_set_t::delay

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_saturation_status_cb_t::target_saturation
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_saturation_status_cb_t::remain_time

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_saturation_set_t::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_saturation_set_t::tid

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_sat_srv_t::tt_delta_saturation
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_sat_srv_t::transition

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_status_cb_t::saturation_range_min
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_status_cb_t::saturation_range_max
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_status_cb_t::hue_range_min
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_range_status_cb_t::hue_range_max

esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_state_t::saturation
esp_ble_mesh_light_hsl_state_t::lightness

ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_STATE (C++ enum)

ESP_BLE_MESH_LIGHT_HSL_STATE (C++ class)
索引

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_SRV (C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LC_CLI (C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LC_SETUP_SRV (C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LC_SRV (C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SRV (C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SETUP_SRV (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_CLI (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LC_CLI (C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_LC_SETUP_SRV (C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCENE_CLI (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCENE_SETUP_SRV (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SCENE_SRV (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SENSOR_CLI (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SENSOR_SETUP_SRV (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_SENSOR_SRV (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_TIME_CLI (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_TIME_SETUP_SRV (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_TIME_SRV (C 宏), 341
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_CTL_CLI (C 宏), 513
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_CTL_SETUP_SRV (C 宏), 514
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_CTL_SRV (C 宏), 513
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_SRV (C 宏), 515
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_CLI (C 宏), 513
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SRV (C 宏), 515
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL-setup_SRV (C 宏), 515
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_setup_SRV (C 宏), 515
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_CLI (C 宏), 512
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ID_LIGHT_HSL_normalized_SRV (C 宏), 515

esp_ble_mesh_model_msg_opcode_init (C++ function), 363
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_ATTENTION_STATUS (C 宏), 340
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_UPDATE (C 宏), 340
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_GET (C 宏), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_LIST (C 宏), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_STATUS (C 宏), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_UPDATE (C 宏), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_UPDATE (C 宏), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_ATTENTION_GET (C 宏), 345
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_ATTENTION_SET (C 宏), 345
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_ATTENTION_SET_UNACK (C 宏), 345
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_ATTENTION_STATUS (C 宏), 345
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_ATTENTION_STATUS (C 宏), 345
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_BEACON_GET (C 宏), 345
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_BEACON_SET (C 宏), 345
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_BEACON_STATUS (C 宏), 344
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_COMPOSITION_DATA_GET (C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_APP_KEY_COMPOSITION_DATA_STATUS (C 宏), 342

Espressif Systems 2133 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_SET (C 宏), 344
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_SET_UNACK (C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_LEVEL_GET (C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_INDEX (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DELTA_SET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_DELTA_SET_UNACK (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_STATUS (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_SET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_GET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTIES_STATUS (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTIES_GET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GATT_PROXY_STATUS (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GATT_PROXY_SET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GATT_PROXY_GET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_FRIEND_SET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_FRIEND_GET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_END (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_STATUS (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_SET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_GET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_STATUS (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_SET_UNACK (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_GET_UNACK (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_DEFAULT_TTL_GET (C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_PUB_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_PUB_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_SUB_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_SUB_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_HEARTBEAT_SUB_STATUS
(C 宏), 344
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_GET
(C 宏), 342
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_SET
(C 宏), 344
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_GET
(C 宏), 349
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_DEFAULT_STATUS
(C 宏), 349
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_GET
(C 宏), 349
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_GET
(C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_DEFAULT_STATUS
(C 宏), 347
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_GET
(C 宏), 350
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_CTL_TEMPERATURE_RANGE_SET
(C 宏), 350
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_SET
(C 宏), 344
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_KEY_REFRESH_PHASE_STATUS
(C 宏), 344
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_STATUS
(C 宏), 344
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTY_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTIES_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_USER_PROPERTIES_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_RANGE_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LEVEL_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LAST_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_LAST_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_SET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_GET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_GET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_GET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_GET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_STATUS
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_GET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_SET
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_GEN_POWER_HUE_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_DEFAULT_GET_UNACK
(C 宏), 346

索引
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_OM_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_MODE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_LIGHT_ONOFF_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_TARGET_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_TARGET_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_SATURATION_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_RANGE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_HSL_HUE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_DEFAULT_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_RANGE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LINEAR_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LAST_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_LAST_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LIGHTNESS_DEFAULT_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_LC_PROPERTY_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_TARGET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_TARGET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_LIGHT_XYL_RANGE_STATUS

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_GET

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_SET_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCHEDULER_ACT_GET

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STORE
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STORE_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_REGISTER_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_REGISTER_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_RECALL
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_RECALL_UNACK
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_DELETE
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SCENE_DELETE_UNACK

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_RELAY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_RELAY_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_RELAY_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_RELAY_SET_UNACK

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_RESET_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_RESET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_IDENTITY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_IDENTITY_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NODE_IDENTITY_GET

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NETWORK_TRANSMIT_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NETWORK_TRANSMIT_SET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NETWORK_TRANSMIT_GET

ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_ADD
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_DELETE
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_GET
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_LIST
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_UPDATE
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_NET_KEY_STATUS
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_SET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_SET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ZONE_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ZONE_SET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ZONE_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_UNACK (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_ROLE_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_TIME_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_SET_UNACK (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_CADENCE_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SERIES_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SERIES_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_Setting_SET_UNACK (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_SET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_COLUMN_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_COLUMN_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_COLUMN_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_COLUMN_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_DESCRIPTOR_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_SET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_SETTING_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_ROLE_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_ROLE_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_ROLE_SET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_RETRANSMIT (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_TIMESTAMP (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_TAI_UTC_DELTA_SET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_TAI_UTC_DELTA_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_TAI_UTC_DELTA_STATUS (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SENSOR_TAI_UTC_DELTA_UNACK (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_SUB_LIST (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_APP_LIST (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_APP_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_APP_SUB_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_SIG_MODEL_APP_SUB_LIST (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_SUB_LIST (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_APP_SUB_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_APP_SUB_LIST (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_APP_GET (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_VENDOR_MODEL_APP_LIST (C 宏)，348
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OP_OPERATION_EVT (C++ function)，329
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OPERATION_EVT (C++ class)，329
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OPERATION_EVT (C++ class)，329
ESP_BLE_MESH_MODEL_OPERATION_EVT (C++ class)，329
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::app_idx (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::count (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::cred (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::dev_role (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::fast_period (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::model (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::msg (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::period (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::period_div (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::publish_addr (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::retransmit (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::send_rel (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::timer (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::ttl (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_pub_t::update (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::cred (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::count (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::dev_role (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::fast_period (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::msg (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::period (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::period_div (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::publish_addr (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::retransmit (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::send_rel (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::timer (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::ttl (C++ member)，330
esp_ble_mesh_model_op_t::update (C++ member)，330
(C++ member), 308
esp_ble_mesh_prov_cb_t::provisioner_set_local_app_key_comp
(C++ member), 308
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_GATT (C++ enumerator),
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_INPUT_OOB_MAX_LEN (C++ enumerator),
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_OUTPUT_OOB_MAX_LEN
(C++ enumerator), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_REGISTER_COMP_EVT
(C++ enumerator), 354
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_REMOVE_COMP_EVT
(C++ enumerator), 356
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_RESET_EVT
(C++ enumerator), 357
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_STATIC_OOB_MAX_LEN
(C++ enumerator), 353
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_BAR_CODE (C++ enumerator), 356
esp_ble_mesh_prov_data_info_t::data_info
(C++ member), 333
esp_ble_mesh_prov_data_info_t::data_info
(C++ member), 333
esp_ble_mesh_prov_data_info_t::flags
(C++ member), 333
esp_ble_mesh_prov_data_info_t::flags
(C++ member), 333
esp_ble_mesh_prov_data_info_t::iv_index
(C++ member), 333
esp_ble_mesh_prov_data_info_t::net_idx
(C++ member), 333
ESP_BLE_MESH_PROV_EVT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 358
C++ class
C++ function
C++ enumerator
(C++ member), 458
ESP_BLE_MESH_SCENE_NOT_FOUND (C 宏), 474
ESP_BLE_MESH_SCENE_NUMBER_LEN (C 宏), 473
esp_ble_mesh_scene_recall_t (C++ class), 458
esp_ble_mesh_scene_recall_t::delay (C++ member), 458
esp_ble_mesh_scene_recall_t::op_en (C++ member), 458
esp_ble_mesh_scene_recall_t::scene_number (C++ member), 458
ESP_BLE_MESH_SCENE_REG_FULL (C 宏), 474
esp_ble_mesh_scene_register_status_cb_t::status_code (C++ member), 460
esp_ble_mesh_scene_register_status_cb_t::current_scene (C++ member), 460
esp_ble_mesh_scene_register_t (C++ class), 460
esp_ble_mesh_schedule_register_t::scene_number (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t::target_scene (C++ member), 464
ESP_BLE_MESH_SCENE_SUCCESS (C 宏), 474
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t::current_scene (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t::in_progress (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t::scene_count (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t::scenes (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t::status_code (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_state_t::target_scene (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_setup_srv_t::state (C++ macro), 474
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_setup_srv_t::scene_recalled (C++ macro), 474
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_setup_srv_t::scene_turned_off (C++ macro), 474
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_setup_srv_t::scene_turned_on (C++ macro), 474
esp_ble_mesh_setup_srv_t (C++ class), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_setup_srv_t::model (C++ member), 465
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_setup_srv_t::rspec_ctrl (C++ member), 465
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_setup_srv_t::state (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_setup_srv_t::transition (C++ member), 464
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_status_cb_t (C++ class), 460
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_status_cb_t::status_code (C++ member), 460
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_status_cb_t::target_scene (C++ member), 460
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_status_cb_t::current_scene (C++ member), 460
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_status_cb_t::op_en (C++ member), 460
esp_ble_mesh_scenes_status_cb_t::remain_time (C++ member), 460
ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_STATUS_MIN_INTERVAL_LEN

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_STATUS_MIN_INTERVAL_MAX

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_STATUS_TRIGGER_TYPE_CHAR

ESP_BLE_MESH_SENSOR_STATUS_TRIGGER_TYPE_UINT16

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_LEVEL_SET_T

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_DELTA_SET_T::op_en

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_DELTA_SET_T::delta_level

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_DELTA_SET_T::delay

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_DEF_TRANS_TIME_SET_T::trans_time

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_CLIENT_PROPERTIES_GET_T::property_id

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_SET_T::user_access

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_SET_T::property_value

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_SET_T::property_id

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_ADMIN_PROPERTY_GET_T::property_id

esp_ble_mesh_server_model_update_state

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_MODEL_UPDATE_STATE_MAX

esp_ble_mesh_server_model_send_msg

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_local_set_t

ESP_BLE_MESH_SERVER_RECV_GEN_LOC_GLOBAL_SET_T

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_global_set_t::global_latitude

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_global_set_t::global_altitude

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_level_set_t::tid

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_level_set_t::op_en

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_level_set_t::level

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_onoff_set_t::onoff

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_onoff_set_t::delay

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_move_set_t::trans_time

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_move_set_t::tid

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_move_set_t::op_en

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_move_set_t::delay

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_manufacturer_property_set_t::user_access

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_manufacturer_property_set_t::property_id

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_manufacturer_property_get_t::property_id

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_local_set_t::uncertainty

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_local_set_t::local_north

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_local_set_t::local_east

esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_gen_loc_local_set_t::local_altitude
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::temperature
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::trans_time
esp_ble_mesh_server_recv_light_ctl_set::tid
C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ class

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ class

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ class

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ member

C++ function

C++ enumerator

C++ enumerator

C++ function

C++ function

C++ function
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_def_trans_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_def_trans_set_t::trans
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_level_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_level_set_t::power
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_default_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_default_set_t::power
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_onpowerup_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_onpowerup_set_t::onpowerup
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_onoff_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_onoff_set_t::onoff
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_move_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_move_set_t::level
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_manu_property_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_manu_property_set_t::id
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_local_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_local_set_t::uncertainty
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_local_set_t::east
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_local_set_t::altitude
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_global_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_global_set_t::latitude
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_loc_global_set_t::altitude
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_level_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_level_set_t::level
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_delta_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_delta_set_t::level
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_def_trans_time_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_def_trans_time_set_t::trans_time
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_range_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_range_set_t::hue_range_min
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_range_set_t::hue_range_max
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_hue_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_hue_set_t::hue
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_default_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_default_set_t::saturation
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_hsl_default_set_t::hue
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_set_t::temperature
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_set_t::delta_uv
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t::range_min
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_temperature_range_set_t::range_max
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_set_t::temperature
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_set_t::lightness
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_set_t::delta_uv
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_default_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_default_set_t::temperature
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_default_set_t::lightness
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_light_ctl_default_set_t::delta_uv
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_user_property_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_user_property_set_t::value
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_user_property_set_t::id
(C++ member), 427

esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_range_set_t
(C++ class), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_range_set_t::range_min
(C++ member), 427
esp_ble_mesh_state_change_gen_power_range_set_t::range_max
(C++ member), 427
Espresif Systems 2162  Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36  Submit Document Feedback
esp_ble_mesh_time_state_t::time_zone_offset_new
esp_ble_mesh_time_zone_status_cb_t::time_zone_offset_new
esp_ble_mesh_time_zone_set_t::time_zone_offset_new
.esp_ble_mesh_time_status_cb_t::uncertainty
esp_ble_mesh_time_status_cb_t::time_authority
esp_ble_mesh_time_status_cb_t::tai_seconds
esp_ble_mesh_time_status_cb_t::sub_second
esp_ble_mesh_time_state_t::uncertainty
esp_ble_mesh_time_state_t::time_zone_offset_new

ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL0
esp_ble_pkt_data_length_params_t::tx_len
esp_ble_pkt_data_length_params_t::rx_len
esp_ble_pkt_data_length_params_t

esp_ble_pid_keys_t::static_addr
esp_ble_pid_keys_t::irk
esp_ble_pid_keys_t::addr_type
esp_ble_pid_keys_t

esp_ble_penc_keys_t::sec_level
esp_ble_penc_keys_t::ediv
esp_ble_penc_keys_t::key_size
esp_ble_penc_keys_t

esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t::sec_level
esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t::csrk
esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t::counter
esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t

esp_ble_passkey_reply
esp_ble_oob_req_reply
ESP_BLE_OOB_ENABLE

ESP_BLE_MESH_VENDOR_MODEL (C 宏), 339
ESP_BLE_MESH_VIBRATE (C++ enumerator), 353
ESP_BLE_MESH_VIBRATION_ERROR (C 宏), 406
ESP_BLE_MESH_VIBRATION_WARNING (C 宏),

ESP_BLE_ONLY_ACCEPT_SPECIFIED_AUTH_DISABLE (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_ONLY_ACCEPT_SPECIFIED_AUTH_ENABLE (C 宏), 169

ESP_BLE_OOB_DISABLE (C 宏), 169
ESP_BLE_OOB_ENABLE (C 宏), 169
esp_ble_oob_req_reply (C++ function), 141
esp_ble_passkey_reply (C++ function), 140
esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t (C++ class), 162
csrk (C++ member), 162
sec_level (C++ member), 162

counter (C++ member), 162

esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t::ltk (C++ member), 161
esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t::rand (C++ member), 161
esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t::sec_level (C++ member), 161
esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t::addr_type (C++ member), 162
esp_ble_pcsrk_keys_t::static_addr (C++ member), 162
esp_ble_pkt_data_length_params_t (C++ class), 161
esp_ble_pkt_data_length_params_t::rx_len (C++ member), 161
esp_ble_pkt_data_length_params_t::tx_len (C++ member), 161
esp_ble_power_type_t (C++ enum), 129
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_ADV (C++ enumerator), 129
ESP_BLE_PWR_TYPE_CONN_HDL0 (C++ enumer-
| C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 | C++ member                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|}

**Espresif Systems**

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class/Member</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_sta_ssid_evt_param::ssid_len</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_sta_ssid_evt_param::ssid</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_sta_ssid_evt_param::op_mode</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_username_evt_param::name_len</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_username_evt_param::name</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_sta_ssid_evt_param::sta_bssid</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_sta_ssid_evt_param::sta_passwd</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::blufi_recv_sta_ssid_evt_param::sta_ssid</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::username</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::wifi_mode</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::client_pkey</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::client_cert</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::ca</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_cb_param_t::custom_data</td>
<td>(C++ member)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_deinit_state_t</td>
<td>(C++ type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_decrypt_func_t</td>
<td>(C++ type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_encrypt_func_t</td>
<td>(C++ type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_cb_t</td>
<td>(C++ class)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_init_state_t</td>
<td>(C++ class)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_get_wifi_status</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_get_wifi_list</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_ble_connect</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_ble_disconnect</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_deauthenticate_sta</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_deinit_finish</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_deinit_finish</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_custom_data</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_server_priv_key</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_client_cert</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_server_cert</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_slave_disconnect_ble</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_softap_auth_mode</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_softap_channel</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_softap_max_conn_num</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_softap_passwd</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_event_recv_softap_ssid</td>
<td>(C++ function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enumerator), 226</td>
<td>esp_blufi_init_state_t (C++ type), 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_BSSID (C++ enumerator), 226</td>
<td>esp_blufi_profile_deinit (C++ function), 218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_PASSWD (C++ enumerator), 226</td>
<td>esp_blufi_profile_init (C++ function), 218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_STA_SSID (C++ enumerator), 226</td>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_READ_PARAM_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_RECV_USERNAME (C++ enumerator), 226</td>
<td>esp_blufi_register_callbacks (C++ function), 218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_REPORT_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
<td>esp_blufi_send_custom_data (C++ function), 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_REQ_CONNECT_TO_AP (C++ enumerator), 226</td>
<td>esp_blufi_send_error_info (C++ function), 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_REQ_DISCONNECT_FROM_AP (C++ enumerator), 226</td>
<td>esp_blufi_send_wifi_conn_report (C++ function), 218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_EVENT_SET_WIFI_OPMODE (C++ enumerator), 226</td>
<td>esp_blufi_send_wifi_list (C++ function), 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t (C++ class), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_SEQUENCE_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_authmode (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>esp_blufi_STA_CONN_FAIL (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_authmode_set (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>esp_blufi_sta_conn_state_t (C++ enum), 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_channel (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>esp_blufi_STA_CONN_SUCCESS (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_channel_set (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>esp_bredr_sco_datapath_set (C++ function), 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_max_conn_num (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>esp_bredr_tx_power_get (C++ function), 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_max_conn_num_set (C++ function), 123</td>
<td>ESP_BT_CLR_COD_SERVICE_CLASS (C++ enumerator), 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_passwd (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_FORMAT_TYPE_1 (C 宏), 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_passwd_len (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_FORMAT_TYPE_BIT_MASK (C 宏), 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_ssid (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_FORMAT_TYPE_BIT_OFFSET (C 宏), 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::softap_ssid_len (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_AV (C++ enumerator), 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::sta_bssid (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_BIT_MASK (C 宏), 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::sta_bssid_set (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_BIT_OFFSET (C 宏), 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::sta_passwd (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_COMPUTER (C++ enumerator), 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::sta_passwd_len (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_IMMUNITY (C++ enumerator), 242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::sta_ssid (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_IMAGING (C++ enumerator), 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_extra_info_t::sta_ssid_len (C++ member), 224</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_LAN_NAP (C++ enumerator), 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_get_version (C++ function), 219</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_MISC (C++ enumerator), 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_INIT_FAILED (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
<td>ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_PERIPHERAL (C++ enumerator), 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_INIT_OK (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
<td>esp_blufi Codable_bytes_t (C++ function), 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_INIT_SECURITY_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
<td>esp_blufi Codable_length_t (C++ function), 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_blufi_init_state_t (C++ enum), 227</td>
<td>ESP_BLUFI_MAKE_PUBLIC_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 227</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_UNCATEGORIZED (C++ enumerator), 242
ESP_BT_COD_MAJOR_DEV_WEARABLE (C++ enumerator), 241
ESP_BT_COD_MINOR_DEV_BIT_MASK (C宏), 239
ESP_BT_COD_MINOR_DEV_BIT_OFFSET (C宏), 239
esp_bt_controller_config_t::controller_debug_flag
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::controller_task_prio (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::controller_task_stack
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::controller_task_prio (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::controller_task_stack
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::controller_task_prio (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_no
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::magic
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::mesh_adv_size
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::mode
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::normal_adv_size
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::pcm_polar
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::pcm_role
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::scan_duplicate_mode
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::scan_duplicate_type
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_config_t::send_adv_reserved_size
(esp_bt_controller_config_t::hci_uart_baudrate (C++ member), 127
esp_bt_controller_deinit (C++ function), 124
esp_bt_controller_disable (C++ function), 124
esp_bt_controller_enable (C++ function), 124
esp_bt_controller_get_status (C++ function), 124
esp_bt_controller_init (C++ function), 124
esp_bt_controller_mem_release (C++ function), 125
ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_STATUS_ENABLED (C++ enumerator), 129
ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_STATUS_IDLE (C++ enumerator), 129
ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_STATUS_INITED (C++ enumerator), 129
ESP_BT_CONTROLLER_STATUS_NUM (C++ enumerator), 129
esp_bt_controller_status_t (C++ enum), 129
esp_dev_get_address (C++ function), 135
esp_dev_set_device_name (C++ function), 135
EXP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_BLE (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_BREDR (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_LMTD_DISCOVER (C++ enum), 127
ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_NETWORKING (C++ enum), 127
ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_TONE (C++ enum), 127
ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_UNCATEGORIZED (C++ enum), 127
ESP_COD_SRVC_TELEPHONY (C++ enum), 127
ESP_COD_SRVC_RENDERING (C++ enum), 127
ESP_COD_SRVC_POSITIONING (C++ enum), 127
ESP_COD_SRVC_RENDERING (C++ enum), 127
ESP_COD_SRVC_WSOUND (C++ enum), 127
ESP_COD_SRVC_WSOUND (C++ enum), 127
ESP_BT_DEVICE_TYPE_DUMO (C++ enumerator), 133
esp_bt_discovery_mode_t (C++ enum), 240
esp_bt_duplicate_exceptional_subcode_t (C++ enum), 178
esp_bt_eir_data_t (C++ class), 237
esp_bt_eir_data_t::fec_required (C++ member), 237
esp_bt_eir_data_t::flag (C++ member), 237
esp_bt_eir_data_t::include_txpower (C++ member), 237
esp_bt_eir_data_t::include_uuid (C++ member), 237
esp_bt_eir_data_t::manufacturer_len (C++ member), 237
esp_bt_eir_data_t::p_manufacturer_data (C++ member), 237
esp_bt_eir_data_t::p_url (C++ member), 237
esp_bt_eir_data_t::url_len (C++ member), 237
ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_BREDR_NOT_SPT (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_DMT_CONTROLLER_SPT (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_DMT_HOST_SPT (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_GEN_DISC (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_FLAG_LIMIT_DISC (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_MAX_LEN (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_CMPL_128BITS_UUID (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_CMPL_128BITS_UUID (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_CMPL_128BITS_UUID (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_CMPL_LOCAL_NAME (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_FLAGS (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_INCMPL_128BITS_UUID (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_INCMPL_128BITS_UUID (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_INCMPL_128BITS_UUID (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_MANU_SPECIFIC (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_MAX_NUM (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_SHORT_LOCAL_NAME (C++), 238
esp_bt_eir_type_t (C++ type), 239
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_TX_POWER_LEVEL (C++), 238
ESP_BT_EIR_TYPE_URL (C++), 238
esp_gap_afh_channels (C++ type), 239
ESP_BT_GAP_AFH_CHANNELS_LEN (C++), 237
ESP_BT_GAP_AUTH_CMPL_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
gap_discovery (C++ function), 229
esp_bt_gap_cancel_discovery (C++ enum), 242
esp_gap_cancel_discovery (C++ enum), 242
function), 230
esp_bt_gap_get_bond_device_num (C++ function), 230
esp_bt_gap_get_cod (C++ function), 230
esp_bt_gap_get_cod_format_type (C++ function), 228
esp_bt_gap_get_cod_major_dev (C++ function), 228
esp_bt_gap_get_cod_minor_dev (C++ function), 228
esp_bt_gap_get_cod_svc (C++ function), 228
esp_bt_gap_get_remote_service_record (C++ function), 228
esp_bt_gap_get_remote_services (C++ function), 229
esp_bt_gap_is_valid_cod (C++ function), 228
ESP_BT_GAP_KEY_NOTIF_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
ESP_BT_GAP_KEY_REQ_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
ESP_BT_GAP_MAX_BNAME_LEN (C宏), 237
ESP_BT_GAP_MAX_INQ_LEN (C宏), 239
ESP_BT_GAP_MIN_INQ_LEN (C宏), 239
ESP_BT_GAP_MODE_CHG_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
esp_bt_gap_pin_reply (C++ function), 242
ESP_BT_GAP_PIN_REQ_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
ESP_BT_GAP_QOS_CMPL_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
esp_bt_gap_read_remote_name (C++ function), 232
ESP_BT_GAP_READ_REMOTE_NAME_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
esp_bt_gap_read_rssi_delta (C++ function), 230
ESP_BT_GAP_READ_RSSI_DELTA_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
esp_bt_gap_register_callback (C++ function), 228
ESP_BT_GAP_REMOVE_BOND_DEV_COMPLETE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
esp_bt_gap_remove_bond_device (C++ function), 230
esp_bt_gap_resolve_eir_data (C++ function), 229
ESP_BT_GAP_RMT_SRVCS_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
ESP_BT_GAP_RMT_SRVCS_EVT (C++ function), 242
ESP_BT_GAP_RSSI_HIGH_THRLD (C宏), 237
ESP_BT_GAP_RSSI_LOW_THRLD (C宏), 237
espisetafhchannels (C++ function), 232
ESP_BT_GAP_SET_AFCHANNELS_EVT (C++ enumerator), 242
esp_bt_gap_set_cod (C++ function), 230
esp_bt_gap_set_pin (C++ function), 231
esp_bt_gap_set_qos (C++ function), 232
esp_bt_gap_set_scan_mode (C++ function), 228
esp_bt_gap_set_security_param (C++ function), 231
esp_bt_gap_ssp_confirm_reply (C++ function), 231
esp_bt_gap_ssp_passkey_reply (C++ function), 231
esp_bt_gap_start_discovery (C++ function), 228
ESP_BT_GENERAL_DISCOVERABLE (C++ enumerator), 240
esp_bt_hf_answer_call (C++ function), 297
esp_bt_hf_bsr (C++ function), 296
esp_bt_hf_cind_response (C++ function), 295
esp_bt_hf_clcc_response (C++ function), 296
ESP_BT_HF_CLIENT_NUMBER_LEN (C宏), 290
ESP_BT_HF_CLIENT_OPERATOR_NAME_LEN (C宏), 290
esp_bt_hf_cmee_response (C++ function), 295
esp_bt_hf_enm_response (C++ function), 296
esp_bt_hf_connect (C++ function), 293
esp_bt_hf_connect_audio (C++ function), 294
esp_bt_hf_cops_response (C++ function), 296
esp_bt_hf_deinit (C++ function), 293
esp_bt_hf_disconnect (C++ function), 294
esp_bt_hf_disconnect_audio (C++ function), 294
esp_bt_hf_end_call (C++ function), 297
esp_bt_hf_indchange_notification (C++ function), 295
esp_bt_hf_init (C++ function), 293
ESP_BT_HF_NUMBER_LEN (C宏), 274
ESP_BT_HF_OPERATOR_NAME_LEN (C宏), 274
esp_bt_hf_out_call (C++ function), 297
esp_bt_hf_register_callback (C++ function), 293
esp_bt_hf_register_data_callback (C++ function), 298
esp_bt_hf_register_indication (C++ function), 297
esp_bt_hf_volume_control (C++ function), 294
esp_bt_hf_vra (C++ function), 294
ESP_BT_INIT_COD (C++ enumerator), 240
ESP_BT_INQ_MODE_GENERAL_INQUIRY (C++ enumerator), 243
ESP_BT_INQ_MODE_LIMITED_INQUIRY (C++ enumerator), 243
esp_bt_inq_mode_t (C++ enum), 242
ESP_BT_IO_CAP_IN (C宏), 238
ESP_BT_IO_CAP_IO (C宏), 238
ESP_BT_IO_CAP_NONE (C宏), 238
ESP_BT_IO_CAP_OUT (C宏), 238
esp_bt_io_cap_t (C++ type), 239
ESP_BT_LIMITED_DISCOVERABLE (C++ enumerator), 240
esp_bt_mem_release (C++ function), 125
ESP_BT_MODE_BLE (C++ enumerator), 128
ESP_BT_MODE_BTDM (C++ enumerator), 128
ESP_BT_MODE_CLASSIC_BT (C++ enumerator), 128
ESP_BT_MODE_IDLE (C++ enumerator), 128
esp_bt_mode_t (C++ enum), 128
ESP_BT_NON_CONNECTABLE (C++ enumerator), 240
ESP_BT_NON_DISCOVERABLE (C++ enumerator), 240
ESP_BT_OCTET16_LEN (C 宏), 131
esp_bt_octet16_t (C++ type), 132
ESP_BT_OCTET8_LEN (C 宏), 131
esp_bt_octet8_t (C++ type), 132
ESP_BT_PIN_CODE_LEN (C 宏), 131
esp_BT_pin_code_t (C++ type), 239
ESP_BT_PIN_TYPE_FIXED (C++ enumerator), 241
esp_BT_pin_type_t (C++ enum), 241
ESP_BT_PIN_TYPE_VARIABLE (C++ enumerator), 241
ESP_BT_PM_MD_ACTIVE (C 宏), 238
ESP_BT_PM_MD_HOLD (C 宏), 238
ESP_BT_PM_MD_PARK (C 宏), 239
ESP_BT_PM_MD_HOLD (C 宏), 239
esp_BT_pm_mode_t (C++ type), 239
ESP_BT_SET_COD_ALL (C++ enumerator), 240
ESP_BT_SET_COD_MAJOR_MINOR (C++ enumerator), 240
ESP_BT_SET_COD_SERVICE_CLASS (C++ enumerator), 240
esp_BT_sleep_disable (C++ function), 126
esp_BT_sleep_enable (C++ function), 126
ESP_BT_SP_IOCAP_MODE (C++ enumerator), 241
esp_BT_sp_param_t (C++ enum), 241
ESP_BT_STATUS_AUTH_FAILURE (C++ enumerator), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_AUTH_REJECTED (C++ enumerator), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_BUSY (C++ enumerator), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_CONTROL_LE_DATA_LEN_UNSUPPORTED (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_FAIL (C++ enumerator), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_INVALID_STATIC_RAND_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_MEMORY_FULL (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_NOMEM (C++ enumerator), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_NOT_READY (C++ enumerator), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_PARAM_OUT_OF_RANGE (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_PARM_INVALID (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_PEER_LE_DATA_LEN_UNSUPPORTED (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_PENDING (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_RMT_DEV_DOWN (C++ enumerator), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_SUCCESS (C++ enumerator), 132
esp_BT_status_t (C++ enum), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_TIMEOUT (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_UNACCEPT_CONN_INTERVAL (C++ enumerator), 133
ESP_BT_STATUS_UNHANDLED (C++ enumerator), 132
ESP_BT_STATUS_UNSUPPORTED (C++ enumerator), 132
esp_BT_uuid_t (C++ class), 131
esp_BT_uuid_t::len (C++ member), 131
esp_BT_uuid_t::uuid (C++ member), 131
esp_BT_uuid_t::uuid128 (C++ member), 131
esp_BT_uuid_t::uuid16 (C++ member), 131
esp_BT_uuid_t::uuid32 (C++ member), 131
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32 (C++ enumerator), 1177
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32C3 (C++ enumerator), 1177
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32H2 (C++ enumerator), 1177
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32S2 (C++ enumerator), 1177
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32S3 (C++ enumerator), 1177
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP8684 (C++ enumerator), 1177
ESP_CHIP_ID_INVALID (C++ enumerator), 1177
esp_BT_id_t (C++ enum), 1177
csp_console_cmd_func_t (C++ type), 1190
csp_console_cmd_register (C++ function), 1186
csp_console_cmd_t (C++ class), 1189
csp_console_cmd_t::argtable (C++ member), 1189
csp_console_cmd_t::command (C++ member), 1189
csp_console_cmd_t::func (C++ member), 1189
csp_console_cmd_t::help (C++ member), 1189
csp_console_cmd_t::hint (C++ member), 1189
ESP_CONSOLE_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C 宏), 1190
csp_console_config_t (C++ class), 1188
csp_console_config_t::hint (C++ member), 1188
csp_console_config_t::hint_color (C++ member), 1188
csp_console_config_t::max_cmdline_args (C++ member), 1188
csp_console_config_t::max_cmdline_length (C++ member), 1188
csp_console_deinit (C++ function), 1186
ESP_CONSOLE_DEV_CDC_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C 宏), 1190
ESP_CONSOLE_DEV_UART_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C 宏), 1190
csp_console_dev_uart_config_t (C++
Espresif Systems

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
esp_efuse_read_field_bit (C++ function), 1198
esp_efuse_read_field_blob (C++ function), 1198
esp_efuse_read_field_cnt (C++ function), 1198
esp_efuse_read_reg (C++ function), 1200
esp_efuse_read_secure_version (C++ function), 1202
esp_efuse_reset (C++ function), 1201
ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_OFF (C++ enumerator), 1206
ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_ON (C++ enumerator), 1206
ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_HIGH (C++ enumerator), 1206
esp_efuse_rom_log_scheme_t (C++ enum), 1206
esp_efuse_set_key_dis_read (C++ function), 1203
esp_efuse_set_key_dis_write (C++ function), 1204
esp_efuse_set_read_protect (C++ function), 1199
esp_efuse_set_rom_log_scheme (C++ function), 1201
esp_efuse_set_write_protect (C++ function), 1199
esp_efuse_update_secure_version (C++ function), 1202
esp_efuse_write_block (C++ function), 1201
esp_efuse_write_field_bit (C++ function), 1199
esp_efuse_write_field_blob (C++ function), 1199
esp_efuse_write_field_cnt (C++ function), 1199
esp_efuse_write_key (C++ function), 1204
esp_efuse_write_keys (C++ function), 1205
esp_efuse_write_reg (C++ function), 1200
ESP_ERR_CODING (C 宏), 1205
ESP_ERR_DAMAGED_READING (C 宏), 1206
ESP_ERR_DPP_FAILURE (C 宏), 598
ESP_ERR_DPP_INVALID_ATTR (C 宏), 598
ESP_ERR_DPP_TX_FAILURE (C 宏), 598
ESP_ERR_EFUSE (C 宏), 1205
ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL (C 宏), 1205
ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG (C 宏), 1205
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_BASE (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_EXIST (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_IF (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT (C 宏), 564
ESP_ERR_FLASH_BASE (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_HTTP_BASE (C 宏), 961
ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECT (C 宏), 961
ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTING (C 宏), 962
ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTION_CLOSED (C 宏), 962
ESP_ERR_HTTP_EAGAIN (C 宏), 962
ESP_ERR_HTTP_FETCH_HEADER (C 宏), 962
ESP_ERR_HTTP_INVALID_TRANSPORT (C 宏), 962
ESP_ERR_HTTP_MAX_REDIRECT (C 宏), 961
ESP_ERR_HTTP_WRITE_DATA (C 宏), 961
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_ALLOC_MEM (C 宏), 990
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_BASE (C 宏), 989
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLER_EXISTS (C 宏), 990
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLERS_FULL (C 宏), 989
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ (C 宏), 990
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR (C 宏), 990
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND (C 宏), 990
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC (C 宏), 990
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_TASK (C 宏), 990
ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_BASE (C 宏), 1211
ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_IN_PROGRESS (C 宏), 1211
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_BASE (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_INVALID_MAC (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_INVALID_VERSION (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_BASE (C 宏), 1207
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED (C 宏), 592
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD (C 宏), 592
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD_DUPLICATE (C 宏), 592
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_EXCEED_MTU (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_INTERFACE (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_PARENT_FOUND (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_ROUTE_FOUND (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_INIT (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_SUPPORT (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_NULL (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_UNKNOWN (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_PS (C 宏), 592
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FAIL (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_READ (C 宏), 592
ESP_ERR_MESH_RECV_RELEASE (C 宏), 592
ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT (C 宏), 591
ESP_ERR_MESH_VOTING (C 宏), 592

Espressif Systems 2176 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
esp_eth_increase_reference (C++ function), 602
esp_eth_io_cmd_t (C++ enum), 603
esp_eth_ioctl (C++ function), 601
esp_eth_mac_new_esp32 (C++ function), 606
esp_eth_mac_s (C++ class), 607
esp_eth_mac_s::deinit (C++ member), 607
esp_eth_mac_s::del (C++ member), 610
esp_eth_mac_s::enable_flow_ctrl (C++ member), 609
esp_eth_mac_s::get_addr (C++ member), 609
esp_eth_mac_s::init (C++ member), 607
esp_eth_mac_s::read_phy_reg (C++ member), 608
esp_eth_mac_s::receive (C++ member), 608
esp_eth_mac_s::set_addr (C++ member), 608
esp_eth_mac_s::set_duplex (C++ member), 609
esp_eth_mac_s::set_link (C++ member), 609
esp_eth_mac_s::set_mediator (C++ member), 607
esp_eth_mac_s::set_peer_pause_ability (C++ member), 610
esp_eth_mac_s::set_promiscuous (C++ member), 609
esp_eth_mac_s::set_speed (C++ member), 609
esp_eth_mac_s::start (C++ member), 607
esp_eth_mac_s::stop (C++ member), 607
esp_eth_mac_s::transmit (C++ member), 607
esp_eth_mac_s::write_phy_reg (C++ member), 608
esp_eth_mac_t (C++ type), 611
esp_eth_mediator_s (C++ class), 604
esp_eth_mediator_s::on_state_changed (C++ member), 605
esp_eth_mediator_s::phy_reg_read (C++ member), 605
esp_eth_mediator_s::phy_reg_write (C++ member), 605
esp_eth_mediator_s::stack_input (C++ member), 605
esp_eth_netif_glue_t (C++ type), 605
esp_eth_netif_glue_handle_t (C++ type), 617
esp_eth_new_netif_glue (C++ function), 616
ESP_ETH_PHY_ADDR_AUTO (C), 615
ESP_ETH_PHY_AUTONEGO_DIS (C++ enumerator), 616
ESP_ETH_PHY_AUTONEGO_EN (C++ enumerator), 616
ESP_ETH_PHY_AUTONEGO_G_STAT (C++ enumerator), 616
ESP_ETH_PHY_AUTONEGO_RESTART (C++ enum- erator), 616
esp_eth_phy_new_dp83848 (C++ function), 612
esp_eth_phy_new_ip101 (C++ function), 611
esp_eth_phy_new_ksz8041 (C++ function), 612
esp_eth_phy_new_ksz8081 (C++ function), 612
esp_eth_phy_new_ksz8091 (C++ function), 612
esp_eth_phy_new_lan8720 (C++ function), 612
esp_eth_phy_new_lan87xx (C++ function), 612
esp_eth_phy_new_st18201 (C++ function), 612
esp_eth_phy_s (C++ class), 613
esp_eth_phy_s::advertise_pause_ability (C++ member), 614
esp_eth_phy_s::autonego_ctrl (C++ me- ber), 613
esp_eth_phy_s::deinit (C++ member), 613
esp_eth_phy_s::del (C++ member), 615
esp_eth_phy_s::get_addr (C++ member), 614
esp_eth_phy_s::get_link (C++ member), 614
esp_eth_phy_s::init (C++ member), 613
esp_eth_phy_s::loopback (C++ member), 614
esp_eth_phy_s::pwrctl (C++ member), 614
esp_eth_phy_s::reset (C++ member), 613
esp_eth_phy_s::reset_hw (C++ member), 613
esp_eth_phy_s::set_addr (C++ member), 614
esp_eth_phy_s::set_duplex (C++ member), 615
esp_eth_phy_s::set_mediator (C++ member), 616
esp_eth_phy_s::set_speed (C++ member), 615
esp_eth_phy_t (C++ type), 615
esp_eth_receive (C++ function), 600
esp_eth_set_default_handlers (C++ func- tion), 616
esp_eth_start (C++ function), 600
esp_eth_state_t (C++ enum), 605
esp_eth_stop (C++ function), 600
esp_eth_transmit (C++ function), 600
esp_eth_update_input_path (C++ function), 600
ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE (C), 1227
ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID (C), 1227
esp_event_base_t (C++ type), 1227
ESP_EVENT_DECLARE_BASE (C), 1227
ESP_EVENT_DEFINE_BASE (C), 1227
esp_event_dump (C++ function), 1225
esp_event_handler_instance_register (C++ function), 1222
esp_event_handler_instance_register_with (C++ function), 1221
esp_event_handler_instance_unregister (C++ function), 1224
esp_event_handler_instance_unregister_with (C++ function), 1223
esp_event_handler_register (C++ function), 1220
esp_event_handler_register_with (C++ function), 1221
esp_event_handler_unregister (C++ function), 1227
esp_event_handler_unregister (C++ function), 1222
esp_event_handler_unregister_with (C++ function), 1223
esp_event_isr_post (C++ function), 1225
esp_event_isr_post_to (C++ function), 1225
esp_event_loop_args_t (C++ class), 1226
esp_event_loop_args_t::queue_size (C++ member), 1226
esp_event_loop_args_t::task_core_id (C++ member), 1226
esp_event_loop_args_t::task_name (C++ member), 1226
esp_event_loop_args_t::task_priority (C++ member), 1226
esp_event_loop_args_t::task_stack_size (C++ member), 1226
esp_event_loop_create (C++ function), 1219
esp_event_loop_create_default (C++ function), 1220
esp_event_loop_delete (C++ function), 1220
esp_event_loop_delete_default (C++ function), 1220
esp_event_loop_handle_t (C++ type), 1227
esp_event_loop_init (C++ function), 1228
esp_event_loop_run (C++ function), 1220
esp_event_loop_set_cb (C++ function), 1228
esp_event_post (C++ function), 1224
esp_event_post_to (C++ function), 1224
esp_event_process_default (C++ function), 1228
esp_event_send (C++ function), 1227
esp_event_send_internal (C++ function), 1227
esp_event_set_default_eth_handlers (C++ function), 1228
esp_event_set_default_wifi_handlers (C++ function), 1228
ESP_EXECUTE_EXPRESSION_WITH_STACK (C++ member), 1387
esp_execute_shared_stack_function (C++ function), 1387
ESP_EVENT_ALL_LOW (C++ enumerator), 1431
ESP_EVENT_ANY_HIGH (C++ enumerator), 1431
ESP_FAIL (C++ member), 1207
esp_fill_random (C++ function), 1423
ESP_FLASH_10MHZ (C++ enumerator), 1146
ESP_FLASH_120MHZ (C++ enumerator), 1147
ESP_FLASH_20MHZ (C++ enumerator), 1146
ESP_FLASH_26MHZ (C++ enumerator), 1146
ESP_FLASH_40MHZ (C++ enumerator), 1147
ESP_FLASH_5MHZ (C++ enumerator), 1146
ESP_FLASH_80MHZ (C++ enumerator), 1147
esp_flash_chip_driver_initialized (C++ function), 1138
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_DEVELOPMENT (C++ enumerator), 1155
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_DISABLED (C++ enumerator), 1155
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_RELEASE (C++ enumerator), 1155
esp_flash_enc_mode_t (C++ enum), 1155
esp_flash_encrypt_check_and_update (C++ function), 1154
esp_flash_encrypt_region (C++ function), 1154
esp_flash_encryption_enable_secure_features (C++ function), 1155
esp.flash_encryption_enabled (C++ function), 1154
esp.flash_encryption_init_checks (C++ function), 1154
esp.flash_encryption_set_release_mode (C++ function), 1155
esp.flash_erase_chip (C++ function), 1138
esp.flash_erase_region (C++ function), 1138
esp.flash_get_chip_write_protect (C++ function), 1139
esp.flash_get_protectable_regions (C++ function), 1139
esp.flash_get_protected_region (C++ function), 1139
esp.flash_get_size (C++ function), 1138
esp.flash_init (C++ function), 1137
esp.flash_io_mode_t (C++ enum), 1147
esp.flash_is_quad_mode (C++ function), 1141
esp.flash_os_functions_t (C++ class), 1141
esp.flash_os_functions_t::check_yield (C++ member), 1142
esp闪光_os_functions_t::delay_us (C++ member), 1142
esp.flash_os_functions_t::end (C++ member), 1141
esp.flash_os_functions_t::get_system_time (C++ member), 1142
esp.flash_os_functions_t::get_temp_buffer (C++ member), 1142
esp.flash_os_functions_t::region_protected (C++ member), 1142
esp.flash_os_functions_t::release_temp_buffer (C++ member), 1142
esp.flash_os_functions_t::start (C++ member), 1141
esp.flash_os_functions_t::yield (C++ member), 1142
esp.flash_read (C++ function), 1140
esp.flash_read_encrypted (C++ function), 1141
esp.flash_read_id (C++ function), 1138
esp.flash_read_unique_chip_id (C++ function), 1138
esp.flash_region_t (C++ class), 1141
esp.flash_region_t::offset (C++ member), 1141
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_NOTIFY (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_READ (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_WRITE (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_CHAR_PROP_BIT_WRITE_NR (C 宏), 187
esp_gatt_char_prop_t (C++ type), 187
ESP_GATT_CONN_FAIL_ESTABLISH (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_CONN_L2C_FAILURE (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_CONN_LMP_TIMEOUT (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_CONN_NONE (C++ enumerator), 189
esp_gatt_conn_params_t (C++ class), 182
esp_gatt_conn_params_t::interval (C++ member), 182
esp_gatt_conn_params_t::latency (C++ member), 182
esp_gatt_conn_reason_t (C++ enum), 188
ESP_GATT_CONN_TERMINATE_LOCAL_HOST (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_CONN_TERMINATE_PEER_USER (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_CONN_TIMEOUT (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_CONN_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_DB_ALL (C++ enumerator), 190
esp_gatt_db_attr_type_t (C++ enum), 189
ESP_GATT_DB_CHARACTERISTIC (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_DB_DESCRIPTOR (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_DB_FULL (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_DB_INCLUDED_SERVICE (C++ enumerator), 190
ESP_GATT_DB_PRIMARY_SERVICE (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_DB_SECONDARY_SERVICE (C++ enumerator), 189
esp_gatt_dup_reg (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_ENCRYPTED_MITM (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_ENCRYPTED_NO_MITM (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_ERR_UNLIKELY (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_HEART_RATE_CNTL_POINT (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_HEART_RATE_MEAS (C 宏), 186
esp_gatt_id_t (C++ class), 180
esp_gatt_id_t::inst_id (C++ member), 180
esp_gatt_id_t::uid (C++ member), 180
ESP_GATT_IF_NONE (C 宏), 187
esp_gatt_if_t (C++ type), 187
ESP_GATT_ILLEGAL_HANDLE (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_ILLEGAL_PARAMETER (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_ILLEGAL_UUID (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_INSUF_AUTHENTICATION (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_INSUF_AUTHORIZATION (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_INSUF_ENCRYPTION (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_INSUF_KEY_SIZE (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_INSUF_RESOURCE (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_INTERNAL_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_INVALID_ATTR_LEN (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_INVALID_CFG (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_INVALID_OFFSET (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_INVALID_PDU (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_MAX_ATTRIB_LEN (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_MAX_READ_MULTI_HANDLES (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_MORE (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_NO_RESOURCES (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_NOT_ENCRYPTED (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_NOT_FOUND (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_NOT_LONG (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_OK (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_OUT_OF_RANGE (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_PENDING (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_PERM_READ (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_READ_AUTHORIZATION (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_READ_ENC_MITM (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_READ_ENCRYPTED (C 宏), 186
gatt_perm_t (C++ type), 187
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_AUTHORIZATION (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_ENC_MITM (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_ENCRYPTED (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_SIGNED (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE_SIGNED_MITM (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_PERM_WRITE (C++ type), 188
ESP_GATT_PREP_WRITE_CANCEL (C 宏), 200
ESP_GATT_PREP_WRITECancelar (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_PREP_WRITE_EXEC (C 宏), 200
ESP_GATT_PREP_WRITE_EXEC (C++ enumerator),
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_SRVR_CONFIG (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_AGG_FORMAT (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_UUID_BATTERY_SERVICE_SVC (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_UUID_ALERT_NTF_SVC (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_UUID_ALERT_LEVEL (C 宏), 187
ESP_GATT_UNSUPPORT_GRP_TYPE (C++ enumerator), 187
ESP_GATT_SERVICE_STARTED (C++ union), 187
esp_gatt_rsp_by_app (C 宏), 187
esp_gatt_rsp_t (C++ union), 179
esp_gatt_rsp_t::attr_value (C++ member), 180
esp_gatt_rsp_t::handle (C++ member), 180
ESP_GATT_SERVICE_FROM_NVFS_FLASH (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_SERVICE_FROM_REMOTE_DEVICE (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_SERVICE_FROM_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 189
ESP_GATT_SERVICE_STARTED (C++ enumerator), 188
esp_gatt_srv_id_t (C++ class), 180
esp_gatt_srv_id_t::id (C++ member), 180
esp_gatt_srv_id_t::is_primary (C++ member), 180
ESP_GATT_STACK_RSP (C++ enumerator), 188
esp_gatt_status_t (C++ enum), 187
ESP_GATT_UNKNOWN_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_UNSUPPORT_GRP_TYPE (C++ enumerator), 188
ESP_GATT_UUID_ALERT_LEVEL (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_ALERT_NTF_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_ALERT_STATUS (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_Automation_IO_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_BATTERY_LEVEL (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_BATTERY_SERVICE_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_BLOOD_PRESSURE_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_BODY_COMPOSITION (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_BOND_MANAGEMENT_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_AGG_FORMAT (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_CLIENT_CONFIG (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_DECLARE (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_DESCRIPTION (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_EXT_PROP (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_PRESENT_FORMAT (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_SRVR_CONFIG (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CHAR_VALID_RANGE (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_CONT_GLUCOSE_MONITOR_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CIDC_FEATURE (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_CIDC_MEASUREMENT (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_CURRENT_TIME (C 宏), 183
ESP_GATT_UUID_CURRENT_TIME_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CYCLING_POWER_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_CYCLING_SPEED_CADENCE_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_DEVICE_INFO_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_ENV_SENSING_CONFIG_DESCR (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_ENV_SENSING_MEASUREMENT_DESCR (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_ENV_SENSING_TRIGGER_DESCR (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_ENVIROMENTAL_SENSING.Descr (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_EXT_RPT_REF_DESCR (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_FW_VERSION_STR (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_GAP_CENTRAL_ADDR_RESOL (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_GAP_DEVICE_NAME (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_GAP_ICON (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_GAP_PREF_CONN_PARAM (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_GATT_SRV_CHDG (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_GLUCOSE_Service (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_SENSOR_INFO (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_HEALTH_THERMOM_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_HEART_RATE_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_BT_KB_INPUT (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_BT_KB_OUTPUT (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_BT_MOUSE_INPUT (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_CONTROL_POINT (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_INFORMATION (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_PROTO_MODE (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_REPORT (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_REPORT_MAP (C 宏), 186
ESP_GATT_UUID_HID_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_HW_VERSION_STR (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_IEEE_DATA (C 宏), 185
ESP_GATT_UUID_IMMEDIATE_ALERT_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_INCLUDE_SERVICE (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_Link_Loss_SVC (C 宏), 184
ESP_GATT_UUID_LOCAL_TIME_INFO (C 宏), 185
esp_gattc_service_elem_t::is_primary (C++ member), 183
esp_gattc_service_elem_t::end_handle (C++ member), 183
esp_gattc_service_elem_t::start_handle (C++ member), 183
esp_gattc_service_elem_t::uuid (C++ member), 183
ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_RES_EVT (C++ enumerator), 218
ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_CMPL_EVT (C++ enumerator), 218
esp_gattc_incl_svc_elem_t (C++ class), 183
esp_gattc_incl_svc_elem_t::handle (C++ member), 183
esp_gattc_incl_svc_elem_t::incl_svc_s_handle (C++ member), 183
esp_gattc_incl_svc_elem_t::incl_svc_e_handle (C++ member), 183
esp_gattc_incl_svc_elem_t::uuid (C++ member), 183
ESP_GATTC_MULT_ADV_DATA_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_MULT_ADV_DIS_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_MULT_ADV_ENB_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_MULT_ADV_UPD_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
gattc_multi_t (C++ class), 182
gattc_multi_t::handles (C++ member), 182
gattc_multi_t::num_attr (C++ member), 182
ESP_GATTC_NOTIFY_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_OPEN_EVT (C++ enumerator), 216
ESP_GATTC_PREP_WRITE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 216
ESP_GATTC_QUEUE_FULL_EVT (C++ enumerator), 218
ESP_GATTC_READ_CHAR_EVT (C++ enumerator), 218
ESP_GATTC_READ_DESCR_EVT (C++ enumerator), 216
ESP_GATTC_READ_MULTIPLE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_REG_EVT (C++ enumerator), 216
ESP_GATTC_REG_FOR_NOTIFY_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_SCAN_FLT_CFG_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_SCAN_FLT_PARAM_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_SCAN_FLT_STATUS_EVT (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_CMPL_EVT (C++ enumerator), 216
ESP_GATTC_SEARCH_RES_EVT (C++ enumerator), 216
gattc_service_elem_t (C++ class), 183
gattc_service_elem_t::end_handle (C++ member), 183
gattc_service_elem_t::is_primary (C++ member), 183
ESP_GATTS_READ_EVT (C++ enumerator), 201
ESP_GATTS_REG_EVT (C++ enumerator), 201
ESP_GATTSRESPONSE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 201
ESP_GATTS_SEND_SERVICE_CHANGE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 202
ESP_GATTSSET_ATTR_VAL_EVT (C++ enumerator), 202
 ESP_GATTSSTART_EVT (C++ enumerator), 201
ESP_GATTS_STOP_EVT (C++ enumerator), 201
ESP_GATTSUNREG_EVT (C++ enumerator), 201
ESP_GATTSSERIES_EVT (C++ enumerator), 201
esp_gcv_dump (C++ function), 1182
esp_get_deep_sleep_wake_stub (C++ function), 1431
esp_get_flash_encryption_mode (C++ function), 1154
esp_get_free_heap_size (C++ function), 1402
esp_get_free_internal_heap_size (C++ function), 1402
esp_get_idf_version (C++ function), 1403
esp_get_minimum_free_heap_size (C++ function), 1402
esp_hf_answer_call_cmd_callback (C++ type), 275
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_BLACKLISTED (C++ enumerator), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_BUSY (C++ enumerator), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_CME (C++ enumerator), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_DELAYED (C++ enumerator), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_ERR (C++ enumerator), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_NO_ANSWER (C++ enumerator), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_NO_CARRIER (C++ enumerator), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_CODE_OK (C++ enumerator), 280
esp_hf_at_response_code_t (C++ enum), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 280
esp_hf_at_response_error (C++ enum), 280
ESP_HF_AT_RESPONSE_OK (C++ enumerator), 280
esp_hf_at_response_t (C++ enum), 280
ESP_HF_ATRESPONSE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 302
esp_hf_audio_state_t (C++ enum), 276
ESP_HF_BCSRESPONSE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 303
ESP_HF_BTRH_CMD_ACCEPT (C++ enumerator), 279
ESP_HF_BTRH_CMD_HOLD (C++ enumerator), 279
ESP_HF_BTRH_CMD_REJECT (C++ enumerator), 279
esp_hf_btrh_cmd_t (C++ enum), 278
ESP_HF_BTRH_STATUS_ACCEPTED (C++ enumerator), 278
ESP_HF_BTRH_STATUS_HELD (C++ enumerator), 278
ESP_HF_BTRH_STATUS_REJECTED (C++ enumerator), 278
esp_hf_btrh_status_t (C++ enum), 278
ESP_HF_BVRA_RESPONSE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 302
ESP_HF_CALL_ADDR_TYPE_INTERNATIONAL (C++ enumerator), 278
esp_hf_call_addr_type_t (C++ enum), 278
ESP_HF_CALL_ADDR_TYPE_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 278
ESP_HF_CALL_HELD_STATUS_HELD (C++ enumerator), 277
ESP_HF_CALL_HELD_STATUS_HELD_AND_ACTIVE (C++ enumerator), 277
ESP_HF_CALL_HELD_STATUS_NONE (C++ enumerator), 277
esp_hf_call_held_status_t (C++ enum), 277
ESP_HF_CALL_SETUP_STATUS_IDLE (C++ enumerator), 277
ESP_HF_CALL_SETUP_STATUS_INCOMING (C++ enumerator), 277
ESP_HF_CALL_SETUP_STATUS_OUTGOING_ALERTING (C++ enumerator), 277
ESP_HF_CALL_SETUP_STATUS_OUTGOING_DIALING (C++ enumerator), 277
esp_hf_call_setup_status_t (C++ enum), 277
ESP_HF_CALL_STATUS_CALL_IN_PROGRESS (C++ enumerator), 276
ESP_HF_CALL_STATUS_CALL_IN_PROGRESS (C++ enumerator), 276
esp_hf_call_status_t (C++ enum), 276
ESP_HF_CALL_WAITING_ACTIVE (C++ enumerator), 279
ESP_HF_CALL_WAITING_INACTIVE (C++ enumerator), 279
esp_hf_call_waiting_status_t (C++ enum), 279
esp_hf_cb_event_t (C++ enum), 302
esp_hf_cb_param_t (C++ union), 298
esp_hf_cb_param_t::audio_stat (C++ member), 298
esp_hf_cb_param_t::bcs_rep (C++ member), 298

Submit Document Feedback
索引

299
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_volume_control_param::volum
esp_hf_cb_param_t::cind (C++ member), 298
(C++ member), 300
esp_hf_cb_param_t::conn_stat (C++ mem- esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_vra_rep_param
ber), 298
(C++ class), 300
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_audio_stat_param esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_vra_rep_param::remote_addr
(C++ class), 299
(C++ member), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_audio_stat_param::remote_addr
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_vra_rep_param::value
(C++ member), 299
(C++ member), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_audio_stat_param::state
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_vts_rep_param
(C++ member), 299
(C++ class), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_bcs_rep_param
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_vts_rep_param::code
(C++ class), 299
(C++ member), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_bcs_rep_param::mode
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_wbs_rep_param
(C++ member), 299
(C++ class), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param (C++ esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_wbs_rep_param::codec
class), 299
(C++ member), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param::battery_level
esp_hf_cb_param_t::nrec (C++ member), 299
(C++ member), 299
esp_hf_cb_param_t::out_call (C++ memesp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param::call_held_status
ber), 298
(C++ member), 299
esp_hf_cb_param_t::unat_rep (C++ memesp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param::call_setup_status
ber), 298
(C++ member), 299
esp_hf_cb_param_t::volume_control
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param::call_status (C++ member), 298
(C++ member), 299
esp_hf_cb_param_t::vra_rep (C++ member),
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param::roam
298
(C++ member), 299
esp_hf_cb_param_t::vts_rep (C++ member),
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param::signal_strength
299
(C++ member), 299
esp_hf_cb_param_t::wbs_rep (C++ member),
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_cind_param::svc
299
(C++ member), 299
esp_hf_cb_t (C++ type), 302
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_conn_stat_param esp_hf_chld_cmd_callback (C++ type), 275
(C++ class), 299
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_HOLD_ACC (C 宏), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_conn_stat_param::chld_feat
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_MERGE (C 宏), 301
(C++ member), 300
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_MERGE_DETACH (C 宏), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_conn_stat_param::peer_feat
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_PRIV_X (C 宏), 301
(C++ member), 300
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_REL (C 宏), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_conn_stat_param::remote_bda
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_REL_ACC (C 宏), 301
(C++ member), 300
ESP_HF_CHLD_FEAT_REL_X (C 宏), 301
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_conn_stat_param::state
ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_HOLD_ACC (C++ enumera(C++ member), 300
tor), 279
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_nrec_param (C++ ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_MERGE (C++ enumerator),
class), 300
280
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_nrec_param::stateESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_MERGE_DETACH (C++ enu(C++ member), 300
merator), 280
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_out_call_param
ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_PRIV_X (C++ enumerator),
280
(C++ class), 300
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_out_call_param::num_or_loc
ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_REL (C++ enumerator), 279
ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_REL_ACC (C++ enumerator),
(C++ member), 300
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_out_call_param::remote_addr
279
(C++ member), 300
ESP_HF_CHLD_TYPE_REL_X (C++ enumerator),
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_unat_rep_param
280
(C++ class), 300
esp_hf_chld_type_t (C++ enum), 279
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_unat_rep_param::unat
ESP_HF_CHUP_RESPONSE_EVT (C++ enumerator),
(C++ member), 300
302
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_volume_control_param
esp_hf_cind_cmd_callback (C++ type), 275
(C++ class), 300
ESP_HF_CIND_RESPONSE_EVT (C++ enumerator),
esp_hf_cb_param_t::hf_volume_control_param::type
302
(C++ member), 300
esp_hf_clcc_cmd_callback (C++ type), 275

Espressif Systems

2187
Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36


ESP_HF_CLCC_RESPONSE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 302
esp_hf_client_answer_call (C++ function), 284
ESP_HF_CLIENT_AT_RESPONSE_EVT (C++ enumerator), 292
ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_CONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 291
ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_CONNECTED_MSB (ESP_HF_CLIENT_AUDIO_STATE_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 291
esp_hf_client_audio_stat_event_t (C++ enumerator), 291
ESP_HF_CLIENT_BINP_EVT (C++ enumerator), 293
ESP_HF_CLIENT_BSR_EVT (C++ enumerator), 293
ESP_HF_CLIENT_BTR_EVT (C++ enumerator), 292
esp_hf_client_event_t (C++ enum), 286
esp_hf_client_clcc_param (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_ccwa_param (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_call_setup_ind_param (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_call_ind_param (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_call_held_ind_param (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_battery_level_ind_param (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_audio_stat_param (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_at_response_param (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_cops (C++ class), 286
esp_hf_client_at_response_param::cme (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_at_response_param::code (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_call_status_param::status (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_at_response_param (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::call_setup (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::call_held (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::call (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::bvra (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::btrh (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::bsir (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::binp (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::battery_level (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::audio_stat (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::at_response (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::cops (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::ccwa (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::clcc (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::clip (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::ccwa (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param (C++ member), 287
esp_hf_client_hf_client_call_param::conn_stat (C++ member), 289
Espresif Systems 2189

Submit Document Feedback
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESP_HF_CLIENT_IN_BAND_RINGTONE_NOT_PROVIDED</td>
<td>Enumerates the client volume control event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP_HF_CLIENT_IN_BAND_RINGTONE_PROVIDED</td>
<td>Enumerates the client volume control event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_stop_voice_recognition</td>
<td>Sends a DTMF to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_start_voice_recognition</td>
<td>Sends a BTRH command to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_send_nrec</td>
<td>Sends a child command to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_send_dtmf</td>
<td>Sends a DTMF command to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_send_chld_cmd</td>
<td>Sends a CHLD command to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_send_btrh_cmd</td>
<td>Sends a BTRH command to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND_EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_init</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp_hf_client_pcm_resample_deinit</td>
<td>Sends a RING_IND.EVT to the client.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
esp_http_client_config_t::client_cert_len
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::client_cert_pem
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::client_key_len
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::client_key_password
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::client_key_password_len
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::client_key_pem
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::crt_bundle_attach
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::disable_auto_redirect
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::event_handler
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::host
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::if_name
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::is_async
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::keep_alive_count
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::keep_alive_enable
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::keep_alive_idle
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::keep_alive_interval
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::max_authorization_retries
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::max_redirection_count
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::method
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::password
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::path
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::port
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::query
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::skip_cert_common_name_check
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::timeout_ms
  (C++ member), 960
esp_http_client_config_t::transport_type
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::use_global_ca_store
  (C++ member), 961
esp_http_client_config_t::user_agent
  (C++ member), 960

Submit Document Feedback
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_16MB (C++ enumerator), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_1MB (C++ enumerator), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_2MB (C++ enumerator), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_4MB (C++ enumerator), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_8MB (C++ enumerator), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 1178
esp_image_flash_size_t (C++ enum), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_HEADER_MAGIC (C宏), 1177
esp_image_header_t (C++ class), 1175
esp_image_header_t::chip_id (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_header_t::entry_addr (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_header_t::hash_appended (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_header_t::magic (C++ member), 1175
esp_image_header_t::min_chip_rev (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_header_t::reserved (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_header_t::segment_count (C++ member), 1175
esp_image_header_t::spi_mode (C++ member), 1175
esp_image_header_t::spi_pin_drv (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_header_t::spi_size (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_header_t::spi_speed (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_header_t::wp_pin (C++ member), 1176
ESP_IMAGE_MAX_SEGMENTS (C宏), 1177
esp_image_segment_header_t (C++ class), 1176
esp_image_segment_header_t::data_len (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_segment_header_t::load_addr (C++ member), 1176
esp_image_spi_freq_t (C++ enum), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_20M (C++ enumerator), 1177
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_26M (C++ enumerator), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_40M (C++ enumerator), 1178
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_80M (C++ enumerator), 1178
esp_int_wdt_init (C++ function), 1434
esp_intr_alloc (C++ function), 1389
esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus (C++ function), 1390
ESP_INTR_DISABLE (C宏), 1393
esp_intr_disable (C++ function), 1391
esp_intr_disable_source (C++ function), 1392
ESP_INTR_ENABLE (C宏), 1393
esp_intr_enable (C++ function), 1391
esp_intr_enable_source (C++ function), 1391
ESP_INTR_FLAG_EDGE (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_HIGH (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_INTRDISABLED (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRQ (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL1 (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL2 (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL3 (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL4 (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL5 (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL6 (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL7 (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LOWMED (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_NMITE (C宏), 1392
ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED (C宏), 1392
esp_intr_flags_to_level (C++ function), 1392
esp_intr_free (C++ function), 1390
esp_intr_get_cpu (C++ function), 1391
esp_intr_get_intrno (C++ function), 1391
esp_intr_mark_shared (C++ function), 1389
esp_intr_noniram_disable (C++ function), 1391
esp_intr_noniram_enable (C++ function), 1391
esp_intr_reserve (C++ function), 1389
esp_intr_set_in_isr (C++ function), 1391
ESP_IO_CAP_IN (C宏), 169
ESP_IO_CAP_IO (C宏), 169
ESP_IO_CAP_KBDISP (C宏), 169
ESP_IO_CAP_NONE (C宏), 169
ESP_IO_CAP_OUT (C宏), 169
esp_ip4addr_aton (C++ function), 635
esp_ip4addr_ntoa (C++ function), 635
esp_ipc_call (C++ function), 1384
esp_ipc_call_blocking (C++ function), 1384
esp_ipc_func_t (C++ type), 1384
esp_ipc_isr_asm_call (C++ function), 1385
Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback
索引

member), 1038
ESP_LOG_WARN (C++ enumerator), 1399
esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t (C++ type), 1040 esp_log_write (C++ function), 1396
esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec (C++ enum), 1041 esp_log_writev (C++ function), 1396
esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg (C++ class), ESP_LOGD (C 宏), 1397
1039
ESP_LOGE (C 宏), 1397
esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg::custom_handle
ESP_LOGI (C 宏), 1397
(C++ member), 1040
ESP_LOGV (C 宏), 1397
esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg::pop
ESP_LOGW (C 宏), 1397
(C++ member), 1040
esp_mesh_allow_root_conflicts (C++ funcesp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg::version
tion), 578
(C++ member), 1040
esp_mesh_available_txupQ_num (C++ funcesp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_cfg_t
(C++
tion), 578
type), 1041
esp_mesh_connect (C++ function), 581
esp_local_ctrl_proto_sec_t (C++ type), esp_mesh_deinit (C++ function), 570
1041
esp_mesh_delete_group_id (C++ function),
esp_local_ctrl_remove_property
(C++
578
function), 1037
esp_mesh_disable_ps (C++ function), 582
esp_local_ctrl_set_handler (C++ function), esp_mesh_disconnect (C++ function), 581
1037
esp_mesh_enable_ps (C++ function), 582
esp_local_ctrl_start (C++ function), 1036
esp_mesh_fix_root (C++ function), 580
esp_local_ctrl_stop (C++ function), 1037
esp_mesh_flush_scan_result (C++ function),
ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_BLE (C 宏), 1040
581
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_ble_t esp_mesh_flush_upstream_packets (C++
(C++ type), 1040
function), 581
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_httpd_tesp_mesh_get_active_duty_cycle
(C++
(C++ type), 1040
function), 583
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t
esp_mesh_get_ap_assoc_expire (C++ func(C++ union), 1037
tion), 577
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t::ble esp_mesh_get_ap_authmode (C++ function),
(C++ member), 1038
575
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t::httpd
esp_mesh_get_ap_connections (C++ func(C++ member), 1038
tion), 575
ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_HTTPD (C 宏), esp_mesh_get_capacity_num (C++ function),
1040
579
esp_local_ctrl_transport_t (C++ type), esp_mesh_get_config (C++ function), 573
1040
esp_mesh_get_group_list (C++ function), 578
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_CHAR (C 宏), 1397
esp_mesh_get_group_num (C++ function), 578
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_CHAR_LEVEL (C 宏), 1396
esp_mesh_get_id (C++ function), 574
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX (C 宏), 1397
esp_mesh_get_ie_crypto_key (C++ function),
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX_LEVEL (C 宏), 1396
579
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEXDUMP (C 宏), 1396
esp_mesh_get_layer (C++ function), 575
ESP_LOG_DEBUG (C++ enumerator), 1399
esp_mesh_get_max_layer (C++ function), 574
ESP_LOG_EARLY_IMPL (C 宏), 1397
esp_mesh_get_network_duty_cycle (C++
esp_log_early_timestamp (C++ function),
function), 584
1396
esp_mesh_get_non_mesh_connections
ESP_LOG_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 1398
(C++ function), 575
ESP_LOG_INFO (C++ enumerator), 1399
esp_mesh_get_parent_bssid (C++ function),
ESP_LOG_LEVEL (C 宏), 1398
575
esp_log_level_get (C++ function), 1395
esp_mesh_get_root_healing_delay (C++
function), 580
ESP_LOG_LEVEL_LOCAL (C 宏), 1398
esp_log_level_set (C++ function), 1395
esp_mesh_get_router (C++ function), 573
esp_log_level_t (C++ enum), 1398
esp_mesh_get_router_bssid (C++ function),
ESP_LOG_NONE (C++ enumerator), 1398
582
esp_log_set_vprintf (C++ function), 1395
esp_mesh_get_routing_table (C++ function),
esp_log_system_timestamp (C++ function),
577
1395
esp_mesh_get_routing_table_size (C++
esp_log_timestamp (C++ function), 1395
function), 577
ESP_LOG_VERBOSE (C++ enumerator), 1399
esp_mesh_get_running_active_duty_cycle

Espressif Systems

2197
Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36


esp_mqtt_client_get_outbox_size (C++ function), 1005
esp_mqtt_client_init (C++ function), 1003
esp_mqtt_client_publish (C++ function), 1004
esp_mqtt_client_reconnect (C++ function), 1003
esp_mqtt_client_register_event (C++ function), 1005
esp_mqtt_client_set_uri (C++ function), 1003
esp_mqtt_client_start (C++ function), 1003
esp_mqtt_client_stop (C++ function), 1004
esp_mqtt_client_unsubscribe (C++ function), 1004
esp_mqtt_connect_return_code_t (C++ enum), 1010
esp_mqtt_error_codes (C++ class), 1005
esp_mqtt_error_codes::connect_return_code (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_error_codes::error_type (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_error_codes::esp_tls_cert_verify_flags (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_error_codes::esp_tls_stack_err (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_error_codes::esp_transport_sock_errno (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_error_codes::esp_tls_last_err (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_id_t (C++ enum), 1009
esp_mqtt_event_t::event_id (C++ member), 1009
esp_mqtt_event_t::client (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::current_data_offset (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::data (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::data_len (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::error_handle (C++ member), 1007
esp_mqtt_event_t::event_id (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::msg_id (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::retain (C++ member), 1007
esp_mqtt_event_t::session_present (C++ member), 1007
esp_mqtt_event_t::topic (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::topic_len (C++ member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::total_data_len (C++
member), 1006
esp_mqtt_event_t::user_context  (C++
member), 1006
esp_mqtt_protocol_ver_t (C++ enum), 1011
esp_mqtt_set_config (C++ function), 1005
esp_mqtt_transport_t (C++ enum), 1011
esp_netif_action_add_ip6_address (C++
function), 630
esp_netif_action_connected (C++ function),
629
esp_netif_action_disconnected (C++ function),
629
esp_netif_action_get_ip (C++ function), 629
esp_netif_action_join_ip6_multicast_group
(C++ function), 629
esp_netif_action_leave_ip6_multicast_group
(C++ function), 629
esp_netif_action_remove_ip6_address
(C++ function), 630
esp_netif_action_start (C++ function), 628
esp_netif_attach (C++ function), 627
esp_netif_attach_wifi_ap (C++ function),
637
esp_netif_attach_wifi_station (C++ function),
637
esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap (C++
function), 638
esp_netif_create_default_wifi_mesh_net
(C++ function), 638
esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta
(C++ function), 638
esp_netif_create_ip6_linklocal (C++
function), 634
esp_netif_create_wifi (C++ function), 638
esp_netif_deinit (C++ function), 626
esp_netif_destroy (C++ function), 627
esp_netif_destroy_default_wifi
(function), 638
esp_netif_dhcpc_get_status (C++ function),
633
esp_netif_dhcpc_option (C++ function), 632
esp_netif_dhcpc_start (C++ function), 633
esp_netif_dhcps_stop (C++ function), 633
esp_netif_dhcps_get_status (C++ function),
633
esp_netif_dhcps_option (C++ function), 632
esp_netif_dhcps_start (C++ function), 633
esp_netif_dhcps_stop (C++ function), 634
esp_netif_free_rx_buffer (C++ function),
642
esp_netif_get_all_ip6 (C++ function), 635
esp_netif_get_desc (C++ function), 636
esp_netif_get_dns_info (C++ function), 634
esp_netif_get_event_id (C++ function), 637
esp_netif_get_syncs (C++ function), 638
esp_netif_get_flags (C++ function), 636
esp_netif_get_handle_from_ifkey
(C++ function), 636
esp_netif_get_handle_from_netif_impl
(C++ function), 641
esp_netif_get_hostname (C++ function), 630
esp_netif_get_ifkey (C++ function), 636
esp_netif_get_io_driver (C++ function), 636
esp_netif_get_ip6_global (C++ function),
635
esp_netif_get_ip6_linklocal (C++ function),
635
esp_netif_get_ip_info (C++ function), 631
esp_netif_get_mac (C++ function), 630
esp_netif_get_netif_impl (C++ function),
641
esp_netif_get_netif_impl_index (C++
function), 632
esp_netif_get_netif_impl_name (C++ function),
632
esp_netif_get_nr_of_ifs (C++ function), 637
esp_netif_get_old_ip_info (C++ function),
631
esp_netif_get_route_prio (C++ function),
636
esp_netif_init (C++ function), 626
esp_netif_is_netif_up (C++ function), 631
esp_netif_netstack_buf_free (C++ function),
637
esp_netif_netstack_buf_ref (C++ function),
637
esp_netif_new (C++ function), 627
esp_netif_next (C++ function), 637
esp_netif_post_transmit_hook_attach
(C++ function), 628
esp_netif_post_transmit_hook_detach
(C++ function), 628
esp_netif_receive (C++ function), 627
esp_netif_recv_hook_attach (C++ function),
628
esp_netif_recv_hook_detach (C++ function),
628
esp_netif_set_dns_info (C++ function), 634
esp_netif_set_driver_config (C++ func-
627
esp_netif_set_hostname (C++ function), 630
esp_netif_set_ip4_addr (C++ function), 635
esp_netif_set_ip_info (C++ function), 631
esp_netif_set_mac (C++ function), 630
esp_netif_set_old_ip_info (C++ function),
632
esp_netif_str_to_ip4 (C++ function), 636
esp_netif_str_to_ip6 (C++ function), 636
esp_netif_transmit (C++ function), 641
esp_netif_transmit_hook_attach (C++
function), 627
esp_netif_transmit_hook_detach (C++
function), 628
esp_netif_transmit_wrap (C++ function), 641
esp_nimblehci_and_controller_deinit
(C++ function), 305

Submit Document Feedback
esp_nimble_hci_and_controller_init (C++ function), 304
esp_nimble_hci_deinit (C++ function), 305
esp_nimble_hci_init (C++ function), 304
esp_now_add_peer (C++ function), 561
esp_now_deinit (C++ function), 560
esp_now_del_peer (C++ function), 561
ESP_NOW_ETH_ALEN (C 宏), 564
esp_now_fetch_peer (C++ function), 562
esp_now_get_peer (C++ function), 562
esp_now_get_peer_num (C++ function), 562
esp_now_get_version (C++ function), 560
esp_now_init (C++ function), 560
esp_now_is_peer_exist (C++ function), 562
ESP_NOW_KEY_LEN (C 宏), 564
ESP_NOW_MAX_DATA_LEN (C 宏), 564
ESP_NOW_MAX_ENCRYPT_PEER_NUM (C 宏), 564
ESP_NOW_MAX_TOTAL_PEER_NUM (C 宏), 564
esp_now_mod_peer (C++ function), 562
esp_now_peer_info (C++ class), 563
esp_now_peer_info::channel (C++ member), 563
esp_now_peer_info::encrypt (C++ member), 563
esp_now_peer_info::ifidx (C++ member), 563
esp_now_peer_info::lmk (C++ member), 563
esp_now_peer_info::peer_addr (C++ member), 563
esp_now_peer_info::priv (C++ member), 563
esp_now_peer_info_t (C++ type), 564
esp_now_peer_num (C++ class), 563
esp_now_peer_num::encrypt_num (C++ member), 563
esp_now_peer_num::total_num (C++ member), 563
esp_now_peer_num_t (C++ type), 564
esp_now_recv_cb_t (C++ type), 564
esp_now_register_recv_cb (C++ function), 560
esp_now_register_send_cb (C++ function), 561
esp_now_send (C++ function), 561
esp_now_send_cb_t (C++ type), 564
ESP_NOW_SEND_FAIL (C++ enumerator), 565
ESP_NOW_SEND_STATUS_t (C++ enum), 565
ESP_NOW_SEND_SUCCESS (C++ enumerator), 565
esp_now_set_pmk (C++ function), 562
esp_now_set_wake_window (C++ function), 563
esp_now_unregister_recv_cb (C++ function), 561
esp_now_unregister_send_cb (C++ function), 561
ESP_OK (C 宏), 1207
ESP_OK_EFUSE_CNT (C 宏), 1205
esp_openthread_border_router_deinit (C++ function), 621
esp_openthread_border_router_init (C++ function), 621
esp_openthread_deinit (C++ function), 617
esp_openthread_event_t (C++ enum), 619
esp_openthread_get_backbone_netif (C++ function), 621
esp_openthread_get_instance (C++ function), 617
esp_openthread_get_netif (C++ function), 621
esp_openthread_host_connection_config_t (C++ class), 618
esp_openthread_host_connection_config_t::host_connection_mode (C++ member), 619
esp_openthread_host_connection_config_t::host_uart_config (C++ member), 619
esp_openthread_host_connection_mode_t (C++ enum), 620
esp_openthread_init (C++ function), 617
esp_openthread_launch_mainloop (C++ function), 617
esp_openthread_lock_acquire (C++ function), 620
esp_openthread_lock_deinit (C++ function), 620
esp_openthread_lock_init (C++ function), 620
esp_openthread_lock_release (C++ function), 620
esp_openthread_mainloop_context_t (C++ class), 618
esp_openthread_mainloop_context_t::error_fds (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_mainloop_context_t::max_fd (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_mainloop_context_t::read_fds (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_mainloop_context_t::write_fds (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_netif_glue_deinit (C++ function), 621
esp_openthread_netif_glue_init (C++ function), 621
esp_openthread_platform_config_t (C++ class), 619
esp_openthread_platform_config_t::host_config (C++ member), 619
esp_openthread_platform_config_t::port_config (C++ member), 619
esp_openthread_platform_config_t::radio_config (C++ member), 619
esp_openthread_port_config_t (C++ class), 619
esp_openthread_port_config_t::netif_queue_size (C++ member), 619
esp_openthread_port_config_t::storage_partition_n...
(C++ member), 619
esp_openthread_port_config_t::task_queue_size (C++ member), 619
esp_openthread_radio_config_t (C++ class), 618
esp_openthread_radio_config_t::radio_mode (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_radio_config_t::radio_uart_config (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_radio_mode_t (C++ enum), 620
esp_openthread_set_backbone_netif (C++ function), 621
esp_openthread_uart_config_t (C++ class), 618
esp_openthread_uart_config_t::port (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_uart_config_t::rx_pin (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_uart_config_t::tx_pin (C++ member), 618
esp_openthread_uart_config_t::uart_config (C++ member), 618

esp_ota_abort (C++ function), 1410
esp_ota_begin (C++ function), 1409
esp_ota_check_rollback_is_possible (C++ function), 1412
esp_ota_end (C++ function), 1410
esp_ota_erase_last_boot_app_partition (C++ function), 1412
esp_ota_get_app_description (C++ function), 1409
esp_ota_get_app_elf_sha256 (C++ function), 1409
esp_ota_get_app_partition_count (C++ function), 1412
esp_ota_get_boot_partition (C++ function), 1411
esp_ota_get_last_invalid_partition (C++ function), 1412
esp_ota_get_next_update_partition (C++ function), 1411
esp_ota_get_partition_description (C++ function), 1411
esp_ota_get_running_partition (C++ function), 1411
esp_ota_get_state_partition (C++ function), 1412
esp_ota_handle_t (C++ type), 1413
esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot (C++ function), 1412
esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback (C++ function), 1412
esp_ota_set_boot_partition (C++ function), 1410
esp_ota_write (C++ function), 1409
esp_ota_write_with_offset (C++ function), 1410

esp_partition_check_identity (C++ function), 1151
esp_partition_deregister_external (C++ function), 1151
esp_partition_erase_range (C++ function), 1150
esp_partition_find (C++ function), 1147
esp_partition_find_first (C++ function), 1148
esp_partition_get (C++ function), 1148
esp_partition_get_sha256 (C++ function), 1150
esp_partition_iterator_release (C++ function), 1148
esp_partition_iterator_t (C++ type), 1152
esp_partition_mmap (C++ function), 1150
esp_partition_next (C++ function), 1148
esp_partition_read (C++ function), 1148
esp_partition_read_raw (C++ function), 1149
esp_partition_register_external (C++ function), 1151
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1154
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 1153

Esperrisf Systems Release v5.0-dev-489-ge98a36
(C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN
(C++ enumerator), 1152
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_TEST
(C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_COREDUMP
(C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_EFUSE_EM
(C++ enumerator), 1154
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_ESPHTTPDP
(C++ enumerator), 1154
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_FAT
(C++ enumerator), 1154
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_NVS
(C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_NVS_KEYS
(C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_OTA
(C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_PHY
(C++ enumerator), 1153
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_SPIFFS
(C++ enumerator), 1154
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_UNDEFINED
(C++ enumerator), 1154
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_OTA(C 宏), 1152
esp_partition_subtype_t (C++ enum), 1152
esp_partition_t (C++ class), 1151
esp_partition_t::address (C++ member),
1152
esp_partition_t::encrypted (C++ member),
1152
esp_partition_t::flash_chip (C++ member),
1152
esp_partition_t::label (C++ member), 1152
esp_partition_t::size (C++ member), 1152
esp_partition_t::subtype (C++ member), 1152
esp_partition_t::type (C++ member), 1152
ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_ANY (C++ enumerator),
1152
ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_APP (C++ enumerator),
1152
ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_DATA (C++ enumerator),
1152
esp_partition_type_t (C++ enum), 1152
esp_partition_verify (C++ function), 1148
esp_partition_write (C++ function), 1149
esp_partition_write_raw (C++ function),
1149
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_MAX (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC8M (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_FAST_MEM (C++ enumerator),
1432
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_PERIPH (C++ enumerator),
1431
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_SLOW_MEM (C++ enumerator),
1432
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_VDDSdio (C++ enumerator),
1432
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_XTAL (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_PD_OPTION_OFF (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_PD_OPTION_ON (C++ enumerator), 1432
esp_ping_callbacks_t (C++ class), 998
esp_ping_callbacks_t::cb_args (C++ member),
998
esp_ping_callbacks_t::on_ping_end
(C++ member), 998
esp_ping_callbacks_t::on_ping_success
(C++ member), 998
esp_ping_callbacks_t::on_ping_timeout
(C++ member), 998
esp_ping_config_t (C++ class), 998
esp_ping_config_t::count (C++ member),
998
esp_ping_config_t::data_size (C++ member),
999
esp_ping_config_t::interface (C++ member),
999
esp_ping_config_t::interval_ms (C++ member),
998
esp_ping_config_t::target_addr (C++ member),
999
esp_ping_config_t::task_prio (C++ member),
999
esp_ping_config_t::task_stack_size
(C++ member), 999
esp_ping_config_t::timeout_ms (C++ member),
999
esp_ping_config_t::tos (C++ member), 999
ESP_PIN_COUNT_INFINITE (C 宏), 999
ESP_PIN_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C 宏), 999
esp_ping_delete_session (C++ function), 997
esp_ping_get_profile (C++ function), 998
esp_ping_handle_t (C++ type), 999
esp_ping_new_session (C++ function), 997
ESP_PIN_PROF_DURATION (C++ enumerator),
999
ESP_PIN_PROF_IPADDR (C++ enumerator), 999
ESP_PIN_PROF_REPLY (C++ enumerator), 999
ESP_PIN_PROF_REQUEST (C++ enumerator), 999
ESP_PIN_PROF_SEQNO (C++ enumerator), 999
ESP_PIN_PROF_SIZE (C++ enumerator), 999
ESP_PIN_PROF_TIMEGAP (C++ enumerator), 999
ESP_PIN_PROF_TTL (C++ enumerator), 999
esp_ping_profile_t (C++ enum), 999
esp_ping_start (C++ function), 998
esp_ping_stop (C++ function), 998
ESP_PIN_APB_FREQ_MAX (C++ enumerator), 1421
esp_pm_config_esp32_t::min_freq_mhz
(C++ member), 1422
esp_pm_config_esp32_t::max_freq_mhz
(C++ member), 1422
esp_pm_config_esp32_t::min_freq_mhz
(C++ member), 1422
esp_pm_configure (C++ function), 1419
ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX (C++ enumerator), 1421
esp_pm_dump_locks (C++ function), 1421
esp_pm_get_configuration (C++ function), 1419
esp_pm_lock_acquire (C++ function), 1420
esp_pm_lock_create (C++ function), 1420
esp_pm_lock_delete (C++ function), 1421
esp_pm_lock_handle_t (C++ type), 1421
esp_pm_lock_release (C++ function), 1420
esp_pm_lock_type_t (C++ enum), 1421
ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP (C++ enumerator), 1421
esp_power_level_t (C++ enum), 129
esp_pthread_cfg_t (C++ class), 1215
esp_pthread_cfg_t::inherit_cfg (C++ member), 1215
esp_pthread_cfg_t::pin_to_core (C++ member), 1215
esp_pthread_cfg_t::prio (C++ member), 1215
esp_pthread_cfg_t::stack_size (C++ member), 1215
esp_pthread_cfg_t::thread_name (C++ member), 1215
esp_pthread_get_cfg (C++ function), 1215
esp_pthread_get_default_config (C++ function), 1215
esp_pthread_init (C++ function), 1215
ESP_PWR_LVL_N0 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N1 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N11 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N12 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N14 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N2 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N3 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N4 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N5 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N6 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N7 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N8 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_N9 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_P1 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_P3 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_P4 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_P6 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_P7 (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_PWR_LVL_P9 (C++ enumerator), 130
esp_random (C++ function), 1423
esp_register_freertos_idle_hook (C++ function), 1351
esp_register_freertos_idle_hook_for_cpu (C++ function), 1350
esp_register_freertos_tick_hook (C++ function), 1351
esp_register_freertos_tick_hook_for_cpu (C++ function), 1351
esp_register_shutdown_handler (C++ function), 1401
esp_reset_reason (C++ function), 1402
esp_reset_reason_t (C++ enum), 1402
esp_restart (C++ function), 1402
esp_rom_delay_us (C++ function), 1440
esp_rom_get_reset_reason (C++ function), 1440
esp_rom_install_channel_putchar (C++ function), 1440
esp_rom_install_usb_putchar (C++ function), 1440
esp_rom_putchar (C++ function), 1440
esp_rom_putchar (C++ function), 1440
ESP_RST_BROWNOUT (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_DEEPSLEEP (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_EXT (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_INT_WDT (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_PANIC (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_POWERON (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_SDIO (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_SW (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_TASK_WDT (C++ enumerator), 1403
ESP_RST_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 1402
ESP_RST_WAKEUP (C++ function), 1403
ESP_SOC_DATA_PATH_HCE (C++ enumerator), 130
ESP_SOC_DATA_PATH_FCH (C++ enumerator), 130
esp_soc_data_path_t (C++ enum), 130
esp_service_source_t (C++ enum), 189
esp_set_deep_sleep_wake(void) (C++ function), 1431
esp_sleep_config_gpio_isolate (C++ function), 1431
esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source (C++ function), 1427
esp_sleep_disable_wifi_wake (C++ function), 1430
esp_sleep_enable_ext0_wake (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_enable_ext1_wake (C++ function), 1429
esp_sleep_enable_gpio_switch (C++ function), 1431
esp_sleep_enable_gpio_wake (C++ function), 1429
esp_sleep_enable_timer_wake (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_enable_touchpad_wake (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_enable_uart_wake (C++ function), 1429
esp_start_random (C++ function), 1429
esp_sleep_enable_channels (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_enable_ulp_state (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_enable_wifi_wake (C++ function), 1429
esp_sleep_enable_usb_wake (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_enable_uart_wake (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_get_ext1_wake (C++ function), 1431
esp_sleep_get_ext1_wake (C++ function), 1430
esp_sleep_get_ext1_wake_status (C++ function), 1430
esp_sleep_get_ext1_wake_status (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_get_touchpad_wake (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_get_touchpad_wake (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_get_wakeup_cause (C++ function), 1430
esp_sleep_is_valid_wakeup_gpio (C++ function), 1428
esp_sleep_pd_config (C++ function), 1430
esp_sleep_pd_domain_t (C++ enum), 1431
esp_sleep_pd_option_t (C++ enum), 1432
esp_sleep_source_t (C++ enum), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ALL (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_BT (C++ enumerator), 1433
esp_sleep/*************************************************************************************************/wakeup_cause_t (C++ type), 1431
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_COCPU (C++ enumerator), 1433
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_COCPU_TRAP_TRIG (C++ enumerator), 1433
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_EXT0 (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_EXT1 (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_GPIO (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_TIMER (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_TOUCHPAD (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_UART (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_U LP (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_UNDEF INED (C++ enumerator), 1432
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_WIFI (C++ enumerator), 1432
esp_smartconfig_fast_mode (C++ function), 557
esp_smartconfig_get_rvd_data (C++ function), 557
esp_smartconfig_get_version (C++ function), 556
esp_smartconfig_set_type (C++ function), 557
esp_smartconfig_start (C++ function), 556
esp_smartconfig_stop (C++ function), 556
esp_spiffs_format (C++ function), 1158
esp_spiffs_info (C++ function), 1158
esp_spiffs_mouted (C++ function), 1157
ESP_SPP_BUSY (C++ enumerator), 273
esp_spp_cb_event_t (C++ enum), 273
esp_spp_cb_param_t (C++ union), 268
esp_spp_cb_param_t::cl_init (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::cl_close (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::cl_cong (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::cl_data_ind (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::cl_disc_comp (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::cl_init (C++ member), 268
esp_spp_cb_param_t::open (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cl_init_evt_param (C++ class), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cl_init_evt_param::handle (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cl_init_evt_param::sec_id (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cl_init_evt_param::status (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cl_init_evt_param::use_co (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_close_evt_param (C++ class), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_close_evt_param::async (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_close_evt_param::handle (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_close_evt_param::port_status (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_close_evt_param::status (C++ member), 269
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cong_evt_param (C++ class), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cong_evt_param::cong (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cong_evt_param::handle (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_cong_evt_param::status (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_data_ind_evt_param (C++ class), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_data_ind_evt_param::data (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_data_ind_evt_param::handle (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_data_ind_evt_param::len (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_data_ind_evt_param::status (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_discovery(evt_param (C++ class), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_discovery_evt_param::async (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_discovery_evt_param::data (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_discovery_evt_param::handle (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_discovery_evt_param::status (C++ member), 270
esp_spp_cb_param_t::spp_open_evt_param (C++ class), 270

Espresif Systems Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
Esperrisf Systems

Submit Document Feedback
esp_vfs_register_fd (C++ function), 1162
esp_vfs_register_fd_range (C++ function), 1162
esp_vfs_register_fd_with_local_fd (C++ function), 1163
esp_vfs_register_with_id (C++ function), 1162
esp_vfs_rename (C++ function), 1162
esp_vfs_select (C++ function), 1163
esp_vfs_select_sem_t (C++ class), 1164
esp_vfs_select_sem_t::is_sem_local (C++ member), 1164
esp_vfs_select_triggered (C++ function), 1163
esp_vfs_select_triggered_isr (C++ function), 1163
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t (C++ class), 1158
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t::base_path (C++ member), 1158
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t::format_if_mount_failed (C++ member), 1158
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t::max_files (C++ member), 1158
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t::partition_label (C++ member), 1158
esp_vfs_spiffs_register (C++ function), 1157
esp_vfs_spiffs_unregister (C++ function), 1157
esp_vfs_stat (C++ function), 1161
esp_vfs_t (C++ class), 1164
esp_vfs_t::access (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::access_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::close (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::close_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::closedir (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::closedir_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::end_select (C++ member), 1168
esp_vfs_t::fcntl1 (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::fcntl_l_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::flags (C++ member), 1164
esp_vfs_t::fstat (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::fstat_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::fsync (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::fsync_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::get_socket_select_semaphore (C++ member), 1168
esp_vfs_t::ioctl1 (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::ioctl_l_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::link (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::link_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::lseek (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::lseek_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::mkmdir (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::mkmdir_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::open (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::open_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::opendir (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::opendir_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::pread (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::pread_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::pwrite (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::pwrite_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::read (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::read_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::readdir (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::readdir_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::readdir_r (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::readdir_r_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::rename (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::rename_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::rmmdir (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::rmdir (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::seekdir (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::seekdir_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::socket_select (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::stop_socket_select_isr (C++ member), 1168
esp_vfs_t::tcdrain (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcdrain_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcflow (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcflow_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcflush (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcflush_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcgetattr (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcgetattr_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcgetattr (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcgetattr_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcgetsid (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcgetsid_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcsendbreak (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcsendbreak_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcsetattr (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::tcsetattr_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::telldir (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::telldir_p (C++ member), 1166
esp_vfs_t::truncate (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::truncate_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::unlink (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::unlink_p (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::utime (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::utime_p (C++ member), 1167
esp_vfs_t::write (C++ member), 1165
esp_vfs_t::write_p (C++ member), 1164
esp_vfs_t::unlink (C++ function), 1161
esp_vfs_unregister (C++ function), 1162
esp_vfs_unregister_fd (C++ function), 1163
esp_wifi_start (C++ function), 518
esp_wifi_stats_dump (C++ function), 529
esp_wifi_stop (C++ function), 519
essl_clear_intr (C++ function), 1050
essl_get_intr (C++ function), 1050
essl_get_intr_ena (C++ function), 1051
essl_get_packet (C++ function), 1049
essl_get_rx_data_size (C++ function), 1048
essl_get_tx_buffer_num (C++ function), 1048
essl_handle_t (C++ type), 1051
essl_init (C++ function), 1048
essl_read_reg (C++ function), 1050
essl_reset_cnt (C++ function), 1049
essl_sdio_config_t::card (C++ member), 1052
essl_sdio_config_t::recv_buffer_size (C++ member), 1052
essl_sdio_deinit_dev (C++ function), 1051
essl_sdio_deinit_dev (C++ function), 1052
essl_send_packet (C++ function), 1049
essl_send_slave_intr (C++ function), 1051
essl_spi_config_t (C++ class), 1052
essl_spi_config_t::rx_sync_reg (C++ member), 1056
essl_spi_config_t::spi (C++ member), 1056
essl_spi_config_t::tx_buf_size (C++ member), 1056
essl_spi_deinit_dev (C++ function), 1054
essl_spi_deinit_dev (C++ function), 1052
essl_spi_get_packet (C++ function), 1052
eth_phy_config_t (C++ function), 1052
eth_phy_rdbuf (C++ function), 1053
eth_phy_rdbuf_polling (C++ function), 1054
eth_phy_rdma (C++ function), 1055
eth_phy_rdma_done (C++ function), 1055
eth_phy_rdma_seg (C++ function), 1055
eth_phy_read_reg (C++ function), 1052
ethphy_t::reset_cnt (C++ function), 1053
ethphy_t::send_packet (C++ function), 1053
ethphy_t::wrbuf (C++ function), 1054
ethphy_t::wrbuf_polling (C++ function), 1054
ethphy_t::wrdma (C++ function), 1055
ethphy_t::wrdma_done (C++ function), 1056
ethphy_t::wrdma_seg (C++ function), 1056
ethphy_t::write_reg (C++ function), 1053
ethphy_t::wait_for_ready (C++ function), 1048
ethphy_t::wait_int (C++ function), 1050
essl_write_reg (C++ function), 1049
eStandardSleep (C++ enumerator), 1263
eSuspended (C++ enumerator), 1263
eTaskGetState (C++ function), 1241
eTaskState (C++ enum), 1263
ETH_CMD_G_AUTONEGO (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_G_DUPLEX_MODE (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_G_MAC_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 603
ETH_CMD_G_PHY_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_G_SPEED (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_S_AUTONEGO (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_S_DUPLEX_MODE (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_S_FLOW_CTRL (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_S_MAC_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_S_PHY_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_S_PHY_LOOPBACK (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_S_PROMISCUOUS (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_CMD_S_SPEED (C++ enumerator), 604
ETH_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C), 603
event_t (C++ enum), 606
et_mac_clock_config_t (C++ union), 606
eth_mac_clock_config_t::clock_gpio (C++ member), 606
eth_mac_clock_config_t::clock_mode (C++ member), 606
eth_mac_clock_config_t::mii (C++ member), 606
eth_mac_clock_config_t::rmi (C++ member), 606
eth_mac_config_t (C++ class), 610
eth_mac_config_t::clock_config (C++ member), 610
eth_mac_config_t::flags (C++ member), 610
eh_mac_config_t::interface (C++ member), 610
eth_mac_config_t::rx_task_prio (C++ member), 610
eth_mac_config_t::rx_task_stack_size (C++ member), 610
eth_mac_config_t::smi_mdc_gpio_num (C++ member), 610
eth_mac_config_t::smi_mdio_gpio_num (C++ member), 610
eth_mac_config_t::sw_reset_timeout_ms (C++ member), 610
ETH_MAC_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C), 610
ETH_MAC_FLAG_PIN_TO_CORE (C), 610
ETH_MAC_FLAG_WORK_WITH_CACHE_DISABLE (C), 610
eth_phy_autoneg_cmd_t (C++ enum), 616
ethphy_t::autonego (C++ class), 615
ethphy_t::autonego_timeout_ms (C++ member), 615
ethphy_t::phy_addr (C++ member), 615
ethphy_t::reset_gpio_num (C++ member), 615
ethphy_t::reset_timeout_ms (C++ member), 615
ETH_PHY_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C), 615
ETH_STATE_DEINIT (C++ enumerator), 605
ETH_STATE_DUPLEX (C++ enumerator), 606
ETH_STATE_LINK (C++ enumerator), 606
ETH_STATE_LLINIT (C++ enumerator), 605
ETH_STATE_PAUSE (C++ enumerator), 606
**gpio_config_t::intr_type** (C++ enumerator), 682

**gpio_config_t::pin_bit_mask** (C++ member), 682

**gpio_config_t::pull_down_en** (C++ member), 682

**gpio_config_t::pull_up_en** (C++ member), 682

**gpio_deep_sleep_hold_dis** (C++ function), 681

**gpio_deep_sleep_hold_en** (C++ function), 681

**GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_0** (C++ enumerator), 689

**GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_1** (C++ enumerator), 689

**GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_2** (C++ enumerator), 689

**GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_3** (C++ enumerator), 689

**GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_DEFAULT** (C++ enumerator), 689

**GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_MAX** (C++ enumerator), 689

**GPIO_DRIVE_cap_t** (C++ type), 688

**GPIO_DRIVE_cap_t** (C++ enum), 687

**GPIO_FLOATING** (C++ enumerator), 688

**gpio_get_drive_capability** (C++ function), 680

**gpio_get_level** (C++ function), 677

**gpio_hold_dis** (C++ function), 680

**gpio_hold_en** (C++ function), 680

**gpio_install_isr_service** (C++ function), 679

**gpio_int_type_t** (C++ enum), 687

**GPIO_INTR_ANYEDGE** (C++ enumerator), 688

**GPIO_INTR_DISABLE** (C++ enumerator), 687

**gpio_intr_disable** (C++ function), 677

**gpio_intr_enable** (C++ function), 677

**GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL** (C++ enumerator), 688

**GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL** (C++ enumerator), 688

**GPIO_INTR_MAX** (C++ enumerator), 688

**GPIO_INTR_NEGEDGE** (C++ function), 688

**GPIO_INTR_NEGEDGE** (C++ enumerator), 688

**GPIO_INTR_POSEDGE** (C++ function), 688

**GPIO_INTR_POSEDGE** (C++ enumerator), 687

**GPIO_INTR_TYPE** (C++ enum), 687

**GPIO_IS_VALID_GPIOPin** (C++ member), 682

**GPIO_IS_VALID_INPUT_GPIO** (C++ member), 682

**GPIO_IS_VALID_OUTPUT_GPIO** (C++ member), 682

**trigger_cb_t** (C++ type), 854

**FTM_STATUS_CONF_REJECTED** (C++ enumerator), 556

**FTM_STATUS_FAIL** (C++ enumerator), 556

**FTM_STATUS_NO_RESPONSE** (C++ enumerator), 556

**FTM_STATUS_SUCCESS** (C++ enumerator), 556

**FTM_STATUS_UNSUPPORTED** (C++ enumerator), 556

**G**

gpio_config (C++ function), 676

gpio_config_t (C++ class), 682

gpio_config_t::intr_type (C++ member), 682

Espressif Systems 2213  Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback
httpd_config::server_port (C++ member), 987
httpd_config::stack_size (C++ member), 986
httpd_config::task_priority (C++ member), 986
httpd_config::uri_match_fn (C++ member), 988
httpd_config_t (C++ type), 992
HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C `宏`), 989
HTTPD_ERR_CODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 992
httpd_errno (C++ enum), 992
httpd_err_handler_func_t (C++ type), 991
httpd_free_ctx_fn_t (C++ type), 991
httpd_get_client_list (C++ function), 986
httpd_get_global_transport_ctx (C++ function), 985
httpd_get_global_user_ctx (C++ function), 985
httpd_handler_t (C++ type), 991
HTTPD_MAX_REQ_HDR_LEN (C `宏`), 989
HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN (C `宏`), 989
httpd_method_t (C++ type), 991
httpd_open_func_t (C++ type), 991
httpd_pending_func_t (C++ type), 991
httpd_query_key_value (C++ function), 977
httpd_queue_work (C++ function), 984
httpd_recv_func_t (C++ type), 990
httpd_register_err_handler (C++ function), 983
httpd_register_uri_handler (C++ function), 974
httpd_req (C++ class), 988
httpd_req::aux (C++ member), 988
httpd_req::content_len (C++ member), 988
httpd_req::cookie_val (C++ member), 988
httpd_req::content (C++ member), 988
httpd_req::cookie (C++ member), 988
httpd_req::cookie_val (C++ function), 978
httpd_req::get_cookie_val (C++ function), 978
httpd_req::get_hdr_value_len (C++ function), 976
httpd_req::get_hdr_value_str (C++ function), 976
httpd_req::get_url_query_len (C++ function), 977
httpd_req::get_url_query_str (C++ function), 977
httpd_req::recv (C++ function), 976
httpd_req_t (C++ type), 990
httpd_req_to_sockfd (C++ function), 975
httpd_resp_send (C++ function), 978
httpd_resp_send_404 (C++ function), 981
httpd_resp_send_408 (C++ function), 981
httpd_resp_send_500 (C++ function), 982
httpd_resp_send_chunk (C++ function), 979
httpd_resp_send_err (C++ function), 981
httpd_resp_sendstr (C++ function), 979
httpd_resp_sendstr_chunk (C++ function), 980
httpd_resp_set_hdr (C++ function), 980
httpd_resp_set_status (C++ function), 980
httpd_resp_set_type (C++ function), 980
HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN (C `宏`), 990
httpd_send (C++ function), 982
httpd_send_func_t (C++ type), 990
httpd_sess_get_ctx (C++ function), 984
httpd_sess_get_transport_ctx (C++ function), 985
httpd_sess_get_ctx (C++ function), 985
httpd_sess_set_pending_override (C++ function), 975
httpd_sess_set_recv_overide (C++ function), 975
httpd_sess_set_send_overide (C++ function), 975
httpd_sess_set_transport_ctx (C++ function), 985
httpd_sess_trigger_close (C++ function), 985
httpd_sess_update_lru_counter (C++ function), 986
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL (C `宏`), 989
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID (C `宏`), 989
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT (C `宏`), 989
httpd_socket_recv (C++ function), 983
httpd_socket_send (C++ function), 982
httpd_ssl_config (C++ class), 994
httpd_ssl_config::cacert_len (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::cacert_pem (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::client_verify_cert_len (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::client_verify_cert_pem (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::httpd_socket_send (C++ function), 994
httpd_ssl_config::port_secure (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::port_insecure (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::prvtkey_len (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::prvtkey_pem (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::session_tickets (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::transport_mode (C++ member), 994
httpd_ssl_config::user_cb (C++ member), 994
Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback
ledc_set_fade_time_and_start (C++ function), 739
ledc_set_fade_with_step (C++ function), 737
ledc_set_fade_with_time (C++ function), 738
ledc_set_freq (C++ function), 734
ledc_set_pin (C++ function), 734
LEDC_SLOW_CLK_APB (C++ enumerator), 742
LEDC_SLOW_CLK_RTC8M (C++ enumerator), 742
ledc_slow_clk_set_t (C++ enum), 742
LEDC_SPEED_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 742
ledc_stop (C++ function), 734
LED廪TIMER_0 (C++ enumerator), 743
LED廪TIMER_1 (C++ enumerator), 743
LED廪TIMER_10_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_11_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_12_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_13_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_14_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_15_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_16_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_17_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_18_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_19_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_1_BIT (C++ enumerator), 743
LED廪TIMER_2 (C++ enumerator), 743
LED廪TIMER_20_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_2_BIT (C++ enumerator), 743
LED廪TIMER_3 (C++ enumerator), 743
LED廪TIMER_4_BIT (C++ enumerator), 743
LED廪TIMER_5_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_6_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_7_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_8_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_9_BIT (C++ enumerator), 744
LED廪TIMER_MAX (C++ enumerator), 743
ledc_timerpause (C++ function), 737
ledc_timerresume (C++ function), 737
ledc_timerrst (C++ function), 736
ledc_timer_set (C++ function), 736
ledc_timer_t (C++ enum), 743
ledc_update_duty (C++ function), 734
LEDC_USE_APB_CLK (C++ enumerator), 742
LEDC_USE_REF_TICK (C++ enumerator), 742
LEDC_USE_RTC8M_CLK (C++ enumerator), 742
linenoiseCompletions (C++ type), 1190

M
M_BGE (C 宏), 1981
M_BL (C 宏), 1981
M_BX (C 宏), 1981
M_BXF (C 宏), 1981
M_BXZ (C 宏), 1981
M_LABEL (C 宏), 1981
MALLOC_CAP_32BIT (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_8BIT (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_DEFAULT (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_DMA (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_EXEC (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_INTERNAL (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_INVALID (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_IRAM_8BIT (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_PID2 (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_PID3 (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_PID4 (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_PID5 (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_PID6 (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_PID7 (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_RETENTION (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_RTCRAM (C 宏), 1358
MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM (C 宏), 1358
MAX_BLE_DEV_NAME_LEN (C 宏), 1073
MAX_BLE_MANUFACTURER_DATA_LEN (C 宏), 1073
MAX_FDS (C 宏), 1168
MAX_PASSPHRASE_LEN (C 宏), 548
MAX_SSID_LEN (C 宏), 548
MAX_WPS_AP_CRED (C 宏), 548
mb_communication_info_t (C++ union), 1023
mb_communication_info_t::baudrate (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::dummy_port (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::ip_addr (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::ip_addr_type (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::ip_mode (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::ip_netif_ptr (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::ip_port (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::mode (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::parity (C++ member), 1024
mb_communication_info_t::port (C++ member), 1024

Espressif Systems 2222 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
mb_register_area_descriptor_t::type
  (C++ member), 1033
mb_tcp_addr_type_t (C++ enum), 1026
MB_UART_PORT (C Enum), 1024
mbc_master_destroy (C++ function), 1027
mbc_master_get_cid_info (C++ function), 1027
mbc_master_get_parameter (C++ function), 1027
mbc_master_init (C++ function), 1026
mbc_master_init_iface (C++ function), 1027
mbc_master_init_tcp (C++ function), 1026
mbc_master_send_request (C++ function), 1027
mbc_master_set_descriptor (C++ function), 1028
mbc_master_set_parameter (C++ function), 1028
mbc_master_setup (C++ function), 1027
mbc_slave_check_event (C++ function), 1027
mbc_slave_destroy (C++ function), 1031
mbc_slave_get_param_info (C++ function), 1032
mbc_slave_init (C++ function), 1031
mbc_slave_init_iface (C++ function), 1031
mbc_slave_init_tcp (C++ function), 1031
mbc_slave_set_descriptor (C++ function), 1032
mbc_slave_setup (C++ function), 1032
mbc_slave_start (C++ function), 1031
MCPWM0A (C++ enumerator), 762
MCPWM0B (C++ enumerator), 762
MCPWM1A (C++ enumerator), 763
MCPWM1B (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM2A (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM2B (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_ACTION_FORCE_HIGH (C++ enumerator), 768
MCPWM_ACTION_FORCE_LOW (C++ enumerator), 768
MCPWM_ACTION_NO_CHANGE (C++ enumerator), 768
mcpwm_action_on_pwmxa_t (C++ type), 763
mcpwm_action_on_pwmxb_t (C++ type), 763
MCPWM_ACTION_TOGGLE (C++ enumerator), 768
MCPWM_ACTIVE_HIGH_COMPLIMENT_MODE
  (C++ enumerator), 767
MCPWM_ACTIVE_HIGH_MODE (C++ enumerator), 767
MCPWM_ACTIVE_LOW_COMPLIMENT_MODE (C++ enumerator), 767
MCPWM_ACTIVE_LOW_MODE (C++ enumerator), 767
MCPWM_ACTIVE_RED_FED_FROM_PWMXA
  (C++ enumerator), 767
MCPWM_ACTIVE_RED_FED_FROM_PWMXB
  (C++ enumerator), 767
MCPWM_BOTH_EDGE (C++ enumerator), 766
MCPWM_BYPASS_FED (C++ enumerator), 767
MCPWM_BYPASS_RED (C++ enumerator), 767
MCPWM_CAP_0 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_CAP_1 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_CAP_2 (C++ enumerator), 764
mcpwm_capture_channel_id_t (C++ type), 763
mcpwm_capture_config_t (C++ class), 762
mcpwm_capture_config_t::cap_edge (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_capture_config_t::cap_prescale
  (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_capture_config_t::capture_cb
  (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_capture_config_t::user_data
  (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_capture_disable_channel (C++ function), 768
mcpwm_capture_enable (C++ function), 768
mcpwm_capture_enable_channel (C++ function), 768
mcpwm_capture_on_edge_t (C++ enum), 766
mcpwm_capture_signal_get_edge (C++ function), 769
mcpwm_capture_signal_get_value (C++ function), 769
mcpwm_capture_signal_t (C++ enum), 768
mcpwm_capture_config_t::carrier_duty
  (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_capture_config_t::carrier_ivt_mode
  (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_capture_config_t::carrier_os_mode
  (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_capture_config_t::carrier_period
  (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_capture_config_t::pulse_width_in_os
  (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_carrier_disable (C++ function), 755
mcpwm_carrier_enable (C++ function), 755
mcpwm_carrier_init (C++ function), 755
mcpwm_carrier_oneshot_mode_disable
  (C++ function), 756
mcpwm_carrier_oneshot_mode_enable
  (C++ function), 756
mcpwm_carrier_os_t (C++ enum), 765
MCPWM_CARRIER_OS_T (C++ enumerator), 765
MCPWM_CAR_1 (C++ enum), 765
mcpwm_carrier_out_inv_t (C++ enum), 765
mcpwm_carrier_output_invert (C++ function), 765
mcpwm_carrier_set_duty_cycle (C++ function), 755
mcpwm_carrier_set_period (C++ function), 767
mcpwm_config_t (C++ class), 761
MCPWM_SELECT_F1 (C++ enumerator), 765
MCPWM_SELECT_F2 (C++ enumerator), 765
MCPWM_SELECT_GPIO_SYNC0 (C++ enumerator), 765
MCPWM_SELECT_GPIO_SYNC1 (C++ enumerator), 766
MCPWM_SELECT_GPIO_SYNC2 (C++ enumerator), 766
MCPWM_SELECT_NO_INPUT (C++ enumerator), 765
MCPWM_SELECT_TIMER0_SYNC (C++ enumerator), 765
MCPWM_SELECT_TIMER1_SYNC (C++ enumerator), 765
MCPWM_SELECT_TIMER2_SYNC (C++ enumerator), 765
mcpwm_set_duty (C++ function), 753
mcpwm_set_duty_in_us (C++ function), 753
mcpwm_set_duty_type (C++ function), 754
mcpwm_set_frequency (C++ function), 753
mcpwm_set_pin (C++ function), 752
mcpwm_set_signal_high (C++ function), 754
mcpwm_set_signal_low (C++ function), 754
mcpwm_set_timer_sync_output (C++ function), 759
mcpwm_start (C++ function), 755
mcpwm_stop (C++ function), 755
MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_DISABLED (C++ enumerator), 766
MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_SYNCIN (C++ enumerator), 766
MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_TEP (C++ enumerator), 766
MCPWM_SWSYNC_SOURCE_TE2 (C++ enumerator), 766
MCPWM_SYNC_0 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_SYNC_1 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_SYNC_2 (C++ enumerator), 764
mcpwm_sync_config_t (C++ class), 762
mcpwm_sync_config_t::count_direction (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_sync_config_t::sync_signal (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_sync_config_t::timer_val (C++ member), 762
mcpwm_sync_config (C++ function), 759
mcpwm_sync_disable (C++ function), 759
mcpwm_sync_enable (C++ function), 759
mcpwm_sync_invert_gpio_sync (C++ function), 760
mcpwm_sync_signal_t (C++ enum), 765
MCPWM_TIMER_0 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_TIMER_1 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_TIMER_2 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_TIMER_COUNT_MODE_DOWN (C++ enumerator), 751
MCPWM_TIMER_DIRECTION_DOWN (C++ enumerator), 751
mcpwm_timer_direction_t (C++ enum), 751
mcpwm_timer_set_resolution (C++ function), 753
MCPWM_TIMER_START_NO_STOP (C++ enumerator), 751
MCPWM_TIMER_STOP_AT_PEAK (C++ enumerator), 751
MCPWM_TIMER_STOP_AT_ZERO (C++ enumerator), 751
mcpwm_timer_sync_trigger_t (C++ enum), 766
mcpwm_timer_t (C++ enum), 764
mcpwm_timer_trigger_soft_sync (C++ function), 760
MCPWM_TOG_MCPWMA (C enum), 763
MCPWM_TOG_MCPWMB (C enum), 763
MCPWM_TRIP_TYPE_CBC (C++ enumerator), 752
MCPWM_TRIP_TYPE_OST (C++ enumerator), 752
mcpwm_trip_type_t (C++ enum), 752
MCPWM_UNIT_0 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_UNIT_1 (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_UNIT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 764
mcpwm_unit_t (C++ enum), 764
MCPWM_UP_COUNTER (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_UP_DOWN_COUNTER (C++ enumerator), 764
mcpwm_up_down_counter_t (C++ enum), 764
MCPWM_UP_DOWN_COUNTER (C++ enumerator), 764
MCPWM_UP_DOWN_COUNTER (C++ enumerator), 764
mcpwm_up_down_counter_t (C++ enum), 764
mdns_delegate_hostname_add (C++ function), 902
mdns_delegate_hostname_remove (C++ function), 902
mdns_free (C++ function), 902
mdns_handle_system_event (C++ function), 910
mdns_hostname_exists (C++ function), 902
mdns_hostname_set (C++ function), 902
MDNS_IF_AP (C++ enumerator), 912
MDNS_IF_ETH (C++ enumerator), 912
mdns_if_internal (C++ enum), 912
MDNS_IF_MAX (C++ enumerator), 912
MDNS_IF_STA (C++ enumerator), 912
mesh_event_root_conflict_t (C++ class), 587
mesh_event_root_conflict_t::addr (C++ member), 587
mesh_event_root_conflict_t::capacity (C++ member), 587
mesh_event_root_conflict_t::rssi (C++ member), 587
MESH_EVENT_ROOT_FIXED (C++ enumerator), 594
mesh_event_root_fixed_t (C++ class), 588
mesh_event_root_fixed_t::is_fixed (C++ member), 588
MESH_EVENT_ROOT_SWITCH_ACK (C++ enumerator), 594
MESH_EVENT_ROOT_SWITCH_REQ (C++ enumerator), 594
mesh_event_root_switch_req_t (C++ class), 587
mesh_event_root_switch_req_t::rc_addr (C++ member), 587
mesh_event_root_switch_req_t::reason (C++ member), 587
MESH_EVENT_ROUTER_SWITCH (C++ enumerator), 594
mesh_event_router_switch_t (C++ type), 593
MESH_EVENT_ROUTING_TABLE_ADD (C++ enumerator), 593
mesh_event_routing_table_change_t (C++ class), 587
mesh_event_routing_table_change_t::rc_addr (C++ member), 588
mesh_event_routing_table_change_t::rt_size_change (C++ member), 588
MESH_EVENT_ROUTING_TABLE_REMOVE (C++ enumerator), 593
MESH_EVENT_SCAN_DONE (C++ enumerator), 594
mesh_event_scan_done_t (C++ class), 588
mesh_event_scan_done_t::number (C++ member), 588
MESH_EVENT_STARTED (C++ enumerator), 593
MESH_EVENT_STOP_RECONNECTION (C++ enumerator), 594
MESH_EVENT_STOPPED (C++ enumerator), 593
MESH_EVENT_TODS_STATE (C++ enumerator), 594
mesh_event_tods_state_t (C++ enum), 596
MESH_EVENT_VOTE_STARTED (C++ enumerator), 594
mesh_event_vote_started_t (C++ class), 587
mesh_event_vote_started_t::attempts (C++ member), 587
mesh_event_vote_started_t::rc_addr (C++ member), 587
mesh_event_vote_started_t::reason (C++ member), 587
MESH_EVENT_VOTE_STOPPED (C++ enumerator), 594
MESH_IDLE (C++ enumerator), 594
MESH_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C宏), 593
MESH_LEAF (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_MFS (C宏), 591
MESH_MTU (C宏), 591
MESH_NODE (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR (C宏), 592
MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP (C宏), 592
mesh_opt_t (C++ class), 588
mesh_opt_t::len (C++ member), 588
mesh_opt_t::type (C++ member), 588
mesh_opt_t::val (C++ member), 588
MESH_PROTO_AP (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_PROTO_BIN (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_PROTO_HTTP (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_PROTO_JSON (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_PROTO_MQTT (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_PROTO_STA (C++ enumerator), 595
mesh_proto_t (C++ enum), 595
MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND (C宏), 593
MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST (C宏), 592
MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE (C宏), 593
MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_UPLINK (C宏), 593
MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_MASTER (C宏), 593
mesh_rc_config_t (C++ union), 585
mesh_rc_config_t::attempts (C++ member), 586
mesh_rc_config_t::rc_addr (C++ member), 586
MESH_REASON_CYCLIC (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_REASON_DIFF_ID (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_EMPTY_PASSWORD (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_IE_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_LEAF (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_PARENT_IDLE (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_REASON_PARENT_STOPPED (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_PARENT_UNENCRYPTED (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_PARENT_WORSE (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_ROOTS (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_SCAN_FAIL (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_REASON_NAIVE_ROOT (C++ enumerator), 596
MESH_ROOT (C++ enumerator), 595
MESH_ROOT_LAYER (C宏), 591
mesh_router_t (C++ class), 589
mesh_router_t::allow_router_switch (C++ member), 589
mesh_router_t::bssid (C++ member), 589
mesh_router_t::password (C++ member), 589
mesh_router_t::ssid (C++ member), 589
mesh_router_t::ssid_len (C++ member), 589
mesh_rx_pending_t (C++ class), 590
multi_heap_realloc (C++ function), 1361
multi_heap_register (C++ function), 1361
multi_heap_set_ptr (C++ function), 1361

N
name_uuid (C++ class), 1072
name_uuid::name (C++ member), 1073
name_uuid::uuid (C++ member), 1073
nvs_close (C++ function), 1112
nvs_commit (C++ function), 1112
NVS_DEFAULT_PART_NAME (C++), 1116
nvs_entry_find (C++ function), 1113
nvs_entry_info (C++ function), 1114
nvs_entry_info_t::type (C++ member), 1114
nvs_entry_info_t::key (C++ member), 1114
nvs_entry_info_t::namespace_name (C++ member), 1114
nvs_get_used_entry_count (C++ function), 1113
NVS_iterator_t (C++ function), 1116
nvs_get_u8 (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_u32 (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_u16 (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_str (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_i8 (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_i64 (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_i32 (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_i16 (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_blob (C++ function), 1112
nvs_flash_read_security_cfg (C++ function), 1112
nvs_flash_init_partition_ptr (C++ class), 1105
nvs_flash_init_partition (C++ function), 1105
nvs_flash_erase_partition (C++ function), 1105
nvs_flash_erase_partition_ptr (C++ function), 1105
nvs_flash_generate_keys (C++ function), 1106
nvs_flash_init (C++ function), 1104
nvs_flash_init_partition (C++ function), 1104
nvs_flash_init_partition_ptr (C++ function), 1105
nvs_flash_read_security_cfg (C++ function), 1106
nvs_flash_secure_init (C++ function), 1106
nvs_flash_secure_init_partition (C++ function), 1106
nvs_get_blob (C++ function), 1110
nvs_get_i16 (C++ function), 1109
nvs_get_i32 (C++ function), 1109
nvs_get_i64 (C++ function), 1109
nvs_get_i8 (C++ function), 1108
nvs_get_stats (C++ function), 1112
nvs_get_str (C++ function), 1109
nvs_get_u16 (C++ function), 1109
nvs_get_u32 (C++ function), 1109
nvs_get_u64 (C++ function), 1109
nvs_get_u8 (C++ function), 1109
nvs_get_used_entry_count (C++ function), 1113
nvs_handle (C++ type), 1116
nvs_handle_t (C++ type), 1116
nvs_iterator_t (C++ type), 1116

NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE (C++), 1116
NVS_KEY_SIZE (C++), 1107
nvs_open (C++ function), 1110
nvs_open_from_partition (C++ function), 1110
nvs_open_mode (C++ type), 1116
nvs_open_mode_t (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_PART_NAME_MAX_SIZE (C++), 1116
NVS_READONLY (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_READWRITE (C++ enum), 1116
nvs_release_iterator (C++ function), 1114
nvs_sec_cfg_t::key (C++ member), 1107
nvs_sec_cfg_t::tkey (C++ member), 1107
nvs_set_blob (C++ function), 1111
nvs_set_i16 (C++ function), 1107
nvs_set_i32 (C++ function), 1108
nvs_set_i64 (C++ function), 1108
nvs_set_i8 (C++ function), 1107
nvs_set_str (C++ function), 1108
nvs_set_u16 (C++ function), 1107
nvs_set_u32 (C++ function), 1108
nvs_set_u64 (C++ function), 1108
nvs_set_u8 (C++ function), 1107
nvs_stats_t::free_entries (C++ member), 1114
nvs_stats_t::namespace_count (C++ member), 1114
nvs_stats_t::total_entries (C++ member), 1114
nvs_stats_t::used_entries (C++ member), 1114
NVS_TYPE_ANY (C++ enum), 1117
NVS_TYPE_BLOB (C++ enum), 1117
NVS_TYPE_I16 (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_TYPE_I32 (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_TYPE_I64 (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_TYPE_I8 (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_TYPE_STR (C++ enum), 1117
nvs_type_t (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_TYPE_U16 (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_TYPE_U32 (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_TYPE_U64 (C++ enum), 1116
NVS_TYPE_U8 (C++ enum), 1116

O
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_GOT_IP6 (C++ enum), 619
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_IF_DOWN (C++ enum), 619
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_IF_UP (C++ enum), 619
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_LOST_IP6 (C++ enum), 619
OPENTHREAD_EVENT_MULTICAST_GROUP_JOIN (C++ enum), 619

Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
pcnt_config_t::channel (C++ member), 775
pcnt_config_t::counter_h_lim (C++ member), 775
pcnt_config_t::counter_l_lim (C++ member), 775
pcnt_config_t::ctrl_gpio_num (C++ member), 775
pcnt_config_t::hctrl_mode (C++ member), 775
pcnt_config_t::lctrl_mode (C++ member), 775
pcnt_config_t::neg_mode (C++ member), 775
pcnt_config_t::pos_mode (C++ member), 775
pcnt_config_t::pulse_gpio_num (C++ member), 774
pcnt_config_t::unit (C++ member), 775
PCNT_COUNT_DEC (C 宏), 775
PCNT_COUNT_DIS (C 宏), 775
PCNT_COUNT_INC (C 宏), 775
PCNT_COUNT_MAX (C 宏), 775
pcnt_count_mode_t (C++ type), 775
pcnt_counter_clear (C++ function), 770
pcnt_counter_pause (C++ function), 770
pcnt_counter_resume (C++ function), 770
pcnt_ctrl_mode_t (C++ type), 775
pcnt_event_disable (C++ function), 771
pcnt_event_enable (C++ function), 771
PCNT_EVT_H_LIM (C++ enumerator), 776
PCNT_EVT_L_LIM (C++ enumerator), 776
PCNT_EVT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 777
PCNT_EVT_THRES_0 (C++ enumerator), 776
PCNT_EVT_THRES_1 (C++ enumerator), 776
pcnt_evt_type_t (C++ enum), 776
pcnt_filter_disable (C++ function), 773
pcnt_filter_enable (C++ function), 773
pcnt_get_counter_value (C++ function), 770
pcnt_get_event_status (C++ function), 772
pcnt_get_event_value (C++ function), 772
pcnt_get_filter_value (C++ function), 773
pcnt_intr_disable (C++ function), 771
pcnt_intr_enable (C++ function), 771
pcnt_isr_handle_t (C++ type), 775
pcnt_isr_handler_add (C++ function), 774
pcnt_isr_handler_remove (C++ function), 774
pcnt_isr_register (C++ function), 772
pcnt_isr_service_install (C++ function), 774
pcnt_isr_service_uninstall (C++ function), 774
pcnt_isr_unregister (C++ function), 772
PCNT_MODEDisable (C 宏), 775
PCNT_MODEKEEP (C 宏), 775
PCNT_MODEMAX (C 宏), 775
PCNT_MODEREVERSE (C 宏), 775
PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED (C宏), 775
PCNT_PORT0 (C++ enumerator), 776
PCNT_PORT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 776
PROV_DATA_FLAGS_FLAG (C 宏)，340
PROV_DATA_IV_INDEX_FLAG (C 宏)，340
PROV_DATA_NET_IDX_FLAG (C 宏)，340
PROXY_FILTER_BLACKLIST (C++ enumerator)，354
PROXY_FILTER_WHITELIST (C++ enumerator)，354
psk_hint_key_t (C++ type)，922
psk_key_hint (C++ class)，919
psk_key_hint::hint (C++ member)，919
psk_key_hint::key (C++ member)，919
PTHREAD_STACK_MIN (C 宏)，1216
pvTaskGetThreadLocalStoragePointer (C++ function)，1248
pvTimerGetTimerID (C++ function)，1298
pxTaskGetStackStart (C++ function)，1248
QueueHandle_t (C++ type)，1281
QueueSetHandle_t (C++ type)，1281
QueueSetMemberHandle_t (C++ type)，1281
R0 (C 宏)，1979
R1 (C 宏)，1979
R2 (C 宏)，1979
R3 (C 宏)，1979
RADIO_MODE_NATIVE (C++ enumerator)，620
RADIO_MODE_SPI_RCP (C++ enumerator)，620
RADIO_MODE_UART_RCP (C++ enumerator)，620
RINGBUF_TYPE_ALLOWSPLIT (C++ enumerator)，1349
RINGBUF_TYPE_BYTEBUF (C++ enumerator)，1349
RINGBUF_TYPE_MAX (C++ enumerator)，1349
RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT (C++ enumerator)，1349
RingbufferType_t (C++ enum)，1349
RingbufferHandle_t (C++ type)，1349
RMT_BASECLK_APB (C++ enumerator)，794
RMT_BASECLK_MAX (C++ enumerator)，794
RMT_BASECLK_REF (C++ enumerator)，794
RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_HIGH (C++ enumerator)，795
RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_LOW (C++ enumerator)，795
RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_MAX (C++ enumerator)，795
rmt_channel_status_result_t (C++ class)，793
rmt_channel_status_result_t::status (C++ member)，793
rmt_channel_status_t (C++ enum)，795
rmt_channel_status_t::status (C++ member)，793
RMT_CHANNEL_UNINIT (C++ enum)，795
rmt_clr_intr_enable_mask (C++ function)，791
rmt_config (C++ function)，787
rmt_config_t (C++ class)，792
rmt_config_t::channel (C++ member)，792
rmt_config_t::clk_div (C++ member)，792
rmt_config_t::flags (C++ member)，792
rmt_config_t::gpio_num (C++ member)，792
rmt_config_t::mem_block_num (C++ member)，792
rmt_config_t::rmt_mode (C++ member)，792
rmt_config_t::rx_config (C++ member)，792
rmt_config_t::tx_config (C++ member)，792
RMT_DATA_MODE_FIFO (C++ enumerator)，794
RMT_DATA_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator)，794
RMT_DATA_MODE_MEM (C++ enumerator)，794
rmt_data_mode_t (C++ enum)，794
RMT_DEFAULT_CONFIG_RX (C 宏)，792
RMT_DEFAULT_CONFIG_TX (C 宏)，792
rmt_driver_install (C++ function)，788
rmt_driver_uninstall (C++ function)，788
rmt_fill_tx_items (C++ function)，788
rmt_get_channel_status (C++ function)，788
rmt_get_clk_div (C++ function)，782
rmt_get_counter_clock (C++ function)，789
rmt_get_idle_level (C++ function)，786
rmt_get_mem_block_num (C++ function)，783
rmt_get_mem_pd (C++ function)，784
rmt_get_memory_owner (C++ function)，785
rmt_get_ringbuf_handle (C++ function)，789
rmt_get_rx_idle_thresh (C++ function)，782
rmt_get_source_clk (C++ function)，786
rmt_get_status (C++ function)，786
rmt_get_tx_loop_mode (C++ function)，795
RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_HIGH (C++ enum)，794
RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_LOW (C++ enum)，794
RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_MAX (C++ enum)，795
rmt_idle_level_t (C++ enum)，794
rmt_isr_deregister (C++ function)，788
rmt_isr_handle_t (C++ type)，793
rmt_isr_register (C++ function)，787
RMT_MEM_ITEM_NUM (C 宏)，792
RMT_MEM_OWNER_MAX (C++ enumerator)，794
RMT_MEM_OWNER_RX (C++ enumerator)，794
rmt_mem_owner_t (C++ enum)，794
RMT_MEM_OWNER_TX (C++ enumerator)，794
rmt_memory_rw_rst (C++ function)，790
RMT_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator)，794
RMT_MODE_RX (C++ enumerator)，794
rmt_mode_t (C++ enum)，794
rmt_rx_start (C++ function), 784
rmt_rx_stop (C++ function), 784
rmt_rx_start (C++ function), 784
rmt_rx_stop (C++ function), 784
rmt_write_items (C++ function), 789
rmt_write_sample (C++ function), 790
ROLE_FAST_PROV (C++ enumerator), 354
ROLE_NODE (C++ enumerator), 354
ROLE_PROVISIONER (C++ enumerator), 354
rtc_gpio_deinit (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_force_hold_all (C++ function), 692
rtc_gpio_force_hold_dis_all (C++ function), 692
rtc_gpio_get_drive_capability (C++ function), 691
rtc_gpio_hold_dis (C++ function), 691
rtc_gpio_hold_en (C++ function), 691
tc_gpio_init (C++ function), 689
RTC_GPIO_IS_VALID_GPIO (C++ member), 692
rtc_gpio_is_valid_gpio (C++ function), 689
RTC_GPIO_MODE_DISABLED (C++ enumerator), 693
RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_ONLY (C++ enumerator), 692
RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT (C++ enumerator), 693
RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT_OD (C++ enumerator), 693
RTC_GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_OD (C++ enumerator), 693
RTC_GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_ONLY (C++ enumerator), 692
rtc_gpio_mode_t (C++ enum), 692
rtc_gpio_pulldown_dis (C++ function), 691
rtc_gpio_pulldown_en (C++ function), 690
rtc_gpio_pullup_dis (C++ function), 690
rtc_gpio_pullup_en (C++ function), 690
rtc_gpio_set_direction (C++ function), 690
rtc_gpio_set_direction_in_sleep (C++ function), 690
rtc_gpio_set_drive_capability (C++ function), 691
rtc_gpio_set_level (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_set_mode (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_set_output (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_set_output_level (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_set_private (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_set_private_cpu (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_set_private_user (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_set_pull (C++ function), 689
rtc_gpio_set_state (C++ function), 689
RTC_SLOW_MEM (C++ member), 1982
sample_to_rmt_t (C++ type), 793
SC_EVENT_FOUND_CHANNEL (C++ enumerator), 558
SC_EVENT_GET_SSID_PSWD (C++ enumerator), 558
SC_EVENT_SCAN_DONE (C++ enumerator), 558
sdmmc_cid_t::oem_id (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_cid_t::revision (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_cid_t::serial (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_command_t (C++ class), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::arg (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::blklen (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::data (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::datalen (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::error (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::flags (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::opcode (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::response (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_command_t::timeout_ms (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_csd_t (C++ class), 1127
sdmmc_csd_t::card_command_class (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_csd_t::card_speed (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_csd_t::csd_ver (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_csd_t::csd_vers (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_csd_t::read_block_len (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_csd_t::sector_size (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_ext_csd_t (C++ class), 1127
sdmmc_ext_csd_t::power_class (C++ member), 1128
SDMMC_FREQ_26M (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_FREQ_52M (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_FREQ_DEFAULT (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_FREQ_HIGH SPEED (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_FREQ_PROBING (C 宏), 1130
sdmmc_get_status (C++ function), 1123
SDMMC_HOST_DEFAULT (C 宏), 803
sdmmc_host_deinit (C++ function), 802
sdmmc_host_do_transaction (C++ function), 801
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_1BIT (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_4BIT (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_8BIT (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_DDR (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_DEFINIT_ARG (C 宏), 1130
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_SPI (C 宏), 1130
sdmmc_host_get_slot_width (C++ function), 801
sdmmc_host_init (C++ function), 800
sdmmc_host_deinit_slot (C++ function), 800
sdmmc_host_io_int_enable (C++ function), 800
sdmmc_host_io_int_wait (C++ function), 802
sdmmc_host_outpup_en (C++ function), 802
sdmmc_host_set_bus_ddr_mode (C++ function), 801
sdmmc_host_set_bus_width (C++ function), 801
sdmmc_host_set_card_clk (C++ function), 801
SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0 (C 宏), 803
SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_1 (C 宏), 803
sdmmc_host_t (C++ class), 1128
sdmmc_host_t::command_timeout_ms (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::deinit (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::deinit_p (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::do_transaction (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::flags (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_host_t::get_bus_width (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::init (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::io_int_enable (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::io_int_wait (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::io_voltage (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_host_t::max_freq_khz (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_host_t::set_bus_ddr_mode (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::set_bus_width (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::set_card_clk (C++ member), 1129
sdmmc_host_t::set_card_slot (C++ member), 1128
sdmmc_io_enable_int (C++ function), 1125
sdmmc_io_get_csd_data (C++ function), 1126
sdmmc_io_get_csd_info (C++ function), 1126
sdmmc_io_read_blocks (C++ function), 1125
sdmmc_io_read_byte (C++ function), 1124
sdmmc_io_read_bytes (C++ function), 1124
sdmmc_io_write_blocks (C++ function), 1125
sdmmc_io_write_byte (C++ function), 1124
sdmmc_io_write_bytes (C++ function), 1125
sdmmc_read_sectors (C++ function), 1124
sdmmc_response_t (C++ type), 1130
sdmmc_scr_t (C++ class), 1127
sdmmc_scr_t::bus_width (C++ member), 1127
sdmmc_scr_t::ed_player (C++ member), 1128
SDMMC_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C 宏), 803
sdmmc_slot_config_t (C++ class), 802
sdmmc_slot_config_t::cmd (C++ member), 803
sdmmc_slot_config_t::flags (C++ member), 803
sdmmc_slot_config_t::width (C++ member), 803

Espressif Systems 2237
Submit Document Feedback
Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function/Member</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SemaphoreHandle_t (C++ member)</td>
<td>819</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semBINARY_SEMAPHORE_QUEUE_LENGTH (C member)</td>
<td>820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semGIVE_BLOCK_TIME (C member)</td>
<td>820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semSEMAPHORE_QUEUE_ITEM_LENGTH (C member)</td>
<td>820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shared_stack_function (C++ type)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown_handler_t (C++ type)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_0 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_1 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_2 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_3 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_4 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_5 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_6 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_7 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_MAX (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_channel_t (C++ enum)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_config (C++ function)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_config_t (C++ class)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_config_t::channel (C++ member)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_config_t::sigmadelta_duty (C++ member)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_config_t::sigmadelta_GPIO (C++ member)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_config_t::sigmadelta_prescale (C++ member)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_PORT_0 (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMADELTA_PORT_MAX (C++ enumerator)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_port_t (C++ enum)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_set_duty (C++ function)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_set_pin (C++ function)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmadelta_set_prescale (C++ function)</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slave_transaction_cb_t (C++ type)</td>
<td>847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t (C++ class)</td>
<td>557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::bssid (C++ member)</td>
<td>557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::bssid_set (C++ member)</td>
<td>557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::cellphone_ip (C++ member)</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::password (C++ member)</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::ssid (C++ member)</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::token (C++ member)</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::type (C++ member)</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_event_t (C++ enum)</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARTCONFIG_START_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C member)</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_start_config_t (C++ class)</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smartconfig_start_config_t::enable_log</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
smartconfig_start_config_t::esp_touch_v2_enable_crypt (C++ member), 831
smartconfig_start_config_t::esp_touch_v2_key (C++ member), 831
smartconfig_type_t (C++ enum), 558
spi_bus_config_t::miso_io_num (C++ member), 831
spi_bus_config_t::quadhd_io_num (C++ member), 831
spi_bus_config_t::quadwp_io_num (C++ member), 831
spi_bus_config_t::sclk_io_num (C++ member), 831
spi_bus_free (C++ function), 830
spi_bus_initialize (C++ function), 830
spi_bus_remove_device (C++ function), 833
spi_bus_remove_flash_device (C++ function), 1137
spi_cal_clock (C++ function), 836
spi_common_dma_t (C++ enum), 833
SPI_DEVICE_3WIRE (C宏), 839
spi_device_acquire_bus (C++ function), 835
SPI_DEVICE_BIT_LSBFIRST (C宏), 839
SPI_DEVICE_CLK_AS_CS (C宏), 839
SPI_DEVICE_DDRCLK (C宏), 839
SPI_DEVICE_GET_TRANS_RESULT (C++ function), 834
SPI_DEVICE_HALF DupLEX (C宏), 839
spi_device_handle_t (C++ type), 840
spi_device_interface_config_t (C++ class), 836
spi_device_interface_config_t::address_bits (C++ member), 836
spi_device_interface_config_t::clock_speed_hz (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::command_bits (C++ member), 836
spi_device_interface_config_t::cs_ena_posttrans (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::cs_ena_pretrans (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::dummy_bits (C++ member), 836
spi_device_interface_config_t::duty_cycle_pos (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::flags (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::input_delay_ns (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::mode (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::post_cb (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::pre_cb (C++ member), 837
spi_device_interface_config_t::queue_size (C++ member), 837
SPI_DEVICE_NO_DUMMY (C宏), 839
spi_device_polling_end (C++ function), 835
spi_device_polling_start (C++ function), 834
spi_slave_interface_config_t::mode (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_interface_config_t::post_setup_cb (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_interface_config_t::post_trans_cb (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_interface_config_t::queue_size (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_interface_config_t::spics_io_num (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_queue_trans (C++ function), 845
SPI_SLAVE_RXBIT_LSBFIRST (C宏), 847
spi_slave_transaction_t::C++ class), 846
spi_slave_transaction_t::C++ type), 847
spi_slave_transaction_t::length (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_transaction_t::rx_buffer (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_transaction_t::trans_len (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_transaction_t::tx_buffer (C++ member), 846
spi_slave_transaction_t::user (C++ member), 847
spi_slave_transmit (C++ function), 845
SPI_SLAVE_TXBIT_LSBFIRST (C宏), 847
SPI_SWAP_DATA_RX (C宏), 832
SPI_SWAP_DATA_TX (C宏), 832
SPI_TRANS_CS_KEEP_ACTIVE (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_MODE_CREATE_NON_CACHED (C宏), 839
SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIO (C宏), 839
SPI_TRANS_MODE_QIO (C宏), 839
SPI_TRANS_MODE_TST (C宏), 839
SPI_TRANS_MULTILINE_ADDR (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_MULTILINE_CMD (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA (C宏), 839
SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA (C宏), 839
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_DUMMY (C宏), 840
spi_transaction_ext_t::C++ class), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::address_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::base (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::command_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::dummy_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::C++ class), 837
spi_transaction_t::addr (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::cmd (C++ member), 837
spi_transaction_t::flags (C++ member), 837
spi_transaction_t::length (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::rx_buffer (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_DUMMY (C宏), 840
spi_transaction_ext_t::address_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::base (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::command_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::dummy_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::C++ class), 837
spi_transaction_t::addr (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::cmd (C++ member), 837
spi_transaction_t::flags (C++ member), 837
spi_transaction_t::length (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::rx_buffer (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD (C宏), 840
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_DUMMY (C宏), 840
spi_transaction_ext_t::address_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::base (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::command_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_ext_t::dummy_bits (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::C++ class), 837
spi_transaction_t::addr (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::cmd (C++ member), 837
spi_transaction_t::flags (C++ member), 837
spi_transaction_t::length (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::rx_buffer (C++ member), 838

Espressif Systems
Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
spi_transaction_t::rx_data (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::rxlength (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::tx_buffer (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::tx_data (C++ member), 838
spi_transaction_t::user (C++ member), 838
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_DUAL (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_GPIO_PINS (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_T04_I07 (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_TOMUX_PINS (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MASTER (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MISO (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MOSI (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_NATIVE_PINS (C宏), 833
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_OCTAL (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_SCLK (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_SLAVE (C宏), 832
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_WPHD (C宏), 832
StaticRingbuffer_t (C++ type), 1349
StreamBufferHandle_t (C++ type), 1327
SYSTEM_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS (C++ enumerator), 1231
system_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t (C++ type), 1230
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECEIVED (C++ enumerator), 1231
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STA_GOT_IP6 (C宏), 1229
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STA_CONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 1231
system_event_ap_staconnected_t (C++ type), 1230
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STA_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 1231
system_event_ap_stadisconnected_t (C++ type), 1230
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STA_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 1231
system_event_ap stableipassigned_t (C++ type), 1230
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STA_CONNECTED (C++ type), 1230
system_event_ap_authmode_change (C++ member), 1229
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_AUTHORITY_CHANGE (C++ type), 1231
system_event_handler_t (C++ type), 1230
system_event_stabssuccess_t (C++ type), 1230
system_event_ftm_report_t (C++ type), 1230
SYSTEM_EVENT_FTZ_REPORT (C++ enumerator), 1231
system_event_ftm_report_t (C++ type), 1230
system_event_ftm_report_t (C++ type), 1230
system_event_ftm_report_t (C++ type), 1230
system_event_id_t (C++ enum), 1230
system_event_info_t (C++ union), 1228
system_event_info_t::ap_proberereceived (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::ap_stalassigned (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::auth_change (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::connected (C++ member), 1228
system_event_info_t::disconnected (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::ftm_report (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::got_ip (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::got_ip6 (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::scan_done (C++ member), 1228
system_event_info_t::sta_connected (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::sta_connected (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::sta_disconnected (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::sta_er_fail_reason (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::sta_er_pin (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::sta_er_success (C++ member), 1229
system_event_info_t::sta_er_sucess (C++ member), 1229
SYSTEM_EVENT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 1232
SYSTEM_EVENT_ROC_DONE (C++ enumerator), 1231
SYSTEM_EVENT_SCAN_DONE (C++ enumerator), 1231
system_event_staauthmode_change (C++ type), 1229
system_event_staauthmode_change_t (C++ type), 1229
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW (C++ enumerator), 1231
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW (C++ type), 1231
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 1230
system_event_sta_connected_t (C++ type), 1229
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED (C++ type), 1229
system_event_sta_disconnected_t (C++ type), 1229
Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback
Espressif Systems

Submit Document Feedback
touch_pad_set_trigger_mode (C++ function), 852
touch_pad_set_trigger_source (C++ function), 852
touch_pad_set_voltage (C++ function), 855
TOUCH_PAD_SLEEP_CYCLE_DEFAULT (C宏), 858
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_0 (C++ enumerator), 860
touch_pad_slop_1 (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_2 (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_3 (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_4 (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_5 (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_6 (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_7 (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_DEFAULT (C宏), 858
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 860
touch_pad_sw_start (C++ function), 852
touch_pad_t (C++ enum), 858
TOUCH_PAD_THRESHOLD_MAX (C宏), 858
TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_DEFAULT (C宏), 858
TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_HIGH (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_LOW (C++ enumerator), 860
touch_tie_opt_t (C++ enum), 860
TOUCH_TRIGGER_ABOVE (C++ enumerator), 860
TOUCH_TRIGGER BELOW (C++ enumerator), 860
touch_trigger_max (C++ enum), 860
TOUCH_TRIGGER_MODE_DEFAULT (C宏), 858
touch_trigger_mode_t (C++ enum), 860
TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_BOTH (C++ enumerator), 861
TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_DEFAULT (C宏), 858
touch_trigger_source_max (C++ enumerator), 861
TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_SET1 (C++ enumerator), 861
touch_trigger_src_t (C++ enum), 861
touch_volt_atten_t (C++ enum), 859
transaction_cb_t (C++ type), 840
tskDEFAULT_INDEX_TO_NOTIFY (C宏), 1260
tskIDLE_PRIORITY (C宏), 1260
tskKERNEL_VERSION_BUILD (C宏), 1260
tskKERNEL_VERSION_MAJOR (C宏), 1260
tskKERNEL_VERSION_MINOR (C宏), 1260
tskKERNEL_VERSION_NUMBER (C宏), 1260
tskMPU_REGION_DEVICE_MEMORY (C宏), 1260
tskMPU_REGION_EXECUTE_NEVER (C宏), 1260
tskMPU_REGION_NORMAL_MEMORY (C宏), 1260
tskMPU_REGION_READ_ONLY (C宏), 1260
tskMPU_REGION_READ_WRITE (C宏), 1260
tskNO_AFFINITY (C宏), 1260
twai_clear_receive_queue (C++ function), 874
twai_clear_transmit_queue (C++ function), 874
twai_driver_install (C++ function), 872
twai_driver_uninstall (C++ function), 872
TWAI_ERR_PASS_THRESH (C 宏), 871
TWAI_EXTD_ID_MASK (C 宏), 871
twai_filter_config_t (C++ class), 871
twai_filter_config_t::acceptance_code (C++ member), 871
twai_filter_config_t::acceptance_mask (C++ member), 871
twai_filter_config_t::single_filter (C++ member), 871
twai_frame_extd_id_len_bytes (C 宏), 871
TWAI_FRAME_MAX_DLC (C 宏), 871
TWAI_FRAME_STD_ID_LEN_BYTES (C 宏), 871
twai_general_config_t (C++ class), 874
twai_general_config_t::alerts_enabled (C++ member), 875
twai_general_config_t::bus_off_io (C++ member), 875
twai_general_config_t::clkout_divider (C++ member), 875
twai_general_config_t::clkout_io (C++ member), 875
twai_general_config_t::intr_flags (C++ member), 875
twai_general_config_t::mode (C++ member), 875
twai_general_config_t::rx_io (C++ member), 875
twai_general_config_t::rx_queue_len (C++ member), 875
twai_general_config_t::tx_queue_len (C++ member), 875
twai_get_status_info (C++ function), 874
twai_initiate_recovery (C++ function), 874
TWAI_IO_UNUSED (C 宏), 876
twai_message_t (C++ class), 870
twai_message_t::data (C++ member), 870
twai_message_t::data_length_code (C++ member), 870
twai_message_t::dlc_non_comp (C++ member), 870
twai_message_t::extd (C++ member), 870
twai_message_t::flags (C++ member), 870
twai_message_t::identifier (C++ member), 870
uwai_message_t::reserved (C++ member), 870
uwai_message_t::rtr (C++ member), 870
twai_message_t::self (C++ member), 870
twai_message_t::ss (C++ member), 870
TWAI_MODE_LISTEN_ONLY (C++ enumerator), 872
TWAI_MODE_NO_ACK (C++ enumerator), 871
TWAI_MODE_NORMAL (C++ enumerator), 871
twai_mode_t (C++ enum), 871
twai_read_alerts (C++ function), 873
twai_receive (C++ function), 873
twai_reconfigure_alerts (C++ function), 874
twai_start (C++ function), 872
TWAI_STATE_BUS_OFF (C++ enumerator), 876
TWAI_STATE_RECOVERING (C++ enumerator), 876
TWAI_STATE_RUNNING (C++ enumerator), 876
TWAI_STATE_STOPPED (C++ enumerator), 876
twai_state_t (C++ enum), 876
twai_status_info_t (C++ class), 875
twai_status_info_t::arb_lost_count (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::bus_error_count (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::msgs_to_rx (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::msgs_to_tx (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::rx_error_counter (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::rx_missed_count (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::rx_overrun_count (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::state (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::tx_error_counter (C++ member), 875
twai_status_info_t::tx_failed_count (C++ member), 875
TWAI_STD_ID_MASK (C 宏), 871
twai_stop (C++ function), 872
twai_timing_config_t (C++ class), 870
twai_timing_config_t::brp (C++ member), 871
twai_timing_config_t::sjw (C++ member), 871
twai_timing_config_t::tsseg_1 (C++ member), 871
twai_timing_config_t::tsseg_2 (C++ member), 871
twai_transmit (C++ function), 873

U
uart_at_cmd_t (C++ class), 894
uart_at_cmd_t::char_num (C++ member), 894
uart_at_cmd_t::cmd_char (C++ member), 894
uart_at_cmd_t::gap_tout (C++ member), 894
uart_at_cmd_t::post_idle (C++ member), 894
uart_at_cmd_t::pre_idle (C++ member), 894
UART_BITRATE_MAX (C 宏), 893
UART_BREAK (C++ enumerator), 894
UART_BUFFER_FULL (C++ enumerator), 894
uart_clear_intr_status (C++ function), 885
uart_config_t (C++ class), 895
uart_config_t::baud_rate (C++ member), 895

Espressif Systems 2246 Submit Document Feedback

Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
uart_config_t::data_bits (C++ member), 895
uart_config_t::flow_ctrl (C++ member), 895
uart_config_t::parity (C++ member), 895
uart_config_t::rx_flow_ctrl_thresh (C++ member), 895
uart_config_t::source_clk (C++ member), 895
uart_config_t::stop_bits (C++ member), 895
uart_config_t::use_ref_tick (C++ member), 895

UARTCTS_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UARTCTS_GPIO6_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UARTCTS_GPIO8_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 899
UARTDATA (C++枚举), 894
UARTDATA_5_BITS (C++枚举), 896
UARTDATA_6_BITS (C++枚举), 896
UARTDATA_7_BITS (C++枚举), 896
UARTDATA_8_BITS (C++枚举), 896
UARTDATA_BITS_MAX (C++枚举), 896
UARTDATA_BREAK (C++枚举), 894
uart_disable_intr_mask (C++函数), 885
uart_disable_pattern_det_intr (C++函数), 889
uart_disable_rx_intr (C++函数), 885
uart_disable_tx_intr (C++函数), 885
uart_driver_delete (C++函数), 882
uart_driver_install (C++函数), 882
uart_enable_intr_mask (C++函数), 885
uart_enable_pattern_det_baud_intr (C++函数), 889
uart_enable_pattern_det_intr (C++函数), 889
uart_enable_rx_intr (C++函数), 885
uart_enable_tx_intr (C++函数), 885
UARTEVENT_MAX (C++枚举), 894
uart_event_t (C++枚组), 893
uart_event_t::size (C++枚组), 893
uart_event_t::timeout_flag (C++枚组), 893
uart_event_t::type (C++枚组), 893
uart_event_type_t (C++枚组), 894
UART_FIFO_LEN (C宏), 893
UART_FIFO_OVF (C++枚组), 894
uart_flush (C++函数), 888
uart_flush_input (C++函数), 889
UART_FRAME_ERR (C++枚组), 894
uart_get_baudrate (C++函数), 884
uart_get_baudrate (C++函数), 884
uart_get_buffered_data_len (C++函数), 889
uart_get_collision_flag (C++函数), 891
uart_get_flow_ctrl (C++函数), 884
uart_get_parity (C++函数), 883
uart_get_stop_bits (C++函数), 883
uart_get_wakeup_threshold (C++函数), 892
uart_get_word_length (C++函数), 883
UART_GPIO10_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO11_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO17_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO1_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO6_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO8_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
UART_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C宏), 898
uart_hw_flowcontrol_t (C++枚组), 896
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS (C++枚组), 896
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS_RTS (C++枚组), 897
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_DISABLE (C++枚组), 896
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_MAX (C++枚组), 897
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_RTS (C++枚组), 896
uart_intr_config (C++函数), 887
uart_intr_config_t (C++枚组), 893
uart_intr_config_t::intr_enable_mask (C++枚组), 893
uart_intr_config_t::intr_timeout_mask (C++枚组), 893
uart_intr_config_t::intr_timeout_mask (C++枚组), 893
uart_intr_config_t::rxfifo_full_thresh (C++枚组), 893
uart_intr_config_t::txfifo_empty_intr_thresh (C++枚组), 893
uart_isr_free (C++函数), 886
uart_isr_handle_t (C++型), 894
uart_isr_register (C++函数), 886
UART_MODE_IRDA (C++枚组), 896
UART_MODE_RS485_APP_CTRL (C++枚组), 896
UART_MODE_RS485_COLLISION_DETECT (C++枚组), 896
UART_MODE_RS485_HALF_DUPLEX (C++枚组), 895
uart_mode_t (C++枚组), 895
UART_MODE_UART (C++枚组), 895
UART_NUM_0 (C宏), 893
UART_NUM_0_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C宏), 898
UART_NUM_0CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C宏), 898
UART_NUM_0CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C宏), 898
UART_NUM_1 (C宏), 893
UART_NUM_1_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C宏), 898
uart_set_rx_timeout (C++ function), 891
uart_set_rts (C++ function), 891
uart_set_pin (C++ function), 891
uart_set_mode (C++ function), 891
uart_set_line_inverse (C++ function), 891
uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 891
uart_set_baudrate (C++ function), 884
uart_set_dtr (C++ function), 884
uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 884
uart_set_line_inverse (C++ function), 884
uart_set_loop_back (C++ function), 892
uart_set_modem (C++ function), 890
uart_set_parity (C++ function), 883
uart_set_pin (C++ function), 886
uart_set_rts (C++ function), 886
uart_set_rx_full_threshold (C++ function), 891
uart_set_rx_timeout (C++ function), 891
uart_set_stop_bits (C++ function), 883
uart_set_sw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 884
uart_set_tx_empty_threshold (C++ function), 891
uart_set_tx_idle_num (C++ function), 887
uart_set_wakeup_threshold (C++ function), 891
uart_set_word_length (C++ function), 887
UART_SIGNAL_CTS_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_DSR_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_DTR_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_INV_DISABLE (C++ enumerator), 897
uart_signal_inv_t (C++ enum), 897
UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_RX_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_TX_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_RTS_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_RXD_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_TXD_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_NUM_1_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_1_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_2_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_2_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_2_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_MAX (C 宏), 893
uart_param_config (C++ function), 887
UART_PARITY_DISABLE (C++ enumerator), 896
UART_PARITY_ERR (C++ enumerator), 894
UART_PARITY_EVEN (C++ enumerator), 896
UART_PARITY_ODD (C++ enumerator), 896
UART_PARITY_t (C++ enum), 896
UART_PATTERN_DET (C++ enumerator), 894
uart_pattern_get_pos (C++ function), 890
uart_pattern_pop_pos (C++ function), 890
uart_pattern_queue_reset (C++ function), 890
UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE (C 宏), 893
uart_port_t (C++ type), 895
uart_read_bytes (C++ function), 888
UART_RXD_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 898
UART_RXD_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 898
UART_RXD_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 899
UART_RXD_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 899
UART_RXD_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 898
UART_RXD_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 898
UART_SCLK_APB (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SCLK_REF_TICK (C++ enumerator), 897
uart_sclk_t (C++ enum), 897
uart_set_always_rx_timeout (C++ function), 892
uart_set_baudrate (C++ function), 884
uart_set_dtr (C++ function), 884
uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 884
uart_set_line_inverse (C++ function), 884
uart_set_loop_back (C++ function), 892
uart_set_modem (C++ function), 890
uart_set_parity (C++ function), 883
uart_set_pin (C++ function), 886
uart_set_rts (C++ function), 886
uart_set_rx_full_threshold (C++ function), 891
uart_set_rx_timeout (C++ function), 891
uart_set_stop_bits (C++ function), 883
uart_set_sw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 884
uart_set_tx_empty_threshold (C++ function), 891
uart_set_tx_idle_num (C++ function), 887
uart_set_wakeup_threshold (C++ function), 891
uart_set_word_length (C++ function), 887
UART_SIGNAL_CTS_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_DSR_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_DTR_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_INV_DISABLE (C++ enumerator), 897
uart_signal_inv_t (C++ enum), 897
UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_RX_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_TX_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_RTS_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_RXD_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SIGNAL_TXD_INV (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_NUM_1_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_1_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_2_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_2_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_2_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C 宏), 898
UART_NUM_MAX (C 宏), 893
uart_param_config (C++ function), 887
UART_PARITY_DISABLE (C++ enumerator), 896
UART_PARITY_ERR (C++ enumerator), 894
UART_PARITY_EVEN (C++ enumerator), 896
UART_PARITY_ODD (C++ enumerator), 896
UART_PARITY_t (C++ enum), 896
UART_PATTERN_DET (C++ enumerator), 894
uart_pattern_get_pos (C++ function), 890
uart_pattern_pop_pos (C++ function), 890
uart_pattern_queue_reset (C++ function), 890
UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE (C 宏), 893
uart_port_t (C++ type), 895
uart_read_bytes (C++ function), 888
UART_RXD_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 898
UART_RXD_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 898
UART_RXD_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 899
UART_RXD_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 899
UART_RXD_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 898
UART_RXD_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C 宏), 898
UART_SCLK_APB (C++ enumerator), 897
UART_SCLK_REF_TICK (C++ enumerator), 897
uart_sclk_t (C++ enum), 897
uart_set_always_rx_timeout (C++ function), 892
uart_set_baudrate (C++ function), 884
uart_set_dtr (C++ function), 884
uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 884
uart_set_line_inverse (C++ function), 884
uart_set_loop_back (C++ function), 892
uart_set_modem (C++ function), 890
uart_set_parity (C++ function), 883
uart_set_pin (C++ function), 886
uart_set_rts (C++ function), 886
uart_set_rx_full_threshold (C++ function), 891
uart_set_rx_timeout (C++ function), 891
uart_set_stop_bits (C++ function), 883

Espressif Systems 2248 Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36
Submit Document Feedback
ulTaskGenericNotifyValueClear (C++ function), 1258
ulTaskGetIdleRunTimeCounter (C++ function), 1252
ulTaskNotifyTake (C 宏), 1263
ulTaskNotifyTakeIndexed (C 宏), 1263
ulTaskNotifyValueClear (C 宏), 1263
ulTaskNotifyValueClearIndexed (C 宏), 1263
uxQueueMessagesWaiting (C++ function), 1267
uxQueueMessagesWaitingFromISR (C++ function), 1270
uxSemaphoreGetCount (C 宏), 1294
uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks (C++ function), 1247
uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark (C++ function), 1247
uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2 (C++ function), 1247
uxTaskGetSystemState (C++ function), 1249
uxTaskPriorityGet (C++ function), 1240
uxTaskPriorityGetFromISR (C++ function), 1241
uxTimerGetReloadMode (C++ function), 1302

V
vApplicationGetIdleTaskMemory (C++ function), 1249
vApplicationGetTimerTaskMemory (C++ function), 1302
vendor_ie_data_t (C++ class), 539
vendor_ie_data_t::element_id (C++ member), 539
vendor_ie_data_t::length (C++ member), 539
vendor_ie_data_t::payload (C++ member), 539
vendor_ie_data_t::vendor_oui (C++ member), 539
vendor_ie_data_t::vendor_oui_type (C++ member), 539
vEventGroupDelete (C++ function), 1318
vMessageBufferDelete (C 宏), 1333
vprintf_like_t (C++ type), 1398
vQueueAddToRegistry (C++ function), 1270
vQueueDelete (C++ function), 1267
vQueueUnregisterQueue (C++ function), 1270
vRingbufferDelete (C++ function), 1347
vRingbufferGetInfo (C++ function), 1348
vRingbufferReturnItem (C++ function), 1347
vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR (C++ function), 1347
vSemaphoreCreateBinary (C 宏), 1282
vSemaphoreDelete (C 宏), 1294
vStreamBufferDelete (C++ function), 1324
vTaskAllocateMPURegions (C++ function), 1236
vTaskDelay (C++ function), 1239
vTaskDelayUntil (C 宏), 1261
vTaskDelete (C++ function), 1238
vTaskEndScheduler (C++ function), 1245
vTaskGenericScheduler (C++ function), 1256
vTaskGetFromISR (C++ function), 1241
vTaskGetRunTimeStats (C++ function), 1251
vTaskList (C++ function), 1251
vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR (C 宏), 1262
vTaskNotifyGiveIndexedFromISR (C 宏), 1262
vTaskPrioritySet (C++ function), 1242
vTaskResume (C++ function), 1243
vTaskSetApplicationTaskTag (C++ function), 1248
vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer (C++ function), 1248
vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback (C++ function), 1249
vTaskSetTimeOutState (C++ function), 1259
vTaskStartScheduler (C++ function), 1244
vTaskSuspend (C++ function), 1243
vTaskSuspendAll (C++ function), 1245
vTimerSetReloadMode (C++ function), 1301
vTimerSetTimerID (C++ function), 1299

W
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ANY (C++ enumerator), 970
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CLOSED (C++ enumerator), 971
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 971
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DATA (C++ enumerator), 971
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 971
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 970
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 971
WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL (C++ enumerator), 971
WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP (C++ enumerator), 971
WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 971
wifi_action_rx_cb_t (C++ type), 548
wifi_action_tx_req_t (C++ class), 543
wifi_action_tx_req_t::data (C++ member), 543
wifi_action_tx_req_t::data_len (C++ member), 543
wifi_action_tx_req_t::dest_mac (C++ member), 543
wifi_action_tx_req_t::ifx (C++ member), 543
wifi_action_tx_req_t::no_ack (C++ member), 543
wifi_action_tx_req_t::rx_cb (C++ member), 543
wifi_active_scan_time_t (C++ class), 535
wifi_active_scan_time_t::max (C++ member), 535
wifi_active_scan_time_t::min (C++ member), 535
WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN (C++ enumerator), 551
WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED (C++ member), 533
WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED (C++ member), 533
WIFI_AMSDU_TX_ENABLED (C++ member), 534
WIFI_ANT_ANT0 (C++ enumerator), 551
WIFI_ANT_ANT1 (C++ enumerator), 551
wifi_ant_config_t::tx_ant_mode (C++ class), 542
wifi_ant_config_t::enabled_ant0 (C++ member), 542
wifi_ant_config_t::enabled_ant1 (C++ member), 543
wifi_ant_config_t::rx_ant_default (C++ member), 542
wifi_ant_config_t::rx_ant_mode (C++ member), 542
wifi_ant_config_t::tx_ant_mode (C++ member), 542
wifi_ant_gpio_config_t (C++ class), 542
wifi_ant_gpio_config_t::gpio_cfg (C++ member), 542
wifi_ant_gpio_t (C++ class), 542
wifi_ant_gpio_t::gpio_num (C++ member), 542
wifi_ant_gpio_t::gpio_select (C++ member), 542
WIFI_ANT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 551
WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0 (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1 (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_ANT_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 553
wifi_ant_mode_t (C++ enum), 552
wifi_ant_t (C++ enum), 551
wifi_ap_config_t (C++ class), 537
wifi_ap_config_t::authmode (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_config_t::beacon_interval (C++ member), 538
wifi_ap_config_t::channel (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_config_t::ftm_responder (C++ member), 538
wifi_ap_config_t::max_connection (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_config_t::pairwise_cipher (C++ member), 538
wifi_ap_config_t::password (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_config_t::ssid (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_config_t::ssid_hidden (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_config_t::ssid_len (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_record_t (C++ class), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::ant (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::authmode (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::bssid (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::country (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_record_t::ftm_initiator (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_record_t::ftm_responder (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_record_t::group_cipher (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::pairwise_cipher (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::phy_11b (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::phy_11g (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::phy_11n (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::phy_lr (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::primary (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::reserved (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_record_t::rssi (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::second (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::ssid (C++ member), 536
wifi_ap_record_t::wpa (C++ member), 537
wifi_ap_record_t::wps (C++ member), 537
WIFI_AUTH_MAX (C++ enumerator), 549
wifi_auth_mode_t (C++ enum), 549
WIFI_AUTH_OPEN (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_AUTH_WAPI_PSK (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_AUTH_WEP (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_ENTERPRISE (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_PSK (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_WPA3_PSK (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_AUTH_WPA3_PSK (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_BANDWIDTH_T (C++ enum), 552
WIFI_BW_HT20 (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_BW_HT40 (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_CACHE_TX_BUFFER_NUM (C++ member), 533
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_AES_GMAC128 (C++ enumerator), 551
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_AES_GMAC256 (C++ enumerator), 551
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_CCMP (C++ enumerator), 551
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_GCM (C++ enumerator), 551
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_GCM256 (C++ enumerator), 551
WIFI_IF_AP (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_IF_STA (C++ enumerator), 549
WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C 宏), 534
WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_MAGIC (C 宏), 534
wifi_init_config_t (C++ class), 531
wifi_init_config_t::ampdu_rx_enable (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::ampdu_tx_enable (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::amsdu_tx_enable (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::beacon_max_len (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::cache_tx_buf_num (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::csi_enable (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::dynamic_rx_buf_num (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::dynamic_tx_buf_num (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::event_handler (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::feature_caps (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::magic (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::mgmt_sbuf_num (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::nano_enable (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::nvs_enable (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::osi_funcs (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::rx_ba_win (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::sta_disconnected_pm (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::static_rx_buf_num (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::static_tx_buf_num (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::tx_buf_type (C++ member), 532
wifi_init_config_t::wifi_task_core_id (C++ member), 532
wifi_interface_t (C++ enum), 549
WIFI_MGMT_SBUF_NUM (C 宏), 534
WIFI_MODE_AP (C++ enumerator), 548
WIFI_MODE_APSТА (C++ enumerator), 548
WIFI_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 548
WIFI_MODE_NULL (C++ enumerator), 548
WIFI_MODE_STA (C++ enumerator), 548
wifi_mode_t (C++ enum), 548
WIFI_NANO_FORMAT_ENABLED (C 宏), 534
WIFI_NV_S_ENABLED (C 宏), 534
WIFI_OFFCHAN_TX_CANCEL (C 宏), 547
WIFI_OFFCHAN_TX_REQ (C 宏), 547
WIFI_PHY_RATE_11M_L (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_11M_S (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_12M (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_18M (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_1M_L (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_24M (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_2M_L (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_2M_S (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_36M (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_48M (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_54M (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_5M_L (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_5M_S (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_6M (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_9M (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_LORA_250K (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_LORA_500K (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS0_LGI (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS0_SGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS1_LGI (C++ enumerator), 553
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS1_SGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS2_LGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS2_SGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS3_LGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS3_SGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS4_LGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS4_SGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS5_LGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS5_SGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS6_LGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS6_SGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS7_LGI (C++ enumerator), 554
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS7_SGI (C++ enumerator), 554
wifi_phy_rate_t (C++ enum), 553
WIFI_PKT_CTRL (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_PKT_DATA (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_PKT_MGMT (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_PKT_MISC (C++ enumerator), 552
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t (C++ class), 539
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::required (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::pad0 (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::pad1 (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::pad2 (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::pad3 (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::pad4 (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::pad5 (C++ member), 541
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::pad6 (C++ member), 541
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::pad7 (C++ member), 541
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::aggregation (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::ampdu_cnt (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::ant (C++ member), 541
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::channel (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::cwb (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::fec_coding (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::mcs (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::noise_floor (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::not_sounding (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::rate (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::rssi (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::rx_state (C++ member), 541
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::secondary_channel (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::sgi (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::sig_len (C++ member), 541
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::sig_mode (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::smoothing (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::stbc (C++ member), 540
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::timestamp (C++ member), 540
wifi_pmf_config_t (C++ class), 537
wifi_pmf_config_t::capable (C++ member), 537
wifi_pmf_config_t::required (C++ member), 537
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_ACK (C Enum), 548
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_ALL (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_BA (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_BAR (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CFEND (C Enum), 548
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CFENDACK (C Enum), 548
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CTS (C Enum), 548
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_PSPOLL (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_MASK_RTS (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_MASK_WRAPPER (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_ALL (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_CTRL (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA_AMMPDU (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA_MPDU (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_FCSFAIL (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_MGMT (C Enum), 547
wifi_promiscuous_cb_t (C++ type), 534
wifi_promiscuous_filter_t (C++ class), 541
wifi_promiscuous_filter_t::filter_mask (C++ member), 541
wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t (C++ class), 541
wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t::payload (C++ member), 541
wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t::rx_ctrl (C++ member), 541
wifi_promiscuous_pkt_type_t (C++ enum), 552
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11G (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N (C Enum), 547
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N (C Enum), 547
wifi_prov_cb_event_t (C++ enum), 1085
wifi_prov_config_handler (C++ function), 1087
wifi_prov_config_get_data_t (C++ class), 1088
wifi_prov_config_get_data_t::conn_info (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_get_data_t::fail_reason (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_get_data_t::wifi_state (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_handlers (C++ class), 1083
wifi_prov_config_handlers::apply_config_handler (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_handlers::ctx (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_handlers::get_status (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_handlers::set_config (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_handlers_t (C++ type), 1089
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t (C++ class), 1088
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t::bssid (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t::channel (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t::password (C++ member), 1088
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t::ssid (C++ member), 1088
WIFI_PROV_CRED_FAIL (C++ enumerator), 1085
WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV (C++ enumerator), 1085
WIFI_PROV_CRED_SUCCESS (C++ enumerator), 1085
wifi_prov_ctx_t (C++ type), 1089
wifi_prov_event_handler_t (C++ class), 1088
wifi_prov_event_handler_t::event_cb (C++ member), 1084
wifi_prov_event_handler_t::user_data (C++ member), 1084
WIFI_PROV_END (C++ enumerator), 1085
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t (C++ class), 1084
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t::app_event_handler (C++ member), 1085
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t::scheme (C++ member), 1084
wifiProvManagerGetWiFiState (C++ function), 1082
wifiProvManagerGetWiFiState (C++ function), 1079
wifiProvManagerInit (C++ function), 1079
wifiProvManagerIsProvisioned (C++ function), 1079
wifi_mgr_start_provisioning (C++ function), 1080
wifi_mgr_stop_provisioning (C++ function), 1080
wifi_mgr_wait (C++ function), 1081
wifi_prov_scheme (C++ class), 1084
wifi_prov_scheme::delete_config (C++ member), 1084
wifi_prov_scheme::new_config (C++ member), 1084
wifi_prov_scheme::prov_start (C++ member), 1084
wifi_prov_scheme::prov_stop (C++ member), 1084
wifi_prov_scheme::set_config_endpoint (C++ member), 1084
wifi_prov_scheme::set_config_service (C++ member), 1084
wifi_prov_scheme::wifi_mode (C++ member), 1084
wifi_prov_scheme::ble_event_cb_free_ble (C++ function), 1085
wifi_prov_scheme::ble_event_cb_free_bt (C++ function), 1085
wifi_prov_scheme::ble_event_cb_free_btdm (C++ function), 1086
wifi_prov_scheme::ble_event_handler_free_ble (C++ function), 1086
wifi_prov_scheme::ble_event_handler_free_btdm (C++ function), 1087
wifi_prov_scheme::ble_event_handler_free_bt (C++ function), 1087
wifi_prov_scheme::ble_set_mfg_data (C++ function), 1086
wifi_prov_scheme::ble_set_service_uuid (C++ function), 1086
wifi_prov_scheme::softap_set_httpd_handle (C++ function), 1087
wifi_prov_scheme_t (C++ type), 1085
wifiProvSecurity (C++ enum), 1086
WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_0 (C++ enumerator), 1086
WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_1 (C++ enumerator), 1086
wifiProvSecurity_t (C++ type), 1085
wifiProvSecurity_t (C++ type), 1089
WIFI_PROV_STA_AP_NOT_FOUND (C++ enumerator), 1089
WIFI_PROV_STA_AUTH_ERROR (C++ enumerator),
535
WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_ACTIVE (C++ enumerator), 550
WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_PASSIVE (C++ enumerator), 550
wifi_scan_type_t (C++ enum), 550
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_ABove (C++ enumerator), 550
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_BELOW (C++ enumerator), 550
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_NONE (C++ enumerator), 550
wifi_second_chan_t (C++ enum), 550
WIFI_SOFTAP_BEACON_MAX_LEN (C宏), 534
wifi_sort_method_t (C++ enum), 551
wifi_sta_config_t (C++ class), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::bssid (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::bssid_set (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::channel (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::listen_interval (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::mbo_enabled (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::password (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::pmf_cfg (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::reserved (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::rm_enabled (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::scan_method (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::sort_method (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::ssid (C++ member), 538
wifi_sta_config_t::threshold (C++ member), 538
WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLED (C宏), 534
wifi_sta_info_t (C++ class), 539
wifi_sta_info_t::is_mesh_child (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_info_t::mac (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_info_t::phy_11b (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_info_t::phy_11g (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_info_t::phy_11n (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_info_t::phy_lr (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_info_t::reserved (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_info_t::rssi (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_list_t (C++ class), 539
wifi_sta_list_t::num (C++ member), 539
wifi_sta_list_t::sta (C++ member), 539
WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM (C宏), 533
WIFI_STATIS_ALL (C宏), 548
WIFI_STATIS_BUFFER (C宏), 548
WIFI_STATIS_DIAG (C宏), 548
WIFI_STATIS_HW (C宏), 548
WIFI_STATIS_PS (C宏), 548
WIFI_STATIS_RXTX (C宏), 548
WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_STORAGE_RAM (C++ enumerator), 552
wifi_storage_t (C++ enum), 552
WIFI_TASK_CORE_ID (C宏), 534
WIFI_VENDOR_IE_ELEMENT_ID (C宏), 547
wifi_vendor_ie_id_t (C++ enum), 552
wifi_vendor_ie_type_t (C++ enum), 552
WIFI_VND_IE_ID_0 (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_VND_IE_ID_1 (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_ASSOC_REQ (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_ASSOC_RESP (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_BEACON (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_PROBE_REQ (C++ enumerator), 552
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_PROBE_RESP (C++ enumerator), 552
wl_erase_range (C++ function), 1172
wl_handle_t (C++ type), 1173
WL_INVALID_HANDLE (C宏), 1173
wl_mounnt (C++ function), 1172
wl_read (C++ function), 1173
wl_sector_size (C++ function), 1173
wl_size (C++ function), 1173
wl_unmount (C++ function), 1172
wl_write (C++ function), 1172
WPS_FAIL_REASON_MAX (C++ enumerator), 555
WPS_FAIL_REASON_NORMAL (C++ enumerator), 555
WPS_FAIL_REASON_RECV_M2D (C++ enumerator), 555
x
xEventGroupClearBits (C++ function), 1314
xEventGroupClearBitsFromISR (C宏), 1318
xEventGroupCreate (C++ function), 1312
xEventGroupCreateStatic (C++ function), 1312
xEventGroupGetBits (C宏), 1319
xEventGroupGetBitsFromISR (C++ function), 1318
xEventGroupSetBits (C++ function), 1315
xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR (C宏), 1318
xEventGroupSync (C++ function), 1316
xEventGroupWaitBits (C++ function), 1313
xMessageBufferCreate (C宏), 1327
xMessageBufferCreateStatic (C宏), 1328
索引

xMessageBufferIsEmpty (C 宏)，1334
xMessageBufferIsFull (C 宏)，1333
xMessageBufferNextLengthBytes (C 宏)，
  1334
xMessageBufferReceive (C 宏)，1331
xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR (C 宏)，1335
xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR (C 宏)，1332
xMessageBufferReset (C 宏)，1334
xMessageBufferSend (C 宏)，1329
xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR (C 宏)，1334
xMessageBufferSendFromISR (C 宏)，1330
xMessageBufferSpaceAvailable (C 宏)，1334
xMessageBufferSpacesAvailable (C 宏)，
  1334
xQueueAddToSet (C++ function)，1271
xQueueCreate (C 宏)，1272
xQueueCreateSet (C++ function)，1270
xQueueCreateStatic (C 宏)，1273
xQueueGenericCreate (C++ function)，1270
xQueueGenericCreateStatic (C++ function)，
  1270
xQueueGenericSend (C++ function)，1264
xQueueGenericSendFromISR (C++ function)，
  1267
xQueueGiveFromISR (C++ function)，1268
xQueueIsQueueEmptyFromISR (C++ function)，
  1269
xQueueIsQueueFullFromISR (C++ function)，
  1269
xQueueOverwrite (C 宏)，1277
xQueueOverwriteFromISR (C 宏)，1279
xQueuePeek (C++ function)，1265
xQueuePeekFromISR (C++ function)，1266
xQueueReceive (C++ function)，1266
xQueueReceiveFromISR (C++ function)，1268
xQueueRemoveFromSet (C++ function)，1271
xQueueReset (C 宏)，1281
xQueueSelectFromSet (C++ function)，1271
xQueueSelectFromSetFromISR (C++ function)，
  1272
xQueueSend (C 宏)，1276
xQueueSendFromISR (C 宏)，1281
xQueueSendToBack (C 宏)，1275
xQueueSendToBackFromISR (C 宏)，1279
xQueueSendToFront (C 宏)，1274
xQueueSendToFrontFromISR (C 宏)，1278
xRingbufferAddToQueueSetRead (C++ function)，
  1348
xRingbufferCanRead (C++ function)，1348
xRingbufferCreate (C++ function)，1343
xRingbufferCreateNoSplit (C++ function)，
  1344
xRingbufferCreateStatic (C++ function)，
  1344
xRingbufferGetCurFreeSize (C++ function)，
  1348
xRingbufferGetMaxItemSize (C++ function)，
  1347
xRingbufferPrintInfo (C++ function)，1349
xRingbufferReceive (C++ function)，1345
xRingbufferReceiveFromISR (C++ function)，
  1345
xRingbufferReceiveSplit (C++ function)，
  1346
xRingbufferReceiveSplitFromISR (C++ function)，
  1346
xRingbufferReceiveUpTo (C++ function)，1346
xRingbufferReceiveUpToFromISR (C++ function)，
  1347
xRingbufferRemoveFromQueueSetRead (C++ function)，
  1348
xRingbufferSend (C++ function)，1344
xRingbufferSendAcquire (C++ function)，1345
xRingbufferSendComplete (C++ function)，
  1345
xRingbufferSendFromISR (C++ function)，1344
xSemaphoreCreateBinary (C 宏)，1282
xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic (C 宏)，1282
xSemaphoreCreateCounting (C 宏)，1292
xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic (C 宏)，
  1293
xSemaphoreCreateMutex (C 宏)，1289
xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic (C 宏)，1289
xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex (C 宏)，
  1290
xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic (C 宏)，
  1291
xSemaphoreGetMutexHolder (C 宏)，1294
xSemaphoreGetMutexHolderFromISR (C 宏)，
  1294
xSemaphoreGive (C 宏)，1285
xSemaphoreGiveFromISR (C 宏)，1287
xSemaphoreGiveRecursive (C 宏)，1286
xSemaphoreTake (C 宏)，1283
xSemaphoreTakeFromISR (C 宏)，1289
xSemaphoreTakeRecursive (C 宏)，1284
xSTATIC_RINGBUFFER (C++ class)，1349
xStreamBufferBytesAvailable (C++ function)，
  1324
xStreamBufferCreate (C 宏)，1325
xStreamBufferCreateStatic (C 宏)，1326
xStreamBufferIsEmpty (C++ function)，1324
xStreamBufferIsFull (C++ function)，1324
xStreamBufferReceive (C++ function)，1322
xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR (C++ function)，
  1325
xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR (C++ function)，
  1323
xStreamBufferReset (C++ function)，1324
xStreamBufferSend (C++ function)，1320
xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR (C++ function)，
  1325
xStreamBufferSendFromISR (C++ function)，
  1321

Espressif Systems 2258
Release v5.0-dev-489-gef98a36

Submit Document Feedback